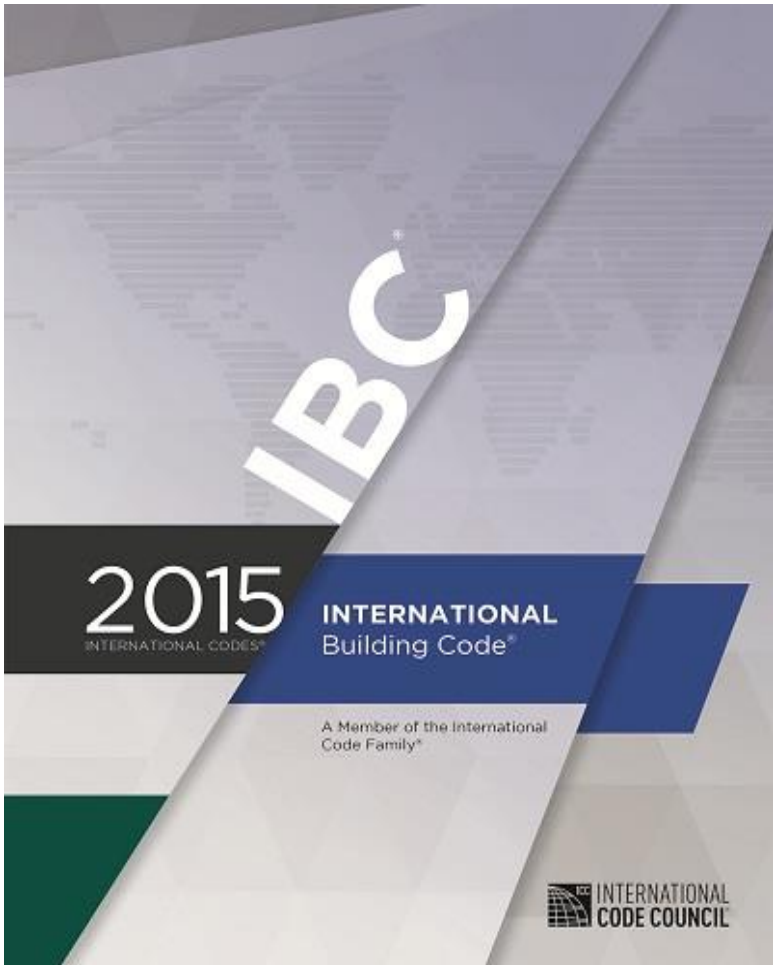


Effective July 1, 2016

WASHINGTON STATE
BUILDING CODE

CHAPTER 51-51 WAC

INTERNATIONAL BUILDING CODE
2015 Edition

Washington State Building Code Council

CITY OF BELLEVUE
CONSTRUCTION CODES

Ordinance **No. 6291 § 5**
Amends Chapter 23.10 BCC
Ordinances Nos.
2004: 5528, 5572
2007: 5750
2008: 5821
2010: 5937, 5943, 5951
2013: 6113
2018: 6407

ALL AMENDED OR DELETED
INTERNATIONAL CODE LANGUAGE
WILL BE DISPLAYED IN

1. Washington State amendments are displayed in Blue
2. City of Bellevue amendments are displayed in Fuchsia
3. ~~Strikethrough~~ or Greyed Out = deleted or replaced
4. Highlighted Sections = Errata
5. Points of Information are highlighted in yellow and are reference items only

2015 International Building Code®

First Printing: May 2014
Second Printing: July 2015
Third Printing: October 2015

ISBN: 978-1-60983-468-5 (soft-cover edition)
ISBN: 978-1-60983-497-8 (loose-leaf edition)

COPYRIGHT © 2014
by
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL, INC.

Date of First Publication: May 30, 2014

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. This 2015 *International Building Code*® is a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council, Inc. Without advance written permission from the copyright owner, no part of this book may be reproduced, distributed or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying, or recording by or in an information storage retrieval system). For information on permission to copy material exceeding fair use, please contact: Publications, 4051 West Flossmoor Road, Country Club Hills, IL 60478. Phone 1-888-ICC-SAFE (422-7233).

Trademarks: “International Code Council,” the “International Code Council” logo and the “International Building Code” are trademarks of the International Code Council, Inc.

PRINTED IN THE U.S.A.

WA STATE - PREFACE

Copies of the State Building Codes and complete copies of the 2015 International Building Code as published by the International Code Council may be obtained from:

Washington Association of Building Officials
Post Office Box 7310
Olympia, Washington 98507-7310
(360) 628-8669 www.wabobookstore.org
or toll free in Washington State at (888) 664-9515

The 2015 International BuildingCode, as published by the International Code Council, may be viewed at the following website:
http://codes.iccsafe.org/app/book/toc/2015/I-Codes/2015%20IBC%20HTML/index.html

Authority: The International Building Code (Chapter 51-50 WAC) is adopted by the Washington State Building Code Council pursuant to Chapters 19.27 and 70.92 RCW. These codes were first adopted by reference by the Washington State Legislature in 1974. In 1985, the Legislature delegated the responsibility of adoption and amendment of these Codes to the State Building Code Council.

Code Precedence: The State Building Code Act, Chapter 19.27 RCW, establishes the following order of precedence among the documents adopted as parts of the State Building Code:

International Building Code, Standards and amendments -WAC 51-50;
International Residential Code, Standards and amendments – WAC 51-51;
International Mechanical Code, Standards and amendments - WAC 51-52;
International Fire Code, Standards and amendments - WAC 51-54A;
Uniform Plumbing Code, Standards and amendments - WAC 51-56

Where there is a conflict between codes, an earlier named code takes precedence over a later named code. In the case of conflict between the duct insulation requirements of the International Mechanical Code and the duct insulation requirements of the Energy Code, the Energy Code, or where applicable, a local jurisdiction's energy code, shall govern.

Where, in any specific case, different sections of this Code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern. Where there is conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall be applicable.

Organization and Numbering: These rules are written to allow compatible use with the International Building Code. All sections which are amended, deleted, or added are referenced.

Enforcement: The State Building Code Act requires that each local jurisdiction enforce the State Building Code within its jurisdiction. Any jurisdiction can contract with another jurisdiction or an inspection agency to provide the mandated enforcement activities.

Amendments to the State Building Code:

The State Building Code Council has adopted review procedures and approval criteria for local amendments. These procedures and criteria are found in Chapter 51-04 WAC. The Council has exempted from its review any amendments to the administrative provisions of the various codes.

Forms for proposing statewide amendments to the State Building Code are available from the State Building Code Council staff.

> **A. Amendments of Statewide Application**: On a yearly basis the State Building Code Council will consider proposals to amend the State Building Code. Unless directed by the State Legislature, federal mandates or court order, the Council will not enter formal rulemaking until 2018 as part of its consideration of adoption of the 2018 series of codes.

Proposals to amend the State Building Code shall be made on forms provided by the Building Code Council.

Code Change Proposal Submittal Deadline: March 1st of each year.

> **B. Local Amendments**: Any jurisdiction may amend the State Building Code provided the amendments do not reduce the minimum performance standards of the codes. There are areas where local amendments are limited or prohibited:

Prohibited Amendments: Residential provisions of the State Energy Code (WAC 51-11R and WAC 51-11C), Ventilation provisions in Section 408 of the Mechanical Code (WAC 51-52) and Section M1507 of the IRC (WAC 5151); any provision of the International Building Code or International Residential Code affecting accessibility; and standards specifically adopted in Chapters 19.27 and 19.27A RCW cannot be amended by any local jurisdiction.

Residential Amendments: Amendments by local jurisdictions which affect the construction of single family and multi-family residential buildings must be reviewed and approved by the State Building Code Council before such amendments can be enforced. The State Building Code Act provides the following definition:

"Multi-family residential building" means common wall residential buildings that consist of four or fewer units, that do not exceed two stories in height, that are less than 5,000 square feet in area, and that have a one-hour fire-resistive occupancy separation between units.

Application forms for Council review of local amendments are available from the State Building Code Council Staff.

Washington State Building Code Council
Post Office Box 41449
Olympia, Washington 98504-1449
www.sbcc.wa.gov
(360) 407-9280
Fax (360) 586-5366
e-mail: sbcc@des.wa.gov

Printing Format: This version of the rules is published as a series of insert or replacement pages. Each page provides instructions for installing them in the model code book. Amendments to the model code which are new or revised from the previous edition of this code are indicated by a line in the margin next to the revised portions.

Effective Date: These rules were adopted by the State Building Code Council on November 13, 2015. The rules are effective throughout the state on July 1, 2016. (This version of the code is based on WAC 51-50 as published in WSR 16-03-069.

Building Permit Fees: The activities of the State Building Code Council are supported by permit fees collected by each city and county. Section 19.27.085 of the State Building Code Act requires that a fee of $4.50 be imposed on each building permit issued by each city and county. In addition, a fee of $2.00 per unit shall be imposed for each dwelling unit after the first unit, on each building containing more than one residential unit. For the purpose of this fee, WAC 5105 defines building permits as any permit to construct, enlarge, alter, repair, move, improve, remove, convert or demolish any building or structure regulated by the Building Code. Exempt from the fee are plumbing, electrical, mechanical permits, permits issued to install a mobile/manufactured home, commercial coach or factory built structure, or permits issued pursuant to the International Fire Code.

Each city and county shall remit moneys collected to the state treasury quarterly. No remittance is required until a minimum of $50.00 has accumulated.

These permit fees are the amounts current in January 2016. Such fees may be changed by the State Legislature.

Opinions: Only at the request of a local enforcement official, the State Building Code Council may issue interpretations/opinions of those provisions of the State Building Code created by the Council, or provisions of the model codes amended by the Council. Final interpretation authority for any specific permit resides with the local enforcement official.

PREFACE

Introduction

Internationally, code officials recognize the need for a modern, up-to-date building code addressing the design and installation of building systems through requirements emphasizing performance. The *International Building Code*®, in this 2015 edition, is designed to meet these needs through model code regulations that safeguard the public health and safety in all communities, large and small.

This comprehensive building code establishes minimum regulations for building systems using prescriptive and performance-related provisions. It is founded on broad-based principles that make possible the use of new materials and new building designs. This 2015 edition is fully compatible with all of the *International Codes*® (I-Codes®) published by the International Code Council (ICC)®, including the *International Energy Conservation Code*®*, International Existing Building Code*®*, International Fire Code*®*, International Fuel Gas Code*®*, International Green Construction Code*®, *International Mechanical Code*®*,* ICC *Performance Code*®*, International Plumbing Code*®*, International Private Sewage Disposal Code*®*, International Property Maintenance Code*®*, International Residential Code*®*, International Swimming Pool and Spa Code*®, *International Wildland-Urban Interface Code*® and *International Zoning Code*®*.*

The *International Building Code* provisions provide many benefits, among which is the model code development process that offers an international forum for building professionals to discuss performance and prescriptive code requirements. This forum provides an excellent arena to debate proposed revisions. This model code also encourages international consistency in the application of provisions.

Development

The first edition of the *International Building Code* (2000) was the culmination of an effort initiated in 1997 by the ICC. This included five drafting subcommittees appointed by ICC and consisting of representatives of the three statutory members of the International Code Council at that time, including: Building Officials and Code Administrators International, Inc. (BOCA), International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO) and Southern Building Code Congress International (SBCCI). The intent was to draft a comprehensive set of regulations for building systems consistent with and inclusive of the scope of the existing model codes. Technical content of the latest model codes promulgated by BOCA, ICBO and SBCCI was utilized as the basis for the development, followed by public hearings in 1997, 1998 and 1999 to consider proposed changes. This 2015 edition presents the code as originally issued, with changes reflected in the 2003, 2006, 2009 and 2012 editions and further changes approved by the ICC Code Development Process through 2014. A new edition such as this is promulgated every 3 years.

This code is founded on principles intended to establish provisions consistent with the scope of a building code that adequately protects public health, safety and welfare; provisions that do not unnecessarily increase construction costs; provisions that do not

restrict the use of new materials, products or methods of construction; and provisions that do not give preferential treatment to particular types or classes of materials, products or methods of construction.

Adoption

The International Code Council maintains a copyright in all of its codes and standards. Maintaining copyright allows the ICC to fund its mission through sales of books, in both print and electronic formats. The *International Building Code* is designed for adoption and use by jurisdictions that recognize and acknowledge the ICC's copyright in the code, and further acknowledge the substantial shared value of the public/private partnership for code development between jurisdictions and the ICC.

The ICC also recognizes the need for jurisdictions to make laws available to the public. All ICC codes and ICC standards, along with the laws of many jurisdictions, are available for free in a nondownloadable form on the ICC's website. Jurisdictions should contact the ICC at adoptions@iccsafe.org to learn how to adopt and distribute laws based on the *International Building Code* in a manner that provides necessary access, while maintaining the ICC's copyright.

Maintenance

The *International Building Code* is kept up to date through the review of proposed changes submitted by code enforcing officials, industry representatives, design professionals and other interested parties. Proposed changes are carefully considered through an open code development process in which all interested and affected parties may participate.

The contents of this work are subject to change through both the code development cycles and the governmental body that enacts the code into law. For more information regarding the code development process, contact the Codes and Standards Development Department of the International Code Council.

While the development procedure of the *International Building Code* ensures the highest degree of care, the ICC, its members and those participating in the development of this code do not accept any liability resulting from compliance or noncompliance with the provisions because the ICC does not have the power or authority to police or enforce compliance with the contents of this code. Only the governmental body that enacts the code into law has such authority.

Code Development Committee Responsibilities (Letter Designations in Front of Section Numbers)

In each code development cycle, code change proposals to this code are considered at the Code Development Hearings by 11 different code development committees. Four of these committees have primary responsibility for designated chapters and appendices as follows:

IBC – Fire Safety Code Development Committee [BF]:	Chapters 7, 8, 9, 14, 26

IBC – General Code Development Committee [BG]:	Chapters 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 12, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, Appendices A, B, C, D, K
IBC – Means of Egress Code Development Committee [BE]:	Chapters 10, 11, Appendix E
IBC – Structural Code Development Committee [BS]:	Chapters 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, Appendices F, G, H, I, J, L, M

Code change proposals to sections of the code that are preceded by a bracketed letter designation, such as [A], will be considered by a committee other than the building code committee listed for the chapter or appendix above. For example, proposed code changes to Section [F] 307.1.1 will be considered by the International Fire Code Development Committee during the Committee Action Hearing in the 2016 (Group B) code development cycle.

Another example is Section [BF] 1505.2. While code change proposals to Chapter 15 are primarily the responsibility of the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee, which considers code change proposals during the 2016 (Group B) code development cycle, Section 1505.2 is the responsibility of the IBC – Fire Safety Code Development Committee, which considers code change proposals during the 2015 (Group A) code development cycle.

The bracketed letter designations for committees responsible for portions of this code are as follows:

[A]	=	Administrative Code Development Committee;
[BE]	=	IBC – Means of Egress Code Development Committee;
[BF]	=	IBC – Fire Safety Code Development Committee;
[BG]	=	IBC – General Code Development Committee;
[BS]	=	IBC – Structural Code Development Committee;
[E]	=	International Energy Conservation Code Development Committee (Commercial Energy Committee or Residential Energy Committee, as applicable);
[EB]	=	International Existing Building Code Development Committee;
[F]	=	International Fire Code Development Committee;
[FG]	=	International Fuel Gas Code Development Committee;
[M]	=	International Mechanical Code Development Committee; and
[P]	=	International Plumbing Code Development Committee.

For the development of the 2018 edition of the I-Codes, there will be three groups of code development committees and they will meet in separate years. Note that these are tentative groupings.

Group A Codes (Heard in 2015, Code Change Proposals Deadline: January 12, 2015)	**Group B Codes (Heard in 2016, Code Change Proposals Deadline: January 11, 2016)**	**Group C Codes (Heard in 2017, Code Change Proposals Deadline: January 11, 2017)**
International Building Code – Fire Safety (Chapters 7, 8, 9, 14, 26) – Means of Egress (Chapters 10, 11, Appendix E) – General (Chapters 2-6,	Administrative Provisions (Chapter 1 of all codes except IRC and IECC, administrative updates to currently referenced standards, and designated definitions)	International Green Construction Code

12, 27-33, Appendices A, B, C, D, K)		
International Fuel Gas Code	**International Building Code** – Structural (Chapters 15-25, Appendices F, G, H, I, J, L, M)	
International Existing Building Code	International Energy Conservation Code	
International Mechanical Code	International Fire Code	
International Plumbing Code	International Residential Code – IRC - Building (Chapters 1-10, Appendices E, F, H, J, K, L, M, O, R, S, T, U)	
International Private Sewage Disposal Code	International Wildland-Urban Interface Code	
International Property Maintenance Code		
International Residential Code – IRC - Mechanical (Chapters 12-24) – IRC - Plumbing (Chapters 25-33, Appendices G, I, N, P)		
International Swimming Pool and Spa Code		
International Zoning Code		

Note: Proposed changes to the ICC Performance Code will be heard by the code development committee noted in brackets [ ] in the text of the code.

Code change proposals submitted for code sections that have a letter designation in front of them will be heard by the respective committee responsible for such code sections. Because different committees hold code development hearings in different years, proposals for this code will be heard by committees in both the 2015 (Group A) and the 2016 (Group B) code development cycles.

For instance, every section of Chapter 16 is the responsibility of the IBC – Structural Committee, and, as noted in the preceding table, that committee will hold its committee action hearings in 2016 to consider code change proposals for the chapters for which it is responsible. Therefore any proposals received for Chapter 16 of this code will be assigned to the IBC – Structural Committee, which will consider code change proposals in 2016, during the Group B code change cycle.

As another example, every section of Chapter 1 of this code is designated as the responsibility of the Administrative Code Development Committee, and that committee is part of the Group B portion of the hearings. This committee will hold its committee action hearings in 2016 to consider all code change proposals for Chapter 1 of this code and proposals for Chapter 1 of all I-Codes except the *International Energy Conservation Code, International Residential Code* and ICC *Performance Code*. Therefore, any proposals

received for Chapter 1 of this code will be assigned to the Administrative Code Development Committee for consideration in 2016.

It is very important that anyone submitting code change proposals understand which code development committee is responsible for the section of the code that is the subject of the code change proposal. For further information on the code development committee responsibilities, please visit the ICC website at www.iccsafe.org/scoping.

Marginal Markings

Solid vertical lines in the margins within the body of the code indicate a technical change from the requirements of the 2012 edition. Deletion indicators in the form of an arrow (➡) are provided in the margin where an entire section, paragraph, exception or table has been deleted or an item in a list of items or a table has been deleted.

A single asterisk [*] placed in the margin indicates that text or a table has been relocated within the code. A double asterisk [**] placed in the margin indicates that the text or table immediately following it has been relocated there from elsewhere in the code. The following table indicates such relocations in the 2015 edition of the *International Building Code*.

2015 LOCATION	2012 LOCATION
712.1.13.2	711.3.2
903.3.8 through 903.3.8.5	903.3.5.1.1
915	908.7
1006	1014.3, 1015, 1021
1007	1015.2, 1021.3
1019.3	1009.3
1504.2	1711.2
2111.2	2101.3.1
Table 2308.5.11	Table 2304.6
2514	1911
2902.3.6	1210.4
3002.9	3004.4
3006	713.14.1 and 713.14.1.1

Coordination between the International Building and Fire Codes

Because the coordination of technical provisions is one of the benefits of adopting the ICC family of model codes, users will find the ICC codes to be a very flexible set of model documents. To accomplish this flexibility some technical provisions are duplicated in some of the model code documents. While the *International Codes* are provided as a comprehensive set of model codes for the built environment, documents are occasionally adopted as a stand-alone regulation. When one of the model documents is adopted as the basis of a stand-alone code, that code should provide a complete package of requirements with enforcement assigned to the entity for which the adoption is being made.

The model codes can also be adopted as a family of complementary codes. When adopted together there should be no conflict of any of the technical provisions. When multiple model codes are adopted in a jurisdiction, it is important for the adopting authority to evaluate the provisions in each code document and determine how and by which agency(ies) they will be enforced. It is important, therefore, to understand that where technical provisions are duplicated in multiple model documents, the enforcement duties

must be clearly assigned by the local adopting jurisdiction. ICC remains committed to providing state-of-the-art model code documents that, when adopted locally, will reduce the cost to government of code adoption and enforcement and protect the public health, safety and welfare.

Italicized Terms

Selected terms set forth in Chapter 2, Definitions, are italicized where they appear in code text (except those in Sections 1903 through 1905, where italics indicate provisions that differ from ACI 318). Such terms are not italicized where the definition set forth in Chapter 2 does not impart the intended meaning in the use of the term. The terms selected have definitions that the user should read carefully to facilitate better understanding of the code.

EFFECTIVE USE OF THE INTERNATIONAL BUILDING CODE

The *International Building Code*® (IBC®) is a model code that provides minimum requirements to safeguard the public health, safety and general welfare of the occupants of new and existing buildings and structures. The IBC is fully compatible with the ICC family of codes, including: *International Energy Conservation Code*® (IECC®), *International Existing Building Code*® (IEBC®), *International Fire Code*® (IFC®), *International Fuel Gas Code*® (IFGC®), *International Green Construction Code*® (IgCC®), *International Mechanical Code*® (IMC®), ICC *Performance Code*® (ICCPC®), *International Plumbing Code*® (IPC®), *International Private Sewage Disposal Code*® (IPSDC®), *International Property Maintenance Code*® (IPMC®), *International Residential Code*® (IRC®), *International Swimming Pool and Spa Code*™ (ISPSC™), *International Wildland-Urban Interface Code*® (IWUIC®) and *International Zoning Code*® (IZC®).

The IBC addresses structural strength, means of egress, sanitation, adequate lighting and ventilation, accessibility, energy conservation and life safety in regard to new and existing buildings, facilities and systems. The codes are promulgated on a 3-year cycle to allow for new construction methods and technologies to be incorporated into the codes. Alternative materials, designs and methods not specifically addressed in the code can be approved by the code official where the proposed materials, designs or methods comply with the intent of the provisions of the code (see Section 104.11).

The IBC applies to all occupancies, including one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses that are not within the scope of the IRC. The IRC is referenced for coverage of detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses as defined in the exception to Section 101.2 and the definition for “Townhouse” in Chapter 2. The IRC can also be used for the construction of Live/Work units (as defined in Section 419) and small bed and breakfast-style hotels where there are five or fewer guest rooms and the hotel is owner occupied. The IBC applies to all types of buildings and structures unless exempted. Work exempted from permits is listed in Section 105.2.

Arrangement and Format of the 2015 IBC

Before applying the requirements of the IBC, it is beneficial to understand its arrangement and format. The IBC, like other codes published by ICC, is arranged and organized to follow sequential steps that generally occur during a plan review or inspection.

Chapters	Subjects
1-2	Administration and definitions
3	Use and occupancy classifications
4, 31	Special requirements for specific occupancies or elements
5-6	Height and area limitations based on type of construction
7-9	Fire resistance and protection requirements
10	Requirements for evacuation
11	Specific requirements to allow use and access to a building for persons with disabilities
12-13, 27-30	Building systems, such as lighting, HVAC, plumbing fixtures, elevators

14-26	Structural components—performance and stability
32	Encroachment outside of property lines
33	Safeguards during construction
35	Referenced standards
Appendices A-M	Appendices

The IBC requirements for hazardous materials, fire-resistance-rated construction, interior finish, fire protection systems, means of egress, emergency and standby power, and temporary structures are directly correlated with the requirements of the IFC. The following chapters/sections of the IBC are correlated to the IFC:

IBC Chapter/Section	IFC Chapter/Section	Subject
Sections 307, 414, 415	Chapters 50-67	Hazardous materials and Group H requirements
Chapter 7	Chapter 7	Fire-resistance-rated construction (Fire and smoke protection features in the IFC)
Chapter 8	Chapter 8	Interior finish, decorative materials and furnishings
Chapter 9	Chapter 9	Fire protection systems
Chapter 10	Chapter 10	Means of egress
Chapter 27	Section 604	Standby and emergency power
Section 3103	Chapter 31	Temporary structures

The IBC requirements for smoke control systems, and smoke and fire dampers are directly correlated to the requirements of the IMC. IBC Chapter 28 is a reference to the IMC and the IFGC for chimneys, fireplaces and barbecues, and all aspects of mechanical systems. The following chapters/ sections of the IBC are correlated with the IMC:

IBC Chapter/Section	IMC Chapter/Section	Subject
Section 717	Section 607	Smoke and fire dampers
Section 909	Section 513	Smoke control

The IBC requirements for plumbing fixtures and toilet rooms are directly correlated to the requirements of the IPC. The following chapters/sections of the IBC are correlated with the IPC:

IBC Chapter/Section	IPC Chapter/Section	Subject
Chapter 29	Chapters 3 & 4	Plumbing fixtures and facilities

The following is a chapter-by-chapter synopsis of the scope and intent of the provisions of the *International Building Code*.

Chapter 1 Scope and Administration. Chapter 1 establishes the limits of applicability of the code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced. Chapter 1 is in two parts, Part 1— Scope and Application (Sections 101-102) and Part 2—Administration and Enforcement (Sections 103-116). Section 101 identifies which buildings and structures come under its purview and references other ICC codes as applicable. Standards and codes are scoped to the extent referenced (see Section 102.4).

The building code is intended to be adopted as a legally enforceable document and it cannot be effective without adequate provisions for its administration and enforcement. The

provisions of Chapter 1 establish the authority and duties of the code official appointed by the jurisdiction having authority and also establish the rights and privileges of the design professional, contractor and property owner.

Chapter 2 Definitions. An alphabetical listing of all defined terms is located in Chapter 2. Defined terms that are pertinent to a specific chapter or section are also found in that chapter or section with a reference back to Chapter 2 for the definition. While a defined term may be listed in one chapter or another, the meaning is applicable throughout the code.

Codes are technical documents and every word, term and punctuation mark can impact the meaning of the code text and the intended results. The code often uses terms that have a unique meaning in the code and the code meaning can differ substantially from the ordinarily understood meaning of the term as used outside of the code. Where understanding of a term's definition is especially key to or necessary for understanding a particular code provision, the term is shown in *italics* wherever it appears in the code.

The user of the code should be familiar with and consult this chapter because the definitions are essential to the correct interpretation of the code. Where a term is not defined, such terms shall have the ordinarily accepted meaning.

Chapter 3 Use and Occupancy Classification. Chapter 3 provides for the classification of buildings, structures and parts thereof based on the purpose or purposes for which they are used. Section 302 identifies the groups into which all buildings, structures and parts thereof must be classified. Sections 303 through 312 identify the occupancy characteristics of each group classification. In some sections, specific group classifications having requirements in common are collectively organized such that one term applies to all. For example, Groups A-1, A-2, A-3, A-4 and A-5 are individual groups for assembly-type buildings. The general term "Group A," however, includes each of these individual groups. Other groups include Business (B), Educational (E), Factory (F-1, F-2), High Hazard (H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4, H-5), Institutional (I-1, I-2, I-3, I-4), Mercantile (M), Residential (R-1, R-2, R-3, R-4), Storage (S-1, S-2) and Utility (U). In some occupancies, the smaller number means a higher hazard, but that is not always the case.

Defining the use of the buildings is very important as it sets the tone for the remaining chapters of the code. Occupancy works with the height, area and construction type requirements in Chapters 5 and 6, as well as the special provisions in Chapter 4, to determine "equivalent risk," or providing a reasonable level of protection or life safety for building occupants. The determination of equivalent risk involves three interdependent considerations: (1) the level of fire hazard associated with the specific occupancy of the facility; (2) the reduction of fire hazard by limiting the floor area and the height of the building based on the fuel load (combustible contents and burnable building components); and (3) the level of overall fire resistance provided by the type of construction used for the building. The greater the potential fire hazards indicated as a function of the group, the lesser the height and area allowances for a particular construction type.

Occupancy classification also plays a key part in organizing and prescribing the appropriate protection measures. As such, threshold requirements for fire protection and means of egress systems are based on occupancy classification (see Chapters 9 and 10). Other sections of the code also contain requirements respective to the classification of building groups. For example, Section 706 specifies requirements for fire wall fire-resistance ratings that are tied to the occupancy classification of a building and Section 803.11 contains interior finish requirements that are dependent upon the occupancy classification. The use of the space, rather than the occupancy of the building, is utilized for determining occupant loading (Section 1004) and live loading (Section 1607).

Over the useful life of a building, the activities in the building will evolve and change. Where the provisions of the code address uses differently, moving from one activity to another or from one level of activity to another is, by definition, a change of occupancy. The new occupancy must be in compliance with the applicable provisions.

Chapter 4 Special Detailed Requirements Based On Use and Occupancy. Chapter 4 contains the requirements for protecting special uses and occupancies, which are supplemental to the remainder of the code. Chapter 4 contains provisions that may alter requirements found elsewhere in the code; however, the general requirements of the code still apply unless modified within the chapter. For example, the height and area limitations established in Chapter 5 apply to all special occupancies unless Chapter 4 contains height and area limitations. In this case, the limitations in Chapter 4 supersede those in other sections. An example of this is the height and area limitations for open parking garages given in Section 406.5.4, which supersede the limitations given in Sections 504 and 506.

In some instances, it may not be necessary to apply the provisions of Chapter 4. For example, if a covered mall building complies with the provisions of the code for Group M, Section 402 does not apply; however, other sections that address a use, process or operation must be applied to that specific occupancy, such as stages and platforms, special amusement buildings and hazardous materials (Sections 410, 411 and 414).

The chapter includes requirements for buildings and conditions that apply to one or more groups, such as high-rise buildings, underground buildings or atriums. Special uses may also imply specific occupancies and operations, such as for Group H, hazardous materials, application of flammable finishes, drying rooms, organic coatings and combustible storage or hydrogen fuel gas rooms, all of which are coordinated with the IFC. Unique consideration is taken for special use areas, such as covered mall buildings, motor-vehicle-related occupancies, special amusement buildings and air-craft-related occupancies. Special facilities within other occupancies are considered, such as stages and platforms, motion picture projection rooms, children's play structures and storm shelters. Finally, in order that the overall package of protection features can be easily understood, unique considerations for specific occupancies are addressed: Groups I-1, I-2, I-3, R-1, R-2, R-3, R-4, ambulatory care facilities and live/work units.

Chapter 5 General Building Heights and Areas. Chapter 5 contains the provisions that regulate the minimum type of construction for area limits and height limits based on the occupancy of the building. Height and area increases (including allowances for basements, mezzanines and equipment platforms) are permitted based on open frontage for fire department access, and the type of sprinkler protection provided and separation (Sections 503-506, 510). These thresholds are reduced for buildings over three stories in height in accordance with Sections 506.2.3 and 506.2.4. Provisions include the protection and/or separation of incidental uses (Table 509), accessory occupancies (Section 508.2) and mixed uses in the same building (Sections 506.2.2, 506.2.4, 508.3, 508.4 and 510). Unlimited area buildings are permitted in certain occupancies when they meet special provisions (Section 507).

Tables 504.3, 504.4 and 506.2 are the keystones in setting thresholds for building size based on the building's use and the materials with which it is constructed. If one then looks at Tables 504.3, 504.4 and 506.2, the relationship among group classification, allowable heights and areas and types of construction becomes apparent. Respective to each group classification, the greater the fire-resistance rating of structural elements, as represented by the type of construction, the greater the floor area and height allowances. The greater the potential fire hazards indicated as a function of the group, the lesser the height and area

allowances for a particular construction type. In the 2015 edition, the table that once contained both height and area has been separated and these three new tables address the topics individually. In addition, the tables list criteria for buildings containing automatic sprinkler systems and those that do not.

Chapter 6 Types of Construction. The interdependence of these fire safety considerations can be seen by first looking at Tables 601 and 602, which show the fire-resistance ratings of the principal structural elements comprising a building in relation to the five classifications for types of construction. Type I construction is the classification that generally requires the highest fire-resistance ratings for structural elements, whereas Type V construction, which is designated as a combustible type of construction, generally requires the least amount of fire-resistance-rated structural elements. The greater the potential fire hazards indicated as a function of the group, the lesser the height and area allowances for a particular construction type. Section 603 includes a list of combustible elements that can be part of a noncombustible building (Types I and II construction).

Chapter 7 Fire and Smoke Protection Features. The provisions of Chapter 7 present the fundamental concepts of fire performance that all buildings are expected to achieve in some form. This chapter identifies the acceptable materials, techniques and methods by which proposed construction can be designed and evaluated against to determine a building's ability to limit the impact of fire. The fire-resistance-rated construction requirements within Chapter 7 provide passive resistance to the spread and effects of fire. Types of separations addressed include fire walls, fire barriers, fire partitions, horizontal assemblies, smoke barriers and smoke partitions. A fire produces heat that can weaken structural components and smoke products that cause property damage and place occupants at risk. The requirements of Chapter 7 work in unison with height and area requirements (Chapter 5), active fire detection and suppression systems (Chapter 9) and occupant egress requirements (Chapter 10) to contain a fire should it occur while helping ensure occupants are able to safely exit.

Chapter 8 Interior Finishes. This chapter contains the performance requirements for controlling fire growth within buildings by restricting interior finish and decorative materials. Past fire experience has shown that interior finish and decorative materials are key elements in the development and spread of fire. The provisions of Chapter 8 require materials used as interior finishes and decorations to meet certain flame-spread index or flame-propagation criteria based on the relative fire hazard associated with the occupancy. As smoke is also a hazard associated with fire, this chapter contains limits on the smoke development characteristics of interior finishes. The performance of the material is evaluated based on test standards.

Chapter 9 Fire Protection Systems. Chapter 9 prescribes the minimum requirements for active systems of fire protection equipment to perform the following functions: detect a fire; alert the occupants or fire department of a fire emergency; and control smoke and control or extinguish the fire. Generally, the requirements are based on the occupancy, the height and the area of the building, because these are the factors that most affect fire-fighting capabilities and the relative hazard of a specific building or portion thereof. This chapter parallels and is substantially duplicated in Chapter 9 of the *International Fire Code* (IFC); however, the IFC Chapter 9 also contains periodic testing criteria that are not contained in the IBC. In addition, the special fire protection system requirements based on use and occupancy found in IBC Chapter 4 are duplicated in IFC Chapter 9 as a user convenience.

Chapter 10 Means of Egress. The general criteria set forth in Chapter 10 regulating the design of the means of egress are established as the primary method for protection of people in buildings by allowing timely relocation or evacuation of building occupants. Both prescriptive and performance language is utilized in this chapter to provide for a basic

approach in the determination of a safe exiting system for all occupancies. It addresses all portions of the egress system (i.e., exit access, exits and exit discharge) and includes design requirements as well as provisions regulating individual components. The requirements detail the size, arrangement, number and protection of means of egress components. Functional and operational characteristics also are specified for the components that will permit their safe use without special knowledge or effort. The means of egress protection requirements work in coordination with other sections of the code, such as protection of vertical openings (see Chapter 7), interior finish (see Chapter 8), fire suppression and detection systems (see Chapter 9) and numerous others, all having an impact on life safety. Chapter 10 of the IBC is duplicated in Chapter 10 of the IFC; however, the IFC contains one additional section on the means of egress system in existing buildings.

Chapter 11 Accessibility. Chapter 11 contains provisions that set forth requirements for accessibility of buildings and their associated sites and facilities for people with physical disabilities. The fundamental philosophy of the code on the subject of accessibility is that everything is required to be accessible. This is reflected in the basic applicability requirement (see Section 1103.1). The code's scoping requirements then address the conditions under which accessibility is not required in terms of exceptions to this general mandate. While the IBC contains scoping provisions for accessibility (e.g., what, where and how many), ICC/ANSI A117.1, *Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities*, is the referenced standard for the technical provisions (i.e., how).

There are many accessibility issues that not only benefit people with disabilities, but also provide a tangible benefit to people without disabilities. This type of requirement can be set forth in the code as generally applicable without necessarily identifying it specifically as an accessibility-related issue. Such a requirement would then be considered as having been "mainstreamed." For example, visible alarms are located in Chapter 9 and accessible means of egress and ramp requirements are addressed in Chapter 10.

Accessibility criteria for existing buildings are addressed in the *International Existing Building Code* (IEBC).

Appendix E is supplemental information included in the code to address accessibility for items in the 2010 *ADA Standards for Accessible Design* that were not typically enforceable through the standard traditional building code enforcement approach system (e.g., beds, room signage). The *International Residential Code* (IRC) references Chapter 11 for accessibility provisions; therefore, this chapter may be applicable to housing covered under the IRC.

Chapter 12 Interior Environment. Chapter 12 provides minimum standards for the interior environment of a building. The standards address the minimum sizes of spaces, minimum temperature levels, and minimum light and ventilation levels. The collection of requirements addresses limiting sound transmission through walls, ventilation of attic spaces and under floor spaces (crawl spaces). Finally, the chapter provides minimum standards for toilet and bathroom construction, including privacy shielding and standards for walls, partitions and floors to resist water intrusion and damage.

Chapter 13 Energy Efficiency. The purpose of Chapter 13 is to provide minimum design requirements that will promote efficient utilization of energy in buildings. The requirements are directed toward the design of building envelopes with adequate thermal resistance and low air leakage, and toward the design and selection of mechanical, water heating, electrical and illumination systems that promote effective use of depletable energy resources. For the specifics of these criteria, Chapter 13 requires design and construction in compliance with the *International Energy Conservation Code* (IECC).

Chapter 14 Exterior Walls. This chapter addresses requirements for exterior walls of buildings. Minimum standards for wall covering materials, installation of wall coverings and the ability of the wall to provide weather protection are provided. This chapter also requires exterior walls that are close to lot lines, or that are bearing walls for certain types of construction, to comply with the minimum fire-resistance ratings specified in Chapters 6 and 7. The installation of each type of wall covering, be it wood, masonry, vinyl, metal composite material or an exterior insulation and finish system, is critical to its long-term performance in protecting the interior of the building from the elements and the spread of fire. Limitations on the use of combustible materials on exterior building elements such as balconies, eaves, decks and architectural trim are also addressed in this chapter.

Chapter 15 Roof Assemblies and Rooftop Structures. Chapter 15 provides standards for both roof assemblies as well as structures that sit on top of the roof of buildings. The criteria address roof construction and covering which includes the weather-protective barrier at the roof and, in most circumstances, a fire-resistant barrier. The chapter is prescriptive in nature and is based on decades of experience with various traditional materials, but it also addresses newer products such as photovoltaic shingles. These prescriptive rules are very important for satisfying performance of one type of roof covering or another. Section 1510 addresses rooftop structures, including penthouses, tanks, towers and spires. Rooftop penthouses larger than prescribed in this chapter must be treated as a story under Chapter 5.

Chapter 16 Structural Design. Chapter 16 prescribes minimum structural loading requirements for use in the design and construction of buildings and structural components. It includes minimum design loads, assignment of risk categories, as well as permitted design methodologies. Standards are provided for minimum design loads (live, dead, snow, wind, rain, flood, ice and earthquake as well as the required load combinations). The application of these loads and adherence to the serviceability criteria will enhance the protection of life and property. The chapter references and relies on many nationally recognized design standards. A key standard is the American Society of Civil Engineer's *Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures* (ASCE 7). Structural design needs to address the conditions of the site and location. Therefore, maps are provided of rainfall, seismic, snow and wind criteria in different regions.

Chapter 17 Special Inspections and Tests. Chapter 17 provides a variety of procedures and criteria for testing materials and assemblies, labeling materials and assemblies and special inspection of structural assemblies. This chapter expands on the inspections of Chapter 1 by requiring special inspection where indicated and, in some cases, structural observation. It also spells out additional responsibilities for the owner, contractor, design professionals and special inspectors. Proper assembly of structural components, proper quality of materials used and proper application of materials are essential to ensuring that a building, once constructed, complies with the structural and fire-resistance minimums of the code and the approved design. To determine this compliance often requires continuous or frequent inspection and testing. Chapter 17 establishes standards for special inspection, testing and reporting of the work to the building official.

Chapter 18 Soils and Foundations. Chapter 18 provides criteria for geotechnical and structural considerations in the selection, design and installation of foundation systems to support the loads from the structure above. The chapter includes requirements for soils investigation and site preparation for receiving a foundation, including the allowed load-bearing values for soils and for protecting the foundation from water intrusion. Section 1808 addresses the basic requirements for all foundation types. Later sections address foundation requirements that are specific to shallow foundations and deep foundations. Due care must

be exercised in the planning and design of foundation systems based on obtaining sufficient soils information, the use of accepted engineering procedures, experience and good technical judgment.

Chapter 19 Concrete. This chapter provides minimum accepted practices for the design and construction of buildings and structural components using concrete—both plain and reinforced. Chapter 19 relies primarily on the reference to American Concrete Institute (ACI) 318, *Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete*. The chapter also includes references to additional standards. Structural concrete must be designed and constructed to comply with this code and all listed standards. There are specific sections of the chapter addressing concrete slabs, anchorage to concrete and shotcrete. Because of the variable properties of material and numerous design and construction options available in the uses of concrete, due care and control throughout the construction process is necessary.

Chapter 20 Aluminum. Chapter 20 contains standards for the use of aluminum in building construction. Only the structural applications of aluminum are addressed. The chapter does not address the use of aluminum in specialty products such as storefront or window framing or architectural hardware. The use of aluminum in heating, ventilating or air-conditioning systems is addressed in the *International Mechanical Code* (IMC). The chapter references national standards from the Aluminum Association for use of aluminum in building construction, AA ASM 35, *Aluminum Sheet Metal Work in Building Construction*, and AA ADM 1, *Aluminum Design Manual*. By utilizing the standards set forth, a proper application of this material can be obtained.

Chapter 21 Masonry. This chapter provides comprehensive and practical requirements for masonry construction. The provisions of Chapter 21 require minimum accepted practices and the use of standards for the design and construction of masonry structures. The provisions address: material specifications and test methods; types of wall construction; criteria for engineered and empirical designs; and required details of construction, including the execution of construction. Masonry design methodologies including allowable stress design, strength design and empirical design are covered by provisions of the chapter. Also addressed are masonry fireplaces and chimneys, masonry heaters and glass unit masonry. Fire-resistant construction using masonry is also required to comply with Chapter 7. Masonry foundations are also subject to the requirements of Chapter 18.

Chapter 22 Steel. Chapter 22 provides the requirements necessary for the design and construction of structural steel (including composite construction), cold-formed steel, steel joists, steel cable structures and steel storage racks. The chapter specifies appropriate design and construction standards for these types of structures. It also provides a road map of the applicable technical requirements for steel structures. Because steel is a noncombustible building material, it is commonly associated with Types I and II construction; however, it is permitted to be used in all types of construction. Chapter 22 requires that the design and use of steel materials be in accordance with the specifications and standards of the American Institute of Steel Construction, the American Iron and Steel Institute, the Steel Joist Institute and the American Society of Civil Engineers.

Chapter 23 Wood. This chapter provides minimum requirements for the design of buildings and structures that use wood and wood-based products. The chapter is organized around three design methodologies: allowable stress design (ASD), load and resistance factor design (LRFD) and conventional light-frame construction. Included in the chapter are references to design and manufacturing standards for various wood and wood-based products; general construction requirements; design criteria for lateral force-resisting systems and specific requirements for the application of the three design methods. In general, only Type III, IV or V buildings may be constructed of wood.

Chapter 24 Glass and Glazing. This chapter establishes regulations for glass and glazing used in buildings and structures that, when installed, are subjected to wind, snow and dead loads. Engineering and design requirements are included in the chapter. Additional structural requirements are found in Chapter 16. Another concern of this chapter is glass and glazing used in areas where it is likely to be impacted by the occupants. Section 2406 identifies hazardous locations where glazing installed must either be safety glazing or blocked to prevent human impact. Safety glazing must meet stringent standards and be appropriately marked or identified. Additional requirements are provided for glass and glazing in guards, handrails, elevator hoistways and elevator cars, as well as in athletic facilities.

Chapter 25 Gypsum Board, Gypsum Panel Products and Plaster. Chapter 25 contains the provisions and referenced standards that regulate the design, construction and quality of gypsum board, gypsum panel products and plaster. It also addresses reinforced gypsum concrete. These represent the most common interior and exterior finish materials in the building industry. This chapter primarily addresses quality-control-related issues with regard to material specifications and installation requirements. Most products are manufactured under the control of industry standards. The building official or inspector primarily needs to verify that the appropriate product is used and properly installed for the intended use and location. While often simply used as wall and ceiling coverings, proper design and application are necessary to provide weather resistance and required fire protection for both structural and nonstructural building components.

Chapter 26 Plastic. The use of plastics in building construction and components is addressed in Chapter 26. This chapter provides standards addressing foam plastic insulation, foam plastics used as interior finish and trim, and other plastic veneers used on the inside or outside of a building. Plastic siding is regulated by Chapter 14. Sections 2606 through 2611 address the use of light-transmitting plastics in various configurations such as walls, roof panels, skylights, signs and as glazing. Requirements for the use of fiber-reinforced polymers, fiberglass-reinforced polymers and reflective plastic core insulation are also contained in this chapter. Additionally, requirements specific to the use of wood-plastic composites and plastic lumber are contained in this chapter. Some plastics exhibit rapid flame spread and heavy smoke density characteristics when exposed to fire. Exposure to the heat generated by a fire can cause some plastics to deform, which can affect their performance. The requirements and limitations of this chapter are necessary to control the use of plastic and foam plastic products such that they do not compromise the safety of building occupants.

Chapter 27 Electrical. Since electrical systems and components are an integral part of almost all structures, it is necessary for the code to address the installation of such systems. For this purpose, Chapter 27 references the *National Electrical Code* (NEC). In addition, Section 2702 addresses emergency and standby power requirements. Such systems must comply with the *International Fire Code* (IFC) and referenced standards. This section also provides references to the various code sections requiring emergency and standby power, such as high-rise buildings and buildings containing hazardous materials.

Chapter 28 Mechanical Systems. Nearly all buildings will include mechanical systems. This chapter provides references to the *International Mechanical Code* (IMC) and the *International Fuel Gas Code* (IFGC) for the design and installation of mechanical systems. In addition, Chapter 21 of this code is referenced for masonry chimneys, fireplaces and barbecues.

Chapter 29 Plumbing Systems. Chapter 29 regulates the minimum number of plumbing fixtures that must be provided for every type of building. This chapter also regulates the

location of the required fixtures in various types of buildings. This section requires separate facilities for males and females except for certain types of small occupancies. The regulations in this chapter come directly from Chapters 3 and 4 of the *International Plumbing Code* (IPC).

Chapter 30 Elevators and Conveying Systems. Chapter 30 provides standards for the installation of elevators into buildings. Referenced standards provide the requirements for the elevator system and mechanisms. Detailed standards are provided in the chapter for hoistway enclosures, machine rooms and requirements for sizing of elevators. Beginning in the 2015 edition, the elevator lobby requirements were moved from Chapter 7 to Chapter 30 to pull all the elevator-related construction requirements together. New provisions were added in the 2009 edition of the *International Building Code* for Fire Service Access Elevators required in high-rise buildings and for the optional choice of Occupant Evacuation Elevators (see Section 403).

Chapter 31 Special Construction. Chapter 31 contains a collection of regulations for a variety of unique structures and architectural features. Pedestrian walkways and tunnels connecting two buildings are addressed in Section 3104. Membrane and air-supported structures are addressed by Section 3102. Safeguards for swimming pool safety are addressed by way of reference to the ISPSC in Section 3109. Standards for temporary structures, including permit requirements are provided in Section 3103. Structures as varied as awnings, marquees, signs, telecommunication and broadcast towers and automatic vehicular gates are also addressed (see Sections 3105 through 3108 and 3110).

Chapter 32 Encroachments into the Public Right-of-way. Buildings and structures from time to time are designed to extend over a property line and into the public right-of-way. Local regulations outside of the building code usually set limits to such encroachments, and such regulations take precedence over the provisions of this chapter. Standards are provided for encroachments below grade for structural support, vaults and areaways. Encroachments above grade are divided into below 8 feet, 8 feet to 15 feet, and above 15 feet, because of headroom and vehicular height issues. This includes steps, columns, awnings, canopies, marquees, signs, windows and balconies. Similar architectural features above grade are also addressed. Pedestrian walkways must also comply with Chapter 31.

Chapter 33 Safeguards During Construction. Chapter 33 provides safety requirements during construction and demolition of buildings and structures. These requirements are intended to protect the public from injury and adjoining property from damage. In addition the chapter provides for the progressive installation and operation of exit stairways and standpipe systems during construction.

Chapter 34 Reserved. During the last code change cycle the membership voted to delete Chapter 34, Existing Structures, from the IBC and reference the IEBC. The provisions that were in Chapter 34 will appear in the *International Existing Building Code* (IEBC). Sections 3402 through 3411 are repeated as IEBC Chapter 4 and Section 3412 as Chapter 14.

Chapter 35 Referenced Standards. The code contains numerous references to standards that are used to regulate materials and methods of construction. Chapter 35 contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in the code, including the appendices. The standards are part of the code to the extent of the reference to the standard (see Section 102.4). Compliance with the referenced standard is necessary for compliance with this code. By providing specifically adopted standards, the construction and installation requirements necessary for compliance with the code can be readily determined. The basis for code compliance is, therefore, established and available on an equal basis to the building code official, contractor, designer and owner.

Chapter 35 is organized in a manner that makes it easy to locate specific standards. It lists all of the referenced standards, alphabetically, by acronym of the promulgating agency of the standard. Each agency's standards are then listed in either alphabetical or numeric order based upon the standard identification. The list also contains the title of the standard; the edition (date) of the standard referenced; any addenda included as part of the ICC adoption; and the section or sections of this code that reference the standard.

Appendices. Appendices are provided in the IBC to offer optional or supplemental criteria to the provisions in the main chapters of the code. Appendices provide additional information for administration of the Department of Building Safety as well as standards not typically administered by all building departments. Appendices have the same force and effect as the first 35 chapters of the IBC only when explicitly adopted by the jurisdiction.

Appendix A Employee Qualifications. Effective administration and enforcement of the family of *International Codes* depends on the training and expertise of the personnel employed by the jurisdiction and his or her knowledge of the codes. Section 103 of the code establishes the Department of Building Safety and calls for the appointment of a building official and deputies such as plans examiners and inspectors. Appendix A provides standards for experience, training and certification for the building official and the other staff mentioned in Chapter 1.

Appendix B Board of Appeals. Section 113 of Chapter 1 requires the establishment of a board of appeals to hear appeals regarding determinations made by the building official. Appendix B provides qualification standards for members of the board as well as operational procedures of such board.

Appendix C Group U—Agricultural Buildings. Appendix C provides a more liberal set of standards for the construction of agricultural buildings, rather than strictly following the Utility building provision, reflective of their specific usage and limited occupant load. The provisions of the appendix, when adopted, allow reasonable heights and areas commensurate with the risk of agricultural buildings.

Appendix D Fire Districts. Fire districts have been a tool used to limit conflagration hazards in areas of a city with intense and concentrated development. More frequently used under the model codes that preceded the *International Building Code* (IBC), the appendix is provided to allow jurisdictions to continue the designation and use of fire districts. Fire district standards restrict certain occupancies within the district, as well as setting higher minimum construction standards.

Appendix E Supplementary Accessibility Requirements. The Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (U.S. Access Board) has revised and updated its accessibility guidelines for buildings and facilities covered by the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) and the Architectural Barriers Act (ABA). Appendix E includes scoping requirements contained in the *2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design* that are not in Chapter 11 and not otherwise mentioned or mainstreamed throughout the code. Items in the appendix address subjects not typically addressed in building codes (e.g., beds, room signage, transportation facilities).

Appendix F Rodentproofing. The provisions of this appendix are minimum mechanical methods to prevent the entry of rodents into a building. These standards, when used in conjunction with cleanliness and maintenance programs, can significantly reduce the potential of rodents invading a building.

Appendix G Flood-resistant Construction. Appendix G is intended to fulfill the flood-plain management and administrative requirements of the National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP) that are not included in the code. Communities that adopt the *International Building Code* (IBC) and Appendix G will meet the minimum requirements of NFIP as set forth in Title 44 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

Appendix H Signs. Appendix H gathers in one place the various code standards that regulate the construction and protection of outdoor signs. Whenever possible, the appendix provides standards in performance language, thus allowing the widest possible application.

Appendix I Patio Covers. Appendix I provides standards applicable to the construction and use of patio covers. It is limited in application to patio covers accessory to dwelling units. Covers of patios and other outdoor areas associated with restaurants, mercantile buildings, offices, nursing homes or other nondwelling occupancies would be subject to standards in the main code and not this appendix.

Appendix J Grading. Appendix J provides standards for the grading of properties. The appendix also provides standards for administration and enforcement of a grading program including permit and inspection requirements. Appendix J was originally developed in the 1960s and used for many years in jurisdictions throughout the western states. It is intended to provide consistent and uniform code requirements anywhere grading is considered an issue.

Appendix K Administrative Provisions. Appendix K primarily provides administrative provisions for jurisdictions adopting and enforcing NFPA 70—the *National Electrical Code* (NEC). The provisions contained in this appendix are compatible with administrative and enforcement provisions contained in Chapter 1 of the IBC and the other *International Codes*. Annex H of NFPA 70 also contains administrative provisions for the NEC; however, some of its provisions are not compatible with IBC Chapter 1. Section K110 also contains technical provisions that are unique to this appendix and are in addition to technical standards of NFPA 70.

Appendix L Earthquake Recording Instrumentation. The purpose of this appendix is to foster the collection of ground motion data, particularly from strong-motion earthquakes. When this ground motion data is synthesized, it may be useful in developing future improvements to the earthquake provisions of the code.

Appendix M Tsunami-Generated Flood Hazard. Addressing a tsunami risk for all types of construction in a tsunami hazard zone through building code requirements would typically not be cost effective, making tsunami-resistant construction impractical at an individual building level. However, this appendix does allow the adoption and enforcement of requirements for tsunami hazard zones that regulate the presence of high risk or high hazard structures.

LEGISLATION

Jurisdictions wishing to adopt the 2015 *International Building Code* as an enforceable regulation governing structures and premises should ensure that certain factual information is included in the adopting legislation at the time adoption is being considered by the appropriate governmental body. The following sample adoption legislation addresses several key elements, including the information required for insertion into the code text.

SAMPLE LEGISLATION FOR ADOPTION OF THE *INTERNATIONAL BUILDING CODE* ORDINANCE NO._____

A**[N] [ORDINANCE/STATUTE/REGULATION]** of the **[JURISDICTION]** adopting the 2015 edition of the *International Building Code*, regulating and governing the conditions and maintenance of all property, buildings and structures; by providing the standards for supplied utilities and facilities and other physical things and conditions essential to ensure that structures are safe, sanitary and fit for occupation and use; and the condemnation of buildings and structures unfit for human occupancy and use and the demolition of such structures in the **[JURISDICTION]**; providing for the issuance of permits and collection of fees therefor; repealing **[ORDINANCE/STATUTE/REGULATION]** No. _____ of the **[JURISDICTION]** and all other ordinances or parts of laws in conflict therewith.

The **[GOVERNING BODY]** of the **[JURISDICTION]** does ordain as follows:

Section 1. That a certain document, three (3) copies of which are on file in the office of the **[TITLE OF JURISDICTION'S KEEPER OF RECORDS]** of **[NAME OF JURISDICTION]**, being marked and designated as the *International Building Code*, 2015 edition, including Appendix Chapters **[FILL IN THE APPENDIX CHAPTERS BEING ADOPTED]** (see *International Building Code* Section 101.2.1, 2015 edition), as published by the International Code Council, be and is hereby adopted as the Building Code of the **[JURISDICTION]**, in the State of **[STATE NAME]** for regulating and governing the conditions and maintenance of all property, buildings and structures; by providing the standards for supplied utilities and facilities and other physical things and conditions essential to ensure that structures are safe, sanitary and fit for occupation and use; and the condemnation of buildings and structures unfit for human occupancy and use and the demolition of such structures as herein provided; providing for the issuance of permits and collection of fees therefor; and each and all of the regulations, provisions, penalties, conditions and terms of said Building Code on file in the office of the **[JURISDICTION]** are hereby referred to, adopted, and made a part hereof, as if fully set out in this legislation, with the additions, insertions, deletions and changes, if any, prescribed in Section 2 of this ordinance.

Section 2. The following sections are hereby revised:

Section 101.1. Insert: **[NAME OF JURISDICTION]**
Section 1612.3. Insert: [NAME OF JURISDICTION]
Section 1612.3. Insert: [DATE OF ISSUANCE]

Section 3. That **[ORDINANCE/STATUTE/REGULATION]** No. _____ of **[JURISDICTION]** entitled **[FILL IN HERE THE COMPLETE TITLE OF THE LEGISLATION OR LAWS IN EFFECT AT THE PRESENT TIME SO THAT THEY WILL BE REPEALED BY DEFINITE MENTION]** and all other ordinances or parts of laws in conflict herewith are hereby repealed.

Section 4. That if any section, subsection, sentence, clause or phrase of this legislation is, for any reason, held to be unconstitutional, such decision shall not affect the validity of the remaining portions of this ordinance. The **[GOVERNING BODY]** hereby declares that it would have passed this law, and each section, subsection, clause or phrase thereof, irrespective of the fact that any one or more sections, subsections, sentences, clauses and phrases be declared unconstitutional.

Section 5. That nothing in this legislation or in the Building Code hereby adopted shall be construed to affect any suit or proceeding impending in any court, or any rights acquired, or liability incurred, or any cause or causes of action acquired or existing, under any act or ordinance hereby repealed as cited in Section 3 of this law; nor shall any just or legal right or remedy of any character be lost, impaired or affected by this legislation.

Section 6. That the **[JURISDICTION'S KEEPER OF RECORDS]** is hereby ordered and directed to cause this legislation to be published. (An additional provision may be required to direct the number of times the legislation is to be published and to specify that it is to be in a newspaper in general circulation. Posting may also be required.)

Section 7. That this law and the rules, regulations, provisions, requirements, orders and matters established and adopted hereby shall take effect and be in full force and effect **[TIME PERIOD]** from and after the date of its final passage and adoption.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREFACE
Introduction
Development
Adoption
Maintenance
Code Development Committee
Responsibilities
Marginal Markings
Italicized Terms

EFFECTIVE USE OF THE IRC
Effective Use of the IRC
Legislation

CHAPTER 1 SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

Part I – SCOPE AND APPLICATION
101 General
102 Applicability

Part 2 – ADMINISTRATION & ENFORCEMENT
103 Department Of Building Safety
104 Duties & Powers Of The Building Official
105 Permits
106 Floor and Roof Design Loads
107 Submittal Documents
108 Temporary Structures and Uses
109 Fees
110 Inspections
111 Certificate Of Occupancy
112 Service Utilities
113 Board of Appeals
114 Violations
115 Stop Work Orders
116 Unsafe Structures and Equipment

CHAPTER 2 DEFINITIONS
201 General
202 Definitions

CHAPTER 3 USE AND OCCUPANCY
301 General
302 Classification
303 Assembly Group A
304 Business Group B
305 Educatinoal Group E
306 Factory Group F
307 High-Hazard Group H
308 Institutional Group I
309 Mercantile Group M
310 Residential Group R
311 Storage Group S
312 Utility and Miscellaneous Group U

CHAPTER 4 SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON USE AND OCCUPANCY
401 Scope
402 Coverd Mall and Open Mall Buildings
403 High-Rise Buildings
404 Atriums
405 Underground Buildings
406 Motor-vehicle-related Occupancies
407 Group I-2
408 Group I-3
409 Motion Picture Projection Rooms
410 Stages, Platforms and Technical Production Areas
411 Special Amusement Buildings
412 Aircraft-related Occupancies
413 Combustible Storage
414 Hazardous Materials
415 GROUPS H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5
416 Applicatino of Flammable Finishes
417 Drying Rooms
418 Organic Coatings
419 Live/Work Units
420 Groups I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4
421 Hydrogen Fuel Gas Rooms
422 Amulatory Care Facilities
423 Storm Shelters
424 Children's Play Structures
425 Hyperbaric Facilities
426 Combustible Dusts, Grain Processing and Storage
427 Electric Vehicle Charging Infrastructure

CHAPTER 5 GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS
501 General
502 Definitions
503 General Building Height and Area Limitations
504 Building Height and Number of Stories
505 Mezzanines and Equipment Platforms
506 Building Area
507 Unlimited Area Buildings
508 Mixed Use and Occupancy
509 Incidental Uses
510 Special Provisions

CHAPTER 6 TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION
601 General
602 Constructino Classification
603 Combustible Material in Types I & II Construction

CHAPTER 7 FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES
701 General
702 Definitions
703 Fire-Resistance Ratings and Fire Tests
704 Fire-Resistance Rating of Structural Members
705 Exterior Walls
706 Fire Walls
707 Fire Barriers
708 Fire Partitions
709 Smoke Barriers
710 Smoke Partitions
711 Horizontal Assemblies
712 Vertical Openings
713 Shaft Enclosures
714 Penetrations
715 Fire-Resistant Joint Systems
716 Opening Protectives
717 Ducts and Air Transfer Openings
718 Concealed Spaces
719 Fire-Resistance Requirements for Plaster
720 Thermal-and Sound-Insulating Materials
721 Prescriptive Fire Resistance
722 Calculated Fire Resistance

CHAPTER 8 INTERIOR FINISHES
801 General
802 Defnitions
803 Wall and Ceiling Finishes
804 Interior Floor Finish
805 Combustible Materials in Types I and II Construction
806 Decorative Materials and Trim
807 Insulation
808 Acoustical Ceiling Systems

CHAPTER 9 FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS
901 General
902 Definitions
903 Automatic Sprinkler Systems
904 Alternative Automatic Fire-Extinguishing Systems
905 Standpipe Systems
906 Portable Fire Extinguishers
907 Fire Alarm and Detection Systems
908 Emergency Alarm Systems
909 Smoke Control Systems
910 Smoke and Heat Removal
911 Fire Command Center
912 Fire Department Connections
913 Fire Pumps
914 Emergency Responder Safety Features
915 Carbon Monoxide Detection
916 Emergency Responder Radio Coverage
917 Firefighter Air Systems

CHAPTER 10 MEANS OF EGRESS
1001 Administration
1002 Definitions
1003 General Means of Egress
1004 Occupant Load
1005 Means of Egress Sizing
1006 Number of Exits and Exit Access Doorways
1007 Exit and Exit Access Doorway Configuration
1008 Means of Egress Illumination
1009 Accessible Means of Egress
1010 Doors, Gates and Turnstiles
1011 Stairways
1012 Ramps
1013 Exit Signs
1014 Handrails
1015 Guards
1016 Exit Access

1017 Exit Access Travel Distance
1018 Aisles
1019 Exit Access Stairways and Ramps
1020 Corridors
1021 Egress Balconies
1022 Exits
1023 Interior Exit Stairways and Ramps
1024 Exit Passageways
1025 Luminous Egress Path Markins
1026 Horizontal Exits
1027 Exterior Exit Stairways and Ramps
1028 Exit Discharge
1029 Assembly
1030 Emergency Escape and Rescue

CHAPTER 11 ACCESSIBILITY
1101 General
1102 Definitions
1103 Scoping Requirements
1104 Accessible Route
1105 Accessible Entrances
1106 Parking and Passanger Loading Facilities
1107 Dwelling Units and Sleeping Units
1108 Special Occupancies
1109 Other Features and Facilities
1110 Recreational Facilities
1111 Signage

CHAPTER 12 INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT
1201 General
1202 Definitions
1203 Ventilations
1204 Temperature Control
1205 Lighting
1206 Yards or Courts
1207 Sound Transmission
1208 Interior Space Dimensions
1209 Access to Unoccupied Spaces
1210 Toilet and Bathroom Requirements

CHAPTER 13
Not Adopted By The State Of WA
1301 General

CHAPTER 14 EXTERIOR WALLS
1401 General
1402 Definitions
1403 Performance Requirements
1404 Materials
1405 Installation of Wall Coverings
1406 Combustible Materials on the Exterior Side of Exterior Walls
1407 Metal Composite Materials
1408 Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS)
1409 High-Pressure Decorative Exterior-Grade Compact Laminates (HPL)
1410 Plastic Composite Decking

CHAPTER 15 ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES
1501 General
1502 Definitions
1503 Weather Protection
1504 Performance Requirements
1505 Fire Classification
1506 Materials
1507 Requirements for Roof Coverings
1508 Roof Insulation
1509 Radiant Bariers Installed Above Deck
1510 Rooftop Structures
1511 Reroofing
1512 Photovoltaic Panels and Modules

CHAPTER 16 STRUCTURAL DESIGN
1601 General
1602 Definitions and Notations
1603 Construction Documents
1604 General Design Requirements
1605 Load Combinations
1606 Dead Loads
1607 Live Loads
1608 Snow Loads
1609 Wind Loads
1610 Soil Lateral Loads
1611 Rain Loads
1612 Flood Loads
1613 Earthquake Loads
1614 Atmospheric Ice Loads
1615 Structural Integrity

CHAPTER 17 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS
1701 General
1702 Definitions
1703 Approvals
1704 Special Inspections and Tests,

Contractor Responsibility and Structural Observation
1705 Required Special Inspections and Tests
1706 Design Strenths of Materials
1707 Alternative Test Procedure
1708 In-Situ Load Tests
1709 Preconstruction Load Tests

CHAPTER 18 SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS
1801 General
1802 Definitions
1803 Geotechnical Investigations
1804 Excavation, Grading and Fill
1805 Dampproofing and Waterproofing
1806 Fresumptive Load-bearing Values of Soils
1807 Foundation Walls, Retaining Walls and Embedded Posts and Poles
1808 Foundations
1809 Shallow Foundations
1810 Deep Foundations

CHAPTER 19 CONCRETE
1901 General
1902 Definitions
1903 Specifications for Tests and Materials
1904 Durability Requirements
1905 Modifications to ACI 318
1906 Structural Plain Concrete
1907 Minimum Slab Provisions
1908 Shotcrete

CHAPTER 20 ALUMINUM
2001 General
2002 Materials

CHAPTER 21 MASONRY
2101 General
2102 Definitions and Notations
2103 Masonry Construction Materials
2104 Construction
2105 Quality Assurance
2106 Seismic Design
2107 Allowable Stress Design
2108 Strength Design of Masonry
2109 Emperical Design of Masonry
2110 Glass Unit Masonry
2111 Masonry Fireplaces
2112 Masonry Heaters
2113 Masonry Chimneys
2114 Emission Standards

CHAPTER 22 STEEL
2201 General
2202 Definitions
2203 Itentification and Protection of Steel for Structural Purposes
2204 Connections
2205 Structrual Steel
2206 Composite Structural Steel and Concrete Structures
2207 Steel Joists
2208 Steel Cable Structures
2209 Steel Storage Racks
2210 Cold-formed Steel
2211 Cold-formed Steel Light-Frame Construction

CHAPTER 23 WOOD
2301 General
2302 Definitions
2303 Minimum Standards and Quality
2304 General Construction Requirements
2305 General Design Requirements for Lateral Force-Resisting Systems
2306 Allowable Stress Design
2307 Load and Resistance Factor Design
2308 Conventional Light-Frame Construction
2309 Wood Frame Construction Manual

CHAPTER 24 GLASS AND GLAZING
2401 General
2402 Definitions
2403 General Requirements for Glass
2404 Wind, Snow, Seismic and Dead Loads on Glass
2405 Sloped Glazing and Skylights
2406 Safety Glazing
2407 Glass in Handrails and Guards
2408 Glazing in Athletic Facilities
2409 Glass in Walkways, Elevator Hoistways and Elevator Cars

CHAPTER 25 GYPSUM BOARD, GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS AND PLASTER
2501 General

2502 Definitions
2503 Inspection
2504 Vertical and Horizontal Assemblies
2505 Shear Wall Construction
2506 Gypsum Board and Gypsum Panel Product Materials
2507 Lathing and Plastering
2508 Gypsum Construction
2509 Showers and Water Closets
2510 Lathing and Furring for Cement Plaster (Stucco)
2511 Interior Plaster
2512 Exterior Plaster
2513 Exposed Aggregate Plaster
2514 Reinforced Gypsum Concrete

CHAPTER 26 PLASTICS
2601 General
2602 Definitions
2603 Foam Plastic Insulation
2604 Interior Finish and Trim
2605 Plastic Veneer
2606 Light-Transmitting Plastics
2607 Light-Transmitting Plastic Wall Panels
2608 Light-Transmitting PlasticGlazing
2609 Light-Transmitting PlasticRoof Panels
2610 Light-Transmitting PlasticSkylight Glazing
2611 Light-Transmitting PlasticInterior Signs
2612 Plastic Composites
2613 Fiber-Reinforced Polymer
2614 Reflective Plastic Core Insulation

CHAPTER 27 ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
2701 General
2702 Emergency and Standby Power Systems

CHAPTER 28 MECHANICAL SYSTEMS
2801 General

CHAPTER 29 PLUMBING SYSTEMS
2901 General
2902 Minimum Plumbing Facilities

CHAPTER 30 ELEVATORS AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS
3001 General
3002 Hoistway Enclosures
3003 Emergency Operations
3004 Conveying Systems
3005 Machine Rooms
3006 Elevator Lobbies and Hoistway Opening Protection
3007 Fire Service Access Elevator
3008 Occupant Evacuation Elevators
3009 Hoistway Venting

CHAPTER 31 SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION
3101 General
3102 Membrane Structures
3103 Temporary Structures
3104 Pedestrian Walkways and Tunnels
3105 Awnings and Canopies
3106 Marquees
3107 Signs
3108 Telecommunication and Broadcast Towers
3109 Swimming Pool Enclosures and Safety Devices
3110 Automatic Vehicular Gates
3111 Photovoltaic Panels and Modules

CHAPTER 32 ENCROACHMENTS INTO THE PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY
3201 General
3202 Encroachments

CHAPTER 33 SAFEGAURDS DURING CONSTRUCTION
3301 General
3302 Construction Safeguards
3303 Demolition
3304 Site Work
3305 Sanitary
3306 Protection of Pedestrians
3307 Protection of Adjoining Property
3308 Temporary Use of Streets, Alleys and Public Property
3309 Fire Extinguishers
3310 Means of Egress
3311 Standpipes
3312 Automatic Sprinkler Systems
3313 Water Supply for Fire Protection

CHAPTER 34 RESERVED

CHAPTER 35 REFERENCED

STANDARDS

APPENDIX A EMPLOYEE QUALIFICATIONS

APPENDIX B BOARD OF APPEALS

APPENDIX C GROUP U – AGRICULTURAL BUILDINGS

APPENDIX D FIRE DISTRICTS

APPENDIX E SUPPLEMENTARY ACCESSIBILITY REQUIREMENTS

APPENDIX F RODENT PROOFING

APPENDIX G FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

APPENDIX H SIGNS

APPENDIX I PATIO COVERS

APPENDIX J GRADING

APPENDIX K ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS

APPENDIX L EARTQUAAKE RECORDING INSTRUMENTATION

APPENDIX M TSUNAMI-GENERATED FLOOD HAZARD

APPENDIX N SOLAR READINESS

INDEX

CHAPTER 51-50 WAC
STATE BUILDING CODE ADOPTION AND AMENDMENT
OF THE 2015 EDITION OF THE INTERNATIONAL BUILDING CODE

WA STATE LIST OF AMENDMENTS

Section

WAC 51-50-001 Authority
WAC 51-50-002 Purpose
WAC 51-50-003 International Building Code
WAC 51-50-005 International Building Code Regulations for Barrier-free Accessibility
WAC 51-50-007 Exceptions
WAC 51-50-008 Implementation
WAC 51-50-009 Recyclable Materials, Compost and Solid Waste Storage

Chapter 1 Administration
Section 108 – Temporary Structures and uses
Chapter 2 Definitions
Section 202 – Definitions
Chapter 3 Use and Occupancy Classification
Section 305 – Educational Group E
Section 306 – Factory Group F Section 308 – Institutional Group I
Section 310 – Residential Group R
Section 312 – Utility and miscellaneous Group U
Chapter 4 Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy
Section 403 – High-Rise Buildings
Section 412 – Aircraft Related Occupancies
Section 420 – Groups I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3
Section 422 – Ambulatory Care Facilities
Section 427 – Electric Vehicle Charging Infrastructure
Chapter 5 General Building Heights and Areas
Section 503 – General Building Height and Area Limitations
Section 504 – Building Height and Number of Stories
Section 505 – Mezzanines and Equipment Platforms
Section 509 – Incidental Uses
Section 510 – Special Provisions
Chapter 7 Fire and Smoke Protection Features
Section 706 – Fire Walls
Section 716 – Opening Protectives
Chapter 9 Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy
Section 903 – Automatic Sprinkler Systems
Section 907 – Fire Alarms and Detection Systems
Section 909 – Smoke Control Systems
Section 915 – Carbon Monoxide Detection
Chapter 10 Means of Egress
Section 1004 – Occupant Load
Section 1006 – Number of Exits and Exit Access Doorways
Section 1009 – Accessible Means of Egress
Section 1010 – Doors, Gates and Turnstiles
Section 1011 – Stairways
Section 1012 – Ramps
Section 1020 – Corridors

Section 1028 – Exit Discharge
Chapter 11 Accessibility
Section 1101 – General
Section 1106 – Parking and Passenger Loading Facilities
Section 1107 – Dwelling Units and Sleeping Units
Chapter 12 Interior Environment
Section 1203 – Ventilation
Section 1204 – Temperature Control
Section 1208 – Interior Space Dimensions
Chapter 14 Exterior Walls
Section 1403 – Performance Requirements
Chapter 16 Structural Design
Table 1607.1 – Minimum Uniformly Distributed Live Loads
Chapter 17 Structural Tests and Special Inspections
Section 1702 – Definitions
Section 1709 – Preconstruction Load Tests
Chapter 21 Masonry
Section 2107 – Allowable Stress Design
Section 2111 – Masonry Fireplaces
Section 2114 – Emission Standards
Chapter 24 Glass and Glazing
Section 2405 – Sloped Glazing and Skylights
Section 2407 – Glass in Handrails and Guards
Chapter 26 Plastic
Section 2603 – Foam Plastic Insulation
Chapter 29 Minimum Plumbing Fixtures and Sanitation Facilities
Section 2901 – General
Section 2902 – Minimum Plumbing Facilities
Chapter 30 Elevators and Conveying Systems
Section 3002 – Hoistway Enclosures
Section 3005 – Machine Rooms
Section 3009 – Hoistway Venting
Chapter 31 Special Construction
Section 3103 – Temporary Structures
Section 3109 – Swimming Pool Enclosures and Safety Devices
Appendix N Solar Readiness
Section N101 – General

WAC 51-50-001 AUTHORITY

These rules are adopted under the authority of Chapter 19.27 RCW.

WAC 51-50-002 PURPOSE

The purpose of these rules is to implement the provisions of Chapter 19.27 RCW, which provides that the State Building Code Council shall maintain the State Building Code in a status which is consistent with the purpose as set forth in RCW 19.27.020. In maintaining the codes the Council shall regularly review updated versions of the codes adopted under the act, and other pertinent information, and shall amend the codes as deemed appropriate by the Council.

WAC 51-50-003 INTERNATIONAL BUILDING CODE

The 2015 edition of the International Building Code, including Appendix E, published by the International Code Council is hereby adopted by reference with the exceptions

noted in this chapter of the Washington Administrative Code.

WAC 51-50-005 INTERNATIONAL BUILDING CODE REQUIREMENTS FOR BARRIER-FREE ACCESSIBILITY

Chapter 11 and other International Building Code requirements for barrier-free access, including ICC A117.12009 and Appendix E, are adopted pursuant to Chapters 70.92 and 19.27 RCW. Pursuant to RCW 19.27.040, Chapter 11 and requirements affecting barrier-free access shall not be amended by local governments.

WAC 51-50-007 EXCEPTIONS

The exceptions and amendments to the International Building Code contained in the provisions of Chapter 19.27 RCW shall apply in case of conflict with any of the provisions of these rules.

The provisions of this code do not apply to temporary growing structures used solely for the commercial production of horticultural plants including ornamental plants, flowers, vegetables, and fruits. “Temporary growing structure” means a structure that has the sides and roof covered with polyethylene, polyvinyl, or similar flexible synthetic material and is used to provide plants with either frost protection or increased heat retention. A temporary growing structure is not considered a building for purposes of this code.

The provisions of this code do not apply to the construction, alteration, or repair of temporary worker housing except as provided by rule adopted under chapter 70.114A RCW or chapter 37, Laws of 1998 (SB 6168).
"Temporary worker housing" means a place, area, or piece of land where sleeping places or housing sites are provided by an employer for his or her employees or by another person, including a temporary worker housing operator, who is providing such accommodations for employees, for temporary, seasonal occupancy, and includes "labor camps" under RCW 70.54.110.

Codes referenced which are not adopted through RCW 19.27.031 or RCW 19.27A shall not apply unless specifically adopted by the authority having jurisdiction.

The 2015 International Existing Buildings Code is included in the adoption of this code in Section 101.4.7 and amended in WAC 51-50-480000.

WAC 51-50-008 IMPLEMENTATION

The International Building Code adopted under Chapter 51-50 WAC shall become effective in all counties and cities of this state on July 1, 2016.

WAC 51-50-009 RECYCLABLE MATERIALS, COMPOST, AND SOLID WASTE STORAGE

For the purposes of this section, the following definition shall apply:
COMPOST means biodegradable solid wastes that are separated for composting such as food waste, food soiled paper and yard waste.
RECYCLED MATERIALS means those solid wastes that are separated for recycling or reuse, such as papers, metals and glass.

All local jurisdictions shall require that space be provided for the storage of recycled materials, compost, and solid waste for all new buildings

Exceptions: Group R-3 and Group U occupancies.

The storage area shall be designed to meet the needs of the occupancy, efficiency of pickup, and shall be available to occupants and haulers.

City of Bellevue List Of Amendments

BCC Sections:

23.05.010	Purpose
23.05.020	Scope
23.05.030	Exemption from state notice requirements
23.05.040	Applicability
23.05.050	Existing structures
23.05.060	Definitions
23.05.070	Authority
23.05.080	Duties and powers of building official
23.05.090	Permits required
23.05.100	Permit Issuance
23.05.105	Construction documents
23.05.110	Temporary structures and uses
23.05.120	Fees
23.05.130	Inspections
23.05.140	Certificate of occupancy
23.05.150	Service utilities
23.05.160	Hearing examiner
23.05.170	Violations
23.05.180	Stop work orders
23.05.190	Unsafe structures and equipment

23.10.010	Amendments and adoptions.
23.10.015	Amendments, additions, or exceptions to the 2015 IBC.
23.10.202	IBC Section 202 amended – Definitions. High-rise building.
23.10.202	IBC 202 amended – Definitions. Standby power system.
23.10.202	IBC 202 added – Definitions. Water supply.
23.10.302.1	IBC 02.1 amended - General.
23.10.403.2.1.1	IBC 403.2.1.1 amended – Type of construction.
23.10.403.3	IBC 403.3 amended – Automatic sprinkler system.
23.10.403.3.1	IBC 403.3.1 amended – Number of sprinkler risers and system design.
23.10.403.3.2	IBC 403.3.2 amended – Water supply to required fire pumps.
23.10.403.3.3	IBC 403.3.3 amended – Secondary water supply.
23.10.403.4.8	IBC 403.4.8 amended – Standby and emergency power.
23.10.403.5	IBC 403.5 amended – Means of egress and evacuation.
23.10.403.7	IBC 403.7 added – Smoke control.
23.10.405.1	IBC 405.1 amended –General.
23.10.424.1	IBC 424.1 amended – Children's play structures.
23.10.503.1	IBC 503.1 amended – General.
23.10.708.6	IBC 708.6 amended – Openings.
23.10.903.2	IBC 903.2 amended – All occupancies.
23.10.903.3.1	IBC 903.3.1 amended – Standards.
23.10.903.3.1.1.1	IBC 903.3.1.1.1 amended – Exempt locations.
23.10.903.3.1.1.3	IBC 903.3.1.1.3 added – Seismic coefficient.
23.10.903.3.1.2	IBC 903.3.1.2 amended – NFPA 13R sprinkler systems.
23.10.903.3.3	IBC 903.3.3 amended – Obstructed locations.
23.10.903.4.3	IBC 903.4.3 amended – Floor control valves.
23.10.903.5	IBC 903.5 amended – Testing and maintenance.
23.10.905.3	IBC 905.3 amended – Required installations.
23.10.905.3.1	IBC 905.3.1 amended – Height.
23.10.905.3.9	IBC 905.3.9 added – High-rise building standpipes.

23.10.905.3.10	IBC 905.3.10 added – Vertical Standpipes served by fire pumps.
23.10.905.4	IBC 905.4 amended – Location of Class I standpipe hose connections.
23.10.905.8	IBC 905.8 amended – Dry standpipes.
23.10.907.1	IBC 907.1 amended – General.
23.10.907.1.2	IBC 907.1.2 amended – Fire alarm shop drawings.
23.10.907.2.7.1	IBC 907.2.7.1 deleted – Occupant notification.
23.10.907.2.13.1.1	IBC 907.2.13.1.1 amended – Area smoke detection.
23.10.907.2.13.2	IBC 907.2.13.2 amended – Fire department communication system.
23.10.907.2.18.1	IBC 907.2.18.1 amended – Smoke detectors.
23.10.907.5	IBC 907.5 amended – Occupant notification system.
23.10.907.5.2.1.1	IBC 907.5.2.1.1 amended – Average sound pressure.
23.10.907.5.2.2	IBC 907.5.2.2 amended – Emergency voice/alarm communication systems.
23.10.907.5.2.3	IBC 907.5.2.3 amended – Visible alarms.
23.10.907.6.3.1	IBC 907.6.3.1 amended – Annunciator panel.
23.10.907.6.4.1	IBC 907.6.4.1 amended – Graphic annunciator.
23.10.909.1	IBC 909.1 amended – Scope and purpose.
23.10.909.4.6	IBC 909.4.6 amended – Duration of operation.
23.10.909.10.2	IBC 909.10.2 amended – Ducts, including shafts acting as ducts.
23.10.909.10.3	IBC 909.10.3 amended – Equipment, inlets and outlets.
23.10.909.11	IBC 909.11 amended – Emergency power.
23.10.909.12.1	IBC 909.12.1 amended – Verification.
23.10.909.17	IBC 909.17 amended – System response time.
23.10.909.18.8.3.2	IBC 909.18.3.3.2 added– Certificate of compliance.
23.10.909.20	IBC 909.20 amended – Smokeproof enclosures.
23.10.909.20.6.3	IBC 909.20.6.3 amended – Acceptance and testing.
23.10.909.21.3	IBC 909.21.3 amended – Ducts for system.
23.10.909.21.4.4	IBC 909.21.4.4 amended – Fan capacity.
23.10.911.1.2	IBC 911.2 amended – Separation and penetrations.
23.10.912.5	IBC 912.5 amended – Signs.
23.10.913.2	IBC 913.2 amended – Protection against interruption of service.
23.10.917	IBC 917 Added – Firefighter Air Systems
23.10.1008.3.4	IBC 1008.3.4 amended – Duration.
23.10.1011.12.2	IBC 1011.12.2 amended – Roof access.
23.10.1011.7	IBC 1011.7 amended – Stairway construction.
23.10.1612.3	IBC 1612.3 amended – Establishment of flood hazard areas.
23.10.1612.4	IBC 1612.4 amended – Design and construction.
23.10.1613.1	IBC 1613.1 amended – Scope.
23.10.1705.17	IBC 1705.17 deleted – Fire-resistant penetrations and joints.
23.10.2701	IBC 2701 amended – General.
23.10.2702	IBC 2702 amended – Emergency and standby power systems.
23.10.3007.1	IBC 3007.1 Amended – General.
23.10.3007.6.2	IBC 3007.6.2 Amended – Lobby enclosure.
23.10.3007.10	IBC 3007.10 Added – Phase I emergency recall operation.
23.10.3008.6.7	IBC 3008.6.7 added – Lobby status indicator.
23.10.3304.1	IBC 3304.1.5 added – Excavation and shoring near improved public places.
23.10.3306.1	IBC Table 3306.1 amended – Protection of pedestrians.
23.10.3306.2	IBC 3306.2 amended – Walkways.

23.10.010 Amendments and adoptions.
The following codes, all as amended, added to, or excepted in this chapter, together with all amendments and additions provided in this title, are adopted and shall be applicable within the city:

A. International Building Code.

1. Code Adoption. The 2015 Edition of the International Building Code published by the International Code Council, as adopted and amended by the State Building Code Council in Chapter 51-50 WAC, excluding Chapter 1, "Administration," is adopted, and shall be applicable within the city, as amended, added to and excepted in this chapter. Those sections of the 2015 Edition of the International Building Code that are not being adopted by the city (except Chapter 1 referenced above) are listed in consequential order with the city's local amendments. The 2015 International Swimming Pool and Spa Code published by the International Code Council, as adopted and amended in WAC 51-50-3109, shall be applicable within the city.

2. Scope. The provisions of the International Building Code as adopted, amended, added to, or excepted in this chapter shall apply to the construction, alteration, movement, enlargement, replacement, repair, equipment, use and occupancy, location, maintenance, removal, and demolition of every building or structure or any appurtenances connected or attached to such buildings or structures, except where such work is regulated by the 2015 International Existing Building Code.

   Exception: Detached one- and two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings (townhouses) not more than three stories above grade plane in height with a separate means of egress and their accessory structures shall comply with the International Residential Code.

B. International Energy Conservation Code.

1. Code Adoption. The International Energy Conservation Code, as provided in RCW 19.27A.020 and as adopted by the State Building Code Council in Chapter 51-11C WAC and Chapter 51-11R WAC, is adopted and shall be applicable within the city, as amended, added to, or excepted in this chapter.

C. Abatement of Dangerous Buildings Code.

1. Code Adoption. The 1997 Edition of the Uniform Code for the Abatement of Dangerous Buildings published by the International Council of Building Officials, except for Section 205 and Chapters 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9, is adopted and shall be applicable within the city, as amended, added to, or excepted in this chapter.

2. Scope. The 1997 Edition of the Uniform Code for the Abatement of Dangerous Buildings, as adopted, amended, added to, or excepted in this chapter, provides equitable remedies consistent with other laws for the repair, vacation or demolition of dangerous buildings.

D. Uniform Housing Code.

1. Code Adoption. The 1997 Edition of the Uniform Housing Code as published by the International Conference of Building Officials, except Sections 104, 201.1, 201.2, 203, 302, and Chapters 12, 13, 14, 15 and 16, is adopted and shall be

applicable within the city, as amended, added to, or excepted in this chapter.

2. Scope. The 1997 Edition of the Uniform Housing Code, as adopted, amended, added to, or excepted in this chapter, provides requirements affecting conservation and rehabilitation of housing.

E. Adoption by Reference. All codes, standards, rules and regulations adopted by this section are adopted by reference thereto and by this reference fully incorporated herein. Not less than one copy of each code, standard, rule or regulation, in the form in which it was adopted, shall be filed in the city clerk's office and be available for use and examination by the public.

23.10.015 Amendments, additions, or exceptions to the 2015 International Building Code.

Pursuant to RCW 19.27.060, the following contains amendments, additions, or exceptions to the International Building Code applicable and enforceable within the city.

CHAPTER 1
SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

REPLACED ENTIRELY BY COB AMENDMENT

ICC CHAPTER 1 LEFT IN GREY FOR REFERENCE ONLY

23.05.010 Purpose.

The purpose of this chapter is to provide for the administration, organization and enforcement of the technical codes adopted by the city. The purpose of the technical codes is to establish minimum requirements to safeguard the public health, safety and general welfare through structural strength, means of egress facilities, stability, sanitation, adequate light and ventilation, energy conservation, and safety to life and property from fire and other hazards attributed to the built environment and to provide safety to firefighters and emergency responders during emergency operations. (Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.020 Scope.

This chapter establishes the administrative, organizational and enforcement rules and regulations for the technical codes which regulate site preparation and construction, alteration, moving, demolition, repair, use and occupancy of buildings, structures and building service equipment within the corporate limits of the city. (Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.030 Exemption from state notice requirements.

Project permit applications pursuant to the technical codes are exempt from the requirements of RCW 36.70B.110 and 36.70B.130 and any local provisions implementing those sections, except when an applicant has chosen to include technical permits, e.g., building, mechanical, or plumbing permits, in a consolidated permit review process pursuant to the provisions of RCW 36.70B.120. (Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.040 Applicability.

A. General. This chapter applies to the administration of the technical codes, as adopted by the city in other chapters of this title. Provisions in the appendices of the technical codes shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

B. Conflicting Provisions.

1. Where there is a conflict between the provisions or requirements of this chapter, or the technical codes, and other codes or laws, this chapter, or the technical codes as the case may be, shall govern.
2. Where conflicts occur between the technical codes, those provisions providing the greater safety to life shall govern or, if life safety is not at issue, the more restrictive provision shall govern.
3. Where, in any specific case, different sections of the technical codes specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the hierarchy of the codes named in RCW 19.27.031, now or as hereafter amended, shall govern. In the event that the conflict is between provisions for which such hierarchy of codes is not determinative, the most restrictive provision shall govern. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall govern.
4. Where enforcement of a code provision would violate the conditions of the listing of the

equipment or appliance, the conditions of the listing and manufacturer's instructions shall apply.

C. Other Laws. The provisions of this chapter and the technical codes shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

D. Adoption by Reference. Where state laws or regulations or other city ordinances or code provisions are adopted by reference in this chapter or the technical codes, such reference shall be deemed to be to the law, regulation, ordinance or provision as subsequently amended after the date of adoption of this chapter, unless specifically provided otherwise.

E. Codes referenced within the technical codes adopted by the city shall not apply unless specifically adopted by the city in other chapters of this title. References to codes not adopted by the city shall be deemed to refer to the most applicable provision of codes or standards adopted by the city, as determined by the building official. (Ord. 5937 § 2, 2010; Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.050 Existing structures.

A. Compliance with Technical Codes. Buildings, structures and their building service equipment to which additions, alterations or repairs are made shall comply with all the requirements of the technical codes for new facilities, except as specifically provided in this section.

B. Additions, Alterations or Repairs.

1. Additions, alterations or repairs may be made to a building, structure, or its building service equipment without requiring the existing building, structure, or its building service equipment to comply with all the requirements of the technical codes, provided the addition, alteration or repair conforms to the requirements of the technical codes for a new building, structure, or new building service equipment. Additions, alterations or repairs shall not be made to an existing building, structure, or building service equipment which will cause the existing building, structure, or building service equipment to be in violation of the provisions of the technical codes, nor shall such additions, alterations or repairs cause the existing building, structure, or building service equipment to become unsafe.

2. Building service equipment which was lawful under the technical codes current at the time such equipment was installed may be used, maintained or repaired if the use, maintenance or repair is in accordance with the original design and a hazard to life, health or property has not been created by such building service equipment.

C. Existing Occupancy. The legal occupancy of any structure existing on the date of adoption of this chapter and the technical codes shall be permitted to continue without change, except as is specifically covered in this chapter and the technical codes, the International Fire Code, or if continued use poses a danger to life, health and safety of the occupants and the public, as is determined by the building official or fire official.

D. Change in Use. No change will be made in the character of occupancies or use of any building that would place the building in a different division of the same group or occupancy or in a different group of occupancies, unless such building is made to comply with the requirements of this chapter and the technical codes for such division or group of occupancy.

Exception: The character of the occupancy of existing buildings may be changed

subject to the approval of the building official, and the building may be occupied for purposes in other groups without conforming to all the requirements of this chapter and the technical codes for those groups, provided the new or proposed use is less hazardous, based on life and fire risk, than the existing use.

No change in the character of occupancy of a building shall be made without a certificate of occupancy, as required in BCC 23.05.140. The building official may issue a certificate of occupancy pursuant to the intent of the above exception without certifying that the building complies with all provisions of this code.

E. Moved Buildings or Structures.

1. Buildings or structures intended to be relocated within or into the city must be inspected by the code official for compliance with the codes and standards adopted in this chapter prior to being relocated or moved. The owner of the building or structure must obtain a building permit and further must agree to correct all deficiencies identified by the inspection prior to moving the building. All deficiencies must be corrected before electric power is connected to the building.

2. Nonresidential buildings or structures moved into the jurisdiction must be inspected to ensure compliance with current requirements of this code.

3. Residential buildings or structures wired in the U.S., to NEC requirements, and moved into the jurisdiction must be inspected to ensure compliance with the NEC requirements in effect at the time and place the original wiring was made. The building or structure must be inspected to ensure compliance with all current requirements of Chapter 19.28 RCW and the rules developed by the department if:

   a. The original occupancy classification of the building or structure is changed as a result of the move; or

   b. The building or structure has been substantially remodeled or rehabilitated as a result of the move.

4. Residential buildings or structures wired in Canada to Canadian Electrical Code (CEC) standards and moved into the jurisdiction must be inspected to ensure compliance with the following minimum safety requirements:

   a. Service, service grounding, and service bonding must comply with this code.

   b. Canadian Standards Association (CSA) listed Type NMD cable is allowed with the following qualifications:
      i. CSA listed Type NMD cable, American wire gauge No. 10 and smaller installed after 1964 utilizing an equipment grounding conductor smaller than the phase conductors, must be:
         (a) Replaced with a cable utilizing a full-size equipment grounding conductor; or
         (b) Protected by a ground fault circuit interrupter protection device.
      ii. CSA listed Type NMD cable, No. 8 AWG and larger, must:
         (a) Utilize an equipment grounding conductor sized according to the requirements of the NEC in effect at the time of the installation;
         (b) Be protected by a ground fault circuit interrupter protection device; or

(c) Be replaced.

c. Other types of wiring and cable must be:
   i. Replaced with wiring listed or field evaluated in accordance with U.S. standards by a laboratory approved by the department; or
   ii. Protected by a ground fault circuit interrupter protection device and arc fault circuit protection device.

d. Equipment, other than wiring or panelboards, manufactured and installed prior to 1997 must be listed and identified by laboratory labels approved by the department or CSA labels.

e. All panelboards must be listed and identified by testing laboratory labels approved by the department with the following qualifications:
   i. CSA listed panelboards labelled “Suitable for Use as Service Equipment” will be considered to be approved as suitable for use only as service equipment.
   ii. CSA listed panelboards must be limited to a maximum of 42 circuits.
   iii. CSA listed panelboards used as lighting and appliance panelboards, as described in the NEC, must meet all current requirements of the NEC and this chapter.

f. Any wiring or panelboards replaced or changed as a result of the move must meet current requirements of Chapter 19.28 RCW and this chapter.

g. The location, type, and ground fault circuit interrupter protection of receptacles and equipment in a bathroom, kitchen, basement, garage, or outdoor area must meet the Washington requirements in effect at the time the wiring was installed.

h. Four 15-ampere kitchen small appliance circuits will be accepted in lieu of two 20-ampere kitchen small appliance circuits. Receptacles will not be required to be added on kitchen peninsular or island counters.

i. Spacing requirements for all other receptacles must meet the Washington requirements in effect at the time the wiring was installed.

j. Receptacles installed above baseboard or fixed wall space heaters must be removed and the outlet box covered with a blank cover. The receptacle is required to be relocated as closely as possible to the existing location.

k. Lighting outlet and switch locations must meet the Washington requirements in effect at the time the wiring was installed.

l. Dedicated 20-ampere small appliance circuits are not required in dining rooms.

m. Electric water heater branch circuits must be adequate for the load.

n. The location, type, and circuit protection of feeders must meet the Washington State requirements in effect at the time the wiring was installed. (Ord. 5937 § 3, 2010; Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.060 Definitions.

For the purpose of this chapter, certain terms, phrases, words and their derivatives shall have the meanings set forth in this section. Where terms are not defined, they shall have their ordinarily accepted meanings within the context with which they are used. Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language, Unabridged, copyright 1986, shall be considered as providing ordinarily accepted meanings. Words used in the singular include the plural and the plural the singular. Words used in the masculine gender include the feminine and the feminine the masculine.

"Addition" means an extension or increase in floor area or height of a building or structure.

"Alter" or "alteration" means a change or modification of a building, structure or building service equipment.

"Approved," as to materials, types of construction, equipment and systems, means and refers to approval by the building official as the result of investigation and tests conducted by the building official, or by reason of accepted principles or tests by recognized authorities, technical or scientific organizations.

"Approved agency" means an established and recognized agency regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, when the agency has been approved by the building official.

"Building" means a structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering a use or occupancy.

"Building code" means the International Building Code and/or the International Residential Code, as applicable, promulgated by the International Code Council, as adopted by the city in Chapter 23.10 BCC.

Building, Existing. "Existing building" means a building erected prior to the adoption of this code, or one for which a legal building permit has been issued.

"Building official" means the officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this chapter and the technical codes, or a regularly authorized deputy thereof.

"Building permit applications" means an application for a permit required pursuant to Chapter 23.10 BCC.

"Building service equipment" means and refers to the plumbing, mechanical and electrical equipment including piping, wiring, fixtures and other accessories which provide sanitation, lighting, heating, ventilation, cooling, refrigeration, firefighting and transportation facilities essential to the occupancy of the building or structure for its designated use.

"Complete response" means an adequate response to all requests from city staff in sufficient detail to allow the application to be processed.

"Construction documents" means plans, specifications, computations and other data required to be submitted for any application required by this chapter or the technical codes.

“Dangerous buildings code” means the Uniform Code for the Abatement of Dangerous Buildings promulgated by the International Conference of Building Officials, as adopted by the city in Chapter 23.10 BCC.

“Department” means the development services department unless otherwise specified.

“Director” means the director of the development services department unless otherwise specified.

“Electrical code” means the National Electrical Code promulgated by the National Fire Protection Association, as adopted by the city in Chapter 23.30 BCC.

“Energy code” means the Washington State Energy Code promulgated by the Washington State Building Code Council, as adopted by the city in Chapter 23.10 BCC.

“Housing code” means the Uniform Housing Code promulgated by the International Conference of Building Officials, as adopted by the city in Chapter 23.10 BCC.

“International Fire Code” means the International Fire Code promulgated by the International Code Council, as adopted by the city in Chapter 23.11 BCC.

“Listed” and “listing” are terms referring to equipment or materials included in a list by an approved testing laboratory, inspection agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of current production of listed equipment or materials. The published list shall state that the material or equipment complies with approved nationally recognized codes, standards or tests and has been tested or evaluated and found suitable for use in a specified manner.

“Mechanical code” means the International Mechanical Code promulgated by the International Code Council as adopted by the city in Chapter 23.50 BCC.

“Occupancy” means the purpose for which a building, or part thereof, is used or intended to be used.

“Owner” means any person, agent, firm or corporation having a legal or equitable interest in the property.

“Permit” means an official document or certificate issued by the building official authorizing performance or a specified activity.

“Person” means a natural person, heirs, executors, administrators or assigns, and also includes a firm, partnership or corporation, its or their successors or assigns, or the agent of any of the aforesaid.

“Plumbing code” means the Uniform Plumbing Code promulgated by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, as adopted by the city in Chapter 23.60 BCC.

“Protective parking devices” means those devices regulated by Chapter 23.18 BCC.

"Repair" means the reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing building, structure or building service equipment for the purpose of its maintenance.

"Shall," as used in this chapter, is mandatory.

"Structure" means that which is built or constructed, an edifice or building of any kind, or any piece of work artificially built up or composed of parts joined together in some definite manner.

"Structural observation" means the visual observation of the structural system, for general conformance to the approved plans and specifications, at significant construction stages and at completion of the structural system. Structural observation does not include or waive the responsibility for the inspections required by the technical codes.

"Technical codes" means and refers to all codes adopted pursuant to Chapters 23.10, 23.30, 23.50 and 23.60 BCC; Protective Parking Devices, Chapter 23.18 BCC; and Posting notice of construction hours, BCC 9.18.044.

"Valuation" or "value," as applied to a building and its building service equipment, means and shall be the estimated cost to replace the building and its building service equipment in kind, based on current replacement costs.

"Ventilation code" means the Washington State Ventilation and Indoor Air Quality Code promulgated by the Washington State Building Code Council, as adopted by the city under Chapter 23.10 BCC. (Ord. 5821 §§ 21, 22, 2008; Ord. 5572 § 1, 2004; Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.070 Authority.

A. Enforcement Agency. The development services department shall be responsible for enforcement of the technical codes under the administrative and operational control of the building official, who shall be appointed by the director.

B. General. Whenever the term or title "administrative authority," "responsible official," "building official," "chief inspector," "code enforcement officer" or other similar designation is used in this chapter or in any of the technical codes, it shall be construed to mean the building official designated by the director.

C. Deputies. In accordance with the prescribed procedures of the city and with the concurrence of the director, the building official shall have the authority to appoint a deputy building official, related technical officers, inspectors, plan examiners and other employees. Such employees shall have powers as delegated by the building official. (Ord. 5821 § 23, 2008; Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.080 Duties and powers of building official.

In addition to the duties and powers set forth in other sections of this chapter and the technical codes, the building official shall have the following duties and powers:

A. General. The building official is hereby authorized and directed to enforce the provisions of this chapter and the technical codes. The building official shall have the authority to render

interpretations of this chapter and the technical codes and to adopt policies and procedures supplemental to this chapter and the technical codes as deemed necessary in order to clarify the application of their provisions. Such interpretations, policies and procedures shall be in compliance with the intent and purpose of this chapter and the technical codes.

1. The building official is hereby authorized to develop a policy regarding application and exemption of construction codes for temporary homeless shelters in accordance with WAC 51-16-030 ***Exemptions for indigent housing guidelines***, now or as hereafter amended.

B. Applications and Permits. The building official shall receive applications, review construction documents and issue permits for the erection, alteration, demolition and moving of buildings, structures and building service equipment, inspect the premises for which such permits have been issued and enforce compliance with the provisions of this chapter and the technical codes.

C. Notices and Orders. The building official shall issue all necessary notices or orders to ensure compliance with this chapter and the technical codes.

D. Inspections. The building official shall make all of the required inspections, or the building official shall have the authority to accept reports of inspection by approved agencies or individuals. Reports of such inspections shall be in writing and be certified by a responsible officer of such approved agency or by the responsible individual. The building official is authorized to engage such expert opinion as deemed necessary to report upon unusual technical issues that arise at the applicant's expense.

E. Identification. The building official shall carry proper identification when inspecting structures or premises in the performance of duties under this chapter and the technical codes.

F. Right of Entry. Where it is necessary to make an inspection to enforce the provisions of this chapter and the technical codes, or where the building official has reasonable cause to believe that there exists in a structure or upon a premises a condition which is contrary to or in violation of this chapter and the technical codes which makes the structure or premises unsafe, dangerous or hazardous, the building official is authorized to enter the structure or premises at reasonable times to inspect or to perform the duties imposed by this chapter and the technical codes; provided, that if such structure or premises be occupied that credentials be presented to the occupant and entry requested. If such structure or premises is unoccupied, the building official shall first make a reasonable effort to locate the owner or other person having charge or control of the structure or premises and request entry. If entry is refused, the building official shall have recourse to the remedies provided by law to secure entry.

G. Liability. The building official charged with the enforcement of this chapter and the technical codes, acting in good faith and without malice in the discharge of his duties, shall not thereby be rendered personally liable for damage that may accrue to persons or property as a result of an act or omission in the discharge of the assigned duties.

H. Approved Materials and Equipment. Materials, equipment and devices approved by the building official shall be constructed and installed in accordance with such approval.

I. Used Materials and Equipment. The use of used materials and building service equipment is permitted when approved by the building official.

J. Modifications. Wherever there are practical difficulties involved in carrying out the provisions of this chapter and the technical codes, the building official shall have the authority to grant modifications for individual cases, upon application of the owner or owner's representative, provided the building official shall first find that special individual reason makes the strict letter of this chapter and the technical codes impractical and the modification is in compliance with the intent and purpose of this chapter and the technical codes and that such modification does not lessen health, accessibility, life and fire safety, or structural requirements. The details of action granting modifications shall be recorded and entered in the files of the department. The building official is authorized to charge an additional fee to evaluate any proposed modification under the provisions of this section.

K. Alternative Materials, Design and Methods of Construction and Equipment. The provisions of this chapter and the technical codes are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this chapter and the technical codes; provided, that any such alternative has been approved. An alternative material, design or method of construction may be approved where the building official finds that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of this chapter and the technical codes, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, at least the equivalent of that prescribed in the technical codes in quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety. The building official is authorized to charge an additional fee to evaluate any proposed alternate under the provisions of this section.

L. Research Reports. Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of materials or assemblies not specifically provided for in technical codes, shall consist of valid research reports from approved sources.

M. Tests. Whenever there is insufficient evidence of compliance with the provisions of this chapter and the technical codes, or evidence that a material or method does not conform to the requirements of the technical codes, or in order to substantiate claims for alternative materials or methods, the building official shall have the authority to require tests as evidence of compliance to be made at no expense to the city. Test methods shall be as specified in technical codes or by other recognized test standards. In the absence of recognized and accepted test methods, the building official shall approve the testing procedures. Tests shall be performed by an approved agency. Reports of such tests shall be retained by the building official for the period required for retention of public records. (Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.090 Permits required.

A. Technical Codes Other Than the Electrical Code – Required. Any person who intends to construct, enlarge, alter, repair, move, demolish, or change the occupancy of a building or structure, or to erect, install, enlarge, alter, repair, remove, convert or replace any electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system, the installation of which is regulated by this chapter and the technical codes, or to cause any such work to be done, shall first make application to the building official and obtain the required permit.

B. Technical Codes Other Than the Electrical Code – Work Exempt from Permit. Certain work is exempt from the permit requirements of this chapter and the technical codes. Exemptions from permit requirements of this chapter and the technical codes shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in any manner in violation of the provisions of this chapter, the technical codes or any other laws or ordinances of the city. An exemption from the permit requirements of one technical code does not exempt work from the permit requirements of other technical codes or other laws or ordinances of the city. Permits shall not be required for the following:

1. Emergency Repairs. Where equipment replacements and equipment repairs must be performed in an emergency situation posing a significant and immediate risk to life and safety, or a significant and immediate risk of loss to property, the permit application shall be submitted within the next working business day to the building official.

2. Repairs. Application or notice to the building official is not required for ordinary repairs to structures. Such repairs shall not include the cutting away of any wall, partition or portion thereof, the removal or cutting of any structural beam or load-bearing support, or the removal or change of any required means of egress, or rearrangement of parts of a structure affecting the egress requirements; nor shall ordinary repairs include addition to, alteration of, replacement or relocation of any standpipe, water supply, sewer, drainage, drain leader, gas, soil, waste, vent or similar piping, electric wiring or mechanical or other work affecting public health or general safety.

3. The following work otherwise governed by Chapter 23.10 BCC:

a. One-story detached structures accessory to one-family or two-family residential (houses and duplexes), used as tool and storage sheds, tree-supported play structures, playhouses and similar uses, provided the floor area does not exceed 200 square feet (11.15 m2).

b. Fences not over eight feet (2,438 mm) high.

c. Oil derricks.

d. Retaining walls which are not over four feet (1,219 mm) in height measured from the bottom of the footing to the top of the wall, unless supporting a surcharge or impounding Class I, II or III-A liquids.

e. Water tanks supported directly on grade if the capacity does not exceed 5,000 gallons (18,925 L) and the ratio of height to diameter or width does not exceed two to one.

f. Sidewalks, decks and driveways not more than 30 inches (762 mm) above grade (or grade plane, as applicable) and not over any basement or story below and which are not part of an accessible route or means of egress.

g. Painting, papering, tiling, carpeting, cabinets, counter tops and similar finish work.

h. Temporary motion picture, television and theater stage sets and scenery.

i. Prefabricated swimming pools accessory to structures regulated by the IRC or

accessory to Group R-3 and Group U occupancies regulated by the IBC, which are less than 24 inches (610 mm) deep, do not exceed 5,000 gallons (18,925 L) and are installed entirely above ground.

j. Shade cloth structures constructed for nursery or agricultural purposes and not including service systems.

k. Swings, slides and other similar playground equipment.

l. Window awnings supported by an exterior wall which do not project more than 54 inches (1,372 mm) from the exterior wall and do not require additional support of structures regulated by the IRC or of Group R-3 and Group U occupancies regulated by the IBC.

m. Movable cases, counters and partitions not over five feet, nine inches (1,753 mm) in height.

n. Work primarily within public right-of-way.

o. ~~Public utility t~~Towers and poles owned by public utilities, including associated public and private equipment attached to such towers and poles. Note: Communication towers owned by private companies, and any equipment associated with such towers, are not exempt.

p. Replacement of nonstructural siding on IRC structures except for stucco, and brick or stone veneer greater than four feet above grade plane.

q. In-kind (same size) window replacement for structures where no alteration of structural members is required.

r. Single-story construction job shacks that are placed on a permitted job site during construction. Job shacks shall be removed upon final approval of construction, or may be required to be removed if the permit expires or is suspended or cancelled. A construction job shack is a portable structure for which the primary purpose is to house equipment and supplies, and which may serve as a temporary office during construction for the purposes of the construction activity.

s. Replacement of residential and commercial roofing.

t. Photovoltaic (PV) panels meeting all of the following criteria:
   i. PV system is designed and proposed for a detached single-family house.
   ii. PV system is designed for the rooftop of a house in compliance with applicable codes.
   iii. The mounting system is engineered and designed for PV.
   iv. The rooftop is made from lightweight material such as shingles.
   v. PV system has an approved and issued electrical permit.
   vi. To address uplift, panels are mounted no higher than 18 inches above the surface of the roofing to which they are affixed, and except for flat roofs, no portion of the system may exceed the highest point of the roof.

vii. Total dead load of panels, supports, mountings, raceways and all other appurtenances weigh no more than:
(a) Three and one-half (3.5) pounds per square foot (PSF); or
(b) Four and one-half (4.5) pounds per square foot for frameless panels on a roof with a slope of at least three (3) vertical in twelve (12) horizontal; or
(c) Five pounds (5) per square foot for frameless panels on a roof with a slope of at least five (5) vertical in twelve (12) horizontal.

viii. Supports for solar panels are installed to spread the dead load across as many roof-framing members as needed to ensure that at no point are loads caused in excess of fifty (50) pounds.

ix. Attachment to the roof is specified by the mounting system manufacturer.

x. A method and type of weatherproofing roof penetrations are provided.

xi. The house is code compliant with setbacks and height, or the code allows expansion of nonconformity for solar panels.

xii. The PV panels are mounted no higher than the roof ridge or apex of roof (applies only to sloped roofs).

u. Flag and light poles located on private property less than or equal to 20 feet in height, but not exempting permit requirement for any electrical work.

4. The following work otherwise governed by Chapter 23.50 BCC:

a. Portable heating or cooking appliances.

b. Portable ventilation equipment.

c. Portable cooling unit.

d. Steam, hot or chilled water piping within any heating or cooling equipment regulated by this chapter and the technical codes.

e. The replacement of any minor part that does not alter the approval of equipment or an appliance or make such equipment or appliance unsafe.

f. Portable evaporative cooler.

g. Self-contained refrigeration system containing 10 pounds (4.54 kg) or less of refrigerant and actuated by motors of one horsepower (746 W) or less.

h. Portable fuel cell appliances that are not connected to a fixed piping system and are not interconnected.

5. The following work otherwise governed by Chapter 23.60 BCC:

a. The stopping and/or repairing of leaks in drains, water, soil, waste or vent pipe; provided, however, that should any concealed trap, drain pipe, water, soil, waste or vent pipe become defective and it becomes necessary to remove and replace the same with new material, the same shall be considered as new work and a permit shall be procured and inspection made as provided in this chapter and the technical codes.

b. The clearing of stoppages.

c. Reinstallation or replacement of fixtures and/or valves that have accessible connections to rough-in plumbing, except that replacement of a water heater in any building or use, and reinstallation or replacement of any fixture or valve within a commercial kitchen, does require a plumbing permit.

C. The Electrical Code – Required. In accordance with Chapter 19.28 RCW, an electrical permit is required for the following installations:

1. The installation, alteration, repair, replacement, modification or maintenance of all electrical systems, wire and electrical equipment regardless of voltage.

2. The installation and/or alteration of low voltage systems defined as:
   a. NEC, Class 1 power limited circuits at 30 volts maximum.

   b. NEC, Class 2 circuits powered by a Class 2 power supply as defined in NEC 725.41(A).

   c. NEC, Class 3 circuits powered by a Class 3 power supply as defined in NEC 725.41(A).

3. Telecommunications Systems.
   a. All installations of telecommunications systems on the customer side of the network demarcation point for projects greater than 10 telecommunications outlets.

   b. All backbone installations regardless of size and all telecommunications cable or equipment installations involving penetrations of fire barriers or passing through hazardous locations require permits and inspections.

   c. The installation of greater than 10 outlets and the associated cables along any horizontal pathway from a telecommunications closet to work areas during any continuous 90-day period requires a permit and inspection.

   d. In R1 and R2 occupancies as defined in the building code, permits and inspections are required for all backbone installations, all penetrations of fire resistive walls, ceilings and floors; and installations of greater than 10 outlets in common areas.

   e. Definitions of telecommunications technical terms will come from Chapter 19.28 RCW, the currently adopted WAC rules, EIA/TIA standards, and the National Electrical Code.

D. The Electrical Code – Work Exempt from Permit. Certain work is exempt from the permit requirements of this chapter and the electrical code. Exemptions from permit requirements of this chapter and the electrical code shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in any manner in violation of the provisions of this chapter, the technical codes or any other laws or ordinances of the city. An exemption from the permit requirements of one technical code does not exempt work from the permit requirements of other technical codes or other laws or ordinances of the city. Permits shall not be required for the following:

1. Emergency Repairs. Where equipment replacements and equipment repairs must be performed in an emergency situation posing a significant and immediate risk to life and safety, or a significant and immediate risk of loss to property, the permit application shall be submitted within the next working business day to the building official.

2. An electrical permit shall not be required for the following:

a. Portable motors or other portable appliances energized by means of a cord or cable having an attachment plug end to be connected to an approved receptacle when that cord or cable is permitted by the National Electrical Code.

b. Repair or replacement of fixed motors, transformers or fixed approved appliances or devices rated 50 amperes or less which are like-in-kind in the same location.

c. Temporary decorative lighting, when used for a period not to exceed 45 days and removed at the conclusion of the 45-day period.

d. Repair or replacement of current-carrying parts of any switch, conductor or control device which are like-in-kind in the same location.

e. Repair or replacement of attachment plug(s) and associated receptacle(s) rated 50 amperes or less which are like-in-kind in the same location.

f. Repair or replacement of any over current device which is like-in-kind in the same location.

g. Repair or replacement of electrodes or transformers of the same size and capacity for signs or gas tube systems.

h. Removal of electrical wiring.

i. Telecommunications Systems.

i. Telecommunications outlet installations within the individual dwelling units of group R1 and R2 occupancies as defined by the building code;

ii. All telecommunications installations within R3 and R4 occupancies as defined in the building code;

iii. The installation or replacement of cord and plug connected telecommunications equipment or for patch cord and jumper cross-connected equipment.

j. Low voltage installation wiring that is not part of a fire/smoke alarm system, where installed within a structure regulated by the International Residential Code, provided the power is supplied by a listed Class 2 power supply.

k. The installation, alteration or repair of electrical wiring, apparatus or equipment for the generation, transmission, distribution or metering of electrical energy or in the operation of signals for the transmission of intelligence by a public or private utility in the exercise of its function as a serving utility.

l. Induction detection loops described in WAC 296-46B-300(2) and used to control gate access devices.

m. Heat cable repair.

n. Travel trailers.

o. Unless specifically noted, the exemptions listed do not include: the replacement of an equipment unit, assembly, or enclosure that contains an exempted component or combination of components (i.e., electrical furnace/heat pumps, industrial milling

machine, etc.).

E. **Application for Permit – General**. To obtain a permit, the applicant shall first file an application therefor in writing on a form furnished by the department for that purpose. Such application shall:

1. Identify and describe the work to be covered by the permit for which application is made.

2. Describe the land on which the proposed work is to be done by legal description, street address or similar description that will readily identify and definitely locate the proposed building or work.

3. Indicate the use and occupancy for which the proposed work is intended.

4. Be accompanied by construction documents and other information as required by the submittal requirements established by the city.

5. State the valuation of the proposed work.

6. Be signed by the applicant, or the applicant's authorized agent.

7. Give such other data and information as required by the building official.

F. Application for Permits Governed by Chapter 23.10 BCC – Other Filings Required.

1. At the time of filing a building permit application, the applicant shall submit all information required to be submitted, together with any application form and application fee therefor, for any of the following approvals which may be applicable to the proposed project:

   a. Design review, Land Use Code, Part 20.30F;

   b. Administrative conditional use permit, Land Use Code, Part 20.30E;

   c. Conditional use permit, shorelines conditional use permit, planned unit development, Land Use Code, Parts 20.30B, 20.30C and 20.30D;

   d. Variance or shorelines variance, Land Use Code, Parts 20.30G, 20.30H and shorelines substantial development permit, Land Use Code, Part 20.25E;

   e. Clearing and grading permit, Chapter 23.76 BCC.

2. No building permit application will be accepted for filing by the building official for any proposed project for which any of the approvals referred to in subsection (A) of this section is required unless the building permit application is accompanied by all information required to be filed for such required approvals.

3. The filing of a complete building permit application for a proposed project, which is in compliance with applicable state law and the codes, ordinances and regulations of the city in effect at the time of such filing, shall establish a vested right, if a building permit is issued, to proceed with construction of the proposed project in accordance with such then-existing codes, ordinances and regulations; provided, however, such proposed project

may nonetheless be conditioned or denied by the city under the State Environmental Policy Act. For the purpose of this subsection, a "complete building permit application" means an application which contains all information required to be submitted by any applicable provisions of this chapter and the technical codes, including, but not limited to, all information required to be submitted by subsection (A) of this section. A shoring permit, to protect the public right-of-way or adjacent private property, shall not establish vesting of the proposed project.

a. When approved by the building official, a phasing plan may be submitted for review, and if approved, the phasing plan shall thereby establish a schedule for vesting of the proposed project subject to submittal of the first complete building permit application identified in the phasing plan, excluding a shoring permit. The phasing plan is subject to the following limitations. After the first building permit application, each subsequent permit identified in the phasing plan shall be submitted with a complete building permit application within 12 months of the submittal of the prior permit, and the last permit application for the proposed project shall be submitted with a complete building permit application within 36 months of the first permit application which established vesting for the proposed project. The first permit application must be issued and must not expire per BCC 23.05.090(H) to maintain project vesting, and the issued permit must not expire due to not starting work within 1 year or suspending work for more than 180 days per BCC 23.05.100(E). The vested status for the project is retained beyond the 3-year maximum life of the first permit if all inspections required for the work under that permit have been completed and approved. The vested status will not apply to any permit application submitted more than 36 months after the first permit application which established vesting.

4. No application for design review, administrative conditional use permit, planning commission design review, planned unit development, conditional use permit, variance, shorelines variance, shorelines substantial development permit or a clearing and grading permit shall be accepted by the city for filing unless it is accompanied by a complete building permit application.

G. Applications for Permits Governed by Chapter 23.10 BCC – Optional Method of Obtaining Prior Approvals – Vested Rights.

1. Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection (F) of this section, an applicant may apply for a design review approval, an administrative conditional use permit, planned unit development approval, a conditional use permit, a shorelines conditional use permit, a variance, a shorelines variance, a shorelines substantial development permit or a clearing and grading permit prior to filing an application for a building permit, upon the following terms and conditions:

a. The filing of an application for any of the approvals referred to in this chapter, prior to the filing of a valid and complete application for a building permit, shall not establish or create a vested right to proceed with construction of any proposed project in accordance with the codes, ordinances or regulations existing at the time of the filing of such application or at any time thereafter prior to the filing of a valid and complete building permit application.

b. An applicant who elects to take advantage of the provisions of this section shall be deemed to have specifically acknowledged, by submitting the application for the approvals referred to in subsection (G)(1) of this section, that the acceptance and processing of such application shall in no way establish or create a vested right to proceed with construction of any proposed project in accordance with the codes, ordinances or regulations existing at the time of filing of such application, or at any time thereafter prior to the filing of a valid and complete building permit application, except as provided in Land Use Code Section 20.40.500.

2. An applicant who elects to take advantage of the provisions of this section may at any time elect to file a complete building permit application, notwithstanding that the approval applied for under this section has not previously been obtained.

H. Time Limitation of Application.[1]

1. Applications for which no permit is issued within one year following the date of application shall expire by limitation and plans and other data submitted for review may thereafter be returned to the applicant or destroyed in accordance with state law by the building official. The building official may, prior to expiration, extend the time for action by the applicant for a period not exceeding 180 days.

2. Applications may be canceled for inactivity if an applicant fails to respond to the department's written request for revisions, corrections, actions or additional information within 90 days of the date of request. The building official may extend the response period beyond 90 days if, within the original 90-day time period, the applicant provides and subsequently adheres to an approved schedule with specific target dates for submitting the full revisions, corrections or other information needed by the department.

3. In addition to the extension allowed in subsection (H)(1) of this section, the building official may extend the life of an application if any of the following conditions exist:

a. Compliance with the State Environmental Policy Act is in progress; or

b. Any other city review is in progress; provided the applicant has submitted a complete response to city requests or the building official determines that unique or unusual circumstances exist that warrant additional time for such response, and the building official determines that the review is proceeding in a timely manner toward final city decision; or

c. Litigation against the city or the applicant is in progress, the outcome of which may affect the validity or the provisions of any permit issued pursuant to such application.

In no event may the building official extend the application for a period of more than 180 days following the conclusion of the applicable condition described in this subsection (H)(3). (Ord. 6113 § 2, 2013; Ord. 5951 § 1, 2010; Ord. 5937 § 4, 2010; Ord. 5572 § 2, 2004; Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.100 Permit issuance.

A. Issuance.

1. The application and construction documents filed by an applicant for permit shall be

reviewed by the building official. Such plans may be reviewed by other departments of the city to verify compliance with any applicable laws under their jurisdiction. If the building official finds that the work described in an application for a permit and the plans, specifications and other data filed therewith conform to the requirements of this chapter and the technical codes and other pertinent laws and ordinances, and that the fees specified in BCC 23.05.120 have been paid, and the applicant is the correct person to whom a permit may be issued as defined in this chapter, the building official shall issue a permit therefor to the applicant.

2. When a permit is issued when plans are required, the building official shall endorse in writing or stamp the plans and specifications "Approved." Approved construction documents shall not be changed, modified or altered without authorizations from the building official, and all work regulated by this chapter and the technical codes shall be done in accordance with the approved construction documents.

3. The building official may issue a permit for the construction of foundations or any other part of a building or structure or building service equipment before the construction documents for the whole building, structure or building service equipment have been submitted or approved, provided adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with all pertinent requirements of this chapter and the technical codes. The holder of such partial permit shall proceed at the holder's own risk with the building operation and without assurance that a permit for the entire building, structure or building service will be granted.

B. To Whom Permit Issued. Permits shall be issued only to a person, firm or corporation who demonstrates to the satisfaction of the building official that he/she is properly licensed, or exempt, as required by Chapter 18.27 RCW, or for electrical contractors, as required by Chapter 19.28 RCW, now or as hereafter amended, or to a person doing work at his/her own residence or place of business or other property owned by him/her; provided further, no such person, firm or corporation shall employ any unlicensed person, firm or corporation to perform the work authorized by the permit.

C. Retention of Plans. One set of approved construction documents shall be retained by the building official for the period required by law, and one set of approved construction documents shall be returned to the applicant and shall be kept on the site of the building or work at all times during which the work authorized thereby is in progress.

D. Validity of Permit. The issuance or granting of a permit shall not be construed to be a permit for, or an approval of, any violation of any of the provisions of this chapter or the technical codes or of any other ordinance of the city. Permits presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this chapter, the technical codes, or other ordinances of the city shall not be valid. The issuance of a permit based on construction documents and other data shall not prevent the building official from requiring the correction of errors in the construction documents and other data. The building official is also authorized to prevent occupancy or use of a structure which is in violation of this chapter, the technical codes, or of any other ordinances of the city.

E. Expiration of Permit.[2]

1. Every permit issued by the building official under the provisions of this chapter shall expire by limitation and become null and void if the building or work authorized by such permit is not commenced within one year from the date of such permit issuance, or if work authorized by the issued permit is suspended or abandoned for a period of 180 days or more after the work is commenced. The building official may extend single-family permits that have expired under this section for additional periods of up to 180 days at his sole discretion, provided:

   a. No significant changes have or will be made to the originally approved plans and specifications for the approved work; and

   b. No permit shall be extended past the maximum limit stated in subsection (E)(2) of this section from the date of permit issuance.

2. Permits issued under which work is started and continuously performed, and the necessary periodic inspections are made, such that the permit does not expire according to subsection (E)(1) of this section, shall expire by limitation and become null and void three years from the date of such permit issuance, except that the building official may grant single-family permits one extension of up to 90 days at his sole discretion.

3. For permits other than single-family permits, when only the final inspection approval is remaining and all other work has been approved, the building official may grant one 90-day extension of time past the expiration date for permits stated in subsection (E)(1) or (2) of this section to allow the final inspection to occur.

4. The time extensions provided in this section shall not apply to any properties that are the subject of an active request for voluntary compliance or civil violation proceeding under Chapter 1.18 BCC.

F. Suspension or Revocation.

1. The building official may revoke or suspend the permit provided for in this section whenever:

   a. The permittee requests such revocation or suspension;

   b. The work does not proceed in accordance with the construction documents, as approved, or is not in compliance with the requirements of this section, the technical codes or other city ordinances;

   c. Entry upon the property for the purpose of investigation or inspection has been denied;

   d. The permittee has made a misrepresentation of a material fact in applying for such permit;

   e. The progress of the work indicates that the plan is or will be inadequate to protect the public, the adjoining property, street, utilities in the street, or the work endangers or will endanger the public, the adjoining property, street or utilities in the street;

f. The permit has not been acted upon within the time allowed for extensions pursuant to this section; and

g. The related building permit has expired without renewal, or has been revoked or cancelled.

2. Upon suspension or revocation of the permit, all work thereupon shall cease, except as authorized by the building official.

G. Assurance Device for Permits. Before issuing any permit provided for in this section, the city may, in the discretion of the building official, require the applicant to execute and file with the city an assurance device pursuant to LUC 20.40.490 in such reasonable sum and with the securities as the responsible administrative official may specify, conditioned that the applicant will pay any and all damages that may be recovered against the city by any person on account of injury to persons or property occasioned by or in any manner resulting from the issuance of the permit or by reason of any act or thing done pursuant thereto, or from the occupancy or disturbance of any street or sidewalk in the city and also to save and keep the city free from all such damages and costs as may be incurred in defending any such claim, and/or further conditioned that the applicant will pay to the city the cost of repairing any and all damage which may be done by the applicant or his agents to the streets, utilities or property of the city during or pursuant to the work covered by such permit.

H. Placement of Permit. The permit or copy shall be kept on the site of the work until the completion of the project. Approved plans and manufacturer's installation instructions, as required by the technical codes, shall be available on the job site at the time of inspection. (Ord. 6113 § 3, 2013; Ord. 5951 § 2, 2010; Ord. 5750 § 1, 2007; Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.105 Construction documents.

A. Submittal Documents

1. General. Construction documents, special inspection and structural observation programs, and other data and information as required by the submittal requirements established by the city for each permit shall be submitted in one or more sets with each application for a permit. The construction documents shall be prepared by a registered design professional where required by the state of Washington. Where the building official, in his/her discretion, deems necessary, he/she may require additional construction documents for any application, which may be required to be prepared by a registered design professional.

   Exception: The building official is authorized to waive the submission of construction documents and other data if it is found that the nature of the work applied for is such that review of construction documents is not necessary to obtain compliance with this chapter or the technical codes.

2. Electrical Engineer. Electrical plans for the following installations shall be prepared by, or under the direction of, a consulting electrical engineer registered under Chapter 18.43 RCW and Chapters 246-320, 388-97, and 392-344 WAC. All electrical plans must bear the engineer's stamp and signature.

   a. All educational facilities, hospitals and nursing homes;

b. All services or feeders rated 1,600 amperes or larger;

c. All installations identified in the National Electrical Code requiring engineering supervision;

d. As required by the building official for installations which by their nature are complex, hazardous or pose unique design problems.

3. Building Enclosure Design Requirements of Chapter 64.55 RCW. Building enclosure design documents of new or rehabilitated multifamily buildings that are subject to regulations of Chapter 64.55 RCW must be submitted at the time of permit application. All applications for building construction or rehabilitation shall include design documents prepared and stamped by an architect or engineer that identify the building enclosure (building enclosure documents), including, but not limited to, waterproofing, weatherproofing and/or otherwise protected from water or moisture intrusion, unless a recorded irrevocable sale prohibition covenant is submitted to the city. The city is prohibited from issuing a permit for construction or rehabilitative construction unless the building enclosure documents contain a stamped statement by the person stamping the building enclosure design documents in substantially the following form: “The undersigned has provided building enclosure documents that in my professional judgment are appropriate to satisfy the requirements of sections 1 through 10 of Chapter 64.55 RCW.” The city is not responsible for determining whether the building enclosure design documents or the inspections performed are adequate or appropriate to satisfy the requirements of Chapter 64.55 RCW.

B. Information on Construction Documents. Construction documents and other information required to be provided shall conform to standards and specifications established by the city. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted when approved by the building official. Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and show in detail that it will conform to the provisions of this chapter, the technical codes and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the building official.

C. Use of Consultants. Whenever review of an application requires retention by the city for professional consulting services for other than normal plan review, the applicant shall reimburse the city the cost of such professional consulting services. This fee shall be in addition to the normal plan review and permit fees. The city may require the applicant to deposit an amount with the city estimated in the discretion of the building official to be sufficient to cover anticipated costs to retaining professional consultant services and to ensure reimbursement for such costs.

D. Design Professional in Responsible Charge. When it is required that documents be prepared by a qualified registered design professional, the building official shall be authorized to require the owner to engage and designate on the building permit application a registered design professional who shall act as the registered design professional in responsible charge. If the circumstances require, the owner shall designate a substitute registered design professional in responsible charge who shall perform the duties required of the original registered design professional in responsible charge. The building official shall be notified in writing by the owner if the registered design professional in responsible charge is changed or is unable to continue to perform the duties. The registered design professional in responsible charge shall be responsible for reviewing and coordinating submittal

documents prepared by others, including phased and deferred submittal items, for compatibility with the design of the building. Where structural observation is required by IBC Section 1704, the inspection program shall name the individual or firms who are to perform structural observation and describe the stages of construction at which structural observation is to occur (see also duties specified in IBC Section 1704).

E. Deferred Submittals. For the purposes of this section, deferred submittals are defined as those portions of the design that are not submitted at the time of the application and that are to be submitted to the building official within a specified period. Deferral of any submittal items shall have the prior approval of the building official. The registered design professional in responsible charge, or the applicant, if no design professional is required, shall list the deferred submittals on the construction documents for review by the building official. Where a design professional is required, documents for deferred submittal items shall be submitted to the registered design professional in responsible charge who shall review them and forward them to the building official with a notation indicating that the deferred submittal documents have been reviewed and been found to be in general conformance to the design of the building. The deferred submittal items shall not be installed until the design and submittal documents have been approved by the building official. The building official is authorized to charge an additional plan review fee to evaluate the deferred submittal under.

F. Amended Construction Documents. Work shall be installed in accordance with the approved construction documents, and any changes made during construction that are not in compliance with the approved construction documents shall be resubmitted for approval as an amended set of construction documents. The building official may authorize minor field changes subject to the approval of the field inspector. (Ord. 6113 § 4, 2013; Ord. 5951 § 3, 2010; Ord. 5572 § 3, 2004; Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.110 Temporary structures and uses.

A. Temporary Permits – Technical Codes Other Than the Electrical Code. The building official is authorized to issue a permit for temporary structures and temporary uses. Such permits shall be limited as to time of service, but shall not be permitted for more than 180 days. The building official is authorized to grant extensions for demonstrated cause. Additional permits may be required under the technical codes or other city codes and regulations, including the Land Use Code. All temporary installations allowed under this section shall be made in accordance with the requirements of this chapter and the technical codes; provided, that the building official may permit deviations which will not permit hazards to life or property; and further provided, that whenever such hazards are deemed by the building official to exist, the building official may at once rescind or cancel the permit covering such installation and disconnect, or order the disconnection of, all energy to such equipment.

B. Temporary Permits – Electrical Code. If the building official finds that the safety of life and property will not be jeopardized, permits may be issued for temporary electrical installations for use during the construction of buildings or for carnivals, conventions, festivals, fairs, the holding of religious services, temporary lighting of streets, or other approved uses. Permission to use such temporary installation shall not be granted for a greater length of time than 90 days, except that a permit for a temporary installation to be used for constructing of a building may be issued for the period of construction. Should such temporary lighting be over the street area, the proper authorization for such use of the street must first be obtained. Additional permits may be required under the technical codes or

other city codes and regulations, including the Land Use Code. All temporary electrical installations allowed under this section shall be made in accordance with the requirements of this chapter and the technical codes; provided, that the building official may permit deviations which will not permit hazards to life or property; and further provided, that whenever such hazards are deemed by the building official to exist, the building official may at once rescind or cancel the permit covering such installation and disconnect, or order the disconnection of all energy to such equipment.

C. For temporary electrical installations, the city will consider a permit applicant to be the owner per RCW 19.28.261 under the following conditions. Any person, firm, partnership, corporation, or other entity registered as a general contractor under Chapter 18.27 RCW will be permitted to install a single electrical service per address for the purposes of temporary power during the construction phase of a project, when all of the following conditions are met:

1. The installation is limited to the mounting and bracing of a pre-assembled pole or pedestal mounted service, the installation of a ground rod or ground plate, and the connection of the grounding electrode conductor to the ground rod or plate;

2. The total service size does not exceed 200 amperes, 250 volts nominal;

3. The service supplies no feeders;

4. Branch circuits not exceeding 50 amperes each are permitted, provided such branch circuits supply only receptacles that are either part of the service equipment or are mounted on the same pole;

5. The general contractor owns the electrical equipment;

6. The general contractor has been hired by the property owner as the general contractor for the project; and

7. The general contractor must purchase an electrical work permit for the temporary service, request inspection, and obtain approval prior to energizing the service.

D. Conformance. Temporary structures and uses shall conform to the structural strength, fire safety, means of egress, accessibility, light, ventilation and sanitary requirements of this chapter and the technical codes as necessary to ensure the public health, safety and general welfare.

E. Termination of Approval. The building official is authorized to terminate any temporary permit issued under this section and to order the activity, use or structure authorized under the permit to be discontinued. (Ord. 5937 § 5, 2010; Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.120 Fees.

The fee for each permit shall be as set forth in the fee ordinance, as now or hereafter amended. (Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.130 Inspections.

A. General. Construction or work for which a permit is required shall be subject to inspection by the building official and such construction or work shall remain accessible and exposed for inspection purposes until approved. Approval as a result of an inspection shall not be construed to be an approval of a violation of the provisions of this chapter, the technical codes, or of other ordinances of the city. Inspections presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this chapter, the technical codes, or of other ordinances of the city shall not be valid. It shall be the duty of the permit applicant to cause the work to remain accessible and exposed for inspection purposes. Neither the building official nor the city shall be liable for expense entailed in the removal or replacement of any material required to allow inspection. When the installation of an electrical system is complete, an additional and final inspection shall be made. Electrical systems and equipment regulated by the National Electrical Code shall not be connected to the energy source until authorized by the building official.

B. Preliminary Inspections. Before issuing a permit, the building official is authorized to examine or cause to be examined buildings, structures and sites for which an application has been filed.

C. Required Inspections. The building official, upon notification, is authorized to ~~shall~~ make the following inspections:

1. Footing and Foundation Inspection. Footing and foundation inspections shall be made after excavations for footings are complete and any required reinforcing steel is in place. For concrete foundations, any required forms shall be in place prior to inspection. Materials for the foundation shall be on the job, except where concrete is ready-mixed in accordance with ASTM C 94, the concrete need not be on the job.

2. Electrical Underground. Underground inspection shall be made after trenches or ditches are excavated and bedded, piping and conductors are installed, and before backfill is installed. Where excavated soil contains rocks, broken concrete, frozen chunks and other rubble that would damage or break the raceway, cable or conductors, or where corrosive action will occur, protection shall be provided in the form of granular or selected material, approved running boards, sleeves or other means.

3. Concrete Slab and Under-Floor Inspection. Concrete slab and under-floor inspections shall be made after in-slab or under-floor reinforcing steel and building service equipment, conduit, slab insulation, piping accessories and other ancillary equipment items are in place, but before any concrete is placed or floor sheathing installed, including the subfloor.

4. Lowest Floor Elevation. In flood hazard areas, upon placement of the lowest floor, including the basement, and prior to further vertical construction, the elevation certification required in IBC Section 1612.5 or IRC Section R322 shall be submitted to the building official.

5. Exterior Wall Sheathing Inspection. Exterior wall sheathing shall be inspected after all wall framing is complete, strapping and nailing is properly installed but prior to being covered.

6. Roof Sheathing Inspection. Roof sheathing shall be inspected after all roof framing is complete. No roof coverings shall be installed until inspections are made and approved.

7. IMC/UPC/GAS/NEC Rough-In Inspection. Rough-in mechanical, gas piping, plumbing and

electrical shall be inspected when the rough-in work is complete and, if required, under test. No connections to primary utilities shall be made until the rough-in work is inspected and approved. Electrical rough-in inspection shall be made after the roof, framing, fireblocking and bracing are in place and all wiring and other components to be concealed are complete, and prior to the installation of wall or ceiling membranes. All required equipment grounding conductors installed in concealed cable or flexible conduit systems must be completely installed and made up at the time of the rough-in cover inspection.

Exception: Ground-source heat pump loop systems tested in accordance with IMC 1208.1.1 shall be permitted to be backfilled prior to inspection.

8. Frame Inspection. Framing inspections shall be made after the roof deck or sheathing, all framing, fire blocking and bracing are in place and pipes, chimneys and vents to be concealed are complete and the rough electrical, plumbing, heating wires, pipes and ducts are approved.

9. Lath Inspection and Gypsum Board Inspection. Lath and gypsum board inspections shall be made after lathing and gypsum board, interior and exterior, are in place, but before any plastering is applied or gypsum board joints and fasteners are taped and finished.

   Exception: Gypsum board that is not part of a fire-resistance rated assembly or a shear assembly.

10. Fire-Resistant Penetration Inspections. Protection of joints and penetrations in fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall not be concealed from view until inspected and approved.

11. Energy Efficiency Inspection.
    a. Envelope.
       i. Wall Insulation Inspection. To be made after all wall insulation and air vapor retarder sheet or film materials are in place, but before any wall covering is placed.
       ii. Glazing Inspection. To be made after glazing materials are installed in the building.
       iii. Exterior Roofing Insulation. To be made after the installation of the roof insulation, but before concealment.
       iv. Slab/Floor Insulation. To be made after the installation of the slab/floor insulation, but before concealment.

    b. Mechanical.
       i. Mechanical Equipment Efficiency and Economizer. To be made after all equipment and controls required by this chapter and the technical codes are installed and prior to the concealment of such equipment or controls.
       ii. Mechanical Pipe and Duct Insulation. To be made after all pipe and duct insulation is in place, but before concealment.

    c. Lighting and Motors.
       i. Lighting Equipment and Controls. To be made after the installation of all lighting equipment and controls required by this chapter and the technical codes, but before concealment of the lighting equipment.
       ii. Motor Inspections. To be made after installation of all equipment covered by the

energy code, but before concealment.

12. Electrical. The building official may require special inspection of equipment or wiring methods under the following conditions:

    a. Where the installation requires special training, equipment, expertise, or knowledge;

    b. Where there is insufficient evidence of compliance with the provisions of this code;

    c. Where the material or method does not conform to the requirements of this code; or

    d. To substantiate claims for alternative materials or methods.

    Where such special inspection is required, it shall be performed by an accredited electrical products testing laboratory approved by the state of Washington under WAC 296-46B-999 and acceptable to the building official. The special inspection person/agency shall be designated and approved prior to beginning the installation of wiring or equipment. A written report from the designated special inspection agency indicating that the installation conforms to the appropriate codes and standards shall be received by the building official prior to that installation being approved. All costs for such testing and reporting shall be the responsibility of the permit holder.

13. Final Inspection. The final inspection shall be made after all work required by the permit is completed.

D. Reinspection. The building official may require a structure or portions of work to be re-inspected. A reinspection fee may be assessed for each inspection or reinspection when such portion of work for which inspection is called is not complete, when corrections called for are not made, when the approved plans and permit are not on site, or when the building is not accessible.

E. Other Inspections. In addition to the inspections specified above, the building official is authorized to make or require other inspections of any construction work to ascertain compliance with the provisions of this chapter, the technical codes and other laws that are enforced by the department of building safety.

F. Special Inspections. In addition to the inspections specified above, the building official is authorized to make or require special inspections for any type of work related to the technical codes by an approved agency at no cost to the city.

G. Final Inspection. The final inspection shall be made after all work required by the building permit is completed.

H. Inspection Agencies. The building official is authorized to accept reports of approved inspection agencies, provided such agencies satisfy the requirements as to qualifications and reliability.

I. Inspection Requests. It shall be the duty of the permit holder or their duly authorized agent to notify the building official when work is ready for inspection. It shall be the duty of the permit holder to provide access to and means for inspections of such work that are required

by this chapter and the technical codes.

J. Approval Required. Work shall not be done beyond the point indicated in each successive inspection without first obtaining the approval of the building official. The building official, upon notification, shall make the requested inspections and shall either indicate the portion of the construction that is satisfactory as completed, or notify the permit holder or his or her agent wherein the same fails to comply with this chapter and the technical codes. Any portions that do not comply shall be corrected and such portion shall not be covered or concealed until authorized by the building official. (Ord. 6113 § 5, 2013; Ord. 5937 § 6, 2010; Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.140 Certificate of occupancy.

A. Use and Occupancy. No building or structure shall be used or occupied, and no change in the existing occupancy classification of a building or structure or portion thereof shall be made, until the building official has issued a certificate of occupancy therefor as provided herein. Issuance of a certificate of occupancy shall not be construed as an approval of a violation of the provisions of this chapter, the technical codes, or of other ordinances of the city. Certificates presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this chapter, the technical codes or other ordinances of the city shall not be valid.

Exception: For single-family dwellings and their accessory structures, the issued building permit inspection record shall serve as the certificate of occupancy when the final inspection has been approved by the building official or the building official's designee.

B. Certificate Issued. After the building official inspects the building or structure and finds no violations of the provisions of this chapter, the technical codes, or other laws that are enforced by the city, and finds compliance with the terms of all applicable permits, the building official shall issue a certificate of occupancy that contains the following:

1. The building permit number.

2. The address of the structure.

3. The name and address of the owner.

4. A description of that portion of the structure for which the certificate is issued.

5. A statement that the described portion of the structure has been inspected for compliance with the requirements of this chapter and the technical codes for the occupancy and division of occupancy and the use for which the proposed occupancy is classified.

6. The name of the building official.

7. The edition of the technical code under which the permit was issued.

8. The use and occupancy, in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 3 of the International Building Code.

9. The type of construction as defined in Chapter 6 of the International Building Code.

10. The design occupant load.

11. If an automatic sprinkler system is provided, whether the sprinkler system is required.

12. Any special stipulations and conditions of the permit.

C. Temporary or Phased Occupancy. The building official is authorized to issue a temporary or phased certificate of occupancy before the completion of the entire work covered by the permit; provided, that such portion or portions shall be occupied safely. The building official is authorized to require, in addition to the completion of life safety building components, any or all accessibility components. The building official shall set a time period during which the temporary or phased certificate of occupancy is valid. The building official is authorized to require that a performance bond or other assurance device be posted with the city which shall be refundable upon inspection, final approval and a request in writing for the refund. It shall be the duty of the applicant to request the refund.

D. Revocation. The building official is authorized to, in writing, suspend or revoke a certificate of occupancy issued under the provisions of this chapter wherever the certificate is issued in error, or on the basis of incorrect information supplied, or where it is determined that the building or structure or portion thereof is in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of the provisions of this chapter or the technical codes. (Ord. 5951 § 4, 2010; Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.150 Service utilities.

A. Connection of Service Utilities. No person shall make connections from a utility, source of energy, fuel or power to any building or system that is regulated by this chapter and the technical codes for which a permit is required, until approved by the building official.

B. Temporary Connection. The building official shall have the authority to authorize the temporary connection of the building or system to the utility source of energy, fuel or power.

C. Authority to Disconnect Service Utilities. The building official shall have the authority to authorize disconnection of utility service to the building, structure or building service equipment regulated by this chapter and the technical codes in case of emergency where necessary to eliminate an immediate hazard to life or property, or when such utility connection has been made without the required approval. The building official shall notify the serving utility, and wherever possible the owner and occupant of the building, structure or building service equipment of the decision to disconnect prior to taking such action. If not notified prior to disconnecting, the owner or occupant of the building, structure or building service equipment shall be notified in writing as soon as practical thereafter. (Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.160 Hearing examiner.

Pursuant to Chapter 3.68 BCC the hearing examiner shall hear and decide appeals of interpretations of the technical codes made by the building official, as provided in Chapter 3.68 BCC; provided, however, that appeals of interpretations made by the building official in proceedings authorized under Chapter 1.18 BCC shall be heard simultaneously with the underlying action before the hearing examiner presiding over the proceeding. (Ord. 5750 § 2, 2007; Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.170 Violations.

A. Unlawful Acts. It shall be unlawful for any person to erect, construct, alter, extend, repair, move, remove, demolish or occupy any building, structure or equipment regulated by this chapter or the technical codes, or cause same to be done, in conflict with or in violation of any of the provisions of this chapter or the technical codes.

B. Civil Violation. Any violation of any of the provisions of this chapter or of the technical codes constitutes a civil violation as provided for in Chapter 1.18 BCC, for which a monetary penalty may be imposed as provided therein.

C. Criminal Penalty. In addition to or as an alternative to any other penalty provided in this chapter or by law, any person who violates any of the provisions of this chapter or the technical codes shall be guilty of a misdemeanor and upon conviction shall be punished as provided in the Criminal Code, Title 10 of BCC.

D. Separate Offense. Each day or portion thereof upon which a violation occurs constitutes a separate offense for purposes of subsections (B) and (C) of this section.

E. Destruction of Notice. It shall be unlawful for any person to remove, mutilate, destroy or conceal any notice issued and posted by the building official pursuant to the provisions of this chapter or the technical codes. (Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.180 Stop work order.

A. Authority. Whenever the building official finds any work being performed in a manner contrary to the provisions of this chapter, the technical codes, or other pertinent laws or ordinances implemented through the enforcement of this chapter or the technical codes, or in a manner that violates the terms and conditions of any permit issued by the city, the building official is authorized to issue a stop work order.

B. Issuance. The stop work order shall be in writing and shall be given to the owner of the property involved, or to the owner's agent, or to the person doing the work. If, with reasonable diligence the stop work order cannot be given to any such person, the stop work order may be posted on the site. Upon issuance of a stop work order, the cited work shall immediately cease. The stop work order shall state the reason for the order, and the conditions under which the cited work will be permitted to resume.

C. Investigation Fee. The building official is authorized to assess a special investigation fee for the issuance of a stop work order.

D. Unlawful Continuance. Any person who shall continue any work in or about the structure after having been served with a stop work order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe condition, shall be subject to penalties as prescribed by law. (Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.190 Unsafe structures and equipment.

A. Buildings or structures regulated by this chapter and the technical codes which are structurally inadequate or have inadequate egress, or which constitute a fire hazard, or are otherwise dangerous to human life are, for the purpose of this section, unsafe buildings.

B. Building service equipment regulated by such codes which constitutes a fire, electrical or health hazard, or an unsanitary condition, or which is otherwise dangerous to human life is, for the purpose of this section, unsafe. Use of buildings, structures or building service

equipment constituting a hazard to safety, health or public welfare by reason of inadequate maintenance, dilapidation, obsolescence, fire hazard, disaster, damage or abandonment is, for the purpose of this section, an unsafe use.

C. Parapet walls, cornices, spires, towers, tanks, statuary and other appendages or structural members which are supported by, attached to, or otherwise unable to sustain the design loads which are specified in the building code are designated as unsafe building appendages.

D. Unsafe buildings, structures or appendages and building service equipment are declared to be public nuisances and shall be abated by repair, rehabilitation, demolition or removal in accordance with the procedures set forth in the dangerous buildings code or such alternative procedure as may be adopted by the city. As an alternative, the building official or other employee or official of the city as designated by the governing body may institute other appropriate action to prevent, restrain, correct or abate the violation.

E. Authority to Condemn Electrical Systems. Wherever the building official determines that any electrical system, or portion thereof, regulated by this code has become hazardous to life, health or property, the building official shall order in writing that such electrical systems either be removed or restored to a safe condition. A time limit for compliance with such order shall be specified in the written notice. A person shall not use or maintain a defective electrical system or equipment after receiving such notice. Where such electrical system is to be disconnected, written notice as prescribed in this code shall be given. In cases of immediate danger to life or property, such disconnection shall be made immediately without such notice.

F. Connection after Order to Disconnect. A person shall not make utility service or energy source connections to systems regulated by this code which have been disconnected or ordered to be disconnected or the use of which has been ordered to be discontinued by the building official, until the building official authorizes the reconnection and use of such systems. (Ord. 5937 § 7, 2010; Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

23.05.200 Partial invalidity.

In the event that any part or provision of this chapter or the technical codes is held to be illegal or void, this shall not have the effect of making void or illegal any of the other parts or provisions. (Ord. 5528 § 2, 2004.)

1
Code reviser's note: Ord. 5943, effective March 15, 2010, provides extensions for some permits, as follows:

Section 1. Extension of Time Limits for Building Permit Applications. The time limitation set forth in BCC 23.05.090.H for building permit applications is temporarily extended an additional 180 days. This extension supplements the provisions of BCC 23.05.090.H, and applies only to complete building permit applications active on the effective date of this ordinance. In addition, all active building permit applications on the effective date of this ordinance, if and when the permit is issued, will receive the extensions set forth in Section 2 below. [Section 2 can be found at BCC 23.05.100.]

Section 5. Exception for Civil Violations. The time extensions provided by this ordinance shall not apply to any properties that are the subject of an active request for voluntary compliance or civil violation proceeding under Chapter 1.18 BCC.

2
Code reviser's note: Ord. 5943, effective March 15, 2010, provides extensions for some permits, as follows:
Section 2. Extension of Expiration Period for Issued Building Permits. The expiration period for issued building permits set forth in BCC 23.05.100.E.2 is extended by one additional year. Additionally, the one year period in which to commence work, as set forth in BCC 23.05.100.E.1, is extended to two years. These extensions supplement the provisions of BCC 23.05.100.E and apply only to issued building permits active on the effective date of this ordinance.
Section 5. Exception for Civil Violations. The time extensions provided by this ordinance shall not apply to any properties that are

the subject of an active request for voluntary compliance or civil violation proceeding under Chapter 1.18 BCC.

NOT ADOPTED BY CITY OF BELLEVUE

User note: Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the Administrative Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

SECTION 101
GENERAL

[A] 101.1 Title.
These regulations shall be known as the *Building Code* of [NAME OF JURISDICTION], hereinafter referred to as "this code."

[A] 101.2 Scope.
The provisions of this code shall apply to the construction, *alteration*, relocation, enlargement, replacement, *repair*, equipment, use and occupancy, location, maintenance, removal and demolition of every building or structure or any appurtenances connected or attached to such buildings or structures.

> **Exception:** Detached one- and two-family *dwellings* and multiple single-family *dwellings (townhouses)* not more than three *stories above grade plane* in height with a separate *means of egress*, and their accessory structures not more than three *stories above grade plane* in height, shall comply with the *International Residential Code*.

> **[A] 101.2.1 Appendices.**
> Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

[A] 101.3 Intent.
The purpose of this code is to establish the minimum requirements to provide a reasonable level of safety, public health and general welfare through structural strength, *means of egress* facilities, stability, sanitation, adequate light and ventilation, energy conservation, and safety to life and property from fire and other hazards attributed to the built environment and to provide a reasonable level of safety to fire fighters and emergency responders during emergency operations.

[A] 101.4 Referenced codes.
The other codes listed in Sections 101.4.1 through 101.4.7 and referenced elsewhere in this code shall be considered part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference.

> **[A] 101.4.1 Gas.**
> The provisions of the *International Fuel Gas Code* shall apply to the installation of gas piping from the point of delivery, gas appliances and related accessories as covered in this code. These requirements apply to gas piping systems extending from the point of delivery to the inlet connections of appliances and the installation and operation of residential and commercial gas appliances and related accessories.

> **[A] 101.4.2 Mechanical.**
> The provisions of the *International Mechanical Code* shall apply to the installation, *alterations*, *repairs* and replacement of mechanical systems, including equipment, appliances, fixtures, fittings and/or appurtenances, including ventilating, heating, cooling, air-conditioning and refrigeration systems, incinerators and other energy-related systems.

> **[A] 101.4.3 Plumbing.**
> The provisions of the *International Plumbing Code* shall apply to the installation, *alteration*, *repair* and replacement of plumbing systems, including equipment, appliances, fixtures, fittings and appurtenances, and where connected to a water or sewage system and all aspects of a medical gas system. The provisions of the *International Private Sewage Disposal Code* shall apply to private sewage disposal systems.

> **[A] 101.4.4 Property maintenance.**
> The provisions of the *International Property Maintenance Code* shall apply to existing structures and premises; equipment and facilities; light, ventilation, space heating, sanitation, life and fire safety hazards; responsibilities of *owners*, operators and occupants; and occupancy of existing premises and structures.

[A] 101.4.5 Fire prevention.
The provisions of the *International Fire Code* shall apply to matters affecting or relating to structures, processes and premises from the hazard of fire and explosion arising from the storage, handling or use of structures, materials or devices; from conditions hazardous to life, property or public welfare in the occupancy of structures or premises; and from the construction, extension, *repair, alteration* or removal of fire suppression, *automatic sprinkler systems* and alarm systems or fire hazards in the structure or on the premises from occupancy or operation.

[A] 101.4.6 Energy.
The provisions of the *International Energy Conservation Code* shall apply to all matters governing the design and construction of buildings for energy efficiency.

[A] 101.4.7 Existing buildings.
The provisions of the *International Existing Building Code* shall apply to matters governing the *repair*, *alteration*, change of occupancy, *addition* to and relocation of existing buildings.

SECTION 102
APPLICABILITY

[A] 102.1 General.
Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall be applicable. Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern.

[A] 102.2 Other laws.
The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

[A] 102.3 Application of references.
References to chapter or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

[A] 102.4 Referenced codes and standards.
The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be considered part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections 102.4.1 and 102.4.2.

[A] 102.4.1 Conflicts.
Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

[A] 102.4.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards.
Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code or the International Codes listed in Section 101.4, the provisions of this code or the International Codes listed in Section 101.4, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.

[A] 102.5 Partial invalidity.
In the event that any part or provision of this code is held to be illegal or void, this shall not have the effect of making void or illegal any of the other parts or provisions.

[A] 102.6 Existing structures.
The legal occupancy of any structure existing on the date of adoption of this code shall be permitted to continue without change, except as otherwise specifically provided in this code, the *International Existing Building Code*, the *International Property Maintenance Code* or the *International Fire Code*.

[A] 102.6.1 Buildings not previously occupied.
A building or portion of a building that has not been previously occupied or used for its intended purpose in accordance with the laws in existence at the time of its completion shall comply with the provisions of the *International Building Code* or *International Residential Code*, as applicable, for new construction or with any current permit for such occupancy.

[A] 102.6.2 Buildings previously occupied.
The legal occupancy of any building existing on the date of adoption of this code shall be permitted to continue without change, except as otherwise specifically provided in this code, the *International Fire Code* or *International Property Maintenance Code*, or as is deemed necessary by the *building official* for the general safety and welfare of the occupants and the public.

PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

SECTION 103
DEPARTMENT OF BUILDING SAFETY

[A] 103.1 Creation of enforcement agency.
The Department of Building Safety is hereby created and the official in charge thereof shall be known as the *building official*.

[A] 103.2 Appointment.
The *building official* shall be appointed by the chief appointing authority of the jurisdiction.

[A] 103.3 Deputies.
In accordance with the prescribed procedures of this jurisdiction and with the concurrence of the appointing authority, the *building official* shall have the authority to appoint a deputy building official, the related technical officers, inspectors, plan examiners and other employees. Such employees shall have powers as delegated by the *building official*. For the maintenance of existing properties, see the *International Property Maintenance Code*.

SECTION 104
DUTIES AND POWERS OF BUILDING OFFICIAL

[A] 104.1 General.
The *building official* is hereby authorized and directed to enforce the provisions of this code. The *building official* shall have the authority to render interpretations of this code and to adopt policies and procedures in order to clarify the application of its provisions. Such interpretations, policies and procedures shall be in compliance with the intent and purpose of this code. Such policies and procedures shall not have the effect of waiving requirements specifically provided for in this code.

[A] 104.2 Applications and permits.
The *building official* shall receive applications, review *construction documents* and issue *permits* for the erection, and *alteration*, demolition and moving of buildings and structures, inspect the premises for which such *permits* have been issued and enforce compliance with the provisions of this code.

[A] 104.2.1 Determination of substantially improved or substantially damaged existing buildings and structures in flood hazard areas.
For applications for reconstruction, rehabilitation, *repair*, *alteration*, *addition* or other improvement of existing buildings or structures located in *flood hazard areas*, the *building official* shall determine if the proposed work constitutes substantial improvement or *repair* of *substantial damage*. Where the *building official* determines that the proposed work constitutes *substantial improvement* or *repair* of *substantial damage*, and where required by this code, the *building official* shall require the building to meet the requirements of Section 1612.

[A] 104.3 Notices and orders.
The *building official* shall issue necessary notices or orders to ensure compliance with this code.

[A] 104.4 Inspections.
The *building official* shall make the required inspections, or the *building official* shall have the authority to accept reports of inspection by *approved agencies* or individuals. Reports of such inspections shall be in writing and be certified by a responsible officer of such *approved agency* or by the responsible individual. The *building official* is authorized to engage such expert opinion as deemed necessary to report upon unusual technical issues that arise, subject to the approval of the appointing authority.

[A] 104.5 Identification.
The *building official* shall carry proper identification when inspecting structures or premises in the performance of duties under this code.

[A] 104.6 Right of entry.
Where it is necessary to make an inspection to enforce the provisions of this code, or where the *building official* has reasonable cause to believe that there exists in a structure or upon a premises a condition that is contrary to or in violation of this code that makes the structure or premises unsafe, dangerous or hazardous, the *building official* is authorized to enter the structure or premises at reasonable times to inspect or to perform the duties imposed by this code, provided that if such structure or premises be occupied that credentials be presented to the occupant and entry requested. If such structure or premises is unoccupied, the *building official* shall first make a reasonable effort to locate the owner or other person having charge or control of the structure or premises and request entry. If entry is refused, the *building official* shall have recourse to the remedies provided by law to secure entry.

[A] 104.7 Department records.
The *building official* shall keep official records of applications received, *permits* and certificates issued, fees collected, reports of inspections, and notices and orders issued. Such records shall be retained in the official records for the period required for retention of public records.

[A] 104.8 Liability.
The *building official*, member of the board of appeals or employee charged with the enforcement of this code, while acting for the jurisdiction in good faith and without malice in the discharge of the duties required by this code or other pertinent law or ordinance, shall not thereby be civilly or criminally rendered liable personally and is hereby relieved from personal liability for any damage accruing to persons or property as a result of any act or by reason of an act or omission in the discharge of official duties.

[A] 104.8.1 Legal defense.
Any suit or criminal complaint instituted against an officer or employee because of an act performed by that officer or employee in the lawful discharge of duties and under the provisions of this code shall be defended by legal representatives of the jurisdiction until the final termination of the proceedings. The *building official* or any subordinate shall not be liable for cost in any action, suit or proceeding that is instituted in pursuance of the provisions of this code.

[A] 104.9 Approved materials and equipment.
Materials, equipment and devices *approved* by the *building official* shall be constructed and installed in accordance with such approval.

[A] 104.9.1 Used materials and equipment.
The use of used materials that meet the requirements of this code for new materials is permitted. Used equipment and devices shall not be reused unless *approved* by the *building official*.

[A] 104.10 Modifications.
Where there are practical difficulties involved in carrying out the provisions of this code, the *building official* shall have the authority to grant modifications for individual cases, upon application of the *owner* or the owner's authorized agent, provided that the *building official* shall first find that special individual reason makes the strict letter of this code impractical, the modification is in compliance with the intent and purpose of this code and that such modification does not lessen health, *accessibility*, life and fire safety or structural requirements. The details of action granting modifications shall be recorded and entered in the files of the department of building safety.

[A] 104.10.1 Flood hazard areas.
The *building official* shall not grant modifications to any provision required in *flood hazard areas* as established by Section 1612.3 unless a determination has been made that:

1. A showing of good and sufficient cause that the unique characteristics of the size, configuration or topography of the site render the elevation standards of Section 1612 inappropriate.

2. A determination that failure to grant the variance would result in exceptional hardship by rendering the lot undevelopable.

3. A determination that the granting of a variance will not result in increased flood heights, additional threats to public safety, extraordinary public expense, cause fraud on or victimization of the public, or conflict with existing laws or ordinances.

4. A determination that the variance is the minimum necessary to afford relief, considering the flood hazard.

5. Submission to the applicant of written notice specifying the difference between the *design flood elevation* and the elevation to which the building is to be built, stating that the cost of flood insurance will be commensurate with the increased risk resulting from the reduced floor elevation, and stating that construction below the *design flood elevation* increases risks to life and property.

[A] 104.11 Alternative materials, design and methods of construction and equipment.
The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been *approved*. An alternative material, design or method of construction shall be *approved* where the *building official* finds that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code in quality, strength, effectiveness, *fire resistance*, durability and safety. Where the alternative material, design or method of construction is not *approved*, the *building official* shall respond in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was not *approved*.

[A] 104.11.1 Research reports.
Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of materials or assemblies not specifically provided for in this code, shall consist of valid research reports from *approved* sources.

[A] 104.11.2 Tests.
Whenever there is insufficient evidence of compliance with the provisions of this code, or evidence that a material or method does not conform to the requirements of this code, or in order to substantiate claims for alternative materials or methods, the *building official* shall have the authority to require tests as evidence of compliance to be made at no expense to the jurisdiction. Test methods shall be as specified in this code or by other recognized test standards. In the absence of recognized and accepted test methods, the *building official* shall approve the testing procedures. Tests shall be performed by an *approved agency*. Reports of such tests shall be retained by the *building official* for the period required for retention of public records.

SECTION 105
PERMITS

[A] 105.1 Required.
Any *owner* or owner's authorized agent who intends to construct, enlarge, alter, *repair*, move, demolish or change the occupancy of a building or structure, or to erect, install, enlarge, alter, *repair*, remove, convert or replace any electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system, the installation of which is regulated by this code, or to cause any such work to be performed, shall first make application to the *building official* and obtain the required *permit*.

[A] 105.1.1 Annual permit.
Instead of an individual *permit* for each *alteration* to an already *approved* electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing installation, the *building official* is authorized to issue an annual *permit* upon application therefor to any person, firm or corporation regularly employing one or more qualified tradepersons in the building, structure or on the premises owned or operated by the applicant for the *permit*.

[A] 105.1.2 Annual permit records.
The person to whom an annual *permit* is issued shall keep a detailed record of *alterations* made under such annual *permit*. The *building official* shall have access to such records at all times or such records shall be filed with the *building official* as designated.

[A] 105.2 Work exempt from permit.
Exemptions from *permit* requirements of this code shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in any manner in violation of the provisions of this code or any other laws or ordinances of this jurisdiction. *Permits* shall not be required for the following:

Building:

1. One-story detached accessory structures used as tool and storage sheds, playhouses and similar uses, provided the floor area is not greater than 120 square feet (11 m^2).

2. Fences not over 7 feet (2134 mm) high.

3. Oil derricks.

4. Retaining walls that are not over 4 feet (1219 mm) in height measured from the bottom of the footing to the top of the wall, unless supporting a surcharge or impounding Class I, II or IIIA liquids.

5. Water tanks supported directly on grade if the capacity is not greater than 5,000 gallons (18 925 L) and the ratio of height to diameter or width is not greater than 2:1.

6. Sidewalks and driveways not more than 30 inches (762 mm) above adjacent grade, and not over any basement or *story* below and are not part of an *accessible route*.

7. Painting, papering, tiling, carpeting, cabinets, counter tops and similar finish work.

8. Temporary motion picture, television and theater stage sets and scenery.

9. Prefabricated *swimming pools* accessory to a Group R-3 occupancy that are less than 24 inches (610 mm) deep, are not greater than 5,000 gallons (18 925 L) and are installed entirely above ground.

10. Shade cloth structures constructed for nursery or agricultural purposes, not including service systems.

11. Swings and other playground equipment accessory to detached one- and two-family *dwellings*.

12. Window awnings in Group R-3 and U occupancies, supported by an exterior wall that do not project more than 54 inches (1372 mm) from the *exterior wall* and do not require additional support.

13. Nonfixed and movable fixtures, cases, racks, counters and partitions not over 5 feet 9 inches (1753 mm) in height.

Electrical:

Repairs and maintenance: Minor repair work, including the replacement of lamps or the connection of *approved* portable electrical equipment to *approved* permanently installed receptacles.

Radio and television transmitting stations: The provisions of this code shall not apply to electrical equipment used for radio and television transmissions, but do apply to equipment and wiring for a power supply and the installations of towers and antennas.

Temporary testing systems: A *permit* shall not be required for the installation of any temporary system required for the testing or servicing of electrical equipment or apparatus.

Gas:

1. Portable heating appliance.

2. Replacement of any minor part that does not alter approval of equipment or make such equipment unsafe.

Mechanical:

1. Portable heating appliance.

2. Portable ventilation equipment.

3. Portable cooling unit.

4. Steam, hot or chilled water piping within any heating or cooling equipment regulated by this code.

5. Replacement of any part that does not alter its approval or make it unsafe.

6. Portable evaporative cooler.

7. Self-contained refrigeration system containing 10 pounds (4.54 kg) or less of refrigerant and actuated by motors of 1 horsepower (0.75 kW) or less.

Plumbing:

1. The stopping of leaks in drains, water, soil, waste or vent pipe, provided, however, that if any concealed trap, drain pipe, water, soil, waste or vent pipe becomes defective and it becomes necessary to remove and replace the same with new material, such work shall be considered as new work and a *permit* shall be obtained and inspection made as provided in this code.

2. The clearing of stoppages or the repairing of leaks in pipes, valves or fixtures and the removal and reinstallation of water closets, provided such repairs do not involve or require the replacement or rearrangement of valves, pipes or fixtures.

[A] 105.2.1 Emergency repairs.
Where equipment replacements and repairs must be performed in an emergency situation, the *permit* application shall be submitted within the next working business day to the *building official*.

[A] 105.2.2 Repairs.
Application or notice to the *building official* is not required for ordinary *repairs* to structures, replacement of lamps or the connection of *approved* portable electrical equipment to *approved* permanently installed receptacles. Such *repairs* shall not include the cutting away of any wall, partition or portion thereof, the removal or cutting of any structural beam or load-bearing support, or the removal or change of any required *means of egress*, or rearrangement of parts of a structure affecting the egress requirements; nor shall ordinary repairs include *addition* to, *alteration* of, replacement or relocation of any standpipe, water supply, sewer, drainage, drain leader, gas, soil, waste, vent or similar piping, electric wiring or mechanical or other work affecting public health or general safety.

[A] 105.2.3 Public service agencies.
A *permit* shall not be required for the installation, *alteration* or repair of generation, transmission, distribution or metering or other related equipment that is under the ownership and control of public service agencies by established right.

[A] 105.3 Application for permit.
To obtain a *permit*, the applicant shall first file an application therefor in writing on a form furnished by the department of building safety for that purpose. Such application shall:

1. Identify and describe the work to be covered by the *permit* for which application is made.

2. Describe the land on which the proposed work is to be done by legal description, street address or similar description that will readily identify and definitely locate the proposed building or work.

3. Indicate the use and occupancy for which the proposed work is intended.

4. Be accompanied by *construction documents* and other information as required in Section 107.

5. State the valuation of the proposed work.

6. Be signed by the applicant, or the applicant's authorized agent.

7. Give such other data and information as required by the *building official*.

[A] 105.3.1 Action on application.
The *building official* shall examine or cause to be examined applications for *permits* and amendments thereto within a reasonable time after filing. If the application or the *construction documents* do not conform to the

requirements of pertinent laws, the *building official* shall reject such application in writing, stating the reasons therefor. If the *building official* is satisfied that the proposed work conforms to the requirements of this code and laws and ordinances applicable thereto, the *building official* shall issue a *permit* therefor as soon as practicable.

[A] 105.3.2 Time limitation of application.
An application for a *permit* for any proposed work shall be deemed to have been abandoned 180 days after the date of filing, unless such application has been pursued in good faith or a *permit* has been issued; except that the *building official* is authorized to grant one or more extensions of time for additional periods not exceeding 90 days each. The extension shall be requested in writing and justifiable cause demonstrated.

[A] 105.4 Validity of permit.
The issuance or granting of a *permit* shall not be construed to be a *permit* for, or an approval of, any violation of any of the provisions of this code or of any other ordinance of the jurisdiction. *Permits* presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or other ordinances of the jurisdiction shall not be valid. The issuance of a *permit* based on *construction documents* and other data shall not prevent the *building official* from requiring the correction of errors in the *construction documents* and other data. The *building official* is authorized to prevent occupancy or use of a structure where in violation of this code or of any other ordinances of this jurisdiction.

[A] 105.5 Expiration.
Every *permit* issued shall become invalid unless the work on the site authorized by such *permit* is commenced within 180 days after its issuance, or if the work authorized on the site by such *permit* is suspended or abandoned for a period of 180 days after the time the work is commenced. The *building official* is authorized to grant, in writing, one or more extensions of time, for periods not more than 180 days each. The extension shall be requested in writing and justifiable cause demonstrated.

[A] 105.6 Suspension or revocation.
The *building official* is authorized to suspend or revoke a *permit* issued under the provisions of this code wherever the *permit* is issued in error or on the basis of incorrect, inaccurate or incomplete information, or in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of the provisions of this code.

[A] 105.7 Placement of permit.
The building *permit* or copy shall be kept on the site of the work until the completion of the project.

SECTION 106
FLOOR AND ROOF DESIGN LOADS

[A] 106.1 Live loads posted.
In commercial or industrial buildings, for each floor or portion thereof designed for *live loads* exceeding 50 psf (2.40 kN/m^2), such design *live loads* shall be conspicuously posted by the owner or the owner's authorized agent in that part of each *story* in which they apply, using durable signs. It shall be unlawful to remove or deface such notices.

[A] 106.2 Issuance of certificate of occupancy.
A certificate of occupancy required by Section 111 shall not be issued until the floor load signs, required by Section 106.1, have been installed.

[A] 106.3 Restrictions on loading.
It shall be unlawful to place, or cause or permit to be placed, on any floor or roof of a building, structure or portion thereof, a load greater than is permitted by this code.

SECTION 107
SUBMITTAL DOCUMENTS

[A] 107.1 General.
Submittal documents consisting of *construction documents*, statement of *special inspections*, geotechnical report and other data shall be submitted in two or more sets with each *permit* application. The *construction documents* shall be prepared by a *registered design professional* where required by the statutes of the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. Where special conditions exist, the *building official* is authorized to require additional *construction documents* to be prepared by a *registered design professional*.

Exception: The *building official* is authorized to waive the submission of *construction documents* and other data not required to be prepared by a *registered design professional* if it is found that the nature of the work applied for is such that review of *construction documents* is not necessary to obtain compliance with this code.

[A] 107.2 Construction documents.
Construction documents shall be in accordance with Sections 107.2.1 through 107.2.6.

[A] 107.2.1 Information on construction documents.
Construction documents shall be dimensioned and drawn upon suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted where *approved* by the *building official*. *Construction documents* shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and show in detail that it will conform to the provisions of this code and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the *building official*.

[A] 107.2.2 Fire protection system shop drawings.
Shop drawings for the *fire protection system(s)* shall be submitted to indicate conformance to this code and the *construction documents* and shall be *approved* prior to the start of system installation. Shop drawings shall contain all information as required by the referenced installation standards in Chapter 9.

[A] 107.2.3 Means of egress.
The *construction documents* shall show in sufficient detail the location, construction, size and character of all portions of the *means of egress* including the path of the *exit discharge* to the *public way* in compliance with the provisions of this code. In other than occupancies in Groups R-2, R-3, and I-1, the *construction documents* shall designate the number of occupants to be accommodated on every floor, and in all rooms and spaces.

[A] 107.2.4 Exterior wall envelope.
Construction documents for all buildings shall describe the *exterior wall envelope* in sufficient detail to determine compliance with this code. The *construction documents* shall provide details of the *exterior wall envelope* as required, including flashing, intersections with dissimilar materials, corners, end details, control joints, intersections at roof, eaves or parapets, means of drainage, water-resistive membrane and details around openings.

The *construction documents* shall include manufacturer's installation instructions that provide supporting documentation that the proposed penetration and opening details described in the *construction documents* maintain the weather resistance of the *exterior wall envelope*. The supporting documentation shall fully describe the *exterior wall* system that was tested, where applicable, as well as the test procedure used.

[A] 107.2.5 Site plan.
The *construction documents* submitted with the application for *permit* shall be accompanied by a site plan showing to scale the size and location of new construction and existing structures on the site, distances from *lot lines*, the established street grades and the proposed finished grades and, as applicable, *flood hazard areas*, *floodways*, and *design flood elevations*; and it shall be drawn in accordance with an accurate boundary line survey. In the case of demolition, the site plan shall show construction to be demolished and the location and size of existing structures and construction that are to remain on the site or plot. The *building official* is authorized to waive or modify the requirement for a site plan where the application for *permit* is for *alteration* or *repair* or where otherwise warranted.

[A] 107.2.5.1 Design flood elevations.
Where *design flood elevations* are not specified, they shall be established in accordance with Section 1612.3.1.

[A] 107.2.6 Structural information.
The *construction documents* shall provide the information specified in Section 1603.

[A] 107.3 Examination of documents.
The *building official* shall examine or cause to be examined the accompanying submittal documents and shall ascertain by such examinations whether the construction indicated and described is in accordance with the requirements of this code and other pertinent laws or ordinances.

[A] 107.3.1 Approval of construction documents.
When the *building official* issues a *permit*, the *construction documents* shall be *approved*, in writing or by stamp, as "Reviewed for Code Compliance." One set of *construction documents* so reviewed shall be retained by the

building official. The other set shall be returned to the applicant, shall be kept at the site of work and shall be open to inspection by the *building official* or a duly authorized representative.

[A] 107.3.2 Previous approvals.
This code shall not require changes in the *construction documents*, construction or designated occupancy of a structure for which a lawful *permit* has been heretofore issued or otherwise lawfully authorized, and the construction of which has been pursued in good faith within 180 days after the effective date of this code and has not been abandoned.

[A] 107.3.3 Phased approval.
The *building official* is authorized to issue a *permit* for the construction of foundations or any other part of a building or structure before the *construction documents* for the whole building or structure have been submitted, provided that adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with pertinent requirements of this code. The holder of such *permit* for the foundation or other parts of a building or structure shall proceed at the holder's own risk with the building operation and without assurance that a *permit* for the entire structure will be granted.

[A] 107.3.4 Design professional in responsible charge.
Where it is required that documents be prepared by a *registered design professional*, the *building official* shall be authorized to require the *owner* or the owner's authorized agent to engage and designate on the building *permit* application a *registered design professional* who shall act as the *registered design professional in responsible charge*. If the circumstances require, the *owner* or the owner's authorized agent shall designate a substitute *registered design professional in responsible charge* who shall perform the duties required of the original *registered design professional in responsible charge*. The *building official* shall be notified in writing by the *owner* or the owner's authorized agent if the *registered design professional in responsible charge* is changed or is unable to continue to perform the duties.

The *registered design professional in responsible charge* shall be responsible for reviewing and coordinating submittal documents prepared by others, including phased and deferred submittal items, for compatibility with the design of the building.

[A] 107.3.4.1 Deferred submittals.
Deferral of any submittal items shall have the prior approval of the *building official*. The *registered design professional in responsible charge* shall list the deferred submittals on the *construction documents* for review by the *building official.*

Documents for deferred submittal items shall be submitted to the *registered design professional in responsible charge* who shall review them and forward them to the *building official* with a notation indicating that the deferred submittal documents have been reviewed and found to be in general conformance to the design of the building. The deferred submittal items shall not be installed until the deferred submittal documents have been *approved* by the *building official*.

[A] 107.4 Amended construction documents.
Work shall be installed in accordance with the *approved construction documents*, and any changes made during construction that are not in compliance with the *approved construction documents* shall be resubmitted for approval as an amended set of *construction documents*.

[A] 107.5 Retention of construction documents.
One set of *approved construction documents* shall be retained by the *building official* for a period of not less than 180 days from date of completion of the permitted work, or as required by state or local laws.

SECTION 108
TEMPORARY STRUCTURES AND USES

[A] 108.1 General.
The *building official* is authorized to issue a *permit* for temporary structures and temporary uses. Such *permits* shall be limited as to time of service, but shall not be permitted for more than 180 days. The *building official* is authorized to grant extensions for demonstrated cause.

Exception: The building official may authorize unheated tents and yurts under 500 square feet accommodating an R-1 occupancy for recreational use as a temporary structure and allow them to be used indefinitely.

[A] 108.2 Conformance.
Temporary structures and uses shall comply with the requirements in Section 3103.

[A] 108.3 Temporary power.
The *building official* is authorized to give permission to temporarily supply and use power in part of an electric installation before such installation has been fully completed and the final certificate of completion has been issued. The part covered by the temporary certificate shall comply with the requirements specified for temporary lighting, heat or power in NFPA 70.

[A] 108.4 Termination of approval.
The *building official* is authorized to terminate such *permit* for a temporary structure or use and to order the temporary structure or use to be discontinued.

SECTION 109
FEES

[A] 109.1 Payment of fees.
A *permit* shall not be valid until the fees prescribed by law have been paid, nor shall an amendment to a *permit* be released until the additional fee, if any, has been paid.

[A] 109.2 Schedule of permit fees.
On buildings, structures, electrical, gas, mechanical, and plumbing systems or *alterations* requiring a *permit*, a fee for each *permit* shall be paid as required, in accordance with the schedule as established by the applicable governing authority.

[A] 109.3 Building permit valuations.
The applicant for a *permit* shall provide an estimated *permit* value at time of application. *Permit* valuations shall include total value of work, including materials and labor, for which the *permit* is being issued, such as electrical, gas, mechanical, plumbing equipment and permanent systems. If, in the opinion of the *building official*, the valuation is underestimated on the application, the *permit* shall be denied, unless the applicant can show detailed estimates to meet the approval of the *building official*. Final building *permit* valuation shall be set by the *building official*.

[A] 109.4 Work commencing before permit issuance.
Any person who commences any work on a building, structure, electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system before obtaining the necessary *permits* shall be subject to a fee established by the *building official* that shall be in addition to the required *permit* fees.

[A] 109.5 Related fees.
The payment of the fee for the construction, *alteration*, removal or demolition for work done in connection to or concurrently with the work authorized by a building *permit* shall not relieve the applicant or holder of the *permit* from the payment of other fees that are prescribed by law.

[A] 109.6 Refunds.
The *building official* is authorized to establish a refund policy.

SECTION 110
INSPECTIONS

[A] 110.1 General.
Construction or work for which a *permit* is required shall be subject to inspection by the *building official* and such construction or work shall remain accessible and exposed for inspection purposes until *approved*. Approval as a result of an inspection shall not be construed to be an approval of a violation of the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction. Inspections presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction shall not be valid. It shall be the duty of the *owner* or the owner's authorized agent to cause the work to remain accessible and exposed for inspection purposes. Neither the *building official* nor the jurisdiction shall be liable for expense entailed in the removal or replacement of any material required to allow inspection.

[A] 110.2 Preliminary inspection.
Before issuing a *permit*, the *building official* is authorized to examine or cause to be examined buildings, structures and sites for which an application has been filed.

[A] 110.3 Required inspections.
The *building official*, upon notification, shall make the inspections set forth in Sections 110.3.1 through 110.3.10.

[A] 110.3.1 Footing and foundation inspection.
Footing and foundation inspections shall be made after excavations for footings are complete and any required reinforcing steel is in place. For concrete foundations, any required forms shall be in place prior to inspection. Materials for the foundation shall be on the job, except where concrete is ready mixed in accordance with ASTM C94, the concrete need not be on the job.

[A] 110.3.2 Concrete slab and under-floor inspection.
Concrete slab and under-floor inspections shall be made after in-slab or under-floor reinforcing steel and building service equipment, conduit, piping accessories and other ancillary equipment items are in place, but before any concrete is placed or floor sheathing installed, including the subfloor.

[A] 110.3.3 Lowest floor elevation.
In *flood hazard areas*, upon placement of the lowest floor, including the *basement*, and prior to further vertical construction, the elevation certification required in Section 1612.5 shall be submitted to the *building official*.

[A] 110.3.4 Frame inspection.
Framing inspections shall be made after the roof deck or sheathing, all framing, *fireblocking* and bracing are in place and pipes, chimneys and vents to be concealed are complete and the rough electrical, plumbing, heating wires, pipes and ducts are *approved*.

[A] 110.3.5 Lath, gypsum board and gypsum panel product inspection.
Lath, gypsum board and gypsum panel product inspections shall be made after lathing, gypsum board and gypsum panel products, interior and exterior, are in place, but before any plastering is applied or gypsum board and gypsum panel product joints and fasteners are taped and finished.

Exception: Gypsum board and gypsum panel products that are not part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly or a shear assembly.

[A] 110.3.6 Fire- and smoke-resistant penetrations.
Protection of joints and penetrations in *fire-resistancerated* assemblies, *smoke barriers* and smoke partitions shall not be concealed from view until inspected and *approved*.

[A] 110.3.7 Energy efficiency inspections.
Inspections shall be made to determine compliance with Chapter 13 and shall include, but not be limited to, inspections for: envelope insulation R- and U-values, fenestration U-value, duct system R-value, and HVAC and water-heating equipment efficiency.

[A] 110.3.8 Other inspections.
In addition to the inspections specified in Sections 110.3.1 through 110.3.7, the *building official* is authorized to make or require other inspections of any construction work to ascertain compliance with the provisions of this code and other laws that are enforced by the department of building safety.

[A] 110.3.9 Special inspections.
For *special inspections*, see Chapter 17.

[A] 110.3.10 Final inspection.
The final inspection shall be made after all work required by the building *permit* is completed.

[A] 110.3.10.1 Flood hazard documentation.
If located in a *flood hazard area*, documentation of the elevation of the lowest floor as required in Section 1612.5 shall be submitted to the *building official* prior to the final inspection.

[A] 110.4 Inspection agencies.
The *building official* is authorized to accept reports of *approved* inspection agencies, provided such agencies satisfy the requirements as to qualifications and reliability.

[A] 110.5 Inspection requests.
It shall be the duty of the holder of the building *permit* or their duly authorized agent to notify the *building official* when

work is ready for inspection. It shall be the duty of the *permit* holder to provide access to and means for inspections of such work that are required by this code.

[A] 110.6 Approval required.
Work shall not be done beyond the point indicated in each successive inspection without first obtaining the approval of the *building official*. The *building official*, upon notification, shall make the requested inspections and shall either indicate the portion of the construction that is satisfactory as completed, or notify the *permit* holder or his or her agent wherein the same fails to comply with this code. Any portions that do not comply shall be corrected and such portion shall not be covered or concealed until authorized by the *building official*.

SECTION 111
CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY

[A] 111.1 Use and occupancy.
A building or structure shall not be used or occupied, and a change in the existing use or occupancy classification of a building or structure or portion thereof shall not be made, until the *building official* has issued a certificate of occupancy therefor as provided herein. Issuance of a certificate of occupancy shall not be construed as an approval of a violation of the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction.

> **Exception:** Certificates of occupancy are not required for work exempt from *permits* in accordance with Section 105.2.

[A] 111.2 Certificate issued.
After the *building official* inspects the building or structure and does not find violations of the provisions of this code or other laws that are enforced by the department of building safety, the *building official* shall issue a certificate of occupancy that contains the following:

1. The building *permit* number.
2. The address of the structure.
3. The name and address of the *owner* or the owner's authorized agent.
4. A description of that portion of the structure for which the certificate is issued.
5. A statement that the described portion of the structure has been inspected for compliance with the requirements of this code for the occupancy and division of occupancy and the use for which the proposed occupancy is classified.
6. The name of the *building official*.
7. The edition of the code under which the *permit* was issued.
8. The use and occupancy, in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 3.
9. The type of construction as defined in Chapter 6.
10. The design *occupant load*.
11. If an *automatic sprinkler system* is provided, whether the sprinkler system is required.
12. Any special stipulations and conditions of the building *permit*.

[A] 111.3 Temporary occupancy.
The *building official* is authorized to issue a temporary certificate of occupancy before the completion of the entire work covered by the *permit*, provided that such portion or portions shall be occupied safely. The *building official* shall set a time period during which the temporary certificate of occupancy is valid.

[A] 111.4 Revocation.
The *building official* is authorized to, in writing, suspend or revoke a certificate of occupancy or completion issued

under the provisions of this code wherever the certificate is issued in error, or on the basis of incorrect information supplied, or where it is determined that the building or structure or portion thereof is in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of the provisions of this code.

SECTION 112
SERVICE UTILITIES

[A] 112.1 Connection of service utilities.
A person shall not make connections from a utility, source of energy, fuel or power to any building or system that is regulated by this code for which a *permit* is required, until released by the *building official*.

[A] 112.2 Temporary connection.
The *building official* shall have the authority to authorize the temporary connection of the building or system to the utility, source of energy, fuel or power.

[A] 112.3 Authority to disconnect service utilities.
The *building official* shall have the authority to authorize disconnection of utility service to the building, structure or system regulated by this code and the referenced codes and standards set forth in Section 101.4 in case of emergency where necessary to eliminate an immediate hazard to life or property or where such utility connection has been made without the approval required by Section 112.1 or 112.2. The *building official* shall notify the serving utility, and wherever possible the *owner* and occupant of the building, structure or service system of the decision to disconnect prior to taking such action. If not notified prior to disconnecting, the *owner* or occupant of the building, structure or service system shall be notified in writing, as soon as practical thereafter.

SECTION 113
BOARD OF APPEALS

[A] 113.1 General.
In order to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions or determinations made by the *building official* relative to the application and interpretation of this code, there shall be and is hereby created a board of appeals. The board of appeals shall be appointed by the applicable governing authority and shall hold office at its pleasure. The board shall adopt rules of procedure for conducting its business.

[A] 113.2 Limitations on authority.
An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the true intent of this code or the rules legally adopted thereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equally good or better form of construction is proposed. The board shall not have authority to waive requirements of this code.

[A] 113.3 Qualifications.
The board of appeals shall consist of members who are qualified by experience and training to pass on matters pertaining to building construction and are not employees of the jurisdiction.

SECTION 114
VIOLATIONS

[A] 114.1 Unlawful acts.
It shall be unlawful for any person, firm or corporation to erect, construct, alter, extend, *repair*, move, remove, demolish or occupy any building, structure or equipment regulated by this code, or cause same to be done, in conflict with or in violation of any of the provisions of this code.

[A] 114.2 Notice of violation.
The *building official* is authorized to serve a notice of violation or order on the person responsible for the erection, construction, *alteration*, extension, *repair*, moving, removal, demolition or occupancy of a building or structure in violation of the provisions of this code, or in violation of a *permit* or certificate issued under the provisions of this code. Such order shall direct the discontinuance of the illegal action or condition and the abatement of the violation.

[A] 114.3 Prosecution of violation.
If the notice of violation is not complied with promptly, the *building official* is authorized to request the legal counsel of the jurisdiction to institute the appropriate proceeding at law or in equity to restrain, correct or abate such violation, or to require the removal or termination of the unlawful occupancy of the building or structure in violation of the provisions of this code or of the order or direction made pursuant thereto.

[A] 114.4 Violation penalties.
Any person who violates a provision of this code or fails to comply with any of the requirements thereof or who erects, constructs, alters or repairs a building or structure in violation of the *approved construction documents* or directive of the *building official*, or of a *permit* or certificate issued under the provisions of this code, shall be subject to penalties as prescribed by law.

SECTION 115
STOP WORK ORDER

[A] 115.1 Authority.
Where the *building official* finds any work regulated by this code being performed in a manner either contrary to the provisions of this code or dangerous or unsafe, the *building official* is authorized to issue a stop work order.

[A] 115.2 Issuance.
The stop work order shall be in writing and shall be given to the *owner* of the property involved, the owner's authorized agent or the person performing the work. Upon issuance of a stop work order, the cited work shall immediately cease. The stop work order shall state the reason for the order and the conditions under which the cited work will be permitted to resume.

[A] 115.3 Unlawful continuance.
Any person who shall continue any work after having been served with a stop work order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe condition, shall be subject to penalties as prescribed by law.

SECTION 116
UNSAFE STRUCTURES AND EQUIPMENT

[A] 116.1 Conditions.
Structures or existing equipment that are or hereafter become unsafe, insanitary or deficient because of inadequate *means of egress* facilities, inadequate light and ventilation, or that constitute a fire hazard, or are otherwise dangerous to human life or the public welfare, or that involve illegal or improper occupancy or inadequate maintenance, shall be deemed an unsafe condition. Unsafe structures shall be taken down and removed or made safe, as the *building official* deems necessary and as provided for in this section. A vacant structure that is not secured against entry shall be deemed unsafe.

[A] 116.2 Record.
The *building official* shall cause a report to be filed on an unsafe condition. The report shall state the occupancy of the structure and the nature of the unsafe condition.

[A] 116.3 Notice.
If an unsafe condition is found, the *building official* shall serve on the *owner*, agent or person in control of the structure, a written notice that describes the condition deemed unsafe and specifies the required repairs or improvements to be made to abate the unsafe condition, or that requires the unsafe structure to be demolished within a stipulated time. Such notice shall require the person thus notified to declare immediately to the *building official* acceptance or rejection of the terms of the order.

[A] 116.4 Method of service.
Such notice shall be deemed properly served if a copy thereof is (a) delivered to the *owner* personally; (b) sent by certified or registered mail addressed to the *owner* at the last known address with the return receipt requested; or (c) delivered in any other manner as prescribed by local law. If the certified or registered letter is returned showing that the letter was not delivered, a copy thereof shall be posted in a conspicuous place in or about the structure affected by such notice. Service of such notice in the foregoing manner upon the owner's agent or upon the person responsible for the structure shall constitute service of notice upon the *owner*.

[A] 116.5 Restoration.
Where the structure or equipment determined to be unsafe by the *building official* is restored to a safe condition, to the extent that repairs, *alterations* or *additions* are made or a change of occupancy occurs during the restoration of the structure, such *repairs*, *alterations*, *additions* and change of occupancy shall comply with the requirements of Section 105.2.2 and the *International Existing Building Code*.

CHAPTER 2
DEFINITIONS

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [A], [BS] or [F] will be considered by one of the code development committees meeting during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 201
GENERAL

201.1 Scope.
Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this code, have the meanings shown in this chapter.

201.2 Interchangeability.
Words used in the present tense include the future; words stated in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.

201.3 Terms defined in other codes.
Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the *International Energy Conservation Code*, *International Fuel Gas Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Mechanical Code* or *International Plumbing Code,* such terms shall have the meanings ascribed to them as in those codes.

201.4 Terms not defined.
Where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this section, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

SECTION 202
DEFINITIONS

24-HOUR BASIS.
The actual time that a person is an occupant within a facility for the purpose of receiving care. It shall not include a facility that is open for 24 hours and is capable of providing care to someone visiting the facility during any segment of the 24 hours.

[BS] AAC MASONRY. *Masonry* made of autoclaved aerated concrete (AAC) units, manufactured without internal reinforcement and bonded together using thin- or thick-bed *mortar*.

ACCESSIBLE. A *site*, *building*, *facility* or portion thereof that complies with Chapter 11.

ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS. A continuous and unobstructed way of egress travel from any *accessible* point in a *building* or *facility* to a *public way*.

ACCESSIBLE ROUTE. A continuous, unobstructed path that complies with Chapter 11.

ACCESSIBLE UNIT. A *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* that complies with this code and the provisions for Accessible units in ICC A117.1.

ACCREDITATION BODY. An *approved*, third-party organization that is independent of the grading and inspection agencies, and the lumber mills, and that initially accredits and subsequently monitors, on a continuing basis, the competency and performance of a grading or inspection agency related to carrying out specific tasks.

[A] ADDITION. An extension or increase in floor area or height of a building or structure.

[BS] ADHERED MASONRY VENEER. *Veneer* secured and supported through the adhesion of an *approved* bonding material applied to an *approved backing*.

[BS] ADOBE CONSTRUCTION. Construction in which the exterior *load-bearing* and *nonload-bearing walls* and partitions are of unfired clay *masonry units*, and floors, roofs and interior framing are wholly or partly of wood or other *approved* materials.

> **Adobe, stabilized.** Unfired clay *masonry units* to which admixtures, such as emulsified asphalt, are added during the manufacturing process to limit the units' water absorption so as to increase their durability.
>
> **Adobe, unstabilized.** Unfired clay *masonry units* that do not meet the definition of "Adobe, stabilized."

ADULT FAMILY HOME. A dwelling, licensed by Washington State, in which a person or persons provide personal care, special care, room and board to more than one but not more than six adults who are not related by blood or marriage to the person or persons providing the services.

[F] AEROSOL. A product that is dispensed from an *aerosol container* by a propellant. Aerosol products shall be classified by means of the calculation of their chemical heats of combustion and shall be designated Level 1, Level 2 or Level 3.

> **Level 1 aerosol products.** Those with a total chemical heat of combustion that is less than or equal to 8,600 British thermal units per pound (Btu/lb) (20 kJ/g).
>
> **Level 2 aerosol products.** Those with a total chemical heat of combustion that is greater than 8,600 Btu/lb (20 kJ/ g), but less than or equal to 13,000 Btu/lb (30 kJ/g).
>
> **Level 3 aerosol products.** Those with a total chemical heat of combustion that is greater than 13,000 Btu/lb (30 kJ/g).

[F] AEROSOL CONTAINER. A metal can or a glass or plastic bottle designed to dispense an aerosol.

[BS] AGGREGATE. In roofing, crushed stone, crushed slag or water-worn gravel used for surfacing for *roof coverings.*

AGRICULTURAL BUILDING. A structure designed and constructed to house farm implements, hay, grain, poultry, livestock or other horticultural products. This structure shall not be a place of human habitation or a place of employment where agricultural products are processed, treated or packaged, nor shall it be a place used by the public.

AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION. An insulation having an air permeance equal to or less than 0.02 l/s × m^2 at 75 pa pressure differential tested in accordance with ASTM E2178 or ASTM E283.

AIR-INFLATED STRUCTURE. A structure that uses air-pressurized membrane beams, arches or other elements to enclose space. Occupants of such a structure do not occupy the pressurized area used to support the structure.

AIR-SUPPORTED STRUCTURE. A structure wherein the shape of the structure is attained by air pressure and occupants of the structure are within the elevated pressure area. Air-supported structures are of two basic types:

> **Double skin.** Similar to a single skin, but with an attached liner that is separated from the outer skin and provides an airspace which serves for insulation, acoustic, aesthetic or similar purposes.
>
> **Single skin.** Where there is only the single outer skin and the air pressure is directly against that skin.

AISLE. An unenclosed *exit access* component that defines and provides a path of egress travel.

AISLE ACCESSWAY. That portion of an *exit access* that leads to an *aisle*.

[F] ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE. A *fire alarm system* component such as a bell, horn, speaker, light or text display that provides audible, tactile or visible outputs, or any combination thereof.

[F] ALARM SIGNAL. A signal indicating an emergency requiring immediate action, such as a signal indicative of fire.

[F] ALARM VERIFICATION FEATURE. A feature of *automatic* fire detection and alarm systems to reduce unwanted alarms wherein *smoke detectors* report alarm conditions for a minimum period of time, or confirm alarm conditions within a given time period, after being *automatically* reset, in order to be accepted as a valid alarm-initiation signal.

ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN. A method of proportioning structural members, such that elastically computed stresses produced in the members by *nominal loads* do not exceed *specified* allowable stresses (also called “working stress design”).

[A] ALTERATION. Any construction or renovation to an *existing structure* other than *repair* or *addition*.

ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICE. A device that has a series of steps between 50 and 70 degrees (0.87 and 1.22 rad) from horizontal, usually attached to a center support rail in an alternating manner so that the user does not have both feet on the same level at the same time.

AMBULATORY CARE FACILITY. Buildings or portions thereof used to provide medical, surgical, psychiatric, nursing or similar care on a less than 24-hour basis to persons who are rendered *incapable of self-preservation* by the services provided.

ANCHOR BUILDING. An exterior perimeter building of a group other than H having direct access to a *covered or open mall building* but having required *means of egress* independent of the mall.

[BS] ANCHORED MASONRY VENEER. *Veneer* secured with *approved* mechanical fasteners to an *approved backing.*

ANNULAR SPACE. The opening around the penetrating item.

[F] ANNUNCIATOR. A unit containing one or more indicator lamps, alphanumeric displays or other equivalent means in which each indication provides status information about a circuit, condition or location.

[A] APPROVED. Acceptable to the *building official*.

[A] APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, where such agency has been *approved* by the *building official*.

[BS] APPROVED FABRICATOR. An established and qualified person, firm or corporation *approved* by the *building official* pursuant to Chapter 17 of this code.

[A] APPROVED SOURCE. An independent person, firm or corporation, *approved* by the *building official*, who is competent and experienced in the application of engineering principles to materials, methods or systems analyses.

[BS] AREA (for masonry).

Gross cross-sectional. The *area* delineated by the out-toout *specified* dimensions of *masonry* in the plane under consideration.

Net cross-sectional. The *area* of *masonry units*, grout and *mortar* crossed by the plane under consideration based on out-to-out *specified* dimensions.

AREA, BUILDING. The area included within surrounding *exterior walls* (or *exterior walls* and *fire walls*) exclusive of vent *shafts* and *courts*. Areas of the building not provided with surrounding walls shall be included in the building area if such areas are included within the horizontal projection of the roof or floor above.

AREA OF REFUGE. An area where persons unable to use *stairways* can remain temporarily to await instructions or assistance during emergency evacuation.

AREA OF SPORT ACTIVITY. That portion of an indoor or outdoor space where the play or practice of a sport occurs.

AREAWAY. A subsurface space adjacent to a building open at the top or protected at the top by a grating or *guard*.

ASSEMBLY SEATING, MULTILEVEL. See “Multilevel assembly seating.”

ASSISTED LIVING FACILITY. A home or other institution, licensed by the state of Washington, providing housing, basic services and assuming general responsibility for the safety and well-being of residents under chapters 18.20 RCW and 388-78A WAC. These facilities may provide care to residents with symptoms consistent with dementia requiring additional security measures.

ATRIUM. An opening connecting two or more *stories* other than enclosed *stairways*, elevators, hoistways, escalators, plumbing, electrical, air-conditioning or other equipment, which is closed at the top and not defined as a mall. *Stories*, as used in this definition, do not include balconies within assembly groups or *mezzanines* that comply with Section 505.

ATTIC. The space between the ceiling beams of the top *story* and the roof rafters.

[F] AUDIBLE ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE. A notification appliance that alerts by the sense of hearing.

AUTOCLAVED AERATED CONCRETE (AAC). Low density cementitious product of calcium silicate hydrates, whose material specifications are defined in ASTM C1386.

[F] AUTOMATIC. As applied to fire protection devices, a device or system providing an emergency function without the necessity for human intervention and activated as a result of a predetermined temperature rise, rate of temperature rise or combustion products.

[F] AUTOMATIC FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM. An *approved* system of devices and equipment which *automatically* detects a fire and discharges an *approved* fire-extinguishing agent onto or in the area of a fire.

[F] AUTOMATIC SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEM. A *fire alarm system* that has initiation devices that utilize *smoke detectors* for protection of an area such as a room or space with detectors to provide early warning of fire.

[F] AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEM. An *automatic sprinkler system*, for fire protection purposes, is an integrated system of underground and overhead piping designed in accordance with fire protection engineering standards. The system includes a suitable water supply. The portion of the system above the ground is a network of specially sized or hydraulically designed piping installed in a structure or area, generally overhead, and to which *automatic* sprinklers are connected in a systematic pattern. The system is usually activated by heat from a fire and discharges water over the fire area.

[F] AUTOMATIC WATER MIST SYSTEM. A system consisting of a water supply, a pressure source, and a distribution piping system with attached nozzles, which, at or above a minimum operating pressure, defined by its listing, discharges water in fine droplets meeting the requirements of NFPA 750 for the purpose of the control, suppression or extinguishment of a fire. Such systems include wet-pipe, dry pipe and pre-action types. The systems are designed as engineered, pre-engineered, local-application or total-flooding systems.

[F] AVERAGE AMBIENT SOUND LEVEL. The root mean square, A-weighted sound pressure level measured over a 24-hour period, or the time any person is present, whichever time period is less.

AWNING. An architectural projection that provides weather protection, identity or decoration and is partially or wholly supported by the building to which it is attached. An awning is comprised of a lightweight *frame structure* over which a covering is attached.

BACKING. The wall or surface to which the *veneer* is secured.

BALANCED DOOR. A door equipped with double-pivoted hardware so designed as to cause a semi-counterbalanced swing action when opening.

[F] BALED COTTON. A natural seed fiber wrapped in and secured with industry accepted materials, usually consisting of burlap, woven polypropylene, polyethylene or cotton or sheet polyethylene, and secured with steel, synthetic or wire bands or wire; also includes linters (lint removed from the cottonseed) and motes (residual materials from the ginning process).

[F] BALED COTTON, DENSELY PACKED. Cotton made into banded bales with a packing density of not less than 22 pounds per cubic foot (360 kg/m^3), and dimensions complying with the following: a length of 55 inches (1397 mm), a width of 21 inches (533.4 mm) and a height of 27.6 to 35.4 inches (701 to 899 mm).

[BS] BALLAST. In roofing, ballast comes in the form of large stones or paver systems or light-weight interlocking paver systems and is used to provide uplift resistance for roofing systems that are not adhered or mechanically attached to the *roof deck*.

[F] BARRICADE. A structure that consists of a combination of walls, floor and roof, which is designed to withstand the rapid release of energy in an *explosion* and which is fully confined, partially vented or fully vented; or other effective method of shielding from explosive materials by a natural or artificial barrier.

> **Artificial barricade.** An artificial mound or revetment a minimum thickness of 3 feet (914 mm).
>
> **Natural barricade.** Natural features of the ground, such as hills, or timber of sufficient density that the surrounding exposures that require protection cannot be seen from the magazine or building containing explosives when the trees are bare of leaves.

[BS] BASE FLOOD. The *flood* having a 1-percent chance of being equaled or exceeded in any given year.

[BS] BASE FLOOD ELEVATION. The elevation of the *base flood*, including wave height, relative to the National Geodetic Vertical Datum (NGVD), North American Vertical Datum (NAVD) or other datum specified on the *Flood Insurance Rate Map* (FIRM).

[BS] BASEMENT (for flood loads). The portion of a building having its floor subgrade (below ground level) on all sides. This definition of “Basement” is limited in application to the provisions of Section 1612.

BASEMENT. A *story* that is not a *story above grade plane* (see "*Story above grade plane"*). This definition of "Basement" does not apply to the provisions of Section 1612 for flood *loads.*

BEARING WALL STRUCTURE. A building or other structure in which vertical *loads* from floors and roofs are primarily supported by walls.

[BS] BED JOINT. The horizontal layer of *mortar* on which a *masonry unit* is laid.

BLEACHERS. Tiered seating supported on a dedicated structural system and two or more rows high and is not a building element (see "*Grandstand"*).

BOARDING HOUSE. A building arranged or used for lodging for compensation, with or without meals, and not occupied as a single-family unit.

[F] BOILING POINT. The temperature at which the vapor pressure of a *liquid* equals the atmospheric pressure of 14.7 pounds per square inch (psia) (101 kPa) or 760 mm of mercury. Where an accurate boiling point is unavailable for the material in question, or for mixtures which do not have a constant boiling point, for the purposes of this classification, the 20-percent evaporated point of a distillation performed in accordance with ASTM D86 shall be used as the boiling point of the *liquid*.

BOTTLE FILLING STATION. A plumbing fixture connected to the potable water distribution system and sanitary drainage system that is designed and intended for filling personal use drinking water bottles or containers not less than 10 inches (254mm) in height. Such fixtures can be separate from or integral to a drinking fountain and can incorporate a water filter and a cooling system for chilling the drinking water.

[BS] BRACED WALL LINE. A straight line through the building plan that represents the location of the lateral resistance provided by the wall bracing.

[BS] BRACED WALL PANEL. A full-height section of wall constructed to resist in-plane shear loads through interaction of framing members, sheathing material and anchors. The panel's length meets the requirements of its particular bracing method and contributes toward the total amount of bracing required along its *braced wall line*.

BREAKOUT. For revolving doors, a process whereby wings or door panels can be pushed open manually for *means of egress* travel.

[BS] BRICK.

Calcium silicate (sand lime brick). A pressed and subsequently autoclaved unit that consists of sand and lime, with or without the inclusion of other materials.

Clay or shale. A solid or hollow *masonry unit* of clay or shale, usually formed into a rectangular *prism*, then burned or fired in a kiln; brick is a ceramic product.

Concrete. A concrete *masonry unit* made from Portland cement, water, and suitable aggregates, with or without the inclusion of other materials.

[A] BUILDING. Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy.

BUILDING AREA. See “Area, building.”

BUILDING ELEMENT. A fundamental component of building construction, listed in Table 601, which may or may not be of fire-resistance-rated construction and is constructed of materials based on the building type of construction.

BUILDING HEIGHT. See “Height, building.”

BUILDING-INTEGRATED PHOTOVOLTAIC (BIPV) PRODUCT. A building product that incorporates photovoltaic modules and functions as a component of the building envelope.

BUILDING LINE. The line established by law, beyond which a building shall not extend, except as specifically provided by law.

[A] BUILDING OFFICIAL. The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

[BS] BUILT-UP ROOF COVERING. Two or more layers of felt cemented together and surfaced with a cap sheet, mineral *aggregate*, smooth coating or similar surfacing material.

CABLE-RESTRAINED, AIR-SUPPORTED STRUCTURE. A structure in which the uplift is resisted by cables or webbings which are anchored to either foundations or dead men. Reinforcing cable or webbing is attached by various methods to the membrane or is an integral part of the membrane. This is not a cable-supported structure.

CANOPY. A permanent structure or architectural projection of rigid construction over which a covering is attached that provides weather protection, identity or decoration. A canopy is permitted to be structurally independent or supported by attachment to a building on one or more sides.

[F] CARBON DIOXIDE EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS. A system supplying carbon dioxide (CO2) from a pressurized vessel through fixed pipes and nozzles. The system includes a manual- or *automatic*-actuating mechanism.

CARE SUITE. In Group I-2 occupancies, a group of treatment rooms, care recipient sleeping rooms and the support rooms or spaces and circulation space within the suite where staff are in attendance for supervision of all care recipients within the suite, and the suite is in compliance with the requirements of Section 407.4.4.

[BS] CAST STONE. A building stone manufactured from Portland cement concrete precast and used as a *trim*, *veneer* or facing on or in buildings or structures.

[F] CEILING LIMIT. The maximum concentration of an air-borne contaminant to which one may be exposed. The ceiling limits utilized are those published in DOL 29 CFR Part 1910.1000. The ceiling Recommended Exposure Limit (REL-C) concentrations published by the U.S. National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), Threshold Limit Value—Ceiling (TLV-C) concentrations published by the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH), Ceiling Workplace Environmental Exposure Level (WEEL-Ceiling) Guides published

by the American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA), and other *approved*, consistent measures are allowed as surrogates for hazardous substances not listed in DOL 29 CFR Part 1910.1000.

CEILING RADIATION DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in a ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly to limit *automatically* the radiative heat transfer through an air inlet/outlet opening. Ceiling radiation dampers include air terminal units, ceiling dampers and ceiling air diffusers.

CELL (Group I-3 occupancy). A room within a housing unit in a detention or correctional facility used to confine inmates or prisoners.

[BS] CELL (masonry). A void space having a gross cross-sectional *area* greater than $1^1/_2$ square inches (967 mm^2).

CELL TIER. Levels of *cells* vertically stacked above one another within a *housing unit*.

[BS] CEMENT PLASTER. A mixture of Portland or blended cement, Portland cement or blended cement and hydrated lime, masonry cement or plastic cement and aggregate and other *approved* materials as specified in this code.

CERAMIC FIBER BLANKET. A high-temperature *mineral wool* insulation material made of alumina-silica ceramic or calcium magnesium silicate soluble fibers and weighing 4 to 10 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) (64 to 160 kg/m^3).

CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE. A certificate stating that materials and products meet specified standards or that work was done in compliance with *approved construction documents*.

[A] CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY. A change in the purpose or level of activity within a building that involves a change in application of the requirements of this code.

[M] CHIMNEY. A primarily vertical structure containing one or more flues, for the purpose of carrying gaseous products of combustion and air from a fuel-burning appliance to the outdoor atmosphere.

CHILD CARE. The care of children during any period of a 24-hour day.

CHILD CARE, FAMILY HOME. A child care facility, licensed by Washington state, located in the dwelling of the person or persons under whose direct care and supervision the child is placed, for the care of twelve or fewer children, including children who reside at the home.

Factory-built chimney. A *listed* and *labeled chimney* composed of factory-made components, assembled in the field in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the conditions of the listing.

Masonry chimney. A field-constructed *chimney* composed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones, or concrete.

Metal chimney. A field-constructed *chimney* of metal.

[M] CHIMNEY TYPES.

High-heat appliance type. An *approved* chimney for removing the products of combustion from fuel-burning, high-heat appliances producing combustion gases in excess of 2000°F (1093°C) measured at the appliance flue outlet (see Section 2113.11.3).

Low-heat appliance type. An *approved* chimney for removing the products of combustion from fuel-burning, low-heat appliances producing combustion gases not in excess of 1000°F (538°C) under normal operating conditions, but capable of producing combustion gases of 1400°F (760°C) during intermittent forces firing for periods up to 1 hour. Temperatures shall be measured at the appliance flue outlet.

Masonry type. A field-constructed chimney of solid *masonry units* or stones.

Medium-heat appliance type. An *approved* chimney for removing the products of combustion from fuel-burning, medium-heat appliances producing combustion gases not exceeding 2000°F (1093°C) measured at the appliance flue outlet (see Section 2113.11.2).

CIRCULATION PATH. An exterior or interior way of passage from one place to another for pedestrians.

[F] CLEAN AGENT. Electrically nonconducting, volatile or gaseous fire extinguishant that does not leave a residue upon vaporation.

[E] CLIMATE ZONE. A geographical region that has been assigned climatic criteria as specified in ~~Chapters 3CE and 3RE of the *International Energy Conservation Code*.~~ the Washington State Energy Code.

CLINIC, OUTPATIENT. Buildings or portions thereof used to provide *medical care* on less than a 24-hour basis to persons who are not rendered *incapable of self-preservation* by the services provided.

[F] CLOSED SYSTEM. The *use* of a *solid* or *liquid hazardous material* involving a closed vessel or system that remains closed during normal operations where vapors emitted by the product are not liberated outside of the vessel or system and the product is not exposed to the atmosphere during normal operations; and all *uses* of *compressed gases*. Examples of closed systems for *solids* and *liquids* include product conveyed through a piping system into a closed vessel, system or piece of equipment.

CLUSTER. Clusters are multiple portable school classrooms separated by less than the requirements of the building code for separate buildings.

[BS] COASTAL A ZONE. Area within a *special flood hazard area*, landward of a V zone or landward of an open coast without mapped *coastal high hazard areas.* In a coastal A zone, the principal source of flooding must be astronomical tides, storm surges, seiches or tsunamis, not riverine flooding. During the base flood conditions, the potential for breaking wave height shall

be greater than or equal to $1^1/_2$ feet (457 mm). The inland limit of the coastal A zone is (a) the Limit of Moderate Wave Action if delineated on a FIRM, or (b) designated by the authority having jurisdiction.

[BS] COASTAL HIGH HAZARD AREA. Area within the *special flood hazard area* extending from offshore to the inland limit of a primary dune along an open coast and any other area that is subject to high-velocity wave action from storms or seismic sources, and shown on a Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM) or other flood hazard map as velocity Zone V, VO, VE or V1-30.

[BS] COLLAR JOINT. Vertical longitudinal space between *wythes* of *masonry* or between *masonry wythe* and backup construction that is permitted to be filled with *mortar* or grout.

[BS] COLLECTOR. A horizontal *diaphragm* element parallel and in line with the applied force that collects and transfers *diaphragm* shear forces to the vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system or distributes forces within the *diaphragm*, or both.

COMBINATION FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to close *automatically* upon the detection of heat and resist the passage of flame and smoke. The device is installed to operate *automatically*, controlled by a smoke detection system, and where required, is capable of being positioned from a *fire command center*

[F] COMBUSTIBLE DUST. Finely divided *solid* material that is 420 microns or less in diameter and which, when dispersed in air in the proper proportions, could be ignited by a flame, spark or other source of ignition. Combustible dust will pass through a U.S. No. 40 standard sieve.

[F] COMBUSTIBLE FIBERS. Readily ignitable and free-burning materials in a fibrous or shredded form, such as cocoa fiber, cloth, cotton, excelsior, hay, hemp, henequen, istle, jute, kapok, oakum, rags, sisal, Spanish moss, straw, tow, wastepaper, certain synthetic fibers or other like materials. This definition does not include densely packed baled cotton.

[F] COMBUSTIBLE LIQUID. A *liquid* having a closed cup *flash point* at or above 100°F (38°C). Combustible liquids shall be subdivided as follows:

Class II. *Liquids* having a closed cup *flash point* at or above 100°F (38°C) and below 140°F (60°C).
Class IIIA. *Liquids* having a closed cup *flash point* at or above 140°F (60°C) and below 200°F (93°C).
Class IIIB. *Liquids* having a closed cup *flash point* at or above 200°F (93°C).

The category of combustible liquids does not include *compressed gases* or *cryogenic fluids*.

COMMERCIAL MOTOR VEHICLE. A motor vehicle used to transport passengers or property where the motor vehicle:

1. Has a gross vehicle weight rating of 10,000 pounds (4540 kg) or more; or

2. Is designed to transport 16 or more passengers, including the driver.

COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL. That portion of the *exit access* travel distance measured from the most remote point within a *story* to that point where the occupants have separate and distinct access to two *exits* or *exit access* doorways.

COMMON USE. Interior or exterior *circulation paths*, rooms, spaces or elements that are not for public use and are made available for the shared use of two or more people.

[F] COMPRESSED GAS. A material, or mixture of materials, that:

1. Is a gas at 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 pounds per square inch atmosphere (psia) (101 kPa) of pressure; and

2. Has a *boiling point* of 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 psia (101 kPa) which is either liquefied, nonliquefied or in solution, except those gases which have no other health- or physical-hazard properties are not considered to be compressed until the pressure in the packaging exceeds 41 psia (282 kPa) at 68°F (20°C).

The states of a compressed gas are categorized as follows:

1. Nonliquefied compressed gases are gases, other than those in solution, which are in a packaging under the charged pressure and are entirely gaseous at a temperature of 68°F (20°C).

2. Liquefied compressed gases are gases that, in a packaging under the charged pressure, are partially *liquid* at a temperature of 68°F (20°C).

3. Compressed gases in solution are nonliquefied gases that are dissolved in a solvent.

4. Compressed gas mixtures consist of a mixture of two or more compressed gases contained in a packaging, the hazard properties of which are represented by the properties of the mixture as a whole.

[BS] CONCRETE.

Carbonate aggregate. Concrete made with aggregates consisting mainly of calcium or magnesium carbonate, such as limestone or dolomite, and containing 40 percent or less quartz, chert or flint.

Cellular. A lightweight insulating concrete made by mixing a preformed foam with Portland cement slurry and having a dry unit weight of approximately 30 pcf (480 kg/ m^3).

Lightweight aggregate. Concrete made with aggregates of expanded clay, shale, slag or slate or sintered fly ash or any natural lightweight aggregate meeting ASTM C330 and possessing equivalent fire-resistance properties and weighing 85 to 115 pcf (1360 to 1840 kg/m^3).

Perlite. A lightweight insulating concrete having a dry unit weight of approximately 30 pcf (480 kg/m^3) made with perlite concrete aggregate. Perlite aggregate is produced from a volcanic rock which, when heated, expands to form a glass-like material of cellular structure.

Sand-lightweight. Concrete made with a combination of expanded clay, shale, slag, slate, sintered fly ash, or any natural lightweight aggregate meeting ASTM C330 and possessing equivalent fire-resistance properties and natural sand. Its unit weight is generally between 105 and 120 pcf (1680 and 1920 kg/m^3).

Siliceous aggregate. Concrete made with normal-weight aggregates consisting mainly of silica or compounds other than calcium or magnesium carbonate, which contains more than 40-percent quartz, chert or flint.

Vermiculite. A light weight insulating concrete made with vermiculite concrete aggregate which is laminated micaceous material produced by expanding the ore at high temperatures. When added to a Portland cement slurry the resulting concrete has a dry unit weight of approximately 30 pcf (480 kg/m^3).

CONGREGATE LIVING FACILITIES. A building or part thereof that contains *sleeping units* where residents share bathroom or kitchen facilities, or both.

[F] CONSTANTLY ATTENDED LOCATION. A designated location at a facility staffed by trained personnel on a continuous basis where alarm or supervisory signals are monitored and facilities are provided for notification of the fire department or other emergency services.

[A] CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS. Written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of a project necessary for obtaining a building *permit*.

CONSTRUCTION TYPES. See Section 602.

Type I. See Section 602.2.

Type II. See Section 602.2.

Type III. See Section 602.3.

Type IV. See Section 602.4.

Type V. See Section 602.5.

[F] CONTINUOUS GAS DETECTION SYSTEM. A gas detection system where the analytical instrument is maintained in continuous operation and sampling is performed without interruption. Analysis is allowed to be performed on a cyclical basis at intervals not to exceed 30 minutes.

[F] CONTROL AREA. Spaces within a building where quantities of *hazardous materials* not exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area are stored, dispensed, *used* or handled. See the definition of “Outdoor control area” in the *International Fire Code*.

CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL. A self-compacted, cementitious material used primarily as a backfill in place of compacted fill.

CONVENTIONAL LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION. A type of construction whose primary structural elements are formed by a system of repetitive wood-framing members. See Section 2308 for conventional light-frame construction provisions.

CORNICE. A projecting horizontal molded element located at or near the top of an architectural feature.

CORRIDOR. An enclosed *exit access* component that defines and provides a path of egress travel.

CORRIDOR, OPEN-ENDED. See "Open-ended corridor."

CORRIDOR DAMPER. A *listed* device intended for use where air ducts penetrate or terminate at horizontal openings in the ceilings of fire-resistance-rated corridors, where the corridor ceiling is permitted to be constructed as required for the corridor walls.

[BS] CORROSION RESISTANCE. The ability of a material to withstand deterioration of its surface or its properties when exposed to its environment.

[F] CORROSIVE. A chemical that causes visible destruction of, or irreversible alterations in, living tissue by chemical action at the point of contact. A chemical shall be considered corrosive if, when tested on the intact skin of albino rabbits by the method described in DOTn 49 CFR, Part 173.137, such chemical destroys or changes irreversibly the structure of the tissue at the point of contact following an exposure period of 4 hours. This term does not refer to action on inanimate surfaces.

COURT. An open, uncovered space, unobstructed to the sky, bounded on three or more sides by exterior building walls or other enclosing devices.

COVERED MALL BUILDING. A single building enclosing a number of tenants and occupants, such as retail stores, drinking and dining establishments, entertainment and amusement facilities, passenger transportation terminals, offices and other similar uses wherein two or more tenants have a main entrance into one or more malls. *Anchor buildings* shall not be considered as a part of the covered mall building. The term "covered mall building" shall include *open mall buildings* as defined below.

> **Mall.** A roofed or covered common pedestrian area within a *covered mall building* that serves as access for two or more tenants and not to exceed three levels that are open to each other. The term "mall" shall include open malls as defined below.
>
> **Open mall.** An unroofed common pedestrian way serving a number of tenants not exceeding three levels. Circulation at levels above grade shall be permitted to include open exterior balconies leading to *exits* discharging at grade.
>
> **Open mall building.** Several structures housing a number of tenants, such as retail stores, drinking and dining establishments, entertainment and amusement facilities, offices, and other similar uses, wherein two or more tenants have a main entrance into one or more open malls. *Anchor buildings* are not considered as a part of the open mall building.

[BS] CRIPPLE WALL. A framed stud wall extending from the top of the foundation to the underside of floor framing for the lowest occupied floor level.

[F] CRITICAL CIRCUIT. A circuit that requires continuous operation to ensure safety of the structure and occupants.

[BS] CROSS-LAMINATED TIMBER. A prefabricated engineered wood product consisting of not less than three layers of solid-sawn lumber or *structural composite lumber* where the adjacent layers are cross oriented and bonded with structural adhesive to form a solid wood element.

[F] CRYOGENIC FLUID. A *liquid* having a *boiling point* lower than -150°F (-101°C) at 14.7 pounds per square inch atmosphere (psia) (an absolute pressure of 101 kPa).

CUSTODIAL CARE. Assistance with day-to-day living tasks; such as assistance with cooking, taking medication, bathing, using toilet facilities and other tasks of daily living. Custodial care includes persons receiving care who have the ability to respond to emergency situations and evacuate at a slower rate and/or who have mental and psychiatric complications.

[BS] DALLE GLASS. A decorative composite glazing material made of individual pieces of glass that are embedded in a cast matrix of concrete or epoxy.

DAMPER. See "*Ceiling radiation damper*," "*Combination fire/smoke damper*," "*Corridor damper*," "*Fire damper"* and "*Smoke damper*."

[BS] DANGEROUS. Any building, structure or portion thereof that meets any of the conditions described below shall be deemed dangerous:

1. The building or structure has collapsed, has partially collapsed, has moved off its foundation or lacks the necessary support of the ground.

2. There exists a significant risk of collapse, detachment or dislodgment of any portion, member, appurtenance or ornamentation of the building or structure under service loads.

[F] DAY BOX. A portable magazine designed to hold explosive materials constructed in accordance with the requirements for a Type 3 magazine as defined and classified in Chapter 56 of the *International Fire Code*.

[BS] DEAD LOAD. The weight of materials of construction incorporated into the building, including but not limited to walls, floors, roofs, ceilings, *stairways*, built-in partitions, finishes, cladding and other similarly incorporated architectural and structural items, and the weight of fixed service equipment, such as cranes, plumbing stacks and risers, electrical feeders, heating, ventilating and air-conditioning systems and *automatic sprinkler systems*.

[BS] DECORATIVE GLASS. A carved, leaded or *Dalle glass* or glazing material whose purpose is decorative or artistic, not functional; whose coloring, texture or other design qualities or components cannot be removed without destroying the glazing material and whose surface, or assembly into which it is incorporated, is divided into segments.

[F] DECORATIVE MATERIALS. All materials applied over the building *interior finish* for decorative, acoustical or other effect including, but not limited to, curtains, draperies, fabrics and streamers; and all other materials utilized for decorative effect including, but not limited to, bulletin boards, artwork, posters, photographs, batting, cloth, cotton, hay, stalks, straw, vines,

leaves, trees, moss and similar items, foam plastics and materials containing foam plastics. Decorative materials do not include wall coverings, ceiling coverings, floor coverings, ordinary window shades, *interior finish* and materials 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) or less in thickness applied directly to and adhering tightly to a substrate.

[BS] DEEP FOUNDATION. A deep foundation is a foundation element that does not satisfy the definition of a *shallow foundation*.

DEFEND-IN-PLACE. A method of emergency response that engages building components and trained staff to provide occupant safety during an emergency. Emergency response involves remaining in place, relocating within the building, or both, without evacuating the building.

[A] DEFERRED SUBMITTAL. Those portions of the design that are not submitted at the time of the application and that are to be submitted to the *building official* within a specified period.

[F] DEFLAGRATION. An exothermic reaction, such as the extremely rapid oxidation of a flammable dust or vapor in air, in which the reaction progresses through the unburned material at a rate less than the velocity of sound. A deflagration can have an explosive effect.

[F] DELUGE SYSTEM. A sprinkler system employing open sprinklers attached to a piping system connected to a water supply through a valve that is opened by the operation of a detection system installed in the same areas as the sprinklers. When this valve opens, water flows into the piping system and discharges from all sprinklers attached thereto.

[BS] DESIGN DISPLACEMENT. See Section 1905.1.1.

[BS] DESIGN EARTHQUAKE GROUND MOTION. The earthquake ground motion that buildings and structures are specifically proportioned to resist in Section 1613.

[BS] DESIGN FLOOD. The *flood* associated with the greater of the following two areas:

1. Area with a flood plain subject to a 1-percent or greater chance of *flooding* in any year.

2. Area designated as a *flood hazard area* on a community's flood hazard map, or otherwise legally designated.

[BS] DESIGN FLOOD ELEVATION. The elevation of the "*design flood*," including wave height, relative to the datum specified on the community's legally designated flood hazard map. In areas designated as Zone AO, the *design flood elevation* shall be the elevation of the highest existing grade of the building's perimeter plus the depth number (in feet) specified on the flood hazard map. In areas designated as Zone AO where a depth number is not specified on the map, the depth number shall be taken as being equal to 2 feet (610 mm).

[A] DESIGN PROFESSIONAL, REGISTERED. See "Registered design professional."

[A] DESIGN PROFESSIONAL IN RESPONSIBLE CHARGE, REGISTERED. See "Registered design professional in responsible charge."

[BS] DESIGN STRENGTH. The product of the nominal strength and a *resistance factor* (or strength reduction factor).

[BS] DESIGNATED SEISMIC SYSTEM. Those non-structural components that require design in accordance with Chapter 13 of ASCE 7 and for which the component importance factor, I_p, is greater than 1 in accordance with Section 13.1.3 of ASCE 7.

[F] DETACHED BUILDING. A separate single-*story* building, without a basement or crawl space, used for the storage or *use* of *hazardous materials* and located an *approved* distance from all structures.

[BS] DETAILED PLAIN CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL. See Section 1905.1.1

DETECTABLE WARNING. A standardized surface feature built in or applied to walking surfaces or other elements to warn visually impaired persons of hazards on a *circulation path*.

[F] DETECTOR, HEAT. A fire detector that senses heat— either abnormally high temperature or rate of rise, or both.

[F] DETONATION. An exothermic reaction characterized by the presence of a shock wave in the material which establishes and maintains the reaction. The reaction zone progresses through the material at a rate greater than the velocity of sound. The principal heating mechanism is one of shock compression. Detonations have an explosive effect.

DETOXIFICATION FACILITIES. Facilities that provide treatment for substance abuse, serving care recipients who are *incapable of self-preservation* or who are harmful to themselves or others.

[BS] DIAPHRAGM. A horizontal or sloped system acting to transmit lateral forces to vertical elements of the lateral force resisting system. When the term “diaphragm” is used, it shall include horizontal bracing systems.

Diaphragm, blocked. In *light-frame construction*, a diaphragm in which all sheathing edges not occurring on a framing member are supported on and fastened to blocking.

Diaphragm boundary. In *light-frame construction,* a location where shear is transferred into or out of the diaphragm sheathing. Transfer is either to a boundary element or to another force-resisting element.

Diaphragm chord. A diaphragm boundary element perpendicular to the applied load that is assumed to take axial stresses due to the diaphragm moment.

Diaphragm, unblocked. A diaphragm that has edge nailing at supporting members only. Blocking between supporting structural members at panel edges is not included. Diaphragm panels are field nailed to supporting members.

DIMENSIONS (for Chapter 21).

Nominal. The *specified dimension* plus an allowance for the *joints* with which the units are to be laid. Nominal dimensions are usually stated in whole numbers. Thickness is given first, followed by height and then length.

Specified. Dimensions specified for the manufacture or construction of a unit, *joint* or element.

DIRECT ACCESS. A path of travel from a space to an immediately adjacent space through an opening in the common wall between the two spaces.

[F] DISPENSING. The pouring or transferring of any material from a container, tank or similar vessel, whereby vapors, dusts, fumes, mists or gases are liberated to the atmosphere.

DOOR, BALANCED. See “Balanced door.”

DOOR, LOW-ENERGY POWER-OPERATED. See “Low-energy power-operated door.”

DOOR, POWER-ASSISTED. See “Power-assisted door.”

DOOR, POWER-OPERATED. See “Power-operated door.”

DOORWAY, EXIT ACCESS. See “Exit access doorway.”

DORMITORY. A space in a building where group sleeping accommodations are provided in one room, or in a series of closely associated rooms, for persons not members of the same family group, under joint occupancy and single management, as in college dormitories or fraternity houses.

DRAFTSTOP. A material, device or construction installed to restrict the movement of air within open spaces of concealed areas of building components such as crawl spaces, floor/ceiling assemblies, roof/ceiling assemblies and *attics*.

[BS] DRAG STRUT. See “Collector.”

[BS] DRILLED SHAFT. A cast-in-place deep foundation element constructed by drilling a hole (with or without permanent casing) into soil or rock and filling it with fluid concrete.

Socketed drilled shaft. A drilled shaft with a permanent pipe or tube casing that extends down to bedrock and an uncased socket drilled into the bedrock.

[F] DRY-CHEMICAL EXTINGUISHING AGENT. A powder composed of small particles, usually of sodium bicarbonate, potassium bicarbonate, urea-potassium-based bicarbonate, potassium chloride or monoammonium phosphate, with added particulate material supplemented by special treatment to provide resistance to packing, resistance to moisture absorption (caking) and the proper flow capabilities.

[BS] DRY FLOODPROOFING. A combination of design modifications that results in a building or structure, including the attendant utilities and equipment and sanitary facilities, being water tight with walls substantially impermeable to the passage of water and with structural components having the capacity to resist *loads* as identified in ASCE 7.

DWELLING. A building that contains one or two *dwelling units* used, intended or designed to be used, rented, leased, let or hired out to be occupied for living purposes.

DWELLING UNIT. A single unit providing complete, independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

DWELLING UNIT OR SLEEPING UNIT, MULTISTORY. See “Multi-story unit.”

EFFICIENCY DWELLING UNIT. A dwelling containing only one habitable room.

EGRESS COURT. A *court* or *yard* which provides access to a *public way* for one or more *exits*.

ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT PROTECTIVE SYSTEM. A specific construction of devices, materials, or coatings installed as a fire-resistive barrier system applied to electrical system components, such as cable trays, conduits and other raceways, open run cables and conductors, cables, and conductors.

[F] ELEVATOR GROUP. A grouping of elevators in a building located adjacent or directly across from one another that responds to common hall call buttons.

[F] EMERGENCY ALARM SYSTEM. A system to provide indication and warning of emergency situations involving *hazardous materials*.

[F] EMERGENCY CONTROL STATION. An *approved* location on the premises where signals from emergency equipment are received and which is staffed by trained personnel.

EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENING. An operable window, door or other similar device that provides for a means of escape and access for rescue in the event of an emergency.

[F] EMERGENCY VOICE/ALARM COMMUNICATIONS. Dedicated manual or *automatic* facilities for originating and distributing voice instructions, as well as alert and evacuation signals pertaining to a fire emergency, to the occupants of a building.

[F] EMERGENCY POWER SYSTEM. A source of automatic electric power of a required capacity and duration to operate required life safety, fire alarm, detection and ventilation systems in the event of a failure of the primary power. Emergency power systems are required for electrical loads where interruption of the primary power could result in loss of human life or serious injuries.

EMPLOYEE WORK AREA. All or any portion of a space used only by employees and only for work. *Corridors*, toilet rooms, kitchenettes and break rooms are not employee work areas.

[BS] ENGINEERED WOOD RIM BOARD. A full-depth structural composite lumber, wood structural panel, structural glued laminated timber or prefabricated wood I-joist member designed to transfer horizontal (shear) and vertical (compression) loads, provide attachment for diaphragm sheathing, siding and exterior deck ledgers, and provide lateral support at the ends of floor or roof joists or rafters.

ENTRANCE, PUBLIC. See “Public entrance.”

ENTRANCE, RESTRICTED. See “Restricted entrance.”

ENTRANCE, SERVICE. See “Service entrance.”

EQUIPMENT PLATFORM. An unoccupied, elevated platform used exclusively for mechanical systems or industrial process equipment, including the associated elevated walkways, stairways, alternating tread devices and ladders necessary to access the platform (see Section 505.3).

ESSENTIAL FACILITIES. Buildings and other structures that are intended to remain operational in the event of extreme environmental loading from *flood*, wind, snow or earthquakes.

[F] EXHAUSTED ENCLOSURE. An appliance or piece of equipment that consists of a top, a back and two sides providing a means of local exhaust for capturing gases, fumes, vapors and mists. Such enclosures include laboratory hoods, exhaust fume hoods and similar appliances and equipment used to locally retain and exhaust the gases, fumes, vapors and mists that could be released. Rooms or areas provided with general *ventilation*, in themselves, are not exhausted enclosures.

[BS] EXISTING STRUCTURE. A structure erected prior to the date of adoption of the appropriate code, or one for which a legal building *permit* has been issued. For application of provisions in *flood hazard areas*, an existing structure is any building or structure for which the start of construction commenced before the effective date of the community's first flood plain management code, ordinance or standard.

EXIT. That portion of a *means of egress* system between the *exit access* and the *exit discharge* or *public way*. Exit components include exterior exit doors at the *level of exit discharge*, *interior exit stairways* and *ramps*, *exit passageways*, *exterior exit stairways* and *ramps* and *horizontal exits*.

EXIT ACCESS. That portion of a *means of egress* system that leads from any occupied portion of a building or structure to an *exit*.

EXIT ACCESS DOORWAY. A door or access point along the path of egress travel from an occupied room, area or space where the path of egress enters an intervening room, *corridor*, *exit access stairway* or *ramp*.

EXIT ACCESS RAMP. A *ramp* within the exit access portion of the means of egress system.

EXIT ACCESS STAIRWAY. A *stairway* with the exit access portion of the means of egress system.

EXIT DISCHARGE. That portion of a *means of egress* system between the termination of an *exit* and a *public way*.

EXIT DISCHARGE, LEVEL OF. The *story* at the point at which an *exit* terminates and an *exit discharge* begins.

EXIT, HORIZONTAL. See "Horizontal exit."

EXIT PASSAGEWAY. An *exit* component that is separated from other interior spaces of a building or structure by fire resistance-rated construction and opening protectives, and provides for a protected path of egress travel in a horizontal direction to an *exit* or to the *exit discharge*.

EXPANDED VINYL WALL COVERING. Wall covering consisting of a woven textile backing, an expanded vinyl base coat layer and a nonexpanded vinyl skin coat. The expanded base coat layer is a homogeneous vinyl layer that contains a blowing agent. During processing, the blowing agent decomposes, causing this layer to expand by forming closed cells. The total thickness of the wall covering is approximately 0.055 inch to 0.070 inch (1.4 mm to 1.78 mm).

[F] EXPLOSION. An effect produced by the sudden violent expansion of gases, which may be accompanied by a shock wave or disruption, or both, of enclosing materials or structures. An explosion could result from any of the following:

1. Chemical changes such as rapid oxidation, *deflagration* or *detonation*, decomposition of molecules and runaway polymerization (usually *detonation*s).

2. Physical changes such as pressure tank ruptures.

3. Atomic changes (nuclear fission or fusion).

[F] EXPLOSIVE. A chemical compound, mixture or device, the primary or common purpose of which is to function by explosion. The term includes, but is not limited to, dynamite, black powder, pellet powder, initiating explosives, detonators, safety fuses, squibs, detonating cord, igniter cord, igniters and display fireworks, 1.3G.

The term “explosive” includes any material determined to be within the scope of USC Title 18: Chapter 40 and also includes any material classified as an explosive other than consumer fireworks, 1.4G by the *hazardous materials* regulations of DOTn 49 CFR Parts 100-185.

High explosive. Explosive material, such as dynamite, which can be caused to detonate by means of a No. 8 test blasting cap when unconfined.

Low explosive. Explosive material that will burn or deflagrate when ignited. It is characterized by a rate of reaction that is less than the speed of sound. Examples of low explosives include, but are not limited to, black powder; safety fuse; igniters; igniter cord; fuse lighters; fireworks, 1.3G and propellants, 1.3C.

Mass-detonating explosives. Division 1.1, 1.2 and 1.5 explosives alone or in combination, or loaded into various types of ammunition or containers, most of which can be expected to explode virtually instantaneously when a small portion is subjected to fire, severe concussion, impact, the impulse of an initiating agent or the effect of a considerable discharge of energy from without. Materials that react in this manner represent a mass explosion hazard. Such an explosive will normally cause severe structural damage to adjacent objects. Explosive propagation could occur immediately to other items of ammunition and explosives stored sufficiently close to and not adequately protected from the initially exploding pile with a time interval short enough so that two or more quantities must be considered as one for quantity-distance purposes.

UN/DOTn Class 1 explosives. The former classification system used by DOTn included the terms “high” and “low” explosives as defined herein. The following terms further define explosives under the current system applied by DOTn for all explosive materials defined as hazard Class 1 materials. Compatibility group letters are used in concert with the division to

specify further limitations on each division noted (i.e., the letter G identifies the material as a pyrotechnic substance or article containing a pyrotechnic substance and similar materials).

Division 1.1. Explosives that have a mass explosion hazard. A mass explosion is one which affects almost the entire load instantaneously.

Division 1.2. Explosives that have a projection hazard but not a mass explosion hazard.

Division 1.3. Explosives that have a fire hazard and either a minor blast hazard or a minor projection hazard or both, but not a mass explosion hazard.

Division 1.4. Explosives that pose a minor explosion hazard. The explosive effects are largely confined to the package and no projection of fragments of appreciable size or range is to be expected. An external fire must not cause virtually instantaneous explosion of almost the entire contents of the package.

Division 1.5. Very insensitive explosives. This division is comprised of substances that have a mass explosion hazard, but that are so insensitive there is very little probability of initiation or of transition from burning to *detonation* under normal conditions of transport.

Division 1.6. Extremely insensitive articles which do not have a mass explosion hazard. This division is comprised of articles that contain only extremely insensitive detonating substances and which demonstrate a negligible probability of accidental initiation or propagation.

EXTERIOR EXIT RAMP. An *exit* component that serves to meet one or more *means of egress* design requirements, such as required number of *exits* or *exit access* travel distance, and is open to *yards*, *courts* or *public ways*.

EXTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAY. An *exit* component that serves to meet one or more *means of egress* design requirements, such as required number of *exits* or *exit access* travel distance, and is open to *yards*, *courts* or *public ways*.

EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS). EIFS are nonstructural, nonload-bearing, *exterior wall* cladding systems that consist of an insulation board attached either adhesively or mechanically, or both, to the substrate; an integrally reinforced base coat and a textured protective finish coat.

EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS) WITH DRAINAGE. An EIFS that incorporates a means of drainage applied over a *water-resistive barrier*.

EXTERIOR SURFACES. Weather-exposed surfaces.

EXTERIOR WALL. A wall, bearing or nonbearing, that is used as an enclosing wall for a building, other than a *fire wall*, and that has a slope of 60 degrees (1.05 rad) or greater with the horizontal plane.

EXTERIOR WALL COVERING. A material or assembly of materials applied on the exterior side of *exterior walls* for the purpose of providing a weather-resisting barrier, insulation or for

aesthetics, including but not limited to, *veneers,* siding, *exterior insulation and finish systems*, architectural *trim* and embellishments such as *cornices*, soffits, facia, gutters and leaders.

EXTERIOR WALL ENVELOPE. A system or assembly of *exterior wall* components, including *exterior wall* finish materials, that provides protection of the building structural members, including framing and sheathing materials, and conditioned interior space, from the detrimental effects of the exterior environment.

F RATING. The time period that the *through-penetration firestop system* limits the spread of fire through the penetration when tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479.

FABRIC PARTITION. A partition consisting of a finished surface made of fabric, without a continuous rigid backing, that is directly attached to a framing system in which the vertical framing members are spaced greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center.

[BS] FABRICATED ITEM. Structural, load-bearing or lateral load-resisting members of assemblies consisting of materials assembled prior to installation in a building or structure, or subjected to operations such as heat treatment, thermal cutting, cold working or reforming after manufacture and prior to installation in a building or structure. Materials produced in accordance with standards referenced by this code, such as rolled structural steel shapes, steel reinforcing bars, *masonry units* and *wood structural panels*, or in accordance with a referenced standard that provides requirements for quality control done under the supervision of a third-party quality control agency, are not “fabricated items.”

[F] FABRICATION AREA. An area within a semiconductor fabrication facility and related research and development areas in which there are processes using hazardous production materials. Such areas are allowed to include ancillary rooms or areas such as dressing rooms and offices that are directly related to the fabrication area processes.

[A] FACILITY. All or any portion of buildings, structures, *site* improvements, elements and pedestrian or vehicular routes located on a *site*.

[BS] FACTORED LOAD. The product of a *nominal load* and a *load factor*.

FENESTRATION. Skylights, roof windows, vertical windows (fixed or moveable), opaque doors, glazed doors, glazed block and combination opaque/glazed doors. Fenestration includes products with glass and non-glass glazing materials.

[BS] FIBER-CEMENT (BACKER BOARD, SIDING, SOFFIT, TRIM AND UNDERLAYMENT) PRODUCTS. Manufactured thin section composites of hydraulic cementitious matrices and discrete nonasbestos fibers.

FIBER-REINFORCED POLYMER. A polymeric composite material consisting of reinforcement fibers, such as glass, impregnated with a fiber-binding polymer which is then molded and hardened. Fiber-reinforced polymers are permitted to contain cores laminated between fiber-reinforced polymer facings.

[BS] FIBERBOARD. A fibrous, homogeneous panel made from lignocellulosic fibers (usually wood or cane) and having a density of less than 31 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) (497 kg/ m^3) but more than 10 pcf (160 kg/m^3).

[BS] FIELD NAILING. See “Nailing, field.”

FIRE ALARM BOX, MANUAL. See “Manual fire alarm box.”

[F] FIRE ALARM CONTROL UNIT. A system component that receives inputs from *automatic* and manual *fire alarm* devices and may be capable of supplying power to detection devices and transponders or off-premises transmitters. The control unit may be capable of providing a transfer of power to the notification appliances and transfer of condition to relays or devices.

[F] FIRE ALARM SIGNAL. A signal initiated by a *fire alarm-initiating device* such as a *manual fire alarm box*, *automatic fire detector*, waterflow switch or other device whose activation is indicative of the presence of a fire or fire signature.

[F] FIRE ALARM SYSTEM. A system or portion of a combination system consisting of components and circuits arranged to monitor and annunciate the status of *fire alarm* or *supervisory signal-initiating device*s and to initiate the appropriate response to those signals.

FIRE AREA. The aggregate floor area enclosed and bounded by *fire walls*, *fire barriers*, *exterior walls* or *horizontal assemblies* of a building. Areas of the building not provided with surrounding walls shall be included in the fire area if such areas are included within the horizontal projection of the roof or floor next above.

FIRE BARRIER. A fire-resistance-rated wall assembly of materials designed to restrict the spread of fire in which continuity is maintained.

[F] FIRE COMMAND CENTER. The principal attended or unattended location where the status of detection, alarm communications and control systems is displayed, and from which the systems can be manually controlled.

FIRE DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to close *automatically* upon detection of heat and resist the passage of flame. Fire dampers are classified for use in either static systems that will *automatically* shut down in the event of a fire, or in dynamic systems that continue to operate during a fire. A dynamic fire damper is tested and rated for closure under elevated temperature airflow.

[F] FIRE DETECTOR, AUTOMATIC. A device designed to detect the presence of a fire signature and to initiate action.

FIRE DOOR. The door component of a *fire door assembly*.

FIRE DOOR ASSEMBLY. Any combination of a *fire door*, frame, hardware and other accessories that together provide a specific degree of fire protection to the opening.

FIRE DOOR ASSEMBLY, FLOOR. See “Floor fire door assembly.”

FIRE EXIT HARDWARE. *Panic hardware* that is *listed* for use on *fire door assemblies*.

[F] FIRE LANE. A road or other passageway developed to allow the passage of fire apparatus. A fire lane is not necessarily intended for vehicular traffic other than fire apparatus.

FIRE PARTITION. A vertical assembly of materials designed to restrict the spread of fire in which openings are protected.

FIRE PROTECTION RATING. The period of time that an opening protective will maintain the ability to confine a fire as determined by tests specified in Section 716. Ratings are stated in hours or minutes.

[F] FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEM. *Approved* devices, equipment and systems or combinations of systems used to detect a fire, activate an alarm, extinguish or control a fire, control or manage smoke and products of a fire or any combination thereof.

FIRE-RATED GLAZING. Glazing with either a *fire protection rating* or a *fire-resistance rating*.

FIRE RESISTANCE. That property of materials or their assemblies that prevents or retards the passage of excessive heat, hot gases or flames under conditions of use.

FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING. The period of time a building element, component or assembly maintains the ability to confine a fire, continues to perform a given structural function, or both, as determined by the tests, or the methods based on tests, prescribed in Section 703.

FIRE-RESISTANT JOINT SYSTEM. An assemblage of specific materials or products that are designed, tested and fire-resistance rated in accordance with either ASTM E1966 or UL 2079 to resist for a prescribed period of time the passage of fire through *joints* made in or between fire-resistance rated assemblies.

[F] FIRE SAFETY FUNCTIONS. Building and fire control functions that are intended to increase the level of life safety for occupants or to control the spread of harmful effects of fire.

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE. The distance measured from the building face to one of the following:

1. The closest interior *lot line*.

2. To the centerline of a street, an alley or *public way*.

3. To an imaginary line between two buildings on the lot. The distance shall be measured at right angles from the face of the wall.

FIRE WALL. A fire-resistance-rated wall having protected openings, which restricts the spread of fire and extends continuously from the foundation to or through the roof, with sufficient structural stability under fire conditions to allow collapse of construction on either side without collapse of the wall.

FIRE WINDOW ASSEMBLY. A window constructed and glazed to give protection against the passage of fire.

FIREBLOCKING. Building materials, or materials *approved* for use as fireblocking, installed to resist the free passage of flame to other areas of the building through concealed spaces.

[M] FIREPLACE. A hearth and fire chamber or similar prepared place in which a fire may be made and which is built in conjunction with a chimney.

FIREPLACE THROAT. The opening between the top of the firebox and the smoke chamber.

FIRESTOP, MEMBRANE-PENETRATION. See “Membrane-penetration firestop.”

FIRESTOP, PENETRATION. See “Penetration firestop.”

FIRESTOP SYSTEM, THROUGH-PENETRATION. See “Through-penetration firestop system.”

[F] FIREWORKS. Any composition or device for the purpose of producing a visible or audible effect for entertainment purposes by combustion, *deflagration* or *detonation* that meets the definition of 1.4G fireworks or 1.3G fireworks.

> **Fireworks, 1.3G.** Large fireworks devices, which are explosive materials, intended for use in fireworks displays and designed to produce audible or visible effects by combustion, *deflagration* or *detonation*. Such 1.3G fireworks include, but are not limited to, firecrackers containing more than 130 milligrams (2 grains) of explosive composition, aerial shells containing more than 40 grams of pyrotechnic composition, and other display pieces which exceed the limits for classification as 1.4G fireworks. Such 1.3G fireworks are also described as fireworks, UN0335 by the DOTn.
>
> **Fireworks, 1.4G.** Small fireworks devices containing restricted amounts of pyrotechnic composition designed primarily to produce visible or audible effects by combustion. Such 1.4G fireworks which comply with the construction, chemical composition and labeling regulations of the DOTn for fireworks, UN0336, and the U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC) as set forth in CPSC 16 CFR: Parts 1500 and 1507, are not explosive materials for the purpose of this code.

FIXED BASE OPERATOR (FBO). A commercial business granted the right by the airport sponsor to operate on an airport and provide aeronautical services, such as fueling, hangaring, tie-down and parking, aircraft rental, aircraft maintenance and flight instruction.

FIXED SEATING. Furniture or fixture designed and installed for the use of sitting and secured in place including bench-type seats and seats with or without backs or arm rests.

FLAME SPREAD. The propagation of flame over a surface.

FLAME SPREAD INDEX. A comparative measure, expressed as a dimensionless number, derived from visual measurements of the spread of flame versus time for a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

[F] FLAMMABLE GAS. A material that is a gas at 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 pounds per square inch atmosphere (psia) (101 kPa) of pressure [a material that has a *boiling point* of 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 psia (101 kPa)] which:

1. Is ignitable at 14.7 psia (101 kPa) when in a mixture of 13 percent or less by volume with air; or

2. Has a flammable range at 14.7 psia (101 kPa) with air of at least 12 percent, regardless of the lower limit.

The limits specified shall be determined at 14.7 psi (101 kPa) of pressure and a temperature of 68°F (20°C) in accordance with ASTM E681.

[F] FLAMMABLE LIQUEFIED GAS. A liquefied compressed gas which, under a charged pressure, is partially liquid at a temperature of 68°F (20°C) and which is flammable.

[F] FLAMMABLE LIQUID. A *liquid* having a closed cup *flash point* below 100°F (38°C). Flammable liquids are further categorized into a group known as Class I liquids. The Class I category is subdivided as follows:

Class IA. *Liquids* having a *flash point* below 73°F (23°C) and a *boiling point* below 100°F (38°C).

Class IB. *Liquids* having a *flash point* below 73°F (23°C) and a *boiling point* at or above 100°F (38°C).

Class IC. *Liquids* having a *flash point* at or above 73°F (23°C) and below 100°F (38°C). The category of flammable liquids does not include *compressed gases* or *cryogenic fluids*.

[F] FLAMMABLE MATERIAL. A material capable of being readily ignited from common sources of heat or at a temperature of 600°F (316°C) or less.

[F] FLAMMABLE SOLID. A *solid*, other than a blasting agent or *explosive*, that is capable of causing fire through friction, absorption or moisture, spontaneous chemical change, or retained heat from manufacturing or processing, or which has an ignition temperature below 212°F (100°C) or which burns so vigorously and persistently when ignited as to create a serious hazard. A chemical shall be considered a flammable *solid* as determined in accordance with the test method of CPSC 16 CFR; Part 1500.44, if it ignites and burns with a self-sustained flame at a rate greater than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm) per second along its major axis.

[F] FLAMMABLE VAPORS OR FUMES. The concentration of flammable constituents in air that exceeds 25 percent of their *lower flammable limit (LFL).*

[F] FLASH POINT. The minimum temperature in degrees Fahrenheit at which a *liquid* will give off sufficient vapors to form an ignitable mixture with air near the surface or in the container, but will not sustain combustion. The flash point of a *liquid* shall be determined by appropriate test procedure and apparatus as specified in ASTM D56, ASTM D93 or ASTM D3278.

FLIGHT. A continuous run of rectangular treads, *winders* or combination thereof from one landing to another.

[BS] FLOOD or FLOODING. A general and temporary condition of partial or complete inundation of normally dry land from:

1. The overflow of inland or tidal waters.
2. The unusual and rapid accumulation or runoff of surface waters from any source.

[BS] FLOOD DAMAGE-RESISTANT MATERIALS. Any construction material capable of withstanding direct and prolonged contact with floodwaters without sustaining any damage that requires more than cosmetic *repair*.

FLOOD, DESIGN. See “Design flood.”

FLOOD ELEVATION, DESIGN. See “Design flood elevation.”

[BS] FLOOD HAZARD AREA. The greater of the following two areas:

1. The area within a flood plain subject to a 1-percent or greater chance of *flooding* in any year.
2. The area designated as a flood hazard area on a community’s flood hazard map, or otherwise legally designated.

FLOOD HAZARD AREAS, SPECIAL. See “Special flood hazard area.”

[BS] FLOOD INSURANCE RATE MAP (FIRM). An official map of a community on which the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) has delineated both the *special flood hazard areas* and the risk premium zones applicable to the community.

[BS] FLOOD INSURANCE STUDY. The official report provided by the Federal Emergency Management Agency containing the Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM), the Flood Boundary and Floodway Map (FBFM), the water surface elevation of the *base flood* and supporting technical data.

[BS] FLOODWAY. The channel of the river, creek or other watercourse and the adjacent land areas that must be reserved in order to discharge the *base flood* without cumulatively increasing the water surface elevation more than a designated height.

FLOOR AREA, GROSS. The floor area within the inside perimeter of the *exterior walls* of the building under consideration, exclusive of vent *shafts* and *courts*, without deduction for *corridors*, *stairways*, *ramps*, closets, the thickness of interior walls, columns or other features. The floor area of a building, or portion thereof, not provided with surrounding *exterior walls* shall be the usable area under the horizontal projection of the roof or floor above. The gross floor area shall not include *shafts* with no openings or interior *courts*.

FLOOR AREA, NET. The actual occupied area not including unoccupied accessory areas such as *corridors*, *stairways*, *ramps*, toilet rooms, mechanical rooms and closets.

FLOOR FIRE DOOR ASSEMBLY. A combination of a *fire door*, a frame, hardware and other accessories installed in a horizontal plane, which together provide a specific degree of fire protection to a through-opening in a fire-resistancerated floor (see Section 712.1.13.1).

[F] FOAM-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM. A special system discharging a foam made from concentrates, either mechanically or chemically, over the area to be protected.

FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION. A plastic that is intentionally expanded by the use of a foaming agent to produce a reduced-density plastic containing voids consisting of open or closed cells distributed throughout the plastic for thermal insulating or acoustical purposes and that has a density less than 20 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) (320 kg/m^3).

FOLDING AND TELESCOPIC SEATING. Tiered seating having an overall shape and size that is capable of being reduced for purposes of moving or storing and is not a building element.

FOOD COURT. A public seating area located in the *mall* that serves adjacent food preparation tenant spaces.

FOSTER CARE FACILITIES. Facilities that provide care to more than five children, $2^1/_2$ years of age or less.

[BS] FOUNDATION PIER (for Chapter 21). An isolated vertical foundation member whose horizontal dimension measured at right angles to its thickness does not exceed three times its thickness and whose height is equal to or less than four times its thickness.

FRAME STRUCTURE. A building or other structure in which vertical *loads* from floors and roofs are primarily supported by columns.

GABLE. The triangular portion of a wall beneath the end of a dual-slope, pitched, or mono-slope roof or portion thereof and above the top plates of the story or level of the ceiling below.

[F] GAS CABINET. A fully enclosed, ventilated noncombustible enclosure used to provide an isolated environment for *compressed gas* cylinders in storage or *use*. Doors and access ports for exchanging cylinders and accessing pressureregulating controls are allowed to be included.

[F] GAS ROOM. A separately ventilated, fully enclosed room in which only *compressed gases* and associated equipment and supplies are stored or *used.*

[F] GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEM. An assembly of piping, devices and apparatus designed to generate, store, contain, distribute or transport a nontoxic, gaseous hydrogen-containing mixture having not less than 95-percent hydrogen gas by volume and not more than 1-percent oxygen by volume. Gaseous hydrogen systems consist of items such as *compressed gas* containers, reactors and appurtenances, including pressure regulators, pressure relief devices, manifolds, pumps, compressors and interconnecting piping and tubing and controls.

GLASS FIBERBOARD. Fibrous glass roof insulation consisting of inorganic glass fibers formed into rigid boards using a binder. The board has a top surface faced with asphalt and kraft reinforced with glass fiber.

[BS] GRADE (LUMBER). The classification of lumber in regard to strength and utility in accordance with American Softwood Lumber Standard DOC PS 20 and the grading rules of an *approved* lumber rules-writing agency.

GRADE PLANE. A reference plane representing the average of finished ground level adjoining the building at *exterior walls*. Where the finished ground level slopes away from the *exterior walls*, the reference plane shall be established by the lowest points within the area between the building and the *lot line* or, where the *lot line* is more than 6 feet (1829 mm) from the building, between the building and a point 6 feet (1829 mm) from the building.

GRADE PLANE, STORY ABOVE. See “Story above grade plane.”

GRANDSTAND. Tiered seating supported on a dedicated structural system and two or more rows high and is not a building element (see "*Bleachers*").

GROSS LEASABLE AREA. The total floor area designed for tenant occupancy and exclusive use. The area of tenant occupancy is measured from the centerlines of joint partitions to the outside of the tenant walls. All tenant areas, including areas used for storage, shall be included in calculating gross leasable area.

GROUP HOME. A facility for social rehabilitation, substance abuse or mental health problems that contains a group housing arrangement that provides *custodial care* but does not provide medical care.

GUARD. A building component or a system of building components located at or near the open sides of elevated walking surfaces that minimizes the possibility of a fall from the walking surface to a lower level.

GUEST ROOM. A room used or intended to be used by one or more guests for living or sleeping purposes.

GYPSUM BOARD. The generic name for a family of sheet products consisting of a noncombustible core primarily of gypsum with paper surfacing. Gypsum wallboard, gypsum sheathing, gypsum base for gypsum veneer plaster, exterior gypsum soffit board, predecorated gypsum board and water-resistant gypsum backing board complying with the standards listed in Tables 2506.2, 2507.2 and Chapter 35 are types of gypsum board.

[BS] GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCT. The general name for a family of sheet products consisting essentially of gypsum.

[BS] GYPSUM PLASTER. A mixture of calcined gypsum or calcined gypsum and lime and aggregate and other *approved* materials as specified in this code.

> **[BS] GYPSUM VENEER PLASTER.** *Gypsum plaster* applied to an *approved* base in one or more coats normally not exceeding 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in total thickness.

HABITABLE SPACE. A space in a building for living, sleeping, eating or cooking. Bathrooms, toilet rooms, closets, halls, storage or utility spaces and similar areas are not considered habitable spaces.

[F] HALOGENATED EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM. A fire-extinguishing system using one or more atoms of an element from the halogen chemical series: fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine.

[F] HANDLING. The deliberate transport by any means to a point of storage or *use*.

HANDRAIL. A horizontal or sloping rail intended for grasping by the hand for guidance or support.

HARDBOARD. A fibrous-felted, homogeneous panel made from lignocellulosic fibers consolidated under heat and pressure in a hot press to a density not less than 31 pcf (497 kg/m^3).

HARDWARE. See “Fire exit hardware” and “Panic hardware.”

[F] HAZARDOUS MATERIALS. Those chemicals or substances that are *physical hazards* or *health hazards* as classified in Section 307 and the *International Fire Code*, whether the materials are in usable or waste condition.

[F] HAZARDOUS PRODUCTION MATERIAL (HPM). A *solid*, *liquid* or gas associated with semiconductor manufacturing that has a degree-of-hazard rating in health, flammability or instability of Class 3 or 4 as ranked by NFPA 704 and which is *used* directly in research, laboratory or production processes which have as their end product materials that are not hazardous.

[BS] HEAD JOINT. Vertical *mortar joint* placed between *masonry units* within the *wythe* at the time the *masonry units* are laid.

[F] HEALTH HAZARD. A classification of a chemical for which there is statistically significant evidence that acute or chronic health effects are capable of occurring in exposed persons. The term “health hazard” includes chemicals that are *toxic* or *highly toxic*, and *corrosive*.

HEAT DETECTOR. See “Detector, heat.”

HEIGHT, BUILDING. The vertical distance from *grade plane* to the average height of the highest roof surface.

HELICAL PILE. Manufactured steel deep foundation element consisting of a central shaft and one or more helical bearing plates. A helical pile is installed by rotating it into the ground. Each helical bearing plate is formed into a screw thread with a uniform defined pitch.

HELIPAD. A structural surface that is used for the landing, taking off, taxiing and parking of helicopters.

HELIPORT. An area of land or water or a structural surface that is used, or intended for use, for the landing and taking off of helicopters, and any appurtenant areas that are used, or intended for use, for heliport buildings or other heliport facilities.

HELISTOP. The same as “heliport,” except that no fueling, defueling, maintenance, repairs or storage of helicopters is permitted.

HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR-GRADE COMPACT LAMINATE (HPL). Panels consisting of layers of cellulose fibrous material impregnated with thermosetting resins and bonded together by a high-pressure process to form a homogeneous nonporous core suitable for exterior use.

HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR-GRADE COMPACT LAMINATE (HPL) SYSTEM. An *exterior wall covering* fabricated using HPL in a specific assembly including *joints*, seams, attachments, substrate, framing and other details as appropriate to a particular design.

HIGH-RISE BUILDING. A building with an occupied floor or occupied roof located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

[F] HIGHLY TOXIC. A material which produces a lethal dose or lethal concentration that falls within any of the following categories:

1. A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD_{50}) of 50 milligrams or less per kilogram of body weight when administered orally to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.

2. A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD_{50}) of 200 milligrams or less per kilogram of body weight when administered by continuous contact for 24 hours (or less if death occurs within 24 hours) with the bare skin of albino rabbits weighing between 2 and 3 kilograms each.

3. A chemical that has a median lethal concentration (LC_{50}) in air of 200 parts per million by volume or less of gas or vapor, or 2 milligrams per liter or less of mist, fume or dust, when administered by continuous inhalation for 1 hour (or less if death occurs within 1 hour) to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.

Mixtures of these materials with ordinary materials, such as water, might not warrant classification as *highly toxic.* While this system is basically simple in application, any hazard evaluation that is required for the precise categorization of this type of material shall be performed by experienced, technically competent persons.

[A] HISTORIC BUILDINGS. Buildings that are listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places, or designated as historic under an appropriate state or local law.

HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLY. A fire-resistance-rated floor or *roof assembly* of materials designed to restrict the spread of fire in which continuity is maintained.

HORIZONTAL EXIT. An *exit* component consisting of fire-resistance-rated construction and opening protectives intended to compartmentalize portions of a building thereby creating refuge areas that afford safety from the fire and smoke from the area of fire origin.

HOSPICE CARE CENTER. A building or portion thereof used on a 24-hour basis for the provision of hospice services to terminally ill inpatients.

HOSPITALS AND PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS. Facilities that provide care or treatment for the medical, psychiatric, obstetrical, or surgical treatment of care recipients who are *incapable of self-preservation*.

HOUSING UNIT. A *dormitory* or a group of *cells* with a common dayroom in Group I-3.

[F] HPM ROOM. A room used in conjunction with or serving a Group H-5 occupancy, where *HPM* is stored or *used* and which is classified as a Group H-2, H-3 or H-4 occupancy.

[BS] HURRICANE-PRONE REGIONS. Areas vulnerable to hurricanes defined as:

1. The U. S. Atlantic Ocean and Gulf of Mexico coasts where the ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, for Risk Category II buildings is greater than 115 mph (51.4 m/s);

2. Hawaii, Puerto Rico, Guam, Virgin Islands and American Samoa.

[F] HYDROGEN FUEL GAS ROOM. A room or space that is intended exclusively to house a *gaseous hydrogen system*.

[BS] ICE-SENSITIVE STRUCTURE. A structure for which the effect of an atmospheric ice *load* governs the design of a structure or portion thereof. This includes, but is not limited to, lattice structures, guyed masts, overhead lines, light suspension and cable-stayed bridges, aerial cable systems (e.g., for ski lifts or logging operations), amusement rides, open catwalks and platforms, flagpoles and signs.

[F] IMMEDIATELY DANGEROUS TO LIFE AND HEALTH (IDLH). The concentration of air-borne contaminants which poses a threat of death, immediate or delayed permanent adverse health effects, or effects that could prevent escape from such an environment. This contaminant concentration level is established by the National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) based on both toxicity and flammability. It generally is expressed in parts per million by volume (ppmv/v) or milligrams per cubic meter (mg/m^3). If adequate data do not exist for precise establishment of IDLH concentrations, an independent certified industrial hygienist, industrial toxicologist, appropriate regulatory agency or other source *approved* by the *building official* shall make such determination.

[BS] IMPACT LOAD. The *load* resulting from moving machinery, elevators, craneways, vehicles and other similar forces and kinetic *loads*, pressure and possible surcharge from fixed or moving *loads.*

INCAPABLE OF SELF-PRESERVATION. Persons who, because of age, physical limitations, mental limitations, chemical dependency or medical treatment, cannot respond as an individual to an emergency situation.

[F] INCOMPATIBLE MATERIALS. Materials that, when mixed, have the potential to react in a manner that generates heat, fumes, gases or by-products which are hazardous to life or property.

[F] INERT GAS. A gas that is capable of reacting with other materials only under abnormal conditions such as high temperatures, pressures and similar extrinsic physical forces. Within the context of the code, inert gases do not exhibit either physical or health hazard properties as defined (other than acting as a simple asphyxiant) or hazard properties other than those of a *compressed gas*. Some of the more common inert gases include argon, helium, krypton, neon, nitrogen and xenon.

[F] INITIATING DEVICE. A system component that originates transmission of a change-of-state condition, such as in a *smoke detector*, *manual fire alarm box* or supervisory switch.

INTENDED TO BE OCCUPIED AS A RESIDENCE. This refers to a *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* that can or will be used all or part of the time as the occupant's place of abode.

INTERIOR EXIT RAMP. An *exit* component that serves to meet one or more *means of egress* design requirements, such as required number of *exits* or *exit access* travel distance, and provides for a protected path of egress travel to the *exit discharge* or *public way.*

INTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAY. An *exit* component that serves to meet one or more *means of egress* design requirements, such as required number of *exits* or *exit access* travel distance, and provides for a protected path of egress travel to the *exit discharge* or *public way.*

INTERIOR FINISH. Interior finish includes *interior wall and ceiling finish* and *interior floor finish*.

INTERIOR FLOOR FINISH. The exposed floor surfaces of buildings including coverings applied over a finished floor or *stair*, including risers.

INTERIOR FLOOR-WALL BASE. *Interior floor finish trim* used to provide a functional or decorative border at the intersection of walls and floors.

INTERIOR SURFACES. Surfaces other than weather exposed surfaces.

INTERIOR WALL AND CEILING FINISH. The exposed *interior surfaces* of buildings, including but not limited to: fixed or movable walls and partitions; toilet room privacy partitions; columns; ceilings; and interior wainscoting, paneling or other finish applied structurally or for decoration, acoustical correction, surface insulation, structural fire resistance or similar purposes, but not including *trim*.

[BS] INTERLAYMENT. A layer of felt or nonbituminous saturated felt not less than 18 inches (457 mm) wide, shingled between each course of a wood-shake *roof covering*.

INTUMESCENT FIRE-RESISTANT COATINGS. Thin film liquid mixture applied to substrates by brush, roller, spray or trowel which expands into a protective foamed layer to provide fire-resistant protection of the substrates when exposed to flame or intense heat.

[BS] JOINT. The opening in or between adjacent assemblies that is created due to building tolerances, or is designed to allow independent movement of the building in any plane caused by thermal, seismic, wind or any other loading.

[A] JURISDICTION. The governmental unit that has adopted this code under due legislative authority.

L RATING. The air leakage rating of a *through penetration firestop system* or a fire-resistant *joint* system when tested in accordance with UL 1479 or UL 2079, respectively.

[A] LABEL. An identification applied on a product by the manufacturer that contains the name of the manufacturer, the function and performance characteristics of the product or material and the name and identification of an *approved agency*, and that indicates that the representative sample of the product or material has been tested and evaluated by an *approved agency* (see Section 1703.5, “Manufacturer’s designation” and “Mark”).

[A] LABELED. Equipment, materials or products to which has been affixed a *label*, seal, symbol or other identifying *mark* of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, *approved* agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of the above-labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the equipment, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LEVEL OF EXIT DISCHARGE. See “Exit discharge, level of.”

LIGHT-DIFFUSING SYSTEM. Construction consisting in whole or in part of lenses, panels, grids or baffles made with light-transmitting plastics positioned below independently mounted electrical light sources, skylights or light-transmitting plastic roof panels. Lenses, panels, grids and baffles that are part of an electrical fixture shall not be considered as a light-diffusing system.

LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION. A type of construction whose vertical and horizontal structural elements are primarily formed by a system of repetitive wood or cold-formed steel framing members.

LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC ROOF PANELS. Structural plastic panels other than skylights that are fastened to structural members, or panels or sheathing and that are used as light-transmitting media in the plane of the roof.

LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC WALL PANELS. Plastic materials that are fastened to structural members, or to structural panels or sheathing, and that are used as light-transmitting media in *exterior walls*.

[BS] LIMIT OF MODERATE WAVE ACTION. Line shown on FIRMs to indicate the inland limit of the $1^1/_2$-foot (457 mm) breaking wave height during the base flood.

[BS] LIMIT STATE. A condition beyond which a structure or member becomes unfit for service and is judged to be no longer useful for its intended function (serviceability limit state) or to be unsafe (strength limit state).

[F] LIQUID. A material that has a melting point that is equal to or less than 68°F (20°C) and a *boiling point* that is greater than 68°F (20°C) at 14.7 pounds per square inch absolute (psia) (101 kPa). When not otherwise identified, the term “liquid” includes both *flammable* and *combustible liquids.*

[F] LIQUID STORAGE ROOM. A room classified as a Group H-3 occupancy used for the storage of *flammable* or *combustible liquids* in a closed condition.

[F] LIQUID USE, DISPENSING AND MIXING ROOM. A room in which Class I, II and IIIA *flammable* or *combustible liquids* are *used,* dispensed or mixed in open containers.

[A] LISTED. Equipment, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the *building* official and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the equipment, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LIVE/WORK UNIT. A *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* in which a significant portion of the space includes a nonresidential use that is operated by the tenant.

[BS] LIVE LOAD. A *load* produced by the use and occupancy of the building or other structure that does not include construction or environmental *loads* such as wind load, snow load, rain load, earthquake load, flood load or *dead load*.

[BS] LIVE LOAD, ROOF. A *load* on a roof produced:

1. During maintenance by workers, equipment and materials;

2. During the life of the structure by movable objects such as planters or other similar small decorative appurtenances that are not occupancy related; or

3. By the use and occupancy of the roof such as for roof gardens or assembly areas.

[BS] LOAD AND RESISTANCE FACTOR DESIGN (LRFD). A method of proportioning structural members and their connections using load and *resistance factors* such that no applicable *limit state* is reached when the structure is subjected to appropriate *load* combinations. The term “LRFD” is used in the design of steel and wood structures.

[BS] LOAD EFFECTS. Forces and deformations produced in structural members by the applied *loads*.

[BS] LOAD FACTOR. A factor that accounts for deviations of the actual *load* from the *nominal load*, for uncertainties in the analysis that transforms the *load* into a *load effect*, and for the probability that more than one extreme *load* will occur simultaneously.

[BS] LOADS. Forces or other actions that result from the weight of building materials, occupants and their possessions, environmental effects, differential movement and restrained dimensional changes. Permanent loads are those loads in which variations over time are rare or of small magnitude, such as *dead loads*. All other loads are variable loads (see “*Nominal loads”*).

LODGING HOUSE. A one-family dwelling where one or more occupants are primarily permanent in nature and rent is paid for guest rooms.

[A] LOT. A portion or parcel of land considered as a unit.

[A] LOT LINE. A line dividing one lot from another, or from a street or any public place.

LOW-ENERGY POWER-OPERATED DOOR. Swinging door which opens automatically upon an action by a pedestrian such as pressing a push plate or waving a hand in front of a sensor. The door closes automatically, and operates with decreased forces and decreased speeds (see “Power-assisted door” and “Power-operated door”).

[F] LOWER FLAMMABLE LIMIT (LFL). The minimum concentration of vapor in air at which propagation of flame will occur in the presence of an ignition source. The LFL is sometimes referred to as “LEL” or “lower explosive limit.”

[BS] LOWEST FLOOR. The floor of the lowest enclosed area, including *basement*, but excluding any unfinished or flood-resistant enclosure, usable solely for vehicle parking, building access or limited storage provided that such enclosure is not built so as to render the structure in violation of Section 1612.

[BS] MAIN WINDFORCE-RESISTING SYSTEM. An assemblage of structural elements assigned to provide support and stability for the overall structure. The system generally receives wind loading from more than one surface

MALL BUILDING, COVERED and MALL BUILDING, OPEN. See "Covered mall building."

[F] MANUAL FIRE ALARM BOX. A manually operated device used to initiate an *alarm signal*.

[A] MANUFACTURER'S DESIGNATION. An identification applied on a product by the manufacturer indicating that a product or material complies with a specified standard or set of rules (see "*Label"* and "*Mark"*).

[A] MARK. An identification applied on a product by the manufacturer indicating the name of the manufacturer and the function of a product or material (see "*Label"* and "Manufacturer's designation").

MARQUEE. A *canopy* that has a top surface which is sloped less than 25 degrees from the horizontal and is located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from operable openings above or adjacent to the level of the marquee.

[BS] MASONRY. A built-up construction or combination of building units or materials of clay, shale, concrete, glass, gypsum, stone or other *approved* units bonded together with or without *mortar* or grout or other accepted methods of joining.

Glass unit masonry. Masonry composed of glass units bonded by *mortar*.

Plain masonry. Masonry in which the tensile resistance of the masonry is taken into consideration and the effects of stresses in reinforcement are neglected.

Reinforced masonry. Masonry construction in which reinforcement acting in conjunction with the masonry is used to resist forces.

Solid masonry. Masonry consisting of solid masonry units laid contiguously with the *joints* between the units filled with *mortar*.

Unreinforced (plain) masonry. Masonry in which the tensile resistance of masonry is taken into consideration and the resistance of the reinforcing steel, if present, is neglected.

[BS] MASONRY UNIT. *Brick*, tile, stone, glass block or concrete block conforming to the requirements specified in Section 2103.

Hollow. A masonry unit whose net cross-sectional *area* in any plane parallel to the load-bearing surface is less than 75 percent of its gross cross-sectional *area* measured in the same plane.

Solid. A masonry unit whose net cross-sectional *area* in every plane parallel to the load-bearing surface is 75 percent or more of its gross cross-sectional *area* measured in the same plane.

MASTIC FIRE-RESISTANT COATINGS. Liquid mixture applied to a substrate by brush, roller, spray or trowel that provides fire-resistant protection of a substrate when exposed to flame or intense heat.

MEANS OF EGRESS. A continuous and unobstructed path of vertical and horizontal egress travel from any occupied portion of a building or structure to a *public way*. A means of egress consists of three separate and distinct parts: the *exit access*, the *exit* and the *exit discharge*.

MECHANICAL-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES. *Open parking garages* employing parking machines, lifts, elevators or other mechanical devices for vehicles moving from and to street level and in which public occupancy is prohibited above the street level.

MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT SCREEN. A rooftop structure, not covered by a roof, used to aesthetically conceal plumbing, electrical or mechanical equipment from view.

MEDICAL CARE. Care involving medical or surgical procedures, nursing or for psychiatric purposes.

MEMBRANE-COVERED CABLE STRUCTURE. A nonpressurized structure in which a mast and cable system provides support and tension to the membrane weather barrier and the membrane imparts stability to the structure.

MEMBRANE-COVERED FRAME STRUCTURE. A nonpressurized building wherein the structure is composed of a rigid framework to support a tensioned membrane which provides the weather barrier.

MEMBRANE PENETRATION. A breach in one side of a floor-ceiling, roof-ceiling or wall assembly to accommodate an item installed into or passing through the breach.

MEMBRANE-PENETRATION FIRESTOP. A material, device or construction installed to resist for a prescribed time period the passage of flame and heat through openings in a protective membrane in order to accommodate cables, cable trays, conduit, tubing, pipes or similar items.

MEMBRANE-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM. An assemblage consisting of a fire-resistance-rated floor-ceiling, roof-ceiling or wall assembly, one or more penetrating items installed into or passing through the breach in one side of the assembly and the materials or devices, or both, installed to resist the spread of fire into the assembly for a prescribed period of time.

MERCHANDISE PAD. A merchandise pad is an area for display of merchandise surrounded by *aisles*, permanent fixtures or walls. Merchandise pads contain elements such as nonfixed and moveable fixtures, cases, racks, counters and partitions as indicated in Section 105.2 from which customers browse or shop.

METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL (MCM). A factory manufactured panel consisting of metal skins bonded to both faces of a solid plastic core.

METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL (MCM) SYSTEM. An *exterior wall covering* fabricated using MCM in a specific assembly including *joints,* seams, attachments, substrate, framing and other details as appropriate to a particular design.

[BS] METAL ROOF PANEL. An interlocking metal sheet having a minimum installed weather exposure of 3 square feet (0.279 m^2) per sheet.

[BS] METAL ROOF SHINGLE. An interlocking metal sheet having an installed weather exposure less than 3 square feet (0.279 m^2) per sheet.

MEZZANINE. An intermediate level or levels between the floor and ceiling of any *story* and in accordance with Section 505.

[BS] MICROPILE. A micropile is a bored, grouted-in-place *deep foundation* element that develops its load-carrying capacity by means of a bond zone in soil, bedrock or a combination of soil and bedrock.

MINERAL BOARD. A rigid felted thermal insulation board consisting of either felted *mineral fiber* or cellular beads of expanded aggregate formed into flat rectangular units.

MINERAL FIBER. Insulation composed principally of fibers manufactured from rock, slag or glass, with or without binders.

MINERAL WOOL. Synthetic vitreous fiber insulation made by melting predominately igneous rock or furnace slag, and other inorganic materials, and then physically forming the melt into fibers.

[BS] MODIFIED BITUMEN ROOF COVERING. One or more layers of polymer-modified asphalt sheets. The sheet materials shall be fully adhered or mechanically attached to the substrate or held in place with an *approved* ballast layer.

[BS] MORTAR. A mixture consisting of cementitious materials, fine aggregates, water, with or without admixtures, that is used to construct unit masonry assemblies.

[BS] MORTAR, SURFACE-BONDING. A mixture to bond concrete *masonry units* that contains hydraulic cement, glass fiber reinforcement with or without inorganic fillers or organic modifiers and water.

MULTILEVEL ASSEMBLY SEATING. Seating that is arranged in distinct levels where each level is comprised of either multiple rows, or a single row of box seats accessed from a separate level.

[F] MULTIPLE-STATION ALARM DEVICE. Two or more single-station alarm devices that can be interconnected such that actuation of one causes all integral or separate audible alarms to operate. A multiple-station alarm device can consist of one single-station alarm device having connections to other detectors or to a *manual fire alarm box.*

[F] MULTIPLE-STATION SMOKE ALARM. Two or more single-station alarm devices that are capable of interconnection such that actuation of one causes the appropriate *alarm signal* to operate in all interconnected alarms.

MULTISTORY UNIT. A *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* with *habitable space* located on more than one *story*.

[BS] NAILING, BOUNDARY. A special nailing pattern required by design at the boundaries of *diaphragms*.

[BS] NAILING, EDGE. A special nailing pattern required by design at the edges of each panel within the assembly of a *diaphragm* or *shear wall*.

[BS] NAILING, FIELD. Nailing required between the sheathing panels and framing members at locations other than *boundary nailing* and *edge nailing*.

[BS] NATURALLY DURABLE WOOD. The heartwood of the following species except for the occasional piece with corner sapwood, provided 90 percent or more of the width of each side on which it occurs is heartwood.

Decay resistant. Redwood, cedar, black locust and black walnut.

Termite resistant. Redwood, Alaska yellow cedar, Eastern red cedar and Western red cedar.

NIGHTCLUB. An A-2 occupancy use under the 2006 International Building Code in which the aggregate area of concentrated use of unfixed chairs and standing space that is specifically designated and primarily used for dancing or viewing performers exceeds three hundred fifty square feet, excluding adjacent lobby areas. “Nightclub” does not include theaters with fixed seating, banquet halls, or lodge halls.

[BS] NOMINAL LOADS. The magnitudes of the *loads* specified in Chapter 16 (dead, live, soil, wind, snow, rain, *flood* and earthquake).

[BS] NOMINAL SIZE (LUMBER). The commercial size designation of width and depth, in standard sawn lumber and glued-laminated lumber *grades*; somewhat larger than the standard net size of dressed lumber, in accordance with DOCPS 20 for sawn lumber and with the ANSI/AWC NDS for glued-laminated lumber.

NONCOMBUSTIBLE MEMBRANE STRUCTURE. A membrane structure in which the membrane and all component parts of the structure are noncombustible.

[BS] NONSTRUCTURAL CONCRETE. Any element made of plain or reinforced concrete that is not part of a structural system required to transfer either gravity or lateral loads to the ground.

[F] NORMAL TEMPERATURE AND PRESSURE (NTP). A temperature of 70°F (21°C) and a pressure of 1 atmosphere [14.7 psia (101 kPa)].

NOSING. The leading edge of treads of *stairs* and of landings at the top of *stairway flights*.

NOTIFICATION ZONE. See “Zone, notification.”

[F] NUISANCE ALARM. An alarm caused by mechanical failure, malfunction, improper installation or lack of proper maintenance, or an alarm activated by a cause that cannot be determined.

NURSING HOMES. Facilities that provide care, including both intermediate care facilities and skilled nursing facilities where any of the persons are *incapable of self-preservation*.

OCCUPANT LOAD. The number of persons for which the *means of egress* of a building or portion thereof is designed.

OCCUPIABLE SPACE. A room or enclosed space designed for human occupancy in which individuals congregate for amusement, educational or similar purposes or in which occupants are engaged at labor, and which is equipped with *means of egress* and light and *ventilation* facilities meeting the requirements of this code.

OPEN-ENDED CORRIDOR. An interior corridor that is open on each end and connects to an exterior *stairway* or *ramp* at each end with no intervening doors or separation from the corridor.

OPEN PARKING GARAGE. A structure or portion of a structure with the openings as described in Section 406.5.2 on two or more sides that is used for the parking or storage of private motor vehicles as described in Section 406.5.3.

[F] OPEN SYSTEM. The *use* of a *solid* or *liquid hazardous material* involving a vessel or system that is continuously open to the atmosphere during normal operations and where vapors are liberated, or the product is exposed to the atmosphere during normal operations. Examples of open systems for *solids* and *liquids* include dispensing from or into open beakers or containers, dip tank and plating tank operations.

[F] OPERATING BUILDING. A building occupied in conjunction with the manufacture, transportation or *use* of explosive materials. Operating buildings are separated from one another with the use of intraplant or intraline distances.

[BS] ORDINARY PRECAST STRUCTURAL WALL. See Section 1905.1.1.

[BS] ORDINARY REINFORCED CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL. See Section 1905.1.1.

[BS] ORDINARY STRUCTURAL PLAIN CONCRETE WALL. See Section 1905.1.1.

[F] ORGANIC PEROXIDE. An organic compound that contains the bivalent -O-O- structure and which may be considered to be a structural derivative of hydrogen peroxide where one or both of the hydrogen atoms have been replaced by an organic radical. Organic peroxides can pose an *explosion* hazard (*detonation* or *deflagration*) or they can be shock sensitive. They can also decompose into various unstable compounds over an extended period of time.

Class I. Those formulations that are capable of *deflagration* but not *detonation*.

Class II. Those formulations that burn very rapidly and that pose a moderate reactivity hazard.

Class III. Those formulations that burn rapidly and that pose a moderate reactivity hazard.

Class IV. Those formulations that burn in the same manner as ordinary combustibles and that pose a minimal reactivity hazard.

Class V. Those formulations that burn with less intensity than ordinary combustibles or do not sustain combustion and that pose no reactivity hazard.

Unclassified detonable. Organic peroxides that are capable of *detonation*. These peroxides pose an extremely high *explosion* hazard through rapid explosive decomposition.

[BS] ORTHOGONAL. To be in two horizontal directions, at 90 degrees (1.57 rad) to each other.

[BS] OTHER STRUCTURES (for Chapters 16-23). Structures, other than buildings, for which *loads* are specified in Chapter 16.

OUTPATIENT CLINIC. See “Clinic, outpatient.”

[A] OWNER. Any person, agent, operator, entity, firm or corporation having any legal or equitable interest in the property; or recorded in the official records of the state, county or municipality as holding an interest or title to the property; or otherwise having possession or control of the property, including the guardian of the estate of any such person, and the executor or administrator of the estate of such person if ordered to take possession of real property by a court.

[F] OXIDIZER. A material that readily yields oxygen or other *oxidizing gas*, or that readily reacts to promote or initiate combustion of combustible materials and, if heated or contaminated, can result in vigorous self-sustained decomposition.

Class 4. An oxidizer that can undergo an explosive reaction due to contamination or exposure to thermal or physical shock and that causes a severe increase in the burning rate of combustible materials with which it comes into contact. Additionally, the oxidizer causes a severe increase in the burning rate and can cause spontaneous ignition of combustibles.

Class 3. An oxidizer that causes a severe increase in the burning rate of combustible materials with which it comes in contact.

Class 2. An oxidizer that will cause a moderate increase in the burning rate of combustible materials with which it comes in contact.

Class 1. An oxidizer that does not moderately increase the burning rate of combustible materials.

[F] OXIDIZING GAS. A gas that can support and accelerate combustion of other materials more than air does.

[BS] PANEL (PART OF A STRUCTURE). The section of a floor, wall or roof comprised between the supporting frame of two adjacent rows of columns and girders or column bands of floor or roof construction.

PANIC HARDWARE. A door-latching assembly incorporating a device that releases the latch upon the application of a force in the direction of egress travel. See “Fire exit hardware.”

[BS] PARTICLEBOARD. A generic term for a panel primarily composed of cellulosic materials (usually wood), generally in the form of discrete pieces or particles, as distinguished from fibers. The cellulosic material is combined with synthetic resin or other suitable bonding system by a process in which the interparticle bond is created by the bonding system under heat and pressure.

PENETRATION FIRESTOP. A through-penetration firestop or a *membrane-penetration firestop*.

PENTHOUSE. An enclosed, unoccupied rooftop structure used for sheltering mechanical and electrical equipment, tanks, elevators and related machinery, and vertical *shaft* openings.

[BS] PERFORMANCE CATEGORY. A designation of wood structural panels as related to the panel performance used in Chapter 23.

[A] PERMIT. An official document or certificate issued by the *building official* that authorizes performance of a specified activity.

[A] PERSON. An individual, heirs, executors, administrators or assigns, and also includes a firm, partnership or corporation, it's or their successors or assigns, or the agent of any of the aforesaid.

PERSONAL CARE SERVICE. The care of persons who do not require *medical care*. Personal care involves responsibility for the safety of the persons while inside the building

PHOTOLUMINESCENT. Having the property of emitting light that continues for a length of time after excitation by visible or invisible light has been removed.

PHOTOVOLTAIC MODULE. A complete, environmentally protected unit consisting of solar cells, optics and other components, exclusive of tracker, designed to generate DC power when exposed to sunlight.

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL. A collection of modules mechanically fastened together, wired and designed to provide a field-installable unit.

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEM. A system that incorporates discrete photovoltaic panels, that converts solar radiation into electricity, including rack support systems.

PHOTOVOLTAIC SHINGLES. A *roof covering* resembling shingles that incorporates photovoltaic modules.

[F] PHYSICAL HAZARD. A chemical for which there is evidence that it is a *combustible liquid*, *cryogenic fluid*, *explosive*, flammable (*solid*, *liquid* or gas), *organic peroxide* (*solid* or *liquid*), *oxidizer* (*solid* or *liquid*), *oxidizing gas*, *pyrophoric* (*solid*, *liquid* or gas), *unstable (reactive) material* (*solid*, *liquid* or gas) or *water-reactive material* (*solid* or *liquid*).

[F] PHYSIOLOGICAL WARNING THRESHOLD LEVEL. A concentration of air-borne contaminants, normally expressed in parts per million (ppm) or milligrams per cubic meter (mg/m^3), that represents the concentration at which persons can sense the presence of the contaminant due to odor, irritation or other quick-acting physiological response. When used in conjunction with the permissible exposure limit (PEL) the physiological warning threshold levels are those consistent with the classification system used to establish the PEL. See the definition of "Permissible exposure limit (PEL)" in the *International Fire Code*.

PLACE OF RELIGIOUS WORSHIP. See "Religious worship, place of."

PLASTIC, APPROVED. Any thermoplastic, thermosetting or reinforced thermosetting plastic material that conforms to combustibility classifications specified in the section applicable to the application and plastic type.

PLASTIC COMPOSITE. A generic designation that refers to wood/plastic composites and plastic lumber.

PLASTIC GLAZING. Plastic materials that are glazed or set in frame or sash and not held by mechanical fasteners that pass through the glazing material.

PLASTIC LUMBER. A manufactured product made primarily of plastic materials (filled or unfilled) which is generally rectangular in cross section.

PLATFORM. A raised area within a building used for worship, the presentation of music, plays or other entertainment; the head table for special guests; the raised area for lecturers and speakers; boxing and wrestling rings; theater-in-the round *stages*; and similar purposes wherein, other than horizontal sliding curtains, there are no overhead hanging curtains, drops, scenery or stage effects other than lighting and sound. A temporary platform is one installed for not more than 30 days.

POLYPROPYLENE SIDING. A shaped material, made principally from polypropylene homopolymer, or copolymer, which in some cases contains fillers or reinforcements, that is used to clad *exterior walls* of buildings.

[BS] PORCELAIN TILE. Tile that conforms to the requirements of ANSI A137.1.3, Section 3.0 for ceramic tile having an absorption of 0.5 percent or less in accordance with ANSI A137.1, Section 4.1 and Section 6.1 Table 10.

PORTABLE SCHOOL CLASSROOM. A prefabricated structure consisting of one or more rooms with direct exterior egress from the classroom(s). The structure is transportable in one or more sections and is designed to be used as an educational space with or without a permanent foundation. The structure shall be capable of being demounted and relocated to other locations as needs arise.

[BS] POSITIVE ROOF DRAINAGE. The drainage condition in which consideration has been made for all loading deflections of the *roof deck*, and additional slope has been provided to ensure drainage of the roof within 48 hours of precipitation.

POWER-ASSISTED DOOR. Swinging door which opens by reduced pushing or pulling force on the door-operating hardware. The door closes automatically after the pushing or pulling force is released and functions with decreased forces. See “Low-energy power-operated door” and “Power-operated door.”

POWER-OPERATED DOOR. Swinging, sliding, or folding door which opens automatically when approached by a pedestrian or opens automatically upon an action by a pedestrian. The door closes automatically and includes provisions such as presence sensors to prevent entrapment. See “Low energy power-operated door” and “Power-assisted door.”

[BS] PREFABRICATED WOOD I-JOIST. Structural member manufactured using sawn or structural composite lumber flanges and wood structural panel webs bonded together with exterior exposure adhesives, which forms an “I” cross-sectional shape.

[BS] PRESTRESSED MASONRY. *Masonry* in which internal stresses have been introduced to counteract potential tensile stresses in *masonry* resulting from applied *loads*.

PRIMARY STRUCTURAL FRAME. The primary structural frame shall include all of the following structural members:

1. The columns.

2. Structural members having direct connections to the columns, including girders, beams, trusses and spandrels.

3. Members of the floor construction and roof construction having direct connections to the columns.

4. Bracing members that are essential to the vertical stability of the primary structural frame under gravity loading shall be considered part of the primary structural frame whether or not the bracing member carries gravity *loads*.

PRIVATE GARAGE. A building or portion of a building in which motor vehicles used by the tenants of the building or buildings on the premises are stored or kept, without provisions for repairing or servicing such vehicles for profit.

PROSCENIUM WALL. The wall that separates the stage from the auditorium or assembly seating area.

PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS. See “Hospitals.”

PUBLIC ENTRANCE. An entrance that is not a *service entrance* or a *restricted entrance*.

PUBLIC-USE AREAS. Interior or exterior rooms or spaces that are made available to the general public.

[A] PUBLIC WAY. A street, alley or other parcel of land open to the outside air leading to a street, that has been deeded, dedicated or otherwise permanently appropriated to the public for public use and which has a clear width and height of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm).

[F] PYROPHORIC. A chemical with an auto-ignition temperature in air, at or below a temperature of 130°F (54.4°C).

[F] PYROTECHNIC COMPOSITION. A chemical mixture that produces visible light displays or sounds through a self-propagating, heat-releasing chemical reaction which is initiated by ignition.

RADIANT BARRIER. A material having a low-emittance surface of 0.1 or less installed in building assemblies.

RAMP. A walking surface that has a running slope steeper than one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope).

RAMP-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES. *Open parking garages* employing a series of continuously rising floors or a series of interconnecting ramps between floors permitting the movement of vehicles under their own power from and to the street level.

RAMP, EXIT ACCESS. See “Exit access ramp.”

RAMP, EXTERIOR EXIT. See “Exterior exit ramp.”

RAMP, INTERIOR EXIT. See “Interior exit ramp.”

[A] RECORD DRAWINGS. Drawings (“as builts”) that document the location of all devices, appliances, wiring sequences, wiring methods and connections of the components of a *fire alarm system* as installed.

REFLECTIVE PLASTIC CORE INSULATION. An insulation material packaged in rolls,that is less than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) thick, with not less than one exterior low-emittance surface (0.1 or less) and a core material containing voids or cells.

[A] REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or *jurisdiction* in which the project is to be constructed.

[A] REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL IN RESPONSIBLE CHARGE. A *registered design professional* engaged by the owner or the owner’s authorized agent to review and coordinate certain aspects of the project, as determined by the *building official*, for compatibility with the design of the building or structure, including submittal documents prepared by others, deferred submittal documents and phased submittal documents.

RELIGIOUS WORSHIP, PLACE OF. A building or portion thereof intended for the performance of religious services.

[A] REPAIR. The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

[BS] REROOFING. The process of recovering or replacing an existing *roof covering*. See “Roof recover” and “Roof replacement.”

RESIDENTIAL AIRCRAFT HANGAR. An accessory building less than 2,000 square feet (186 m^2) and 20 feet (6096 mm) in *building height* constructed on a one- or two-family property where aircraft are stored. Such use will be considered as a residential accessory use incidental to the dwelling.

[BS] RESISTANCE FACTOR. A factor that accounts for deviations of the actual strength from the *nominal strength* and the manner and consequences of failure (also called “strength reduction factor”).

RESTRICTED ENTRANCE. An entrance that is made available for *common use* on a controlled basis, but not public use, and that is not a *service entrance*.

RETRACTABLE AWNING. A retractable *awning* is a cover with a frame that retracts against a building or other structure to which it is entirely supported.

[BS] RISK CATEGORY. A categorization of buildings and other structures for determination of *flood*, wind, snow, ice and earthquake *loads* based on the risk associated with unacceptable performance.

[BS] RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE_R) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS. The most severe earthquake effects considered by this code, determined for the orientation that results in the largest maximum response to horizontal ground motions and with adjustment for targeted risk.

[BS] ROOF ASSEMBLY (For application to Chapter 15 only). A system designed to provide weather protection and resistance to design *loads.* The system consists of a *roof covering* and *roof deck* or a single component serving as both the roof covering and the *roof deck*. A roof assembly includes the *roof deck*, *vapor retarder*, substrate or thermal barrier, insulation, *vapor retarder* and *roof covering*.

[BS] ROOF COVERING. The covering applied to the *roof deck* for weather resistance, fire classification or appearance.

ROOF COVERING SYSTEM. See “Roof assembly.”

[BS] ROOF DECK. The flat or sloped surface constructed on top of the *exterior walls* of a building or other supports for the purpose of enclosing the *story* below, or sheltering an area, to protect it from the elements, not including its supporting members or vertical supports.

ROOF DRAINAGE, POSITIVE. See “Positive roof drainage.”

[BS] ROOF RECOVER. The process of installing an additional *roof covering* over a prepared existing *roof covering* without removing the existing *roof covering*.

[BS] ROOF REPAIR. Reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing roof for the purposes of its maintenance.

[BS] ROOF REPLACEMENT. The process of removing the existing *roof covering*, repairing any damaged substrate and installing a new *roof covering*.

ROOF VENTILATION. The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, *attics,* cathedral ceilings or other enclosed spaces over which a *roof assembly* is installed.

ROOFTOP STRUCTURE. A structure erected on top of the *roof deck* or on top of any part of a building.

[BS] RUNNING BOND. The placement of *masonry units* such that *head joints* in successive courses are horizontally offset at least one-quarter the unit length.

SALLYPORT. A security vestibule with two or more doors or gates where the intended purpose is to prevent continuous and unobstructed passage by allowing the release of only one door or gate at a time.

SCISSOR STAIRWAY. Two interlocking *stairways* providing two separate paths of egress located within one *exit* enclosure.

[BS] SCUPPER. An opening in a wall or parapet that allows water to drain from a roof.

SECONDARY MEMBERS. The following structural members shall be considered secondary members and not part of the *primary structural frame*:

1. Structural members not having direct connections to the columns.

2. Members of the floor construction and roof construction not having direct connections to the columns.

3. Bracing members other than those that are part of the *primary structural frame*.

[BS] SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY. A classification assigned to a structure based on its *risk category* and the severity of the *design earthquake ground motion* at the site.

[BS] SEISMIC FORCE-RESISTING SYSTEM. That part of the structural system that has been considered in the design to provide the required resistance to the prescribed seismic forces.

SELF-CLOSING. As applied to a *fire door* or other opening protective, means equipped with an device that will ensure closing after having been opened.

SELF-LUMINOUS. Illuminated by a self-contained power source, other than batteries, and operated independently of external power sources.

SELF-PRESERVATION, INCAPABLE OF. See “Incapable of self-preservation.”

SELF-SERVICE STORAGE FACILITY. Real property designed and used for the purpose of renting or leasing individual storage spaces to customers for the purpose of storing and removing personal property on a self-service basis.

[F] SERVICE CORRIDOR. A fully enclosed passage used for transporting *HPM* and purposes other than required *means of egress*.

SERVICE ENTRANCE. An entrance intended primarily for delivery of goods or services.

SHAFT. An enclosed space extending through one or more *stories* of a building, connecting vertical openings in successive floors, or floors and roof.

SHAFT ENCLOSURE. The walls or construction forming the boundaries of a *shaft*.

[BS] SHALLOW FOUNDATION. A shallow foundation is an individual or strip footing, a mat foundation, a slab on grade foundation or a similar foundation element.

[BS] SHEAR WALL (for Chapter 23). A wall designed to resist lateral forces parallel to the plane of a wall.

Shear wall, perforated. A wood structural panel sheathed wall with openings that has not been specifically designed and detailed for force transfer around openings.

Shear wall segment, perforated. A section of shear wall with full-height sheathing that meets the height-to-width ratio limits of Section 4.3.4 of AWC SDPWS.

[BS] SHINGLE FASHION. A method of installing roof or wall coverings, water-resistive barriers, flashing or other building components such that upper layers of material are placed overlapping lower layers of material to provide for drainage via gravity and moisture control.

[BS] SINGLE-PLY MEMBRANE. A roofing membrane that is field applied using one layer of membrane material (either homogeneous or composite) rather than multiple layers.

[F] SINGLE-STATION SMOKE ALARM. An assembly incorporating the detector, the control equipment and the alarm-sounding device in one unit, operated from a power supply either in the unit or obtained at the point of installation.

SITE. A parcel of land bounded by a *lot line* or a designated portion of a public right-of-way.

[BS] SITE CLASS. A classification assigned to a site based on the types of soils present and their engineering properties as defined in Section 1613.3.2.

[BS] SITE COEFFICIENTS. The values of F_a and F_v indicated in Tables 1613.3.3(1) and 1613.3.3(2), respectively.

SITE-FABRICATED STRETCH SYSTEM. A system, fabricated on site and intended for acoustical, tackable or aesthetic purposes that is composed of three elements:

1. A frame (constructed of plastic, wood, metal or other material) used to hold fabric in place;

2. A core material (infill, with the correct properties for the application); and

3. An outside layer, composed of a textile, fabric or vinyl, that is stretched taut and held in place by tension or mechanical fasteners via the frame.

[BS] SKYLIGHT, UNIT. A factory-assembled, glazed fenestration unit, containing one panel of glazing material that allows for natural lighting through an opening in the *roof assembly* while preserving the weather-resistant barrier of the roof.

[BS] SKYLIGHTS AND SLOPED GLAZING. Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or more from vertical. Glazing material in skylights, including *unit skylights*, *tubular daylighting devices*, solariums, *sunrooms*, roofs and sloped walls, are included in this definition.

SLEEPING UNIT. A room or space in which people sleep, which can also include permanent provisions for living, eating, and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are also part of a *dwelling unit* are not sleeping units.

SMALL BUSINESS. Any business entity (including a sole proprietorship, corporation, partnership or other legal entity) which is owned and operated independently from all other businesses, which has the purpose of making a profit, and which has fifty or fewer employees.

[F] SMOKE ALARM. A single- or multiple-station alarm responsive to smoke. See “Multiple-station smoke alarm” and “Single-station smoke alarm.”

SMOKE BARRIER. A continuous membrane, either vertical or horizontal, such as a wall, floor or ceiling assembly, that is designed and constructed to restrict the movement of smoke.

SMOKE COMPARTMENT. A space within a building enclosed by *smoke barriers* on all sides, including the top and bottom.

SMOKE DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to resist the passage of smoke. The device is installed to operate *automatically*, controlled by a smoke detection system, and where required, is capable of being positioned from a *fire command center*.

[F] SMOKE DETECTOR. A *listed* device that senses visible or invisible particles of combustion.

SMOKE-DEVELOPED INDEX. A comparative measure, expressed as a dimensionless number, derived from measurements of smoke obscuration versus time for a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY SEATING. Seating served by *means of egress* that is not subject to smoke accumulation within or under a structure.

SMOKEPROOF ENCLOSURE. An *exit stairway* or *ramp* designed and constructed so that the movement of the products of combustion produced by a fire occurring in any part of the building into the enclosure is limited.

[F] SOLID. A material that has a melting point, decomposes or sublimes at a temperature greater than 68°F (20°C).

SPECIAL AMUSEMENT BUILDING. A special amusement building is any temporary or permanent building or portion thereof that is occupied for amusement, entertainment or educational purposes and that contains a device or system that conveys passengers or provides a walkway along, around or over a course in any direction so arranged that the *means of egress* path is not readily apparent due to visual or audio distractions or is intentionally confounded or is not readily available because of the nature of the attraction or mode of conveyance through the building or structure.

[BS] SPECIAL FLOOD HAZARD AREA. The land area subject to flood hazards and shown on a *Flood Insurance Rate Map* or other flood hazard map as Zone A, AE, A1-30, A99, AR, AO, AH, V, VO, VE or V1-30.

[BS] SPECIAL INSPECTION. Inspection of construction requiring the expertise of an *approved special inspector* in order to ensure compliance with this code and the *approved construction documents*.

Continuous special inspection. Special inspection by the *special inspector* who is present continuously when and where the work to be inspected is being performed.

Periodic special inspection. Special inspection by the *special inspector* who is intermittently present where the work to be inspected has been or is being performed.

[BS] SPECIAL INSPECTOR. A qualified person employed or retained by an *approved* agency and *approved* by the *building official* as having the competence necessary to inspect a particular type of construction requiring *special inspection.*

[BS] SPECIAL STRUCTURAL WALL. See Section 1905.1.1.

[BS] SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF MASONRY, f'_m. Minimum compressive strength, expressed as force per unit of net cross-sectional area, required of the *masonry* used in construction by the *approved construction documents*, and upon which the project design is based. Whenever the quantity f'_m is under the radical sign, the square root of numerical value only is intended and the result has units of pounds per square inch (psi) (MPa).

SPLICE. The result of a factory and/or field method of joining or connecting two or more lengths of a *fire-resistant joint system* into a continuous entity.

SPORT ACTIVITY, AREA OF. See “Area of sport activity.”

SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTANT MATERIALS. Cementitious or fibrous materials that are sprayed to provide fire-resistant protection of the substrates.

STAGE. A space within a building utilized for entertainment or presentations, which includes overhead hanging curtains, drops, scenery or stage effects other than lighting and sound.

STAGED EVACUATION. A method of emergency response that engages building components and trained staff to provide occupant safety during an emergency. Emergency response involves moving or holding certain occupants at temporary locations for a brief period of time before evacuating the building. This response is used by ambulatory surgery facilities and assisted living facilities to protect the health and safety of fragile occupants and residents.

STAIR. A change in elevation, consisting of one or more risers.

STAIRWAY. One or more *flights* of *stairs*, either exterior or interior, with the necessary landings and platforms connecting them, to form a continuous and uninterrupted passage from one level to another.

STAIRWAY, EXIT ACCESS. See “Exit access stairway.”

STAIRWAY, EXTERIOR EXIT. See “Exterior exit stair-way.”

STAIRWAY, INTERIOR EXIT. See “Interior exit stair-way.”

STAIRWAY, SCISSOR. See “Scissor stairway.”

STAIRWAY, SPIRAL. A *stairway* having a closed circular form in its plan view with uniform section-shaped treads attached to and radiating from a minimum-diameter supporting column.

~~**[F] STANDBY POWER SYSTEM.** A source of automatic electric power of a required capacity and duration to operate required building, hazardous materials or ventilation systems in the event of a failure of the primary power. Standby power systems are required for electrical loads where interruption of the primary power could create hazards or hamper rescue or fire-fighting operations.~~

[F] STANDBY POWER SYSTEM. All references to Standby Power System shall be considered to indicate Legally Required Power in accordance with the Washington Cities Electrical Code, and NFPA 70 (National Electrical Code), and shall be in accordance with Chapter 27 Legally Required Standby Power, as a source of automatic electric power of a required capacity and duration to operate required building, hazardous materials or ventilation systems in the event of a failure of the primary power. Standby power systems are required for electrical loads where interruption of the primary power could create hazards or hamper rescue or fire-fighting operations.

[F] STANDPIPE SYSTEM, CLASSES OF. Standpipe classes are as follows:

Class I system. A system providing 2 1/2-inch (64 mm) hose connections to supply water for use by fire departments and those trained in handling heavy fire streams.

Class II system. A system providing 1 1/2-inch (38 mm) hose stations to supply water for use primarily by the building occupants or by the fire department during initial response.

Class III system. A system providing 1 1/2-inch (38 mm) hose stations to supply water for use by building occupants and 2 1/2-inch (64 mm) hose connections to supply a larger volume of water for use by fire departments and those trained in handling heavy fire streams.

[F] STANDPIPE, TYPES OF. Standpipe types are as follows:

Automatic dry. A dry standpipe system, normally filled with pressurized air, that is arranged through the use of a device, such as dry pipe valve, to admit water into the system piping *automatically* upon the opening of a hose valve. The water supply for an *automatic* dry standpipe system shall be capable of supplying the system demand.

Automatic wet. A wet standpipe system that has a water supply that is capable of supplying the system demand *automatically.*

Manual dry. A dry standpipe system that does not have a permanent water supply attached to the system. Manual dry standpipe systems require water from a fire department pumper to be pumped into the system through the fire department connection in order to meet the system demand.

Manual wet. A wet standpipe system connected to a water supply for the purpose of maintaining water within the system but does not have a water supply capable of delivering the system demand attached to the system. Manual wet standpipe systems require water from a fire department pumper (or the like) to be pumped into the system in order to meet the system demand.

Semiautomatic dry. A dry standpipe system that is arranged through the use of a device, such as a deluge valve, to admit water into the system piping upon activation of a remote control device located at a hose connection. A remote control activation device shall be provided at each hose connection. The water supply for a semiautomatic dry standpipe system shall be capable of supplying the system demand.

[BS] START OF CONSTRUCTION. The date of issuance for new construction and *substantial improvements* to *existing structures,* provided the actual start of construction, *repair*, reconstruction, rehabilitation, *addition*, placement or other improvement is within 180 days after the date of issuance. The actual start of construction means the first placement of permanent construction of a building (including a manufactured home) on a site, such as the pouring of a slab or footings, installation of pilings or construction of columns.

Permanent construction does not include land preparation (such as clearing, excavation, grading or filling), the installation of streets or walkways, excavation for a *basement*, footings, piers or foundations, the erection of temporary forms or the installation of accessory buildings such as garages or sheds not occupied as *dwelling units* or not part of the main building. For a *substantial improvement*, the actual “start of construction” means the first *alteration* of any wall, ceiling, floor or other structural part of a building, whether or not that *alteration* affects the external dimensions of the building.

[BS] STEEL CONSTRUCTION, COLD-FORMED. That type of construction made up entirely or in part of *steel structural members* cold formed to shape from sheet or strip steel such as *roof deck*, floor and wall panels, studs, floor joists, roof joists and other structural elements.

[BS] STEEL ELEMENT, STRUCTURAL. Any *steel structural member* of a building or structure consisting of rolled shapes, pipe, hollow structural sections, plates, bars, sheets, rods or steel castings other than cold-formed steel or steel joist members.

[BS] STEEL JOIST. Any *steel structural member* of a building or structure made of hot-rolled or cold-formed solid or open-web sections, or riveted or welded bars, strip or sheet steel members, or slotted and expanded, or otherwise deformed rolled sections.

STEEP SLOPE. A roof slope greater than two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope).

[BS] STONE MASONRY. *Masonry* composed of field, quarried or *cast stone* units bonded by *mortar*.

[F] STORAGE, HAZARDOUS MATERIALS. The keeping, retention or leaving of hazardous materials in closed containers, tanks, cylinders, or similar vessels; or vessels supplying operations through closed connections to the vessel.

[BS] STORAGE RACKS. Cold-formed or hot-rolled steel structural members which are formed into steel storage racks, including pallet storage racks, movable-shelf racks, rack-supported

systems, automated storage and retrieval systems (stacker racks), push-back racks, pallet-flow racks, case-flow racks, pick modules and rack-supported platforms. Other types of racks, such as drive-in or drive-through racks, cantilever racks, portable racks or racks made of materials other than steel, are not considered storage racks for the purpose of this code.

STORM SHELTER. A building, structure or portions thereof, constructed in accordance with ICC 500 and designated for use during a severe wind storm event, such as a hurricane or tornado.

Community storm shelter. A storm shelter not defined as a "Residential storm shelter."

Residential storm shelter. A storm shelter serving occupants of *dwelling units* and having an *occupant load* not exceeding 16 persons.

STORY. That portion of a building included between the upper surface of a floor and the upper surface of the floor or roof next above (see "*Basement*," *"Building height,"* "*Grade plane" and " Mezzanine"*). A story is measured as the vertical distance from top to top of two successive tiers of beams or finished floor surfaces and, for the topmost story, from the top of the floor finish to the top of the ceiling joists or, where there is not a ceiling, to the top of the roof rafters.

STORY ABOVE GRADE PLANE. Any *story* having its finished floor surface entirely above *grade plane*, or in which the finished surface of the floor next above is:

1. More than 6 feet (1829 mm) above *grade plane*; or

2. More than 12 feet (3658 mm) above the finished ground level at any point.

[BS] STRENGTH (For Chapter 21).

Design strength. Nominal strength multiplied by a strength reduction factor.

Nominal strength. Strength of a member or cross section calculated in accordance with these provisions before application of any strength-reduction factors.

Required strength. Strength of a member or cross section required to resist *factored loads*.

[BS] STRENGTH (for Chapter 16).

Nominal strength. The capacity of a structure or member to resist the effects of *loads*, as determined by computations using *specified* material strengths and dimensions and equations derived from accepted principles of structural mechanics or by field tests or laboratory tests of scaled models, allowing for modeling effects and differences between laboratory and field conditions.

Required strength. Strength of a member, cross section or connection required to resist *factored loads* or related internal moments and forces in such combinations as stipulated by these provisions.

Strength design. A method of proportioning structural members such that the computed forces produced in the members by *factored loads* do not exceed the member design

strength [also called "*load and resistance factor design"* (LRFD)]. The term "strength design" is used in the design of concrete and *masonry* structural elements.

[BS] STRUCTURAL COMPOSITE LUMBER. Structural member manufactured using wood elements bonded together with exterior adhesives. Examples of structural composite lumber are:

Laminated strand lumber (LSL). A composite of wood strand elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the least dimension of the wood strand elements is 0.10 inch (2.54 mm) or less and their average lengths not less than 150 times the least dimension of the wood strand elements.

Laminated veneer lumber (LVL). A composite of wood *veneer* sheet elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the *veneer* element thicknesses are 0.25 inches (6.4 mm) or less.

Oriented strand lumber (OSL). A composite of wood strand elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the least dimension of the wood strand elements is 0.10 inches (2.54 mm) or less and their average lengths not less than 75 times and less than 150 times the least dimension of the strand elements.

Parallel strand lumber (PSL). A composite of wood strand elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member where the least dimension of the wood strand elements is 0.25 inches (6.4 mm) or less and their average lengths not less than 300 times the least dimension of the wood strand elements.

[BS] STRUCTURAL GLUED-LAMINATED TIMBER. An engineered, stress-rated product of a timber laminating plant, comprised of assemblies of specially selected and prepared wood laminations in which the grain of all laminations is approximately parallel longitudinally and the laminations are bonded with adhesives.

[BS] STRUCTURAL OBSERVATION. The visual observation of the structural system by a *registered design professional* for general conformance to the *approved construction documents*.

[A] STRUCTURE. That which is built or constructed.

[BS] SUBSTANTIAL DAMAGE. Damage of any origin sustained by a structure whereby the cost of restoring the structure to its before-damaged condition would equal or exceed 50 percent of the market value of the structure before the damage occurred.

[BS] SUBSTANTIAL IMPROVEMENT. Any *repair*, reconstruction, rehabilitation, *alteration*, *addition* or other improvement of a building or structure, the cost of which equals or exceeds 50 percent of the market value of the structure before the improvement or repair is started. If the structure has sustained *substantial damage*, any *repairs* are considered substantial improvement regardless of the actual *repair* work performed. The term does not, however, include either:

1. Any project for improvement of a building required to correct existing health, sanitary or safety code violations identified by the *building official* and that are the minimum necessary to assure safe living conditions.

2. Any *alteration* of a historic structure provided that the *alteration* will not preclude the structure's continued designation as a historic structure.

[BS] SUBSTANTIAL STRUCTURAL DAMAGE. A condition where one or both of the following apply:

1. The vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system have suffered damage such that the lateral load-carrying capacity of any *story* in any horizontal direction has been reduced by more than 33 percent from its pre-damage condition.

2. The capacity of any vertical component carrying gravity load, or any group of such components, that supports more than 30 percent of the total area of the structure's floors and roofs has been reduced more than 20 percent from its pre-damage condition and the remaining capacity of such affected elements, with respect to all dead and *live loads*, is less than 75 percent of that required by this code for new buildings of similar structure, purpose and location.

[E] SUNROOM. A one-*story* structure attached to a building with a glazing area in excess of 40 percent of the gross area of the structure's *exterior walls* and roof.

[F] SUPERVISING STATION. A facility that receives signals and at which personnel are in attendance at all times to respond to these signals.

[F] SUPERVISORY SERVICE. The service required to monitor performance of guard tours and the operative condition of fixed suppression systems or other systems for the protection of life and property.

[F] SUPERVISORY SIGNAL. A signal indicating the need of action in connection with the supervision of guard tours, the fire suppression systems or equipment or the maintenance features of related systems.

[F] SUPERVISORY SIGNAL-INITIATING DEVICE. An initiation device, such as a valve supervisory switch, water-level indicator or low-air pressure switch on a dry-pipe sprinkler system, whose change of state signals an off-normal condition and its restoration to normal of a fire protection or life safety system, or a need for action in connection with guard tours, fire suppression systems or equipment or maintenance features of related systems.

[BS] SUSCEPTIBLE BAY. A roof or portion thereof with:

1. A slope less than 1/4-inch per foot (0.0208 rad); or

2. On which water is impounded, in whole or in part, and the secondary drainage system is functional but the primary drainage system is blocked.

A roof surface with a slope of 1/4-inch per foot (0.0208 rad) or greater towards points of free drainage is not a susceptible bay.

SWIMMING POOL. Any structure intended for swimming, recreational bathing or wading that contains water over 24 inches (610 mm) deep. This includes in-ground, aboveground and on-ground pools; hot tubs; spas and fixed-inplace wading pools.

T RATING. The time period that the *penetration firestop system*, including the penetrating item, limits the maximum temperature rise to 325°F (163°C) above its initial temperature through the penetration on the nonfire side when tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479.

TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREA. Open elevated areas or spaces intended for entertainment technicians to walk on and occupy for servicing and operating entertainment technology systems and equipment. Galleries, including fly and lighting galleries, gridirons, catwalks, and similar areas are designed for these purposes.

TENSILE MEMBRANE STRUCTURE. A membrane structure having a shape that is determined by tension in the membrane and the geometry of the support structure. Typically, the structure consists of both flexible elements (e.g., membrane and cables), nonflexible elements (e.g., struts, masts, beams and arches) and the anchorage (e.g., supports and foundations). This includes frame-supported tensile membrane structures.

TENT. A structure, enclosure or shelter, with or without sidewalls or drops, constructed of fabric or pliable material supported in any manner except by air or the contents it protects.

[E] THERMAL ISOLATION. A separation of conditioned spaces, between a *sunroom* and a *dwelling unit*, consisting of existing or new walls, doors or windows.

THERMOPLASTIC MATERIAL. A plastic material that is capable of being repeatedly softened by increase of temperature and hardened by decrease of temperature.

THERMOSETTING MATERIAL. A plastic material that is capable of being changed into a substantially nonreformable product when cured.

THROUGH PENETRATION. A breach in both sides of a floor, floor-ceiling or wall assembly to accommodate an item passing through the breaches.

THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM. An assemblage consisting of a fire-resistance-rated floor, floor-ceiling, or wall assembly, one or more penetrating items passing through the breaches in both sides of the assembly and the materials or devices, or both, installed to resist the spread of fire through the assembly for a prescribed period of time.

[BS] TIE-DOWN (HOLD-DOWN). A device used to resist uplift of the chords of *shear walls.*

[BS] TIE, WALL. Metal connector that connects *wythes* of *masonry* walls together.

[BS] TILE, STRUCTURAL CLAY. A hollow *masonry unit* composed of burned clay, shale, fire clay or mixture thereof, and having parallel *cells*.

[F] TIRES, BULK STORAGE OF. Storage of tires where the area available for storage exceeds 20,000 cubic feet (566 m^3).

[A] TOWNHOUSE. A single-family *dwelling unit* constructed in a group of three or more attached units in which each unit extends from the foundation to roof and with open space on at least two sides.

[F] TOXIC. A chemical falling within any of the following categories:

1. A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD50) of more than 50 milligrams per kilogram, but not more than 500 milligrams per kilogram of body weight when administered orally to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.

2. A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD50) of more than 200 milligrams per kilogram, but not more than 1,000 milligrams per kilogram of body weight when administered by continuous contact for 24 hours (or less if death occurs within 24 hours) with the bare skin of albino rabbits weighing between 2 and 3 kilograms each.

3. A chemical that has a median lethal concentration (LC50) in air of more than 200 parts per million, but not more than 2,000 parts per million by volume of gas or vapor, or more than 2 milligrams per liter but not more than 20 milligrams per liter of mist, fume or dust, when administered by continuous inhalation for 1 hour (or less if death occurs within 1 hour) to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.

TRANSIENT. Occupancy of a *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* for not more than 30 days.

TRANSIENT AIRCRAFT. Aircraft based at another location and that is at the transient location for not more than 90 days.

[BS] TREATED WOOD. Wood products that are conditioned to enhance fire-retardant or preservative properties.

Fire-retardant-treated wood. Wood products that, when impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process or other means during manufacture, exhibit reduced surface-burning characteristics and resist propagation of fire.

Preservative-treated wood. Wood products that, conditioned with chemicals by a pressure process or other means, exhibit reduced susceptibility to damage by fungi, insects or marine borers.

TRIM. Picture molds, chair rails, baseboards, *handrails*, door and window frames and similar decorative or protective materials used in fixed applications.

[F] TROUBLE SIGNAL. A signal initiated by the *fire alarm system* or device indicative of a fault in a monitored circuit or component.

[BS] TUBULAR DAYLIGHTING DEVICE (TDD). A non-operable *fenestration* unit primarily designed to transmit daylight from a roof surface to an interior ceiling via a tubular conduit. The basic unit consists of an exterior glazed weathering surface, a light-transmitting tube with a reflective interior surface, and an interior-sealing device such as a translucent ceiling panel. The unit can be factory assembled, or field-assembled from a manufactured kit.

24-HOUR BASIS. See “24-hour basis” located preceding “AAC masonry.”

TYPE A UNIT. A *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* designed and constructed for accessibility in accordance with this code and the provisions for *Type A units* in ICC A117.1.

TYPE B UNIT. A *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* designed and constructed for accessibility in accordance with this code and the provisions for *Type B units* in ICC A117.1, consistent with the design and construction requirements of the federal Fair Housing Act.

[BS] UNDERLAYMENT. One or more layers of felt, sheathing paper, non-bituminous saturated felt or other *approved* material over which a steep-slope *roof covering* is applied.

UNIT SKYLIGHT. See “Skylight, unit.”

[F] UNSTABLE (REACTIVE) MATERIAL. A material, other than an explosive, which in the pure state or as commercially produced, will vigorously polymerize, decompose, condense or become self-reactive and undergo other violent chemical changes, including *explosion*, when exposed to heat, friction or shock, or in the absence of an inhibitor, or in the presence of contaminants, or in contact with *incompatible materials*. Unstable (reactive) materials are subdivided as follows:

Class 4. Materials that in themselves are readily capable of *detonation* or explosive decomposition or explosive reaction at *normal temperatures and pressures*. This class includes materials that are sensitive to mechanical or localized thermal shock at *normal temperatures and pressures.*

Class 3. Materials that in themselves are capable of *detonation* or of explosive decomposition or explosive reaction but which require a strong initiating source or which must be heated under confinement before initiation. This class includes materials that are sensitive to thermal or mechanical shock at elevated temperatures and pressures.

Class 2. Materials that in themselves are normally unstable and readily undergo violent chemical change but do not detonate. This class includes materials that can undergo chemical change with rapid release of energy at *normal temperatures and pressures*, and that can undergo violent chemical change at elevated temperatures and pressures.

Class 1. Materials that in themselves are normally stable but which can become unstable at elevated temperatures and pressure.

[F] USE (MATERIAL). Placing a material into action, including *solids, liquids* and gases.

VAPOR PERMEABLE MEMBRANE. The property of having a moisture vapor permeance rating of 5 perms (2.9 × 10-10 kg/Pa × s × m^2) or greater, when tested in accordance with the desiccant method using Procedure A of ASTM E96. A vapor permeable material permits the passage of moisture vapor.

VAPOR RETARDER CLASS. A measure of a material or assembly’s ability to limit the amount of moisture that passes through that material or assembly. Vapor retarder class shall be defined using the desiccant method of ASTM E96 as follows:

Class I: 0.1 perm or less.

Class II: 0.1 < perm ≤ 1.0 perm.

Class III: 1.0 < perm ≤ 10 perm.

VEGETATIVE ROOF. An assembly of interacting components designed to waterproof and normally insulate a building's top surface that includes, by design, vegetation and related landscape elements.

VEHICLE BARRIER. A component or a system of components, near open sides or walls of garage floors or ramps that act as a restraint for vehicles.

VEHICULAR GATE. A gate that is intended for use at a vehicular entrance or exit to a facility, building or portion thereof, and that is not intended for use by pedestrian traffic.

VENEER. A facing attached to a wall for the purpose of providing ornamentation, protection or insulation, but not counted as adding strength to the wall.

[M] VENTILATION. The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

VINYL SIDING. A shaped material, made principally from rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC), that is used as an *exterior wall covering*.

[F] VISIBLE ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE. A notification appliance that alerts by the sense of sight.

WALKWAY, PEDESTRIAN. A walkway used exclusively as a pedestrian traffic way.

[BS] WALL (for Chapter 21). A vertical element with a horizontal length-to-thickness ratio greater than three, used to enclose space.

Cavity wall. A wall built of *masonry units* or of concrete, or a combination of these materials, arranged to provide an airspace within the wall, and in which the inner and outer parts of the wall are tied together with metal ties.

Dry-stacked, surface-bonded wall. A wall built of concrete *masonry units* where the units are stacked dry, without *mortar* on the bed or *head joints*, and where both sides of the wall are coated with a surface-bonding *mortar*.

Parapet wall. The part of any wall entirely above the roof line.

[BS] WALL, LOAD-BEARING. Any wall meeting either of the following classifications:

1. Any metal or wood stud wall that supports more than 100 pounds per linear foot (1459 N/m) of vertical load in addition to its own weight.

2. Any *masonry* or concrete wall that supports more than 200 pounds per linear foot (2919 N/m) of vertical load in addition to its own weight.

[BS] WALL, NONLOAD-BEARING. Any wall that is not a *load-bearing wall*.

[F] WATER-REACTIVE MATERIAL. A material that explodes; violently reacts; produces *flammable*, *toxic* or other hazardous gases; or evolves enough heat to cause auto-ignition or ignition of combustibles upon exposure to water or moisture. Water-reactive materials are subdivided as follows:

Class 3. Materials that react explosively with water without requiring heat or confinement.

Class 2. Materials that react violently with water or have the ability to boil water. Materials that produce *flammable*, *toxic* or other hazardous gases or evolve enough heat to cause auto-ignition or ignition of combustibles upon exposure to water or moisture.

Class 1. Materials that react with water with some release of energy, but not violently.

WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER. A material behind an *exterior wall covering* that is intended to resist liquid water that has penetrated behind the exterior covering from further intruding into the *exterior wall* assembly.

[F] WATER SUPPLY. The source and delivery system supplying the required flow (gpm) and pressure (psi) to a sprinkler system or other fire protection system/equipment.

WEATHER-EXPOSED SURFACES. Surfaces of walls, ceilings, floors, roofs, soffits and similar surfaces exposed to the weather except the following:

1. Ceilings and roof soffits enclosed by walls, fascia, bulkheads or beams that extend not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below such ceiling or roof soffits.

2. Walls or portions of walls beneath an unenclosed roof area, where located a horizontal distance from an open exterior opening equal to not less than twice the height of the opening.

3. Ceiling and roof soffits located a minimum horizontal distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the outer edges of the ceiling or roof soffits.

[F] WET-CHEMICAL EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM. A solution of water and potassium-carbonate-based chemical, potassium-acetate-based chemical or a combination thereof, forming an extinguishing agent.

WHEELCHAIR SPACE. A space for a single wheelchair and its occupant.

[BS] WIND-BORNE DEBRIS REGION. Areas within hurricane-prone regions located:

1. Within 1 mile (1.61 km) of the coastal mean high water line where the ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, is 130 mph (58 m/s) or greater; or

2. In areas where the ultimate design wind speed is 140 mph (63.6 m/s) or greater.

For *Risk Category* II buildings and structures and *Risk Category* III buildings and structures, except health care facilities, the wind-borne debris region shall be based on Figure 1609.3.(1). For *Risk Category* IV buildings and structures and *Risk Category* III health care facilities, the windborne debris region shall be based on Figure 1609.3(2).

WINDFORCE-RESISTING SYSTEM, MAIN. See “Main windforce-resisting system.”

[BS] WIND SPEED, Vult. Ultimate design wind speeds.

[BS] WIND SPEED, Vasd. Nominal design wind speeds.

WINDER. A tread with nonparallel edges.

[BS] WIRE BACKING. Horizontal strands of tautened wire attached to surfaces of vertical supports which, when covered with the building paper, provide a *backing* for cement plaster

[F] WIRELESS PROTECTION SYSTEM. A system or a part of a system that can transmit and receive signals without the aid of wire.

[BS] WOOD/PLASTIC COMPOSITE. A composite material made primarily from wood or cellulose-based materials and plastic.

[BS] WOOD SHEAR PANEL. A wood floor, roof or wall component sheathed to act as a *shear wall* or *diaphragm*.

[BS] WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL. A panel manufactured from *veneers*, wood strands or wafers or a combination of *veneer* and wood strands or wafers bonded together with waterproof synthetic resins or other suitable bonding systems. Examples of wood structural panels are:

Composite panels. A wood structural panel that is comprised of wood *veneer* and reconstituted wood-based material and bonded together with waterproof adhesive;

Oriented strand board (OSB). A mat-formed wood structural panel comprised of thin rectangular wood strands arranged in cross-aligned layers with surface layers normally arranged in the long panel direction and bonded with waterproof adhesive; or

Plywood. A wood structural panel comprised of plies of wood *veneer* arranged in cross-aligned layers. The plies are bonded with waterproof adhesive that cures on application of heat and pressure.

[F] WORKSTATION. A defined space or an independent principal piece of equipment using *HPM* within a *fabrication area* where a specific function, laboratory procedure or research activity occurs. *Approved* or *listed hazardous materials storage cabinets*, *flammable liquid* storage cabinets or *gas cabinets* serving a workstation are included as part of the workstation. A workstation is allowed to contain *ventilation* equipment, fire protection devices, detection devices, electrical devices and other processing and scientific equipment.

[BS] WYTHE. Each continuous, vertical section of a wall, one *masonry unit* in thickness.

YARD. An open space, other than a *court*, unobstructed from the ground to the sky, except where specifically provided by this code, on the lot on which a building is situated.

[F] ZONE. A defined area within the protected premises. A zone can define an area from which a signal can be received, an area to which a signal can be sent or an area in which a form of control can be executed.

[F] ZONE, NOTIFICATION. An area within a building or facility covered by notification appliances which are activated simultaneously.

CHAPTER 3
USE AND OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [F] will be considered by the International Fire Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 301
GENERAL

301.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall control the classification of all buildings and structures as to use and occupancy.

SECTION 302
CLASSIFICATION

302.1 General.

Structures or portions of structures shall be classified with respect to occupancy in one or more of the groups listed in this section. A room or space that is intended to be occupied at different times for different purposes shall comply with all of the requirements that are applicable to each of the purposes for which the room or space will be occupied. Structures with multiple occupancies or uses shall comply with Section 508. Where a structure is proposed for a purpose that is not specifically provided for in this code, such structure shall be classified in the group that the occupancy most nearly resembles, according to the fire safety and relative hazard involved and shall comply with Section 503.1.4.

1. Assembly (see Section 303): Groups A-1, A-2, A-3, A-4 and A-5.
2. Business (see Section 304): Group B.
3. Educational (see Section 305): Group E.
4. Factory and Industrial (see Section 306): Groups F-1 and F-2.
5. High Hazard (see Section 307): Groups H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5.
6. Institutional (see Section 308): Groups I-1, I-2, I-3 and I-4.
7. Mercantile (see Section 309): Group M.
8. Residential (see Section 310): Groups R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4.
9. Storage (see Section 311): Groups S-1 and S-2.
10. Utility and Miscellaneous (see Section 312): Group U.

SECTION 303
ASSEMBLY GROUP A

303.1 Assembly Group A.
Assembly Group A occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for the gathering of persons for purposes such as civic, social or religious functions; recreation, food or drink consumption or awaiting transportation.

303.1.1 Small buildings and tenant spaces.
A building or tenant space used for assembly purposes with an *occupant load* of less than 50 persons shall be classified as a Group B occupancy.

303.1.2 Small assembly spaces.
The following rooms and spaces shall not be classified as Assembly occupancies:

1. A room or space used for assembly purposes with an *occupant load* of less than 50 persons and accessory to another occupancy shall be classified as a Group B occupancy or as part of that occupancy.

2. A room or space used for assembly purposes that is less than 750 square feet (70 m^2) in area and accessory to another occupancy shall be classified as a Group B occupancy or as part of that occupancy.

303.1.3 Associated with Group E occupancies.
A room or space used for assembly purposes that is associated with a Group E occupancy is not considered a separate occupancy.

303.1.4 Accessory to places of religious worship.
Accessory religious educational rooms and religious auditoriums with *occupant loads* of less than 100 per room or space are not considered separate occupancies.

303.2 Assembly Group A-1.
Group A-1 occupancy includes assembly uses, usually with fixed seating, intended for the production and viewing of the performing arts or motion pictures including, but not limited to:

Motion picture theaters

Symphony and concert halls

Television and radio studios admitting an audience

Theaters

303.3 Assembly Group A-2.
Group A-2 occupancy includes assembly uses intended for food and/or drink consumption including, but not limited to:

Banquet halls

Casinos (gaming areas)

Nightclubs

Restaurants, cafeterias and similar dining facilities
(including associated commercial kitchens)

Taverns and bars

303.4 Assembly Group A-3.
Group A-3 occupancy includes assembly uses intended for worship, recreation or amusement and other assembly uses not classified elsewhere in Group A including, but not limited to:

Amusement arcades

Art galleries

Bowling alleys

Community halls

Courtrooms

Dance halls (not including food or drink consumption) Exhibition halls

Funeral parlors

Gymnasiums (without spectator seating)

Indoor *swimming pools* (without spectator seating) Indoor tennis courts (without spectator seating)

Lecture halls

Libraries

Museums

Places of religious worship

Pool and billiard parlors

Waiting areas in transportation terminals

303.5 Assembly Group A-4.
Group A-4 occupancy includes assembly uses intended for viewing of indoor sporting events and activities with spectator seating including, but not limited to:

Arenas

Skating rinks

Swimming pools

Tennis courts

303.6 Assembly Group A-5.
Group A-5 occupancy includes assembly uses intended for participation in or viewing outdoor activities including, but not limited to:

Amusement park structures

Bleachers

Grandstands

Stadiums

SECTION 304
BUSINESS GROUP B

304.1 Business Group B.
Business Group B occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for office, professional or service-type transactions, including storage of records and accounts. Business occupancies shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Airport traffic control towers

Ambulatory care facilities

Animal hospitals, kennels and pounds

Banks

Barber and beauty shops

Car wash

Civic administration

Clinic, outpatient

Dry cleaning and laundries: pick-up and delivery stations
and self-service

Educational occupancies for students above the 12th grade

Electronic data processing

Food processing establishments and commercial kitchens not associated with restaurants, cafeterias and similar dining facilities not more than 2,500 square feet (232 m^2) in area.

Laboratories: testing and research

Motor vehicle showrooms

Post offices

Print shops

Professional services (architects, attorneys, dentists, physicians, engineers, etc.)

Radio and television stations

Telephone exchanges

Training and skill development not in a school or academic program (this shall include, but not be limited to, tutoring centers, martial arts studios, gymnastics and similar uses regardless of the ages served, and where not classified as a Group A occupancy).

304.2 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

AMBULATORY CARE FACILITY.

CLINIC, OUTPATIENT.

SECTION 305
EDUCATIONAL GROUP E

305.1 Educational Group E.
Educational Group E occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, by six or more persons at any one time for educational purposes through the 12th grade.

305.1.1 Accessory to places of religious worship.
Religious educational rooms and religious auditoriums, which are accessory to *places of religious worship* in accordance with Section 303.1.4 and have *occupant loads* of less than 100 per room or space, shall be classified as Group A-3 occupancies.

305.2 Group E, day care facilities.
This group includes buildings and structures or portions thereof occupied by more than five children older than $2^1/_2$ years of age who receive educational, supervision or *personal care services* for fewer than 24 hours per day.

305.2.1 Within places of religious worship.
Rooms and spaces within *places of religious worship* providing such day care during religious functions shall be classified as part of the primary occupancy.

305.2.2 Five or fewer children.
A facility having five or fewer children receiving such day care shall be classified as part of the primary occupancy.

305.2.3 Five or fewer children in a dwelling unit.
A facility such as the above within a *dwelling unit* and having five or fewer children receiving such day care shall be classified as a Group R-3 occupancy or shall comply with the *International Residential Code*.

305.2.4 Family home child care. Family home child care licensed by Washington state for the care of twelve or fewer children shall be classified as Group R-3 or shall comply with the International Residential Code.

SECTION 306
FACTORY GROUP F

306.1 Factory Industrial Group F.
Factory Industrial Group F occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for assembling, disassembling, fabricating, finishing, manufacturing, packaging, repair or processing operations that are not classified as a Group H hazardous or Group S storage occupancy.

306.2 Moderate-hazard factory industrial, Group F-1.
Factory industrial uses that are not classified as Factory Industrial F-2 Low Hazard shall be classified as F-1 Moderate Hazard and shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Aircraft (manufacturing, not to include repair) Appliances

Appliances

Athletic equipment

Automobiles and other motor vehicles

Bakeries

Beverages: over 16-percent alcohol content

Bicycles

Boats

Brooms or brushes

Business machines

Cameras and photo equipment

Canvas or similar fabric

Carpets and rugs (includes cleaning)

Clothing

Construction and agricultural machinery

Disinfectants

Dry cleaning and dyeing

Electric generation plants

Electronics

Engines (including rebuilding)

Food processing establishments and commercial kitchens not associated with restaurants, cafeterias and similar dining facilities more than 2,500 square feet (232 $m^{2)}$ in area.

Furniture

Hemp products

Jute products

Laundries

Leather products

Machinery

Marijuana processing

Metals

Millwork (sash and door)

Motion pictures and television filming (without spectators)

Musical instruments

Optical goods

Paper mills or products

Photographic film

Plastic products

Printing or publishing

Recreational vehicles

Refuse incineration

Shoes

Soaps and detergents

Textiles

Tobacco

Trailers

Upholstering

Wood; distillation

Woodworking (cabinet)

306.3 Low-hazard factory industrial, Group F-2.
Factory industrial uses that involve the fabrication or manufacturing of noncombustible materials that during finishing, packing or processing do not involve a significant fire hazard shall be classified as F-2 occupancies and shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Beverages: up to and including 16-percent alcohol content

Brick and masonry Ceramic products Foundries

Glass products

Gypsum

Ice

Metal products (fabrication and assembly)

SECTION 307
HIGH-HAZARD GROUP H

[F] 307.1 High-hazard Group H.
High-hazard Group H occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, that involves the manufacturing, processing, generation or storage of materials that constitute a physical or health hazard in quantities in excess of those allowed in *control areas* complying with Section 414, based on the maximum allowable quantity limits for *control areas* set forth in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2). Hazardous occupancies are classified in Groups H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5 and shall be in accordance with this section, the requirements of Section 415 and the *International Fire Code*. Hazardous materials stored, or used on top of roofs or canopies, shall be classified as outdoor storage or use and shall comply with the *International Fire Code*.

TABLE 307.1(1)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS POSING A PHYSICAL HAZARD[a, j, m, n, p]

MATERIAL	CLASS	GROUP WHEN THE MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY IS EXCEEDED	STORAGE[b]			USE-CLOSED SYSTEMS[b]			USE-OPEN SYSTEMS[b]	
			Solid pounds (cubic feet)	Liquid gallons (pounds)	Gas cubic feet at NTP	Solid pounds (cubic feet)	Liquid gallons (pounds)	Gas cubic feet at NTP	Solid pounds (cubic feet)	Liquid gallons (pounds)
Combustible dust	NA	H-2	See Note q	NA	NA	See Note q	NA	NA	See Note q	NA
Combustible fiber[q]	Loose Baled[o]	H-3	(100) (1,000)	NA	NA	(100) (1,000)	NA	NA	(20) (200)	NA
Combustible liquid[c, i]	II IIIA IIIB	H-2 or H-3 H-2 or H-3 NA	NA	120[d, e] 330[d, e] 13,200[e, f]	NA	NA	120[d] 330[d] 13,200[f]	NA	NA	30[d] 80[d] 3,300[f]
Consumer fireworks	1.4G	H-3	125[e, l]	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Cryogenic flammable	NA	H-2	NA	45[d]	NA	NA	45[d]	NA	NA	10[d]
Cryogenic inert	NA	NA	NA	NA	NL	NA	NA	NL	NA	NA
Cryogenic oxidizing	NA	H-3	NA	45[d]	NA	NA	45[d]	NA	NA	10[d]
Explosives	Division 1.1 Division 1.2 Division 1.3 Division 1.4 Division 1.4G Division 1.5 Division 1.6	H-1 H-1 H-1 or H-2 H-3 H-3 H-1 H-1	1[e, g] 1[e, g] 5[e, g] 50[e, g] 125[d, e, l] 1[e, g] 1[e, g]	(1)[e, g] (1)[e, g] (5)[e, g] (50)[e, g] NA (1)[e, g] NA	NA	0.25[g] 0.25[g] 1[g] 50[g] NA 0.25[g] NA	(0.25)[g] (0.25)[g] (1)[g] (50)[g] NA (0.25)[g] NA	NA	0.25[g] 0.25[g] 1[g] NA NA 0.25[g] NA	(0.25)[g] (0.25)[g] (1)[g] NA NA (0.25)[g] NA
Flammable gas	Gaseous Liquefied	H-2	NA	NA (150)[d, e]	1,000[d, e] NA	NA	NA (150)[d, e]	1,000[d, e] NA	NA	NA
Flammable liquidc	IA IB and IC	H-2 or H-3	NA	30[d, e] 120[d, e]	NA	NA	30[d] 120[d]	NA	NA	10[d] 30[d]

Flammable liquid, combination (IA, IB, IC)	NA	H-2 or H-3	NA	120[d, e, h]	NA	NA	120[d, h]	NA	NA	30[d, h]

(continued)

TABLE 307.1(1)—continued
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS POSING A PHYSICAL HAZARD[a, j, m,n, p]

MATERIAL	CLASS	GROUP WHEN THE MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY IS EXCEEDED	STORAGE[b]			USE-CLOSED SYSTEMS[b]			USE-OPEN SYSTEMS[b]	
			Solid pounds (cubic feet)	Liquid gallons (pounds)	Gas cubic feet at NTP	Solid pounds (cubic feet)	Liquid gallons (pounds)	Gas cubic feet at NTP	Solid pounds (cubic feet)	Liquid gallons (pounds)
Flammable solid	NA	H-3	125[d, e]	NA	NA	125[d]	NA	NA	25[d]	NA
Inert gas	Gaseous Liquefied	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA	NL NL	NA NA	NA NA	NL NL	NA NA	NA NA
Organic peroxide	UD I II III IV V	H-1 H-2 H-3 H-3 NA NA	1[e, g] 5[d, e] 50[d, e] 125[d, e] NL NL	(1)[e, g] (5)[d, e] (50)[d, e] (125)[d, e] NL NL	NA	0.25[g] 1[d] 50[d] 125[d] NL NL	(0.25)[g] (1)[d] (50)[d] (125)[d] NL NL	NA	0.25[g] 1[d] 10[d] 25[d] NL NL	(0.25)[g] (1)[d] (10)[d] (25)[d] NL NL
Oxidizer	4 3[k] 2 1	H-1 H-2 or H-3 H-3 NA	1[g] 10[d, e] 250[d, e] 4,000[e, f]	(1)[e, g] (10)[d, e] (250)[d, e] (4,000)[e, f]	NA	0.25[g] 2[d] 250[d] 4,000[f]	(0.25)[g] (2)[d] (250)[d] (4,000)[f]	NA	0.25[g] 2[d] 50[d] 1,000[f]	(0.25)[g] (2)[d] (50)[d] (1,000)[f]
Oxidizing gas	Gaseous Liquefied	H-3	NA	NA (150)[d, e]	1,500[d, e] NA	NA	NA (150)[d, e]	1,500[d, e] NA	NA	NA
Pyrophoric	NA	H-2	4[e, g]	(4)[e, g]	50[e, g]	1[g]	(1)[g]	10[e, g]	0	0
Unstable (reactive)	4 3 2 1	H-1 H-1 or H-2 H-3 NA	1[e, g] 5[d, e]	(1)[e, g] (5)[d, e]	10[e, g] 50[d, e]	0.25[g] 1[d]	(0.25)[g] (1)[d]	2[e, g] 10[d, e]	0.25[g] 1[d]	(0.25)[g] (1)[d]

			50[d, e] NL	(50)[d, e] NL	750[d, e] NL	50[d] NL	(50)[d] NL	750[d, e] NL	10[d] NL	(10)[d] NL
Water reactive	3 2 1	H-2 H-3 NA	5[d, e] 50[d, e] NL	(5)[d, e] (50)[d, e] NL	NA	5[d] 50[d] NL	(5)[d] (50)[d] NL	NA	1[d] 10[d] NL	(1)[d] (10)[d] NL

For SI: 1 cubic foot = 0.028 m^3, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.
NL = Not Limited; NA = Not Applicable; UD = Unclassified Detonable.

a. For use of control areas, see Section 414.2.
b. The aggregate quantity in use and storage shall not exceed the quantity listed for storage.
c. The quantities of alcoholic beverages in retail and wholesale sales occupancies shall not be limited provided the liquids are packaged in individual containers not exceeding 1.3 gallons. In retail and wholesale sales occupancies, the quantities of medicines, foodstuffs or consumer products, and cosmetics containing not more than 50 percent by volume of water-miscible liquids with the remainder of the solutions not being flammable, shall not be limited, provided that such materials are packaged in individual containers not exceeding 1.3 gallons.
d. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Where Note e also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
e. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent when stored in approved storage cabinets, day boxes, gas cabinets, gas rooms or exhausted enclosures or in *listed* safety cans in accordance with Section 5003.9.10 of the *International Fire Code*. Where Note d also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
f. Quantities shall not be limited in a building equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
g. Allowed only in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
h. Containing not more than the maximum allowable quantity per *control area* of Class IA, IB or IC flammable liquids.
i. The maximum allowable quantity shall not apply to fuel oil storage complying with Section 603.3.2 of the *International Fire Code*.
j. Quantities in parenthesis indicate quantity units in parenthesis at the head of each column.
k. A maximum quantity of 200 pounds of solid or 20 gallons of liquid Class 3 oxidizers is allowed when such materials are necessary for maintenance purposes, operation or sanitation of equipment when the storage containers and the manner of storage are approved.
l. Net weight of the pyrotechnic composition of the fireworks. Where the net weight of the pyrotechnic composition of the fireworks is not known, 25 percent of the gross weight of the fireworks, including packaging, shall be used.
m. For gallons of liquids, divide the amount in pounds by 10 in accordance with Section 5003.1.2 of the *International Fire Code*.
n. For storage and display quantities in Group M and storage quantities in Group S occupancies complying with Section 414.2.5, see Tables 414.2.5(1) and 414.2.5(2).
o. Densely packed baled cotton that complies with the packing requirements of ISO 8115 shall not be included in this material class.
p. The following shall not be included in determining the maximum allowable quantities:
    1. Liquid or gaseous fuel in fuel tanks on vehicles.
    2. Liquid or gaseous fuel in fuel tanks on motorized equipment operated in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.
    3. Gaseous fuels in piping systems and fixed appliances regulated by the *International Fuel Gas Code*.
    4. Liquid fuels in piping systems and fixed appliances regulated by the *International Mechanical Code*.
    5. Alcohol-based hand rubs classified as Class I or II liquids in dispensers that are installed in accordance with Sections 5705.5 and 5705.5.1 of the *International Fire Code*. The location of the alcohol-based hand rub (ABHR) dispensers shall be provided in the construction documents.
q. Where manufactured, generated or used in such a manner that the concentration and conditions create a fire or explosion hazard based on information prepared in accordance with Section 414.1.3.

[F] TABLE 307.1(2)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA OF HAZARDOUS MATERIAL POSING A HEALTH HAZARD[a, c, f, h, i]

MATERIAL	STORAGE[b]			USE-CLOSED SYSTEMS[b]			USE-OPEN SYSTEMS[b]	
	Solid pounds[d, e]	Liquid gallons (pounds)[d, e]	Gas cubic feet at NTP (pounds)[d]	Solid pounds[d]	Liquid gallons (pounds)[d]	Gas cubic feet at NTP (pounds)[d]	Solid pounds[d]	Liquid gallons (pounds)[d]
Corrosives	5,000	500	Gaseous 810[e] Liquefied (150)	5,000	500	Gaseous 810[e] Liquefied (150)	1,000	100
Highly Toxic	10	(10)	Gaseous 20[g] Liquefied (4)[g]	10	(10)	Gaseous 20[g] Liquefied (4)[g]	3	(3)
Toxic	500	(500)	Gaseous 810[e] Liquefied (150)[e]	500	(500)	Gaseous 810[e] Liquefied (150)[e]	125	(125)

For SI: 1 cubic foot = 0.028 m^3, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.

a. For use of control areas, see Section 414.2.
b. The aggregate quantity in use and storage shall not exceed the quantity listed for storage.
c. In retail and wholesale sales occupancies, the quantities of medicines, foodstuffs or consumer products, and cosmetics containing not more than 50 percent by volume of water-miscible liquids and with the remainder of the solutions not being flammable, shall not be limited, provided that such materials are packaged in individual containers not exceeding 1.3 gallons.
d. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent in buildings equipped throughout with an *approved automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Where Note e also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
e. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent where stored in approved storage cabinets, gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures as specified in the *International Fire Code*. Where Note d also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
f. For storage and display quantities in Group M and storage quantities in Group S occupancies complying with Section 414.2.5, see Tables 414.2.5(1) and 414.2.5(2).
g. Allowed only where stored in approved exhausted gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures as specified in the *International Fire Code*.
h. Quantities in parenthesis indicate quantity units in parenthesis at the head of each column.

i. For gallons of liquids, divide the amount in pounds by 10 in accordance with Section 5003.1.2 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 307.1.1 Uses other than Group H.
An occupancy that stores, uses or handles hazardous materials as described in one or more of the following items shall not be classified as Group H, but shall be classified as the occupancy that it most nearly resembles.

1. Buildings and structures occupied for the application of flammable finishes, provided that such buildings or areas conform to the requirements of Section 416 and the *International Fire Code*.

2. Wholesale and retail sales and storage of flammable and combustible liquids in mercantile occupancies conforming to the *International Fire Code*.

3. Closed piping system containing flammable or combustible liquids or gases utilized for the operation of machinery or equipment.

4. Cleaning establishments that utilize combustible liquid solvent having a flash point of 140°F (60°C) or higher in closed systems employing equipment *listed* by an *approved* testing agency, provided that this occupancy is separated from all other areas of the building by 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 1-hour *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

5. Cleaning establishments that utilize a liquid solvent having a flash point at or above 200°F (93°C).

6. Liquor stores and distributors without bulk storage.

7. Refrigeration systems.

8. The storage or utilization of materials for agricultural purposes on the premises.

9. Stationary batteries utilized for facility emergency power, uninterruptable power supply or telecommunication facilities, provided that the batteries are provided with safety venting caps and *ventilation* is provided in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code.*

10. Corrosive personal or household products in their original packaging used in retail display.

11. Commonly used corrosive building materials.

12. Buildings and structures occupied for aerosol storage shall be classified as Group S-1, provided that such buildings conform to the requirements of the *International Fire Code*.

13. Display and storage of nonflammable solid and nonflammable or noncombustible liquid hazardous materials in quantities not exceeding the maximum allowable

quantity per *control area* in Group M or S occupancies complying with Section 414.2.5.

14. The storage of black powder, smokeless propellant and small arms primers in Groups M and R-3 and special industrial explosive devices in Groups B, F, M and S, provided such storage conforms to the quantity limits and requirements prescribed in the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 307.1.2 Hazardous materials.
Hazardous materials in any quantity shall conform to the requirements of this code, including Section 414, and the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 307.2 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

AEROSOL
Level 1 aerosol products.
Level 2 aerosol products.
Level 3 aerosol products.
AEROSOL CONTAINER.
BALED COTTON.
BALED COTTON, DENSELY PACKED.
BARRICADE.
Artificial barricade.
Natural barricade.
BOILING POINT.
CLOSED SYSTEM.
COMBUSTIBLE DUST.
COMBUSTIBLE FIBERS.
COMBUSTIBLE LIQUID.
Class II.
Class IIIA.
Class IIIB.
COMPRESSED GAS.
CONTROL AREA.
CORROSIVE.
CRYOGENIC FLUID.
DAY BOX.
DEFLAGRATION.
DETONATION.
DISPENSING.
EXPLOSION.
EXPLOSIVE.
High explosive.
Low explosive.
Mass-detonating explosives.
UN/DOTn Class 1 explosives.
Division 1.1.
Division 1.2.
Division 1.3.
Division 1.4.
Division 1.5.

Division 1.6.
FIREWORKS.
Fireworks, 1.3G.
Fireworks, 1.4G.
FLAMMABLE GAS.
FLAMMABLE LIQUEFIED GAS.
FLAMMABLE LIQUID.
Class IA.
Class IB.
Class IC.
FLAMMABLE MATERIAL.
FLAMMABLE SOLID.
FLASH POINT.
HANDLING.
HAZARDOUS MATERIALS.
HEALTH HAZARD.
HIGHLY TOXIC.
INCOMPATIBLE MATERIALS.
INERT GAS.
OPEN SYSTEM.
OPERATING BUILDING.
ORGANIC PEROXIDE.
Class I.
Class II.
Class III.
Class IV.
Class V.
Unclassified detonable.
OXIDIZER.
Class 4.
Class 3.
Class 2.
Class 1.
OXIDIZING GAS.
PHYSICAL HAZARD.
PYROPHORIC.
PYROTECHNIC COMPOSITION.
TOXIC.
UNSTABLE (REACTIVE) MATERIAL.
Class 4.
Class 3.
Class 2.
Class 1.
WATER-REACTIVE MATERIAL.
Class 3.
Class 2.
Class 1.

[F] 307.3 High-hazard Group H-1.
Buildings and structures containing materials that pose a detonation hazard shall be classified as Group H-1. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Detonable pyrophoric materials

Explosives:

Division 1.1

Division 1.2

Division 1.3

Division 1.4

Division 1.5

Division 1.6

Organic peroxides, unclassified detonable

Oxidizers, Class 4

Unstable (reactive) materials, Class 3 detonable and Class 4

[F] 307.3.1 Occupancies containing explosives not classified as H-1.
The following occupancies containing explosive materials shall be classified as follows:

1. Division 1.3 explosive materials that are used and maintained in a form where either confinement or configuration will not elevate the hazard from a mass fire to mass explosion hazard shall be allowed in H-2 occupancies.

2. Articles, including articles packaged for shipment, that are not regulated as a Division 1.4 explosive under Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives regulations, or unpackaged articles used in process operations that do not propagate a detonation or deflagration between articles shall be allowed in H-3 occupancies.

[F] 307.4 High-hazard Group H-2.
Buildings and structures containing materials that pose a deflagration hazard or a hazard from accelerated burning shall be classified as Group H-2. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Class I, II or IIIA flammable or combustible liquids that are used or stored in normally open containers or systems, or in closed containers or systems pressurized at more than 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103.4 kPa).

Combustible dusts where manufactured, generated or used in such a manner that the concentration and conditions create a fire or explosion hazard based on information prepared in accordance with Section 414.1.3.

Cryogenic fluids, flammable.

Flammable gases.

Organic peroxides, Class I.

Oxidizers, Class 3, that are used or stored in normally open containers or systems, or in closed containers or systems pressurized at more than 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103 kPa).

Pyrophoric liquids, solids and gases, nondetonable.

Unstable (reactive) materials, Class 3, nondetonable.

Water-reactive materials, Class 3.

[F] 307.5 High-hazard Group H-3.
Buildings and structures containing materials that readily support combustion or that pose a physical hazard shall be classified as Group H-3. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Class I, II or IIIA flammable or combustible liquids that are used or stored in normally closed containers or systems pressurized at 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103.4 kPa) or less.

Combustible fibers, other than densely packed baled cotton, where manufactured, generated or used in such a manner that the concentration and conditions create a fire or explosion hazard based on information prepared in accordance with Section 414.1.3.

Consumer fireworks, 1.4G (Class C, Common) Cryogenic fluids, oxidizing

Flammable solids

Organic peroxides, Class II and III

Oxidizers, Class 2

Oxidizers, Class 3, that are used or stored in normally closed containers or systems pressurized at 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103 kPa) or less

Oxidizing gases

Unstable (reactive) materials, Class 2

Water-reactive materials, Class 2

[F] 307.6 High-hazard Group H-4.
Buildings and structures containing materials that are health hazards shall be classified as Group H-4. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Corrosives

Highly toxic materials

Toxic materials

[F] 307.7 High-hazard Group H-5.
Semiconductor fabrication facilities and comparable research and development areas in which hazardous production materials (HPM) are used and the aggregate quantity of materials is in excess of those listed in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2) shall be classified as Group H-5. Such facilities and areas shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section 415.11.

[F] 307.8 Multiple hazards.
Buildings and structures containing a material or materials representing hazards that are classified in one or more of Groups H-1, H-2, H-3 and H-4 shall conform to the code requirements for each of the occupancies so classified.

SECTION 308
INSTITUTIONAL GROUP I

308.1 Institutional Group I.
Institutional Group I occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, in which care or supervision is provided to persons who are or are not capable of self-preservation without physical assistance or in which persons are detained for penal or correctional purposes or in which the liberty of the occupants is restricted. Institutional occupancies shall be classified as Group I-1, I-2, I-3 or I-4.

308.2 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

24-HOUR BASIS.

CUSTODIAL CARE.

DETOXIFICATION FACILITIES.

FOSTER CARE FACILITIES.

HOSPICE CARE CENTER.

HOSPITALS AND PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS. INCAPABLE OF SELF-PRESERVATION. MEDICAL CARE.

NURSING HOMES.

308.3 Institutional Group I-1.
Institutional Group I-1 occupancy shall include buildings, structures or portions thereof for more than 16 persons, excluding staff, who reside on a 24-hour basis in a supervised environment and receive custodial care. Buildings of Group I-1 shall be classified as one of the occupancy conditions specified in Section 308.3.1 or 308.3.2. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Alcohol and drug centers

Assisted living facilities

Congregate care facilities

Group homes

Halfway houses

Residential board and care facilities

Social rehabilitation facilities

308.3.1 Condition 1.
This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which all persons receiving custodial care who, without any assistance, are capable of responding to an emergency situation to complete building evacuation.

308.3.2 Condition 2.
This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which there are any persons receiving custodial care who require limited verbal or physical assistance while responding to an emergency situation to complete building evacuation.

~~**308.3.3 Six to 16 persons receiving custodial care.**~~
~~A facility housing not fewer than six and not more than 16 persons receiving custodial care shall be classified as Group R-4.~~

308.3.3 Licensed care facilities. Assisted living facilities as licensed by Washington state under chapter 388-78A WAC and residential treatment facilities as licensed by Washington state under chapter 246-337 WAC shall be classified as Group I-1, Condition 2.

308.3.4 Five or fewer persons receiving custodial care.
A facility with five or fewer persons receiving custodial care shall be classified as Group R-3 or shall comply with the *International Residential Code* provided an *automatic sprinkler system* is installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 or Section P2904 of the *International Residential Code*.

308.3.5 Adult family homes. Adult family homes licensed by Washington state shall be classified as Group R-3 or shall comply with the International Residential Code.

308.4 Institutional Group I-2.
Institutional Group I-2 occupancy shall include buildings and structures used for *medical care* on a 24-hour basis for more than five persons who are *incapable of self-preservation*. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Foster care facilities

Detoxification facilities

Hospice care centers

Hospitals

Nursing homes

Psychiatric hospitals

308.4.1 Occupancy conditions.
Buildings of Group I-2 shall be classified as one of the occupancy conditions specified in Section 308.4.1.1 or 308.4.1.2.

308.4.1.1 Condition 1.
This occupancy condition shall include facilities that provide nursing and medical care but do not provide emergency care, surgery, obstetrics or in-patient stabilization units for psychiatric or detoxification, including but not limited to nursing homes and foster care facilities.

308.4.1.2 Condition 2.
This occupancy condition shall include facilities that provide nursing and medical care and could provide emergency care, surgery, obstetrics or in-patient stabilization units for psychiatric or detoxification, including but not limited to hospitals.

308.4.2 Five or fewer persons receiving medical care.
A facility with five or fewer persons receiving medical care shall be classified as Group R-3 or shall comply with the *International Residential Code* provided an *automatic sprinkler system* is installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 or Section P2904 of the *International Residential Code*.

308.5 Institutional Group I-3.
Institutional Group I-3 occupancy shall include buildings and structures that are inhabited by more than five persons who are under restraint or security. A Group I-3 facility is occupied by persons who are generally *incapable of self-preservation* due to security measures not under the occupants' control. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Correctional centers

Detention centers

Jails

Prerelease centers

Prisons

Reformatories

Buildings of Group I-3 shall be classified as one of the occupancy conditions specified in Sections 308.5.1 through 308.5.5 (see Section 408.1).

308.5.1 Condition 1.
This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is allowed from sleeping areas, and other spaces where access or occupancy is permitted, to the exterior via *means of egress* without restraint. A Condition 1 facility is permitted to be constructed as Group R.

308.5.2 Condition 2.
This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is allowed from sleeping areas and any other occupied *smoke compartment* to one or more other *smoke compartments.* Egress to the exterior is impeded by locked *exits*.

308.5.3 Condition 3.
This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is allowed within individual *smoke compartments*, such as within a residential unit comprised of individual *sleeping units* and group activity spaces, where egress is impeded by remotecontrolled release of *means of egress* from such a *smoke compartment* to another *smoke compartment*.

308.5.4 Condition 4.
This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is restricted from an occupied space. Remote-controlled release is provided to permit movement from *sleeping units*, activity spaces and other occupied areas within the *smoke compartment* to other *smoke compartments.*

308.5.5 Condition 5.
This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is restricted from an occupied space. Staff-controlled manual release is provided to permit movement from *sleeping units*, activity spaces and other occupied areas within the *smoke compartment* to other *smoke compartments*.

308.6 Institutional Group I-4, day care facilities.
Institutional Group I-4 occupancy shall include buildings and structures occupied by more than five persons of any age who receive *custodial care* for fewer than 24 hours per day by persons other than parents or guardians, relatives by blood, marriage or adoption, and in a place other than the home of the person cared for. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Adult day care

Child day care

308.6.1 Classification as Group E.
A child day care facility that provides care for more than five but not more than 100 children $2^1/_2$ years or less of age, where the rooms in which the children are cared for are located on a *level of exit discharge* serving such rooms and each of these child care rooms has an *exit* door directly to the exterior, shall be classified as Group E.

308.6.2 Within a place of religious worship.
Rooms and spaces within *places of religious worship* providing such care during religious functions shall be classified as part of the primary occupancy.

308.6.3 Five or fewer persons receiving care.
A facility having five or fewer persons receiving *custodial care* shall be classified as part of the primary occupancy.

308.6.4 Five or fewer persons receiving care in a dwelling unit.
A facility such as the above within a *dwelling unit* and having five or fewer persons receiving *custodial care* shall be classified as a Group R-3 occupancy or shall comply with the *International Residential Code.*

308.6.5 Family home child care. Family home child care licensed by Washington state for the care of twelve or fewer children shall be classified as Group R-3 or shall comply with the International Residential Code.

SECTION 309
MERCANTILE GROUP M

309.1 Mercantile Group M.
Mercantile Group M occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure or a portion thereof for the display and sale of merchandise, and involves stocks of goods, wares or merchandise incidental to such purposes and accessible to the public. Mercantile occupancies shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Department stores

Drug stores Markets

Motor fuel-dispensing facilities

Retail or wholesale stores

Sales rooms

309.2 Quantity of hazardous materials.
The aggregate quantity of nonflammable solid and nonflammable or noncombustible liquid

hazardous materials stored or displayed in a single *control area* of a Group M occupancy shall not exceed the quantities in Table 414.2.5(1).

SECTION 310
RESIDENTIAL GROUP R

310.1 Residential Group R.
Residential Group R includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for sleeping purposes when not classified as an Institutional Group I or when not regulated by the *International Residential Code*.

310.2 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

ADULT FAMILY HOME

BOARDING HOUSE.

CHILD CARE

CHILD CARE, FAMILY HOME

CONGREGATE LIVING FACILITIES.

DORMITORY.

GROUP HOME.

GUEST ROOM.

LODGING HOUSE.

PERSONAL CARE SERVICE.

TRANSIENT.

310.3 Residential Group R-1.
Residential Group R-1 occupancies containing *sleeping units* where the occupants are primarily *transient* in nature, including:

Boarding houses (*transient*) with more than 10 occupants

Congregate living facilities (*transient)* with more than 10 occupants

Hotels (*transient*)

Motels (*transient*)

310.4 Residential Group R-2.
Residential Group R-2 occupancies containing *sleeping units* or more than two *dwelling units* where the occupants are primarily permanent in nature, including:

Apartment houses

Boarding houses (nontransient) with more than 16 occupants

Congregate living facilities (nontransient) with more than 16 occupants

Convents

Dormitories

Fraternities and sororities

Hotels (nontransient)

Live/work units

Monasteries

Motels (nontransient)

Vacation timeshare properties

310.5 Residential Group R-3.
Residential Group R-3 occupancies where the occupants are primarily permanent in nature and not classified as Group R-1, R-2, R-4 or I, including:

Buildings that do not contain more than two *dwelling units*

Boarding houses (nontransient) with 16 or fewer occupants

Boarding houses (*transient*) with 10 or fewer occupants

Care facilities that provide accommodations for five or fewer persons receiving care

Congregate living facilities (nontransient) with 16 or fewer occupants

Congregate living facilities (*transient*) with 10 or fewer occupants

Lodging houses with five or fewer *guest rooms*

310.5.1 Care facilities within a dwelling.
Care facilities for five or fewer persons receiving care that are within a single-family dwelling are permitted to comply with the *International Residential Code* provided an *automatic sprinkler system* is installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 or Section P2904 of the *International Residential Code*.

310.5.2 Lodging houses.
Owner-occupied *lodging houses* with five or fewer *guest rooms* shall be permitted to be constructed in accordance with the *International Residential Code*.

310.5.3 Adult family homes, family home child care.
Adult family homes and family home child care facilities that are within a single-family home are permitted to comply with the International Residential Code.

310.5.4 Foster family care homes. Foster family care homes licensed by Washington state are permitted to comply with the International Residential Code, as an accessory use to a dwelling, for six or fewer children including those of the resident family.

~~**310.6 Residential Group R-4.**~~
~~Residential Group R-4 occupancy shall include buildings, structures or portions thereof for more than five but not more than 16 persons, excluding staff, who reside on a 24-hour basis in a supervised residential environment and receive *custodial care*. Buildings of Group R-4 shall be classified as one of the occupancy conditions specified in Section 310.6.1 or 310.6.2. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:~~

~~Alcohol and drug centers~~

~~Assisted living facilities~~

~~Congregate care facilities~~

~~*Group homes*~~

~~Halfway houses~~

~~Residential board and care facilities~~

~~Social rehabilitation facilities~~

~~Group R-4 occupancies shall meet the requirements for construction as defined for Group R-3, except as otherwise provided for in this code.~~

~~**310.6.1 Condition 1.**~~
~~This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which all persons receiving custodial care, without any assistance, are capable of responding to an emergency situation to complete building evacuation.~~

~~**310.6.2 Condition 2.**~~
~~This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which there are any persons receiving~~

~~custodial care who require limited verbal or physical assistance while responding to an emergency situation to complete building evacuation.~~

310.6 Residential Group R-4. R-4 classification is not adopted. Any reference in this code to R-4 does not apply.

SECTION 311
STORAGE GROUP S

311.1 Storage Group S.
Storage Group S occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for storage that is not classified as a hazardous occupancy.

311.1.1 Accessory storage spaces.
A room or space used for storage purposes that is less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2) in area and accessory to another occupancy shall be classified as part of that occupancy. The aggregate area of such rooms or spaces shall not exceed the allowable area limits of Section 508.2.

311.2 Moderate-hazard storage, Group S-1.
Storage Group S-1 occupancies are buildings occupied for storage uses that are not classified as Group S-2, including, but not limited to, storage of the following:

Aerosols, Levels 2 and 3

Aircraft hangar (storage and repair)

Bags: cloth, burlap and paper

Bamboos and rattan

Baskets

Belting: canvas and leather

Books and paper in rolls or packs

Boots and shoes

Buttons, including cloth covered, pearl or bone

Cardboard and cardboard boxes

Clothing, woolen wearing apparel

Cordage

Dry boat storage (indoor) Furniture

Furs

Glues, mucilage, pastes and size

Grains

Horns and combs, other than celluloid

Leather Linoleum Lumber

Motor vehicle repair garages complying with the maximum allowable quantities of hazardous materials listed in Table 307.1(1) (see Section 406.8)

Photo engravings

Resilient flooring

Silks

Soaps

Sugar

Tires, bulk storage of

Tobacco, cigars, cigarettes and snuff

Upholstery and mattresses

Wax candles

311.3 Low-hazard storage, Group S-2.
Storage Group S-2 occupancies include, among others, buildings used for the storage of non-combustible materials such as products on wood pallets or in paper cartons with or without single thickness divisions; or in paper wrappings. Such products are permitted to have a negligible amount of plastic *trim*, such as knobs, handles or film wrapping. Group S-2 storage uses shall include, but not be limited to, storage of the following:

Asbestos

Beverages up to and including 16-percent alcohol in metal, glass or ceramic containers

Cement in bags

Chalk and crayons

Dairy products in non-waxed coated paper containers

Dry cell batteries

Electrical coils

Electrical motors

Empty cans

Food products

Foods in noncombustible containers

Fresh fruits and vegetables in nonplastic trays or containers

Frozen foods

Glass

Glass bottles, empty or filled with noncombustible liquids

Gypsum board

Inert pigments

Ivory

Meats

Metal cabinets

Metal desks with plastic tops and *trim*

Metal parts

Metals

Mirrors

Oil-filled and other types of distribution transformers

Parking garages, open or enclosed

Porcelain and pottery

Stoves

Talc and soapstones

Washers and dryers

SECTION 312
UTILITY AND MISCELLANEOUS GROUP U

312.1 General.
Buildings and structures of an accessory character and miscellaneous structures not classified in any specific occupancy shall be constructed, equipped and maintained to conform to the requirements of this code commensurate with the fire and life hazard incidental to their occupancy. Group U shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Agricultural buildings

Aircraft hangars, accessory to a one-or two-family residence (see Section 412.5)

Barns

Carports

Fences more than 6 feet (1829 mm) in height

Grain silos, accessory to a residential occupancy

Greenhouses and other structures used for cultivation, protection or maintenance of plants

Livestock shelters

Private garages

Retaining walls

Sheds

Stables

Tanks

Towers

CHAPTER 4
SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON USE AND OCCUPANCY

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [F] will be considered by the International Fire Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 401
SCOPE

401.1 Detailed use and occupancy requirements.
In addition to the occupancy and construction requirements in this code, the provisions of this chapter apply to the special uses and occupancies described herein.

SECTION 402
COVERED MALL AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS

402.1 Applicability.
The provisions of this section shall apply to buildings or structures defined herein as *covered or open mall buildings* not exceeding three floor levels at any point nor more than three *stories above grade plane*. Except as specifically required by this section, *covered and open mall buildings* shall meet applicable provisions of this code.

Exceptions:

1. Foyers and lobbies of Groups B, R-1 and R-2 are not required to comply with this section.

2. Buildings need not comply with the provisions of this section where they totally comply with other applicable provisions of this code.

402.1.1 Open space.
A *covered mall building* and attached *anchor buildings* and parking garages shall be surrounded on all sides by a permanent open space or not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm). An *open mall building* and *anchor buildings* and parking garages adjoining the perimeter line shall be surrounded on all sides by a permanent open space of not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm).

Exception: The permanent open space of 60 feet (18 288 mm) shall be permitted to be reduced to not less than 40 feet (12 192 mm), provided the following requirements are met:

1. The reduced open space shall not be allowed for more than 75 percent of the perimeter of the *covered or open mall building* and *anchor buildings*;

2. The *exterior wall* facing the reduced open space shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than
   3 hours;

3. Openings in the *exterior wall* facing the reduced open space shall have opening protectives with a *fire protection rating* of not less than 3 hours; and

4. Group E, H, I or R occupancies are not located within the *covered or open mall building* or *anchor buildings*.

402.1.2 Open mall building perimeter line.
For the purpose of this code, a perimeter line shall be established. The perimeter line shall encircle all buildings and structures that comprise the *open mall building* and shall encompass any open-air interior walkways, open-air courtyards or similar open-air spaces. The perimeter line shall define the extent of the *open mall building*. *Anchor buildings* and parking structures shall be outside of the perimeter line and are not considered as part of the *open mall building*.

402.2 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

ANCHOR BUILDING.

COVERED MALL BUILDING.

Mall.

Open mall.

Open mall building.

FOOD COURT.

GROSS LEASABLE AREA.

402.3 Lease plan.
Each *owner* of a *covered mall building* or of an *open mall building* shall provide both the building and fire departments with a lease plan showing the location of each occupancy and its *exits* after the certificate of occupancy has been issued. No modifications or changes in occupancy or use shall be made from that shown on the lease plan without prior approval of the *building official*.

402.4 Construction.
The construction of *covered and open mall buildings*, *anchor buildings* and parking garages associated with a *mall* building shall comply with Sections 402.4.1 through 402.4.3.

402.4.1 Area and types of construction.
The *building area* and type of construction of *covered mall* or *open mall buildings, anchor buildings* and parking garages shall comply with this section.

402.4.1.1 Covered and open mall buildings.
The *building area* of any *covered mall* or *open mall building* shall not be limited provided the *covered mall* or *open mall building* does not exceed three floor levels at any point nor three *stories above grade plane*, and is of Type I, II, III or IV construction.

402.4.1.2 Anchor buildings.
The *building area* and *building height* of any *anchor building* shall be based on the type of construction as required by Section 503 as modified by Sections 504 and 506.

Exception: The *building area* of any *anchor building* shall not be limited provided the *anchor building* is not more than three *stories above grade plane*, and is of Type I, II, III or IV construction.

402.4.1.3 Parking garage.
The *building area* and *building height* of any parking garage, open or enclosed, shall be based on the type of construction as required by Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively.

402.4.2 Fire-resistance-rated separation.
Fire-resistance-rated separation is not required between tenant spaces and the *mall*. Fire-resistance-rated separation is not required between a *food court* and adjacent tenant spaces or the *mall*.

402.4.2.1 Tenant separations.
Each tenant space shall be separated from other tenant spaces by a *fire partition* complying with Section 708. A tenant separation wall is not required between any tenant space and the *mall*.

402.4.2.2 Anchor building separation.
An *anchor building* shall be separated from the *covered or open mall building* by *fire walls* complying with Section 706.

Exceptions:

1. *Anchor buildings* of not more than three *stories above grade plane* that have an occupancy classification the same as that permitted for tenants of the *mall building* shall be separated by 2-hour fire-resistance-rated *fire barriers* complying with Section 707.

2. The exterior walls of *anchor buildings* separated from an *open mall building* by an *open mall* shall comply with Table 602.

402.4.2.2.1 Openings between anchor building and mall.
Except for the separation between Group R-1 *sleeping units* and the *mall*, openings between *anchor buildings* of Type IA, IB, IIA or IIB construction and the *mall* need not be protected.

402.4.2.3 Parking garages.
An attached garage for the storage of passenger vehicles having a capacity of not more than nine persons and *open parking garages* shall be considered as a separate building where it is separated from the *covered or open mall building* or *anchor building* by not less than 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Parking garages, open or enclosed, which are separated from *covered mall buildings*, *open mall buildings* or *anchor buildings,* shall comply with the provisions of Table 602. *Pedestrian walkways* and tunnels that connect garages to *mall* buildings or *anchor buildings* shall be constructed in accordance with Section 3104.

402.4.3 Open mall construction.
Floor assemblies in, and *roof assemblies* over, the *open mall* of an *open mall building* shall be open to the atmosphere for not less than 20 feet (9096 mm), measured perpendicular from the face of the tenant spaces on the lowest level, from edge of balcony to edge of balcony on upper floors and from edge of roof line to edge of roof line. The openings within, or the unroofed area of, an *open mall* shall extend from the lowest/grade level of the open mall through the entire *roof assembly*. Balconies on upper levels of the *mall* shall not project into the required width of the opening.

402.4.3.1 Pedestrian walkways.
Pedestrian walkways connecting balconies in an *open mall* shall be located not less than 20 feet (9096 mm) from any other *pedestrian walkway.*

[F] 402.5 Automatic sprinkler system.
Covered and *open mall buildings* and buildings connected shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, which shall comply with all of the following:

1. The *automatic sprinkler system* shall be complete and operative throughout occupied space in the *mall building* prior to occupancy of any of the tenant spaces. Unoccupied tenant spaces shall be similarly protected unless provided with *approved* alternative protection.

2. Sprinkler protection for the *mall* of a *covered mall building* shall be independent from that provided for tenant spaces or *anchor buildings*.

3. Sprinkler protection for the tenant spaces of an *open mall building* shall be independent from that provided for *anchor buildings.*

4. Sprinkler protection shall be provided beneath exterior circulation balconies located adjacent to an *open mall*.

5. Where tenant spaces are supplied by the same system, they shall be independently controlled.

Exception: An *automatic sprinkler system* shall not be required in spaces or areas of *open parking garages* separated from the *covered or open mall building* in accordance with Section 402.4.2.3 and constructed in accordance with Section 406.5.

402.6 Interior finishes and features.
Interior finishes within the *mall* and installations within the *mall* shall comply with Sections 402.6.1 through 402.6.4.

402.6.1 Interior finish.
Interior wall and *ceiling finishes* within the *mall* of a *covered mall building* and within the *exits* of *covered or open mall buildings* shall have a minimum *flame spread index* and smoke-developed index of Class B in accordance with Chapter 8. *Interior floor finishes* shall meet the requirements of Section 804.

402.6.2 Kiosks.
Kiosks and similar structures (temporary or permanent) located within the *mall* of a *covered mall building* or within the perimeter line of an *open mall building* shall meet the following requirements:

1. Combustible kiosks or other structures shall not be located within a *covered* or *open mall* unless constructed of any of the following materials:

    1.1. *Fire-retardant-treated* wood complying with Section 2303.2.

    1.2. Foam plastics having a maximum heat release rate not greater than 100 kW (105 Btu/h) when tested in accordance with the exhibit booth protocol in UL 1975 or when tested in accordance with NFPA 289 using the 20 kW ignition source.

    1.3. Aluminum composite material (ACM) meeting the requirements of Class A *interior finish* in accordance with Chapter 8 when tested as an assembly in the maximum thickness intended.

2. Kiosks or similar structures located within the *mall* shall be provided with *approved automatic sprinkler system and detection devices.*

3. The horizontal separation between kiosks or groupings thereof and other structures within the *mall* shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm).

4. Each kiosk or similar structure or groupings thereof shall have an area not greater than 300 square feet (28 m^2).

402.6.3 Children's play structures.
Children's play structures located within the *mall* of a *covered mall building* or within the perimeter line of an *open mall building* shall comply with Section 424. The horizontal separation between children's play structures, kiosks and similar structures within the *mall* shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm).

402.6.4 Plastic signs.
Plastic signs affixed to the storefront of any tenant space facing a *mall* or *open mall* shall be limited as specified in Sections 402.6.4.1 through 402.6.4.5.

402.6.4.1 Area.
Plastic signs shall be not more than 20 percent of the wall area facing the *mall*.

402.6.4.2 Height and width.
Plastic signs shall be not greater than 36 inches (914 mm) in height, except that where the sign is vertical, the height shall be not greater than 96 inches (2438 mm) and the width shall be not greater than 36 inches (914 mm).

402.6.4.3 Location.
Plastic signs shall be located not less than 18 inches (457 mm) from adjacent tenants.

402.6.4.4 Plastics other than foam plastics.
Plastics other than foam plastics used in signs shall be light-transmitting plastics complying with Section 2606.4 or shall have a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater when tested in accordance with ASTM D1929, and a *flame spread index* not greater than 75 and smoke-developed index not greater than 450 when tested in the manner intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 or meet the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.2.1 when tested in accordance with NFPA 286.

402.6.4.4.1 Encasement.
Edges and backs of plastic signs in the *mall* shall be fully encased in metal.

402.6.4.5 Foam plastics.
Foam plastics used in signs shall have flame-retardant characteristics such that the sign has a maximum heat-release rate of 150 kilowatts when tested in accordance with UL 1975 or when tested in accordance with NFPA 289 using the 20 kW ignition source, and the foam plastics shall have the physical characteristics specified in this section. Foam plastics used in signs installed in accordance with Section 402.6.4 shall not be required to comply with the *flame spread* and smoke-developed indices specified in Section 2603.3.

402.6.4.5.1 Density.
The density of foam plastics used in signs shall be not less than 20 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) (320 kg/ m^3).

402.6.4.5.2 Thickness.
The thickness of foam plastic signs shall not be greater than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).

[F] 402.7 Emergency systems.
Covered and open mall buildings, *anchor buildings* and associated parking garages shall be provided with emergency systems complying with Sections 402.7.1 through 402.7.5.

[F] 402.7.1 Standpipe system.
Covered and open mall buildings shall be equipped throughout with a standpipe system as required by Section 905.3.3.

[F] 402.7.2 Smoke control.
Where a *covered mall building* contains an *atrium*, a smoke control system shall be provided in accordance with Section 404.5.

Exception: A smoke control system is not required in *covered mall buildings* where an *atrium* connects only two stories.

[F] 402.7.3 Emergency power.
Covered mall buildings greater than 50,000 square feet (4645 m^2) in area and *open mall buildings* greater than 50,000 square feet (4645 m^2) within the established perimeter line shall be provided with emergency power that is capable of operating the *emergency voice/alarm communication system* in accordance with Section 2702.

[F] 402.7.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication system.
Where the total floor area is greater than 50,000 square feet (4645 m^2) within either a *covered mall building* or within the perimeter line of an *open mall building*, an *emergency voice/alarm communication system* shall be provided.

Emergency voice/alarm communication systems serving a *mall*, required or otherwise, shall be accessible to the fire department. The systems shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

[F] 402.7.5 Fire department access to equipment.
Rooms or areas containing controls for air-conditioning systems, *automatic fire-extinguishing systems, automatic sprinkler systems* or other detection, suppression or control elements shall be identified for use by the fire department.

402.8 Means of egress.
Covered mall buildings, open mall buildings and each tenant space within a mall building shall be provided with *means of egress* as required by this section and this code. Where there is a conflict between the requirements of this code and the requirements of Sections 402.8.1 through 402.8.8, the requirements of Sections 402.8.1 through 402.8.8 shall apply.

402.8.1 Mall width.
For the purpose of providing required egress, *malls* are permitted to be considered as *corridors* but need not comply with the requirements of Section 1005.1 of this code where the width of the *mall* is as specified in this section.

402.8.1.1 Minimum width.
The aggregate clear egress width of the *mall* in either a *covered or open mall building* shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm). The *mall* width shall be sufficient to accommodate the *occupant load* served. No portion of the minimum required aggregate egress width shall be less than 10 feet (3048 mm) measured to a height of 8 feet (2438 mm) between any projection of a tenant space bordering the *mall* and the nearest kiosk, vending machine, bench, display opening, *food court* or other obstruction to *means of egress* travel.

402.8.2 Determination of occupant load.
The *occupant load* permitted in any individual tenant space in a *covered or open mall building* shall be determined as required by this code. *Means of egress* requirements for individual tenant spaces shall be based on the *occupant load* thus determined.

402.8.2.1 Occupant formula.
In determining required *means of egress* of the *mall*, the number of occupants for whom *means of egress* are to be provided shall be based on *gross leasable area* of the *covered or open mall building* (excluding *anchor buildings*) and the *occupant load* factor as determined by Equation 4-1.

$$OLF = (0.00007)\,(GLA) + 25 \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-1)}$$

where:

OLF	=	The *occupant load* factor (square feet per person).
GLA	=	The *gross leasable area* (square feet).

Exception: Tenant spaces attached to a *covered or open mall building* but with a *means of egress* system that is totally independent of the *open mall* of an *open mall building* or of a *covered mall building* shall not be considered as *gross leasable area* for determining the required *means of egress* for the *mall building*.

402.8.2.2 OLF range.
The *occupant load* factor (*OLF*) is not required to be less than 30 and shall not exceed 50.

402.8.2.3 Anchor buildings.
The *occupant load* of *anchor buildings* opening into the *mall* shall not be included in computing the total number of occupants for the *mall*.

402.8.2.4 Food courts.
The *occupant load* of a *food court* shall be determined in accordance with Section 1004. For the purposes of determining the *means of egress* requirements for the *mall*, the *food court occupant load* shall be added to the *occupant load* of the *covered or open mall building* as calculated above.

402.8.3 Number of means of egress.
Wherever the distance of travel to the *mall* from any location within a tenant space used by persons other than employees is greater than 75 feet (22 860 mm) or the tenant space has an *occupant load* of 50 or more, no fewer than two *means of egress* shall be provided.

402.8.4 Arrangements of means of egress.
Assembly occupancies with an *occupant load* of 500 or more located within a *covered mall building* shall be so located such that their entrance will be immediately adjacent to a principal entrance to the *mall* and shall have not less than onehalf of their required *means of egress* opening directly to the exterior of the *covered mall building*. Assembly occupancies located within the perimeter line of an *open mall building* shall be permitted to have their main *exit* open to the *open mall*.

402.8.4.1 Anchor building means of egress.
Required *means of egress* for *anchor buildings* shall be provided independently from the *mall means of egress* system. The *occupant load* of *anchor buildings* opening into the *mall* shall not be included in determining *means of egress* requirements for the *mall*. The path of egress travel of *malls* shall not exit through *anchor buildings*. *Malls* terminating at an *anchor building* where no other *means of egress* has been provided shall be considered as a dead-end *mall.*

402.8.5 Distance to exits.
Within each individual tenant space in a *covered or open mall building*, the distance of travel from any point to an *exit* or entrance to the *mall* shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm).

The distance of travel from any point within a *mall* of a *covered mall building* to an *exit* shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm). The maximum distance of travel from any point within an *open mall* to the perimeter line of the *open mall building* shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm).

402.8.6 Access to exits.
Where more than one *exit* is required, they shall be so arranged that it is possible to travel in either direction from any point in a *mall* of a *covered mall building* to separate *exits* or from any point in an *open mall* of an *open mall building* to two separate locations on the perimeter line, provided neither location is an exterior wall of an *anchor building* or parking garage. The width of an *exit passageway* or *corridor* from a *mall* shall be not less than 66 inches (1676 mm).

Exception: Access to exits is permitted by way of a dead-end *mall* that does not exceed a length equal to twice the width of the *mall* measured at the narrowest location within the dead-end portion of the *mall*.

402.8.6.1 Exit passageways.
Where *exit passageways* provide a secondary *means of egress* from a tenant space, doorways to the *exit passageway* shall be protected by 1-hour *fire door assemblies* that are self- or automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3.

402.8.7 Service areas fronting on exit passageways.
Mechanical rooms, electrical rooms, building service areas and service elevators are permitted to open directly into *exit passageways*, provided the *exit passageway* is separated from such rooms with not less than 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The *fire protection rating* of openings in the *fire barriers* shall be not less than 1 hour.

402.8.8 Security grilles and doors.
Horizontal sliding or vertical security grilles or doors that are a part of a required *means of egress* shall conform to the following:

1. Doors and grilles shall remain in the full open position during the period of occupancy by the general public.

2. Doors or grilles shall not be brought to the closed position when there are 10 or more persons occupying spaces served by a single *exit* or 50 or more persons occupying spaces served by more than one *exit*.

3. The doors or grilles shall be openable from within without the use of any special knowledge or effort where the space is occupied.

4. Where two or more *exits* are required, not more than one-half of the *exits* shall be permitted to include either a horizontal sliding or vertical rolling grille or door.

SECTION 403
HIGH-RISE BUILDINGS

403.1 Applicability.
High-rise buildings shall comply with Sections 403.2 through 403.6.

Exception: The provisions of Sections 403.2 through 403.6 shall not apply to the following buildings and structures:

1. Airport traffic control towers in accordance with Section 412.3.

2. *Open parking garages* in accordance with Section 406.5.

3. The portion of a building containing a Group A-5 occupancy in accordance with Section 303.6.

4. Special industrial occupancies in accordance with Section 503.1.1.

5. Buildings with:

   5.1. A Group H-1 occupancy;

   5.2. A Group H-2 occupancy in accordance with Section 415.8, 415.9.2, 415.9.3 or 426.1; or,

   5.3. A Group H-3 occupancy in accordance with Section 415.8.

403.2 Construction.
The construction of *high-rise buildings* shall comply with the provisions of Sections 403.2.1 through 403.2.4.

403.2.1 Reduction in fire-resistance rating.
The *fire- resistance rating* reductions listed in Sections 403.2.1.1 and 403.2.1.2 shall be allowed in buildings that have sprinkler control valves equipped with supervisory initiating devices and water-flow initiating devices for each floor.

403.2.1.1 Type of construction.
The following reductions in the minimum *fire-resistance rating* of the building elements in Table 601 shall be permitted as follows:

1. For buildings not greater than 420 feet (128 000 mm) in *building height*, the *fire-resistance rating* of the building elements in Type IA construction, other than structural frame and bearing walls, shall be permitted to be reduced to the minimum *fire-resistance ratings* for the building elements in Type IB.

   ~~**Exception:** The required *fire-resistance rating* of columns supporting floors shall not be reduced.~~

2. In other than Group F-1, M and S-1 occupancies, the *fire-resistance rating* of the building elements in Type IB construction, other than structural frame and bearing walls, shall be permitted to be reduced to the *fire-resistance ratings* in Type IIA.

3. The *building height* and *building area* limitations of a building containing building elements with reduced *fire-resistance ratings* shall be permitted to be the same as the building without such reductions.

403.2.1.2 Shaft enclosures.
For buildings not greater than 420 feet (128 000 mm) in *building height*, the required *fire-resistance rating* of the *fire barriers* enclosing vertical *shafts*, other than *interior exit stairway* and elevator hoistway enclosures, is permitted to be reduced to 1 hour where automatic sprinklers are installed within the *shafts* at the top and at alternate floor levels.

403.2.2 Seismic considerations.
For seismic considerations, see Chapter 16.

403.2.3 Structural integrity of interior exit stairways and elevator hoistway enclosures.
For *high-rise buildings* of *Risk Category* III or IV in accordance with Section 1604.5, and for all buildings that are more than 420 feet (128 000 mm) in *building height*, enclosures for *interior exit stairways* and elevator hoistway enclosures shall comply with Sections 403.2.3.1 through 403.2.3.4.

403.2.3.1 Wall assembly.
The wall assemblies making up the enclosures for *interior exit stairways* and elevator hoistway enclosures shall meet or exceed Soft Body Impact Classification Level 2 as measured by the test method described in ASTM C1629/C1629M.

403.2.3.2 Wall assembly materials.
The face of the wall assemblies making up the enclosures for *interior exit stairways* and elevator hoistway enclosures that are not exposed to the interior of the enclosures for *interior exit stairways* or elevator hoistway enclosure shall be constructed in accordance with one of the following methods:

1. The wall assembly shall incorporate no fewer than two layers of impact-resistant construction board each of which meets or exceeds Hard Body Impact Classification Level 2 as measured by the test method described in ASTM C1629/C1629M.

2. The wall assembly shall incorporate no fewer than one layer of impact-resistant construction material that meets or exceeds Hard Body Impact Classification Level 3 as measured by the test method described in ASTM C1629/C1629M.

3. The wall assembly incorporates multiple layers of any material, tested in tandem, that meets or exceeds Hard Body Impact Classification Level 3 as measured by the test method described in ASTM C1629/C1629M.

403.2.3.3 Concrete and masonry walls.
Concrete or masonry walls shall be deemed to satisfy the requirements of Sections 403.2.3.1 and 403.2.3.2.

403.2.3.4 Other wall assemblies.
Any other wall assembly that provides impact resistance equivalent to that required by Sections 403.2.3.1 and 403.2.3.2 for Hard Body Impact Classification Level 3, as measured by the test method described in ASTM C1629/C1629M, shall be permitted.

403.2.4 Sprayed fire-resistant materials (SFRM).
The bond strength of the SFRM installed throughout the building shall be in accordance with Table 403.2.4.

TABLE 403.2.4
MINIMUM BOND STRENGTH

HEIGHT OF BUILDING[a]	SFRM MINIMUM BOND STRENGTH
Up to 420 feet	430 psf
Greater than 420 feet	1,000 psf

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot (psf) = 0.0479 kW/m^2.
a. Above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

[F] 403.3 Automatic sprinkler system – High-rise building
Buildings and structures shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and a secondary water supply where required by Section 403.3.3.

~~**Exception:** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall not be required in spaces or areas of:~~

~~1. *Open parking garages* in accordance with Section 406.5.~~

~~2. Telecommunications equipment buildings used exclusively for telecommunications equipment, associated electrical power distribution equipment, batteries and standby engines, provided that those spaces or areas are equipped throughout with an automatic fire detection system in accordance with Section 907.2 and are separated from the remainder of the building by not less than 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or not less than 2-hour *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.~~

[F] 403.3.1 Number of sprinkler risers and system design.
Each sprinkler system zone in buildings that are more than 420 feet (128 000 mm) in *building height* shall be supplied by no fewer than two risers. Each riser shall supply sprinklers on alternate floors. If more than two risers are provided for a zone, sprinklers on adjacent floors shall not be supplied from the same riser.

[F] 403.3.1.1 Riser location.
Sprinkler risers shall be placed in *interior exit stairways* and ramps that are remotely located in accordance with Section 1007.1.

[F] 403.3.1.2 High-rise building sprinkler system design.
Combination standpipe/sprinkler risers using 6 in. pipe minimum, shall be used. Shut-off valves and water-flow devices shall be provided on each floor at the sprinkler system connection to each standpipe. Two four-way fire department connections serving the combination system shall be provided on separate streets well separated from each other. At least one of the fire department connections shall be connected to the riser above a riser isolation valve. Dry pipe sprinkler systems serving parking garages may use one separate two-way fire department connection. The dry pipe sprinkler system shall be supplied by the on-site water tank.

[F] 403.3.2 Water supply to required fire pumps.
In buildings that are more than ~~420 feet (128 000 mm~~) 450 feet in *building height*, required fire pumps shall be supplied by connections to no fewer than two water mains located in different streets and shall not serve other buildings. Separate supply piping shall be provided between each connection to the water main and the pumps. Each connection and the supply piping between the connection and the pumps shall be sized to supply the flow and pressure required for the pumps to operate.

Exception: When approved by the fire code official, two connections to the same main shall be permitted provided the main is valved such that an interruption can be isolated so that the water supply will continue without interruption through no fewer than one of the connections.

~~**[F] 403.3.3 Secondary water supply.**~~
~~An automatic secondary on-site water supply having a capacity not less than the hydraulically calculated sprinkler demand, including the hose stream requirement, shall be provided for *highrise buildings* assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F as determined by Section 1613. An additional fire pump shall not be required for the secondary water supply unless needed to provide the minimum design intake pressure at the suction side of the fire pump supplying the *automatic sprinkler system*. The secondary water supply shall have a duration of not less than 30 minutes.~~

[F] 403.3.3 Secondary water source.
A secondary on-site water source shall be provided for high-rise building as follows:

1. High-rise buildings containing R or B occupancy only shall be provided with a net useable volume of 15,000 gallons.

2. High-rise buildings containing an S-2 occupancy shall be provided with a net useable volume of 40,000 gallons.

3. High-rise buildings containing an M occupancy shall be provided with a net useable volume of 50,000 gallons.

4. Multi high-rise complexes that are less than 450' in height may share a common secondary water source shall by combining the highest demand of number 2 or 3 above, with number 1 above. Only one parking/retail area and 2 high-rise buildings may share a common secondary water source.

An acceptable alternative to items 1 through 4 above, is to prove a calculated net useable volume capable of meeting the hydraulically calculated sprinkler demand, including the total (combined inside and outside) hose stream requirement, as per NFPA 13. The duration of the calculated source shall have a duration of not less than 30 minutes for buildings with light hazard occupancies only and a 60 minute duration for building with ordinary hazard occupancies as defined by NFPA 13.

Exception: Existing buildings, including those undergoing substantial renovation.

[F] 403.3.4 Fire pump room.
Fire pumps shall be located in rooms protected in accordance with Section 913.2.1.

[F] 403.4 Emergency systems.
The detection, alarm and emergency systems of *high-rise buildings* shall comply with Sections 403.4.1 through 403.4.8.

[F] 403.4.1 Smoke detection.
Smoke detection shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.13.1.

[F] 403.4.2 Fire alarm system.
A *fire alarm* system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.13.

[F] 403.4.3 Standpipe system.
A *high-rise building* shall be equipped with a standpipe system as required by Section 905.3.

[F] 403.4.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication system.
An *emergency voice/alarm communication system* shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

[F] 403.4.5 Emergency responder radio coverage.
Emergency responder radio coverage shall be provided in accordance with Section 510 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 403.4.6 Fire command.
A *fire command center* complying with Section 911 shall be provided in a location *approved* by the fire department.

403.4.7 Smoke removal.
To facilitate smoke removal in post-fire salvage and overhaul operations, buildings and structures shall be equipped with natural or mechanical *ventilation* for removal of products of combustion in accordance with one of the following:

1. Easily identifiable, manually operable windows or panels shall be distributed around the perimeter of each floor at not more than 50-foot (15 240 mm) intervals. The area of operable windows or panels shall be not less than 40 square feet (3.7 m^2) per 50 linear feet (15 240 mm) of perimeter.

   Exceptions:

   1. In Group R-1 occupancies, each *sleeping unit* or suite having an *exterior wall* shall be permitted to be provided with 2 square feet (0.19 m^2) of venting area in lieu of the area specified in Item 1.

   2. Windows shall be permitted to be fixed provided that glazing can be cleared by fire fighters.

2. Mechanical air-handling equipment providing one exhaust air change every 15 minutes for the area involved. Return and exhaust air shall be moved directly to the outside without recirculation to other portions of the building.

3. Any other *approved* design that will produce equivalent results.

[F] 403.4.8 Standby and emergency power.
A standby power system complying with Section 2702 and Section 3003 shall be provided for the standby power loads specified in Section 403.4.8.3. An emergency power system complying with Section 2702 shall be provided for the emergency power loads specified in Section 403.4.8.4.

[F] 403.4.8.1 Equipment room.
If the standby or emergency power system includes a generator set inside a building, the system shall be ~~located in a separate room enclosed with 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. System supervision with manual start and transfer features shall be provided at the *fire command center.*~~ in accordance with Section 2702.1.8.

Exception: In Group I-2, Condition 2, manual start and transfer features for the critical branch of the emergency power are not required to be provided at the *fire command center*.

403.4.8.1.1 Penetrations.
Penetrations into and openings through an equipment room containing a standby or emergency generator set inside a building, are prohibited except for required exit doors, equipment and ductwork necessary for heating, cooling or ventilation, sprinkler branch line piping, or electrical raceway, serving the generator set

equipment room or being served by the generator set. Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 713.

Exception: Metallic piping with no joints or openings where it passes through the generator set equipment room.

[F] 403.4.8.2 Fuel line piping protection.
Fuel lines supplying a generator set inside a building shall be separated from areas of the building other than the room the generator is located in by an approved method or assembly that has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours. Where the building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the required fire-resistance rating shall be reduced to 1 hour.

[F] 403.4.8.3 Standby power loads.
The following are classified as standby power loads:

1. Power and lighting for the *fire command center* required by Section 403.4.6.
2. *Ventilation* and automatic fire detection equipment for *smokeproof enclosures*.
3. Elevators.
4. Where elevators are provided in a *high-rise building* for *accessible means of egress*, fire service access or occupant self-evacuation, the standby power system shall also comply with Sections 1009.4, 3007 or 3008, as applicable.

[F] 403.4.8.4 Emergency power loads.
The following are classified as emergency power loads:

1. Exit signs and *means of egress* illumination required by Chapter 10.
2. Elevator car lighting.
3. *Emergency voice/alarm communications systems*.
4. Automatic fire detection systems.
5. *Fire alarm* systems.
6. Electrically powered fire pumps.

403.5 Means of egress and evacuation.
The *means of egress* in *high-rise buildings* shall comply with Sections 403.5.1 through 403.5.6 and in addition to these requirements, shall comply with Bellevue City Code 23.11.907.5.2.2.6, which requires either Phased Evacuation, an additional stair, or occupant evacuation elevators, to facilitate simultaneous building evacuation and firefighter response into the building.

403.5.1 Remoteness of interior exit stairways.
Required *interior exit stairways* shall be separated by a distance not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) or not less than one-fourth of the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the building or area to be served, whichever is less. The distance shall be measured in a straight line between the nearest points of the enclosure surrounding the *interior exit stairways*. In buildings with three or more *interior exit stairways,* no fewer than two of the *interior exit stairways* shall comply with this section. Interlocking or *scissor stairways* shall be counted as one *interior exit stairway.*

403.5.2 Additional interior exit stairway.
For buildings other than Group R-2 that are more than 420 feet (128 000 mm) in *building height*, one additional *interior exit stairway* meeting the requirements of Sections 1011 and 1023 shall be provided in addition to the minimum number of *exits* required by Section 1006.3. The total width of any combination of remaining *interior exit stairways* with one *interior exit stairway* removed shall be not less than the total width required by Section 1005.1. *Scissor stairways* shall not be considered the additional *interior exit stairway* required by this section.

> **Exception:** An additional *interior exit stairway* shall not be required to be installed in buildings having elevators used for occupant self-evacuation in accordance with Section 3008.

403.5.3 Stairway door operation.
Stairway doors other than the *exit discharge* doors shall be permitted to be locked from the *stairway* side. *Stairway* doors that are locked from the *stairway* side shall be capable of being unlocked simultaneously without unlatching upon a signal from the *fire command center.*

> **403.5.3.1 Stairway communication system.**
> A telephone or other two-way communications system connected to an *approved constantly attended station* shall be provided at not less than every fifth floor in each *stairway* where the doors to the *stairway* are locked.

403.5.4 Smokeproof enclosures.
Every required *interior exit stairway* serving floors more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access shall be a *smokeproof enclosure* in accordance with Sections 909.20 and 1023.11.

> **Exception:** Unless required by other sections of this code, portions of such stairways which extend to serve floors below the level of exit discharge need not comply with Sections 909.20 and 1023.11 provided the portion of the stairway below is separated from the level of exit discharge with a 1 hour fire barrier.

403.5.5 Luminous egress path markings.
Luminous egress path markings shall be provided in accordance with Section 1025.

403.5.6 Emergency escape and rescue.
Emergency escape and rescue openings specified in Section 1030 are not required.

403.6 Elevators.
Elevator installation and operation in *highrise buildings* shall comply with Chapter 30 and Sections 403.6.1 and 403.6.2.

403.6.1 Fire service access elevator.
In buildings with an occupied floor more than 120 feet (36 576 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, no fewer than two fire service access elevators, or all elevators, whichever is less, shall be provided in accordance with Section 3007. Each fire service access elevator shall have a capacity of not less than 3,500 pounds (1588 kg) and shall comply with Section 3002.4.

403.6.2 Occupant evacuation elevators.
Where installed in accordance with Section 3008, passenger elevators for general public use shall be permitted to be used for occupant self-evacuation.

403.7 Smoke control. A smoke-control system meeting the requirements of Section 909 shall be provided in all areas containing a Group I or Group R occupancy within high-rise buildings. Such areas shall be separated in accordance with Section 709 and Section 909 to create separate smoke zones, or smoke control shall be provided in all such unseparated areas of the building.

SECTION 404
ATRIUMS

404.1 General.
In other than Group H occupancies, and where permitted by Section 712.1.7, the provisions of Sections 404.1 through 404.10 shall apply to buildings or structures containing vertical openings defined as “Atriums.”

404.1.1 Definition.
The following term is defined in Chapter 2:

ATRIUM.

404.2 Use.
The floor of the *atrium* shall not be used for other than low fire hazard uses and only *approved* materials and decorations in accordance with the *International Fire Code* shall be used in the *atrium* space.

Exception: The *atrium* floor area is permitted to be used for any *approved* use where the individual space is provided with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

[F] 404.3 Automatic sprinkler protection.
An *approved automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed throughout the entire building.

Exceptions:

1. That area of a building adjacent to or above the *atrium* need not be sprinklered provided that portion of the building is separated from the *atrium* portion by not less than 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

2. Where the ceiling of the *atrium* is more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above the floor, sprinkler protection at the ceiling of the *atrium* is not required.

[F] 404.4 Fire alarm system.
A *fire alarm* system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.14.

404.5 Smoke control.
A smoke control system shall be installed in accordance with Section 909.

Exception: In other than Group I-2, and Group I-1, Condition 2, smoke control is not required for *atriums* that connect only two *stories*.

404.6 Enclosure of atriums.
Atrium spaces shall be separated from adjacent spaces by a 1-hour *fire barrier* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or a *horizontal assembly* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

Exceptions:

1. A *fire barrier* is not required where a glass wall forming a smoke partition is provided. The glass wall shall comply with all of the following:

   1.1. Automatic sprinklers are provided along both sides of the separation wall and doors, or on the room side only if there is not a walkway on the *atrium* side. The sprinklers shall be located between 4 inches and 12 inches (102 mm and 305 mm) away from the glass and at intervals along the glass not greater than 6 feet (1829 mm). The sprinkler system shall be designed so that the entire surface of the glass is wet upon activation of the sprinkler system without obstruction;

   1.2. The glass wall shall be installed in a gasketed frame in a manner that the framing system deflects without breaking (loading) the glass before the sprinkler system operates; and

   1.3. Where glass doors are provided in the glass wall, they shall be either *self-closing* or automatic-closing.

2. A fire barrier is not required where a glass-block wall assembly complying with Section 2110 and having a 3/4-hour fire protection rating is provided.

3. A *fire barrier* is not required between the *atrium* and the adjoining spaces of any three floors of the *atrium* provided such spaces are accounted for in the design of the smoke control system.

[F] 404.7 Standby power.
Equipment required to provide smoke control shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 909.11.

404.8 Interior finish.
The *interior finish* of walls and ceilings of the *atrium* shall be not less than Class B with no reduction in class for sprinkler protection.

404.9 Exit access travel distance.
Exit access travel distance for areas open to an *atrium* shall comply with the requirements of this section.

404.9.1 Egress not through the atrium.
Where required access to the *exits* is not through the *atrium*, *exit access* travel distance shall comply with Section 1017.

404.9.2 Exit access travel distance at the level of exit discharge.
Where the path of egress travel is through an *atrium* space, *exit access* travel distance at the *level of exit discharge* shall be determined in accordance with Section 1017.

404.9.3 Exit access travel distance at other than the level of exit discharge.
Where the path of egress travel is not at the *level of exit discharge* from the *atrium*, that portion of the total permitted *exit access* travel distance that occurs within the *atrium* shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm).

404.10 Interior exit stairways.
A maximum of 50 percent of *interior exit stairways* are permitted to egress through an *atrium* on the *level of exit discharge* in accordance with Section 1028.

SECTION 405
UNDERGROUND BUILDINGS

405.1 General.
The provisions of ~~Sections 405.2 through 405.9~~ this section apply to building spaces having a floor level used for human occupancy more than 30 feet (9144 mm) below the finished floor of the lowest *level of exit discharge*.

Exceptions: The provisions of Section 405 are not applicable to the following buildings or portions of buildings**:**

1. One- and two-family *dwellings*, sprinklered in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3.

2. Parking garages provided with *automatic sprinkler systems* in compliance with Section 405.3 and pressurized stair enclosures provided with emergency power in compliance with Sections 909.20, 909.20.5, and 909.20.6.

3. Fixed guideway transit systems, complying with NFPA 130 as amended by the City of Bellevue.

4. *Grandstands*, *bleachers*, stadiums, arenas and similar facilities.

5. Where the lowest *story* is the only *story* that would qualify the building as an underground building and has an area not greater than 1,500 square feet (139 m^2) and has an *occupant load* less than 10.

6. Pumping stations and other similar mechanical spaces intended only for limited periodic use by service or maintenance personnel.

405.2 Construction requirements.
The underground portion of the building shall be of Type I construction.

[F] 405.3 Automatic sprinkler system.
The highest *level of exit discharge* serving the underground portions of the building and all levels below shall be equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Water-flow switches and control valves shall be supervised in accordance with Section 903.4.

405.4 Compartmentation.
Compartmentation shall be in accordance with Sections 405.4.1 through 405.4.3.

405.4.1 Number of compartments.
A building having a floor level more than 60 feet (18 288 mm) below the finished floor of the lowest *level of exit discharge* shall be divided into no fewer than two compartments of approximately equal size. Such compartmentation shall extend through the highest *level of exit discharge* serving the underground portions of the building and all levels below.

Exception: The lowest *story* need not be compartmented where the area is not greater than 1,500 square feet (139 m^2) and has an *occupant load* of less than 10.

405.4.2 Smoke barrier penetration.
The compartments shall be separated from each other by a *smoke barrier* in accordance with Section 709. Penetrations between the two compartments shall be limited to plumbing and electrical piping and conduit that are fire-stopped in accordance with Section 714. Doorways shall be protected by *fire door assemblies* that are automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3 and are installed in accordance with NFPA 105 and Section 716.5.3. Where provided, each compartment shall have an air supply and an exhaust system independent of the other compartments.

405.4.3 Elevators.
Where elevators are provided, each compartment shall have direct access to an elevator. Where an elevator serves more than one compartment, an elevator lobby shall be provided and shall be separated from each compartment by a s*moke barrier* in accordance with Section 709. Doors shall be gasketed, have a drop sill and be automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3.

405.5 Smoke control system.
A smoke control system shall be provided in accordance with Sections 405.5.1 and 405.5.2.

405.5.1 Control system.
A smoke control system is required to control the migration of products of combustion in accordance with Section 909 and the provisions of this section. Smoke control shall restrict movement of smoke to the general area of fire origin and maintain *means of egress* in a usable condition.

405.5.2 Compartment smoke control system.
Where compartmentation is required, each compartment shall have an independent smoke control system. The system shall be automatically activated and capable of manual operation in accordance with Sections 907.2.18 and 907.2.19.

[F] 405.6 Fire alarm systems.
A *fire alarm* system shall be provided where required by Sections 907.2.18 and 907.2.19.

405.7 Means of egress.
Means of egress shall be in accordance with Sections 405.7.1 and 405.7.2.

405.7.1 Number of exits.
Each floor level shall be provided with no fewer than two *exits*. Where compartmentation is required by Section 405.4, each compartment shall have no fewer than one *exit* and shall also have no fewer than one *exit access* doorway into the adjoining compartment.

405.7.2 Smokeproof enclosure.
Every required *stairway* serving floor levels more than 30 feet (9144 mm) below the finished floor of its *level of exit discharge* shall comply with the requirements for a *smokeproof enclosure* as provided in Section 1023.11.

[F] 405.8 Standby and emergency power.
A standby power system complying with Section 2702 shall be provided for the standby power loads specified in Section 405.8.1. An emergency power system complying with Section 2702 shall be provided for the emergency power loads specified in Section 405.8.2.

[F] 405.8.1 Standby power loads.
The following loads are classified as standby power loads:

1. Smoke control system.
2. *Ventilation* and automatic fire detection equipment for *smokeproof enclosures.*
3. Fire pumps.
4. Elevators, as required in Section 3003.

[F] 405.8.2 Emergency power loads.
The following loads are classified as emergency power loads:

1. *Emergency voice/alarm communications systems*.
2. *Fire alarm* systems.
3. Automatic fire detection systems.
4. Elevator car lighting.
5. *Means of egress* and exit sign illumination as required by Chapter 10.

[F] 405.9 Standpipe system.
The underground building shall be equipped throughout with a standpipe system in accordance with Section 905.

SECTION 406
MOTOR-VEHICLE-RELATED OCCUPANCIES

406.1 General.
Motor-vehicle-related occupancies shall comply with Sections 406.1 through 406.8.

406.2 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

MECHANICAL-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES.

OPEN PARKING GARAGE.

PRIVATE GARAGE.

RAMP-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES.

406.3 Private garages and carports.
Private garages and carports shall comply with Sections 406.3.1 through 406.3.6.

406.3.1 Classification.
Private garages and carports shall be classified as Group U occupancies. Each private garage shall be not greater than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) in area. Multiple private garages are permitted in a building where each private garage is separated from the other private garages by 1-hour *fire barriers* in accordance with Section 707, or 1-hour *horizontal assemblies* in accordance with Section 711, or both.

406.3.2 Clear height.
In private garages and carports, the clear height in vehicle and pedestrian traffic areas shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm). Vehicle and pedestrian areas accommodating van-accessible parking shall comply with Section 1106.5.

406.3.3 Garage floor surfaces.
Garage floor surfaces shall be of *approved* noncombustible material. The area of floor used for parking of automobiles or other vehicles shall be sloped to facilitate the movement of liquids to a drain or toward the main vehicle entry doorway.

406.3.4 Separation.
For other than private garages adjacent to dwelling units, the separation of private garages from other occupancies shall comply with Section 508. Separation of private garages from *dwelling units* shall comply with Sections 406.3.4.1 through 406.3.4.3.

406.3.4.1 Dwelling unit separation.
The private garage shall be separated from the *dwelling unit* and its *attic* area by means of gypsum board, not less than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) in thickness, applied to the garage side. Garages beneath habitable rooms shall be separated from all habitable rooms above by not less than a $^{5}/_{8}$ - inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum board or equivalent and $^{1}/_{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board applied to structures supporting the separation from habitable rooms above the garage. Door openings between a private garage and the *dwelling unit* shall be equipped with either solid wood doors or solid or honeycomb core steel doors not less than $^{13}/_{8}$ inches (34.9 mm) in thickness, or doors in compliance with Section 716.5.3 with a fire protection rating of not less than 20 minutes. Doors shall be *self-closing* and self-latching.

406.3.4.2 Openings prohibited.
Openings from a private garage directly into a room used for sleeping purposes shall not be permitted.

406.3.4.3 Ducts.
Ducts in a private garage and ducts penetrating the walls or ceilings separating the *dwelling unit* from the garage, including its *attic* area, shall be constructed of sheet steel of not less than 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) in thickness and shall have no openings into the garage.

406.3.5 Carports.
Carports shall be open on at least two sides. Carport floor surfaces shall be of an *approved* noncombustible material. Carports not open on at least two sides shall be considered a garage and shall comply with the requirements for private garages.

Exception: Asphalt surfaces shall be permitted at ground level in carports.

The area of floor used for parking of automobiles or other vehicles shall be sloped to facilitate the movement of liquids to a drain or toward the main vehicle entry doorway.

406.3.5.1 Carport separation.
A separation is not required between a Group R-3 and U carport, provided the carport is entirely open on two or more sides and there are not enclosed areas above.

406.3.6 Automatic garage door openers.
Automatic garage door openers, where provided, shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 325.

406.4 Public parking garages.
Parking garages, other than *private garages*, shall be classified as public parking garages and shall comply with the provisions of Sections 406.4.2 through 406.4.8 and shall be classified as either an *open parking garage* or an enclosed parking garage. *Open parking garages* shall also comply with Section 406.5. Enclosed parking garages shall also comply with Section 406.6. See Section 510 for special provisions for parking garages.

406.4.1 Clear height.
The clear height of each floor level in vehicle and pedestrian traffic areas shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm). Vehicle and pedestrian areas accommodating van-accessible parking shall comply with Section 1106.5.

406.4.2 Guards.
Guards shall be provided in accordance with Section 1015. Guards serving as *vehicle barriers* shall comply with Sections 406.4.3 and 1015.

406.4.3 Vehicle barriers.
Vehicle barriers not less than 2 feet 9 inches (835 mm) in height shall be placed where the vertical distance from the floor of a drive lane or parking space to the ground or surface directly below is greater than 1 foot (305 mm). *Vehicle barriers* shall comply with the loading requirements of Section 1607.8.3.

> **Exception:** *Vehicle barriers* are not required in vehicle storage compartments in a mechanical access parking garage.

406.4.4 Ramps.
Vehicle ramps shall not be considered as required *exits* unless pedestrian facilities are provided. Vehicle ramps that are utilized for vertical circulation as well as for parking shall not exceed a slope of 1:15 (6.67 percent).

406.4.5 Floor surface.
Parking surfaces shall be of concrete or similar noncombustible and nonabsorbent materials.

The area of floor used for parking of automobiles or other vehicles shall be sloped to facilitate the movement of liquids to a drain or toward the main vehicle entry doorway.

> **Exceptions:**
>
> 1. Asphalt parking surfaces shall be permitted at ground level.
>
> 2. Floors of Group S-2 parking garages shall not be required to have a sloped surface.

406.4.6 Mixed occupancy separation.
Parking garages shall be separated from other occupancies in accordance with Section 508.1.

406.4.7 Special hazards.
Connection of a parking garage with any room in which there is a fuel-fired appliance shall be by means of a vestibule providing a two-doorway separation.

> **Exception:** A single door shall be allowed provided the sources of ignition in the appliance are not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.

406.4.8 Attached to rooms.
Openings from a parking garage directly into a room used for sleeping purposes shall not be permitted.

406.5 Open parking garages.
Open parking garages shall comply with Sections 406.5.1 through 406.5.11.

406.5.1 Construction.
Open parking garages shall be of Type I, II or IV construction. *Open parking garages* shall meet the design requirements of Chapter 16. For *vehicle barriers*, see Section 406.4.3.

406.5.2 Openings.
For natural *ventilation* purposes, the exterior side of the structure shall have uniformly distributed openings on two or more sides. The area of such openings in *exterior walls* on a tier shall be not less than 20 percent of the total perimeter wall area of each tier. The aggregate length of the openings considered to be providing natural *ventilation* shall be not less than 40 percent of the perimeter of the tier. Interior walls shall be not less than 20 percent open with uniformly distributed openings.

Exception: Openings are not required to be distributed over 40 percent of the building perimeter where the required openings are uniformly distributed over two opposing sides of the building.

406.5.2.1 Openings below grade.
Where openings below grade provide required natural *ventilation*, the outside horizontal clear space shall be one and one-half times the depth of the opening. The width of the horizontal clear space shall be maintained from grade down to the bottom of the lowest required opening.

406.5.3 Uses.
Mixed uses shall be allowed in the same building as an *open parking garage* subject to the provisions of Sections 402.4.2.3, 406.5.11, 508.1, 510.3, 510.4 and 510.7.

406.5.4 Area and height.
Area and height of *open parking garages* shall be limited as set forth in Chapter 5 for Group S-2 occupancies and as further provided for in Section 508.1.

TABLE 406.5.4
OPEN PARKING GARAGES AREA AND HEIGHT

TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION	AREA PER TIER (square feet)	HEIGHT (in tiers)		
		Ramp access	Mechanical access	
			Automatic sprinkler system	
			No	Yes
IA	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited
IB	Unlimited	12 tiers	12 tiers	18 tiers
IIA	50,000	10 tiers	10 tiers	15 tiers
IIB	50,000	8 tiers	8 tiers	12 tiers

IV	50,000	4 tiers	4 tiers	4 tiers

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

406.5.4.1 Single use.
Where the *open parking garage* is used exclusively for the parking or storage of private motor vehicles, with no other uses in the building, the area and height shall be permitted to comply with Table 406.5.4, along with increases allowed by Section 406.5.5.

Exception: The grade-level tier is permitted to contain an office, waiting and toilet rooms having a total combined area of not more than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2). Such area need not be separated from the *open parking garage*.

In *open parking garages* having a spiral or sloping floor, the horizontal projection of the structure at any cross section shall not exceed the allowable area per parking tier. In the case of an *open parking garage* having a continuous spiral floor, each 9 feet 6 inches (2896 mm) of height, or portion thereof, shall be considered a tier.

The clear height of a parking tier shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm), except that a lower clear height is permitted in mechanical-access *open parking garages* where *approved* by the *building official*.

406.5.5 Area and height increases.
The allowable area and height of *open parking garages* shall be increased in accordance with the provisions of this section. Garages with sides open on three-fourths of the building's perimeter are permitted to be increased by 25 percent in area and one tier in height. Garages with sides open around the entire building's perimeter are permitted to be increased by 50 percent in area and one tier in height. For a side to be considered open under the above provisions, the total area of openings along the side shall not be less than 50 percent of the interior area of the side at each tier and such openings shall be equally distributed along the length of the tier. For purposes of calculating the interior area of the side, the height shall not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm).

Allowable tier areas in Table 406.5.4 shall be increased for *open parking garages* constructed to heights less than the table maximum. The gross tier area of the garage shall not exceed that permitted for the higher structure. No fewer than three sides of each such larger tier shall have continuous horizontal openings not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in clear height extending for not less than 80 percent of the length of the sides and no part of such larger tier shall be more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) horizontally from such an opening. In addition, each such opening shall face a street or *yard* accessible to a street with a width of not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) for the full length of the opening, and standpipes shall be provided in each such tier.

Open parking garages of Type II construction, with all sides open, shall be unlimited in allowable area where the *building height* does not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm). For a side to be considered open, the total area of openings along the side shall be not less than 50 percent of the interior area of the side at each tier and such openings shall be equally distributed along the length of the tier. For purposes of calculating the interior area of the side, the height shall not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm). All portions of tiers shall be within 200

feet (60 960 mm) horizontally from such openings or other natural *ventilation* openings as defined in Section 406.5.2. These openings shall be permitted to be provided in *courts* with a minimum dimension of 20 feet (6096 mm) for the full width of the openings.

406.5.6 Fire separation distance.
Exterior walls and openings in *exterior walls* shall comply with Tables 601 and 602. The distance to an adjacent *lot line* shall be determined in accordance with Table 602 and Section 705.

406.5.7 Means of egress.
Where persons other than parking attendants are permitted, *open parking garages* shall meet the *means of egress* requirements of Chapter 10. Where no persons other than parking attendants are permitted, there shall be no fewer than two *exit stairways.* Each *exit stairway* shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width. Lifts shall be permitted to be installed for use of employees only, provided they are completely enclosed by noncombustible materials.

[F] 406.5.8 Standpipe system.
An *open parking garage* shall be equipped with a standpipe system as required by Section 905.3.

406.5.9 Enclosure of vertical openings.
Enclosure shall not be required for vertical openings except as specified in Section 406.5.7.

406.5.10 Ventilation.
Ventilation, other than the percentage of openings specified in Section 406.5.2, shall not be required.

406.5.11 Prohibitions.
The following uses and alterations are not permitted:

1. Vehicle repair work.

2. Parking of buses, trucks and similar vehicles.

3. Partial or complete closing of required openings in exterior walls by tarpaulins or any other means.

4. Dispensing of fuel.

406.6 Enclosed parking garages.
Enclosed parking garages shall comply with Sections 406.6.1 through 406.6.3.

406.6.1 Heights and areas.
Enclosed vehicle parking garages and portions thereof that do not meet the definition of *open parking garages* shall be limited to the allowable heights and areas specified in Sections 504 and 506 as modified by Section 507. Roof parking is permitted.

406.6.2 Ventilation.
A mechanical *ventilation* system shall be provided in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

[F] 406.6.3 Automatic sprinkler system.
An enclosed parking garage shall be equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.2.10.

406.7 Motor fuel-dispensing facilities.
Motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall comply with the *International Fire Code* and Sections 406.7.1 and 406.7.2.

406.7.1 Vehicle fueling pad.
The vehicle shall be fueled on noncoated concrete or other *approved* paving material having a resistance not exceeding 1 megohm as determined by the methodology in EN 1081.

406.7.2 Canopies.
Canopies under which fuels are dispensed shall have a clear, unobstructed height of not less than 13 feet 6 inches (4115 mm) to the lowest projecting element in the vehicle drive-through area. Canopies and their supports over pumps shall be of noncombustible materials, *fire-retardant-treated wood* complying with Chapter 23, wood of Type IV sizes or of construction providing 1-hour *fire resistance*. Combustible materials used in or on a *canopy* shall comply with one of the following:

1. Shielded from the pumps by a noncombustible element of the *canopy*, or wood of Type IV sizes;

2. Plastics covered by aluminum facing having a thickness of not less than 0.010 inch (0.30 mm) or corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of not less than 0.016 inch (0.41 mm). The plastic shall have a *flame spread index* of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in the form intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater when tested in accordance with ASTM D1929; or

3. Panels constructed of light-transmitting plastic materials shall be permitted to be installed in *canopies* erected over motor vehicle fuel-dispensing station fuel dispensers, provided the panels are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from any building on the same *lot* and face *yards* or streets not less than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in width on the other sides. The aggregate areas of plastics shall be not greater than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2). The maximum area of any individual panel shall be not greater than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2).

406.7.2.1 Canopies used to support gaseous hydrogen systems.
Canopies that are used to shelter dispensing operations where flammable compressed gases are located on the roof of the *canopy* shall be in accordance with the following:

1. The *canopy* shall meet or exceed Type I construction requirements.

2. Operations located under *canopies* shall be limited to refueling only.

3. The *canopy* shall be constructed in a manner that prevents the accumulation of hydrogen gas.

406.8 Repair garages.
Repair garages shall be constructed in accordance with the *International Fire Code* and Sections 406.8.1 through 406.8.6. This occupancy shall not include motor fuel-dispensing facilities, as regulated in Section 406.7.

406.8.1 Mixed uses.
Mixed uses shall be allowed in the same building as a repair garage subject to the provisions of Section 508.1.

406.8.2 Ventilation.
Repair garages shall be mechanically ventilated in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*. The *ventilation* system shall be controlled at the entrance to the garage.

406.8.3 Floor surface.
Repair garage floors shall be of concrete or similar noncombustible and non-absorbent materials.

Exception: Slip-resistant, non-absorbent, *interior floor finishes* having a critical radiant flux not more than 0.45 W/cm^2, as determined by NFPA 253, shall be permitted.

406.8.4 Heating equipment.
Heating equipment shall be installed in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

[F] 406.8.5 Gas detection system.
Repair garages used for the repair of vehicles fueled by nonodorized gases such as hydrogen and nonodorized LNG, shall be provided with a flammable gas detection system.

[F] 406.8.5.1 System design.
The flammable gas detection system shall be *listed* or *approved* and shall be calibrated to the types of fuels or gases used by vehicles to be repaired. The gas detection system shall be designed to activate when the level of flammable gas exceeds 25 percent of the lower flammable limit (LFL). Gas detection shall be provided in lubrication or chassis service pits of repair garages used for repairing nonodorized LNG-fueled vehicles.

[F] 406.8.5.1.1 Gas detection system components.
Gas detection system control units shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 864 or UL 2017. Gas detectors shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2075 for use with the gases and vapors being detected.

[F] 406.8.5.2 Operation.
Activation of the gas detection system shall result in all of the following:

1. Initiation of distinct audible and visual alarm signals in the repair garage.

2. Deactivation of all heating systems located in the repair garage.

3. Activation of the mechanical *ventilation* system, where the system is interlocked with gas detection.

[F] 406.8.5.3 Failure of the gas detection system.
Failure of the gas detection system shall result in the deactivation of the heating system, activation of the mechanical *ventilation* system where the system is interlocked with the gas detection system and cause a trouble signal to sound in an *approved* location.

[F] 406.8.6 Automatic sprinkler system.
A repair garage shall be equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.2.9.1.

SECTION 407
GROUP I-2

407.1 General.
Occupancies in Group I-2 shall comply with the provisions of Sections 407.1 through 407.10 and other applicable provisions of this code.

407.2 Corridors continuity and separation.
Corridors in occupancies in Group I-2 shall be continuous to the *exits* and shall be separated from other areas in accordance with Section 407.3 except spaces conforming to Sections 407.2.1 through 407.2.6.

407.2.1 Waiting and similar areas.
Waiting areas and similar spaces constructed as required for *corridors* shall be permitted to be open to a *corridor*, only where all of the following criteria are met:

1. The spaces are not occupied as care recipient's sleeping rooms, treatment rooms, incidental uses in accordance with Section 509, or hazardous uses.

2. The open space is protected by an automatic fire detection system installed in accordance with Section 907.

3. The *corridors* onto which the spaces open, in the same *smoke compartment*, are protected by an automatic fire detection system installed in accordance with Section 907, or the *smoke compartment* in which the spaces are located is equipped throughout with quick-response sprinklers in accordance with Section 903.3.2.

4. The space is arranged so as not to obstruct access to the required *exits*.

407.2.2 Care providers' stations.
Spaces for care providers', supervisory staff, doctors' and nurses' charting, communications and related clerical areas shall be permitted to be open to the *corridor*, where such spaces are constructed as required for *corridors.*

407.2.3 Psychiatric treatment areas.
Areas wherein psychiatric care recipients who are not capable of self-preservation are housed, or group meeting or multipurpose therapeutic spaces other than incidental uses in

accordance with Section 509, under continuous supervision by facility staff, shall be permitted to be open to the *corridor*, where the following criteria are met:

1. Each area does not exceed 1,500 square feet (140 m^2).

2. The area is located to permit supervision by the facility staff.

3. The area is arranged so as not to obstruct any access to the required *exits*.

4. The area is equipped with an automatic fire detection system installed in accordance with Section 907.2.

5. Not more than one such space is permitted in any one *smoke compartment*.

6. The walls and ceilings of the space are constructed as required for *corridors*.

407.2.4 Gift shops.

Gift shops and associated storage that are less than 500 square feet (455 m^2) in area shall be permitted to be open to the *corridor* where such spaces are constructed as required for *corridors.*

407.2.5 Nursing home housing units.

In Group I-2, Condition 1, occupancies, in areas where nursing home residents are housed, shared living spaces, group meeting or multipurpose therapeutic spaces shall be permitted to be open to the *corridor*, where all of the following criteria are met:

1. The walls and ceilings of the space are constructed as required for *corridors*.

2. The spaces are not occupied as resident sleeping rooms, treatment rooms, incidental uses in accordance with Section 509, or hazardous uses.

3. The open space is protected by an automatic fire detection system installed in accordance with Section 907.

4. The *corridors* onto which the spaces open, in the same *smoke compartment*, are protected by an automatic fire detection system installed in accordance with Section 907, or the *smoke compartment* in which the spaces are located is equipped throughout with quick-response sprinklers in accordance with Section 903.3.2.

5. The space is arranged so as not to obstruct access to the required *exits*.

407.2.6 Nursing home cooking facilities.

In Group I-2, Condition 1, occupancies, rooms or spaces that contain a cooking facility with domestic cooking appliances shall be permitted to be open to the corridor where all of the following criteria are met:

1. The number of care recipients housed in the smoke compartment is not greater than 30.

2. The number of care recipients served by the cooking facility is not greater than 30.

3. Only one cooking facility area is permitted in a smoke compartment.

4. The types of domestic cooking appliances permitted are limited to ovens, cooktops, ranges, warmers and microwaves.

5. The corridor is a clearly identified space delineated by construction or floor pattern, material or color.

6. The space containing the domestic cooking facility shall be arranged so as not to obstruct access to the required exit.

7. A domestic cooking hood installed and constructed in accordance with Section 505 of the *International Mechanical Code* is provided over the cooktop or range.

8. The domestic cooking hood provided over the cooktop or range shall be equipped with an automatic fire-extinguishing system of a type recognized for protection of domestic cooking equipment. Pre-engineered automatic extinguishing systems shall be tested in accordance with UL 300A and *listed* and *labeled* for the intended application. The system shall be installed in accordance with this code, its listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

9. A manual actuation device for the hood suppression system shall be installed in accordance with Sections 904.12.1 and 904.12.2.

10. An interlock device shall be provided such that upon activation of the hood suppression system, the power or fuel supply to the cooktop or range will be turned off.

11. A shut-off for the fuel and electrical power supply to the cooking equipment shall be provided in a location that is accessible only to staff.

12. A timer shall be provided that automatically deactivates the cooking appliances within a period of not more than 120 minutes.

13. A portable fire extinguisher shall be installed in accordance with Section 906 of the *International Fire Code.*

407.3 Corridor wall construction.
Corridor walls shall be constructed as smoke partitions in accordance with Section 710.

407.3.1 Corridor doors.
Corridor doors, other than those in a wall required to be rated by Section 509.4 or for the enclosure of a vertical opening or an *exit*, shall not have a required *fire protection rating* and shall not be required to be equipped with *self-closing* or automatic-closing devices, but shall provide an effective barrier to limit the transfer of smoke and shall be equipped with positive latching. Roller latches are not permitted. Other doors shall conform to Section 716.5.

407.4 Means of egress.
Group I-2 occupancies shall be provided with means of egress complying with Chapter 10 and Sections 407.4.1 through 407.4.4. The fire safety and evacuation plans provided in accordance with Section 1001.4 shall identify the building components necessary to support a *defend-in-place* emergency response in accordance with Sections 404 and 408 of the *International Fire Code*.

407.4.1 Direct access to a corridor.
Habitable rooms in Group I-2 occupancies shall have an *exit access* door leading directly to a *corridor*.

Exceptions:

1. Rooms with *exit* doors opening directly to the outside at ground level.

2. Rooms arranged as *care suites* complying with Section 407.4.4.

407.4.1.1 Locking devices.
Locking devices that restrict access to a care recipient's room from the *corridor* and that are operable only by staff from the *corridor* side shall not restrict the *means of egress* from the care recipient's room.

Exceptions:

1. This section shall not apply to rooms in psychiatric treatment and similar care areas.

2. Locking arrangements in accordance with Section 1010.1.9.6.

407.4.2 Distance of travel.
The distance of travel between any point in a Group I-2 occupancy sleeping room, not located in a *care suite*, and an *exit access* door in that room shall be not greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm).

407.4.3 Projections in nursing home corridors.
In Group I-2, Condition 1, occupancies, where the corridor width is a minimum of 96 inches (2440 mm), projections shall be permitted for furniture where all of the following criteria are met:

1. The furniture is attached to the floor or to the wall.

2. The furniture does not reduce the clear width of the corridor to less than 72 inches (1830 mm) except where other encroachments are permitted in accordance with Section 1005.7.

3. The furniture is positioned on only one side of the *corridor*.

4. Each arrangement of furniture is 50 square feet (4.6 m^2) maximum in area.

5. Furniture arrangements are separated by 10 feet (3048 mm) minimum.

6. Placement of furniture is considered as part of the fire and safety plans in accordance with Section 1001.4.

407.4.4 Group I-2 care suites.
Care suites in Group I-2 shall comply with Sections 407.4.4.1 through 407.4.4.4 and either Section 407.4.4.5 or 407.4.4.6.

407.4.4.1 Exit access through care suites.
Exit access from all other portions of a building not classified as a *care suite* shall not pass through a *care suite*. In a *care suite* required to have more than one *exit*, one *exit access* is permitted to pass through an adjacent *care suite* provided all of the other requirements of Sections 407.4 and 1016.2 are satisfied.

407.4.4.2 Separation.
Care suites shall be separated from other portions of the building, including other care suites, by a smoke partition complying with Section 710.

407.4.4.3 Access to corridor.
Movement from habitable rooms shall not require passage through more than three doors and 100 feet (30 480 mm) distance of travel within the suite.

Exception: The distance of travel shall be permitted to be increased to 125 feet (38 100 mm) where an automatic smoke detection system is provided throughout the *care suite* and installed in accordance with NFPA 72.

407.4.4.4 Doors within care suites.
Doors in care suites serving habitable rooms shall be permitted to comply with one of the following:

1. Manually operated horizontal sliding doors permitted in accordance with Exception 9 to Section 1010.1.2.

2. Power-operated doors permitted in accordance with Exception 7 to Section 1010.1.2.

3. Means of egress doors complying with Section 1010.

407.4.4.5 Care suites containing sleeping room areas.
Sleeping rooms shall be permitted to be grouped into care suites where one of the following criteria is met:

1. The *care suite* is not used as an *exit access* for more than eight care recipient beds.

2. The arrangement of the *care suite* allows for direct and constant visual supervision into the sleeping rooms by care providers.

3. An automatic smoke detection system is provided in the sleeping rooms and installed in accordance with NFPA 72.

407.4.4.5.1 Area.
Care suites containing sleeping rooms shall be not greater than 7,500 square feet (696 m^2) in area.

Exception: *Care suites* containing sleeping rooms shall be permitted to be not greater than 10,000 square feet (929 m^2) in area where an automatic smoke detection system is provided throughout the *care suite* and installed in accordance with NFPA 72.

407.4.4.5.2 Exit access.
Any sleeping room, or any *care suite* that contains sleeping rooms, of more than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) shall have no fewer than two *exit access* doors from the *care suite* located in accordance with Section 1007.

407.4.4.6 Care suites not containing sleeping rooms.
Areas not containing sleeping rooms, but only treatment areas and the associated rooms, spaces or circulation space, shall be permitted to be grouped into *care suites* and shall conform to the limitations in Sections 407.4.4.6.1 and 407.4.4.6.2.

407.4.4.6.1 Area.
Care suites of rooms, other than sleeping rooms, shall have an area not greater than 12,500 square feet (1161 m^2).

Exception: *Care suites* not containing sleeping rooms shall be permitted to be not greater than 15,000 square feet (1394 m^2) in area where an automatic smoke detection system is provided throughout the *care suite* in accordance with Section 907.

407.4.4.6.2 Exit access.
Care suites, other than sleeping rooms, with an area of more than 2,500 square feet (232 m^2) shall have no fewer than two *exit access* doors from the *care suite* located in accordance with Section 1007.1.

407.5 Smoke barriers.
Smoke barriers shall be provided to subdivide every *story* used by persons receiving care, treatment or sleeping and to divide other *stories* with an *occupant load* of 50 or more persons, into no fewer than two *smoke compartments*. Such stories shall be divided into *smoke compartments* with an area of not more than 22,500 square feet (2092 m^2) in Group I-2, Condition 1, and not more than 40,000 square feet (3716 m^2) in Group I-2, Condition 2, and the distance of travel from any point in a *smoke compartment* to a *smoke barrier* door shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm). The *smoke barrier* shall be in accordance with Section 709.

407.5.1 Refuge area.
Refuge areas shall be provided within each *smoke compartment*. The size of the refuge area shall accommodate the occupants and care recipients from the adjoining *smoke compartment*. Where a *smoke compartment* is adjoined by two or more *smoke compartments*, the minimum area of the refuge area shall accommodate the largest *occupant load* of the adjoining compartments. The size of the refuge area shall provide the following:

1. Not less than 30 net square feet (2.8 m^2) for each care recipient confined to bed or stretcher.

2. Not less than 6 square feet (0.56 m^2) for each ambulatory care recipient not confined to bed or stretcher and for other occupants.

Areas or spaces permitted to be included in the calculation of refuge area are *corridors*, sleeping areas, treatment rooms, lounge or dining areas and other low-hazard areas.

407.5.2 Independent egress.
A *means of egress* shall be provided from each *smoke compartment* created by *smoke barriers* without having to return through the smoke compartment from which *means of egress* originated.

407.5.3 Horizontal assemblies.
Horizontal assemblies supporting *smoke barriers* required by this section shall be designed to resist the movement of smoke. Elevator lobbies shall be in accordance with Section 3006.2.

[F] 407.6 Automatic sprinkler system.
Smoke compartments containing sleeping rooms shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler* system in accordance with Sections 903.3.1.1 and 903.3.2.

[F] 407.7 Fire alarm system.
A *fire alarm* system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.6.

[F] 407.8 Automatic fire detection.
Corridors in Group I-2, Condition 1 occupancies and spaces permitted to be open to the *corridors* by Section 407.2 shall be equipped with an automatic fire detection system.

Group I-2, Condition 2 occupancies shall be equipped with smoke detection as required in Section 407.2.

Exceptions:

1. *Corridor* smoke detection is not required where sleeping rooms are provided with *smoke detectors* that comply with UL 268. Such detectors shall provide a visual display on the *corridor* side of each sleeping room and an audible and visual alarm at the care provider's station attending each unit.

2. *Corridor* smoke detection is not required where sleeping room doors are equipped with automatic door-closing devices with integral *smoke detectors* on the unit sides installed in accordance with their listing, provided that the integral detectors perform the required alerting function.

407.9 Secured yards.
Grounds are permitted to be fenced and gates therein are permitted to be equipped with locks, provided that safe dispersal areas having 30 net square feet (2.8 m^2) for bed and stretcher care recipients and 6 net square feet (0.56 m^2) for ambulatory care recipients and other occupants are located between the building and the fence. Such provided safe dispersal areas shall be located not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the building they serve.

407.10 Electrical systems.
In Group I-2 occupancies, the essential electrical system for electrical components, equipment and systems shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 27 and NFPA 99.

SECTION 408
GROUP I-3

408.1 General.
Occupancies in Group I-3 shall comply with the provisions of Sections 408.1 through 408.11 and other applicable provisions of this code (see Section 308.5).

408.1.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

CELL.

CELL TIER. HOUSING UNIT.

SALLYPORT.

408.2 Other occupancies.
Buildings or portions of buildings in Group I-3 occupancies where security operations necessitate the locking of required *means of egress* shall be permitted to be classified as a different occupancy. Occupancies classified as other than Group I-3 shall meet the applicable requirements of this code for that occupancy where provisions are made for the release of occupants at all times.

Means of egress from detention and correctional occupancies that traverse other use areas shall, as a minimum, conform to requirements for detention and correctional occupancies.

Exception: It is permissible to exit through a *horizontal exit* into other contiguous occupancies that do not conform to detention and correctional occupancy egress provisions but that do comply with requirements set forth in the appropriate occupancy, as long as the occupancy is not a Group H use.

408.3 Means of egress.
Except as modified or as provided for in this section, the *means of egress* provisions of Chapter 10 shall apply.

408.3.1 Door width.
Doors to resident *sleeping units* shall have a clear width of not less than 28 inches (711 mm).

408.3.2 Sliding doors.
Where doors in a *means of egress* are of the horizontal-sliding type, the force to slide the door to its fully open position shall be not greater than 50 pounds (220 N) with a perpendicular force against the door of 50 pounds (220 N).

408.3.3 Guard tower doors.
A hatch or trap door not less than 16 square feet (610 m^2) in area through the floor and having dimensions of not less than 2 feet (610 mm) in any direction shall be permitted to be used as a portion of the *means of egress* from guard towers.

408.3.4 Spiral stairways.
Spiral stairways that conform to the requirements of Section 1011.10 are permitted for access to and between staff locations.

408.3.5 Ships ladders.
Ships ladders shall be permitted for egress from control rooms or elevated facility observation rooms in accordance with Section 1011.15.

408.3.6 Exit discharge.
Exits are permitted to discharge into a fenced or walled courtyard. Enclosed *yards* or *courts* shall be of a size to accommodate all occupants, be located not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the building and have an area of not less than 15 square feet (1.4 m^2) per person.

408.3.7 Sallyports.
A *sallyport* shall be permitted in a *means of egress* where there are provisions for continuous and unobstructed passage through the *sallyport* during an emergency egress condition.

408.3.8 Interior exit stairway and ramp construction.
One *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* in each building shall be permitted to have glazing installed in doors and interior walls at each landing level providing access to the *interior exit stairway or ramp*, provided that the following conditions are met:

1. The *interior exit stairway or ramp* shall not serve more than four floor levels.

2. *Exit* doors shall be not less than 3/4-hour *fire door assemblies* complying with Section 716.5

3. The total area of glazing at each floor level shall not exceed 5,000 square inches (3.2 m^2) and individual panels of glazing shall not exceed 1,296 square inches (0.84 m^2).

4. The glazing shall be protected on both sides by an *automatic sprinkler system*. The sprinkler system shall be designed to wet completely the entire surface of any glazing affected by fire when actuated.

5. The glazing shall be in a gasketed frame and installed in such a manner that the framing system will deflect without breaking (loading) the glass before the sprinkler system operates.

6. Obstructions, such as curtain rods, drapery traverse rods, curtains, drapes or similar materials shall not be installed between the automatic sprinklers and the glazing.

408.4 Locks.
Egress doors are permitted to be locked in accordance with the applicable use condition. Doors from a refuge area to the outside are permitted to be locked with a key in lieu of locking methods described in Section 408.4.1. The keys to unlock the exterior doors shall be available at all times and the locks shall be operable from both sides of the door.

408.4.1 Remote release.
Remote release of locks on doors in a *means of egress* shall be provided with reliable means of operation, remote from the resident living areas, to release locks on all required doors. In Occupancy Condition 3 or 4, the arrangement, accessibility and security of the release mechanisms required for egress shall be such that with the minimum available staff at any time, the lock mechanisms are capable of being released within 2 minutes.

Exception: Provisions for remote locking and unlocking of occupied rooms in Occupancy Condition 4 are not required provided that not more than 10 locks are necessary to be unlocked in order to move occupants from one smoke compartment to a refuge area within 3 minutes. The opening of necessary locks shall be accomplished with not more than two separate keys.

[F] 408.4.2 Power-operated doors and locks.
Power-operated sliding doors or power-operated locks for swinging doors shall be operable by a manual release mechanism at the door. Emergency power shall be provided for the doors and locks in accordance with Section 2702.

Exceptions:

1. Emergency power is not required in facilities with 10 or fewer locks complying with the exception to Section 408.4.1.

2. Emergency power is not required where remote mechanical operating releases are provided.

408.4.3 Redundant operation.
Remote release, mechanically operated sliding doors or remote release, mechanically operated locks shall be provided with a mechanically operated release mechanism at each door, or shall be provided with a redundant remote release control.

408.4.4 Relock capability.
Doors remotely unlocked under emergency conditions shall not automatically relock when closed unless specific action is taken at the remote location to enable doors to relock.

408.5 Protection of vertical openings.
Any vertical opening shall be protected by a *shaft enclosure* in accordance with Section 713, or shall be in accordance with Section 408.5.1.

408.5.1 Floor openings.
Openings in floors within a *housing unit* are permitted without a *shaft enclosure*, provided all of the following conditions are met:

1. The entire normally occupied areas so interconnected are open and unobstructed so as to enable observation of the areas by supervisory personnel;

2. *Means of egress* capacity is sufficient for all occupants from all interconnected *cell tiers* and areas;

3. The height difference between the floor levels of the highest and lowest *cell tiers* shall not exceed 23 feet (7010 mm); and

4. Egress from any portion of the *cell tier* to an *exit* or *exit access* door shall not require travel on more than one additional floor level within the *housing unit*.

408.5.2 Shaft openings in communicating floor levels.
Where a floor opening is permitted between communicating floor levels of a *housing unit* in accordance with Section 408.5.1, plumbing chases serving vertically staked individual *cells* contained with the *housing unit* shall be permitted without a *shaft enclosure*.

408.6 Smoke barrier.
Occupancies in Group I-3 shall have *smoke barriers* complying with Sections 408.7 and 709 to divide every *story* occupied by residents for sleeping, or any other *story* having an *occupant load* of 50 or more persons, into no fewer than two *smoke compartments*.

Exception: Spaces having a direct *exit* to one of the following, provided that the locking arrangement of the doors involved complies with the requirements for doors at the *smoke barrier* for the use condition involved:

1. A *public way*.

2. A building separated from the resident housing area by a 2-hour fire-resistance-rated assembly or 50 feet (15 240 mm) of open space.

3. A secured y*ard* or *court* having a holding space 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the housing area that provides 6 square feet (0.56 m^2) or more of refuge area per occupant, including residents, staff and visitors.

408.6.1 Smoke compartments.
The number of residents in any *smoke compartment* shall be not more than 200. The distance of travel to a door in a *smoke barrier* from any room door required as exit access shall be not greater than 150 feet (45 720 mm). The distance of travel to a door in a *smoke barrier* from any point in a room shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm).

408.6.2 Refuge area.
Not less than 6 net square feet (0.56 m^2) per occupant shall be provided on each side of each *smoke barrier* for the total number of occupants in adjoining *smoke compartments*. This space shall be readily available wherever the occupants are moved across the *smoke barrier* in a fire emergency.

408.6.3 Independent egress.
A *means of egress* shall be provided from each *smoke compartment* created by *smoke barriers* without having to return through the *smoke compartment* from which *means of egress* originates.

408.7 Security glazing.
In occupancies in Group I-3, windows and doors in 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707, *fire partitions* constructed in accordance with Section 708 and *smoke barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 709 shall be permitted to have security glazing installed provided that the following conditions are met.

1. Individual panels of glazing shall not exceed 1,296 square inches (0.84 m^2).

2. The glazing shall be protected on both sides by an *automatic sprinkler system*. The sprinkler system shall be designed to, when actuated, wet completely the entire surface of any glazing affected by fire.

3. The glazing shall be in a gasketed frame and installed in such a manner that the framing system will deflect without breaking (loading) the glass before the sprinkler system operates.

4. Obstructions, such as curtain rods, drapery traverse rods, curtains, drapes or similar materials shall not be installed between the automatic sprinklers and the glazing.

408.8 Subdivision of resident housing areas.
Sleeping areas and any contiguous day room, group activity space or other common spaces where residents are housed shall be separated from other spaces in accordance with Sections 408.8.1 through 408.8.4.

408.8.1 Occupancy Conditions 3 and 4.
Each sleeping area in Occupancy Conditions 3 and 4 shall be separated from the adjacent common spaces by a smoke-tight partition where the distance of travel from the sleeping area through the common space to the *corridor* exceeds 50 feet (15 240 mm).

408.8.2 Occupancy Condition 5.
Each sleeping area in Occupancy Condition 5 shall be separated from adjacent sleeping areas, *corridors* and common spaces by a smoketight partition. Additionally, common spaces shall be separated from the *corridor* by a smoke-tight partition.

408.8.3 Openings in room face.
The aggregate area of openings in a solid sleeping room face in Occupancy Conditions 2, 3, 4 and 5 shall not exceed 120 square inches (0.77 m^2). The aggregate area shall include all openings including door undercuts, food passes and grilles. Openings shall be not more than 36 inches (914 mm) above the floor. In Occupancy Condition 5, the openings shall be closeable from the room side.

408.8.4 Smoke-tight doors.
Doors in openings in partitions required to be smoke tight by Section 408.8 shall be substantial doors, of construction that will resist the passage of smoke. Latches and door closures are not required on *cell* doors.

408.9 Windowless buildings.
For the purposes of this section, a windowless building or portion of a building is one with non-openable windows, windows not readily breakable or without windows. Windowless buildings shall be provided with an engineered smoke control system to provide a tenable environment for exiting from the *smoke compartment* in the area of fire origin in accordance with Section 909 for each windowless *smoke compartment*.

[F] 408.10 Fire alarm system.
A *fire alarm* system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.6.3.

[F] 408.11 Automatic sprinkler system.
Group I-3 occupancies shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.2.6.

SECTION 409
MOTION PICTURE PROJECTION ROOMS

409.1 General.
The provisions of Sections 409.1 through 409.5 shall apply to rooms in which ribbon-type cellulose acetate or other safety film is utilized in conjunction with electric arc, xenon or other light-source projection equipment that develops hazardous gases, dust or radiation. Where cellulose nitrate film is utilized or stored, such rooms shall comply with NFPA 40.

409.1.1 Projection room required.
Every motion picture machine projecting film as mentioned within the scope of this section shall be enclosed in a projection room. Appurtenant electrical equipment, such as rheostats, transformers and generators, shall be within the projection room or in an adjacent room of equivalent construction.

409.2 Construction of projection rooms.
Every projection room shall be of permanent construction consistent with the construction

requirements for the type of building in which the projection room is located. Openings are not required to be protected.

The room shall have a floor area of not less than 80 square feet (7.44 m^2) for a single machine and not less than 40 square feet (3.7 m^2) for each additional machine. Each motion picture projector, floodlight, spotlight or similar piece of equipment shall have a clear working space of not less than 30 inches by 30 inches (762 mm by 762 mm) on each side and at the rear thereof, but only one such space shall be required between two adjacent projectors. The projection room and the rooms appurtenant thereto shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet 6 inches (2286 mm). The aggregate of openings for projection equipment shall not exceed 25 percent of the area of the wall between the projection room and the auditorium. Openings shall be provided with glass or other *approved* material, so as to close completely the opening.

409.3 Projection room and equipment ventilation.
Ventilation shall be provided in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

409.3.1 Supply air.
Each projection room shall be provided with adequate air supply inlets so arranged as to provide well-distributed air throughout the room. Air inlet ducts shall provide an amount of air equivalent to the amount of air being exhausted by projection equipment. Air is permitted to be taken from the outside; from adjacent spaces within the building, provided the volume and infiltration rate is sufficient; or from the building air-conditioning system, provided it is so arranged as to provide sufficient air when other systems are not in operation.

409.3.2 Exhaust air.
Projection rooms are permitted to be exhausted through the lamp exhaust system. The lamp exhaust system shall be positively interconnected with the lamp so that the lamp will not operate unless there is the required airflow. Exhaust air ducts shall terminate at the exterior of the building in such a location that the exhaust air cannot be readily recirculated into any air supply system. The projection room *ventilation* system is permitted to also serve appurtenant rooms, such as the generator and rewind rooms.

409.3.3 Projection machines.
Each projection machine shall be provided with an exhaust duct that will draw air from each lamp and exhaust it directly to the outside of the building. The lamp exhaust is permitted to serve to exhaust air from the projection room to provide room air circulation. Such ducts shall be of rigid materials, except for a flexible connector *approved* for the purpose. The projection lamp or projection room exhaust system, or both, is permitted to be combined but shall not be interconnected with any other exhaust or return system, or both, within the building.

409.4 Lighting control.
Provisions shall be made for control of the auditorium lighting and the *means of egress* lighting systems of theaters from inside the projection room and from not less than one other convenient point in the building.

409.5 Miscellaneous equipment.
Each projection room shall be provided with rewind and film storage facilities.

SECTION 410
STAGES, PLATFORMS AND TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS

410.1 Applicability.
The provisions of Sections 410.1 through 410.8 shall apply to all parts of buildings and structures that contain *stages* or *platforms* and similar appurtenances as herein defined.

410.2 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

PLATFORM.

PROSCENIUM WALL.

STAGE.

TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREA.

410.3 Stages.
Stage construction shall comply with Sections 410.3.1 through 410.3.7.

410.3.1 Stage construction.
Stages shall be constructed of materials as required for floors for the type of construction of the building in which such *stages* are located.

Exception: *Stages* need not be constructed of the same materials as required for the type of construction provided the construction complies with one of the following:

1. *Stages* of Type IIB or IV construction with a nominal 2-inch (51 mm) wood deck, provided that the *stage* is separated from other areas in accordance with Section 410.3.4.

2. In buildings of Type IIA, IIIA and VA construction, a fire-resistance-rated floor is not required, provided the space below the *stage* is equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system or fire-extinguishing system* in accordance with Section 903 or 904.

3. In all types of construction, the finished floor shall be constructed of wood or *approved* noncombustible materials. Openings through *stage* floors shall be equipped with tight-fitting, solid wood trap doors with *approved* safety locks.

410.3.1.1 Stage height and area.
Stage areas shall be measured to include the entire performance area and adjacent backstage and support areas not separated from the performance area by fire-resistance-rated construction. *Stage* height shall be measured from the lowest point on the *stage* floor to the highest point of the roof or floor deck above the *stage*.

410.3.2 Technical production areas: galleries, gridirons and catwalks.
Beams designed only for the attachment of portable or fixed theater equipment, gridirons, galleries and catwalks shall be constructed of *approved* materials consistent with the

requirements for the type of construction of the building; and a *fire-resistance rating* shall not be required. These areas shall not be considered to be floors, *stories*, *mezzanines* or levels in applying this code.

> **Exception:** Floors of fly galleries and catwalks shall be constructed of any *approved* material.

410.3.3 Exterior stage doors.
Where protection of openings is required, exterior *exit* doors shall be protected with *fire door assemblies* that comply with Section 716. Exterior openings that are located on the *stage* for *means of egress* or loading and unloading purposes, and that are likely to be open during occupancy of the theater, shall be constructed with vestibules to prevent air drafts into the auditorium.

410.3.4 Proscenium wall.
Where the *stage* height is greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm), all portions of the *stage* shall be completely separated from the seating area by a proscenium wall with not less than a 2-hour *fire-resistance rating* extending continuously from the foundation to the roof.

410.3.5 Proscenium curtain.
Where a proscenium wall is required to have a *fire-resistance rating*, the *stage* opening shall be provided with a fire curtain complying with NFPA 80, horizontal sliding doors complying with Section 716.5.2 having a fire protection rating of at least 1 hour, or an *approved* water curtain complying with Section 903.3.1.1 or, in facilities not utilizing the provisions of smoke-protected assembly seating in accordance with Section 1029.6.2, a smoke control system complying with Section 909 or natural *ventilation* designed to maintain the smoke level not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor of the *means of egress*.

410.3.6 Scenery.
Combustible materials used in sets and scenery shall meet the fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701, in accordance with Section 806 and the *International Fire Code*. Foam plastics and materials containing foam plastics shall comply with Section 2603 and the *International Fire Code*.

410.3.7 Stage ventilation.

Emergency *ventilation* shall be provided for *stages* larger than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) in floor area, or with a *stage* height greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm). Such *ventilation* shall comply with Section 410.3.7.1 or 410.3.7.2.

> **410.3.7.1 Roof vents.**
> Two or more vents constructed to open automatically by *approved* heat-activated devices and with an aggregate clear opening area of not less than 5 percent of the area of the *stage* shall be located near the center and above the highest part of the *stage* area. Supplemental means shall be provided for manual operation of the ventilator. Curbs shall be provided as required for skylights in Section 2610.2. Vents shall be *labeled*.

[F] 410.3.7.2 Smoke control.
Smoke control in accordance with Section 909 shall be provided to maintain the smoke layer interface not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the highest level of the assembly seating or above the top of the proscenium opening where a proscenium wall is provided in compliance with Section 410.3.4.

410.4 Platform construction.
Permanent *platforms* shall be constructed of materials as required for the type of construction of the building in which the permanent *platform* is located. Permanent *platforms* are permitted to be constructed of *fire-retardant-treated wood* for Types I, II and IV construction where the *platforms* are not more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the main floor, and not more than one-third of the room floor area and not more than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2) in area. Where the space beneath the permanent *platform* is used for storage or any purpose other than equipment, wiring or plumbing, the floor assembly shall be not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction. Where the space beneath the permanent *platform* is used only for equipment, wiring or plumbing, the underside of the permanent *platform* need not be protected.

410.4.1 Temporary platforms.
Platforms installed for a period of not more than 30 days are permitted to be constructed of any materials permitted by this code. The space between the floor and the *platform* above shall only be used for plumbing and electrical wiring to *platform* equipment.

410.5 Dressing and appurtenant rooms.
Dressing and appurtenant rooms shall comply with Sections 410.5.1 and 410.5.2.

410.5.1 Separation from stage.
The *stage* shall be separated from dressing rooms, scene docks, property rooms, workshops, storerooms and compartments appurtenant to the *stage* and other parts of the building by *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The *fire-resistance rating* shall be not less than 2 hours for *stage* heights greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) and not less than 1 hour for *stage* heights of 50 feet (15 240 mm) or less.

410.5.2 Separation from each other.
Dressing rooms, scene docks, property rooms, workshops, storerooms and compartments appurtenant to the *stage* shall be separated from each other by not less than 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

410.6 Means of egress.
Except as modified or as provided for in this section, the provisions of Chapter 10 shall apply.

410.6.1 Arrangement.
Where two or more *exits* or *exit access doorways* from the *stage* are required in accordance with Section 1006.2, no fewer than one *exit* or *exit access doorway* shall be provided on each side of a *stage*.

410.6.2 Stairway and ramp enclosure.
Exit access stairways and *ramps* serving a *stage* or *platform* are not required to be

enclosed. *Exit access stairways* and ramps serving *technical production areas* are not required to be enclosed.

410.6.3 Technical production areas.
Technical production areas shall be provided with means of egress and means of escape in accordance with Sections 410.6.3.1 through 410.6.3.5.

410.6.3.1 Number of means of egress.
No fewer than one *means of egress* shall be provided from *technical production areas*.

410.6.3.2 Exit access travel distance.
The *exit access* travel distance shall be not greater than 300 feet (91 440 mm) for buildings without a sprinkler system and 400 feet (121 900 mm) for buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

410.6.3.3 Two means of egress.
Where two *means of egress* are required, the *common path of travel* shall be not greater than 100 feet (30 480 mm).

Exception: A means of escape to a roof in place of a second *means of egress* is permitted.

410.6.3.4 Path of egress travel.
The following *exit access* components are permitted where serving *technical production areas:*

1. *Stairways*.
2. *Ramps*.
3. *Spiral stairways*.
4. Catwalks.
5. *Alternating tread devices*.
6. Permanent ladders.

410.6.3.5 Width.
The path of egress travel within and from technical support areas shall be not less than 22 inches (559 mm).

[F] 410.7 Automatic sprinkler system.
Stages shall be equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Sprinklers shall be installed under the roof and gridiron and under all catwalks and galleries over the *stage*. Sprinklers shall be installed in dressing rooms, performer lounges, shops and storerooms accessory to such *stages.*

Exceptions:

1. Sprinklers are not required under *stage* areas less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in clear height that are utilized exclusively for storage of tables and chairs, provided the concealed space is separated from the adjacent spaces by Type X gypsum board not less than 5/8-inch (15.9 mm) in thickness.

2. Sprinklers are not required for *stages* 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) or less in area and 50 feet (15 240 mm) or less in height where curtains, scenery or other combustible hangings are not retractable vertically. Combustible hangings shall be limited to a single main curtain, borders, legs and a single backdrop.

3. Sprinklers are not required within portable orchestra enclosures on *stages*.

[F] 410.8 Standpipes.
Standpipe systems shall be provided in accordance with Section 905.

SECTION 411
SPECIAL AMUSEMENT BUILDINGS

411.1 General.
Special amusement buildings having an *occupant load* of 50 or more shall comply with the requirements for the appropriate Group A occupancy and Sections 411.1 through 411.8. *Special amusement buildings* having an *occupant load* of less than 50 shall comply with the requirements for a Group B occupancy and Sections 411.1 through 411.8.

Exception: *Special amusement buildings* or portions thereof that are without walls or a roof and constructed to prevent the accumulation of smoke need not comply with this section.

For flammable *decorative materials*, see the *International Fire Code*.

411.2 Definition.
The following term is defined in Chapter 2:

SPECIAL AMUSEMENT BUILDING.

[F] 411.3 Automatic fire detection.
Special amusement buildings shall be equipped with an automatic fire detection system in accordance with Section 907.

[F] 411.4 Automatic sprinkler system.
Special amusement buildings shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Where the *special amusement building* is temporary, the sprinkler water supply shall be of an *approved* temporary means.

Exception: Automatic sprinklers are not required where the total floor area of a temporary *special amusement building* is less than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) and the exit access travel distance from any point to an exit is less than 50 feet (15 240 mm).

[F] 411.5 Alarm.
Actuation of a single *smoke detector*, the *automatic sprinkler system* or other automatic fire detection device shall immediately sound an alarm at the building at a *constantly attended location* from which emergency action can be initiated including the capability of manual initiation of requirements in Section 907.2.12.2.

[F] 411.6 Emergency voice/alarm communications system.
An *emergency voice/alarm communications system* shall be provided in accordance with Sections 907.2.12 and 907.5.2.2, which is also permitted to serve as a public address system and shall be audible throughout the entire *special amusement building*.

411.7 Exit marking.
Exit signs shall be installed at the required *exit* or *exit access doorways* of amusement buildings in accordance with this section and Section 1013. *Approved* directional exit markings shall also be provided. Where mirrors, mazes or other designs are utilized that disguise the path of egress travel such that they are not apparent, *approved* and *listed* low-level exit signs that comply with Section 1013.5, and directional path markings *listed* in accordance with UL 1994, shall be provided and located not more than 8 inches (203 mm) above the walking surface and on or near the path of egress travel. Such markings shall become visible in an emergency. The directional exit marking shall be activated by the automatic fire detection system and the *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 907.2.12.2.

411.7.1 Photoluminescent exit signs.
Where *photoluminescent exit* signs are installed, activating light source and viewing distance shall be in accordance with the listing and markings of the signs.

411.8 Interior finish.
The *interior finish* shall be Class A in accordance with Section 803.1.

SECTION 412
AIRCRAFT-RELATED OCCUPANCIES

412.1 General.
Aircraft-related occupancies shall comply with Sections 412.1 through 412.8 and the *International Fire Code*.

412.2 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

FIXED BASE OPERATOR (FBO).

HELIPORT.

HELISTOP.

RESIDENTIAL AIRCRAFT HANGAR.

TRANSIENT AIRCRAFT.

412.3 Airport traffic control towers.
The provisions of Sections 412.3.1 through 412.3.8 shall apply to airport traffic control towers occupied only for the following uses:

1. Airport traffic control cab.
2. Electrical and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Airport terminal radar and electronics rooms.
4. Office spaces incidental to the tower operation.
5. Lounges for employees, including sanitary facilities.

412.3.1 Type of construction.
Airport traffic control towers shall be constructed to comply with the height limitations of Table 412.3.1.

TABLE 412.3.1
HEIGHT LIMITATIONS FOR
AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL TOWERS

TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION	HEIGHT[a] (feet)
IA	Unlimited
IB	240
IIA	100
IIB	85
IIIA	65

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.
a. Height to be measured from grade plane to cab floor.

412.3.2 Stairways.
Stairways in airport traffic control towers shall be in accordance with Section 1011. Stairways shall be smokeproof enclosures complying with one of the alternatives provided in Section 909.20.

Exception: Stairways in airport traffic control towers are not required to comply with Section 1011.12.

412.3.3 Exit access.
From observation levels, airport traffic control towers shall be permitted to have a single means of exit access for a distance of travel not greater than 100 feet (30 480 mm). Exit access stairways from the observation level need not be enclosed.

412.3.4 Number of exits.
Not less than one *exit stairway* shall be permitted for airport traffic control towers of any height provided that the *occupant load* per floor is not greater than 15 and the area per floor does not exceed 1,500 square feet (140 m^2).

412.3.4.1 Interior finish.
Where an airport traffic control tower is provided with only one exit stairway, interior wall and ceiling finishes shall be either Class A or Class B.

[F] 412.3.5 Automatic fire detection systems.
Airport traffic control towers shall be provided with an automatic fire detection system installed in accordance with Section 907.2.

412.3.6 Automatic sprinkler system.
Where an occupied floor is located more than 35 feet (10 668 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, airport traffic control towers shall be equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

412.3.7 Elevator protection.
Wires or cables that provide normal or standby power, control signals, communication with the car, lighting, heating, air conditioning, *ventilation* and fire detecting systems to elevators shall be protected by construction having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 1 hour, or shall be circuit integrity cable having a fireresistance rating of not less than 1 hour.

412.3.7.1 Elevators for occupant evacuation.
Where provided in addition to an exit stairway, occupant evacuation elevators shall be in accordance with Section 3008.

412.3.8 Accessibility.
Airport traffic control towers need not be *accessible* as specified in the provisions of Chapter 11.

412.4 Aircraft hangars.
Aircraft hangars shall be in accordance with Sections 412.4.1 through 412.4.6.

412.4.1 Exterior walls.
Exterior walls located less than 30 feet (9144 mm) from *lot lines* or a *public way* shall have a *fire-resistance rating* not less than 2 hours.

412.4.2 Basements.
Where hangars have *basements,* floors over *basements* shall be of Type IA construction and shall be made tight against seepage of water, oil or vapors. There shall be no opening or communication between *basements* and the hangar. Access to *basements* shall be from outside only.

412.4.3 Floor surface.
Floors shall be graded and drained to prevent water or fuel from remaining on the floor. Floor drains shall discharge through an oil separator to the sewer or to an outside vented sump.

Exception: Aircraft hangars with individual lease spaces not exceeding 2,000 square feet (186 m^2) each in which servicing, repairing or washing is not conducted and fuel is not dispensed shall have floors that are graded toward the door, but shall not require a separator.

412.4.4 Heating equipment.
Heating equipment shall be placed in another room separated by 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Entrance shall be from the outside or by means of a vestibule providing a two-doorway separation.

Exceptions:

1. Unit heaters and vented infrared radiant heating equipment suspended not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above the upper surface of wings or engine enclosures of the highest aircraft that are permitted to be housed in the hangar need not be located in a separate room provided they are mounted not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) above the floor in shops, offices and other sections of the hangar communicating with storage or service areas.

2. Entrance to the separated room shall be permitted by a single interior door provided the sources of ignition in the appliances are not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.

412.4.5 Finishing.
The process of “doping,” involving use of a volatile flammable solvent, or of painting, shall be carried on in a separate *detached building* equipped with *automatic fire-extinguishing equipment* in accordance with Section 903.

[F] 412.4.6 Fire suppression.
Aircraft hangars shall be provided with a fire suppression system designed in accordance with NFPA 409, based upon the classification for the hangar given in Table 412.4.6.

Exception: Where a *fixed base operator* has separate repair facilities on site, Group II hangars operated by a *fixed base operator* used for storage of *transient aircraft* only shall have a fire suppression system, but the system is exempt from foam requirements.

[F] TABLE 412.4.6
HANGAR FIRE SUPPRESSION REQUIREMENTS[a,b,c]

MAXIMUM SINGLE FIRE AREA (square feet)	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION								
	IA	IB	IIA	IIB	IIIA	IIIB	IV	VA	VB
≥ 40,001	Group I	Group I	Group I	Group I	Group I	Group I	Group I	Group I	Group I
40,000	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II

30,000	Group III	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II
20,000	Group III	Group III	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II
15,000	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group II	Group III	Group II	Group III	Group II	Group II
12,000	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group II	Group II
8,000	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group II
5,000	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

a. Aircraft hangars with a door height greater than 28 feet shall be provided with fire suppression for a Group I hangar regardless of maximum fire area.
b. Groups shall be as classified in accordance with NFPA 409.
c. Membrane structures complying with Section 3102 shall be classified as a Group IV hangar.

[F] 412.4.6.1 Hazardous operations.
Any Group III aircraft hangar according to Table 412.4.6 that contains hazardous operations including, but not limited to, the following shall be provided with a Group I or II fire suppression system in accordance with NFPA 409 as applicable:

1. Doping.
2. Hot work including, but not limited to, welding, torch cutting and torch soldering.
3. Fuel transfer.
4. Fuel tank repair or maintenance not including defueled tanks in accordance with NFPA 409, inerted tanks or tanks that have never been fueled.
5. Spray finishing operations.
6. Total fuel capacity of all aircraft within the unsprinklered single *fire area* in excess of 1,600 gallons (6057 L).
7. Total fuel capacity of all aircraft within the maximum single *fire area* in excess of 7,500 gallons (28 390 L) for a hangar with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

[F] 412.4.6.2 Separation of maximum single fire areas.
Maximum single *fire areas* established in accordance with hangar classification and

construction type in Table 412.4.6 shall be separated by 2-hour *fire walls* constructed in accordance with Section 706. In determining the maximum single *fire area* as set forth in Table 412.4.6, ancillary uses that are separated from aircraft servicing areas by a *fire barrier* of not less than 1 hour, constructed in accordance with Section 707, shall not be included in the area.

412.5 Residential aircraft hangars.
Residential aircraft hangars shall comply with Sections 412.5.1 through 412.5.5.

412.5.1 Fire separation.
A hangar shall not be attached to a *dwelling* unless separated by a *fire barrier* having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 1 hour. Such separation shall be continuous from the foundation to the underside of the roof and unpierced except for doors leading to the *dwelling unit*. Doors into the *dwelling unit* shall be equipped with *self-closing* devices and conform to the requirements of Section 716 with a noncombustible raised sill not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height. Openings from a hangar directly into a room used for sleeping purposes shall not be permitted.

412.5.2 Egress.
A hangar shall provide two *means of egress*. One of the doors into the dwelling shall be considered as meeting only one of the two *means of egress*.

[F] 412.5.3 Smoke alarms.
Smoke alarms shall be provided within the hangar in accordance with Section 907.2.21.

412.5.4 Independent systems.
Electrical, mechanical and plumbing drain, waste and vent (DWV) systems installed within the hangar shall be independent of the systems installed within the dwelling. Building sewer lines shall be permitted to be connected outside the structures.

Exception: *Smoke detector* wiring and feed for electrical subpanels in the hangar.

412.5.5 Height and area limits.
Residential aircraft hangars shall be not greater than 2,000 square feet (186 m^2) in area and 20 feet (6096 mm) in *building height*.

[F] 412.6 Aircraft paint hangars.
Aircraft painting operations where flammable liquids are used in excess of the maximum allowable quantities per *control area* listed in Table 307.1(1) shall be conducted in an aircraft paint hangar that complies with the provisions of Sections 412.6.1 through 412.6.6.

[F] 412.6.1 Occupancy group.
Aircraft paint hangars shall be classified as Group H-2. Aircraft paint hangars shall comply with the applicable requirements of this code and the *International Fire Code* for such occupancy.

412.6.2 Construction.
The aircraft paint hangar shall be of Type I or II construction.

[F] 412.6.3 Operations.
Only those flammable liquids necessary for painting operations shall be permitted in quantities less than the maximum allowable quantities per *control area* in Table 307.1(1). Spray equipment cleaning operations shall be conducted in a liquid use, dispensing and mixing room.

[F] 412.6.4 Storage.
Storage of flammable liquids shall be in a liquid storage room.

[F] 412.6.5 Fire suppression.
Aircraft paint hangars shall be provided with fire suppression as required by NFPA 409.

[F] 412.6.6 Ventilation.
Aircraft paint hangars shall be provided with *ventilation* as required in the *International Mechanical Code*.

412.7 Aircraft manufacturing facilities.
In buildings used for the manufacturing of aircraft, exit access travel distances indicated in Section 1017.1 shall be increased in accordance with the following:

1. The building shall be of Type I or II construction.

2. Exit access travel distance shall not exceed the distances given in Table 412.7.

TABLE 412.7
AIRCRAFT MANUFACTURING EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE

HEIGHT (feet) [b]	MANUFACTURING AREA (sq. ft.) [a]					
	≥ 150,000	≥ 200,000	≥ 250,000	≥ 500,000	≥ 750,000	≥ 1,000,000
≥ 25	400	450	500	500	500	500
≥ 50	400	500	600	700	700	700
≥ 75	400	500	700	850	1,000	1,000
≥ 100	400	500	750	1,000	1,250	1,500

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. Contiguous floor area of the aircraft manufacturing facility having the indicated height.
b. Minimum height from finished floor to bottom of ceiling or roof slab or deck.

412.7.1 Ancillary areas.
Rooms, areas and spaces ancillary to the primary manufacturing area shall be permitted to egress through such area having a minimum height as indicated in Table 412.7. Exit access travel distance within the ancillary room, area or space shall not exceed that indicated in Table 1017.2 based on the occupancy classification of that ancillary area. Total exit access travel distance shall not exceed that indicated in Table 412.7.

[F] 412.8 Heliports and helistops.
Heliports and *helistops* shall be permitted to be erected on buildings or other locations where they are constructed in accordance with Sections 412.8.1 through 412.8.5.

[F] 412.8.1 Size.
The landing area for helicopters less than 3,500 pounds (1588 kg) shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length and width. The landing area shall be surrounded on all sides by a clear area having a minimum average width at roof level of 15 feet (4572 mm) but with no width less than 5 feet (1524 mm).

[F] 412.8.2 Design.
Helicopter landing areas and the supports thereof on the roof of a building shall be noncombustible construction. Landing areas shall be designed to confine any flammable liquid spillage to the landing area itself and provisions shall be made to drain such spillage away from any *exit* or *stairway* serving the helicopter landing area or from a structure housing such *exit* or *stairway*. For structural design requirements, see Section 1607.6.

[F] 412.8.3 Means of egress.
The *means of egress* from *heliports* and *helistops* shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 10. Landing areas located on buildings or structures shall have two or more *means of egress*. For landing areas less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in length or less than 2,000 square feet (186 m^2) in area, the second *means of egress* is permitted to be a fire escape, *alternating tread device* or ladder leading to the floor below. On Group I-2 roofs with helistops or helipads, rooftop structures enclosing exit stair enclosures or elevator shafts shall be enclosed with fire barriers and opening protectives that match the rating of their respective shaft enclosures below.

[F] 412.8.4 Rooftop heliports and helistops.
Rooftop *heliports* and *helistops* shall comply with NFPA 418.

[F] 412.8.5 Standpipe system.
In buildings equipped with a standpipe system, the standpipe shall extend to the roof level in accordance with Section 905.3.6.

SECTION 413
COMBUSTIBLE STORAGE

413.1 General.
High-piled stock or rack storage in any occupancy group shall comply with the *International Fire Code*.

413.2 Attic, under-floor and concealed spaces.
Attic, under-floor and concealed spaces used for storage of combustible materials shall be protected on the storage side as required for 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction. Openings shall be protected by assemblies that are *self-closing* and are of noncombustible construction or solid wood core not less than 1 3/4 inch (45 mm) in thickness.

Exception: Neither fire-resistance-rated construction nor opening protectives are required in any of the following locations:

1. Areas protected by *approved automatic sprinkler systems*.

2. Group R-3 and U occupancies.

SECTION 414
HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

[F] 414.1 General.
The provisions of Sections 414.1 through 414.6 shall apply to buildings and structures occupied for the manufacturing, processing, dispensing, use or storage of hazardous materials.

[F] 414.1.1 Other provisions.
Buildings and structures with an occupancy in Group H shall comply with this section and the applicable provisions of Section 415 and the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 414.1.2 Materials.
The safe design of hazardous material occupancies is material dependent. Individual material requirements are also found in Sections 307 and 415, and in the *International Mechanical Code* and the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 414.1.2.1 Aerosols.
Level 2 and 3 aerosol products shall be stored and displayed in accordance with the *International Fire Code*. See Section 311.2 and the *International Fire Code* for occupancy group requirements.

[F] 414.1.3 Information required.
A report shall be submitted to the *building official* identifying the maximum expected quantities of hazardous materials to be stored, used in a *closed system* and used in an *open system*, and subdivided to separately address hazardous material classification categories based on Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2). The methods of protection from such hazards, including but not limited to *control areas*, fire protection systems and Group H occupancies shall be indicated in the report and on the *construction documents*. The opinion and report shall be prepared by a qualified person, firm or corporation *approved* by the *building official* and provided without charge to the enforcing agency.

For buildings and structures with an occupancy in Group H, separate floor plans shall be submitted identifying the locations of anticipated contents and processes so as to reflect the nature of each occupied portion of every building and structure.

[F] 414.2 Control areas.
Control areas shall comply with Sections 414.2.1 through 414.2.5 and the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 414.2.1 Construction requirements.
Control areas shall be separated from each other by *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

[F] 414.2.2 Percentage of maximum allowable quantities.
The percentage of maximum allowable quantities of hazardous materials per *control area* permitted at each floor level within a building shall be in accordance with Table 414.2.2.

[F] TABLE 414.2.2
DESIGN AND NUMBER OF CONTROL AREAS

FLOOR LEVEL		PERCENTAGE OF THE MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA[a]	NUMBER OF CONTROL AREAS PER FLOOR	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING FOR FIRE BARRIERS IN HOURS[b]
Above grade plane	Higher than 9	5	1	2
	7-9	5	2	2
	6	12.5	2	2
	5	12.5	2	2
	4	12.5	2	2
	3	50	2	1
	2	75	3	1
	1	100	4	1
Below grade plane	1	75	3	1
	2	50	2	1
	Lower than 2	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Allowed

a. Percentages shall be of the maximum allowable quantity per control area shown in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2), with all increases allowed in the notes to those tables.
b. Separation shall include fire barriers and horizontal assemblies as necessary to provide separation from other portions of the building.

[F] 414.2.3 Number.
The maximum number of *control areas* within a building shall be in accordance with Table 414.2.2.

[F] 414.2.4 Fire-resistance-rating requirements.
The required *fire-resistance rating* for *fire barriers* shall be in accordance with Table 414.2.2. The floor assembly of the *control area* and the construction supporting the floor of the *control area* shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 2 hours.

Exception: The floor assembly of the *control area* and the construction supporting the floor of the *control area* are allowed to be 1-hour fire-resistance rated in buildings of Types IIA, IIIA and VA construction, provided that both of the following conditions exist:

1. The building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; and

2. The building is three or fewer *stories above grade plane*.

[F] 414.2.5 Hazardous material in Group M display and storage areas and in Group S storage areas.
The aggregate quantity of nonflammable solid and nonflammable or noncombustible liquid hazardous materials permitted within a single *control area* of a Group M display and storage area, a Group S storage area or an outdoor *control area* is permitted to exceed the

maximum allowable quantities per *control area* specified in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2) without classifying the building or use as a Group H occupancy, provided that the materials are displayed and stored in accordance with the *International Fire Code* and quantities do not exceed the maximum allowable specified in Table 414.2.5(1).

In Group M occupancy wholesale and retail sales uses, indoor storage of flammable and combustible liquids shall not exceed the maximum allowable quantities per *control area* as indicated in Table 414.2.5(2), provided that the materials are displayed and stored in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

The maximum quantity of aerosol products in Group M occupancy retail display areas, storage areas adjacent to retail display areas and retail storage areas shall be in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] TABLE 414.2.5(1)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER INDOOR AND OUTDOOR CONTROL AREA IN GROUP M AND S OCCUPANCIES

NONFLAMMABLE SOLIDS AND NONFLAMMABLE AND NONCOMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS[d,e,f]

CONDITION		MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA	
Material[a]	**Class**	**Solids pounds**	**Liquids gallons**
A. Health-hazard materials—nonflammable and noncombustible solids and liquids			
1. Corrosives[b,c]	Not Applicable	9,750	975
2. Highly toxics	Not Applicable	20[b,c]	2[b,c]
3. Toxics[b,c]	Not Applicable	1,000	100
B. Physical-hazard materials—nonflammable and noncombustible solids and liquids			
1. Oxidizers[b,c]	4	Not Allowed	Not Allowed
	3	1,150[g]	115
	2	2,250[h]	225
	1	18,000[i, j]	1,800[i, j]
2. Unstable (reactives)[b,c]	4	Not Allowed	Not Allowed
	3	550	55
	2	1,150	115
	1	Not Limited	Not Limited
3. Water reactives	3[b,c]	550	55
	2[b,c]	1,150	115
	1	Not Limited	Not Limited

For SI: 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.
a. Hazard categories are as specified in the *International Fire Code.*

b. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent in buildings that are sprinklered in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. When Note c also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
c. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent when stored in approved storage cabinets, in accordance with the *International Fire Code*. When Note b also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
d. See Table 414.2.2 for design and number of control areas.
e. Allowable quantities for other hazardous material categories shall be in accordance with Section 307.
f. Maximum quantities shall be increased 100 percent in outdoor control areas.
g. Maximum amounts shall be increased to 2,250 pounds when individual packages are in the original sealed containers from the manufacturer or packager and do not exceed 10 pounds each.
h. Maximum amounts shall be increased to 4,500 pounds when individual packages are in the original sealed containers from the manufacturer or packager and do not exceed 10 pounds each.
i. The permitted quantities shall not be limited in a building equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
j. Quantities are unlimited in an outdoor control area.

[F] TABLE 414.2.5(2)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY OF FLAMMABLE AND COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS IN WHOLESALE AND RETAIL SALES OCCUPANCIES PER CONTROL AREA[a]

TYPE OF LIQUID	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA (gallons)		
	Sprinklered in accordance with note b densities and arrangements	**Sprinklered in accordance with Tables 5704.3.6.3(4) through 5704.3.6.3(8) and 5704.3.7.5.1 of the *International Fire Code***	**Nonsprinklered**
Class IA	60	60	30
Class IB, IC, II and IIIA	7,500[c]	15,000[c]	1,600
Class IIIB	Unlimited	Unlimited	13,200

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 gallon per minute per square foot = 40.75 L/min/m^2.

a. Control areas shall be separated from each other by not less than a 1-hour fire barrier wall.
b. To be considered as sprinklered, a building shall be equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system with a design providing minimum densities as follows:
   1. For uncartoned commodities on shelves 6 feet or less in height where the ceiling height does not exceed 18 feet, quantities are those permitted with a minimum sprinkler design density of Ordinary Hazard Group 2.
   2. For cartoned, palletized or racked commodities where storage is 4 feet 6 inches or less in height and where the ceiling height does not exceed 18 feet, quantities are those permitted with a minimum sprinkler design density of 0.21 gallon per minute per square foot over the most remote 1,500-square-foot area.
c. Where wholesale and retail sales or storage areas exceed 50,000 square feet in area, the maximum allowable quantities are allowed to be increased by 2 percent for each 1,000 square feet of area in excess of 50,000 square feet, up to a maximum of 100 percent of the table amounts. A control area separation is not required. The cumulative amounts, including amounts attained by having an additional control area, shall not exceed 30,000 gallons.

[F] 414.3 Ventilation.
Rooms, areas or spaces in which explosive, corrosive, combustible, flammable or highly toxic dusts, mists, fumes, vapors or gases are or may be emitted due to the processing, use, handling or storage of materials shall be mechanically ventilated where required by this code, the *International Fire Code* or the *International Mechanical Code*.

Emissions generated at workstations shall be confined to the area in which they are generated as specified in the *International Fire Code* and the *International Mechanical Code*.

[F] 414.4 Hazardous material systems.
Systems involving hazardous materials shall be suitable for the intended application. Controls shall be designed to prevent materials from entering or leaving process or reaction systems at other than the intended time, rate or path. Automatic controls, where provided, shall be designed to be fail safe.

[F] 414.5 Inside storage, dispensing and use.
The inside storage, dispensing and use of hazardous materials shall be in accordance with Sections 414.5.1 through 414.5.3 of this code and the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 414.5.1 Explosion control.
Explosion control shall be provided in accordance with the *International Fire Code* as required by Table 414.5.1 where quantities of hazardous materials specified in that table exceed the maximum allowable quantities in Table 307.1(1) or where a structure, room or space is occupied for purposes involving explosion hazards as required by Section 415 or the *International Fire Code*.

[F] TABLE 414.5.1
EXPLOSION CONTROL REQUIREMENTS[a, h]

MATERIAL	CLASS	EXPLOSION CONTROL METHODS	
		Barricade construction	Explosion (deflagration) venting or explosion (deflagration) prevention systems[b]
HAZARD CATEGORY			
Combustible dusts[c]	—	Not Required	Required
Cryogenic flammables	—	Not Required	Required
Explosives	Division 1.1	Required	Not Required
	Division 1.2	Required	Not Required
	Division 1.3	Not Required	Required
	Division 1.4	Not Required	Required
	Division 1.5	Required	Not Required
	Division 1.6	Required	Not Required
Flammable gas	Gaseous	Not Required	Required

	Liquefied	Not Required	Required
Flammable liquid	IA[d] IB[e]	Not Required Not Required	Required Required
Organic peroxides	U I	Required Required	Not Permitted Not Permitted
Oxidizer liquids and solids	4	Required	Not Permitted
Pyrophoric gas	—	Not Required	Required
Unstable (reactive)	4 3 Detonable 3 Nondetonable	Required Required Not Required	Not Permitted Not Permitted Required
Water-reactive liquids and solids	3 2[g]	Not Required Not Required	Required Required
SPECIAL USES			
Acetylene generator rooms	—	Not Required	Required
Grain processing	—	Not Required	Required
Liquefied petroleum gas-distribution facilities	—	Not Required	Required
Where explosion hazards exist[f]	Detonation Deflagration	Required Not Required	Not Permitted Required

a. See Section 414.1.3.
b. See the *International Fire Code.*
c. As generated during manufacturing or processing.
d. Storage or use.
e. In open use or dispensing.
f. Rooms containing dispensing and use of hazardous materials when an explosive environment can occur because of the characteristics or nature of the hazardous materials or as a result of the dispensing or use process.
g. A method of explosion control shall be provided when Class 2 water-reactive materials can form potentially explosive mixtures.
h. Explosion venting is not required for Group H-5 fabrication areas complying with Section 415.11.1 and the *International Fire Code.*

[F] 414.5.2 Emergency or standby power.
Where required by the *International Fire Code* or this code, mechanical ventilation, treatment systems, temperature control, alarm, detection or other electrically operated systems shall be provided with emergency or standby power in accordance with Section 2702. For storage and use areas for highly toxic or toxic materials, see Sections 6004.2.2.8 and 6004.3.4.2 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 414.5.2.1 Exempt applications.
Emergency or standby power is not required for the mechanical ventilation systems provided for any of the following:

1. Storage of Class IB and IC flammable and combustible liquids in closed containers not exceeding 6.5 gallons (25 L) capacity.

2. Storage of Class 1 and 2 oxidizers.

3. Storage of Class II, III, IV and V organic peroxides.

4. Storage of asphyxiant, irritant and radioactive gases.

[F] 414.5.2.2 Fail-safe engineered systems.
Standby power for mechanical ventilation, treatment systems and temperature control systems shall not be required where an approved fail-safe engineered system is installed.

[F] 414.5.3 Spill control, drainage and containment.
Rooms, buildings or areas occupied for the storage of solid and liquid hazardous materials shall be provided with a means to control spillage and to contain or drain off spillage and fire protection water discharged in the storage area where required in the *International Fire Code*. The methods of spill control shall be in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 414.6 Outdoor storage, dispensing and use.
The outdoor storage, dispensing and use of hazardous materials shall be in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 414.6.1 Weather protection.
Where weather protection is provided for sheltering outdoor hazardous material storage or use areas, such areas shall be considered outdoor storage or use when the weather protection structure complies with Sections 414.6.1.1 through 414.6.1.3.

[F] 414.6.1.1 Walls.
Walls shall not obstruct more than one side of the structure.

Exception: Walls shall be permitted to obstruct portions of multiple sides of the structure, provided that the obstructed area is not greater than 25 percent of the structure's perimeter.

[F] 414.6.1.2 Separation distance.
The distance from the structure to buildings, *lot lines*, *public ways* or *means of egress* to a *public way* shall be not less than the distance required for an outside hazardous material storage or use area without weather protection.

[F] 414.6.1.3 Noncombustible construction.
The overhead structure shall be of *approved* noncombustible construction with a maximum area of 1,500 square feet (140 m^2).

Exception: The maximum area is permitted to be increased as provided by Section 506.

SECTION 415
GROUPS H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 AND H-5

[F] 415.1 Scope.
The provisions of Sections 415.1 through 415.11 shall apply to the storage and use of hazardous materials in excess of the maximum allowable quantities per *control area* listed in Section 307.1. Buildings and structures with an occupancy in Group H shall also comply with the applicable provisions of Section 414 and the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 415.2 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

CONTINUOUS GAS DETECTION SYSTEM.

DETACHED BUILDING.

EMERGENCY CONTROL STATION.

EXHAUSTED ENCLOSURE.

FABRICATION AREA.

FLAMMABLE VAPORS OR FUMES.

GAS CABINET.

GASROOM.

HAZARDOUS PRODUCTION MATERIAL (HPM).

HPM FLAMMABLE LIQUID.

HPM ROOM.

IMMEDIATELY DANGEROUS TO LIFE AND HEALTH (IDLH).

LIQUID.

LIQUID STORAGE ROOM.

LIQUID USE, DISPENSING AND MIXING ROOM.

LOWER FLAMMABLE LIMIT (LFL).

NORMAL TEMPERATURE AND PRESSURE (NTP).

PHYSIOLOGICAL WARNING THRESHOLD LEVEL.

SERVICE CORRIDOR.

SOLID.

STORAGE, HAZARDOUS MATERIALS.

USE (MATERIAL).

WORKSTATION.

[F] 415.3 Automatic fire detection systems.
Group H occupancies shall be provided with an automatic fire detection system in accordance with Section 907.2.

[F] 415.4 Automatic sprinkler system.
Group H occupancies shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.2.5.

[F] 415.5 Emergency alarms.
Emergency alarms for the detection and notification of an emergency condition in Group H occupancies shall be provided as set forth herein.

[F] 415.5.1 Storage.
An approved manual emergency alarm system shall be provided in buildings, rooms or areas used for storage of hazardous materials. Emergency alarm-initiating devices shall be installed outside of each interior exit or exit access door of storage buildings, rooms or areas. Activation of an emergency alarm-initiating device shall sound a local alarm to alert occupants of an emergency situation involving hazardous materials.

[F] 415.5.2 Dispensing, use and handling.
Where hazardous materials having a hazard ranking of 3 or 4 in accordance with NFPA 704 are transported through corridors, interior exit stairways or ramps, or exit passageways, there shall be an emergency telephone system, a local manual alarm station or an approved alarm-initiating device at not more than 150-foot (45 720 mm) intervals and at each exit and

exit access doorway throughout the transport route. The signal shall be relayed to an approved central, proprietary or remote station service or constantly attended on-site location and shall initiate a local audible alarm.

[F] 415.5.3 Supervision.
Emergency alarm systems shall be supervised by an approved central, proprietary or remote station service or shall initiate an audible and visual signal at a constantly attended on-site location.

[F] 415.5.4 Emergency alarm systems.
Emergency alarm systems shall be provided with emergency power in accordance with Section 2702.

[F] 415.6 Fire separation distance.
Group H occupancies shall be located on property in accordance with the other provisions of this chapter. In Groups H-2 and H-3, not less than 25 percent of the perimeter wall of the occupancy shall be an *exterior wall*.

Exceptions:

1. *Liquid use, dispensing and mixing rooms* having a floor area of not more than 500 square feet (46.5 m^2) need not be located on the outer perimeter of the building where they are in accordance with the *International Fire Code* and NFPA 30.

2. *Liquid storage rooms* having a floor area of not more than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) need not be located on the outer perimeter where they are in accordance with the *International Fire Code* and NFPA 30.

3. Spray paint booths that comply with the *International Fire Code* need not be located on the outer perimeter.

[F] 415.6.1 Group H occupancy minimum fire separation distance.
Regardless of any other provisions, buildings containing Group H occupancies shall be set back to the minimum *fire separation distance* as set forth in Sections 415.6.1.1 through 415.6.1.4. Distances shall be measured from the walls enclosing the occupancy to *lot lines,* including those on a public way. Distances to assumed *lot lines* established for the purpose of determining exterior wall and opening protection are not to be used to establish the minimum *fire separation distance* for buildings on sites where explosives are manufactured or used when separation is provided in accordance with the quantity distance tables specified for explosive materials in the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 415.6.1.1 Group H-1.
Group H-1 occupancies shall be set back not less than 75 feet (22 860 mm) and not less than required by the *International Fire Code*.

Exception: Fireworks manufacturing buildings separated in accordance with NFPA 1124.

[F] 415.6.1.2 Group H-2.
Group H-2 occupancies shall be set back not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) where the area of the occupancy is greater than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) and it is not required to be located in a *detached building*.

[F] 415.6.1.3 Groups H-2 and H-3.
Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies shall be set back not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) where a *detached building* is required (see Table 415.6.2).

[F] 415.6.1.4 Explosive materials.
Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies containing materials with explosive characteristics shall be separated as required by the *International Fire Code*. Where separations are not specified, the distances required shall be determined by a technical report issued in accordance with Section 414.1.3.

[F] 415.6.2 Detached buildings for Group H-1, H-2 or H-3 occupancy.
The storage or use of hazardous materials in excess of those amounts listed in Table 415.6.2 shall be in accordance with the applicable provisions of Sections 415.7 and 415.8.

[F] TABLE 415.6.2
DETACHED BUILDING REQUIRED

A DETACHED BUILDING IS REQUIRED WHEN THE QUANTITY OF MATERIAL EXCEEDS THAT LISTED HEREIN			
Material	**Class**	**Solids and Liquids (tons)[a, b]**	**Gases (cubic feet)[a, b]**
Explosives	Division 1.1	Maximum Allowable Quantity	Not Applicable
	Division 1.2	Maximum Allowable Quantity	
	Division 1.3	Maximum Allowable Quantity	
	Division 1.4	1	
	Division 1.4[c]	Maximum Allowable Quantity	
	Division 1.5	Maximum Allowable Quantity	
	Division 1.6	Maximum Allowable Quantity	
Oxidizers	Class 4	Maximum Allowable Quantity	Maximum Allowable Quantity
Unstable (reactives) detonable	Class 3 or 4	Maximum Allowable Quantity	Maximum Allowable Quantity
Oxidizer, liquids and solids	Class 3	1,200	Not Applicable
	Class 2	2,000	Not Applicable
Organic peroxides	Detonable	Maximum Allowable Quantity	Not Applicable

	Class I	Maximum Allowable Quantity	Not Applicable
	Class II	25	Not Applicable
	Class III	50	Not Applicable
Unstable (reactives) nondetonable	Class 3	1	2,000
	Class 2	25	10,000
Water reactives	Class 3	1	Not Applicable
	Class 2	25	Not Applicable
Pyrophoric gases	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	2,000

For SI: 1 ton = 906 kg, 1 cubic foot = 0.02832 m^3, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. For materials that are detonable, the distance to other buildings or lot lines shall be in accordance with Chapter 56 of the *International Fire Code* based on trinitrotoluene (TNT) equivalence of the material. For materials classified as explosives, see Chapter 56 of the *International Fire Code*.
b. "Maximum Allowable Quantity" means the maximum allowable quantity per control area set forth in Table 307.1(1).
c. Limited to Division 1.4 materials and articles, including articles packaged for shipment, that are not regulated as an explosive under Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives (BATF) regulations or unpackaged articles used in process operations that do not propagate a detonation or deflagration between articles, provided the net explosive weight of individual articles does not exceed 1 pound.

[F] 415.6.2.1 Wall and opening protection.
Where a *detached building* is required by Table 415.6.2, there are no requirements for wall and opening protection based on *fire separation distance.*

[F] 415.7 Special provisions for Group H-1 occupancies.
Group H-1 occupancies shall be in detached buildings used for no other purpose. Roofs shall be of lightweight construction with suitable thermal insulation to prevent sensitive material from reaching its decomposition temperature. Group H-1 occupancies containing materials that are in themselves both physical and health hazards in quantities exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per *control area* in Table 307.1(2) shall comply with requirements for both Group H-1 and H-4 occupancies.

[F] 415.7.1 Floors in storage rooms.
Floors in storage areas for organic peroxides, pyrophoric materials and unstable (reactive) materials shall be of liquid-tight, noncombustible construction.

[F] 415.8 Special provisions for Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies.
Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies containing quantities of hazardous materials in excess of those set forth in Table 415.6.2 shall be in *detached buildings* used for manufacturing, processing, dispensing, use or storage of hazardous materials. Materials listed for Group H-1 occupancies in Section 307.3 are permitted to be located within Group H-2 or H- 3 *detached buildings* provided the amount of materials per *control area* do not exceed the maximum allowed quantity specified in Table 307.1(1).

[F] 415.8.1 Multiple hazards.
Group H-2 or H-3 occupancies containing materials that are in themselves both physical and health hazards in quantities exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per *control area* in Table 307.1(2) shall comply with requirements for Group H-2, H-3 or H-4 occupancies as applicable.

[F] 415.8.2 Separation of incompatible materials.
Hazardous materials other than those listed in Table 415.6.2 shall be allowed in manufacturing, processing, dispensing, use or storage areas when separated from incompatible materials in accordance with the provisions of the *International Fire Code.*

[F] 415.8.3 Water reactives.
Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies containing water-reactive materials shall be resistant to water penetration. Piping for conveying liquids shall not be over or through areas containing water reactives, unless isolated by *approved* liquid-tight construction.

> **Exception:** Fire protection piping shall be permitted over or through areas containing water reactives without isolating it with liquid-tight construction.

[F] 415.8.4 Floors in storage rooms.
Floors in storage areas for organic peroxides, oxidizers, pyrophoric materials, unstable (reactive) materials and water-reactive solids and liquids shall be of liquid-tight, noncombustible construction.

[F] 415.8.5 Waterproof room.
Rooms or areas used for the storage of water-reactive solids and liquids shall be constructed in a manner that resists the penetration of water through the use of waterproof materials. Piping carrying water for other than *approved automatic sprinkler systems* shall not be within such rooms or areas.

[F] 415.9 Group H-2.
Occupancies in Group H-2 shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 415.9.1 through 415.9.3 and the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 415.9.1 Flammable and combustible liquids.
The storage, handling, processing and transporting of flammable and combustible liquids in Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies shall be in accordance with Sections 415.9.1.1 through 415.9.1.9, the *International Mechanical Code* and the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 415.9.1.1 Mixed occupancies.
Where the storage tank area is located in a building of two or more occupancies and the quantity of liquid exceeds the maximum allowable quantity for one *control area*, the use shall be completely separated from adjacent occupancies in accordance with the requirements of Section 508.4.

[F] 415.9.1.1.1 Height exception.
Where storage tanks are located within a building no more than one story above grade plane, the height limitation of Section 504 shall not apply for Group H.

[F] 415.9.1.2 Tank protection.
Storage tanks shall be noncombustible and protected from physical damage. *Fire barriers* or *horizontal assemblies* or both around the storage tanks shall be permitted as the method of protection from physical damage.

[F] 415.9.1.3 Tanks.
Storage tanks shall be *approved* tanks conforming to the requirements of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 415.9.1.4 Leakage containment.
A liquid-tight containment area compatible with the stored liquid shall be provided. The method of spill control, drainage control and secondary containment shall be in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

> **Exception:** Rooms where only double-wall storage tanks conforming to Section 415.9.1.3 are used to store Class I, II and IIIA flammable and combustible liquids shall not be required to have a leakage containment area.

[F] 415.9.1.5 Leakage alarm.
An *approved* automatic alarm shall be provided to indicate a leak in a storage tank and room. The alarm shall sound an audible signal, 15 dBa above the ambient sound level, at every point of entry into the room in which the leaking storage tank is located. An *approved* sign shall be posted on every entry door to the tank storage room indicating the potential hazard of the interior room environment, or the sign shall state: WARNING, WHEN ALARM SOUNDS, THE ENVIRONMENT WITHIN THE ROOM MAY BE HAZARDOUS. The leakage alarm shall also be supervised in accordance with Chapter 9 to transmit a trouble signal.

[F] 415.9.1.6 Tank vent.
Storage tank vents for Class I, II or IIIA liquids shall terminate to the outdoor air in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 415.9.1.7 Room ventilation.
Storage tank areas storing Class I, II or IIIA liquids shall be provided with mechanical *ventilation*. The mechanical *ventilation* system shall be in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code* and the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 415.9.1.8 Explosion venting.
Where Class I liquids are being stored, explosion venting shall be provided in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 415.9.1.9 Tank openings other than vents.
Tank openings other than vents from tanks inside buildings shall be designed to ensure that liquids or vapor concentrations are not released inside the building.

[F] 415.9.2 Liquefied petroleum gas facilities.
The construction and installation of liquefied petroleum gas facilities shall be in accordance with the requirements of this code, the *International Fire Code,* the *International Mechanical Code*, the *International Fuel Gas Code* and NFPA 58.

[F] 415.9.3 Dry cleaning plants.
The construction and installation of dry cleaning plants shall be in accordance with the requirements of this code, the *International Mechanical Code*, the *International Plumbing Code* and NFPA 32. Dry cleaning solvents and systems shall be classified in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 415.10 Groups H-3 and H-4.
Groups H-3 and H-4 shall be constructed in accordance with the applicable provisions of this code and the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 415.10.1 Flammable and combustible liquids.
The storage, handling, processing and transporting of flammable and combustible liquids in Group H-3 occupancies shall be in accordance with Section 415.9.1.

[F] 415.10.2 Gas rooms.
Where gas rooms are provided, such rooms shall be separated from other areas by not less than 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

[F] 415.10.3 Floors in storage rooms.
Floors in storage areas for corrosive liquids and highly toxic or toxic materials shall be of liquid-tight, noncombustible construction.

[F] 415.10.4 Separation-highly toxic solids and liquids.
Highly toxic solids and liquids not stored in *approved* hazardous materials storage cabinets shall be isolated from other hazardous materials storage by not less than 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

[F] 415.11 Group H-5.
In addition to the requirements set forth elsewhere in this code, Group H-5 shall comply with the provisions of Sections 415.11.1 through 415.11.11 and the *International Fire Code.*

[F] 415.11.1 Fabrication areas.
Fabrication areas shall comply with Sections 415.11.1.1 through 415.11.1.8.

[F] 415.11.1.1 Hazardous materials.
Hazardous materials and hazardous production materials (HPM) shall comply with Sections 415.11.1.1.1 and 415.11.1.1.2.

[F] 415.11.1.1.1 Aggregate quantities.
The aggregate quantities of hazardous materials stored and used in a single *fabrication area* shall not exceed the quantities set forth in Table 415.11.1.1.1.

Exception: The quantity limitations for any hazard category in Table 415.11.1.1.1 shall not apply where the *fabrication area* contains quantities of hazardous materials not exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per *control area* established by Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2).

[F] TABLE 415.11.1.1.1
QUANTITY LIMITS FOR HAZARDOUS MATERIALS IN A SINGLE FABRICATION AREA IN GROUP H-5[a]

HAZARD CATEGORY	SOLIDS (pounds per square foot)	LIQUIDS (gallons per square foot)	GAS (cubic feet @ NTP/square foot)

PHYSICAL-HAZARD MATERIALS				
Combustible dust		Note b	Not Applicable	Not Applicable
Combustible fiber	Loose	Note b	Not Applicable	Not Applicable
	Baled	Notes b, c		
Combustible liquid	II	Not Applicable	0.01	Not Applicable
	IIIA		0.02	
	IIIB		Not Limited	
Combination Class	I, II and IIIA		0.04	
Cryogenic gas	Flammable	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	Note d
	Oxidizing			1.25
Explosives		Note b	Note b	Note b
Flammable gas	Gaseous	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	Note d
	Liquefied			Note d
Flammable liquid	IA	Not Applicable	0.0025	Not Applicable
	IB		0.025	
	IC		0.025	
Combination Class	IA, IB and IC		0.025	
Combination Class	I, II and IIIA		0.04	
Flammable solid		0.001	Not Applicable	Not Applicable
Organic peroxide	Unclassified detonable	Note b	Not Applicable	Not Applicable
	Class I	Note b		
	Class II	0.025		
	Class III	0.1		
	Class IV	Not Limited		
	Class V	Not Limited		
Oxidizing gas	Gaseous	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	1.25
	Liquefied			1.25
Combination of gaseous and liquefied				1.25
Oxidizer	Class 4	Note b	Note b	Not Applicable
	Class 3	0.003	0.03	
	Class 2	0.003	0.03	
	Class 1	0.003	0.03	
Combination Class	1,2,3	0.003	0.03	
Pyrophoric materials		0.01	0.00125	Notes d and e
Unstable (reactive)	Class 4	Note b	Note b	Note b
	Class 3	0.025	0.0025	Note b
	Class 2	0.1	0.1	Note b
	Class 1	Not Limited	Not Limited	Not Limited
Water reactive	Class 3	Note b	0.00125	Not Applicable
	Class 2	0.25	0.025	

Class 1	Not Limited	Not Limited	
HEALTH-HAZARD MATERIALS			
Corrosives	Not Limited	Not Limited	Not Limited
Highly toxic	Not Limited	Not Limited	Note d
Toxics	Not Limited	Not Limited	Note d

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 4.882 kg/m^2, 1 gallon per square foot = 40.7 L/m^2, 1 cubic foot @ NTP/square foot = 0.305 m^3 @ NTP/m^2, 1 cubic foot = 0.02832 m^3.

a. Hazardous materials within piping shall not be included in the calculated quantities.
b. Quantity of hazardous materials in a single fabrication shall not exceed the maximum allowable quantities per control area in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2).
c. Densely packed baled cotton that complies with the packing requirements of ISO 8115 shall not be included in this material class.
d. The aggregate quantity of flammable, pyrophoric, toxic and highly toxic gases shall not exceed 9,000 cubic feet at NTP.
e. The aggregate quantity of pyrophoric gases in the building shall not exceed the amounts set forth in Table 415.6.2.

[F] 415.11.1.1.2 Hazardous production materials.
The maximum quantities of hazardous production materials (HPM) stored in a single *fabrication area* shall not exceed the maximum allowable quantities per *control area* established by Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2).

[F] 415.11.1.2 Separation.
Fabrication areas, whose sizes are limited by the quantity of hazardous materials allowed by Table 415.11.1.1.1, shall be separated from each other, from *corridors* and from other parts of the building by not less than 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

Exceptions:

1. Doors within such *fire barrier* walls, including doors to *corridors*, shall be only *self-closing fire door assemblies* having a *fire protection* rating of not less than 3/4 hour.

2. Windows between *fabrication areas* and *corridors* are permitted to be fixed glazing *listed* and labeled for a *fire protection rating* of not less than 3/4 hour in accordance with Section 716.

[F] 415.11.1.3 Location of occupied levels.
Occupied levels of *fabrication areas* shall be located at or above the first *story above grade plane*.

[F] 415.11.1.4 Floors.
Except for surfacing, floors within *fabrication areas* shall be of noncombustible construction. Openings through floors of fabrication areas are permitted to be unprotected where the interconnected levels are used solely for mechanical equipment directly related to such *fabrication areas* (see also Section 415.11.1.5).

Floors forming a part of an occupancy separation shall be liquid tight.

[F] 415.11.1.5 Shafts and openings through floors.
Elevator hoistways, vent *shafts* and other openings through floors shall be enclosed where required by Sections 712 and 713. Mechanical, duct and piping penetrations within a *fabrication area* shall not extend through more than two floors. The *annular space* around penetrations for cables, cable trays, tubing, piping, conduit or ducts shall be sealed at the floor level to restrict the movement of air. The *fabrication area*, including the areas through which the ductwork and piping extend, shall be considered a single conditioned environment.

[F] 415.11.1.6 Ventilation.
Mechanical exhaust *ventilation* at the rate of not less than 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot [0.0051 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$] of floor area shall be provided throughout the portions of the *fabrication area* where HPM are used or stored. The exhaust air duct system of one *fabrication area* shall not connect to another duct system outside that *fabrication area* within the building.

A *ventilation* system shall be provided to capture and exhaust gases, fumes and vapors at workstations.

Two or more operations at a workstation shall not be connected to the same exhaust system where either one or the combination of the substances removed could constitute a fire, explosion or hazardous chemical reaction within the exhaust duct system.

Exhaust ducts penetrating *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711 shall be contained in a *shaft* of equivalent fire-resistance rated construction. Exhaust ducts shall not penetrate *fire walls*.

Fire dampers shall not be installed in exhaust ducts.

[F] 415.11.1.7 Transporting hazardous production materials to fabrication areas.
HPM shall be transported to *fabrication areas* through enclosed piping or tubing systems that comply with Section 415.11.6, through *service corridors* complying with Section 415.11.3, or in *corridors* as permitted in the exception to Section 415.11.2. The handling or transporting of HPM within *service corridors* shall comply with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 415.11.1.8 Electrical.
Electrical equipment and devices within the *fabrication area* shall comply with NFPA 70. The requirements for hazardous locations need not be applied where the average air change is at least four times that set forth in Section 415.11.1.6 and where the number of air changes at any location is not less than three times that required by Section 415.11.1.6. The use of recirculated air shall be permitted.

[F] 415.11.1.8.1 Workstations.
Workstations shall not be energized without adequate exhaust *ventilation*. See Section 415.11.1.6 for workstation exhaust *ventilation* requirements.

[F] 415.11.2 Corridors.
Corridors shall comply with Chapter 10 and shall be separated from *fabrication area*s as specified in Section 415.11.1.2. *Corridors* shall not contain HPM and shall not be used for transporting such materials except through closed piping systems as provided in Section 415.11.6.4

Exception: Where existing *fabrication areas* are altered or modified, HPM is allowed to be transported in existing *corridors,* subject to the following conditions:

1. Nonproduction HPM is allowed to be transported in *corridors* if utilized for maintenance, lab work and testing.

2. Where existing *fabrication areas* are altered or modified, HPM is allowed to be transported in existing *corridors*, subject to the following conditions:

   2.1. Corridors. *Corridors* adjacent to the *fabrication area* where the alteration work is to be done shall comply with Section 1020 for a length determined as follows:

      2.1.1. The length of the common wall of the *corridor* and the *fabrication area*; and

      2.1.2. For the distance along the *corridor* to the point of entry of HPM into the *corridor* serving that *fabrication area*.

   2.2. *Emergency alarm system.* There shall be an emergency telephone system, a local manual alarm station or other *approved* alarm-initiating device within *corridors* at not more than 150-foot (45 720 mm) intervals and at each *exit* and doorway. The signal shall be relayed to an *approved* central, proprietary or remote station service or the emergency control station and shall also initiate a local audible alarm.

   2.3. Pass-throughs. *Self-closing* doors having a *fire protection rating* of not less than 1 hour shall separate pass-throughs from existing *corridors.* Pass-throughs shall be constructed as required for the *corridors* and protected by an *approved automatic sprinkler system.*

[F] 415.11.3 Service corridors.
Service corridors within a Group H-5 occupancy shall comply with Sections 415.11.3.1 through 415.11.3.4.

[F] 415.11.3.1 Use conditions.
Service corridors shall be separated from *corridors* as required by Section 415.11.1.2. *Service corridors* shall not be used as a required *corridor*.

[F] 415.11.3.2 Mechanical ventilation.
Service corridors shall be mechanically ventilated as required by Section 415.11.1.6 or at not less than six air changes per hour.

[F] 415.11.3.3 Means of egress.
The distance of travel from any point in a *service corridor* to an *exit*, *exit access corridor* or door into a *fabrication area* shall be not greater than 75 feet (22 860 mm). Dead ends shall be not greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) in length. There shall be not less than two *exits*, and not more than one-half of the required *means of egress* shall require travel into a *fabrication area*. Doors from *service corridors* shall swing in the direction of egress travel and shall be *self-closing*.

[F] 415.11.3.4 Minimum width.
The clear width of a *service corridor* shall be not less than 5 feet (1524 mm), or 33 inches (838 mm) wider than the widest cart or truck used in the *service corridor*, whichever is greater.

[F] 415.11.3.5 Emergency alarm system.
Emergency alarm systems shall be provided in accordance with this section and Sections 415.5.1 and 415.5.2. The maximum allowable quantity per *control area* provisions shall not apply to *emergency alarm systems* required for HPM.

[F] 415.11.3.5.1 Service corridors.
An *emergency alarm system* shall be provided in *service corridors,* with no fewer than one alarm device in each *service corridor*.

[F] 415.11.3.5.2 Corridors and interior exit stairways and ramps.
Emergency alarms for *corridors, interior exit stairways* and *ramps* and *exit passageways* shall comply with Section 415.5.2.

[F] 415.11.3.5.3 Liquid storage rooms, HPM rooms and gas rooms.
Emergency alarms for liquid storage rooms, HPM rooms and gas rooms shall comply with Section 415.5.1.

[F] 415.11.3.5.4 Alarm-initiating devices.
An *approved* emergency telephone system, local alarm manual pull stations, or other *approved* alarm-initiating devices are allowed to be used as emergency alarm-initiating devices.

[F] 415.11.3.5.5 Alarm signals.
Activation of the *emergency alarm system* shall sound a local alarm and transmit a signal to the emergency control station.

[F] 415.11.4 Storage of hazardous production materials.
Storage of hazardous production materials (HPM) in *fabrication areas* shall be within *approved* or *listed* storage cabinets or gas cabinets or within a workstation. The storage of HPM in quantities greater than those listed in Section 5004.2 of the *International Fire Code* shall be in liquid storage rooms, HPM rooms or gas rooms as appropriate for the materials stored. The storage of other hazardous materials shall be in accordance with other applicable provisions of this code and the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 415.11.5 HPM rooms, gas rooms, liquid storage room construction.
HPM rooms, gas rooms and liquid shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 415.11.5.1 through 415.11.5.9.

[F] 415.11.5.1 HPM rooms and gas rooms.
HPM rooms and gas rooms shall be separated from other areas by *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The *fire-resistance rating* shall be not less than 2 hours where the area is 300 square feet (27.9 m^2) or more and not less than 1 hour where the area is less than 300 square feet (27.9 m^2).

[F] 415.11.5.2 Liquid storage rooms.
Liquid storage rooms shall be constructed in accordance with the following requirements:

1. Rooms greater than 500 square feet (46.5 m^2) in area, shall have no fewer than one exterior door *approved* for fire department access.

2. Rooms shall be separated from other areas by *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The *fireresistance rating* shall be not less than 1 hour for rooms up to 150 square feet (13.9 m^2) in area and not less than 2 hours where the room is more than 150 square feet (13.9 m^2) in area.

3. Shelving, racks and wainscotting in such areas shall be of noncombustible construction or wood of not less than 1-inch (25 mm) nominal thickness or fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2.

4. Rooms used for the storage of Class I flammable liquids shall not be located in a *basement*.

[F] 415.11.5.3 Floors.
Except for surfacing, floors of HPM rooms and liquid storage rooms shall be of noncombustible liquid-tight construction. Raised grating over floors shall be of noncombustible materials.

[F] 415.11.5.4 Location.
Where HPM rooms, liquid storage rooms and gas rooms are provided, they shall have no fewer than one *exterior wall* and such wall shall be not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) from *lot lines*, including *lot lines* adjacent to *public ways*.

[F] 415.11.5.5 Explosion control.
Explosion control shall be provided where required by Section 414.5.1.

[F] 415.11.5.6 Exits.
Where two *exits* are required from HPM rooms, liquid storage rooms and gas rooms, one shall be directly to the outside of the building.

[F] 415.11.5.7 Doors.
Doors in a *fire barrier* wall, including doors to *corridors*, shall be *self-closing fire door assemblies* having a *fire protection rating* of not less than 3/4 hour.

[F] 415.11.5.8 Ventilation.
Mechanical exhaust ventilation shall be provided in liquid storage rooms, HPM rooms and gas rooms at the rate of not less than 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot (0.044 L/s/m^2) of floor area or six air changes per hour.

Exhaust ventilation for gas rooms shall be designed to operate at a negative pressure in relation to the surrounding areas and direct the exhaust ventilation to an exhaust system.

[F] 415.11.5.9 Emergency alarm system.
An *approved emergency alarm system* shall be provided for HPM rooms, liquid storage rooms and gas rooms. Emergency alarm-initiating devices shall be installed outside of each interior *exit* door of such rooms.

Activation of an emergency alarm-initiating device shall sound a local alarm and transmit a signal to the emergency control station.

An *approved* emergency telephone system, local alarm manual pull stations or other *approved* alarm-initiating devices are allowed to be used as emergency alarm-initiating devices.

[F] 415.11.6 Piping and tubing.
Hazardous production materials piping and tubing shall comply with this section and ASME B31.3.

[F] 415.11.6.1 HPM having a health-hazard ranking of 3 or 4.
Systems supplying HPM liquids or gases having a health-hazard ranking of 3 or 4 shall be welded throughout, except for connections, to the systems that are within a ventilated enclosure if the material is a gas, or an *approved* method of drainage or containment is provided for the connections if the material is a liquid.

[F] 415.11.6.2 Location in service corridors.
Hazardous production materials supply piping or tubing in *service corridors* shall be exposed to view.

[F] 415.11.6.3 Excess flow control.
Where HPM gases or liquids are carried in pressurized piping above 15 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (103.4 kPa), excess flow control shall be provided. Where the piping originates from within a liquid storage room, HPM room or gas room, the excess flow control shall be located within the liquid storage room, HPM room or gas room. Where the piping originates from a bulk source, the excess flow control shall be located as close to the bulk source as practical.

[F] 415.11.6.4 Installations in corridors and above other occupancies.
The installation of HPM piping and tubing within the space defined by the walls of *corridors* and the floor or roof above, or in concealed spaces above other occupancies, shall be in accordance with Sections 415.11.6.1 through 415.11.6.3 and the following conditions:

1. Automatic sprinklers shall be installed within the space unless the space is less than 6 inches (152 mm) in the least dimension.

2. *Ventilation* not less than six air changes per hour shall be provided. The space shall not be used to convey air from any other area.

3. Where the piping or tubing is used to transport HPM liquids, a receptor shall be installed below such piping or tubing. The receptor shall be designed to collect any discharge or leakage and drain it to an *approved* location. The 1-hour enclosure shall not be used as part of the receptor.

4. HPM supply piping and tubing and non-metallic waste lines shall be separated from the corridor and from occupancies other than Group H-5 by fire barriers or by an approved method or assembly that has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Access openings into the enclosure shall be protected by approved fire-protection rated assemblies.

5. Readily accessible manual or automatic remotely activated fail-safe emergency shutoff valves shall be installed on piping and tubing other than waste lines at the following locations:

   5.1. At branch connections into the *fabrication area*.

   5.2. At entries into *corridors*.

Exception: Transverse crossings of the *corridors* by supply piping that is enclosed within a ferrous pipe or tube for the width of the *corridor* need not comply with Items 1 through 5.

[F] 415.11.6.5 Identification.
Piping, tubing and HPM waste lines shall be identified in accordance with ANSI A13.1 to indicate the material being transported.

[F] 415.11.7 Continuous gas detection systems.
A *continuous gas detection system* shall be provided for HPM gases where the physiological warning threshold level of the gas is at a higher level than the accepted permissible exposure limit (PEL) for the gas and for flammable gases in accordance with Sections 415.11.7.1 and 415.11.7.2.

[F] 415.11.7.1 Where required.
A *continuous gas detection system* shall be provided in the areas identified in Sections 415.11.7.1.1 through 415.11.7.1.4.

[F] 415.11.7.1.1 Fabrication areas.
A *continuous gas detection system* shall be provided in *fabrication areas* where gas is used in the *fabrication area*.

[F] 415.11.7.1.2 HPM rooms.
A *continuous gas detection system* shall be provided in HPM rooms where gas is used in the room.

[F] 415.11.7.1.3 Gas cabinets, exhausted enclosures and gas rooms.
A *continuous gas detection system* shall be provided in gas cabinets and exhausted enclosures. A *continuous gas detection system* shall be provided in gas rooms where gases are not located in gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures.

[F] 415.11.7.1.4 Corridors.
Where gases are transported in piping placed within the space defined by the walls of a *corridor* and the floor or roof above the *corridor*, a *continuous gas detection system* shall be provided where piping is located and in the *corridor*.

> **Exception:** A *continuous gas detection system* is not required for occasional transverse crossings of the *corridors* by supply piping that is enclosed in a ferrous pipe or tube for the width of the *corridor*.

[F] 415.11.7.2 Gas detection system operation.
The *continuous gas detection system* shall be capable of monitoring the room, area or equipment in which the gas is located at or below all the following gas concentrations:

1. Immediately dangerous to life and health (IDLH) values where the monitoring point is within an exhausted enclosure, ventilated enclosure or gas cabinet.

2. Permissible exposure limit (PEL) levels where the monitoring point is in an area outside an exhausted enclosure, ventilated enclosure or gas cabinet.

3. For flammable gases, the monitoring detection threshold level shall be vapor concentrations in excess of 25 percent of the lower flammable limit (LFL) where the monitoring is within or outside an exhausted enclosure, ventilated enclosure or gas cabinet.

4. Except as noted in this section, monitoring for highly toxic and toxic gases shall also comply with Chapter 60 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 415.11.7.2.1 Alarms.
The gas detection system shall initiate a local alarm and transmit a signal to the emergency control station when a short-term hazard condition is detected. The alarm shall be both visual and audible and shall provide warning both inside and outside the area where the gas is detected. The audible alarm shall be distinct from all other alarms.

[F] 415.11.7.2.2 Shutoff of gas supply.
The gas detection system shall automatically close the shutoff valve at the source on gas supply piping and tubing related to the system being monitored for which gas is detected when a short-term hazard condition is detected. Automatic closure of shutoff valves shall comply with the following:

1. Where the gas detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a gas cabinet or exhausted enclosure, the shutoff valve in the gas cabinet or exhausted enclosure for the specific gas detected shall automatically close.

2. Where the gas detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a room and compressed gas containers are not in gas cabinets or an exhausted enclosure, the shutoff valves on all gas lines for the specific gas detected shall automatically close.

3. Where the gas detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a piping distribution manifold enclosure, the shutoff valve supplying the manifold for the compressed gas container of the specific gas detected shall automatically close.

Exception: Where the gas detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is at the use location or within a gas valve enclosure of a branch line downstream of a piping distribution manifold, the shutoff valve for the branch line located in the piping distribution manifold enclosure shall automatically close.

[F] 415.11.8 Manual fire alarm system.
An *approved* manual *fire alarm* system shall be provided throughout buildings containing Group H-5. Activation of the alarm system shall initiate a local alarm and transmit a signal to the emergency control station. The *fire alarm* system shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 907.

[F] 415.11.9 Emergency control station.
An emergency control station shall be provided in accordance with Sections 415.11.9.1 through 415.11.9.3.

[F] 415.11.9.1 Location.
The emergency control station shall be located on the premises at an *approved* location outside the *fabrication area*.

[F] 415.11.9.2 Staffing.
Trained personnel shall continuously staff the emergency control station.

[F] 415.11.9.3 Signals.
The emergency control station shall receive signals from emergency equipment and alarm and detection systems. Such emergency equipment and alarm and detection systems shall include, but not be limited to, the following where such equipment or systems are required to be provided either in this chapter or elsewhere in this code:

1. *Automatic sprinkler system* alarm and monitoring systems.

2. Manual *fire alarm* systems.

3. *Emergency alarm systems.*

4. *Continuous gas detection systems.*

5. Smoke detection systems.

6. Emergency power system.

7. Automatic detection and alarm systems for pyrophoric liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids required in Section 2705.2.3.4 of the *International Fire Code*.

8. Exhaust *ventilation* flow alarm devices for pyrophoric liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids cabinet exhaust *ventilation* systems required in Section 2705.2.3.4 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 415.11.10 Emergency power system.
An emergency power system shall be provided in Group H-5 occupancies in accordance with Section 2702. The emergency power system shall supply power automatically to the electrical systems specified in Section 415.11.10.1 when the normal electrical supply system is interrupted.

[F] 415.11.10.1 Required electrical systems.
Emergency power shall be provided for electrically operated equipment and connected control circuits for the following systems:

1. HPM exhaust *ventilation* systems.

2. HPM gas cabinet *ventilation* systems.

3. HPM exhausted enclosure *ventilation* systems.

4. HPM gas room *ventilation* systems.

5. HPM gas detection systems.

6. *Emergency alarm systems.*

7. Manual and automatic *fire alarm* systems.

8. *Automatic sprinkler system* monitoring and alarm systems.

9. Automatic alarm and detection systems for pyrophoric liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids required in Section 2705.2.3.4 of the *International Fire Code*.

10. Flow alarm switches for pyrophoric liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids cabinet exhaust *ventilation* systems required in Section 2705.2.3.4 of the *International Fire Code*.

11. Electrically operated systems required elsewhere in this code or in the *International Fire Code* applicable to the use, storage or handling of HPM.

[F] 415.11.10.2 Exhaust ventilation systems.
Exhaust *ventilation* systems are allowed to be designed to operate at not less than one-half the normal fan speed on the emergency power system where it is demonstrated that the level of exhaust will maintain a safe atmosphere.

[F] 415.11.11 Automatic sprinkler system protection in exhaust ducts for HPM.
An *approved automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided in exhaust ducts conveying gases, vapors, fumes, mists or dusts generated from HPM in accordance with Sections 415.11.11.1 through 415.10.11.3 and the *International Mechanical Code*.

[F] 415.11.11.1 Metallic and noncombustible non-metallic exhaust ducts.
An *approved automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided in metallic and noncombustible non-metallic exhaust ducts where all of the following conditions apply:

1. Where the largest cross-sectional diameter is equal to or greater than 10 inches (254 mm).

2. The ducts are within the building.

3. The ducts are conveying flammable gases, vapors or fumes.

[F] 415.11.11.2 Combustible non-metallic exhaust ducts.
Automatic sprinkler system protection shall be provided in combustible non-metallic exhaust ducts where the largest cross-sectional diameter of the duct is equal to or greater than 10 inches (254 mm).

Exception: Ducts need not be provided with automatic sprinkler protection as follows:

1. Ducts *listed* or *approved* for applications without *automatic sprinkler system* protection.

2. Ducts not more than 12 feet (3658 mm) in length installed below ceiling level.

[F] 415.11.11.3 Automatic sprinkler locations.
Sprinkler systems shall be installed at 12-foot (3658 mm) intervals in horizontal ducts and at changes in direction. In vertical ducts, sprinklers shall be installed at the top and at alternate floor levels.

SECTION 416
APPLICATION OF FLAMMABLE FINISHES

[F] 416.1 General.
The provisions of this section shall apply to the construction, installation and use of buildings and structures, or parts thereof, for the application of flammable finishes. Such construction and equipment shall comply with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 416.2 Spray rooms.
Spray rooms shall be enclosed with not less than 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Floors shall be waterproofed and drained in an *approved* manner.

[F] 416.2.1 Surfaces.
The interior surfaces of spray rooms shall be smooth and shall be so constructed to permit the free passage of exhaust air from all parts of the interior and to facilitate washing and

cleaning, and shall be so designed to confine residues within the room. Aluminium shall not be used.

[F] 416.2.2 Ventilation.
Mechanical *ventilation* and interlocks with the spraying operation shall be in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

[F] 416.3 Spraying spaces.
Spraying spaces shall be ventilated with an exhaust system to prevent the accumulation of flammable mist or vapors in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*. Where such spaces are not separately enclosed, noncombustible spray curtains shall be provided to restrict the spread of flammable vapors.

[F] 416.3.1 Surfaces.
The interior surfaces of spraying spaces shall be smooth and continuous without edges; shall be so constructed to permit the free passage of exhaust air from all parts of the interior and to facilitate washing and cleaning; and shall be so designed to confine residues within the spraying space. Aluminum shall not be used.

[F] 416.4 Spray booths.
Spray booths shall be designed, constructed and operated in accordance with the *International Fire Code*

[F] 416.5 Fire protection.
An *automatic sprinkler system* or *fire-extinguishing system* shall be provided in all spray, dip and immersing spaces and storage rooms and shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 9.

SECTION 417
DRYING ROOMS

[F] 417.1 General.
A drying room or dry kiln installed within a building shall be constructed entirely of *approved* noncombustible materials or assemblies of such materials regulated by the *approved* rules or as required in the general and specific sections of this chapter for special occupancies and where applicable to the general requirements of the *International Mechanical Code*.

[F] 417.2 Piping clearance.
Overhead heating pipes shall have a clearance of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from combustible contents in the dryer.

[F] 417.3 Insulation.
Where the operating temperature of the dryer is 175°F (79°C) or more, metal enclosures shall be insulated from adjacent combustible materials by not less than 12 inches (305 mm) of airspace, or the metal walls shall be lined with $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6.4 mm) insulating mill board or other *approved* equivalent insulation.

[F] 417.4 Fire protection.
Drying rooms designed for high hazard materials and processes, including special occupancies

as provided for in Chapter 4, shall be protected by an *approved automatic fire-extinguishing system* complying with the provisions of Chapter 9.

SECTION 418
ORGANIC COATINGS

[F] 418.1 Building features.
Manufacturing of organic coatings shall be done only in buildings that do not have pits or *basements.*

[F] 418.2 Location.
Organic coating manufacturing operations and operations incidental to or connected therewith shall not be located in buildings having other occupancies.

[F] 418.3 Process mills.
Mills operating with close clearances and that process flammable and heat-sensitive materials, such as nitrocellulose, shall be located in a *detached building* or noncombustible structure.

[F] 418.4 Tank storage.
Storage areas for flammable and combustible liquid tanks inside of structures shall be located at or above grade and shall be separated from the processing area by not less than 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

[F] 418.5 Nitrocellulose storage.
Nitrocellulose storage shall be located on a detached pad or in a separate structure or a room enclosed with not less than 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

[F] 418.6 Finished products.
Storage rooms for finished products that are flammable or combustible liquids shall be separated from the processing area by not less than 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

SECTION 419
LIVE/WORK UNITS

419.1 General.
A *live/work unit* shall comply with Sections 419.1 through 419.9.

> **Exception:** Dwelling or sleeping units that include an office that is less than 10 percent of the area of the *dwelling unit* are permitted to be classified as *dwelling units* with accessory occupancies in accordance with Section 508.2.

419.1.1 Limitations.
The following shall apply to all live/ work areas:

1. The *live/work unit* is permitted to be not greater than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2) in area;

2. The nonresidential area is permitted to be not more than 50 percent of the area of each *live/work unit*;

3. The nonresidential area function shall be limited to the first or main floor only of the *live/work unit*; and

4. Not more than five nonresidential workers or employees are allowed to occupy the nonresidential area at any one time.

419.2 Occupancies.
Live/work units shall be classified as a Group R-2 occupancy. Separation requirements found in Sections 420 and 508 shall not apply within the *live/work unit* where the *live/work unit* is in compliance with Section 419. Nonresidential uses that would otherwise be classified as either a Group H or S occupancy shall not be permitted in a *live/work unit*.

Exception: Storage shall be permitted in the *live/work unit* provided the aggregate area of storage in the nonresidential portion of the *live/work unit* shall be limited to 10 percent of the space dedicated to nonresidential activities.

419.3 Means of egress.
Except as modified by this section, the *means of egress* components for a *live/work unit* shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 10 for the function served.

419.3.1 Egress capacity.
The egress capacity for each element of the *live/work unit* shall be based on the occupant load for the function served in accordance with Table 1004.1.2.

419.3.2 Spiral stairways.
Spiral stairways that conform to the requirements of Section 1011.10 shall be permitted.

419.4 Vertical openings.
Floor openings between floor levels of a *live/work unit* are permitted without enclosure.

[F] 419.5 Fire protection.
The *live/work unit* shall be provided with a monitored *fire alarm* system where required by Section 907.2.9 and an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.2.8.

419.6 Structural.
Floors within a *live/work unit* shall be designed for the live loads in Table 1607.1, based on the function within the space.

419.7 Accessibility.
Accessibility shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 11 for the function served.

419.8 Ventilation.
The applicable *ventilation* requirements of the *International Mechanical Code* shall apply to each area within the *live/work unit* for the function within that space.

419.9 Plumbing facilities.
The nonresidential area of the *live/work unit* shall be provided with minimum plumbing facilities as specified by Chapter 29, based on the function of the nonresidential area. Where the nonresidential area of the *live/work unit* is required to be *accessible* by Section 1107.6.2.1, the plumbing fixtures specified by Chapter 29 shall be *accessible*.

SECTION 420
GROUPS I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3 AND R-4

420.1 General.
Occupancies in Groups I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4 shall comply with the provisions of Sections 420.1 through 420.6 and other applicable provisions of this code.

420.2 Separation walls.
Walls separating *dwelling units* in the same building, walls separating *sleeping units* in the same building and walls separating *dwelling* or *sleeping units* from other occupancies contiguous to them in the same building shall be constructed as *fire partitions* in accordance with Section 708.

420.3 Horizontal separation.
Floor assemblies separating *dwelling units* in the same buildings, floor assemblies separating *sleeping units* in the same building and floor assemblies separating *dwelling* or *sleeping units* from other occupancies contiguous to them in the same building shall be constructed as *horizontal assemblies* in accordance with Section 711.

420.4 Smoke barriers in Group I-1, Condition 2.
Smoke barriers shall be provided in Group I-1, Condition 2, to subdivide every story used by persons receiving care, treatment or sleeping and to provide other stories with an occupant load of 50 or more persons, into no fewer than two smoke compartments. Such stories shall be divided into smoke compartments with an area of not more than 22,500 square feet (2092 m^2) and the distance of travel from any point in a smoke compartment to a smoke barrier door shall not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm). The smoke barrier shall be in accordance with Section 709.

420.4.1 Refuge area.
Refuge areas shall be provided within each smoke compartment. The size of the refuge area shall accommodate the occupants and care recipients from the adjoining smoke compartment. Where a smoke compartment is adjoined by two or more smoke compartments, the minimum area of the refuge area shall accommodate the largest occupant load of the adjoining compartments. The size of the refuge area shall provide the following:

1. Not less than 15 net square feet (1.4 m^2) for each care recipient.

2. Not less than 6 net square feet (0.56 m^2) for other occupants.

Areas or spaces permitted to be included in the calculation of the refuge area are corridors, lounge or dining areas and other low-hazard areas.

[F] 420.5 Automatic sprinkler system.
Group R occupancies shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in

accordance with Section 903.2.8. Group I-1 occupancies shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.2.6. Quick response or residential automatic sprinklers shall be installed in accordance with Section 903.3.2.

[F] 420.6 Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms.
Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be provided in Group I-1, R- 1, R-2 and R-4 occupancies in accordance with Sections 907.2.6, 907.2.8, 907.2.9 and 907.2.10, respectively. Single-or multiple- station smoke alarms shall be provided in Groups I-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4 in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

420.7 Adult family homes. This section shall apply to all newly constructed adult family homes and all existing single family homes being converted to adult family homes. This section shall not apply to those adult family homes licensed by the state of Washington department of social and health services prior to July 1, 2001.

420.7.1 Reserved.

420.7.2 Sleeping room classification. Each sleeping room in an adult family home shall be classified as one of the following:

1. Type S - Where the means of egress contains stairs, elevators or platform lifts.

2. Type NS1 - Where one means of egress is at grade level or a ramp constructed in accordance with Section 420.7.8 is provided.

3. Type NS2 - Where two means of egress are at grade level or ramps constructed in accordance with Section 420.7.8 are provided.

420.7.3 Types of locking devices and door activation. All bedrooms and bathroom doors shall be openable from the outside when locked.

Every closet door shall be readily openable from the inside.

Operable parts of door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other devices installed in adult family homes shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist.

Pocket doors shall have graspable hardware available when in the closed or open position.

The force required to activate operable parts shall be 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum. Required exit door(s) shall have no additional locking devices. Required exit door hardware shall unlock inside and outside mechanisms when exiting the building allowing re-entry into the adult family home without the use of a key, tool or special knowledge.

420.7.4 Smoke and carbon monoxide alarm requirements. Alarms shall be installed in such a manner so that the detection device warning is audible from all areas of the dwelling upon activation of a single alarm.

420.7.5 Escape windows and doors. Every sleeping room shall be provided with emergency escape and rescue windows as required by Section 1030. No alternatives to the sill height such as steps, raised platforms or other devices placed by the openings will be approved as meeting this requirement.

420.7.6 Reserved.

420.7.7 Grab bar general requirements. Where facilities are designated for use by adult family home clients, grab bars for water closets, bathtubs and shower stalls shall be installed according to ICC A117.1.

420.7.8 Shower stalls. Where provided to meet the requirements for bathing facilities, the minimum size of shower stalls for an adult family home shall be 30 inches deep by 48 inches long.

420.8 Licensed care cooking facilities. In Group I-1, Condition 2 assisted living facilities licensed under chapter 388-78A WAC and residential treatment facilities licensed under chapter 246-337 WAC, rooms or spaces that contain a cooking facility with domestic cooking appliances shall be permitted to be open to the corridor where all of the following criteria are met:

1. The number of care recipients housed in the smoke compartment is not greater than 30.
2. The number of care recipients served by the cooking facility is not greater than 30.
3. Only one cooking facility area is permitted in a smoke compartment.
4. The types of domestic cooking appliances permitted are limited to ovens, cooktops, ranges, warmers and microwaves.
5. The corridor is a clearly identified space delineated by construction or floor pattern, material or color.
6. The space containing the domestic cooking facility shall be arranged so as not to obstruct access to the required exit.
7. A domestic cooking hood installed and constructed in accordance with Section 505 of the International Mechanical Code is provided over the cooktop or range.
8. The domestic cooking hood provided over the cooktop or range shall be equipped with an automatic fire extinguishing system of a type recognized for protection of domestic cooking equipment. Pre-engineered automatic extinguishing systems shall be tested in accordance with UL 300A and listed and labeled for the intended application. The system shall be installed in accordance with this code, its listing and the manufacturer's instructions.
9. A manual actuation device for the hood suppression system shall be installed in accordance with Sections 904.12.1 and 904.12.2.
10. An interlock device shall be provided such that upon activation of the hood suppression system, the power or fuel supply to the cooktop or range will be turned off.
11. A shut-off for the fuel and electrical power supply to the cooking equipment shall be provided in a location that is accessible only to staff.
12. A timer shall be provided that automatically deactivates the cooking appliances within a period of not more than 120 minutes.
13. A portable fire extinguisher shall be installed in accordance with Section 906 of the International Fire Code.

422.3.1 Means of egress. Where ambulatory care facilities require smoke compartmentation in accordance with Section 422.3, the fire safety evacuation plans provided in accordance with Section 1001.4 shall identify the building components necessary to support a staged evacuation emergency response in accordance with Sections 403 and 404 of the International Fire Code.

SECTION 421
HYDROGEN FUEL GAS ROOMS

[F] 421.1 General.
Where required by the *International Fire Code*, hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 421.1 through 421.7.

[F] 421.2 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEM.

HYDROGEN FUEL GAS ROOM.

[F] 421.3 Location.
Hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall not be located below grade.

[F] 421.4 Design and construction.
Hydrogen fuel gas rooms not classified as Group H shall be separated from other areas of the building in accordance with Section 509.1.

[F] 421.4.1 Pressure control.
Hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall be provided with a ventilation system designed to maintain the room at a negative pressure in relation to surrounding rooms and spaces.

[F] 421.4.2 Windows.
Operable windows in interior walls shall not be permitted. Fixed windows shall be permitted where in accordance with Section 716.

[F] 421.5 Exhaust ventilation.
Hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall be provided with mechanical exhaust ventilation in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 502.16.1 of the *International Mechanical Code*.

[F] 421.6 Gas detection system.
Hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall be provided with an approved flammable gas detection system in accordance with Sections 421.6.1 through 421.6.4.

[F] 421.6.1 System design.
The flammable gas detection system shall be listed for use with hydrogen and any other flammable gases used in the hydrogen fuel gas room. The gas detection system shall be designed to activate when the level of flammable gas exceeds 25 percent of the lower flammability limit (LFL) for the gas or mixtures present at their anticipated temperature and pressure.

[F] 421.6.2 Gas detection system components.
Gas detection system control units shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 864 or UL 2017. Gas detectors shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 2075 for use with the gases and vapors being detected.

[F] 421.6.3 Operation.
Activation of the gas detection system shall result in all of the following:

1. Initiation of distinct audible and visual alarm signals both inside and outside of the hydrogen fuel gas room.

2. Activation of the mechanical exhaust ventilation system.

[F] 421.6.4 Failure of the gas detection system.
Failure of the gas detection system shall result in activation of the mechanical exhaust ventilation system, cessation of hydrogen generation and the sounding of a trouble signal in an approved location.

[F] 421.7 Explosion control.
Explosion control shall be provided where required by Section 414.5.1.

[F] 421.8 Standby power.
Mechanical *ventilation* and gas detection systems shall be provided with a standby power system in accordance with Section 2702.

SECTION 422
AMBULATORY CARE FACIILITIES

422.1 General.
Occupancies classified as *ambulatory care facilities* shall comply with the provisions of Sections 422.1 through 422.5 and other applicable provisions of this code.

422.2 Separation.
Ambulatory care facilities where the potential for four or more care recipients are to be *incapable of self-preservation* at any time, whether rendered incapable by staff or staff accepted responsibility for a care recipient already incapable, shall be separated from adjacent spaces, *corridors* or tenants with a *fire partition* installed in accordance with Section 708.

422.3 Smoke compartments.
Where the aggregate area of one or more *ambulatory care facilities* is greater than 10,000 square feet (929 m^2) on one *story*, the *story* shall be provided with a *smoke barrier* to subdivide the *story* into no fewer than two *smoke compartments*. The area of any one such *smoke compartment* shall be not greater than 22,500 square feet (2092 m^2). The distance of travel from any point in a *smoke compartment* to a *smoke barrier* door shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm). The *smoke barrier* shall be installed in accordance with Section 709 with the exception that *smoke barriers* shall be continuous from outside wall to an outside wall, a floor to a floor, or from a *smoke barrier* to a *smoke barrier* or a combination thereof.

422.3.1 Means of egress.
Where ambulatory care facilities require smoke compartmentation in accordance with Section 422.3, the fire safety evacuation plans provided in accordance with Section 1001.4 shall identify the building components necessary to support a *defend-in-place* emergency response in accordance with Sections 404 and 408 of the *International Fire Code*.

422.3.2 Refuge area.

Not less than 30 net square feet (2.8 m^2) for each nonambulatory care recipient shall be provided within the aggregate area of *corridors,* care recipient rooms, treatment rooms, lounge or dining areas and other low-hazard areas within each *smoke compartment.* Each occupant of an *ambulatory care facility* shall be provided with access to a refuge area without passing through or utilizing adjacent tenant spaces.

422.3.3 Independent egress.

A *means of egress* shall be provided from each *smoke compartment* created by smoke barriers without having to return through the *smoke compartment* from which *means of egress* originated.

[F] 422.4 Automatic sprinkler systems.

Automatic sprinkler systems shall be provided for *ambulatory care facilities* in accordance with Section 903.2.2.

[F] 422.5 Fire alarm systems.

A *fire alarm* system shall be provided for *ambulatory care facilities* in accordance with Section 907.2.2.

SECTION 423
STORM SHELTERS

423.1 General.

In addition to other applicable requirements in this code, storm shelters shall be constructed in accordance with ICC 500.

423.1.1 Scope.

This section applies to the construction of storm shelters constructed as separate detached buildings or constructed as safe rooms within buildings for the purpose of providing safe refuge from storms that produce high winds, such as tornados and hurricanes. Such structures shall be designated to be hurricane shelters, tornado shelters, or combined hurricane and tornado shelters.

423.2 Definitions.

The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

STORM SHELTER.

Community storm shelter.

Residential storm shelter.

423.3 Critical emergency operations.

In areas where the shelter design wind speed for tornados in accordance with Figure 304.2(1) of ICC 500 is 250 MPH, 911 call stations, emergency operation centers and fire, rescue, ambulance and police stations shall have a storm shelter constructed in accordance with ICC 500.

Exception: Buildings meeting the requirements for shelter design in ICC 500.

423.4 Group E occupancies.
In areas where the shelter design wind speed for tornados is 250 MPH in accordance with Figure 304.2(1) of ICC 500, all Group E occupancies with an aggregate occupant load of 50 or more shall have a storm shelter constructed in accordance with ICC 500. The shelter shall be capable of housing the total occupant load of the Group E occupancy.

Exceptions:

1. Group E day care facilities.

2. Group E occupancies accessory to places of religious worship.

3. Buildings meeting the requirements for shelter design in ICC 500.

SECTION 424
CHILDREN'S PLAY STRUCTURES

424.1 Children's play structures.
Children's play structures installed inside all occupancies covered by this code that exceed 10 feet (3048 mm) in height and 150 square feet (14 m^2) in area shall comply with Sections 424.2 through 424.5.

424.2 Materials.
Children's play structures shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or of combustible materials that comply with the following:

1. *Fire-retardant-treated* wood complying with Section 2303.2.

2. Light-transmitting plastics complying with Section 2606.

3. Foam plastics (including the pipe foam used in soft contained play equipment structures) having a maximum heat-release rate not greater than 100 kilowatts when tested in accordance with UL 1975 or when tested in accordance with NFPA 289, using the 20 kW ignition source.

4. Aluminum composite material (ACM) meeting the requirements of Class A *interior finish* in accordance with Chapter 8 when tested as an assembly in the maximum thickness intended for use.

5. Textiles and films complying with the fire propagation performance criteria contained in Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701.

6. Plastic materials used to construct rigid components of soft-contained play equipment structures (such as tubes, windows, panels, junction boxes, pipes, slides and decks) exhibiting a peak rate of heat release not exceeding 400 kW/ m^2 when tested in

accordance with ASTM E1354 at an incident heat flux of 50 kW/m^2 in the horizontal orientation at a thickness of 6 mm.

7. Ball pool balls, used in soft-contained play equipment structures, having a maximum heat-release rate not greater than 100 kilowatts when tested in accordance with UL 1975 or when tested in accordance with NFPA 289, using the 20 kW ignition source. The minimum specimen test size shall be 36 inches by 36 inches (914 mm by 914 mm) by an average of 21 inches (533 mm) deep, and the balls shall be held in a box constructed of galvanized steel poultry netting wire mesh.

8. Foam plastics shall be covered by a fabric, coating or film meeting the fire propagation performance criteria contained in Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701.

9. The floor covering placed under the children's play structure shall exhibit a Class I interior floor finish classification, as described in Section 804, when tested in accordance with NFPA 253.

[F] 424.3 Fire protection.
Children's play structures shall be provided with the same level of *approved* fire suppression and detection devices required for other structures in the same occupancy.

424.4 Separation.
Children's play structures shall have a horizontal separation from building walls, partitions and from elements of the *means of egress* of not less than 5 feet (1524 mm). Children's playground structures shall have a horizontal separation from other children's play structures of not less than 20 feet (6090 mm).

424.5 Area limits.
Children's play structures shall be not greater than 300 square feet (28 m^2) in area, unless a special investigation, acceptable to the building official, has demonstrated adequate fire safety.

SECTION 425
HYPERBARIC FACILITIES

425.1 Hyperbaric facilities.
Hyperbaric facilities shall meet the requirements contained in Chapter 14 of NFPA 99.

SECTION [F] 426
COMBUSTIBLE DUSTS, GRAIN PROCESSING AND STORAGE

426.1 Combustible dusts, grain processing and storage.
The provisions of Sections 426.1.1 through 426.1.7 shall apply to buildings in which materials that produce combustible dusts are stored or handled. Buildings that store or handle combustible dusts shall comply with the applicable provisions of NFPA 61, NFPA 85, NFPA 120, NFPA 484, NFPA 654, NFPA 655 and NFPA 664 and the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 426.1.1 Type of construction and height exceptions.
Buildings shall be constructed in compliance with the height, number of stories and area limitations specified in Sections 504 and 506; except that where erected of Type I or II construction, the heights and areas of grain elevators and similar structures shall be unlimited, and where of Type IV construction, the maximum building height shall be 65 feet (19 812 mm) and except further that, in isolated areas, the maximum building height of Type IV structures shall be increased to 85 feet (25 908 mm).

[F] 426.1.2 Grinding rooms.
Every room or space occupied for grinding or other operations that produce combustible dusts in such a manner that the room or space is classified as a Group H-2 occupancy shall be enclosed with fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating of the enclosure shall be not less than 2 hours where the area is not more than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2), and not less than 4 hours where the area is greater than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2).

[F] 426.1.3 Conveyors.
Conveyors, chutes, piping and similar equipment passing through the enclosures of rooms or spaces shall be constructed dirt tight and vapor tight, and be of *approved* noncombustible materials complying with Chapter 30.

[F] 426.1.4 Explosion control.
Explosion control shall be provided as specified in the *International Fire Code,* or spaces shall be equipped with the equivalent mechanical *ventilation* complying with the *International Mechanical Code*.

[F] 426.1.5 Grain elevators.
Grain elevators, malt houses and buildings for similar occupancies shall not be located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of interior *lot lines* or structures on the same *lot*, except where erected along a railroad right-of-way.

[F] 426.1.6 Coal pockets.
Coal pockets located less than 30 feet (9144 mm) from interior lot lines or from structures on the same lot shall be constructed of not less than Type IB construction. Where more than 30 feet (9144 mm) from interior *lot lines*, or where erected along a railroad right-of-way, the minimum type of construction of such structures not more than 65 feet (19 812 mm) in *building height* shall be Type IV.

[F] 426.1.7 Tire rebuilding.
Buffing operations shall be located in a room separated from the remainder of the building housing the tire rebuilding or tire recapping operation by a 1-hour *fire barrier*.

> **Exception:** Buffing operations are not required to be separated where all of the following conditions are met:
>
> 1. Buffing operations are equipped with an *approved* continuous automatic water-spray system directed at the point of cutting action;

2. Buffing machines are connected to particle-collecting systems providing a minimum air movement of 1,500 cubic feet per minute (cfm) (0.71 m^3/s) in volume and 4,500 feet per minute (fpm) (23 m/s) in-line velocity; and

3. The collecting system shall discharge the rubber particles to an *approved* outdoor noncombustible or fire-resistant container, which is emptied at frequent intervals to prevent overflow.

SECTION 427
ELECTRIC VEHICLE CHARGING INFRASTRUCTURE

427.1 Scope. The provisions of this section shall apply to the construction of new buildings serving Group B, Group R-1 hotel and motel only, and Group R-2 occupancies.

427.2 Required electric vehicle charging infrastructure. Where parking is provided, five percent of parking spaces shall be provided with electric vehicle charging infrastructure in compliance with Sections 427.3, 427.4 and 427.5. When the calculation of percent served results in a fractional parking space, the applicant shall round up to the next whole number.

Exception: Group R and Group B occupancies served by less than 20 on-site parking.

427.3 Electrical room(s). Electrical room(s) serving parking areas shall be designed to accommodate the electrical equipment and distribution required to serve a minimum of 20 percent of the total parking spaces with 208/240 V 40-amp electric vehicle charging infrastructure.

427.4 Electric vehicle charging infrastructure. Electric vehicle charging infrastructure shall be installed meeting one of the following requirements:

1. A minimum number of 208/240 V 40-amp, electric vehicle charging stations required to serve the parking spaces specified in section 427.2. The electric vehicle charging stations shall be located to serve spaces designated for parking and charging electric vehicles, or
2. Additional service capacity, space for future meters, panel capacity or space for additional panels, and raceways for future installation of electric vehicle charging stations. The service capacity and raceway size shall be designed to accommodate the future installation of the number of 208/240 V 40-amp, electric vehicle charging stations specified in section 427.2. The raceway shall terminate at spaces designated for parking and charging electric vehicles in the future.

   Where designated electric vehicle charging locations serve exterior on-grade parking spaces that are located more than 4 feet from a building, raceways shall be extended below grade to a pull box in the vicinity of the designated future electric vehicle charging locations or stub above grade in the vicinity of the designated future electric vehicle charging locations, protected from vehicles by a curb or other device.

   Exception: In lieu of surface-mounted raceway between the electrical panel and the designated electric vehicle charging locations, it is permitted to provide permanent markings indicating the pathway for future raceway, and one-inch diameter capped sleeves through each wall and floor assembly that are

penetrated along that route. This pathway and the locations of capped sleeves shall also be indicated on the electrical plans. Raceway shall be installed for any portion of the pathway located below slabs, below grade, or within floor, wall or roof assemblies.

427.5 Electric vehicle charging infrastructure for accessible parking spaces. When electric vehicle charging infrastructure is required, one accessible parking space shall be served by electric vehicle charging infrastructure. The electric vehicle charging infrastructure may also serve adjacent parking spaces not designated as accessible parking.

CHAPTER 5
GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [F] will be considered by the International Fire Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 501
GENERAL

501.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter control the height and area of structures hereafter erected and *additions* to existing structures.

[F] 501.2 Address identification.
New and existing buildings shall be provided with *approved* address identification. The address identification shall be legible and placed in a position that is visible from the street or road fronting the property. Address identification characters shall contrast with their background. Address numbers shall be Arabic numbers or alphabetical letters. Numbers shall not be spelled out. Each character shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) high with a minimum stroke width of $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm). Where required by the fire *code official*, address identification shall be provided in additional approved locations to facilitate emergency response. Where access is by means of a private road and the building address cannot be viewed from the public way, a monument, pole or other approved sign or means shall be used to identify the structure. Address identification shall be maintained.

SECTION 502
DEFINITIONS

502.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

AREA, BUILDING.

BASEMENT.

EQUIPMENT PLATFORM.

GRADE PLANE.

HEIGHT, BUILDING.

MEZZANINE.

SECTION 503
GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHT AND AREA LIMITATIONS

503.1 General.
Unless otherwise specifically modified in Chapter 4 and this chapter, *building height*, number of stories and *building area* shall not exceed the limits specified in Sections 504 and 506 based on the type of construction as determined by Section 602 and the occupancies as determined by Section 302 except as modified hereafter. *Building height*, number of stories and *building* area provisions shall be applied independently. For the purposes of determining area limitations, height limitations and type of construction, each portion of a building separated by one or more *fire walls* complying with Section 706 shall be considered to be a separate building.

503.1.1 Special industrial occupancies.
Buildings and structures designed to house special industrial processes that require large areas and unusual *building heights* to accommodate craneways or special machinery and equipment, including, among others, rolling mills; structural metal fabrication shops and foundries; or the production and distribution of electric, gas or steam power, shall be exempt from the *building height*, number of stories and *building area* limitations specified in Sections 504 and 506.

503.1.2 Buildings on same lot.
Two or more buildings on the same lot shall be regulated as separate buildings or shall be considered as portions of one building where the *building height*, number of stories of each building and the aggregate *building area* of the buildings are within the limitations specified in Sections 504 and 506. The provisions of this code applicable to the aggregate building shall be applicable to each building.

503.1.3 Type I construction.
Buildings of Type I construction permitted to be of unlimited tabular *building heights and areas* are not subject to the special requirements that allow unlimited area buildings in Section 507 or unlimited *building height* in Sections 503.1.1 and 504.3 or increased *building heights and areas* for other types of construction.

503.1.4 Occupied roofs. A roof level or portion thereof shall be permitted to be used as an occupied roof provided the occupancy of the roof is an occupancy that is permitted by Table 504.4 for the story immediately below the roof. The area of the occupied roofs shall not be included in the building area as regulated by Section 506.

Exceptions:

1. The occupancy located on an occupied roof shall not be limited to the occupancies allowed on the story immediately below the roof where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and occupant notification in accordance with Section 907.5 is provided in the area of the occupied roof.

2. Assembly occupancies shall be permitted on roofs of open parking garages of Type I or Type II construction, in accordance with the exception to Section 903.2.1.6.

Elements or structures enclosing the occupied roof areas shall not extend more than 48 inches above the surface of the occupied roof.

Exception: Penthouses constructed in accordance with Section 1510.2 and towers, domes, spires, and cupolas constructed in accordance with Section 1510.5.

SECTION 504
BUILDING HEIGHT AND NUMBER OF STORIES

504.1 General.
The height, in feet, and the number of stories of a building shall be determined based on the type of construction, occupancy classification and whether there is an *automatic sprinkler system* installed throughout the building.

Exception: The *building height* of one-*story* aircraft hangars, aircraft paint hangars and buildings used for the manufacturing of aircraft shall not be limited where the building is provided with an *automatic sprinkler system* or *automatic fire-extinguishing system* in accordance with Chapter 9 and is entirely surrounded by *public ways* or *yards* not less in width than one and one-half times the *building height*.

504.1.1 Unlimited area buildings.
The height of unlimited area buildings shall be designed in accordance with Section 507.

504.1.2 Special provisions.
The special provisions of Section 510 permit the use of special conditions that are exempt from, or modify, the specific requirements of this chapter regarding the allowable heights of buildings based on the occupancy classification and type of construction, provided the special condition complies with the provisions specified in Section 510.

504.2 Mixed occupancy.
In a building containing mixed occupancies in accordance with Section 508, no individual occupancy shall exceed the height and number of story limits specified in this section for the applicable occupancies.

504.3 Height in feet.
The maximum height, in feet, of a building shall not exceed the limits specified in Table 504.3.

> **Exception:** Towers, spires, steeples and other roof structures shall be constructed of materials consistent with the required type of construction of the building except where other construction is permitted by Section 1510.2.5. Such structures shall not be used for habitation or storage. The structures shall be unlimited in height where of noncombustible materials and shall not extend more than 20 feet (6096 mm) above the allowable building height where of combustible materials (see Chapter 15 for additional requirements).

TABLE 504.3[a]
ALLOWABLE BUILDING HEIGHT IN FEET ABOVE GRADE PLANE

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION									
	SEE FOOTNOTES	TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV	TYPE V	
		A	B	A	B	A	B	HT	A	B
A, B, E, F, M, S, U	NS[b]	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	50	40
	S	UL	180	85	75	85	75	85	70	60
H-1, H-2, H-3, H-5	NS[c, d]	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	50	40
	S									
H-4	NS[c, d]	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	50	40
	S	UL	180	85	75	85	75	85	70	60
I-1 Condition 1, I-3	NS[d, e]	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	50	40
	S	UL	180	85	75	85	75	85	70	60
I-1 Condition 2, I-2	NS[d, f, e]	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	50	40
	S	UL	180	85						
I-4	NS[d, g]	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	50	40
	S	UL	180	85	75	85	75	85	70	60
R	NS[d, h]	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	50	40
	S13R	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60
	S	UL	180	85	75	85	75	85	70	60

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

Note: UL = Unlimited; NS = Buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system; S = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; S13R = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.

a. See Chapters 4 and 5 for specific exceptions to the allowable height in this chapter.
b. See Section 903.2 for the minimum thresholds for protection by an automatic sprinkler system for specific occupancies.
c. New Group H occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.
d. The NS value is only for use in evaluation of existing building height in accordance with the *International Existing Building Code*.
e. New Group I-1 and I-3 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6. For new Group I-1 occupancies Condition 1, see Exception 1 of Section 903.2.6.
f. New and existing Group I-2 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6 and Section 1103.5 of the *International Fire Code*.
g. For new Group I-4 occupancies, see Exceptions 2 and 3 of Section 903.2.6.
h. New Group R occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.8.

504.4 Number of stories.

The maximum number of stories of a building shall not exceed the limits specified in Table 504.4.

TABLE 504.4[a, b]
ALLOWABLE NUMBER OF STORIES ABOVE GRADE PLANE

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION									
	SEE FOOTNOTES	TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV	TYPE V	
		A	B	A	B	A	B	HT	A	B
A-1	NS	UL	5	3	2	3	2	3	2	1
	S	UL	6	4	3	4	3	4	3	2
A-2	NS	UL	11	3	2	3	2	3	2	1
	S	UL	12	4	3	4	3	4	3	2
A-3	NS	UL	11	3	2	3	2	3	2	1
	S	UL	12	4	3	4	3	4	3	2
A-4	NS	UL	11	3	2	3	2	3	2	1
	S	UL	12	4	3	4	3	4	3	2
A-5	NS	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL
	S	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL
B	NS	UL	11	5	3	5	3	5	3	2
	S	UL	12	6	4	6	4	6	4	3
E	NS	UL	5	3	2	3	2	3	1	1
	S	UL	6	4	3	4	3	4	2	2
F-1	NS	UL	11	4	2	3	2	4	2	1
	S	UL	12	5	3	4	3	5	3	2
F-2	NS	UL	11	5	3	4	3	5	3	2
	S	UL	12	6	4	5	4	6	4	3
H-1	NS[c, d]	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	NP
	S									
H-2	NS[c, d]	UL	3	2	1	2	1	2	1	1
	S									
H-3	NS[c, d]	UL	6	4	2	4	2	4	2	1
	S									
H-4	NS[c, d]	UL	7	5	3	5	3	5	3	2
	S	UL	8	6	4	6	4	6	4	3
H-5	NS[c, d]	4	4	3	3	3	3	3	3	2
	S									
I-1 Condition 1	NS[d, e]	UL	9	4	3	4	3	4	3	2
	S	UL	10	5	4	5	4	5	4	3
I-1 Condition 2	NS[d, e]	UL	9	4	3	4	3	4	3	2
	S	UL	10	5						
I-2	NS[d, f]	UL	4	2	1	1	NP	1	1	NP
	S	UL	5	3						
I-3	NS[d, e]	UL	4	2	1	2	1	2	2	1
	S	UL	5	3	2	3	2	3	3	2
I-4	NS[d, g]	UL	5	3	2	3	2	3	1	1
	S	UL	6	4	3	4	3	4	2	2

M	NS	UL	11	4	2	4	2	4	3	1
	S	UL	12	5	3	5	3	5	4	2

(continued)

TABLE 504.4[a, b]—continued
ALLOWABLE NUMBER OF STORIES ABOVE GRADE PLANE

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION									
	SEE FOOTNOTES	TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV	TYPE V	
		A	B	A	B	A	B	HT	A	B
R-1	d, h NS	UL	11	4	4	4	4	4	3	2
	S13R	4	4						4	3
	S	UL	12	5	5	5	5	5	4	3
R-2	d, h NS	UL	11	4	4	4	4	4	3	2
	S13R	4	4	4					4	3
	S	UL	12	5	5	5	5	5	4	3
R-3	d, h NS	UL	11	4	4	4	4	4	3	3
	S13R	4	4						4	4
	S	UL	12	5	5	5	5	5	4	4
R-4	d, h NS	UL	11	4	4	4	4	4	3	2
	S13R	4	4						4	3
	S	UL	12	5	5	5	5	5	4	3
S-1	NS	UL	11	4	2	3	2	4	3	1
	S	UL	12	5	3	4	3	5	4	2
S-2	NS	UL	11	5	3	4	3	4	4	2
	S	UL	12	6	4	5	4	5	5	3
U	NS	UL	5	4	2	3	2	4	2	1
	S	UL	6	5	3	4	3	5	3	2

Note: UL = Unlimited; NP = Not Permitted; NS = Buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system; S = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; S13R = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.

a. See Chapters 4 and 5 for specific exceptions to the allowable height in this chapter.
b. See Section 903.2 for the minimum thresholds for protection by an automatic sprinkler system for specific occupancies.
c. New Group H occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.
d. The NS value is only for use in evaluation of existing building height in accordance with the *International Existing Building Code*.
e. New Group I-1 and I-3 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6. For new Group I-1 occupancies, Condition 1, see Exception 1 of Section 903.2.6.
f. New and existing Group I-2 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6 and Section 1103.5 of the *International Fire Code*.
g. For new Group I-4 occupancies, see Exceptions 2 and 3 of Section 903.2.6.
h. New Group R occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.8.

504.4.1 Stair enclosure pressurization increase. For Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies in buildings of Type VA construction equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the maximum number of stories permitted in Section 504.2 may be increased by one provided the interior exit stairways and ramps are pressurized in accordance with Section 909. Legally required standby power shall be provided for buildings constructed in compliance with this section and be connected to stairway shaft pressurization equipment, elevators and lifts used for accessible means of egress, hoistway pressurization equipment (if provided) and other life safety equipment as determined by the authority having jurisdiction. For the purposes of this section, legally required standby power shall comply with 2014 NEC Section 701.12, options (A), (B), (C), (D), (F), or (G) or subsequent revised section number(s).

SECTION 505
MEZZANINES AND EQUIPMENT PLATFORMS

505.1 General.
Mezzanines shall comply with Section 505.2. *Equipment platforms* shall comply with Section 505.3.

505.2 Mezzanines.
A mezzanine or mezzanines in compliance with Section 505.2 shall be considered a portion of the story below. Such mezzanines shall not contribute to either the building area or number of stories as regulated by Section 503.1. The area of the mezzanine shall be included in determining the fire area. The clear height above and below the mezzanine floor construction shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

505.2.1 Area limitation.
The aggregate area of a *mezzanine* or *mezzanines* within a room shall be not greater than one-third of the floor area of that room or space in which they are located. The enclosed portion of a room shall not be included in a determination of the floor area of the room in which the *mezzanine* is located. In determining the allowable *mezzanine* area, the area of the *mezzanine* shall not be included in the floor area of the room.

~~Where a room contains both a *mezzanine* and an *equipment platform*, the aggregate area of the two raised floor levels shall be not greater than two-thirds of the floor area of that room or space in which they are located.~~

Exceptions:

1. The aggregate area of *mezzanines* in buildings and structures of Type I or II construction for special industrial occupancies in accordance with Section 503.1.1 shall be not greater than two-thirds of the floor area of the room.

2. The aggregate area of *mezzanines* in buildings and structures of Type I or II construction shall be not greater than one-half of the floor area of the room in buildings and structures equipped throughout with an *approved automatic*

sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and an *approved emergency voice/alarm communication system* in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

505.2.1.1 Aggregate area of mezzanines and equipment platforms. Where a room contains both a mezzanine and an equipment platform, the aggregate area of the two raised floor levels shall be not greater than two-thirds of the floor area of the room or space in which they are located. The area of the mezzanine shall not exceed the area determined according to Section 505.2.1

505.2.2 Means of egress.
The *means of egress* for *mezzanines* shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 10.

505.2.3 Openness.
A *mezzanine* shall be open and unobstructed to the room in which such *mezzanine* is located except for walls not more than 42 inches (1067 mm) in height, columns and posts.

Exceptions:

1. *Mezzanines* or portions thereof are not required to be open to the room in which the *mezzanines* are located, provided that the *occupant load* of the aggregate area of the enclosed space is not greater than 10.

2. A *mezzanine* having two or more exits or access to exits is not required to be open to the room in which the *mezzanine* is located.

3. *Mezzanines* or portions thereof are not required to be open to the room in which the *mezzanines* are located, provided that the aggregate floor area of the enclosed space is not greater than 10 percent of the *mezzanine* area.

4. In industrial facilities, *mezzanines* used for control equipment are permitted to be glazed on all sides.

5. In occupancies other than Groups H and I, that are no more than two *stories* above *grade plane* and equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, a *mezzanine* having two or more *means of egress* shall not be required to be open to the room in which the *mezzanine* is located.

505.3 Equipment platforms.
Equipment platforms in buildings shall not be considered as a portion of the floor below. Such *equipment platforms* shall not contribute to either the *building area* or the number of *stories* as regulated by Section 503.1. The area of the *equipment platform* shall not be included in determining the *fire area* in accordance with Section 903. *Equipment platforms* shall not be a part of any *mezzanine* and such platforms and the walkways, *stairways*, *alternating tread devices* and ladders providing access to an *equipment platform* shall not serve as a part of the *means of egress* from the building.

505.3.1 Area limitation.
The aggregate area of all *equipment platforms* within a room shall be not greater than two-thirds of the area of the room in which they are located. Where an *equipment platform* is located in the same room as a *mezzanine*, the area of the *mezzanine* shall be determined by Section 505.2.1 and the combined aggregate area of the *equipment platforms* and *mezzanines* shall be not greater than two-thirds of the room in which they are located. The area of the mezzanine shall not exceed the area determined according to Section 505.2.1.

505.3.2 Automatic sprinkler system.
Where located in a building that is required to be protected by an *automatic sprinkler system*, *equipment platforms* shall be fully protected by sprinklers above and below the platform, where required by the standards referenced in Section 903.3.

505.3.3 Guards.
Equipment platforms shall have *guards* where required by Section 1015.2.

SECTION 506
BUILDING AREA

506.1 General.
The floor area of a building shall be determined based on the type of construction, occupancy classification, whether there is an automatic sprinkler system installed throughout the building and the amount of building frontage on public way or open space.

506.1.1 Unlimited area buildings.
Unlimited area buildings shall be designed in accordance with Section 507.

506.1.2 Special provisions.
The special provisions of Section 510 permit the use of special conditions that are exempt from, or modify, the specific requirements of this chapter regarding the allowable areas of buildings based on the occupancy classification and type of construction, provided the special condition complies with the provisions specified in Section 510.

506.1.3 Basements.
Basements need not be included in the total allowable floor area of a building provided the total area of such basements does not exceed the area permitted for a one-story above grade plane building.

506.2 Allowable area determination.
The allowable area of a building shall be determined in accordance with the applicable provisions of Sections 506.2.1 through 506.2.4 and Section 506.3.

TABLE 506.2a[a, b]
ALLOWABLE AREA FACTOR (A_t= NS, S1, S13R, or SM, as applicable) IN SQUARE FEET

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	SEE FOOTNOTES	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION								
		TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV	TYPE V	
		A	B	A	B	A	B	HT	A	B
A-1	NS	UL	UL	15,500	8,500	14,000	8,500	15,000	11,500	5,500
	Si	UL	UL	62,000	34,000	56,000	34,000	60,000	46,000	22,000
	SM	UL	UL	46,500	25,500	42,000	25,500	45,000	34,500	16,500
A-2	NS	UL	UL	15,500	9,500	14,000	9,500	15,000	11,500	6,000
	S1	UL	UL	62,000	38,000	56,000	38,000	60,000	46,000	24,000
	SM	UL	UL	46,500	28,500	42,000	28,500	45,000	34,500	18,000
A-3	NS	UL	UL	15,500	9,500	14,000	9,500	15,000	11,500	6,000
	51	UL	UL	62,000	38,000	56,000	38,000	60,000	46,000	24,000
	SM	UL	UL	46,500	28,500	42,000	28,500	45,000	34,500	18,000
A-4	NS	UL	UL	15,500	9,500	14,000	9,500	15,000	11,500	6,000
	S1	UL	UL	62,000	38,000	56,000	38,000	60,000	46,000	24,000
	SM	UL	UL	46,500	28,500	42,000	28,500	45,000	34,500	18,000
A-5	NS	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL
	Si									
	SM									
B	NS	UL	UL	37,500	23,000	28,500	19,000	36,000	18,000	9,000
	Si	UL	UL	150,000	92,000	114,000	76,000	144,000	72,000	36,000
	SM	UL	UL	112,500	69,000	85,500	57,000	108,000	54,000	27,000
E	NS	UL	UL	26,500	14,500	23,500	14,500	25,500	18,500	9.500
	51	UL	UL	106,000	58,000	94,000	58,000	102,000	74,000	38,000
	SM	UL	UL	79,500	43,500	70,500	43,500	76,500	55,500	28,500
F-1	NS	UL	UL	25,000	15,500	19,000	12,000	33,500	14,000	8.500
	Si	UL	UL	100,000	62,000	76,000	48,000	134,000	56,000	34,000
	SM	UL	UL	75,000	46,500	57,000	36,000	100,500	42,000	25,500
F-2	NS	UL	UL	37,500	23,000	28,500	18,000	50,500	21,000	13,000
	S1	UL	UL	150,000	92,000	114,000	72,000	202,000	84,000	52,000
	SM	UL	UL	112,500	69,000	85,500	54,000	151,500	63,000	39,000
H-1	NS'	21,000	16,500	11,000	7,000	9.500	7,000	10,500	7,500	NP
	Si									
H-2	NS'	21,000	16,500	11,000	7,000	9.500	7,000	10,500	7,500	3,000
	S1									
	SM									
H-3	NS`	UL	60,000	26,500	14,000	17,500	13,000	25,500	10,000	5,000
	Si									
	SM									
H-4	NS'. [d]	UL	UL	37,500	17,500	28,500	17,500	36,000	18,000	6,500
	51	UL	UL	150,000	70,000	114,000	70,000	144,000	72,000	26,000
	SM	UL	UL	112,500	52,500	85,500	52,500	108,000	54,000	19,500
H-5	NS'. [d]	UL	UL	37,500	23,000	28,500	19,000	36,000	18,000	9,000
	Si	UL	UL	150,000	92,000	114,000	76,000	144,000	72,000	36,000
	SM	UL	UL	112,500	69,000	85,500	57,000	108000	54,000	27,000

(continued)

TABLE 506.2a.[b]-continued
ALLOWABLE AREA FACTOR (A_t = NS, S1, S13R, or SM, as applicable) IN SQUARE FEET

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	SEE FOOTNOTES	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION								
		TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV	TYPE V	
		A	B	A	B	A	B	HT	A	B
I-1	NS[d].'	UL	55,000	19,000	10,000	16,500	10,000	18,000	10,500	4,500
	Si	UL	220,000	76,000	40,000	66,000	40,000	72,000	42,000	18,000
	SM	UL	165,000	57,000	30,000	49,500	30,000	54,000	31,500	13,500
1-2	N5[d].[1]	UL	UL	15,000	11,000	12,000	NP	12,000	9,500	NP
	51	UL	UL	60,000	44,000	48,000	NP	48,000	38,000	NP
	SM	UL	UL	45,000	33,000	36,000	NP	36,000	28,500	NP
1-3	NS[d]. '	UL	UL	15,000	10,000	10,500	7,500	12,000	7,500	5,000
	51	UL	UL	45,000	40,000	42,000	30,000	48,000	30,000	20,000
	SM	UL	UL	45,000	30,000	31,500	22,500	36,000	22,500	15,000
1-4	NS[d]. g	UL	60.500	26,500	13,000	23,500	13,000	25,500	18,500	9,000
	S1	UL	121,000	106,000	52,000	94,000	52,000	102,000	74,000	36,000
	SM	UL	181,500	79,500	39,000	70,500	39,000	76,500	55,500	27,000
M	NS	UL	UL	21,500	12,500	18,500	12,500	20,500	14,000	9,000_
	Si	UL	UL	86,000	50,000	74,000	50,000	82,000	56,000	36,000
	SM	UL	UL	64,500	37,500	55,500	37,500	61,500	42,000	27,000 1
R-1	N5[d]. h	UL	UL	24,000	16,000	24,000	16,000	20,500	12,000	7,000 1
	S13R									
	Si	UL	UL	96,000	64,000	96,000	64,000	82,000	48,000	28,000
	SM	UL	UL	72,000	48,000	72,000	48,000	61,500	36,000	21,000
R-2	NS[d]. h	UL	UL	24,000	16,000	24,000	16,000	20,500	12,000	7,000
	S13R									
	Si	UL	UL	96,000	64,000	96,000	64,000	82,000	48,000	28,000
	SM	UL	UL	72,000	48,000	72,000	48,000	61,500	36,000	21,000
R-3S1	NS"	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL
	S13R									
	SM									
R-4	NS[d' h]	UL	UL	24,000	16,000	24,000	16,000	20,500	12,000	7,000
	S13R									
	S1	UL	UL	96,000	64,000	96,000	64,000	82,000	48,000	28,000
	SM	UL	UL	72,000	48,000	72,000	48,000	61,500	36,000	21,000
S-1	NS	UL	48,000	26,000	17,500	26,000	17,500	25,500	14,000	9,000
	Si	UL	192,000	104,000	70,000	104,000	70,000	102,000	56,000	36,000
	SM	UL	144,000	78,000	52,500	78,000	52,500	76,500	42,000	27,000
S-2	NS	UL	79,000	39,000	26,000	39,000	26,000	38,500	21,000	13,500
	S1	UL	316,000	156,000	104,000	156,000	104,000	154,000	84,000	54,000
	SM	UL	237,000	117,000	78,000	117,000	78,000	115,500	63,000	40,500
U	NS	UL	35,500	19,000	8,500	14,000	8,500	18,000	9,000	5,500
	Si	UL	142,000	76,000	34,000	56,000	34,000	72,000	36,000	22,000
	SM	UL	106,500	57,000	25,500	42,000	25,500	54,000	27,000	16,500

(continued)

TABLE 506.2[a,b]—continued
ALLOWABLE AREA FACTOR (*At* = NS, S1, S13R, or SM, as applicable) IN SQUARE FEET

Note: UL = Unlimited; NP = Not permitted;

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

NS = Buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system; S1 = Buildings a maximum of one story above grade plane equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; SM = Buildings two or more stories above grade plane equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; S13R = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.

a. See Chapters 4 and 5 for specific exceptions to the allowable height in this chapter.
b. See Section 903.2 for the minimum thresholds for protection by an automatic sprinkler system for specific occupancies.
c. New Group H occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.
d. The NS value is only for use in evaluation of existing building area in accordance with the *International Existing Building Code*.
e. New Group I-1 and I-3 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6. For new Group I-1 occupancies, Condition 1, see Exception 1 of Section 903.2.6.
f. New and existing Group I-2 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6 and Section 1103.5 of the *International Fire Code*.
g. New Group I-4 occupancies see Exceptions 2 and 3 of Section 903.2.6.
h. New Group R occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.8.

506.2.1 Single-occupancy, one-story buildings.
The allowable area of a single-occupancy building with no more than one story above grade plane shall be determined in accordance with Equation 5-1:

$$A_a = A_t + (NS \times I_f) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 5-1)}$$

where:

A_a = Allowable area (square feet).

A_t = Tabular allowable area factor (NS, S1, or S13R value, as applicable) in accordance with Table 506.2.

NS = Tabular allowable area factor in accordance with Table 506.2 for nonsprinklered building (regardless of whether the building is sprinklered).

I_f = Area factor increase due to frontage (percent) as calculated in accordance with Section 506.3.

506.2.2 Mixed-occupancy, one-story buildings.
The allowable area of a mixed-occupancy building with no more than one story above grade plane shall be determined in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 508.1 based on Equation 5-1 for each applicable occupancy.

506.2.2.1 Group H-2 or H-3 mixed occupancies.
For a building containing Group H-2 or H-3 occupancies, the allowable area shall be

determined in accordance with Section 508.4.2, with the sprinkler system increase applicable only to the portions of the building not classified as Group H-2 or H-3.

506.2.3 Single-occupancy, multistory buildings.
The allowable area of a single-occupancy building with more than one story above grade plane shall be determined in accordance with Equation 5-2:

$$A_a = [A_t + (NS \times I_f)] \times S_a \qquad \textbf{(Equation 5-2)}$$

where:

A_a	=	Allowable area (square feet).
A_t	=	Tabular allowable area factor (NS, S13R or SM value, as applicable) in accordance with Table 506.2.
NS	=	Tabular allowable area factor in accordance with Table 506.2 for a nonsprinklered building (regardless of whether the building is sprinklered).
I_f	=	Area factor increase due to frontage (percent) as calculated in accordance with Section 506.3.
S_a	=	Actual number of building stories above grade plane, not to exceed three. For buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2, use the actual number of building stories above grade plane, not to exceed four.

No individual story shall exceed the allowable area (*Aa*) as determined by Equation 5-2 using the value of $S_a = 1$.

506.2.4 Mixed-occupancy, multistory buildings.
Each story of a mixed-occupancy building with more than one story above grade plane shall individually comply with the applicable requirements of Section 508.1. For buildings with more than three stories above grade plane, the total building area shall be such that the aggregate sum of the ratios of the actual area of each story divided by the allowable area of such stories, determined in accordance with Equation 5-3 based on the applicable provisions of Section 508.1, shall not exceed three.

$$A_a = [A_t + (NS \times I_f)] \qquad \textbf{(Equation 5-3)}$$

where:

A_a	=	Allowable area (square feet).
A_t	=	Tabular allowable area factor (NS, S13R or SM value, as applicable) in accordance with Table 506.2.

NS	=	Tabular allowable area factor in accordance with Table 506.2 for a nonsprinklered building (regardless of whether the building is sprinklered).
I_f	=	Area factor increase due to frontage (percent) as calculated in accordance with Section 506.3.

Exception: For buildings designed as separated occupancies under Section 508.4 and equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2, the total building area shall be such that the aggregate sum of the ratios of the actual area of each story divided by the allowable area of such stories determined in accordance with Equation 5-3 based on the applicable provisions of Section 508.1, shall not exceed four.

506.2.4.1 Group H-2 or H-3 mixed occupancies.
For a building containing Group H-2 or H-3 occupancies, the allowable area shall be determined in accordance with Section 508.4.2, with the sprinkler system increase applicable only to the portions of the building not classified as Group H-2 or H-3.

506.3 Frontage increase.
Every building shall adjoin or have access to a public way to receive an area factor increase based on frontage. Area factor increase shall be determined in accordance with Sections 506.3.1 through 506.3.3.

506.3.1 Minimum percentage of perimeter.
To qualify for an area factor increase based on frontage, a building shall have not less than 25 percent of its perimeter on a public way or open space. Such open space shall be either on the same lot or dedicated for public use and shall be accessed from a street or approved fire lane.

506.3.2 Minimum frontage distance.
To qualify for an area factor increase based on frontage, the public way or open space adjacent to the building perimeter shall have a minimum distance (*W*) of 20 feet (6096 mm) measured at right angles from the building face to any of the following:

1. The closest interior lot line.

2. The entire width of a street, alley or public way.

3. The exterior face of an adjacent building on the same property.

Where the value of *W* is greater than 30 feet (9144 mm), a value of 30 feet (9144 mm) shall be used in calculating the building area increase based on frontage, regardless of the actual width of the public way or open space. Where the value of *W* varies along the perimeter of the building, the calculation performed in accordance with Equation 5-5 shall be based on the weighted average calculated in accordance with Equation 5-4.

$$W = (L_1 \times w_1 + L_2 \times w_2 + L_3 \times w_3 \ldots)/F \qquad \textbf{(Equation 5-4)}$$

where:

W		(Width: weighted average) = Calculated width of public way or open space (feet).
L_n	=	Length of a portion of the exterior perimeter wall.
w_n	=	Width (≥ 20 feet) of a public way or open space associated with that portion of the exterior perimeter wall.
F	=	Building perimeter that fronts on a public way or open space having a width of 20 feet (6096 mm) or more.

Exception: Where a building meets the requirements of Section 507, as applicable, except for compliance with the minimum 60-foot (18 288 mm) *public way* or *yard* requirement, and the value of *W* is greater than 30 feet (9144 mm), the value of *W* shall not exceed 60 feet (18 288 mm).

506.3.3 Amount of increase.
The area factor increase based on frontage shall be determined in accordance with Equation 5-5:

$$I_f = [F/P - 0.25]W/30 \qquad \textbf{(Equation 5-5)}$$

where:

I_f	=	Area factor increase due to frontage.
F	=	Building perimeter that fronts on a *public way* or open space having minimum distance of 20 feet (6096 mm).
P	=	Perimeter of entire building (feet).
W	=	Width of *public way* or open space (feet) in accordance with Section 506.3.2.

SECTION 507
UNLIMITED AREA BUILDINGS

507.1 General.
The area of buildings of the occupancies and configurations specified in Sections 507.1 through 507.12 shall not be limited. Basements not more than one story below grade plane shall be permitted.

507.1.1 Accessory occupancies.
Accessory occupancies shall be permitted in unlimited area buildings in accordance with the provisions of Section 508.2, otherwise the requirements of Sections 507.3 through 507.13 shall be applied, where applicable.

507.2 Measurement of open spaces.
Where Sections 507.3 through 507.13 require buildings to be surrounded and adjoined by *public ways* and *yards*, those open spaces shall be determined as follows:

1. Yards shall be measured from the building perimeter in all directions to the closest interior *lot lines* or to the exterior face of an opposing building located on the same *lot*, as applicable.

2 Where the building fronts on a *public way*, the entire width of the *public way* shall be used.

507.2.1 Reduced open space.
The *public ways* or *yards* of 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width required in Sections 507.3, 507.4, 507.5, 507.6 and 507.12 shall be permitted to be reduced to not less than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in width provided all of the following requirements are met:

1. The reduced width shall not be allowed for more than 75 percent of the perimeter of the building.

2. The *exterior walls* facing the reduced width shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 3 hours.

3. Openings in the *exterior walls* facing the reduced width shall have opening protectives with a *fire protection rating* of not less than 3 hours.

507.3 Nonsprinklered, one-story buildings.
The area of a Group F-2 or S-2 building no more than one story in height shall not be limited where the building is surrounded and adjoined by *public ways* or *yards* not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.4 Sprinklered, one-story buildings.
The area of a Group A-4 building no more than one *story above grade plane* of other than Type V construction, or the area of a Group B, F, M or S building no more than one story above grade plane of any construction type, shall not be limited where the building is provided with an *automatic sprinkler system* throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and is surrounded and adjoined by *public ways* or *yards* not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings and structures of Type I or II construction for rack storage facilities that do not have access by the public shall not be limited in height, provided that such buildings conform to the requirements of Sections 507.4 and 903.3.1.1 and Chapter 32 of the *International Fire Code*.

2. The *automatic sprinkler system* shall not be required in areas occupied for indoor participant sports, such as tennis, skating, swimming and equestrian activities in occupancies in Group A-4, provided that both of the following criteria are met:

2.1. *Exit* doors directly to the outside are provided for occupants of the participant sports areas.

2.2. The building is equipped with a *fire alarm system* with *manual fire alarm boxes* installed in accordance with Section 907.

507.4.1 Mixed occupancy buildings with Groups A-1 and A-2.
Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies of other than Type V construction shall be permitted within mixed occupancy buildings of unlimited area complying with Section 507.4, provided all of the following criteria are met:

1. Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies are separated from other occupancies as required for separated occupancies in Section 508.4.4 with no reduction allowed in the *fire-resistance rating* of the separation based upon the installation of an *automatic sprinkler system*.

2. Each area of the portions of the building used for Group A-1 or A-2 occupancies shall not exceed the maximum allowable area permitted for such occupancies in Section 503.1.

3. *Exit* doors from Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies shall discharge directly to the exterior of the building.

507.5 Two-story buildings.
The area of a Group B, F, M or S building no more than two *stories above grade plane* shall not be limited where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and is surrounded and adjoined by *public ways* or *yards* not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.6 Group A-3 buildings of Type II construction.
The area of a Group A-3 building no more than one *story above grade plane*, used as a *place of religious worship*, community hall, dance hall, exhibition hall, gymnasium, lecture hall, indoor *swimming pool* or tennis court of Type II construction, shall not be limited provided all of the following criteria are met:

1. The building shall not have a *stage* other than a *platform*.

2. The building shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

3. The building shall be surrounded and adjoined by *public ways* or *yards* not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.7 Group A-3 buildings of Type III and IV construction.
The area of a Group A-3 building of Type III or IV construction, with no more than one *story above grade plane* and used as a *place of religious worship*, community hall, dance hall, exhibition hall, gymnasium, lecture hall, indoor *swimming pool* or tennis court, shall not be limited provided all of the following criteria are met:

1. The building shall not have a *stage* other than a *platform*.

2. The building shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

3. The assembly floor shall be located at or within 21 inches (533 mm) of street or grade level and all *exits* are provided with ramps complying with Section 1012 to the street or grade level.

4. The building shall be surrounded and adjoined by *public ways* or *yards* not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.8 Group H-2, H-3 and H-4 occupancies.
Group H-2, H-3 and H-4 occupancies shall be permitted in unlimited area buildings containing Group F or S occupancies in accordance with Sections 507.4 and 507.5 and the provisions of Sections 507.8.1 through 507.8.4.

507.8.1 Allowable area.
The aggregate floor area of Group H occupancies located in an unlimited area building shall not exceed 10 percent of the area of the building or the area limitations for the Group H occupancies as specified in Section 506 based on the perimeter of each Group H floor area that fronts on a *public way* or open space.

507.8.1.1 Located within the building.
The aggregate floor area of Group H occupancies not located at the perimeter of the building shall not exceed 25 percent of the area limitations for the Group H occupancies as specified in Section 506.

507.8.1.1.1 Liquid use, dispensing and mixing rooms.
Liquid use, dispensing and mixing rooms having a floor area of not more than 500 square feet (46.5 m^2) need not be located on the outer perimeter of the building where they are in accordance with the *International Fire Code* and NFPA 30.

507.8.1.1.2 Liquid storage rooms.
Liquid storage rooms having a floor area of not more than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) need not be located on the outer perimeter where they are in accordance with the *International Fire Code* and NFPA 30.

507.8.1.1.3 Spray paint booths.
Spray paint booths that comply with the *International Fire Code* need not be located on the outer perimeter.

507.8.2 Located on building perimeter.
Except as provided for in Section 507.8.1.1, Group H occupancies shall be located on the perimeter of the building. In Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies, not less than 25 percent of the perimeter of such occupancies shall be an *exterior wall*.

507.8.3 Occupancy separations.
Group H occupancies shall be separated from the remainder of the unlimited area building and from each other in accordance with Table 508.4.

507.8.4 Height limitations.
For two-*story,* unlimited area buildings, Group H occupancies shall not be located more than one *story above grade plane* unless permitted based on the allowable height and number of *stories* and feet as specified in Section 504 based on the type of construction of the unlimited area building.

507.9 Unlimited mixed occupancy buildings with Group H-5.
The area of a Group B, F, H-5, M or S building no more than two *stories above grade plane* shall not be limited where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and is surrounded and adjoined by *public ways* or *yards* not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width, provided all of the following criteria are met:

1. Buildings containing Group H-5 occupancy shall be of Type I or II construction.

2. Each area used for Group H-5 occupancy shall be separated from other occupancies as required in Sections 415.11 and 508.4.

3. Each area used for Group H-5 occupancy shall not exceed the maximum allowable area permitted for such occupancies in Section 503.1 including modifications of Section 506.

   Exception: Where the Group H-5 occupancy exceeds the maximum allowable area, the Group H-5 shall be subdivided into areas that are separated by 2-hour fire barriers.

507.10 Aircraft paint hangar.
The area of a Group H-2 aircraft paint hangar no more than one *story above grade plane* shall not be limited where such aircraft paint hangar complies with the provisions of Section 412.6 and is surrounded and adjoined by *public ways* or *yards* not less in width than one and one-half times the *building height*.

507.11 Group E buildings.
The area of a Group E building no more than one *story above grade plane*, of Type II, IIIA or IV construction, shall not be limited provided all of the following criteria are met:

1. Each classroom shall have not less than two *means of egress*, with one of the *means of egress* being a direct *exit* to the outside of the building complying with Section 1022.

2. The building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

3. The building is surrounded and adjoined by *public ways* or *yards* not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.12 Motion picture theaters.
In buildings of Type II construction, the area of a motion picture theater located on the first *story above grade plane* shall not be limited where the building is provided with an *automatic sprinkler system* throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and is surrounded and adjoined by *public ways* or *yards* not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.13 Covered and open mall buildings and anchor buildings.
The area of *covered and open mall buildings* and *anchor buildings* not exceeding three *stories* in height that comply with Section 402 shall not be limited.

SECTION 508
MIXED USE AND OCCUPANCY

508.1 General.
Each portion of a building shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. Where a building contains more than one occupancy group, the building or portion thereof shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section 508.2, 508.3 or 508.4, or a combination of these sections.

Exceptions:

1. Occupancies separated in accordance with Section 510.

2. Where required by Table 415.6.2, areas of Group H-1, H-2 and H-3 occupancies shall be located in a *detached building* or structure.

3. Uses within *live/work units*, complying with Section 419, are not considered separate occupancies.

508.2 Accessory occupancies.
Accessory occupancies are those occupancies that are ancillary to the main occupancy of the building or portion thereof. Accessory occupancies shall comply with the provisions of Sections 508.2.1 through 508.2.4.

508.2.1 Occupancy classification.
Accessory occupancies shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. The requirements of this code shall apply to each portion of the building based on the occupancy classification of that space.

508.2.2 Allowable building height.
The allowable height and number of stories of the building containing accessory occupancies shall be in accordance with Section 504 for the main occupancy of the building.

508.2.3 Allowable building area.
The allowable area of the building shall be based on the applicable provisions of Section 506 for the main occupancy of the building. Aggregate accessory occupancies shall not occupy more than 10 percent of the floor area of the story in which they are located and shall not exceed the tabular values for nonsprinklered buildings in Table 506.2 for each such accessory occupancy.

508.2.4 Separation of occupancies.
No separation is required between accessory occupancies and the main occupancy.

Exceptions:

1. Group H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5 occupancies shall be separated from all other occupancies in accordance with Section 508.4.

2. Group I-1, R-1, R-2 and R-3 *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* shall be separated from other *dwelling* or *sleeping units* and from accessory occupancies contiguous to them in accordance with the requirements of Section 420.

508.3 Nonseparated occupancies.
Buildings or portions of buildings that comply with the provisions of this section shall be considered as nonseparated occupancies.

508.3.1 Occupancy classification.
Nonseparated occupancies shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. The requirements of this code shall apply to each portion of the building based on the occupancy classification of that space. In addition, the most restrictive provisions of Chapter 9 that apply to the nonseparated occupancies shall apply to the total nonseparated occupancy area. Where nonseparated occupancies occur in a *high-rise building*, the most restrictive requirements of Section 403 that apply to the nonseparated occupancies shall apply throughout the *high-rise building*.

508.3.2 Allowable building area and height.
The allowable *building area and height* of the building or portion thereof shall be based on the most restrictive allowances for the occupancy groups under consideration for the type of construction of the building in accordance with Section 503.1.

508.3.3 Separation.
No separation is required between nonseparated occupancies.

Exceptions:

1. Group H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5 occupancies shall be separated from all other occupancies in accordance with Section 508.4.

2. Group I-1, R-1, R-2 and R-3 *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* shall be separated from other *dwelling* or *sleeping units* and from other occupancies contiguous to them in accordance with the requirements of Section 420.

508.4 Separated occupancies.
Buildings or portions of buildings that comply with the provisions of this section shall be considered as separated occupancies.

TABLE 508.4
REQUIRED SEPARATION OF OCCUPANCIES (HOURS)

OCCUPANCY	A, E		1-1[a], 1-3, 1-4		1 2		R[a]		F-2, S-2[b], U		B[e], F-1, M, S-1		H 1		H 2		H-3, H-4		H-5	
	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS
A, E	N	N	1	2	2	NP	1	2	N	1	1	2	NP	NP	3	4	2	3	2	NP
I-1', 1-3, I-4	—	—	N	N	2	NP	1	NP	1	2	1	2	NP	NP	3	NP	2	NP	2	NP
1-2	—	—	—	—	N	N	2	NP	2	NP	2	NP	NP	NP	3	NP	2	NP	2	NP
Ra	—	—	—	—	—	—	N	N	1'	2'	1	2	NP	NP	3	NP	2	NP	2	NP
F-2, S-2[b], U	—	—	—	—	—		—	—	N	N	1	2	NP	NP	3	4	2	3	2	NP
B[e], F-1, M, S-1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—		—		N	N	NP	NP	2	3	1	2	1	NP

H-1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	N	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP
H-2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	N	NP	1	NP	1	NP
H-3, H-4	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1"	NP	1	NP
H-5	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	——	–	–	——	–	N	NP

S = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
NS = Buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
N = No separation requirement.
NP = Not permitted.
a See Section 420.
b. The required separation from areas used only for private or pleasure vehicles shall be reduced by 1 hour but not to less than 1 hour.
c. See Section 406.3.4.
d. Separation is not required between occupancies of the same classification.
e. See Section 422.2 for ambulatory care facilities.

508.4.1 Occupancy classification.
Separated occupancies shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. Each separated space shall comply with this code based on the occupancy classification of that portion of the building.

508.4.2 Allowable building area.
In each *story*, the *building area* shall be such that the sum of the ratios of the actual *building area* of each separated occupancy divided by the allowable *building* area of each separated occupancy shall not exceed 1.

508.4.3 Allowable height.
Each separated occupancy shall comply with the building height limitations based on the type of construction of the building in accordance with Section 503.1.

> **Exception:** Special provisions of Section 510 shall permit occupancies at building heights other than provided in Section 503.1.

508.4.4 Separation.
Individual occupancies shall be separated from adjacent occupancies in accordance with Table 508.4.

508.4.4.1 Construction.
Required separations shall be *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, so as to completely separate adjacent occupancies.

SECTION 509
INCIDENTAL USES

TABLE 509
INCIDENTAL USES

ROOM OR AREA	SEPARATION AND/OR PROTECTION
Furnace room where any piece of equipment is over 400,000 Btu per hour input	1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system
Rooms with boilers where the largest piece of equipment is over 15 psi and 10 horsepower	1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system
Refrigerant machinery room	1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system
Hydrogen fuel gas rooms, not classified as Group H	1 hour in Group B, F, M, S and U occupancies; 2 hours in Group A, E, I and R occupancies.
Incinerator rooms	2 hours and provide automatic sprinkler system
Paint shops, not classified as Group H, located in occupancies other than Group F	2 hours; or 1 hour and provide automatic sprinkler system
In Group E occupancies, laboratories and vocational shops not classified as Group H	1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system
In Group I-2 occupancies, laboratories not classified as Group H	1 hour and provide automatic sprinkler system
In ambulatory care facilities, laboratories not classified as Group H	1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system
Laundry rooms over 100 square feet	1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system
In Group I-2, laundry rooms over 100 square feet	1 hour
Group I-3 cells and Group I-2 patient rooms equipped with padded surfaces	1 hour
In Group I-2, physical plant maintenance shops	1 hour
In ambulatory care facilities or Group I-2 occupancies, waste and linen collection rooms with containers that have an aggregate volume of 10 cubic feet or greater	1 hour
In other than ambulatory care facilities and Group I-2 occupancies, waste and linen collection rooms over 100 square feet	1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system
In ambulatory care facilities or Group I-2 occupancies, storage rooms greater than 100 square feet	1 hour
Stationary storage battery systems having a liquid electrolyte capacity of more than 50 gallons for flooded lead-acid, nickel cadmium or VRLA, or more than 1,000 pounds for lithium-ion and lithium metal polymer used for facility standby power, emergency power or uninterruptable power supplies	1 hour in Group B, F, M, S and U occupancies; 2 hours in Group A, E, I and R occupancies.
Dry type transformers over 112.5 kVA and required to be in a fire resistant room per NEC (NFPA 70) Section 450.21 (B)a	1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system

[a] Dry type transformers rated over 35,000 volts and oil-insulated transformers shall be installed in a transformer vault complying with NFPA 70.

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, 1 pound per square inch (psi) = 6.9 kPa, 1 British thermal unit (Btu) per hour = 0.293 watts, 1 horsepower = 746 watts, 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m^3.

509.1 General
Incidental uses located within single occupancy or mixed occupancy buildings shall comply with the provisions of this section. Incidental uses are ancillary functions associated with a given occupancy that generally pose a greater level of risk to that occupancy and are limited to those uses listed in Table 509.

> **Exception:** Incidental uses within and serving a *dwelling unit* are not required to comply with this section.

509.2 Occupancy classification.
Incidental uses shall not be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. Incidental uses shall be included in the building occupancies within which they are located.

509.3 Area limitations.
Incidental uses shall not occupy more than 10 percent of the *building area* of the *story* in which they are located.

509.4 Separation and protection.
The incidental uses listed in Table 509 shall be separated from the remainder of the building or equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system*, or both, in accordance with the provisions of that table.

> **509.4.1 Separation.**
> Where Table 509 specifies a fire-resistance-rated separation, the incidental uses shall be separated from the remainder of the *building* by a *fire barrier* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or a *horizontal assembly* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Construction supporting 1-hour *fire barriers* or *horizontal assemblies* used for incidental use separations in buildings of Type IIB, IIIB and VB construction is not required to be fire-resistance rated unless required by other sections of this code.

> **509.4.2 Protection.**
> Where Table 509 permits an *automatic sprinkler system* without a *fire barrier*, the incidental uses shall be separated from the remainder of the building by construction capable of resisting the passage of smoke. The walls shall extend from the top of the foundation or floor assembly below to the underside of the ceiling that is a component of a fire-resistance-rated floor assembly or roof assembly above or to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above. Doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon detection of smoke in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3. Doors shall not have air transfer openings and shall not be undercut in excess of the clearance permitted in accordance with NFPA 80. Walls surrounding the incidental use shall not have air transfer openings unless provided with smoke dampers in accordance with Section 710.8.

>> **509.4.2.1 Protection limitation.**
>> Where an *automatic sprinkler system* is provided in accordance with Table 509, only the space occupied by the incidental use need be equipped with such a system.

SECTION 510
SPECIAL PROVISIONS

510.1 General.
The provisions in Sections 510.2 through 510.9 shall permit the use of special conditions that are exempt from, or modify, the specific requirements of this chapter regarding the allowable *building heights and areas* of buildings based on the occupancy classification and type of construction, provided the special condition complies with the provisions specified in this section for such condition and other applicable requirements of this code. The provisions of Sections 510.2 through 510.8 are to be considered independent and separate from each other.

510.2 Horizontal building separation allowance.
A building shall be considered as separate and distinct buildings for the purpose of determining area limitations, continuity of *fire walls*, limitation of number of *stories* and type of construction where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The buildings are separated with a *horizontal assembly* having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 3 hours.

2. The building below the *horizontal assembly* is of Type IA construction.

3. *Shaft*, *stairway*, *ramp* and escalator enclosures through the *horizontal assembly* shall have not less than a 2-hour *fire-resistance rating* with opening protectives in accordance with Section 716.5.

   Exception: Where the enclosure walls below the *horizontal assembly* have not less than a 3-hour *fire-resistance rating* with opening protectives in accordance with Section 716.5, the enclosure walls extending above the *horizontal assembly* shall be permitted to have a 1-hour *fire-resistance rating*, provided:

   1. The building above the *horizontal assembly* is not required to be of Type I construction;

   2. The enclosure connects fewer than four *stories*; and

   3. The enclosure opening protectives above the *horizontal assembly* have a *fire protection rating* of not less than 1 hour.

4. The building or buildings above the *horizontal assembly* shall be permitted to have multiple Group A occupancy uses, each with an *occupant load* of less 300, or Group B, Group I-1, Condition 2 licensed care facilities, M, R or S occupancies.

5. The building below the *horizontal assembly* shall be protected throughout by an *approved automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and shall be permitted to be any occupancy allowed by this code except Group H.

6. The maximum *building height* in feet (mm) shall not exceed the limits set forth in Section 504.3 for the building having the smaller allowable height as measured from the *grade plane*. Group I-1, Condition 2 licensed care facilities shall be permitted to use the values for maximum height in feet for Group R-2 occupancies.

510.3 Group S-2 enclosed parking garage with Group S-2 open parking garage above.
A Group S-2 enclosed parking garage with not more than one *story* above *grade plane* and located below a Group S-2 *open parking garage* shall be classified as a separate and distinct building for the purpose of determining the type of construction where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The allowable area of the building shall be such that the sum of the ratios of the actual area divided by the allowable area for each separate occupancy shall not exceed 1.

2. The Group S-2 enclosed parking garage is of Type I or II construction and is at least equal to the *fire-resistance* requirements of the Group S-2 *open parking garage*.

3. The height and the number of tiers of the Group S-2 *open parking garage* shall be limited as specified in Table 406.5.4.

4. The floor assembly separating the Group S-2 enclosed parking garage and Group S-2 *open parking garage* shall be protected as required for the floor assembly of the Group S-2 enclosed parking garage. Openings between the Group S-2 enclosed parking garage and Group S-2 *open parking garage*, except *exit* openings, shall not be required to be protected.

5. The Group S-2 enclosed parking garage is used exclusively for the parking or storage of private motor vehicles, but shall be permitted to contain an office, waiting room and toilet room having a total area of not more than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) and mechanical equipment rooms incidental to the operation of the building.

510.4 Parking beneath Group R.
Where a maximum one *story above grade plane* Group S-2 parking garage, enclosed or open, or combination thereof, of Type I construction or open of Type IV construction, with grade entrance, is provided under a building of Group R, the number of *stories* to be used in determining the minimum type of construction shall be measured from the floor above such a parking area. The floor assembly between the parking garage and the Group R above shall comply with the type of construction required for the parking garage and shall also provide a *fire-resistance rating* not less than the mixed occupancy separation required in Section 508.4.

510.5 Group R-1 and R-2 buildings of Type IIIA construction.
The height limitation for buildings of Type IIIA construction in Groups R-1 and R-2 shall be increased to six *stories* and 75 feet (22 860 mm) where the first floor assembly above the *basement* has a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 3 hours and the floor area is subdivided by 2-hour fire-resistance-rated *fire walls* into areas of not more than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2).

510.6 Group R-1 and R-2 buildings of Type IIA construction.
The height limitation for buildings of Type IIA construction in Groups R-1 and R-2 shall be increased to nine *stories* and 100 feet (30 480 mm) where the building is separated by not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from any other building on the *lot* and from *lot lines*, the *exits* are

segregated in an area enclosed by a 2-hour fire-resistance-rated fire wall and the first floor assembly has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 1/ 2hours.

510.7 Open parking garage beneath Groups A, I, B, M and R.
Open parking garages constructed under Groups A, I, B, M and R shall not exceed the height and area limitations permitted under Section 406.5. The height and area of the portion of the building above the *open parking garage* shall not exceed the limitations in Section 503 for the upper occupancy. The height, in both feet and *stories*, of the portion of the building above the *open parking garage* shall be measured from *grade plane* and shall include both the *open parking garage* and the portion of the building above the parking garage.

510.7.1 Fire separation.
Fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711 between the parking occupancy and the upper occupancy shall correspond to the required *fire-resistance rating* prescribed in Table 508.4 for the uses involved. The type of construction shall apply to each occupancy individually, except that structural members, including main bracing within the open parking structure, which is necessary to support the upper occupancy, shall be protected with the more restrictive fire-resistance-rated assemblies of the groups involved as shown in Table 601. *Means of egress* for the upper occupancy shall conform to Chapter 10 and shall be separated from the parking occupancy by *fire barriers* having not less than a 2-hour *fire-resistance rating* as required by Section 707 with *self-closing* doors complying with Section 716 or *horizontal assemblies* having not less than a 2hour *fire-resistance rating* as required by Section 711, with *self-closing* doors complying with Section 716. *Means of egress* from the *open parking garage* shall comply with Section 406.5.

510.8 Group B or M buildings with Group S-2 open parking garage above.
Group B or M occupancies located below a Group S-2 open parking garage of a lesser type of construction shall be considered as a separate and distinct building from the Group S-2 open parking garage for the purpose of determining the type of construction where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The buildings are separated with a *horizontal assembly* having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 2 hours.

2. The occupancies in the building below the *horizontal assembly* are limited to Groups B and M.

3. The occupancy above the *horizontal assembly* is limited to a Group S-2 *open parking garage*.

4. The building below the horizontal assembly is of Type IA construction.

   Exception: The building below the *horizontal assembly* shall be permitted to be of Type IB or II construction, but not less than the type of construction required for the Group S-2 *open parking garage* above, where the building below is not greater than one story in height above grade plane.

5. The height and area of the building below the *horizontal assembly does not exceed the limits set forth in Section 503.*

6. The height and area of the Group S-2 *open parking garage* does not exceed the limits set forth in Section 406.5. The height, in both feet and *stories*, of the Group S-2 *open parking garage* shall be measured from *grade plane* and shall include the building below the *horizontal assembly*.

7. *Exits* serving the Group S-2 *open parking garage* discharge directly to a street or *public way* and are separated from the building below the *horizontal assembly* by 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 2-hour *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

510.9 Multiple buildings above a horizontal assembly.
Where two or more buildings are provided above the *horizontal assembly* separating a Group S-2 parking garage or building below from the buildings above in accordance with the special provisions in Section 510.2, 510.3 or 510.8, the buildings above the *horizontal assembly* shall be regarded as separate and distinct buildings from each other and shall comply with all other provisions of this code as applicable to each separate and distinct building.

CHAPTER 6
TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION

SECTION 601
GENERAL

TABLE 601
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING REQUIREMENTS FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS (HOURS)

BUILDING ELEMENT	TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV	TYPE V	
	A	B	A	B	A	B	HT	A	B
Primary structural frame[f] (see Section 202)	3[a]	2[a]	1	0	1	0	HT	1	0
Bearing walls									
Exterior[e, f]	3	2	1	0	2	2	2	1	0
Interior	3[a]	2[a]	1	0	1	0	1/HT	1	0
Nonbearing walls and partitions Exterior	See Table 602								
Nonbearing walls and partitions Interior[d]	0	0	0	0	0	0	See Section 602.4.6	0	0
Floor construction and associated secondary members (see Section 202)	2	2	1	0	1	0	HT	1	0
Roof construction and associated secondary members (see Section 202)	$1\frac{1}{2}$[b]	1[b,c]	1[b,c]	0[c]	1[b,c]	0	HT	1[b,c]	0

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Roof supports: Fire-resistance ratings of primary structural frame and bearing walls are permitted to be reduced by 1 hour where supporting a roof only.
b. Except in Group F-1, H, M and S-1 occupancies, fire protection of structural members shall not be required, including protection of roof framing and decking where every part of the roof construction is 20 feet or more above any floor immediately below. Fire-retardant-treated wood members shall be allowed to be used for such unprotected members.
c. In all occupancies, heavy timber shall be allowed where a 1-hour or less fire-resistance rating is required.
d. Not less than the fire-resistance rating required by other sections of this code.
e. Not less than the fire-resistance rating based on fire separation distance (see Table 602).
f. Not less than the fire-resistance rating as referenced in Section 704.10.

601.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall control the classification of buildings as to type of construction.

SECTION 602
CONSTRUCTION CLASSIFICATION

TABLE 602
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING REQUIREMENTS FOR EXTERIOR WALLS BASED ON FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE[a, d, g]

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE = X (feet)	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION	OCCUPANCY GROUP H[e]	OCCUPANCY GROUP F-1, M, S-1[f]	OCCUPANCY GROUP A, B, E, F-2, I, R, S-2, U[h]
X < 5[b]	All	3	2	1
5 ≤ X < 10	IA	3	2	1
	Others	2	1	1
10 ≤ X < 30	IA, IB	2	1	1[c]
	IIB, VB	1	0	0
	Others	1	1	1[c]
X ≥ 30	All	0	0	0

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Load-bearing exterior walls shall also comply with the fire-resistance rating requirements of Table 601.
b. See Section 706.1.1 for party walls.
c. Open parking garages complying with Section 406 shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating.
d. The fire-resistance rating of an exterior wall is determined based upon the fire separation distance of the exterior wall and the story in which the wall is located.
e. For special requirements for Group H occupancies, see Section 415.6.
f. For special requirements for Group S aircraft hangars, see Section 412.4.1.
g. Where Table 705.8 permits nonbearing exterior walls with unlimited area of unprotected openings, the required fire-resistance rating for the exterior walls is 0 hours.
h. For a building containing only a Group U occupancy private garage or carport, the exterior wall shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1523 mm) or greater.

602.1 General.
Buildings and structures erected or to be erected, altered or extended in height or area shall be classified in one of the five construction types defined in Sections 602.2 through 602.5. The building elements shall have a *fire-resistance rating* not less than that specified in Table 601 and exterior walls shall have a *fire-resistance rating* not less than that specified in Table 602. Where required to have a *fire-resistance rating* by Table 601, building elements shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section 703.2. The protection of openings, ducts and air transfer openings in building elements shall not be required unless required by other provisions of this code.

602.1.1 Minimum requirements.
A building or portion thereof shall not be required to conform to the details of a type of construction higher than that type which meets the minimum requirements based on occupancy even though certain features of such a building actually conform to a higher type of construction.

602.2 Types I and II.
Types I and II construction are those types of construction in which the building elements listed in Table 601 are of noncombustible materials, except as permitted in Section 603 and elsewhere in this code.

602.3 Type III.
Type III construction is that type of construction in which the exterior walls are of noncombustible materials and the interior building elements are of any material permitted by this code. *Fire-retardant-treated wood* framing complying with Section 2303.2 shall be permitted within *exterior wall* assemblies of a 2-hour rating or less.

602.4 Type IV.
Type IV construction (Heavy Timber, HT) is that type of construction in which the exterior walls are of noncombustible materials and the interior building elements are of solid or laminated wood without concealed spaces. The details of Type IV construction shall comply with the provisions of this section and Section 2304.11. Exterior walls complying with Section 602.4.1 or 602.4.2 shall be permitted. Minimum solid sawn nominal dimensions are required for structures built using Type IV construction (HT). For glued-laminated members and structural composite lumber (SCL) members, the equivalent net finished width and depths corresponding to the minimum nominal width and depths of solid sawn lumber are required as specified in Table 602.4. *Crosslaminated timber* (CLT) dimensions used in this section are actual dimensions.

TABLE 602.4
WOOD MEMBER SIZE EQUIVALENCIES

MINIMUM NOMINAL SOLID SAWN SIZE		MINIMUM GLUED-LAMINATED NET SIZE		MINIMUM STRUCTURAL COMPOSITE LUMBER NET SIZE	
Width, inch	Depth, inch	Width, inch	Depth, inch	Width, inch	Depth, inch
8	8	$6\frac{3}{4}$	$8\frac{1}{4}$	7	$7\frac{1}{2}$
6	10	5	$10\frac{1}{2}$	$5\frac{1}{4}$	$9\frac{1}{2}$
6	8	5	$8\frac{1}{4}$	$5\frac{1}{4}$	$7\frac{1}{2}$
6	6	5	6	$5\frac{1}{4}$	$5\frac{1}{2}$
4	6	3	$6\frac{7}{8}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$5\frac{1}{2}$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

602.4.1 Fire-retardant-treated wood in exterior walls.
Fire-retardant-treated wood framing complying with Section 2303.2 shall be permitted within exterior wall assemblies with a 2-hour rating or less.

602.4.2 Cross-laminated timber in exterior walls.
Cross-laminated timber complying with Section 2303.1.4 shall be permitted within exterior wall assemblies with a 2-hour rating or less, provided the exterior surface of the cross-laminated timber is protected by one the following:

1. Fire-retardant-treated wood sheathing complying with Section 2303.2 and not less than 15/ 32 inch (12 mm) thick;

2. Gypsum board not less than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) thick; or

3. A noncombustible material.

602.4.3 Columns.
Wood columns shall be sawn or glued laminated and shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm), nominal, in any dimension where supporting floor loads and not less than 6 inches (152 mm) nominal in width and not less than 8 inches (203 mm) nominal in depth where supporting roof and ceiling loads only. Columns shall be continuous or superimposed and connected in an *approved* manner. Protection in accordance with Section 704.2 is not required.

602.4.4 Floor framing.
Wood beams and girders shall be of sawn or glued-laminated timber and shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm) nominal in width and not less than 10 inches (254 mm) nominal in depth. Framed sawn or glued-laminated timber arches, which spring from the floor line and support floor loads, shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) nominal in any dimension. Framed timber trusses supporting floor loads shall have members of not less than 8 inches (203 mm) nominal in any dimension.

602.4.5 Roof framing.
Wood-frame or glued-laminated arches for roof construction, which spring from the floor line or from grade and do not support floor loads, shall have members not less than 6 inches (152 mm) nominal in width and have not less than 8 inches (203 mm) nominal in depth for the lower half of the height and not less than 6 inches (152 mm) nominal in depth for the upper half. Framed or glued-laminated arches for roof construction that spring from the top of walls or wall abutments, framed timber trusses and other roof framing, which do not support floor loads, shall have members not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in width and not less than 6 inches (152 mm) nominal in depth. Spaced members shall be permitted to be composed of two or more pieces not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in thickness where blocked solidly throughout their intervening spaces or where spaces are tightly closed by a continuous wood cover plate of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal in thickness secured to the underside of the members. Splice plates shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in thickness. Where protected by *approved* automatic sprinklers under the roof deck, framing members shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in width.

602.4.6 Floors.
Floors shall be without concealed spaces. Wood floors shall be constructed in accordance with Section 602.4.6.1 or 602.4.6.2.

602.4.6.1 Sawn or glued-laminated plank floors.
Sawn or glued-laminated plank floors shall be one of the following:

1. Sawn or glued-laminated planks, splined or tongue-and-groove, of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in thickness covered with 1-inch (25 mm) nominal dimension tongue-and-groove flooring, laid crosswise or diagonally, 15/32-inch (12 mm) wood structural panel or 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) particleboard.

2. Planks not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in width set on edge close together and well spiked and covered with 1-inch (25 mm) nominal dimension flooring or 15/32-inch (12 mm) wood structural panel or 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) particleboard.

The lumber shall be laid so that no continuous line of joints will occur except at points of support. Floors shall not extend closer than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) to walls. Such 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) space shall be covered by a molding fastened to the wall and so arranged that it will not obstruct the swelling or shrinkage movements of the floor. Corbelling of masonry walls under the floor shall be permitted to be used in place of molding.

602.4.6.2 Cross-laminated timber floors.
Cross-laminated timber shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness. Cross-laminated timber shall be continuous from support to support and mechanically fastened to one another. Cross-laminated timber shall be permitted to be connected to walls without a shrinkage gap providing swelling or shrinking is considered in the design. Corbelling of masonry walls under the floor shall be permitted to be used.

602.4.7 Roofs.
Roofs shall be without concealed spaces and wood roof decks shall be sawn or glued laminated, splined or tongue-and-groove plank, not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal in thickness; 11/8-inch-thick (32 mm) wood structural panel (exterior glue); planks not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in width, set on edge close together and laid as required for floors; or of cross-laminated timber. Other types of decking shall be permitted to be used if providing equivalent fire resistance and structural properties.

Cross-laminated timber roofs shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in thickness and shall be continuous from support to support and mechanically fastened to one another.

602.4.8 Partitions and walls.
Partitions and walls shall comply with Section 602.4.8.1 or 602.4.8.2.

602.4.8.1 Interior walls and partitions.
Interior walls and partitions shall be of solid wood construction formed by not less than two layers of 1-inch (25 mm) matched boards or laminated construction 4 inches (102 mm) thick, or of 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

602.4.8.2 Exterior walls.
Exterior walls shall be of one of the following:

1. Noncombustible materials.

2. Not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in thickness and constructed of one of the following:

   2.1. *Fire-retardant-treated wood* in accordance with Section 2303.2 and complying with Section 602.4.1.

   2.2. *Cross-laminated timber* complying with Section 602.4.2.

602.4.9 Exterior structural members.
Where a horizontal separation of 20 feet (6096 mm) or more is provided, wood columns and arches conforming to heavy timber sizes shall be permitted to be used externally.

602.5 Type V.
Type V construction is that type of construction in which the structural elements, *exterior walls* and interior walls are of any materials permitted by this code.

SECTION 603
COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL IN TYPES I AND II CONSTRUCTION

603.1 Allowable materials.
Combustible materials shall be permitted in buildings of Type I or II construction in the following applications and in accordance with Sections 603.1.1 through 603.1.3:

1. *Fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be permitted in:

   1.1. Nonbearing partitions where the required *fireresistance rating* is 2 hours or less.

   1.2. Nonbearing *exterior walls* where fire-resistance-rated construction is not required.

   1.3. Roof construction, including girders, trusses, framing and decking.

   Exception: In buildings of Type IA construction exceeding two *stories above grade plane*, *fire-retardant-treated wood* is not permitted in roof construction where the vertical distance from the upper floor to the roof is less than 20 feet (6096 mm).

2. Thermal and acoustical insulation, other than foam plastics, having a *flame spread index* of not more than 25.

   Exceptions:

1. Insulation placed between two layers of noncombustible materials without an intervening airspace shall be allowed to have a *flame spread index* of not more than 100.

2. Insulation installed between a finished floor and solid decking without intervening airspace shall be allowed to have a *flame spread index* of not more than 200.

3. Foam plastics in accordance with Chapter 26.

4. Roof coverings that have an A, B or C classification.

5. *Interior floor finish* and floor covering materials installed in accordance with Section 804.

6. Millwork such as doors, door frames, window sashes and frames.

7. *Interior wall and ceiling finishes* installed in accordance with Sections 801 and 803.

8. *Trim* installed in accordance with Section 806.

9. Where not installed greater than 15 feet (4572 mm) above grade, show windows, nailing or furring strips and wooden bulkheads below show windows, including their frames, aprons and show cases.

10. Finish flooring installed in accordance with Section 805.

11. Partitions dividing portions of stores, offices or similar places occupied by one tenant only and that do not establish a *corridor* serving an *occupant load* of 30 or more shall be permitted to be constructed of *fireretardant-treated wood*, 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction or of wood panels or similar light construction up to 6 feet (1829 mm) in height.

12. Stages and platforms constructed in accordance with Sections 410.3 and 410.4, respectively.

13. Combustible *exterior wall coverings*, balconies and similar projections and bay or oriel windows in accordance with Chapter 14.

14. Blocking such as for handrails, millwork, cabinets and window and door frames.

15. Light-transmitting plastics as permitted by Chapter 26.

16. Mastics and caulking materials applied to provide flexible seals between components of *exterior wall* construction.

17. Exterior plastic veneer installed in accordance with Section 2605.2.

18. Nailing or furring strips as permitted by Section 803.13.

19. Heavy timber as permitted by Note c to Table 601 and Sections 602.4.7 and 1406.3.

20. Aggregates, component materials and admixtures as permitted by Section 703.2.2.

21. Sprayed fire-resistant materials and intumescent and mastic fire-resistant coatings, determined on the basis of *fire resistance* tests in accordance with Section 703.2 and installed in accordance with Sections 1705.14 and 1705.15, respectively.

22. Materials used to protect penetrations in fire-resistance-rated assemblies in accordance with Section 714.

23. Materials used to protect joints in fire-resistance-rated assemblies in accordance with Section 715.

24. Materials allowed in the concealed spaces of buildings of Types I and II construction in accordance with Section 718.5.

25. Materials exposed within plenums complying with Section 602 of the *International Mechanical Code*.

26. Wall construction of freezers and coolers of less than 1,000 square feet (92.9 m^2), in size, lined on both sides with noncombustible materials and the building is protected throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

603.1.1 Ducts.
The use of nonmetallic ducts shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the limitations of the *International Mechanical Code*.

603.1.2 Piping.
The use of combustible piping materials shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the limitations of the *International Mechanical Code* and the *International Plumbing Code*.

603.1.3 Electrical.
The use of electrical wiring methods with combustible insulation, tubing, raceways and related components shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the limitations of this code.

CHAPTER 7
FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

SECTION 701
GENERAL

701.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, systems and assemblies used for structural *fire resistance* and fire-resistance-rated construction separation of adjacent spaces to safeguard against the spread of fire and smoke within a building and the spread of fire to or from buildings.

701.2 Multiple use fire assemblies.
Fire assemblies that serve multiple purposes in a building shall comply with all of the requirements that are applicable for each of the individual fire assemblies.

SECTION 702
DEFINITIONS

702.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

ANNULAR SPACE.

BUILDING ELEMENT.

CEILING RADIATION DAMPER.

COMBINATION FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER.

CORRIDOR DAMPER.

DAMPER.

DRAFTSTOP

F RATING.

FIRE BARRIER.

FIRE DAMPER.

FIRE DOOR.

FIRE DOOR ASSEMBLY.

FIRE PARTITION.

FIRE PROTECTION RATING.

FIRE-RATED GLAZING.

FIRE RESISTANCE.

FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING.

FIRE-RESISTANT JOINT SYSTEM.

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE.

FIRE WALL.

FIRE WINDOW ASSEMBLY.

FIREBLOCKING.

FLOOR FIRE DOOR ASSEMBLY.

HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLY.

JOINT.

L RATING.

MEMBRANE PENETRATION.

MEMBRANE-PENETRATION FIRESTOP.

MEMBRANE-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM.

MINERAL FIBER.

MINERAL WOOL.

PENETRATION FIRESTOP.

SELF-CLOSING.

SHAFT.

SHAFT ENCLOSURE.

SMOKE BARRIER.

SMOKE COMPARTMENT.

SMOKE DAMPER.

SPLICE.

T RATING.

THROUGH PENETRATION.

THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM.

SECTION 703
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS AND FIRE TESTS

703.1 Scope.
Materials prescribed herein for *fire resistance* shall conform to the requirements of this chapter.

703.2 Fire-resistance ratings.
The *fire-resistance rating* of building elements, components or assemblies shall be determined in accordance with the test procedures set forth in ASTM E119 or UL 263 or in accordance with Section 703.3. The *fire-resistance rating* of penetrations and fire-resistant joint systems shall be determined in accordance Sections 714 and 715, respectively.

703.2.1 Nonsymmetrical wall construction.
Interior walls and partitions of nonsymmetrical construction shall be tested with both faces exposed to the furnace, and the assigned *fire-resistance rating* shall be the shortest duration obtained from the two tests conducted in compliance with ASTM E119 or UL 263. Where evidence is furnished to show that the wall was tested with the least fire-resistant side exposed to the furnace, subject to acceptance of the *building official*, the wall need not be subjected to tests from the opposite side (see Section 705.5 for *exterior walls*).

703.2.2 Combustible components.
Combustible aggregates are permitted in gypsum and Portland cement concrete mixtures for fire-resistance-rated construction. Any component material or admixture is permitted in assemblies if the resulting tested assembly meets the fire-resistance test requirements of this code.

703.2.3 Restrained classification.
Fire-resistance-rated assemblies tested under ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not be considered to be restrained unless evidence satisfactory to the *building official* is furnished by the *registered design professional* showing that the construction qualifies for a restrained classification in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263. Restrained construction shall be identified on the *construction documents*.

703.2.4 Supplemental features.
Where materials, systems or devices that have not been tested as part of a fireresistance-rated assembly are incorporated into the building element, component or assembly, sufficient data shall be made available to the *building official* to show that the required *fire-resistance rating* is not reduced.

703.2.5 Exterior bearing walls.
In determining the *fireresistance rating* of exterior bearing walls, compliance with the ASTM E119 or UL 263 criteria for unexposed surface temperature rise and ignition of cotton waste due to passage of flame or gases is required only for a period of time corresponding to the required *fire-resistance rating* of an exterior nonbearing wall with the same *fire separation distance*, and in a building of the same group. Where the *fire-resistance rating* determined in accordance with this exception exceeds the *fire-resistance rating* determined in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263, the fire exposure time period, water pressure and application duration criteria for the hose stream test of ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall be based on the *fire-resistance rating* determined in accordance with this section.

703.3 Methods for determining fire resistance.
The application of any of the methods listed in this section shall be based on the fire exposure and acceptance criteria specified in ASTM E119 or UL 263. The required *fire resistance* of a building element, component or assembly shall be permitted to be established by any of the following methods or procedures:

1. Fire-resistance designs documented in approved sources.

2. Prescriptive designs of fire-resistance-rated building elements, components or assemblies as prescribed in Section 721.

3. Calculations in accordance with Section 722.

4. Engineering analysis based on a comparison of building element, component or assemblies designs having *fire-resistance ratings* as determined by the test procedures set forth in ASTM E119 or UL 263.

5. Alternative protection methods as allowed by Section 104.11.

6. Fire-resistance designs certified by an approved agency.

703.4 Automatic sprinklers.
Under the prescriptive fireresistance requirements of this code, the *fire-resistance rating* of a building element, component or assembly shall be established without the use of *automatic sprinklers* or any other fire suppression system being incorporated as part of the assembly tested in accordance with the fire exposure, procedures and acceptance criteria specified in ASTM E119 or UL 263. However, this section shall not prohibit or limit the duties and powers of the *building official* allowed by Sections 104.10 and 104.11.

703.5 Noncombustibility tests.
The tests indicated in Sections 703.5.1 and 703.5.2 shall serve as criteria for acceptance of building materials as set forth in Sections 602.2, 602.3 and 602.4 in Type I, II, III and IV construction. The term “noncombustible” does not apply to the flame spread characteristics of *interior finish* or *trim* materials. A material shall not be classified as a noncombustible building construction material if it is subject to an increase in combustibility or flame spread beyond the limitations herein established through the effects of age, moisture or other atmospheric conditions.

703.5.1 Elementary materials.
Materials required to be noncombustible shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E136.

703.5.2 Composite materials.
Materials having a structural base of noncombustible material as determined in accordance with Section 703.5.1 with a surfacing not more than 0.125 inch (3.18 mm) thick that has a *flame spread index* not greater than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 shall be acceptable as noncombustible materials.

703.6 Fire-resistance-rated glazing.
Fire-resistance-rated glazing, when tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and complying with the requirements of Section 707, shall be permitted. Fire-resistance-rated

glazing shall bear a *label* marked in accordance with Table 716.3 issued by an agency and shall be permanently identified on the glazing.

703.7 Marking and identification.
Where there is an accessible concealed floor, floor-ceiling or *attic* space, *fire walls*, *fire barriers*, *fire partitions*, *smoke barriers* and smoke partitions or any other wall required to have protected openings or penetrations shall be effectively and permanently identified with signs or stenciling in the concealed space. Such identification shall:

1. Be located within 15 feet (4572 mm) of the end of each wall and at intervals not exceeding 30 feet (9144 mm) measured horizontally along the wall or partition.

2. Include lettering not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in height with a minimum 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) stroke in a contrasting color incorporating the suggested wording, “FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER—PROTECT ALL OPENINGS,” or other wording.

SECTION 704
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF STRUCTURAL MEMBERS

704.1 Requirements.
The *fire-resistance ratings* of structural members and assemblies shall comply with this section and the requirements for the type of construction as specified in Table 601. The *fire-resistance ratings* shall be not less than the ratings required for the fire-resistance-rated assemblies supported by the structural members.

> **Exception:** *Fire barriers*, *fire partitions*, *smoke barriers* and *horizontal assemblies* as provided in Sections 707.5, 708.4, 709.4 and 711.2, respectively.

704.2 Column protection.
Where columns are required to have protection to achieve a *fire-resistance rating*, the entire column shall be provided individual encasement protection by protecting it on all sides for the full column height, including connections to other structural members, with materials having the required *fire-resistance rating*. Where the column extends through a ceiling, the encasement protection shall be continuous from the top of the foundation or floor/ceiling assembly below through the ceiling space to the top of the column.

704.3 Protection of the primary structural frame other than columns.
Members of the primary structural frame other than columns that are required to have protection to achieve a fire-resistance rating and support more than two floors or one floor and roof, or support a load-bearing wall or a nonload-bearing wall more than two stories high, shall be provided individual encasement protection by protecting them on all sides for the full length, including connections to other structural members, with materials having the required fire-resistance rating.

> **Exception:** Individual encasement protection on all sides shall be permitted on all exposed sides provided the extent of protection is in accordance with the required fire-resistance rating, as determined in Section 703.

704.4 Protection of secondary members.
Secondary members that are required to have protection to achieve a *fireresistance rating* shall be protected by individual encasement protection.

704.4.1 Light-frame construction.
Studs and boundary elements that are integral elements in *load-bearing walls* of light-frame construction shall be permitted to have required *fire-resistance ratings* provided by the membrane protection provided for the *load-bearing wall*.

704.4.2 Horizontal assemblies.
Horizontal assemblies are permitted to be protected with a membrane or ceiling where the membrane or ceiling provides the required *fireresistance rating* and is installed in accordance with Section 711.

704.5 Truss protection.
The required thickness and construction of fire-resistance-rated assemblies enclosing trusses shall be based on the results of full-scale tests or combinations of tests on truss components or on *approved* calculations based on such tests that satisfactorily demonstrate that the assembly has the required *fire resistance*.

704.6 Attachments to structural members.
The edges of lugs, brackets, rivets and bolt heads attached to structural members shall be permitted to extend to within 1 inch (25 mm) of the surface of the fire protection.

704.7 Reinforcing.
Thickness of protection for concrete or masonry reinforcement shall be measured to the outside of the reinforcement except that stirrups and spiral reinforcement ties are permitted to project not more than 0.5-inch (12.7 mm) into the protection.

704.8 Embedments and enclosures.
Pipes, wires, conduits, ducts or other service facilities shall not be embedded in the required fire protective covering of a structural member that is required to be individually encased.

704.9 Impact protection.
Where the fire protective covering of a structural member is subject to impact damage from moving vehicles, the handling of merchandise or other activity, the fire protective covering shall be protected by corner guards or by a substantial jacket of metal or other noncombustible material to a height adequate to provide full protection, but not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the finished floor.

Exception: Corner protection is not required on concrete columns in open or enclosed parking garages.

704.10 Exterior structural members.
Load-bearing structural members located within the *exterior walls* or on the outside of a building or structure shall be provided with the highest *fire-resistance rating* as determined in accordance with the following:

1. As required by Table 601 for the type of building element based on the type of construction of the building;

2. As required by Table 601 for exterior bearing walls based on the type of construction; and

3. As required by Table 602 for *exterior walls* based on the *fire separation distance*.

704.11 Bottom flange protection.
Fire protection is not required at the bottom flange of lintels, shelf angles and plates, spanning not more than 6 feet 4 inches (1931 mm) whether part of the primary structural frame or not, and from the bottom flange of lintels, shelf angles and plates not part of the structural frame, regardless of span.

704.12 Seismic isolation systems.
Fire-resistance ratings for the isolation system shall meet the *fire-resistance rating* required for the columns, walls or other structural elements in which the isolation system is installed in accordance with Table 601. Isolation systems required to have a *fire-resistance rating* shall be protected with *approved* materials or construction assemblies designed to provide the same degree of *fire resistance* as the structural element in which the system is installed when tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 (see Section 703.2).

Such isolation system protection applied to isolator units shall be capable of retarding the transfer of heat to the isolator unit in such a manner that the required gravity load-carrying capacity of the isolator unit will not be impaired after exposure to the standard time-temperature curve fire test prescribed in ASTM E119 or UL 263 for a duration not less than that required for the *fire-resistance rating* of the structure element in which the system is installed.

Such isolation system protection applied to isolator units shall be suitably designed and securely installed so as not to dislodge, loosen, sustain damage or otherwise impair its ability to accommodate the seismic movements for which the isolator unit is designed and to maintain its integrity for the purpose of providing the required fire-resistance protection.

704.13 Sprayed fire-resistant materials (SFRM).
Sprayed fire-resistant materials (SFRM) shall comply with Sections 704.13.1 through 704.13.5.

704.13.1 Fire-resistance rating.
The application of SFRM shall be consistent with the *fire-resistance rating* and the listing, including, but not limited to, minimum thickness and dry density of the applied SFRM, method of application, substrate surface conditions and the use of bonding adhesives, sealants, reinforcing or other materials.

704.13.2 Manufacturer's installation instructions.
The application of SFRM shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. The instructions shall include, but are not limited to, substrate temperatures and surface conditions and SFRM handling, storage, mixing, conveyance, method of application, curing and ventilation.

704.13.3 Substrate condition.
The SFRM shall be applied to a substrate in compliance with Sections 704.13.3.1 through 704.13.3.2.

704.13.3.1 Surface conditions.
Substrates to receive SFRM shall be free of dirt, oil, grease, release agents, loose scale and any other condition that prevents adhesion. The substrates shall be free of primers, paints and encapsulants other than those fire tested and *listed* by a nationally recognized testing agency. Primed, painted or encapsulated steel shall be allowed, provided that testing has demonstrated that required adhesion is maintained.

704.13.3.2 Primers, paints and encapsulants.
Where the SFRM is to be applied over primers, paints or encapsulants other than those specified in the listing, the material shall be field tested in accordance with ASTM E736. Where testing of the SFRM with primers, paints or encapsulants demonstrates that required adhesion is maintained, SFRM shall be permitted to be applied to primed, painted or encapsulated wide flange steel shapes in accordance with the following conditions:

1. The beam flange width does not exceed 12 inches (305 mm); or

2. The column flange width does not exceed 16 inches (400 mm); or

3. The beam or column web depth does not exceed 16 inches (400 mm).

4. The average and minimum bond strength values shall be determined based on a minimum of five bond tests conducted in accordance with ASTM E736. Bond tests conducted in accordance with ASTM E736 shall indicate an average bond strength of not less than 80 percent and an individual bond strength of not less than 50 percent, when compared to the bond strength of the SFRM as applied to clean uncoated $^{1}/_{8}$-inch-thick (3.2 mm) steel plate.

704.13.4 Temperature.
A minimum ambient and substrate temperature of 40°F (4.44°C) shall be maintained during and for not fewer than 24 hours after the application of the SFRM, unless the manufacturer's instructions allow otherwise.

704.13.5 Finished condition.
The finished condition of SFRM applied to structural members or assemblies shall not, upon complete drying or curing, exhibit cracks, voids, spalls, delamination or any exposure of the substrate. Surface irregularities of SFRM shall be deemed acceptable.

SECTION 705
EXTERIOR WALLS

705.1 General.
Exterior walls shall comply with this section.

705.2 Projections.
Cornices, eave overhangs, exterior balconies and similar projections extending beyond the exterior wall shall conform to the requirements of this section and Section 1406. Exterior egress balconies and exterior exit stairways and ramps shall comply with Sections 1021 and 1027,

respectively. Projections shall not extend any closer to the line used to determine the fire separation distance than shown in Table 705.2.

Exception: Buildings on the same lot and considered as portions of one building in accordance with Section 705.3 are not required to comply with this section for projections between the buildings.

TABLE 705.2
MINIMUM DISTANCE OF PROJECTION

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (FSD)	MINIMUM DISTANCE FROM LINE USED TO DETERMINE FSD
0 feet to 2 feet	Projections not permitted
Greater than 2 feet to 3 feet	24 inches
Greater than 3 feet to less than 30 feet	24 inches plus 8 inches for every foot of FSD beyond 3 feet or fraction thereof
30 feet or greater	20 feet

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

705.2.1 Type I and II construction.
Projections from walls of Type I or II construction shall be of noncombustible materials or combustible materials as allowed by Sections 1406.3 and 1406.4.

705.2.2 Type III, IV or V construction.
Projections from walls of Type III, IV or V construction shall be of any *approved* material.

705.2.3 Combustible projections.
Combustible projections extending to within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the line used to determine the *fire separation distance* shall be of not less than 1-hour *fire-resistance-rated* construction, Type IV construction, *fire-retardant-treated wood* or as required by Section 1406.3.

Exception: Type VB construction shall be allowed for combustible projections in Group R-3 and U occupancies with a fire separation distance greater than or equal to 5 feet (1524 mm).

705.3 Buildings on the same lot.
For the purposes of determining the required wall and opening protection, projections and roof-covering requirements, buildings on the same lot shall be assumed to have an imaginary line between them.

Where a new building is to be erected on the same lot as an existing building, the location of the assumed imaginary line with relation to the existing building shall be such that the *exterior wall* and opening protection of the existing building meet the criteria as set forth in Sections 705.5 and 705.8.

Exceptions:

1. Two or more buildings on the same lot shall be either regulated as separate buildings or shall be considered as portions of one building if the aggregate area of such buildings is within the limits specified in Chapter 5 for a single building. Where the buildings contain different occupancy groups or are of different types of construction, the area shall be that allowed for the most restrictive occupancy or construction.

2. Where an S-2 parking garage of Construction Type I or IIA is erected on the same lot as a Group R-2 building, and there is no *fire separation distance* between these buildings, then the adjoining *exterior walls* between the buildings are permitted to have occupant use openings in accordance with Section 706.8. However, opening protectives in such openings shall only be required in the exterior wall of the S-2 parking garage, not in the exterior wall openings in the R-2 building, and these opening protectives in the exterior wall of the S-2 parking garage shall be not less than 1 1/2-hour fire protection rating.

705.4 Materials.
Exterior walls shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

705.5 Fire-resistance ratings.
Exterior walls shall be fireresistance rated in accordance with Tables 601 and 602 and this section. The required *fire-resistance rating* of *exterior walls* with a *fire separation distance* of greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be rated for exposure to fire from the inside. The required *fire-resistance rating* of *exterior walls* with a *fire separation distance* of less than or equal to 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be rated for exposure to fire from both sides.

705.6 Structural stability.
Exterior walls shall extend to the height required by Section 705.11. Interior structural elements that brace the exterior wall but that are not located within the plane of the exterior wall shall have the minimum *fire-resistance rating* required in Table 601 for that structural element. Structural elements that brace the exterior wall but are located outside of the exterior wall or within the plane of the exterior wall shall have the minimum *fire-resistance rating* required in Tables 601 and 602 for the exterior wall.

705.7 Unexposed surface temperature.
Where protected openings are not limited by Section 705.8, the limitation on the rise of temperature on the unexposed surface of *exterior walls* as required by ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not apply. Where protected openings are limited by Section 705.8, the limitation on the rise of temperature on the unexposed surface of *exterior walls* as required by ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not apply provided that a correction is made for radiation from the unexposed exterior wall surface in accordance with the following formula:

$$A_e = A + (A_f \times F_{eo}) \quad \textbf{(Equation 7-1)}$$

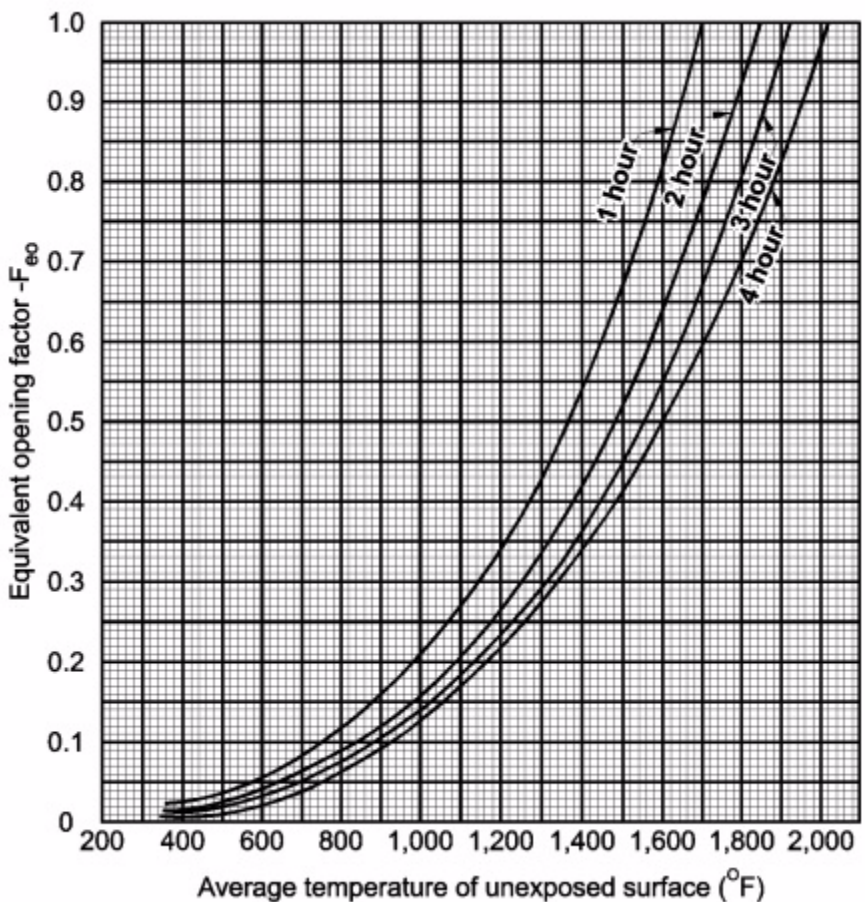
where:

A_e = Equivalent area of protected openings.

A = Actual area of protected openings.

A_f = Area of *exterior wall* surface in the *story* under consideration exclusive of openings, on which the temperature limitations of ASTM E119 or UL 263 for walls are exceeded.

F_{eo} = An "equivalent opening factor" derived from Figure 705.7 based on the average temperature of the unexposed wall surface and the *fire-resistance rating* of the wall.



For SI: °C = [(°F) - 32] /1.8.

FIGURE 705.7
EQUIVALENT OPENING FACTOR

705.8 Openings.
Openings in *exterior walls* shall comply with Sections 705.8.1 through 705.8.6.

TABLE 705.8
MAXIMUM AREA OF EXTERIOR WALL OPENINGS BASED ON FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE AND DEGREE OF OPENING PROTECTION

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (feet)	DEGREE OF OPENING PROTECTION	ALLOWABLE AREA[a]
0 to less than 3[b, c, k]	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	Not Permitted[k]
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)[i]	Not Permitted[k]
	Protected (P)	Not Permitted[k]
3 to less than 5[d, e]	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	Not Permitted
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)[i]	15%
	Protected (P)	15%
5 to less than 10[e, f, j]	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	10%[h]
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)[i]	25%
	Protected (P)	25%
10 to less than 15[e, f, g, j]	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	15%[h]
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)[i]	45%
	Protected (P)	45%
15 to less than 20[f, g, j]	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	25%
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)[i]	75%
	Protected (P)	75%
20 to less than 25[f, g, j]	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	45%
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)[i]	No Limit
	Protected (P)	No Limit
25 to less than 30[f, g, j]	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	70%
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)[i]	No Limit
	Protected (P)	No Limit
30 or greater	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	No Limit
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)[i]	No Limit
	Protected (P)	No Limit

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
UP, NS = Unprotected openings in buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
UP, S = Unprotected openings in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
P = Openings protected with an opening protective assembly in accordance with Section 705.8.2.

a. Values indicated are the percentage of the area of the exterior wall, per story.
b. For the requirements for fire walls of buildings with differing heights, see Section 706.6.1.
c. For openings in a fire wall for buildings on the same lot, see Section 706.8.
d. The maximum percentage of unprotected and protected openings shall be 25 percent for Group R-3 occupancies.

e. Unprotected openings shall not be permitted for openings with a fire separation distance of less than 15 feet for Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies.
f. The area of unprotected and protected openings shall not be limited for Group R-3 occupancies, with a fire separation distance of 5 feet or greater.
g. The area of openings in an open parking structure with a fire separation distance of 10 feet or greater shall not be limited.
h. Includes buildings accessory to Group R-3.
i. Not applicable to Group H-1, H-2 and H-3 occupancies.
j. The area of openings in a building containing only a Group U occupancy private garage or carport with a fire separation distance of 5 feet (1523 mm) or greater shall not be limited.
k. For openings between S-2 parking garage and Group R-2 building, see Section 705.3, Exception 2.

705.8.1 Allowable area of openings.
The maximum area of unprotected and protected openings permitted in an *exterior wall* in any *story* of a building shall not exceed the percentages specified in Table 705.8.

Exceptions:

1. In other than Group H occupancies, unlimited unprotected openings are permitted in the first *story* above grade plane either:

   1.1. Where the wall faces a street and has a *fire separation distance* of more than 15 feet (4572 mm); or

   1.2. Where the wall faces an unoccupied space. The unoccupied space shall be on the same lot or dedicated for public use, shall be not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) in width and shall have access from a street by a posted fire lane in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

2. Buildings whose exterior bearing walls, exterior nonbearing walls and exterior primary structural frame are not required to be fire-resistance rated shall be permitted to have unlimited unprotected openings.

705.8.2 Protected openings.
Where openings are required to be protected, *fire doors* and fire shutters shall comply with Section 716.5 and *fire window assemblies* shall comply with Section 716.6.

Exception: Opening protectives are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the exterior openings are protected by a water curtain using automatic sprinklers *approved* for that use.

705.8.3 Unprotected openings.
Where unprotected openings are permitted, windows and doors shall be constructed of any *approved* materials. Glazing shall conform to the requirements of Chapters 24 and 26.

705.8.4 Mixed openings.
Where both unprotected and protected openings are located in the *exterior wall* in any *story* of a building, the total area of openings shall be determined in accordance with the following:

$$(A_p/a_p) + (A_u/a_u) \leq 1 \qquad \textbf{(Equation 7-2)}$$

where:

A_p	=	Actual area of protected openings, or the equivalent area of protected openings, A_e (see Section 705.7).
a_p	=	Allowable area of protected openings.
A_u	=	Actual area of unprotected openings.
a_u	=	Allowable area of unprotected openings.

705.8.5 Vertical separation of openings.
Openings in *exterior walls* in adjacent *stories* shall be separated vertically to protect against fire spread on the exterior of the buildings where the openings are within 5 feet (1524 mm) of each other horizontally and the opening in the lower *story* is not a protected opening with a *fire protection rat*ing of not less than 3/4 hour. Such openings shall be separated vertically not less than 3 feet (914 mm) by spandrel girders, *exterior walls* or other similar assemblies that have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 1 hour, rated for exposure to fire from both sides, or by flame barriers that extend horizontally not less than 30 inches (762 mm) beyond the *exterior wall*. Flame barriers shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 1 hour. The unexposed surface temperature limitations specified in ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not apply to the flame barriers or vertical separation unless otherwise required by the provisions of this code.

Exceptions:

1. This section shall not apply to buildings that are three *stories* or less above *grade plane*.

2. This section shall not apply to buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

3. Open parking garages.

705.8.6 Vertical exposure.
For buildings on the same lot, opening protectives having a *fire protection rating* of not less than 3/4 hour shall be provided in every opening that is less than 15 feet (4572 mm) vertically above the roof of an adjacent building or structure based on assuming an imaginary line between them. The opening protectives are required where the *fire separation distance* between the imaginary line and the adjacent building or structure is less than 15 feet (4572 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Opening protectives are not required where the roof assembly of the adjacent building or structure has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour for a minimum distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the exterior wall facing the imaginary line and the entire length and span of the supporting elements for the

fire-resistance-rated roof assembly has a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 1 hour.

2. Buildings on the same lot and considered as portions of one building in accordance with Section 705.3 are not required to comply with Section 705.8.6.

705.9 Joints.
Joints made in or between *exterior walls* required by this section to have a *fire-resistance rating* shall comply with Section 715.

Exception: Joints in *exterior walls* that are permitted to have unprotected openings.

705.9.1 Voids.
The void created at the intersection of a floor/ceiling assembly and an exterior curtain wall assembly shall be protected in accordance with Section 715.4.

705.10 Ducts and air transfer openings.
Penetrations by air ducts and air transfer openings in fire-resistance-rated *exterior walls* required to have protected openings shall comply with Section 717.

Exception: Foundation vents installed in accordance with this code are permitted.

705.11 Parapets.
Parapets shall be provided on exterior walls of buildings.

Exceptions: A parapet need not be provided on an exterior wall where any of the following conditions exist:

1. The wall is not required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Table 602 because of fire separation distance.

2. The building has an area of not more than 1,000 square feet (93 m2) on any floor.

3. Walls that terminate at roofs of not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction or where the roof, including the deck or slab and supporting construction, is constructed entirely of noncombustible materials.

4. One-hour fire-resistance-rated exterior walls that terminate at the underside of the roof sheathing, deck or slab, provided:

   4.1. Where the roof/ceiling framing elements are parallel to the walls, such framing and elements supporting such framing shall not be of less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction for a width of 4 feet (1220 mm) for Groups R and U and 10 feet (3048 mm) for other occupancies, measured from the interior side of the wall.

   4.2. Where roof/ceiling framing elements are not parallel to the wall, the entire span of such framing and elements supporting such framing shall not be of less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

4.3. Openings in the roof shall not be located within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the 1-hour fire-resistance-rated exterior wall for Groups R and U and 10 feet (3048 mm) for other occupancies, measured from the interior side of the wall.

4.4. The entire building shall be provided with not less than a Class B roof covering.

5. In Groups R-2 and R-3 where the entire building is provided with a Class C roof covering, the exterior wall shall be permitted to terminate at the underside of the roof sheathing or deck in Type III, IV and V construction, provided one or both of the following criteria is met:

5.1. The roof sheathing or deck is constructed of approved noncombustible materials or of fire-retardant-treated wood for a distance of 4 feet (1220 mm).

5.2. The roof is protected with 0.625-inch (16 mm) Type X gypsum board directly beneath the underside of the roof sheathing or deck, supported by not less than nominal 2-inch (51 mm) ledgers attached to the sides of the roof framing members for a minimum distance of 4 feet (1220 mm).

6. Where the wall is permitted to have not less than 25 percent of the exterior wall areas containing unprotected openings based on fire separation distance as determined in accordance with Section 705.8.

705.11.1 Parapet construction.
Parapets shall have the same *fire-resistance rating* as that required for the supporting wall, and on any side adjacent to a roof surface, shall have noncombustible faces for the uppermost 18 inches (457 mm), including counterflashing and coping materials. The height of the parapet shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above the point where the roof surface and the wall intersect. Where the roof slopes toward a parapet at a slope greater than two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (16.7-percent slope), the parapet shall extend to the same height as any portion of the roof within a *fire separation distance* where protection of wall openings is required, but in no case shall the height be less than 30 inches (762 mm).

SECTION 706
FIRE WALLS

706.1 General.
~~Each portion of a building separated by one or more *fire walls* that comply with the provisions of this section shall be considered a separate building.~~ Fire walls shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 706.2 through 706.11. The extent and location of such *fire walls* shall provide a complete separation. Where a *fire wall* separates occupancies that are required to be separated by a *fire barrier* wall, the most restrictive requirements of each separation shall apply.

706.1.1 Party walls.
Any wall located on a *lot line* between adjacent buildings, which is used or adapted for joint service between the two buildings, shall be constructed as a *fire wall* in accordance with Section 706. Party walls shall be constructed without openings and shall create separate buildings.

Exception: Openings in a party wall separating an *anchor building* and a mall shall be in accordance with Section 402.4.2.2.1.

706.2 Structural stability.
Fire walls shall be designed and constructed to allow collapse of the structure on either side without collapse of the wall under fire conditions. *Fire walls* designed and constructed in accordance with NFPA 221 shall be deemed to comply with this section.

706.3 Materials.
Fire walls shall be of any *approved* noncombustible materials.

Exception: Buildings of Type V construction.

706.4 Fire-resistance rating.
Fire walls shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than that required by Table 706.4.

TABLE 706.4
FIRE WALL FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS

GROUP	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)
A, B, E, H-4, I, R-1, R-2, U	3[a]
F-1, H-3[b], H-5, M, S-1	3
H-1, H-2	4[b]
F-2, S-2, R-3, R-4	2

a. In Type II or V construction, walls shall be permitted to have a 2-hour *fire-resistance rating.*
b. For Group H-1, H-2 or H-3 buildings, also see Sections 415.7 and 415.8.

706.5 Horizontal continuity.
Fire walls shall be continuous from *exterior wall* to *exterior wall* and shall extend not less than 18 inches (457 mm) beyond the exterior surface of *exterior walls*.

Exceptions:

1. *Fire walls* shall be permitted to terminate at the interior surface of combustible exterior sheathing or siding provided the *exterior wall* has a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 1 hour for a horizontal distance of not less than 4 feet (1220 mm) on both sides of the *fire wall*. Openings within such *exterior walls* shall be protected by opening protectives having a *fire protection rating* of not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ hour.

2. *Fire walls* shall be permitted to terminate at the interior surface of noncombustible exterior sheathing, exterior siding or other noncombustible exterior finishes provided the sheathing, siding or other exterior noncombustible finish extends a horizontal distance of not less than 4 feet (1220 mm) on both sides of the *fire wall*.

3. *Fire walls* shall be permitted to terminate at the interior surface of noncombustible exterior sheathing where the building on each side of the *fire wall* is protected by an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

706.5.1 Exterior walls.
Where the *fire wall* intersects *exterior walls*, the *fire-resistance rating* and opening protection of the *exterior walls* shall comply with one of the following:

1. The exterior walls on both sides of the fire wall shall have a 1-hour fire-resistance rating with 3/4-hour protection where opening protection is required by Section 705.8. The fire-resistance rating of the exterior wall shall extend not less than 4 feet (1220 mm) on each side of the intersection of the fire wall to exterior wall. Exterior wall intersections at fire walls that form an angle equal to or greater than 180 degrees (3.14 rad) do not need exterior wall protection.

2. Buildings or spaces on both sides of the intersecting *fire wall* shall assume to have an imaginary *lot line* at the *fire wall* and extending beyond the exterior of the *fire wall*. The location of the assumed line in relation to the *exterior walls* and the *fire wall* shall be such that the *exterior wall* and opening protection meet the requirements set forth in Sections 705.5 and 705.8. Such protection is not required for *exterior walls* terminating at *fire walls* that form an angle equal to or greater than 180 degrees (3.14 rad).

706.5.2 Horizontal projecting elements.
Fire walls shall extend to the outer edge of horizontal projecting elements such as balconies, roof overhangs, canopies, marquees and similar projections that are within 4 feet (1220 mm) of the *fire wall*.

Exceptions:

1. Horizontal projecting elements without concealed spaces, provided the exterior wall behind and below the projecting element has not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction for a distance not less than the depth of the projecting element on both sides of the fire wall. Openings within such exterior walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than 3/4 hour.

2. Noncombustible horizontal projecting elements with concealed spaces, provided a minimum 1-hour fire-resistance-rated wall extends through the concealed space. The projecting element shall be separated from the building by not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction for a distance on each side of the fire wall equal to the depth of the projecting element. The wall is not required to extend under the projecting element where the building exterior wall is not less than 1-hour fire-resistance rated for a distance on each side of the fire wall equal to the depth of the projecting element. Openings within such *exterior walls* shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than 3/4 hour.

3. For combustible horizontal projecting elements with concealed spaces, the *fire wall* need only extend through the concealed space to the outer edges of the projecting elements. The *exterior wall* behind and below the projecting element shall be of not less than 1-hour fire-resistance rated construction for a distance not less than the depth of the projecting elements on both sides of the *fire wall*. Openings within such *exterior walls* shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire-protection rating of not less than 3/4 hour.

706.6 Vertical continuity.
Fire walls shall extend from the foundation to a termination point not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above both adjacent roofs.

Exceptions:

1. Stepped buildings in accordance with Section 706.6.1.

2. Two-hour fire-resistance-rated walls shall be permitted to terminate at the underside of the roof sheathing, deck or slab, provided:

    2.1. The lower roof assembly within 4 feet (1220 mm) of the wall has not less than a 1-hour *fire-resistance rating* and the entire length and span of supporting elements for the rated roof assembly has a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 1 hour.

    2.2. Openings in the roof shall not be located within 4 feet (1220 mm) of the *fire wall*.

    2.3. Each building shall be provided with not less than a Class B roof covering.

3. Walls shall be permitted to terminate at the underside of noncombustible roof sheathing, deck or slabs where both buildings are provided with not less than a Class B roof covering. Openings in the roof shall not be located within 4 feet (1220 mm) of the *fire wall*.

4. In buildings of Type III, IV and V construction, walls shall be permitted to terminate at the underside of combustible roof sheathing or decks, provided:

    4.1. There are no openings in the roof within 4 feet (1220 mm) of the *fire wall*,

    4.2. The roof is covered with a minimum Class B roof covering, and

    4.3. The roof sheathing or deck is constructed of *fire-retardant-treated wood for a distance of 4 feet (1220 mm) on both sides of the wall or the roof is* protected with 5/8-inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum board directly beneath the underside of the roof sheathing or deck, supported by not less than 2-inch (51 mm) nominal ledgers attached to the sides of the roof framing members for a distance of not less than 4 feet (1220 mm) on both sides of the *fire wall*.

5. In buildings designed in accordance with Section 510.2, *fire walls* located above the 3-hour *horizontal assembly* required by Section 510.2, Item 1 shall be permitted to extend from the top of this *horizontal assembly*.

6. Buildings with sloped roofs in accordance with Section 706.6.2.

706.6.1 Stepped buildings.
Where a *fire wall* serves as an *exterior wall* for a building and separates buildings having different roof levels, such wall shall terminate at a point not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above the lower roof level, provided the *exterior wall* for a height of 15 feet (4572 mm) above the lower roof is not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction from both sides with openings protected by fire assemblies having a *fire protection rating* of not less than 3/4 hour.

Exception: Where the *fire wall* terminates at the underside of the roof sheathing, deck or slab of the lower roof, provided:

1. The lower roof assembly within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the wall has not less than a 1-hour *fire-resistance rating* and the entire length and span of supporting elements for the rated roof assembly has a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 1 hour.

2. Openings in the lower roof shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the *fire wall*.

706.6.2 Buildings with sloped roofs.
Where a *fire wall* serves as an interior wall for a building, and the roof on one side or both sides of the fire wall slopes toward the fire wall at a slope greater than two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12), the *fire wall* shall extend to a height equal to the height of the roof located 4 feet (1219 mm) from the *fire wall* plus 30 inches (762 mm). In no case shall the extension of the fire wall be less than 30 inches (762 mm).

706.7 Combustible framing in fire walls.
Adjacent combustible members entering into a concrete or masonry *fire wall* from opposite sides shall not have less than a 4-inch (102 mm) distance between embedded ends. Where combustible members frame into hollow walls or walls of hollow units, hollow spaces shall be solidly filled for the full thickness of the wall and for a distance not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above, below and between the structural members, with noncombustible materials *approved* for fireblocking.

706.8 Openings.
Each opening through a *fire wall* shall be protected in accordance with Section 716.5 and shall not exceed 156 square feet (15 m^2). The aggregate width of openings at any floor level shall not exceed 25 percent of the length of the wall.

Exceptions:

1. Openings are not permitted in party walls constructed in accordance with Section 706.1.1.

2. Openings shall not be limited to 156 square feet (15 m^2) where both buildings are equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

706.9 Penetrations.
Penetrations of *fire walls* shall comply with Section 714.

706.10 Joints.
Joints made in or between *fire walls* shall comply with Section 715.

706.11 Ducts and air transfer openings.
Ducts and air transfer openings shall not penetrate *fire walls*.

Exception: Penetrations by ducts and air transfer openings of *fire walls* that are not on a *lot line* shall be allowed provided the penetrations comply with Section 717. The size and aggregate width of all openings shall not exceed the limitations of Section 706.8.

SECTION 707
FIRE BARRIERS

707.1 General.
Fire barriers installed as required elsewhere in this code or the *International Fire Code* shall comply with this section.

707.2 Materials.
Fire barriers shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

707.3 Fire-resistance rating.
The *fire-resistance rating* of *fire barriers* shall comply with this section.

707.3.1 Shaft enclosures.
The *fire-resistance rating* of the *fire barrier* separating building areas from a shaft shall comply with Section 713.4.

707.3.2 Interior exit stairway and ramp construction.
The *fire-resistance rating* of the *fire barrier* separating building areas from an *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* shall comply with Section 1023.1.

707.3.3 Enclosures for exit access stairways.
The *fire-resistance rating* of the *fire barrier* separating building areas from an *exit access stairway* or *ramp* shall comply with Section 713.4.

707.3.4 Exit passageway.
The *fire-resistance rating* of the *fire barrier* separating building areas from an *exit* passageway shall comply with Section 1024.3.

707.3.5 Horizontal exit.
The *fire-resistance rating* of the separation between building areas connected by a horizontal *exit* shall comply with Section 1026.1.

707.3.6 Atriums.
The *fire-resistance rating* of the *fire barrier* separating atriums shall comply with Section 404.6.

707.3.7 Incidental uses.
The *fire barrier* separating incidental uses from other spaces in the building shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than that indicated in Table 509.

707.3.8 Control areas.
Fire barriers separating *control areas* shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than that required in Section 414.2.4.

707.3.9 Separated occupancies.
Where the provisions of Section 508.4 are applicable, the *fire barrier* separating mixed occupancies shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than that indicated in Table 508.4 based on the occupancies being separated.

707.3.10 Fire areas.
The *fire barriers* or *horizontal assemblies*, or both, separating a single occupancy into different *fire areas* shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than that indicated in Table 707.3.10. The *fire barriers* or *horizontal assemblies*, or both, separating *fire areas* of mixed occupancies shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than the highest value indicated in Table 707.3.10 for the occupancies under consideration.

TABLE 707.3.10
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING REQUIREMENTS FOR FIRE BARRIER ASSEMBLIES OR HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLIES BETWEEN FIRE AREAS

OCCUPANCY GROUP	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)
H-1, H-2	4
F-1, H-3, S-1	3
A, B, E, F-2, H-4, H-5, I, M, R, S-2	2
U	1

707.4 Exterior walls.
Where exterior walls serve as a part of a required fire-resistance-rated shaft or stairway or ramp enclosure, or separation, such walls shall comply with the requirements of Section 705 for exterior walls and the fire-resistance-rated enclosure or separation requirements shall not apply.

Exception: Exterior walls required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 1021 for exterior egress balconies, Section 1023.7 for interior exit stairways and ramps and Section 1027.6 for exterior exit stairways and ramp.

707.5 Continuity.
Fire barriers shall extend from the top of the foundation or floor/ceiling assembly below to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, slab or deck above and shall be securely attached thereto. Such *fire barriers* shall be continuous through concealed space, such as the space

above a suspended ceiling. Joints and voids at intersections shall comply with Sections 707.8 and 707.9

Exceptions:

1. Shaft enclosures shall be permitted to terminate at a top enclosure complying with Section 713.12.

2. *Interior exit stairway* and *ramp* enclosures required by Section 1023 and *exit access stairway* and *ramp* enclosures required by Section 1019 shall be permitted to terminate at a top enclosure complying with Section 713.12.

707.5.1 Supporting construction.
The supporting construction for a *fire barrier* shall be protected to afford the required *fire-resistance rating* of the *fire barrier* supported. Hollow vertical spaces within a *fire barrier* shall be fireblocked in accordance with Section 718.2 at every floor level.

Exceptions:

1. The maximum required *fire-resistance rating* for assemblies supporting *fire barriers* separating tank storage as provided for in Section 415.9.1.2 shall be 2 hours, but not less than required by Table 601 for the building construction type.

2. Supporting construction for 1-hour *fire barriers* required by Table 509 in buildings of Type IIB, IIIB and VB construction is not required to be *fire-resistance rated* unless required by other sections of this code.

707.6 Openings.
Openings in a *fire barrier* shall be protected in accordance with Section 716. Openings shall be limited to a maximum aggregate width of 25 percent of the length of the wall, and the maximum area of any single opening shall not exceed 156 square feet (15 m^2). Openings in enclosures for *exit access stairways* and *ramps*, *interior exit stairways* and *ramps* and *exit passageways* shall also comply with Sections 1019, 1023.4 and 1024.5, respectively.

Exceptions:

1. Openings shall not be limited to 156 square feet (15 m^2) where adjoining floor areas are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2. Openings shall not be limited to 156 square feet (15 m^2) or an aggregate width of 25 percent of the length of the wall where the opening protective is a fire door serving enclosures for exit access stairways and ramps, and interior exit stairways and ramps.

3. Openings shall not be limited to 156 square feet (15 m^2) or an aggregate width of 25 percent of the length of the wall where the opening protective has been tested in

accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and has a minimum *fire-resistance rating* not less than the *fire-resistance rating* of the wall.

4. Fire window assemblies permitted in atrium separation walls shall not be limited to a maximum aggregate width of 25 percent of the length of the wall.

5. Openings shall not be limited to 156 square feet (15 m^2) or an aggregate width of 25 percent of the length of the wall where the opening protective is a fire door assembly in a *fire barrier* separating an enclosure for *exit access* stairways and ramps, and interior exit stairways and ramps from an exit passageway in accordance with Section 1023.3.1.

707.7 Penetrations.
Penetrations of *fire barriers* shall comply with Section 714.

707.7.1 Prohibited penetrations.
Penetrations into enclosures for *exit access stairways* and *ramps*, *interior exit stairways* and *ramps*, and *exit passageways* shall be allowed only where permitted by Sections 1019, 1023.5 and 1024.6, respectively.

707.8 Joints.
Joints made in or between *fire barriers*, and joints made at the intersection of *fire barriers* with underside of a fire-resistance-rated floor or roof sheathing, slab or deck above, and the exterior vertical wall intersection shall comply with Section 715.

707.9 Voids at intersections.
The voids created at the intersection of a *fire barrier* and a nonfire-resistance-rated roof assembly or a nonfire-resistance-rated exterior wall assembly shall be filled. An approved material or system shall be used to fill the void, and shall be securely installed in or on the intersection for its entire length so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair its ability to accommodate expected building movements and to retard the passage of fire and hot gases.

707.10 Ducts and air transfer openings.
Penetrations in a *fire barrier* by ducts and air transfer openings shall comply with Section 717.

SECTION 708
FIRE PARTITIONS

708.1 General.
The following wall assemblies shall comply with this section.

1. Separation walls as required by Section 420.2 for Groups I-1, R-1, R-2 and R-3.

2. Walls separating tenant spaces in *covered and open mall buildings* as required by Section 402.4.2.1.

3. Corridor walls as required by Section 1020.1.

4. Elevator lobby separation as required by Section 3006.2.

5. Egress balconies as required by Section 1019.2

708.2 Materials.
The walls shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

708.3 Fire-resistance rating.
Fire partitions shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 1 hour.

Exceptions:

1. Corridor walls permitted to have a $^{1}/_{2}$-hour *fire-resistance rating* by Table 1020.1.

2. *Dwelling unit* and *sleeping unit* separations in buildings of Type IIB, IIIB and VB construction shall have *fire-resistance ratings* of not less than $^{1}/_{2}$ hour in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

708.4 Continuity.
Fire partitions shall extend from the top of the foundation or floor/ceiling assembly below to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, slab or deck above or to the fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly above, and shall be securely attached thereto. In combustible construction where the *fire partitions* are not required to be continuous to the sheathing, deck or slab, the space between the ceiling and the sheathing, deck or slab above shall be fireblocked or draftstopped in accordance with Sections 718.2 and 718.3 at the partition line. The supporting construction shall be protected to afford the required *fire-resistance rating* of the wall supported, except for walls separating tenant spaces in *covered and open mall buildings*, walls separating *dwelling units*, walls separating *sleeping units* and *corridor* walls, in buildings of Type IIB, IIIB and VB construction.

Exceptions:

1. The wall need not be extended into the crawl space below where the floor above the crawl space has a minimum 1-hour *fire-resistance rating*.

2. Where the room-side fire-resistance-rated membrane of the *corridor* is carried through to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab of a fire-resistance-rated floor or roof above, the ceiling of the *corridor* shall be permitted to be protected by the use of ceiling materials as required for a 1-hour fire-resistance-rated floor or roof system.

3. Where the *corridor* ceiling is constructed as required for the *corridor* walls, the walls shall be permitted to terminate at the upper membrane of such ceiling assembly.

4. The fire partitions separating tenant spaces in a *covered or open mall building*, complying with Section 402.4.2.1, are not required to extend beyond the underside of a ceiling that is not part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly. A wall is not required in *attic* or ceiling spaces above tenant separation walls.

5. Attic fireblocking or draftstopping is not required at the partition line in Group R-2 buildings that do not exceed four *stories above grade plane*, provided the *attic* space is subdivided by draftstopping into areas not exceeding 3,000 square feet (279 m^2) or above every two *dwelling units*, whichever is smaller.

6. Fireblocking or draftstopping is not required at the partition line in buildings equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, provided that automatic sprinklers are installed in combustible floor/ceiling and roof/ceiling spaces.

708.5 Exterior walls.
Where *exterior walls* serve as a part of a required fire-resistance-rated separation, such walls shall comply with the requirements of Section 705 for *exterior walls*, and the fire-resistance-rated separation requirements shall not apply.

Exception: Exterior walls required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 1021.2 for exterior egress balconies, Section 1023.7 for interior exit stairways and ramps and Section 1027.6 for exterior exit stairways and ramps.

708.6 Openings.
Openings in a *fire partition* shall be protected in accordance with Section 716.

Exception: A smoke and draft control door assembly is not required at a hoistway opening if the hoistway is pressurized in accordance with IBC Section 909.

708.7 Penetrations.
Penetrations of *fire partitions* shall comply with Section 714.

708.8 Joints.
Joints made in or between *fire partitions* shall comply with Section 715.

708.9 Ducts and air transfer openings.
Penetrations in a *fire partition* by ducts and air transfer openings shall comply with Section 717.

SECTION 709
SMOKE BARRIERS

709.1 General.
Vertical and horizontal *smoke barriers* shall comply with this section.

709.2 Materials.
Smoke barriers shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

709.3 Fire-resistance rating.
A 1-hour *fire-resistance rating* is required for *smoke barriers*.

Exception: *Smoke barriers* constructed of minimum 0.10-inch-thick (2.5 mm) steel in Group I-3 buildings.

709.4 Continuity.
Smoke barriers shall form an effective membrane continuous from the top of the foundation or floor/ ceiling assembly below to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above, including continuity through concealed spaces, such as those found above suspended ceilings, and interstitial structural and mechanical spaces. The supporting construction shall be protected to afford the required *fire-resistance rating* of the wall or floor supported in buildings of other than Type IIB, IIIB or VB construction. *Smoke barrier* walls used to separate smoke compartments shall comply with Section 709.4.1. *Smoke-barrier* walls used to enclose areas of refuge in accordance with Section 1009.6.4 or to enclose elevator lobbies in accordance with Section 405.4.3, 3007.6.2, or 3008.6.2 shall comply with Section 709.4.2.

Exception: *Smoke-barrier* walls are not required in interstitial spaces where such spaces are designed and constructed with ceilings or *exterior walls* that provide resistance to the passage of fire and smoke equivalent to that provided by the *smoke-barrier* walls.

709.4.1 Smoke-barrier walls separating smoke compartments.
Smoke-barrier walls used to separate smoke compartments shall form an effective membrane continuous from outside wall to outside wall.

709.4.2 Smoke-barrier walls enclosing areas of refuge or elevator lobbies.
Smoke-barrier walls used to enclose areas of refuge in accordance with Section 1009.6.4, or to enclose elevator lobbies in accordance with Section 405.4.3, 3007.6.2, or 3008.6.2, shall form an effective membrane enclosure that terminates at a *fire barrier* wall having a level of *fire protection rating* not less than 1 hour, another *smoke barrier* wall or an outside wall. A smoke and draft control door assembly as specified in Section 716.5.3.1 shall not be required at each elevator hoistway door opening or at each exit doorway between an area of refuge and the exit enclosure.

709.5 Openings.
Openings in a *smoke barrier* shall be protected in accordance with Section 716.

Exceptions:

1. In Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and *ambulatory care facilities*, where a pair of opposite-swinging doors are installed across a corridor in accordance with Section 709.5.1, the doors shall not be required to be protected in accordance with Section 716. The doors shall be close fitting within operational tolerances, and shall not have a center mullion or undercuts in excess of 3/4 inch (19.1 mm), louvers or grilles. The doors shall have head and jamb stops, and astragals or rabbets at meeting edges. Where permitted by the door manufacturer's listing, positive-latching devices are not required.

2. In Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and *ambulatory care facilities*, horizontal sliding doors installed in accordance with Section 1010.1.4.3 and protected in accordance with Section 716.

709.5.1 Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities.
In Group I-2 and *ambulatory care facilities*, where doors are installed across a corridor, the doors shall be automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3

and shall have a vision panel with fire-protection-rated glazing materials in fire-protection-rated frames, the area of which shall not exceed that tested.

709.6 Penetrations.
Penetrations of *smoke barriers* shall comply with Section 714.

709.7 Joints.
Joints made in or between *smoke barriers* shall comply with Section 715.

709.8 Ducts and air transfer openings.
Penetrations in a *smoke barrier* by ducts and air transfer openings shall comply with Section 717.

SECTION 710
SMOKE PARTITIONS

710.1 General.
Smoke partitions installed as required elsewhere in the code shall comply with this section.

710.2 Materials.
The walls shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

710.3 Fire-resistance rating.
Unless required elsewhere in the code, smoke partitions are not required to have a *fire-resistance rating*.

710.4 Continuity.
Smoke partitions shall extend from the top of the foundation or floor below to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above or to the underside of the ceiling above where the ceiling membrane is constructed to limit the transfer of smoke.

710.5 Openings.
Openings in smoke partitions shall comply with Sections 710.5.1 and 710.5.2.

710.5.1 Windows.
Windows in smoke partitions shall be sealed to resist the free passage of smoke or be automatic-closing upon detection of smoke.

710.5.2 Doors.
Doors in smoke partitions shall comply with Sections 710.5.2.1 through 710.5.2.3.

710.5.2.1 Louvers.
Doors in smoke partitions shall not include louvers.

710.5.2.2 Smoke and draft control doors.
Where required elsewhere in the code, doors in smoke partitions shall meet the requirements for a smoke and draft control door assembly tested in accordance with UL 1784. The air leakage rate of the door assembly shall not exceed 3.0 cubic feet per minute per square foot [0.015424 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$] of door opening at 0.10 inch (24.9 Pa) of

water for both the ambient temperature test and the elevated temperature exposure test. Installation of smoke doors shall be in accordance with NFPA 105.

710.5.2.2.1 Smoke and draft control door labeling.
Smoke and draft control doors complying only with UL 1784 shall be permitted to show the letter “S” on the manufacturer’s labeling.

710.5.2.3 Self- or automatic-closing doors.
Where required elsewhere in the code, doors in smoke partitions shall be self- or automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3.

710.6 Penetrations.
The space around penetrating items shall be filled with an *approved* material to limit the free passage of smoke.

710.7 Joints.
Joints shall be filled with an *approved* material to limit the free passage of smoke.

710.8 Ducts and air transfer openings.
The space around a duct penetrating a smoke partition shall be filled with an *approved* material to limit the free passage of smoke. Air transfer openings in smoke partitions shall be provided with a *smoke damper* complying with Section 717.3.2.2.

Exception: Where the installation of a *smoke damper* will interfere with the operation of a required smoke control system in accordance with Section 909, *approved* alternative protection shall be utilized.

SECTION 711
FLOOR AND ROOF ASSEMBLIES

711.1 General.
Horizontal assemblies shall comply with Section 711.2. Nonfire-resistance-rated floor and roof assemblies shall comply with Section 711.3.

711.2 Horizontal assemblies.
Horizontal assemblies shall comply with Sections 711.2.1 through 711.2.6.

711.2.1 Materials.
Assemblies shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

711.2.2 Continuity.
Assemblies shall be continuous without vertical openings, except as permitted by this section and Section 712.

711.2.3 Supporting construction.
The supporting construction shall be protected to afford the required *fire-resistance rating* of the *horizontal assembly* supported.

Exception: In buildings of Type IIB, IIIB or VB construction, the construction supporting the *horizontal assembly* is not required to be *fire-resistance rated* at the following:

1. *Horizontal assemblies* at the separations of incidental uses as specified by Table 509 provided the required *fire-resistance rating* does not exceed 1 hour.

2. *Horizontal assemblies* at the separations of *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* as required by Section 420.3.

3. *Horizontal assemblies* at *smoke barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 709.

711.2.4 Fire-resistance rating.
The *fire-resistance rating* of *horizontal assemblies* shall comply with Sections 711.2.4.1 through 711.2.4.6 but shall be not less than that required by the building type of construction.

711.2.4.1 Separating mixed occupancies.
Where the *horizontal assembly* separates mixed occupancies, the assembly shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than that required by Section 508.4 based on the occupancies being separated.

711.2.4.2 Separating fire areas.
Where the *horizontal assembly* separates a single occupancy into different fire areas, the assembly shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than that required by Section 707.3.10.

711.2.4.3 Dwelling units and sleeping units.
Horizontal assemblies serving as dwelling or sleeping unit separations in accordance with Section 420.3 shall be not less than 1-hour *fire-resistance-rated* construction.

Exception: *Horizontal assemblies* separating *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* shall be not less than $^{1}/_{2}$-hour fire-resistance-rated construction in a building of Type IIB, IIIB and VB construction, where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

711.2.4.4 Separating smoke compartments.
Where the *horizontal assembly* is required to be a *smoke barrier*, the assembly shall comply with Section 709.

711.2.4.5 Separating incidental uses.
Where the *horizontal assembly* separates incidental uses from the remainder of the building, the assembly shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than that required by Section 509.

711.2.4.6 Other separations.
Where a horizontal assembly is required by other sections of this code, the assembly shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that required by that section.

711.2.5 Ceiling panels.
Where the weight of lay-in ceiling panels, used as part of fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or

roof/ceiling assemblies, is not adequate to resist an upward force of 1 pound per square foot (48 Pa), wire or other *approved* devices shall be installed above the panels to prevent vertical displacement under such upward force.

711.2.6 Unusable space.
In 1-hour fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling assemblies, the ceiling membrane is not required to be installed over unusable crawl spaces. In 1-hour fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies, the floor membrane is not required to be installed where unusable *attic* space occurs above.

711.3 Nonfire-resistance-rated floor and roof assemblies.
Nonfire-resistance-rated floor, floor/ceiling, roof and roof/ ceiling assemblies shall comply with Sections 711.3.1 and 711.3.2.

711.3.1 Materials.
Assemblies shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

711.3.2 Continuity.
Assemblies shall be continuous without vertical openings, except as permitted by Section 712.

SECTION 712
VERTICAL OPENINGS

712.1 General.
Each vertical opening shall comply in accordance with one of the protection methods in Sections 712.1.1 through 712.1.16.

712.1.1 Shaft enclosures.
Vertical openings contained entirely within a shaft enclosure complying with Section 713 shall be permitted.

712.1.2 Individual dwelling unit.
Unconcealed vertical openings totally within an individual residential dwelling unit and connecting four stories or less shall be permitted.

712.1.3 Escalator openings.
Where a building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, vertical openings for escalators shall be permitted where protected in accordance with Section 712.1.3.1 or 712.1.3.2.

712.1.3.1 Opening size.
Protection by a draft curtain and closely spaced sprinklers in accordance with NFPA 13 shall be permitted where the area of the vertical opening between stories does not exceed twice the horizontal projected area of the escalator. In other than Groups B and M, this application is limited to openings that do not connect more than four stories.

712.1.3.2 Automatic shutters.
Protection of the vertical opening by approved shutters at every penetrated floor shall be permitted in accordance with this section. The shutters shall be of noncombustible construction and have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 1.5 hours. The shutter

shall be so constructed as to close immediately upon the actuation of a smoke detector installed in accordance with Section 907.3.1 and shall completely shut off the well opening. Escalators shall cease operation when the shutter begins to close. The shutter shall operate at a speed of not more than 30 feet per minute (152.4 mm/s) and shall be equipped with a sensitive leading edge to arrest its progress where in contact with any obstacle, and to continue its progress on release there from.

712.1.4 Penetrations.
Penetrations, concealed and unconcealed, shall be permitted where protected in accordance with Section 714.

712.1.5 Joints.
Joints shall be permitted where complying with Section 712.1.5.1 or 712.1.5.2, as applicable.

712.1.5.1 Joints in or between horizontal assemblies.
Joints made in or between *horizontal assemblies* shall comply with Section 715. The void created at the intersection of a floor/ceiling assembly and an exterior curtain wall assembly shall be permitted where protected in accordance with Section 715.4.

712.1.5.2 Joints in or between nonfire-resistance rated floor assemblies.
Joints in or between floor assemblies without a required *fire-resistance rating* shall be permitted where they comply with one of the following:

1. The joint shall be concealed within the cavity of a wall.

2. The joint shall be located above a ceiling.

3. The joint shall be sealed, treated or covered with an *approved* material or system to resist the free passage of flame and the products of combustion.

Exception: Joints meeting one of the exceptions listed in Section 715.1.

712.1.6 Ducts and air transfer openings.
Penetrations by ducts and air transfer openings shall be protected in accordance with Section 717. Grease ducts shall be protected in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

712.1.7 Atriums.
In other than Group H occupancies, atriums complying with Section 404 shall be permitted.

712.1.8 Masonry chimney.
Approved vertical openings for masonry chimneys shall be permitted where the annular space is fireblocked at each floor level in accordance with Section 718.2.5.

712.1.9 Two-story openings.
In other than Groups I-2 and I-3, a vertical opening that is not used as one of the applications listed in this section shall be permitted if the opening complies with all of the items below:

1. Does not connect more than two stories.

2. Does not penetrate a horizontal assembly that separates fire areas or smoke barriers that separate smoke compartments.

3. Is not concealed within the construction of a wall or a floor/ceiling assembly.

4. Is not open to a corridor in Group I and R occupancies.

5. Is not open to a corridor on nonsprinklered floors.

6. Is separated from floor openings and air transfer openings serving other floors by construction conforming to required shaft enclosures.

712.1.10 Parking garages.
Vertical openings in parking garages for automobile ramps, elevators and duct systems shall comply with Section 712.1.10.1, 712.1.10.2 or 712.1.10.3, as applicable.

712.1.10.1 Automobile ramps.
Vertical openings for automobile ramps in open and enclosed parking garages shall be permitted where constructed in accordance with Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively.

712.1.10.2 Elevators.
Vertical openings for elevator hoistways in open or enclosed parking garages that serve only the parking garage, and complying with Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively, shall be permitted.

712.1.10.3 Duct systems.
Vertical openings for mechanical exhaust or supply duct systems in open or enclosed parking garages complying with Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively, shall be permitted to be unenclosed where such duct system is contained within and serves only the parking garage.

712.1.11 Mezzanine.
Vertical openings between a mezzanine complying with Section 505 and the floor below shall be permitted.

712.1.12 Exit access stairways and ramps.
Vertical openings containing *exit access stairways* or *ramps* in accordance with Section 1019 shall be permitted.

712.1.13 Openings.
Vertical openings for floor fire doors and access doors shall be permitted where protected by Section 712.1.13.1 or 712.1.13.2.

712.1.13.1 Horizontal fire door assemblies.
Horizontal *fire door* assemblies used to protect openings in fire-resistance-rated *horizontal assemblies* shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 288, and shall achieve a *fire-resistance rating* not less than the assembly being penetrated. Horizontal *fire door* assemblies shall be labeled by an *approved agency*. The *label* shall be permanently

affixed and shall specify the manufacturer, the test standard and the *fire-resistance rating*.

712.1.13.2 Access doors.
Access doors shall be permitted in ceilings of fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling and roof/ceiling assemblies, provided such doors are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as horizontal assemblies and labeled by an approved agency for such purpose.

712.1.14 Group I-3.
In Group I-3 occupancies, vertical openings shall be permitted in accordance with Section 408.5.

712.1.15 Skylights.
Skylights and other penetrations through a *fire-resistance-rated* roof deck or slab are permitted to be unprotected, provided that the structural integrity of the *fire-resistance-rated* roof assembly is maintained. Unprotected skylights shall not be permitted in roof assemblies required to be *fire-resistance rated* in accordance with Section 705.8.6. The supporting construction shall be protected to afford the required *fire-resistance rating* of the *horizontal assembly* supported.

712.1.16 Openings otherwise permitted.
Vertical openings shall be permitted where allowed by other sections of this code.

SECTION 713
SHAFT ENCLOSURES

713.1 General.
The provisions of this section shall apply to shafts required to protect openings and penetrations through floor/ceiling and roof/ceiling assemblies. *Interior exit stairways* and *ramps* shall be enclosed in accordance with Section 1023.

713.2 Construction.
Shaft enclosures shall be constructed as *fire barriers* in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies in accordance with Section 711, or both.

713.3 Materials.
The shaft enclosure shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

713.4 Fire-resistance rating.
Shaft enclosures shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 2 hours where connecting four *stories* or more, and not less than 1 hour where connecting less than four *stories*. The number of *stories* connected by the shaft enclosure shall include any basements but not any *mezzanines*. Shaft enclosures shall have a *fire-resistance rating* not less than the floor assembly penetrated, but need not exceed 2 hours. Shaft enclosures shall meet the requirements of Section 703.2.1.

713.5 Continuity.
Shaft enclosures shall be constructed as *fire barriers* in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, and shall have

continuity in accordance with Section 707.5 for *fire barriers* or Section 711.2.2 for *horizontal assemblies,* as applicable.

713.6 Exterior walls.
Where *exterior walls* serve as a part of a required shaft enclosure, such walls shall comply with the requirements of Section 705 for *exterior walls* and the fire-resistance-rated enclosure requirements shall not apply.

> **Exception:** Exterior walls required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 1021.2 for exterior egress balconies, Section 1023.7 for interior *exit* stairways and ramps and Section 1027.6 for exterior *exit* stairways and ramps.

713.7 Openings.
Openings in a shaft enclosure shall be protected in accordance with Section 716 as required for *fire barriers*. Doors shall be self- or automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3.

> **713.7.1 Prohibited openings.**
> Openings other than those necessary for the purpose of the shaft shall not be permitted in shaft enclosures.

713.8 Penetrations.
Penetrations in a shaft enclosure shall be protected in accordance with Section 714 as required for *fire barriers*. Structural elements, such as beams or joists, where protected in accordance with Section 714 shall be permitted to penetrate a shaft enclosure.

> **713.8.1 Prohibited penetrations.**
> Penetrations other than those necessary for the purpose of the shaft shall not be permitted in shaft enclosures.

713.9 Joints.
Joints in a shaft enclosure shall comply with Section 715.

713.10 Duct and air transfer openings.
Penetrations of a shaft enclosure by ducts and air transfer openings shall comply with Section 717.

713.11 Enclosure at the bottom.
Shafts that do not extend to the bottom of the building or structure shall comply with one of the following:

1. They shall be enclosed at the lowest level with construction of the same *fire-resistance rating* as the lowest floor through which the shaft passes, but not less than the rating required for the shaft enclosure.

2. They shall terminate in a room having a use related to the purpose of the shaft. The room shall be separated from the remainder of the building by *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The *fire-resistance rating* and opening protectives shall be not less than the protection required for the shaft enclosure.

3. They shall be protected by *approved fire dampers* installed in accordance with their listing at the lowest floor level within the shaft enclosure.

Exceptions:

1. The fire-resistance-rated room separation is not required, provided there are no openings in or penetrations of the shaft enclosure to the interior of the building except at the bottom. The bottom of the shaft shall be closed off around the penetrating items with materials permitted by Section 718.3.1 for draftstopping, or the room shall be provided with an *approved automatic sprinkler system*.

2. A shaft enclosure containing a waste or linen chute shall not be used for any other purpose and shall discharge in a room protected in accordance with Section 713.13.4.

3. The fire-resistance-rated room separation and the protection at the bottom of the shaft are not required provided there are no combustibles in the shaft and there are no openings or other penetrations through the shaft enclosure to the interior of the building.

713.12 Enclosure at top.
A shaft enclosure that does not extend to the underside of the roof sheathing, deck or slab of the building shall be enclosed at the top with construction of the same *fire-resistance rating* as the topmost floor penetrated by the shaft, but not less than the *fire-resistance rating* required for the shaft enclosure.

713.13 Waste and linen chutes and incinerator rooms.
Waste and linen chutes shall comply with the provisions of NFPA 82, Chapter 5 and shall meet the requirements of Sections 713.13.1 through 713.13.6. Incinerator rooms shall meet the provisions of Sections 713.13.4 through 713.13.5.

Exception: Chutes serving and contained within a single dwelling unit.

713.13.1 Waste and linen.
A shaft enclosure containing a recycling, or waste or linen chute shall not be used for any other purpose and shall be enclosed in accordance with Section 713.4. Openings into the shaft, from access rooms and discharge rooms, shall be protected in accordance with this section and Section 716. Openings into chutes shall not be located in *corridors*. Doors into chutes shall be self-closing. Discharge doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon the actuation of a smoke detector in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3, except that heat-activated closing devices shall be permitted between the shaft and the discharge room.

713.13.2 Materials.
A shaft enclosure containing a waste, recycling, or linen chute shall be constructed of materials as permitted by the building type of construction.

713.13.3 Chute access rooms.
Access openings for waste or linen chutes shall be located in rooms or compartments enclosed by not less than 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or

horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Openings into the access rooms shall be protected by opening protectives having a *fire protection rating* of not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ hour. Doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon the detection of smoke in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3.

713.13.4 Chute discharge room.
Waste or linen chutes shall discharge into an enclosed room separated by *fire barriers* with a *fire-resistance rating* not less than the required fire rating of the shaft enclosure and constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Openings into the discharge room from the remainder of the building shall be protected by opening protectives having a *fire protection rating* equal to the protection required for the shaft enclosure. Doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon the detection of smoke in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3. Waste chutes shall not terminate in an incinerator room. Waste and linen rooms that are not provided with chutes need only comply with Table 509.

713.13.5 Incinerator room.
Incinerator rooms shall comply with Table 509.

713.13.6 Automatic sprinkler system.
An *approved automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed in accordance with Section 903.2.11.2.

713.14 Elevator, dumbwaiter and other hoistways.
Elevator, dumbwaiter and other hoistway enclosures shall be constructed in accordance with Section 713 and Chapter 30.

SECTION 714
PENETRATIONS

714.1 Scope.
The provisions of this section shall govern the materials and methods of construction used to protect *through penetrations* and *membrane penetrations* of *horizontal assemblies* and fire-resistance-rated wall assemblies.

714.1.1 Ducts and air transfer openings.
Penetrations of fire-resistance-rated walls by ducts that are not protected with *dampers* shall comply with Sections 714.2 through 714.3.3. Penetrations of *horizontal assemblies* not protected with a shaft as permitted by Section 717.6, and not required to be protected with fire *dampers* by other sections of this code, shall comply with Sections 714.4 through 714.5.2. Ducts and air transfer openings that are protected with *dampers* shall comply with Section 717.

714.2 Installation details.
Where sleeves are used, they shall be securely fastened to the assembly penetrated. The space between the item contained in the sleeve and the sleeve itself and any space between the sleeve and the assembly penetrated shall be protected in accordance with this section. Insulation and coverings on or in the penetrating item shall not penetrate the assembly unless

the specific material used has been tested as part of the assembly in accordance with this section.

714.3 Fire-resistance-rated walls.
Penetrations into or through fire walls, fire barriers, smoke barrier walls and fire partitions shall comply with Sections 714.3.1 through 714.3.3. Penetrations in smoke barrier walls shall also comply with Section 714.4.4.

714.3.1 Through penetrations.
Through penetrations of fire-resistance-rated walls shall comply with Section 714.3.1.1 or 714.3.1.2.

Exception: Where the penetrating items are steel, ferrous or copper pipes, tubes or conduits, the annular space between the penetrating item and the fire-resistance-rated wall is permitted to be protected by either of the following measures:

1. In concrete or masonry walls where the penetrating item is a maximum 6-inch (152 mm) nominal diameter and the area of the opening through the wall does not exceed 144 square inches (0.0929 m2), concrete, grout or mortar is permitted where installed the full thickness of the wall or the thickness required to maintain the fire-resistance rating.

2. The material used to fill the annular space shall prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste when subjected to ASTM E119 or UL 263 time-temperature fire conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water at the location of the penetration for the time period equivalent to the fire-resistance rating of the construction penetrated.

714.3.1.1 Fire-resistance-rated assemblies.
Penetrations shall be installed as tested in an *approved* fire-resistance-rated assembly.

714.3.1.2 Through-penetration firestop system.
Through penetrations shall be protected by an *approved* penetration firestop system installed as tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479, with a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water and shall have an F rating of not less than the required *fire-resistance rating* of the wall penetrated.

714.3.2 Membrane penetrations.
Membrane penetrations shall comply with Section 714.3.1. Where walls or partitions are required to have a *fire-resistance rating*, recessed fixtures shall be installed such that the required fire resistance will not be reduced.

Exceptions:

1. Membrane penetrations of maximum 2-hour fire-resistance-rated walls and partitions by steel electrical boxes that do not exceed 16 square inches (0.0 103 m^2) in area, provided the aggregate area of the openings through the membrane does not exceed 100 square inches (0.0645 m^2) in any 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of wall area. The *annular space* between the wall membrane and the box shall

not exceed $^{1}/_{8}$ inch (3.2 mm). Such boxes on opposite sides of the wall or partition shall be separated by one of the following:

1.1. By a horizontal distance of not less than 24 inches (610 mm) where the wall or partition is constructed with individual non-communicating stud cavities;

1.2. By a horizontal distance of not less than the depth of the wall cavity where the wall cavity is filled with cellulose loosefill, rockwool or slag mineral wool insulation;

1.3. By solid fireblocking in accordance with Section 718.2.1;

1.4. By protecting both outlet boxes with *listed* putty pads; or

1.5. By other *listed* materials and methods.

2. Membrane penetrations by *listed* electrical boxes of any material, provided such boxes have been tested for use in fire-resistance-rated assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing. The *annular space* between the wall membrane and the box shall not exceed $^{1}/_{8}$ inch (3.2 mm) unless listed otherwise. Such boxes on opposite sides of the wall or partition shall be separated by one of the following:

2.1. By the horizontal distance specified in the listing of the electrical boxes;

2.2. By solid fireblocking in accordance with Section 718.2.1;

2.3. By protecting both boxes with *listed* putty pads; or

2.4. By other *listed* materials and methods.

3. Membrane penetrations by electrical boxes of any size or type, that have been *listed* as part of a wall opening protective material system for use in fire-resistance-rated assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing.

4. Membrane penetrations by boxes other than electrical boxes, provided such penetrating items and the *annular space* between the wall membrane and the box, are protected by an *approved membrane penetration* firestop system installed as tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479, with a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water, and shall have an F and T rating of not less than the required *fire-resistance rating* of the wall penetrated and be installed in accordance with their listing.

5. The *annular space* created by the penetration of an automatic sprinkler, provided it is covered by a metal escutcheon plate.

6. Membrane penetrations of maximum 2-hour *fire resistance-rated* walls and partitions by steel electrical boxes that exceed 16 square inches (0.0 103 m^2) in area, or steel electrical boxes of any size having an aggregate area through the membrane exceeding 100 square inches (0.0645 m^2) in any 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of wall area, provided such penetrating items are protected by listed putty pads or other listed materials and methods, and installed in accordance with the listing.

714.3.3 Dissimilar materials.
Noncombustible penetrating items shall not connect to combustible items beyond the point of firestopping unless it can be demonstrated that the fire-resistance integrity of the wall is maintained.

714.4 Horizontal assemblies.
Penetrations of a *fire-resistance-rated* floor, floor/ceiling assembly or the ceiling membrane of a roof/ceiling assembly not required to be enclosed in a shaft by Section 712.1 shall be protected in accordance with Sections 714.4.1 through 714.4.4.

714.4.1 Through penetrations.
Through penetrations of *horizontal assemblies* shall comply with Section 714.4.1.1 or 714.4.1.2.

Exceptions:

1. Penetrations by steel, ferrous or copper conduits, pipes, tubes or vents or concrete or masonry items through a single fire-resistance-rated floor assembly where the *annular space* is protected with materials that prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste when subjected to ASTM E119 or UL 263 time-temperature fire conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water at the location of the penetration for the time period equivalent to the *fire-resistance rating* of the construction penetrated. Penetrating items with a maximum 6-inch (152 mm) nominal diameter shall not be limited to the penetration of a single fire-resistance-rated floor assembly, provided the aggregate area of the openings through the assembly does not exceed 144 square inches (92 900 mm^2) in any 100 square feet (9.3 m^2) of floor area.

2. Penetrations in a single concrete floor by steel, ferrous or copper conduits, pipes, tubes or vents with a maximum 6-inch (152 mm) nominal diameter, provided the concrete, grout or mortar is installed the full thickness of the floor or the thickness required to maintain the *fire-resistance rating*. The penetrating items shall not be limited to the penetration of a single concrete floor, provided the area of the opening through each floor does not exceed 144 square inches (92 900 mm^2).

3. Penetrations by *listed* electrical boxes of any material, provided such boxes have been tested for use in fire-resistance-rated assemblies and installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing.

714.4.1.1 Installation.
Through penetrations shall be installed as tested in the *approved* fire-resistance-rated assembly.

714.4.1.2 Through-penetration firestop system.
Through penetrations shall be protected by an *approved through-penetration firestop system* installed and tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479, with a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch of water (2.49 Pa). The system shall have an F rating/T rating of not less than 1 hour but not less than the required rating of the floor penetrated.

Exceptions:

1. Floor penetrations contained and located within the cavity of a wall above the floor or below the floor do not require a T rating.

2. Floor penetrations by floor drains, tub drains or shower drains contained and located within the concealed space of a horizontal assembly do not require a T rating.

3. Floor penetrations of maximum 4-inch (102 mm) nominal diameter penetrating directly into metal-enclosed electrical power switchgear do not require a T rating.

714.4.2 Membrane penetrations.
Penetrations of membranes that are part of a *horizontal assembly* shall comply with Section 714.4.1.1 or 714.4.1.2. Where floor/ceiling assemblies are required to have a *fire-resistance rating*, recessed fixtures shall be installed such that the required *fire resistance* will not be reduced.

Exceptions:

1. *Membrane penetrations* by steel, ferrous or copper conduits, pipes, tubes or vents, or concrete or masonry items where the *annular space* is protected either in accordance with Section 714.4.1 or to prevent the free passage of flame and the products of combustion. The aggregate area of the openings through the membrane shall not exceed 100 square inches (64 500 mm^2) in any 100 square feet (9.3 m^2) of ceiling area in assemblies tested without penetrations.

2. Ceiling membrane penetrations of maximum 2-hour horizontal assemblies by steel electrical boxes that do not exceed 16 square inches (10 323 mm2) in area, provided the aggregate area of such penetrations does not exceed 100 square inches (44 500 mm2) in any 100 square feet (9.29 m2) of ceiling area, and the annular space between the ceiling membrane and the box does not exceed 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).

3. *Membrane penetrations* by electrical boxes of any size or type,that have been *listed* as part of an opening protective material system for use in *horizontal*

assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing.

4. *Membrane penetrations* by *listed* electrical boxes of any material, provided such boxes have been tested for use in fire-resistance-rated assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing. The *annular space* between the ceiling membrane and the box shall not exceed 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) unless *listed* otherwise.

5. The *annular space* created by the penetration of a fire sprinkler, provided it is covered by a metal escutcheon plate.

6. Noncombustible items that are cast into concrete building elements and that do not penetrate both top and bottom surfaces of the element.

7. The ceiling membrane of 1- and 2-hour *fire-resistance-rated horizontal assemblies* is permitted to be interrupted with the double wood top plate of a wall assembly that is sheathed with Type X gypsum wallboard, provided that all penetrating items through the double top plates are protected in accordance with Section 714.4.1.1 or 714.4.1.2 and the ceiling membrane is tight to the top plates.

714.4.3 Dissimilar materials.
Noncombustible penetrating items shall not connect to combustible materials beyond the point of firestopping unless it can be demonstrated that the fire-resistance integrity of the *horizontal assembly* is maintained.

714.4.4 Penetrations in smoke barriers.
Penetrations in *smoke barriers* shall be protected by an approved *through-penetration firestop system* installed and tested in accordance with the requirements of UL 1479 for air leakage. The *L rating* of the system measured at 0.30 inch (7.47 Pa) of water in both the ambient temperature and elevated temperature tests shall not exceed:

1. 5.0 cfm per square foot (0.025 $m^3/s \cdot m^2$) of penetration opening for each *through-penetration firestop system*; or

2. A total cumulative leakage of 50 cfm (0.024 m^3/s) for any 100 square feet (9.3 m^2) of wall area, or floor area.

714.5 Nonfire-resistance-rated assemblies.
Penetrations of nonfire-resistance-rated floor or floor/ceiling assemblies or the ceiling membrane of a nonfire-resistance-rated roof/ceiling assembly shall meet the requirements of Section 713 or shall comply with Section 714.5.1 or 714.5.2.

714.5.1 Noncombustible penetrating items.
Noncombustible penetrating items that connect not more than five *stories* are permitted, provided that the *annular space* is filled to resist the free passage of flame and the products of combustion with an *approved* noncombustible material or with a fill, void or cavity material that is tested and classified for use in *through-penetration firestop systems*.

714.5.2 Penetrating items.
Penetrating items that connect not more than two *stories* are permitted, provided that the *annular space* is filled with an *approved* material to resist the free passage of flame and the products of combustion.

SECTION 715
FIRE-RESISTANT JOINT SYSTEMS

715.1 General.
Joints installed in or between fire-resistance-rated walls, floor or floor/ceiling assemblies and roofs or roof/ceiling assemblies shall be protected by an approved *fire-resistant joint system* designed to resist the passage of fire for a time period not less than the required *fire-resistance rating* of the wall, floor or roof in or between which the system is installed. *Fire-resistant joint systems* shall be tested in accordance with Section 715.3.

Exception: *Fire-resistant joint systems* shall not be required for joints in all of the following locations:

1. Floors within a single *dwelling unit*.
2. Floors where the joint is protected by a shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713.
3. Floors within atriums where the space adjacent to the atrium is included in the volume of the atrium for smoke control purposes.
4. Floors within malls.
5. Floors and ramps within open and enclosed parking garages or structures constructed in accordance with Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively.
6. Mezzanine floors.
7. Walls that are permitted to have unprotected openings.
8. Roofs where openings are permitted.
9. Control joints not exceeding a maximum width of 0.625 inch (15.9 mm) and tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.

715.1.1 Curtain wall assembly.
The void created at the intersection of a floor/ceiling assembly and an exterior curtain wall assembly shall be protected in accordance with Section 715.4.

715.2 Installation.
A *fire-resistant joint system* shall be securely installed in accordance with the listing criteria in or on the joint for its entire length so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair its ability to accommodate expected building movements and to resist the passage of fire and hot gases.

715.3 Fire test criteria.
Fire-resistant joint systems shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of either ASTM E1966 or UL 2079. Nonsymmetrical wall joint systems shall be tested with both faces exposed to the furnace, and the assigned *fire-resistance rating* shall be the shortest duration obtained from the two tests. Where evidence is furnished to show that the wall was tested with the least fire-resistant side exposed to the furnace, subject to acceptance of the *building official*, the wall need not be subjected to tests from the opposite side.

> **Exception:** For *exterior walls* with a horizontal *fire separation distance* greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), the joint system shall be required to be tested for interior fire exposure only.

715.4 Exterior curtain wall/floor intersection.
Where fire resistance-rated floor or floor/ceiling assemblies are required, voids created at the intersection of the exterior curtain wall assemblies and such floor assemblies shall be sealed with an approved system to prevent the interior spread of fire. Such systems shall be securely installed and tested in accordance with ASTM E2307 to provide an F rating for a time period not less than the fire-resistance rating of the floor assembly. Height and fire-resistance requirements for curtain wall spandrels shall comply with Section 705.8.5.

> **Exception:** Voids created at the intersection of the exterior curtain wall assemblies and such floor assemblies where the vision glass extends to the finished floor level shall be permitted to be sealed with an approved material to prevent the interior spread of fire. Such material shall be securely installed and capable of preventing the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste where subjected to ASTM E119 time-temperature fire conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (0.254 mm) of water column (2.5 Pa) for the time period not less than the fire-resistance rating of the floor assembly.

715.4.1 Exterior curtain wall/nonfire-resistance-rated floor assembly intersections.
Voids created at the intersection of exterior curtain wall assemblies and nonfire-resistance-rated floor or floor/ceiling assemblies shall be sealed with an *approved* material or system to retard the interior spread of fire and hot gases between *stories*.

715.4.2 Exterior curtain wall/vertical fire barrier intersections.
Voids created at the intersection of nonfire-resistance-rated exterior curtain wall assemblies and *fire barriers* shall be filled. An approved material or system shall be used to fill the void and shall be securely installed in or on the intersection for its entire length so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair its ability to accommodate expected building movements and to retard the passage of fire and hot gases.

715.5 Spandrel wall.
Height and fire-resistance requirements for curtain wall spandrels shall comply with Section 705.8.5. Where Section 705.8.5 does not require a fire-resistance-rated spandrel wall, the requirements of Section 715.4 shall still apply to the intersection between the spandrel wall and the floor.

715.6 Fire-resistant joint systems in smoke barriers.
Fire-resistant joint systems in *smoke barriers*, and joints at the intersection of a horizontal *smoke barrier* and an exterior curtain wall, shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of UL 2079 for air leakage. The *L rating* of the joint system shall not exceed 5 cfm per linear foot

(0.00775 m^3/s m) of joint at 0.30 inch (7.47 Pa) of water for both the ambient temperature and elevated temperature tests.

SECTION 716
OPENING PROTECTIVES

716.1 General.
Opening protectives required by other sections of this code shall comply with the provisions of this section.

716.2 Fire-resistance-rated glazing.
Fire-resistance-rated glazing tested as part of a f*ire-resistance-rated* wall or floor/ ceiling assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and labeled in accordance with Section 703.6 shall not otherwise be required to comply with this section where used as part of a wall or floor/ceiling assembly. *Fire-resistance-rated* glazing shall be permitted in fire door and *fire window assemblies* where tested and installed in accordance with their listings and where in compliance with the requirements of this section.

716.3 Marking fire-rated glazing assemblies.
Fire-rated glazing assemblies shall be marked in accordance with Tables 716.3, 716.5 and 716.6.

TABLE 716.3
MARKING FIRE-RATED GLAZING ASSEMBLIES

FIRE TEST STANDARD	MARKING	DEFINITION OF MARKING
ASTM E119 or UL 263	W	Meets wall assembly criteria.
NFPA 257 or UL 9	OH	Meets fire window assembly criteria including the hose stream test.
NFPA 252 or UL 10B or UL 10C	D H T	Meets fire door assembly criteria. Meets fire door assembly hose stream test. Meets 450ºF temperature rise criteria for 30 minutes
	XXX	The time in minutes of the fire resistance or fire protection rating of the glazing assembly.

For SI: ºC = [(ºF) - 32]/1.8.

716.3.1 Fire-rated glazing identification.
For *fire-rated glazing*, the *label* shall bear the identification required in Tables 716.3 and 716.5. “D” indicates that the glazing is permitted to be used in *fire door* assemblies and that the glazing meets the fire protection requirements of NFPA 252. “H” shall indicate that the glazing meets the hose stream requirements of NFPA 252. “T” shall indicate that the glazing meets the temperature requirements of Section 716.5.5.1. The placeholder “XXX” represents the fire-rating period, in minutes.

716.3.2 Fire-protection-rated glazing identification.
For *fire-protection-rated* glazing, the *label* shall bear the following identification required in Tables 716.3 and 716.6: “OH – XXX.” “OH” indicates that the glazing meets both the fire

protection and the hose-stream requirements of NFPA 257 or UL 9 and is permitted to be used in fire window openings. The placeholder “XXX” represents the fire-rating period, in minutes.

716.3.3 Fire-rated glazing that exceeds the code requirements.
Fire-rated glazing assemblies marked as complying with hose stream requirements (H) shall be permitted in applications that do not require compliance with hose stream requirements. *Fire-rated glazing* assemblies marked as complying with temperature rise requirements (T) shall be permitted in applications that do not require compliance with temperature rise requirements. *Fire-rated glazing* assemblies marked with ratings (XXX) that exceed the ratings required by this code shall be permitted.

716.4 Alternative methods for determining fire protection ratings.
The application of any of the alternative methods *listed* in this section shall be based on the fire exposure and acceptance criteria specified in NFPA 252, NFPA 257 or UL 9. The required *fire resistance* of an opening protective shall be permitted to be established by any of the following methods or procedures:

1. Designs documented in *approved* sources.

2. Calculations performed in an *approved* manner.

3. Engineering analysis based on a comparison of opening protective designs having *fire protection ratings* as determined by the test procedures set forth in NFPA 252, NFPA 257 or UL 9.

4. Alternative protection methods as allowed by Section 104.11.

716.5 Fire door and shutter assemblies.
Approved *fire door* and fire shutter assemblies shall be constructed of any material or assembly of component materials that conforms to the test requirements of Section 716.5.1, 716.5.2 or 716.5.3 and the *fire protection rating* indicated in Table 716.5. *Fire door* frames with transom lights, sidelights or both shall be permitted in accordance with Section 716.5.6. *Fire door* assemblies and shutters shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this section and NFPA 80.

Exceptions:

1. Labeled protective assemblies that conform to the requirements of this section or UL 10A, UL 14B and UL 14C for tin-clad *fire door* assemblies.

2. Floor *fire door* assemblies in accordance with Section 712.1.13.1.

TABLE 716.5
OPENING FIRE PROTECTION ASSEMBLIES, RATINGS AND MARKINGS

TYPE OF ASSEMBLY	REQUIRED WALL ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)	MINIMUM FIRE DOOR AND FIRE SHUTTER ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)	DOOR VISION PANEL SIZE[b]	FIRE-RATED GLAZING MARKING DOOR VISION PANEL[d]	MINIMUM SIDELIGHT/ TRANSOM ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)		FIRE-RATED GLAZING MARKING SIDELIGHT/TRANSOM PANEL	
					Fire protection	Fire resistance	Fire protection	Fire resistance
Fire walls and fire barriers having a required fire-resistance rating greater than 1 hour	4	3	See Note b	D-H-W-240	Not Permitted	4	Not Permitted	W-240
	3	3[a]	See Note b	D-H-W-180	Not Permitted	3	Not Permitted	W-180
	2	1 1/2	100 sq. in.	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-90 >100 sq. in.= D-H-W-90	Not Permitted	2	Not Permitted	W-120
	1 1/2	1 1/2	100 sq. in.	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-90 >100 sq. in.= D-H-W-90	Not Permitted	1 1/2	Not Permitted	W-90
Enclosures for shafts, interior exit stairways and interior exit ramps.	2	1 1/2	100 sq. in.	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-90 > 100 sq. in.= D-H-T-W-90	Not Permitted	2	Not Permitted	W-120
Horizontal exits in fire walls[e]	4	3	100 sq. in.	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-180 > 100 sq. in.= D-H-W-240	Not Permitted	4	Not Permitted	W-240
	3	3[a]	100 sq. in.	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-180 > 100 sq. in.= D-H-W-180	Not Permitted	3	Not Permitted	W-180
Fire barriers having a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour: Enclosures for shafts, exit access stairways, exit access ramps, interior exit stairways and interior exit ramps; and exit passageway walls	1	1	100 sq. in.[c]	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-60 >100 sq. in.= D-H-T-W-60	Not Permitted	1	Not Permitted	W-60
					Fire protection			
Other fire barriers	1	3/4	Maximum size tested	D-H	3/4		D-H	
Fire partitions: Corridor walls	1	1 1/3[b]	Maximum size tested	D-20	3/4[b]		D-H-OH-45	
	0.5	1[b] 1/3	Maximum size tested	D-20	1/3		D-H-OH-20	

Other fire partitions	1	$3/4$	Maximum size tested	D-H-45	$3/4$	D-H-45
	0.5	$1/3$	Maximum size tested	D-H-20	$1/3$	D-H-20

(continued)

TABLE 716.5—continued
OPENING FIRE PROTECTION ASSEMBLIES, RATINGS AND MARKINGS

TYPE OF ASSEMBLY	REQUIRED WALL ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)	MINIMUM FIRE DOOR AND FIRE SHUTTER ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)	DOOR VISION PANEL SIZE[b]	FIRE-RATED GLAZING MARKING DOOR VISION PANEL[d]	MINIMUM SIDELIGHT/ TRANSOM ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)		FIRE-RATED GLAZING MARKING SIDELIGHT/TRANSOM PANEL	
					Fire protection	Fire resistance	Fire protection	Fire resistance
Exterior walls	3	$1\frac{1}{2}$	100 sq. in.[b]	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-90 >100 sq. in = D-H-W-90	Not Permitted	3	Not Permitted	W-180
	2	$1\frac{1}{2}$	100 sq. in.[b]	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-90 >100 sq. in.= D-H-W-90	Not Permitted	2	Not Permitted	W-120
					Fire protection			
	1	$3/4$	Maximum size tested	D-H-45	$3/4$		D-H-45	
Smoke barriers					Fire protection			
	1	$1/3$	Maximum size tested	D-20	$3/4$		D-H-OH-45	

For SI: 1 square inch = 645.2 mm.

a. Two doors, each with a fire protection rating of $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours, installed on opposite sides of the same opening in a fire wall, shall be deemed equivalent in fire protection rating to one 3-hour fire door.
b. Fire-resistance-rated glazing tested to ASTM E119 in accordance with Section 716.2 shall be permitted, in the maximum size tested.
c. Except where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler and the fire-rated glazing meets the criteria established in Section 716.5.5.
d. Under the column heading “Fire-rated glazing marking door vision panel,” W refers to the fire-resistance rating of the glazing, not the frame.
e. See Section 716.5.8.1.2.1.

716.5.1 Side-hinged or pivoted swinging doors.

Fire door assemblies with side-hinged and pivoted swinging doors shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C. After 5 minutes into the NFPA 252 test, the neutral pressure level in the furnace shall be established at 40 inches (1016 mm) or less above the sill.

716.5.2 Other types of assemblies.
Fire door assemblies with other types of doors, including swinging elevator doors, horizontal sliding fire door assemblies, and fire shutter assemblies, bottom and side-hinged chute intake doors, and top-hinged chute discharge doors, shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10B. The pressure in the furnace shall be maintained as nearly equal to the atmospheric pressure as possible. Once established, the pressure shall be maintained during the entire test period.

716.5.3 Door assemblies in corridors and smoke barriers.
Fire door assemblies required to have a minimum *fire protection rating* of 20 minutes where located in *corridor* walls or *smoke barrier* walls having a *fire-resistance rating* in accordance with Table 716.5 shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C without the hose stream test.

Exceptions:

1. Viewports that require a hole not larger than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter through the door, have not less than a 0.25-inch-thick (6.4 mm) glass disc and the holder is of metal that will not melt out where subject to temperatures of 1,700°F (927°C).

2. *Corridor* door assemblies in occupancies of Group I-2 shall be in accordance with Section 407.3.1.

3. Unprotected openings shall be permitted for *corridors* in multitheater complexes where each motion picture auditorium has not fewer than one-half of its required *exit* or *exit access doorways* opening directly to the exterior or into an *exit* passageway.

4. Horizontal sliding doors in *smoke barriers* that comply with Sections 408.6 and 408.8.4 in occupancies in Group I-3.

716.5.3.1 Smoke and draft control.
Fire door assemblies shall meet the requirements for a smoke and draft control door assembly tested in accordance with UL 1784. The air leakage rate of the door assembly shall not exceed 3.0 cubic feet per minute per square foot (0.01524 $m^3/s \bullet m^2$) of door opening at 0.10 inch (24.9 Pa) of water for both the ambient temperature and elevated temperature tests. Louvers shall be prohibited. Installation of smoke doors shall be in accordance with NFPA 105.

716.5.3.2 Glazing in door assemblies.
In a 20-minute *fire door assembly*, the glazing material in the door itself shall have a minimum fire-protection-rated glazing of 20 minutes and shall be exempt from the hose stream test. Glazing material in any other part of the door assembly, including transom lights and sidelights, shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 257 or UL 9, including the hose stream test, in accordance with Section 716.6.

716.5.4 Door assemblies in other fire partitions.
Fire door assemblies required to have a minimum fire protection rating of 20 minutes where

located in other *fire partitions* having a fire-resistance rating of 0.5 hour in accordance with Table 716.5 shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 252, UL 10B or UL 10C with the hose stream test.

716.5.5 Doors in interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways.
Fire door assemblies in interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways shall have a maximum transmitted temperature rise of not more than 450°F (250°C) above ambient at the end of 30 minutes of standard fire test exposure.

> **Exception:** The maximum transmitted temperature rise is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

> **716.5.5.1 Glazing in doors.**
>
> Fire-protection-rated glazing in excess of 100 square inches (0.065 m^2) is not permitted.
>
> Fire-resistance-rated glazing in excess of 100 square inches (0.065 m^2) shall be permitted in *fire doors.* Listed *fire-resistance-rated* glazing in a *fire door* shall have a maximum transmitted temperature rise in accordance with Section 716.5.5 when the *fire door* is tested in accordance with NFPA 252, UL 10B or UL 10C.

716.5.6 Fire door frames with transom lights and sidelights.
Door frames with transom lights, sidelights or both, shall be permitted where a $^3/_4$-hour *fire protection rating* or less is required in accordance with Table 716.5. *Fire door* frames with transom lights, sidelights, or both, installed with fire-resistance-rated glazing tested as an assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall be permitted where a fire protection rating exceeding $^3/_4$ hour is required in accordance with Table 716.5.

716.5.7 Labeled protective assemblies.
Fire door assemblies shall be labeled by an *approved agency*. The *labels* shall comply with NFPA 80, and shall be permanently affixed to the door or frame.

> **716.5.7.1 Fire door labeling requirements.**
> Fire doors shall be labeled showing the name of the manufacturer or other identification readily traceable back to the manufacturer, the name or trademark of the third-party inspection agency, the fire protection rating and, where required for fire doors in interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways by Section 716.5.5, the maximum transmitted temperature end point. Smoke and draft control doors complying with UL 1784 shall be labeled as such and shall comply with Section 716.5.7.3. Labels shall be approved and permanently affixed. The label shall be applied at the factory or location where fabrication and assembly are performed.

> > **716.5.7.1.1 Light kits, louvers and components.**
> > Listed light kits and louvers and their required preparations shall be considered as part of the labeled door where such installations are done under the listing program of the third-party agency. *Fire doors* and door assemblies shall be permitted to consist of components, including glazing, vision light kits and hardware that are listed or classified and labeled for such use by different third-party agencies.

716.5.7.2 Oversized doors.
Oversized *fire doors* shall bear an oversized *fire door label* by an *approved agency* or shall be provided with a certificate of inspection furnished by an *approved* testing agency. Where a certificate of inspection is furnished by an *approved* testing agency, the certificate shall state that the door conforms to the requirements of design, materials and construction, but has not been subjected to the fire test.

716.5.7.3 Smoke and draft control door labeling requirements.
Smoke and draft control doors complying with UL 1784 shall be labeled in accordance with Section 716.5.7.1 and shall show the letter “S” on the fire-rating *label* of the door. This marking shall indicate that the door and frame assembly are in compliance where *listed* or labeled gasketing is installed.

716.5.7.4 Fire door frame labeling requirements.
Fire door frames shall be labeled showing the names of the manufacturer and the third-party inspection agency.

716.5.7.5 Fire door operator labeling requirements.
Fire door operators for horizontal sliding doors shall be labeled and listed for use with the assembly.

716.5.8 Glazing material.
Fire-rated glazing and *fire-resistance-rated* glazing conforming to the opening protection requirements in Section 716.5 shall be permitted in *fire door* assemblies.

716.5.8.1 Size limitations.
Fire-resistance-rated glazing shall comply with the size limitations in Section 716.5.8.1.1. Fire-protection-rated glazing shall comply with the size limitations of NFPA 80, and as provided in Section 716.5.8.1.2.

716.5.8.1.1 Fire-resistance-rated glazing in door assemblies in fire walls and fire barriers rated greater than 1 hour.
Fire-resistance-rated glazing tested to ASTM E119 or UL 263 and NFPA 252, UL 10B or UL 10C shall be permitted in *fire door assemblies* located in *fire walls* and in *fire barriers* in accordance with Table 716.5 to the maximum size tested and in accordance with their listings.

716.5.8.1.2 Fire-protection-rated glazing in door assemblies in fire walls and fire barriers rated greater than 1 hour.
Fire-protection-rated glazing shall be prohibited in *fire walls* and *fire barriers* except as provided in Sections 716.5.8.1.2.1 and 716.5.8.1.2.2.

716.5.8.1.2.1 Horizontal exits.
Fire-protection-rated glazing shall be permitted as vision panels in *self-closing* swinging *fire door* assemblies serving as horizontal exits in *fire walls* where limited to 100 square inches (0.065 m^2) with no dimension exceeding 10 inches (0.3 mm).

716.5.8.1.2.2 Fire barriers.
Fire-protection-rated glazing shall be permitted in fire doors having a 1 1/2-hour *fire protection rating* intended for installation in *fire barriers*, where limited to 100 square inches (0.065 m2).

716.5.8.2 Elevator, stairway and ramp protectives.
Approved fire-protection-rated glazing used in *fire door* assemblies in elevator, stairway and ramp enclosures shall be so located as to furnish clear vision of the passageway or approach to the elevator, stairway or ramp.

716.5.8.3 Labeling.
Fire-rated glazing shall bear a *label* or other identification showing the name of the manufacturer, the test standard and information required in Table 716.3 that shall be issued by an *approved agency* and shall be permanently identified on the glazing.

716.5.8.4 Safety glazing.
Fire-protection-rated glazing and *fire-resistance-rated* glazing installed in *fire door* assemblies shall comply with the safety glazing requirements of Chapter 24 where applicable.

716.5.9 Door closing.
Fire doors shall be latching and self- or automatic-closing in accordance with this section.

Exceptions:

1. *Fire doors* located in common walls separating *sleeping units* in Group R-1 shall be permitted without automatic- or *self-closing* devices.

2. The elevator car doors and the associated hoistway enclosure doors at the floor level designated for recall in accordance with Section 3003.2 shall be permitted to remain open during Phase I emergency recall operation.

3. In Group I-1, Condition 2 Assisted living facilities licensed under chapter 388-78A and residential treatment facilities licensed under chapter 246-337 WAC, fire doors in dwelling and sleeping units opening to the corridor shall be permitted without automatic or self-closing devices when all of the following conditions exist:
   3.1. Each floor is constantly attended by staff on a 24hour basis and stationed on that floor;
   3.2. The facility is provided with an NFPA 13 sprinkler system throughout;
   3.3. Doors shall be equipped with positive latching;
   3.4. Dwelling and sleeping units are not equipped with cooking appliances;
   3.5. Dwelling and sleeping units shall be equipped with a smoke detection system interconnected with the smoke detection system required by Section 907.2.6.1.

716.5.9.1 Latch required.
Unless otherwise specifically permitted, single *fire doors* and both leaves of pairs of side-hinged swinging *fire doors* shall be provided with an active latch bolt that will secure the door when it is closed.

716.5.9.1.1 Chute intake door latching.
Chute intake doors shall be positive latching, remaining latched and closed in the event of latch spring failure during a fire emergency.

716.5.9.2 Automatic-closing fire door assemblies.
Automatic-closing *fire door* assemblies shall be *self-closing* in accordance with NFPA 80.

716.5.9.3 Smoke-activated doors.
Automatic-closing doors installed in the following locations shall be automatic-closing by the actuation of smoke detectors installed in accordance with Section 907.3 or by loss of power to the smoke detector or hold-open device. Doors that are automatic-closing by smoke detection shall not have more than a 10-second delay before the door starts to close after the smoke detector is actuated:

1. Doors installed across a *corridor*.

2. Doors installed in the enclosures of *exit access stairways* and *ramps* in accordance with Sections 1019 and 1023, respectively.

3. Doors that protect openings in *exits* or *corridors* required to be of fire-resistance-rated construction.

4. Doors that protect openings in walls that are capable of resisting the passage of smoke in accordance with Section 509.4.

5. Doors installed in *smoke barriers* in accordance with Section 709.5.

6. Doors installed in *fire partitions* in accordance with Section 708.6.

7. Doors installed in a *fire wall* in accordance with Section 706.8.

8. Doors installed in shaft enclosures in accordance with Section 713.7.

9. Doors installed in waste and linen chutes, discharge openings and access and discharge rooms in accordance with Section 713.13. Loading doors installed in waste and linen chutes shall meet the requirements of Sections 716.5.9 and 716.5.9.1.1.

10. Doors installed in the walls for compartmentation of underground buildings in accordance with Section 405.4.2.

11. Doors installed in the elevator lobby walls of underground buildings in accordance with Section 405.4.3.

12. Doors installed in smoke partitions in accordance with Section 710.5.2.3.

716.5.9.4 Doors in pedestrian ways.
Vertical sliding or vertical rolling steel *fire doors* in openings through which pedestrians travel shall be heat activated or activated by smoke detectors with alarm verification.

716.5.10 Swinging fire shutters.
Where fire shutters of the swinging type are installed in exterior openings, not less than one row in every three vertical rows shall be arranged to be readily opened from the outside, and shall be identified by distinguishing marks or letters not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high.

716.5.11 Rolling fire shutters.
Where fire shutters of the rolling type are installed, such shutters shall include *approved* automatic-closing devices.

716.6 Fire-protection-rated glazing.
Glazing in *fire window assemblies* shall be fire protection rated in accordance with this section and Table 716.6. Glazing in *fire door* assemblies shall comply with Section 716.5.8. Fire-protection-rated glazing in fire window assemblies shall be tested in accordance with and shall meet the acceptance criteria of NFPA 257 or UL 9. Fire-protection-rated glazing shall comply with NFPA 80. Openings in nonfire-resistance-rated *exterior wall* assemblies that require protection in accordance with Section 705.3, 705.8, 705.8.5 or 705.8.6 shall have a fire protection rating of not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ hour. Fire-protection-rated glazing in 0.5-hour fire-resistance-rated partitions is permitted to have an 0.33-hour fire protection rating.

TABLE 716.6
FIRE WINDOW ASSEMBLY FIRE PROTECTION RATINGS

TYPE OF WALL ASSEMBLY	REQUIRED WALL ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)	MINIMUM FIRE WINDOW ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)	FIRE-RATED GLAZING MARKING
Interior walls			
Fire walls	All	NP[a]	W-XXX[b]
Fire barriers	>1	NP[a]	W-XXX[b]
	1	NP[a]	W-XXX[b]
Incidental use areas (Section 707.3.7), Mixed occupancy separations (Section 707.3.9)	1	$^{3}/_{4}$	OH-45 or W-60
Fire partitions	1	$^{3}/_{4}$	OH-45 or W-60
	0.5	$^{1}/_{3}$	OH-20 or W-30
Smoke barriers	1	$^{3}/_{4}$	OH-45 or W-60

Exterior walls	>1	$1\frac{1}{2}$	OH-90 or W-XXX[b]
	1	$\frac{3}{4}$	OH-45 or W-60
	0.5	$\frac{1}{3}$	OH-20 or W-30
Party wall	All	NP	Not Applicable

NP = Not Permitted.

a. Not permitted except fire-resistance-rated glazing assemblies tested to ASTM E119 or UL 263, as specified in Section 716.2.

b. XXX = The fire rating duration period in minutes, which shall be equal to the *fire-resistance rating* required for the wall assembly.

716.6.1 Testing under positive pressure.
NFPA 257 or UL 9 shall evaluate fire-protection-rated glazing under positive pressure. Within the first 10 minutes of a test, the pressure in the furnace shall be adjusted so not less than two-thirds of the test specimen is above the neutral pressure plane, and the neutral pressure plane shall be maintained at that height for the balance of the test.

716.6.2 Nonsymmetrical glazing systems.
Nonsymmetrical fire-protection-rated glazing systems in *fire partitions*, *fire barriers* or in *exterior walls* with a *fire separation distance* of 5 feet (1524 mm) or less pursuant to Section 705 shall be tested with both faces exposed to the furnace, and the assigned *fire protection rating* shall be the shortest duration obtained from the two tests conducted in compliance with NFPA 257 or UL 9.

716.6.3 Safety glazing.
Fire-protection-rated glazing and *fire-resistance-rated* glazing installed in *fire window assemblies* shall comply with the safety glazing requirements of Chapter 24 where applicable.

716.6.4 Glass and glazing.
Glazing in *fire window assemblies* shall be fire-protection-rated glazing installed in accordance with and complying with the size limitations set forth in NFPA 80.

716.6.5 Installation.
Fire-protection-rated glazing shall be in the fixed position or be automatic-closing and shall be installed in *approved* frames.

716.6.6 Window mullions.
Metal mullions that exceed a nominal height of 12 feet (3658 mm) shall be protected with materials to afford the same *fire-resistance rating* as required for the wall construction in which the protective is located.

716.6.7 Interior fire window assemblies.
Fire-protection-rated glazing used in *fire window assemblies* located in *fire partitions* and *fire barriers* shall be limited to use in assemblies with a maximum *fire-resistance rating* of 1 hour in accordance with this section.

716.6.7.1 Where 3/4-hour fire protection window assemblies permitted.
Fire-protection-rated glazing requiring 45-minute opening protection in accordance with Table 716.6 shall be limited to *fire partitions* designed in accordance with Section 708 and *fire barriers* utilized in the applications set forth in Sections 707.3.6, 707.3.7 and 707.3.9 where the *fire-resistance rating* does not exceed 1 hour. Fire-resistance-rated glazing assemblies tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not be subject to the limitations of this section.

716.6.7.2 Area limitations.
The total area of the glazing in fire-protection-rated window assemblies shall not exceed 25 percent of the area of a common wall with any room.

716.6.7.3 Where 1/3-hour fire-protection window assemblies permitted.
Fire-protection-rated glazing shall be permitted in window assemblies tested to NFPA 257 or UL 9 in smoke barriers and fire partitions requiring 1/3-hour opening protection in accordance with Table 716.6.

716.6.8 Labeling requirements.
Fire-protection-rated glazing shall bear a label or other identification showing the name of the manufacturer, the test standard and information required in Section 716.3.2 and Table 716.6 that shall be issued by an approved agency and permanently identified on the glazing.

SECTION 717
DUCTS AND AIR TRANSFER OPENINGS

717.1 General.
The provisions of this section shall govern the protection of duct penetrations and air transfer openings in assemblies required to be protected and duct penetrations in nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies.

717.1.1 Ducts and air transfer openings.
Ducts transitioning horizontally between shafts shall not require a shaft enclosure provided that the duct penetration into each associated shaft is protected with *dampers* complying with this section.

717.1.2 Ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated assemblies without dampers.
Ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated assemblies and are not required by this section to have *dampers* shall comply with the requirements of Sections 714.2 through 714.3.3. Ducts that penetrate *horizontal assemblies* not required to be contained within a shaft and not required by this section to have *dampers* shall comply with the requirements of Sections 714.4 through 714.5.2.

717.1.2.1 Ducts that penetrate nonfire-resistance- rated assemblies.
The space around a duct penetrating a nonfire-resistance-rated floor assembly shall comply with Section 717.6.3.

717.2 Installation.
Fire dampers, smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers and *ceiling radiation dampers* located within air distribution and smoke control systems shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this section, the manufacturer's instructions and the *dampers'* listing.

717.2.1 Smoke control system.
Where the installation of a *fire damper* will interfere with the operation of a required smoke control system in accordance with Section 909, *approved* alternative protection shall be utilized. Where mechanical systems including ducts and *dampers* utilized for normal building ventilation serve as part of the smoke control system, the expected performance of these systems in smoke control mode shall be addressed in the rational analysis required by Section 909.4.

717.2.2 Hazardous exhaust ducts.
Fire dampers for hazardous exhaust duct systems shall comply with the *International Mechanical Code*.

717.3 Damper testing, ratings and actuation.
Damper testing, ratings and actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 717.3.1 through 717.3.3.

717.3.1 Damper testing.
Dampers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with the standards in this section.

1. *Fire dampers* shall comply with the requirements of UL 555. Only *fire dampers* and *ceiling radiation dampers* labeled for use in dynamic systems shall be installed in heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems designed to operate with fans on during a fire.

2. Smoke dampers shall comply with the requirements of UL 555S.

3. Combination fire/smoke dampers shall comply with the requirements of both UL 555 and UL 555S.

4. Ceiling radiation dampers shall comply with the requirements of UL 555C or shall be tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.

5. *Corridor dampers* shall comply with requirements of both UL 555 and UL 555S. *Corridor dampers* shall demonstrate acceptable closure performance when subjected to 150 feet per minute (0.76 mps) velocity across the face of the damper during the UL 555 fire exposure test.

717.3.2 Damper rating.
Damper ratings shall be in accordance with Sections 717.3.2.1 through 717.3.2.4.

717.3.2.1 Fire damper ratings.
Fire dampers shall have the minimum *fire protection rating* specified in Table 717.3.2.1 for the type of penetration.

TABLE 717.3.2.1
FIRE DAMPER RATING

TYPE OF PENETRATION	MINIMUM DAMPER RATING (hours)
Less than 3-hour fire-resistance-rated assemblies	1.5
3-hour or greater fire-resistance-rated assemblies	3

717.3.2.2 Smoke damper ratings.
Smoke damper leakage ratings shall be Class I or II. Elevated temperature ratings shall be not less than 250°F (121°C).

717.3.2.3 Combination fire/smoke damper ratings.
Combination fire/smoke dampers shall have the minimum *fire protection rating* specified for *fire dampers* in Table 717.3.2.1 for the type of penetration and shall have a minimum *smoke damper* rating as specified in Section 717.3.2.2.

717.3.2.4 Corridor damper ratings.
Corridor dampers shall have the following minimum ratings:

1. One hour *fire-resistance rating*.

2. Class I or II leakage rating as specified in Section 717.3.2.2.

717.3.3 Damper actuation.
Damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 717.3.3.1 through 717.3.3.5 as applicable.

717.3.3.1 Fire damper actuation device.
The *fire damper* actuation device shall meet one of the following requirements:

1. The operating temperature shall be approximately 50°F (10°C) above the normal temperature within the duct system, but not less than 160°F (71°C).

2. The operating temperature shall be not more than 350°F (177°C) where located in a smoke control system complying with Section 909.

717.3.3.2 Smoke damper actuation.
The *smoke damper* shall close upon actuation of a *listed* smoke detector or detectors installed in accordance with Section 907.3 and one of the following methods, as applicable:

1. Where a *smoke damper* is installed within a duct, a smoke detector shall be installed inside the duct or outside the duct with sampling tubes protruding into the duct. The detector or tubes within the duct shall be within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the *damper*. Air outlets and inlets shall not be located between the detector or tubes and the *damper.* The detector shall be *listed* for the air velocity, temperature and humidity anticipated at the point where it is installed. Other than

in mechanical smoke control systems, *dampers* shall be closed upon fan shutdown where local smoke detectors require a minimum velocity to operate.

2. Where a *smoke damper* is installed above *smoke barrier* doors in a *smoke barrier*, a spot-type detector shall be installed on either side of the *smoke barrier* door opening. The detector shall be listed for releasing service if used for direct interface with the damper.

3. Where a *smoke damper* is installed within an air transfer opening in a wall, a spot-type detector shall be installed within 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally of the *damper*. The detector shall be listed for releasing service if used for direct interface with the damper.

4. Where a *smoke damper* is installed in a *corridor* wall or ceiling, the *damper* shall be permitted to be controlled by a smoke detection system installed in the *corridor*.

5. Where a smoke detection system is installed in all areas served by the duct in which the damper will be located, the *smoke dampers* shall be permitted to be controlled by the smoke detection system.

717.3.3.3 Combination fire/smoke damper actuation.
Combination fire/smoke damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 717.3.3.1 and 717.3.3.2. *Combination fire/smoke dampers* installed in smoke control system shaft penetrations shall not be activated by local area smoke detection unless it is secondary to the smoke management system controls.

717.3.3.4 Ceiling radiation damper actuation.
The operating temperature of a *ceiling radiation damper* actuation device shall be 50°F (27.8°C) above the normal temperature within the duct system, but not less than 160°F (71°C).

717.3.3.5 Corridor damper actuation.
Corridor damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 717.3.3.1 and 717.3.3.2.

717.4 Access and identification.
Fire and smoke *dampers* shall be provided with an *approved* means of access that is large enough to *permit* inspection and maintenance of the *damper* and its operating parts. The access shall not affect the integrity of fire-resistance-rated assemblies. The access openings shall not reduce the *fire-resistance rating* of the assembly. Access points shall be permanently identified on the exterior by a *label* having letters not less than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) in height reading: FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER, SMOKE DAMPER or FIRE DAMPER. Access doors in ducts shall be tight fitting and suitable for the required duct construction.

717.5 Where required.
Fire, dampers, smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers, ceiling radiation dampers and *corridor dampers* shall be provided at the locations prescribed in Sections 717.5.1 through 717.5.7 and 717.6. Where an assembly is required to have both *fire dampers* and *smoke*

dampers, *combination fire/smoke dampers* or a *fire damper* and a *smoke damper* shall be provided.

717.5.1 Fire walls.
Ducts and air transfer openings permitted in *fire walls* in accordance with Section 706.11 shall be protected with *listed fire dampers* installed in accordance with their listing.

717.5.1.1 Horizontal exits.
A listed smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a fire wall that serves as a horizontal exit.

717.5.2 Fire barriers.
Ducts and air transfer openings of *fire barriers* shall be protected with *approved fire dampers* installed in accordance with their listing. Ducts and air transfer openings shall not penetrate enclosures for *interior exit stairways* and *ramps* and *exit passageways,* except as permitted by Sections 1023.5 and 1024.6, respectively.

Exception: *Fire dampers* are not required at penetrations of *fire barriers* where any of the following apply:

1. Penetrations are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as part of the fire-resistance-rated assembly.

2. Ducts are used as part of an *approved* smoke control system in accordance with Section 909 and where the use of a *fire damper* would interfere with the operation of a smoke control system.

3. Such walls are penetrated by ducted HVAC systems, have a required *fire-resistance rating* of 1 hour or less, are in areas of other than Group H and are in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. For the purposes of this exception, a ducted HVAC system shall be a duct system for conveying supply, return or exhaust air as part of the structure's HVAC system. Such a duct system shall be constructed of sheet steel not less than No. 26 gage thickness and shall be continuous from the air-handling appliance or equipment to the air outlet and inlet terminals.

717.5.2.1 Horizontal exits.
A *listed smoke damper* designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a *fire barrier* that serves as a horizontal *exit*.

717.5.3 Shaft enclosures.
Shaft enclosures that are permitted to be penetrated by ducts and air transfer openings shall be protected with *approved* fire and smoke *dampers* installed in accordance with their listing.

Exceptions:

1. *Fire dampers* are not required at penetrations of shafts where any of the following criteria are met:

   1.1. Steel exhaust subducts are extended not less than 22 inches (559 mm) vertically in exhaust shafts, provided there is a continuous airflow upward to the outside.

   1.2. Penetrations are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as part of the fire-resistance-rated assembly.

   1.3. Ducts are used as part of an *approved* smoke control system designed and installed in accordance with Section 909 and where the *fire damper* will interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.

   1.4. The penetrations are in parking garage exhaust or supply shafts that are separated from other building shafts by not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

2. In Group B and R occupancies equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, *smoke dampers* are not required at penetrations of shafts where all of the following criteria are met:

   2.1. Kitchen, clothes dryer, bathroom and toilet room exhaust openings are installed with steel exhaust subducts, having a minimum wall thickness of 0.0187-inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage).

   2.2. The subducts extend not less than 22 inches (559 mm) vertically.

   2.3. An exhaust fan is installed at the upper terminus of the shaft that is powered continuously in accordance with the provisions of Section 909.11, so as to maintain a continuous upward airflow to the outside.

3. *Smoke dampers* are not required at penetration of exhaust or supply shafts in parking garages that are separated from other building shafts by not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

4. *Smoke dampers* are not required at penetrations of shafts where ducts are used as part of an *approved* mechanical smoke control system designed in accordance with Section 909 and where the *smoke damper* will interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.

5. *Fire dampers* and *combination fire/smoke dampers* are not required in kitchen and clothes dryer exhaust systems where installed in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

717.5.4 Fire partitions.
Ducts and air transfer openings that penetrate *fire partitions* shall be protected with *listed fire dampers* installed in accordance with their listing.

Exceptions: In occupancies other than Group H, *fire dampers* are not required where any of the following apply:

1. Corridor walls in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and the duct is protected as a *through penetration* in accordance with Section 714.

2. Tenant partitions in *covered and open mall buildings* where the walls are not required by provisions elsewhere in the code to extend to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, slab or deck above.

3. The duct system is constructed of *approved* materials in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code* and the duct penetrating the wall complies with all of the following requirements:

   3.1. The duct shall not exceed 100 square inches (0.06 m^2).

   3.2. The duct shall be constructed of steel not less than 0.0217 inch (0.55 mm) in thickness.

   3.3. The duct shall not have openings that communicate the *corridor* with adjacent spaces or rooms.

   3.4. The duct shall be installed above a ceiling.

   3.5. The duct shall not terminate at a wall register in the fire-resistance-rated wall.

   3.6. A minimum 12-inch-long (305 mm) by 0.060-inch-thick (1.52 mm) steel sleeve shall be centered in each duct opening. The sleeve shall be secured to both sides of the wall and all four sides of the sleeve with minimum 1 1/2-inch by 1 1/2-inch by 0.060-inch (38 mm by 38 mm by 1.52 mm) steel retaining angles. The retaining angles shall be secured to the sleeve and the wall with No. 10 (M5) screws. The *annular space* between the steel sleeve and the wall opening shall be filled with mineral wool batting on all sides.

4. Such walls are penetrated by ducted HVAC systems, have a required *fire-resistance rating* of 1 hour or less, and are in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. For the purposes of this exception, a ducted HVAC system shall be a duct system for conveying supply, return or exhaust air as part of the structure's HVAC system. Such a duct system shall be constructed of sheet steel not less than No. 26 gage thickness and shall be continuous from the air-handling appliance or equipment to the air outlet and inlet terminals.

717.5.4.1 Corridors.
Duct and air transfer openings that penetrate *corridors* shall be protected with dampers as follows:

1. A *corridor damper* shall be provided where corridor ceilings, constructed as required for the corridor walls as permitted in Section 708.4, Exception 3, are penetrated.

2. A *ceiling radiation damper* shall be provided where the ceiling membrane of a *fire-resistance-rated* floor-ceiling or roof-ceiling assembly, constructed as permitted in Section 708.4, Exception 2, is penetrated.

3. A listed smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a corridor enclosure required to have smoke and draft control doors in accordance with Section 716.5.3.

Exceptions:

1. *Smoke dampers* are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an *approved* smoke control system in accordance with Section 909, and *smoke dampers* are not necessary for the operation and control of the system.

2. *Smoke dampers* are not required in *corridor* penetrations where the duct is constructed of steel not less than 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) in thickness and there are no openings serving the *corridor*.

717.5.5 Smoke barriers.
A *listed smoke damper* designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a *smoke barrier*. *Smoke dampers* and *smoke damper* actuation methods shall comply with Section 717.3.3.2.

Exceptions:

1. *Smoke dampers* are not required where the openings in ducts are limited to a single *smoke compartment* and the ducts are constructed of steel.

2. *Smoke dampers* are not required in *smoke barriers* required by Section 407.5 for Group I-2, Condition 2—where the HVAC system is fully ducted in accordance with Section 603 of the *International Mechanical Code* and where buildings are equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and equipped with quick-response sprinklers in accordance with Section 903.3.2.

717.5.6 Exterior walls.
Ducts and air transfer openings in fire-resistance-rated *exterior walls* required to have protected openings in accordance with Section 705.10 shall be protected with *listed fire dampers* installed in accordance with their listing.

717.5.7 Smoke partitions.
A *listed smoke damper* designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point that an air transfer opening penetrates a smoke partition. *Smoke dampers* and *smoke damper* actuation methods shall comply with Section 717.3.3.2.

Exception: Where the installation of a *smoke damper* will interfere with the operation of a required smoke control system in accordance with Section 909, *approved* alternative protection shall be utilized.

717.6 Horizontal assemblies.
Penetrations by ducts and air transfer openings of a floor, floor/ceiling assembly or the ceiling membrane of a roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected by a shaft enclosure that complies with Section 713 or shall comply with Sections 717.6.1 through 717.6.3.

717.6.1 Through penetrations.
In occupancies other than Groups I-2 and I-3, a duct constructed of *approved* materials in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code* that penetrates a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling assembly that connects not more than two *stories* is permitted without shaft enclosure protection, provided a *listed fire damper* is installed at the floor line or the duct is protected in accordance with Section 714.4. For air transfer openings, see Section 712.1.9.

Exception: A duct is permitted to penetrate three floors or less without a *fire damper* at each floor, provided such duct meets all of the following requirements:

1. The duct shall be contained and located within the cavity of a wall and shall be constructed of steel having a minimum wall thickness of 0.0187 inches (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage).

2. The duct shall open into only one *dwelling or sleeping unit* and the duct system shall be continuous from the unit to the exterior of the building.

3. The duct shall not exceed 4-inch (102 mm) nominal diameter and the total area of such ducts shall not exceed 100 square inches (0.065 m^2) in any 100 square feet (9.3 m^2) of floor area.

4. The *annular space* around the duct is protected with materials that prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste where subjected to ASTM E119 or UL 263 time temperature conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water at the location of the penetration for the time period equivalent to the *fire-resistance rating* of the construction penetrated.

5. Grille openings located in a ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected with a *listed ceiling radiation damper* installed in accordance with Section 717.6.2.1.

717.6.2 Membrane penetrations.
Ducts and air transfer openings constructed of *approved* materials in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code* that penetrate the ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected with one of the following:

1. A shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713.

2. A *listed ceiling radiation damper* installed at the ceiling line where a duct penetrates the ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly.

3. A *listed ceiling radiation damper* installed at the ceiling line where a diffuser with no duct attached penetrates the ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly.

717.6.2.1 Ceiling radiation dampers.
Ceiling radiation dampers shall be tested in accordance with Section 717.3.1. *Ceiling radiation dampers* shall be installed in accordance with the details *listed* in the fire-resistance-rated assembly and the manufacturer's instructions and the listing. *Ceiling radiation dampers* are not required where one of the following applies:

1. Tests in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 have shown that *ceiling radiation dampers* are not necessary in order to maintain the *fire-resistance rating* of the assembly.

2. Where exhaust duct penetrations are protected in accordance with Section 714.4.2, are located within the cavity of a wall and do not pass through another *dwelling unit* or tenant space.

3. Where duct and air transfer openings are protected with a duct outlet protection system tested as part of a *fire-resistance-rated* assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.

717.6.3 Nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies.
Duct systems constructed of *approved* materials in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code* that penetrate nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies shall be protected by any of the following methods:

1. A shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713.

2. The duct connects not more than two *stories*, and the *annular space* around the penetrating duct is protected with an *approved* noncombustible material that resists the free passage of flame and the products of combustion.

3. In floor assemblies composed of noncombustible materials, a shaft shall not be required where the duct connects not more than three stories, the annular space around the penetrating duct is protected with an approved noncombustible material that resists the free passage of flame and the products of combustion and a *fire damper* is installed at each floor line.

Exception: *Fire dampers* are not required in ducts within individual residential *dwelling units*.

717.7 Flexible ducts and air connectors.
Flexible ducts and air connectors shall not pass through any fire-resistance-rated assembly. Flexible air connectors shall not pass through any wall, floor or ceiling.

SECTION 718
CONCEALED SPACES

718.1 General.
Fireblocking and draftstopping shall be installed in combustible concealed locations in accordance with this section. *Fireblocking* shall comply with Section 718.2. Draftstopping in floor/ceiling spaces and *attic* spaces shall comply with Sections 718.3 and 718.4, respectively. The permitted use of combustible materials in concealed spaces of buildings of Type I or II construction shall be limited to the applications indicated in Section 718.5.

718.2 Fireblocking.
In combustible construction, *fireblocking* shall be installed to cut off concealed draft openings (both vertical and horizontal) and shall form an effective barrier between floors, between a top *story* and a roof or *attic* space. *Fireblocking* shall be installed in the locations specified in Sections 718.2.2 through 718.2.7.

718.2.1 Fireblocking materials.
Fireblocking shall consist of the following materials:

1. Two-inch (51 mm) nominal lumber.

2. Two thicknesses of 1-inch (25 mm) nominal lumber with broken lap joints.

3. One thickness of 0.719-inch (18.3 mm) wood structural panels with joints backed by 0.719-inch (18.3 mm) wood structural panels.

4. One thickness of 0.75-inch (19.1 mm) particleboard with joints backed by 0.75-inch (19 mm) particleboard.

5. One-half-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board.

6. One-fourth-inch (6.4 mm) cement-based millboard.

7. Batts or blankets of *mineral wool*, *mineral fiber* or other *approved* materials installed in such a manner as to be securely retained in place.

8. Cellulose insulation installed as tested for the specific application.

718.2.1.1 Batts or blankets of mineral wool or mineral fiber.
Batts or blankets of *mineral wool* or *mineral fiber* or other *approved* nonrigid materials shall be permitted for compliance with the 10-foot (3048 mm) horizontal *fireblocking* in walls constructed using parallel rows of studs or staggered studs.

718.2.1.2 Unfaced fiberglass.
Unfaced fiberglass batt insulation used as *fireblocking* shall fill the entire cross section of the wall cavity to a minimum height of 16 inches (406 mm) measured vertically. Where piping, conduit or similar obstructions are encountered, the insulation shall be packed tightly around the obstruction.

718.2.1.3 Loose-fill insulation material.
Loose-fill insulation material, insulating foam sealants and caulk materials shall not be used as a fireblock unless specifically tested in the form and manner intended for use to demonstrate its ability to remain in place and to retard the spread of fire and hot gases.

718.2.1.4 Fireblocking integrity.
The integrity of fireblocks shall be maintained.

718.2.1.5 Double stud walls.
Batts or blankets of mineral or glass fiber or other *approved* nonrigid materials shall be allowed as *fireblocking* in walls constructed using parallel rows of studs or staggered studs.

718.2.2 Concealed wall spaces.
Fireblocking shall be provided in concealed spaces of stud walls and partitions, including furred spaces, and parallel rows of studs or staggered studs, as follows:

1. Vertically at the ceiling and floor levels.

2. Horizontally at intervals not exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm).

718.2.3 Connections between horizontal and vertical spaces.
Fireblocking shall be provided at interconnections between concealed vertical stud wall or partition spaces and concealed horizontal spaces created by an assembly of floor joists or trusses, and between concealed vertical and horizontal spaces such as occur at soffits, drop ceilings, cove ceilings and similar locations.

718.2.4 Stairways.
Fireblocking shall be provided in concealed spaces between *stair* stringers at the top and bottom of the run. Enclosed spaces under *stairways* shall comply with Section 1011.7.3.

718.2.5 Ceiling and floor openings.
Where required by Section 712.1.8, Exception 1 of Section 714.4.1.2 or Section 714.5, *fireblocking* of the *annular space* around vents, pipes, ducts, chimneys and fireplaces at ceilings and floor levels shall be installed with a material specifically tested in the form and manner intended for use to demonstrate its ability to remain in place and resist the free passage of flame and the products of combustion.

718.2.5.1 Factory-built chimneys and fireplaces.
Factory-built chimneys and fireplaces shall be fireblocked in accordance with UL 103 and UL 127.

718.2.6 Exterior wall coverings.
Fireblocking shall be installed within concealed spaces of exterior wall coverings and other exterior architectural elements where permitted to be of combustible construction as specified in Section 1406 or where erected with combustible frames. *Fireblocking* shall be installed at maximum intervals of 20 feet (6096 mm) in either dimension so that there will be no concealed space exceeding 100 square feet (9.3 m^2) between fireblocking. Where wood furring strips are used, they shall be of approved wood of natural decay resistance or

preservative-treated wood. If noncontinuous, such elements shall have closed ends, with not less than 4 inches (102 mm) of separation between sections.

Exceptions:

1. *Fireblocking* of cornices is not required in single-family *dwellings*. *Fireblocking* of cornices of a two-family *dwelling* is required only at the line of *dwelling unit* separation.

2. *Fireblocking* shall not be required where the exterior wall covering is installed on noncombustible framing and the face of the exterior wall covering exposed to the concealed space is covered by one of the following materials:

   2.1. Aluminum having a minimum thickness of 0.019 inch (0.5 mm).

   2.2. Corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness not less than 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) at any point.

   2.3. Other *approved* noncombustible materials.

3. *Fireblocking* shall not be required where the exterior wall covering has been tested in accordance with, and complies with the acceptance criteria of, NFPA 285. The exterior wall covering shall be installed as tested in accordance with NFPA 285.

718.2.7 Concealed sleeper spaces.
Where wood sleepers are used for laying wood flooring on masonry or concrete fire-resistance-rated floors, the space between the floor slab and the underside of the wood flooring shall be filled with an *approved* material to resist the free passage of flame and products of combustion or fireblocked in such a manner that there will be no open spaces under the flooring that will exceed 100 square feet (9.3 m^2) in area and such space shall be filled solidly under permanent partitions so that there is no communication under the flooring between adjoining rooms.

Exceptions:

1. *Fireblocking* is not required for slab-on-grade floors in gymnasiums.

2. *Fireblocking* is required only at the juncture of each alternate lane and at the ends of each lane in a bowling facility.

718.3 Draftstopping in floors.
In combustible construction, draftstopping shall be installed to subdivide floor/ceiling assemblies in the locations prescribed in Sections 718.3.2 through 718.3.3.

718.3.1 Draftstopping materials.
Draftstopping materials shall be not less than 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board, 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) wood structural panel, 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) particleboard, 1-inch (25-mm) nominal lumber, cement fiberboard, batts or blankets of *mineral wool* or glass fiber, or other *approved* materials adequately supported. The integrity of *draftstops* shall be maintained.

718.3.2 Groups R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4.
Draftstopping shall be provided in floor/ceiling spaces in Group R-1 buildings, in Group R-2 buildings with three or more *dwelling units*, in Group R-3 buildings with two *dwelling units* and in Group R-4 buildings. Draftstopping shall be located above and in line with the *dwelling unit* and *sleeping unit* separations.

Exceptions:

1. Draftstopping is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2. Draftstopping is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2, provided that automatic sprinklers are installed in the combustible concealed spaces where the draftstopping is being omitted.

718.3.3 Other groups.
In other groups, draftstopping shall be installed so that horizontal floor areas do not exceed 1,000 square feet (93 m^2).

Exception: Draftstopping is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

718.4 Draftstopping in attics.
In combustible construction, draftstopping shall be installed to subdivide *attic* spaces and concealed roof spaces in the locations prescribed in Sections 718.4.2 and 718.4.3. Ventilation of concealed roof spaces shall be maintained in accordance with Section 1203.2.

718.4.1 Draftstopping materials.
Materials utilized for draftstopping of *attic* spaces shall comply with Section 718.3.1.

718.4.1.1 Openings.
Openings in the partitions shall be protected by *self-closing* doors with automatic latches constructed as required for the partitions.

718.4.2 Groups R-1 and R-2.
Draftstopping shall be provided in *attics*, mansards, overhangs or other concealed roof spaces of Group R-2 buildings with three or more *dwelling units* and in all Group R-1 buildings. Draftstopping shall be installed above, and in line with, *sleeping unit* and *dwelling unit* separation walls that do not extend to the underside of the roof sheathing above.

Exceptions:

1. Where *corridor* walls provide a *sleeping unit* or *dwelling unit* separation, draftstopping shall only be required above one of the *corridor* walls.

2. Draftstopping is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

3. In occupancies in Group R-2 that do not exceed four *stories above grade plane*, the *attic* space shall be subdivided by *draftstops* into areas not exceeding 3,000 square feet (279 m^2) or above every two dwelling units, whichever is smaller.

4. Draftstopping is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2, provided that automatic sprinklers are installed in the combustible concealed space where the draftstopping is being omitted.

718.4.3 Other groups.
Draftstopping shall be installed in *attics* and concealed roof spaces, such that any horizontal area does not exceed 3,000 square feet (279 m^2).

Exception: Draftstopping is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

718.5 Combustible materials in concealed spaces in Type I or II construction.
Combustible materials shall not be permitted in concealed spaces of buildings of Type I or II construction.

Exceptions:

1. Combustible materials in accordance with Section 603.

2. Combustible materials exposed within plenums complying with Section 602 of the *International Mechanical Code*.

3. Class A *interior finish* materials classified in accordance with Section 803.

4. Combustible piping within partitions or shaft enclosures installed in accordance with the provisions of this code.

5. Combustible piping within concealed ceiling spaces installed in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code* and the *International Plumbing Code*.

6. Combustible insulation and covering on pipe and tubing, installed in concealed spaces other than plenums, complying with Section 720.7.

SECTION 719
FIRE-RESISTANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR PLASTER

719.1 Thickness of plaster.
The minimum thickness of gypsum plaster or Portland cement plaster used in a fire-resistance-rated system shall be determined by the prescribed fire tests. The plaster thickness shall be measured from the face of the lath where applied to gypsum lath or metal lath.

719.2 Plaster equivalents.
For fire-resistance purposes, 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) of unsanded gypsum plaster shall be deemed

equivalent to 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) of one-to-three gypsum sand plaster or 1 inch (25 mm) of Portland cement sand plaster.

719.3 Noncombustible furring.
In buildings of Type I and II construction, plaster shall be applied directly on concrete or masonry or on *approved* noncombustible plastering base and furring.

719.4 Double reinforcement.
Plaster protection more than 1 inch (25 mm) in thickness shall be reinforced with an additional layer of *approved* lath embedded not less than 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) from the outer surface and fixed securely in place.

Exception: Solid plaster partitions or where otherwise determined by fire tests.

719.5 Plaster alternatives for concrete.
In reinforced concrete construction, gypsum plaster or Portland cement plaster is permitted to be substituted for 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) of the required poured concrete protection, except that a minimum thickness of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) of poured concrete shall be provided in reinforced concrete floors and 1 inch (25 mm) in reinforced concrete columns in addition to the plaster finish. The concrete base shall be prepared in accordance with Section 2510.7.

SECTION 720
THERMAL- AND SOUND-INSULATING MATERIALS

720.1 General.
Insulating materials, including facings such as vapor retarders and *vapor-permeable membranes*, similar coverings and all layers of single and multilayer reflective foil insulations, shall comply with the requirements of this section. Where a flame spread index or a smoke-developed index is specified in this section, such index shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. Any material that is subject to an increase in flame spread index or smoke-developed index beyond the limits herein established through the effects of age, moisture or other atmospheric conditions shall not be permitted.

Exceptions:

1. Fiberboard insulation shall comply with Chapter 23.

2. Foam plastic insulation shall comply with Chapter 26.

3. Duct and pipe insulation and duct and pipe coverings and linings in plenums shall comply with the *International Mechanical Code*.

4. All layers of single and multilayer reflective plastic core insulation shall comply with Section 2613.

720.2 Concealed installation.
Insulating materials, where concealed as installed in buildings of any type of construction, shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450.

Exception: Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation complying with the requirements of Section 720.6 shall not be required to meet a flame spread index requirement but shall be required to meet a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2.

720.2.1 Facings.
Where such materials are installed in concealed spaces in buildings of Type III, IV or V construction, the flame spread and smoke-developed limitations do not apply to facings, coverings, and layers of reflective foil insulation that are installed behind and in substantial contact with the unexposed surface of the ceiling, wall or floor finish.

Exception: All layers of single and multilayer reflective plastic core insulation shall comply with Section 2613.

720.3 Exposed installation.
Insulating materials, where exposed as installed in buildings of any type of construction, shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450.

Exception: Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation complying with the requirements of Section 720.6 shall not be required to meet a flame spread index requirement but shall be required to meet a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2.

720.3.1 Attic floors.
Exposed insulation materials installed on attic floors shall have a critical radiant flux of not less than 0.12 watt per square centimeter when tested in accordance with ASTM E970.

720.4 Loose-fill insulation.
Loose-fill insulation materials that cannot be mounted in the ASTM E84 or UL 723 apparatus without a screen or artificial supports shall comply with the flame spread and smoke-developed limits of Sections 720.2 and 720.3 when tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2.

Exception: Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation shall not be required to meet a flame spread index requirement when tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2, provided such insulation has a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 and complies with the requirements of Section 720.6.

720.5 Roof insulation.
The use of combustible roof insulation not complying with Sections 720.2 and 720.3 shall be permitted in any type of construction provided that insulation is covered with *approved* roof coverings directly applied thereto.

720.6 Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation and self-supported spray-applied cellulosic insulation.
Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation and self-supported spray-applied cellulosic insulation shall comply with CPSC 16 CFR Parts 1209 and 1404. Each package of such insulating material shall be clearly labeled in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR Parts 1209 and 1404.

720.7 Insulation and covering on pipe and tubing.
Insulation and covering on pipe and tubing shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450.

Exception: Insulation and covering on pipe and tubing installed in plenums shall comply with the *International Mechanical Code.*

SECTION 721
PRESCRIPTIVE FIRE RESISTANCE

721.1 General.
The provisions of this section contain prescriptive details of fire-resistance-rated building elements, components or assemblies. The materials of construction listed in Tables 721.1(1), 721.1(2), and 721.1(3) shall be assumed to have the *fire-resistance ratings* prescribed therein. Where materials that change the capacity for heat dissipation are incorporated into a fire-resistance-rated assembly, fire test results or other substantiating data shall be made available to the *building official* to show that the required fire-resistance-rating time period is not reduced.

721.1.1 Thickness of protective coverings.
The thickness of fire-resistant materials required for protection of structural members shall be not less than set forth in Table 721.1(1), except as modified in this section. The figures shown shall be the net thickness of the protecting materials and shall not include any hollow space in back of the protection.

721.1.2 Unit masonry protection.
Where required, metal ties shall be embedded in bed joints of unit masonry for protection of steel columns. Such ties shall be as set forth in Table 721.1(1) or be equivalent thereto.

721.1.3 Reinforcement for cast-in-place concrete column protection.
Cast-in-place concrete protection for steel columns shall be reinforced at the edges of such members with wire ties of not less than 0.18 inch (4.6 mm) in diameter wound spirally around the columns on a pitch of not more than 8 inches (203 mm) or by equivalent reinforcement.

721.1.4 Plaster application.
The finish coat is not required for plaster protective coatings where those coatings comply with the design mix and thickness requirements of Tables 721.1(1), 721.1(2) and 721.1(3).

721.1.5 Bonded prestressed concrete tendons.
For members having a single tendon or more than one tendon installed with equal concrete cover measured from the nearest surface, the cover shall be not less than that set forth in Table 721.1(1). For members having multiple ten-dons installed with variable concrete cover, the average tendon cover shall be not less than that set forth in Table 721.1(1), provided:

1. The clearance from each tendon to the nearest exposed surface is used to determine the average cover.

2. In no case can the clear cover for individual tendons be less than one-half of that set forth in Table 721.1(1). A minimum cover of $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) for slabs and 1 inch (25 mm) for beams is required for any aggregate concrete.

3. For the purpose of establishing a fire-resistance rating, tendons having a clear covering less than that set forth in Table 721.1(1) shall not contribute more than 50 percent of the required ultimate moment capacity for members less than 350 square inches (0.226 m^2) in cross-sectional area and 65 percent for larger members. For structural design purposes, however, tendons having a reduced cover are assumed to be fully effective.

TABLE 721.1(1)
MINIMUM PROTECTION OF STRUCTURAL PARTS BASED ON TIME PERIODS FOR VARIOUS NONCOMBUSTIBLE INSULATING MATERIALS[m]

STRUCTURAL PARTS TO BE PROTECTED	ITEM NUMBER	INSULATING MATERIAL USED	MINIMUM THICKNESS OF INSULATING MATERIAL FOR THE FOLLOWING FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
1. Steel columns and all of primary trusses	1-1.1	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete, members 6" x 6" or greater (not including sandstone, granite and siliceous gravel)."	$2^{1/2}$	2	$1^{1/2}$	1
	1-1.2	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete, members 8" x 8" or greater (not including sandstone, granite and siliceous gravel)."	2	1½	1	1
	1-1.3	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete, members 12" x 12" or greater (not including sandstone, granite and siliceous gravel)."	$1^{1}/_{2}$	1	1	1
	1-1.4	Siliceous aggregate concrete and concrete excluded in Item 1-1.1, members 6" x 6" or greater.[a]	3	2	$1^{1}/_{2}$	1
	1-1.5	Siliceous aggregate concrete and concrete excluded in Item 1-1.1, members 8" x 8" or greater.[a]	$2^{1}/_{2}$	2	1	1
	1-1.6	Siliceous aggregate concrete and concrete excluded in Item 1-1.1, members 12" x 12" or greater.'	2	1	1	1
	1-2.1	Clay or shale brick with brick and mortar fill.'	$3^{3/4}$			$2^{1/4}$
	1-3.1	4" hollow clay tile in two 2" layers;1/2"mortar between tile and column; 3/8" metal mesh 0.046" wire diameter in horizontal joints; tile fill.[a]	4	–	—	–
	1-3.2	2" hollow clay tile; $^{3}/_{4}$" mortar between tile and column; $^{3}/_{8}$" metal mesh 0.046" wire diameter in horizontal joints; limestone concrete fill"; plastered with $^{3}/_{4}$" gypsum plaster.	3	—	—	—
	1-3.3	2" hollow clay tile with outside wire ties 0.08" diameter at each course of tile or $^{3}/$," metal mesh 0.046" diameter wire in horizontal joints; limestone or trap-rock concrete fill" extending 1" outside column on all sides.	—	—	3	—
	1-14	2" hollow clay tile with outside wire ties 0.08" diameter at each course of tile with or without concrete fill; $^{3}/_{4}$" mortar between tile and column.	—	—	—	2
	1-4.1	Cement plaster over metal lath wire tied to $^{3}/_{4}$" cold-rolled vertical channels with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 3" to 6" on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 $^{1}/_{2}$by volume, cement to sand.	—	—	2½[b]	
	1-5.1	Vermiculite concrete, 1:4 mix by volume over paperbacked wire fabric lath wrapped directly around column with additional 2" x 2" 0.065" /0.065" (No. 16/16 B.W. gage) wire fabric placed $^{3/4}$' from outer concrete surface. Wire fabric tied with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire spaced 6" on center for inner layer and 2" on center for outer layer.	2	—	—	

(continued)	1-6.1	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster over metal lath wrapped around column and furred 1 1/4" from column flanges. Sheets lapped at ends and tied at 6" intervals with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) tie wire. Plaster pushed through to flanges.	1 1/2	1		
	1-6.2	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster over self-furring metal lath wrapped directly around column, lapped 1" and tied at 6" intervals with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire.	1 3/4	1 3/8	1	—
	1-6.3	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster on metal lath applied to 3/4" cold-rolled channels spaced 24" apart vertically and wrapped flatwise around column.	1 1/2	-	-	—
	1-6.4	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster over two layers of 1/2" plain full-length gypsum lath applied tight to column flanges. Lath wrapped with 1" hexagonal mesh of No. 20 gage wire and tied with doubled 0.035" diameter (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 23" on center. For three-coat work, the plaster mix for the second coat shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to 2'/2 cubic feet of aggregate for the 3-hour system.	2 1/2	2	—	—

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(1)—continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION OF STRUCTURAL PARTS BASED ON TIME PERIODS FOR VARIOUS NONCOMBUSTIBLE INSULATING MATERIALS"

STRUCTURAL PARTS TO BE PROTECTED	ITEM NUMBER	INSULATING MATERIAL USED	MINIMUM THICKNESS OF INSULATING MATERIAL FOR THE FOLLOWING FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
	1-6.5	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster over one layer of": plain full-length gypsum lath applied tight to column flanges. Lath tied with doubled 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 23" on center and scratch coat wrapped with 1" hexagonal mesh 0.035" (No. 20 B.W. gage) wire fabric. For three-coat work, the plaster mix for the second coat shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to 2'4 cubic feet of aggregate.	—	2	—	—
	1-7.1	Multiple layers of V," gypsum wallboard' adhesively[d] secured to column flanges and successive layers. Wallboard applied without horizontal joints. Corner edges of each layer staggered. Wallboard layer below outer layer secured to column with doubled 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) steel wire ties spaced 15" on center. Exposed corners taped and treated.	—	—	2	1
	1-7.2	Three layers of 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard.' First and second layer held in place by '/8" diameter by 1 3/," long ring shank nails with 5/16" diameter heads spaced 24" on cen-ter at corners. Middle layer also secured with metal straps at mid-height and 18" from each end, and by metal corner bead at each corner held by the metal straps. Third layer attached to corner bead with 1" long gypsum wallboard screws spaced 12" on center.	—	—	1 7 4	—
	3 1-7.	Three layers of 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard,' each layer screw attached to 1 5/8" steel studs 0.018" thick (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) at each corner of column. Middle layer also secured with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) double-strand steel wire ties, 24" on center. Screws are No. 6 by 1" spaced 24" on center for inner layer, No. 6 by 15/8" spaced 12" on center for middle layer and No. 8 by 2 1/4" spaced 12" on center for outer layer.	--- 1 /8		---	---
1. Steel columns and all of primary	1-8.1	Wood-fibered gypsum plaster mixed 1:1 by weight gypsum-to-sand aggregate applied over metal lath. Lath lapped 1" and tied 6" on center at all end, edges and spacers with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) steel tie wires. Lath applied over 1/2" spacers made of 3/4" furring channel with 2" legs bent around each corner. Spacers located 1" from top and bottom of member and a maximum of 40" on center and wire tied with a single strand of 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) steel tie wires. Corner bead tied to the lath at 6" on center along each corner to provide plaster thickness.	—	—	15/,	—

trusses	1-9.1	Minimum W8x35 wide flange steel column (w/d 0.75) with each web cavity filled even with the flange tip with normal weight carbonate or siliceous aggregate concrete (3,000 psi minimum compressive strength with 145 pcf ± 3 pcf unit weight). Reinforce the concrete in each web cavity with a minimum No. 4 deformed reinforcing bar installed vertically and centered in the cavity, and secured to the column web with a minimum No. 2 horizontal deformed reinforcing bar welded to the web every 18" on center vertically. As an alternative to the No. 4 rebar, 3/4" diameter by 3" long headed studs, spaced at 12" on center vertically, shall be welded on each side of the web midway between the column flanges.	—	—	—	See Note n
2. Webs or flanges of steel beams and girders (continued)	2-1.1	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete (not including sand-stone, granite and siliceous gravel) with 3" or finer metal mesh placed 1" from the finished surface anchored to the top flange and providing not less than 0.025 square inch of steel area per foot in each direction.		1 7,	1	1
	2-1.2	Siliceous aggregate concrete and concrete excluded in Item 2-1.1 with 3" or finer metal mesh placed 1" from the finished surface anchored to the top flange and providing not less than 0.025 square inch of steel area per foot in each direction.	2'1 2	2	1 1/2	1
	2-2.1	Cement plaster on metal lath attached to 3/4" cold-rolled channels with 0.04" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 3" to 6" on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 8 1 2 by volume, cement to sand.	—	—	2 1/2 b	7/8

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(1)—continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION OF STRUCTURAL PARTS BASED ON TIME PERIODS FOR VARIOUS NONCOMBUSTIBLE INSULATING MATERIALS"

STRUCTURAL PARTS TO BE PROTECTED	ITEM NUMBER	INSULATING MATERIAL USED	MINIMUM THICKNESS OF INSULATING MATERIAL FOR THE FOLLOWING F RE-RESISTANCE PERIODS (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
	2-3.1	Vermiculite gypsum plaster on a metal lath cage, wire tied to 0.165" diameter (No. 8 B.W. gage) steel wire hangers wrapped around beam and spaced 16" on center. Metal lath ties spaced approximately 5" on center at cage sides and bottom.	—	7. /8		–
		Two layers of 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard' are attached to U-shaped brackets spaced 24" on center. 0.018" thick (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) 1 5/8" deep by 1" galvanized steel runner channels are first installed parallel to and on each side of the top beam flange to provide a'/2" clearance to the flange. The channel runners are attached to steel				

2.Webs or flanges of steel beams and girders	2-4.1	deck or concrete floor construction with approved fasteners spaced 12" on center. U-shaped brackets are formed from members identical to the channel runners. At the bent portion of the U-shaped bracket, the flanges of the channel are cut out so that $1^5/_8$" deep corner channels can be inserted without attachment parallel to each side of the lower flange. As an alternative, 0.021" thick (No. 24 carbon sheet steel gage) 1" x 2" runner and cor-ner angles shall be used in lieu of channels, and the web cutouts in the U-shaped brack- ets shall not be required. Each angle is attached to the bracket with V_2"-long No. 8 self-drilling screws. The vertical legs of the U-shaped bracket are attached to the runners with one $^1/_2$" long No. 8 self-drilling screw. The completed steel framing provides a $2^1/_8$" and $1V_2$" space between the inner layer of wallboard and the sides and bottom of the steel beam, respectively. The inner layer of wallboard is attached to the top runners and bottom corner channels or corner angles with 1V4"-long No. 6 self-drilling screws spaced 16" on center. The outer layer of wallboard is applied with P/4"-long No. 6 self-drilling screws spaced 8" on center. The bottom corners are reinforced with metal corner beads.	—	—	l'/ 4	—
	2-4.2	Three layers of $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum wallboard' attached to a steel suspension system as described immediately above utilizing the 0.018" thick (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) 1" x 2" lower corner angles. The framing is located so that a 2V," and 2" space is pro-vided between the inner layer of wallboard and the sides and bottom of the beam, respectively. The first two layers of wallboard are attached as described immediately above. A layer of 0.035" thick (No. 20 B.W. gage) 1" hexagonal galvanized wire mesh is applied under the soffit of the middle layer and up the sides approximately 2". The mesh is held in position with the No. 6 $1^5/_8$"-long screws installed in the vertical leg of the bot-tom corner angles. The outer layer of wallboard is attached with No. 6 2V4"-long screws spaced 8" on center. One screw is also installed at the mid-depth of the bracket in each layer. Bottom corners are finished as described above.	—	$1^7/_8$	—	—
3.Bonded pre-tensioned rein-forcement in prestressed concrete'	3-1.1	Carbonate, lightweight, sand-lightweight and siliceous[f] aggregate concrete Beams or girders	4g	3^8	2'/2	$1^1/_2$
		Solid"		2	$1^1/_2$	1

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(1) —continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION OF STRUCTURAL PARTS BASED ON TIME PERIODS FOR VARIOUS NONCOMBUSTIBLE INSULATING MATERIALS"'

STRUCTURAL PARTS TO BE PROTECTED	ITEM NUMBER	INSULATING MATERIAL USED	MINIMUM THICKNESS OF INSULATING MATERIAL FOR THE FOLLOWING F RE-RESISTANCE PERIODS (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour

4. Bonded or unbonded post-tensioned tendons in pre-stressed concretee.1	4- 1 .1	Carbonate, lightweight, sand-lightweight and siliceous' aggregate concrete Unrestrained members: Solid slabs[h] Beams and girder& 8" wide greater than 12" wide	— 3	2 4 1/2 2 1/2	1 1/2 2 1/2 2	— 1 3/4 l'/2
	4-1.2	Carbonate, lightweight, sand-lightweight and siliceous aggregate Restrained members:[k] Solid slabs" Beams and girder& 8" wide greater than 12" wide	1 1/4 2 ½ 2	1 2 1 3/4	3/4 1 3/4 1 1/2	— —
5. Reinforcing steel in reinforced concrete columns, beams girders and trusses	5-1.1	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete, members 12" or larger, square or round. (Size limit does not apply to beams and girders monolithic with floors.) Siliceous aggregate concrete, members 12" or larger, square or round. (Size limit does not apply to beams and girders monolithic with floors.)	1 1/2 2	1 1/2 1 1/2	1 1/2 1 1/2	1 1/2 1 1/2
6. Reinforcing steel in reinforced concrete joists'	6-1.1 6-1.2	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete Siliceous aggregate concrete	1 1/4 1 3/4	1 1/4 1 1/2	1 1	3/4 3/4
7. Reinforcing and tie rods in floor and roof slabs'	7-1.1 7-1.2	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete Siliceous aggregate concrete	1 1 1/4	1 1	3/4 1	3/4 3/4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.2 mm^2, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m^3, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/m^3.

a. Reentrant parts of protected members to be filled solidly.

b. Two layers of equal thickness with a 3/4 inch airspace between.

c. For all of the construction with gypsum wallboard described in Table 721.1(1), gypsum base for veneer plaster of the same size, thickness and core type shall be permitted to be substituted for gypsum wallboard, provided attachment is identical to that specified for the wallboard and the joints on the face layer are reinforced, and the entire surface is covered with not less than 1/,6-inch gypsum veneer plaster.

d. An approved adhesive qualified under ASTM E 119 or UL 263.

e. Where lightweight or sand-lightweight concrete having an oven-dry weight of 110 pounds per cubic foot or less is used, the tabulated minimum cover shall be permitted to be reduced 25 percent, except that in no case shall the cover be less than 3/4 inch in slabs or 1 1/2 inches in beams or girders.

f. For solid slabs of siliceous aggregate concrete, increase tendon cover 20 percent.

g. Adequate provisions against spalling shall be provided by U-shaped or hooped stirrups spaced not to exceed the depth of the member with a clear cover of 1 inch.

h. Prestressed slabs shall have a thickness not less than that required in Table 721.1(3) for the respective fire-resistance time period.

i. Fire coverage and end anchorages shall be as follows: Cover to the prestressing steel at the anchor shall be V, inch greater than that required away from the anchor. Minimum cover to steel-bearing plate shall be 1 inch in beams and 3/4 inch in slabs.

j. For beam widths between 8 inches and 12 inches, cover thickness shall be permitted to be determined by interpolation.

k. Interior spans of continuous slabs, beams and girders shall be permitted to be considered restrained.

1. For use with concrete slabs having a comparable fire endurance where members are framed into the structure in such a manner as to provide equivalent performance to that of monolithic concrete construction.

m. Generic *fire-resistance ratings* (those not designated as PROPRIETARY* in the listing) in GA 600 shall be accepted as if herein listed.

n. No additional insulating material is required on the exposed outside face of the column flange to achieve a 1-hour *fire-resistance rating.*

TABLE 721.1(2)
RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS [a,o,p]

MATERIAL	ITEM NUMBER	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACEb(inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
1.Brick of clay or shale	1-1.1	Solid brick of clay or shale.	6	4.9	3.8	2.7
	1-1.2	Hollow brick, not filled.	5.0	4.3	3.4	2.3
	1-1.3	Hollow brick unit wall, grout or filled with perlite vermiculite or expanded shale aggregate.	6.6	5.5	4.4	3.0
	1-2.1	4" nominal thick units not less than 75 percent solid backed with a hat-shaped metal furring channel 3/4" thick formed from 0.021" sheet metal attached to the brick wall on 24" centers with approved fasteners, and 1/2" Type X gypsum wallboard attached to the metal furring strips with 1"-long Type S screws spaced 8" on center.	–	–	5 [d]	–
2.Combination of clay brick and load-bearing hollow clay tile	2-1.1	4" solid brick and 4" tile (not less than 40 percent solid).	-	8	-	-
	2-1.2	4" solid brick and 8" tile (not less than 40 percent solid).	12		-	
3.Concrete masonry units	3-1.1[f].g	Expanded slag or pumice.	4.7	4.0	3.2	2.1
	3-1.2[f]•g	Expanded clay, shale or slate.	5.1	4.4	3.6	2.6
	3-1.3'	Limestone, cinders or air-cooled slag.	5.9	5.0	4.0	2.7
	3-1.4[f].g	Calcareous or siliceous gravel.	6.2	5.3	4.2	2.8
4.Solid concrete. '	4-1.1	Siliceous aggregate concrete.	7.0	6.2	5.0	3.5
		Carbonate aggregate concrete.	6.6	5.7	4.6	3.2
		Sand-lightweight concrete.	5.4	4.6	3.8	2.7
		Lightweight concrete.	5.1	4.4	3.6	2.5
5.Glazed or unglazed facing tile, nonload-bearing	5-1.1	One 2" unit cored 15 percent maximum and one 4" unit cored 25 percent maximum with 3/4" mortar-filled collar joint. Unit positions reversed in alternate courses. 8	-	6 3/8	----	
	5-1.2	One 2" unit cored 15 percent maximum and one 4" unit cored 40 percent maximum with 3/4" mortar-filled collar joint. Unit positions side with 3/4" gypsum plaster. Two wythes tied together every fourth course with No. 22 gage corrugated metal ties.	-	6 3/4	-	-
	5-1.3	One unit with three cells in wall thickness, cored 29 percent maximum.	-	-	6	-
	5-1.4	One 2" unit cored 22 percent maximum and one 4" unit cored 41 percent maximum with 3/4" mortar-filled collar joint. Two wythes tied together every third course with 0.030" (No. 22 galvanized sheet steel gage) corrugated metal ties.	-	-	6	-
	5-1.5	One 4" unit cored 25 percent maximum with 3/4" gypsum plaster on one side.	-	-	4 3/4	-
	5-1.6	One 4" unit with two cells in wall thickness, cored 22 percent maximum.	-	-	-	4
	5-1.7	One 4" unit cored 30 percent maximum with 3/4" vermiculite gypsum plaster on one side.	-	-	4 1/2	-
	5-1.8	One 4" unit cored 39 percent maximum with 3/4" gypsum plaster on one side.	-	-	-	4 1/2

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(2)—continued
RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS [1].°. [P]

MATERIAL	ITEM NUMBER	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACE[b](inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
6.Solid gypsum plaster	6-1.1	3/4" by 0.055" (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) vertical cold-rolled channels, 16" on center with 2.6-pound flat metal lath applied to one face and tied with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire at 6" spacing. Gypsum plaster each side mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.	—	—	—	2[d]
	6-1.2	3/4" by 0.05" (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) cold-rolled channels 16" on center with metal lath applied to one face and tied with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire at 6" spac-ing. Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster each side. For three-coat work, the plaster mix for the second coat shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to 2'/2 cubic feet of aggregate for the 1-hour system.	—	—	2 1/2[d]	2[d]
	6-1.3	3/4" by 0.055" (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) vertical cold-rolled channels, 16" on cen-ter with 3/8" gypsum lath applied to one face and attached with sheet metal clips. Gyp- sum plaster each side mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to	—	—	—	2[d]
	6-2.1	Studless with 1/2" full-length plain gypsum lath and gypsum plaster each side. Plaster mixed 1:1 for scratch coat and 1:2 for brown coat, by weight, gypsum to	—	—	—	2[d]
	6-2.2	Studless with 1/2" full-length plain gypsum lath and perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster each side.	—	—	2 1/2[d]	2[d]
	6-2.3	Studless partition with 3/8" rib metal lath installed vertically adjacent edges tied 6" on center with No. 18 gage wire ties, gypsum plaster each side mixed 1:2 by weight, gyp- sum to sand aggregate.	—	—	—	2[d]
7.Solid perlite and Portland cement	7-1.1	Perlite mixed in the ratio of 3 cubic feet to 100 pounds of Portland cement and machine applied to stud side of 1 1/2" mesh by 0.058-inch (No. 17 B.W. gage) paper-backed woven wire fabric lath wire-tied to 4"-deep steel trussed wire' studs 16" on center. Wire ties of 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) galvanized steel wire	–	—	3[1/8d]	
8.Solid neat wood fibered gypsum	8-1.1	3/4" by 0.055-inch (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) cold-rolled channels, 12" on center with 2.5-pound flat metal lath applied to one face and tied with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire at 6" spacing. Neat gypsum plaster applied	—	—	2[d]	—
9.Solid wall-board partition	9-1.1	One full-length layer 1/3" Type X gypsum wallboard' laminated to each side of 1" full-length V-edge gypsum coreboard with approved laminating compound. Vertical joints of face layer and coreboard staggered not less than 3".	—	—	2[d]	—
10.Hollow (stud less) gypsum wallboard parti lion	10-1.1	One full-length layer of 5/," Type X gypsum wallboard' attached to both sides of wood or metal top and bottom runners laminated to each side of 1"x 6" full-length gypsum coreboard ribs spaced 2" on center with approved laminating compound. Ribs centered atvertical joints of face plies and joints staggered 24" in opposing faces. Ribs may be recessed 6" from the top and bottom.	—	—	—	2 1/4[d]
	10-12	1" regular gypsum V-edge full-length backing board attached to both sides of wood or metal top and bottom runners with nails or 1 5/8" drywall screws at 24" on center. Minimum width of runners 1 5/8. Face layer of l/2" regular full-length gypsum wallboard laminated to outer faces of backing board with approved laminating	—	—	4[5/8d]	–

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(2) —continued
RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS a.o.

MATERIAL	ITEM NUMBER	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACEb(inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
11. Noncombustible studs-interior partition with plaster each side	11-1.1	3'/4" x 0.044" (No. 18 carbon sheet steel gage) steel studs spaced 24" on center. 5/8" gypsum plaster on metal lath each side mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to sand	—	—	—	4.3/4[d]
	11-1.2	3 3/8" x 0.055" (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) approved nailable[k] studs spaced 24" on center. 5/8" neat gypsum wood-fibered plaster each side over 3/8" rib metal lath nailed to studs with 6d common nails, 8" on center. Nails driven 1 1/4" and	—	—	5 5/8	—
	11-1.3	4" x 0.044" (No. 18 carbon sheet steel gage) channel-shaped steel studs at 16" on center. On each side approved resilient clips pressed onto stud flange at 16" vertical spacing, 1/4" pencil rods snapped into or wire tied onto outer loop of clips, metal lath wire-tied to pen-cil rods at 6" intervals, 1" perlite gypsum plaster, each	-	75/84	–	
	11-14	2'/2" x 0.044" (No. 18 carbon sheet steel gage) steel studs spaced 16" on center. Wood fibered gypsum plaster mixed 1:1 by weight gypsum to sand aggregate applied on 5/4- pound metal lath wire tied to studs, each side. 3/4" plaster applied over each face,	---	---	4 1/4[d]	---
12. Wood studs-interior partition with plaster each side	12-1.1[lm]	2" x 4" wood studs 16" on center with 5/8" gypsum plaster on metal lath. Lath attached by 4d common nails bent over or No. 14 gage by 1 1/4" by 3/4" crown width staples spaced 6" on center. Plaster mixed 1:1 1/2 for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat,	—	—	——	5 1/8
	12-1.2[l]	2" x 4" wood studs 16" on center with metal lath and 7/8" neat wood-fibered gypsum plaster each side. Lath attached by 6d common nails, 7" on center. Nails driven 1 1/4" and bent over.	—	—	5 1/2[d]	—
	12-1.3'	2" x 4" wood studs 16" on center with 3/8" perforated or plain gypsum lath and 1 /2" gyp-sum plaster each side. Lath nailed with 1 4" by No. 13 gage by 19/64" head plasterboard blued nails, 4" on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to sand	—	—	—	5 1/4
	12-1.4'	2" x 4" wood studs 16" on center with 3/8" Type X gypsum lath and V," gypsum plaster each side. Lath nailed with 1'4" by No. 13 gage by 19/64" head plasterboard blued nails,	—	—	—	5'4
13. Noncombustible studs-interior partition with gyp sum wallboard each side	13-1.1	0.018" (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) channel-shaped studs 24" on center with one full-length layer of 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard` applied vertically attached with 1"-long No. 6 drywall screws to each stud. Screws are 8" on center around the perimeter and 12" on center on the intermediate stud. Where applied horizontally, the Type X gyp- sum wallboard shall be attached to 3 5/8" studs and the horizontal joints shall be staggered with those on the opposite side. Screws for the horizontal application shall be 8" on center at vertical edges and 12" on	—	—	—	2 7/8[d]
	13-1.2	0.018" (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) channel-shaped studs 25" on center with two full-length layers of V," Type X gypsum wallboard` applied vertically each side. First layer attached with 1"-long, No. 6 drywall screws, 8" on center around the perimeter and 12" on center on the intermediate stud. Second layer applied with vertical joints offset one stud space from first layer using 1 5/8" long, No. 6 drywall screws spaced 9" on center along vertical joints, 12" on center at intermediate studs and 24" on center along top and bottom runners.	—	—	3 5/8[d]	—
	13-1.3	0.055" (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) approved nailable metal studs' 24" on center with full-length 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard' applied vertically and nailed 7" on center with 6d cement-coated common nails. Approved metal fastener grips used with nails at vertical butt joints along studs.	——	——	——	4 7/8

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(2)—continued
RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS [a,o,p]

MATERIAL	ITEM NUMBER	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACE [b] (inches			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
14. Wood studs-interior partition with gypsum wallboard each side	14-1.1 [h,m]	2" x 4" wood studs 16" on center with two layers of 3/4" regular gypsum wallboard' each side, 4d cooler" or wallboard" nails at 8" on center first layer, 5d cooler" or wallboard" nails at 8" on center second layer with laminating compound between layers, joints staggered. First layer applied full length vertically, second layer applied horizontally or vertically.	—	—	—	5
	14-1.2[1m]	2" x 4" wood studs 16" on center with two layers 1/2" regular gypsum wallboard' applied vertically or horizontally each side, joints staggered. Nail base layer with 5d cooler" or wallboard" nails at 8" on center face layer with 8d cooler" or wallboard" nails at 8" on center.	—	—		5,12
	14-1.3[l]	2" x 4" wood studs 24" on center with 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard' applied vertically or horizontally nailed with 6d cooler" or wallboard" nails at 7" on center with end joints on nailing members. Stagger joints each side.	—	—	—	4 3/4
	14-1.4'	2" x 4" fire-retardant-treated wood studs spaced 24" on center with one layer of 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard' applied with face paper grain (long dimension) paral- lel to studs. Wallboard attached with 6d cooler" or wallboard" nails at 7" on center.	—	—	—	4 3/4 [d]
	14-1.5[l]	2" x 4" wood studs 16" on center with two layers 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard' each side. Base layers applied vertically and nailed with 6d cooler" or wallboard" nails at 9" on center. Face layer applied vertically or horizontally and nailed with 8d cooler" or wallboard' nails at 7" on center. For nail-adhesive application, base layers are nailed 6" on center. Face layers applied with coating of approved wallboard adhesive and nailed 12" on center.	--		6	—
	14-1.6 [l]	2" x 3" fire-retardant-treated wood studs spaced 24" on center with one layer of 5/,, Type X gypsum wallboard' applied with face paper grain (long dimension) at right angles to studs. Wallboard attached with 6d cement-coated box nails spaced 7" on center.		–	—	3 5/8 [d]
15. Exterior or interior walls (continued)	15-1.1 [l,m]	Exterior surface with 3/4" drop siding over 1/2" gypsum sheathing on 2" x 4" wood studs at 16" on center, interior surface treatment as required for 1-hour-rated exterior or interior 2" x 4" wood stud partitions. Gypsum sheathing nailed with 1 1/4" by No. 11 gage by 7/1," head galvanized nails at 8" on center. Siding nailed with 7d galva- nized smooth box nails.	—	—	—	Varies
	15-1.2[l,m]	2" x 4" wood studs 16" on center with metal lath and 3/4" cement plaster on each side. Lath attached with 6d common nails 7" on center driven to 1" minimum pene- tration and bent over. Plaster mix 1:4 for scratch coat and 1:5 for brown coat, by vol- ume, cement to sand.	—		—	53/8 8
	15-1.3[l,m]	2" x 4" wood studs 16" on center with 7/8" cement plaster (measured from the face of studs) on the exterior surface with interior surface treatment as required for interior wood stud partitions in this table. Plaster mix 1:4 for scratch coat and 1:5 for brown coat, by volume, cement to sand.			–	Varies
	15-1.4	3 5/8" No. 16 gage noncombustible studs 16" on center with 7/8" cement plaster (measured from the face of the studs) on the exterior surface with interior surface treat-ment as required for interior, nonbearing, noncombustible stud partitions in this table. Plaster mix 1:4 for scratch coat and 1:5 for brown coat, by volume, cement to sand.		—		Varies [d]

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(2)—continued
RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS a.°. P

MATERIAL	ITEM MATERIAL	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACE°(Inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
15. Exterior or interior walls (continued)	15-1.5'	$2^1/_4$" x $3^3/_4$" clay face brick with cored holes over $^1/_3$" gypsum sheathing on exterior surface of 2" x 4" wood studs at 16" on center and two layers $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum wallboard' on interior surface. Sheathing placed horizontally or vertically with vertical joints over studs nailed 6" on center with $1^3/_4$" x No. 11 gage by $^7/_{„}$" head galvanized nails. Inner layer of wallboard placed horizontally or vertically and nailed 8" on center with 6d cool-er" or wallboard" nails. Outer layer of wallboard placed horizontally or vertically and nailed 8" on center with 8d cooler" or wallboard" nails. Joints staggered with vertical joints over studs. Outer layer joints taped and finished with compound. Nail heads covered with joint compound. 0.035 inch (No. 20 galvanized sheet gage) corrugated galvanized steel wall ties ^{3}4" by $6^5/_8$" attached to each stud with two 8d cooler" or wallboard" nails *every* sixth course of bricks.	—	—	10	—
	15-1.6[41]"	2" x 6" fire-retardant-treated wood studs 16" on center. Interior face has two layers of $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum with the base layer placed vertically and attached with 6d box nails 12" on center. The face layer is placed horizontally and attached with 8d box nails 8" on center at joints and 12" on center elsewhere. The exterior face has a base layer of $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum sheathing placed vertically with 6d box nails 8" on center at joints and 12" on center elsewhere. An approved building paper is next applied, followed by self-furred exterior lath attached with $2'/_2$", No. 12 gage galvanized roofing nails with a $^3/_8$" diameter head and spaced 6" on center along each stud. Cement plaster consisting of a'/2' brown coat is then applied. The scratch coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:3 by weight, cement to sand with 10 pounds of hydrated lime and 3 pounds of approved additives or admixtures per sack of cement. The brown coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:4 by weight, cement to sand with the same amounts of hydrated lime and approved additives or admixtures used in the scratch coat.	—	—	$8'/_4$	—
	15-1.7[l.m]	2" x 6" wood studs 16" on center. The exterior face has a layer of $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum sheathing placed vertically with 6d box nails 8" on center at joints and 12" on center else-where. An approved building paper is next applied, followed by 1" by No. 18 gage self-furred exterior lath attached with 8d by $2^1/_2$" long galvanized roofing nails spaced 6" on center along each stud. Cement plaster consisting of $a'/_2$" scratch coat, a bonding agent and $a'/_2$" brown coat and a finish coat is then applied. The scratch coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:3 by weight, cement to sand with 10 pounds of hydrated lime and 3 pounds of approved additives or admixtures per sack of cement. The brown coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:4 by weight, cement to sand with the same amounts of hydrated lime and approved additives or admixtures used in the scratch coat. The interior is covered with $^3/_8$" gypsum lath with 1" hexagonal mesh of 0.035 inch (No. 20 B.W. gage) woven wire lath furred out $^5/_1$6" and 1" perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster. Lath nailed with $1^1/_8$" by No. 13 gage by ^{19}/," head plasterboard glued nails spaced 5" on center. Mesh attached by $1^3$4" by No. 12 gage by $^3/_8$" head nails with $^3/_3$" furrings, spaced 8" on center. The plaster mix shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to $2^1/_2$ cubic feet of aggregate.	——	——	83/8	

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(2)—continued
RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS [a, p]

MATERIAL	ITEM NUMBER	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACEb(inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
15. Exterior or interior walls (continued)	15-1.8"m	2" x 6" wood studs 16" on center. The exterior face has a layer of $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum sheathing placed vertically with 6d box nails 8" on center at joints and 12" on center elsewhere. An approved building paper is next applied, followed by $1^1/_2$" by No. 17 gage self-furred exterior lath attached with 8d by $2V_2$" long galvanized roofing nails spaced 6" on center along each stud. Cement plaster consisting of a'$/_2$" scratch coat, and a'$/_2$" brown coat is then applied. The plaster may be placed by machine. The scratch coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:4 by weight, plastic cement to sand. The brown coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:5 by weight, plastic cement to sand. The interior is covered with $^3/_8$" gypsum lath with 1" hexagonal mesh of No. 20 gage woven wire lath furred out $^5/_{,6}$" and I" perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster. Lath nailed with $1^1/_8$" by No. 13 gage by ^{15}7,,,," head plasterboard glued nails spaced 5" on center. Mesh attached by $1^3/_4$" by No. 12 gage by $^3/_8$" head nails with $^3/_4$" furrings, spaced 8" on center. The plaster mix shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to $2^3/_4$ cubic feet of aggregate.	—	—	$8^3/_8$	—
	15-1.9	4" No. 18 gage, nonload-bearing metal studs, 16" on center, with 1" Portland cement lime plaster (measured from the back side of the $^3/_4$-pound expanded metal lath) on the exterior surface. Interior surface to be covered with 1" of gypsum plaster on $^3/_4$-pound expanded metal lath proportioned by weight-1:2 for scratch coat, 1:3 for brown, gypsum to sand. Lath on one side of the partition fastened to $^3/_4$" diameter pencil rods supported by No. 20 gage metal clips, located 16" on center vertically, on each stud. 3" thick mineral fiber insulating batts friction fitted between the studs.	—	—	61/2 d	—
	15-1.10	Steel studs 0.060" thick, 4" deep or 6" at 16" or 24" centers, with $^3/_2$" Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete (GFRC) on the exterior surface. GFRC is attached with flex anchors at 24" on center, with 5" leg welded to studs with two '$/_2$"-long flare-bevel welds, and 4" foot attached to the GFRC skin with $^5/_8$" thick GFRC bonding pads that extend 2'$/_2$" beyond the flex anchor foot on both sides. Interior surface to have two layers of $^3/_4$" Type X gypsum wallboard.' The first layer of wallboard to be attached with 1"-long Type S buglehead screws spaced 24" on center and the second layer is attached with $1^5/_8$"-long Type S screws spaced at 12" on center. Cavity is to be filled with 5" of 4 pcf (nominal) mineral fiber batts. GFRC has $1^1/_2$" returns packed with mineral fiber and caulked on the exterior.		—	$6^1/_2$	—
	15-1.11	Steel studs 0.060" thick, 4" deep or 6" at 16" or 24" centers, respectively, with $^3/_2$" Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete (GFRC) on the exterior surface. GFRC is attached with flex anchors at 24" on center, with 5" leg welded to studs with two'$/_2$"-long flare-bevel welds, and 4" foot attached to the GFRC skin with $^5/_8$" -thick GFRC bonding pads that extend $2^1/_2$" beyond the flex anchor foot on both sides. Interior surface to have one layer of $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum wallboard', attached with 1'$/_4$"-long Type S buglehead screws spaced 12" on center. Cavity is to be filled with 5" of 4 pcf (nominal) mineral fiber batts. GFRC has $1^1/_2$" returns packed with mineral fiber and caulked on the exterior.	—	— 8	—	6^3/
	15-1.12[4]	2" x 6" wood studs at 16" with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior and exterior sides covered with $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum wallboard, 4' wide, applied horizontally or vertically with vertical joints over studs, and fastened with 2V," Type S drywall screws, spaced 12" on center. Cavity to be filled with $5^1/_2$" mineral wool insulation.	—	—	—	$6^3/_4$

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(2)—continued
RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS a.°. [P]

MATERIAL	NUMBER	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACE"(nches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
15. Exterior or interior walls (continued)	15-1.13'	2" x 6" wood studs at 16" with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior and exterior sides covered with 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard, 4' wide, applied vertically with all joints over framing or blocking and fastened with 2V," Type S drywall screws, spaced 12" on center. R-19 mineral fiber insulation installed in	—	— 4	—	6 3/
	15-1.14"	2" x 6" wood studs at 16" with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior and exterior sides covered with 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard, 4' wide, applied horizontally or verti-cally with vertical joints over studs, and fastened with 2 1/4" Type S drywall screws, spaced	—	—	—	6 3/4
	15-1.15'	2" x 4" wood studs at 16" with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior and exterior sides covered with 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard and sheathing, respectively, 4' wide, applied horizontally or vertically with vertical joints over studs, and fastened with 2 1/4" Type S drywall screws, spaced 12" on center. Cavity to be filled with 3 1/2" mineral wool insulation.	—	—	—	4 3/4
	15-1.16'	2" x 6" wood studs at 24" centers with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior and exterior side covered with two layers of 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard, 4' wide, applied horizontally with vertical joints over studs. Base layer fastened with 2 1/4" Type S drywall screws, spaced 24" on center and face layer fastened with Type S drywall screws, spaced 8" on center, wallboard joints covered with paper tape and joint compound, fastener		—	8	—
	15-2.1[d]	3 5/8" No. 16 gage steel studs at 24" on center or 2" x 4" wood studs at 24" on center. Metal lath attached to the exterior side of studs with minimum 1" long No. 6 drywall screws at 6" on center and covered with minimum 3/4" thick Portland cement plaster. units of clay or shale complying with ASTM C 1088, Grade TBS or better, installed in run-ning bond in accordance with Section 1405.10. Combined total thickness of the Portland cement plaster, mortar and thin veneer brick units shall be not less than 1 3/4". Interior side covered with one layer of 5/8" thick Type X gypsum wallboard attached to studs with 1" long No. 6 drywall screws at 12" on center.	–	–	–	6
	15-2.2 [d]	3 5/8" No. 16 gage steel studs at 24" on center or 2" x 4" wood studs at 24" on center. Metal lath attached to the exterior side of studs with minimum 1" long No. 6 drywall screws at 6" on center and covered with minimum 3/4" thick Portland cement plaster. Thin veneer brick units of clay or shale complying with ASTM C 1088, Grade TBS or better, installed in run-ning bond in accordance with Section 1405.10. Combined total thickness of the Portland cement plaster, mortar and thin veneer brick units shall be not less than 2". Interior side covered with two layers of 5/8" thick Type X gypsum wallboard. Bottom layer attached to studs with 1" long No. 6 drywall screws at 24" on center. Top layer attached to studs with 1 5/8" long No. 6 drywall screws at	—	—	6 7/8	—
		15-2.3 [d]— 3 5/8" No. 16 gage steel studs at 16" on center or 2"x 4" wood studs at 16" on center. Where metal lath is used, attach to the exterior side of studs with minimum 1" long No. 6 drywall screws at 6" on center. Brick units of clay or shale not less than 2 5/8" thick complying with ASTM C 216 installed in accordance with Section 1405.6 with a minimum 1" airspace. Interior side covered with one layer of 5/8" thick Type X gypsum wallboard attached to studs with 1" long No. 6 drywall screws at 12" on		–	–	7 7/8

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(2)—continued
RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS °.°.P

MATERIAL	NUMBER	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACEFACE' (inches -TO-			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
15. Exterior or interior walls	15-2.4[4]	$3^3/_8$" No. 16 gage steel studs at 16" on center or 2" x 4" wood studs at 16" on center. Where metal lath is used, attach to the exterior side of studs with minimum 1" long No. 6 drywall screws at 6" on center. Brick units of clay or shale not less than $2^5/_8$" thick corn-plying with ASTM C 216 installed in accordance with Section 1405.6 with a minimum 1" airspace. Interior side covered with two layers of $^5/_8$" thick Type X gypsum wallboard. Bottom layer attached to studs with 1" long No. 6 drywall screws at 24" on center. Top layer attached to studs with $1^5$4" long No. 6 drywall screws at 12" on center.	—	—	$8^1/_2$	—
16. Exterior walls rated for fire resistance from the inside only n accordance with Section 705.5.	16-1.1q	2" x 4" wood studs at 16" centers with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior side covered with $^3/_8$" Type X gypsum wallboard, 4" wide, applied horizontally unblocked, and fastened with $2^1$4" Type S drywall screws, spaced 12" on center, wallboard joints covered with paper tape and joint compound, fastener heads covered with joint compound. Exterior covered with $^3/_8$" wood structural panels, applied vertically, horizontal joints blocked and fastened with 6d common nails (bright) — 12" on center in the field, and 6" on center panel edges. Cavity to be filled with 3^1/: mineral wool insulation. Rating established for exposure from interior side only.	—	— 2	—	4^1/
	16-1.2q	2" x 6" wood studs at 16" centers with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior side covered with $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum wallboard, 4" wide, applied horizontally or verti-cally with vertical joints over studs and fastened with $2^1$4" Type S drywall screws, spaced 12" on center, wallboard joints covered with paper tape and joint compound, fas- tenet heads covered with joint compound, exterior side covered with $^7/_{16}$" wood struc- tural panels fastened with 6d common nails (bright) spaced 12" on center in the field and 6" on center along the panel edges. Cavity to be filled with $5^1/_2$" mineral wool insulation, Rating established from the gypsum-covered side only. 69/i 16	-	—	—	
	16-1. 3[11]	2" x 6" wood studs at 16" centers with double top plates, single bottom plates; interior side covered with $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum wallboard, 4" wide, applied vertically with all joints over framing or blocking and fastened with $2^1/_4$" Type S drywall screws spaced 7" on center. Joints to be covered with tape and joint compound. Exterior covered with ^{3}/ " 8 wood structural panels, applied vertically with edges over framing or blocking and fas- tened with 6d common nails (bright) at 12" on center in the field and 6" on	-	-	-	61/2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.2 mm^2, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m^3.

a. Staples with equivalent holding power and penetration shall be permitted to be used as alternate fasteners to nails for attachment to wood framing.

b. Thickness shown for brick and clay tile is nominal thicknesses unless plastered, in which case thicknesses are net. Thickness shown for concrete masonry and clay masonry is equivalent thickness defined in Section 722.3.1 for concrete masonry and Section 722.4.1.1 for clay masonry. Where all cells are solid grouted or filled with silicone-treated perlite loose-fill insulation; vermiculite loose-fill insulation; or expanded clay, shale or slate lightweight aggregate, the equivalent thickness shall be the thickness of the block or brick using specified dimensions as defined in Chapter 21. Equivalent thickness shall include the thickness of applied plaster and lath or gypsum wallboard, where specified.

c. For units in which the net cross-sectional area of cored brick in any plane parallel to the surface containing the cores is not less than 75 percent of the gross cross-sectional area measured in the same plane.

d. Shall be used for nonbearing purposes only.

e. For all of the construction with gypsum wallboard described in this table, gypsum base for veneer plaster of the same size, thickness and core type shall be permitted to be substituted for gypsum wallboard, provided attachment is identical to that specified for the wallboard, and the joints on the face layer are reinforced and the entire surface is covered with not less than $^1/_{16}$-inch gypsum veneer plaster.

f. The fire-resistance time period for concrete masonry units meeting the equivalent thicknesses required for a 2-hour *fire-resistance rating* in Item 3, and having a thickness of not less than $7^5/_s$ inches is 4 hours where cores that are not grouted are filled with silicone-treated perlite loose-fill insulation; vermiculite loose-fill insulation; or expanded clay, shale or slate lightweight aggregate, sand or slag having a maximum particle size of $^3/_8$ inch.

g. The *fire-resistance rating* of concrete masonry units composed of a combination of aggregate types or where plaster is applied directly to the concrete masonry shall be determined in accordance with ACI 216.1/TMS 0216. Lightweight aggregates shall have a maximum combined density of 65 pounds per cubic foot.

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(2)-continued
RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS [a,o,p]

h. See Note b. The equivalent thickness shall be permitted to include the thickness of cement plaster or 1.5 times the thickness of gypsum plaster applied in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 25.
i. Concrete walls shall be reinforced with horizontal and vertical temperature reinforcement as required by Chapter 19.
j. Studs are welded truss wire studs with 0.18 inch (No. 7 B.W. gage) flange wire and 0.18 inch (No. 7 B.W. gage) truss wires.
k. Nailable metal studs consist of two channel studs spot welded back to back with a crimped web forming a nailing groove,
1. Wood structural panels shall be permitted to be installed between the fire protection and the wood studs on either the interior or exterior side of the wood frame assemblies in this table, provided the length of the fasteners used to attach the fire protection is increased by an amount not less than the thickness of the wood structural panel.
m. For studs with a slenderness ratio, *l/d,* greater than 33, the design stress shall be reduced to 78 percent of allowable. For studs with a slenderness ratio, *l/d,* not exceeding 33, the design stress shall be reduced to 78 percent of the adjusted stress F'_c calculated for studs having a slenderness ratio *1/d* of 33.
n. For properties of cooler or wallboard nails, see ASTM C 514, ASTM C 547 or ASTM F 1667.
o. Generic *fire-resistance ratings* (those not designated as PROPRIETARY* in the listing) in the GA 600 shall be accepted as if herein listed.
p. NCMA TEK 5-8A shall be permitted for the design of fire walls.
q. The design stress of studs shall be equal to a maximum of 100 percent of the allowable *F',* calculated in accordance with Section 2306.

TABLE 721.1(3)
MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMSa'q

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
1.Siliceous aggregate concrete	1-1.1	Slab (no ceiling required). Minimum cover over nonprestressed reinforcement shall be not less than $^3/_4$" [b].	7.0	6.2	5.0	3.5	-	-	-	-
2.Carbonate aggregate concrete	2-1.1		6.6	5.7	4.6	3.2	-	-	-	-
3.Sand-light-weight concrete	3-1.1		5.4	4.6	3.8	2.7	-	-	-	-
4.Lightweight concrete	4-1.1		5.1	4.4	3.6	2.5	-	-	-	-
5.Reinforced concrete	5-1.1	Slab with suspended ceiling of vermiculite gypsum plaster over metal lath attached to $^3/_4$" cold-rolled channels spaced 12" on center. Ceiling located 6" minimum below joists.	3	2	-	-	1	$^3/_4$	-	-
	5-2.1	$^7/_8$" Type X gypsum wallboard' attached to 0.018 inch (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) by $^7/_8$" deep by $2^5/_8$" hat-shaped galvanized steel channels with 1"-long No. 6 screws. The channels are spaced 24" on center, span 35" and are supported along their length at 35" intervals by 0.033" (No. 21 galvanized sheet gage) galvanized steel flat strap hangers having formed edges that engage the lips of the channel. The strap hangers are attached to the side of the concrete joists with $^5/_{32}$" by $1^1/_4$" long power-driven fasteners. The wallboard is installed with the long dimension perpendicular to the channels. End joints occur on channels and supplementary channels are installed parallel to the main channels, 12" each side, at end joint occurrences. The finished ceiling is located approximately 12" below the soffit of the floor slab.	-	-	$2^1/_2$	-	-	-	$^5/_8$	-

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(3)—continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMSe'q

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (Inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
6. Steel joists con- strutted with a poured reinforced concrete slab on metal lath forms or steel form unitsd.'	6-1.1	Gypsum plaster on metal lath attached to the bottom cord with single No. 16 gage or doubled No. 18 gage wire ties spaced 6" on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 for scratch coat, 1:3 for brown coat, by weight, gypsum-to-sand aggregate for 2-hour system. For 3-hour	—	—	$2^1/_2$	$2^1/_4$	—	—	$^3/_4$	$^5/_8$
	6-2.1	Vermiculite gypsum plaster on metal lath attached to the bottom chord with single No.16 gage or doubled 0.049- inch (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties	—	2	—	—	—	5/8	—	—
	6-3.1	Cement plaster over metal lath attached to the bottom chord of joists with single No. 16 gage or doubled 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 6" on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 for scratch coat, 1:3 for brown coat for 1-hour system and 1:1 for scratch coat, 1:1 /2 for brown coat for 2-hour sys-tem, by weight,	–	—	—	2	—	——	–	$^5/_8$f
	6-4.1	Ceiling of $^5/_8$" Type X wallboard' attached to $^7/_8$" deep by $2^5/_8$" by 0.021 inch (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) hat-shaped furring channels 12" on center with 1" long No. 6 wallboard screws at 8" on center. Channels wire tied to bottom chord of joists with doubled 0.049 inch (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire or	—	—	$2^h/_2$	-	-	-	$^5/_8$	—
	6-5.1	Wood-fibered gypsum plaster mixed 1:1 by weight gypsum to sand aggregate applied over metal lath. Lath tied 6" on center to $^3/_4$" channels spaced $13^h/_2$" on center. Channels secured to joists at each intersection with two strands of 0.049 inch (No. 18 B.W. gage)	—	—	$2^1/_2$	—	—	—	$^3/_4$	—
7. Reinforced con- crete slabs and joists with hollow clay tile fillers laid end to end in rows $2^1/_2$" or more apart; rein- forcement placed between rows and concrete cast	7-1.1	$^5/_8$" gypsum plaster on bottom of floor or roof	—	—	8^h	—	—	—	^{5}/,	—
	7-1.2	None	—	—	—	$5^1/_2$1	—		—	
8. Steel joists con- structed with a rein- forced concrete slab on top poured on a $^1/_2$"	8-1.1	Vermiculite gypsum plaster on metal lath attached to $^3/_4$" cold-rolled channels with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 6" on center.	2^h/2	—	—	—	$^3/_4$	—	—	—

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(3)—continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS°04

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (Inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
9. 3" deep cellular steel deck with concrete slab on top. Slab thickness measured to top	9-1.1	Suspended ceiling of vermiculite gypsum plaster base coat and vermiculite acoustical plaster on metal lath attached at 6" intervals to 1/4" cold-rolled channels spaced 12" on center and secured to 1 1/2" cold-rolled channels spaced 36" on center with 0.065" (No. 16 B.W. gage) wire. 1 1/2" channels supported by No. 8 gage wire hangers at 36" on center. Beams within envelope and with a 2 1/2" airspace between beam soffit	, , L 1/2	-	-	-	8	1 1/k		
10. 1'/2"-deep steel roof deck on steel framing. Insulation board, 30 pcf density, composed of wood fibers with cement binders of thickness shown bonded to deck with unified asphalt adhesive. Covered with a Class A or B roof	10-1.1	Ceiling of gypsum plaster on metal lath. Lath attached to 3/4" furring channels with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 6" on center. 3/4" channel saddle tied to 2" chan-nels with doubled 0.065" (No. 16 B.W. gage) wire ties. 2" channels spaced 36" on center suspended 2" below steel framing and saddle-tied with 0.165" (No. 8 B.W. gage) wire. Plaster mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum-to-sand aggre-gate.	—	—	17/8	1	—	—	3/4 1	1/4 l
11. 1'/2'-deep steel roof deck on steel- framing wood fiber insulation board, 17.5 pcf density on top applied over a 15-lb asphalt-satu-rated felt. Class		11-1.1— Ceiling of gypsum plaster on metal lath. Lath attached to 3/4" furring *channels* with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 6" on center. 3/4" channels saddle tied to 2" channels with doubled 0.065" (No. 16 B.W. gage) wire ties. 2" channels spaced 36" on center suspended 2" below steel framing and saddle tied with 0.165' (No. 8 B.W. gage) wire. Plaster mixed 1:2 for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat, by weight, gypsum-to-sand aggregate for 1-hour sys-tern. For 2-hour system, plaster mix is 1:2 by weight, gyp-		—	1V,	1	—	—	7/8 g	3/4 l

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(3) —continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS[1]/q

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (Inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
12. 1 1/2" deep steel roof deck on steel-framing insulation of rigid board consisting of expanded perlite and fibers impregnated with integral asphalt waterproofing; density 9 to 12 pcf secured to metal roof deck by 1/2" wide ribbons of waterproof, cold-process liquid adhesive spaced 6" apart. Steel joist or light steel construction with metal roof deck, insulation, and	12-1.1	Gypsum-vermiculite plaster on metal lath wire tied at 6" intervals to 3/4" furring channels spaced 12" on center and wire tied to 2" runner channels spaced 32" on center. Runners wire tied to bottom chord of steel joists.	—	—	1	—	—	—		4
13. Double wood floor over wood joists spaced 16" on center.m."	13-1.1	Gypsum plaster over 3/8" Type X gypsum lath. Lath initially applied with not less than four 0 8" by No. 13 gage by 'V head plasterboard blued nails per bearing. Continuous stripping over lath along all joist lines. Stripping consists of 3" wide strips of metal lath attached by 1 1/2" by No. 11 gage by V," head roofing nails spaced 6" on center. Alternate stripping consists of 3" wide 0.049" diameter wire stripping weighing 1 pound per square yard and attached by No.16 gage by 1 1/2" by 3/4" crown width staples, spaced 4" on center. Where alternate stripping is used, the lath nailing shall consist of two nails at each end and one nail at each inter-mediate bearing. Plaster mixed 1:2 by	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	7/8
	13-1.2	Cement or gypsum plaster on metal lath. Lath fastened with 1 1/2" by No. 11 gage by 7/16" head barbed shank roofing nails spaced 5" on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat, by weight, cement to sand aggregate.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	5/8
	13-1.3	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster on metal lath secured to joists with 1 14" by No. 11 gage by 7/16" head barbed shank roofing nails spaced 5" on	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	5/8
	13-1.4	V," Type X gypsum wallboard' nailed to joists with 5d cooler° or wallboard" nails at 6" on center. End joints of wallboard centered on joists.	–	–	–	–	–	——	—	1/2

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(3) —continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS°, q

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (Inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
14. Plywood stressed skin panels consisting of 5/8" - thick interior C-D (exterior glue) top stressed skin on 2" x 6" nominal (mini- mum) stringers. Adjacent panel edges joined with 8d common wire nails spaced 6" on	14-1.1	/2" -thick wood fiberboard weighing 15 to 18 pounds per cubic foot installed with long dimension parallel to string-ers or 3/8" C-D (exterior glue) plywood glued and/or nailed to stringers. Nailing to be with 5d cooler° or wallboard° nails at 12" on center. Second layer of 1/2" Type X gypsum wallboard' applied with long dimension perpendicular to joists and attached with 8d on center at end joints and 8" on center elsewhere. Wall-board joints staggered with respect to fiberboard joints.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1
15. Vermiculite concrete slab proportioned 1:4 (Portland cement to vermiculite aggregate) on a 1 1/2" -deep steel deck supported on individually pro- tected steel framing. Maximum span of deck 6'-10" where deck is less than 0.019 inch (No. 26 carbon steel sheet gage) or greater. Slab reinforced with 4" x 8" 0.109/0.083"	15-1.1	None	—	—	—	3'	—	—	—	—
16. Perlite concrete slab proportioned 1:6 (Portland cement to perlite aggregate) on a 1 1/4' -deep steel deck supported on individually pro- tected steel framing. Slab reinforced with 4" x 8" 0.109/0.083"	16-1.1	None	—	—	—	31/2i	—		—	

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(3)—continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMSa.q

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
17. Perlite concrete slab proportioned 1:6 (Portland cement to perlite aggregate) on a $^{9}/_{16}$deep steel deck supported by steel joists 4' on center. Class A or	17-1.1	Perlite gypsum plaster on metal lath wire tied to $^{1}/_{4}$" furring channels attached with 0.065" (No. 16 B.W. gage) wire ties to lower chord of joists.	—	*2P*	*2P*	—	—	*1 8*	*1/4*	—
18. Perlite concrete slab proportioned 1:6 (Portland cement to perlite aggregate) on 1$^{1}/_{4}$" -deep steel deck supported on individually protected steel framing. Maximum span of deck 6'-10" where deck is less than 0.019" (No. 26 carbon sheet steel gage) and 8'-0" where deck is 0.019" (No. 26 carbon sheet steel gage) or greater. Slab reinforced with 0.042" (No. 19	18-1.1	None	—	2$^{1}/_{4}$P	2$^{1}/_{4}$P	—	—	—	—	—
19. Floor and beam construction consisting of 3" -deep cellu-lar steel floor unit mounted on steel members with **1:4** (proportion of Portland cement to per-lite aggregate) perlite-concrete	**19-1.1**	Suspended envelope ceiling of perlite gypsum plaster on metal lath attached to $^{3}/_{4}$" cold-rolled channels, secured to 1.^{1}/: cold-rolled channels spaced 42" on center supported by 0.203 inch (No. 6 B.W. gage) wire 36" on center. Beams in envelope with 3" minimum airspace between beam soffit and lath have a 4-hour rating.	2'	-	-	-	0 1		—	

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(3)—continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMSLq

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CE LING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
20. Perlite concrete proportioned 1:6 (Portland cement to perlite aggregate) poured to V," thickness above top of corrugations of 1^{5}4$_{6}$" -deep galvanized steel deck maximum span 8'0" for 0.024" (No. 24 galvanized sheet gage) or 6' 0" for 0.019" (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage) with deck supported by individually protected steel framing. Approved polystyrene foam plastic insulation board having a flame spread not exceeding 75 (1" to 4" thickness) with vent holes that approximate 3 percent of the board surface area placed on top of perlite slurry. A 2' by 4' insulation board contains six 2^{3}4" diameter holes. Board covered with 2^{1}/$_{4}$" minimum perlite concrete slab. Slab reinforced with mesh consisting of 0.042" (No. 19 B.W. gage) galvanized steel wire twisted together to form 2" hexagons with straight 0.065" (No. 16 B.W. gage) galvanized steel wire woven into mesh and spaced 3". Alternate slab reinforcement shall be permitted to consist of 4" x 8",	20-1.1	None	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	—	—
21. Wood joists, wood I-joists, floor trusses and flat or pitched roof trusses spaced a maximum 24" o.c. with ^{1}/$_{2}$" wood structural panels with exterior glue applied at right angles to top of joist or top chord of trusses with 8d nails. The wood structural panel thickness shall be not less than nomi- nal ^{1}/$_{2}$" nor less than required by Chapter 23.	21-1.1	Base layer ^{5}/$_{8}$" Type X gypsum wallboard applied at right angles to joist or truss 24" o.c. with 1^{1}/$_{4}$" Type S or Type W drywall screws 24" o.c. Face layer 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard or veneer base applied at right angles to joist or truss through base layer with 1^{7}4" Type S or Type W drywall screws 12" o.c. at joints and intermediate joist or truss. Face layer Type G drywall screws placed 2" back on either side of face layer	—	—	—	Varies 4	—	—	—	1^{1}/

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(3)—continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMSLq

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
22. Steel joists, floor trusses and flat or pitched roof trusses spaced a maximum 24" o.c. with $^1/_2$" wood structural panels with exterior glue applied at right angles to top of joist or top chord of trusses with No. 8 screws. The wood structural panel thickness shall be not less than nom- final '/z" nor less than required by Chapter 23.	22-1.1	Base layer $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum board applied at right angles to steel framing 24" on center with 1" Type S drywall screws spaced 24" on center. Face layer $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum board applied at right angles to steel framing attached through base layer with $1^5/_8$" Type S drywall screws 12" on center at end joints and intermediate joints and $1^1/_2$" Type G drywall screws 12 inches on center placed 2" back on either side of face layer end joints. Joints of the face layer are offset 24" from the joints of	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	1^1 4
23. Wood I-joist (minimum joist depth 9'/4" with a minimum flange depth of $1^5/_{18}$" and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 2.25 square inches) at 24" o.c. spacing with a minimum 1 x 4 **($^3/_4$"** x 3.5" actual) ledger strip applied parallel to and covering the bottom of the bottom flange of each member, tacked in place. 2" mineral wool insulation, 3.5 pcf (nominal) installed adjacent to the bottom flange of the I-	23-1.1	$^1/_2$" deep single leg resilient channel 16" on center (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the furring strip and joist and attached to each joist by 17_8" Type S drywall screws. $^5/_8$" Type C gypsum wallboard applied perpendicular to the channel with end joints staggered not less than 4' and fastened with 1'/8" Type S drywall screws spaced 7" on cen-ter. Wallboard joints to be taped and cov-ered with joint compound	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	5 /,
24. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth 9'/4" with a minimum flange depth of $1^1/_3$" and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 5.25 square inches; minimum web thickness of 3/ ") @ 24" o.c., 1^1/ "mineral wool , insulation (2.5 pcf-nominal) resting on hat-shaped furring channels.	24-1.1	Minimum 0.026" thick hat-shaped channel 16" o.c. (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the joist and attached to each joist by $1^1/_4$" Type S drywall screws. ^{5}/," Type C gyp-sum wallboard applied perpendicular to the channel with end joints staggered and fastened with 1'/," Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. in the field and 8" o.c. at the wallboard ends. Wallboard joints to be	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	5 /,
25. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth $9^1$4" with a minimum flange depth of $1^1/_2$" and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 5.25 square inches; minimum web thickness of /16") @ 24" o.c., $1^1/_2$" mineral wool insulation (2.5 pcf-nominal) resting on resilient channels.	25-1.1	Minimum 0 019" thick resilient channel 16" o.c. (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the joist and attached to each joist by $1^5/_8$" Type S drywall screws. $^5/_8$" Type C gyp-sum wallboard applied perpendicular to the channel with end joints staggered and fastened with 1" Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. in the field and 8" o.c. at the wallboard ends.	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	5 /,

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(3)—continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS°, q

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (Inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (Inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
26. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth 0$_4$" with a minimum flange thickness of **1^1/$_2$" and** a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 2.25 square inches; minimum web thick- ness of ^{3}/,") @ 24" o.c.	26-1.1	Two layers of V," Type X gypsum wallboard applied with the long dimension perpendicular to the I-joists with end joints staggered. The base layer is fastened with 1^{5}4" Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. and the face layer is fas-tened with 2" Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. in the field and 8" o.c. on the edges. Face layer end joints shall not occur on the same I-joist as base layer end joints and edge joints shall be offset 24" from base layer joints. Face layer to also be attached to base layer with 1'1$_2$" Type G drywall screws spaced 8" o.c. placed 6" from face layer end joints. Face layer	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	1
27. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth 0$_3$" with a minimum flange depth of **1^5/$_{16}$" and** a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 1.95 square inches; minimum web thick- ness of ^{3}/$_8$") @ 24" o.c.	27-1.1	Minimum 0.019" thick resilient channel 16" o.c. (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the joist and attached to each joist by l'/," Type S drywall screws. Two layers of ^{1}/$_2$" Type X gypsum wallboard applied with the long dimension perpendicular to the I-joists with end joints staggered. The base layer is fastened with l'/," Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. and the face layer is fastened with 1^{5}4" Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. Face layer end joints shall not occur on the same I-joist as base layer end joints and edge joints shall be offset 24" from base layer joints. Face layer to also be attached to base layer with 1^h/$_2$" Type G drywall screws spaced 8" o.c. placed 6" from face layer **end joints. Face layer wallboard joints to be taped and covered with joint compound.**	—	---—		Varies	—	—	—	1

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(3)—continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS"' q

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (Inches)				MINIMUM TH CKNESS OF CEILING (Inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
28.Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth $9^1/_4$" with a minimum flange depth of $1^1/_2$" and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 2.25 square inches; minimum web $^3/_8$") @ 24" o.c. Unfaced fiberglass insulation or mineral wool insulation is installed between the I-joists sup- ported on the upper surface of the flange by stay wires spaced 12" o.c.	28-1.1	Base layer of $^5/_8$" Type C gypsum wallboard attached directly to I-joists with $1^5/_8$" Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. with ends staggered. Minimum 0.0179" thick hat-shaped $^7/_8$-inch furring channel 16" o.c. (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpen-dicular to the joist and attached to each joist by $1^5/_8$" Type S drywall screws after the base layer of gypsum wall-board has been applied. The middle and face layers of $^5/_8$" Type C gypsum wall-board applied perpendicular to the channel with end joints staggered. The middle layer is fastened with 1" Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. The face layer is applied parallel to the middle layer but with the edge joints offset 24" from those of the middle layer and fastened with $1^5/_8$" Type S drywall screws 8" o.c. The	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	$2^3/_4$	-
29.Channel-shaped 18 gage steel joists (minimum depth 8") spaced a maximum 24" o.c. supporting tongue-and-groove wood structural panels (nominal minimum $^3/_4$" thick) applied perpendicular to framing members. Structural panels attached with $1^5/_8$" Type S-12 screws spaced 12" o.c.	29-1.1	Base layer $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum board applied perpendicular to bottom of framing members with $1^1/_8$" Type S-12 screws spaced 12" o.c. Second layer $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum board attached perpen-dicular to framing members with $1^5/_8$" Type S-12 screws spaced 12" o.c. Sec-and layer joints offset 24" from base layer. Third layer $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum board attached perpendicular to framing members with $2^3/_8$" Type S-12 screws spaced 12" o.c. Third layer joints offset 12" from second layer joints. Hat-shaped $^7/_8$-inch rigid furring channels applied at right angles to framing members over third layer with two $2^3/_8$" Type S-12 screws at each framing member. Face layer $^5/_8$" Type X gypsum board applied at	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	$3^3/_8$	—

(continued)

TABLE 721.1(3)—continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS°, q

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (Inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
30. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth 9¹4" with a minimum flange **depth of 1¹4" and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 2.25 square** inches; minimum web thickness of 3/8") @ 24" o.c. Fiberglass insulation placed between I-joists supported by the resil- ient channels.	**30-1.1**	Minimum 0.019" thick resilient channel 16" o.c. (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the joists and attached to each joist by **1ʰ/₄"** Type S drywall screws. Two layers of ⁱ/₂" Type X gypsum wallboard applied with the long dimension perpendicular to the I-joists with end joints staggered. The base layer is fastened with 1¹4" **Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. and the face layer is fastened with 1⁵/,"** Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. Face layer end joints shall not occur on the same I-joist as base layer end joints and edge joints shall be offset 24" from base layer joints. Face layer to be attached to base layer with 1¹/₂" Type G drywall screws spaced 8" o.c. placed 6" from face layer end joints. Face layer	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m³, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 pound per linear foot = 1.4882 kg/m.

a. Staples with equivalent holding power and penetration shall be permitted to be used as alternate fasteners to nails for attachment to wood framing.

b. Where the slab is in an unrestrained condition, minimum reinforcement cover shall be not less than 1⁵4 inches for 4 hours (siliceous aggregate only); 1¹4 inches for 4 and 3 hours; 1 inch for 2 hours (siliceous aggregate only); and ¹/₄ inch for all other restrained and unrestrained conditions.

c. For all of the construction with gypsum wallboard described in this table, gypsum base for veneer plaster of the same size, thickness and core type shall be permitted to be substituted for gypsum wallboard, provided attachment is identical to that specified for the wallboard, and the joints on the face layer are reinforced and the entire surface is covered with not less than ¹/₁₆-inch gypsum veneer plaster.

d. Slab thickness over steel joists measured at the joists for metal lath form and at the top of the form for steel form units.

e. *(a) The* maximum allowable stress level for H-Series joists shall not exceed 22,000 psi.
(b) The allowable stress for K-Series joists shall not exceed 26,000 psi, the nominal depth of such joist shall be not less than 10 inches and the nominal joist weight shall be not less than 5 pounds per linear foot.

f. Cement plaster with 15 pounds of hydrated lime and 3 pounds of approved additives or admixtures per bag of cement.

g. Gypsum wallboard ceilings attached to steel framing shall be permitted to be suspended with 1¹/₂-inch cold-formed carrying channels spaced 48 inches on center, that are suspended with No. 8 SWG galvanized wire hangers spaced 48 inches on center. Cross-furring channels are tied to the carrying channels with No. 18 SWG galvanized wire hangers spaced 48 inches on center. Cross-furring channels are tied to the carrying channels with No. 18 SWG galvanized wire (double strand) and spaced as required for direct attachment to the framing. This alternative is applicable to those steel framing assemblies recognized under Note q.

h. Six-inch hollow clay tile with 2-inch concrete slab above.

i. Four-inch hollow clay tile with 1'/₂-inch concrete slab above.

j. Thickness measured to bottom of steel form units.

k. Five-eighths inch of vermiculite gypsum plaster plus ⁱ/₂ inch of approved vermiculite acoustical plastic. 1. Furring channels spaced **12** inches on center.

m. Double wood floor shall be permitted to be either of the following:
(a) Subfloor of 1-inch nominal boarding, a layer of asbestos paper weighing not less than 14 pounds per 100 square feet and a layer of 1-inch nominal tongue-and-groove finished flooring; or
(b) Subfloor of 1-inch nominal tongue-and-groove boarding or ¹⁵/₃₂ inch wood structural panels with exterior glue and a layer of 1-inch nominal tongue-and-groove finished flooring or ¹⁹/₃-inch wood structural panel finish flooring or a layer of Type I Grade M-1 particleboard not less than '/,,inch thick.

n. The ceiling shall be permitted to be omitted over unusable space, and flooring shall be permitted to be omitted where unusable space occurs above.

o. For properties of cooler or wallboard nails, see ASTM C 514, ASTM C 547 or ASTM F 1667.

p. Thickness measured on top of steel deck unit.

q. Generic *fire-resistance ratings* (those not designated as PROPRIETARY* in the listing) in the GA 600 shall be accepted as if herein listed.

`

SECTION 722
CALCULATED FIRE RESISTANCE

722.1 General.
The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the *fire resistance* of specific materials or combinations of materials is established by calculations. These procedures apply only to the information contained in this section and shall not be otherwise used. The calculated *fire resistance* of concrete, concrete masonry and clay masonry assemblies shall be permitted in accordance with ACI 216.1/TMS 0216. The calculated *fire resistance* of steel assemblies shall be permitted in accordance with Chapter 5 of ASCE 29. The calculated *fire resistance* of exposed wood members and wood decking shall be permitted in accordance with Chapter 16 of ANSI/AWC *National Design Specification for Wood Construction (NDS)*.

722.1.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

CERAMIC FIBER BLANKET.

CONCRETE, CARBONATE AGGREGATE.

CONCRETE, CELLULAR.

CONCRETE, LIGHTWEIGHT AGGREGATE.

CONCRETE, PERLITE.

CONCRETE, SAND-LIGHTWEIGHT.

CONCRETE, SILICEOUS AGGREGATE.

CONCRETE, VERMICULITE.

GLASS FIBERBOARD.

MINERAL BOARD.

722.2 Concrete assemblies.
The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the fire-resistance ratings of concrete assemblies are established by calculations.

`

722.2.1 Concrete walls.
Cast-in-place and precast concrete walls shall comply with Section 722.2.1.1. Multiwythe concrete walls shall comply with Section 722.2.1.2. Joints between precast panels shall comply with Section 722.2.1.3. Concrete walls with gypsum wallboard or plaster finish shall comply with Section 722.2.1.4.

722.2.1.1 Cast-in-place or precast walls.
The minimum equivalent thicknesses of cast-in-place or precast concrete walls for *fire-resistance ratings* of 1 hour to 4 hours are shown in Table 722.2.1.1. For solid walls with flat vertical surfaces, the equivalent thickness is the same as the actual thickness. The values in Table 722.2.1.1 apply to plain, reinforced or prestressed concrete walls.

TABLE 722.2.1.1
MINIMUM EQUIVALENT THICKNESS OF CAST-IN-PLACE OR PRECAST CONCRETE WALLS, LOAD-BEARING OR NONLOAD-BEARING

CONCRETE TYPE	MINIMUM SLAB THICKNESS (inches) FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF				
	1 hour	$1\frac{1}{2}$ hours	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
Siliceous	3.5	4.3	5.0	6.2	7.0
Carbonate	3.2	4.0	4.6	5.7	6.6
Sand-lightweight	2.7	3.3	3.8	4.6	5.4
Lightweight	2.5	3.1	3.6	4.4	5.1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

722.2.1.1.1 Hollow-core precast wall panels.
For hollow-core precast concrete wall panels in which the cores are of constant cross section throughout the length, calculation of the equivalent thickness by dividing the net cross-sectional area (the gross cross section minus the area of the cores) of the panel by its width shall be permitted

722.2.1.1.2 Core spaces filled.
Where all of the core spaces of hollow-core wall panels are filled with loose-fill material, such as expanded shale, clay or slag, or vermiculite or perlite, the *fire-resistance rating* of the wall is the same as that of a solid wall of the same concrete type and of the same overall thickness.

722.2.1.1.3 Tapered cross sections.
The thickness of panels with tapered cross sections shall be that determined at a distance $2t$ or 6 inches (152 mm), whichever is less, from the point of minimum thickness, where t is the minimum thickness.

722.2.1.1.4 Ribbed or undulating surfaces.
The equivalent thickness of panels with ribbed or undulating surfaces shall be determined by one of the following expressions:

For $s \geq 4t$, the thickness to be used shall be t

`

For $s \leq 2t$, the thickness to be used shall be t_e

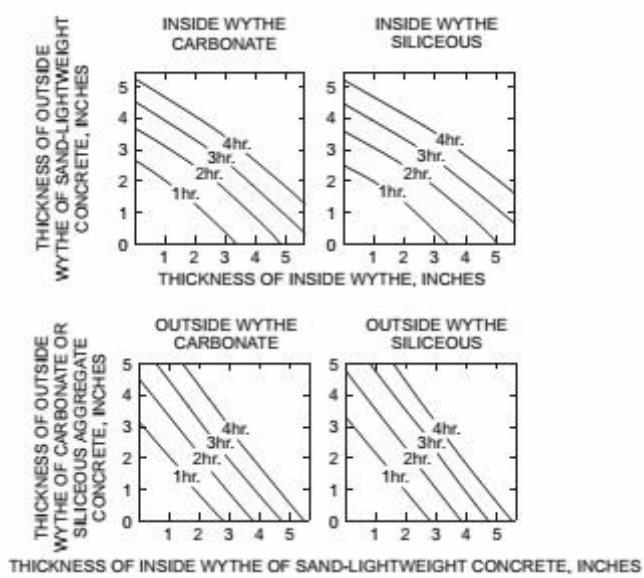
For $4t > s > 2t$, the thickness to be used shall be

$$t + \left(\frac{4t}{s} - 1\right)(t_e - t) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 7-3)}$$

where:

s	=	Spacing of ribs or undulations.
t	=	Minimum thickness.
t_e	=	Equivalent thickness of the panel calculated as the net cross-sectional area of the panel divided by the width, in which the maximum thickness used in the calculation shall not exceed $2t$.

722.2.1.2 Multiwythe walls.
For walls that consist of two wythes of different types of concrete, the *fire-resistance ratings* shall be permitted to be determined from Figure 722.2.1.2.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 722.2.1.2
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS OF TWO-WYTHE CONCRETE WALLS

`

TABLE 722.2.1.2(1)
VALUES OF $R_n^{0.59}$ FOR USE IN EQUATION 7-4

TYPE OF MATERIAL	THICKNESS OF MATERIAL (inches)											
	1 1/2	2	2 1/2	3	3 1/2	4	4 1/2	5	5 1/2	6	6 1/2	7
Siliceous aggregate concrete	5.3	6.5	8.1	9.5	11.3	13.0	14.9	16.9	18.8	20.7	22.8	25.1
Carbonate aggregate concrete	5.5	7.1	8.9	10.4	12.0	14.0	16.2	18.1	20.3	21.9	24.7	27.2[c]
Sand-lightweight concrete	6.5	8.2	10.5	12.8	15.5	18.1	20.7	23.3	26.0[c]	Note c	Note c	Note c
Lightweight concrete	6.6	8.8	11.2	13.7	16.5	19.1	21.9	24.7	27.8[c]	Note c	Note c	Note c
Insulating concrete[a]	9.3	13.3	16.6	18.3	23.1	26.5[c]	Note c	Note c	Note c	Note c	Note c	Note c
Airspace[b]	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/m^3.

a. Dry unit weight of 35 pcf or less and consisting of cellular, perlite or vermiculite concrete.

b. The $R_n^{0.59}$ value for one 1/2" to 3 1/2" airspace is 3.3. The $R_n^{0.59}$ value for two 1/2" to 3 1/2" airspaces is 6.7.

c. The *fire-resistance rating* for this thickness exceeds 4 hours.

TABLE 722.2.1.2(2)
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS BASED ON $R^{0.59}$

R^a, MINUTES	$R^{0.59}$
60	11.20
120	16.85
180	21.41
240	25.37

a. Based on Equation 7-4.

722.2.1.2.1 Two or more wythes.
The *fire-resistance rating* for wall panels consisting of two or more wythes shall be permitted to be determined by the formula:

$$R = (R_1^{0.59} + R_2^{0.59} + \ldots + R_n^{0.59})^{1.7} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 7-4)}$$

where:

R = The fire endurance of the assembly, minutes.

R_1, R_2, and R_n = The fire endurances of the individual wythes, minutes. Values of $R_n^{0.59}$ for use in Equation 7-4 are given in Table 722.2.1.2(1).

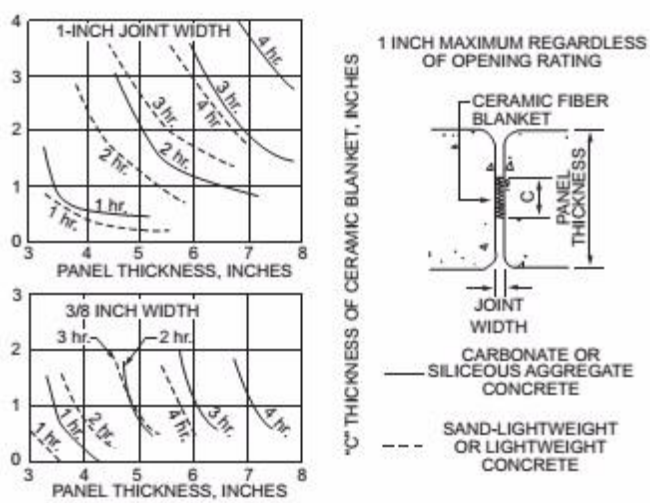
`

Calculated *fire-resistance ratings* are shown in Table 722.2.1.2(2).

722.2.1.2.2 Foam plastic insulation.
The *fire-resistance ratings* of precast concrete wall panels consisting of a layer of foam plastic insulation sandwiched between two wythes of concrete shall be permitted to be determined by use of Equation 7-4. Foam plastic insulation with a total thickness of less than 1 inch (25 mm) shall be disregarded. The R_n value for thickness of foam plastic insulation of 1 inch (25 mm) or greater, for use in the calculation, is 5 minutes; therefore $R_n^{0.59} = 2.5$.

722.2.1.3 Joints between precast wall panels.
Joints between precast concrete wall panels that are not insulated as required by this section shall be considered as openings in walls. Uninsulated joints shall be included in determining the percentage of openings permitted by Table 705.8. Where openings are not permitted or are required by this code to be protected, the provisions of this section shall be used to determine the amount of joint insulation required. Insulated joints shall not be considered openings for purposes of determining compliance with the allowable percentage of openings in Table 705.8.

722.2.1.3.1 Ceramic fiber joint protection.
Figure 722.2.1.3.1 shows thicknesses of *ceramic fiber blankets* to be used to insulate joints between precast concrete wall panels for various panel thicknesses and for joint widths of $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) and 1 inch (25 mm) for *fire-resistance ratings* of 1 hour to 4 hours. For joint widths between $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) and 1 inch (25 mm), the thickness of *ceramic fiber blanket* is allowed to be determined by direct interpolation. Other tested and labeled materials are acceptable in place of ceramic fiber blankets.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 722.2.1.3.1
CERAMIC FIBER JOINT PROTECTION

`

722.2.1.4 Walls with gypsum wallboard or plaster finishes.
The *fire-resistance rating* of cast-in-place or precast concrete walls with finishes of gypsum wallboard or plaster applied to one or both sides shall be permitted to be calculated in accordance with the provisions of this section.

TABLE 722.2.1.4(1)
MULTIPLYING FACTOR FOR FINISHES ON NONFIRE-EXPOSED SIDE OF WALL

TYPE OF FINISH APPLIED TO CONCRETE OR CONCRETE MASONRY WALL	TYPE OF AGGREGATE USED IN CONCRETE OR CONCRETE MASONRY			
	Concrete: siliceous or carbonate Concrete Masonry: siliceous or carbonate; solid clay brick	Concrete: sand-lightweight Concrete Masonry: clay tile; hollow clay brick; concrete masonry units of expanded shale and < 20% sand	Concrete: lightweight Concrete Masonry: concrete masonry units of expanded shale, expanded clay, expanded slag, or pumice < 20% sand	Concrete Masonry: concrete masonry units of expanded slag, expanded clay, or pumice
Portland cement-sand plaster	1.00	0.75[a]	0.75[a]	0.50[a]
Gypsum-sand plaster	1.25	1.00	1.00	1.00
Gypsum-vermiculite or perlite plaster	1.75	1.50	1.25	1.25
Gypsum wallboard	3.00	2.25	2.25	2.25

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For Portland cement-sand plaster $^5/_8$ inch or less in thickness and applied directly to the concrete or concrete masonry on the nonfire-exposed side of the wall, the multiplying factor shall be 1.00.

TABLE 722.2.1.4(2)
TIME ASSIGNED TO FINISH MATERIALS ON FIRE-EXPOSED SIDE OF WALL

FINISH DESCRIPTION	TIME (minutes)
Gypsum wallboard	
$^3/_8$ inch	10
$^1/_2$ inch	15
$^5/_8$ inch	20
2 layers of $^3/_8$ inch	25

`

1 layer of $^{3}/_{8}$ inch, 1 layer of $^{1}/_{2}$ inch	35
2 layers of $^{1}/_{2}$ inch	40
Type X gypsum wallboard	
$^{1}/_{2}$ inch	25
$^{5}/_{8}$ inch	40
Portland cement-sand plaster applied directly to concrete masonry	See Note a
Portland cement-sand plaster on metal lath	
$^{3}/_{4}$ inch	20
$^{7}/_{8}$ inch	25
1 inch	30
Gypsum sand plaster on $^{3}/_{8}$-inch gypsum lath	
$^{1}/_{2}$ inch	35
$^{5}/_{8}$ inch	40
$^{3}/_{4}$ inch	50
Gypsum sand plaster on metal lath	
$^{3}/_{4}$ inch	50
$^{7}/_{8}$ inch	60
1 inch	80

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. The actual thickness of Portland cement-sand plaster, provided it is $^{5}/_{8}$ inch or less in thickness, shall be permitted to be included in determining the equivalent thickness of the masonry for use in Table 722.3.2.

722.2.1.4.1 Nonfire-exposed side.
Where the finish of gypsum wallboard or plaster is applied to the side of the wall not exposed to fire, the contribution of the finish to the total *fire-resistance rating* shall be determined as follows: The thickness of the finish shall first be corrected by multiplying the actual thickness of the finish by the applicable factor determined from Table 722.2.1.4(1) based on the type of aggregate in the concrete. The corrected thickness of finish shall then be added to the actual or equivalent thickness of concrete and *fire-resistance rating* of the concrete and finish determined from Tables 722.2.1.1 and 722.2.1.2(1) and Figure 722.2.1.2.

722.2.1.4.2 Fire-exposed side.
Where gypsum wallboard or plaster is applied to the fire-exposed side of the wall, the contribution of the finish to the total *fire-resistance rating* shall be determined as follows: The time assigned to the finish as established by Table 722.2.1.4(2) shall be added to the fireresistance rating determined from Tables 722.2.1.1 and 722.2.1.2(1)

`

and Figure 722.2.1.2 for the concrete alone, or to the rating determined in Section 722.2.1.4.1 for the concrete and finish on the nonfire-exposed side.

722.2.1.4.3 Nonsymmetrical assemblies.
For a wall having no finish on one side or different types or thicknesses of finish on each side, the calculation procedures of Sections 722.2.1.4.1 and 722.2.1.4.2 shall be performed twice, assuming either side of the wall to be the fire-exposed side. The fire-resistance rating of the wall shall not exceed the lower of the two values.

Exception: For an *exterior wall* with a *fire separation distance* greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) the fire shall be assumed to occur on the interior side only.

722.2.1.4.4 Minimum concrete fire-resistance rating.
Where finishes applied to one or both sides of a concrete wall contribute to the *fire-resistance rating*, the concrete alone shall provide not less than onehalf of the total required *fire-resistance rating*. Additionally, the contribution to the *fire resistance* of the finish on the nonfire-exposed side of a *load-bearing wall* shall not exceed one-half the contribution of the concrete alone.

722.2.1.4.5 Concrete finishes.
Finishes on concrete walls that are assumed to contribute to the total *fire-resistance rating* of the wall shall comply with the installation requirements of Section 722.3.2.5.

722.2.2 Concrete floor and roof slabs.
Reinforced and prestressed floors and roofs shall comply with Section 722.2.2.1. Multicourse floors and roofs shall comply with Sections 722.2.2.2 and 722.2.2.3, respectively.

722.2.2.1 Reinforced and prestressed floors and roofs.
The minimum thicknesses of reinforced and prestressed concrete floor or roof slabs for *fire-resistance ratings* of 1 hour to 4 hours are shown in Table 722.2.2.1.

Exception: Minimum thickness shall not be required for floors and ramps within open and enclosed parking garages constructed in accordance with Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively.

TABLE 722.2.2.1
MINIMUM SLAB THICKNESS (inches)

CONCRETE TYPE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)				
	1	$1^1/_2$	2	3	4
Siliceous	3.5	4.3	5	6.2	7
Carbonate	3.2	4	4.6	5.7	6.6
Sand-lightweight	2.7	3.3	3.8	4.6	5.4
Lightweight	2.5	3.1	3.6	4.4	5.1

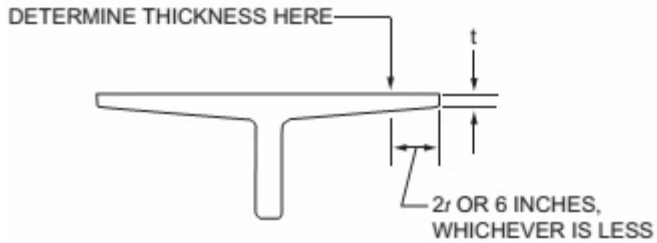
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

722.2.2.1.1 Hollow-core prestressed slabs.
For hollow-core prestressed concrete slabs in which the cores are of constant cross section throughout the length, the equivalent thickness shall be permitted to be

`

obtained by dividing the net cross-sectional area of the slab including grout in the joints, by its width.

722.2.2.1.2 Slabs with sloping soffits.
The thickness of slabs with sloping soffits (see Figure 722.2.2.1.2) shall be determined at a distance 2*t* or 6 inches (152 mm), whichever is less, from the point of minimum thickness, where *t* is the minimum thickness.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 722.2.2.1.2
DETERMINATION OF SLAB
THICKNESS FOR SLOPING SOFFITS

722.2.2.1.3 Slabs with ribbed soffits.
The thickness of slabs with ribbed or undulating soffits (see Figure 722.2.2.1.3) shall be determined by one of the following expressions, whichever is applicable:

For $s > 4t$, the thickness to be used shall be t

For $s \leq 2t$, the thickness to be used shall be t_e

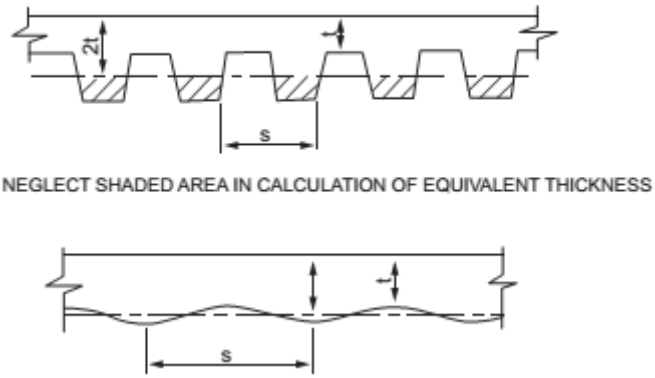
For $4t > s > 2t$, the thickness to be used shall be

$$t + \left(\frac{4t}{s} - 1\right)(t_e - t) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 7-5)}$$

where:

s	=	Spacing of ribs or undulations.
t	=	Minimum thickness.
t_e	=	Equivalent thickness of the slab calculated as the net area of the slab divided by the width, in which the maximum thickness used in the calculation shall not exceed 2*t*.

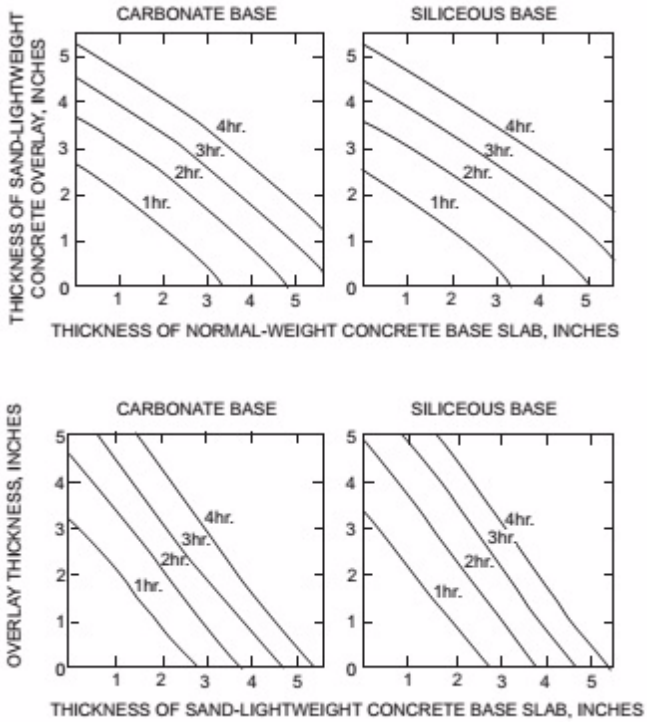
`



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm

FIGURE 722.2.2.1.3
SLABS WITH RIBBED OR UNDULATING SOFFITS

722.2.2.2 Multicourse floors.
The *fire-resistance ratings* of floors that consist of a base slab of concrete with a topping (overlay) of a different type of concrete shall comply with Figure 722.2.2.2.



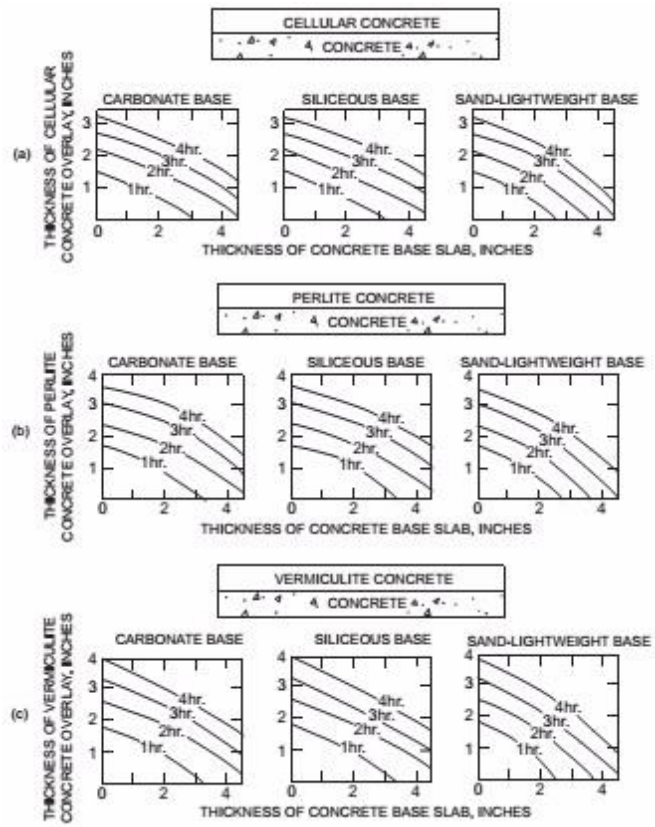
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 722.2.2.2
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS FOR
TWO-COURSE CONCRETE FLOORS

`

722.2.2.3 Multicourse roofs.

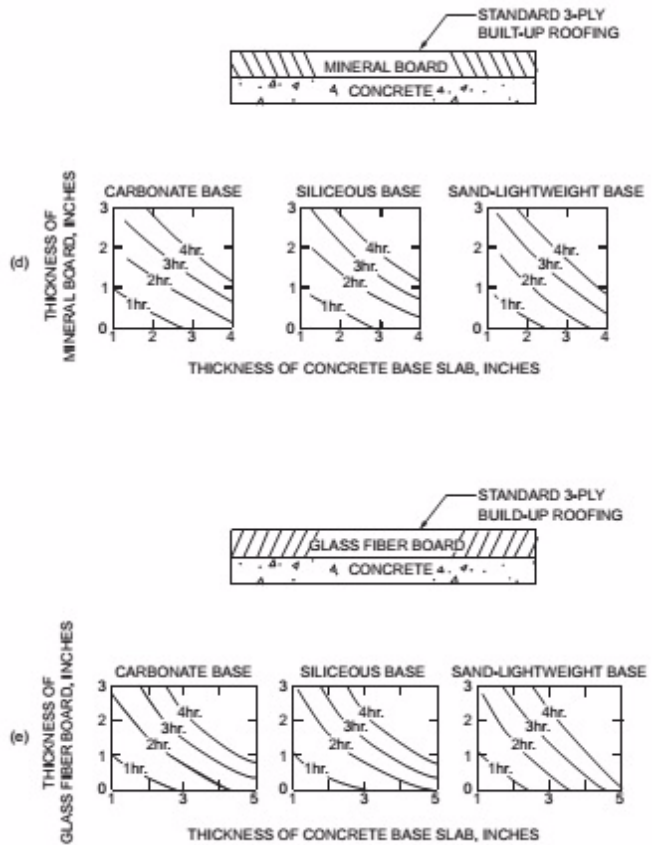
The *fire-resistance ratings* of roofs that consist of a base slab of concrete with a topping (overlay) of an insulating concrete or with an insulating board and built-up roofing shall comply with Figures 722.2.2.3(1) and 722.2.2.3(2).



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 722.2.2.3(1)
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS FOR CONCRETE ROOF ASSEMBLIES

`



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 722.2.2.3(2)
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS
FOR CONCRETE ROOF ASSEMBLIES

722.2.2.3.1 Heat transfer.
For the transfer of heat, three-ply built-up roofing contributes 10 minutes to the *fire-resistance rating*. The *fire-resistance rating* for concrete assemblies such as those shown in Figure 722.2.2.3(1) shall be increased by 10 minutes. This increase is not applicable to those shown in Figure 722.2.2.3(2).

722.2.2.4 Joints in precast slabs.
Joints between adjacent precast concrete slabs need not be considered in calculating the slab thickness provided that a concrete topping not less than 1 inch (25 mm) thick is used. Where no concrete topping is used, joints must be grouted to a depth of not less than one-third the slab thickness at the joint, but not less than 1 inch (25 mm), or the joints must be made fire resistant by other *approved* methods.

722.2.3 Concrete cover over reinforcement.
The minimum thickness of concrete cover over reinforcement in concrete slabs, reinforced beams and prestressed beams shall comply with this section.

TABLE 722.2.3(1)
COVER THICKNESS FOR REINFORCED CONCRETE FLOOR OR ROOF SLABS (inches)

`

CONCRETE AGGREGATE TYPE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)									
	Restrained					Unrestrained				
	1	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	3	4	1	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	3	4
Siliceous	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	1	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$1\frac{5}{8}$
Carbonate	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$
Sand-lightweight or lightweight	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE 722.2.3(2)
COVER THICKNESS FOR PRESTRESSED CONCRETE FLOOR OR ROOF SLABS (inches)

CONCRETE AGGREGATE TYPE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)									
	Restrained					Unrestrained				
	1	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	3	4	1	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	3	4
Siliceous	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$2\frac{3}{8}$	$2\frac{3}{4}$
Carbonate	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	1	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{5}{8}$	$2\frac{1}{8}$	$2\frac{1}{4}$
Sand-lightweight or lightweight	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	1	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	$2\frac{1}{4}$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE 722.2.3(3)
MINIMUM COVER FOR MAIN REINFORCING BARS OF REINFORCED CONCRETE BEAMS[c]
(APPLICABLE TO ALL TYPES OF STRUCTURAL CONCRETE)

RESTRAINED OR UNRESTRAINED[a]	BEAM WIDTH[b] (inches)	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)				
		1	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	3	4
Restrained	5	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	1[a]	$1\frac{1}{4}$[a]
	7	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$
	≥ 10	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$
Unrestrained	5	$\frac{3}{4}$	1	$1\frac{1}{4}$	—	—
	7	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	3

`

	≥ 10	$^{3}/_{4}$	$^{3}/_{4}$	$^{3}/_{4}$	1	$1^{3}/_{4}$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Tabulated values for restrained assemblies apply to beams spaced more than 4 feet on center. For restrained beams spaced 4 feet or less on center, minimum cover of $^{3}/_{4}$ inch is adequate for ratings of 4 hours or less.

b. For beam widths between the tabulated values, the minimum cover thickness can be determined by direct interpolation.

c. The cover for an individual reinforcing bar is the minimum thickness of concrete between the surface of the bar and the fire-exposed surface of the beam. For beams in which several bars are used, the cover for corner bars used in the calculation shall be reduced to one-half of the actual value. The cover for an individual bar must be not less than one-half of the value given in Table 722.2.3(3) nor less than $^{3}/_{4}$ inch.

TABLE 722.2.3(4)
MINIMUM COVER FOR PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BEAMS 8 INCHES OR GREATER IN WIDTH[b]

RESTRAINED OR UNRESTRAINED[a]	CONCRETE AGGREGATE TYPE	BEAM WIDTH (inches)	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)				
			1	$1^{1}/_{2}$	2	3	4
Restrained	Carbonate or siliceous	8	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{3}/_{4}$ [a]	$2^{1}/_{2}$ [a]
	Carbonate or siliceous	≥ 12	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{7}/_{8}$ [a]
	Sand lightweight	8	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	2 [a]
	Sand lightweight	≥ 12	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{5}/_{8}$ [a]
Unrestrained	Carbonate or siliceous	8	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{3}/_{4}$	$2^{1}/_{2}$	5 [c]	—
	Carbonate or siliceous	≥ 12	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{7}/_{8}$ [a]	$2^{1}/_{2}$	3
	Sand lightweight	8	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	2	$3^{1}/_{4}$	—
	Sand lightweight	≥ 12	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{1}/_{2}$	$1^{5}/_{8}$	2	$2^{1}/_{2}$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Tabulated values for restrained assemblies apply to beams spaced more than 4 feet on center. For restrained beams spaced 4 feet or less on center, minimum cover of $^{3}/_{4}$ inch is adequate for 4-hour ratings or less.

b. For beam widths between 8 inches and 12 inches, minimum cover thickness can be determined by direct interpolation.

c. Not practical for 8-inch-wide beam but shown for purposes of interpolation.

TABLE 722.2.3(5)
MINIMUM COVER FOR PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BEAMS OF ALL WIDTHS

`

RESTRAINED OR UNRESTRAINED[a]	CONCRETE AGGREGATE TYPE	BEAM AREA[b] A (square inches)	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)				
			1	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	3	4
Restrained	All	$40 \le A \le 150$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	$2\frac{1}{2}$	—
	Carbonate or siliceous	$150 < A \le 300$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$
		$300 < A$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2
	Sand lightweight	$150 < A$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2
Unrestrained	All	$40 \le A \le 150$	2	$2\frac{1}{2}$	—	—	—
	Carbonate or siliceous	$150 < A \le 300$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	—	—
		$300 < A$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	3[c]	4[c]
	Sand lightweight	$150 < A$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	3[c]	4[c]

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Tabulated values for restrained assemblies apply to beams spaced more than 4 feet on center. For restrained beams spaced 4 feet or less on center, minimum cover of $\frac{3}{4}$ inch is adequate for 4-hour ratings or less.

b. The cross-sectional area of a stem is permitted to include a portion of the area in the flange, provided the width of the flange used in the calculation does not exceed three times the average width of the stem.

c. U-shaped or hooped stirrups spaced not to exceed the depth of the member and having a minimum cover of 1 inch shall be provided.

722.2.3.1 Slab cover.
The minimum thickness of concrete cover to the positive moment reinforcement shall comply with Table 722.2.3(1) for reinforced concrete and Table 722.2.3(2) for prestressed concrete. These tables are applicable for solid or hollow-core one-way or two-way slabs with flat undersurfaces. These tables are applicable to slabs that are either cast in place or precast. For precast prestressed concrete not covered elsewhere, the procedures contained in PCI MNL 124 shall be acceptable.

722.2.3.2 Reinforced beam cover.
The minimum thickness of concrete cover to the positive moment reinforcement (bottom steel) for reinforced concrete beams is shown in Table 722.2.3(3) for *fire-resistance ratings* of 1 hour to 4 hours.

722.2.3.3 Prestressed beam cover.
The minimum thickness of concrete cover to the positive moment prestressing tendons (bottom steel) for restrained and unrestrained prestressed concrete beams and stemmed units shall comply with the values shown in Tables 722.2.3(4) and 722.2.3(5) for *fire-resistance ratings* of 1 hour to 4 hours. Values in Table 722.2.3(4) apply to beams 8 inches (203 mm) or greater in width. Values in Table 722.2.3(5) apply to beams or stems of any width, provided the cross-section area is not less than 40 square inches (25 806 mm^2). In case of differences between the values determined from Table 722.2.3(4) or 722.2.3(5), it is permitted to use the smaller value. The concrete cover

`

shall be calculated in accordance with Section 722.2.3.3.1. The minimum concrete cover for nonprestressed reinforcement in prestressed concrete beams shall comply with Section 722.2.3.2.

722.2.3.3.1 Calculating concrete cover.
The concrete cover for an individual tendon is the minimum thickness of concrete between the surface of the tendon and the fire-exposed surface of the beam, except that for ungrouted ducts, the assumed cover thickness is the minimum thickness of concrete between the surface of the duct and the fire-exposed surface of the beam. For beams in which two or more tendons are used, the cover is assumed to be the average of the minimum cover of the individual tendons. For corner tendons (tendons equal distance from the bottom and side), the minimum cover used in the calculation shall be one-half the actual value. For stemmed members with two or more prestressing tendons located along the vertical centerline of the stem, the average cover shall be the distance from the bottom of the member to the centroid of the tendons. The actual cover for any individual tendon shall be not less than one-half the smaller value shown in Tables 722.2.3(4) and 722.2.3(5), or 1 inch (25 mm), whichever is greater.

722.2.4 Concrete columns.
Concrete columns shall comply with this section.

TABLE 722.2.4
MINIMUM DIMENSION OF CONCRETE COLUMNS (inches)

TYPES OF CONCRETE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)				
	1	**$1^1/_2$**	**2[a]**	**3[a]**	**4[a]**
Siliceous	8	9	10	12	14
Carbonate	8	9	10	11	12
Sand-lightweight	8	$8^1/_2$	9	$10^1/_2$	12

For SI: 1 inch = 25 mm.

a. The minimum dimension is permitted to be reduced to 8 inches for rectangular columns with two parallel sides not less than 36 inches in length.

b. The minimum dimension is permitted to be reduced to 10 inches for rectangular columns with two parallel sides not less than 36 inches in length.

722.2.4.1 Minimum size.
The minimum overall dimensions of reinforced concrete columns for *fireresistance ratings* of 1 hour to 4 hours for exposure to fire on all sides shall comply with this section.

722.2.4.1.1 Concrete strength less than or equal to 12,000 psi.
For columns made with concrete having a specified compressive strength, f'_c, of less than or equal to 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa), the minimum dimension shall comply with Table 722.2.4.

`

722.2.4.1.2 Concrete strength greater than 12,000 psi.
For columns made with concrete having a specified compressive strength, f'_c, greater than 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa), for *fire-resistance ratings* of 1 hour to 4 hours the minimum dimension shall be 24 inches (610 mm).

722.2.4.2 Minimum cover for R/C columns.
The minimum thickness of concrete cover to the main longitudinal reinforcement in columns, regardless of the type of aggregate used in the concrete and the specified compressive strength of concrete, f'_c, shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) times the number of hours of required *fire resistance* or 2 inches (51 mm), whichever is less.

722.2.4.3 Tie and spiral reinforcement.
For concrete columns made with concrete having a specified compressive strength, f'_c, greater than 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa), tie and spiral reinforcement shall comply with the following:

1. The free ends of rectangular ties shall terminate with a 135-degree (2.4 rad) standard tie hook.

2. The free ends of circular ties shall terminate with a 90-degree (1.6 rad) standard tie hook.

3. The free ends of spirals, including at lap splices, shall terminate with a 90-degree (1.6 rad) standard tie hook.

The hook extension at the free end of ties and spirals shall be the larger of six bar diameters and the extension required by Section 7.1.3 of ACI 318. Hooks shall project into the core of the column.

722.2.4.4 Columns built into walls.
The minimum dimensions of Table 722.2.4 do not apply to a reinforced concrete column that is built into a concrete or masonry wall provided all of the following are met:

1. The *fire-resistance rating* for the wall is equal to or greater than the required rating of the column;

2. The main longitudinal reinforcing in the column has cover not less than that required by Section 722.2.4.2; and

3. Openings in the wall are protected in accordance with Table 716.5.

Where openings in the wall are not protected as required by Section 716.5, the minimum dimension of columns required to have a *fire-resistance rating* of 3 hours or less shall be 8 inches (203 mm), and 10 inches (254 mm) for columns required to have a *fire-resistance rating* of 4 hours, regardless of the type of aggregate used in the concrete.

722.2.4.5 Precast cover units for steel columns.
See Section 722.5.1.4.

`

722.3 Concrete masonry.
The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the *fire-resistance ratings* of concrete masonry are established by calculations.

722.3.1 Equivalent thickness.
The equivalent thickness of concrete masonry construction shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of this section.

722.3.1.1 Concrete masonry unit plus finishes.
The equivalent thickness of concrete masonry assemblies, T_{ea}, shall be computed as the sum of the equivalent thickness of the concrete masonry unit, T_e, as determined by Section 722.3.1.2, 722.3.1.3 or 722.3.1.4, plus the equivalent thickness of finishes, T_{ef}, determined in accordance with Section 722.3.2:

$$T_{ea} = T_e + T_{ef} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 7-6)}$$

722.3.1.2 Ungrouted or partially grouted construction.
Te shall be the value obtained for the concrete masonry unit determined in accordance with ASTM C140.

722.3.1.3 Solid grouted construction.
The equivalent thickness, T_e, of solid grouted concrete masonry units is the actual thickness of the unit.

722.3.1.4 Airspaces and cells filled with loose-fill material.
The equivalent thickness of completely filled hollow concrete masonry is the actual thickness of the unit where loose-fill materials are: sand, pea gravel, crushed stone, or slag that meet ASTM C33 requirements; pumice, scoria, expanded shale, expanded clay, expanded slate, expanded slag, expanded fly ash, or cinders that comply with ASTM C331; or perlite or vermiculite meeting the requirements of ASTM C549 and ASTM C516, respectively.

722.3.2 Concrete masonry walls.
The *fire-resistance rating* of walls and partitions constructed of concrete masonry units shall be determined from Table 722.3.2. The rating shall be based on the equivalent thickness of the masonry and type of aggregate used.

TABLE 722.3.2
MINIMUM EQUIVALENT THICKNESS (inches) OF BEARING OR NONBEARING CONCRETE MASONRY WALLS[a,b,c,d]

TYPE OF AGGREGATE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)														
	1/2	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	1 3/4	2	2 1/4	2 1/2	2 3/4	3	3 1/4	3 1/2	3 3/4	4
Pumice or expanded slag	1.5	1.9	2.1	2.5	2.7	3.0	3.2	3.4	3.6	3.8	4.0	4.2	4.4	4.5	4.7
Expanded shale, clay or slate	1.8	2.2	2.6	2.9	3.3	3.4	3.6	3.8	4.0	4.2	4.4	4.6	4.8	4.9	5.1

`

Limestone, cinders or unexpanded slag	1.9	2.3	2.7	3.1	3.4	3.7	4.0	4.3	4.5	4.8	5.0	5.2	5.5	5.7	5.9
Calcareous or siliceous gravel	2.0	2.4	2.8	3.2	3.6	3.9	4.2	4.5	4.8	5.0	5.3	5.5	5.8	6.0	6.2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Values between those shown in the table can be determined by direct interpolation.
b. Where combustible members are framed into the wall, the thickness of solid material between the end of each member and the opposite face of the wall, or between members set in from opposite sides, shall be not less than 93 percent of the thickness shown in the table.
c. Requirements of ASTM C55, ASTM C73, ASTM C90 or ASTM C744 shall apply.
d. Minimum required equivalent thickness corresponding to the hourly *fire-resistance rating* for units with a combination of aggregate shall be determined by linear interpolation based on the percent by volume of each aggregate used in manufacture.

722.3.2.1 Finish on nonfire-exposed side.
Where plaster or gypsum wallboard is applied to the side of the wall not exposed to fire, the contribution of the finish to the total *fire-resistance rating* shall be determined as follows: The thickness of gypsum wallboard or plaster shall be corrected by multiplying the actual thickness of the finish by applicable factor determined from Table 722.2.1.4(1). This corrected thickness of finish shall be added to the equivalent thickness of masonry and the *fire-resistance rating* of the masonry and finish determined from Table 722.3.2.

722.3.2.2 Finish on fire-exposed side.
Where plaster or gypsum wallboard is applied to the fire-exposed side of the wall, the contribution of the finish to the total *fire-resistance rating* shall be determined as follows: The time assigned to the finish as established by Table 722.2.1.4(2) shall be added to the *fire-resistance rating* determined in Section 722.3.2 for the masonry alone, or in Section 722.3.2.1 for the masonry and finish on the nonfire-exposed side.

722.3.2.3 Nonsymmetrical assemblies.
For a wall having no finish on one side or having different types or thicknesses of finish on each side, the calculation procedures of this section shall be performed twice, assuming either side of the wall to be the fire-exposed side. The *fire-resistance rating* of the wall shall not exceed the lower of the two values calculated.

Exception: For *exterior walls* with a *fire separation distance* greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), the fire shall be assumed to occur on the interior side only.

722.3.2.4 Minimum concrete masonry fire-resistance rating.
Where the finish applied to a concrete masonry wall contributes to its *fire-resistance rating*, the masonry alone shall provide not less than one-half the total required *fire-resistance rating*.

722.3.2.5 Attachment of finishes.
Installation of finishes shall be as follows:

1. Gypsum wallboard and gypsum lath applied to concrete masonry or concrete walls shall be secured to wood or steel furring members spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center (o.c.).

2. Gypsum wallboard shall be installed with the long dimension parallel to the furring members and shall have all joints finished.

`

3. Other aspects of the installation of finishes shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapters 7 and 25.

722.3.3 Multiwythe masonry walls.
The *fire-resistance rating* of wall assemblies constructed of multiple wythes of masonry materials shall be permitted to be based on the *fire-resistance rating* period of each wythe and the continuous airspace between each wythe in accordance with the following formula:

$$R_A = (R^{10.59} + R^{20.59} + ... + Rn^{0.59} + A1 + A2 + ... + An)^{1.7} \quad \textbf{(Equation 7-7)}$$

where:

R_A = *Fire-resistance rating* of the assembly (hours).

$R_1, R_2, ..., R_n$ = *Fire-resistance rating* of wythes for 1, 2, *n* (hours), respectively.

$A_1, A_2, ..., A_n$ = 0.30, factor for each continuous airspace for 1, 2, ...*n*, respectively, having a depth of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) or more between wythes.

722.3.4 Concrete masonry lintels.
Fire-resistance ratings for concrete masonry lintels shall be determined based upon the nominal thickness of the lintel and the minimum thickness of concrete masonry or concrete, or any combination thereof, covering the main reinforcing bars, as determined in accordance with Table 722.3.4, or by *approved* alternate methods.

TABLE 722.3.4
MINIMUM COVER OF LONGITUDINAL REINFORCEMENT IN FIRE-RESISTANCE-RATED REINFORCED CONCRETE MASONRY LINTELS (inches)

NOMINAL WIDTH OF LINTEL (inches)	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)			
	1	2	3	4
6	$1^1/_2$	2	—	—
8	$1^1/_2$	$1^1/_2$	$1^3/_4$	3
10 or greater	$1^1/_2$	$1^1/_2$	$1^1/_2$	$1^3/_4$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

722.3.5 Concrete masonry columns.
The *fire-resistance rating* of concrete masonry columns shall be determined based upon the least plan dimension of the column in accordance with Table 722.3.5 or by *approved* alternate methods.

`

TABLE 722.3.5
MINIMUM DIMENSION OF CONCRETE MASONRY COLUMNS (inches)

FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)			
1	**2**	**3**	**4**
8 inches	10 inches	12 inches	14 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

722.4 Clay brick and tile masonry.

The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the *fire-resistance ratings* of clay brick and tile masonry are established by calculations.

722.4.1 Masonry walls.

The *fire-resistance rating* of masonry walls shall be based upon the equivalent thickness as calculated in accordance with this section. The calculation shall take into account finishes applied to the wall and airspaces between wythes in multiwythe construction.

TABLE 722.4.1(1)
FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS OF CLAY MASONRY WALLS

MATERIAL TYPE	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE RESISTANCE[a, b, c] (inches)			
	1 hour	**2 hours**	**3 hours**	**4 hours**
Solid brick of clay or shale[d]	2.7	3.8	4.9	6.0
Hollow brick or tile of clay or shale, unfilled	2.3	3.4	4.3	5.0
Hollow brick or tile of clay or shale, grouted or filled with materials specified in Section 722.4.1.1.3	3.0	4.4	5.5	6.6

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Equivalent thickness as determined from Section 722.4.1.1.
b. Calculated fire resistance between the hourly increments listed shall be determined by linear interpolation.
c. Where combustible members are framed in the wall, the thickness of solid material between the end of each member and the opposite face of the wall, or between members set in from opposite sides, shall be not less than 93 percent of the thickness shown.
d. For units in which the net cross-sectional area of cored brick in any plane parallel to the surface containing the cores is not less than 75 percent of the gross cross-sectional area measured in the same plane.

TABLE 722.4.1(2)
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS FOR BEARING STEEL FRAME BRICK VENEER WALLS OR PARTITIONS

WALL OR PARTITION ASSEMBLY	PLASTER SIDE EXPOSED (hours)	BRICK FACED SIDE EXPOSED (hours)
Outside facing of steel studs:	1.5	4

`

$^1/_2$" wood fiberboard sheathing next to studs, $^3/_4$" airspace formed with $^3/_4$" × 1$^5/_8$" wood strips placed over the fiberboard and secured to the studs; metal or wire lath nailed to such strips, 3$^3/_4$" brick veneer held in place by filling $^3/_4$" airspace between the brick and lath with mortar. Inside facing of studs: $^3/_4$" unsanded gypsum plaster on metal or wire lath attached to $^5/_{16}$" wood strips secured to edges of the studs.		
Outside facing of steel studs: 1" insulation board sheathing attached to studs, 1" airspace, and 3$^3/_4$" brick veneer attached to steel frame with metal ties every 5th course. Inside facing of studs: $^7/_8$" sanded gypsum plaster (1:2 mix) applied on metal or wire lath attached directly to the studs.	1.5	4
Same as above except use $^7/_8$" vermiculite-gypsum plaster or 1" sanded gypsum plaster (1:2 mix) applied to metal or wire.	2	4
Outside facing of steel studs: $^1/_2$" gypsum sheathing board, attached to studs, and 3$^3/_4$" brick veneer attached to steel frame with metal ties every 5th course. Inside facing of studs: $^1/_2$" sanded gypsum plaster (1:2 mix) applied to $^1/_2$" perforated gypsum lath securely attached to studs and having strips of metal lath 3 inches wide applied to all horizontal joints of gypsum lath.	2	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE 722.4.1(3)
VALUES OF $R_n^{0.59}$

$R_n^{0.59}$	***R*** **(hours)**
1	1.0
2	1.50
3	1.91

`

4	2.27

TABLE 722.4.1(4)
COEFFICIENTS FOR PLASTER, *pl* [a]

THICKNESS OF PLASTER (inch)	ONE SIDE	TWO SIDES
$^1/_2$	0.3	0.6
$^5/_8$	0.37	0.75
$^3/_4$	0.45	0.90

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Values listed in the table are for 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.

TABLE 722.4.1(5)
REINFORCED MASONRY LINTELS

NOMINAL LINTEL WIDTH (inches)	MINIMUM LONGITUDINAL REINFORCEMENT COVER FOR FIRE RESISTANCE (inches)			
	1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
6	$1^1/_2$	2	NP	NP
8	$1^1/_2$	$1^1/_2$	$1^3/_4$	3
10 or more	$1^1/_2$	$1^1/_2$	$1^1/_2$	$1^3/_4$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
NP = Not permitted.

TABLE 722.4.1(6)
REINFORCED CLAY MASONRY COLUMNS

COLUMN SIZE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)			
	1	2	3	4
Minimum column dimension (inches)	8	10	12	14

For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm.

722.4.1.1 Equivalent thickness.
The *fire-resistance ratings* of walls or partitions constructed of solid or hollow clay masonry units shall be determined from Table 722.4.1(1) or 722.4.1(2). The equivalent thickness of the clay masonry unit shall be determined by Equation 7-8 where using Table 722.4.1(1). The fireresistance rating determined from Table 722.4.1(1) shall be permitted to be used in the calculated fireresistance rating procedure in Section 722.4.2.

`

$T_e = V_n / LH$ **(Equation 7-8)**

where:

T_e	=	The equivalent thickness of the clay masonry unit (inches).
V_n	=	The net volume of the clay masonry unit ($inch^3$).
L	=	The specified length of the clay masonry unit (inches).
H	=	The specified height of the clay masonry unit (inches).

722.4.1.1.1 Hollow clay units.
The equivalent thickness, T_e, shall be the value obtained for hollow clay units as determined in accordance with Equation 7-8. The net volume, V_n, of the units shall be determined using the gross volume and percentage of void area determined in accordance with ASTM C67.

722.4.1.1.2 Solid grouted clay units.
The equivalent thickness of solid grouted clay masonry units shall be taken as the actual thickness of the units.

722.4.1.1.3 Units with filled cores.
The equivalent thickness of the hollow clay masonry units is the actual thickness of the unit where completely filled with loose-fill materials of: sand, pea gravel, crushed stone, or slag that meet ASTM C33 requirements; pumice, scoria, expanded shale, expanded clay, expanded slate, expanded slag, expanded fly ash, or cinders in compliance with ASTM C331; or perlite or vermiculite meeting the requirements of ASTM C549 and ASTM C516, respectively.

722.4.1.2 Plaster finishes.
Where plaster is applied to the wall, the total *fire-resistance rating* shall be determined by the formula:

$R = (R_n^{0.59} + pl)^{1.7}$ **(Equation 7-9)**

where:

R	=	The *fire-resistance rating* of the assembly (hours).
R_n	=	The *fire-resistance rating* of the individual wall (hours).
pl	=	Coefficient for thickness of plaster.

Values for Rn 0.59 for use in Equation 7-9 are given in Table 722.4.1(3). Coefficients for thickness of plaster shall be selected from Table 722.4.1(4) based on the actual thickness of plaster applied to the wall or partition and whether one or two sides of the wall are plastered.

`

722.4.1.3 Multiwythe walls with airspace.
Where a continuous airspace separates multiple wythes of the wall or partition, the total *fire-resistance rating* shall be determined by the formula:

$$R = (R_1^{0.59} + R_2^{0.59} + ... + R_n^{0.59} + as)^{1.7} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 7-10)}$$

where:

R	=	The *fire-resistance rating* of the assembly (hours).
R_1, R_2 and R_n	=	The *fire-resistance rating* of the individual wythes (hours).
as	=	Coefficient for continuous airspace.

Values for Rn 0.59 for use in Equation 7-10 are given in Table 722.4.1(3). The coefficient for each continuous airspace of $^1/_2$ inch to $3^1/_2$ inches (12.7 to 89 mm) separating two individual wythes shall be 0.3.

722.4.1.4 Nonsymmetrical assemblies.
For a wall having no finish on one side or having different types or thicknesses of finish on each side, the calculation procedures of this section shall be performed twice, assuming either side to be the fire-exposed side of the wall. The *fire resistance* of the wall shall not exceed the lower of the two values determined.

Exception: For *exterior walls* with a *fire separation distance* greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), the fire shall be assumed to occur on the interior side only.

722.4.2 Multiwythe walls.
The *fire-resistance rating* for walls or partitions consisting of two or more dissimilar wythes shall be permitted to be determined by the formula:

$$R = (R_1^{0.59} + R_2^{0.59} + ... + R_n^{0.59})^{1.7} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 7-11)}$$

where:

R	=	The fire-resistance rating of the assembly (hours).
R_1, R_2 and R_n	=	The fire-resistance rating of the individual wythes (hours).

Values for $R_n^{0.59}$ for use in Equation 7-11 are given in Table 722.4.1(3).

722.4.2.1 Multiwythe walls of different material.
For walls that consist of two or more wythes of different materials (concrete or concrete masonry units) in combination with clay masonry units, the *fire-resistance rating* of the different materials shall be permitted to be determined from Table 722.2.1.1 for concrete;

`

Table 722.3.2 for concrete masonry units or Table 722.4.1(1) or 722.4.1(2) for clay and tile masonry units.

722.4.3 Reinforced clay masonry lintels.
Fire-resistance ratings for clay masonry lintels shall be determined based on the nominal width of the lintel and the minimum covering for the longitudinal reinforcement in accordance with Table 722.4.1(5).

722.4.4 Reinforced clay masonry columns.
The *fireresistance ratings* shall be determined based on the last plan dimension of the column in accordance with Table 722.4.1(6). The minimum cover for longitudinal reinforcement shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

722.5 Steel assemblies.
The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the *fire-resistance ratings* of steel assemblies are established by calculations.

722.5.1 Structural steel columns.
The *fire-resistance ratings* of structural steel columns shall be based on the size of the element and the type of protection provided in accordance with this section.

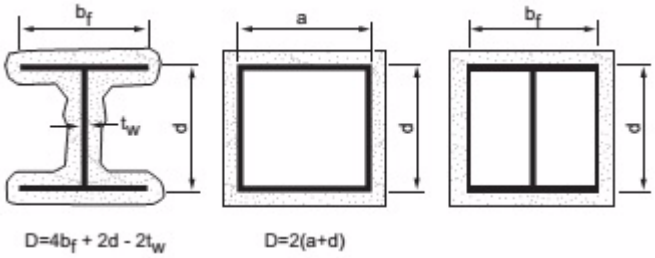
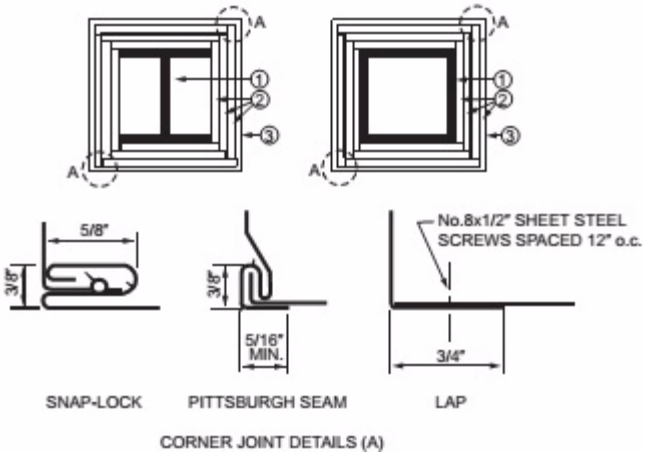


FIGURE 722.5.1(1)
DETERMINATION OF THE HEATED
PERIMETER OF STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS



`

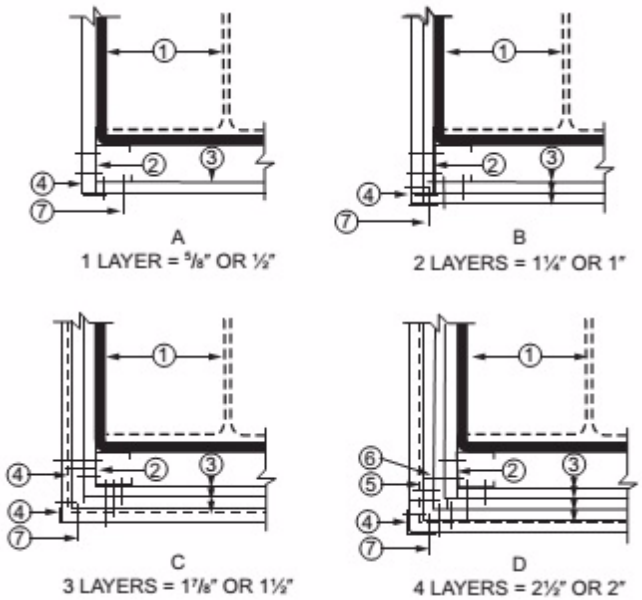
FIGURE 722.5.1(2)
GYPSUM-PROTECTED STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS WITH SHEET STEEL COLUMN COVERS

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm.

1. Structural steel column, either wide flange or tubular shapes.
2. Type X gypsum board or gypsum panel products in accordance with ASTM C1177, C1178, C1278, C1396 or C1658. The total thickness of gypsum board or gypsum panel products calculated as *h* in Section 722.5.1.2 shall be applied vertically to an individual column using one of the following methods:
   1. As a single layer with no horizontal joints.
   2. As multiple layers with no horizontal joints permitted in any layer.
   3. As multiple layers with horizontal joints staggered not less than 12 inches vertically between layers and not less than 8 feet vertically in any single layer. The total required thickness of gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall be determined on the basis of the specified *fire-resistance rating* and the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio (W/D) of the column. For *fire-resistance ratings* of 2 hours or less, one of the required layers of gypsum board or gypsum panel product may be applied to the exterior of the sheet steel column covers with 1-inch long Type S screws spaced 1 inch from the wallboard edge and 8 inches on center. For such installations, 0.0149-inch minimum thickness galvanized steel corner beads with $1\frac{1}{2}$-inch legs shall be attached to the wallboard with Type S screws spaced 12 inches on center.
3. For *fire-resistance ratings* of 3 hours or less, the column covers shall be fabricated from 0.0239-inch minimum thickness galvanized or stainless steel. For 4-hour *fire-resistance ratings*, the column covers shall be fabricated from 0.0239-inch minimum thickness stainless steel. The column covers shall be erected with the Snap Lock or Pittsburgh joint details.

   For *fire-resistance ratings* of 2 hours or less, column covers fabricated from 0.0269-inch minimum thickness galvanized or stainless steel shall be permitted to be erected with lap joints. The lap joints shall be permitted to be located anywhere around the perimeter of the column cover. The lap joints shall be secured with $\frac{1}{2}$-inch-long No. 8 sheet metal screws spaced 12 inches on center.

   The column covers shall be provided with a minimum expansion clearance of $\frac{1}{8}$ inch per linear foot between the ends of the cover and any restraining construction.

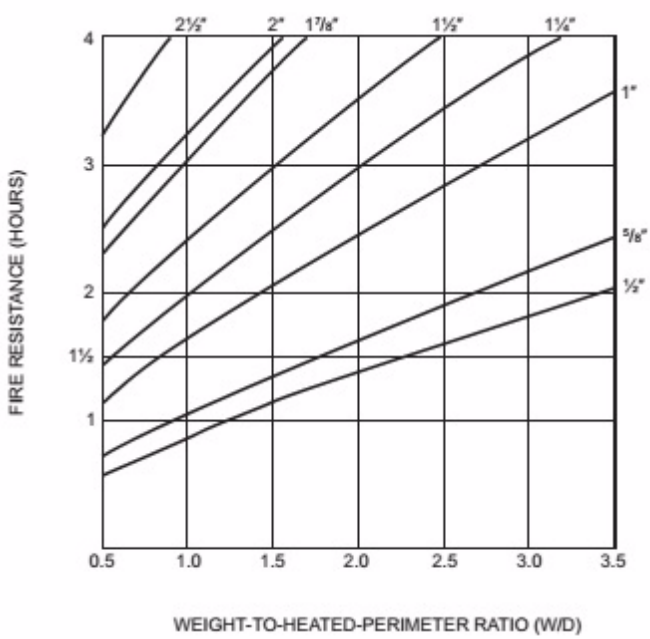


`

FIGURE 722.5.1(3)
GYPSUM-PROTECTED STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS WITH STEEL STUD/SCREW ATTACHMENT SYSTEM

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = -305 mm.

1. Structural steel column, either wide flange or tubular shapes.
2. $1\frac{5}{8}$-inch deep studs fabricated from 0.0179-inch minimum thickness galvanized steel with $1\frac{5}{16}$ or $1\frac{7}{16}$-inch legs. The length of the steel studs shall be $\frac{1}{2}$ inch less than the height of the assembly.
3. Type X gypsum board or gypsum panel products in accordance with ASTM C177, C1178, C1278, C1396 or C1658. The total thickness of gypsum board or gypsum panel products calculated as *h* in Section 722.5.1.2 shall be applied vertically to an individual column using one of the following methods:
   1. As a single layer with no horizontal joints.
   2. As multiple layers with no horizontal joints permitted in any layer.
   3. As multiple layers with horizontal joints staggered not less than 12 inches vertically between layers and not less than 8 feet vertically in any single layer. The total required thickness of gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall be determined on the basis of the specified *fire-resistance rating* and the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio (W/D) of the column.
4. Galvanized 0.0149-inch minimum thickness steel corner beads with $1\frac{1}{2}$-inch legs attached to the gypsum board or gypsum panel products with 1-inch-long Type S screws spaced 12 inches on center.
5. No. 18 SWG steel tie wires spaced 24 inches on center.
6. Sheet metal angles with 2-inch legs fabricated from 0.0221-inch minimum thickness galvanized steel.
7. Type S screws, 1 inch long, shall be used for attaching the first layer of gypsum board or gypsum panel product to the steel studs and the third layer to the sheet metal angles at 24 inches on center. Type S screws $1\frac{3}{4}$- inch long shall be used for attaching the second layer of gypsum board or gypsum panel product to the steel studs and the fourth layer to the sheet metal angles at 12 inches on center. Type S screws $2\frac{1}{4}$ inches long shall be used for attaching the third layer of gypsum board or gypsum panel product to the steel studs at 12 inches on center.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per linear foot/inch = 0.059 kg/m/mm.

`

FIGURE 722.5.1(4)
FIRE RESISTANCE OF STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS PROTECTED WITH VARIOUS THICKNESSES OF TYPE X GYPSUM WALLBOARD

a. The W/D ratios for typical wide flange columns are listed in Table 722.5.1(1). For other column shapes, the W/D ratios shall be determined in accordance with Section 722.5.1.1.

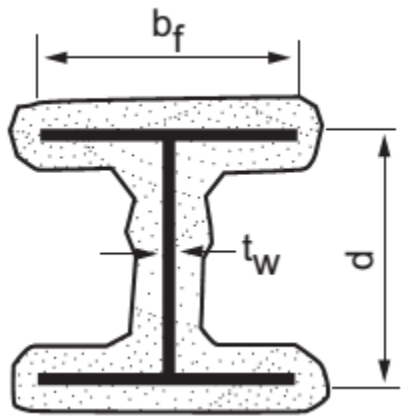


FIGURE 722.5.1(5)
WIDE FLANGE STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS WITH SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTANT MATERIALS

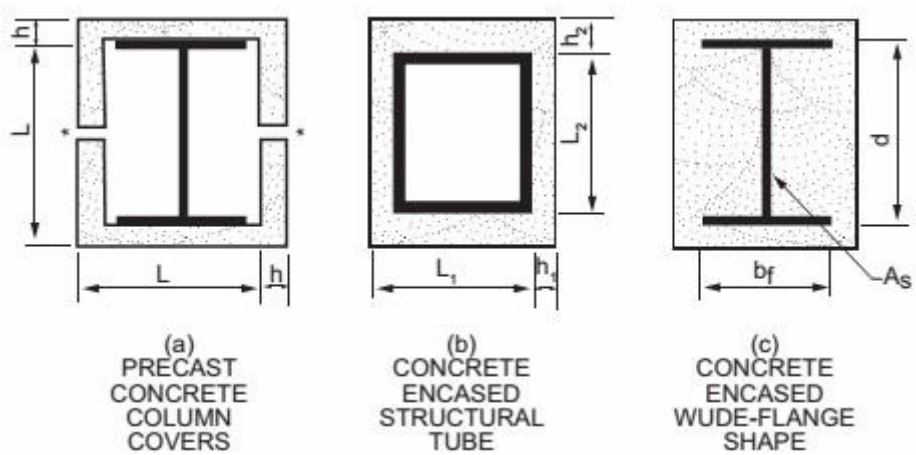


FIGURE 722.5.1(6)
CONCRETE PROTECTED STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS[a,b]

a. When the inside perimeter of the concrete protection is not square, L shall be taken as the average of L_1 and L_2. When the thickness of concrete cover is not constant, h shall be taken as the average of h_1 and h_2.

b. Joints shall be protected with a minimum 1 inch thickness of ceramic fiber blanket but in no case less than one-half the thickness of the column cover (see Section 722.2.1.3).

`

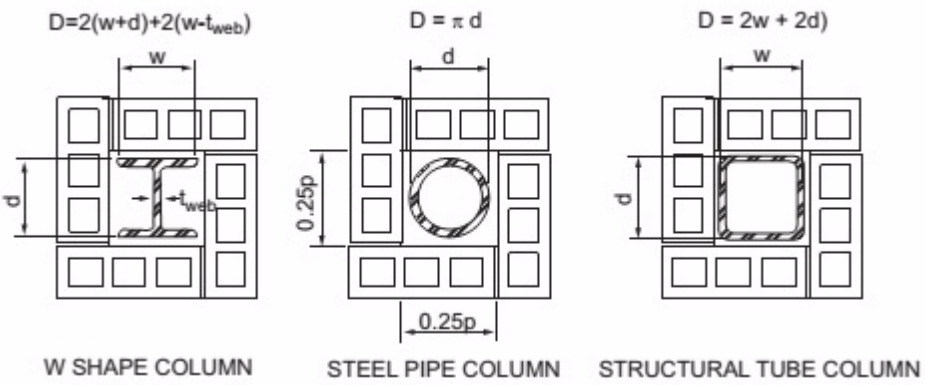


FIGURE 722.5.1(7)
CONCRETE OR CLAY MASONRY PROTECTED STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

d = Depth of a wide flange column, outside diameter of pipe column, or outside dimension of structural tubing column (inches).

t_{web} = Thickness of web of wide flange column (inches).

w = Width of flange of wide flange column (inches).

TABLE 722.5.1(1)
W/D RATIOS FOR STEEL COLUMNS

STRUCTURAL SHAPE	CONTOUR PROFILE	BOX PROFILE	STRUCTURAL SHAPE	CONTOUR PROFILE	BOX PROFILE
W14 × 233	2.55	3.65	W10 × 112	1.81	2.57
× 211	2.32	3.35	× 100	1.64	2.33
× 193	2.14	3.09	× 88	1.45	2.08
× 176	1.96	2.85	× 77	1.28	1.85
× 159	1.78	2.60	× 68	1.15	1.66
× 145	1.64	2.39	× 60	1.01	1.48
× 132	1.56	2.25	× 54	0.922	1.34
× 120	1.42	2.06	× 49	0.84	1.23
× 109	1.29	1.88	× 45	0.888	1.24
× 99	1.18	1.72	× 39	0.78	1.09
× 90	1.08	1.58	× 33	0.661	0.93
× 82	1.23	1.68			
× 74	1.12	1.53	W8 × 67	1.37	1.94
× 68	1.04	1.41	× 58	1.20	1.71
× 61	0.928	1.28	× 48	1.00	1.44
× 53	0.915	1.21	× 40	0.849	1.23
× 48	0.835	1.10	× 35	0.749	1.08
× 43	0.752	0.99	× 31	0.665	0.97
			× 28	0.688	0.96
W12 × 190	2.50	3.51	× 24	0.591	0.83
× 170	2.26	3.20	× 21	0.577	0.77

`

× 152	2.04	2.90	× 18	0.499	0.67
× 136	1.86	2.63			
× 120	1.65	2.36	W6 ×25	0.696	1.00
× 106	1.47	2.11	× 20	0.563	0.82
× 96	1.34	1.93	× 16	0.584	0.78
× 87	1.22	1.76	× 15	0.431	0.63
× 79	1.11	1.61	× 12	0.448	0.60
× 72	1.02	1.48	× 9	0.338	0.46
× 65	0.925	1.35			
× 58	0.925	1.31	W5 ×19	0.644	0.93
× 53	0.855	1.20	× 16	0.55	0.80
× 50	0.909	1.23			
× 45	0.829	1.12	W4 ×13	0.556	0.79
× 40	0.734	1.00			

For SI: 1 pound per linear foot per inch = 0.059 kg/m/mm.

TABLE 722.5.1(2)
PROPERTIES OF CONCRETE

PROPERTY	NORMAL-WEIGHT CONCRETE	STRUCTURAL LIGHTWEIGHT CONCRETE
Thermal conductivity (k_c)	0.95 Btu/hr · ft · °F	0.35 Btu/hr · ft · °F
Specific heat (c_c)	0.20 Btu/lb °F	0.20 Btu/lb °F
Density (P_c)	145 lb/ft^3	110 lb/ft^3
Equilibrium (free) moisture content (m) by volume	4%	5%

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 lb/ft^3 = 16.0185 kg/m3, Btu/hr · ft · °F = 1.731 W/(m · K).

TABLE 722.5.1(3)
THERMAL CONDUCTIVITY OF CONCRETE OR CLAY MASONRY UNITS

DENSITY (d_m) OF UNITS (lb/ft^3)	THERMAL CONDUCTIVITY (K) OF UNITS (Btu/hr · ft · °F)
Concrete Masonry Units	
80	0.207
85	0.228
90	0.252
95	0.278
100	0.308
105	0.340
110	0.376
115	0.416
120	0.459
125	0.508

`

130	0.561
135	0.620
140	0.685
145	0.758
150	0.837
Clay Masonry Units	
120	1.25
130	2.25

For SI: 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.0185 kg/m^3, Btu/hr · ft · °F = 1.731 W/(m · K).

TABLE 722.5.1(4)
WEIGHT-TO-HEATED-PERIMETER RATIOS (*W/D*) FOR TYPICAL WIDE FLANGE BEAM AND GIRDER SHAPES

STRUCTURAL SHAPE	CONTOUR PROFILE	BOX PROFILE	STRUCTURAL SHAPE	CONTOUR PROFILE	BOX PROFILE
W36 x 300	2.50	3.33	W24 x 68	0.942	1.21
x 280	2.35	3.12	x 62	0.934	1.14
x 260	2.18	2.92	x 55	0.828	1.02
x 245	2.08	2.76			
x 230	1.95	2.61	W21 x 147	1.87	2.60
x 210	1.96	2.45	x 132	1.68	2.35
x 194	1.81	2.28	x 122	1.57	2.19
x 182	1.72	2.15	x 111	1.43	2.01
x 170	1.60	2.01	x 101	1.30	1.84
x 160	1.51	1.90	x 93	1.40	1.80
x 150	1.43	1.79	x 83	1.26	1.62
x 135	1.29	1.63	x 73	1.11	1.44
			x 68	1.04	1.35

(continued)

TABLE 722.5.1(4)—continued
WEIGHT-TO-HEATED-PERIMETER RATIOS (*W/D*) FOR TYPICAL WIDE FLANGE BEAM AND GIRDER SHAPES

STRUCTURAL SHAPE	CONTOUR PROFILE	BOX PROFILE	STRUCTURAL SHAPE	CONTOUR PROFILE	BOX PROFILE
W33 x 241	2.13	2.86	W21 x 62	0.952	1.23
x 221	1.97	2.64	x 57	0.952	1.17
x 201	1.79	2.42	x 50	0.838	1.04
x 152	1.53	1.94	x 44	0.746	0.92
x 141	1.43	1.80			
x 130	1.32	1.67	W18 x 119	1.72	2.42
x 118	1.21	1.53	x 106	1.55	2.18
			x 97	1.42	2.01

`

W30 x 211	2.01	2.74	x 86	1.27	1.80
x 191	1.85	2.50	x 76	1.13	1.60
x 173	1.66	2.28	x 71	1.22	1.59
x 132	1.47	1.85	x 65	1.13	1.47
x 124	1.39	1.75	x 60	1.04	1.36
x 116	1.30	1.65	x 55	0.963	1.26
x 108	1.21	1.54	x 50	0.88	1.15
x 99	1.12	1.42	x 46	0.878	1.09
			x 40	0.768	0.96
W27 x 178	1.87	2.55	x 35	0.672	0.85
x 161	1.70	2.33			
x 146	1.55	2.12	W16 x 100	1.59	2.25
x 114	1.39	1.76	x 89	1.43	2.03
x 102	1.24	1.59	x 77	1.25	1.78
x 94	1.15	1.47	x 67	1.09	1.56
x 84	1.03	1.33	x 57	1.09	1.43
			x 50	0.962	1.26
			x 45	0.870	1.15
W24 x 162	1.88	2.57	x 40	0.780	1.03
x 146	1.70	2.34	x 36	0.702	0.93
x 131	1.54	2.12	x 31	0.661	0.83
x 117	1.38	1.91	x 26	0.558	0.70
x 104	1.24	1.71			
x 94	1.28	1.63	W14 x 132	1.89	3.00
x 84	1.15	1.47	x 120	1.71	2.75
x 76	1.05	1.34	x 109	1.57	2.52
W14 x 99	1.43	2.31	W10 x 30	0.806	1.12
x 90	1.31	2.11	x 26	0.708	0.98
x 82	1.45	2.12	x 22	0.606	0.84
x 74	1.32	1.93	x 19	0.607	0.78
x 68	1.22	1.78	x 17	0.543	0.70
x 61	1.10	1.61	x 15	0.484	0.63
x 53	1.06	1.48	x 12	0.392	0.51
x 48	0.970	1.35			

(continued)

TABLE 722.5.1(4)—continued
WEIGHT-TO-HEATED-PERIMETER RATIOS (*W/D*) FOR TYPICAL WIDE FLANGE BEAM AND GIRDER SHAPES

STRUCTURAL SHAPE	CONTOUR PROFILE	BOX PROFILE	STRUCTURAL SHAPE	CONTOUR PROFILE	BOX PROFILE
W14 x 43	0.874	1.22	W8 x 67	1.65	2.55
x 38	0.809	1.09	x 58	1.44	2.26
x 34	0.725	0.98	x 48	1.21	1.91
x 30	0.644	0.87	x 40	1.03	1.63

`

x 26	0.628	0.79	x 35	0.907	1.44
x 22	0.534	0.68	x 31	0.803	1.29
			x 28	0.819	1.24
W12 x 87	1.47	2.34	x 24	0.704	1.07
x 79	1.34	2.14	x 21	0.675	0.96
x 72	1.23	1.97	x 18	0.583	0.84
x 65	1.11	1.79	x 15	0.551	0.74
x 58	1.10	1.69	x 13	0.483	0.65
x 53	1.02	1.55	x 10	0.375	0.51
x 50	1.06	1.54			
x 45	0.974	1.40	W6 x 25	0.839	1.33
x 40	0.860	1.25	x 20	0.678	1.09
x 35	0.810	1.11	x 16	0.684	0.96
x 30	0.699	0.96	x 15	0.521	0.83
x 26	0.612	0.84	x 12	0.526	0.75
x 22	0.623	0.77	x 9	0.398	0.57
x 19	0.540	0.67			
x 16	0.457	0.57	W5 x 19	0.776	1.24
x 14	0.405	0.50	x 16	0.664	1.07
W10 x 112	2.17	3.38	W4 x 13	0.670	1.05
x 100	1.97	3.07			
x 88	1.74	2.75			
x 77	1.54	2.45			
x 68	1.38	2.20			
x 60	1.22	1.97			
x 54	1.11	1.79			
x 49	1.01	1.64			
x 45	1.06	1.59			
x 39	0.94	1.40			
x 33	0.77	1.20			

For SI: 1 pound per linear foot per inch = 0.059 kg/m/mm.

TABLE 722.5.1(5)
FIRE RESISTANCE OF CONCRETE MASONRY PROTECTED STEEL COLUMNS

COLUMN SIZE	CONCRETE MASONRY DENSITY POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CONCRETE MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, T_e (inches)				COLUMN SIZE	CONCRETE MASONRY DENSITY POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CONCRETE MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, T_e (inches)			
		1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours			1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
W14 × 82	80	0.74	1.61	2.36	3.04	W10 × 68	80	0.72	1.58	2.33	3.01

	100	0.89	1.85	2.67	3.40		100	0.87	1.83	2.65	3.38
	110	0.96	1.97	2.81	3.57		110	0.94	1.95	2.79	3.55
	120	1.03	2.08	2.95	3.73		120	1.01	2.06	2.94	3.72
W14 × 68	80	0.83	1.70	2.45	3.13	W10 × 54	80	0.88	1.76	2.53	3.21
	100	0.99	1.95	2.76	3.49		100	1.04	2.01	2.83	3.57
	110	1.06	2.06	2.91	3.66		110	1.11	2.12	2.98	3.73
	120	1.14	2.18	3.05	3.82		120	1.19	2.24	3.12	3.90
W14 × 53	80	0.91	1.81	2.58	3.27	W10 × 45	80	0.92	1.83	2.60	3.30
	100	1.07	2.05	2.88	3.62		100	1.08	2.07	2.90	3.64
	110	1.15	2.17	3.02	3.78		110	1.16	2.18	3.04	3.80
	120	1.22	2.28	3.16	3.94		120	1.23	2.29	3.18	3.96
W14 × 43	80	1.01	1.93	2.71	3.41	W10 × 33	80	1.06	2.00	2.79	3.49
	100	1.17	2.17	3.00	3.74		100	1.22	2.23	3.07	3.81
	110	1.25	2.28	3.14	3.90		110	1.30	2.34	3.20	3.96
	120	1.32	2.38	3.27	4.05		120	1.37	2.44	3.33	4.12
W12 × 72	80	0.81	1.66	2.41	3.09	W8 × 40	80	0.94	1.85	2.63	3.33
	100	0.91	1.88	2.70	3.43		100	1.10	2.10	2.93	3.67
	110	0.99	1.99	2.84	3.60		110	1.18	2.21	3.07	3.83
	120	1.06	2.10	2.98	3.76		120	1.25	2.32	3.20	3.99
W12 × 58	80	0.88	1.76	2.52	3.21	W8 × 31	80	1.06	2.00	2.78	3.49
	100	1.04	2.01	2.83	3.56		100	1.22	2.23	3.07	3.81
	110	1.11	2.12	2.97	3.73		110	1.29	2.33	3.20	3.97
	120	1.19	2.23	3.11	3.89		120	1.36	2.44	3.33	4.12
W12 × 50	80	0.91	1.81	2.58	3.27	W8 × 24	80	1.14	2.09	2.89	3.59
	100	1.07	2.05	2.88	3.62		100	1.29	2.31	3.16	3.90
	110	1.15	2.17	3.02	3.78		110	1.36	2.42	3.28	4.05
	120	1.22	2.28	3.16	3.94		120	1.43	2.52	3.41	4.20
W12 × 40	80	1.01	1.94	2.72	3.41	W8 × 18	80	1.22	2.20	3.01	3.72
	100	1.17	2.17	3.01	3.75		100	1.36	2.40	3.25	4.01
	110	1.25	2.28	3.14	3.90		110	1.42	2.50	3.37	4.14
	120	1.32	2.39	3.27	4.06		120	1.48	2.59	3.49	4.28
4 × 4 × 1/2 wall thickness	80	0.93	1.90	2.71	3.43	4 double extra strong 0.674 wall thickness	80	0.80	1.75	2.56	3.28
	100	1.08	2.13	2.99	3.76		100	0.95	1.99	2.85	3.62
	110	1.16	2.24	3.13	3.91		110	1.02	2.10	2.99	3.78
	120	1.22	2.34	3.26	4.06		120	1.09	2.20	3.12	3.93
4 × 4 × 3/8 wall thickness	80	1.05	2.03	2.84	3.57	4 extra strong 0.337 wall thickness	80	1.12	2.11	2.93	3.65
	100	1.20	2.25	3.11	3.88		100	1.26	2.32	3.19	3.95
	110	1.27	2.35	3.24	4.02		110	1.33	2.42	3.31	4.09
	120	1.34	2.45	3.37	4.17		120	1.40	2.52	3.43	4.23

(continued)

TABLE 722.5.1(5)—continued
FIRE RESISTANCE OF CONCRETE MASONRY PROTECTED STEEL COLUMNS

`

COLUMN SIZE	CONCRETE MASONRY DENSITY POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CONCRETE MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, T_e (inches)				COLUMN SIZE	CONCRETE MASONRY DENSITY POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CONCRETE MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, T_e (inches)			
		1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours			1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
4 × 4 × 1/4 wall thickness	80	1.21	2.20	3.01	3.73	4 standard 0.237 wall thickness	80	1.26	2.25	3.07	3.79
	100	1.35	2.40	3.26	4.02		100	1.40	2.45	3.31	4.07
	110	1.41	2.50	3.38	4.16		110	1.46	2.55	3.43	4.21
	120	1.48	2.59	3.50	4.30		120	1.53	2.64	3.54	4.34
6 × 6 × 1/2 wall thickness	80	0.82	1.75	2.54	3.25	5 double extra strong 0.750 wall thickness	80	0.70	1.61	2.40	3.12
	100	0.98	1.99	2.84	3.59		100	0.85	1.86	2.71	3.47
	110	1.05	2.10	2.98	3.75		110	0.91	1.97	2.85	3.63
	120	1.12	2.21	3.11	3.91		120	0.98	2.02	2.99	3.79
6 × 6 × 3/8 wall thickness	80	0.96	1.91	2.71	3.42	5 extra strong 0.375 wall thickness	80	1.04	2.01	2.83	3.54
	100	1.12	2.14	3.00	3.75		100	1.19	2.23	3.09	3.85
	110	1.19	2.25	3.13	3.90		110	1.26	2.34	3.22	4.00
	120	1.26	2.35	3.26	4.05		120	1.32	2.44	3.34	4.14
6 × 6 × 1/4 wall thickness	80	1.14	2.11	2.92	3.63	5 standard 0.258 wall thickness	80	1.20	2.19	3.00	3.72
	100	1.29	2.32	3.18	3.93		100	1.34	2.39	3.25	4.00
	110	1.36	2.43	3.30	4.08		110	1.41	2.49	3.37	4.14
	120	1.42	2.52	3.43	4.22		120	1.47	2.58	3.49	4.28
8 × 8 × 1/2 wall thickness	80	0.77	1.66	2.44	3.13	6 double extra strong 0.864 wall thickness	80	0.59	1.46	2.23	2.92
	100	0.92	1.91	2.75	3.49		100	0.73	1.71	2.54	3.29
	110	1.00	2.02	2.89	3.66		110	0.80	1.82	2.69	3.47
	120	1.07	2.14	3.03	3.82		120	0.86	1.93	2.83	3.63
8 × 8 × 3/8 wall thickness	80	0.91	1.84	2.63	3.33	6 extra strong 0.432 wall thickness	80	0.94	1.90	2.70	3.42
	100	1.07	2.08	2.92	3.67		100	1.10	2.13	2.98	3.74
	110	1.14	2.19	3.06	3.83		110	1.17	2.23	3.11	3.89
	120	1.21	2.29	3.19	3.98		120	1.24	2.34	3.24	4.04
8 × 8 × 1/4 wall thickness	80	1.10	2.06	2.86	3.57	6 standard 0.280 wall thickness	80	1.14	2.12	2.93	3.64
	100	1.25	2.28	3.13	3.87		100	1.29	2.33	3.19	3.94
	110	1.32	2.38	3.25	4.02		110	1.36	2.43	3.31	4.08
	120	1.39	2.48	3.38	4.17		120	1.42	2.53	3.43	4.22

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per cubic feet = 16.02 kg/m^3.
Note: Tabulated values assume 1-inch air gap between masonry and steel section.

`

TABLE 722.5.1(6)
FIRE RESISTANCE OF CLAY MASONRY PROTECTED STEEL COLUMNS

COLUMN SIZE	CLAY MASONRY DENSITY, POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CLAY MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, T_e (inches)				COLUMN SIZE	CLAY MASONRY DENSITY, POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CLAY MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, T_e (inches)			
		1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours			1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
W14 × 82	120	1.23	2.42	3.41	4.29	W10 × 68	120	1.27	2.46	3.26	4.35
	130	1.40	2.70	3.78	4.74		130	1.44	2.75	3.83	4.80
W14 × 68	120	1.34	2.54	3.54	4.43	W10 × 54	120	1.40	2.61	3.62	4.51
	130	1.51	2.82	3.91	4.87		130	1.58	2.89	3.98	4.95
W14 × 53	120	1.43	2.65	3.65	4.54	W10 × 45	120	1.44	2.66	3.67	4.57
	130	1.61	2.93	4.02	4.98		130	1.62	2.95	4.04	5.01
W14 × 43	120	1.54	2.76	3.77	4.66	W10 × 33	120	1.59	2.82	3.84	4.73
	130	1.72	3.04	4.13	5.09		130	1.77	3.10	4.20	5.13
W12 × 72	120	1.32	2.52	3.51	4.40	W8 × 40	120	1.47	2.70	3.71	4.61
	130	1.50	2.80	3.88	4.84		130	1.65	2.98	4.08	5.04
W12 × 58	120	1.40	2.61	3.61	4.50	W8 × 31	120	1.59	2.82	3.84	4.73
	130	1.57	2.89	3.98	4.94		130	1.77	3.10	4.20	5.17
W12 × 50	120	1.43	2.65	3.66	4.55	W8 × 24	120	1.66	2.90	3.92	4.82
	130	1.61	2.93	4.02	4.99		130	1.84	3.18	4.28	5.25
W12 × 40	120	1.54	2.77	3.78	4.67	W8 × 18	120	1.75	3.00	4.01	4.91
	130	1.72	3.05	4.14	5.10		130	1.93	3.27	4.37	5.34
STEEL TUBING						STEEL PIPE					
NOMINAL TUBE SIZE (inches)	CLAY MASONRY DENSITY, POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CLAY MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, T_e (inches)				NOMINAL PIPE SIZE (inches)	CLAY MASONRY DENSITY, POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CLAY MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, T_e (inches)			
		1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours			1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
4 × 4 × 1/2 wall thickness	120	1.44	2.72	3.76	4.68	4 double extra strong 0.674 wall thickness	120	1.26	2.55	3.60	4.52
	130	1.62	3.00	4.12	5.11		130	1.42	2.82	3.96	4.95
	120	1.56	2.84	3.88	4.78		120	1.60	2.89	3.92	4.83

`

4 × 4 × 3/8 wall thickness	130	1.74	3.12	4.23	5.21	4 extra strong 0.337 wall thickness	130	1.77	3.16	4.28	5.25
4 × 4 × 1/4 wall thickness	120	1.72	2.99	4.02	4.92	4 standard 0.237 wall thickness	120	1.74	3.02	4.05	4.95
	130	1.89	3.26	4.37	5.34		130	1.92	3.29	4.40	5.37
6 × 6 × 1/2 wall thickness	120	1.33	2.58	3.62	4.52	5 double extra strong 0.750 wall thickness	120	1.17	2.44	3.48	4.40
	130	1.50	2.86	3.98	4.96		130	1.33	2.72	3.84	4.83
6 × 6 × 3/8 wall thickness	120	1.48	2.74	3.76	4.67	5 extra strong 0.375 wall thickness	120	1.55	2.82	3.85	4.76
	130	1.65	3.01	4.13	5.10		130	1.72	3.09	4.21	5.18
6 × 6 × 1/4 wall thickness	120	1.66	2.91	3.94	4.84	5 standard 0.258 wall thickness	120	1.71	2.97	4.00	4.90
	130	1.83	3.19	4.30	5.27		130	1.88	3.24	4.35	5.32
8 × 8 × 1/2 wall thickness	120	1.27	2.50	3.52	4.42	6 double extra strong 0.864 wall thickness	120	1.04	2.28	3.32	4.23
	130	1.44	2.78	3.89	4.86		130	1.19	2.60	3.68	4.67
8 × 8 × 3/8 wall thickness	120	1.43	2.67	3.69	4.59	6 extra strong 0.432 wall thickness	120	1.45	2.71	3.75	4.65
	130	1.60	2.95	4.05	5.02		130	1.62	2.99	4.10	5.08
8 × 8 × 1/4 wall thickness	120	1.62	2.87	3.89	4.78	6 standard 0.280 wall thickness	120	1.65	2.91	3.94	4.84
	130	1.79	3.14	4.24	5.21		130	1.82	3.19	4.30	5.27

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/m^3.

TABLE 722.5.1(7)
MINIMUM COVER (inch) FOR STEEL COLUMNS ENCASED IN NORMAL-WEIGHT CONCRETE[a] [FIGURE 722.5.1(6)(c)]

STRUCTURAL SHAPE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)				
	1	1 1/2	2	3	4
W14 × 233	1	1	1		2

`

<table>
<tr><td>× 176</td><td rowspan="5">1</td><td rowspan="4"></td><td rowspan="2"></td><td>$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="3">$2\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 132</td><td rowspan="3">2</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 90</td><td rowspan="3">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 61</td><td rowspan="3">3</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 48</td><td rowspan="2">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="2">$2\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 43</td></tr>
<tr><td>W12 × 152</td><td rowspan="5">1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td rowspan="3">2</td><td rowspan="2">$2\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 96</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 65</td><td rowspan="3">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="3">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="3">3</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 50</td><td rowspan="2">$2\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 40</td></tr>
<tr><td>W10 × 88</td><td>1</td><td rowspan="5">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="4">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td>2</td><td rowspan="3">3</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 49</td><td rowspan="4">1</td><td rowspan="4">$2\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 45</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 39</td><td rowspan="2">$3\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 33</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>W8 × 67</td><td rowspan="6">1</td><td>1</td><td rowspan="2">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="2">$2\frac{1}{2}$</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 58</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 48</td><td rowspan="4">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="4">$3\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 31</td><td rowspan="3">2</td><td rowspan="3">3</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 21</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 18</td><td>4</td></tr>
<tr><td>W6 × 25</td><td rowspan="3">1</td><td>$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td>2</td><td rowspan="2">3</td><td>$3\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 20</td><td rowspan="4">2</td><td rowspan="4">$2\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="4">4</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 16</td><td rowspan="3">$3\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 15</td><td rowspan="2">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 9</td></tr>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. The tabulated thicknesses are based upon the assumed properties of normal-weight concrete given in Table 722.5.1(2).

TABLE 722.5.1(8)
MINIMUM COVER (inch) FOR STEEL COLUMNS ENCASED IN STRUCTURAL LIGHTWEIGHT CONCRETE[a]
[FIGURE 722.5.1(6)(c)]

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">STRUCTURAL SHAPE</th><th colspan="5">FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (HOURS)</th></tr>
<tr><th>1</th><th>$1\frac{1}{2}$</th><th>2</th><th>3</th><th>4</th></tr>
<tr><td>W14 × 233</td><td rowspan="5">1</td><td rowspan="5">1</td><td rowspan="4">1</td><td>1</td><td rowspan="2">2</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 193</td><td rowspan="3">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 74</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 61</td><td rowspan="2">$2\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 43</td><td>$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>W12 × 65</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr>
</table>

`

× 53				2	1
× 40			$1\frac{1}{2}$		
W10 × 112	1	1	1	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2
× 88					
× 60				2	$2\frac{1}{2}$
× 33			$1\frac{1}{2}$		
W8 × 35	1	1	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	$2\frac{1}{2}$
× 28					3
× 24				$2\frac{1}{2}$	
× 18		$1\frac{1}{2}$			

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. The tabulated thicknesses are based upon the assumed properties of structural lightweight concrete given in Table 722.5.1(2).

TABLE 722.5.1(9)
MINIMUM COVER (inch) FOR STEEL COLUMNS IN NORMAL-WEIGHT PRECAST COVERS[a] [FIGURE 722.5.1(6)(a)]

STRUCTURAL SHAPE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)				
	1	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	3	4
W14 × 233	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	3
× 211					$3\frac{1}{2}$
× 176			2		
× 145				3	
× 109		2	$2\frac{1}{2}$		
× 99					4
× 61				$3\frac{1}{2}$	
× 43					$4\frac{1}{2}$
W12 × 190	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$
× 152			2		
× 120				3	4
× 96					
× 87		2	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	
× 58					$4\frac{1}{2}$
× 40					
W10 × 112	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	3	$3\frac{1}{2}$
× 88					4
× 77		2	$2\frac{1}{2}$		
× 54					

`

<table>
<tr><td>× 33</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>$3\frac{1}{2}$</td><td>$4\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>W8 × 67</td><td rowspan="5">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td>$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td rowspan="3">4</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 58</td><td rowspan="2">2</td><td rowspan="2">$2\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="3">$3\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 48</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 28</td><td rowspan="3">$4\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 21</td><td>$2\frac{1}{2}$</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 18</td><td>4</td></tr>
<tr><td>W6 × 25</td><td rowspan="3">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td>2</td><td>$2\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="2">$3\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="4">$4\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 20</td><td rowspan="4">$2\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="4">3</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 16</td><td rowspan="3">4</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 12</td><td rowspan="2">2</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 9</td><td>5</td></tr>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. The tabulated thicknesses are based upon the assumed properties of normal-weight concrete given in Table 722.5.1(2).

TABLE 722.5.1(10)
MINIMUM COVER (inch) FOR STEEL COLUMNS IN STRUCTURAL LIGHTWEIGHT PRECAST COVERS[a]
[FIGURE 722.5.1(6)(a)]

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">STRUCTURAL SHAPE</th><th colspan="5">FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)</th></tr>
<tr><th>1</th><th>1</th><th>2</th><th>3</th><th>4</th></tr>
<tr><td>W14 × 233</td><td rowspan="8">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="8">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="5">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="2">2</td><td>$2\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 176</td><td rowspan="5">3</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 145</td><td rowspan="4">$2\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 132</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 109</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 99</td><td rowspan="3">2</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 68</td><td rowspan="2">$3\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 43</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>W12 × 190</td><td rowspan="8">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="8">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="5">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="2">2</td><td>$2\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 152</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 136</td><td rowspan="2">3</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 106</td><td rowspan="4">$2\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 96</td><td rowspan="4">$3\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 87</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 65</td><td rowspan="2">2</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 40</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>W10 × 112</td><td rowspan="3">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="3">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td rowspan="3">$1\frac{1}{2}$</td><td>2</td><td rowspan="3">3</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 100</td><td rowspan="3">$2\frac{1}{2}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 88</td></tr>
<tr><td>× 77</td><td>2</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

`

× 60					$3\frac{1}{2}$
× 39				3	
× 33		2			
W8 × 67	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	3
× 48			2	3	$3\frac{1}{2}$
× 35					
× 28		2			
× 18			$2\frac{1}{2}$		4
W6 × 25	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	2	3	$3\frac{1}{2}$
× 15			$2\frac{1}{2}$		4
× 9				$3\frac{1}{2}$	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. The tabulated thicknesses are based upon the assumed properties of structural lightweight concrete given in Table 722.5.1(2).

722.5.1.1 General.
These procedures establish a basis for determining the *fire resistance* of column assemblies as a function of the thickness of fire-resistant material and, the weight, *W*, and heated perimeter, *D*, of structural steel columns. As used in these sections, *W* is the average weight of a structural steel column in pounds per linear foot. The heated perimeter, *D*, is the inside perimeter of the fire-resistant material in inches as illustrated in Figure 722.5.1(1).

722.5.1.1.1 Nonload-bearing protection.
The application of these procedures shall be limited to column assemblies in which the fire-resistant material is not designed to carry any of the load acting on the column.

722.5.1.1.2 Embedments.
In the absence of substantiating fire-endurance test results, ducts, conduit, piping, and similar mechanical, electrical, and plumbing installations shall not be embedded in any required fire-resistant materials.

722.5.1.1.3 Weight-to-perimeter ratio.
Table 722.5.1(1) contains weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios (*W/D*) for both contour and box fire-resistant profiles, for the wide flange shapes most often used as columns. For different fire-resistant protection profiles or column cross sections, the weight-toheated-perimeter ratios (*W/D*) shall be determined in accordance with the definitions given in this section.

722.5.1.2 Gypsum wallboard protection. The fire resistance of structural steel columns with weight-toheated-perimeter ratios (*W/D*) less than or equal to 3.65 and that are protected with Type X gypsum wallboard shall be permitted to be determined from the following expression:

$$R = 130\left[\frac{h(W/D)}{2}\right]^{0.75} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 7-12)}$$

`

where:

R	=	Fire resistance (minutes).
h	=	Total thickness of gypsum wallboard (inches).
D	=	Heated perimeter of the structural steel column (inches).
W'	=	Total weight of the structural steel column and gypsum wallboard protection (pounds per linear foot).
W'	=	$W + 50hD/144$.

722.5.1.2.1 Attachment.
The gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall be supported as illustrated in either Figure 722.5.1(2) for *fire-resistance ratings* of 4 hours or less, or Figure 722.5.1(3) for *fire-resistance ratings* of 3 hours or less.

722.5.1.2.2 Gypsum wallboard equivalent to concrete.
The determination of the *fire resistance* of structural steel columns from Figure 722.5.1(4) is permitted for various thicknesses of gypsum wallboard as a function of the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio (*W/D*) of the column. For structural steel columns with weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios (*W/D*) greater than 3.65, the thickness of gypsum wall-board required for specified *fire-resistance ratings* shall be the same as the thickness determined for a *W*14 × 233 wide flange shape.

722.5.1.3 Sprayed fire-resistant materials.
The *fire resistance* of wide-flange structural steel columns protected with sprayed fire-resistant materials, as illustrated in Figure 722.5.1(5), shall be permitted to be determined from the following expression:

$$R = [C_1(W/D) + C_2)h \qquad \textbf{(Equation 7-13)}$$

where:

R	=	Fire resistance (minutes).
h	=	Thickness of sprayed fire-resistant material (inches).
D	=	Heated perimeter of the structural steel column (inches).
$C1$ and $C2$	=	Material-dependent constants.
W	=	Weight of structural steel columns (pounds per linear foot).

The *fire resistance* of structural steel columns protected with intumescent or mastic fire-resistant coatings shall be determined on the basis of fire-resistance tests in accordance with Section 703.2.

722.5.1.3.1 Material-dependent constants.
The material-dependent constants, C_1 and C_2, shall be determined for specific fire-resistant materials on the basis of standard fire endurance tests in accordance with Section 703.2. Unless evidence is submitted to the *building official* substantiating a

broader application, this expression shall be limited to determining the *fire resistance* of structural steel columns with weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios (*W/ D*) between the largest and smallest columns for which standard fire-resistance test results are available.

722.5.1.3.2 Identification.
Sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be identified by density and thickness required for a given *fire-resistance rating*.

722.5.1.4 Concrete-protected columns.
The *fire resistance* of structural steel columns protected with concrete, as illustrated in Figure 722.5.1(6)(a) and (b), shall be permitted to be determined from the following expression:

$$R = R_o (1 + 0.03\ _m) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 7-14)}$$

where:

$$R_o = 10\ (W/D)^{0.7} + 17\ (h^{1.6}/k_c^{0.2}) \times [1 + 26\ \{H/p_c c_c h\ (L + h)\}^{0.8}]$$

As used in these expressions:

R	=	Fire endurance at equilibrium moisture conditions (minutes).
R_o	=	Fire endurance at zero moisture content (minutes).
m	=	Equilibrium moisture content of the concrete by volume (percent).
W	=	Average weight of the structural steel column (pounds per linear foot).
D	=	Heated perimeter of the structural steel column (inches).
h	=	Thickness of the concrete cover (inches).
k_c	=	Ambient temperature thermal conductivity of the concrete (Btu/hr ft °F).
H	=	Ambient temperature thermal capacity of the steel column = 0.11W (Btu/ ft °F).
p_c	=	Concrete density (pounds per cubic foot).
c_c	=	Ambient temperature specific heat of concrete (Btu/lb °F).
L	=	.Interior dimension of one side of a square concrete box protection (inches).

722.5.1.4.1 Reentrant space filled.
For wide-flange structural steel columns completely encased in concrete with all

`

reentrant spaces filled [Figure 722.5.1(6)(c)], the thermal capacity of the concrete within the reentrant spaces shall be permitted to be added to the thermal capacity of the steel column, as follows:

$$H = 0.11\,W + (p_c c_c/144)(b_f d - A_s) \quad \textbf{(Equation 7-15)}$$

where:

b_f	=	Flange width of the structural steel column (inches).
d	=	Depth of the structural steel column (inches).
A_s	=	Cross-sectional area of the steel column (square inches).

722.5.1.4.2 Concrete properties unknown.
If specific data on the properties of concrete are not available, the values given in Table 722.5.1(2) are permitted.

722.5.1.4.3 Minimum concrete cover.
For structural steel column encased in concrete with all reentrant spaces filled, Figure 722.5.1(6)(c) and Tables 722.5.1(7) and 722.5.1(8) indicate the thickness of concrete cover required for various *fire-resistance ratings* for typical wide-flange sections. The thicknesses of concrete indicated in these tables apply to structural steel columns larger than those listed.

722.5.1.4.4 Minimum precast concrete cover.
For structural steel columns protected with precast concrete column covers as shown in Figure 722.5.1(6)(a), Tables 722.5.1(9) and 722.5.1(10) indicate the thickness of the column covers required for various fire-resistance ratings for typical wideflange shapes. The thicknesses of concrete given in these tables apply to structural steel columns larger than those listed.

722.5.1.4.5 Masonry protection.
The *fire resistance* of structural steel columns protected with concrete masonry units or clay masonry units as illustrated in Figure 722.5.1(7) shall be permitted to be determined from the following expression:

$$R = 0.17\,(W/D)^{0.7} + [0.285\,(T_e^{1.6}/K^{0.2})]\,[1.0 + 42.7\,\{(A_s/d_m T_e)/(0.25p + T_e)\}^{0.8}] \quad \textbf{(Equation 7-16)}$$

where:

R	=	*Fire-resistance rating* of column assembly (hours).
W	=	Average weight of structural steel column (pounds per foot).
D	=	Heated perimeter of structural steel column (inches) [see Figure 722.5.1(7)].

`

T_e	=	Equivalent thickness of concrete or clay masonry unit (inches) (see Table 722.3.2 Note a or Section 722.4.1).
K	=	Thermal conductivity of concrete or clay masonry unit (Btu/hr · ft · °F) [see Table 722.5.1(3)].
A_s	=	Cross-sectional area of structural steel column (square inches).
d_m	=	Density of the concrete or clay masonry unit (pounds per cubic foot).
p	=	Inner perimeter of concrete or clay masonry protection (inches) [see Figure 722.5.1(7)].

722.5.1.4.6 Equivalent concrete masonry thickness.
For structural steel columns protected with concrete masonry, Table 722.5.1(5) gives the equivalent thickness of concrete masonry required for various *fire-resistance ratings* for typical column shapes. For structural steel columns protected with clay masonry, Table 722.5.1(6) gives the equivalent thickness of concrete masonry required for various *fire-resistance ratings* for typical column shapes.

722.5.2 Structural steel beams and girders.
The *fireresistance ratings* of structural steel beams and girders shall be based upon the size of the element and the type of protection provided in accordance with this section.

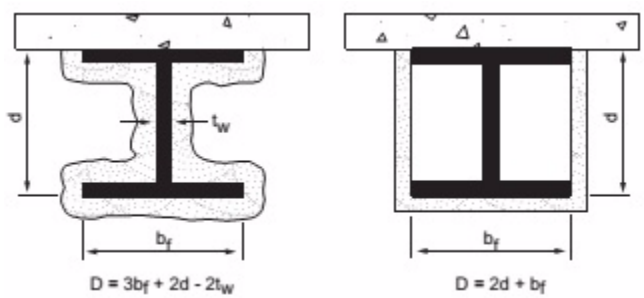


FIGURE 722.5.2
DETERMINATION OF THE HEATED PERIMETER OF STRUCTURAL STEEL BEAMS AND GIRDERS

722.5.2.1 Determination of fire resistance.
These procedures establish a basis for determining resistance of structural steel beams and girders that differ in size from that specified in *approved* fire-resistance-rated assemblies as a function of the thickness of fire-resistant material and the weight (*W*) and heated perimeter (*D*) of the beam or girder. As used in these sections, *W* is the average weight of a *structural steel element* in pounds per linear foot (plf). The heated perimeter, *D*, is the inside perimeter of the fire-resistant material in inches as illustrated in Figure 722.5.2.

`

722.5.2.1.1 Weight-to-heated perimeter.
The weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios *(W/D)*, for both contour and box fire-resistant protection profiles, for the wide flange shapes most often used as beams or girders are given in Table 722.5.1(4). For different shapes, the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios *(W/D)* shall be determined in accordance with the definitions given in this section.

722.5.2.1.2 Beam and girder substitutions.
Except as provided for in Section 722.5.2.2, structural steel beams in *approved* fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall be considered the minimum permissible size. Other beam or girder shapes shall be permitted to be substituted provided that the weight-to-heatedperimeter ratio (*W/D*) of the substitute beam is equal to or greater than that of the beam specified in the *approved* assembly.

722.5.2.2 Sprayed fire-resistant materials.
The provisions in this section apply to structural steel beams and girders protected with sprayed fire-resistant materials. Larger or smaller beam and girder shapes shall be permitted to be substituted for beams specified in *approved* unrestrained or restrained fire-resistancerated assemblies, provided that the thickness of the fireresistant material is adjusted in accordance with the following expression:

$$h_2 = h_1 [(W_1 / D_1) + 0.60] / [(W_2 / D_2) + 0.60] \qquad \textbf{(Equation 7-17)}$$

where:

h	=	Thickness of sprayed fire-resistant material in inches.
W	=	Weight of the structural steel beam or girder in pounds per linear foot.
D	=	Heated perimeter of the structural steel beam in inches.

Subscript 1 refers to the beam and fire-resistant material thickness in the *approved* assembly.

Subscript 2 refers to the substitute beam or girder and the required thickness of fire-resistant material.

The *fire resistance* of structural steel beams and girders protected with intumescent or mastic fire-resistant coatings shall be determined on the basis of fireresistance tests in accordance with Section 703.2.

722.5.2.2.1 Minimum thickness.
The use of Equation 7-17 is subject to the following conditions:

1. The weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio for the substitute beam or girder (W_2/D_2) shall be not less than 0.37.

`

2. The thickness of fire protection materials calculated for the substitute beam or girder (T_1) shall be not less than $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm).

3. The unrestrained or restrained beam rating shall be not less than 1 hour.

4. Where used to adjust the material thickness for a restrained beam, the use of this procedure is limited to structural steel sections classified as compact in accordance with AISC 360.

722.5.2.3 Structural steel trusses.
The *fire resistance* of structural steel trusses protected with fire-resistant materials sprayed to each of the individual truss elements shall be permitted to be determined in accordance with this section. The thickness of the fireresistant material shall be determined in accordance with Section 722.5.1.3. The weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio (*W/D*) of truss elements that can be simultaneously exposed to fire on all sides shall be determined on the same basis as columns, as specified in Section 722.5.1.1. The weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio (*W/D*) of truss elements that directly support floor or roof assembly shall be determined on the same basis as beams and girders, as specified in Section 722.5.2.1.

The *fire resistance* of structural steel trusses protected with intumescent or mastic fire-resistant coatings shall be determined on the basis of fire-resistance tests in accordance with Section 703.2.

722.6 Wood assemblies.
The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the *fire-resistance ratings* of wood assemblies are established by calculations.

722.6.1 General.
This section contains procedures for calculating the *fire-resistance ratings* of walls, floor/ceiling and roof/ceiling assemblies based in part on the standard method of testing referenced in Section 703.2.

722.6.1.1 Maximum fire-resistance rating.
Fireresistance ratings calculated for assemblies using the methods in Section 722.6 shall be limited to a maximum of 1 hour.

722.6.1.2 Dissimilar membranes.
Where dissimilar membranes are used on a wall assembly that requires consideration of fire exposure from both sides, the calculation shall be made from the least fire-resistant (weaker) side.

722.6.2 Walls, floors and roofs.
These procedures apply to both load-bearing and nonload-bearing assemblies.

TABLE 722.6.2(1)
TIME ASSIGNED TO WALLBOARD MEMBRANES[a, b, c, d]

DESCRIPTION OF FINISH	TIME[e] (minutes)

`

$^{3}/_{8}$-inch wood structural panel bonded with exterior glue	5
$^{15}/_{32}$-inch wood structural panel bonded with exterior glue	10
$^{19}/_{32}$-inch wood structural panel bonded with exterior glue	15
$^{3}/_{8}$-inch gypsum wallboard	10
$^{1}/_{2}$-inch gypsum wallboard	15
$^{5}/_{8}$-inch gypsum wallboard	30
$^{1}/_{2}$-inch Type X gypsum wallboard	25
$^{5}/_{8}$-inch Type X gypsum wallboard	40
Double $^{3}/_{8}$-inch gypsum wallboard	25
$^{1}/_{2}$-inch + $^{3}/_{8}$-inch gypsum wallboard	35
Double $^{1}/_{2}$-inch gypsum wallboard	40

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. These values apply only where membranes are installed on framing members that are spaced 16 inches o.c. or less.

b. Gypsum wallboard installed over framing or furring shall be installed so that all edges are supported, except $^{5}/_{8}$-inch Type X gypsum wallboard shall be permitted to be installed horizontally with the horizontal joints staggered 24 inches each side and unsupported but finished.

c. On wood frame floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assemblies, gypsum board shall be installed with the long dimension perpendicular to framing members and shall have all joints finished.

d. The membrane on the unexposed side shall not be included in determining the fire resistance of the assembly. Where dissimilar membranes are used on a wall assembly, the calculation shall be made from the least fireresistant (weaker) side.

e. The time assigned is not a finished rating.

TABLE 722.6.2(2)

TIME ASSIGNED FOR CONTRIBUTION OF WOOD FRAME [a, b, c]

DESCRIPTION	TIME ASSIGNED TO FRAME (minutes)
Wood studs 16 inches o.c.	20
Wood floor and roof joists 16 inches o.c.	10

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. This table does not apply to studs or joists spaced more than 16 inches o.c.

b. All studs shall be nominal 2 × 4 and all joists shall have a nominal thickness of not less than 2 inches.

c. Allowable spans for joists shall be determined in accordance with Sections 2308.4.2.1, 2308.7.1 and 2308.7.2.

`

TABLE 722.6.2(3)
MEMBRANE[a] ON EXTERIOR FACE OF WOOD STUD WALLS

SHEATHING	PAPER	EXTERIOR FINISH
$^5/_8$-inch T & G lumber $^5/_{16}$-inch exterior glue wood structural panel $^1/_2$-inch gypsum wallboard $^5/_8$-inch gypsum wallboard $^1/_2$-inch fiberboard	Sheathing paper	Lumber siding Wood shingles and shakes $^1/_4$-inch fiber-cement lap, panel or shingle siding $^1/_4$-inch wood structural panels-exterior type $^1/_4$-inch hardboard Metal siding Stucco on metal lath Masonry veneer Vinyl siding
None	—	$^3/_8$-inch exterior-grade wood structural panels

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Any combination of sheathing, paper and exterior finish is permitted.

TABLE 722.6.2(4)
FLOORING OR ROOFING OVER WOOD FRAMING[a]

ASSEMBLY	STRUCTURAL MEMBERS	SUBFLOOR OR ROOF DECK	FINISHED FLOORING OR ROOFING
Floor	Wood	$^{15}/_{32}$-inch wood structural panels or $^{11}/_{16}$-inch T & G softwood	Hardwood or softwood flooring on building paper resilient flooring, parquet floor felted-synthetic fiber floor coverings, carpeting, or ceramic tile on $^1/_4$-inch-thick fiber-cement underlayment or $^3/_8$-inch-thick panel-type underlay Ceramic tile on $1\,^1/_4$-inch mortar bed
Roof	Wood	$^{15}/_{32}$-inch wood structural panels or $^{11}/_{16}$-inch T & G softwood	Finished roofing material with or without insulation

`

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. This table applies only to wood joist construction. It is not applicable to wood truss construction.

TABLE 722.6.2(5)
TIME ASSIGNED FOR ADDITIONAL PROTECTION

DESCRIPTION OF ADDITIONAL PROTECTION	FIRE RESISTANCE (minutes)
Add to the *fire-resistance rating* of wood stud walls if the spaces between the studs are completely filled with glass fiber mineral wool batts weighing not less than 2 pounds per cubic foot (0.6 pound per square foot of wall surface) or rockwool or slag material wool batts weighing not less than 3.3 pounds per cubic foot (1 pound per square foot of wall surface), or cellulose insulation having a nominal density not less than 2.6 pounds per cubic foot.	15

For SI: 1 pound/cubic foot = 16.0185 kg/m^3.

722.6.2.1 Fire-resistance rating of wood frame assemblies.
The *fire-resistance rating* of a wood frame assembly is equal to the sum of the time assigned to the membrane on the fire-exposed side, the time assigned to the framing members and the time assigned for additional contribution by other protective measures such as insulation. The membrane on the unexposed side shall not be included in determining the *fire resistance* of the assembly.

722.6.2.2 Time assigned to membranes.
Table 722.6.2(1) indicates the time assigned to membranes on the fire-exposed side.

722.6.2.3 Exterior walls.
For an exterior wall with a *fire separation distance* greater than 10 feet (3048 mm), the wall is assigned a rating dependent on the interior membrane and the framing as described in Tables 722.6.2(1) and 722.6.2(2). The membrane on the outside of the nonfire-exposed side of exterior walls with a *fire separation distance* greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) shall consist of sheathing, sheathing paper and siding as described in Table 722.6.2(3).

722.6.2.4 Floors and roofs.
In the case of a floor or roof, the standard test provides only for testing for fire exposure from below. Except as noted in Section 703.3, Item 5, floor or roof assemblies of wood framing shall have an upper membrane consisting of a subfloor and finished floor conforming to Table 722.6.2(4) or any other membrane that has a contribution to *fire resistance* of not less than 15 minutes in Table 722.6.2(1).

722.6.2.5 Additional protection.
Table 722.6.2(5) indicates the time increments to be added to the *fire resistance* where

`

glass fiber, rockwool, slag mineral wool or cellulose insulation is incorporated in the assembly.

722.6.2.6 Fastening.
Fastening of wood frame assemblies and the fastening of membranes to the wood framing members shall be done in accordance with Chapter 23.

`

CHAPTER 8
INTERIOR FINISHES

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [F] will be considered by the International Fire Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 801
GENERAL

801.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall govern the use of materials used as *interior finishes*, *trim* and *decorative materials*.

801.2 Interior wall and ceiling finish.
The provisions of Section 803 shall limit the allowable fire performance and smoke development of *interior wall and ceiling finish* materials based on occupancy classification.

801.3 Interior floor finish.
The provisions of Section 804 shall limit the allowable fire performance of *interior floor finish* materials based on occupancy classification.

[F] 801.4 Decorative materials and trim.
Decorative materials and *trim* shall be restricted by combustibility, fire performance or flame propagation performance criteria in accordance with Section 806.

801.5 Applicability.
For buildings in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, *interior finishes*, *trim* and *decorative materials* below the elevation required by Section 1612 shall be flood-damage-resistant materials.

801.6 Application.
Combustible materials shall be permitted to be used as finish for walls, ceilings, floors and other interior surfaces of buildings.

801.7 Windows.
Show windows in the exterior walls of the first *story* above grade plane shall be permitted to be of wood or of unprotected metal framing.

801.8 Foam plastics.
Foam plastics shall not be used as *interior finish* except as provided in Section 803.4. Foam plastics shall not be used as interior *trim* except as provided in Section 806.5 or 2604.2. This section shall apply both to exposed foam plastics and to foam plastics used in conjunction with a textile or vinyl facing or cover.

`

SECTION 802
DEFINITIONS

802.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

EXPANDED VINYL WALL COVERING.

FLAME SPREAD.

FLAME SPREAD INDEX.

INTERIOR FINISH.

INTERIOR FLOOR FINISH.

INTERIOR FLOOR-WALL BASE.

INTERIOR WALL AND CEILING FINISH.

SITE-FABRICATED STRETCH SYSTEM.

SMOKE-DEVELOPED INDEX.

TRIM.

SECTION 803
WALL AND CEILING FINISHES

803.1 General.
Interior wall and ceiling finish materials shall be classified for fire performance and smoke development in accordance with Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2, except as shown in Sections 803.2 through 803.13. Materials tested in accordance with Section 803.1.2 shall not be required to be tested in accordance with Section 803.1.1.

803.1.1 Interior wall and ceiling finish materials.
Interior wall and ceiling finish materials shall be classified in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. Such *interior finish* materials shall be grouped in the following classes in accordance with their flame spread and *smoke-developed indexes*.

Class A:	=	Flame spread index 0-25; smoke-developed index 0-450.

`

Class B:	=	Flame spread index 26-75; smoke-developed index 0-450.
Class C:	=	Flame spread index 76-200; smoke-developed index 0-450.

Exception: Materials tested in accordance with Section 803.1.2.

803.1.2 Room corner test for interior wall or ceiling finish materials.
Interior wall or ceiling finish materials shall be permitted to be tested in accordance with NFPA 286. Interior wall or ceiling finish materials tested in accordance with NFPA 286 shall comply with Section 803.1.2.1.

803.1.2.1 Acceptance criteria for NFPA 286.
The interior finish shall comply with the following:

1. During the 40 kW exposure, flames shall not spread to the ceiling.
2. The flame shall not spread to the outer extremity of the sample on any wall or ceiling.
3. Flashover, as defined in NFPA 286, shall not occur.
4. The peak heat release rate throughout the test shall not exceed 800 kW.
5. The total smoke released throughout the test shall not exceed 1,000 m^2.

803.1.3 Room corner test for textile wall coverings and expanded vinyl wall coverings.
Textile wall coverings and expanded vinyl wall coverings shall meet the criteria of Section 803.1.3.1 when tested in the manner intended for use in accordance with the Method B protocol of NFPA 265 using the product-mounting system, including adhesive.

803.1.3.1 Acceptance criteria for NFPA 265.
The interior finish shall comply with the following:

1. During the 40 kW exposure, flames shall not spread to the ceiling.
2. The flame shall not spread to the outer extremities of the samples on the 8-foot by 12-foot (203 by 305 mm) walls.
3. Flashover, as defined in NFPA 265, shall not occur.
4. The total smoke released throughout the test shall not exceed 1,000 m^2.

803.1.4 Acceptance criteria for textile and expanded vinyl wall or ceiling coverings tested to ASTM E84 or UL 723.
Textile wall and ceiling coverings and expanded vinyl wall and ceiling coverings shall have a Class A flame spread index in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and be protected by an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. Test specimen preparation and mounting shall be in accordance with ASTM E2404.

`

803.2 Thickness exemption.
Materials having a thickness less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) applied directly to the surface of walls or ceilings shall not be required to be tested.

803.3 Heavy timber exemption.
Exposed portions of building elements complying with the requirements for buildings of Type IV construction in Section 602.4 shall not be subject to *interior finish* requirements.

803.4 Foam plastics.
Foam plastics shall not be used as *interior finish* except as provided in Section 2603.9. This section shall apply both to exposed foam plastics and to foam plastics used in conjunction with a textile or vinyl facing or cover.

803.5 Textile wall coverings.
Where used as interior wall finish materials, textile wall coverings, including materials having woven or nonwoven, napped, tufted, looped or similar surface and carpet and similar textile materials, shall be tested in the manner intended for use, using the product mounting system, including adhesive, and shall comply with the requirements of Section 803.1.2, 803.1.3 or 803.1.4.

803.6 Textile ceiling coverings.
Where used as interior ceiling finish materials, textile ceiling coverings, including materials having woven or nonwoven, napped, tufted, looped or similar surface and carpet and similar textile materials, shall be tested in the manner intended for use, using the product mounting system, including adhesive, and shall comply with the requirements of Section 803.1.2 or 803.1.4.

803.7 Expanded vinyl wall coverings.
Where used as interior wall finish materials, expanded vinyl wall coverings shall be tested in the manner intended for use, using the product mounting system, including adhesive, and shall comply with the requirements of Section 803.1.2, 803.1.3 or 803.1.4.

803.8 Expanded vinyl ceiling coverings.
Where used as interior ceiling finish materials, expanded vinyl ceiling coverings shall be tested in the manner intended for use, using the product mounting system, including adhesive, and shall comply with the requirements of Section 803.1.2 or 803.1.4.

803.9 High-density polyethylene (HDPE) and polypropylene (PP).
Where high-density polyethylene or polypropylene is used as an interior finish it shall comply with Section 803.1.2.

803.10 Site-fabricated stretch systems.
Where used as interior wall or interior ceiling finish materials, site-fabricated stretch systems containing all three components described in the definition in Chapter 2 shall be tested in the manner intended for use, and shall comply with the requirements of Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2. If the materials are tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, specimen preparation and mounting shall be in accordance with ASTM E2573.

803.11 Interior finish requirements based on group.
Interior wall and ceiling finish shall have a flame spread index not greater than that specified in Table 803.11 for the group and location designated. *Interior wall and ceiling finish* materials tested in accordance with NFPA 286 and meeting the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.2.1,

`

shall be permitted to be used where a Class A classification in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 is required.

TABLE 803.11
INTERIOR WALL AND CEILING FINISH REQUIREMENTS BY OCCUPANCY[k]

GROUP	SPRINKLERED[l]			NONSPRINKLERED		
	Interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways[a, b]	Corridors and enclosure for exit access stairways and ramps	Rooms and enclosed spaces[c]	Interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways[a, b]	Corridors and enclosure for exit access stairways and ramps	Rooms and enclosed spaces[c]
A-1 & A-2	B	B	C	A	A[d]	B[e]
A-3[f], A-4, A-5	B	B	C	A	A[d]	C
B, E, M, R-1	B	C	C	A	B	C
R-4	B	C	C	A	B	B
F	C	C	C	B	C	C
H	B	B	C[g]	A	A	B
I-1	B	C	C	A	B	B
I-2	B	B	B[h, i]	A	A	B
I-3	A	A[j]	C	A	A	B
I-4	B	B	B[h, i]	A	A	B
R-2	C	C	C	B	B	C
R-3	C	C	C	C	C	C
S	C	C	C	B	B	C
U	No restrictions			No restrictions		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929m^2.

a. Class C interior finish materials shall be permitted for wainscotting or paneling of not more than 1,000 square feet of applied surface area in the grade lobby where applied directly to a noncombustible base or over furring strips applied to a noncombustible base and fire blocked as required by Section 803.13.1.

b. In other than Group I-3 occupancies in buildings less than three stories above grade plane, Class B interior finish for nonsprinklered buildings and Class C interior finish for sprinklered buildings shall be permitted in interior exit stairways and ramps.

c. Requirements for rooms and enclosed spaces shall be based upon spaces enclosed by partitions. Where a fire-resistance rating is required for structural elements, the enclosing partitions shall extend from the floor to the ceiling. Partitions that do not comply with this shall be considered enclosing spaces and the rooms or spaces on both sides shall be considered one. In determining the applicable requirements for rooms and enclosed spaces, the specific occupancy thereof shall be the governing factor regardless of the group classification of the building or structure.

d. Lobby areas in Group A-1, A-2 and A-3 occupancies shall not be less than Class B materials.

e. Class C interior finish materials shall be permitted in places of assembly with an occupant load of 300 persons or less.

f. For places of religious worship, wood used for ornamental purposes, trusses, paneling or chancel furnishing shall be permitted.

`

g. Class B material is required where the building exceeds two stories.
h. Class C interior finish materials shall be permitted in administrative spaces.
i. Class C interior finish materials shall be permitted in rooms with a capacity of four persons or less.
j. Class B materials shall be permitted as wainscotting extending not more than 48 inches above the finished floor in corridors and exit access stairways and ramps.
k. Finish materials as provided for in other sections of this code.
l. Applies when protected by an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

803.12 Stability.
Interior finish materials regulated by this chapter shall be applied or otherwise fastened in such a manner that such materials will not readily become detached where subjected to room temperatures of 200°F (93°C) for not less than 30 minutes.

803.13 Application of interior finish materials to fire resistance-rated or noncombustible building elements.
Where *interior finish* materials are applied on walls, ceilings or structural elements required to have a *fire-resistance rating* or to be of noncombustible construction, these finish materials shall comply with the provisions of this section.

803.13.1 Direct attachment and furred construction.
Where walls and ceilings are required by any provision in this code to be of fire-resistance-rated or noncombustible construction, the interior finish material shall be applied directly against such construction or to furring strips not exceeding 1 3/4 inches (44 mm), applied directly against such surfaces.

803.13.1.1 Furred construction.
If the interior finish material is applied to furring strips, the intervening spaces between such furring strips shall comply with one of the following:

1. Be filled with material that is inorganic or noncombustible;

2. Be filled with material that meets the requirements of a Class A material in accordance with Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2; or

3. Be fire-blocked at a maximum of 8 feet (2438 mm) in every direction in accordance with Section 718.

803.13.2 Set-out construction.
Where walls and ceilings are required to be of fire-resistance-rated or noncombustible construction and walls are set out or ceilings are dropped distances greater than specified in Section 803.13.1, Class A finish materials, in accordance with Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2, shall be used.

Exceptions:

1. Where *interior finish* materials are protected on both sides by an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

2. Where *interior finish* materials are attached to noncombustible backing or furring strips installed as specified in Section 803.13.1.1.

`

803.13.2.1 Hangers and assembly members.
The hangers and assembly members of such dropped ceilings that are below the horizontal fire-resistance-rated floor or roof assemblies shall be of noncombustible materials. The construction of each set-out wall and horizontal fire-resistance-rated floor or roof assembly shall be of fire-resistance-rated construction as required elsewhere in this code.

Exception: In Type III and V construction, *fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be permitted for use as hangers and assembly members of dropped ceilings.

803.13.3 Heavy timber construction.
Wall and ceiling finishes of all classes as permitted in this chapter that are installed directly against the wood decking or planking of Type IV construction or to wood furring strips applied directly to the wood decking or planking shall be fire blocked as specified in Section 803.13.1.1.

803.13.4 Materials.
An interior wall or ceiling finish material that is not more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick shall be applied directly onto the wall, ceiling or structural element without the use of furring strips and shall not be suspended away from the building element to which that finish material it is applied.

Exceptions:

1. Noncombustible interior finish materials.

2. Materials that meet the requirements of Class A materials in accordance with Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2 where the qualifying tests were made with the material furred out from the noncombustible backing shall be permitted to be used with furring strips.

3. Materials that meet the requirements of Class A materials in accordance with Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2 where the qualifying tests were made with the material suspended away from the non-combustible backing shall be permitted to be used suspended away from the building element.

SECTION 804
INTERIOR FLOOR FINISH

804.1 General.
Interior floor finish and floor covering materials shall comply with Sections 804.2 through 804.4.2.

Exception: Floor finishes and coverings of a traditional type, such as wood, vinyl, linoleum or terrazzo, and resilient floor covering materials that are not comprised of fibers.

804.2 Classification.
Interior floor finish and floor covering materials required by Section 804.4.2 to be of Class I or II

`

materials shall be classified in accordance with NFPA 253. The classification referred to herein corresponds to the classifications determined by NFPA 253 as follows: Class I, 0.45 watts/cm2 or greater; Class II, 0.22 watts/cm^2 or greater.

804.3 Testing and identification.
Interior floor finish and floor covering materials shall be tested by an agency in accordance with NFPA 253 and identified by a hang tag or other suitable method so as to identify the manufacturer or supplier and style, and shall indicate the *interior floor finish* or floor covering classification in accordance with Section 804.2. Carpet-type floor coverings shall be tested as proposed for use, including underlayment. Test reports confirming the information provided in the manufacturer's product identification shall be furnished to the building official upon request.

804.4 Interior floor finish requirements.
Interior floor covering materials shall comply with Sections 804.4.1 and 804.4.2 and interior floor finish materials shall comply with Section 804.4.2.

804.4.1 Test requirement.
In all occupancies, interior floor covering materials shall comply with the requirements of the DOC FF-1 "pill test" (CPSC 16 CFR Part 1630) or with ASTM D2859.

804.4.2 Minimum critical radiant flux.
In all occupancies, interior floor finish and floor covering materials in enclosures for stairways and ramps, exit passageways, corridors and rooms or spaces not separated from corridors by partitions extending from the floor to the underside of the ceiling shall withstand a minimum critical radiant flux. The minimum critical radiant flux shall be not less than Class I in Groups I-1, I-2 and I-3 and not less than Class II in Groups A, B, E, H, I-4, M, R-1, R-2 and S.

Exception: Where a building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, Class II materials are permitted in any area where Class I materials are required, and materials complying with DOC FF-1 "pill test" (CPSC 16 CFR Part 1630) or with ASTM D2859 are permitted in any area where Class II materials are required.

SECTION 805
COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS IN TYPES I AND II CONSTRUCTION

805.1 Application.
Combustible materials installed on or embedded in floors of buildings of Type I or II construction shall comply with Sections 805.1.1 through 805.1.3.

Exception: Stages and platforms constructed in accordance with Sections 410.3 and 410.4, respectively.

805.1.1 Subfloor construction.
Floor sleepers, bucks and nailing blocks shall not be constructed of combustible materials, unless the space between the fire-resistance rated floor assembly and the flooring is either solidly filled with noncombustible materials or fire blocked in accordance with Section 718,

`

and provided that such open spaces shall not extend under or through permanent partitions or walls.

805.1.2 Wood finish flooring.
Wood finish flooring is permitted to be attached directly to the embedded or fire blocked wood sleepers and shall be permitted where cemented directly to the top surface of fire-resistance rated floor assemblies or directly to a wood subfloor attached to sleepers as provided for in Section 805.1.1.

805.1.3 Insulating boards.
Combustible insulating boards not more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) thick and covered with finish flooring are permitted where attached directly to a noncombustible floor assembly or to wood subflooring attached to sleepers as provided for in Section 805.1.1.

SECTION 806
DECORATIVE MATERIALS AND TRIM

[F] 806.1 General.
Combustible decorative materials, other than decorative vegetation, shall comply with Sections 806.2 through 806.8.

[F] 806.2 Noncombustible materials.
The permissible amount of noncombustible materials shall not be limited.

[F] 806.3 Combustible decorative materials.
In other than Group I-3, curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar combustible decorative materials suspended from walls or ceilings shall comply with Section 806.4 and shall not exceed 10 percent of the specific wall or ceiling area to which such materials are attached. Fixed or movable walls and partitions, paneling, wall pads and crash pads applied structurally or for decoration, acoustical correction, surface insulation or other purposes shall be considered *interior finish* shall comply with Section 803 and shall not be considered *decorative materials* or furnishings.

Exceptions:

1. In auditoriums in Group A, the permissible amount of curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar combustible decorative materials suspended from walls or ceilings shall not exceed 75 percent of the aggregate wall area where the building is equipped throughout with an *approved automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and where the material is installed in accordance with Section 803.13 of this code.

2. In Group R-2 dormitories, within sleeping units and dwelling units, the permissible amount of curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar decorative materials suspended from walls or ceiling shall not exceed 50 percent of the aggregate wall areas where the building is equipped throughout with an *approved automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.

`

3. In Group B and M occupancies, the amount of combustible fabric partitions suspended from the ceiling and not supported by the floor shall comply with Section 806.4 and shall not be limited.

[F] 806.4 Acceptance criteria and reports.
Where required to exhibit improved fire performance, curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar combustible decorative materials suspended from walls or ceilings shall be tested by an *approved agency* and meet the flame propagation performance criteria of Test 1 or 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701, or exhibit a maximum heat release rate of 100 kW when tested in accordance with NFPA 289, using the 20 kW ignition source. Reports of test results shall be prepared in accordance with the test method used and furnished to the *building official* upon request.

[F] 806.5 Foam plastic.
Foam plastic used as *trim* in any occupancy shall comply with Section 2604.2.

[F] 806.6 Pyroxylin plastic.
Imitation leather or other material consisting of or coated with a pyroxylin or similarly hazardous base shall not be used in Group A occupancies.

[F] 806.7 Interior trim.
Material, other than foam plastic used as interior *trim*, shall have a minimum Class C flame spread and smoke-developed index when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, as described in Section 803.1.1. Combustible *trim*, excluding handrails and guardrails, shall not exceed 10 percent of the specific wall or ceiling area to which it is attached.

[F] 806.8 Interior floor-wall base.
Interior floor-wall base that is 6 inches (152 mm) or less in height shall be tested in accordance with Section 804.2 and shall be not less than Class II. Where a Class I floor finish is required, the floorwall base shall be Class I.

Exception: Interior *trim* materials that comply with Section 806.7.

SECTION 807
INSULATION

807.1 Insulation.
Thermal and acoustical insulation shall comply with Section 720.

SECTION 808
ACOUSTICAL CEILING SYSTEMS

808.1 Acoustical ceiling systems.
The quality, design, fabrication and erection of metal suspension systems for acoustical tile and lay-in panel ceilings in buildings or structures shall conform to generally accepted engineering practice, the provisions of this chapter and other applicable requirements of this code.

808.1.1 Materials and installation.
Acoustical materials complying with the *interior finish* requirements of Section 803 shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and applicable provisions for applying *interior finish*.

`

808.1.1.1 Suspended acoustical ceilings.
Suspended acoustical ceiling systems shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of ASTM C635 and ASTM C636.

808.1.1.2 Fire-resistance-rated construction.
Acoustical ceiling systems that are part of fire-resistance rated construction shall be installed in the same manner used in the assembly tested and shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 7.

`

CHAPTER 9
FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [F] will be considered by the International Fire Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 901
GENERAL

901.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall specify where *fire protection systems* are required and shall apply to the design, installation and operation of *fire protection systems*.

901.2 Fire protection systems.
Fire protection systems shall be installed, repaired, operated and maintained in accordance with this code and the *International Fire Code*.

Any *fire protection system* for which an exception or reduction to the provisions of this code has been granted shall be considered to be a required system.

Exception: Any *fire protection system* or portion thereof not required by this code shall be permitted to be installed for partial or complete protection provided that such system meets the requirements of this code.

901.3 Modifications.
Persons shall not remove or modify any *fire protection system* installed or maintained under the provisions of this code or the *International Fire Code* without approval by the *building official*.

901.4 Threads.
Threads provided for fire department connections to sprinkler systems, standpipes, yard hydrants or any other fire hose connection shall be compatible with the connections used by the local fire department.

901.5 Acceptance tests.
Fire protection systems shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of this code and the *International Fire Code*. When required, the tests shall be conducted in the presence of the *building official*. Tests required by this code, the *International Fire Code* and the standards listed in this code shall be conducted at the expense of the owner or the owner's authorized agent. It shall be unlawful to occupy portions of a structure until the required *fire protection systems* within that portion of the structure have been tested and *approved*.

901.6 Supervisory service.
Where required, *fire protection systems* shall be monitored by an approved supervising station in accordance with NFPA 72.

901.6.1 Automatic sprinkler systems.
Automatic sprinkler systems shall be monitored by an *approved* supervising station.

Exceptions:

`

1. A supervising station is not required for *automatic sprinkler systems* protecting one- and two- family dwellings.

2. Limited area systems serving fewer than 20 sprinklers.

901.6.2 Fire alarm systems.
Fire alarm systems required by the provisions of Section 907.2 of this code and Sections 907.2 and 907.9 of the *International Fire Code* shall be monitored by an *approved* supervising station in accordance with Section 907.6.6.

Exceptions:

1. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms required by Section 907.2.11.

2. Smoke detectors in Group I-3 occupancies.

3. Supervisory service is not required for *automatic sprinkler systems* in one- and two-family dwellings.

901.6.3 Group H.
Supervision and monitoring of emergency alarm, detection and automatic fire-extinguishing systems in Group H occupancies shall be in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

901.7 Fire areas.
Where buildings, or portions thereof, are divided into *fire areas* so as not to exceed the limits established for requiring a *fire protection system* in accordance with this chapter, such *fire areas* shall be separated by *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than that determined in accordance with Section 707.3.10.

[F] 901.8 Pump and riser room size.
Where provided, fire pump rooms and *automatic sprinkler system* riser rooms shall be designed with adequate space for all equipment necessary for the installation, as defined by the manufacturer, with sufficient working room around the stationary equipment. Clearances around equipment to elements of permanent construction, including other installed equipment and appliances, shall be sufficient to allow inspection, service, repair or replacement without removing such elements of permanent construction or disabling the function of a required fire resistance-rated assembly. Fire pump and *automatic sprinkler system* riser rooms shall be provided with a door(s) and unobstructed passageway large enough to allow removal of the largest piece of equipment.

SECTION 902
DEFINITIONS

902.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2**:**

[F] ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE.
[F] ALARM SIGNAL.

`

[F] ALARM VERIFICATION FEATURE.[F] ANNUNCIATOR.

[F] AUDIBLE ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE.

[F] AUTOMATIC.

[F] AUTOMATIC FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM.

[F] AUTOMATIC SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEM.

[F] AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEM.

[F] AUTOMATIC WATER MIST SYSTEM.

[F] AVERAGE AMBIENT SOUND LEVEL.

[F] CARBON DIOXIDE EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS.

[F] CEILING LIMIT.

[F] CLEAN AGENT.

[F] COMMERCIAL MOTOR VEHICLE.

[F] CONSTANTLY ATTENDED LOCATION.

[F] DELUGE SYSTEM.

[F] DETECTOR, HEAT.

[F] DRY-CHEMICAL EXTINGUISHING AGENT.

[F] ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT PROTECTIVE SYSTEM.

[F] ELEVATOR GROUP.

[F] EMERGENCY ALARM SYSTEM.

[F] EMERGENCY VOICE/ALARM COMMUNICATIONS.

[F] FIRE ALARM BOX, MANUAL.

[F] FIRE ALARM CONTROL UNIT.

[F] FIRE ALARM SIGNAL.

[F] FIRE ALARM SYSTEM.

`

FIRE AREA.

[F] FIRE COMMAND CENTER.

[F] FIRE DETECTOR, AUTOMATIC.

[F] FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEM.

[F] FIRE SAFETY FUNCTIONS.

[F] FOAM-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM.

[F] HALOGENATED EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM.

[F] INITIATING DEVICE.

[F] MANUAL FIRE ALARM BOX.

[F] MULTIPLE-STATION ALARM DEVICE.

[F] MULTIPLE-STATION SMOKE ALARM.

[F] NOTIFICATION ZONE.

[F] NUISANCE ALARM. PRIVATE GARAGE.

[F] RECORD DRAWINGS.

[F] SINGLE-STATION SMOKE ALARM.

[F] SMOKE ALARM.

[F] SMOKE DETECTOR.

[F] SMOKEPROOF ENCLOSURE.

[F] STANDPIPE SYSTEM, CLASSES OF.

- **Class I system.**
- **Class II system.**
- **Class III system.**

[F] STANDPIPE, TYPES OF.

- **Automatic dry.**
- **Automatic wet.**
- **Manual dry.**
- **Manual wet.**
- **Semiautomatic dry.**

`

[F] SUPERVISING STATION.

[F] SUPERVISORY SERVICE.

[F] SUPERVISORY SIGNAL.

[F] SUPERVISORY SIGNAL-INITIATING DEVICE.

[F] TIRES, BULK STORAGE OF.

[F] TROUBLE SIGNAL.

[F] VISIBLE ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE.

[F] WET CHEMICAL EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM.

[F] WIRELESS PROTECTION SYSTEM.

[F] ZONE.

[F] ZONE, NOTIFICATION.

SECTION 903
AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

[F] 903.1 General.
Automatic sprinkler systems shall comply with this section.

[F] 903.1.1 Alternative protection.
Alternative *automatic fire-extinguishing systems* complying with Section 904 shall be permitted instead of automatic sprinkler protection where recognized by the applicable standard and *approved* by the fire code official.

[F] 903.2 Where required.
Approved *automatic sprinkler systems* in new buildings and structures shall be provided in the locations described in Sections 903.2.1 through 903.2.12.

Exception: Spaces or areas in telecommunications buildings used exclusively for telecommunications equipment, associated electrical power distribution equipment, batteries and standby engines, provided those spaces or areas are equipped throughout with an *automatic smoke detection system* in accordance with Section 907.2 and are separated from the remainder of the building by not less than 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or not less than 2-hour *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

[F] 903.2.1 Group A.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout buildings and portions thereof used as Group A occupancies as provided in this section. For Group A-1, A-2, A-3 and A-4 occupancies, the *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout the story where the *fire area* containing the Group A-1, A-2, A-3 or A-4 occupancy is located, and throughout all stories from the Group A occupancy to, and including, the *levels of exit discharge* serving the Group A occupancy. For Group A-5 occupancies, the *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided in the spaces indicated in Section 903.2.1.5.

`

[F] 903.2.1.1 Group A-1.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided for *fire areas* containing Group A-1 occupancies and intervening floors of the building where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The *fire area* exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m^2).
2. The *fire area* has an *occupant load* of 300 or more.
3. The *fire area* is located on a floor other than a *level of exit discharge* serving such occupancies.
4. The *fire area* contains a multitheater complex.

[F] 903.2.1.2 Group A-2.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided for *fire areas* containing Group A-2 occupancies and intervening floors of the building where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The *fire area* exceeds 5,000 square feet (464.5 m^2).
2. The *fire area* has an *occupant load* of 100 or more.
3. The *fire area* is located on a floor other than a *level of exit discharge* serving such occupancies.

[F] 903.2.1.3 Group A-3.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided for *fire areas* containing Group A-3 occupancies and intervening floors of the building where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The *fire area* exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m^2).
2. The *fire area* has an *occupant load* of 300 or more.
3. The *fire area* is located on a floor other than a *level of exit discharge* serving such occupancies.

[F] 903.2.1.4 Group A-4.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided for *fire areas* containing Group A-4 occupancies and intervening floors of the building where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The *fire area* exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m^2).
2. The *fire area* has an *occupant load* of 300 or more.
3. The *fire area* is located on a floor other than a *level of exit discharge* serving such occupancies.

`

[F] 903.2.1.5 Group A-5.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided for Group A-5 occupancies in the following areas: concession stands, retail areas, press boxes and other accessory use areas in excess of 1,000 square feet (93 m^2).

[F] 903.2.1.6 Assembly occupancies on roofs.
Where an occupied roof has an assembly occupancy with an *occupant load* exceeding 100 for Group A-2 and 300 for other Group A occupancies, ~~all floors between the occupied roof and the *level of exit discharge*~~ the building shall be equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

Exception: Open parking garages of Type I or Type II construction.

903.2.1.7 Multiple fire areas.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided where multiple fire areas of Group A-1, A-2, A-3 or A-4 occupancies share exit or exit access components and the combined *occupant load* of theses fire areas is 300 or more.

903.2.1.8 Nightclub. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout Group A-2 nightclubs as defined in this code.

[F] 903.2.2 Ambulatory care facilities.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed throughout the entire floor containing an *ambulatory care facility* where either of the following conditions exist at any time:

1. Four or more care recipients are incapable of self-preservation, whether rendered incapable by staff or staff has accepted responsibility for care recipients already incapable.

2. One or more care recipients that are incapable of self-preservation are located at other than the level of exit discharge serving such a facility.

In buildings where ambulatory care is provided on levels other than the *level of exit discharge*, an *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed throughout the entire floor where such care is provided as well as all floors below, and all floors between the level of ambulatory care and the nearest *level of exit discharge*, including the *level of exit discharge*.

[F] 903.2.3 Group E.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided for fire areas containing Group E occupancies ~~as follows~~ where the fire area has an occupant load of 51 or more, calculated in accordance with Table 1004.1.2.

~~1. Throughout all Group E *fire areas* greater than 12,000 square feet (1115 m^2) in area.~~

~~2. Throughout every portion of educational buildings below the lowest *level of exit discharge* serving that portion of the building.~~

~~**Exception:** An *automatic sprinkler system* is not required in any area below the lowest *level of exit discharge* serving that area where every classroom throughout the building has not fewer than one exterior *exit* door at ground level.~~

Exceptions:

`

1. Portable school classrooms with an occupant load of 50 or less calculated in accordance with Table 1004.1.2, provided aggregate area of any cluster or portion of a cluster of portable school classrooms does not exceed 6,000 square feet (557 m^2); and clusters of portable school classrooms shall be separated as required by the building code; or
2. Portable school classrooms with an occupant load from 51 through 98, calculated in accordance with Table 1004.1.2, and provided with two means of direct independent exterior egress from each classroom in accordance with Chapter 10, and one exit from each classroom shall be accessible, provided that the aggregate area of any cluster of portable school classrooms does not exceed 6,000 square feet (557 m2); and clusters of portable school classrooms shall be separated as required by the building code; or
3. Fire areas containing day care and preschool facilities with a total occupant load of 100 or less located at the level of exit discharge where every room in which care is provided has not fewer than one exit discharge door.

[F] 903.2.4 Group F-1.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout all buildings containing a Group F-1 occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. A Group F-1 *fire area* exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m^2).
2. A Group F-1 *fire area* is located more than three stories above *grade plane*.
3. The combined area of all Group F-1 *fire areas* on all floors, including any mezzanines, exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m^2).
4. A Group F-1 occupancy used for the manufacture of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 2,500 square feet (232 m^2).

[F] 903.2.4.1 Woodworking operations.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout all Group F-1 occupancy *fire areas* that contain woodworking operations in excess of 2,500 square feet (232 m^2) in area that generate finely divided combustible waste or use finely divided combustible materials.

[F] 903.2.5 Group H.
Automatic sprinkler systems shall be provided in high-hazard occupancies as required in Sections 903.2.5.1 through 903.2.5.3.

[F] 903.2.5.1 General.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed in Group H occupancies.

[F] 903.2.5.2 Group H-5 occupancies.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed throughout buildings containing Group H-5 occupancies. The design of the sprinkler system shall be not less than that required by this code for the occupancy hazard classifications in accordance with Table 903.2.5.2.

`

Where the design area of the sprinkler system consists of a *corridor* protected by one row of sprinklers, the maximum number of sprinklers required to be calculated is 13.

[F] TABLE 903.2.5.2
GROUP H-5 SPRINKLER DESIGN CRITERIA

LOCATION	OCCUPANCY HAZARD CLASSIFICATION
Fabrication areas	Ordinary Hazard Group 2
Service corridors	Ordinary Hazard Group 2
Storage rooms without dispensing	Ordinary Hazard Group 2
Storage rooms with dispensing	Extra Hazard Group 2
Corridors	Ordinary Hazard Group 2

[F] 903.2.5.3 Pyroxylin plastics.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided in buildings, or portions thereof, where cellulose nitrate film or pyroxylin plastics are manufactured, stored or handled in quantities exceeding 100 pounds (45 kg).

[F] 903.2.6 Group I.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout buildings with a Group I *fire area*.

Exceptions:

1. An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2 shall be permitted in Group I-1 Condition 1 facilities.
2. ~~An *automatic sprinkler system* is not required where Group I-4 day care facilities are at the *level of exit discharge* and where every room where care is provided has not fewer than one exterior exit door.~~
2. Where new construction or additions house less than sixteen persons receiving care, an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.2.8.3 shall be permitted for Group I-1, Condition 2, assisted living facilities licensed under chapter 38878A WAC and residential treatment facilities licensed under chapter 246-337 WAC.
4. ~~In buildings where Group I-4 day care is provided on levels other than the *level of exit discharge*, an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be installed on the entire floor where care is provided, all floors between the level of care and the level of *exit discharge*, and all floors below the *level of exit discharge* other than areas classified as an open parking garage.~~

903.2.6.1 Group I-4. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in fire areas containing Group I-4 occupancies where the fire area has an occupant load of 51 or more, calculated in accordance with Table 1004.1.2.

Exceptions:

1. An automatic sprinkler system is not required for Group I-4 day care facilities with a total occupant load of 100 or less, and located at the level of exit discharge and where every room where care is provided has not fewer than one exterior exit door.
2. In buildings where Group I-4 day care is provided on levels other than the level of exit discharge, an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be installed on the entire floor where care is

`

provided, all floors between the level of care and the level of exit discharge and all floors below the level of exit discharge other than areas classified as an open parking garage.

[F] 903.2.7 Group M.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout buildings containing a Group M occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. A Group M *fire area* exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m^2).
2. A Group M *fire area* is located more than three stories above *grade plane*.
3. The combined area of all Group M *fire areas* on all floors, including any mezzanines, exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m^2).
4. ~~A Group M occupancy~~ Where a Group M occupancy that is used for the display and sale of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m^2).

[F] 903.2.7.1 High-piled storage.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided in accordance with the *International Fire Code* in all buildings of Group M where storage of merchandise is in high-piled or rack storage arrays.

[F] 903.2.8 Group R.
An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3 shall be provided throughout all buildings with a Group R *fire area*.

Exception: Group R-1 if all the following conditions apply:

1. The Group R fire area is no more than 500 square feet and is used for recreational use only.
2. The Group R fire area is only one story.
3. The Group R fire area does not include a basement.
4. The Group R fire area is no closer than 30 feet from another structure.
5. Cooking is not allowed within the Group R fire area.
6. The Group R fire area has an occupant load of no more than 8.
7. A hand held (portable) fire extinguisher is in every

Group R fire area.

[F] 903.2.8.1 Group R-3.
An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in Group R-3 occupancies.

[F] 903.2.8.2 Group R-4 Condition 1.
An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in Group R-4 Condition 1 occupancies.

[F] 903.2.8.3 Group R-4 Condition 2.
An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2 shall be permitted in Group R-4 Condition 2 occupancies. Attics shall be protected in accordance with Section 903.2.8.3.1 or 903.2.8.3.2.

[F] 903.2.8.3.1 Attics used for living purposes, storage or fuel-fired equipment.
Attics used for living purposes, storage or fuel-fired equipment shall be protected

throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.

[F] 903.2.8.3.2 Attics not used for living purposes, storage or fuel-fired equipment.
Attics not used for living purposes, storage or fuel-fired equipment shall be protected in accordance with one of the following:

1. Attics protected throughout by a heat detector system arranged to activate the building fire alarm system in accordance with Section 907.2.10.

2. Attics constructed of noncombustible materials.

3. Attics constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood framing complying with Section 2303.2.

4. The *automatic sprinkler system* shall be extended to provide protection throughout the attic space.

[F] 903.2.8.4 Care facilities.
An a*utomatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in care facilities with five or fewer individuals in a single-family dwelling.

[F] 903.2.9 Group S-1.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout all buildings containing a Group S-1 occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. A Group S-1 *fire area* exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m^2).

2. A Group S-1 *fire area* is located more than three stories above *grade plane*.

3. The combined area of all Group S-1 *fire areas* on all floors, including any mezzanines, exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m^2).

4. A Group S-1 *fire area* used for the storage of commercial motor vehicles where the *fire area* exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m^2).

5. A Group S-1 occupancy used for the storage of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 2,500 square feet (232 m^2).

[F] 903.2.9.1 Repair garages.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout all buildings used as repair garages in accordance with Section 406, as shown:

1. Buildings having two or more *stories above grade plane*, including basements, with a *fire area* containing a repair garage exceeding 10,000 square feet (929 m^2).

2. Buildings not more than one *story above grade plane*, with a *fire area* containing a repair garage exceeding 12,000 square feet (1115 m^2).

`

3. Buildings with repair garages servicing vehicles parked in basements.

4. A Group S-1 *fire area* used for the repair of commercial motor vehicles where the *fire area* exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m^2).

[F] 903.2.9.2 Bulk storage of tires.
Buildings and structures where the area for the storage of tires exceeds 20,000 cubic feet (566 m^3) shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

[F] 903.2.10 Group S-2 enclosed parking garages.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout buildings classified as enclosed parking garages in accordance with Section 406.6 where either of the following conditions exists:

1. Where the *fire area* of the enclosed parking garage exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m^2).

2. Where the enclosed parking garage is located beneath other groups.

   Exception: Enclosed parking garages located beneath Group R-3 occupancies.

[F] 903.2.10.1 Commercial parking garages.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout buildings used for storage of commercial motor vehicles where the *fire area* exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m^2).

[F] 903.2.11 ~~Specific building areas and hazards.~~ All occupancies.
In all occupancies other than Group U, an *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed for building design or hazards in the locations set forth in Sections 903.2.11.1 through ~~903.2.11.6~~ 903.2.11.7.

[F] 903.2.11.1 Stories and basements without openings.
An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout all stories, including basements, of all buildings where the floor area exceeds 1,500 square feet (139.4 m2) and where there is not provided not fewer than one of the following types of *exterior wall* openings:

1. Openings below grade that lead directly to ground level by an exterior *stairway* complying with Section 1011 or an outside ramp complying with Section 1012. Openings shall be located in each 50 linear feet (15,240 mm), or fraction thereof, of *exterior wall* in the *story* on at least one side. The required openings shall be distributed such that the lineal distance between adjacent openings does not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).

2. Openings entirely above the adjoining ground level totalling not less than 20 square feet (1.86 m^2) in each 50 linear feet (15 240 mm), or fraction thereof, of *exterior wall* in the story on at least one side. The required openings shall be distributed such that the lineal distance between adjacent openings does not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm). The height of the bottom of the clear opening shall not exceed 44 inches (1118 mm) measured from the floor.

`

[F] 903.2.11.1.1 Opening dimensions and access.
Openings shall have a minimum dimension of not less than 30 inches (762 mm). Such openings shall be accessible to the fire department from the exterior and shall not be obstructed in a manner such that firefighting or rescue cannot be accomplished from the exterior.

[F] 903.2.11.1.2 Openings on one side only.
Where openings in a *story* are provided on only one side and the opposite wall of such *story* is more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) from such openings, the *story* shall be equipped throughout with an *approved automatic sprinkler system*, or openings as specified above shall be provided on not fewer than two sides of the *story*.

[F] 903.2.11.1.3 Basements.
Where any portion of a *basement* is located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) from openings required by Section 903.2.11.1, or where walls, partitions or other similar obstructions are installed that restrict the application of water from hose streams, increase the exit access travel distance to more than 75 feet, the *basement* shall be equipped throughout with an *approved automatic sprinkler system*.

[F] 903.2.11.2 Rubbish and linen chutes.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed at the top of rubbish and linen chutes and in their terminal rooms. Chutes shall have additional sprinkler heads installed at alternate floors and at the lowest intake. Where a rubbish chute extends through a building more than one floor below the lowest intake, the extension shall have sprinklers installed that are recessed from the drop area of the chute and protected from freezing in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Such sprinklers shall be installed at alternate floors, beginning with the second level below the last intake and ending with the floor above the discharge. Chute sprinklers shall be accessible for servicing.

[F] 903.2.11.3 Buildings 55 feet or more in height.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed throughout buildings ~~that have one or more stories~~ with a floor level having an *occupant load* of 30 or more located 55 feet (16 764 mm) or more above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access. ~~measured to the finished floor.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1. Open parking structures.~~

~~2. Occupancies in Group F-2.~~

[F] 903.2.11.4 Ducts conveying hazardous exhausts.
Where required by the *International Mechanical Code*, automatic sprinklers shall be provided in ducts conveying hazardous exhaust or flammable or combustible materials.

Exception: Ducts where the largest cross-sectional diameter of the duct is less than 10 inches (254 mm).

[F] 903.2.11.5 Commercial cooking operations.
An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed in commercial kitchen exhaust hood and duct systems where an *automatic sprinkler system* is used to comply with Section 904.

`

[F] 903.2.11.6 Other required suppression systems.
In addition to the requirements of Section 903.2, the provisions indicated in Table 903.2.11.6 also require the installation of a fire suppression system for certain buildings and areas.

F] TABLE 903.2.11.6
ADDITIONAL REQUIRED SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS

SECTION	SUBJECT
402.5, 402.6.2	Covered and open mall buildings
403.3	High-rise buildings
404.3	Atriums
405.3	Underground structures
407.6	Group I-2
410.7	Stages
411.4	Special amusement buildings
412.3.6	Airport traffic control towers
412.4.6, 412.4.6.1, 412.6.5	Aircraft hangars
415.11.11	Group H-5 HPM exhaust ducts
416.5	Flammable finishes
417.4	Drying rooms
419.5	*Live/work units*
424.3	Children's play structures
507	Unlimited area buildings
509.4	Incidental uses
1029.6.2.3	Smoke-protected assembly seating
IFC	Sprinkler system requirements as set forth in Section 903.2.11.6 of the *International Fire Code*

903.2.11.7 Relocatable buildings within buildings.
Relocatable buildings or structures located within a building with an approved fire sprinkler system shall be provided with fire sprinkler protection within the occupiable space of the building and the space underneath the relocatable building

Exceptions:

1. Sprinkler protection is not required underneath the building when the space is separated from the adjacent space by construction resisting the passage of smoke and heat and combustible storage will not be located there.
2. If the building or structure does not have a roof or ceiling obstructing the overhead sprinklers.
3. Construction trailers and temporary offices used during new building construction prior to occupancy.
4. Movable shopping mall kiosks with a roof or canopy dimension of less than 4 feet on the smallest side.

[F] 903.2.11.8 Buildings exceeding 10,000 square feet.
Notwithstanding any provision of the International Building Code or International Fire Code, as such codes are adopted by the City, throughout all buildings where the total floor area, including basements, exceeds 10,000 square feet. For purposes of this paragraph, portions

`

of buildings separated by one or more fire walls will not be considered a separate building. Existing buildings shall comply with this section when an addition is made to the building and the total floor area, including the basements, of the existing building and the addition combined exceeds 10,000 square feet, or when the value of a structural alteration or repair of an existing building 10,000 square feet in area or greater exceeds 50 percent of the assessed valuation of such existing building, or exceeds 50 percent of the recognized replacement cost of the structure, without consideration of depreciation, as determined under the Marshall Valuation Service Cost Handbook, whichever is greater.

[[F] 903.2.12 During construction.
Automatic sprinkler systems required during construction, *alteration* and demolition operations shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 33 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 903.3 Installation requirements.
Automatic sprinkler systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 903.3.1 through 903.3.8.

[F] 903.3.1 Standards.
Sprinkler systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, ~~unless otherwise permitted by Sections 903.3.1.2 and 903.3.1.3 and other chapters of this code, as applicable.~~ 903.3.1.2 or 903.3.1.3 and other chapters of this code, as applicable. In addition sprinkler systems shall be designed with a buffer to account for water system fluctuations to include a low reservoir condition. Such buffer shall be 5% for static pressures less than 50 p.s.i. and 10% for static pressures above 50 p.s.i.

Exception: Buffers are not required for systems designed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 (NFPA 13 D)

Permit applicants shall independently verify site specific static pressure:

• Prior to initiating sprinkler system.

• Prior to installing any sprinkler piping, including the underground supply.

• Prior to requesting any cover inspections.

[F] 903.3.1.1 NFPA 13 sprinkler systems.
Where the provisions of this code require that a building or portion thereof be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with this section, sprinklers shall be installed throughout in accordance with NFPA 13 except as provided in Sections 903.3.1.1.1 and 903.3.1.1.2.

[F] 903.3.1.1.1 Exempt locations.
Automatic sprinklers shall not be required in the following rooms or areas where such rooms or areas are protected with an *approved* automatic fire detection system in accordance with Section 907.2 that will respond to visible or invisible particles of combustion. Sprinklers shall not be omitted from a room merely because it is damp, of fire-resistance-rated construction or contains electrical equipment.

1. A room where the application of water, or flame and water, constitutes a serious life or fire hazard, when approved by the fire code official.

`

2. A room or space where sprinklers are considered undesirable because of the nature of the contents, where *approved* by the fire code official.

~~3. Generator and transformer rooms separated from the remainder of the building by walls and floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assemblies having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 2 hours.~~

3. In rooms or areas that are of noncombustible construction with wholly noncombustible contents.

4. Fire service access elevator machine rooms and machinery spaces.

5. Machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces associated with occupant evacuation elevators designed in accordance with Section 3008.

6. Elevator machine rooms, elevator machinery spaces, control spaces, or hoistways of traction elevators that comply with NFPA 13 (2013) Section 8.15.5.3.

[F] 903.3.1.1.2 Bathrooms.
In Group R occupancies, other than Group R-4 occupancies, sprinklers shall not be required in bathrooms that do not exceed 55 square feet (5 m^2) in area and are located within individual *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*, provided that walls and ceilings, including the walls and ceilings behind a shower enclosure or tub, are of noncombustible or limited-combustible materials with a 15-minute thermal barrier rating.

[F] 903.3.1.1.3 Seismic coefficient. The coefficient Cp for seismic bracing design calculations in accordance with NFPA 13 shall either use a value of 0.70, or shall use a value based on site specific USGS data.

[F] 903.3.1.2 NFPA 13R sprinkler systems.
Automatic sprinkler systems in Group R occupancies up to and including four stories in height ~~in buildings not exceeding 60 feet (18 288 mm) in height above grade plane~~ shall be permitted to be installed throughout in accordance with NFPA 13R.

~~The number of stories of Group R occupancies constructed in accordance with Sections 510.2 and 510.4 shall be measured from the horizontal assembly creating separate buildings.~~
A building designed in accordance with Washington Administrative Code 51-50-0504, 0510 or Section 510.4 of the International Building Code shall be sprinkled throughout in accordance with NFPA 13.

[F] 903.3.1.2.1 Balconies and decks.
Sprinkler protection shall be provided for exterior balconies, decks and ground floor patios of *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* where the building is of Type V construction, provided there is a roof or deck above. Sidewall sprinklers that are used to protect such areas shall be permitted to be located such that their deflectors are within 1 inch (25 mm) to 6 inches (152 mm) below the structural members and a maximum distance of 14 inches (356 mm) below the deck of the exterior balconies and decks that are constructed of open wood joist construction.

`

[F] 903.3.1.2.2 Open-ended corridors.
Sprinkler protection shall be provided in *open-ended corridors* and associated *exterior stairways* and *ramps* as specified in Section 1027.6, Exception 3.

[F] 903.3.1.3 NFPA 13D sprinkler systems.
Automatic sprinkler systems installed in one- and two-family *dwellings*; Group R-3, Group R-4 Condition 1 and *townhouses* shall be permitted to be installed throughout in accordance with NFPA 13D.

[F] 903.3.2 Quick-response and residential sprinklers.
Where *automatic sprinkler systems* are required by this code, quick-response or residential automatic sprinklers shall be installed in all of the following areas in accordance with Section 903.3.1 and their listings:

1. Throughout all spaces within a smoke compartment containing care recipient *sleeping units* in Group I-2 in accordance with this code.

2. Throughout all spaces within a smoke compartment containing treatment rooms in ambulatory care facilities.

3. *Dwelling units* and *sleeping units* in Group I-1 and R occupancies.

4. Light-hazard occupancies as defined in NFPA 13.

[F] 903.3.3 Obstructed locations.
Automatic sprinklers shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 13 obstruction criteria and the listing requirements of the sprinkler head. ~~with due regard to obstructions that will delay activation or obstruct the water distribution pattern.~~ Automatic sprinklers shall be installed in or under covered kiosks, displays, booths, concession stands, or equipment that exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm) in width and depth, and for all multi-level exhibit booths. Not less than a 3 foot (914 mm) clearance shall be maintained between automatic sprinklers and the top of piles of combustible fibers.

Exception: Kitchen equipment under exhaust hoods protected with a fire-extinguishing system in accordance with Section 904.

[F] 903.3.4 Actuation.
Automatic sprinkler systems shall be automatically actuated unless specifically provided for in this code.

[F] 903.3.5 Water supplies.
Water supplies for *automatic sprinkler systems* shall comply with this section and the standards referenced in Section 903.3.1. The potable water supply shall be protected against backflow in accordance with the requirements of this section and the *International Plumbing Code*. For connections to public waterworks systems, the water supply test used for design of fire protection systems shall be adjusted to account for seasonal and daily pressure fluctuations based on information from the water supply authority and as approved by the fire code official.

[F] 903.3.5.1 Domestic services.
Where the domestic service provides the water supply for the *automatic sprinkler system*, the supply shall be in accordance with this section.

`

[F] 903.3.5.2 Residential combination services.
A single combination water supply shall be allowed provided that the domestic demand is added to the sprinkler demand as required by NFPA 13R.

903.3.5.3 Underground portions of fire protection system water supply piping.
The installation or modification of an underground water main, public or private, supplying a water based fire protection system shall be in accordance with NFPA 24 and chapter 18.160 RCW. Piping and appurtenances downstream of the first control valve on the lateral or service line from the distribution main to one-foot above finished floor shall be approved by the fire code official. Such underground piping shall be installed by a fire sprinkler system contractor licensed in accordance with chapter 18.160 RCW and holding either a Level U or a Level 3 license. For underground piping supplying systems installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2, a Level 2, 3, or U licensed contractor is acceptable.

[F] 903.3.6 Hose threads.
Fire hose threads and fittings used in connection with *automatic sprinkler systems* shall be as prescribed by the fire code official.

[F] 903.3.7 Fire department connections.
Fire department connections for *automatic sprinkler systems* shall be installed in accordance with Section 912.

[F] 903.3.8 Limited area sprinkler systems.
Limited area sprinkler systems shall be in accordance with the standards listed in Section 903.3.1 except as provided in Sections 903.3.8.1 through 903.3.8.5.

903.3.8.1 Number of sprinklers.
Limited area sprinkler systems shall not exceed six sprinklers in any single *fire area*.

903.3.8.2 Occupancy hazard classification.
Only areas classified by NFPA 13 as Light Hazard or Ordinary Hazard Group 1 shall be permitted to be protected by limited area sprinkler systems.

903.3.8.3 Piping arrangement.
Where a limited area sprinkler system is installed in a building with an automatic wet standpipe system, sprinklers shall be supplied by the standpipe system. Where a limited area sprinkler system is installed in a building without an automatic wet standpipe system, water shall be permitted to be supplied by the plumbing system provided that the plumbing system is capable of simultaneously supplying domestic and sprinkler demands.

903.3.8.4 Supervision.
Control valves shall not be installed between the water supply and sprinklers unless the valves are of an *approved* indicating type that are supervised or secured in the open position.

903.3.8.5 Calculations.
Hydraulic calculations in accordance with NFPA 13 shall be provided to demonstrate that the available water flow and pressure are adequate to supply all sprinklers installed in any single *fire area* with discharge densities corresponding to the hazard classification.

`

[F] 903.4 Sprinkler system supervision and alarms.
Valves controlling the water supply for *automatic sprinkler systems*, pumps, tanks, water levels and temperatures, critical air pressures and water flow switches on all sprinkler systems shall be electrically supervised by a *listed* fire alarm control unit.

Exceptions:

1. *Automatic sprinkler systems* protecting one- and two-family *dwellings*.

2. Limited area sprinkler systems in accordance with Section 903.3.8.

3. *Automatic sprinkler systems* installed in accordance with NFPA 13R where a common supply main is used to supply both domestic water and the *automatic sprinkler system*, and a separate shutoff valve for the *automatic sprinkler system* is not provided.

4. Jockey pump control valves that are sealed or locked in the open position.

5. Control valves to commercial kitchen hoods, paint spray booths or dip tanks that are sealed or locked in the open position.

6. Valves controlling the fuel supply to fire pump engines that are sealed or locked in the open position.

7. Trim valves to pressure switches in dry, preaction and deluge sprinkler systems that are sealed or locked in the open position.

[F] 903.4.1 Monitoring.
Alarm, supervisory and trouble signals shall be distinctly different and shall be automatically transmitted to an *approved* supervising station or, where *approved* by the fire code official, shall sound an audible signal at a *constantly attended location*.

Exceptions:

1. Underground key or hub valves in roadway boxes provided by the municipality or public utility are not required to be monitored.

2. Backflow prevention device test valves located in limited area sprinkler system supply piping shall be locked in the open position. In occupancies required to be equipped with a fire alarm system, the backflow preventer valves shall be electrically supervised by a tamper switch installed in accordance with NFPA 72 and separately annunciated.

[F] 903.4.2 Alarms.
An approved audible device, located on the exterior of the building in an approved location, shall be connected to each *automatic sprinkler system*. Such sprinkler water flow alarm devices shall be activated by water flow equivalent to the flow of a single sprinkler of the smallest orifice size installed in the system. Where a fire alarm system is installed, actuation of the *automatic sprinkler system* shall actuate the building fire alarm system.

`

[F] 903.4.3 Floor control valves.
Approved supervised indicating control valves shall be provided at the point of connection to the riser on each floor. ~~in high-rise buildings.~~ The floor control valves shall be located within interior exit stairways and within 6' of floors or landings unless chains or other approved devices are readily available.

Exception: In buildings without interior exit stairways, the location of the floor control valves shall be determined by the fire code official.

[F] 903.5 Testing and maintenance.
Sprinkler systems shall be tested and maintained in accordance with ~~the *International Fire Code*.~~ Section 903.5.1.

[F] 903.5.1 Fire sprinkler and standpipe main/express drains.
Fire sprinkler and standpipe main/express drains shall be positioned to drain to the sanitary sewer. Additionally maintenance or testing discharges from fire pumps shall be treated in order to comply with the National Pollution Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) requirements.

Point of Information

Water drained or otherwise discharged from a fire sprinkler system, standpipe or fire pump is considered an "illicit discharge" and must drain to the sanitary sewer or be treated in order to discharge to storm drains, ditches, or water bodies. See (http://www.bellevuewa.gov/pdf/Utilities/Fire_Confidence-WQ_314-12.pdf) for additional information.

SECTION 904
ALTERNATIVE AUTOMATIC FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS

[F] 904.1 General.
Automatic fire-extinguishing systems, other than *automatic sprinkler systems*, shall be designed, installed, inspected, tested and maintained in accordance with the provisions of this section and the applicable referenced standards.

[F] 904.2 Where permitted.
Automatic fire-extinguishing systems installed as an alternative to the required *automatic sprinkler systems* of Section 903 shall be *approved* by the fire code official.

[F] 904.2.1 Restriction on using automatic sprinkler system exceptions or reductions.
Automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall not be considered alternatives for the purposes of exceptions or reductions allowed for *automatic sprinkler systems* or by other requirements of this code.

[F] 904.2.2 Commercial hood and duct systems.
Each required commercial kitchen exhaust hood and duct system required by Section 609 of the *International Fire Code* or Chapter 5 of the *International Mechanical Code* to have a Type I hood shall be protected with an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system installed in accordance with this code.

[F] 904.3 Installation.
Automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be installed in accordance with this section.

`

[F] 904.3.1 Electrical wiring.
Electrical wiring shall be in accordance with NFPA 70.

[F] 904.3.2 Actuation.
Automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be automatically actuated and provided with a manual means of actuation in accordance with Section 904.11.1. Where more than one hazard could be simultaneously involved in fire due to their proximity, all hazards shall be protected by a single system designed to protect all hazards that could become involved.

> **Exception:** Multiple systems shall be permitted to be installed if they are designed to operate simultaneously.

[F] 904.3.3 System interlocking.
Automatic equipment interlocks with fuel shutoffs, ventilation controls, door closers, window shutters, conveyor openings, smoke and heat vents and other features necessary for proper operation of the fire-extinguishing system shall be provided as required by the design and installation standard utilized for the hazard.

[F] 904.3.4 Alarms and warning signs.
Where alarms are required to indicate the operation of automatic fire-extinguishing systems, distinctive audible and visible alarms and warning signs shall be provided to warn of pending agent discharge. Where exposure to automatic-extinguishing agents poses a hazard to persons and a delay is required to ensure the evacuation of occupants before agent discharge, a separate warning signal shall be provided to alert occupants once agent discharge has begun. Audible signals shall be in accordance with Section 907.5.2.

[F] 904.3.5 Monitoring.
Where a building fire alarm system is installed, automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be monitored by the building fire alarm system in accordance with NFPA 72.

[F] 904.4 Inspection and testing.
Automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be inspected and tested in accordance with the provisions of this section prior to acceptance.

[F] 904.4.1 Inspection.
Prior to conducting final acceptance tests, all of the following items shall be inspected:

1. Hazard specification for consistency with design hazard.
2. Type, location and spacing of automatic- and manual-initiating devices.
3. Size, placement and position of nozzles or discharge orifices.
4. Location and identification of audible and visible alarm devices.
5. Identification of devices with proper designations.
6. Operating instructions.

[F] 904.4.2 Alarm testing.
Notification appliances, connections to fire alarm systems and connections to *approved* supervising stations shall be tested in accordance with this section and Section 907 to verify proper operation.

`

[F] 904.4.2.1 Audible and visible signals.
The audibility and visibility of notification appliances signaling agent discharge or system operation, where required, shall be verified.

[F] 904.4.3 Monitor testing.
Connections to protected premises and supervising station fire alarm systems shall be tested to verify proper identification and retransmission of alarms from automatic fire-extinguishing systems.

[F] 904.5 Wet-chemical systems.
Wet-chemical extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 17A and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

[F] 904.6 Dry-chemical systems.
Dry-chemical extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 17 and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

[F] 904.7 Foam systems.
Foam-extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 11 and NFPA 16 and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

[F] 904.8 Carbon dioxide systems.
Carbon dioxide extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 12 and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

[F] 904.9 Halon systems.
Halogenated extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 12A and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

[F] 904.10 Clean-agent systems.
Clean-agent fire-extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 2001 and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

[F] 904.11 Automatic water mist systems.
Automatic water mist systems shall be permitted in applications that are consistent with the applicable listing or approvals and shall comply with Sections 904.11.1 through 904.11.3.

[F] 904.11.1 Design and installation requirements.
Automatic water mist systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 904.11.1.1 through 904.11.1.4.

[F] 904.11.1.1 General.
Automatic water mist systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 750 and the manufacturer's instructions.

`

[F] 904.11.1.2 Actuation.
Automatic water mist systems shall be automatically actuated.

[F] 904.11.1.3 Water supply protection.
Connections to a potable water supply shall be protected against backflow in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

[F] 904.11.1.4 Secondary water supply.
Where a secondary water supply is required for an *automatic sprinkler system*, an *automatic water mist system* shall be provided with an *approved* secondary water supply.

[F] 904.11.2 Water mist system supervision and alarms.
Supervision and alarms shall be provided as required for *automatic sprinkler systems* in accordance with Section 903.4.

[F] 904.11.2.1 Monitoring.
Monitoring shall be provided as required for *automatic sprinkler systems* in accordance with Section 903.4.1.

[F] 904.11.2.2 Alarms.
Alarms shall be provided as required for *automatic sprinkler systems* in accordance with Section 903.4.2.

[F] 904.11.2.3 Floor control valves.
Floor control valves shall be provided as required for *automatic sprinkler systems* in accordance with Section 903.4.3.

[F] 904.11.3 Testing and maintenance.
Automatic water mist systems shall be tested and maintained in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 904.12 Commercial cooking systems.
The automatic fire-extinguishing system for commercial cooking systems shall be of a type recognized for protection of commercial cooking equipment and exhaust systems of the type and arrangement protected. Pre-engineered automatic dry- and wet-chemical extinguishing systems shall be tested in accordance with UL 300 and *listed* and *labeled* for the intended application. Other types of automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* for specific use as protection for commercial cooking operations. The system shall be installed in accordance with this code, its listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Automatic fire-extinguishing systems of the following types shall be installed in accordance with the referenced standard indicated, as follows:

1. Carbon dioxide extinguishing systems, NFPA 12.

2. *Automatic sprinkler systems*, NFPA 13.

3. Foam-water sprinkler system or foam-water spray systems, NFPA 16.

4. Dry-chemical extinguishing systems, NFPA 17.

5. Wet-chemical extinguishing systems, NFPA 17A.

`

Exception: Factory-built commercial cooking recirculating systems that are tested in accordance with UL 710B and *listed*, *labeled* and installed in accordance with Section 304.1 of the *International Mechanical Code*.

[F] 904.12.1 Manual system operation.
A manual actuation device shall be located at or near a *means of egress* from the cooking area not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) from the kitchen exhaust system. The manual actuation device shall be installed not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) or less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the floor and shall clearly identify the hazard protected. The manual actuation shall require a maximum force of 40 pounds (178 N) and a maximum movement of 14 inches (356 mm) to actuate the fire suppression system.

Exception: *Automatic sprinkler systems* shall not be required to be equipped with manual actuation means.

[F] 904.12.2 System interconnection.
The actuation of the fire suppression system shall automatically shut down the fuel or electrical power supply to the cooking equipment. The fuel and electrical supply reset shall be manual.

[F] 904.12.3 Carbon dioxide systems.
Where carbon dioxide systems are used, there shall be a nozzle at the top of the ventilating duct. Additional nozzles that are symmetrically arranged to give uniform distribution shall be installed within vertical ducts exceeding 20 feet (6096 mm) and horizontal ducts exceeding 50 feet (15 240 mm). *Dampers* shall be installed at either the top or the bottom of the duct and shall be arranged to operate automatically upon activation of the fire-extinguishing system. Where the *damper* is installed at the top of the duct, the top nozzle shall be immediately below the *damper*. Automatic carbon dioxide fire-extinguishing systems shall be sufficiently sized to protect against all hazards venting through a common duct simultaneously.

[F] 904.12.3.1 Ventilation system.
Commercial-type cooking equipment protected by an automatic carbon dioxide-extinguishing system shall be arranged to shut off the ventilation system upon activation.

[F] 904.12.4 Special provisions for automatic sprinkler systems.
Automatic sprinkler systems protecting commercial-type cooking equipment shall be supplied from a separate, readily accessible, indicating-type control valve that is identified.

[F] 904.12.4.1 Listed sprinklers.
Sprinklers used for the protection of fryers shall be tested in accordance with UL 199E, *listed* for that application and installed in accordance with their listing.

[F] 904.13 Domestic cooking systems in Group I-2 Condition 1.
In Group I-2 Condition 1, occupancies where cooking facilities are installed in accordance with Section 407.2.6 of this code, the domestic cooking hood provided over the cooktop or range shall be equipped with an automatic fire-extinguishing system of a type recognized for protection of domestic cooking equipment. Pre-engineered automatic extinguishing systems shall be tested in accordance with UL 300A and listed and labeled for the intended application. The system shall be installed in accordance with this code, its listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

`

[F] 904.13.1 Manual system operation and interconnection.
Manual actuation and system interconnection for the hood suppression system shall be installed in accordance with Sections 904.12.1 and 904.12.2, respectively.

[F] 904.13.2 Portable fire extinguishers for domestic cooking equipment in Group I-2 Condition 1.
A portable fire extinguisher complying with Section 906 shall be installed within a 30-foot (9144 mm) distance of travel from domestic cooking appliances.

SECTION 905
STANDPIPE SYSTEMS

[F] 905.1 General.
Standpipe systems shall be provided in new buildings and structures in accordance with Sections 905.2 through 905.10. In buildings used for high-piled combustible storage, fire protection shall be in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 905.2 Installation standard.
Standpipe systems shall be installed in accordance with this section and NFPA 14. Fire department connections for standpipe systems shall be in accordance with Section 912.

[F] 905.3 Required installations.
Standpipe systems shall be installed where required by Sections 905.3.1 through 905.3.8. Standpipe systems are allowed to be combined with *automatic sprinkler systems*.

Exception: Standpipe systems are not required in Group R-3 occupancies.

[F] 905.3.1 Height.
~~Class III~~ Class I standpipe systems shall be installed throughout buildings where the floor level of the highest *story* is located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, or where the floor level of the lowest *story* is located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) below the highest level of fire department vehicle access.

Exceptions:

~~1. Class I standpipes are allowed in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.~~
~~2. Class I manual standpipes are allowed in *open parking garages* where the highest floor is located not more than 150 feet (45 720 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.~~
~~3. Class I manual dry standpipes are allowed in *open parking garages* that are subject to freezing temperatures, provided that the hose connections are located as required for Class II standpipes in accordance with Section 905.5.~~
~~4. Class I standpipes are allowed in basements equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system.~~

In determining the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, it shall not be required to consider either of the following:

1. Recessed loading docks for four vehicles or less.

2. Conditions where topography makes access from the fire department vehicle to the building impractical or impossible.

`

[F] 905.3.2 Group A.
Class I automatic wet standpipes shall be provided in nonsprinklered Group A buildings having an *occupant load* exceeding 1,000 persons.

Exceptions:

1. Open-air-seating spaces without enclosed spaces.

2. Class I automatic dry and semiautomatic dry standpipes or manual wet standpipes are allowed in buildings that are not high-rise buildings.

[F] 905.3.3 Covered and open mall buildings.
Covered mall and open mall buildings shall be equipped throughout with a standpipe system where required by Section 905.3.1. Mall buildings not required to be equipped with a standpipe system by Section 905.3.1 shall be equipped with Class I hose connections connected to the *automatic sprinkler system* sized to deliver water at 250 gallons per minute (946.4 L/min) at the most hydraulically remote hose connection while concurrently supplying the automatic sprinkler system demand. The standpipe system shall be designed to not exceed a 50 pounds per square inch (psi) (345 kPa) residual pressure loss with a flow of 250 gallons per minute (946.4 L/min) from the fire department connection to the hydraulically most remote hose connection. Hose connections shall be provided at each of the following locations:

1. Within the mall at the entrance to each *exit* passageway or *corridor*.

2. At each floor-level landing within *interior exit stairways* opening directly on the mall.

3. At exterior public entrances to the mall of a covered mall building.

4. At public entrances at the perimeter line of an open mall building.

5. At other locations as necessary so that the distance to reach all portions of a tenant space does not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm) from a hose connection.

[F] 905.3.4 Stages.
Stages greater than 1,000 square feet in area (93 m2) shall be equipped with a Class III wet standpipe system with 1 1/2-inch and 2 1/2-inch (38 mm and 64 mm) hose connections on each side of the stage.

Exception: Where the building or area is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system, a 1 1/2 inch (38 mm) hose connection shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 13 or in accordance with NFPA 14 for Class II or III standpipes.

[F] 905.3.4.1 Hose and cabinet.
The 1 1/2-inch (38 mm) hose connections shall be equipped with sufficient lengths of 1-1/2-inch (38 mm) hose to provide fire protection for the stage area. Hose connections shall be equipped with an approved adjustable fog nozzle and be mounted in a cabinet or on a rack.

[F] 905.3.5 Underground buildings.
Underground buildings shall be equipped throughout with a Class I automatic wet or manual wet standpipe system.

`

[F] 905.3.6 Helistops and heliports.
Buildings with a rooftop *helistop* or *heliport* shall be equipped with a Class I or III standpipe system extended to the roof level on which the *helistop* or *heliport* is located in accordance with Section 2007.5 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 905.3.7 Marinas and boatyards.
Standpipes in marinas and boatyards shall comply with Chapter 36 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 905.3.8 Rooftop gardens and landscaped roofs.
Buildings or structures that have rooftop gardens or landscaped roofs and that are equipped with a standpipe system shall have the standpipe system extended to the roof level on which the rooftop garden or landscaped roof is located.

[F] 905.3.9 High Rise Building Standpipes.
Standpipe risers shall be combination standpipe/sprinkler risers using a minimum pipe size of 6 inch. One 2-1/2 inch hose connection shall be provided on every intermediate floor level landing in every required stairway and elsewhere as required by NFPA 14. Where, and only where, static or residual water pressures at any hose outlet exceeds 175 psi (1207 kPa), approved pressure-regulating devices shall be installed to limit the pressure to a range between 125 and 175 psi at not less than 300 gpm. The pressure on the inlet side of the pressure regulating device shall not exceed the rated working pressure of the device. An additional non-regulated hose connection located directly below the PRV or an equally sized bypass around the pressure regulating device with a normally closed control valve shall be provided at each reduced pressure connection.

Each non-regulated hose connection shall be labeled “High Pressure – No PRV”. The sign shall have ½” white letters on a red background.

Point of Information

Additional flow and pressure requirements are contained in NFPA 14. Designers should be cognizant of space considerations within stair shafts and additional signage needed for the PRV by-pass control valves.

[F] 905.3.10 Vertical standpipes served by Fire Pumps.
Where vertical standpipes are served by fire pumps a check valve shall be installed at the base of vertical standpipe.

[F] 905.4 Location of Class I standpipe hose connections.
Class I standpipe hose connections shall be provided in all of the following locations:

1. In every required *interior exit stairway*, a hose connection shall be provided for each story above and below grade. Hose connections shall be located at an intermediate landing between stories, unless otherwise *approved* by the fire code official. Where stairs are required to provide roof access, the standpipe roof connections shall be located adjacent to the stair opening on the roof.

2. On each side of the wall adjacent to the *exit* opening of a *horizontal exit*.

   Exceptions:
   1. Where floor areas adjacent to a *horizontal exit* are reachable from an *interior exit stairway* hose connection by a 30-foot (9144 mm) hose stream from a

`

nozzle attached to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose, a hose connection shall not be required at the *horizontal exit*.

2. When the Fire Code Official determines that a standpipe connection is not needed.

3. In every *exit* passageway, at the entrance from the *exit* passageway to other areas of a building.

   Exception: Where floor areas adjacent to an *exit* passageway are reachable from an *interior exit stairway* hose connection by a 30-foot (9144 mm) hose stream from a nozzle attached to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose, a hose connection shall not be required at the entrance from the *exit* passageway to other areas of the building.

4. In covered and open mall buildings, adjacent to each exterior public entrance to the mall, ~~and~~ adjacent to each entrance from an exit passageway or exit corridor to the mall, at each intermediate landing within required enclosed stairways, and at other locations as necessary so that the distance to reach all portions of a tenant space does not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm) from a hose connection. ~~In open mall buildings, adjacent to each public entrance to the mall at the perimeter line and adjacent to each entrance from an exit passageway or exit corridor to the mall.~~

5. Where the roof has a slope less than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33.3-percent slope), at least one standpipe shall be provided with a 2 ½ in. hose connection located on the roof. Additional hose connections shall be provided so that all portions of the roof are within 200 feet of hose travel distance from a standpipe hose connection. The hose connection(s) shall be at least 10 feet (3048 mm) from the roof edge, skylight, light well or other similar openings, unless protected by a 42-inch-high (1,067 mm) guardrail or equivalent. All roof hose connections shall be arranged to be operable without entering the building. Roof connections in high-rise buildings are allowed to be located at the highest landing of a stairway with stair access to the roof. An additional hose connection shall be provided at the top of the most hydraulically remote standpipe for testing purposes. ~~a hose connection shall be located to serve the roof or at the highest landing of an *interior exit stairway* with access to the roof provided in accordance with Section 1011.12.~~

6. Where the most remote portion of a nonsprinklered floor or *story* is more than 150 feet (45 720 mm) from a hose connection or the most remote portion of a sprinklered floor or *story* is more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) from a hose connection, ~~the fire code official is authorized to require that additional hose connections be provided in *approved* locations.~~ additional hose connections shall be provided in interior exit stairways or protected locations that are accessed through protected enclosures. The protected enclosure shall be a corridor constructed as a smoke barrier from the exit enclosure to the standpipe connection.

   Exception: Hose connections in parking garages must be located in vertical exit enclosures, protected locations, immediately adjacent to exterior exit doors, loading docks or other areas as approved by the fire code official. Subject to the approval of the fire code official the travel distance may also be increased to a maximum distance of 240 feet.

Point of Information

Chapter 10 of this code outlines the requirements for stairways to the roof and roof access. This section (905.4) identifies the locations of standpipes and hose connections, but does

`

not dictate the need for additional stairways to the roof or roof access.

[F] 905.4.1 Protection.
Risers and laterals of Class I standpipe systems not located within an *interior exit stairway* shall be protected by a degree of *fire resistance* equal to that required for vertical enclosures in the building in which they are located.

Exception: In buildings equipped throughout with an *approved automatic sprinkler system*, laterals that are not located within an *interior exit stairway* are not required to be enclosed within fire-resistance-rated construction.

[F] 905.4.2 Interconnection.
In buildings where more than one standpipe is provided, the standpipes shall be interconnected in accordance with NFPA 14.

[F] 905.5 Location of Class II standpipe hose connections.
Class II standpipe hose connections shall be accessible and located so that all portions of the building are within 30 feet (9144 mm) of a nozzle attached to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose.

[F] 905.5.1 Groups A-1 and A-2.
In Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies having *occupant loads* exceeding 1,000 persons, hose connections shall be located on each side of any stage, on each side of the rear of the auditorium, on each side of the balcony and on each tier of dressing rooms.

[F] 905.5.2 Protection.
Fire-resistance-rated protection of risers and laterals of Class II standpipe systems is not required.

[F] 905.5.3 Class II system 1-inch hose.
A minimum 1-inch (25 mm) hose shall be allowed to be used for hose stations in light-hazard occupancies where investigated and *listed* for this service and where *approved* by the fire code official.

[F] 905.6 Location of Class III standpipe hose connections.
Class III standpipe systems shall have hose connections located as required for Class I standpipes in Section 905.4 and shall have Class II hose connections as required in Section 905.5.

[F] 905.6.1 Protection.
Risers and laterals of Class III standpipe systems shall be protected as required for Class I systems in accordance with Section 905.4.1.

[F] 905.6.2 Interconnection.
In buildings where more than one Class III standpipe is provided, the standpipes shall be interconnected in accordance with NFPA 14.

[F] 905.7 Cabinets.
Cabinets containing fire-fighting equipment such as standpipes, fire hoses, fire extinguishers or fire department valves shall not be blocked from use or obscured from view.

[F] 905.7.1 Cabinet equipment identification.
Cabinets shall be identified in an *approved* manner by a permanently attached sign with

`

letters not less than 2 inches (51 mm) high in a color that contrasts with the background color, indicating the equipment contained therein.

Exceptions:

1. Doors not large enough to accommodate a written sign shall be marked with a permanently attached pictogram of the equipment contained therein.

2. Doors that have either an *approved* visual identification clear glass panel or a complete glass door panel are not required to be marked.

[F] 905.7.2 Locking cabinet doors.
Cabinets shall be unlocked.

Exceptions:

1. Visual identification panels of glass or other *approved* transparent frangible material that is easily broken and allows access.

2. *Approved* locking arrangements.

3. Group I-3.

[F] 905.8 Dry standpipes.
Dry standpipes shall not be installed.

Exception: Where subject to freezing and in accordance with NFPA 14 when approved by the fire code official.

[F] 905.9 Valve supervision.
Valves controlling water supplies shall be supervised in the open position so that a change in the normal position of the valve will generate a supervisory signal at the supervising station required by Section 903.4. Where a fire alarm system is provided, a signal shall be transmitted to the control unit.

Exceptions:

1. Valves to underground key or hub valves in roadway boxes provided by the municipality or public utility do not require supervision.

2. Valves locked in the normal position and inspected as provided in this code in buildings not equipped with a fire alarm system.

[F] 905.10 During construction.
Standpipe systems required during construction and demolition operations shall be provided in accordance with Section 3311.

SECTION 906
PORTABLE FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

[F] 906.1 Where required.
Portable fire extinguishers shall be installed in all of the following locations:

`

1. In Group A, B, E, F, H, I, M, R-1, R-2, R-4 and S occupancies.

   Exception: In Group R-2 occupancies, portable fire extinguishers shall be required only in locations specified in Items 2 through 6 where each *dwelling unit* is provided with a portable fire extinguisher having a minimum rating of 1-A:10-B:C.

2. Within 30 feet (9144 mm) of commercial cooking equipment.

3. In areas where flammable or combustible liquids are stored, used or dispensed.

4. On each floor of structures under construction, except Group R-3 occupancies, in accordance with Section 3315.1 of the *International Fire Code*.

5. Where required by the *International Fire Code* sections indicated in Table 906.1.

6. Special-hazard areas, including but not limited to laboratories, computer rooms and generator rooms, where required by the fire code official.

[F] TABLE 906.1
ADDITIONAL REQUIRED PORTABLE FIRE EXTINGUISHERS IN THE INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE

IFC SECTION	SUBJECT
303.5	Asphalt kettles
307.5	Open burning
308.1.3	Open flames—torches
309.4	Powered industrial trucks
2005.2	Aircraft towing vehicles
2005.3	Aircraft welding apparatus
2005.4	Aircraft fuel-servicing tank vehicles
2005.5	Aircraft hydrant fuel-servicing vehicles
2005.6	Aircraft fuel-dispensing stations
2007.7	Heliports and helistops
2108.4	Dry cleaning plants
2305.5	Motor fuel-dispensing facilities
2310.6.4	Marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities
2311.6	Repair garages
2404.4.1	Spray-finishing operations
2405.4.2	Dip-tank operations
2406.4.2	Powder-coating areas
2804.3	Lumberyards/woodworking facilities
2808.8	Recycling facilities
2809.5	Exterior lumber storage
2903.5	Organic-coating areas
3006.3	Industrial ovens
3104.12	Tents and membrane structures
3206.10	High-piled storage
3315.1	Buildings under construction or demolition

`

3317.3	Roofing operations
3408.2	Tire rebuilding/storage
3504.2.6	Welding and other hot work
3604.4	Marinas
3703.6	Combustible fibers
5703.2.1	Flammable and combustible liquids, general
5704.3.3.1	Indoor storage of flammable and combustible liquids
5704.3.7.5.2	Liquid storage rooms for flammable and combustible liquids
5705.4.9	Solvent distillation units
5706.2.7	Farms and construction sites—flammable and combustible liquids storage
5706.4.10.1	Bulk plants and terminals for flammable and combustible liquids
5706.5.4.5	Commercial, industrial, governmental or manufacturing establishments—fuel dispensing
5706.6.4	Tank vehicles for flammable and combustible liquids
5906.5.7	Flammable solids
6108.2	LP-gas

[F] 906.2 General requirements.
Portable fire extinguishers shall be selected and installed in accordance with this section and NFPA 10.

Exceptions:

1. The distance of travel to reach an extinguisher shall not apply to the spectator seating portions of Group A-5 occupancies.

2. In Group I-3, portable fire extinguishers shall be permitted to be located at staff locations.

[F] 906.3 Size and distribution.
The size and distribution of portable fire extinguishers shall be in accordance with Sections 906.3.1 through 906.3.4.

[F]TABLE 906.3(1)
FIRE EXTINGUISHERS FOR CLASS A FIRE HAZARDS

	LIGHT (Low) HAZARD OCCUPANCY	**ORDINARY (Moderate) HAZARD OCCUPANCY**	**EXTRA (High) HAZARD OCCUPANCY**
Minimum rated single extinguisher	2-A[c]	2-A	4-A[a]
Maximum floor area per unit of A	3,000 square feet	1,500 square feet	1,000 square feet
Maximum floor area for extinguisher[b]	11,250 square feet	11,250 square feet	11,250 square feet

`

Maximum distance of travel to extinguisher	75 feet	75 feet	75 feet

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929m^2, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.

a. Two $2\frac{1}{2}$-gallon water-type extinguishers shall be deemed the equivalent of one 4-A rated extinguisher.

b. Annex E.3.3 of NFPA 10 provides more details concerning application of the maximum floor area criteria.

c. Two water-type extinguishers each with a 1-A rating shall be deemed the equivalent of one 2-A rated extinguisher for Light (Low) Hazard Occupancies.

[F] TABLE 906.3(2)
FIRE EXTINGUISHERS FOR FLAMMABLE OR COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS WITH DEPTHS LESS THAN OR EQUAL TO 0.25 INCH

TYPE OF HAZARD	BASIC MINIMUM EXTINGUISHER RATING	MAXIMUM DISTANCE OF TRAVEL TO EXTINGUISHERS (feet)
Light (Low)	5-B 10-B	30 50
Ordinary (Moderate)	10-B 20-B	30 50
Extra (High)	40-B 80-B	30 50

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

Note: For requirements on water-soluble flammable liquids and alternative sizing criteria, see Section 5.5 of NFPA 10.

[F] 906.3.1 Class A fire hazards.
The minimum sizes and distribution of portable fire extinguishers for occupancies that involve primarily Class A fire hazards shall comply with Table 906.3(1).

[F] 906.3.2 Class B fire hazards.
Portable fire extinguishers for occupancies involving flammable or combustible liquids with depths less than or equal to 0.25-inch (6.4 mm) shall be selected and placed in accordance with Table 906.3(2).

Portable fire extinguishers for occupancies involving flammable or combustible liquids with a depth of greater than 0.25-inch (6.4 mm) shall be selected and placed in accordance with NFPA 10.

[F] 906.3.3 Class C fire hazards.
Portable fire extinguishers for Class C fire hazards shall be selected and placed on the basis of the anticipated Class A or B hazard.

[F] 906.3.4 Class D fire hazards.
Portable fire extinguishers for occupancies involving combustible metals shall be selected and placed in accordance with NFPA 10.

`

[F] 906.4 Cooking grease fires.
Fire extinguishers provided for the protection of cooking grease fires shall be of an *approved* type compatible with the automatic fire-extinguishing system agent and in accordance with Section 904.12.5 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 906.5 Conspicuous location.
Portable fire extinguishers shall be located in conspicuous locations where they will be readily accessible and immediately available for use. These locations shall be along normal paths of travel, unless the fire code official determines that the hazard posed indicates the need for placement away from normal paths of travel.

[F] 906.6 Unobstructed and unobscured.
Portable fire extinguishers shall not be obstructed or obscured from view. In rooms or areas in which visual obstruction cannot be completely avoided, means shall be provided to indicate the locations of extinguishers.

[F] 906.7 Hangers and brackets.
Hand-held portable fire extinguishers, not housed in cabinets, shall be installed on the hangers or brackets supplied. Hangers or brackets shall be securely anchored to the mounting surface in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

[F] 906.8 Cabinets.
Cabinets used to house portable fire extinguishers shall not be locked.

Exceptions:

1. Where portable fire extinguishers subject to malicious use or damage are provided with a means of ready access.

2. In Group I-3 occupancies and in mental health areas in Group I-2 occupancies, access to portable fire extinguishers shall be permitted to be locked or to be located in staff locations provided the staff has keys.

[F] 906.9 Extinguisher installation.
The installation of portable fire extinguishers shall be in accordance with Sections 906.9.1 through 906.9.3.

[F] 906.9.1 Extinguishers weighing 40 pounds or less.
Portable fire extinguishers having a gross weight not exceeding 40 pounds (18 kg) shall be installed so that their tops are not more than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the floor.

[F] 906.9.2 Extinguishers weighing more than 40 pounds.
Hand-held portable fire extinguishers having a gross weight exceeding 40 pounds (18 kg) shall be installed so that their tops are not more than 3.5 feet (1067 mm) above the floor.

[F] 906.9.3 Floor clearance.
The clearance between the floor and the bottom of installed hand-held portable fire extinguishers shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

[F] 906.10 Wheeled units.
Wheeled fire extinguishers shall be conspicuously located in a designated location.

`

SECTION 907
FIRE ALARM AND DETECTION SYSTEMS

[F] 907.1 General.
This section covers the application, installation, performance and maintenance of fire alarm systems and their components in new and existing buildings and structures. The requirements of Section 907.2 are applicable to new buildings and structures and new fire alarm systems including replacement of existing fire alarm control panels being installed in existing buildings and structures. The requirements of International Fire Code Section 907.9 are applicable to existing buildings and structures. For the purpose of this section, fire barriers shall not be considered to create a separate building or structure. Buildings and structures required by this section to be provided with a fire alarm system shall be provided with a single fire alarm system unless otherwise approved by the fire code official.

[F] 907.1.1 Construction documents.
Construction documents for fire alarm systems shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and show in detail that it will conform to the provisions of this code, the *International Fire Code* and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the fire code official.

[F] 907.1.2 Fire alarm shop drawings.
Shop drawings for fire alarm systems shall be submitted for review and approval prior to system installation, and shall include, but not be limited to, all of the following where applicable to the system being installed:

1. A floor plan that indicates the use of all rooms.
2. Locations of alarm-initiating devices.
3. Locations of alarm notification appliances, including candela ratings for visible alarm notification appliances.
4. Design minimum audibility level for occupant notification.
5. Location of fire alarm control unit, transponders and notification power supplies.
6. Annunciators.
7. Power connection.
8. Battery calculations.
9. Conductor type and sizes.
10. Voltage drop calculations.
11. Manufacturers' data sheets indicating model numbers and listing information for equipment, devices and materials.
12. Details of ceiling height and construction.
13. The interface of fire safety control functions.

`

14. Classification of the supervising station.

15. A narrative and input/output matrix that supports the approved exiting plan for the building.

[F] 907.1.3 Equipment.
Systems and components shall be *listed* and *approved* for the purpose for which they are installed.

[F] 907.2 Where required—new buildings and structures.
An *approved* fire alarm system installed in accordance with the provisions of this code and NFPA 72 shall be provided in new buildings and structures in accordance with Sections 907.2.1 through 907.2.23 and provide occupant notification in accordance with Section 907.5, unless other requirements are provided by another section of this code.

Not fewer than one manual fire alarm box shall be provided in an *approved* location to initiate a fire alarm signal for fire alarm systems employing automatic fire detectors or waterflow detection devices. Where other sections of this code allow elimination of fire alarm boxes due to sprinklers, a single fire alarm box shall be installed.

Exceptions:

1. The manual fire alarm box is not required for fire alarm systems dedicated to elevator recall control and supervisory service.

2. The manual fire alarm box is not required for Group R-2 occupancies unless required by the fire code official to provide a means for fire watch personnel to initiate an alarm during a sprinkler system impairment event. Where provided, the manual fire alarm box shall not be located in an area that is accessible to the public.

[F] 907.2.1 Group A.
A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group A occupancies where the occupant load due to the assembly occupancy is 300 or more. Group A occupancies not separated from one another in accordance with Section 707.3.10 shall be considered as a single occupancy for the purposes of applying this section. Portions of Group E occupancies occupied for assembly purposes shall be provided with a fire alarm system as required for the Group E occupancy.

Exception: Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

[F] 907.2.1.1 System initiation in Group A occupancies with an occupant load of 1,000 or more.
Activation of the fire alarm in Group A occupancies with an *occupant load* of 1,000 or more shall initiate a signal using an emergency voice/alarm communications system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

Exception: Where *approved*, the pre-recorded announcement is allowed to be manually deactivated for a period of time, not to exceed 3 minutes, for the sole

purpose of allowing a live voice announcement from an *approved*, *constantly attended location*.

[F] 907.2.1.2 Emergency voice/alarm communication captions.
Stadiums, arenas and grandstands required to caption audible public announcements shall be in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.4.

[F] 907.2.2 Group B.
A manual fire alarm system shall be installed in Group B occupancies where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The combined Group B *occupant load* of all floors is 500 or more.

2. The Group B *occupant load* is more than 100 persons above or below the lowest *level of exit discharge*.

3. The *fire area* contains an ambulatory care facility.

Exception: Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

[F] 907.2.2.1 Ambulatory care facilities.
Fire areas containing ambulatory care facilities shall be provided with an electronically supervised automatic smoke detection system installed within the ambulatory care facility and in public use areas outside of tenant spaces, including public *corridors* and elevator lobbies.

Exception: Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, provided the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

[F] 907.2.3 Group E.
A manual fire alarm system that initiates the occupant notification signal utilizing an emergency voice/alarm communication system meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in accordance with Section 907.6 shall be installed in Group E occupancies. When *automatic sprinkler systems* or smoke detectors are installed, such systems or detectors shall be connected to the building fire alarm system.

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in Group E occupancies with an *occupant load* of 50 or less.

2. ~~Emergency voice/alarm communication systems meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in accordance with Section 907.6 shall not be required in Group E occupancies with occupant loads of 100 or less, provided that activation of the manual fire alarm system initiates an *approved* occupant notification signal in accordance with Section 907.5.~~ RESERVED

3. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required in Group E occupancies where all of the following apply:

`

3.1. Interior *corridors* are protected by smoke detectors.

3.2. Auditoriums, cafeterias, gymnasiums and similar areas are protected by *heat detectors* or other *approved* detection devices.

3.3. Shops and laboratories involving dusts or vapors are protected by *heat detectors* or other *approved* detection devices.

4. Manual fire alarm boxes shall not be required in Group E occupancies where all of the following apply:

4.1. The building is equipped throughout with an *approved automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

4.2. The emergency voice/alarm communication system will activate on sprinkler waterflow.

4.3. Manual activation is provided from a normally occupied location.

Point of Information
The above section was amended by Emergency Rule May 17, 2016
WSR 16-11-090

[F] 907.2.4 Group F.
A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group F occupancies where both of the following conditions exist:

1. The Group F occupancy is two or more *stories* in height.

2. The Group F occupancy has a combined *occupant load* of 500 or more above or below the lowest *level of exit discharge*.

Exception: Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

[F] 907.2.5 Group H.
A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group H-5 occupancies and in occupancies used for the manufacture of organic coatings. An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed for highly toxic gases, organic peroxides and oxidizers in accordance with Chapters 60, 62 and 63, respectively, of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 907.2.6 Group I.
A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system ~~in accordance with Section 907.5~~ shall be installed in Group I occupancies. An automatic smoke detection system that ~~activates~~ notifies the occupant notification system ~~in accordance with Section 907.5~~ shall be provided in accordance with Sections 907.2.6.1, 907.2.6.2, 907.2.6.3.3. and 907.2.6.4.

`

Exceptions:

1. ~~Manual fire alarm boxes in sleeping units of Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies shall not be required at *exits* if located at all care providers' control stations or other constantly attended staff locations, provided such stations are visible and continuously accessible and that the distances of travel required in Section 907.4.2.1 are not exceeded.~~
   Manual fire alarm boxes in resident or patient sleeping areas of Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies shall not be required at exits if located at nurses' control stations or other constantly attended staff locations, provided such stations are visible and continually accessible and that travel distances required in Section 907.4.2 are not exceeded.

2. Occupant notification systems are not required to be activated where private mode signaling installed in accordance with NFPA 72 is *approved* by the fire code official. ~~and staff evacuation responsibilities are included in the fire safety and evacuation plan required by Section 404 of the *International Fire Code*.~~

[F] 907.2.6.1 Group I-1.
~~In Group I-1 occupancies,~~ An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed in *corridors*, waiting areas open to *corridors* and *habitable spaces* other than *sleeping units* and kitchens. The system shall be activated in accordance with Section 907.4.

Exceptions:

1. For Group I-1 Condition 1 occupancies, smoke detection in *habitable spaces* is not required where the facility is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2. Smoke detection is not required for exterior balconies.

[F] 907.2.6.1.1 Smoke alarms.
Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

[F] 907.2.6.2 Group I-2.
An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed in *corridors* in Group I-2 Condition 1 facilities and spaces permitted to be open to the *corridors* by Section 407.2. The system shall be activated in accordance with Section 907.4. Group I-2 Condition 2 occupancies shall be equipped with an automatic smoke detection system as required in Section 407.

Exceptions:

1. Corridor smoke detection is not required in smoke compartments that contain sleeping units where such units are provided with smoke detectors that comply with UL 268. Such detectors shall provide a visual display on the corridor side of each sleeping unit and shall provide an audible and visual alarm at the care providers' station attending each unit.

2. Corridor smoke detection is not required in smoke compartments that contain sleeping units where sleeping unit doors are equipped with automatic door-closing devices with integral smoke detectors on the unit sides installed in

`

accordance with their listing, provided that the integral detectors perform the required alerting function.

[F] 907.2.6.3 Group I-3 occupancies.
Group I-3 occupancies shall be equipped with a manual fire alarm system and automatic smoke detection system installed for alerting staff.

[F] 907.2.6.3.1 System initiation.
Actuation of an automatic fire-extinguishing system, *automatic sprinkler system*, a manual fire alarm box or a fire detector shall initiate an approved fire alarm signal that automatically notifies staff.

[F] 907.2.6.3.2 Manual fire alarm boxes.
Manual fire alarm boxes are not required to be located in accordance with Section 907.4.2 where the fire alarm boxes are provided at staff-attended locations having direct supervision over areas where manual fire alarm boxes have been omitted.

[F] 907.2.6.3.2.1 Manual fire alarm boxes in detainee areas.
Manual fire alarm boxes are allowed to be locked in areas occupied by detainees, provided that staff members are present within the subject area and have keys readily available to operate the manual fire alarm boxes.

[F] 907.2.6.3.3 Automatic smoke detection system.
An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed throughout resident housing areas, including *sleeping units* and contiguous day rooms, group activity spaces and other common spaces normally accessible to residents.

Exceptions:

1. Other *approved* smoke detection arrangements providing equivalent protection, including, but not limited to, placing detectors in exhaust ducts from cells or behind protective guards *listed* for the purpose, are allowed when necessary to prevent damage or tampering.

2. *Sleeping units* in Use Conditions 2 and 3 as described in Section 308.

3. Smoke detectors are not required in *sleeping units* with four or fewer occupants in smoke compartments that are equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

907.2.6.4 Group I-4 occupancies. A manual fire alarm system that initiates the occupant notification signal ~~utilizing an emergency voice/alarm communication system~~ meeting the requirements of Section 907.5~~.2.2~~ and installed in accordance with Section 907.6 shall be installed in Group I-4 occupancies. When automatic sprinkler systems or smoke detectors are installed, such systems or detectors shall be connected to the building fire alarm system.

Exceptions:

~~1.~~ A manual fire alarm system is not required in Group I-4 occupancies with an occupant load of 50 or less.

~~2. Emergency voice alarm communication systems meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in accordance with Section 907.6 shall not~~

`

~~be required in Group I-4 occupancies with occupant loads of 100 or less, provided that activation of the manual fire alarm system initiates an approved occupant notification signal in accordance with Section 907.5.~~

Point of Information
The above section was amended by Emergency Rule May 17, 2016
WSR 16-11-090

[F] 907.2.7 Group M.
A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group M occupancies where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The combined Group M *occupant load* of all floors is 500 or more persons.

2. The Group M *occupant load* is more than 100 persons above or below the lowest *level of exit discharge*.

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in *covered or open mall buildings* complying with Section 402.

2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will automatically activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

~~**[F] 907.2.7.1 Occupant notification.**~~
~~During times that the building is occupied, the initiation of a signal from a manual fire alarm box or from a water flow switch shall not be required to activate the alarm notification appliances when an alarm signal is activated at a *constantly attended location* from which evacuation instructions shall be initiated over an emergency voice/alarm communication system installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.~~

[F] 907.2.8 Group R-1.
Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be installed in Group R-1 occupancies as required in Sections 907.2.8.1 through 907.2.8.3.

[F] 907.2.8.1 Manual fire alarm system.
A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R- 1 occupancies.

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in buildings not more than two *stories* in height where all individual *sleeping units* and contiguous *attic* and crawl spaces to those units are separated from each other and public or common areas by not less than 1-hour *fire partitions* and each individual *sleeping unit* has an *exit* directly to a *public way*, *egress court* or *yard*.

`

2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required throughout the building where all of the following conditions are met:

   2.1. The building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

   2.2. The notification appliances will activate upon sprinkler water flow.

   2.3. Not fewer than one manual fire alarm box is installed at an *approved* location.

[F] 907.2.8.2 Automatic smoke detection system.
An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed throughout all interior *corridors* serving *sleeping units*.

Exception: An automatic smoke detection system is not required in buildings that do not have interior *corridors* serving *sleeping units* and where each *sleeping unit* has a *means of egress* door opening directly to an *exit* or to an exterior *exit access* that leads directly to an *exit*.

[F] 907.2.8.3 Smoke alarms.
Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

[F] 907.2.9 Group R-2.
Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be installed in Group R-2 occupancies as required in Sections 907.2.9.1 through 907.2.9.3.

[F] 907.2.9.1 Manual fire alarm system.
A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-2 occupancies where any of the following conditions apply:

1. Any *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* is located three or more *stories* above the lowest *level of exit discharge*.

2. Any *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* is located more than one *story* below the highest *level of exit discharge* of *exits* serving the *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit*.

3. The building contains more than 16 *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*.

Exceptions:

1. A fire alarm system is not required in buildings not more than two *stories* in height where all *dwelling units* or *sleeping units* and contiguous *attic* and crawl spaces are separated from each other and public or common areas by not less than 1-hour *fire partitions* and each *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* has an *exit* directly to a *public way*, *egress court* or *yard*.

2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and the occupant notification appliances will

automatically activate throughout the notification zones upon a sprinkler water flow.

3. A fire alarm system is not required in buildings that do not have interior *corridors* serving *dwelling units* and are protected by an *approved automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, provided that *dwelling units* either have a *means of egress* door opening directly to an exterior *exit access* that leads directly to the *exits* or are served by open-ended *corridors* designed in accordance with Section 1027.6, Exception 3.

[F] 907.2.9.2 Smoke alarms.
Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

[F] 907.2.9.3 Group R-2 college and university buildings.
An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-2 occupancies operated by a college or university for student or staff housing in all of the following locations:

1. Common spaces outside of *dwelling units* and *sleeping units*.

2. Laundry rooms, mechanical equipment rooms and storage rooms.

3. All interior corridors serving *sleeping units* or *dwelling units*.

   Exception: An automatic smoke detection system is not required in buildings that do not have interior *corridors* serving *sleeping units* or *dwelling units* and where each *sleeping unit* or *dwelling unit* either has a *means of egress* door opening directly to an exterior *exit access* that leads directly to an *exit* or a *means of egress* door opening directly to an *exit*.

Required smoke alarms in *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* in Group R-2 occupancies operated by a college or university for student or staff housing shall be interconnected with the fire alarm system in accordance with NFPA 72.

[F] 907.2.10 Group R-4.
Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be installed in Group R-4 occupancies as required in Sections 907.2.10.1 through 907.2.10.3.

[F] 907.2.10.1 Manual fire alarm system.
A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-4 occupancies.

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in buildings not more than two *stories* in height where all individual *sleeping units* and contiguous *attic* and crawl spaces to those units are separated from each other and public or common areas by not less than 1-hour *fire partitions* and each individual *sleeping unit* has an *exit* directly to a *public way*, *egress court* or *yard*.

`

2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required throughout the building where all of the following conditions are met:

   2.1. The building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

   2.2. The notification appliances will activate upon sprinkler water flow.

   2.3. Not fewer than one manual fire alarm box is installed at an *approved* location.

3. Manual fire alarm boxes in resident or patient sleeping areas shall not be required at *exits* where located at all nurses' control stations or other constantly attended staff locations, provided such stations are visible and continuously accessible and that the distances of travel required in Section 907.4.2.1 are not exceeded.

[F] 907.2.10.2 Automatic smoke detection system.
An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in *corridors*, waiting areas open to *corridors* and *habitable spaces* other than *sleeping units* and kitchens.

Exceptions:

1. Smoke detection in *habitable spaces* is not required where the facility is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2. An automatic smoke detection system is not required in buildings that do not have interior *corridors* serving *sleeping units* and where each *sleeping unit* has a *means of egress* door opening directly to an *exit* or to an exterior *exit access* that leads directly to an *exit*.

[F] 907.2.10.3 Smoke alarms.
Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

[F] 907.2.11 Single and multiple-station smoke alarms.
Listed single- and multiple-station smoke alarms complying with UL 217 shall be installed in accordance with Sections 907.2.11.1 through 907.2.11.6 and NFPA 72.

[F] 907.2.11.1 Group R-1.
Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in all of the following locations in Group R-1:

1. In sleeping areas.

2. In every room in the path of the *means of egress* from the sleeping area to the door leading from the *sleeping unit*.

3. In each *story* within the *sleeping unit*, including basements. For *sleeping units* with split levels and without an intervening door between the adjacent levels, a

`

smoke alarm installed on the upper level shall suffice for the adjacent lower level provided that the lower level is less than one full *story* below the upper level.

[F] 907.2.11.2 Groups R-2, R-3, R-4 and I-1.
Single or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed and maintained in Groups R-2, R-3, R-4 and I-1 regardless of *occupant load* at all of the following locations:

1. On the ceiling or wall outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of bedrooms.

2. In each room used for sleeping purposes.

3. In each *story* within a *dwelling unit*, including basements but not including crawl spaces and uninhabitable *attics*. In *dwellings* or *dwelling units* with split levels and without an intervening door between the adjacent levels, a smoke alarm installed on the upper level shall suffice for the adjacent lower level provided that the lower level is less than one full *story* below the upper level.

[F] 907.2.11.3 Installation near cooking appliances.
Smoke alarms shall not be installed in the following locations unless this would prevent placement of a smoke alarm in a location required by Section 907.2.11.1 or 907.2.11.2:

1. Ionization smoke alarms shall not be installed less than 20 feet (6096 mm) horizontally from a permanently installed cooking appliance.

2. Ionization smoke alarms with an alarm-silencing switch shall not be installed less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from a permanently installed cooking appliance.

3. Photoelectric smoke alarms shall not be installed less than 6 feet (1829 mm) horizontally from a permanently installed cooking appliance.

[F] 907.2.11.4 Installation near bathrooms.
Smoke alarms shall be installed not less than 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally from the door or opening of a bathroom that contains a bathtub or shower unless this would prevent placement of a smoke alarm required by Section 907.2.11.1 or 907.2.11.2.

[F] 907.2.11.5 Interconnection.
Where more than one smoke alarm is required to be installed within an individual *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* in Group R or I-1 occupancies, the smoke alarms shall be interconnected in such a manner that the activation of one alarm will activate all of the alarms in the individual unit. Physical interconnection of smoke alarms shall not be required where listed wireless alarms are installed and all alarms sound upon activation of one alarm. The alarm shall be clearly audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed.

[F] 907.2.11.6 Power source.
In new construction, required smoke alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source and shall be equipped with a battery backup. Smoke alarms with integral strobes that are not equipped with battery backup shall be connected to an emergency electrical system in accordance with Section 2702. Smoke alarms shall emit a signal when the batteries are

`

low. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than as required for overcurrent protection.

Exception: Smoke alarms are not required to be equipped with battery backup where they are connected to an emergency electrical system that complies with Section 2702.

[F] 907.2.11.7 Smoke detection system.
Smoke detectors listed in accordance with UL 268 and provided as part of the building *fire alarm system* shall be an acceptable alternative to single- and multiple-station *smoke alarms* and shall comply with the following:

1. The *fire alarm system* shall comply with all applicable requirements in Section 907.

2. Activation of a smoke detector in a *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* shall initiate alarm notification in the *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* in accordance with Section 907.5.2.

3. Activation of a smoke detector in a *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* shall not activate alarm notification appliances outside of the *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit*, provided that a supervisory signal is generated and monitored in accordance with Section 907.6.6.

[F] 907.2.12 Special amusement buildings.
An automatic smoke detection system shall be provided in *special amusement buildings* in accordance with Sections 907.2.12.1 through 907.2.12.3.

[F] 907.2.12.1 Alarm.
Activation of any single smoke detector, the *automatic sprinkler system* or any other automatic fire detection device shall immediately activate an audible and visible alarm at the building at a constantly attended location from which emergency action can be initiated, including the capability of manual initiation of requirements in Section 907.2.12.2.

[F] 907.2.12.2 System response.
The activation of two or more smoke detectors, a single smoke detector equipped with an alarm verification feature, the *automatic sprinkler system* or other *approved* fire detection device shall automatically do all of the following:

1. Cause illumination of the *means of egress* with light of not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux) at the walking surface level.

2. Stop any conflicting or confusing sounds and visual distractions.

3. Activate an *approved* directional *exit* marking that will become apparent in an emergency.

4. Activate a pre-recorded message, audible throughout the *special amusement building*, instructing patrons to proceed to the nearest *exit*. Alarm signals used in conjunction with the pre-recorded message shall produce a sound that is distinctive from other sounds used during normal operation.

`

[F] 907.2.12.3 Emergency voice/alarm communication system.
An emergency voice/alarm communication system, which is also allowed to serve as a public address system, shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2 and be audible throughout the entire *special amusement building*.

[F] 907.2.13 High-rise buildings.
High-rise buildings shall be provided with an automatic smoke detection system in accordance with Section 907.2.13.1, a fire department communication system in accordance with Section 907.2.13.2 and an emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

Exceptions:

1. Airport traffic control towers in accordance with Sections 412 and 907.2.22.

2. *Open parking garages* in accordance with Section 406.5.

3. Buildings with an occupancy in Group A-5 in accordance with Section 303.1.

4. Low-hazard special occupancies in accordance with Section 503.1.1.

5. Buildings with an occupancy in Group H-1, H-2 or H-3 in accordance with Section 415.

6. In Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies, the alarm shall sound at a *constantly attended location* and occupant notification shall be broadcast by the emergency voice/alarm communication system.

[F] 907.2.13.1 Automatic smoke detection.
Automatic smoke detection in high-rise buildings shall be in accordance with Sections 907.2.13.1.1 and 907.2.13.1.2.

[F] 907.2.13.1.1 Area smoke detection.
Area smoke detectors shall be provided in accordance with this section. Smoke detectors shall be connected to an automatic fire alarm system. The activation of any detector required by this section, other than duct smoke detectors, shall activate the emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2. In addition to smoke detectors required by Sections 907.2.1 through 907.2.10, smoke detectors (where such locations are within unconditioned spaces, other devices may be installed in accordance with 907.4.3) shall be located as follows:

1. In each mechanical equipment, electrical, transformer, telephone equipment or similar room that is not provided with sprinkler protection.

2. In each elevator machine room, machinery space, control room and control space and in elevator lobbies.

3. Within 5 feet (1524 mm) of doors opening into stairways that are smoke proof enclosures, or are pressurized stairways.

[M] 907.2.13.1.2 Duct smoke detection.
Duct smoke detectors complying with Section 907.3.1 shall be located as follows:

`

1. In the main return air and exhaust air plenum of each air-conditioning system having a capacity greater than 2,000 cubic feet per minute (cfm) (0.94 m^3/s). Such detectors shall be located in a serviceable area downstream of the last duct inlet.

2. At each connection to a vertical duct or riser serving two or more stories from a return air duct or plenum of an air-conditioning system. In Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies, a smoke detector is allowed to be used in each return air riser carrying not more than 5,000 cfm (2.4 m^3/s) and serving not more than 10 air-inlet openings.

[F] 907.2.13.2 Fire department communication system.
~~Where a wired communication system is *approved* in lieu of an emergency responder radio coverage system in accordance with Section 510 of the *International Fire Code*, the wired fire department communication system shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72 and shall operate between a fire command center complying with Section 911, elevators, elevator lobbies, emergency and standby power rooms, fire pump rooms, *areas of refuge* and inside *interior exit stairways*. The fire department communication device shall be provided at each floor level within the *interior exit stairway*.~~
An approved two-way, fire department communication system designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72 shall be provided for fire department use. It shall operate between a fire command center complying with Section 911, elevators, elevator lobbies, emergency and standby power rooms, fire pump rooms, areas of refuge and inside interior exit stairways. The fire department communication device shall be provided at each floor level within the interior exit stairway.

[F] 907.2.14 Atriums connecting more than two stories.
A fire alarm system shall be installed in occupancies with an atrium that connects more than two *stories*, with smoke detection installed in locations required by a rational analysis in Section 909.4 and in accordance with the system operation requirements in Section 909.17. The system shall be activated in accordance with Section 907.5. Such occupancies in Group A, E or M shall be provided with an emergency voice/alarm communication system complying with the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2.

[F] 907.2.15 High-piled combustible storage areas.
An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed throughout high-piled combustible storage areas where required by Section 3206.5 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 907.2.16 Aerosol storage uses.
Aerosol storage rooms and general-purpose warehouses containing aerosols shall be provided with an *approved* manual fire alarm system where required by the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 907.2.17 Lumber, wood structural panel and veneer mills.
Lumber, wood structural panel and veneer mills shall be provided with a manual fire alarm system.

[F] 907.2.18 Underground buildings with smoke control systems.
Where a smoke control system is installed in an underground building in accordance with

`

this code, automatic smoke detectors shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.18.1.

[F] 907.2.18.1 Smoke detectors.
Not fewer than one smoke detector *listed* for the intended purpose shall be installed in all of the following areas:

1. ~~Mechanical equipment, electrical, transformer, telephone equipment, elevator machine or similar rooms.~~
Electrical, non-Utility owned transformer vault rooms, telephone equipment, elevator machine or similar rooms.

2. Elevator lobbies.

3. The main return and exhaust air plenum of each air-conditioning system serving more than one *story* and located in a serviceable area downstream of the last duct inlet.

4. Each connection to a vertical duct or riser serving two or more floors from return air ducts or plenums of heating, ventilating and air-conditioning systems, except that in Group R occupancies, a *listed* smoke detector is allowed to be used in each return air riser carrying not more than 5,000 cfm (2.4 m^3/s) and serving not more than 10 air inlet openings.

5. Within 5 ft. of doors opening into stairways that are smokeproof enclosures, or that are pressurized stairways.

Exception: Where any such locations in items 1 through 5 above are within unconditioned spaces, other devices may be installed in accordance with 907.4.3.

[F] 907.2.18.2 Alarm required.
Activation of the smoke control system shall activate an audible alarm at a *constantly attended location*.

[F] 907.2.19 Deep underground buildings.
Where the lowest level of a structure is more than 60 feet (18 288 mm) below the finished floor of the lowest *level of exit discharge*, the structure shall be equipped throughout with a manual fire alarm system, including an emergency voice/alarm communication system installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

[F] 907.2.20 Covered and open mall buildings.
Where the total floor area exceeds 50,000 square feet (4645 m^2) within either a covered mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building, an emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be provided. Emergency voice/alarm communication systems serving a mall, required or otherwise, shall be accessible to the fire department. The system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

[F] 907.2.21 Residential aircraft hangars.
Not fewer than one single-station smoke alarm shall be installed within a residential aircraft hangar as defined in Chapter 2 and shall be interconnected into the residential smoke alarm or other sounding device to provide an alarm that will be audible in all sleeping areas of the *dwelling*.

`

[F] 907.2.22 Airport traffic control towers.
An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be provided in airport control towers in accordance with Sections 907.2.22.1 and 907.2.22.2.

Exception: Audible appliances shall not be installed within the control tower cab.

[F] 907.2.22.1 Airport traffic control towers with multiple exits and automatic sprinklers.
Airport traffic control towers with multiple *exits* and equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be provided with smoke detectors in all of the following locations:

1. Airport traffic control cab.
2. Electrical and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Airport terminal radar and electronics rooms.
4. Outside each opening into *interior exit stairways*.
5. Along the single *means of egress* permitted from observation levels.
6. Outside each opening into the single *means of egress* permitted from observation levels.

[F] 907.2.22.2 Other airport traffic control towers.
Airport traffic control towers with a single *exit* or where sprinklers are not installed throughout shall be provided with smoke detectors in all of the following locations:

1. Airport traffic control cab.
2. Electrical and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Airport terminal radar and electronics rooms.
4. Office spaces incidental to the tower operation.
5. Lounges for employees, including sanitary facilities.
6. *Means of egress*.
7. Accessible utility shafts.

[F] 907.2.23 Battery rooms.
An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed in areas containing stationary storage battery systems with a liquid capacity of more than 50 gallons (189 L).

[F] 907.3 Fire safety functions.
Automatic fire detectors utilized for the purpose of performing fire safety functions shall be connected to the building's fire alarm control unit where a fire alarm system is required by

`

Section 907.2. Detectors shall, upon actuation, perform the intended function and activate the alarm notification appliances or activate a visible and audible supervisory signal at a *constantly attended location*. In buildings not equipped with a fire alarm system, the automatic fire detector shall be powered by normal electrical service and, upon actuation, perform the intended function. The detectors shall be located in accordance with NFPA 72.

[F] 907.3.1 Duct smoke detectors.
Smoke detectors installed in ducts shall be *listed* for the air velocity, temperature and humidity present in the duct. Duct smoke detectors shall be connected to the building's fire alarm control unit when a fire alarm system is required by Section 907.2. Activation of a duct smoke detector shall initiate a visible and audible supervisory signal at a *constantly attended location* and shall perform the intended fire safety function in accordance with this code and the *International Mechanical Code*. In facilities that are required to be monitored by a supervising station, duct smoke detectors shall report only as a supervisory signal and not as a fire alarm. They shall not be used as a substitute for required open area detection.

Exceptions:

1. The supervisory signal at a *constantly attended location* is not required where duct smoke detectors activate the building's alarm notification appliances.

2. In occupancies not required to be equipped with a fire alarm system, actuation of a smoke detector shall activate a visible and an audible signal in an *approved* location. Smoke detector trouble conditions shall activate a visible or audible signal in an *approved* location and shall be identified as air duct detector trouble.

[F] 907.3.2 Delayed egress locks.
Where delayed egress locks are installed on *means of egress* doors in accordance with Section 1010.1.9.7, an automatic smoke or heat detection system shall be installed as required by that section.

[F] 907.3.3 Elevator emergency operation.
Automatic fire detectors installed for elevator emergency operation shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and NFPA 72.

[F] 907.3.4 Wiring.
The wiring to the auxiliary devices and equipment used to accomplish the fire safety functions shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with NFPA 72.

[F] 907.4 Initiating devices.
Where manual or automatic alarm initiation is required as part of a fire alarm system, the initiating devices shall be installed in accordance with Sections 907.4.1 through 907.4.3.1.

[F] 907.4.1 Protection of fire alarm control unit.
In areas that are not continuously occupied, a single smoke detector shall be provided at the location of each fire alarm control unit, notification appliance circuit power extenders, and supervising station transmitting equipment.

Exception: Where ambient conditions prohibit installation of a smoke detector, a *heat detector* shall be permitted.

[F] 907.4.2 Manual fire alarm boxes.
Where a manual fire alarm system is required by another section of this code, it shall be

activated by fire alarm boxes installed in accordance with Sections 907.4.2.1 through 907.4.2.6.

[F] 907.4.2.1 Location.
Manual fire alarm boxes shall be located not more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the entrance to each *exit*. In buildings not protected by an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, additional manual fire alarm boxes shall be located so that the *exit access* travel distance to the nearest box does not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm).

[F] 907.4.2.2 Height.
The height of the manual fire alarm boxes shall be not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) and not more than 48 inches (1372 mm) measured vertically, from the floor level to the activating handle or lever of the box.

[F] 907.4.2.3 Color.
Manual fire alarm boxes shall be red in color.

[F] 907.4.2.4 Signs.
Where fire alarm systems are not monitored by a supervising station, an *approved* permanent sign shall be installed adjacent to each manual fire alarm box that reads: WHEN ALARM SOUNDS CALL FIRE DEPARTMENT.

Exception: Where the manufacturer has permanently provided this information on the manual fire alarm box.

[F] 907.4.2.5 Protective covers.
The fire code official is authorized to require the installation of *listed* manual fire alarm box protective covers to prevent malicious false alarms or to provide the manual fire alarm box with protection from physical damage. The protective cover shall be transparent or red in color with a transparent face to permit visibility of the manual fire alarm box. Each cover shall include proper operating instructions. A protective cover that emits a local alarm signal shall not be installed unless *approved*. Protective covers shall not project more than that permitted by Section 1003.3.3.

[F] 907.4.2.6 Unobstructed and unobscured.
Manual fire alarm boxes shall be accessible, unobstructed, unobscured and visible at all times.

[F] 907.4.3 Automatic smoke detection.
Where an automatic smoke detection system is required it shall utilize smoke detectors unless ambient conditions prohibit such an installation. In spaces where smoke detectors cannot be utilized due to ambient conditions, *approved* automatic *heat detectors* shall be permitted.

[F] 907.4.3.1 Automatic sprinkler system.
For conditions other than specific fire safety functions noted in Section 907.3, in areas where ambient conditions prohibit the installation of smoke detectors, an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in such areas in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and that is connected to the fire alarm system shall be *approved* as automatic heat detection.

[F] 907.5 Occupant notification systems.
A fire alarm system shall annunciate at the fire alarm control unit and shall initiate occupant notification upon activation, in accordance with Sections 907.5.1 through 907.5.2.3.3. Where a fire alarm system is required by another section of this code, it shall be activated by:

1. Automatic fire detectors.

2. *Automatic sprinkler system* waterflow devices.

3. Manual fire alarm boxes.

4. Automatic fire-extinguishing systems.

~~**Exception:** Where notification systems are allowed elsewhere in Section 907 to annunciate at a *constantly attended location*.~~

[F] 907.5.1 Pre-signal feature.
A pre-signal feature shall not be installed unless *approved* by the fire code official and the fire department. Where a pre-signal feature is provided, a signal shall be annunciated at a *constantly attended location approved* by the fire department so that occupant notification can be activated in the event of fire or other emergency.

[F] 907.5.2 Alarm notification appliances.
Alarm notification appliances shall be provided and shall be *listed* for their purpose.

[F] 907.5.2.1 Audible alarms.
Audible alarm notification appliances shall be provided and emit a distinctive sound that is not to be used for any purpose other than that of a fire alarm.

Exceptions:

1. Audible alarm notification appliances are not required in critical care areas of Group I-2 Condition 2 occupancies that are in compliance with Section 907.2.6, Exception 2.

2. A visible alarm notification appliance installed in a nurses' control station or other continuously attended staff location in a Group I-2 Condition 2 suite shall be an acceptable alternative to the installation of audible alarm notification appliances throughout the suite in Group I-2 Condition 2 occupancies that are in compliance with Section 907.2.6, Exception 2.

3. Where provided, audible notification appliances located in each occupant evacuation elevator lobby in accordance with Section 3008.9.1 shall be connected to a separate notification zone for manual paging only.

[F] 907.5.2.1.1 Average sound pressure.
The audible alarm notification appliances shall provide a sound pressure level of 15 decibels (dBA) above the average ambient sound level or 5 dBA above the maximum sound level having a duration of not less than 60 seconds, whichever is greater, in every occupiable space within the building, or in the case of a partial alarm system, throughout the space that is being provided with the fire alarm system. The minimum sound pressure levels shall be: 75 dBA in occupancies in Groups R and I-1; 90 dBA in mechanical equipment rooms; and 60 dBA in other occupancies.

`

In occupancies with high sound levels such as nightclubs, bars, theaters, auditoriums, sanctuaries, etc., an interface shall be provided between the fire alarm system and the noise source to eliminate the noise source upon activation of the fire alarm system.

Exception: Private mode signaling in accordance with NFPA 72 shall be allowed in areas of group I-2 and I-3 occupancies where occupants are not expected to self-evacuate.

[F] 907.5.2.1.2 Maximum sound pressure.
The maximum sound pressure level for audible alarm notification appliances shall be 110 dBA at the minimum hearing distance from the audible appliance. For systems operating in public mode, the maximum sound pressure level shall not exceed 30 dBA over the average ambient sound level. Where the average ambient noise is greater than 95 dBA, visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 72 and audible alarm notification appliances shall not be required.

[F] 907.5.2.2 Emergency voice/alarm communication systems.
Emergency voice/alarm communication systems required by this code shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72. The operation of any automatic fire detector, sprinkler waterflow device or manual fire alarm box shall automatically sound an alert tone followed by voice instructions giving *approved* information and directions for a general or staged evacuation in accordance with the building's fire safety and evacuation plans required by Section 404 of the *International Fire Code*. In high-rise buildings, the system shall operate on at least the alarming floor, the floor above and the floor below. Speakers shall be provided throughout the building by paging zones. At a minimum, paging zones shall be provided as follows:

1. Elevator groups.
2. *Interior exit stairways*.
3. Each floor.
4. *Areas of refuge* as defined in Chapter 2.

Exception: In Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies, the alarm shall sound in a constantly attended ~~area~~ location and a general occupant notification shall be broadcast over the overhead page.

[F] 907.5.2.2.1 Manual override.
A manual override for emergency voice communication shall be provided on a selective and all-call basis for all paging zones.

[F] 907.5.2.2.2 Live voice messages.
The emergency voice/alarm communication system shall have the capability to broadcast live voice messages by paging zones on a selective and all-call basis.

Point of Information
See Fire Department Emergency Voice/Alarm Public Information Sheet F-44 for detailed messaging requirements.

`

[F] 907.5.2.2.3 Alternate uses.
The emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be allowed to be used for other announcements, provided the manual fire alarm use takes precedence over any other use.

[F] 907.5.2.2.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication captions.
Where stadiums, arenas and grandstands are required to caption audible public announcements in accordance with Section 1108.2.7.3, the emergency/voice alarm communication system shall be captioned. Pre-recorded or live emergency captions shall be from an *approved* location constantly attended by personnel trained to respond to an emergency.

[F] 907.5.2.2.5 Emergency power.
Emergency voice/alarm communications systems shall be provided with emergency power in accordance with Section 2702. The system shall be capable of powering the required load for a duration of not less than 24 hours, as required in NFPA 72.

[F] 907.5.2.2.6 Phased Evacuation. All buildings more than 10 stories above grade plane shall utilize an approved phased evacuation plan.

Exceptions:

1. When an additional exit stairway meeting the requirements of Sections IBC 1011 and 1023 are provided in addition to the minimum number of exits required by Section IBC 1006.

2. Where the width of each required exit stairway as specified in Section 1011.2 is increased by not less than 24" of additional width.

3. Where occupant self-evacuation elevators in accordance with IBC Section 3008 have been installed.

4. Where full tenant evacuation can be demonstrated to be accomplished in less than 7 minutes.

Point of Information

These provisions are intended to facilitate the simultaneous building evacuation and firefighter response into the building.

[F] 907.5.2.3 Visible alarms.
Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in accordance with Sections 907.5.2.3.1 through 907.5.2.3.3.

Exceptions:

1. Visible alarm notification appliances are not required in *alterations*, except where an existing fire alarm system is ~~upgraded or~~ replaced, or a new fire alarm system is installed.

2. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in *exits* as defined in Chapter 2.

`

3. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in elevator cars.

4. Visual alarm notification appliances are not required in critical care areas of Group I-2 Condition 2 occupancies that are in compliance with Section 907.2.6, Exception 2.

[F] 907.5.2.3.1 Public use areas and common use areas.
Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in *public use areas* and *common use areas*.

Exception: Where employee work areas have audible alarm coverage, the notification appliance circuits serving the employee work areas shall be initially designed with not less than 20-percent spare capacity to account for the potential of adding visible notification appliances in the future to accommodate hearing-impaired employee(s).

[F] 907.5.2.3.2 Groups I-1 and R-1.
Group I-1 and R-1 *dwelling units* or *sleeping units* in accordance with Table 907.5.2.3.2 shall be provided with a visible alarm notification appliance, activated by both the in-room smoke alarm and the building fire alarm system.

[F] TABLE 907.5.2.3.2
VISIBLE ALARMS

NUMBER OF SLEEP UNITS	SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS WITH VISIBLE ALARMS
6 to 25	2
26 to 50	4
51 to 75	7
76 to 100	9
101 to 150	12
151 to 200	14
201 to 300	17
301 to 400	20
401 to 500	22
501 to 1,000	5% of total
1,001 and over	50 plus 3 for each 100 over 1,000

[F] 907.5.2.3.3 Group R-2.
In Group R-2 occupancies required by Section 907 to have a fire alarm system, all *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* shall be provided with the capability to support visible alarm notification appliances in accordance with Chapter 10 of ICC A117.1. Such capability shall be permitted to include the potential for future interconnection of the building fire alarm system with the unit smoke alarms, replacement of audible appliances with combination audible/visible appliances, or future extension of the existing wiring from the unit smoke alarm locations to required locations for visible appliances.

[F] 907.6 Installation and monitoring.
A fire alarm system shall be installed and monitored in accordance with Sections 907.6.1 through 907.6.6.2 and NFPA 72.

`

[F] 907.6.1 Wiring.
Wiring shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 70 and NFPA 72. Wireless protection systems utilizing radio-frequency transmitting devices shall comply with the special requirements for supervision of low-power wireless systems in NFPA 72.

[F] 907.6.2 Power supply.
The primary and secondary power supply for the fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 72.

Exception: Back-up power for single-station and multiple-station smoke alarms as required in Section 907.2.11.6.

[F] 907.6.3 Initiating device identification.
The fire alarm system shall identify the specific initiating device address, location, device type, floor level where applicable and status including indication of normal, alarm, trouble and supervisory status, as appropriate.

Exceptions:

1. Fire alarm systems in single-story buildings less than 22,500 square feet (2090 m^2) in area.

2. Fire alarm systems that only include manual fire alarm boxes, waterflow initiating devices and not more than 10 additional alarm-initiating devices.

3. Special initiating devices that do not support individual device identification.

4. Fire alarm systems or devices that are replacing existing equipment.

~~**[F] 907.6.3.1 Annunciation.**~~
~~The initiating device status shall be annunciated at an *approved* on-site location.~~
[F] 907.6.3.1 Annunciator panel.
All fire alarm systems in buildings without a fire command center shall be provided with an annunciator panel (or the main fire alarm control panel) located inside the building at the main addressed building entrance.

Exception: Other approved locations

[F] 907.6.4 Zones.
Each floor shall be zoned separately and a zone shall not exceed 22,500 square feet (2090 m^2). The length of any zone shall not exceed 300 feet (91 440 mm) in any direction.

Exception: *Automatic sprinkler system* zones shall not exceed the area permitted by NFPA 13.
~~**[F] 907.6.4.1 Zoning indicator panel.**~~
~~A zoning indicator panel and the associated controls shall be provided in an *approved* location. The visual zone indication shall lock in until the system is reset and shall not be cancelled by the operation of an audible alarm silencing switch.~~

[F] 907.6.4.1 Graphic annunciator.

`

Graphic annunciators, when provided, shall be mounted to maintain the viewer's directional orientation. The visual zone indication on the annunciator panel shall lock in until the system is reset and shall not be cancelled by the operation of an audible-alarm silencing switch. Alarm panels and annunciators shall not be installed where they would obstruct exiting. The required exit width plus 12 inches shall be provided when the panel is located in a means of egress. Alarm panels shall not be installed in an exit enclosure providing the sole exit from any space.

[F] 907.6.4.2 High-rise buildings.
In high-rise buildings, a separate zone by floor shall be provided for each of the following types of alarm-initiating devices where provided:

1. Smoke detectors.
2. Sprinkler water flow devices.
3. Manual fire alarm boxes.
4. Other *approved* types of automatic fire detection devices or suppression systems.

[F] 907.6.5 Access.
Access shall be provided to each fire alarm device and notification appliance for periodic inspection, maintenance and testing.

[F] 907.6.6 Monitoring.
Fire alarm systems required by this chapter or by the *International Fire Code* shall be monitored by an *approved* supervising station in accordance with NFPA 72.

Exception: Monitoring by a supervising station is not required for:

1. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms required by Section 907.2.11.
2. Smoke detectors in Group I-3 occupancies.
3. *Automatic sprinkler systems* in one- and twofamily dwellings.

[F] 907.6.6.1 Automatic telephone-dialing devices.
Automatic telephone-dialing devices used to transmit an emergency alarm shall not be connected to any fire department telephone number unless *approved* by the fire chief.

[F] 907.6.6.2 Termination of monitoring service.
Termination of fire alarm monitoring services shall be in accordance with Section 901.9 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 907.7 Acceptance tests and completion.
Upon completion of the installation, the fire alarm system and all fire alarm components shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 72.

[F] 907.7.1 Single- and multiple-station alarm devices.
When the installation of the alarm devices is complete, each device and interconnecting wiring for multiple-station alarm devices shall be tested in accordance with the smoke alarm provisions of NFPA 72.

`

[F] 907.7.2 Record of completion.
A record of completion in accordance with NFPA 72 verifying that the system has been installed and tested in accordance with the *approved* plans and specifications shall be provided.

[F] 907.7.3 Instructions.
Operating, testing and maintenance instructions and record drawings (“as-builts”) and equipment specifications shall be provided at an *approved* location.

[F] 907.8 Inspection, testing and maintenance.
The maintenance and testing schedules and procedures for fire alarm and fire detection systems shall be in accordance with Section 907.8 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 907.10 NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.

[F] 907.10.1 Scope. This section shall apply to new and existing fire alarm systems.

[F] 907.10.2 Design review. All construction documents shall be reviewed by a NICET III in fire alarms or a licensed professional engineer (PE) in Washington prior to being submitted for permitting. The reviewing professional shall submit a stamped, signed, and dated letter; or a verification method approved by the local authority having jurisdiction indicating the system has been reviewed and meets or exceeds the design requirements of the state of Washington and the local jurisdiction. (Effective July 1, 2017)

[F] 907.10.3 Testing/maintenance. All inspection, testing, maintenance and programing not defined as "electrical construction trade" by chapter 19.28 RCW shall be completed by a NICET II in fire alarms. (Effective July 1, 2017)

SECTION 908
EMERGENCY ALARM SYSTEMS

[F] 908.1 Group H occupancies.
Emergency alarms for the detection and notification of an emergency condition in Group H occupancies shall be provided in accordance with Section 415.5.

[F] 908.2 Group H-5 occupancy.
Emergency alarms for notification of an emergency condition in an HPM facility shall be provided as required in Section 415.11.3.5. A continuous gas detection system shall be provided for HPM gases in accordance with Section 415.11.7.

[F] 908.3 Highly toxic and toxic materials.
A gas detection system shall be provided to detect the presence of *highly toxic* or *toxic* gas at or below the permissible exposure limit (PEL) or ceiling limit of the gas for which detection is provided. The system shall be capable of monitoring the discharge from the treatment system at or below one-half the immediately dangerous to life and health (IDLH) limit.

Exception: A gas detection system is not required for *toxic* gases when the physiological warning threshold level for the gas is at a level below the accepted PEL for the gas.

[F] 908.3.1 Alarms.
The gas detection system shall initiate a local alarm and transmit a signal to a constantly attended control station when a short-term hazard condition is detected. The alarm shall be

`

both visible and audible and shall provide warning both inside and outside the area where gas is detected. The audible alarm shall be distinct from all other alarms.

Exception: Signal transmission to a constantly attended control station is not required when not more than one cylinder of *highly toxic* or *toxic* gas is stored.

[F] 908.3.2 Shutoff of gas supply.
The gas detection system shall automatically close the shutoff valve at the source on gas supply piping and tubing related to the system being monitored for whichever gas is detected.

Exception: Automatic shutdown is not required for reactors utilized for the production of *highly toxic* or *toxic* compressed gases where such reactors are:

1. Operated at pressures less than 15 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (103.4 kPa).

2. Constantly attended.

3. Provided with readily accessible emergency shutoff valves.

[F] 908.3.3 Valve closure.
The automatic closure of shutoff valves shall be in accordance with the following:

1. When the gas-detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a gas cabinet or exhausted enclosure, the shutoff valve in the gas cabinet or exhausted enclosure for the specific gas detected shall automatically close.

2. Where the gas-detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a gas room and compressed gas containers are not in gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures, the shutoff valves on all gas lines for the specific gas detected shall automatically close.

3. Where the gas-detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a piping distribution manifold enclosure, the shutoff valve for the compressed container of specific gas detected supplying the manifold shall automatically close.

Exception: When the gas-detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is at a use location or within a gas valve enclosure of a branch line downstream of a piping distribution manifold, the shutoff valve in the gas valve enclosure for the branch line located in the piping distribution manifold enclosure shall automatically close.

[F] 908.4 Ozone gas-generator rooms.
Ozone gas-generator rooms shall be equipped with a continuous gas detection system that will shut off the generator and sound a local alarm when concentrations above the PEL occur.

[F] 908.5 Repair garages.
A flammable-gas detection system shall be provided in repair garages for vehicles fueled by nonodorized gases in accordance with Section 406.8.5.

[F] 908.6 Refrigerant detector.
Machinery rooms shall contain a refrigerant detector with an audible and visual alarm. The detector, or a sampling tube that draws air to the detector, shall be located in an area where

`

refrigerant from a leak will concentrate. The alarm shall be actuated at a value not greater than the corresponding TLV-TWA values for the refrigerant classification shown in the *International Mechanical Code* for the refrigerant classification. Detectors and alarms shall be placed in *approved* locations. The detector shall transmit a signal to an *approved* location.

[F] 908.7 Carbon dioxide (CO2) systems.
Emergency alarm systems in accordance with Section 5307.5.2 of the *International Fire Code* shall be provided where required for compliance with Section 5307.5 of the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 909
SMOKE CONTROL SYSTEMS

[F] 909.1 Scope and purpose.
This section applies to mechanical or passive smoke control systems where they are required by other provisions of this code. The purpose of this section is to establish minimum requirements for the design, installation and acceptance testing of smoke control systems that are intended to provide a tenable environment for the evacuation or relocation of occupants. These provisions are not intended for the preservation of contents or the timely restoration of operations. ~~or for assistance in fire suppression or overhaul activities.~~ Smoke control systems regulated by this section serve a different purpose than the smoke- and heat venting provisions found in Section 910. Mechanical smoke control systems shall not be considered exhaust systems under Chapter 5 of the *International Mechanical Code*.

[F] 909.2 General design requirements.
Buildings, structures or parts thereof required by this code to have a smoke control system or systems shall have such systems designed in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 909 and the generally accepted and well-established principles of engineering relevant to the design. The *construction documents* shall include sufficient information and detail to adequately describe the elements of the design necessary for the proper implementation of the smoke control systems. These documents shall be accompanied by sufficient information and analysis to demonstrate compliance with these provisions.

[F] 909.3 Special inspection and test requirements.
In addition to the ordinary inspection and test requirements that buildings, structures and parts thereof are required to undergo, smoke control systems subject to the provisions of Section 909 shall undergo *special inspections* and tests sufficient to verify the proper commissioning of the smoke control design in its final installed condition. The design submission accompanying the *construction documents* shall clearly detail procedures and methods to be used and the items subject to such inspections and tests. Such commissioning shall be in accordance with generally accepted engineering practice and, where possible, based on published standards for the particular testing involved. The special inspections and tests required by this section shall be conducted under the same terms in Section 1704.

[F] 909.4 Analysis.
A rational analysis supporting the types of smoke control systems to be employed, their methods of operation, the systems supporting them and the methods of construction to be utilized shall accompany the submitted *construction documents* and shall include, but not be limited to, the items indicated in Sections 909.4.1 through 909.4.7.

[F] 909.4.1 Stack effect.
The system shall be designed such that the maximum probable normal or reverse stack effect will not adversely interfere with the system's capabilities. In determining the maximum

`

probable stack effect, altitude, elevation, weather history and interior temperatures shall be used.

[F] 909.4.2 Temperature effect of fire.
Buoyancy and expansion caused by the design fire in accordance with Section 909.9 shall be analyzed. The system shall be designed such that these effects do not adversely interfere with the system's capabilities.

[F] 909.4.3 Wind effect.
The design shall consider the adverse effects of wind. Such consideration shall be consistent with the wind-loading provisions of Chapter 16.

[F] 909.4.4 HVAC systems.
The design shall consider the effects of the heating, ventilating and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems on both smoke and fire transport. The analysis shall include all permutations of systems status. The design shall consider the effects of the fire on the HVAC systems.

[F] 909.4.5 Climate.
The design shall consider the effects of low temperatures on systems, property and occupants. Air inlets and exhausts shall be located so as to prevent snow or ice blockage.

[F] 909.4.6 Duration of operation.
All portions of active or engineered smoke control systems shall be capable of continued operation after detection of the fire event for a period of not less than ~~either 20 minutes~~ that time period specified in accordance with Section 2702 or 1.5 times the calculated egress time, whichever is greater.

909.4.7 Smoke control system interaction.
The design shall consider the interaction effects of the operation of multiple smoke control systems for all design scenarios.

[F] 909.5 Smoke barrier construction.
Smoke barriers required for passive smoke control and a smoke control system using the pressurization method shall comply with Section 709. The maximum allowable leakage area shall be the aggregate area calculated using the following leakage area ratios:

1. Walls $A/A_w = 0.00100$

2. Interior *exit stairways* and *ramps* and *exit passageways:* $A/A_w = 0.00035$

3. Enclosed *exit access stairways* and *ramps* and all other shafts: $A/A_w = 0.00150$

4. Floors and roofs: $A/A_F = 0.00050$

where:

A = Total leakage area, square feet (m^2).

`

A_F = Unit floor or roof area of barrier, square feet (m^2).

A_w = Unit wall area of barrier, square feet (m^2).

The leakage area ratios shown do not include openings due to gaps around doors and operable windows. The total leakage area of the *smoke barrier* shall be determined in accordance with Section 909.5.1 and tested in accordance with Section 909.5.2.

[F] 909.5.1 Total leakage area.
Total leakage area of the barrier is the product of the *smoke barrier* gross area multiplied by the allowable leakage area ratio, plus the area of other openings such as gaps around doors and operable windows.

[F] 909.5.2 Testing of leakage area.
Compliance with the maximum total leakage area shall be determined by achieving the minimum air pressure difference across the barrier with the system in the smoke control mode for mechanical smoke control systems utilizing the pressurization method. Compliance with the maximum total leakage area of passive smoke control systems shall be verified through methods such as door fan testing or other methods, as *approved* by the fire code official.

[F] 909.5.3 Opening protection.
Openings in *smoke barriers* shall be protected by automatic-closing devices actuated by the required controls for the mechanical smoke control system. Door openings shall be protected by *fire door assemblies* complying with Section 716.5.3.

Exceptions:

1. Passive smoke control systems with automatic-closing devices actuated by spot-type smoke detectors *listed* for releasing service installed in accordance with Section 907.3.

2. Fixed openings between smoke zones that are protected utilizing the airflow method.

3. In Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities, where a pair of opposite swinging doors are installed across a corridor in accordance with Section 909.5.3.1, the doors shall not be required to be protected in accordance with Section 716. The doors shall be closefitting within operational tolerances and shall not have a center mullion or undercuts in excess of 3/4 inch (19.1 mm), louvers or grilles. The doors shall have head and jamb stops and astragals or rabbets at meeting edges and, where permitted by the door manufacturer's listing, positive-latching devices are not required.

4. In Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities, where such doors are special-purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding door assemblies installed in accordance with Section 1010.1.4.3 and are automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3.

5. Group I-3.

`

6. Openings between smoke zones with clear ceiling heights of 14 feet (4267 mm) or greater and bank-down capacity of greater than 20 minutes as determined by the design fire size.

909.5.3.1 Group I-1 Condition 2; Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities.
In Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and *ambulatory care facilities*, where doors are installed across a *corridor*, the doors shall be automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3 and shall have a vision panel with fire protection-rated glazing materials in fire protection-rated frames, the area of which shall not exceed that tested.

[F] 909.5.3.2 Ducts and air transfer openings.
Ducts and air transfer openings are required to be protected with a minimum Class II, 250°F (121°C) *smoke damper* complying with Section 717.

[F] 909.6 Pressurization method.
The primary mechanical means of controlling smoke shall be by pressure differences across smoke barriers. Maintenance of a tenable environment is not required in the smoke control zone of fire origin.

[F] 909.6.1 Minimum pressure difference.
The minimum pressure difference across a *smoke barrier* shall be 0.05-inch water gage (0.0124 kPa) in fully sprinklered buildings.

In buildings permitted to be other than fully sprinklered, the smoke control system shall be designed to achieve pressure differences not less than two times the maximum calculated pressure difference produced by the design fire.

[F] 909.6.2 Maximum pressure difference.
The maximum air pressure difference across a *smoke barrier* shall be determined by required door-opening or closing forces. The actual force required to open *exit* doors when the system is in the smoke control mode shall be in accordance with Section 1010.1.3. Opening and closing forces for other doors shall be determined by standard engineering methods for the resolution of forces and reactions. The calculated force to set a side-hinged, swinging door in motion shall be determined by:

$$F = F_{dc} + K(WA\Delta P)/2(W-d) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 9-1)}$$

where:

A	=	Door area, square feet (m^2).
d	=	Distance from door handle to latch edge of door, feet (m).
F	=	Total door opening force, pounds (N).
F_{dc}	=	Force required to overcome closing device, pounds (N).
K	=	Coefficient 5.2 (1.0).
W	=	Door width, feet (m).
ΔP	=	Design pressure difference, inches of water (Pa).

`

[F] 909.6.3 Pressurized stairways and elevator hoistways.
Where stairways or elevator hoistways are pressurized, such pressurization systems shall comply with Section 909 as smoke control systems, in addition to the requirements of Sections 909.20 of this code and 909.21 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 909.7 Airflow design method.
Where *approved* by the fire code official, smoke migration through openings fixed in a permanently open position, which are located between smoke control zones by the use of the airflow method, shall be permitted. The design airflow shall be in accordance with this section. Airflow shall be directed to limit smoke migration from the fire zone. The geometry of openings shall be considered to prevent flow reversal from turbulent effects. Smoke control systems using the airflow method shall be designed in accordance with NFPA 92.

[F] 909.7.1 Prohibited conditions.
This method shall not be employed where either the quantity of air or the velocity of the airflow will adversely affect other portions of the smoke control system, unduly intensify the fire, disrupt plume dynamics or interfere with exiting. In no case shall airflow toward the fire exceed 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s). Where the calculated airflow exceeds this limit, the airflow method shall not be used.

[F] 909.8 Exhaust method.
Where *approved* by the fire code official, mechanical smoke control for large enclosed volumes, such as in atriums or malls, shall be permitted to utilize the exhaust method. Smoke control systems using the exhaust method shall be designed in accordance with NFPA 92.

[F] 909.8.1 Smoke layer.
The height of the lowest horizontal surface of the smoke layer interface shall be maintained not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above a walking surface that forms a portion of a required egress system within the smoke zone.

[F] 909.9 Design fire.
The design fire shall be based on a rational analysis performed by the *registered design professional* and *approved* by the fire code official. The design fire shall be based on the analysis in accordance with Section 909.4 and this section.

[F] 909.9.1 Factors considered.
The engineering analysis shall include the characteristics of the fuel, fuel load, effects included by the fire and whether the fire is likely to be steady or unsteady.

[F] 909.9.2 Design fire fuel.
Determination of the design fire shall include consideration of the type of fuel, fuel spacing and configuration.

[F] 909.9.3 Heat-release assumptions.
The analysis shall make use of best available data from *approved* sources and shall not be based on excessively stringent limitations of combustible material.

[F] 909.9.4 Sprinkler effectiveness assumptions.
A documented engineering analysis shall be provided for conditions that assume fire growth is halted at the time of sprinkler activation.

[F] 909.10 Equipment.
Equipment including, but not limited to, fans, ducts, automatic *dampers* and balance *dampers*,

`

shall be suitable for its intended use, suitable for the probable exposure temperatures that the rational analysis indicates and as *approved* by the fire code official.

[F] 909.10.1 Exhaust fans.
Components of exhaust fans shall be rated and certified by the manufacturer for the probable temperature rise to which the components will be exposed. This temperature rise shall be computed by:

$$T_s = (Q_c/mc) + (T_a) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 9-2)}$$

where:

c	=	Specific heat of smoke at smoke layer temperature, Btu/lb°F (kJ/kg · K).
m	=	Exhaust rate, pounds per second (kg/s).
Q_c	=	Convective heat output of fire, Btu/s (kW).
T_a	=	Ambient temperature, °F (K).
T_s	=	Smoke temperature, °F (K).

Exception: Reduced T_s as calculated based on the assurance of adequate dilution air.

[F] 909.10.2 Ducts, including shafts acting as ducts.
Duct materials and joints shall be capable of withstanding the probable temperatures and pressures to which they are exposed as determined in accordance with Section 909.10.1. Ducts shall be constructed and supported in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*. Ducts shall be leak tested to 1.5 times the maximum design pressure in accordance with nationally accepted practices. Measured leakage shall not exceed 5 percent of design flow. Results of such testing shall be a part of the documentation procedure. Ducts shall be supported directly from fire-resistance-rated structural elements of the building by substantial, noncombustible supports.

Exception: Flexible connections, for the purpose of vibration isolation, complying with the *International Mechanical Code* and that are constructed of *approved* fire-resistance-rated materials.

[F] 909.10.3 Equipment, inlets and outlets.
Equipment shall be located so as to not expose uninvolved portions of the building to an additional fire hazard. Outside air inlets shall be located so as to minimize the potential for introducing smoke or flame into the building. Exhaust outlets shall be so located as to minimize reintroduction of smoke into the building and to limit exposure of the building or adjacent buildings to an additional fire hazard. In addition, supply air shall be taken directly from an outside, uncontaminated source located a minimum distance of 20 feet from any air exhaust system or outlet.

[F] 909.10.4 Automatic dampers.
Automatic *dampers*, regardless of the purpose for which they are installed within the smoke control system, shall be *listed* and conform to the requirements of *approved*, recognized standards.

`

[F] 909.10.5 Fans.
In addition to other requirements, belt driven fans shall have 1.5 times the number of belts required for the design duty, with the minimum number of belts being two. Fans shall be selected for stable performance based on normal temperature and, where applicable, elevated temperature. Calculations and manufacturer's fan curves shall be part of the documentation procedures. Fans shall be supported and restrained by noncombustible devices in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 16.

Motors driving fans shall not be operated beyond their nameplate horsepower (kilowatts), as determined from measurement of actual current draw, and shall have a minimum service factor of 1.15.

~~**[F] 909.11 Standby power.**~~
~~Smoke control systems shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 2702.~~

[F] 909.11 Emergency power.
Smoke control systems, including energy management systems used for smoke control or smoke removal, shall be provided with emergency power in accordance with Section 2702.

Exception: In other than high-rise buildings, underground buildings, atriums, and covered mall buildings, smoke control systems shall be provided with legally required standby power in accordance with Section 2702.

~~**909.11.1 Equipment room.**~~
~~The standby power source and its transfer switches shall be in a room separate from the normal power transformers and switch gears and ventilated directly to and from the exterior. The room shall be enclosed with not less than 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.~~

909.11.1 Power sources and power surges.
Elements of the smoke control system relying on volatile memories or the like shall be supplied with uninterruptable power sources of sufficient duration to span 15-minute primary power interruption. Elements of the smoke control system susceptible to power surges shall be suitably protected by conditioners, suppressors or other approved means.

[F] 909.11.2 Power sources and power surges.
Elements of the smoke control system relying on volatile memories or the like shall be supplied with uninterruptable power sources of sufficient duration to span 15-minute primary power interruption. Elements of the smoke control system susceptible to power surges shall be suitably protected by conditioners, suppressors or other *approved* means.

[F] 909.12 Detection and control systems.
Fire detection systems providing control input or output signals to mechanical smoke control systems or elements thereof shall comply with the requirements of Section 907. Such systems shall be equipped with a control unit complying with UL 864 and *listed* as smoke control equipment.

Exception:
Shaft pressurization equipment in buildings constructed in accordance with Washington Administrative Code 51-50-0504 or WAC 51-50-0510, or International Building Code Section 510.4 may utilize a fire detection system that is listed as releasing equipment.

`

909.12.1 Verification.
Control systems for mechanical smoke control systems shall include provisions for verification. Verification shall include positive confirmation of actuation, testing, manual override and the presence of power downstream of all disconnects. A pre-programmed weekly test sequence shall report abnormal conditions audibly, visually, by printed report or other approved means. The pre-programmed weekly test shall operate all devices, equipment and components used for smoke control.

Exception: Where verification of individual components tested through the pre-programmed weekly testing sequence will interfere with, and produce unwanted effects to, normal building operation, such individual components are permitted to be bypassed from the pre-programmed weekly testing, where *approved* by the ~~building~~: fire code official and in accordance with both of the following

1. Where the operation of components is bypassed from the pre-programmed weekly test, presence of power downstream of all disconnects shall be verified weekly by a listed control unit.

2. Testing of all components bypassed from the pre-programmed weekly test shall be in accordance with Section 909.20.6 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 909.12.2 Wiring.
In addition to meeting requirements of NFPA 70, all wiring, regardless of voltage, shall be fully enclosed within continuous raceways.

[F] 909.12.3 Activation.
Smoke control systems shall be activated in accordance with this section.

[F] 909.12.3.1 Pressurization, airflow or exhaust method.
Mechanical smoke control systems using the pressurization, airflow or exhaust method shall have completely automatic control.

[F] 909.12.3.2 Passive method.
Passive smoke control systems actuated by *approved* spot-type detectors *listed* for releasing service shall be permitted.

[F] 909.12.4 Automatic control.
Where completely automatic control is required or used, the automatic-control sequences shall be initiated from an appropriately zoned *automatic sprinkler system* complying with Section 903.3.1.1, manual controls that are readily accessible to the fire department and any smoke detectors required by engineering analysis.

[F] 909.13 Control air tubing.
Control air tubing shall be of sufficient size to meet the required response times. Tubing shall be flushed clean and dry prior to final connections and shall be adequately supported and protected from damage. Tubing passing through concrete or masonry shall be sleeved and protected from abrasion and electrolytic action.

[F] 909.13.1 Materials.
Control-air tubing shall be hard drawn copper, Type L, ACR in accordance with ASTM B42, ASTM B43, ASTM B68, ASTM B88, ASTM B251 and ASTM B280. Fittings shall be wrought copper or brass, solder type in accordance with ASME B16.18 or ASME B16.22. Changes in

`

direction shall be made with appropriate tool bends. Brass compression-type fittings shall be used at final connection to devices; other joints shall be brazed using a BCuP-5 brazing alloy with solidus above 1,100°F (593°C) and liquids below 1,500°F (816°C). Brazing flux shall be used on copper-to-brass joints only.

Exception: Non-metallic tubing used within control panels and at the final connection to devices provided all of the following conditions are met:

1. Tubing shall comply with the requirements of Section 602.2.1.3 of the *International Mechanical Code*.

2. Tubing and connected devices shall be completely enclosed within a galvanized or paint grade steel enclosure having a minimum thickness of 0.0296 inch (0.7534 mm) (No. 22 gage). Entry to the enclosure shall be by copper tubing with a protective grommet of neoprene or Teflon or by suitable brass compression to male barbed adapter.

3. Tubing shall be identified by appropriately documented coding.

4. Tubing shall be neatly tied and supported within the enclosure. Tubing bridging cabinets and doors or moveable devices shall be of sufficient length to avoid tension and excessive stress. Tubing shall be protected against abrasion. Tubing serving devices on doors shall be fastened along hinges.

[F] 909.13.2 Isolation from other functions.
Control tubing serving other than smoke control functions shall be isolated by automatic isolation valves or shall be an independent system.

[F] 909.13.3 Testing.
Control air tubing shall be tested at three times the operating pressure for not less than 30 minutes without any noticeable loss in gauge pressure prior to final connection to devices.

[F] 909.14 Marking and identification.
The detection and control systems shall be clearly marked at all junctions, accesses and terminations.

[F] 909.15 Control diagrams.
Identical control diagrams showing all devices in the system and identifying their location and function shall be maintained current and kept on file with the fire code official, the fire department and in the fire command center in a format and manner *approved* by the fire chief.

[F] 909.16 Fire fighter's smoke control panel.
A fire fighter's smoke control panel for fire department emergency response purposes only shall be provided and shall include manual control or override of automatic control for mechanical smoke control systems. The panel shall be located in a fire command center complying with Section 911 in high-rise buildings or buildings with smoke-protected assembly seating. In all other buildings, the fire fighter's smoke control panel shall be installed in an *approved* location adjacent to the fire alarm control panel. The fire fighter's smoke control panel shall comply with Sections 909.16.1 through 909.16.3.

[F] 909.16.1 Smoke control systems.
Fans within the building shall be shown on the fire fighter's control panel. A clear indication of the direction of airflow and the relationship of components shall be displayed. Status

`

indicators shall be provided for all smoke control equipment, annunciated by fan and zone, and by pilot-lamp-type indicators as follows:

1. Fans, *dampers* and other operating equipment in their normal status—WHITE.

2. Fans, *dampers* and other operating equipment in their off or closed status—RED.

3. Fans, *dampers* and other operating equipment in their on or open status—GREEN.

4. Fans, *dampers* and other operating equipment in a fault status—YELLOW/AMBER.

[F] 909.16.2 Smoke control panel.
The fire fighter's control panel shall provide control capability over the complete smoke control system equipment within the building as follows:

1. ON-AUTO-OFF control over each individual piece of operating smoke control equipment that can also be controlled from other sources within the building. This includes *stairway* pressurization fans; smoke exhaust fans; supply, return and exhaust fans; elevator shaft fans and other operating equipment used or intended for smoke control purposes.

2. OPEN-AUTO-CLOSE control over individual *dampers* relating to smoke control and that are also controlled from other sources within the building.

3. ON-OFF or OPEN-CLOSE control over smoke control and other critical equipment associated with a fire or smoke emergency and that can only be controlled from the fire fighter's control panel.

Exceptions:

1. Complex systems, where *approved*, where the controls and indicators are combined to control and indicate all elements of a single smoke zone as a unit.

2. Complex systems, where *approved*, where the control is accomplished by computer interface using *approved*, plain English commands.

[F] 909.16.3 Control action and priorities.
The firefighter's control panel actions shall be as follows:

1. ON-OFF and OPEN-CLOSE control actions shall have the highest priority of any control point within the building. Once issued from the fire fighter's control panel, automatic or manual control from any other control point within the building shall not contradict the control action. Where automatic means are provided to interrupt normal, nonemergency equipment operation or produce a specific result to safeguard the building or equipment including, but not limited to, duct freeze stats, duct smoke detectors, high-temperature cut outs, temperature-actuated linkage and similar devices, such means shall be capable of being overridden by the fire fighter's control panel. The last control action as indicated by each fire fighter's control panel switch position shall prevail. Control actions shall not require the smoke control system to assume more than one configuration at any one time.

   Exception: Power disconnects required by NFPA 70.

`

2. Only the AUTO position of each three-position firefighter's control panel switch shall allow automatic or manual control action from other control points within the building. The AUTO position shall be the NORMAL, nonemergency, building control position. Where a fire fighter's control panel is in the AUTO position, the actual status of the device (on, off, open, closed) shall continue to be indicated by the status indicator described in Section 909.16.1. Where directed by an automatic signal to assume an emergency condition, the NORMAL position shall become the emergency condition for that device or group of devices within the zone. Control actions shall not require the smoke control system to assume more than one configuration at any one time.

[F] 909.17 System response time.
Smoke-control system activation shall be initiated immediately after receipt of an appropriate automatic or manual activation command. Smoke control systems shall activate individual components (such as *dampers* and fans) in the sequence necessary to prevent physical damage to the fans, *dampers*, ducts and other equipment. For purposes of smoke control, the fire fighter's control panel response time shall be the same for automatic or manual smoke control action initiated from any other building control point. The total response time, including that necessary for detection, shutdown of operating equipment and smoke control system start-up, shall allow for full operational mode to be achieved before the conditions in the space exceed the design smoke condition. ~~The system response time for each component and their sequential relationships shall be detailed in the required rational analysis and verification of their installed condition reported in the required final report.~~ Upon receipt of an alarm condition at the fire alarm control panel, fans, dampers and automatic doors shall have achieved their expected operating state and confirmation of proper operation shall be indicated at the smoke control panel within 60 seconds. Documentation shall be provided in the required final report.

[F] 909.18 Acceptance testing.
Devices, equipment, components and sequences shall be individually tested. These tests, in addition to those required by other provisions of this code, shall consist of determination of function, sequence and, where applicable, capacity of their installed condition.

[F] 909.18.1 Detection devices.
Smoke or fire detectors that are a part of a smoke control system shall be tested in accordance with Chapter 9 in their installed condition. Where applicable, this testing shall include verification of airflow in both minimum and maximum conditions.

[F] 909.18.2 Ducts.
Ducts that are part of a smoke control system shall be traversed using generally accepted practices to determine actual air quantities.

[F] 909.18.3 Dampers.
Dampers shall be tested for function in their installed condition.

[F] 909.18.4 Inlets and outlets.
Inlets and outlets shall be read using generally accepted practices to determine air quantities.

[F] 909.18.5 Fans.
Fans shall be examined for correct rotation. Measurements of voltage, amperage, revolutions per minute (rpm) and belt tension shall be made.

`

[F] 909.18.6 Smoke barriers.
Measurements using inclined manometers or other *approved* calibrated measuring devices shall be made of the pressure differences across *smoke barriers*. Such measurements shall be conducted for each possible smoke control condition.

[F] 909.18.7 Controls.
Each smoke zone equipped with an automatic-initiation device shall be put into operation by the actuation of one such device. Each additional device within the zone shall be verified to cause the same sequence without requiring the operation of fan motors in order to prevent damage. Control sequences shall be verified throughout the system, including verification of override from the fire-fighter's control panel and simulation of standby power conditions.

[F] 909.18.8 Testing for smoke control.
Smoke control systems shall be tested by a special inspector in accordance with Section 1705.18.

[F] 909.18.8.1 Scope of testing.
Testing shall be conducted in accordance with the following:

1. During erection of ductwork and prior to concealment for the purposes of leakage testing and recording of device location.

2. Prior to occupancy and after sufficient completion for the purposes of pressure-difference testing, flow measurements, and detection and control verification.

[F] 909.18.8.2 Qualifications.
Approved agencies for smoke control testing shall have expertise in fire protection engineering, mechanical engineering and certification as air balancers.

[F] 909.18.8.3 Reports.
A complete report of testing shall be prepared by the *approved* agency. The report shall include identification of all devices by manufacturer, nameplate data, design values, measured values and identification tag or *mark*. The report shall be reviewed by the responsible *registered design professional* and, when satisfied that the design intent has been achieved, the responsible *registered design professional* shall sign, seal and date the report.

[F] 909.18.8.3.1 Report filing.
A copy of the final report shall be filed with the fire code official and an identical copy shall be maintained in an *approved* location at the building.

[F] 909.18.8.3.2 Certificate of compliance.
A certificate of compliance shall be provided by the special inspector and responsible registered design professional certifying that the referenced property is in substantial compliance. The certificate shall identify the company, designer, special inspector that performed the testing, name, date and address of the property being tested. The following statement must also be included: "I have reviewed the report and by personal knowledge and on- site observation certify that the smoke control system is in substantial compliance with the approved design documents, and to the best of my understanding complies with requirements of the applicable codes as identified in the smoke control report."

`

[F] 909.18.9 Identification and documentation.
Charts, drawings and other documents identifying and locating each component of the smoke control system, and describing its proper function and maintenance requirements, shall be maintained on file at the building as an attachment to the report required by Section 909.18.8.3. Devices shall have an *approved* identifying tag or *mark* on them consistent with the other required documentation and shall be dated indicating the last time they were successfully tested and by whom.

[F] 909.19 System acceptance.
Buildings, or portions thereof, required by this code to comply with this section shall not be issued a certificate of occupancy until such time that the fire code official determines that the provisions of this section have been fully complied with and that the fire department has received satisfactory instruction on the operation, both automatic and manual, of the system and a written maintenance program complying with the requirements of Section 909.20.1 of the *International Fire Code* has been submitted and approved by the fire code official.

Exception: In buildings of phased construction, a temporary certificate of occupancy, as *approved* by the fire code official, shall be allowed provided that those portions of the building to be occupied meet the requirements of this section and that the remainder does not pose a significant hazard to the safety of the proposed occupants or adjacent buildings.

909.20 Smoke proof enclosures.
Where required by Section 1023.11, a smoke proof enclosure shall be constructed in accordance with this section. All portions of the smoke proof enclosure ventilation system and equipment must comply with the provisions of Section 909. A smoke proof enclosure shall consist of an *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* that is enclosed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 1023 and an open exterior balcony or ventilated vestibule meeting the requirements of this section. Where access to the roof is required by the *International Fire Code*, such access shall be from the smoke proof enclosure where a smoke proof enclosure is required.

909.20.1 Access.
Access to the *stairway* or *ramp* shall be by way of a vestibule or an open exterior balcony. The minimum dimension of the vestibule shall be not less than the required width of the *corridor* leading to the vestibule but shall not have a width of less than 44 inches (1118 mm) and shall not have a length of less than 72 inches (1829 mm) in the direction of egress travel.

909.20.2 Construction.
The smoke proof enclosure shall be separated from the remainder of the building by not less than 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Openings are not permitted other than the required *means of egress* doors. The vestibule shall be separated from the *stairway* or *ramp* by not less than 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The open exterior balcony shall be constructed in accordance with the *fire-resistance rating* requirements for floor assemblies.

909.20.2.1 Door closers.
Doors in a smoke proof enclosure shall be sel- or automatic closing by actuation of a smoke detector in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3 and shall be installed at the floor-side entrance to the smoke proof enclosure. The actuation of the smoke detector on any

door shall activate the closing devices on all doors in the smoke proof enclosure at all levels. Smoke detectors shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.3.

909.20.3 Natural ventilation alternative.
The provisions of Sections 909.20.3.1 through 909.20.3.3 shall apply to ventilation of smoke proof enclosures by natural means.

909.20.3.1 Balcony doors.
Where access to the *stairway* or *ramp* is by way of an open exterior balcony, the door assembly into the enclosure shall be a *fire door assembly* in accordance with Section 716.5.

909.20.3.2 Vestibule doors.
Where access to the *stairway* or *ramp* is by way of a vestibule, the door assembly into the vestibule shall be a *fire door assembly* complying with Section 716.5. The door assembly from the vestibule to the *stairway* shall have not less than a 20-minute *fire protection rating* complying with Section 716.5.

909.20.3.3 Vestibule ventilation.
Each vestibule shall have a minimum net area of 16 square feet (1.5 m^2) of opening in a wall facing an outer *court*, *yard* or *public way* that is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) in width.

909.20.4 Mechanical ventilation alternative.
The provisions of Sections 909.20.4.1 through 909.20.4.4 shall apply to ventilation of smoke proof enclosures by mechanical means.

909.20.4.1 Vestibule doors.
The door assembly from the building into the vestibule shall be a *fire door assembly* complying with Section 716.5.3. The door assembly from the vestibule to the *stairway* or *ramp* shall not have less than a 20-minute *fire protection rating* and shall meet the requirements for a smoke door assembly in accordance with Section 716.5.3. The door shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 105.

909.20.4.2 Vestibule ventilation.
The vestibule shall be supplied with not less than one air change per minute and the exhaust shall be not less than 150 percent of supply. Supply air shall enter and exhaust air shall discharge from the vestibule through separate, tightly constructed ducts used only for that purpose. Supply air shall enter the vestibule within 6 inches (152 mm) of the floor level. The top of the exhaust register shall be located at the top of the smoke trap but not more than 6 inches (152 mm) down from the top of the trap, and shall be entirely within the smoke trap area. Doors in the open position shall not obstruct duct openings. Duct openings with controlling *dampers* are permitted where necessary to meet the design requirements, but *dampers* are not otherwise required.

909.20.4.2.1 Engineered ventilation system.
Where a specially engineered system is used, the system shall exhaust a quantity of air equal to not less than 90 air changes per hour from any vestibule in the emergency operation mode and shall be sized to handle three vestibules simultaneously. Smoke detectors shall be located at the floor-side entrance to each vestibule and shall activate the system for the affected vestibule. Smoke detectors shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.3.

`

909.20.4.3 Smoke trap.
The vestibule ceiling shall be not less than 20 inches (508 mm) higher than the door opening into the vestibule to serve as a smoke and heat trap and to provide an upward-moving air column. The height shall not be decreased unless *approved* and justified by design and test.

909.20.4.4 Stairway or ramp shaft air movement system.
The *stairway* or *ramp* shaft shall be provided with a dampered relief opening and supplied with sufficient air to maintain a minimum positive pressure of 0.10 inch of water (25 Pa) in the shaft relative to the vestibule with all doors closed.

909.20.5 Stairway and ramp pressurization alternative.
Where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the vestibule is not required, provided each interior *exit stairway* or *ramp* is pressurized to not less than 0.10 inch of water (25 Pa) and not more than 0.35 inches of water (87 Pa) in the shaft relative to the building measured with all *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* doors closed under maximum anticipated conditions of stack effect and wind effect.

909.20.6 Ventilating equipment.
The activation of ventilating equipment required by the alternatives in Sections 909.20.4 and 909.20.5 shall be by smoke detectors installed at each floor level at an *approved* location at the entrance to the smoke proof enclosure. When the closing device for the *stairway* and *ramp* shaft and vestibule doors is activated by smoke detection or power failure, the mechanical equipment shall activate and operate at the required performance levels. Smoke detectors shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.3.

909.20.6.1 Ventilation systems.
Smoke proof enclosure ventilation systems shall be independent of other building ventilation systems. The equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall comply with one of the following:

1. Equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall be located exterior to the building and directly connected to the smoke proof enclosure or connected to the smoke proof enclosure by ductwork enclosed by not less than 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

2. Equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall be located within the smokeproof enclosure with intake or exhaust directly from and to the outside or through ductwork enclosed by not less than 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

3. Equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall be located within the building if separated from the remainder of the building, including other mechanical equipment, by not less than 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

Exceptions:

1. Control wiring and power wiring utilizing a 2- hour rated cable.

`

2. Where encased with not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of concrete.

3. Control wiring and power wiring protected by a listed electrical circuit protective system with a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.

909.20.6.2 Standby power.
Mechanical vestibule and *stairway* and *ramp* shaft ventilation systems and automatic fire detection systems shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 2702.

~~**909.20.6.3 Acceptance and testing.**~~
~~Before the mechanical equipment is *approved*, the system shall be tested in the presence of the *building official* to confirm that the system is operating in compliance with these requirements.~~

909.20.6.3 Acceptance and testing. Special inspection for performance shall be required in accordance with Section 909.18.8.

909.21 Elevator hoistway pressurization alternative.
Where elevator hoistway pressurization is provided in lieu of required enclosed elevator lobbies, the pressurization system shall comply with Sections 909.21.1 through 909.21.11.

909.21.1 Pressurization requirements.
Elevator hoistways shall be pressurized to maintain a minimum positive pressure of 0.10 inch of water (25 Pa) and a maximum positive pressure of 0.25 inch of water (67 Pa) with respect to adjacent occupied space on all floors. This pressure shall be measured at the midpoint of each hoistway door, with all elevator cars at the floor of recall and all hoistway doors on the floor of recall open and all other hoistway doors closed. The pressure differentials shall be measured between the hoistway and the adjacent elevator landing. The opening and closing of hoistway doors at each level must be demonstrated during this test. The supply air intake shall be from an outside, uncontaminated source located a minimum distance of 20 feet (6096 mm) from any air exhaust system or outlet.

Exceptions:

1. On floors containing only Group R occupancies, the pressure differential is permitted to be measured between the hoistway and a *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit*.

2. Where an elevator opens into a lobby enclosed in accordance with Section 3007.6 or 3008.6, the pressure differential is permitted to be measured between the hoistway and the space immediately outside the door(s) from the floor to the enclosed lobby.

3. The pressure differential is permitted to be measured relative to the outdoor atmosphere on floors other than the following:

   3.1. The fire floor.

   3.2. The two floors immediately below the fire floor.

`

3.3. The floor immediately above the fire floor.

4. The minimum positive pressure of 0.10 inch of water (25 Pa) and a maximum positive pressure of 0.25 inch of water (67 Pa) with respect to occupied floors are not required at the floor of recall with the doors open.

909.21.1.1 Use of ventilation systems.
Ventilation systems, other than hoistway supply air systems, are permitted to be used to exhaust air from adjacent spaces on the fire floor, two floors immediately below and one floor immediately above the fire floor to the building's exterior where necessary to maintain positive pressure relationships as required in Section 909.21.1 during operation of the elevator shaft pressurization system.

909.21.2 Rational analysis.
A rational analysis complying with Section 909.4 shall be submitted with the *construction documents*.

909.21.3 Ducts for system.
Any duct system that is part of the pressurization system shall be protected with the same *fire-resistance rating* as required for the elevator shaft enclosure and equipment, control wiring, power wiring, and ductwork shall comply with one of the methods specified in Section 909.20.6.1. Ducts shall be in accordance with Section 909.10.2.

909.21.4 Fan system.
The fan system provided for the pressurization system shall be as required by Sections 909.21.4.1 through 909.21.4.4.

909.21.4.1 Fire resistance.
Where located within the building, the fan system that provides the pressurization shall be protected with the same *fire-resistance rating* required for the elevator shaft enclosure.

909.21.4.2 Smoke detection.
The fan system shall be equipped with a smoke detector that will automatically shut down the fan system when smoke is detected within the system.

909.21.4.3 Separate systems.
A separate fan system shall be used for each elevator hoistway.

909.21.4.4 Fan capacity.
The supply fan shall be either adjustable with a capacity of not less than 1,000 cfm (0.4719 m^3/s) per door, or that specified by a *registered design professional* to meet the requirements of a designed pressurization system. Fans shall be in accordance with Section 909.10.5.

909.21.5 Standby power.
The pressurization system shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 2702.

909.21.6 Activation of pressurization system.
The elevator pressurization system shall be activated upon activation of either the building fire alarm system or the elevator lobby smoke detectors. Where both a building fire alarm

`

system and elevator lobby smoke detectors are present, each shall be independently capable of activating the pressurization system.

909.21.7 Testing.
Testing for performance shall be required in accordance with Section 909.18.8. System acceptance shall be in accordance with Section 909.19.

909.21.8 Marking and identification.
Detection and control systems shall be marked in accordance with Section 909.14.

909.21.9 Control diagrams.
Control diagrams shall be provided in accordance with Section 909.15.

909.21.10 Control panel.
A control panel complying with Section 909.16 shall be provided.

909.21.11 System response time.
Hoistway pressurization systems shall comply with the requirements for smoke control system response time in Section 909.17.

909.21.12 Hoistway venting. Hoistway venting need not be provided for pressurized elevator shafts.

909.21.13 Machine rooms. Elevator machine rooms shall be pressurized in accordance with this section unless separated from the hoistway shaft by construction in accordance with Section 707.

SECTION 910
SMOKE AND HEAT REMOVAL

[F] 910.1 General.
Where required by this code, smoke and heat vents or mechanical smoke removal systems shall conform to the requirements of this section.

[F] 910.2 Where required.
Smoke and heat vents or a mechanical smoke removal system shall be installed as required by Sections 910.2.1 and 910.2.2.

Exceptions:

1. Frozen food warehouses used solely for storage of Class I and II commodities where protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system.

2. Smoke and heat removal shall not be required in areas of buildings equipped with early suppression fast-response (ESFR) sprinklers.

3. Smoke and heat removal shall not be required in areas of buildings equipped with control mode special application sprinklers with a response time index of 50 $(m \cdot s)^{1/2}$ or less that are listed to control a fire in stored commodities with 12 or fewer sprinklers.

`

910.2.1 Group F-1 or S-1.
Smoke and heat vents installed in accordance with Section 910.3 or a mechanical smoke removal system installed in accordance with Section 910.4 shall be installed in buildings and portions thereof used as a Group F-1 or S-1 occupancy having more than 50,000 square feet (4645 m^2) of undivided area. In occupied portions of a building equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 where the upper surface of the story is not a roof assembly, a mechanical smoke removal system in accordance with Section 910.4 shall be installed.

Exception: Group S-1 aircraft repair hangars.

[F] 910.2.2 High-piled combustible storage.
Smoke and heat removal required by Table 3206.2 of the *International Fire Code* for buildings and portions thereof containing high-piled combustible storage shall be installed in accordance with Section 910.3 in unsprinklered buildings. In buildings and portions thereof containing high-piled combustible storage equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, a smoke and heat removal system shall be installed in accordance with Section 910.3 or 910.4. In occupied portions of a building equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, where the upper surface of the story is not a roof assembly, a mechanical smoke removal system in accordance with Section 910.4 shall be installed.

[F] 910.3 Smoke and heat vents.
The design and installation of smoke and heat vents shall be in accordance with Sections 910.3.1 through 910.3.3.

[F] 910.3.1 Listing and labeling.
Smoke and heat vents shall be *listed* and labeled to indicate compliance with UL 793 or FM 4430.

[F] 910.3.2 Smoke and heat vent locations.
Smoke and heat vents shall be located 20 feet (6096 mm) or more from adjacent *lot lines* and *fire walls* and 10 feet (3048 mm) or more from *fire barriers*. Vents shall be uniformly located within the roof in the areas of the building where the vents are required to be installed by Section 910.2 with consideration given to roof pitch, sprinkler location and structural members.

910.3.3 Smoke and heat vents area.
The required aggregate area of smoke and heat vents shall be calculated as follows: For buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1:

For buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1:

$$A_{VR} = V/9000 \qquad \textbf{(Equation 9-3)}$$

where:

A_{VR} = The required aggregate vent area (ft^2).

`

V = Volume (ft^3) of the area that requires smoke removal.

For unsprinklered buildings:

$A_{VR} = A_{FA}/50$ **(Equation 9-4)**

where:

A_{VR} The required aggregate vent area (ft^2).

A_{FA} The area of the floor in the area that requires smoke removal.

[F] 910.4 Mechanical smoke removal systems.
Mechanical smoke removal systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 910.4.1 through 910.4.7.

910.4.1 Automatic sprinklers required.
The building shall be equipped throughout with an *approved automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

910.4.2 Exhaust fan construction.
Exhaust fans that are part of a mechanical smoke removal system shall be rated for operation at 221°F (105°C). Exhaust fan motors shall be located outside of the exhaust fan air stream.

910.4.3 System design criteria.
The mechanical smoke removal system shall be sized to exhaust the building at a minimum rate of two air changes per hour based upon the volume of the building or portion thereof without contents. The capacity of each exhaust fan shall not exceed 30,000 cubic feet per minute (14.2 $m^3/_{sec}$).

910.4.3.1 Makeup air.
Makeup air openings shall be provided within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the floor level. Operation of makeup air openings shall be manual or automatic. The minimum gross area of makeup air inlets shall be 8 square feet per 1,000 cubic feet per minute (0.74 m^2 per 0.4719 m^3/s) of smoke exhaust.

910.4.4 Activation.
The mechanical smoke removal system shall be activated by manual controls only.

910.4.5 Manual control location.
Manual controls shall be located so as to be accessible to the fire service from an exterior door of the building and protected against interior fire exposure by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

[F] 910.4.6 Control wiring.
Wiring for operation and control of mechanical smoke removal systems shall be connected ahead of the main disconnect in accordance with Section 701.12E of NFPA 70 and be

`

protected against interior fire exposure to temperatures in excess of 1,000°F (538°C) for a period of not less than 15 minutes.

[F] 910.4.7 Controls.
Where building air-handling and mechanical smoke removal systems are combined or where independent building air-handling systems are provided, fans shall automatically shut down in accordance with the International Mechanical Code. The manual controls provided for the smoke removal system shall have the capability to override the automatic shutdown of fans that are part of the smoke removal system.

910.5 Maintenance.
Smoke and heat vents and mechanical smoke removal systems shall be maintained in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 911
FIRE COMMAND CENTER

[F] 911.1 General.
Where required by other sections of this code and in buildings classified as high-rise buildings by this code, a fire command center for fire department operations shall be provided and shall comply with Sections 911.1.1 through 911.1.6.

[F] 911.1.1 Location and access.
The location and accessibility of the fire command center shall be *approved* by the fire chief.

[F] 911.1.2 Separation.
The fire command center shall be separated from the remainder of the building by not less than a ~~1-hour~~ 2-hour *fire barrier* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assembly* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Penetrations into and openings through a fire command center are prohibited except for required exit doors, equipment and ductwork necessary for heating, cooling or ventilation, sprinkler branch line piping, electrical raceway for fire department communication and control and electrical raceway serving the fire command center or being controlled from the fire command center. Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714.

Exception: Metallic piping with no joints or openings.

[F] 911.1.3 Size.
The room shall be not less than 200 square feet (19 m^2) with a minimum dimension of 10 feet (3048 mm).

[F] 911.1.4 Layout approval.
A layout of the fire command center and all features required by this section to be contained therein shall be submitted for approval prior to installation.

[F] 911.1.5 Storage.
Storage unrelated to operation of the fire command center shall be prohibited.

[F] 911.1.6 Required features.
The fire command center shall comply with NFPA 72 and shall contain all of the following features:

1. The emergency voice/alarm communication system control unit.

`

2. The fire department communications system.

3. Fire detection and alarm system annunciator.

4. Annunciator unit visually indicating the location of the elevators and whether they are operational.

5. Status indicators and controls for air distribution systems.

6. The fire fighter's control panel required by Section 909.16 for smoke control systems installed in the building.

7. Controls for unlocking *interior exit stairway* doors simultaneously.

8. Sprinkler valve and waterflow detector display panels.

9. Emergency and standby power status indicators.

10. A telephone for fire department use with controlled access to the public telephone system.

11. Fire pump status indicators.

12. Schematic building plans indicating the typical floor plan and detailing the building core, *means of egress*, fire protection systems, fire fighter air replenishment system, fire-fighting equipment and fire department access and the location of *fire walls, fire barriers, fire partitions, smoke barriers* and smoke partitions.

13. An *approved* Building Information Card that contains, but is not limited to, the following information:

    13.1. General building information that includes: property name, address, the number of floors in the building above and below grade, use and occupancy classification (for mixed uses, identify the different types of occupancies on each floor), and the estimated building population during the day, night and weekend.

    13.2. Building emergency contact information that includes: a list of the building's emergency contacts including but not limited to building manager and building engineer and their respective work phone number, cell phone number, e-mail address.

    13.3. Building construction information that includes: the type of building construction including but not limited to floors, walls, columns, and roof assembly.

    13.4. *Exit access* and *exit stairway* information that includes: number of *exit access* and *exit stairways* in the building, each *exit access* and *exit stairway* designation and floors served, location where each *exit access* and *exit stairway* discharges, *interior exit stairways* that are pressurized, *exit* stairways provided with emergency lighting, each *exit stairway* that allows re-entry, *exit stairways* providing roof access; elevator information that includes: number of elevator banks, elevator bank designation, elevator car numbers and respective floors

`

that they serve; location of elevator machine rooms, control rooms and control spaces; location of sky lobby, location of freight elevator banks.

13.5. Building services and system information that includes: location of mechanical rooms, location of building management system, location and capacity of all fuel oil tanks, location of emergency generator, location of natural gas service.

13.6. Fire protection system information that includes: location of standpipes, location of fire pump room, location of fire department connections, floors protected by automatic sprinklers, location of different types of *automatic sprinkler systems* installed including, but not limited to, dry, wet and pre-action.

13.7 Hazardous material information that includes: location of hazardous material, quantity of hazardous material.

14. Work table.

15. Generator supervision devices, manual start and transfer features.

16. Public address system, where specifically required by other sections of this code.

17. Elevator fire recall switch in accordance with ASME A17.1/BSA 44.

18. Elevator emergency or standby power selector switch(es), where emergency or standby power is provided.

SECTION 912
FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

[F] 912.1 Installation.
Fire department connections shall be installed in accordance with the NFPA standard applicable to the system design and shall comply with Sections 912.2 through 912.6.

[F] 912.2 Location.
With respect to hydrants, driveways, buildings and landscaping, fire department connections shall be so located that fire apparatus and hose connected to supply the system will not obstruct access to the buildings for other fire apparatus. The location of fire department connections shall be *approved* by the fire chief.

[F] 912.2.1 Visible location.
Fire department connections shall be located on the street side of buildings, fully visible and recognizable from the street or nearest point of fire department vehicle access or as otherwise *approved* by the fire chief.

[F] 912.2.2 Existing buildings.
On existing buildings, wherever the fire department connection is not visible to approaching fire apparatus, the fire department connection shall be indicated by an *approved* sign mounted on the street front or on the side of the building. Such sign shall have the letters “FDC” not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high and words in letters not less than 2 inches (51 mm) high or an arrow to indicate the location. Such signs shall be subject to the approval of the fire code official.

`

[F] 912.3 Fire hose threads.
Fire hose threads used in connection with standpipe systems shall be *approved* and shall be compatible with fire department hose threads.

[F] 912.4 Access.
Immediate access to fire department connections shall be maintained at all times and without obstruction by fences, bushes, trees, walls or any other fixed or moveable object. Access to fire department connections shall be *approved* by the fire chief.

Exception: Fences, where provided with an access gate equipped with a sign complying with the legend requirements of this section and a means of emergency operation. The gate and the means of emergency operation shall be *approved* by the fire chief and maintained operational at all times.

[F] 912.4.1 Locking fire department connection caps.
The fire code official is authorized to require locking caps on fire department connections for water-based *fire protection systems* where the responding fire department carries appropriate key wrenches for removal.

[F] 912.4.2 Clear space around connections.
A working space of not less than 36 inches (762 mm) in width, 36 inches (914 mm) in depth and 78 inches (1981 mm) in height shall be provided and maintained in front of and to the sides of wall-mounted fire department connections and around the circumference of free-standing fire department connections, except as otherwise required or *approved* by the fire chief.

[F] 912.4.3 Physical protection.
Where fire department connections are subject to impact by a motor vehicle, vehicle impact protection shall be provided in accordance with Section 312 of the *International Fire Code.*

[F] 912.5 Signs.
A metal sign with raised letters not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in size shall be mounted on all fire department connections serving automatic sprinklers, standpipes or fire pump connections. Such signs shall read: ~~AUTOMATIC SPRINKLERS or STANDPIPES~~ SPRINKLERS, STANDPIPES, COMBINED, DRY S/PIPES, DRY S/P & SPKRS, BOOST TO _____ (as specified by the fire code official) PSI, or TEST CONNECTION or a combination thereof as applicable. ~~Where the fire department connection does not serve the entire building, a sign shall be provided indicating the portions of the building served.~~ Systems utilizing Pressure Reducing Valves (PRV's) must note the required boosted pressure at the Fire Department Connection, in order to overcome the PRV setting. If it is not readily apparent which building or portion the fire department connection serves, the sign shall also include the premise address or building identification, and the portion of the building protected.

Exception: A metal sign with letters at least 1 inch (25 mm) in size may match the fire department connection where chrome, brass, or other approved decorative finish is utilized.

912.5.1 Markings.
The fire department connection stand-alone pipe shall be painted red for greater visibility.

Exception: Fire department connections such as chrome, brass, or other approved decorative finish.

`

Point of Information

Systems utilizing Pressure Reducing Valves (PRV's) must note the required boosted pressure at the Fire Department Connection, in order to overcome the PRV setting.

[P] 912.6 Backflow protection.
The potable water supply to automatic sprinkler and standpipe systems shall be protected against backflow as required by the *International Plumbing Code*.

SECTION 913
FIRE PUMPS

[F] 913.1 General.
Where provided, fire pumps shall be installed in accordance with this section and NFPA 20.

913.1.1 Fire Pump Controls. Fire pump controllers supplying standpipes in excess of 130 p.s.i. shall be soft start.

[F] 913.2 Protection against interruption of service.
The fire pump, driver and controller shall be protected in accordance with NFPA 20 against possible interruption of service through damage caused by explosion, fire, flood, earthquake, rodents, insects, windstorm, freezing, vandalism and other adverse conditions.

913.2.1 Protection of fire pump rooms and access.
Fire pumps shall be located in rooms that are separated from all other areas of the building by 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 2-hour *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Fire pump rooms not directly accessible from the outside shall be accessible through an enclosed passageway from an interior exit stairway or exterior exit. The enclosed passageway shall have a fireresistance rating not less than the fire-resistance rating of the fire pump room (See NFPA 20 Section 4.12.2.1.2).

~~**Exceptions:**~~

1. ~~In other than high-rise buildings, separation by 1- hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 1-hour *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, shall be permitted in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.~~

2. ~~Separation is not required for fire pumps physically separated in accordance with NFPA 20.~~

Point of Information

These provisions originate in NFPA 20 (2013) and are intended to facilitate fire department access to the fire pump room. Ideally fire pump rooms are located on the perimeter of the building affording direct access. Where that is not possible, a protected passageway is required. This passageway is not synonymous with an exit passageway and therefore not subject to the significant limitations of allowable penetrations. Fire pump rooms are not permitted to open directly into an exit passageway or interior exit stairway; rather the fire pump room must open into a vestibule before access to an exit passageway or an interior exit stairway.

`

[F] 913.2.2 Circuits supplying fire pumps.
Cables used for survivability of circuits supplying fire pumps shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 2196. Electrical circuit protective systems shall be installed in accordance with their listing requirements.

[F] 913.3 Temperature of pump room.
Suitable means shall be provided for maintaining the temperature of a pump room or pump house, where required, above 40°F (5°C).

[F] 913.3.1 Engine manufacturer's recommendation.
Temperature of the pump room, pump house or area where engines are installed shall never be less than the minimum recommended by the engine manufacturer. The engine manufacturer's recommendations for oil heaters shall be followed.

[F] 913.4 Valve supervision.
Where provided, the fire pump suction, discharge and bypass valves, and isolation valves on the backflow prevention device or assembly shall be supervised open by one of the following methods:

1. Central-station, proprietary or remote-station signaling service.

2. Local signaling service that will cause the sounding of an audible signal at a *constantly attended location*.

3. Locking valves open.

4. Sealing of valves and *approved* weekly recorded inspection where valves are located within fenced enclosures under the control of the owner.

[F] 913.4.1 Test outlet valve supervision.
Fire pump test outlet valves shall be supervised in the closed position.

[F] 913.5 Acceptance test.
Acceptance testing shall be done in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 20.

SECTION 914
EMERGENCY RESPONDER SAFETY FEATURES

[F] 914.1 Shaftway markings.
Vertical shafts shall be identified as required by Sections 914.1.1 and 914.1.2.

[F] 914.1.1 Exterior access to shaftways.
Outside openings accessible to the fire department and that open directly on a hoistway or shaftway communicating between two or more floors in a building shall be plainly marked with the word "SHAFTWAY" in red letters not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high on a white background. Such warning signs shall be placed so as to be readily discernible from the outside of the building.

[F] 914.1.2 Interior access to shaftways.
Door or window openings to a hoistway or shaftway from the interior of the building shall be plainly marked with the word "SHAFTWAY" in red letters not less than 6 inches (152 mm)

`

high on a white background. Such warning signs shall be placed so as to be readily discernible.

Exception: Markings shall not be required on shaftway openings that are readily discernible as openings onto a shaftway by the construction or arrangement.

[F] 914.2 Equipment room identification.
Fire protection equipment shall be identified in an *approved* manner. Rooms containing controls for air-conditioning systems, sprinkler risers and valves or other fire detection, suppression or control elements shall be identified for the use of the fire department. *Approved* signs required to identify fire protection equipment and equipment location shall be constructed of durable materials, permanently installed and readily visible.

SECTION 915
CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTION

[F] 915.1 General.
Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in new buildings in accordance with Sections 915.1.1 through 915.6. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in existing buildings in accordance with Chapter 11 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 915.1.1 Where required.
Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group I-1, I-2, I-4 and R occupancies and in classrooms in Group E occupancies in the locations specified in Section 915.2 where any of the conditions in Sections 915.1.2 through 915.1.6 exist.

Exceptions:

1. R-2 occupancies, with the exception of R-2 college dormitories, are required to install carbon monoxide detectors without exception.

2. Sleeping units or dwelling units in I and R-1 occupancies and R-2 college dormitories, hotel, DOC prisons and work releases and DSHS licensed boarding home and residential treatment facility occupancies which do not themselves contain a fuel burning appliance, a fuel-burning fireplace, or have an attached garage, need not be provided with carbon monoxide alarms provided that they comply with the exceptions of 915.1.4.

[F] 915.1.2 Fuel-burning appliances and fuel-burning fireplaces.
Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms that contain a fuel-burning appliance or a fuel-burning fireplace.

[F] 915.1.3 Forced-air furnaces.
Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms served by a fuel-burning, forced-air furnace.

Exception: Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms if carbon monoxide detection is provided in the first room or area served by each main duct leaving the furnace, and the carbon monoxide alarm signals are automatically transmitted to an approved location.

[F] 915.1.4 Fuel-burning appliances outside of dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms.

`

Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms located in buildings that contain fuel burning appliances or fuel-burning fireplaces.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms where there are no communicating openings between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the *dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit* or classroom.

2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms where carbon monoxide detection is provided in one of the following locations:

   2.1. In an approved location between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the *dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit* or classroom.

   2.2. On the ceiling of the room containing the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace.

[F] 915.1.5 Private garages.
Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms in buildings with attached private garages.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where there are no communicating openings between the private garage and the *dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit* or classroom.

2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms located more than one story above or below a private garage.

3. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where the private garage connects to the building through an open-ended corridor.

4. Where carbon monoxide detection is provided in an approved location between openings to a private garage and *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* or classrooms, carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in the *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* or classrooms.

[F] 915.1.6 Exempt garages.
For determining compliance with Section 915.1.5, an *open parking garage* complying with Section 406.5 or an enclosed parking garage complying with Section 406.6 shall not be considered a private garage.

[F] 915.2 Locations.
Where required by Section 915.1.1, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in the locations specified in Sections 915.2.1 through 915.2.3.

[F] 915.2.1 Dwelling units.
Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in *dwelling units* outside of each separate

`

sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms and on each level of the dwelling. Where a fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace is located within a bedroom or its attached bathroom, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed within the bedroom.

[F] 915.2.2 Sleeping units.
Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in *sleeping units*.

Exception: Carbon monoxide detection shall be allowed to be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the *sleeping unit* where the *sleeping unit* or its attached bathroom does not contain a fuel-burning appliance and is not served by a forced air furnace.

[F] 915.2.3 Group E occupancies.
~~Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in classrooms in Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel.~~
When required by Section 915.1 in new buildings, or by Chapter 11 of the International Fire Code, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in classrooms in Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel.

Exception: ~~Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall not be required to be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel in Group E occupancies with an occupant load of 30 or less.~~

1. Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall not be required to be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel in Group E occupancies with an occupant load of 50 or less.

2. Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall not be required to be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel in Group E occupancies where an exception contained in Section 915.1 applies, or in Group E occupancies where signals are transmitted to an off-site service monitored by a third party, such as a service that monitors fire protection systems in the building.

[F] 915.3 Detection equipment.
Carbon monoxide detection required by Sections 915.1 through 915.2.3 shall be provided by carbon monoxide alarms complying with Section 915.4 or carbon monoxide detection systems complying with Section 915.5.

[F] 915.4 Carbon monoxide alarms.
Carbon monoxide alarms shall comply with Sections 915.4.1 through 915.4.3.

[F] 915.4.1 Power source.
Carbon monoxide alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source, and when primary power is interrupted, shall receive power from a battery. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than that required for overcurrent protection.

Exception: Where installed in buildings without commercial power, battery-powered carbon monoxide alarms shall be an acceptable alternative.

`

[F] 915.4.2 Listings.
Carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed in accordance with UL 2034.

[F] 915.4.3 Combination alarms.
Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be listed in accordance with UL 2034 and UL 217.

[F] 915.5 Carbon monoxide detection systems.
Carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms and shall comply with Sections 915.5.1 through 915.5.3.

[F] 915.5.1 General.
Carbon monoxide detection systems shall comply with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be listed in accordance with UL 2075.

[F] 915.5.2 Locations.
Carbon monoxide detectors shall be installed in the locations specified in Section 915.2. These locations supersede the locations specified in NFPA 720.

[F] 915.5.3 Combination detectors.
Combination carbon monoxide/smoke detectors installed in carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide detectors, provided they are listed in accordance with UL 2075 and UL 268.

[F] 915.6 Maintenance.
Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detection systems shall be maintained in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 916
EMERGENCY RESPONDER RADIO COVERAGE

[F] 916.1 General.
Emergency responder radio coverage shall be provided in all new buildings in accordance with Section 510 of the *International Fire Code*.

`

SECTION 917
FIREFIGHTER AIR SYSTEMS

917.1 Scope. The design, installation, and maintenance of firefighter air systems shall be in accordance with this section.

917.2 Required installations. Firefighter air system shall be installed in the following buildings:

1. Buildings classified as a *High-rise building* in accordance with the International *Building Code*

2. Transportation tunnels constructed in accordance with NFPA 130 or 502 that exceed 300' in length.

917.3 Plans and contractor qualifications.

917.3.1 Plans. Prior to the installation of a firefighter air system, a minimum of two sets of plans and specifications shall be submitted to the Bellevue Fire Department for review and approval. Plans shall demonstrate compliance with the requirements of this section and shall include calculations prepared by a registered professional engineer demonstrating that the design criteria for all pressure containing components is satisfied plus a minimum safety factor of 25 percent.

The plans submittal shall also include specifications for the tubing, fittings, and manufacturer data sheets for valves, pressure regulators, pressure relief devices, gauges, RIC universal air connections and cylinder filling hoses.

917.3.2 Contractor qualification. The firefighter air system shall be installed by Washington state licensed contractors. Proof of licensure shall be provided with the plan submittal.

917.4 Design criteria.

917.4.1 The system shall be designed to fill, at each interior cylinder filling panel, one 66 standard cubic foot compressed breathing air cylinder to a maximum pressure of 5,500 psig (37 921.17 kPa).

917.4.2 The filling operation shall be completed in not more than two minutes upon connection of the cylinder to the fill hose.

917.4.3 The minimum design flow of the breathing air piping system shall be calculated using two interior cylinder filling panels operating simultaneously and located at the highest level above the most remote location from the base station exterior fire department connection panel and enclosure base.

917.5 Operating pressure. All components used in the system shall be rated to operate at a minimum pressure of 5,500 psig (37 921.17 kPa) at 70°F (21°C).

`

917.6 Marking. System piping, gauges, valves and air outlets shall be clearly marked by means of steel or plastic labels or tags indicating their function. Markings used for piping systems shall consist of the content's name and include a direction of flow arrow. Markings shall be provided at each valve; at wall, floor or ceiling penetrations; at each change of direction; and at a minimum of every 20 feet (6096 mm) or fraction thereof throughout the piping system.

917.7 Base station exterior fire department connection panel and enclosure.

917.7.1 Location.
A fire department connection panel shall be attached to the building or on a remote monument at the exterior of the building. The panel shall be secured inside of a weather-resistant enclosure. The panel shall be within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of an approved roadway or driveway, or other location approved by the Bellevue Fire Department. The enclosure shall be visible and accessible on approach to the building.

917.7.2 Construction.
The fire department connection panel shall be installed in a cabinet constructed of minimum 18-gauge carbon steel. When constructed of steel, the cabinet shall be provided with coating to protect the cabinet from corrosion. When the enclosure is constructed of nonmetallic materials, the enclosure shall be resistant to ultraviolet and infrared solar radiation.

917.7.3 Vehicle protection.
When the panel is located in an area subject to vehicle traffic, impact protection shall be provided in accordance with this code.

917.7.4 Base station enclosure marking.
The front of the enclosure shall be marked "FIRE-FIGHTER AIR SYSTEM" on securely attached steel, plastic engraved or painted plate. The lettering shall be in a color that contrasts with the enclosure front and in letters that are a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) high with 3/8-inch (9053 mm) brush stroke. The marking of the enclosure shall be visible.

917.7.5 Base station enclosure components.
The components in the base station panel shall consist of the necessary components to provide air to the air substations located on upper and/or lower building levels. The fire department air supply source shall be designed to connect to the base station panel. The following components shall be installed in the base station enclosure.

1. Two Male Rapid Intervention Crew (RIC) Universal Air Connection (UAC) fittings. When connected to a female fitting, the assembled UAC shall meet the construction, performance and dimensional requirements of NFPA 1981, *Standard on Open-Circuit Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus for Fire and*

`

Emergency Services.

2. One downstream shutoff valve.

3. One pressure gauge to check pressure of the piping distribution to air substations located on upper and lower building levels.

4. One pressure relief valve designed for 1.25 times the design discharge of the fire department air supply or air supply trucks. All fittings, hoses and hard piping in the base station supply panel and distribution piping to air substations supply panels, shall be designed for an air pressure of 1.5 times the pressure of the fire department air delivery system.

5. Base station can be designed for an air pressure supply piping system for supply of air to air substations.

The air supply lines will require an intermediate regulator to provide air pressure for a 5,500 psi (37 971.17 kPa), for a 5.5 air pack system. The air supply lines will be fitted with separate pressure relief valves set at 1.25 times the working pressure of the air supply line and the operating pressure of the pressurized lines.

6. The relief valve, piping, pressure regulator, pressure gauges, fittings and connection hoses shall meet the requirement of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Code*, 7 Section VIII, *Unified Pressure Vessel Code*. The installation of the piping system, as a minimum, will be based on ASME B31.3-2012.

7. Mechanical supports for piping, hoses, gauges and pressure components, will be designed and built to provide a solid rigid structure.

917.7.6 Security.
To prevent unauthorized access to or tampering with the system, the fire department connection panel enclosure shall remain locked by an *approved* means.

917.7.7 Fire department key box.
A fire department *key box* shall be provided adjacent to the fire department connection panel and enclosure. A key for the enclosure shall be provided in the *key box*.

917.8 Interior cylinder fill panels and enclosure—air substation.

917.8.1 Location. Cylinder fill panels shall be installed in the interior of buildings as follows:

1. **Aboveground structure.** An interior air substation cylinder fill panel and enclosure shall be installed on floor landings. In buildings classified as high-rise in two stairwells as approved by the *fire code official* regardless of height of buildings commencing on the second floor landing above grade, below grade and every other floor thereafter. Approved stairwells must extend the full

`

height of the building and separated in accordance with the *International Building Code Section 403.5.1*

2**. Underground structure.** An interior air substation cylinder fill panel and enclosure shall be installed in all stairwells on the floor landing on the third level below grade and every other below-grade level thereafter. The panel shall be located a minimum of 36 inches (914 mm) but not more than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the finished floor or a stairway landing. Approved stairwells must extend the full height of the underground structure and separated in accordance with the *International Building Code Section 1007.1.1*

917.8.2 Cabinet requirements.
Each air substation cylinder fill panel shall be installed in a cabinet constructed of minimum 18-gauge carbon steel. The depth of the cabinet shall not create an exit obstruction when installed in building stairways. All components, with the exception of the shutoff valve, pressure gauges, fill hoses and ancillary components, shall be contained behind a minimum 18-gauge interior panel.

917.8.3 Door.
Hinges for the cabinet door shall be located inside of the cabinet. The door shall be arranged such that when the door is open, it does not reduce the required exit width or create an obstruction in the path of egress. A minimum of 80 percent of the door surface area shall be constructed of tempered glass. The thickness of the glass shall not be greater than 1/8 inch (3.17 mm).

917.8.4 Cabinet marking.
The front of each cylinder fill panel shall be marked “FIREFIGHTER AIR SYSTEM.” The lettering shall be in a color that contrasts with the cabinet front and in letters that are a minimum of 2 inches (50mm) high with 3/8-inch (5 mm) brush stroke. The marking of the cabinet shall be visible to emergency response personnel.

917.8.5 Air substation cabinet components.
The cabinet shall be of sufficient size to allow for the installation of the following components:

1. One-isolation valve located between the air discharge line to the next air substation and the downstream line to the air base station supply or the air substation immediately below to the next substation above the air base station.

2. The fill hoses and isolation valves shall be installed between the air bottle connection line and the fresh air supply.

3. Excess bleed valves shall be located between the air bottle fill hose and the next air substation.

4. Four SCBA fill hoses are required at a single air substation, the air supply lines shall be identified as 5,500 psig (37 921.17 kPa) pressure and shall be controlled

`

by a single valve between the air supply and air bottle. The SCBA fill hoses shall be designed with RIC UAC fittings. A protective cap shall be provided for each hose.

5. Mechanical supports for piping, hoses, gauges and pressure components shall be designed and built to provide a solid rigid structure.

917.8.6 Cylinder filling hose.
The design of the cabinet shall provide a means for storing the hose to prevent kinking. When the hose is coiled, the brackets shall be installed so that the hose bend radius is maintained at 4 inches (102 mm) or greater.

The discharge outlet of each cylinder filling hose shall have a female RIC UAC. The female fitting shall be designed to connect to a male RIC UAC. The assembled RIC UAC shall meet the construction, performance and dimensional requirements of NFPA 1981, *Standard on Open Breathing Circuit Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus for Fire and Emergency Services*.

917.8.7 Security.
To prevent unauthorized access to or tampering with the system, each panel cover shall remain locked by an *approved* means.

917.9 Installation of components.

917.9.1 Air monitoring system.
An *approved* air monitoring system shall be provided. The system shall automatically monitor air quality, moisture and pressure on a continual basis. The air monitoring system shall be equipped with not less than two content analyzers capable of detecting cabon monoxide, carbon dioxide, nitrogen, oxygen, moisture and hydrocarbons.

917.9.1.1 Alarm conditions
The air monitoring system shall transmit a supervisory signal when any of the following levels are detected:

1. Carbon monoxide exceeds 5 ppm
2. Carbon Dioxide exceeds 1,000 ppm
3. An oxygen level below 19.5 percent or above 23.5 percent
4. A nitrogen level below 75 percent or above 81 percent
5. Hydocarbon (condensed) content exceeds 5 milligrams per cubic meter of air.
6. The moisture concentration exceeds 24 ppm by volume.
7. The pressure falls below 4,950 psig (34 129.05 kPa) at 70°F (21°C)

917.9.1.2 Alarm supervision, monitoring and notification
The air monitoring system shall be electrically supervised and monitored by an *approved* supervising station.

`

917.9.1.3 Air quality status display
Air quality status shall be visually displayed at within the fire command center

917.9.2 Tubing.
Piping shall be constructed of stainless steel or other *approved* materials that are compatible with breathing air. The use of nonmetallic materials shall be compatible with breathing air. When stainless steel tubing is used, it shall meet ASTM A-269, Grade 316 or an equal standard. Stainless steel fitting shall be Grade 316 and a minimum, 0.375 inch (9.5 mm) outside diameter by .065 inch (1.6 mm) wall Grade 316 fully annealed seamless. Stainless steel fittings shall be at least Grade 316 and meet the requirements of ASTMA 479 or equal. Routing of tubing and bends shall be such as to protect the tubing from mechanical damage.

917.9.3 Support.
Piping shall be supported at maximum intervals of 5 feet (1524 mm). Individual tubing clamps and mounting components shall be mechanically secured to the building support members in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

917.9.4 Fittings.
Fittings shall be constructed of stainless steel or other *approved* materials that are compatible with breathing air. The use of nonmetallic materials shall be compatible with breathing air. Stainless steel fittings shall be at least Grade 316 and meet the requirements of ASTMA 479 or an equal standard.

917.9.5 Prohibition.
The use of carbon steel, iron pipe, malleable iron, high-strength gray iron or alloy steel is prohibited.

917.10 System assembly requirements.
The system shall be welded except where the tubing joints are readily accessible and at the individual air fill panels. When mechanical high-pressure tube fittings are used, they shall be *approved* for the type of materials to be joined and rated for the maximum pressure of the system. Welding procedures shall meet ASME B31.1-2010, Part 4 and Chapter V (Exhibit VI). Prior to and during the welding of sections of tubing, a continuous, regulated dry nitrogen or argon purge at 3 psig (20.68 kPa) shall be maintained to eliminate contamination with products of the oxidation or welding flux. The purge shall commence a minimum of 2 minutes prior to welding operations and continue until the welded joint is at an ambient temperature between 60° F and 80°F (15.5°C and 26.6°C).

917.11 Prevention of contamination.
The installing contractor shall ensure that, at all times, the system components are not exposed to contaminants, including, but not limited to, oils, solvents, dirt and construction materials. When contamination of system components has occurred, the effected component shall not be installed in the system.

`

917.12 Testing and inspection.

917.12.1 Testing.

Following fabrication, assembly, and installation of the piping distribution system, exterior connection panel and interior cylinder fill panels, the Bellevue Fire Department shall witness the pneumatic testing of the complete system at a minimum test pressure of 6,050 psi (41 368.54 kPa) using oil-free dry air, nitrogen or argon. A minimum 24-hour pneumatic or hydrostatic test shall be performed. During this test all fittings, joints and system components shall be inspected for leaks. A solution compatible with the system component materials shall be used on each joint and fitting. Any defects in the system or leaks detected shall be documented on an inspection report, repaired or replaced. As an alternate, a pressure decay test in accordance with ASME B31.3 is allowed. A test of the low-pressure monitoring switch shall be performed. Each air fill panel shall be tested for compatibility with the fire department's SCBA RIC UAC. The pipe or tubing manufacturer mill report shall be provided to the Belleuve Fire Department.

917.12.2 Air samples.

A minimum of two samples shall be taken from separate air fill panels and submitted to an independent, certified gas analysis laboratory to verify the system's cleanliness and that the air is certified as breathing air. The laboratory shall submit a written report of the analysis to the Bellevue Fire Department documenting that the breathing air complies with this section.

917.12.3 Quality analysis.

During the period of air quality analysis, the air fill panel inlet shall be secured so that no air can be introduced into the system and each air fill panel shall be provided with a sign stating: "AIR QUALITY ANALYSIS IN PROGRESS, DO NOT FILL OR USE ANY AIR FROM THIS SYSTEM." This sign shall be a minimum of 8 1/2 by 11 inches (215mm by 279 mm) with a minimum of 1-inch (25 mm) lettering.

917.12.4 Periodic Inspection, Testing and Maintenance.

The Firefight Air System shall be continuously maintained in an operative condition and shall be inspected not less than annually. Annually two air samples shall be taken from two separate filling stations and tested to verify compliance with NFPA 1989. The laboratory test results shall be maintained on site and readily available for review by the Bellevue Fire Department.

917.13 System acceptance and certification.

Prior to the final acceptance of the air system, the building owner shall provide for the testing and certification of the system. As a minimum, this shall include verifying the system's compatibility with the fire department's SCBA apparatus; the system's ability to maintain 5,500 psi (37 921.17 kPa) working pressure; the operability of the low-pressure monitoring switch and that the system's air quality complies with the requirements of Section 915.12. Prior to final acceptance, the building owner shall provide the Bellevue Fire Department with written verification of a testing and certification contract. Upon satisfactory completion of all tests and verification of air quality, the system shall be considered complete.

`

CHAPTER 10
MEANS OF EGRESS

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [F] will be considered by the International Fire Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 1001
ADMINISTRATION

1001.1 General.
Buildings or portions thereof shall be provided with a *means of egress* system as required by this chapter. The provisions of this chapter shall control the design, construction and arrangement of *means of egress* components required to provide an *approved means of egress* from structures and portions thereof.

1001.2 Minimum requirements.
It shall be unlawful to alter a building or structure in a manner that will reduce the number of *exits* or the minimum width or required capacity of the *means of egress* to less than required by this code.

[F] 1001.3 Maintenance.
Means of egress shall be maintained in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 1001.4 Fire safety and evacuation plans.
Fire safety and evacuation plans shall be provided for all occupancies and buildings where required by the *International Fire Code*. Such fire safety and evacuation plans shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 401.2 and 404 of the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 1002
DEFINITIONS

1002.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS.

AISLE.

AISLE ACCESSWAY.

ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICE.

AREA OF REFUGE.

`

BLEACHERS.

BREAKOUT.

COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL.

CORRIDOR.

DOOR, BALANCED.

EGRESS COURT.

EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENING.

EXIT.

EXIT ACCESS.

EXIT ACCESS DOORWAY.

EXIT ACCESS RAMP.

EXIT ACCESS STAIRWAY.

EXIT DISCHARGE.

EXIT DISCHARGE, LEVEL OF.

EXIT, HORIZONTAL.

EXIT PASSAGEWAY.

EXTERIOR EXIT RAMP.

EXTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAY.

FIRE EXIT HARDWARE.

FIXED SEATING.

FLIGHT.

FLOOR AREA, GROSS.

FLOOR AREA, NET.

FOLDING AND TELESCOPIC SEATING.

GRANDSTAND.

GUARD.

HANDRAIL.

`

INTERIOR EXIT RAMP.

INTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAY.

LOW ENERGY POWER-OPERATED DOOR.

MEANS OF EGRESS.

MERCHANDISE PAD.

NOSING.

OCCUPANT LOAD.

OPEN-ENDED CORRIDOR.

PANIC HARDWARE.

PHOTOLUMINESCENT.

POWER-ASSISTED DOOR.

POWER-OPERATED DOOR.

PUBLIC WAY.

RAMP.

SCISSOR STAIRWAY.

SELF-LUMINOUS.

SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY SEATING.

STAIR.

STAIRWAY.

STAIRWAY, SPIRAL.

WINDER.

SECTION 1003
GENERAL MEANS OF EGRESS

1003.1 Applicability.
The general requirements specified in Sections 1003 through 1015 shall apply to all three elements of the *means of egress* system, in addition to those specific requirements for the *exit access*, the *exit* and the *exit discharge* detailed elsewhere in this chapter.

1003.2 Ceiling height.
The *means of egress* shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet 6 inches (2286 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Sloped ceilings in accordance with Section 1208.2.

`

2. Ceilings of *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* within residential occupancies in accordance with Section 1208.2.

3. Allowable projections in accordance with Section 1003.3.

4. *Stair* headroom in accordance with Section 1011.3.

5. Door height in accordance with Section 1010.1.1.

6. *Ramp* headroom in accordance with Section 1012.5.2.

7. The clear height of floor levels in vehicular and pedestrian traffic areas of public and private parking garages in accordance with Section 406.4.1.

8. Areas above and below *mezzanine* floors in accordance with Section 505.2.

1003.3 Protruding objects.
Protruding objects on *circulation paths* shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1003.3.1 through 1003.3.4.

1003.3.1 Headroom.
Protruding objects are permitted to extend below the minimum ceiling height required by Section 1003.2 where a minimum headroom of 80 inches (2032 mm) is provided over any walking surface, including walks, *corridors*, *aisles* and passageways. Not more than 50 percent of the ceiling area of a *means of egress* shall be reduced in height by protruding objects.

Exception: Door closers and stops shall not reduce headroom to less than 78 inches (1981 mm).

A barrier shall be provided where the vertical clearance is less than 80 inches (2032 mm) high. The leading edge of such a barrier shall be located 27 inches (686 mm) maximum above the floor.

1003.3.2 Post-mounted objects.
A free-standing object mounted on a post or pylon shall not overhang that post or pylon more than 4 inches (102 mm) where the lowest point of the leading edge is more than 27 inches (686 mm) and less than 80 inches (2032 mm) above the walking surface. Where a sign or other obstruction is mounted between posts or pylons and the clear distance between the posts or pylons is greater than 12 inches (305 mm), the lowest edge of such sign or obstruction shall be 27 inches (686 mm) maximum or 80 inches (2032 mm) minimum above the finished floor or ground.

Exception: These requirements shall not apply to sloping portions of *handrails* between the top and bottom riser of *stairs* and above the *ramp* run.

1003.3.3 Horizontal projections.
Objects with leading edges more than 27 inches (685 mm) and not more than 80 inches (2030 mm) above the floor shall not project horizontally more than 4 inches (102 mm) into the *circulation path.*

Exception: *Handrails* are permitted to protrude $4^{1}/_{2}$ inches (114 mm) from the wall.

`

1003.3.4 Clear width.
Protruding objects shall not reduce the minimum clear width of *accessible routes*.

1003.4 Floor surface.
Walking surfaces of the *means of egress* shall have a slip-resistant surface and be securely attached.

1003.5 Elevation change.
Where changes in elevation of less than 12 inches (305 mm) exist in the *means of egress*, sloped surfaces shall be used. Where the slope is greater than one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope), *ramps* complying with Section 1012 shall be used. Where the difference in elevation is 6 inches (152 mm) or less, the *ramp* shall be equipped with either *handrails* or floor finish materials that contrast with adjacent floor finish materials.

Exceptions:

1. A single step with a maximum riser height of 7 inches (178 mm) is permitted for buildings with occupancies in Groups F, H, R-2, R-3, S and U at exterior doors not required to be *accessible* by Chapter 11.

2. A *stair* with a single riser or with two risers and a tread is permitted at locations not required to be *accessible* by Chapter 11 where the risers and treads comply with Section 1011.5, the minimum depth of the tread is 13 inches (330 mm) and not less than one *handrail* complying with Section 1014 is provided within 30 inches (762 mm) of the centerline of the normal path of egress travel on the *stair*.

3. A step is permitted in *aisles* serving seating that has a difference in elevation less than 12 inches (305 mm) at locations not required to be *accessible* by Chapter 11, provided that the risers and treads comply with Section 1029.13 and the *aisle* is provided with a *handrail* complying with Section 1029.15.

Throughout a story in a Group I-2 occupancy, any change in elevation in portions of the *means of egress* that serve nonambulatory persons shall be by means of a *ramp* or sloped walkway.

1003.6 Means of egress continuity.
The path of egress travel along a *means of egress* shall not be interrupted by a building element other than a *means of egress* component as specified in this chapter. Obstructions shall not be placed in the minimum width or required capacity of a *means of egress* component except projections permitted by this chapter. The minimum width or required capacity of a *means of egress* system shall not be diminished along the path of egress travel.

1003.7 Elevators, escalators and moving walks.
Elevators, escalators and moving walks shall not be used as a component of a required *means of egress* from any other part of the building.

Exception: Elevators used as an accessible *means of egress* in accordance with Section 1009.4.

SECTION 1004
OCCUPANT LOAD

`

1004.1 Design occupant load.
In determining *means of egress* requirements, the number of occupants for whom *means of egress* facilities are provided shall be determined in accordance with this section.

1004.1.1 Cumulative occupant loads.
Where the path of egress travel includes intervening rooms, areas or spaces, cumulative *occupant loads* shall be determined in accordance with this section.

1004.1.1.1 Intervening spaces or accessory areas.
Where occupants egress from one or more rooms, areas or spaces through others, the design *occupant load* shall be the combined *occupant load* of interconnected accessory or intervening spaces. Design of egress path capacity shall be based on the cumulative portion of *occupant loads* of all rooms, areas or spaces to that point along the path of egress travel.

1004.1.1.2 Adjacent levels for mezzanines.
That portion of the *occupant load* of a *mezzanine* with required egress through a room, area or space on an adjacent level shall be added to the *occupant load* of that room, area or space.

1004.1.1.3 Adjacent stories.
Other than for the egress components designed for convergence in accordance with Section 1005.6, the *occupant load* from separate stories shall not be added.

1004.1.2 Areas without fixed seating.
The number of occupants shall be computed at the rate of one occupant per unit of area as prescribed in Table 1004.1.2. For areas without *fixed seating*, the occupant load shall be not less than that number determined by dividing the floor area under consideration by the *occupant load* factor assigned to the function of the space as set forth in Table 1004.1.2. Where an intended function is not listed in Table 1004.1.2, the *building official* shall establish a function based on a listed function that most nearly resembles the intended function.

Exception: Where *approved* by the *building official*, the actual number of occupants for whom each occupied space, floor or building is designed, although less than those determined by calculation, shall be permitted to be used in the determination of the design *occupant load*.

TABLE 1004.1.2
MAXIMUM FLOOR AREA ALLOWANCES PER OCCUPANT

FUNCTION OF SPACE	OCCUPANT LOAD FACTOR[a]
Accessory storage areas, mechanical equipment room	300 gross
Agricultural building	300 gross
Aircraft hangars	500 gross
Airport terminal	
Baggage claim	20 gross
Baggage handling	300 gross
Concourse	100 gross
Waiting areas	15 gross
Assembly	

`

Gaming floors (keno, slots, etc.) Exhibit gallery and museum	11 gross 30 net
Assembly with fixed seats	See Section 1004.4
Assembly without fixed seats Concentrated (chairs only—not fixed) Standing space Unconcentrated (tables and chairs)	 7 net 5 net 15 net
Bowling centers, allow 5 persons for each lane including 15 feet of runway, and for additional areas	7 net
Business areas	100 gross
Courtrooms—other than fixed seating areas	40 net
Day care	35 net
Dormitories	50 gross
Educational Classroom area Shops and other vocational room areas	 20 net 50 net
Exercise rooms	50 gross
Group H-5 Fabrication and manufacturing areas	200 gross
Industrial areas	100 gross
Institutional areas Inpatient treatment areas Outpatient areas Sleeping areas	 240 gross 100 gross 120 gross
Kitchens, commercial	200 gross
Library Reading rooms Stack area	 50 net 100 gross
Locker rooms	50 gross
Mall buildings—covered and open	See Section 402.8.2
Mercantile Storage, stock, shipping areas	60 gross 300 gross
Parking garages	200 gross
Residential	200 gross
Skating rinks, swimming pools Rink and pool Decks	 50 gross 15 gross
Stages and platforms	15 net
Warehouses	500 gross

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. Floor area in square feet per occupant.

1004.2 Increased occupant load.
The *occupant load* permitted in any building, or portion thereof, is permitted to be increased from that number established for the occupancies in Table 1004.1.2, provided that all other

`

requirements of the code are also met based on such modified number and the *occupant load* does not exceed one occupant per 7 square feet (0.65 m^2) of occupiable floor space. Where required by the *building official*, an *approved aisle*, seating or fixed equipment diagram substantiating any increase in *occupant load* shall be submitted. Where required by the *building official*, such diagram shall be posted. See WAC 170-295-0080 (1)(b) for day care licensed by the state of Washington.

1004.3 Posting of occupant load.
Every room or space that is an assembly occupancy shall have the *occupant load* of the room or space posted in a conspicuous place, near the main *exit* or *exit access doorway* from the room or space. Posted signs shall be of an approved legible permanent design and shall be maintained by the owner or the owner's authorized agent.

1004.4 Fixed seating.
For areas having *fixed seats* and *aisles*, the *occupant load* shall be determined by the number of *fixed seats* installed therein. The *occupant load* for areas in which *fixed seating* is not installed, such as waiting spaces, shall be determined in accordance with Section 1004.1.2 and added to the number of *fixed seats*.

The *occupant load* of *wheelchair spaces* and the associated companion seat shall be based on one occupant for each *wheelchair space* and one occupant for the associated companion seat provided in accordance with Section 1108.2.3.

For areas having *fixed seating* without dividing arms, the *occupant load* shall be not less than the number of seats based on one person for each 18 inches (457 mm) of seating length.

The *occupant load* of seating booths shall be based on one person for each 24 inches (610 mm) of booth seat length measured at the backrest of the seating booth.

1004.5 Outdoor areas.
Yards, patios, *courts* and similar outdoor areas accessible to and usable by the building occupants shall be provided with *means of egress* as required by this chapter. The *occupant load* of such outdoor areas shall be assigned by the *building official* in accordance with the anticipated use. Where outdoor areas are to be used by persons in addition to the occupants of the building, and the path of egress travel from the outdoor areas passes through the building, *means of egress* requirements for the building shall be based on the sum of the *occupant loads* of the building plus the outdoor areas.

Exceptions:

1. Outdoor areas used exclusively for service of the building need only have one *means of egress*.

2. Both outdoor areas associated with Group R-3 and individual dwelling units of Group R-2.

1004.6 Multiple occupancies.
Where a building contains two or more occupancies, the *means of egress* requirements shall apply to each portion of the building based on the occupancy of that space. Where two or more occupancies utilize portions of the same *means of egress* system, those egress components shall meet the more stringent requirements of all occupancies that are served.

`

SECTION 1005
MEANS OF EGRESS SIZING

1005.1 General.
All portions of the *means of egress* system shall be sized in accordance with this section.

Exception: *Aisles* and *aisle accessways* in rooms or spaces used for assembly purposes complying with Section 1029.

1005.2 Minimum width based on component.
The minimum width, in inches (mm), of any *means of egress* components shall be not less than that specified for such component, elsewhere in this code.

1005.3 Required capacity based on occupant load.
The required capacity, in inches (mm), of the *means of egress* for any room, area, space or story shall be not less than that determined in accordance with Sections 1005.3.1 and 1005.3.2:

1005.3.1 Stairways.
The capacity, in inches, of *means of egress stairways* shall be calculated by multiplying the *occupant load* served by such *stairways* by a means of egress capacity factor of 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) per occupant. Where *stairways* serve more than one story, only the occupant load of each story considered individually shall be used in calculating the required capacity of the *stairways* serving that story.

Exceptions:

1. For other than Group H and I-2 occupancies, the capacity, in inches, of *means of egress stairways* shall be calculated by multiplying the *occupant load* served by such *stairways* by a means of egress capacity factor of 0.2 inch (5.1 mm) per occupant in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and an *emergency voice/alarm communication* system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

2. Facilities with *smoke-protected assembly seating* shall be permitted to use the capacity factors in Table 1029.6.2 indicated for stepped aisles for *exit access* or *exit stairways* where the entire path for *means of egress* from the seating to the *exit discharge* is provided with a smoke control system complying with Section 909.

3. Facilities with outdoor *smoke-protected assembly seating* shall be permitted to the capacity factors in Section 1029.6.3 indicated for stepped aisles for *exit access* or *exit stairways* where the entire path for *means of egress* from the seating to the *exit discharge* is open to the outdoors.

1005.3.2 Other egress components.
The capacity, in inches, of *means of egress* components other than *stairways* shall be calculated by multiplying the *occupant load* served by such component by a means of egress capacity factor of 0.2 inch (5.1 mm) per occupant.

Exceptions:

1. For other than Group H and I-2 occupancies, the capacity, in inches, of *means of egress* components other than *stairways* shall be calculated by multiplying the

`

occupant load served by such component by a means of egress capacity factor of 0.15 inch (3.8 mm) per occupant in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and an *emergency voice/ alarm communication* system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

2. Facilities with *smoke-protected assembly seating* shall be permitted to use the capacity factors in Table 1029.6.2 indicated for level or ramped *aisles* for *means of egress* components other than *stairways* where the entire path for *means of egress* from the seating to the *exit discharge* is provided with a smoke control system complying with Section 909.

3. Facilities with outdoor *smoke-protected assembly* seating shall be permitted to the capacity factors in Section 1029.6.3 indicated for level or ramped *aisles* for *means of egress* components other than *stairways* where the entire path for *means of egress* from the seating to the *exit discharge* is open to the outdoors.

1005.4 Continuity.
The minimum width or required capacity of the *means of egress* required from any story of a building shall not be reduced along the path of egress travel until arrival at the public way.

1005.5 Distribution of minimum width and required capacity.
Where more than one *exit*, or access to more than one *exit*, is required, the *means of egress* shall be configured such that the loss of any one *exit*, or access to one *exit*, shall not reduce the available capacity or width to less than 50 percent of the required capacity or width.

1005.6 Egress convergence.
Where the *means of egress* from stories above and below converge at an intermediate level, the capacity of the *means of egress* from the point of convergence shall be not less than the largest minimum width or the sum of the required capacities for the *stairways* or *ramps* serving the two adjacent stories, whichever is larger.

1005.7 Encroachment.
Encroachments into the required *means of egress* width shall be in accordance with the provisions of this section.

1005.7.1 Doors.
Doors, when fully opened, shall not reduce the required width by more than 7 inches (178 mm). Doors in any position shall not reduce the required width by more than one-half.

Exceptions:

1. Surface-mounted latch release hardware shall be exempt from inclusion in the 7-inch maximum (178 mm) encroachment where both of the following conditions exist:

   1.1. The hardware is mounted to the side of the door facing away from the adjacent wall where the door is in the open position.

   1.2. The hardware is mounted not less than 34 inches (865 mm) nor more than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the finished floor.

`

2. The restrictions on door swing shall not apply to doors within individual *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* of Group R-2 occupancies and *dwelling units* of Group R-3 occupancies.

1005.7.2 Other projections.
Handrail projections shall be in accordance with the provisions of Section 1014.8. Other nonstructural projections such as trim and similar decorative features shall be permitted to project into the required width not more than $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm) on each side.

Exception: Projections are permitted in corridors within Group I-2 Condition 1 in accordance with Section 407.4.3.

1005.7.3 Protruding objects.
Protruding objects shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1003.3.

SECTION 1006
NUMBER OF EXITS AND
EXIT ACCESS DOORWAYS

1006.1 General.
The number of *exits* or *exit access doorways* required within the *means of egress* system shall comply with the provisions of Section 1006.2 for spaces, including *mezzanines*, and Section 1006.3 for *stories*.

1006.2 Egress from spaces.
Rooms, areas or spaces, including *mezzanines*, within a *story* or *basement* shall be provided with the number of *exits* or access to *exits* in accordance with this section.

1006.2.1 Egress based on occupant load and common path of egress travel distance.
Two *exits* or *exit access doorways* from any space shall be provided where the design *occupant load* or the *common path of egress travel* distance exceeds the values listed in Table 1006.2.1.

Exceptions:

1. In Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies, one *means of egress* is permitted within and from individual *dwelling units* with a maximum *occupant load* of 20 where the *dwelling unit* is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler* system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and the *common path of egress travel* does not exceed 125 feet (38 100 mm).

2. *Care suites* in Group I-2 occupancies complying with Section 407.4.

TABLE 1006.2.1
SPACES WITH ONE EXIT OR EXIT ACCESS DOORWAY

OCCUPANCY	MAXIMUM OCCUPANT LOAD OF SPACE	MAXIMUM COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL DISTANCE (feet)	
		Without Sprinkler System (feet)	With Sprinkler System (feet)
		Occupant Load	

`

		OL ≤ 30	OL > 30	
A[c], E, M	49	75	75	75[a]
B	49	100	75	100[a]
F	49	75	75	100[a]
H-1, H-2, H-3	3	NP	NP	25[b]
H-4, H-5	10	NP	NP	75[b]
I-1, I-2[d], I-4	10	NP	NP	75[a]
I-3	10	NP	NP	100[a]
R-1	10	NP	NP	75[a]
R-2	10	NP	NP	125[a]
R-3[e]	10	NP	NP	125[a]
R-4[e]	10	75	75	125[a]
S[f]	29	100	75	100[a]
U	49	100	75	75[a]

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
NP = Not Permitted.

a. Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. See Section 903 for occupancies where *automatic sprinkler systems* are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.
b. Group H occupancies equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.2.5.
c. For a room or space used for assembly purposes having *fixed seating*, see Section 1029.8.
d. For the travel distance limitations in Group I-2, see Section 407.4.
e. The length of *common path of egress travel* distance in a Group R-3 occupancy located in a mixed occupancy building or within a Group R-3 or R-4 *congregate living facility*.
f. The length of *common path of egress travel* distance in a Group S-2 *open parking garage* shall be not more than 100 feet.

1006.2.1.1 Three or more exits or exit access doorways.
Three *exits* or *exit access doorways* shall be provided from any space with an occupant load of 501 to 1,000. Four *exits* or *exit access doorways* shall be provided from any space with an occupant load greater than 1,000.

1006.2.2 Egress based on use.
The numbers of *exits* or access to *exits* shall be provided in the uses described in Sections 1006.2.2.1 through 1006.2.2.5.

1006.2.2.1 Boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms.
Two *exit access doorways* are required in boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms where the area is over 500 square feet (46 m^2) and any fuel-fired equipment exceeds 400,000 British thermal units (Btu) (422 000 KJ) input capacity. Where two *exit access doorways* are required, one is permitted to be a fixed ladder or an *alternating tread device*. *Exit access doorways* shall be separated by a horizontal distance equal to one-half the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the room.

`

1006.2.2.2 Refrigeration machinery rooms.

Machinery rooms larger than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) shall have not less than two *exits* or *exit access doorways*. Where two *exit access doorways* are required, one such doorway is permitted to be served by a fixed ladder or an *alternating tread device*. *Exit access doorways* shall be separated by a horizontal distance equal to one-half the maximum horizontal dimension of the room.

All portions of machinery rooms shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of an *exit* or *exit access doorway*. An increase in *exit access* travel distance is permitted in accordance with Section 1017.1.

Doors shall swing in the direction of egress travel, regardless of the *occupant load* served. Doors shall be tight fitting and self-closing.

1006.2.2.3 Refrigerated rooms or spaces.

Rooms or spaces having a floor area larger than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2), containing a refrigerant evaporator and maintained at a temperature below 68°F (20°C), shall have access to not less than two *exits* or *exit access doorways*.

Exit access travel distance shall be determined as specified in Section 1017.1, but all portions of a refrigerated room or space shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of an *exit* or *exit access doorway* where such rooms are not protected by an approved *automatic sprinkler system*. Egress is allowed through adjoining refrigerated rooms or spaces.

Exception: Where using refrigerants in quantities limited to the amounts based on the volume set forth in the *International Mechanical Code*.

1006.2.2.4 Day care means of egress.

Day care facilities, rooms or spaces where care is provided for more than 10 children that are $2^1/_2$ years of age or less, shall have access to not less than two *exits* or *exit access doorways*.

1006.2.2.5 Vehicular ramps.

Vehicular ramps shall not be considered as an *exit access ramp* unless pedestrian facilities are provided.

1006.2.2.6 Electrical equipment rooms. Rooms containing electrical equipment shall be provided with a second exit or exit access doorways as required by NFPA 70 Article 110 where all of the following apply:

1. The electrical equipment is rated at 1,200 amperes or more.
2. The electrical equipment is over 6 feet (1829 mm) wide.
3. The electrical equipment contains overcurrent devices, switching devices or control devices.

1006.3 Egress from stories or occupied roofs.

The *means of egress* system serving any *story* or occupied roof shall be provided with the number of *exits* or access to *exits* based on the aggregate *occupant load* served in accordance

`

with this section. The *path of egress travel* to an *exit* shall not pass through more than one adjacent *story*.

1006.3.1 Egress based on occupant load.
Each *story* and occupied roof shall have the minimum number of independent *exits*, or access to *exits*, as specified in Table 1006.3.1. A single *exit* or access to a single *exit* shall be permitted in accordance with Section 1006.3.2. The required number of *exits*, or *exit access stairways* or *ramps* providing access to *exits*, from any *story* or occupied roof shall be maintained until arrival at the *exit discharge* or a *public way*.

TABLE 1006.3.1
MINIMUM NUMBER OF EXITS OR ACCESS TO EXITS PER STORY

OCCUPANT LOAD PER STORY	MINIMUM NUMBER OF EXITS OR ACCESS TO EXITS FROM STORY
1-500	2
501-1,000	3
More than 1,000	4

1006.3.2 Single exits.
A single *exit* or access to a single *exit* shall be permitted from any *story* or occupied roof where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The *occupant load*, number of *dwelling units* and common path of egress travel distance does not exceed the values in Table 1006.3.2(1) or 1006.3.2(2).

2. Rooms, areas and spaces complying with Section 1006.2.1 with *exits* that discharge directly to the exterior at the *level of exit discharge*, are permitted to have one *exit* or access to a single *exit*.

3. Parking garages where vehicles are mechanically parked shall be permitted to have one *exit* or access to a single *exit*.

4. Group R-3 and R-4 occupancies shall be permitted to have one *exit* or access to a single *exit*.

5. Individual single-story or multistory *dwelling units* shall be permitted to have a single exit or access to a single *exit* from the *dwelling unit* provided that both of the following criteria are met:

    5.1. The *dwelling unit* complies with Section 1006.2.1 as a space with one *means of egress.*

    5.2. Either the *exit* from the *dwelling unit* discharges directly to the exterior at the *level of exit discharge*, or the *exit access* outside the dwelling unit's entrance door provides access to not less than two approved independent *exits*.

`

TABLE 1006.3.2(1)
STORIES WITH ONE EXIT OR ACCESS TO ONE EXIT FOR R-2 OCCUPANCIES

STORY	OCCUPANCY	MAXIMUM NUMBER OF DWELLING UNITS	MAXIMUM COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL DISTANCE
Basement, first, second or third story above grade plane	R-2[a, b]	4 dwelling units	125 feet
Fourth story above grade plane and higher	NP	NA	NA

For SI: 1 foot = 3048 mm.
NP = Not Permitted.
NA = Not Applicable.

a. Buildings classified as Group R-2 equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and provided with *emergency escape* and *rescue openings* in accordance with Section 1030.
b. This table is used for R-2 occupancies consisting of *dwelling units*. For R-2 occupancies consisting of *sleeping units*, use Table 1006.3.2(2).

TABLE 1006.3.2(2)
STORIES WITH ONE EXIT OR ACCESS TO ONE EXIT FOR OTHER OCCUPANCIES

STORY	OCCUPANCY	MAXIMUM OCCUPANT LOAD PER STORY	MAXIMUM COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL DISTANCE (feet)
First story above or below grade plane	A, B[b], E F[b], M, U	49	75
	H-2, H-3	3	25
	H-4, H-5, I, R-1, R-2[a, c], R-4	10	75
	S[b, d]	29	75
Second story above grade plane	B, F, M, S[d]	29	75
Third story above grade plane and higher	NP	NA	NA

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
NP = Not Permitted.
NA = Not Applicable.

a. Buildings classified as Group R-2 equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and provided with *emergency escape* and *rescue openings* in accordance with Section 1030.
b. Group B, F and S occupancies in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall have a maximum *exit access* travel distance of 100 feet.
c. This table is used for R-2 occupancies consisting of *sleeping units*. For R-2 occupancies consisting of *dwelling units*, use Table 1006.3.2(1).
d. The length of *exit access* travel distance in a Group S-2 *open parking garage* shall be not more than 100 feet.

1006.3.2.1 Mixed occupancies.
Where one *exit*, or *exit access stairway* or *ramp* providing access to *exits* at other

`

stories, is permitted to serve individual *stories*, mixed occupancies shall be permitted to be served by single *exits* provided each individual occupancy complies with the applicable requirements of Table 1006.3.2(1) or 1006.3.2(2) for that occupancy. Where applicable, cumulative *occupant loads* from adjacent occupancies shall be considered in accordance with the provisions of Section 1004.1. In each *story* of a mixed occupancy building, the maximum number of occupants served by a single *exit* shall be such that the sum of the ratios of the calculated number of occupants of the space divided by the allowable number of occupants indicated in Table 1006.3.2(2) for each occupancy does not exceed one. Where *dwelling units* are located on a story with other occupancies, the actual number of *dwelling units* divided by four plus the ratio from the other occupancy does not exceed one.

SECTION 1007
EXIT AND EXIT ACCESS DOORWAY CONFIGURATION

1007.1 General.
Exits, *exit access doorways*, and *exit access stairways* and *ramps* serving spaces, including individual building *stories*, shall be separated in accordance with the provisions of this section.

1007.1.1 Two exits or exit access doorways.
Where two *exits*, *exit access doorways*, *exit access stairways* or *ramps*, or any combination thereof, are required from any portion of the *exit access*, they shall be placed a distance apart equal to not less than one-half of the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the building or area to be served measured in a straight line between them. Interlocking or *scissor stairways* shall be counted as one *exit stairway*.

Exceptions:

1. Where interior *exit stairways* or *ramps* are interconnected by a 1-hour fire-resistance-rated corridor conforming to the requirements of Section 1020, the required exit separation shall be measured along the shortest direct line of travel within the corridor.

2. Where a building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the separation distance shall be not less than one-third of the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the area served.

1007.1.1.1 Measurement point.
The separation distance required in Section 1007.1.1 shall be measured in accordance with the following:

1. The separation distance to *exit* or *exit access doorways* shall be measured to any point along the width of the doorway.

2. The separation distance to *exit access stairways* shall be measured to the closest riser.

3. The separation distance to *exit access ramps* shall be measured to the start of the ramp run.

`

1007.1.2 Three or more exits or exit access doorways.
Where access to three or more *exits* is required, not less than two *exit* or *exit access doorways* shall be arranged in accordance with the provisions of Section 1007.1.1. Additional required *exit* or *exit access doorways* shall be arranged a reasonable distance apart so that if one becomes blocked, the others will be available.

1007.1.3 Remoteness of exit access stairways or ramps.
Where two *exit access stairways* or *ramps* provide the required *means of egress* to *exits* at another *story*, the required separation distance shall be maintained for all portions of such *exit access stairways* or *ramps*.

1007.1.3.1 Three or more exit access stairways or ramps.
Where more than two *exit access stairways* or *ramps* provide the required *means of egress*, not less than two shall be arranged in accordance with Section 1007.1.3.

SECTION 1008
MEANS OF EGRESS ILLUMINATION

1008.1 Means of egress illumination.
Illumination shall be provided in the *means of egress* in accordance with Section 1008.2. Under emergency power, means of egress illumination shall comply with Section 1008.3.

1008.2 Illumination required.
The *means of egress* serving a room or space shall be illuminated at all times that the room or space is occupied.

Exceptions:

1. Occupancies in Group U.
2. *Aisle accessways* in Group A.
3. *Dwelling units* and *sleeping units* in Groups R-1, R- 2 and R-3.
4. *Sleeping units* of Group I occupancies.

1008.2.1 Illumination level under normal power.
The *means of egress* illumination level shall be not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux) at the walking surface.

Exception: For auditoriums, theaters, concert or opera halls and similar assembly occupancies, the illumination at the walking surface is permitted to be reduced during performances by one of the following methods provided that the required illumination is automatically restored upon activation of a premises' fire alarm system:

1. Externally illuminated walking surfaces shall be permitted to be illuminated to not less than 0.2 footcandle (2.15 lux).
2. Steps, landings and the sides of ramps shall be permitted to be marked with self-luminous materials in accordance with Sections 1025.2.1, 1025.2.2 and 1025.2.4 by systems listed in accordance with UL 1994.

`

1008.2.2 Exit discharge.
In Group I-2 occupancies where two or more exits are required, on the exterior landings required by Section 1010.6.1, means of egress illumination levels for the exit discharge shall be provided such that failure of any single lighting unit shall not reduce the illumination level on that landing to less than 1 footcandle (11 lux).

1008.3 Emergency power for illumination.
The power supply for means of egress illumination shall normally be provided by the premises' electrical supply.

1008.3.1 General.
In the event of power supply failure in rooms and spaces that require two or more means of egress, an emergency electrical system shall automatically illuminate all of the following areas:

1. *Aisles*.
2. *Corridors*.
3. *Exit access stairways* and *ramps*.

1008.3.2 Buildings.
In the event of power supply failure in buildings that require two or more *means of egress*, an emergency electrical system shall automatically illuminate all of the following areas:

1. *Interior exit access stairways* and *ramps*.
2. *Interior* and *exterior exit stairways* and *ramps*.
3. *Exit passageways.*
4. Vestibules and areas on the level of discharge used for *exit discharge* in accordance with Section 1028.1.
5. Exterior landings as required by Section 1010.1.6 for *exit doorways* that lead directly to the e*xit discharge*.

1008.3.3 Rooms and spaces.
In the event of power supply failure, an emergency electrical system shall automatically illuminate all of the following areas:

1. Electrical equipment rooms.
2. Fire command centers.
3. Fire pump rooms.
4. Generator rooms.
5. Public restrooms with an area greater than 300 square feet (27.87 m^2).

`

1008.3.4 Duration.
The emergency power system shall provide power for a duration of not less than 90 minutes or such time as stipulated by Section 2702 when applicable for high-rise or underground buildings, and shall consist of storage batteries, unit equipment or an on-site generator. The installation of the emergency power system shall be in accordance with Section 2702.

1008.3.5 Illumination level under emergency power.
Emergency lighting facilities shall be arranged to provide initial illumination that is not less than an average of 1 footcandle (11 lux) and a minimum at any point of 0.1 footcandle (1 lux) measured along the path of egress at floor level. Illumination levels shall be permitted to decline to 0.6 footcandle (6 lux) average and a minimum at any point of 0.06 footcandle (0.6 lux) at the end of the emergency lighting time duration. A maximum-to-minimum illumination uniformity ratio of 40 to 1 shall not be exceeded. In Group I-2 occupancies, failure of any single lighting unit shall not reduce the illumination level to less than 0.2 foot-candle (2.2 lux).

SECTION 1009
ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS

1009.1 Accessible means of egress required.
Accessible means of egress shall comply with this section. *Accessible* spaces shall be provided with not less than one *accessible means of egress*. Where more than one *means of egress* are required by Section 1006.2 or 1006.3 from any *accessible* space, each *accessible* portion of the space shall be served by not less than two *accessible means of egress*.

Exceptions:

1. *Accessible means of egress* are not required to be provided in existing buildings.

2. One *accessible means of egress* is required from an *accessible mezzanine* level in accordance with Section 1009.3, 1009.4 or 1009.5.

3. In assembly areas with ramped *aisles* or stepped *aisles*, one *accessible means of egress* is permitted where the *common path of egress travel* is *accessible* and meets the requirements in Section 1029.8.

4. In parking garages, accessible means of egress are not required to serve parking areas that do not contain accessible parking spaces.

1009.2 Continuity and components.
Each required *accessible means of egress* shall be continuous to a *public way* and shall consist of one or more of the following components:

1. *Accessible routes* complying with Section 1104.

2. *Interior exit stairways* complying with Sections 1009.3 and 1023.

3. *Exit access stairways* complying with Sections 1009.3 and 1019.3 or 1019.4.

4. *Exterior exit stairways* complying with Sections 1009.3 and 1027 and serving levels other than the *level of exit discharge*.

`

5. Elevators complying with Section 1009.4.

6. Platform lifts complying with Section 1009.5.

7. *Horizontal exits* complying with Section 1026.

8. *Ramps* complying with Section 1012.

9. *Areas of refuge* complying with Section 1009.6.

10. Exterior areas for assisted rescue complying with Section 1009.7 serving exits at the *level of exit discharge*.

1009.2.1 Elevators required.
In buildings where a required *accessible* floor is four or more *stories* above or below a *level of exit discharge*, not less than one required *accessible means of egress* shall be an elevator complying with Section 1009.4.

Exceptions:

1. In buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the elevator shall not be required on floors provided with a *horizontal exit* and located at or above the *levels of exit discharge*.

2. In buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the elevator shall not be required on floors provided with a *ramp* conforming to the provisions of Section 1012.

1009.3 Stairways.
In order to be considered part of an *accessible means of egress*, a *stairway* between *stories* shall have a clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum between *handrails* and shall either incorporate an *area of refuge* within an enlarged floor-level landing or shall be accessed from an *area of refuge* complying with Section 1009.6. *Exit access stairways* that connect levels in the same *story* are not permitted as part of an *accessible means of egress*.

Exceptions:

1. *Exit access stairways* providing *means of egress* from *mezzanines* are permitted as part of an *accessible means of egress*.

2. The clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between *handrails* is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler* system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

3. The clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between *handrails* is not required for *stairways* accessed from a refuge area in conjunction with a *horizontal exit*.

`

4. *Areas of refuge* are not required at *exit access stairways* where two-way communication is provided at the elevator landing in accordance with Section 1009.8.

5. *Areas of refuge* are not required at *stairways* in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

6. *Areas of refuge* are not required at *stairways* serving *open parking garages*.

7. *Areas of refuge* are not required for *smoke-protected assembly seating* areas complying with Section 1029.6.2.

8. *Areas of refuge* are not required at *stairways* in Group R-2 occupancies.

9. *Areas of refuge* are not required for *stairways* accessed from a refuge area in conjunction with a *horizontal exit*.

1009.4 Elevators.
In order to be considered part of an *accessible means of egress*, an elevator shall comply with the emergency operation and signaling device requirements of Section 2.27 of ASME A17.1/CSA B44. Standby power shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 27 and Section 3003. The elevator shall be accessed from an *area of refuge* complying with Section 1009.6.

Exceptions:

1. *Areas of refuge* are not required at the elevator in *open parking garages*.

2. *Areas of refuge* are not required in buildings and facilities equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

3. *Areas of refuge* are not required at elevators not required to be located in a shaft in accordance with Section 712.

4. *Areas of refuge* are not required at elevators serving *smoke-protected assembly seating* areas complying with Section 1029.6.2.

5. *Areas of refuge* are not required for elevators accessed from a refuge area in conjunction with a *horizontal exit*.

1009.5 Platform lifts.
Platform lifts shall be permitted to serve as part of an *accessible means of egress* where allowed as part of a required *accessible route* in Section 1109.8 except for Item 10. Standby power for the platform lift shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 27.

1009.6 Areas of refuge.
Every required *area of refuge* shall be accessible from the space it serves by an *accessible means of egress*.

1009.6.1 Travel distance.
The maximum travel distance from any *accessible* space to an *area of refuge* shall not

`

exceed the *exit access* travel distance permitted for the occupancy in accordance with Section 1017.1.

1009.6.2 Stairway or elevator access.
Every required *area of refuge* shall have direct access to a *stairway* complying with Sections 1009.3 and 1023 or an elevator complying with Section 1009.4.

1009.6.3 Size.
Each *area of refuge* shall be sized to accommodate one *wheelchair space* of 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) for each 200 occupants or portion thereof, based on the *occupant load* of the *area of refuge* and areas served by the *area of refuge*. Such *wheelchair spaces* shall not reduce the *means of egress* minimum width or required capacity. Access to any of the required *wheelchair spaces* in an *area of refuge* shall not be obstructed by more than one adjoining *wheelchair space*.

1009.6.4 Separation.
Each *area of refuge* shall be separated from the remainder of the story by a *smoke barrier* complying with Section 709 or a *horizontal* exit complying with Section 1026. Each *area of refuge* shall be designed to minimize the intrusion of smoke.

Exceptions:

1. *Areas of refuge* located within an enclosure for *interior exit stairways* complying with Section 1023.

2. *Areas of refuge* in outdoor facilities where *exit access* is essentially open to the outside.

1009.6.5 Two-way communication.
Areas of refuge shall be provided with a two-way communication system complying with Sections 1009.8.1 and 1009.8.2.

1009.7 Exterior areas for assisted rescue.
Exterior areas for assisted rescue shall be accessed by an *accessible route* from the area served.

Where the *exit discharge* does not include an *accessible route* from an *exit* located on the *level of exit discharge* to a *public way*, an exterior area of assisted rescue shall be provided on the exterior landing in accordance with Sections 1009.7.1 through 1009.7.4.

1009.7.1 Size.
Each exterior area for assisted rescue shall be sized to accommodate *wheelchair spaces* in accordance with Section 1009.6.3.

1009.7.2 Separation.
Exterior walls separating the exterior area of assisted rescue from the interior of the building shall have a minimum *fire-resistance rating* of 1 hour, rated for exposure to fire from the inside. The fire-resistance-rated exterior wall construction shall extend horizontally 10 feet (3048 mm) beyond the landing on either side of the landing or equivalent fire-resistance-rated construction is permitted to extend out perpendicular to the exterior wall 4 feet (1220 mm) minimum on the side of the landing. The *fire-resistance-rated* construction shall extend vertically from the ground to a point 10 feet (3048 mm) above the floor level of the area for

`

assisted rescue or to the roof line, whichever is lower. Openings within such *fire-resistance-rated* exterior walls shall be protected in accordance with Section 716.

1009.7.3 Openness.
The exterior area for assisted rescue shall be open to the outside air. The sides other than the separation walls shall be not less than 50 percent open, and the open area shall be distributed so as to minimize the accumulation of smoke or toxic gases.

1009.7.4 Stairways.
Stairways that are part of the *means of egress* for the exterior area for assisted rescue shall provide a clear width of 48 inches (1220 mm) between *handrails*.

Exception: The clear width of 48 inches (1220 mm) between *handrails* is not required at *stairways* serving buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

1009.8 Two-way communication.
A two-way communication system complying with Sections 1009.8.1 and 1009.8.2 shall be provided at the landing serving each elevator or bank of elevators on each accessible floor that is one or more stories above or below the *level of exit discharge*.

Exceptions:

1. Two-way communication systems are not required at the landing serving each elevator or bank of elevators where the two-way communication system is provided within *areas of refuge* in accordance with Section 1009.6.5.

2. Two-way communication systems are not required on floors provided with *ramps* that provide a direct path of egress travel to grade or the level of exit discharge conforming to the provisions of Section 1012.

3. Two-way communication systems are not required at the landings serving only service elevators that are not designated as part of the *accessible means of egress* or serve as part of the required *accessible route* into a facility.

4. Two-way communication systems are not required at the landings serving only freight elevators.

5. Two-way communication systems are not required at the landing serving a private residence elevator.

1009.8.1 System requirements.
Two-way communication systems shall provide communication between each required location and the *fire command center* or a central control point location *approved* by the fire department. Where the central control point is not a *constantly attended location*, a two-way communication system shall have a timed automatic telephone dial-out capability to a monitoring location. ~~or 9-1-1~~. The two-way communication system shall include both audible and visible signals. The two-way communication system shall have a battery backup or an approved alternate source of power that is capable of 90 minutes use upon failure of the normal power source.

1009.8.2 Directions.
Directions for the use of the two-way communication system, instructions for summoning

`

assistance via the two-way communication system and written identification of the location shall be posted adjacent to the two-way communication system. Signage shall comply with the ICC A117.1 requirements for visual characters.

1009.9 Signage.
Signage indicating special accessibility provisions shall be provided as shown:

1. Each door providing access to an *area of refuge* from an adjacent floor area shall be identified by a sign stating: AREA OF REFUGE.

2. Each door providing access to an exterior area for assisted rescue shall be identified by a sign stating: EXTERIOR AREA FOR ASSISTED RESCUE.

Signage shall comply with the *ICC A117.1* requirements for visual characters and include the International Symbol of Accessibility. Where exit sign illumination is required by Section 1013.3, the signs shall be illuminated. Additionally, visual characters, raised character and braille signage complying with ICC A117.1 shall be located at each door to an *area of refuge* and exterior area for assisted rescue in accordance with Section 1013.4.

1009.10 Directional signage.
Directional signage indicating the location of all other *means of egress* and which of those are *accessible means of egress* shall be provided at the following:

1. At *exits* serving a required *accessible* space but not providing an approved *accessible means of egress*.

2. At elevator landings.

3. Within *areas of refuge*.

1009.11 Instructions.
In *areas of refuge* and exterior areas for assisted rescue, instructions on the use of the area under emergency conditions shall be posted. Signage shall comply with the ICC A117.1 requirements for visual characters. The instructions shall include all of the following:

1. Persons able to use the *exit stairway* do so as soon as possible, unless they are assisting others.

2. Information on planned availability of assistance in the use of *stairs* or supervised operation of elevators and how to summon such assistance.

3. Directions for use of the two-way communication system where provided.

SECTION 1010
DOORS, GATES AND TURNSTILES

1010.1 Doors.
Means of egress doors shall meet the requirements of this section. Doors serving a *means of egress* system shall meet the requirements of this section and Section 1022.2. Doors provided for egress purposes in numbers greater than required by this code shall meet the requirements of this section.

`

Means of egress doors shall be readily distinguishable from the adjacent construction and finishes such that the doors are easily recognizable as doors. Mirrors or similar reflecting materials shall not be used on *means of egress* doors. *Means of egress* doors shall not be concealed by curtains, drapes, decorations or similar materials.

1010.1.1 Size of doors.
The required capacity of each door opening shall be sufficient for the *occupant load* thereof and shall provide a minimum clear width of 32 inches (813 mm). Clear openings of doorways with swinging doors shall be measured between the face of the door and the stop, with the door open 90 degrees (1.57 rad). Where this section requires a minimum clear width of 32 inches (813 mm) and a door opening includes two door leaves without a mullion, one leaf shall provide a clear opening width of 32 inches (813 mm). The maximum width of a swinging door leaf shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) nominal. *Means of egress* doors in a Group I-2 occupancy used for the movement of beds shall provide a clear width not less than $41^{1}/_{2}$ inches (1054 mm). The height of door openings shall be not less than 80 inches (2032 mm).

Exceptions:

1. The minimum and maximum width shall not apply to door openings that are not part of the required *means of egress* in Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies.

2. Door openings to resident *sleeping units* in Group I-3 occupancies shall have a clear width of not less than 28 inches (711 mm).

3. Door openings to storage closets less than 10 square feet (0.93 m^2) in area shall not be limited by the minimum width.

4. Width of door leaves in revolving doors that comply with Section 1010.1.4.1 shall not be limited.

5. Door openings within a *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* shall be not less than 78 inches (1981 mm) in height.

6. Exterior door openings in *dwelling units* and *sleeping units*, other than the required *exit* door, shall be not less than 76 inches (1930 mm) in height.

7. In other than Group R-1 occupancies, the minimum widths shall not apply to interior egress doors within a *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* that is not required to be an *Accessible unit*, *Type A unit* or *Type B unit*.

8. Door openings required to be *accessible* within *Type B units* shall have a minimum clear width of 31.75 inches (806 mm).

9. Doors to walk-in freezers and coolers less than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) in area shall have a maximum width of 60 inches (1524 mm).

10. In Group R-1 *dwelling units* or *sleeping units* not required to be *Accessible units*, the minimum width shall not apply to doors for showers or saunas.

`

1010.1.1.1 Projections into clear width.
There shall not be projections into the required clear width lower than 34 inches (864 mm) above the floor or ground. Projections into the clear opening width between 34 inches (864 mm) and 80 inches (2032 mm) above the floor or ground shall not exceed 4 inches (102 mm).

Exception: Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the floor.

1010.1.2 Door swing.
Egress doors shall be of the pivoted or side-hinged swinging type.

Exceptions:

1. Private garages, office areas, factory and storage areas with an *occupant load* of 10 or less.

2. Group I-3 occupancies used as a place of detention.

3. Critical or intensive care patient rooms within suites of health care facilities.

4. Doors within or serving a single *dwelling unit* in Groups R-2 and R-3.

5. In other than Group H occupancies, revolving doors complying with Section 1010.1.4.1.

6. In other than Group H occupancies, special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding door assemblies complying with Section 1010.1.4.3.

7. Power-operated doors in accordance with Section 1010.1.4.2.

8. Doors serving a bathroom within an individual *sleeping unit* in Group R-1.

9. In other than Group H occupancies, manually operated horizontal sliding doors are permitted in a *means of egress* from spaces with an *occupant load* of 10 or less.

1010.1.2.1 Direction of swing.
Pivot or side-hinged swinging doors shall swing in the direction of egress travel where serving a room or area containing an occupant load of 50 or more persons or a Group H occupancy.

1010.1.3 Door opening force.
The force for pushing or pulling open interior swinging egress doors, other than fire doors, shall not exceed 5 pounds (22 N). These forces do not apply to the force required to retract latch bolts or disengage other devices that hold the door in a closed position. For other swinging doors, as well as sliding and folding doors, the door latch shall release when subjected to a 15-pound (67 N) force. The door shall be set in motion when subjected to a 30-pound (133 N) force. The door shall swing to a full-open position when subjected to a 15pound (67 N) force.

`

1010.1.3.1 Location of applied forces.
Forces shall be applied to the latch side of the door.

1010.1.4 Special doors.
Special doors and security grilles shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1010.1.4.1 through 1010.1.4.4.

1010.1.4.1 Revolving doors.
Revolving doors shall comply with the following:

1. Revolving doors shall comply with BHMA A156.27 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2. Each revolving door shall be capable of *breakout* in accordance with BHMA A156.27 and shall provide an aggregate width of not less than 36 inches (914 mm).

3. A revolving door shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the foot or top of *stairways* or escalators. A dispersal area shall be provided between the *stairways* or escalators and the revolving doors.

4. The revolutions per minute (rpm) for a revolving door shall not exceed the maximum rpm as specified in BHMA A156.27. Manual revolving doors shall comply with Table 1010.1.4.1(1). Automatic or power-operated revolving doors shall comply with Table 1010.1.4.1(2).

5. An emergency stop switch shall be provided near each entry point of power or automatic operated revolving doors within 48 inches (1220 mm) of the door and between 24 inches (610 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) above the floor. The activation area of the emergency stop switch button shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter and shall be red.

6. Each revolving door shall have a side-hinged swinging door that complies with Section 1010.1 in the same wall and within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the revolving door.

7. Revolving doors shall not be part of an *accessible route* required by Section 1009 and Chapter 11.

TABLE 1010.1.4.1(1)
MAXIMUM DOOR SPEED MANUAL REVOLVING DOORS

REVOLVING DOOR MAXIMUM NOMINAL DIAMETER (FT-IN)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE REVOLVING DOOR SPEED (RPM)
6-0	12
7-0	11
8-0	10
9-0	9
10-0	8

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

`

TABLE 1010.1.4.1(2)
MAXIMUM DOOR SPEED AUTOMATIC OR POWER-OPERATED REVOLVING DOORS

REVOLVING DOOR MAXIMUM NOMINAL DIAMETER (FT-IN)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE REVOLVING DOOR SPEED (RPM)
8-0	7.2
9-0	6.4
10-0	5.7
11-0	5.2
12-0	4.8
12-6	4.6
14-0	4.1
16-0	3.6
17-0	3.4
18-0	3.2
20-0	2.9
24-0	2.4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

1010.1.4.1.1 Egress component.
A revolving door used as a component of a *means of egress* shall comply with Section 1010.1.4.1 and the following three conditions:

1. Revolving doors shall not be given credit for more than 50 percent of the minimum width or required capacity.

2. Each revolving door shall be credited with a capacity based on not more than a 50-person *occupant load*.

3. Each revolving door shall provide for egress in accordance with BHMA A156.27 with a *breakout* force of not more than 130 pounds (578 N).

1010.1.4.1.2 Other than egress component.
A revolving door used as other than a component of a *means of egress* shall comply with Section 1010.1.4.1. The *breakout* force of a revolving door not used as a component of a *means of egress* shall not be more than 180 pounds (801 N).

Exception: A *breakout* force in excess of 180 pounds (801 N) is permitted if the collapsing force is reduced to not more than 130 pounds (578 N) when not less than one of the following conditions is satisfied:

1. There is a power failure or power is removed to the device holding the door wings in position.

2. There is an actuation of the *automatic sprinkler system* where such system is provided.

`

3. There is an actuation of a smoke detection system that is installed in accordance with Section 907 to provide coverage in areas within the building that are within 75 feet (22 860 mm) of the revolving doors.

4. There is an actuation of a manual control switch, in an approved location and clearly identified, that reduces the *breakout* force to not more than 130 pounds (578 N).

1010.1.4.2 Power-operated doors.
Where *means of egress* doors are operated or assisted by power, the design shall be such that in the event of power failure, the door is capable of being opened manually to permit *means of egress* travel or closed where necessary to safeguard *means of egress*. The forces required to open these doors manually shall not exceed those specified in Section 1010.1.3, except that the force to set the door in motion shall not exceed 50 pounds (220 N). The door shall be capable of swinging open from any position to the full width of the opening in which such door is installed when a force is applied to the door on the side from which egress is made. Power-operated swinging doors, power-operated sliding doors and power operated folding doors shall comply with BHMA A156.10. Power-assisted swinging doors and low energy power-operated swinging doors shall comply with BHMA A156.19.

Exceptions:

1. Occupancies in Group I-3.

2. Horizontal sliding doors complying with Section 1010.1.4.3.

3. For a bi-parting door in the emergency breakout mode, a door leaf located within a multiple-leaf opening shall be exempt from the minimum 32-inch (813 mm) single-leaf requirement of Section 1010.1.1, provided a minimum 32-inch (813 mm) clear opening is provided when the two biparting leaves meeting in the center are broken out.

1010.1.4.3 Special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding doors.
In other than Group H occupancies, special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding door assemblies permitted to be a component of a *means of egress* in accordance with Exception 6 to Section 1010.1.2 shall comply with all of the following criteria:

1. The doors shall be power operated and shall be capable of being operated manually in the event of power failure.

2. The doors shall be openable by a simple method from both sides without special knowledge or effort.

3. The force required to operate the door shall not exceed 30 pounds (133 N) to set the door in motion and 15 pounds (67 N) to close the door or open it to the minimum required width.

4. The door shall be openable with a force not to exceed 15 pounds (67 N) when a force of 250 pounds (1100 N) is applied perpendicular to the door adjacent to the operating device.

`

5. The door assembly shall comply with the applicable *fire protection rating* and, where rated, shall be self-closing or automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3, shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 80 and shall comply with Section 716.

6. The door assembly shall have an integrated standby power supply.

7. The door assembly power supply shall be electrically supervised.

8. The door shall open to the minimum required width within 10 seconds after activation of the operating device.

1010.1.4.4 Security grilles.
In Groups B, F, M and S, horizontal sliding or vertical security grilles are permitted at the main *exit* and shall be openable from the inside without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort during periods that the space is occupied. The grilles shall remain secured in the full-open position during the period of occupancy by the general public. Where two or more *means of egress* are required, not more than one-half of the *exits* or *exit access doorways* shall be equipped with horizontal sliding or vertical security grilles.

1010.1.5 Floor elevation.
There shall be a floor or landing on each side of a door. Such floor or landing shall be at the same elevation on each side of the door. Landings shall be level except for exterior landings, which are permitted to have a slope not to exceed 0.25 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

Exceptions:

1. Doors serving individual *dwelling units* in Groups R-2 and R-3 where the following apply:

   1.1. A door is permitted to open at the top step of an interior *flight* of *stairs*, provided the door does not swing over the top step.

   1.2. Screen doors and storm doors are permitted to swing over *stairs* or landings.

2. Exterior doors as provided for in Section 1003.5, Exception 1, and Section 1022.2, which are not on an *accessible route*.

3. In Group R-3 occupancies not required to be *Accessible units, Type A units or Type B units*, the landing at an exterior doorway shall be not more than 7 3/4 inches (197 mm) below the top of the threshold, provided the door, other than an exterior storm or screen door, does not swing over the landing.

4. Variations in elevation due to differences in finish materials, but not more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).

5. Exterior decks, patios or balconies that are part of *Type B dwelling units*, have impervious surfaces and that are not more than 4 inches (102 mm) below the finished floor level of the adjacent interior space of the dwelling unit.

`

6. Doors serving equipment spaces not required to be *accessible* in accordance with Section 1103.2.9 and serving an occupant load of five or less shall be permitted to have a landing on one side to be not more than 7 inches (178 mm) above or below the landing on the egress side of the door.

1010.1.6 Landings at doors.
Landings shall have a width not less than the width of the *stairway* or the door, whichever is greater. Doors in the fully open position shall not reduce a required dimension by more than 7 inches (178 mm). Where a landing serves an *occupant load* of 50 or more, doors in any position shall not reduce the landing to less than one-half its required width. Landings shall have a length measured in the direction of travel of not less than 44 inches (1118 mm).

Exception: Landing length in the direction of travel in Groups R-3 and U and within individual units of Group R-2 need not exceed 36 inches (914 mm).

1010.1.7 Thresholds.
Thresholds at doorways shall not exceed 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) in height above the finished floor or landing for sliding doors serving dwelling units or 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) above the finished floor or landing for other doors. Raised thresholds and floor level changes greater than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) at doorways shall be beveled with a slope not greater than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope).

Exceptions:

1. In occupancy Group R-2 or R-3, threshold heights for sliding and side-hinged exterior doors shall be permitted to be up to 7 3/4 inches (197 mm) in height if all of the following apply:

   1.1. The door is not part of the required *means of egress*.

   1.2. The door is not part of an *accessible route* as required by Chapter 11.

   1.3. The door is not part of an *Accessible unit*, *Type A unit* or *Type B unit*.

2. In *Type B units*, where Exception 5 to Section 1010.1.5 permits a 4-inch (102 mm) elevation change at the door, the threshold height on the exterior side of the door shall not exceed 4 3/4 inches (120 mm) in height above the exterior deck, patio or balcony for sliding doors or 4 1/2 inches (114 mm) above the exterior deck, patio or balcony for other doors.

1010.1.8 Door arrangement.
Space between two doors in a series shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum plus the width of a door swinging into the space. Doors in a series shall swing either in the same direction or away from the space between the doors.

Exceptions:

1. The minimum distance between horizontal sliding power-operated doors in a series shall be 48 inches (1219 mm).

`

2. Storm and screen doors serving individual *dwelling units* in Groups R-2 and R-3 need not be spaced 48 inches (1219 mm) from the other door.

3. Doors within individual *dwelling units* in Groups R-2 and R-3 other than within *Type A dwelling units*.

1010.1.9 Door operations.
Except as specifically permitted by this section, egress doors shall be readily openable from the egress side without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

1010.1.9.1 Hardware.
Door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices on doors required to be *accessible* by Chapter 11 shall not require tight grasping, tight pinching or twisting of the wrist to operate.

1010.1.9.2 Hardware height.
Door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices shall be installed 34 inches (864 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above the finished floor. Locks used only for security purposes and not used for normal operation are permitted at any height.

Exception: Access doors or gates in barrier walls and fences protecting pools, spas and hot tubs shall be permitted to have operable parts of the release of latch on self-latching devices at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground, provided the self-latching devices are not also self-locking devices operated by means of a key, electronic opener or integral combination lock.

1010.1.9.3 Locks and latches.
Locks and latches shall be permitted to prevent operation of doors where any of the following exist:

1. Places of detention or restraint.

2. In buildings in occupancy Group A having an *occupant load* of 300 or less, Groups B, F, M and S, and in *places of religious worship*, the main door or doors are permitted to be equipped with key-operated locking devices from the egress side provided:

   2.1. The locking device is readily distinguishable as locked.

   2.2. A readily visible durable sign is posted on the egress side on or adjacent to the door stating: THIS DOOR TO REMAIN UNLOCKED WHEN ~~THIS SPACE~~ BUILDING IS OCCUPIED. The sign shall be in letters 1 inch (25 mm) high on a contrasting background; and

   2.3. The use of the key-operated locking device is revocable by the *building official* for due cause.

3. Where egress doors are used in pairs, *approved* automatic flush bolts shall be permitted to be used, provided that the door leaf having the automatic flush bolts does not have a doorknob or surface-mounted hardware.

`

4. Doors from individual *dwelling* or *sleeping units* of Group R occupancies having an *occupant load* of 10 or less are permitted to be equipped with a night latch, dead bolt or security chain, provided such devices are openable from the inside without the use of a key or tool.

5. *Fire doors* after the minimum elevated temperature has disabled the unlatching mechanism in accordance with *listed fire door* test procedures.

6. Approved, listed locks without delayed egress shall be permitted in Group I-1 Condition 2 assisted living facilities licensed by Washington state, provided that:

   6.1. The clinical needs of one or more patients require specialized security measures for their safety.

   6.2. The doors unlock upon actuation of the automatic sprinkler system or automatic fire detection system.

   6.3. The doors unlock upon loss of electrical power controlling the lock or lock mechanism.

   6.4. The lock shall be capable of being deactivated by a signal from a switch located in an approved location.

   6.5. There is a system, such as a keypad and code, in place that allows visitors, staff persons and appropriate residents to exit. Instructions for exiting shall be posted within six feet of the door.

1010.1.9.4 Bolt locks.
Manually operated flush bolts or surface bolts are not permitted.

Exceptions:

1. On doors not required for egress in individual *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*.

2. Where a pair of doors serves a storage or equipment room, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf.

3. Where a pair of doors serves an *occupant load* of less than 50 persons in a Group B, F or S occupancy, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf. The inactive leaf shall not contain doorknobs, panic bars or similar operating hardware.

4. Where a pair of doors serves a Group B, F or S occupancy, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf provided such inactive leaf is not needed to meet egress capacity requirements and the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. The inactive leaf shall not contain doorknobs, panic bars or similar operating hardware.

5. Where a pair of doors serves patient care rooms in Group I-2 occupancies, self-latching edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf provided that the inactive leaf is not needed to meet egress capacity

`

requirements and the inactive leaf shall not contain doorknobs, panic bars or similar operating hardware.

1010.1.9.5 Unlatching.
The unlatching of any door or leaf shall not require more than one operation.

Exceptions:

1. Places of detention or restraint.

2. Where manually operated bolt locks are permitted by Section 1010.1.9.4.

3. Doors with automatic flush bolts as permitted by Section 1010.1.9.3, Item 3.

4. Doors from individual *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* of Group R occupancies as permitted by Section 1010.1.9.3, Item 4.

1010.1.9.5.1 Closet and bathroom doors in Group R-4 occupancies.
In Group R-4 occupancies, closet doors that latch in the closed position shall be openable from inside the closet, and bathroom doors that latch in the closed position shall be capable of being unlocked from the ingress side.

1010.1.9.6 Controlled egress doors in Groups I-1 and I-2.
Electric locking systems, including electromechanical locking systems and electromagnetic locking systems, shall be permitted to be locked in the means of egress in Group I-1 or I-2 occupancies where the clinical needs of persons receiving care require their containment. Controlled egress doors shall be permitted in such occupancies where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or an *approved automatic smoke* or *heat detection system* installed in accordance with Section 907, provided that the doors are installed and operate in accordance with all of the following:

1. The door locks shall unlock on actuation of the *automatic sprinkler system* or *automatic fire detection system*.

2. The door locks shall unlock on loss of power controlling the lock or lock mechanism.

3. The door locking system shall be installed to have the capability of being unlocked by a switch located at the *fire command center*, a nursing station or other approved location. The switch shall directly break power to the lock.

4. A building occupant shall not be required to pass through more than one door equipped with a controlled egress locking system before entering an exit.

5. The procedures for unlocking the doors shall be described and approved as part of the emergency planning and preparedness required by Chapter 4 of the *International Fire Code*.

6. All clinical staff shall have the keys, codes or other means necessary to operate the locking systems.

`

7. Emergency lighting shall be provided at the door.

8. The door locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.

Exceptions:

1. ~~Items 1 through 4 shall not apply to doors to areas occupied by persons who, because of clinical needs, require restraint or containment as part of the function of a psychiatric treatment area.~~

   Items 1 through 4, and 6 shall not apply to doors to areas where persons, which because of clinical needs, require restraint or containment as part of the function of a psychiatric treatment area provided that all clinical staff shall have the keys, codes or other means necessary to operate the locking devices.

2. Items 1 through 4 and 6 shall not apply to doors to areas where a *listed* egress control system is utilized to reduce the risk of child abduction from nursery and obstetric areas of a Group I-2 hospital.

1010.1.9.7 Delayed egress.
Delayed egress locking systems shall be permitted to be installed on doors serving any occupancy except Group A, E and H in buildings that are equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or an *approved automatic smoke* or *heat detection system* installed in accordance with Section 907. The locking system shall be installed and operated in accordance with all of the following:

1. The delay electronics of the delayed egress locking system shall deactivate upon actuation of the *automatic sprinkler system* or *automatic fire detection system*, allowing immediate, free egress.

2. The delay electronics of the delayed egress locking system shall deactivate upon loss of power controlling the lock or lock mechanism, allowing immediate free egress.

3. The delayed egress locking system shall have the capability of being deactivated at the f*ire command center* and other *approved* locations.

4. An attempt to egress shall initiate an irreversible process that shall allow such egress in not more than 15 seconds when a physical effort to exit is applied to the egress side door hardware for not more than 3 seconds. Initiation of the irreversible process shall activate an audible signal in the vicinity of the door. Once the delay electronics have been deactivated, rearming the delay electronics shall be by manual means only.

   Exception: Where approved, a delay of not more than 30 seconds is permitted on a delayed egress door.

5. The egress path from any point shall not pass through more than one delayed egress locking system.

`

Exception: In Group I-2 or I-3 occupancies, the egress path from any point in the building shall pass through not more than two delayed egress locking systems provided the combined delay does not exceed 30 seconds.

6. A sign shall be provided on the door and shall be located above and within 12 inches (305 mm) of the door exit hardware:

   6.1. For doors that swing in the direction of egress, the sign shall read: PUSH UNTIL ALARM SOUNDS. DOOR CAN BE OPENED IN 15 [30] SECONDS.

   6.2. For doors that swing in the opposite direction of egress, the sign shall read: PULL UNTIL ALARM SOUNDS. DOOR CAN BE OPENED IN 15 [30] SECONDS.

   6.3. The sign shall comply with the visual character requirements in ICC A117.1.

   Exception: Where approved, in Group I occupancies, the installation of a sign is not required where care recipients who because of clinical needs require restraint or containment as part of the function of the treatment area.

7. Emergency lighting shall be provided on the egress side of the door.

8. The delayed egress locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.

1010.1.9.8 Sensor release of electrically locked egress doors.
The electric locks on sensor released doors located in a *means of egress* in buildings with an occupancy in Group A, B, E, I-1, I-2, I-4, M, R-1 or R- 2 and entrance doors to tenant spaces in occupancies in Group A, B, E, I-1, I-2, I-4, M, R-1 or R-2 are permitted where installed and operated in accordance with all of the following criteria:

1. The sensor shall be installed on the egress side, arranged to detect an occupant approaching the doors. The doors shall be arranged to unlock by a signal from or loss of power to the sensor.

2. Loss of power to the lock or locking system shall automatically unlock the doors.

3. The doors shall be arranged to unlock from a manual unlocking device located 40 inches to 48 inches (1016 mm to 1219 mm) vertically above the floor and within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the secured doors. Ready access shall be provided to the manual unlocking device and the device shall be clearly identified by a sign that reads “PUSH TO EXIT.” When operated, the manual unlocking device shall result in direct interruption of power to the lock—independent of other electronics—and the doors shall remain unlocked for not less than 30 seconds.

4. Activation of the building *fire alarm system*, where provided, shall automatically unlock the doors, and the doors shall remain unlocked until the fire alarm system has been reset.

`

5. Activation of the building *automatic sprinkler system* or *fire detection system*, where provided, shall automatically unlock the doors. The doors shall remain unlocked until the *fire alarm system* has been reset.

6. The door locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.

1010.1.9.9 Electromagnetically locked egress doors.
Doors in the *means of egress* in buildings with an occupancy in Group A, B, E, I-1, I-2, I-4, M, R-1 or R-2 and doors to tenant spaces in Group A, B, E, I-1, I-2, I-4, M, R-1 or R-2 shall be permitted to be locked with an electromagnetic locking system where equipped with hardware that incorporates a built-in switch and where installed and operated in accordance with all of the following:

1. The hardware that is affixed to the door leaf has an obvious method of operation that is readily operated under all lighting conditions.

2. The hardware is capable of being operated with one hand.

3. Operation of the hardware directly interrupts the power to the electromagnetic lock and unlocks the door immediately.

4. Loss of power to the locking system automatically unlocks the door.

5. Where *panic* or *fire exit hardware* is required by Section 1010.1.10, operation of the *panic* or *fire exit hardware* also releases the electromagnetic lock.

6. The locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.

1010.1.9.10 Locking arrangements in correctional facilities.
In occupancies in Groups A-2, A-3, A-4, B, E, F, I-2, I-3, M and S within correctional and detention facilities, doors in *means of egress* serving rooms or spaces occupied by persons whose movements are controlled for security reasons shall be permitted to be locked where equipped with egress control devices that shall unlock manually and by not less than one of the following means:

1. Activation of an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2. Activation of an *approved manual fire alarm box*.

3. A signal from a *constantly attended location*.

1010.1.9.11 Stairway doors.
Interior *stairway means of egress* doors shall be openable from both sides without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

Exceptions:

1. *Stairway* discharge doors shall be openable from the egress side and shall only be locked from the opposite side.

`

2. This section shall not apply to doors arranged in accordance with Section 403.5.3.

3. In *stairways* serving not more than four stories, doors are permitted to be locked from the side opposite the egress side, provided they are openable from the egress side and capable of being unlocked simultaneously without unlatching upon a signal from the *fire command center*, if present, or a signal by emergency personnel from a single location inside the main entrance to the building.

4. *Stairway exit* doors shall be openable from the egress side and shall only be locked from the opposite side in Group B, F, M and S occupancies where the only interior access to the tenant space is from a single *exit stairway* where permitted in Section 1006.3.2.

5. *Stairway exit* doors shall be openable from the egress side and shall only be locked from the opposite side in Group R-2 occupancies where the only interior access to the *dwelling unit* is from a single *exit stairway* where permitted in Section 1006.3.2.

1010.1.10 Panic and fire exit hardware.
Doors serving a Group H occupancy and doors serving rooms or spaces with an *occupant load* of 50 or more in a Group A or E occupancy shall not be provided with a latch or lock other than *panic hardware* or *fire exit hardware*.

Exceptions:

1. A main *exit* of a Group A occupancy shall be permitted to be locking in accordance with Section 1010.1.9.3, Item 2.

2. Doors serving a Group A or E occupancy shall be permitted to be electromagnetically locked in accordance with Section 1010.1.9.9.

~~Electrical rooms with equipment rated 1,200 amperes or more and over 6 feet (1829 mm) wide, and that contain overcurrent devices, switching devices or control devices with *exit* or *exit access doors*, shall be equipped with *panic hardware* or *fire exit hardware*. The doors shall swing in the direction of egress travel.~~

1010.1.10.1 Installation.
Where *panic* or *fire exit hardware* is installed, it shall comply with the following:

1. *Panic hardware* shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 305.

2. *Fire exit hardware* shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 10C and UL 305.

3. The actuating portion of the releasing device shall extend not less than one-half of the door leaf width.

4. The maximum unlatching force shall not exceed 15 pounds (67 N).

1010.1.10.2 Balanced doors.
If *balanced doors* are used and *panic hardware* is required, the *panic hardware* shall be

`

the push-pad type and the pad shall not extend more than one-half the width of the door measured from the latch side.

1010.1.10.3 Electrical rooms and working clearances. Exit and exit access doors serving electrical rooms and working spaces shall swing in the direction of egress travel and shall be equipped with panic hardware or fire exit hardware where such rooms or working spaces contain one or more of the following:

1. Equipment operating at more than 600 volts, nominal.
2. Equipment operating at 600 volts or less, nominal and rated at 800 amperes or more, and where the equipment contains overcurrent devices, switching devices or control devices.

Exception: Panic and fire exit hardware is not required on exit and exit access doors serving electrical equipment rooms and working spaces where such doors are not less than twenty-five feet (7.6 m) from the nearest edge of the electrical equipment.

1010.2 Gates.
Gates serving the *means of egress* system shall comply with the requirements of this section. Gates used as a component in a *means of egress* shall conform to the applicable requirements for doors.

Exception: Horizontal sliding or swinging gates exceeding the 4-foot (1219 mm) maximum leaf width limitation are permitted in fences and walls surrounding a stadium.

1010.2.1 Stadiums.
Panic hardware is not required on gates surrounding stadiums where such gates are under constant immediate supervision while the public is present, and where safe dispersal areas based on 3 square feet (0.28 m^2) per occupant are located between the fence and enclosed space. Such required safe dispersal areas shall not be located less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the enclosed space. See Section 1028.5 for *means of egress* from safe dispersal areas.

1010.3 Turnstiles.
Turnstiles or similar devices that restrict travel to one direction shall not be placed so as to obstruct any required *means of egress*.

Exception: Each turnstile or similar device shall be credited with a capacity based on not more than a 50-person *occupant load* where all of the following provisions are met:

1. Each device shall turn free in the direction of egress travel when primary power is lost and on the manual release by an employee in the area.

2. Such devices are not given credit for more than 50 percent of the required egress capacity or width.

3. Each device is not more than 39 inches (991 mm) high.

4. Each device has not less than $16^1/_2$ inches (419 mm) clear width at and below a height of 39 inches (991 mm) and not less than 22 inches (559 mm) clear width at heights above 39 inches (991 mm).

`

Where located as part of an *accessible route*, turnstiles shall have not less than 36 inches (914 mm) clear at and below a height of 34 inches (864 mm), not less than 32 inches (813 mm) clear width between 34 inches (864 mm) and 80 inches (2032 mm) and shall consist of a mechanism other than a revolving device.

1010.3.1 High turnstile.
Turnstiles more than 39 inches (991 mm) high shall meet the requirements for revolving doors.

1010.3.2 Additional door.
Where serving an *occupant load* greater than 300, each turnstile that is not portable shall have a side-hinged swinging door that conforms to Section 1010.1 within 50 feet (15 240 mm).

SECTION 1011
STAIRWAYS

1011.1 General.
Stairways serving occupied portions of a building shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1011.2 through 1011.13. *Alternating tread devices* shall comply with Section 1011.14. Ships ladders shall comply with Section 1011.15. Ladders shall comply with Section 1011.16.

Exception: Within rooms or spaces used for assembly purposes, stepped aisles shall comply with Section 1029.

1011.2 Width and capacity.
The required capacity of *stairways* shall be determined as specified in Section 1005.1, but the minimum width shall be not less than 44 inches (1118 mm). See Section 1009.3 for accessible *means of egress stairways*.

Exceptions:

1. *Stairways* serving an *occupant load* of less than 50 shall have a width of not less than 36 inches (914 mm).

2. *Spiral stairways* as provided for in Section 1011.10.

3. Where an incline platform lift or stairway chairlift is installed on *stairways* serving occupancies in Group R-3, or within *dwelling units* in occupancies in Group R-2, a clear passage width not less than 20 inches (508 mm) shall be provided. Where the seat and platform can be folded when not in use, the distance shall be measured from the folded position.

1011.3 Headroom.
Stairways shall have a headroom clearance of not less than 80 inches (2032 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the edge of the *nosings*. Such headroom shall be continuous above the *stairway* to the point where the line intersects the landing below, one tread depth beyond the bottom riser. The minimum clearance shall be maintained the full width of the *stairway* and landing.

Exceptions:

`

1. *Spiral stairways* complying with Section 1011.10 are permitted a 78-inch (1981 mm) headroom clearance.

2. In Group R-3 occupancies; within *dwelling units* in Group R-2 occupancies; and in Group U occupancies that are accessory to a Group R-3 occupancy or accessory to individual *dwelling units* in Group R-2 occupancies; where the *nosings* of treads at the side of a *flight* extend under the edge of a floor opening through which the *stair* passes, the floor opening shall be allowed to project horizontally into the required headroom not more than $4^{3}/_{4}$ inches (121 mm).

1011.4 Walkline.
The walkline across *winder* treads shall be concentric to the direction of travel through the turn and located 12 inches (305 mm) from the side where the *winders* are narrower. The 12-inch (305 mm) dimension shall be measured from the widest point of the clear *stair* width at the walking surface of the *winder*. Where *winders* are adjacent within the *flight*, the point of the widest clear *stair* width of the adjacent *winders* shall be used.

1011.5 Stair treads and risers.
Stair treads and risers shall comply with Sections 1011.5.1 through 1011.5.5.3.

1011.5.1 Dimension reference surfaces.
For the purpose of this section, all dimensions are exclusive of carpets, rugs or runners.

1011.5.2 Riser height and tread depth.
Stair riser heights shall be 7 inches (178 mm) maximum and 4 inches (102 mm) minimum. The riser height shall be measured vertically between the *nosings* of adjacent treads. Rectangular tread depths shall be 11 inches (279 mm) minimum measured horizontally between the vertical planes of the foremost projection of adjacent treads and at a right angle to the tread's *nosing*. *Winder* treads shall have a minimum tread depth of 11 inches (279 mm) between the vertical planes of the foremost projection of adjacent treads at the intersections with the walkline and a minimum tread depth of 10 inches (254 mm) within the clear width of the *stair*.

Exceptions:

1. *Spiral stairways* in accordance with Section 1011.10.

2. *Stairways* connecting stepped *aisles* to cross *aisles* or concourses shall be permitted to use the riser/tread dimension in Section 1029.13.2.

3. In Group R-3 occupancies; within dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; and in Group U occupancies that are accessory to a Group R-3 occupancy or accessory to individual dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; the maximum riser height shall be 7 3/4 inches (197 mm); the minimum tread depth shall be 10 inches (254 mm); the minimum winder tread depth at the walkline shall be 10 inches (254 mm); and the minimum winder tread depth shall be 6 inches (152 mm). A nosing projection not less than 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) but not more than 1 1/4 inches (32 mm) shall be provided on stairways with solid risers where the tread depth is less than 11 inches (279 mm).

4. See Section 403.1 of the *International Existing Building Code* for the replacement of existing *stairways*.

`

5. In Group I-3 facilities, *stairways* providing access to guard towers, observation stations and control rooms, not more than 250 square feet (23 m^2) in area, shall be permitted to have a maximum riser height of 8 inches (203 mm) and a minimum tread depth of 9 inches (229 mm).

1011.5.3 Winder treads.
Winder treads are not permitted in *means of egress* stairways except within a *dwelling unit*.

Exceptions:

1. Curved *stairways* in accordance with Section 1011.9.

2. *Spiral stairways* in accordance with Section 1011.10.

1011.5.4 Dimensional uniformity.
Stair treads and risers shall be of uniform size and shape. The tolerance between the largest and smallest riser height or between the largest and smallest tread depth shall not exceed 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) in any *flight* of *stairs*. The greatest *winder* tread depth at the walkline within any *flight* of *stairs* shall not exceed the smallest by more than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).

Exceptions:

1. *Stairways* connecting stepped *aisles* to cross *aisles* or concourses shall be permitted to comply with the dimensional non-uniformity in Section 1029.13.2.

2. Consistently shaped *winders*, complying with Section 1011.5, differing from rectangular treads in the same *flight* of *stairs*.

3. Non-uniform riser dimension complying with Section 1011.5.4.1.

1011.5.4.1 Non-uniform height risers.
Where the bottom or top riser adjoins a sloping *public way*, walkway or driveway having an established grade and serving as a landing, the bottom or top riser is permitted to be reduced along the slope to less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height, with the variation in height of the bottom or top riser not to exceed one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope) of *stair* width. The *nosings* or leading edges of treads at such nonuniform height risers shall have a distinctive marking stripe, different from any other *nosing* marking provided on the *stair flight*. The distinctive marking stripe shall be visible in descent of the *stair* and shall have a slip-resistant surface. Marking stripes shall have a width of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) but not more than 2 inches (51 mm).

11.5.5 Nosing and riser profile.
Nosings shall have a curvature or bevel of not less than $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.6 mm) but not more than $^9/_{16}$ inch (14.3 mm) from the foremost projection of the tread. Risers shall be solid and vertical or sloped under the tread above from the underside of the *nosing* above at an angle not more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from the vertical.

`

1011.5.5.1 Nosing projection size.

The leading edge (*nosings*) of treads shall project not more than $1^{1}/_{4}$ inches (32 mm) beyond the tread below.

1011.5.5.2 Nosing projection uniformity.
Nosing projections of the leading edges shall be of uniform size, including the projections of the *nosing's* leading edge of the floor at the top of a *flight*.

1011.5.5.3 Solid risers.
Risers shall be solid.

Exceptions:

1. Solid risers are not required for *stairways* that are not required to comply with Section 1009.3, provided that the opening between treads does not permit the passage of a sphere with a diameter of 4 inches (102 mm).

2. Solid risers are not required for occupancies in Group I-3 or in Group F, H and S occupancies other than areas accessible to the public. There are no restrictions on the size of the opening in the riser.

3. Solid risers are not required for *spiral stairways* constructed in accordance with Section 1011.10.

1011.6 Stairway landings.
There shall be a floor or landing at the top and bottom of each *stairway*. The width of landings shall be not less than the width of *stairways* served. Every landing shall have a minimum width measured perpendicular to the direction of travel equal to the width of the *stairway*. Where the *stairway* has a straight run the depth need not exceed 48 inches (1219 mm). Doors opening onto a landing shall not reduce the landing to less than one-half the required width. When fully open, the door shall not project more than 7 inches (178 mm) into a landing. Where *wheelchair spaces* are required on the *stairway* landing in accordance with Section 1009.6.3, the *wheelchair space* shall not be located in the required width of the landing and doors shall not swing over the *wheelchair spaces*.

Exception: Where *stairways* connect stepped *aisles* to cross *aisles* or concourses, *stairway* landings are not required at the transition between *stairways* and stepped *aisles* constructed in accordance with Section 1029.

1011.7 Stairway construction.
Stairways shall be built of materials consistent with the types permitted for the type of construction of the building, except that wood *handrails* shall be permitted for all types of construction.

Exception: In buildings with a 3-hour horizontal assembly used to establish two separate buildings in accordance with Section 510, a stairway constructed of combustible materials may extend below the 3-hour horizontal assembly if it is enclosed within a 3-hour fireresistance rated shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713, extending from the 3-hour horizontal assembly through the lowest basement level.

1011.7.1 Stairway walking surface.
The walking surface of treads and landings of a *stairway* shall not be sloped steeper than

`

one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in any direction. *Stairway* treads and landings shall have a solid surface. Finish floor surfaces shall be securely attached.

Exceptions:

1. Openings in *stair* walking surfaces shall be a size that does not permit the passage of $^{1}/_{2}$-inch-diameter (12.7 mm) sphere. Elongated openings shall be placed so that the long dimension is perpendicular to the direction of travel.

2. In Group F, H and S occupancies, other than areas of parking structures accessible to the public, openings in treads and landings shall not be prohibited provided a sphere with a diameter of $1^{1}/_{8}$ inches (29 mm) cannot pass through the opening.

1011.7.2 Outdoor conditions.
Outdoor *stairways* and outdoor approaches to *stairways* shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on walking surfaces.

1011.7.3 Enclosures under interior stairways.
The walls and soffits within enclosed usable spaces under enclosed and unenclosed *stairways* shall be protected by 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction or the fire-resistance rating of the *stairway* enclosure, whichever is greater. Access to the enclosed space shall not be directly from within the *stairway* enclosure.

Exception: Spaces under stairways serving and contained within a single residential dwelling unit in Group R-2 or R-3 shall be permitted to be protected on the enclosed side with 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board.

1011.7.4 Enclosures under exterior stairways.
There shall not be enclosed usable space under *exterior exit stairways* unless the space is completely enclosed in 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction. The open space under *exterior stairways* shall not be used for any purpose.

1011.8 Vertical rise.
A flight of stairs shall not have a vertical rise greater than 12 feet (3658 mm) between floor levels or landings.

Exception: Spiral stairways used as a means of egress from technical production areas.

1011.9 Curved stairways.
Curved *stairways* with winder treads shall have treads and risers in accordance with Section 1011.5 and the smallest radius shall be not less than twice the minimum width or required capacity of the stairway.

Exception: The radius restriction shall not apply to curved stairways in Group R-3 and within individual dwelling units in Group R-2.

1011.10 Spiral stairways.
Spiral stairways are permitted to be used as a component in the *means of egress* only within

`

dwelling units or from a space not more than 250 square feet (23 m^2) in area and serving not more than five occupants, or from *technical production areas* in accordance with Section 410.6.

A *spiral stairway* shall have a $7^1/_2$-inch (191 mm) minimum clear tread depth at a point 12 inches (305 mm) from the narrow edge. The risers shall be sufficient to provide a headroom of 78 inches (1981 mm) minimum, but riser height shall not be more than $9^1/_2$ inches (241 mm). The minimum *stairway* clear width at and below the *handrail* shall be 26 inches (660 mm).

1011.11 Handrails.
Stairways shall have *handrails* on each side and shall comply with Section 1014. Where glass is used to provide the *handrail*, the *handrail* shall comply with Section 2407.

Exceptions:

1. *Stairways* within dwelling units and s*piral stairways* are permitted to have a *handrail* on one side only.

2. Decks, patios and walkways that have a single change in elevation where the landing depth on each side of the change of elevation is greater than what is required for a landing do not require *handrails*.

3. In Group R-3 occupancies, a change in elevation consisting of a single riser at an entrance or egress door does not require *handrails*.

4. Changes in room elevations of three or fewer risers within dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R- 2 and R-3 do not require *handrails*.

1011.12 Stairway to roof.
In buildings four or more stories above *grade plane*, one *stairway* shall extend to the roof surface unless the roof has a slope steeper than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope).

Exception: Other than where required by Section 1011.12.1, in buildings without an occupied roof access to the roof from the top story shall be permitted to be by an *alternating tread device*, a ships ladder or a permanent ladder.

1011.12.1 Stairway to elevator equipment.
Roofs and penthouses containing elevator equipment that must be accessed for maintenance are required to be accessed by a stairway.

1011.12.2 Roof access.
Where a stairway is provided to a roof, access to the roof shall be provided through a penthouse complying with Section 1510.2.

Exception: In buildings without an occupied roof, access to the roof shall be permitted to be a roof hatch or trap door not less than 16 square feet (1.5 m^2) in area and having a minimum dimension of ~~2 feet (610 mm).~~ 3 feet.

1011.13 Guards.
Guards shall be provided along stairways and landings where required by Section 1015 and

`

shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1015. Where the roof hatch opening providing the required access is located within 10 feet (3049 mm) of the roof edge, such roof access or roof edge shall be protected by guards installed in accordance with Section 1015.

1011.14 Alternating tread devices.
Alternating tread devices are limited to an element of a *means of egress* in buildings of Groups F, H and S from a mezzanine not more than 250 square feet (23 m^2) in area and that serves not more than five occupants; in buildings of Group I-3 from a guard tower, observation station or control room not more than 250 square feet (23 m^2) in area and for access to unoccupied roofs. *Alternating tread devices* used as a means of egress shall not have a rise greater than 20 feet (6096 mm) between floor levels or landings.

1011.14.1 Handrails of alternating tread devices.
Handrails shall be provided on both sides of alternating tread devices and shall comply with Section 1014.

1011.14.2 Treads of alternating tread devices.
Alternating tread devices shall have a minimum tread depth of 5 inches (127 mm), a minimum projected tread depth of $8^1/_2$ inches (216 mm), a minimum tread width of 7 inches (178 mm) and a maximum riser height of $9^1/_2$ inches (241 mm). The tread depth shall be measured horizontally between the vertical planes of the foremost projections of adjacent treads. The riser height shall be measured vertically between the leading edges of adjacent treads. The riser height and tread depth provided shall result in an angle of ascent from the horizontal of between 50 and 70 degrees (0.87 and 1.22 rad). The initial tread of the device shall begin at the same elevation as the platform, landing or floor surface.

Exception: *Alternating tread devices* used as an element of a *means of egress* in buildings from a mezzanine area not more than 250 square feet (23 m^2) in area that serves not more than five occupants shall have a minimum tread depth of 3 inches (76 mm) with a minimum projected tread depth of $10^1/_2$ inches (267 mm). The rise to the next alternating tread surface shall not exceed 8 inches (203 mm).

1011.15 Ships ladders.
Ships ladders are permitted to be used in Group I-3 as a component of a *means of egress* to and from control rooms or elevated facility observation stations not more than 250 square feet (23 m^2) with not more than three occupants and for access to unoccupied roofs. The minimum clear width at and below the *handrails* shall be 20 inches (508 mm).

1011.15.1 Handrails of ships ladders.
Handrails shall be provided on both sides of ships ladders.

1011.15.2 Treads of ships ladders.
Ships ladders shall have a minimum tread depth of 5 inches (127 mm). The tread shall be projected such that the total of the tread depth plus the *nosing* projection is not less than $8^1/_2$ inches (216 mm). The maximum riser height shall be $9^1/_2$ inches (241 mm).

`

1011.16 Ladders.
Permanent ladders shall not serve as a part of the *means of egress* from occupied spaces within a building. Permanent ladders shall be permitted to provide access to the following areas:

1. Spaces frequented only by personnel for maintenance, repair or monitoring of equipment.

2. Non-occupiable spaces accessed only by catwalks, crawl spaces, freight elevators or very narrow passageways.

3. Raised areas used primarily for purposes of security, life safety or fire safety including, but not limited to, observation galleries, prison guard towers, fire towers or lifeguard stands.

4. Elevated levels in Group U not open to the general public.

5. Non-occupied roofs that are not required to have *stairway* access in accordance with Section 1011.12.1.

6. Ladders shall be constructed in accordance with Section 306.5 of the *International Mechanical Code*.

1011.17 Stairways in individual dwelling units. Stairs or ladders within an individual dwelling unit used for access to areas of 200 square feet (18.6 m2) or less, and not containing the primary bathroom or kitchen, are exempt from the requirements of Section 1011.

SECTION 1012
RAMPS

1012.1 Scope.
The provisions of this section shall apply to ramps used as a component of a *means of egress.*

Exceptions:

1. Ramped *aisles* within assembly rooms or spaces shall comply with the provisions in Section 1029.

2. Curb ramps shall comply with ICC A117.1.

3. Vehicle ramps in parking garages for pedestrian *exit access* shall not be required to comply with Sections 1012.3 through 1012.10 where they are not an *accessible route* serving *accessible* parking spaces, other required *accessible* elements or part of an accessible *means of egress*.

4. In a parking garage where one accessible means of egress serving accessible parking spaces or other accessible elements is provided, a second accessible means of egress serving that area may include a vehicle ramp that does not comply with Sections 1012.5, 1012.6 and 1012.9. A landing complying with Sections 1012.6.1 and 1012.6.4 shall be provided at any change of direction in the accessible means of egress.

`

1012.2 Slope.
Ramps used as part of a *means of egress* shall have a running slope not steeper than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope). The slope of other pedestrian *ramps* shall not be steeper than one unit vertical in eight units horizontal (12.5-percent slope).

1012.3 Cross slope.
The slope measured perpendicular to the direction of travel of a *ramp* shall not be steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

1012.4 Vertical rise.
The rise for any *ramp* run shall be 30 inches (762 mm) maximum.

1012.5 Minimum dimensions.
The minimum dimensions of *means of egress ramps* shall comply with Sections 1012.5.1 through 1012.5.3.

1012.5.1 Width and capacity.
The minimum width and required capacity of a *means of egress ramp* shall be not less than that required for *corridors* by Section 1020.2. The clear width of a *ramp* between *handrails*, if provided, or other permissible projections shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum.

1012.5.2 Headroom.
The minimum headroom in all parts of the *means of egress ramp* shall be not less than 80 inches (2032 mm).

1012.5.3 Restrictions.
Means of egress ramps shall not reduce in width in the direction of egress travel. Projections into the required *ramp* and landing width are prohibited. Doors opening onto a landing shall not reduce the clear width to less than 42 inches (1067 mm).

1012.6 Landings.
Ramps shall have landings at the bottom and top of each *ramp*, points of turning, entrance, exits and at doors. Landings shall comply with Sections 1012.6.1 through 1012.6.5.

1012.6.1 Slope.
Landings shall have a slope not steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in any direction. Changes in level are not permitted.

1012.6.2 Width.
The landing width shall be not less than the width of the widest *ramp* run adjoining the landing.

1012.6.3 Length.
The landing length shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. In Group R-2 and R-3 individual *dwelling* and *sleeping units* that are not required to be *Accessible units*, *Type A units* or *Type B units* in accordance with Section 1107, landings are permitted to be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum.

`

2. Where the *ramp* is not a part of an *accessible route*, the length of the landing shall not be required to be more than 48 inches (1220 mm) in the direction of travel.

1012.6.4 Change in direction.
Where changes in direction of travel occur at landings provided between *ramp* runs, the landing shall be 60 inches by 60 inches (1524 mm by 1524 mm) minimum.

Exception: In Group R-2 and R-3 individual *dwelling* or *sleeping units* that are not required to be *Accessible units*, *Type A units* or *Type B units* in accordance with Section 1107, landings are permitted to be 36 inches by 36 inches (914 mm by 914 mm) minimum.

1012.6.5 Doorways.
Where doorways are located adjacent to a *ramp* landing, maneuvering clearances required by *ICC A117.1* are permitted to overlap the required landing area.

1012.7 Ramp construction.
Ramps shall be built of materials consistent with the types permitted for the type of construction of the building, except that wood *handrails* shall be permitted for all types of construction.

1012.7.1 Ramp surface.
The surface of *ramps* shall be of slip-resistant materials that are securely attached.

1012.7.2 Outdoor conditions.
Outdoor *ramps* and outdoor approaches to *ramps* shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on walking surfaces.

1012.8 Handrails.
Ramps with a rise greater than 6 inches (152 mm) shall have *handrails* on both sides. *Handrails* shall comply with Section 1014.

1012.9 Guards.
Guards shall be provided where required by Section 1015 and shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1015.

1012.10 Edge protection.
Edge protection complying with Section 1012.10.1 or 1012.10.2 shall be provided on each side of *ramp* runs and at each side of *ramp* landings.

Exceptions:

1. Edge protection is not required on *ramps* that are not required to have *handrails*, provided they have flared sides that comply with the *ICC A117.1* curb ramp provisions.

2. Edge protection is not required on the sides of *ramp* landings serving an adjoining *ramp* run or *stairway*.

3. Edge protection is not required on the sides of ramp landings having a vertical dropoff of not more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) within 10 inches (254 mm) horizontally of the required landing area.

`

1012.10.1 Curb, rail, wall or barrier.
A curb, rail, wall or barrier shall be provided to serve as edge protection. A curb shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height. Barriers shall be constructed so that the barrier prevents the passage of a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere, where any portion of the sphere is within 4 inches (102 mm) of the floor or ground surface.

1012.10.2 Extended floor or ground surface.
The floor or ground surface of the *ramp* run or landing shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the inside face of a *handrail* complying with Section 1014.

SECTION 1013
EXIT SIGNS

1013.1 Where required.
Exits and *exit access* doors shall be marked by an *approved* exit sign readily visible from any direction of egress travel. The path of egress travel to *exits* and within *exits* shall be marked by readily visible exit signs to clearly indicate the direction of egress travel in cases where the *exit* or the path of egress travel is not immediately visible to the occupants. Intervening *means of egress* doors within exits shall be marked by exit signs. Exit sign placement shall be such that no point in an *exit access corridor* or *exit passageway* is more than 100 feet (30 480 mm) or the *listed* viewing distance for the sign, whichever is less, from the nearest visible exit sign.

Exceptions:

1. Exit signs are not required in rooms or areas that require only one *exit* or *exit access*.

2. Main exterior *exit* doors or gates that are obviously and clearly identifiable as *exits* need not have exit signs where *approved* by the *building official*.

3. Exit signs are not required in occupancies in Group U and individual *sleeping units* or *dwelling units* in Group R-1, R-2 or R-3.

4. Exit signs are not required in dayrooms, sleeping rooms or dormitories in occupancies in Group I-3.

5. In occupancies in Groups A-4 and A-5, exit signs are not required on the seating side of vomitories or openings into seating areas where exit signs are provided in the concourse that are readily apparent from the vomitories. Egress lighting is provided to identify each vomitory or opening within the seating area in an emergency.

1013.2 Floor-level exit signs in Group R-1.
Where exit signs are required in Group R-1 occupancies by Section 1013.1, additional low-level exit signs shall be provided in all areas serving guest rooms in Group R-1 occupancies and shall comply with Section 1013.5.

The bottom of the sign shall be not less than 10 inches (254 mm) nor more than 12 inches (305 mm) above the floor level. The sign shall be flush mounted to the door or wall. Where mounted on the wall, the edge of the sign shall be within 4 inches (102 mm) of the door frame on the latch side.

1013.3 Illumination.
Exit signs shall be internally or externally illuminated.

`

Exception: Tactile signs required by Section 1013.4 need not be provided with illumination.

1013.4 Raised character and braille exit signs.
A sign stating EXIT in visual characters, raised characters and braille and complying with *ICC A117.1* shall be provided adjacent to each door to an *area of refuge*, an exterior area for assisted rescue, an *exit stairway* or *ramp*, an *exit passageway* and the *exit discharge*.

1013.5 Internally illuminated exit signs.
Electrically powered, *self-luminous* and *photoluminescent* exit signs shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 924 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Chapter 27. Exit signs shall be illuminated at all times.

1013.6 Externally illuminated exit signs.
Externally illuminated exit signs shall comply with Sections 1013.6.1 through 1013.6.3.

1013.6.1 Graphics.
Every exit sign and directional exit sign shall have plainly legible letters not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high with the principal strokes of the letters not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) wide. The word "EXIT" shall have letters having a width not less than 2 inches (51 mm) wide, except the letter "I," and the minimum spacing between letters shall be not less than $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm). Signs larger than the minimum established in this section shall have letter widths, strokes and spacing in proportion to their height.

The word "EXIT" shall be in high contrast with the background and shall be clearly discernible when the means of exit sign illumination is or is not energized. If a chevron directional indicator is provided as part of the exit sign, the construction shall be such that the direction of the chevron directional indicator cannot be readily changed.

1013.6.2 Exit sign illumination.
The face of an exit sign illuminated from an external source shall have an intensity of not less than 5 footcandles (54 lux).

1013.6.3 Power source.
Exit signs shall be illuminated at all times. To ensure continued illumination for a duration of not less than 90 minutes in case of primary power loss, the sign illumination means shall be connected to an emergency power system provided from storage batteries, unit equipment or an on-site generator. The installation of the emergency power system shall be in accordance with Chapter 27.

Exceptions:

1. *Approved* exit sign illumination means that provide continuous illumination independent of external power sources for a duration of not less than 90 minutes, in case of primary power loss, are not required to be connected to an emergency electrical system.

2. Group I-2 Condition 2 exit sign illumination shall not be provided by unit equipment battery only.

`

SECTION 1014
HANDRAILS

1014.1 Where required.
Handrails serving *stairways*, *ramps*, stepped *aisles* and ramped *aisles* shall be adequate in strength and attachment in accordance with Section 1607.8. *Handrails* required for *stairways* by Section 1011.11 shall comply with Sections 1014.2 through 1014.9. *Handrails* required for *ramps* by Section 1012.8 shall comply with Sections 1014.2 through 1014.8. *Handrails* for stepped *aisles* and ramped *aisles* required by Section 1029.15 shall comply with Sections 1014.2 through 1014.8.

1014.2 Height.
Handrail height, measured above *stair* tread nosings, or finish surface of *ramp* slope, shall be uniform, not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm). *Handrail* height of *alternating tread devices* and ships ladders, measured above tread *nosings*, shall be uniform, not less than 30 inches (762 mm) and not more than 34 inches (864 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Where handrail fittings or bendings are used to provide continuous transition between *flights*, the fittings or bendings shall be permitted to exceed the maximum height.

2. In Group R-3 occupancies; within *dwelling units* in Group R-2 occupancies; and in Group U occupancies that are associated with a Group R-3 occupancy or associated with individual *dwelling units* in Group R-2 occupancies; where handrail fittings or bendings are used to provide continuous transition between flights, transition at *winder* treads, transition from *handrail* to *guard*, or where used at the start of a *flight*, the *handrail* height at the fittings or bendings shall be permitted to exceed the maximum height.

3. *Handrails* on top of a guard where permitted along stepped aisles and ramped aisles in accordance with Section 1029.15.

1014.3 Handrail graspability.
Required *handrails* shall comply with Section 1014.3.1 or shall provide equivalent graspability.

Exception: In Group R-3 occupancies; within *dwelling units* in Group R-2 occupancies; and in Group U occupancies that are accessory to a Group R-3 occupancy or accessory to individual *dwelling units* in Group R-2 occupancies; *handrails* shall be Type I in accordance with Section 1014.3.1, Type II in accordance with Section 1014.3.2 or shall provide equivalent graspability.

1014.3.1 Type I.
Handrails with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of not less than 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) and not greater than 2 inches (51 mm). Where the handrail is not circular, it shall have a perimeter dimension of not less than 4 inches (102 mm) and not greater than 6-1/4 inches (160 mm) with a maximum cross-sectional dimension of 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) and minimum cross-sectional dimension of 1 inch (25 mm). Edges shall have a minimum radius of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm).

1014.3.2 Type II.
Handrails with a circular cross section perimeter greater than 6-1/4 inches (160 mm) shall

`

provide a graspable finger recess area on both sides of the profile. The finger recess shall begin within a distance of 3/4 inch (19 mm) measured vertically from the tallest portion of the profile and achieve a depth of not less than 5/16 inch (8 mm) within 7/8 inch (22 mm) below the widest portion of the profile. This required depth shall continue for not less than 3/8 inch (10 mm) to a level that is not less than 1-3/4 inches (45 mm) below the tallest portion of the profile. The width of the *handrail* above the recess shall be not less than 11/4 inches (32 mm) to not greater than 2-3/4 inches (70 mm). Edges shall have a minimum radius of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm).

1014.4 Continuity.
Handrail gripping surfaces shall be continuous, without interruption by newel posts or other obstructions.

Exceptions:

1. *Handrails* within *dwelling units* are permitted to be interrupted by a newel post at a turn or landing.

2. Within a *dwelling unit*, the use of a volute, turnout, starting easing or starting newel is allowed over the lowest tread.

3. Handrail brackets or balusters attached to the bottom surface of the *handrail* that do not project horizontally beyond the sides of the *handrail* within 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) of the bottom of the *handrail* shall not be considered obstructions. For each 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) of additional handrail perimeter dimension above 4 inches (102 mm), the vertical clearance dimension of 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) shall be permitted to be reduced by 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).

4. Where *handrails* are provided along walking surfaces with slopes not steeper than 1:20, the bottoms of the handrail gripping surfaces shall be permitted to be obstructed along their entire length where they are integral to crash rails or bumper guards.

5. *Handrails* serving stepped *aisles* or ramped *aisles* are permitted to be discontinuous in accordance with Section 1029.15.1.

1014.5 Fittings.
Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.

1014.6 Handrail extensions.
Handrails shall return to a wall, *guard* or the walking surface or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent *flight* of *stairs* or *ramp* run. Where *handrails* are not continuous between *flights*, the *handrails* shall extend horizontally not less than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the top riser and continue to slope for the depth of one tread beyond the bottom riser. At *ramps* where *handrails* are not continuous between runs, the *handrails* shall extend horizontally above the landing 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the top and bottom of *ramp* runs. The extensions of *handrails* shall be in the same direction of the *flights* of *stairs* at *stairways* and the *ramp* runs at *ramps*.

Exceptions:

1. *Handrails* within a *dwelling unit* that is not required to be *accessible* need extend only from the top riser to the bottom riser.

`

2. *Handrails* serving aisles in rooms or spaces used for assembly purposes are permitted to comply with the handrail extensions in accordance with Section 1029.15.

3. *Handrails* for *alternating tread devices* and ships ladders are permitted to terminate at a location vertically above the top and bottom risers. *Handrails* for *alternating tread devices* are not required to be continuous between *flights* or to extend beyond the top or bottom risers.

1014.7 Clearance.

Clear space between a handrail and a wall or other surface shall be not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm). A handrail and a wall or other surface adjacent to the *handrail* shall be free of any sharp or abrasive elements.

1014.8 Projections.

On *ramps* and on ramped *aisles* that are part of an *accessible route*, the clear width between *handrails* shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum. Projections into the required width of *aisles*, *stairways* and *ramps* at each side shall not exceed $4^1/_2$ inches (114 mm) at or below the handrail height. Projections into the required width shall not be limited above the minimum headroom height required in Section 1011.3. Projections due to intermediate *handrails* shall not constitute a reduction in the egress width. Where a pair of intermediate *handrails* are provided within the *stairway* width without a walking surface between the pair of intermediate *handrails* and the distance between the pair of intermediate *handrails* is greater than 6 inches (152 mm), the available egress width shall be reduced by the distance between the closest edges of each such intermediate pair of *handrails* that is greater than 6 inches (152 mm).

1014.9 Intermediate handrails.

Stairways shall have intermediate *handrails* located in such a manner that all portions of the *stairway* minimum width or required capacity are within 30 inches (762 mm) of a handrail. On monumental *stairs*, *handrails* shall be located along the most direct path of egress travel.

SECTION 1015
GUARDS

1015.1 General.

Guards shall comply with the provisions of Sections 1015.2 through 1015.7. Operable windows with sills located more than 72 inches (1829 mm) above finished grade or other surface below shall comply with Section 1015.8.

1015.2 Where required.

Guards shall be located along open-sided walking surfaces, including *mezzanines*, *equipment platforms*, *aisles*, *stairs*, *ramps* and landings that are located more than 30 inches (762 mm) measured vertically to the floor or grade below at any point within 36 inches (914 mm) horizontally to the edge of the open side. *Guards* shall be adequate in strength and attachment in accordance with Section 1607.8.

Exception: *Guards* are not required for the following locations:

1. On the loading side of loading docks or piers.

`

2. On the audience side of *stages* and raised *platforms*, including *stairs* leading up to the *stage* and raised *platforms*.

3. On raised *stage* and *platform* floor areas, such as runways, *ramps* and side *stages* used for entertainment or presentations.

4. At vertical openings in the performance area of *stages* and *platforms*.

5. At elevated walking surfaces appurtenant to *stages* and *platforms* for access to and utilization of special lighting or equipment.

6. Along vehicle service pits not accessible to the public.

7. In assembly seating areas at cross aisles in accordance with Section 1029.16.2.

1015.2.1 Glazing.
Where glass is used to provide a *guard* or as a portion of the *guard* system, the *guard* shall comply with Section 2407. Where the glazing provided does not meet the strength and attachment requirements of Section 1607.8, complying *guards* shall be located along glazed sides of open-sided walking surfaces.

1015.3 Height.
Required *guards* shall be not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) high, measured vertically as follows:

1. From the adjacent walking surfaces.

2. On *stairways* and stepped *aisles*, from the line connecting the leading edges of the tread *nosings*.

3. On *ramps* and ramped *aisles*, from the *ramp* surface at the *guard*.

   Exceptions:

   1. For occupancies in Group R-3 not more than three stories above grade in height and within individual *dwelling units* in occupancies in Group R-2 not more than three stories above grade in height with separate *means of egress*, required *guards* shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in height measured vertically above the adjacent walking surfaces or adjacent *fixed seating*.

   2. For occupancies in Group R-3, and within individual *dwelling units* in occupancies in Group R-2, *guards* on the open sides of *stairs* shall have a height not less than 34 inches (864 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the leading edges of the treads.

   3. For occupancies in Group R-3, and within individual *dwelling units* in occupancies in Group R-2, where the top of the *guard* also serves as a *handrail* on the open sides of *stairs*, the top of the *guard* shall be not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the leading edges of the treads.

`

4. The *guard* height in assembly seating areas shall comply with Section 1029.16 as applicable.

5. Along *alternating tread devices* and ships ladders, *guards* where the top rail also serves as a *handrail* shall have height not less than 30 inches (762 mm) and not more than 34 inches (864 mm), measured vertically from the leading edge of the device tread *nosing*.

1015.4 Opening limitations.
Required *guards* shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter from the walking surface to the required *guard* height.

Exceptions:

1. From a height of 36 inches (914 mm) to 42 inches (1067 mm), *guards* shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 4-3/8 inches (111 mm) in diameter.

2. The triangular openings at the open sides of a *stair*, formed by the riser, tread and bottom rail shall not allow passage of a sphere 6 inches (152 mm) in diameter.

3. At elevated walking surfaces for access to and use of electrical, mechanical or plumbing systems or equipment, *guards* shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.

4. In areas that are not open to the public within occupancies in Group I-3, F, H or S, and for *alternating tread devices* and ships ladders, *guards* shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.

5. In assembly seating areas, *guards* required at the end of aisles in accordance with Section 1029.16.4 shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter up to a height of 26 inches (660 mm). From a height of 26 inches (660 mm) to 42 inches (1067 mm) above the adjacent walking surfaces, *guards* shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 8 inches (203 mm) in diameter.

6. Within individual *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* in Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies, *guards* on the open sides of *stairs* shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 4-3/8 (111 mm) inches in diameter.

1015.5 Screen porches.
Porches and decks that are enclosed with insect screening shall be provided with *guards* where the walking surface is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below.

1015.6 Mechanical equipment, systems and devices.
Guards shall be provided where various components that require service are located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of a roof edge or open side of a walking surface and such edge or open side is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor, roof or grade below. The *guard* shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) beyond each end of such components. The *guard* shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.

Exception: *Guards* are not required where permanent fall arrest/restraint anchorage connector devices that comply with ANSI/ASSE Z 359.1 are affixed for use during the entire roof covering lifetime. The devices shall be re-evaluated for possible replacement when the

`

entire roof covering is replaced. The devices shall be placed not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) on center along hip and ridge lines and placed not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the roof edge or open side of the walking surface.

1015.7 Roof access.
Guards shall be provided where the roof hatch opening is located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of a roof edge or open side of a walking surface and such edge or open side is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor, roof or grade below. The *guard* shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.

Exception: *Guards* are not required where permanent fall arrest/restraint anchorage connector devices that comply with ANSI/ASSE Z 359.1 are affixed for use during the entire roof covering lifetime. The devices shall be re-evaluated for possible replacement when the entire roof covering is replaced. The devices shall be placed not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) on center along hip and ridge lines and placed not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the roof edge or open side of the walking surface.

1015.8 Window openings.
Windows in Group R-2 and R-3 buildings including *dwelling units*, where the top of the sill of an operable window opening is located less than 36 inches above the finished floor and more than 72 inches (1829 mm) above the finished grade or other surface below on the exterior of the building, shall comply with one of the following:

1. Operable windows where the top of the sill of the opening is located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the finished grade or other surface below and that are provided with window fall prevention devices that comply with ASTM F2006.

2. Operable windows where the openings will not allow a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere to pass through the opening when the window is in its largest opened position.

3. Operable windows where the openings are provided with window fall prevention devices that comply with ASTM F2090.

4. Operable windows that are provided with window opening control devices that comply with Section 1015.8.1.

1015.8.1 Window opening control devices.
Window opening control devices shall comply with ASTM F2090. The window opening control device, after operation to release the control device allowing the window to fully open, shall not reduce the minimum net clear opening area of the window unit to less than the area required by Section 1030.2.

SECTION 1016
EXIT ACCESS

1016.1 General.
The *exit access* shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 1003 through 1015. *Exit access* arrangement shall comply with Sections 1016 through 1021.

1016.2 Egress through intervening spaces.
Egress through intervening spaces shall comply with this section.

`

1. *Exit access* through an enclosed elevator lobby is permitted. Access to not less than one of the required *exits* shall be provided without travel through the enclosed elevator lobbies required by Section 3006. Where the path of exit access travel passes through an enclosed elevator lobby, the level of protection required for the enclosed elevator lobby is not required to be extended to the *exit* unless direct access to an *exit* is required by other sections of this code.

2. Egress from a room or space shall not pass through adjoining or intervening rooms or areas, except where such adjoining rooms or areas and the area served are accessory to one or the other, are not a Group H occupancy and provide a discernible path of egress travel to an *exit*.

   Exception: *Means of egress* are not prohibited through adjoining or intervening rooms or spaces in a Group H, S or F occupancy where the adjoining or intervening rooms or spaces are the same or a lesser hazard occupancy group.

3. An *exit access* shall not pass through a room that can be locked to prevent egress.

4. *Means of egress* from *dwelling units* or sleeping areas shall not lead through other sleeping areas, toilet rooms or bathrooms.

5. Egress shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms, closets or spaces used for similar purposes.

   Exceptions:

   1. *Means of egress* are not prohibited through a kitchen area serving adjoining rooms constituting part of the same *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit.*

   2. *Means of egress* are not prohibited through stockrooms in Group M occupancies where all of the following are met:

      2.1. The stock is of the same hazard classification as that found in the main retail area.

      2.2. Not more than 50 percent of the *exit access* is through the stockroom.

      2.3. The stockroom is not subject to locking from the egress side.

      2.4. There is a demarcated, minimum 44-inch-wide (1118 mm) *aisle* defined by full- or partial-height fixed walls or similar construction that will maintain the required width and lead directly from the retail area to the *exit* without obstructions.

1016.2.1 Multiple tenants.
Where more than one tenant occupies any one floor of a building or structure, each tenant space, *dwelling unit* and *sleeping unit* shall be provided with access to the required *exits* without passing through adjacent tenant spaces, *dwelling units* and *sleeping units*.

Exception: The *means of egress* from a smaller tenant space shall not be prohibited from passing through a larger adjoining tenant space where such rooms or spaces of the smaller tenant occupy less than 10 percent of the area of the larger tenant space

through which they pass; are the same or similar occupancy group; a discernible path of egress travel to an *exit* is provided; and the *means of egress* into the adjoining space is not subject to locking from the egress side. A required *means of egress* serving the larger tenant space shall not pass through the smaller tenant space or spaces.

SECTION 1017
EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE

1017.1 General.
Travel distance within the *exit access* portion of the *means of egress* system shall be in accordance with this section.

1017.2 Limitations.
Exit access travel distance shall not exceed the values given in Table 1017.2.

TABLE 1017.2
EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE[a]

OCCUPANCY	WITHOUT SPRINKLER SYSTEM (feet)	WITH SPRINKLER SYSTEM (feet)
A, E, F-1, M, R, S-1	200	250[b]
I-1	Not Permitted	250[b]
B	200	300[c]
F-2, S-2, U	300	400[c]
H-1	Not Permitted	75[d]
H-2	Not Permitted	100[d]
H-3	Not Permitted	150[d]
H-4	Not Permitted	175[d]
H-5	Not Permitted	200[c]
I-2, I-3, I-4	Not Permitted	200[c]

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. See the following sections for modifications to *exit access* travel distance requirements:
   Section 402.8: For the distance limitation in malls.
   Section 404.9: For the distance limitation through an atrium space.
   Section 407.4: For the distance limitation in Group I-2.
   Sections 408.6.1 and 408.8.1: For the distance limitations in Group I-3.
   Section 411.4: For the distance limitation in special amusement buildings.
   Section 412.7: For the distance limitations in aircraft manufacturing facilities.
   Section 1006.2.2.2: For the distance limitation in refrigeration machinery rooms.
   Section 1006.2.2.3: For the distance limitation in refrigerated rooms and spaces.
   Section 1006.3.2: For buildings with one exit.
   Section 1017.2.2: For increased distance limitation in Groups F-1 and S-1.
   Section 1029.7: For increased limitation in assembly seating.
   Section 3103.4: For temporary structures. Section 3104.9: For pedestrian walkways.

b. Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. See Section 903 for occupancies where *automatic sprinkler systems* are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.

`

c. Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
d. Group H occupancies equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.2.5.1.

1017.2.1 Exterior egress balcony increase.
Exit access travel distances specified in Table 1017.2 shall be increased up to an additional 100 feet (30 480 mm) provided the last portion of the *exit access* leading to the *exit* occurs on an exterior egress balcony constructed in accordance with Section 1021. The length of such balcony shall be not less than the amount of the increase taken.

1017.2.2 Group F-1 and S-1 increase.
The maximum *exit access* travel distance shall be 400 feet (122 m) in Group F-1 or S-1 occupancies where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The portion of the building classified as Group F-1 or S-1 is limited to one story in height.

2. The minimum height from the finished floor to the bottom of the ceiling or roof slab or deck is 24 feet (7315 mm).

3. The building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

1017.3 Measurement.
Exit access travel distance shall be measured from the most remote point within a story along the natural and unobstructed path of horizontal and vertical egress travel to the entrance to an *exit*.

Exception: In *open parking garages*, *exit access* travel distance is permitted to be measured to the closest riser of an *exit access stairway* or the closest slope of an *exit access ramp*.

1017.3.1 Exit access stairways and ramps.
Travel distance on *exit access stairways* or *ramps* shall be included in the *exit access* travel distance measurement. The measurement along *stairways* shall be made on a plane parallel and tangent to the *stair* tread *nosings* in the center of the *stair* and landings. The measurement along *ramps* shall be made on the walking surface in the center of the *ramp* and landings.

SECTION 1018
AISLES

1018.1 General.
Aisles and *aisle accessways* serving as a portion of the *exit access* in the *means of egress* system shall comply with the requirements of this section. *Aisles* or *aisle accessways* shall be provided from all occupied portions of the *exit access* that contain seats, tables, furnishings, displays and similar fixtures or equipment. The minimum width or required capacity of *aisles* shall be unobstructed.

Exception: Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.

`

1018.2 Aisles in assembly spaces.
Aisles and aisle accessways serving a room or space used for assembly purposes shall comply with Section 1029.

1018.3 Aisles in Groups B and M.
In Group B and M occupancies, the minimum clear aisle width shall be determined by Section 1005.1 for the *occupant load* served, but shall be not less than that required for corridors by Section 1020.2.

> **Exception:** Non-public *aisles* serving less than 50 people and not required to be *accessible* by Chapter 11 need not exceed 28 inches (711 mm) in width.

1018.4 Aisle accessways in Group M.
An *aisle accessway* shall be provided on not less than one side of each element within the *merchandise pad*. The minimum clear width for an *aisle accessway* not required to be *accessible* shall be 30 inches (762 mm). The required clear width of the *aisle accessway* shall be measured perpendicular to the elements and merchandise within the *merchandise pad*. The 30-inch (762 mm) minimum clear width shall be maintained to provide a path to an adjacent *aisle* or *aisle accessway*. The *common path of egress travel* shall not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm) from any point in the *merchandise pad*.

> **Exception:** For areas serving not more than 50 occupants, the *common path of egress travel* shall not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm).

1018.5 Aisles in other than assembly spaces and Groups B and M.
In other than rooms or spaces used for assembly purposes and Group B and M occupancies, the minimum clear *aisle* capacity shall be determined by Section 1005.1 for the occupant load served, but the width shall be not less than that required for corridors by Section 1020.2.

> **Exception:** Non-public *aisles* serving less than 50 people and not required to be *accessible* by Chapter 11 need not exceed 28 inches (711 mm) in width.

SECTION 1019
EXIT ACCESS STAIRWAYS AND RAMPS

1019.1 General.
Exit access stairways and *ramps* serving as an *exit access* component in a *means of egress* system shall comply with the requirements of this section. The number of stories connected by *exit access stairways* and *ramps* shall include *basements*, but not *mezzanines*.

1019.2 All occupancies.
Exit access stairways and *ramps* that serve floor levels within a single story are not required to be enclosed.

1019.3 Occupancies other than Groups I-2 and I-3.
In other than Group I-2 and I-3 occupancies, floor openings containing *exit access stairways* or *ramps* that do not comply with one of the conditions listed in this section shall be enclosed with a shaft enclosure constructed in accordance with Section 713.

1. *Exit access stairways* and *ramps* that serve or atmospherically communicate between only two stories. Such interconnected stories shall not be open to other stories.

`

2. In Group R-1, R-2 or R-3 occupancies, *exit access stairways* and *ramps* connecting four stories or less serving and contained within an individual *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* or *live/work unit.*

3. *Exit access stairways* serving and contained within a Group R-3 congregate residence or a Group R-4 facility are not required to be enclosed.

4. *Exit access stairways* and *ramps* in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, where the area of the vertical opening between stories does not exceed twice the horizontal projected area of the *stairway* or *ramp* and the opening is protected by a draft curtain and closely spaced sprinklers in accordance with NFPA 13. In other than Group B and M occupancies, this provision is limited to openings that do not connect more than four stories.

5. *Exit access stairways* and *ramps* within an *atrium* complying with the provisions of Section 404.

6. *Exit access stairways* and *ramps* in *open parking garages* that serve only the parking garage.

7. *Exit access stairways* and *ramps* serving open-air seating complying with the *exit access* travel distance requirements of Section 1029.7.

8. *Exit access stairways* and *ramps* serving the balcony, gallery or press box and the main assembly floor in occupancies such as theaters, *places of religious worship*, auditoriums and sports facilities.

1019.4 Group I-2 and I-3 occupancies.
In Group I-2 and I-3 occupancies, floor openings between stories containing *exit access stairways* or *ramps* are required to be enclosed with a shaft enclosure constructed in accordance with Section 713.

Exception: In Group I-3 occupancies, *exit access stairways* or *ramps* constructed in accordance with Section 408 are not required to be enclosed.

SECTION 1020
CORRIDORS

1020.1 Construction.
Corridors shall be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Table 1020.1. The *corridor* walls required to be fire-resistance rated shall comply with Section 708 for *fire partitions*.

Exceptions:

1. A *fire-resistance rating* is not required for *corridors* in an occupancy in Group E where each room that is used for instruction has not less than one door opening directly to the exterior and rooms for assembly purposes have not less than one-half of the required *means of egress* doors opening directly to the exterior. Exterior doors specified in this exception are required to be at ground level.

`

2. A *fire-resistance rating* is not required for *corridors* contained within a *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* in an occupancy in Groups I-1 and R.

3. A *fire-resistance rating* is not required for *corridors* in *open parking garages*.

4. A *fire-resistance rating* is not required for *corridors* in an occupancy in Group B that is a space requiring only a single *means of egress* complying with Section 1006.2.

5. *Corridors* adjacent to the *exterior walls* of buildings shall be permitted to have unprotected openings on unrated *exterior walls* where unrated walls are permitted by Table 602 and unprotected openings are permitted by Table 705.8.

TABLE 1020.1
CORRIDOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING

OCCUPANCY	OCCUPANT LOAD SERVED BY CORRIDOR	REQUIRED FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)	
		Without sprinkler system	With sprinkler system[c]
H-1, H-2, H-3	All	Not Permitted	1
H-4, H-5	Greater than 30	Not Permitted	1
A, B, E, F, M, S, U	Greater than 30	1	0
R	Greater than 10	Not Permitted	0.5
I-2[a], I-4	All	Not Permitted	0
I-1, I-3	All	Not Permitted	1[b]

a. For requirements for occupancies in Group I-2, see Sections 407.2 and 407.3.
b. For a reduction in the *fire-resistance rating* for occupancies in Group I-3, see Section 408.8.
c. Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 where allowed.

1020.2 Width and capacity.
The required capacity of *corridors* shall be determined as specified in Section 1005.1, but the minimum width shall be not less than that specified in Table 1020.2.

Exception: In Group I-2 occupancies, *corridors* are not required to have a clear width of 96 inches (2438 mm) in areas where there will not be stretcher or bed movement for access to care or as part of the defend-in-place strategy.

TABLE 1020.2
MINIMUM CORRIDOR WIDTH

OCCUPANCY	MINIMUM WIDTH (inches)
Any facilities not listed below	44
Access to and utilization of mechanical, plumbing or electrical systems or equipment	24

`

With an occupant load of less than 50	36
Within a *dwelling unit*	36
In Group E with a *corridor* having an occupant load of 100 or more	72
In *corridors* and areas serving stretcher traffic in occupancies where patients receive outpatient medical care that causes the patient to be incapable of self-preservation	72
Group I-2 in areas where required for bed movement	96

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1020.3 Obstruction.
The minimum width or required capacity of *corridors* shall be unobstructed.

Exception: Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.

1020.4 Dead ends.
Where more than one *exit* or *exit access doorway* is required, the *exit access* shall be arranged such that there are no dead ends in *corridors* more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length.

Exceptions:

1. In occupancies in Group I-3 of Condition 2, 3 or 4, the dead end in a *corridor* shall not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).

2. In occupancies in Groups B, E, F, I-1, M, R-1, R-2, R-4, S and U, where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the length of the dead-end *corridors* shall not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).

3. A dead-end *corridor* shall not be limited in length where the length of the dead-end *corridor* is less than 2.5 times the least width of the dead-end *corridor*.

1020.5 Air movement in corridors.
Corridors shall not serve as supply, return, exhaust, relief or ventilation air ducts.

Exceptions:

1. Use of a *corridor* as a source of makeup air for exhaust systems in rooms that open directly onto such *corridors*, including toilet rooms, bathrooms, dressing rooms, smoking lounges and janitor closets, shall be permitted, provided that each such *corridor* is directly supplied with outdoor air at a rate greater than the rate of makeup air taken from the *corridor*.

2. Where located within a *dwelling unit*, the use of *corridors* for conveying return air shall not be prohibited.

`

3. Where located within tenant spaces of 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) or less in area, utilization of *corridors* for conveying return air is permitted.

4. Incidental air movement from pressurized rooms within health care facilities, provided that the *corridor* is not the primary source of supply or return to the room.

5. Where such air is part of an engineered smoke control system.

6. Air supplied to corridors serving residential occupancies shall not be considered as providing ventilation air to the dwelling units and sleeping units subject to the following:

   6.1 The air supplied to the corridor is one hundred percent outside air; and
   6.2 The units served by the corridor have conforming ventilation independent of the air supplied to the corridor; and
   6.3 For other than high-rise buildings, the supply fan will automatically shut off upon activation of corridor smoke detectors which shall be spaced at no more than thirty feet (9,144 mm) on center along the corridor; or
   6.4 For high-rise buildings, corridor smoke detector activation will close required smoke/fire dampers at the supply inlet to the corridor at the floor receiving the alarm.

1020.5.1 Corridor ceiling.
Use of the space between the *corridor* ceiling and the floor or roof structure above as a return air plenum is permitted for one or more of the following conditions:

1. The *corridor* is not required to be of *fire-resistance rated* construction.

2. The *corridor* is separated from the plenum by *fire-resistance-rated* construction.

3. The air-handling system serving the *corridor* is shut down upon activation of the air-handling unit *smoke detectors* required by the *International Mechanical Code*.

4. The air-handling system serving the *corridor* is shut down upon detection of sprinkler water flow where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system*.

5. The space between the *corridor* ceiling and the floor or roof structure above the *corridor* is used as a component of an approved engineered smoke control system.

1020.6 Corridor continuity.
Fire-resistance-rated corridors shall be continuous from the point of entry to an *exit*, and shall not be interrupted by intervening rooms. Where the path of egress travel within a *fire-resistance-rated corridor* to the exit includes travel along unenclosed *exit access stairways* or *ramps*, the *fire-resistance rating* shall be continuous for the length of the *stairway* or *ramp* and for the length of the connecting *corridor* on the adjacent floor leading to the *exit*.

Exceptions:

1. Foyers, lobbies or reception rooms constructed as required for *corridors* shall not be construed as intervening rooms.

`

2. Enclosed elevator lobbies as permitted by Item 1 of Section 1016.2 shall not be construed as intervening rooms.

SECTION 1021
EGRESS BALCONIES

1021.1 General.
Balconies used for egress purposes shall conform to the same requirements as *corridors* for minimum width, required capacity, headroom, dead ends and projections.

1021.2 Wall separation.
Exterior egress balconies shall be separated from the interior of the building by walls and opening protectives as required for *corridors*.

Exception: Separation is not required where the exterior egress balcony is served by not less than two *stairways* and a dead-end travel condition does not require travel past an unprotected opening to reach a *stairway*.

1021.3 Openness.
The long side of an egress balcony shall be at least 50 percent open, and the open area above the *guards* shall be so distributed as to minimize the accumulation of smoke or toxic gases.

1021.4 Location.
Exterior egress balconies shall have a minimum *fire separation distance* of 10 feet (3048 mm) measured at right angles from the exterior edge of the egress balcony to the following:

1. Adjacent *lot lines*.

2. Other portions of the building.

3. Other buildings on the same lot unless the adjacent building *exterior walls* and openings are protected in accordance with Section 705 based on *fire separation distance*.

For the purposes of this section, other portions of the building shall be treated as separate buildings.

SECTION 1022
EXITS

1022.1 General.
Exits shall comply with Sections 1022 through 1027 and the applicable requirements of Sections 1003 through 1015. An *exit* shall not be used for any purpose that interferes with its function as a *means of egress*. Once a given level of *exit* protection is achieved, such level of protection shall not be reduced until arrival at the *exit discharge*. *Exits* shall be continuous from the point of entry into the *exit* to the *exit discharge*.

1022.2 Exterior exit doors.
Buildings or structures used for human occupancy shall have not less than one exterior door that meets the requirements of Section 1010.1.1.

1022.2.1 Detailed requirements.
Exterior *exit* doors shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1010.1.

`

1022.2.2 Arrangement.
Exterior *exit* doors shall lead directly to the *exit discharge* or the *public way*.

SECTION 1023
INTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAYS AND RAMPS

1023.1 General.
Interior exit stairways and *ramps* serving as an *exit* component in a *means of egress* system shall comply with the requirements of this section. *Interior exit stairways* and *ramps* shall be enclosed and lead directly to the exterior of the building or shall be extended to the exterior of the building with an *exit passageway* conforming to the requirements of Section 1024, except as permitted in Section 1028.1. An *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* shall not be used for any purpose other than as a *means of egress* and a circulation path.

1023.2 Construction.
Enclosures for *interior exit stairways* and *ramps* shall be constructed as *fire barriers* in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. *Interior exit stairway* and *ramp* enclosures shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 2 hours where connecting four stories or more and not less than 1 hour where connecting less than four stories. The number of stories connected by the *interior exit stairways* or *ramps* shall include any *basements*, but not any *mezzanines*. *Interior exit stairways* and *ramps* shall have a *fire-resistance rating* not less than the floor assembly penetrated, but need not exceed 2 hours.

Exceptions:

1. *Interior exit stairways* and *ramps* in Group I-3 occupancies in accordance with the provisions of Section 408.3.8.

2. *Interior exit stairways* within an *atrium* enclosed in accordance with Section 404.6.

1023.3 Termination.
Interior exit stairways and *ramps* shall terminate at an *exit discharge* or a *public way*.

Exception: A combination of *interior exit stairways*, *interior exit ramps* and *exit passageways*, constructed in accordance with Sections 1023.2, 1023.3.1 and 1024, respectively, and forming a continuous protected enclosure, shall be permitted to extend an *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* to the *exit discharge* or a *public way*.

1023.3.1 Extension.
Where *interior exit stairways* and *ramps* are extended to an *exit discharge* or a *public way* by an *exit passageway*, the *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* shall be separated from the *exit passageway* by a *fire barrier* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or a *horizontal assembly* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The *fire-resistance rating* shall be not less than that required for the *interior exit stairway* and *ramp*. A *fire door* assembly complying with Section 716.5 shall be installed in the *fire barrier* to provide a *means of egress* from the *interior exit stairwa*y and *ramp* to the *exit passageway*. Openings in the *fire barrier* other than the *fire door* assembly are prohibited. Penetrations of the *fire barrier* are prohibited.

Exceptions:

`

1. Penetrations of the *fire barrier* in accordance with Section 1023.5 shall be permitted.

2. Separation between an *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* and the *exit passageway* extension shall not be required where there are no openings into the *exit passageway* extension.

1023.4 Openings.
Interior exit stairway and *ramp* opening protectives shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section 716.

Openings in *interior exit stairways* and *ramps* other than unprotected exterior openings shall be limited to those necessary for *exit access* to the enclosure from normally occupied spaces and for egress from the enclosure.

Elevators shall not open into *interior exit stairways* and *ramps*.

1023.5 Penetrations.
Penetrations into or through *interior exit stairways* and *ramps* are prohibited except for equipment and ductwork necessary for independent ventilation or pressurization, sprinkler piping, standpipes, electrical raceway for fire department communication systems and electrical raceway serving the *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* and terminating at a steel box not exceeding 16 square inches (0.010 m^2). Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714. There shall not be penetrations or communication openings, whether protected or not, between adjacent *interior exit stairways* and *ramps*.

Exception: Membrane penetrations shall be permitted on the outside of the *interior exit stairway* and *ramp*. Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714.3.2.

1023.6 Ventilation.
Equipment and ductwork for *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* ventilation as permitted by Section 1023.5 shall comply with one of the following items:

1. Such equipment and ductwork shall be located exterior to the building and shall be directly connected to the *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* by ductwork enclosed in construction as required for shafts.

2. Where such equipment and ductwork is located within the *interior exit stairway* and *ramp*, the intake air shall be taken directly from the outdoors and the exhaust air shall be discharged directly to the outdoors, or such air shall be conveyed through ducts enclosed in construction as required for shafts.

3. Where located within the building, such equipment and ductwork shall be separated from the remainder of the building, including other mechanical equipment, with construction as required for shafts.

In each case, openings into the *fire-resistance-rated* construction shall be limited to those needed for maintenance and operation and shall be protected by opening protectives in accordance with Section 716 for shaft enclosures.

`

The *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* ventilation systems shall be independent of other building ventilation systems.

1023.7 Interior exit stairway and ramp exterior walls.
Exterior walls of the *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* shall comply with the requirements of Section 705 for *exterior walls*. Where nonrated walls or unprotected openings enclose the exterior of the *stairway* or *ramps* and the walls or openings are exposed by other parts of the building at an angle of less than 180 degrees (3.14 rad), the building *exterior walls* within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of a nonrated wall or unprotected opening shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 1 hour. Openings within such *exterior* walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a *fire protection rating* of not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ hour. This construction shall extend vertically from the ground to a point 10 feet (3048 mm) above the topmost landing of the *stairway* or *ramp,* or to the roof line, whichever is lower.

1023.8 Discharge identification.
An *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* shall not continue below its *level of exit discharge* unless an approved barrier is provided at the *level of exit discharge* to prevent persons from unintentionally continuing into levels below. Directional exit signs shall be provided as specified in Section 1013.

1023.9 Stairway identification signs.
A sign shall be provided at each floor landing in an *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* connecting more than three stories designating the floor level, the terminus of the top and bottom of the *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* and the identification of the stairway or ramp. The signage shall also state the story of, and the direction to, the *exit discharge* and the availability of roof access from the *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* for the fire department. The sign shall be located 5 feet (1524 mm) above the floor landing in a position that is readily visible when the doors are in the open and closed positions. In addition to the *stairway* identification sign, a floor-level sign in visual characters, raised characters and braille complying with *ICC A117.1* shall be located at each floor-level landing adjacent to the door leading from the *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* into the *corridor* to identify the floor level.

1023.9.1 Signage requirements.
Stairway identification signs shall comply with all of the following requirements:

1. The signs shall be a minimum size of 18 inches (457 mm) by 12 inches (305 mm).

2. The letters designating the identification of the *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* shall be not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in height.

3. The number designating the floor level shall be not less than 5 inches (127 mm) in height and located in the center of the sign.

4. Other lettering and numbers shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height.

5. Characters and their background shall have a nonglare finish. Characters shall contrast with their background, with either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.

6. Where signs required by Section 1023.9 are installed in the *interior exit stairways* and *ramps* of buildings subject to Section 1025, the signs shall be made of the same materials as required by Section 1025.4.

`

1023.10 Elevator lobby identification signs.
At landings in *interior exit stairways* where two or more doors lead to the floor level, any door with direct access to an enclosed elevator lobby shall be identified by signage located on the door or directly adjacent to the door stating “Elevator Lobby.” Signage shall be in accordance with Section 1023.9.1, Items 4, 5 and 6.

1023.11 Smokeproof enclosures.
Where required by Section 403.5.4 or 405.7.2, *interior exit stairways* and *ramps* shall be *smokeproof enclosures* in accordance with Section 909.20.

1023.11.1 Termination and extension.
A *smokeproof enclosure* shall terminate at an *exit discharge* or a *public way*. The *smokeproof enclosure* shall be permitted to be extended by an *exit passageway* in accordance with Section 1023.3. The *exit passageway* shall be without openings other than the *fire door assembly* required by Section 1023.3.1 and those necessary for egress from the *exit passageway*. The *exit passageway* shall be separated from the remainder of the building by 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

Exceptions:

1. Openings in the *exit passageway* serving a *smokeproof enclosure* are permitted where the *exit passageway* is protected and pressurized in the same manner as the *smokeproof enclosure*, and openings are protected as required for access from other floors.

2. The *fire barrier* separating the *smokeproof enclosure* from the *exit passageway* is not required, provided the *exit passageway* is protected and pressurized in the same manner as the *smokeproof enclosure*.

3. A *smokeproof enclosure* shall be permitted to egress through areas on the *level of exit discharge* or vestibules as permitted by Section 1028.

1023.11.2 Enclosure access.
Access to the *stairway* or *ramp* within a *smokeproof enclosure* shall be by way of a vestibule or an open exterior balcony.

Exception: Access is not required by way of a vestibule or exterior balcony for *stairways* and *ramps* using the pressurization alternative complying with Section 909.20.5.

SECTION 1024
EXIT PASSAGEWAYS

1024.1 Exit passageways.
Exit passageways serving as an exit component in a *means of egress* system shall comply with the requirements of this section. An *exit passageway* shall not be used for any purpose other than as a *means of egress* and a *circulation path*.

1024.2 Width.
The required capacity of *exit passageways* shall be determined as specified in Section 1005.1 but the minimum width shall be not less than 44 inches (1118 mm), except that *exit passageways* serving an occupant load of less than 50 shall be not less than 36 inches (914

`

mm) in width. The minimum width or required capacity of *exit passageways* shall be unobstructed.

Exception: Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.

1024.3 Construction.
Exit passageway enclosures shall have walls, floors and ceilings of not less than a 1-hour *fire-resistance rating*, and not less than that required for any connecting *interior exit stairway* or *ramp*. *Exit passageways* shall be constructed as *fire barriers* in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

1024.4 Termination.
Exit passageways on the *level of exit discharge* shall terminate at an *exit discharge*. *Exit passageways* on other levels shall terminate at an *exit*.

1024.5 Openings.
Exit passageway opening protectives shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section 716.

Except as permitted in Section 402.8.7, openings in *exit passageways* other than unprotected exterior openings shall be limited to those necessary for *exit access* to the *exit passageway* from normally occupied spaces and for egress from the *exit passageway*.

Where an *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* is extended to an *exit discharge* or a *public way* by an *exit passageway*, the *exit passageway* shall comply with Section 1023.3.1.

Elevators shall not open into an *exit passageway*.

1024.6 Penetrations.
Penetrations into or through an *exit passageway* are prohibited except for equipment and ductwork necessary for independent pressurization, sprinkler piping, standpipes, electrical raceway for fire department communication and electrical raceway serving the *exit passageway* and terminating at a steel box not exceeding 16 square inches (0.010 m^2). Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714. There shall not be penetrations or communicating openings, whether protected or not, between adjacent *exit passageways*.

Exception: Membrane penetrations shall be permitted on the outside of the *exit passageway*. Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714.3.2.

1024.7 Ventilation.
Equipment and ductwork for *exit passageway* ventilation as permitted by Section 1024.6 shall comply with one of the following:

1. The equipment and ductwork shall be located exterior to the building and shall be directly connected to the *exit passageway* by ductwork enclosed in construction as required for shafts.

2. Where the equipment and ductwork is located within the *exit passageway*, the intake air shall be taken directly from the outdoors and the exhaust air shall be discharged directly to the outdoors, or the air shall be conveyed through ducts enclosed in construction as required for shafts.

`

3. Where located within the building, the equipment and ductwork shall be separated from the remainder of the building, including other mechanical equipment, with construction as required for shafts.

In each case, openings into the fire-resistance-rated construction shall be limited to those needed for maintenance and operation and shall be protected by opening protectives in accordance with Section 716 for shaft enclosures.

Exit passageway ventilation systems shall be independent of other building ventilation systems.

SECTION 1025
LUMINOUS EGRESS PATH MARKINGS

1025.1 General.
Approved luminous egress path markings delineating the exit path shall be provided in *high-rise buildings* of Group A, B, E, I, M, and R-1 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1025.1 through 1025.5.

Exception: Luminous egress path markings shall not be required on the *level of exit discharge* in lobbies that serve as part of the exit path in accordance with Section 1028.1, Exception 1.

1025.2 Markings within exit components.
Egress path markings shall be provided in *interior exit stairways*, *interior exit ramps* and *exit passageways*, in accordance with Sections 1025.2.1 through 1025.2.6.

1025.2.1 Steps.
A solid and continuous stripe shall be applied to the horizontal leading edge of each step and shall extend for the full length of the step. Outlining stripes shall have a minimum horizontal width of 1 inch (25 mm) and a maximum width of 2 inches (51 mm). The leading edge of the stripe shall be placed not more than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) from the leading edge of the step and the stripe shall not overlap the leading edge of the step by not more than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) down the vertical face of the step.

Exception: The minimum width of 1 inch (25 mm) shall not apply to outlining stripes listed in accordance with UL 1994.

1025.2.2 Landings.
The leading edge of landings shall be marked with a stripe consistent with the dimensional requirements for steps.

1025.2.3 Handrails.
Handrails and handrail extensions shall be marked with a solid and continuous stripe having a minimum width of 1 inch (25 mm). The stripe shall be placed on the top surface of the *handrail* for the entire length of the *handrail*, including extensions and newel post caps. Where *handrails* or handrail extensions bend or turn corners, the stripe shall not have a gap of more than 4 inches (102 mm).

Exception: The minimum width of 1 inch (25 mm) shall not apply to outlining stripes listed in accordance with UL 1994.

`

1025.2.4 Perimeter demarcation lines.
Stair landings and other floor areas within *interior exit stairways*, *interior exit ramps* and *exit passageways*, with the exception of the sides of steps, shall be provided with solid and continuous demarcation lines on the floor or on the walls or a combination of both. The stripes shall be 1 to 2 inches (25 mm to 51 mm) wide with interruptions not exceeding 4 inches (102 mm).

Exception: The minimum width of 1 inch (25 mm) shall not apply to outlining stripes listed in accordance with UL 1994.

1025.2.4.1 Floor-mounted demarcation lines.
Perimeter demarcation lines shall be placed within 4 inches (102 mm) of the wall and shall extend to within 2 inches (51 mm) of the markings on the leading edge of landings. The demarcation lines shall continue across the floor in front of all doors.

Exception: Demarcation lines shall not extend in front of *exit discharge* doors that lead out of an *exit* and through which occupants must travel to complete the exit path.

1025.2.4.2 Wall-mounted demarcation lines.
Perimeter demarcation lines shall be placed on the wall with the bottom edge of the stripe not more than 4 inches (102 mm) above the finished floor. At the top or bottom of the *stairs*, demarcation lines shall drop vertically to the floor within 2 inches (51 mm) of the step or landing edge. Demarcation lines on walls shall transition vertically to the floor and then extend across the floor where a line on the floor is the only practical method of outlining the path. Where the wall line is broken by a door, demarcation lines on walls shall continue across the face of the door or transition to the floor and extend across the floor in front of such door.

Exception: Demarcation lines shall not extend in front of *exit discharge* doors that lead out of an *exit* and through which occupants must travel to complete the exit path.

1025.2.4.3 Transition.
Where a wall-mounted demarcation line transitions to a floor-mounted demarcation line, or vice versa, the wall-mounted demarcation line shall drop vertically to the floor to meet a complimentary extension of the floor-mounted demarcation line, thus forming a continuous marking.

1025.2.5 Obstacles.
Obstacles at or below 6 feet 6 inches (1981 mm) in height and projecting more than 4 inches (102 mm) into the egress path shall be outlined with markings not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in width comprised of a pattern of alternating equal bands, of luminous material and black, with the alternating bands not more than 2 inches (51 mm) thick and angled at 45 degrees (0.79 rad). Obstacles shall include, but are not limited to, standpipes, hose cabinets, wall projections and restricted height areas. However, such markings shall not conceal any required information or indicators including but not limited to instructions to occupants for the use of standpipes.

1025.2.6 Doors within the exit path.
Doors through which occupants must pass in order to complete the exit path shall be provided with markings complying with Sections 1025.2.6.1 through 1025.2.6.3.

`

1025.2.6.1 Emergency exit symbol.
The doors shall be identified by a low-location luminous emergency exit symbol complying with NFPA 170. The exit symbol shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height and shall be mounted on the door, centered horizontally, with the top of the symbol not higher than 18 inches (457 mm) above the finished floor.

1025.2.6.2 Door hardware markings.
Door hardware shall be marked with not less than 16 square inches (406 mm^2) of luminous material. This marking shall be located behind, immediately adjacent to, or on the door handle or escutcheon. Where a panic bar is installed, such material shall not be less than 1 inch (25 mm) wide for the entire length of the actuating bar or touchpad.

1025.2.6.3 Door frame markings.
The top and sides of the door frame shall be marked with a solid and continuous 1-inch- to 2-inch-wide (25 mm to 51 mm) stripe. Where the door molding does not provide sufficient flat surface on which to locate the stripe, the stripe shall be permitted to be located on the wall surrounding the frame.

1025.3 Uniformity.
Placement and dimensions of markings shall be consistent and uniform throughout the same enclosure.

1025.4 Self-luminous and photoluminescent.
Luminous egress path markings shall be permitted to be made of any material, including paint, provided that an electrical charge is not required to maintain the required luminance. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, *self-luminous* materials and *photoluminescent* materials. Materials shall comply with either of the following standards:

1. UL 1994.

2. ASTM E2072, except that the charging source shall be 1 footcandle (11 lux) of fluorescent illumination for 60 minutes, and the minimum luminance shall be 30 milicandelas per square meter at 10 minutes and 5 milicandelas per square meter after 90 minutes.

1025.5 Illumination.
Where *photoluminescent* exit path markings are installed, they shall be provided with not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux) of illumination for not less than 60 minutes prior to periods when the building is occupied and continuously during occupancy.

SECTION 1026
HORIZONTAL EXITS

1026.1 Horizontal exits.
Horizontal exits serving as an *exit* in a *means of egress* system shall comply with the requirements of this section. A *horizontal exit* shall not serve as the only *exit* from a portion of a building, and where two or more *exits* are required, not more than one-half of the total number of *exits* or total *exit* minimum width or required capacity shall be *horizontal exits*.

Exceptions:

`

1. *Horizontal exits* are permitted to comprise two-thirds of the required *exits* from any building or floor area for occupancies in Group I-2.

2. *Horizontal exits* are permitted to comprise 100 percent of the *exits* required for occupancies in Group I-3. Not less than 6 square feet (0.6 m^2) of accessible space per occupant shall be provided on each side of the *horizontal exit* for the total number of people in adjoining compartments.

1026.2 Separation.
The separation between buildings or refuge areas connected by a *horizontal exit* shall be provided by a *fire wall* complying with Section 706; or by a *fire barrier* complying with Section 707 or a *horizontal assembly* complying with Section 711, or both. The minimum *fire-resistance rating* of the separation shall be 2 hours. Opening protectives in *horizontal exits* shall also comply with Section 716. Duct and air transfer openings in a *fire wall* or *fire barrier* that serves as a *horizontal exit* shall also comply with Section 717. The *horizontal exit* separation shall extend vertically through all levels of the building unless floor assemblies have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 2 hours with no unprotected openings.

Exception: A *fire-resistance rating* is not required at *horizontal exits* between a building area and an above-grade *pedestrian walkway* constructed in accordance with Section 3104, provided that the distance between connected buildings is more than 20 feet (6096 mm).

Horizontal exits constructed as *fire barriers* shall be continuous from *exterior wall* to *exterior wall* so as to divide completely the floor served by the *horizontal exit*.

1026.3 Opening protectives.
Fire doors in *horizontal exits* shall be self-closing or automatic-closing when activated by a *smoke detector* in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3. Doors, where located in a cross-corridor condition, shall be automatic-closing by activation of a *smoke detector* installed in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3.

1026.4 Refuge area.
The refuge area of a *horizontal exit* shall be a space occupied by the same tenant or a public area and each such refuge area shall be adequate to accommodate the original *occupant load* of the refuge area plus the *occupant load* anticipated from the adjoining compartment. The anticipated *occupant load* from the adjoining compartment shall be based on the capacity of the *horizontal exit doors* entering the refuge area.

1026.4.1 Capacity.
The capacity of the refuge area shall be computed based on a *net floor area* allowance of 3 square feet (0.2787 m^2) for each occupant to be accommodated therein.

Exceptions: The *net floor area* allowable per occupant shall be as follows for the indicated occupancies:

1. Six square feet (0.6 m^2) per occupant for occupancies in Group I-3.

2. Fifteen square feet (1.4 m^2) per occupant for ambulatory occupancies in Group I-2.

`

3. Thirty square feet (2.8 m^2) per occupant for non-ambulatory occupancies in Group I-2.

1026.4.2 Number of exits.
The refuge area into which a *horizontal exit* leads shall be provided with *exits* adequate to meet the occupant requirements of this chapter, but not including the added *occupant load* imposed by persons entering the refuge area through *horizontal exits* from other areas. Not less than one refuge area exit shall lead directly to the exterior or to an *interior exit stairway* or *ramp*.

Exception: The adjoining compartment shall not be required to have a *stairway* or door leading directly outside, provided the refuge area into which a *horizontal exit* leads has *stairways* or doors leading directly outside and are so arranged that egress shall not require the occupants to return through the compartment from which egress originates.

SECTION 1027
EXTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAYS AND RAMPS

1027.1 Exterior exit stairways and ramps.
Exterior exit stairways and *ramps* serving as an element of a required *means of egress* shall comply with this section.

1027.2 Use in a means of egress.
Exterior exit stairways shall not be used as an element of a required *means of egress* for Group I-2 occupancies. For occupancies in other than Group I-2, *exterior exit stairways* and *ramps* shall be permitted as an element of a required *means of egress* for buildings not exceeding six stories above *grade plane* or that are not *high-rise buildings*.

1027.3 Open side.
Exterior exit stairways and *ramps* serving as an element of a required *means of egress* shall be open on not less than one side, except for required structural columns, beams, *handrails* and *guards*. An open side shall have not less than 35 square feet (3.3 m^2) of aggregate open area adjacent to each floor level and the level of each intermediate landing. The required open area shall be located not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the adjacent floor or landing level.

1027.4 Side yards.
The open areas adjoining *exterior exit stairways* or *ramps* shall be either *yards*, *courts* or *public ways*; the remaining sides are permitted to be enclosed by the *exterior walls* of the building.

1027.5 Location.
Exterior exit stairways and *ramps* shall have a minimum fire separation distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) measured at right angles from the exterior edge of the *stairway* or *ramps*, including landings, to:

1. Adjacent *lot lines*.

2. Other portions of the building.

3. Other buildings on the same lot unless the adjacent building *exterior walls* and openings are protected in accordance with Section 705 based on *fire separation distance.*

`

For the purposes of this section, other portions of the building shall be treated as separate buildings.

1027.6 Exterior exit stairway and ramp protection.
Exterior exit stairways and *ramps* shall be separated from the interior of the building as required in Section 1023.2. Openings shall be limited to those necessary for egress from normally occupied spaces. Where a vertical plane projecting from the edge of an *exterior exit stairway* or *ramp* and landings is exposed by other parts of the building at an angle of less than 180 degrees (3.14 rad), the exterior wall shall be rated in accordance with Section 1023.7.

Exceptions:

1. Separation from the interior of the building is not required for occupancies, other than those in Group R-1 or R-2, in buildings that are not more than two stories above *grade plane* where a *level of exit discharge* serving such occupancies is the first story above *grade plane*.

2. Separation from the interior of the building is not required where the *exterior exit stairway* or *ramp* is served by an *exterior exit ramp* or balcony that connects two remote *exterior exit stairways* or other *approved exits* with a perimeter that is not less than 50 percent open. To be considered open, the opening shall be not less than 50 percent of the height of the enclosing wall, with the top of the openings not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the top of the balcony.

3. Separation from the open-ended *corridor* of the building is not required for *exterior exit stairways* or *ramps*, provided that Items 3.1 through 3.5 are met:

    3.1. The building, including open-ended *corridors*, and *stairways* and *ramps*, shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

    3.2. The open-ended *corridors* comply with Section 1020.

    3.3. The open-ended *corridors* are connected on each end to an *exterior exit stairway* or *ramp* complying with Section 1027.

    3.4. The *exterior walls* and openings adjacent to the *exterior exit stairway* or *ramp* comply with Section 1023.7.

    3.5. At any location in an open-ended *corridor* where a change of direction exceeding 45 degrees (0.79 rad) occurs, a clear opening of not less than 35 square feet (3.3 m^2) or an *exterior stairway* or *ramp* shall be provided. Where clear openings are provided, they shall be located so as to minimize the accumulation of smoke or toxic gases.

SECTION 1028
EXIT DISCHARGE

1028.1 General.
Exits shall discharge directly to the exterior of the building. The *exit discharge* shall be at grade or shall provide a direct path of egress travel to grade. The *exit discharge* shall not re-enter a

`

building. The combined use of Exceptions 1 and 2 shall not exceed 50 percent of the number and minimum width or required capacity of the required exits.

Exceptions:

1. Not more than 50 percent of the number and minimum width or required capacity of *interior exit stairways* and *ramps* is permitted to egress through areas on the level of discharge provided all of the following conditions are met:

    1.1. Discharge of *interior exit stairways* and *ramps* shall be provided with a free and unobstructed path of travel to an exterior *exit* door and such *exit* is readily visible and identifiable from the point of termination of the enclosure.

    1.2. The entire area of the *level of exit discharge* is separated from areas below by construction conforming to the *fire-resistance rating* for the enclosure.

    1.3. The egress path from the *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* on the *level of exit discharge* is protected throughout by an *approved automatic sprinkler system*. Portions of the *level of exit discharge* with access to the egress path shall be either equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, or separated from the egress path in accordance with the requirements for the enclosure of *interior exit stairways* or *ramps*.

    1.4. Where a required *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* and an *exit access stairway* or *ramp* serve the same floor level and terminate at the same *level of exit discharge*, the termination of the *exit access stairway* or *ramp* and the *exit discharge* door of the *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* shall be separated by a distance of not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) or not less than one-fourth the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the building, whichever is less. The distance shall be measured in a straight line between the *exit discharge* door from the *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* and the last tread of the *exit access stairway* or termination of slope of the *exit access ramp*.

2. Not more than 50 percent of the number and minimum width or required capacity of the *interior exit stairways* and *ramps* is permitted to egress through a vestibule provided all of the following conditions are met:

    2.1. The entire area of the vestibule is separated from areas below by construction conforming to the *fire-resistance rating* of the *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* enclosure.

    2.2. The depth from the exterior of the building is not greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) and the length is not greater than 30 feet (9144 mm).

    2.3. The area is separated from the remainder of the *level of exit discharge* by a *fire partition* constructed in accordance with Section 708.

    Exception: The maximum transmitted temperature rise is not required.

`

2.4. The area is used only for *means of egress* and *exits* directly to the outside.

3. *Horizontal exits* complying with Section 1026 shall not be required to discharge directly to the exterior of the building.

1028.2 Exit discharge width or capacity.
The minimum width or required capacity of the *exit discharge* shall be not less than the minimum width or required capacity of the *exits* being served.

1028.3 Exit discharge components.
Exit discharge components shall be sufficiently open to the exterior so as to minimize the accumulation of smoke and toxic gases.

1028.4 Egress courts.
Egress courts serving as a portion of the *exit discharge* in the *means of egress* system shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1028.4.1 and 1028.4.2.

1028.4.1 Width or capacity.
The required capacity of *egress courts* shall be determined as specified in Section 1005.1, but the minimum width shall be not less than 44 inches (1118 mm), except as specified herein. *Egress courts* serving Group R-3 and U occupancies shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width. The required capacity and width of *egress courts* shall be unobstructed to a height of 7 feet (2134 mm).

Exception: Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.

~~Where an *egress court* exceeds the minimum required width and the width of such *egress court* is then reduced along the path of exit travel, the reduction in width shall be gradual. The transition in width shall be affected by a guard not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in height and shall not create an angle of more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) with respect to the axis of the *egress court* along the path of egress travel. The width of the *egress court* shall not be less than the required capacity.~~

1028.4.2 Construction and openings.
Where an *egress court* serving a building or portion thereof is less than 10 feet (3048 mm) in width, the *egress court* walls shall have not less than 1-hour *fire-resistance-rated* construction for a distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) above the floor of the *egress court*. Openings within such walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ hour.

Exceptions:

1. *Egress courts* serving an *occupant load* of less than 10.

2. *Egress courts* serving Group R-3.

1028.5 Access to a public way.
The *exit discharge* shall provide a direct and unobstructed access to a *public way*.

Exception: Where access to a *public way* cannot be provided, a safe dispersal area shall be provided where all of the following are met:

`

1. The area shall be of a size to accommodate not less than 5 square feet (0.46 m^2) for each person.

2. The area shall be located on the same lot not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) away from the building requiring egress.

3. The area shall be permanently maintained and identified as a safe dispersal area.

4. The area shall be provided with a safe and unobstructed path of travel from the building.

SECTION 1029
ASSEMBLY

1029.1 General.
A room or space used for assembly purposes that contains seats, tables, displays, equipment or other material shall comply with this section.

1029.1.1 Bleachers.
Bleachers, *grandstands* and *folding and telescopic seating*, that are not building elements, shall comply with ICC 300.

1029.1.1.1 Spaces under grandstands and bleachers.
Where spaces under *grandstands* or *bleachers* are used for purposes other than ticket booths less than 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) and toilet rooms, such spaces shall be separated by *fire barriers* complying with Section 707 and *horizontal assemblies* complying with Section 711 with not less than 1-hour *fire-resistance-rated* construction.

1029.2 Assembly main exit.
A building, room or space used for assembly purposes that has an *occupant load* of greater than 300 and is provided with a main *exit*, that main *exit* shall be of sufficient capacity to accommodate not less than onehalf of the *occupant load*, but such capacity shall be not less than the total required capacity of all *means of egress* leading to the *exit*. Where the building is classified as a Group A occupancy, the main *exit* shall front on not less than one street or an unoccupied space of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) in width that adjoins a street or *public way*. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes where there is not a well-defined main *exit* or where multiple main *exits* are provided, *exits* shall be permitted to be distributed around the perimeter of the building provided that the total capacity of egress is not less than 100 percent of the required capacity.

1029.3 Assembly other exits.
In addition to having access to a main *exit*, each level in a building used for assembly purposes having an *occupant load* greater than 300 and provided with a main *exit*, shall be provided with additional *means of egress* that shall provide an egress capacity for not less than one-half of the total *occupant load* served by that level and shall comply with Section 1007.1. In a building used for assembly purposes where there is not a well-defined main *exit* or where multiple main *exits* are provided, *exits* for each level shall be permitted to be distributed around the perimeter of the building, provided that the total width of egress is not less than 100 percent of the required width.

`

1029.4 Foyers and lobbies.
In Group A-1 occupancies, where persons are admitted to the building at times when seats are not available, such persons shall be allowed to wait in a lobby or similar space, provided such lobby or similar space shall not encroach upon the minimum width or required capacity of the *means of egress*. Such foyer, if not directly connected to a public street by all the main entrances or *exits*, shall have a straight and unobstructed *corridor* or path of travel to every such main entrance or *exit*.

1029.5 Interior balcony and gallery means of egress.
For balconies, galleries or press boxes having a seating capacity of 50 or more located in a building, room or space used for assembly purposes, not less than two *means of egress* shall be provided, with one from each side of every balcony, gallery or press box.

1029.6 Capacity of aisle for assembly.
The required capacity of *aisles* shall be not less than that determined in accordance with Section 1029.6.1 where *smoke-protected assembly seating* is not provided and with Section 1029.6.2 or 1029.6.3 where *smoke-protected assembly seating* is provided.

1029.6.1 Without smoke protection.
The required capacity in inches (mm) of the *aisles* for assembly seating without smoke protection shall be not less than the *occupant load* served by the egress element in accordance with all of the following, as applicable:

1. Not less than 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) of *aisle* capacity for each occupant served shall be provided on stepped *aisles* having riser heights 7 inches (178 mm) or less and tread depths 11 inches (279 mm) or greater, measured horizontally between tread *nosings*.

2. Not less than 0.005 inch (0.127 mm) of additional *aisle* capacity for each occupant shall be provided for each 0.10 inch (2.5 mm) of riser height above 7 inches (178 mm).

3. Where egress requires stepped *aisle* descent, not less than 0.075 inch (1.9 mm) of additional *aisle* capacity for each occupant shall be provided on those portions of *aisle* capacity having no *handrail* within a horizontal distance of 30 inches (762 mm).

4. Ramped *aisles*, where slopes are steeper than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope), shall have not less than 0.22 inch (5.6 mm) of clear *aisle* capacity for each occupant served. Level or ramped *aisles*, where slopes are not steeper than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope), shall have not less than 0.20 inch (5.1 mm) of clear *aisle* capacity for each occupant served.

1029.6.2 Smoke-protected assembly seating.
The required capacity in inches (mm) of the aisle for *smoke protected assembly seating* shall be not less than the occupant load served by the egress element multiplied by the appropriate factor in Table 1029.6.2. The total number of seats specified shall be those within the space exposed to the same smoke-protected environment. Interpolation is permitted between the specific values shown. A life safety evaluation, complying with NFPA 101, shall be done for a facility utilizing the reduced width requirements of Table 1029.6.2 for *smoke-protected assembly seating*.

`

Exception: For outdoor *smoke-protected assembly seating* with an *occupant load* not greater than 18,000, the required capacity in inches (mm) shall be determined using the factors in Section 1029.6.3.

TABLE 1029.6.2
CAPACITY FOR AISLES FOR SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY

TOTAL NUMBER OF SEATS IN THE SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY SEATING	INCHES OF CAPACITY PER SEAT SERVED			
	Stepped aisles with handrails within 30 inches	Stepped aisles without handrails within 30 inches	Level aisles or ramped aisles not steeper than 1 in 10 in slope	Ramped aisles steeper than 1 in 10 in slope
Equal to or less than 5,000	0.200	0.250	0.150	0.165
10,000	0.130	0.163	0.100	0.110
15,000	0.096	0.120	0.070	0.077
20,000	0.076	0.095	0.056	0.062
Equal to or greater than 25,000	0.060	0.075	0.044	0.048

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1029.6.2.1 Smoke control.
Aisles and *aisle accessways* serving a *smoke-protected assembly seating* area shall be provided with a smoke control system complying with Section 909 or natural ventilation designed to maintain the smoke level not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor of the *means of egress*.

1029.6.2.2 Roof height.
A *smoke-protected assembly seating* area with a roof shall have the lowest portion of the roof deck not less than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the highest *aisle* or *aisle accessway*.

Exception: A roof canopy in an outdoor stadium shall be permitted to be less than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the highest *aisle* or *aisle accessway* provided that there are no objects less than 80 inches (2032 mm) above the highest *aisle* or *aisle accessway*.

1029.6.2.3 Automatic sprinklers.
Enclosed areas with walls and ceilings in buildings or structures containing *smoke-protected assembly seating* shall be protected with an *approved automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

Exceptions:

1. The floor area used for contests, performances or entertainment provided the roof construction is more than 50 feet (15 240 mm) above the floor level and the use is restricted to low fire hazard uses.

2. Press boxes and storage facilities less than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) in area.

`

3. Outdoor seating facilities where seating and the *means of egress* in the seating area are essentially open to the outside.

1029.6.3 Outdoor smoke-protected assembly seating.
The required capacity in inches (mm) of *aisles* shall be not less than the total *occupant load* served by the egress element multiplied by 0.08 (2.0 mm) where egress is by stepped *aisle* and multiplied by 0.06 (1.52 mm) where egress is by level *aisles* and ramped *aisles*.

Exception: The required capacity in inches (mm) of *aisles* shall be permitted to comply with Section 1029.6.2 for the number of seats in the outdoor *smoke-protected assembly seating* where Section 1029.6.2 permits less capacity.

1029.7 Travel distance.
Exits and *aisles* shall be so located that the travel distance to an *exit* door shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm) measured along the line of travel in nonsprinklered buildings. Travel distance shall be not more than 250 feet (76 200 mm) in sprinklered buildings. Where *aisles* are provided for seating, the distance shall be measured along the *aisles* and *aisle accessways* without travel over or on the seats.

Exceptions:

1. *Smoke-protected assembly seating*: The travel distance from each seat to the nearest entrance to a vomitory or concourse shall not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm). The travel distance from the entrance to the vomitory or concourse to a *stairway*, *ramp* or walk on the exterior of the building shall not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm).

2. Open-air seating: The travel distance from each seat to the building exterior shall not exceed 400 feet (122 m). The travel distance shall not be limited in facilities of Type I or II construction.

1029.8 Common path of egress travel.
The *common path of egress travel* shall not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm) from any seat to a point where an occupant has a choice of two paths of egress travel to two *exits*.

Exceptions:

1. For areas serving less than 50 occupants, the *common path of egress travel* shall not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm).

2. For *smoke-protected assembly seating*, the *common path of egress travel* shall not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).

1029.8.1 Path through adjacent row.
Where one of the two paths of travel is across the *aisle* through a row of seats to another *aisle*, there shall be not more than 24 seats between the two *aisles*, and the minimum clear width between rows for the row between the two *aisles* shall be 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.6 inch (15.2 mm) for each additional seat above seven in the row between *aisles*.

Exception: For *smoke-protected assembly seating* there shall be not more than 40 seats between the two *aisles* and the minimum clear width shall be 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) for each additional seat.

`

1029.9 Assembly aisles are required.
Every occupied portion of any building, room or space used for assembly purposes that contains seats, tables, displays, similar fixtures or equipment shall be provided with *aisles* leading to *exits* or *exit access doorways* in accordance with this section.

1029.9.1 Minimum aisle width.
The minimum clear width for *aisles* shall comply with one of the following:

1. Forty-eight inches (1219 mm) for stepped *aisles* having seating on each side.

   Exception: Thirty-six inches (914 mm) where the stepped *aisles* serve less than 50 seats.

2. Thirty-six inches (914 mm) for stepped *aisles* having seating on only one side.

   Exception: Twenty-three inches (584 mm) between a stepped *aisle handrail* and seating where a stepped *aisle* does not serve more than five rows on one side.

3. Twenty-three inches (584 mm) between a stepped *aisle handrail* or *guard* and seating where the stepped *aisle* is subdivided by a mid-aisle *handrail*.

4. Forty-two inches (1067 mm) for level or ramped *aisles* having seating on both sides.

   Exceptions:

   1. Thirty-six inches (914 mm) where the *aisle* serves less than 50 seats.

   2. Thirty inches (762 mm) where the *aisle* does not serve more than 14 seats.

5. Thirty-six inches (914 mm) for level or ramped *aisles* having seating on only one side.

   Exception: For other than ramped *aisles* that serve as part of an *accessible route*, 30 inches (762 mm) where the ramped *aisle* does not serve more than 14 seats.

1029.9.2 Aisle catchment area.
The *aisle* shall provide sufficient capacity for the number of persons accommodated by the catchment area served by the *aisle*. The catchment area served by an *aisle* is that portion of the total space served by that section of the *aisle*. In establishing catchment areas, the assumption shall be made that there is a balanced use of all *means of egress*, with the number of persons in proportion to egress capacity.

1029.9.3 Converging aisles.
Where *aisles* converge to form a single path of egress travel, the required capacity of that path shall be not less than the combined required capacity of the converging aisles.

1029.9.4 Uniform width and capacity.
Those portions of *aisles*, where egress is possible in either of two directions, shall be uniform in minimum width or required capacity.

`

1029.9.5 Dead end aisles.
Each end of an *aisle* shall be continuous to a cross *aisle*, foyer, doorway, vomitory, concourse or *stairway* in accordance with Section 1029.9.7 having access to an *exit*.

Exceptions:

1. Dead-end *aisles* shall be not greater than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length.

2. Dead-end *aisles* longer than 16 rows are permitted where seats beyond the 16th row dead-end *aisle* are not more than 24 seats from another *aisle*, measured along a row of seats having a minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.6 inch (15.2 mm) for each additional seat above seven in the row where seats have backrests or beyond 10 where seats are without backrests in the row.

3. For *smoke-protected assembly seating*, the dead end *aisle* length of vertical *aisles* shall not exceed a distance of 21 rows.

4. For *smoke-protected assembly seating*, a longer dead-end *aisle* is permitted where seats beyond the 21-row dead-end *aisle* are not more than 40 seats from another *aisle*, measured along a row of seats having an *aisle* accessway with a minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) for each additional seat above seven in the row where seats have backrests or beyond 10 where seats are without backrests in the row.

1029.9.6 Aisle measurement.
The clear width for *aisles* shall be measured to walls, edges of seating and tread edges except for permitted projections.

Exception: The clear width of *aisles* adjacent to seating at tables shall be permitted to be measured in accordance with Section 1029.12.1.

1029.9.6.1 Assembly aisle obstructions.
There shall not be obstructions in the minimum width or required capacity of *aisles*.

Exception: *Handrails* are permitted to project into the required width of stepped *aisles* and ramped *aisles* in accordance with Section 1014.8.

1029.9.7 Stairways connecting to stepped aisles.
A *stairway* that connects a stepped *aisle* to a cross *aisle* or concourse shall be permitted to comply with the assembly *aisle* walking surface requirements of Section 1029.13. Transitions between *stairways* and stepped *aisles* shall comply with Section 1029.10.

1029.9.8 Stairways connecting to vomitories.
A *stairway* that connects a vomitory to a cross aisle or concourse shall be permitted to comply with the assembly *aisle* walking surface requirements of Section 1029.13. Transitions between *stairways* and stepped *aisles* shall comply with Section 1029.10.

1029.10 Transitions.
Transitions between *stairways* and stepped *aisles* shall comply with either Section 1029.10.1 or 1029.10.2.

1029.10.1 Transitions and stairways that maintain stepped aisle riser and tread dimensions.

`

Stepped *aisles*, transitions and *stairways* that maintain riser and tread dimensions shall comply with Section 1029.13 as one *exit access* component.

1029.10.2 Transitions to stairways that do not maintain stepped aisle riser and tread dimensions.
Transitions to *stairways* from stepped *aisles* with riser and tread dimensions that differ from the *stairways* shall comply with Sections 1029.10.2.1 through 1029.10.3.

1029.10.2.1 Stairways and stepped aisles in a straight run.
Transitions where the *stairway* is a straight run from the stepped *aisle* shall have a minimum depth of 22 inches (559 mm) where the treads on the descending side of the transition have greater depth and 30 inches (762 mm) where the treads on the descending side of the transition have lesser depth.

1029.10.2.2 Stairways and stepped aisles that change direction.
Transitions where the *stairway* changes direction from the stepped *aisle* shall have a minimum depth of 11 inches (280 mm) or the stepped *aisle* tread depth, whichever is greater, between the stepped *aisle* and *stairway*.

1029.10.3 Transition marking.
A distinctive marking stripe shall be provided at each *nosing* or leading edge adjacent to the transition. Such stripe shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm), and not more than 2 inches (51 mm), wide. The edge marking stripe shall be distinctively different from the stepped *aisle* contrasting marking stripe.

1029.11 Construction.
Aisles, stepped *aisles* and ramped *aisles* shall be built of materials consistent with the types permitted for the type of construction of the building.

Exception: Wood *handrails* shall be permitted for all types of construction.

1029.11.1 Walking surface.
The surface of *aisles*, stepped *aisles* and ramped *aisles* shall be of slip-resistant materials that are securely attached. The surface for stepped *aisles* shall comply with Section 1011.7.1.

1029.11.2 Outdoor conditions.
Outdoor *aisles*, stepped *aisles* and ramped *aisles* and outdoor approaches to *aisles*, stepped *aisles* and ramped *aisles* shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on the walking surface.

1029.12 Aisle accessways.
Aisle accessways for seating at tables shall comply with Section 1029.12.1. *Aisle accessways* for seating in rows shall comply with Section 1029.12.2.

1029.12.1 Seating at tables.
Where seating is located at a table or counter and is adjacent to an *aisle* or *aisle accessway*, the measurement of required clear width of the *aisle* or *aisle accessway* shall be made to a line 19 inches (483 mm) away from and parallel to the edge of the table or counter. The 19-inch (483 mm) distance shall be measured perpendicular to the side of the table or counter. In the case of other side boundaries for *aisles* or *aisle accessways*, the clear width shall be measured to walls, edges of seating and tread edges.

`

Exception: Where tables or counters are served by *fixed seats*, the width of the *aisle* or *aisle accessway* shall be measured from the back of the seat.

1029.12.1.1 Aisle accessway capacity and width for seating at tables.
Aisle accessways serving arrangements of seating at tables or counters shall comply with the capacity requirements of Section 1005.1 but shall not have less than 12 inches (305 mm) of width plus $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) of width for each additional 1 foot (305 mm), or fraction thereof, beyond 12 feet (3658 mm) of aisle accessway length measured from the center of the seat farthest from an *aisle*.

Exception: Portions of an *aisle accessway* having a length not exceeding 6 feet (1829 mm) and used by a total of not more than four persons.

1029.12.1.2 Seating at table aisle accessway length.
The length of travel along the *aisle accessway* shall not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm) from any seat to the point where a person has a choice of two or more paths of egress travel to separate *exits*.

1029.12.2 Clear width of aisle accessways serving seating in rows.
Where seating rows have 14 or fewer seats, the minimum clear *aisle accessway* width shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) measured as the clear horizontal distance from the back of the row ahead and the nearest projection of the row behind. Where chairs have automatic or self-rising seats, the measurement shall be made with seats in the raised position. Where any chair in the row does not have an automatic or self-rising seat, the measurements shall be made with the seat in the down position. For seats with folding tablet arms, row spacing shall be determined with the tablet arm in the used position.

Exception: For seats with folding tablet arms, row spacing is permitted to be determined with the tablet arm in the stored position where the tablet arm when raised manually to vertical position in one motion automatically returns to the stored position by force of gravity.

1029.12.2.1 Dual access.
For rows of seating served by *aisles* or doorways at both ends, there shall be not more than 100 seats per row. The minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) between rows shall be increased by 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) for every additional seat beyond 14 seats where seats have backrests or beyond 21 where seats are without backrests. The minimum clear width is not required to exceed 22 inches (559 mm).

Exception: For s*moke-protected assembly seating*, the row length limits for a 12-inch-wide (305 mm) *aisle accessway*, beyond which the *aisle accessway* minimum clear width shall be increased, are in Table 1029.12.2.1.

TABLE 1029.12.2.1
SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY AISLE ACCESSWAYS

TOTAL NUMBER OF SEATS IN THE SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY SEATING	MAXIMUM NUMBER OF SEATS PER ROW PERMITTED TO HAVE A MINIMUM 12-INCH CLEAR WIDTH AISLE ACCESSWAY	
	Aisle or doorway at both ends of row	Aisle or doorway at one end of row only

`

	Seats with backrests	Seats without backrests	Seats with backrests	Seats without backrests
Less than 4,000	14	21	7	10
4,000	15	22	7	10
7,000	16	23	8	11
10,000	17	24	8	11
13,000	18	25	9	12
16,000	19	26	9	12
19,000	20	27	10	13
22,000 and greater	21	28	11	14

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1029.12.2.2 Single access.
For rows of seating served by an *aisle* or doorway at only one end of the row, the minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) between rows shall be increased by 0.6 inch (15.2 mm) for every additional seat beyond seven seats where seats have backrests or beyond 10 where seats are without backrests. The minimum clear width is not required to exceed 22 inches (559 mm).

Exception: For *smoke-protected assembly seating*, the row length limits for a 12-inch-wide (305 mm) *aisle accessway*, beyond which the *aisle accessway* minimum clear width shall be increased, are in Table 1029.12.2.1.

1029.13 Assembly aisle walking surfaces.
Ramped *aisles* shall comply with Sections 1029.13.1 through 1029.13.1.3. Stepped *aisles* shall comply with Sections 1029.13.2 through 1029.13.2.4.

1029.13.1 Ramped aisles.
Aisles that are sloped more than one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope) shall be considered a ramped *aisle*. Ramped *aisles* that serve as part of an *accessible route* in accordance with Sections 1009 and 1108.2 shall have a maximum slope of one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope). The slope of other ramped *aisles* shall not exceed one unit vertical in 8 units horizontal (12.5-percent slope).

1029.13.1.1 Cross slope.
The slope measured perpendicular to the direction of travel of a ramped *aisle* shall not be steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

1029.13.1.2 Landings.
Ramped *aisles* shall have landings in accordance with Sections 1012.6 through 1012.6.5. Landings for ramped *aisles* shall be permitted to overlap required *aisles* or cross *aisles*.

1029.13.1.3 Edge protection.
Ramped *aisles* shall have edge protection in accordance with Sections 1012.10 and 1012.10.1.

Exception: In assembly spaces with *fixed seating*, edge protection is not required on the sides of ramped *aisles* where the ramped aisles provide access to the adjacent seating and *aisle accessways*.

`

1029.13.2 Stepped aisles.
Aisles with a slope exceeding one unit vertical in eight units horizontal (12.5-percent slope) shall consist of a series of risers and treads that extends across the full width of *aisles* and complies with Sections 1029.13.2.1 through 1029.13.2.4.

1029.13.2.1 Treads.
Tread depths shall be not less than 11 inches (279 mm) and shall have dimensional uniformity.

Exception: The tolerance between adjacent treads shall not exceed 3/16 inch (4.8 mm).

1029.13.2.2 Risers.
Where the gradient of stepped *aisles* is to be the same as the gradient of adjoining seating areas, the riser height shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nor more than 8 inches (203 mm) and shall be uniform within each *flight*.

Exceptions:

1. Riser height non-uniformity shall be limited to the extent necessitated by changes in the gradient of the adjoining seating area to maintain adequate sightlines. Where non-uniformities exceed 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) between adjacent risers, the exact location of such non-uniformities shall be indicated with a distinctive marking stripe on each tread at the *nosing* or leading edge adjacent to the non-uniform risers. Such stripe shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm), and not more than 2 inches (51 mm), wide. The edge marking stripe shall be distinctively different from the contrasting marking stripe.

2. Riser heights not exceeding 9 inches (229 mm) shall be permitted where they are necessitated by the slope of the adjacent seating areas to maintain sightlines.

1029.13.2.2.1 Construction tolerances.
The tolerance between adjacent risers on a stepped *aisle* that were designed to be equal height shall not exceed 3/16 inch (4.8 mm). Where the stepped *aisle* is designed in accordance with Exception 1 of Section 1029.13.2.2, the stepped *aisle* shall be constructed so that each riser of unequal height, determined in the direction of descent, is not more than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) in height different from adjacent risers where stepped *aisle* treads are less than 22 inches (560 mm) in depth and 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) in height different from adjacent risers where stepped *aisle* treads are 22 inches (560 mm) or greater in depth.

1029.13.2.3 Tread contrasting marking stripe.
A contrasting marking stripe shall be provided on each tread at the *nosing* or leading edge such that the location of each tread is readily apparent when viewed in descent. Such stripe shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm), and not more than 2 inches (51 mm), wide.

Exception: The contrasting marking stripe is permitted to be omitted where tread surfaces are such that the location of each tread is readily apparent when viewed in descent.

`

1029.13.2.4 Nosing and profile.
Nosing and riser profile shall comply with Sections 1011.5.5 through 1011.5.5.3.

1029.14 Seat stability.
In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes, the seats shall be securely fastened to the floor.

Exceptions:

1. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes or portions thereof without ramped or tiered floors for seating and with 200 or fewer seats, the seats shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.

2. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes or portions thereof with seating at tables and without ramped or tiered floors for seating, the seats shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.

3. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes or portions thereof without ramped or tiered floors for seating and with greater than 200 seats, the seats shall be fastened together in groups of not less than three or the seats shall be securely fastened to the floor.

4. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes where flexibility of the seating arrangement is an integral part of the design and function of the space and seating is on tiered levels, not more than 200 seats shall not be required to be fastened to the floor. Plans showing seating, tiers and *aisles* shall be submitted for approval.

5. Groups of seats within a building, room or space used for assembly purposes separated from other seating by railings, *guards*, partial height walls or similar barriers with level floors and having not more than 14 seats per group shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.

6. Seats intended for musicians or other performers and separated by railings, *guards*, partial height walls or similar barriers shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.

1029.15 Handrails.
Ramped *aisles* having a slope exceeding one unit vertical in 15 units horizontal (6.7-percent slope) and stepped *aisles* shall be provided with *handrails* in compliance with Section 1014 located either at one or both sides of the *aisle* or within the *aisle* width.

Exceptions:

1. *Handrails* are not required for ramped *aisles* with seating on both sides.

2. *Handrails* are not required where, at the side of the *aisle*, there is a *guard* with a top surface that complies with the graspability requirements of *handrails* in accordance with Section 1014.3.

`

3. *Handrail* extensions are not required at the top and bottom of stepped *aisles* and ramped *aisles* to permit crossovers within the *aisles*.

1029.15.1 Discontinuous handrails.
Where there is seating on both sides of the *aisle*, the mid-aisle *handrails* shall be discontinuous with gaps or breaks at intervals not exceeding five rows to facilitate access to seating and to permit crossing from one side of the *aisle* to the other. These gaps or breaks shall have a clear width of not less than 22 inches (559 mm) and not greater than 36 inches (914 mm), measured horizontally, and the mid-aisle *handrail* shall have rounded terminations or bends.

1029.15.2 Handrail termination.
Handrails located on the side of stepped *aisles* shall return to a wall, *guard* or the walking surface or shall be continuous to the *handrail* of an adjacent stepped *aisle flight*.

1029.15.3 Mid-aisle termination.
Mid-aisle *handrails* shall not extend beyond the lowest riser and shall terminate within 18 inches (381 mm), measured horizontally, from the lowest riser. *Handrail* extensions are not required.

Exception: Mid-aisle *handrails* shall be permitted to extend beyond the lowest riser where the *handrail* extensions do not obstruct the width of the cross *aisle*.

1029.15.4 Rails.
Where mid-aisle *handrails* are provided in stepped *aisles*, there shall be an additional rail located approximately 12 inches (305 mm) below the *handrail*. The rail shall be adequate in strength and attachment in accordance with Section 1607.8.1.2.

1029.16 Assembly guards.
Guards adjacent to seating in a building, room or space used for assembly purposes shall be provided where required by Section 1015 and shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1015 except where provided in accordance with Sections 1029.16.1 through 1029.16.4. At *bleachers*, *grandstands* and *folding and telescopic seating*, *guards* must be provided where required by ICC 300 and Section 1029.16.1.

1029.16.1 Perimeter guards.
Perimeter *guards* shall be provided where the footboards or walking surface of seating facilities are more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below. Where the seatboards are adjacent to the perimeter, *guard* height shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) high minimum, measured from the seatboard. Where the seats are self-rising, *guard* height shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) high minimum, measured from the floor surface. Where there is an *aisle* between the seating and the perimeter, the *guard* height shall be measured in accordance with Section 1015.2.

Exceptions:

1. *Guards* that impact sightlines shall be permitted to comply with Section 1029.16.3.

2. *Bleachers*, *grandstands* and *folding and telescopic seating* shall not be required to have perimeter *guards* where the seating is located adjacent to a wall and the space between the wall and the seating is less than 4 inches (102 mm).

`

1029.16.2 Cross aisles.
Cross *aisles* located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below shall have *guards* in accordance with Section 1015.

Where an elevation change of 30 inches (762 mm) or less occurs between a cross *aisle* and the adjacent floor or grade below, *guards* not less than 26 inches (660 mm) above the *aisle* floor shall be provided.

Exception: Where the backs of seats on the front of the cross *aisle* project 24 inches (610 mm) or more above the adjacent floor of the *aisle*, a *guard* need not be provided.

1029.16.3 Sightline-constrained guard heights.
Unless subject to the requirements of Section 1029.16.4, a fascia or railing system in accordance with the *guard* requirements of Section 1015 and having a minimum height of 26 inches (660 mm) shall be provided where the floor or footboard elevation is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below and the fascia or railing would otherwise interfere with the sightlines of immediately adjacent seating.

1029.16.4 Guards at the end of aisles.
A fascia or railing system complying with the *guard* requirements of Section 1015 shall be provided for the full width of the *aisle* where the foot of the *aisle* is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below. The fascia or railing shall be a minimum of 36 inches (914 mm) high and shall provide a minimum 42 inches (1067 mm) measured diagonally between the top of the rail and the *nosing* of the nearest tread.

SECTION 1030
EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE

1030.1 General.
In addition to the *means of egress* required by this chapter, provisions shall be made for *emergency escape and rescue openings* in Group R-2 occupancies in accordance with Tables 1006.3.2(1) and 1006.3.2(2) and Group R-3 occupancies. *Basements* and sleeping rooms below the fourth story above *grade plane* shall have at least one exterior *emergency escape and rescue opening* in accordance with this section. Where *basements* contain one or more sleeping rooms, *emergency escape and rescue openings* shall be required in each sleeping room, but shall not be required in adjoining areas of the *basement*. Such openings shall open directly into a *public way* or to a *yard* or *court* that opens to a *public way*.

Exceptions:

1. *Basements* with a ceiling height of less than 80 inches (2032 mm) shall not be required to have *emergency escape and rescue openings*.

2. *Emergency escape and rescue openings* are not required from *basements* or sleeping rooms that have an *exit* door or *exit access* door that opens directly into a *public way* or to a *yard*, *court* or exterior exit balcony that opens to a *public way*.

3. *Basements* without *habitable spaces* and having not more than 200 square feet (18.6 m^2) in floor area shall not be required to have *emergency escape and rescue openings*.

`

1030.2 Minimum size.
Emergency escape and rescue openings shall have a minimum net clear opening of 5.7 square feet (0.53 m^2).

Exception: The minimum net clear opening for gradefloor *emergency escape and rescue openings* shall be 5 square feet (0.46 m^2).

1030.2.1 Minimum dimensions.
The minimum net clear opening height dimension shall be 24 inches (610 mm). The minimum net clear opening width dimension shall be 20 inches (508 mm). The net clear opening dimensions shall be the result of normal operation of the opening.

1030.3 Maximum height from floor.
Emergency escape and rescue openings shall have the bottom of the clear opening not greater than 44 inches (1118 mm) measured from the floor.

1030.4 Operational constraints.
Emergency escape and rescue openings shall be operational from the inside of the room without the use of keys or tools. Bars, grilles, grates or similar devices are permitted to be placed over *emergency escape and rescue openings* provided the minimum net clear opening size complies with Section 1030.2 and such devices shall be releasable or removable from the inside without the use of a key, tool or force greater than that which is required for normal operation of the *emergency escape and rescue opening*. Where such bars, grilles, grates or similar devices are installed in existing buildings, *smoke alarms* shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11 regardless of the valuation of the *alteration*.

1030.5 Window wells.
An *emergency escape and rescue opening* with a finished sill height below the adjacent ground level shall be provided with a window well in accordance with Sections 1030.5.1 and 1030.5.2.

1030.5.1 Minimum size.
The minimum horizontal area of the window well shall be 9 square feet (0.84 m2), with a minimum dimension of 36 inches (914 mm). The area of the window well shall allow the *emergency escape and rescue opening* to be fully opened.

1030.5.2 Ladders or steps.
Window wells with a vertical depth of more than 44 inches (1118 mm) shall be equipped with an *approved* permanently affixed ladder or steps. Ladders or rungs shall have an inside width of at least 12 inches (305 mm), shall project at least 3 inches (76 mm) from the wall and shall be spaced not more than 18 inches (457 mm) on center (o.c.) vertically for the full height of the window well. The ladder or steps shall not encroach into the required dimensions of the window well by more than 6 inches (152 mm). The ladder or steps shall not be obstructed by the *emergency escape and rescue opening*. Ladders or steps required by this section are exempt from the *stairway* requirements of Section 1011.

`

CHAPTER 11
ACCESSIBILITY

SECTION 1101
GENERAL

1101.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall control the design and construction of facilities for accessibility for individuals with disabilities.

1101.2 Design.
Buildings and facilities shall be designed and constructed to be *accessible* in accordance with this code and ICC A117.1, except those portions of ICC A117.1 amended by this section.

1101.2.1 (ICC A117.1 Section 403.5) Clear width of accessible route. Clear width of an accessible route shall comply with ICC A117.1 Section 403.5. For exterior routes of travel, the minimum clear width shall be 44 inches (1118 mm).

1101.2.2 (ICC A117.1 Section 404.2.8) Door-Opening Force. Fire doors shall have the minimum opening force allowable by the appropriate administrative authority. The force for pushing or pulling open doors other than fire doors shall be as follows:

1. Interior hinged door: 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum
2. Interior sliding or folding doors: 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum
3. Exterior hinged, sliding or folding door: 10 pounds (44.4 N) maximum

Exception: Interior or exterior automatic doors complying with Section 404.3 of ICC A117.1. These forces do not apply to the force required to retract latch bolts or disengage other devices that hold the door in a closed position.

1101.2.3 (ICC A117.1 Section 407.4.6.2.2) Arrangement of elevator car buttons. Buttons shall be arranged with numbers in ascending order. When two or more columns of buttons are provided they shall read from left to right.

1101.2.4 (ICC A117.1 Section 606.7) Operable parts. Operable parts on drying equipment, towel or cleansing product dispensers, and disposal fixtures shall comply with Table 603.6.

1101.2.5 (ICC A117.1 Section 604.6) Flush controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Section 309, except the maximum height above the floor shall be 44 inches (1118 mm). Flush controls shall be located on the open side of the water closet.

Exception: In ambulatory accessible compartments complying with Section 604.10, flush controls shall be permitted to be located on either side of the water closet.

1101.2.6 (ICC A117.1 Section 703.6.3.1) International symbol of accessibility. Where the International Symbol of Accessibility is required, it shall be proportioned complying with ICC A117.1 Figure 703.6.3.1. All interior and exterior signs depicting the International Symbol of Accessibility shall be white on a blue background.

`

SECTION 1102
DEFINITIONS

1102.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

ACCESSIBLE.

ACCESSIBLE ROUTE.

ACCESSIBLE UNIT.

AREA OF SPORT ACTIVITY.

CIRCULATION PATH.

COMMON USE.

DETECTABLE WARNING.

EMPLOYEE WORK AREA. FACILITY.

INTENDED TO BE OCCUPIED AS A RESIDENCE.

MULTILEVEL ASSEMBLY SEATING.

MULTISTORY UNIT.

PUBLIC ENTRANCE.

PUBLIC-USE AREAS.

RESTRICTED ENTRANCE.

SELF-SERVICE STORAGE FACILITY.

SERVICE ENTRANCE.

SITE.

TYPE A UNIT.

TYPE B UNIT.

WHEELCHAIR SPACE.

SECTION 1103
SCOPING REQUIREMENTS

1103.1 Where required.
Sites, buildings, *structures*, *facilities*, elements and spaces, temporary or permanent, shall be *accessible* to individuals with disabilities.

`

1103.2 General exceptions.
Sites, buildings, *structures*, *facilities*, elements and spaces shall be exempt from this chapter to the extent specified in this section.

1103.2.1 Specific requirements.
Accessibility is not required in buildings and *facilities*, or portions thereof, to the extent permitted by Sections 1104 through 1111.

1103.2.2 Employee work areas.
Spaces and elements within *employee work areas* shall only be required to comply with Sections 907.5.2.3.1, 1009 and 1104.3.1 and shall be designed and constructed so that individuals with disabilities can approach, enter and exit the work area. Work areas, or portions of work areas, other than raised courtroom stations in accordance with Section 1108.4.1.4, that are less than 300 square feet (30 m^2) in area and located 7 inches (178 mm) or more above or below the ground or finished floor where the change in elevation is essential to the function of the space shall be exempt from all requirements.

1103.2.3 Detached dwellings.
Detached one- and two-family *dwellings*, their accessory structures and their associated *sites* and *facilities* are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.4 Utility buildings.
Group U occupancies are not required to comply with this chapter other than the following:

1. In agricultural buildings, access is required to paved work areas and areas open to the general public.

2. Private garages or carports that contain required *accessible* parking.

1103.2.5 Construction sites.
Structures, *sites* and equipment directly associated with the actual processes of construction including, but not limited to, scaffolding, bridging, materials hoists, materials storage or construction trailers are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.6 Raised areas.
Raised areas used primarily for purposes of security, life safety or fire safety including, but not limited to, observation galleries, prison guard towers, fire towers or lifeguard stands are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.7 Limited access spaces.
Spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, freight elevators or very narrow passageways are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.8 Areas in places of religious worship.
Raised or lowered areas, or portions of areas, in *places of religious worship* that are less than 300 square feet (30 m^2) in area and located 7 inches (178 mm) or more above or below the finished floor and used primarily for the performance of religious ceremonies are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.9 Equipment spaces.
Spaces frequented only by service personnel for maintenance, repair or occasional monitoring of equipment are not required to comply with this chapter.

`

1103.2.10 Highway tollbooths.
Highway tollbooths where the access is provided only by bridges above the vehicular traffic or underground tunnels are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.11 Residential Group R-1.
Buildings of Group R-1 containing not more than five *sleeping units* for rent or hire that are also occupied as the residence of the proprietor are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.12 Day care facilities.
Where a day care facility is part of a *dwelling unit*, only the portion of the structure utilized for the day care facility is required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.13 Detention and correctional facilities.
In detention and correctional facilities, *common use* areas that are used only by inmates or detainees and security personnel, and that do not serve holding cells or housing cells required to be *Accessible units*, are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.14 Walk-in coolers and freezers.
Walk-in coolers and freezers intended for employee use only are not required to comply with this chapter.

SECTION 1104
ACCESSIBLE ROUTE

1104.1 Site arrival points.
At least one *accessible route* within the *site* shall be provided from public transportation stops, *accessible* parking, *accessible* passenger loading zones, and public streets or sidewalks to the *accessible* building entrance served.

Exception: Other than in buildings or *facilities* containing or serving *Type B units*, an *accessible route* shall not be required between *site* arrival points and the building or *facility* entrance if the only means of access between them is a vehicular way not providing for pedestrian access.

1104.2 Within a site.
At least one *accessible route* shall connect *accessible* buildings, *accessible* facilities, *accessible* elements and *accessible* spaces that are on the same *site*.

Exceptions:

1. An *accessible route* is not required between *accessible* buildings, *accessible* facilities, *accessible* elements and *accessible* spaces that have, as the only means of access between them, a vehicular way not providing for pedestrian access.

2. An *accessible route* to recreational facilities shall only be required to the extent specified in Section 1110.

1104.3 Connected spaces.
When a building or portion of a building is required to be *accessible*, at least one *accessible route* shall be provided to each portion of the building, to *accessible* building entrances connecting *accessible* pedestrian walkways and to the *public way*.

`

Exceptions:

1. *Stories* and *mezzanines* exempted by Section 1104.4.

2. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes with *fixed seating*, an *accessible route* shall not be required to serve levels where *wheelchair spaces* are not provided.

3. Vertical access to elevated employee work stations within a courtroom complying with Section 1108.4.1.4.

4. An *accessible route* to recreational facilities shall only be required to the extent specified in Section 1110.

1104.3.1 Employee work areas.
Common use circulation paths within *employee work areas* shall be *accessible routes*.

Exceptions:

1. *Common use circulation paths*, located within *employee work areas* that are less than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) in size and defined by permanently installed partitions, counters, casework or furnishings, shall not be required to be *accessible routes*.

2. *Common use circulation paths*, located within *employee work areas*, that are an integral component of equipment, shall not be required to be *accessible routes*.

3. *Common use circulation paths*, located within exterior *employee work areas* that are fully exposed to the weather, shall not be required to be *accessible routes*.

1104.3.2 Press boxes.
Press boxes in a building, room or space used for assembly purposes shall be on an *accessible route*.

Exceptions:

1. An *accessible route* shall not be required to press boxes in *bleachers* that have a single point of entry from the *bleachers*, provided that the aggregate area of all press boxes for each playing field is not more than 500 square feet (46 m^2).

2. An *accessible route* shall not be required to freestanding press boxes that are more than 12 feet (3660 mm) above grade provided that the aggregate area of all press boxes for each playing field is not more than 500 square feet (46 m^2).

1104.4 Multi-story buildings and facilities.
At least one *accessible route* shall connect each *accessible story* and *mezzanine* in multilevel buildings and *facilities*.

Exceptions:

`

1. An *accessible route* is not required to *stories* and *mezzanines* that have an aggregate area of not more than 3,000 square feet (278.7 m^2) and are located above and below *accessible* levels. This exception shall not apply to:

    1.1. Multiple tenant facilities of Group M occupancies containing five or more tenant spaces used for the sales or rental of goods and where at least one such tenant space is located on a floor level above or below the *accessible* levels;

    1.2. *Stories* or *mezzanines* containing offices of health care providers (Group B or I);

    1.3. Passenger transportation facilities and airports (Group A-3 or B); or

    1.4. Government buildings.

2. *Stories* or *mezzanines* that do not contain *accessible* elements or other spaces as determined by Section 1107 or 1108 are not required to be served by an *accessible route* from an *accessible* level.

3. In air traffic control towers, an *accessible route* is not required to serve the cab and the floor immediately below the cab.

4. Where a two-story building or facility has one *story* or *mezzanine* with an *occupant load* of five or fewer persons that does not contain *public use* space, that *story* or *mezzanine* shall not be required to be connected by an *accessible route* to the *story* above or below.

1104.5 Location.
Accessible routes shall coincide with or be located in the same area as a general *circulation path*. Where the *circulation path* is interior, the *accessible route* shall also be interior. Where only one *accessible route* is provided, the *accessible route* shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms, restrooms, closets or similar spaces.

Exceptions:

1. *Accessible routes* from parking garages contained within and serving *Type B units* are not required to be interior.

2. A single *accessible route* is permitted to pass through a kitchen or storage room in an *Accessible unit*, *Type A unit* or *Type B unit*.

1104.6 Security barriers.
Security barriers including, but not limited to, security bollards and security check points shall not obstruct a required *accessible route* or accessible *means of egress*.

Exception: Where security barriers incorporate elements that cannot comply with these requirements, such as certain metal detectors, fluoroscopes or other similar devices, the *accessible route* shall be permitted to be provided adjacent to security screening devices. The *accessible route* shall permit persons with disabilities passing around security barriers to maintain visual contact with their personal items to the same extent provided others passing through the security barrier.

`

SECTION 1105
ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES

1105.1 Public entrances.
In addition to *accessible* entrances required by Sections 1105.1.1 through 1105.1.7, at least 60 percent of all *public entrance*s shall be *accessible*.

Exceptions:

1. An *accessible* entrance is not required to areas not required to be *accessible*.

2. Loading and *service entrances* that are not the only entrance to a tenant space.

1105.1.1 Parking garage entrances.
Where provided, direct access for pedestrians from parking structures to buildings or facility entrances shall be *accessible*.

1105.1.2 Entrances from tunnels or elevated walkways.
Where direct access is provided for pedestrians from a pedestrian tunnel or elevated walkway to a building or facility, at least one entrance to the building or facility from each tunnel or walkway shall be *accessible*.

1105.1.3 Restricted entrances.
Where *restricted entrances* are provided to a building or facility, at least one *restricted entrance* to the building or facility shall be *accessible*.

1105.1.4 Entrances for inmates or detainees.
Where entrances used only by inmates or detainees and security personnel are provided at judicial facilities, detention facilities or correctional facilities, at least one such entrance shall be *accessible*.

1105.1.5 Service entrances.
If a *service entrance* is the only entrance to a building or a tenant space in a facility, that entrance shall be *accessible*.

1105.1.6 Tenant spaces.
At least one *accessible* entrance shall be provided to each tenant in a facility.

Exception: An *accessible* entrance is not required to self-service storage facilities that are not required to be *accessible*.

1105.1.7 Dwelling units and sleeping units.
At least one *accessible* entrance shall be provided to each *dwelling unit* and *sleeping unit* in a facility.

Exception: An *accessible* entrance is not required to *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* that are not required to be *Accessible units*, *Type A units* or *Type B units*.

SECTION 1106
PARKING AND PASSENGER LOADING FACILITIES

`

1106.1 Required.
Where parking is provided, *accessible* parking spaces shall be provided in compliance with Table 1106.1, except as required by Sections 1106.2 through 1106.4. Where more than one parking facility is provided on a *site*, the number of parking spaces required to be *accessible* shall be calculated separately for each parking facility.

> **Exception:** This section does not apply to parking spaces used exclusively for buses, trucks, other delivery vehicles, law enforcement vehicles or vehicular impound and motor pools where lots accessed by the public are provided with an *accessible* passenger loading zone.

TABLE 1106.1
ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES

TOTAL PARKING SPACES PROVIDED IN PARKING FACILITIES	REQUIRED MINIMUM NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE SPACES
1 to 25	1
26 to 50	2
51 to 75	3
76 to 100	4
101 to 150	5
151 to 200	6
201 to 300	7
301 to 400	8
401 to 500	9
501 to 1,000	2% of total
1,001 and over	20, plus one for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1,000

1106.2 Groups I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4.
Accessible parking spaces shall be provided in Group I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies in accordance with Items 1 through 4 as applicable.

1. In Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies that are required to have *Accessible*, *Type A* or *Type B dwelling units* or *sleeping units*, at least 2 percent, but not less than one, of each type of parking space provided shall be *accessible*.

2. In Group I-1 and R-1 occupancies, *accessible* parking shall be provided in accordance with Table 1106.1.

3. Where at least one parking space is provided for each *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit*, at least one *accessible* parking space shall be provided for each *Accessible* and *Type A unit*.

4. Where parking is provided within or beneath a building, *accessible* parking spaces shall also be provided within or beneath the building.

1106.3 Hospital outpatient facilities.
At least 10 percent, but not less than one, of care recipient and visitor parking spaces provided to serve hospital outpatient facilities shall be *accessible*.

`

1106.4 Rehabilitation facilities and outpatient physical therapy facilities.
At least 20 percent, but not less than one, of the portion of care recipient and visitor parking spaces serving rehabilitation facilities specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility and outpatient physical therapy facilities shall be *accessible*.

1106.5 Van spaces.
For every six or fraction of six *accessible* parking spaces, at least one shall be a van-accessible parking space.

> **Exception:** In Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies, van-accessible spaces located within private garages shall be permitted to have vehicular routes, entrances, parking spaces and access aisles with a minimum vertical clearance of 7 feet (2134 mm).

1106.6 Location.
Accessible parking spaces shall be located on the shortest *accessible route* of travel from adjacent parking to an *accessible* building entrance. In parking facilities that do not serve a particular building, *accessible* parking spaces shall be located on the shortest route to an *accessible* pedestrian entrance to the parking facility. Where buildings have multiple *accessible* entrances with adjacent parking, *accessible* parking spaces shall be dispersed and located near the *accessible* entrances. Wherever practical, the accessible route shall not cross lanes of vehicular traffic. Where crossing traffic lanes is necessary, the route shall be designated and marked as a crosswalk.

> **Exceptions:**
>
> 1. In multilevel parking structures, van-accessible parking spaces are permitted on one level.
>
> 2. *Accessible* parking spaces shall be permitted to be located in different parking facilities if substantially equivalent or greater accessibility is provided in terms of distance from an *accessible* entrance or entrances, parking fee and user convenience.

1106.7 Passenger loading zones.
Passenger loading zones shall be *accessible*.

> **1106.7.1 Continuous loading zones.**
> Where passenger loading zones are provided, one passenger loading zone in every continuous 100 linear feet (30.4 m) maximum of loading zone space shall be *accessible*.
>
> **1106.7.2 Medical facilities.**
> A passenger loading zone shall be provided at an *accessible* entrance to licensed medical and long-term care facilities where people receive physical or medical treatment or care and where the period of stay exceeds 24 hours.
>
> **1106.7.3 Valet parking.**
> A passenger loading zone shall be provided at valet parking services.

`

1106.7.4 Mechanical access parking garages.
Mechanical access parking garages shall provide at least one passenger loading zone at vehicle drop-off and vehicle pickup areas.

SECTION 1107
DWELLING UNITS AND SLEEPING UNITS

1107.1 General.
In addition to the other requirements of this chapter, occupancies having *dwelling units* or *sleeping unit*s shall be provided with *accessible* features in accordance with this section.

1107.2 Design.
Dwelling units and *sleeping unit*s that are required to be *Accessible units*, *Type A units* and *Type B units* shall comply with the applicable portions of Chapter 10 of ICC A117.1. Units required to be *Type A units* are permitted to be designed and constructed as *Accessible units*. Units required to be *Type B units* are permitted to be designed and constructed as *Accessible units* or as *Type A units*.

1107.3 Accessible spaces.
Rooms and spaces available to the general public or available for use by residents and serving *Accessible units*, *Type A units* or *Type B units* shall be *accessible*. *Accessible* spaces shall include toilet and bathing rooms, kitchen, living and dining areas and any exterior spaces, including patios, terraces and balconies.

Exceptions:

1. *Stories* and *mezzanines* exempted by Section 1107.4.

2. Recreational facilities in accordance with Section 1110.2.

3. Exterior decks, patios or balconies that are part of *Type B units* and have impervious surfaces, and that are not more than 4 inches (102 mm) below the finished floor level of the adjacent interior space of the unit.

1107.4 Accessible route.
At least one *accessible route* shall connect *accessible* building or facility entrances with the primary entrance of each *Accessible unit*, *Type A unit* and *Type B unit* within the building or facility and with those exterior and interior spaces and facilities that serve the units.

Exceptions:

1. If due to circumstances outside the control of the owner, either the slope of the finished ground level between *accessible* facilities and buildings exceeds one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1:12), or where physical barriers or legal restrictions prevent the installation of an *accessible route*, a vehicular route with parking that complies with Section 1106 at each *public* or *common use* facility or building is permitted in place of the *accessible route*.

2. In Group I-3 facilities, an *accessible route* is not required to connect *stories* or *mezzanines* where *Accessible units*, all *common use* areas serving *Accessible units* and all *public use* areas are on an *accessible* route.

`

3. In Group R-2 facilities with *Type A units* complying with Section 1107.6.2.2.1, an *accessible route* is not required to connect *stories* or *mezzanines* where *Type A units*, all *common use* areas serving *Type A units* and all public use areas are on an *accessible route*.

4. In other than Group R-2 dormitory housing provided by places of education, in Group R-2 facilities with *Accessible units* complying with Section 1107.6.2.3.1, an *accessible route* is not required to connect *stories* or *mezzanines* where *Accessible units*, all *common use* areas serving *Accessible units* and all *public use* areas are on an *accessible* route.

5. In Group R-1, an *accessible route* is not required to connect *stories* or *mezzanines* within individual units, provided the *accessible* level meets the provisions for *Accessible units* and sleeping accommodations for two persons minimum and a toilet facility are provided on that level.

6. In congregate residences in Groups R-3 and R-4, an *accessible route* is not required to connect *stories* or *mezzanines* where *Accessible units* or *Type B units*, all *common use* areas serving *Accessible units* and *Type B units* and all *public use* areas serving *Accessible units* and *Type B units* are on an *accessible route*.

7. An *accessible route* between *stories* is not required where *Type B units* are exempted by Section 1107.7.

1107.5 Group I.
Accessible units and *Type B units* shall be provided in Group I occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.5.1 through 1107.5.5.

1107.5.1 Group I-1.
Accessible units and *Type B units* shall be provided in Group I-1 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.5.1.1 and 1107.5.1.2.

1107.5.1.1 Accessible units.
In Group I-1 Condition 1, at least 4 percent, but not less than one, of the *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* shall be *Accessible units*. In Group I-1 Condition 2, at least 10 percent, but not less than one, of the *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* shall be *Accessible units*.

1107.5.1.2 Type B units.
In structures with four or more *dwelling units* or *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence*, every *dwelling unit* and *sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be a *Type B unit*.

Exception: The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.5.2 Group I-2 nursing homes.
Accessible units and *Type B units* shall be provided in nursing homes of Group I-2 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.5.2.1 and 1107.5.2.2.

1107.5.2.1 Accessible units.
At least 50 percent but not less than one of each type of the *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* shall be *Accessible units*.

`

1107.5.2.2 Type B units.
In structures with four or more *dwelling units* or *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence*, every *dwelling unit* and *sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be a *Type B unit*.

Exception: The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.5.3 Group I-2 hospitals.
Accessible units and *Type B units* shall be provided in general-purpose hospitals, psychiatric facilities and detoxification facilities of Group I-2 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.5.3.1 and 1107.5.3.2.

1107.5.3.1 Accessible units.
At least 10 percent, but not less than one, of the *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* shall be *Accessible units*.

Exception: Entry doors to *Accessible dwelling units* or *sleeping units* shall not be required to provide the maneuvering clearance beyond the latch side of the door.

1107.5.3.2 Type B units.
In structures with four or more *dwelling units* or *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence*, every *dwelling unit* and *sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be a *Type B unit*.

Exception: The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.5.4 Group I-2 rehabilitation facilities.
In hospitals and rehabilitation facilities of Group I-2 occupancies that specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility, or units within either that specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility, 100 percent of the *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* shall be *Accessible units*.

1107.5.5 Group I-3.
Accessible units shall be provided in Group I-3 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.5.5.1 through 1107.5.5.3.

1107.5.5.1 Group I-3 sleeping units.
In Group I-3 occupancies, at least 3 percent of the total number of *sleeping units* in the facility, but not less than one unit in each classification level, shall be *Accessible units*.

1107.5.5.2 Special holding cells and special housing cells or rooms.
In addition to the *Accessible units* required by Section 1107.5.5.1, where special holding cells or special housing cells or rooms are provided, at least one serving each purpose shall be an *Accessible unit*. Cells or rooms subject to this requirement include, but are not limited to, those used for purposes of orientation, protective custody, administrative or disciplinary detention or segregation, detoxification and medical isolation.

Exception: Cells or rooms specially designed without protrusions and that are used solely for purposes of suicide prevention shall not be required to include grab bars.

`

1107.5.5.3 Medical care facilities.
Patient *sleeping units* or cells required to be *Accessible units* in medical care facilities shall be provided in addition to any medical isolation cells required to comply with Section 1107.5.5.2.

1107.6 Group R.
Accessible units, *Type A units* and *Type B units* shall be provided in Group R occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.6.1 through 1107.6.4. Accessible and Type A units shall be apportioned among efficiency dwelling units, single bedroom units and multiple bedroom units, in proportion to the numbers of such units in the building.

1107.6.1 Group R-1.
Accessible units and *Type B units* shall be provided in Group R-1 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.6.1.1 and 1107.6.1.2.

1107.6.1.1 Accessible units.
Accessible dwelling units and *sleeping units* shall be provided in accordance with Table 1107.6.1.1. Where buildings contain more than 50 *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*, the number of *Accessible units* shall be determined per building. Where buildings contain 50 or fewer *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*, all *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* on a *site* shall be considered to determine the total number of *Accessible units*. *Accessible units* shall be dispersed among the various classes of units.

TABLE 1107.6.1.1
ACCESSIBLE DWELLING UNITS AND SLEEPING UNITS

TOTAL NUMBER OF UNITS PROVIDED	MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE UNITS WITHOUT ROLL-IN SHOWERS	MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE UNITS WITH ROLL-IN SHOWERS	TOTAL NUMBER OF REQUIRED ACCESSIBLE UNITS
1 to 25	1	0	1
26 to 50	2	0	2
51 to 75	3	1	4
76 to 100	4	1	5
101 to 150	5	2	7
151 to 200	6	2	8
201 to 300	7	3	10
301 to 400	8	4	12
401 to 500	9	4	13
501 to 1,000	2% of total	1% of total	3% of total
Over 1,000	20, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1,000	10 plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1,000	30 plus 2 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1,000

In **1107.6.1.2 Type B units.** structures with four or more *dwelling units* or *sleeping units* *be* *intended to* *as* *occupied* *a* *residence*, every *dwelling* *unit* and *sleeping* *unit* *intended to* *be* *occupied* *as* *a* *residence* shall be a *Type B unit*.

`

Exception: The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.6.2 Group R-2.
Accessible units, *Type A units* and *Type B units* shall be provided in Group R-2 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.6.2.1 through 1107.6.2.3.

1107.6.2.1 Live/work units.
In *live/work units* constructed in accordance with Section 419, the nonresidential portion is required to be *accessible*. In a structure where there are four or more *live/work units intended to be occupied as a residence*, the residential portion of the *live/work unit* shall be a *Type B unit*.

Exception: The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.6.2.2 Apartment houses, monasteries and convents.
Type A units and *Type B units* shall be provided in apartment houses, monasteries and convents in accordance with Sections 1107.6.2.2.1 and 1107.6.2.2.2.

1107.6.2.2.1 Type A units.
In Group R-2 occupancies containing more than 10 *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of the units shall be a *Type A unit*. All ~~Group R-2~~ units on a *site* shall be considered to determine the total number of units and the required number of *Type A units*. *Type A units* shall be dispersed among the various classes of units, as described in Section 1107.6. Bedrooms in monasteries and convents shall be counted as *sleeping units* for the purpose of determining the number of units. Where the *sleeping units* are grouped into suites, only one *sleeping unit* in each suite shall count towards the number of required *Type A units*.

Exceptions:

1. The number of *Type A units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

2. *Existing structures* on a *site* shall not contribute to the total number of units on a *site*.

1107.6.2.2.2 Type B units.
Where there are four or more *dwelling units* or *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence* in a single structure, every *dwelling unit* and *sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be a *Type B unit*.

Exception: The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.6.2.3 Group R-2 other than live/work units, apartment houses, monasteries and convents.
In Group R-2 occupancies, other than *live/work units*, apartment houses, monasteries and convents falling within the scope of Sections 1107.6.2.1 and 1107.6.2.2, *Accessible units* and *Type B units* shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1107.6.2.2.1 and 1107.6.2.2.2. Bedrooms within congregate living facilities shall be counted as *sleeping*

`

units for the purpose of determining the number of units. Where the *sleeping units* are grouped into suites, only one *sleeping unit* in each suite shall be permitted to count towards the number of required *Accessible units*. Accessible units shall be dispersed among the various classes of units, as described in Section 1107.6.

1107.6.2.3.1 Accessible units.
Accessible dwelling units and *sleeping unit*s shall be provided in accordance with Table 1107.6.1.1.

1107.6.2.3.2 Type B units.
Where there are four or more *dwelling units* or *sleeping unit*s *intended to be occupied as a residence* in a single structure, every *dwelling unit* and every *sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be a *Type B unit*.

Exception: The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.6.3 Group R-3.
In Group R-3 occupancies where there are four or more *dwelling units* or *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence* in a single structure, every *dwelling unit* and *sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be a *Type B unit*. Bedrooms within congregate living facilities shall be counted as *sleeping units* for the purpose of determining the number of units.

Exception: The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.6.4 Group R-4.
Accessible units and *Type B units* shall be provided in Group R-4 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.6.4.1 and 1107.6.4.2. Bedrooms in Group R-4 facilities shall be counted as sleeping units for the purpose of determining the number of units.

1107.6.4.1 Accessible units.
In Group R-4 Condition 1, at least one of the *sleeping units* shall be an *Accessible unit*. In Group R-4 Condition 2, at least two of the *sleeping units* shall be an *Accessible unit*.

1107.6.4.2 Type B units.
In structures with four or more *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence*, every *sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be a *Type B unit*.

Exception: The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.7 General exceptions.
Where specifically permitted by Section 1107.5 or 1107.6, the required number of *Type A units* and *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Sections 1107.7.1 through 1107.7.5.

1107.7.1 Structures without elevator service.
Where no elevator service is provided in a structure, only the *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* that are located on stories indicated in Sections 1107.7.1.1 and 1107.7.1.2 are required to be *Type A units* and *Type B units*, respectively. The number of *Type A units* shall be determined in accordance with Section 1107.6.2.2.1.

`

1107.7.1.1 One story with Type B units required.
At least one *story* containing *dwelling units* or *sleeping unit*s *intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be provided with an *accessible* entrance from the exterior of the structure and all units *intended to be occupied as a residence* on that *story* shall be *Type B units*.

1107.7.1.2 Additional stories with Type B units.
On all other stories that have a building entrance in proximity to arrival points intended to serve units on that *story*, as indicated in Items 1 and 2, all *dwelling units* and *sleeping unit*s *intended to be occupied as a residence* served by that entrance on that *story* shall be *Type B units*.

1. Where the slopes of the undisturbed *site* measured between the planned entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance are 10 percent or less, and

2. Where the slopes of the planned finished grade measured between the entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance are 10 percent or less.

Where no such arrival points are within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the entrance, the closest arrival point shall be used unless that arrival point serves the *story* required by Section 1107.7.1.1.

1107.7.2 Multi-story units.
A *multi-story dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* that is not provided with elevator service is not required to be a *Type B unit*. Where a *multi-story unit* is provided with external elevator service to only one floor, the floor provided with elevator service shall be the primary entry to the unit, shall comply with the requirements for a *Type B unit* and, where provided within the unit, a living area, a kitchen and a toilet facility shall be provided on that floor.

1107.7.3 Elevator service to the lowest story with units.
Where elevator service in the building provides an *accessible route* only to the lowest *story* containing *dwelling units* or *sleeping unit*s *intended to be occupied as a residence*, only the units on that *story* that are *intended to be occupied as a residence* are required to be *Type B units*.

1107.7.4 Site impracticality.
On a *site* with multiple non-elevator buildings, the number of units required by Section 1107.7.1 to be *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced to a percentage that is equal to the percentage of the entire *site* having grades, prior to development, that are less than 10 percent, provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. Not less than 20 percent of the units required by Section 1107.7.1 on the *site* are *Type B units*;

2. Units required by Section 1107.7.1, where the slope between the building entrance serving the units on that *story* and a pedestrian or vehicular arrival point is no greater than 8.33 percent, are *Type B units*;

`

3. Units required by Section 1107.7.1, where an elevated walkway is planned between a building entrance serving the units on that *story* and a pedestrian or vehicular arrival point and the slope between them is 10 percent or less, are *Type B units*; and

4. Units served by an elevator in accordance with Section 1107.7.3 are *Type B units*.

1107.7.5 Design flood elevation.
The required number of *Type A units* and *Type B units* shall not apply to a *site* where the required elevation of the lowest floor or the lowest horizontal structural building members of non-elevator buildings are at or above the *design flood elevation* resulting in:

1. A difference in elevation between the minimum required floor elevation at the primary entrances and vehicular and pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) exceeding 30 inches (762 mm), and

2. A slope exceeding 10 percent between the minimum required floor elevation at the primary entrances and vehicular and pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm).

Where no such arrival points are within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the primary entrances, the closest arrival points shall be used.

SECTION 1108
SPECIAL OCCUPANCIES

1108.1 General.
In addition to the other requirements of this chapter, the requirements of Sections 1108.2 through 1108.4 shall apply to specific occupancies.

1108.2 Assembly area seating.
A building, room or space used for assembly purposes with *fixed seating* shall comply with Sections 1108.2.1 through 1108.2.5. Lawn seating shall comply with Section 1108.2.6. Assistive listening systems shall comply with Section 1108.2.7. Performance areas viewed from assembly seating areas shall comply with Section 1108.2.8. Dining areas shall comply with Section 1108.2.9.

1108.2.1 Services.
If a service or facility is provided in an area that is not *accessible*, the same service or facility shall be provided on an *accessible* level and shall be *accessible*.

1108.2.2 Wheelchair spaces.
In rooms and spaces used for assembly purposes with *fixed seating*, *accessible wheelchair spaces* shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1108.2.2.1 through 1108.2.2.3.

1108.2.2.1 General seating.
Wheelchair spaces shall be provided in accordance with Table 1108.2.2.1.

TABLE 1108.2.2.1
ACCESSIBLE WHEELCHAIR SPACES

`

CAPACITY OF SEATING IN ASSEMBLY AREAS	MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF WHEELCHAIR SPACES
4 to 25	1
26 to 50	2
51 to 100	4
101 to 300	5
301 to 500	6
501 to 5,000	6, plus 1 for each 150, or fraction thereof, between 501 through 5,000
5,001 and over	36 plus 1 for each 200, or fraction thereof, over 5,000

1108.2.2.2 Luxury boxes, club boxes and suites.
In each luxury box, club box and suite within arenas, stadiums and *grandstands*, *wheelchair spaces* shall be provided in accordance with Table 1108.2.2.1.

1108.2.2.3 Other boxes.
In boxes other than those required to comply with Section 1108.2.2.2, the total number of *wheelchair spaces* provided shall be determined in accordance with Table 1108.2.2.1. *Wheelchair spaces* shall be located in not less than 20 percent of all boxes provided.

1108.2.3 Companion seats.
At least one companion seat shall be provided for each *wheelchair space* required by Sections 1108.2.2.1 through 1108.2.2.3.

1108.2.4 Dispersion of wheelchair spaces in multilevel assembly seating areas.
In *multilevel assembly seating* areas, *wheelchair spaces* shall be provided on the main floor level and on one of each two additional floor or *mezzanine* levels. *Wheelchair spaces* shall be provided in each luxury box, club box and suite within assembly facilities.

Exceptions:

1. In *multilevel assembly seating* areas utilized for worship services where the second floor or *mezzanine* level contains 25 percent or less of the total seating capacity, *wheelchair spaces* shall be permitted to all be located on the main level.

2. In *multilevel assembly seating* areas where the second floor or *mezzanine* level provides 25 percent or less of the total seating capacity and 300 or fewer seats, all *wheelchair spaces* shall be permitted to be located on the main level.

3. *Wheelchair spaces* in team or player seating serving areas of sport activity are not required to be dispersed.

1108.2.5 Designated aisle seats.
At least 5 percent, but not less than one, of the total number of aisle seats provided shall be designated aisle seats and shall be the aisle seats located closest to *accessible routes*.

Exception: Designated aisle seats are not required in team or player seating serving *areas of sport activity*.

`

1108.2.6 Lawn seating.
Lawn seating areas and exterior overflow seating areas, where fixed seats are not provided, shall connect to an *accessible route*.

1108.2.7 Assistive listening systems.
Each building, room or space used for assembly purposes where audible communications are integral to the use of the space shall have an assistive listening system.

Exception: Other than in courtrooms, an assistive listening system is not required where there is no audio amplification system.

1108.2.7.1 Receivers.
The number and type of receivers shall be provided for assistive listening systems in accordance with Table 1108.2.7.1.

Exceptions:

1. Where a building contains more than one room or space used for assembly purposes, the total number of required receivers shall be permitted to be calculated based on the total number of seats in the building, provided that all receivers are usable with all systems and if the rooms or spaces used for assembly purposes required to provide assistive listening are under one management.

2. Where all seats in a building, room or space used for assembly purposes are served by an induction loop assistive listening system, the minimum number of receivers required by Table 1108.2.7.1 to be hearing-aid compatible shall not be required.

TABLE 1108.2.7.1
RECEIVERS FOR ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS

CAPACITY OF SEATING IN ASSEMBLY AREAS	MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF RECEIVERS	MINIMUM NUMBER OF RECEIVERS TO BE HEARING-AID COMPATIBLE
50 or less	2	2
51 to 200	2, plus 1 per 25 seats over 50 seats*	2
201 to 500	2, plus 1 per 25 seats over 50 seats*	1 per 4 receivers*
501 to 1,000	20, plus 1 per 33 seats over 500 seats*	1 per 4 receivers*
1,001 to 2,000	35, plus 1 per 50 seats over 1,000 seats*	1 per 4 receivers*
Over 2,000	55, plus 1 per 100 seats over 2,000 seats*	1 per 4 receivers*

Note: * = or fraction thereof

`

1108.2.7.2 Ticket windows.
Where ticket windows are provided in stadiums and arenas, at least one window at each location shall have an assistive listening system.

1108.2.7.3 Public address systems.
Where stadiums, arenas and *grandstands* have 15,000 fixed seats or more and provide audible public announcements, they shall also provide pre-recorded or real-time captions of those audible public announcements.

1108.2.8 Performance areas.
An *accessible route* shall directly connect the performance area to the assembly seating area where a *circulation path* directly connects a performance area to an assembly seating area. An *accessible route* shall be provided from performance areas to ancillary areas or facilities used by performers.

1108.2.9 Dining and drinking areas.
In dining and drinking areas, all interior and exterior floor areas shall be *accessible* and be on an *accessible route*.

Exceptions:

1. An *accessible route* between *accessible* levels and stories above or below is not required where permitted by Section 1104.4, Exception 1.

2. An *accessible route* to dining and drinking areas in a *mezzanine* is not required, provided that the *mezzanine* contains less than 25 percent of the total combined area for dining and drinking and the same services, and decor are provided in the *accessible* area.

3. In sports facilities, tiered dining areas providing seating required to be *accessible* shall be required to have *accessible routes* serving at least 25 percent of the dining area, provided that *accessible routes* serve *accessible* seating and where each tier is provided with the same services.

4. Employee-only work areas shall comply with Sections 1103.2.2 and 1104.3.1.

1108.2.9.1 Dining surfaces.
Where dining surfaces for the consumption of food or drink are provided, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of the dining surfaces for the seating and standing spaces shall be *accessible* and be distributed throughout the facility and located on a level accessed by an *accessible route*.

1108.3 Self-service storage facilities.
Self-service storage facilities shall provide *accessible* individual self-storage spaces in accordance with Table 1108.3.

TABLE 1108.3
ACCESSIBLE SELF-SERVICE STORAGE FACILITIES

TOTAL SPACES IN FACILITY	MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED ACCESSIBLE SPACES
1 to 200	5%, but not less than 1

`

Over 200	10, plus 2% of total number of units over 200

1108.3.1 Dispersion.
Accessible individual self-service storage spaces shall be dispersed throughout the various classes of spaces provided. Where more classes of spaces are provided than the number of required *accessible* spaces, the number of *accessible* spaces shall not be required to exceed that required by Table 1108.3. *Accessible* spaces are permitted to be dispersed in a single building of a multi-building facility.

1108.4 Judicial facilities.
Judicial facilities shall comply with Sections 1108.4.1 and 1108.4.2.

1108.4.1 Courtrooms.
Each courtroom shall be *accessible* and comply with Sections 1108.4.1.1 through 1108.4.1.5.

1108.4.1.1 Jury box.
A *wheelchair space* shall be provided within the jury box.

Exception: Adjacent companion seating is not required.

1108.4.1.2 Gallery seating.
Wheelchair spaces shall be provided in accordance with Table 1108.2.2.1. Designated aisle seats shall be provided in accordance with Section 1108.2.5.

1108.4.1.3 Assistive listening systems.
An assistive listening system must be provided. Receivers shall be provided for the assistive listening system in accordance with Section 1108.2.7.1.

1108.4.1.4 Employee work stations.
The judge's bench, clerk's station, bailiff's station, deputy clerk's station and court reporter's station shall be located on an accessible route. The vertical access to elevated employee work stations within a courtroom is not required at the time of initial construction, provided a *ramp*, lift or elevator can be installed without requiring reconfiguration or extension of the courtroom or extension of the electrical system.

1108.4.1.5 Other work stations.
The litigant's and counsel stations, including the lectern, shall be *accessible*.

1108.4.2 Holding cells.
Central holding cells and court-floor holding cells shall comply with Sections 1108.4.2.1 and 1108.4.2.2.

1108.4.2.1 Central holding cells.
Where separate central holding cells are provided for adult males, juvenile males, adult females or juvenile females, one of each type shall be *accessible*. Where central holding cells are provided and are not separated by age or sex, at least one *accessible* cell shall be provided.

1108.4.2.2 Court-floor holding cells.
Where separate court-floor holding cells are provided for adult males, juvenile males, adult females or juvenile females, each courtroom shall be served by one *accessible* cell of each type. Where court-floor holding cells are provided and are not separated by age

`

or sex, courtrooms shall be served by at least one *accessible* cell. *Accessible* cells shall be permitted to serve more than one courtroom.

SECTION 1109
OTHER FEATURES AND FACILITIES

1109.1 General.
Accessible building features and facilities shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1109.2 through 1109.15.

Exception: *Accessible units*, *Type A units* and *Type B units* shall comply with Chapter 10 of ICC A117.1.

1109.2 Toilet and bathing facilities.
Each toilet room and bathing room shall be *accessible*. Where a floor level is not required to be connected by an *accessible route*, the only toilet rooms or bathing rooms provided within the facility shall not be located on the inaccessible floor. Except as provided for in Sections 1109.2.2 and 1109.2.3, at least one of each type of fixture, element, control or dispenser in each accessible toilet room and bathing room shall be *accessible*.

Exceptions:

1. Toilet rooms or bathing rooms accessed only through a private office, not for *common* or *public use* and intended for use by a single occupant, shall be permitted to comply with the specific exceptions in ICC A117.1.

2. This section is not applicable to toilet and bathing rooms that serve *dwelling units* or *sleeping units* that are not required to be *accessible* by Section 1107.

3. Where multiple single-user toilet rooms or bathing rooms are clustered at a single location, at least 50 percent but not less than one room for each use at each cluster shall be *accessible*.

4. Where no more than one urinal is provided in a toilet room or bathing room, the urinal is not required to be *accessible*.

5. Toilet rooms or bathing rooms that are part of critical care or intensive care patient sleeping rooms serving *Accessible units* are not required to be *accessible*.

6. Toilet rooms or bathing rooms designed for bariatrics patients are not required to comply with the toilet room and bathing room requirement in ICC A117.1. The *sleeping units* served by bariatrics toilet or bathing rooms shall not count toward the required number of *Accessible sleeping units.*

7. Where toilet facilities are primarily for children's use, required *accessible* water closets, toilet compartments and lavatories shall be permitted to comply with children's provision of ICC A117.1.

1109.2.1 Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms.
In assembly and mercantile occupancies, an *accessible* family or assisted-use toilet room shall be provided where an aggregate of six or more male and female water closets is required. In buildings of mixed occupancy, only those water closets required for the

`

assembly or mercantile occupancy shall be used to determine the family or assisted-use toilet room requirement. In recreational facilities where separate-sex bathing rooms are provided, an *accessible* family or assisted-use bathing room shall be provided. Fixtures located within family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms shall be included in determining the number of fixtures provided in an occupancy.

Exception: Where each separate-sex bathing room has only one shower or bathtub fixture, a family or assisted-use bathing room is not required.

1109.2.1.1 Standard.
Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms shall comply with Sections 1109.2.1.2 through 1109.2.1.7.

1109.2.1.2 Family or assisted-use toilet rooms.
Family or assisted-use toilet rooms shall include only one water closet and only one lavatory. A family or assisted-use bathing room in accordance with Section 1109.2.1.3 shall be considered a family or assisted-use toilet room.

Exception: A urinal is permitted to be provided in addition to the water closet in a family or assisted-use toilet room.

1109.2.1.3 Family or assisted-use bathing rooms.
Family or assisted-use bathing rooms shall include only one shower or bathtub fixture. Family or assisted-use bathing rooms shall also include one water closet and one lavatory. Where storage facilities are provided for separate-sex bathing rooms, *accessible* storage facilities shall be provided for family or assisted-use bathing rooms.

1109.2.1.4 Location.
Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms shall be located on an *accessible route*. Family or assisted-use toilet rooms shall be located not more than one *story* above or below separate-sex toilet rooms. The *accessible route* from any separate-sex toilet room to a family or assisted-use toilet room shall not exceed 500 feet (152 m).

1109.2.1.5 Prohibited location.
In passenger transportation facilities and airports, the *accessible route* from separate-sex toilet rooms to a family or assisted-use toilet room shall not pass through security checkpoints.

1109.2.1.6 Clear floor space.
Where doors swing into a family or assisted-use toilet or bathing room, a clear floor space not less than 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) shall be provided, within the room, beyond the area of the door swing.

1109.2.1.7 Privacy.
Doors to family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms shall be securable from within the room.

1109.2.2 Water closet compartment.
Where water closet compartments are provided in a toilet room or bathing room, at least 5 percent of the total number of compartments shall be wheelchair *accessible*. Where the combined total water closet compartments and urinals provided in a toilet room or bathing room is six or more, at least 5 percent of the total number of compartments shall be ambulatory *accessible*, provided in addition to the wheelchair-*accessible* compartment.

`

1109.2.3 Lavatories.
Where lavatories are provided, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, shall be *accessible*. Where an *accessible* lavatory is located within the *accessible* water closet compartment at least one additional *accessible* lavatory shall be provided in the multicompartment toilet room outside the water closet compartment. Where the total lavatories provided in a toilet room or bathing facility is six or more, at least one lavatory with enhanced reach ranges shall be provided.

1109.3 Sinks.
Where sinks are provided, at least 5 percent but not less than one provided in *accessible* spaces shall be *accessible*.

Exception: Mop or service sinks are not required to be *accessible*.

1109.4 Kitchens and kitchenettes.
Where kitchens and kitchenettes are provided in *accessible* spaces or rooms, they shall be *accessible*.

1109.5 Drinking fountains.
Where drinking fountains are provided on an exterior site, on a floor or within a secured area, the drinking fountains shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1109.5.1 and 1109.5.2.

1109.5.1 Minimum number.
No fewer than two drinking fountains shall be provided. One drinking fountain shall comply with the requirements for people who use a wheelchair and one drinking fountain shall comply with the requirements for standing persons.

Exceptions:

1. A single drinking fountain with two separate spouts that complies with the requirements for people who use a wheelchair and standing persons shall be permitted to be substituted for two separate drinking fountains.

2. Where drinking fountains are primarily for children's use, drinking fountains for people using wheelchairs shall be permitted to comply with the children's provisions in ICC A117.1 and drinking fountains for standing children shall be permitted to provide the spout at 30 inches (762 mm) minimum above the floor.

1109.5.2 More than the minimum number.
Where more than the minimum number of drinking fountains specified in Section 1109.5.1 is provided, 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with the requirements for persons who use a wheelchair and 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with the requirements for standing persons.

Exceptions:

1. Where 50 percent of the drinking fountains yields a fraction, 50 percent shall be permitted to be rounded up or down, provided that the total number of drinking fountains complying with this section equals 100 percent of the drinking fountains.

`

2. Where drinking fountains are primarily for children's use, drinking fountains for people using wheelchairs shall be permitted to comply with the children's provisions in ICC A117.1 and drinking fountains for standing children shall be permitted to provide the spout at 30 inches (762 mm) minimum above the floor.

1109.6 Saunas and steam rooms.
Where provided, saunas and steam rooms shall be *accessible*.

Exception: Where saunas or steam rooms are clustered at a single location, at least 5 percent of the saunas and steam rooms, but not less than one, of each type in each cluster shall be *accessible*.

1109.7 Elevators.
Passenger elevators on an *accessible route* shall be *accessible* and comply with Chapter 30.

1109.8 Lifts.
Platform (wheelchair) lifts are permitted to be a part of a required *accessible route* in new construction where indicated in Items 1 through 10. Platform (wheelchair) lifts shall be installed in accordance with ASME A18.1.

1. An *accessible route* to a performing area and speaker platforms.

2. An *accessible route* to *wheelchair spaces* required to comply with the *wheelchair space* dispersion requirements of Sections 1108.2.2 through 1108.2.6.

3. An *accessible route* to spaces that are not open to the general public with an *occupant load* of not more than five.

4. An *accessible route* within an individual *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* required to be an *Accessible unit*, *Type A unit* or *Type B unit*.

5. An *accessible route* to jury boxes and witness stands; raised courtroom stations including judges' benches, clerks' stations, bailiffs' stations, deputy clerks' stations and court reporters' stations; and to depressed areas such as the well of the court.

6. An *accessible route* to load and unload areas serving amusement rides.

7. An *accessible route* to play components or soft contained play structures.

8. An *accessible route* to team or player seating areas serving *areas of sport activity*.

9. An *accessible route* instead of gangways serving recreational boating facilities and fishing piers and platforms.

10. An *accessible route* where existing exterior *site* constraints make use of a *ramp* or elevator infeasible.

1109.9 Storage.
Where fixed or built-in storage elements such as cabinets, coat hooks, shelves, medicine cabinets, lockers, closets and drawers are provided in required *accessible* spaces, at least 5 percent, but not less than one of each type shall be *accessible*.

`

1109.9.1 Equity.
Accessible facilities and spaces shall be provided with the same storage elements as provided in the similar nonaccessible facilities and spaces.

1109.9.2 Shelving and display units.
Self-service shelves and display units shall be located on an *accessible route*. Such shelving and display units shall not be required to comply with reach-range provisions.

1109.10 Detectable warnings.
Passenger transit platform edges bordering a drop-off and not protected by platform screens or *guards* shall have a *detectable warning*.

Exception: *Detectable warnings* are not required at bus stops.

1109.11 Seating at tables, counters and work surfaces.
Where seating or standing space at fixed or built-in tables, counters or work surfaces is provided in *accessible* spaces, at least 5 percent of the seating and standing spaces, but not less than one, shall be *accessible*.

Exception: Check-writing surfaces at check-out aisles not required to comply with Section 1109.12.2 are not required to be *accessible*.

1109.11.1 Dispersion.
Accessible fixed or built-in seating at tables, counters or work surfaces shall be distributed throughout the space or facility containing such elements and located on a level accessed by an *accessible route*.

1109.11.2 Visiting areas.
Visiting areas in judicial facilities and Group I-3 shall comply with Sections 1109.11.2.1 and 1109.11.2.2.

1109.11.2.1 Cubicles and counters.
At least 5 percent, but not less than one of the cubicles, shall be *accessible* on both the visitor and detainee sides. Where counters are provided, at least one shall be *accessible* on both the visitor and detainee sides.

Exception: This requirement shall not apply to the detainee side of cubicles or counters at noncontact visiting areas not serving *Accessible unit* holding cells.

1109.11.2.2 Partitions.
Where solid partitions or security glazing separate visitors from detainees, at least one of each type of cubicle or counter partition shall be *accessible*.

1109.12 Service facilities.
Service facilities shall provide for *accessible* features in accordance with Sections 1109.12.1 through 1109.12.5.

1109.12.1 Dressing, fitting and locker rooms.
Where dressing rooms, fitting rooms or locker rooms are provided, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of each type of use in each cluster provided shall be *accessible*.

1109.12.2 Check-out aisles.
Where check-out aisles are provided, *accessible* check-out aisles shall be provided in

`

accordance with Table 1109.12.2. Where check-out aisles serve different functions, accessible check-out aisles shall be provided in accordance with Table 1109.12.2 for each function. Where check-out aisles are dispersed throughout the building or facility, *accessible* check-out aisles shall also be dispersed. Traffic control devices, security devices and turnstiles located in *accessible* check-out aisles or lanes shall be *accessible*.

Exception: Where the public use area is under 5,000 square feet (465 m^2) not more than one *accessible* check-out aisle shall be required.

TABLE 1109.12.2
ACCESSIBLE CHECK-OUT AISLES

TOTAL CHECK-OUT AISLES OF EACH FUNCTION	MINIMUM NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE CHECK-OUT AISLES OF EACH FUNCTION
1 to 4	1
5 to 8	2
9 to 15	3
Over 15	3, plus 20% of additional aisles

1109.12.3 Point of sale and service counters.
Where counters are provided for sales or distribution of goods or services, at least one of each type provided shall be *accessible*. Where such counters are dispersed throughout the building or facility, *accessible* counters shall also be dispersed.

1109.12.4 Food service lines.
Food service lines shall be *accessible*. Where self-service shelves are provided, at least 50 percent, but not less than one, of each type provided shall be *accessible*.

1109.12.5 Queue and waiting lines.
Queue and waiting lines servicing *accessible* counters or check-out aisles shall be *accessible*.

1109.13 Controls, operating mechanisms and hardware.
Controls, operating mechanisms and hardware intended for operation by the occupant, including switches that control lighting and ventilation and electrical convenience outlets, in *accessible* spaces, along *accessible routes* or as parts of *accessible* elements shall be *accessible*.

Exceptions:

1. Operable parts that are intended for use only by service or maintenance personnel shall not be required to be *accessible*.

2. Electrical or communication receptacles serving a dedicated use shall not be required to be *accessible*.

3. Where two or more outlets are provided in a kitchen above a length of counter top that is uninterrupted by a sink or appliance, one outlet shall not be required to be *accessible*.

`

4. Floor electrical receptacles shall not be required to be *accessible*.

5. HVAC diffusers shall not be required to be *accessible*.

6. Except for light switches, where redundant controls are provided for a single element, one control in each space shall not be required to be *accessible*.

7. Access doors or gates in barrier walls and fences protecting pools, spas and hot tubs shall be permitted to comply with Section 1010.1.9.2.

1109.14 Fuel-dispensing systems.
Fuel-dispensing systems shall be *accessible*.

1109.15 Gaming machines and gaming tables.
Two percent, but not less than one, of each type of gaming table provided shall be *accessible* and provided with a front approach. Two percent of gaming machines provided shall be *accessible* and provided with a front approach. *Accessible* gaming machines shall be distributed throughout the different types of gaming machines provided.

SECTION 1110
RECREATIONAL FACILITIES

1110.1 General.
Recreational facilities shall be provided with *accessible* features in accordance with Sections 1110.2 through 1110.4.

1110.2 Facilities serving Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies.
Recreational facilities that serve Group R-2, R-3 and Group R-4 occupancies shall comply with Sections 1110.2.1 through 1110.2.3, as applicable.

1110.2.1 Facilities serving Accessible units.
In Group R-2 and R-4 occupancies where recreational facilities serve *Accessible units*, every recreational facility of each type serving *Accessible units* shall be *accessible*.

1110.2.2 Facilities serving Type A and Type B units in a single building.
In Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies where recreational facilities serve a single building containing *Type A units* or *Type B units*, 25 percent, but not less than one, of each type of recreational facility shall be *accessible*. Every recreational facility of each type on a site shall be considered to determine the total number of each type that is required to be *accessible*.

1110.2.3 Facilities serving Type A and Type B units in multiple buildings.
In Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies on a single site where multiple buildings containing *Type A units* or *Type B units* are served by recreational facilities, 25 percent, but not less than one, of each type of recreational facility serving each building shall be *accessible*. The total number of each type of recreational facility that is required to be *accessible* shall be determined by considering every recreational facility of each type serving each building on the site.

1110.3 Other occupancies.
Recreational facilities not falling within the purview of Section 1110.2 shall be *accessible*.

`

1110.4 Recreational facilities.
Recreational facilities shall be *accessible* and shall be on an *accessible route* to the extent specified in this section.

1110.4.1 Area of sport activity.
Each *area of sport activity* shall be on an *accessible route* and shall not be required to be *accessible* except as provided for in Sections 1110.4.2 through 1110.4.14.

1110.4.2 Team or player seating.
At least one wheelchair space shall be provided in team or player seating areas serving *areas of sport activity*.

Exception: Wheelchair spaces shall not be required in team or player seating areas serving bowling lanes that are not required to be *accessible* in accordance with Section 1110.4.3.

1110.4.3 Bowling lanes.
An *accessible* route shall be provided to at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of each type of bowling lane.

1110.4.4 Court sports.
In court sports, at least one *accessible* route shall directly connect both sides of the court.

1110.4.5 Raised boxing or wrestling rings.
Raised boxing or wrestling rings are not required to be *accessible* or to be on an *accessible* route.

1110.4.6 Raised refereeing, judging and scoring areas.
Raised structures used solely for refereeing, judging or scoring a sport are not required to be *accessible* or to be on an *accessible route*.

1110.4.7 Animal containment areas.
Animal containment areas that are not within public use areas are not required to be *accessible* or to be on an *accessible route*.

1110.4.8 Amusement rides.
Amusement rides that move persons through a fixed course within a defined area shall comply with Sections 1110.4.8.1 through 1110.4.8.3.

Exception: Mobile or portable amusement rides shall not be required to be *accessible*.

1110.4.8.1 Load and unload areas.
Load and unload areas serving amusement rides shall be *accessible* and be on an *accessible route*. Where load and unload areas have more than one loading or unloading position, at least one loading and unloading position shall be on an *accessible route*.

1110.4.8.2 Wheelchair spaces, ride seats designed for transfer and transfer devices.
Where amusement rides are in the load and unload position, the following shall be on an *accessible route*.

1. The position serving a wheelchair space.

`

2. Amusement ride seats designed for transfer.

3. Transfer devices.

1110.4.8.3 Minimum number.
Amusement rides shall provide at least one wheelchair space, amusement ride seat designed for transfer or transfer device.

Exceptions:

1. Amusement rides that are controlled or operated by the rider are not required to comply with this section.

2. Amusement rides designed primarily for children, where children are assisted on and off the ride by an adult, are not required to comply with this section.

3. Amusement rides that do not provide seats that are built-in or mechanically fastened shall not be required to comply with this section.

1110.4.9 Recreational boating facilities.
Boat slips required to be *accessible* by Sections 1110.4.9.1 and 1110.4.9.2 and boarding piers at boat launch ramps required to be *accessible* by Section 1110.4.9.3 shall be on an *accessible route*.

1110.4.9.1 Boat slips.
Accessible boat slips shall be provided in accordance with Table 1110.4.9.1. All units on the site shall be combined to determine the number of *accessible* boat slips required. Where the number of boat slips is not identified, each 40 feet (12 m) of boat slip edge provided along the perimeter of the pier shall be counted as one boat slip for the purpose of this section.

Exception: Boat slips not designed for embarking or disembarking are not required to be *accessible* or be on an *accessible route*.

TABLE 1110.4.9.1
BOAT SLIPS

TOTAL NUMBER OF BOAT SLIPS PROVIDED	MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED ACCESSIBLE BOAT SLIPS
1 to 25	1
26 to 50	2
51 to 100	3
101 to 150	4
151 to 300	5
301 to 400	6
401 to 500	7
501 to 600	8
601 to 700	9
701 to 800	10
801 to 900	11

`

901 to 1000	12
1001 and over	12, plus 1 for every 100, or fraction thereof, over 1,000

1110.4.9.2 Dispersion.
Accessible boat slips shall be dispersed throughout the various types of boat slips provided. Where the minimum number of *accessible* boat slips has been met, no further dispersion shall be required.

1110.4.9.3 Boarding piers at boat launch ramps.
Where boarding piers are provided at boat launch ramps, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of the boarding piers shall be *accessible*.

1110.4.10 Exercise machines and equipment.
At least one of each type of exercise machine and equipment shall be on an *accessible route*.

1110.4.11 Fishing piers and platforms.
Fishing piers and platforms shall be *accessible* and be on an *accessible route*.

1110.4.12 Miniature golf facilities.
Miniature golf facilities shall comply with Sections 1110.4.12.1 through 1110.4.12.3.

1110.4.12.1 Minimum number.
At least 50 percent of holes on miniature golf courses shall be *accessible*.

1110.4.12.2 Miniature golf course configuration.
Miniature golf courses shall be configured so that the *accessible* holes are consecutive. Miniature golf courses shall provide an *accessible route* from the last *accessible* hole to the course entrance or exit without requiring travel through any other holes on the course.

Exception: One break in the sequence of consecutive holes shall be permitted provided that the last hole on the miniature golf course is the last hole in the sequence.

1110.4.12.3 Accessible route.
Holes required to comply with Section 1110.4.12.1, including the start of play, shall be on an *accessible route*.

1110.4.13 Swimming pools, wading pools, hot tubs and spas.
Swimming pools, wading pools, hot tubs and spas shall be *accessible* and be on an *accessible route*.

Exceptions:

1. Catch pools or a designated section of a pool used as a terminus for a water slide flume shall not be required to provide an *accessible* means of entry, provided that a portion of the catch pool edge is on an *accessible route*.

2. Where spas or hot tubs are provided in a cluster, at least 5 percent, but not less than one spa or hot tub in each cluster, shall be *accessible* and be on an *accessible route*.

`

3. Swimming pools, wading pools, spas and hot tubs that are required to be *accessible* by Sections 1110.2.2 and 1110.2.3 are not required to provide *accessible* means of entry into the water.

1110.4.13.1 Raised diving boards and diving platforms.
Raised diving boards and diving platforms are not required to be *accessible* or to be on an *accessible route*.

1110.4.13.2 Water slides.
Water slides are not required to be *accessible* or to be on an *accessible route*.

1110.4.14 Shooting facilities with firing positions.
Where shooting facilities with firing positions are designed and constructed at a site, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of each type of firing position shall be *accessible* and be on an *accessible route*.

SECTION 1111
SIGNAGE

1111.1 Signs.
Required *accessible* elements shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility at the following locations.

1. *Accessible* parking spaces required by Section 1106.1.

   Exception: Where the total number of parking spaces provided is four or less, identification of *accessible* parking spaces is not required.

2. *Accessible* parking spaces required by Section 1106.2.

   Exception: In Group I-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4 facilities, where parking spaces are assigned to specific *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*, identification of *accessible* parking spaces is not required.

3. *Accessible* passenger loading zones.

4. *Accessible* rooms where multiple single-user toilet or bathing rooms are clustered at a single location.

5. *Accessible* entrances where not all entrances are *accessible*.

6. *Accessible* check-out aisles where not all aisles are *accessible*. The sign, where provided, shall be above the check-out aisle in the same location as the checkout aisle number or type of check-out identification.

7. Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms.

8. *Accessible* dressing, fitting and locker rooms where not all such rooms are *accessible*.

9. *Accessible* areas of refuge in accordance with Section 1009.9.

10. Exterior areas for assisted rescue in accordance with Section 1009.9.

`

11. In recreational facilities, lockers that are required to be *accessible* in accordance with Section 1109.9.

1111.2 Directional signage.
Directional signage indicating the route to the nearest like *accessible* element shall be provided at the following locations. These directional signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility and sign characters shall meet the visual character requirements in accordance with ICC A117.1.

1. Inaccessible building entrances.

2. Inaccessible public toilets and bathing facilities.

3. Elevators not serving an *accessible route*.

4. At each separate-sex toilet and bathing room indicating the location of the nearest family/assisted use toilet or bathing room where provided in accordance with Section 1109.2.1.

5. At *exits* and *exit stairways* serving a required *accessible* space, but not providing an *approved* accessible *means of egress*, signage shall be provided in accordance with Section 1009.10.

6. Where drinking fountains for persons using wheelchairs and drinking fountains for standing persons are not located adjacent to each other, directional signage shall be provided indicating the location of the other drinking fountains.

1111.3 Other signs.
Signage indicating special accessibility provisions shall be provided as shown.

1. Each assembly area required to comply with Section 1108.2.7 shall provide a sign notifying patrons of the availability of assistive listening systems. The sign shall comply with ICC A117.1 requirements for visual characters and include the International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss.

   Exception: Where ticket offices or windows are provided, signs are not required at each assembly area provided that signs are displayed at each ticket office or window informing patrons of the availability of assistive listening systems.

2. At each door to an *area of refuge*, an exterior area for assisted rescue, an egress *stairway*, *exit passageway* and *exit discharge*, signage shall be provided in accordance with Section 1013.4.

3. At *areas of refuge*, signage shall be provided in accordance with Section 1009.11.

4. At exterior areas for assisted rescue, signage shall be provided in accordance with Section 1009.11.

5. At two-way communication systems, signage shall be provided in accordance with Section 1009.8.2.

`

6. In *interior exit stairways* and *ramps*, floor level signage shall be provided in accordance with Section 1023.9.

7. Signs identifying the type of access provided on amusement rides required to be *accessible* by Section 1110.4.8 shall be provided at entries to queues and waiting lines. In addition, where *accessible* unload areas also serve as *accessible* load areas, signs indicating the location of the *accessible* load and unload areas shall be provided at entries to queues and waiting lines. These directional sign characters shall meet the visual character requirements in accordance with ICC A117.1.

1111.4 Variable message signs.
Where provided in the locations in Sections 1111.4.1 and 1111.4.2, variable message signs shall comply with the variable message sign requirements of ICC A117.1.

1111.4.1 Transportation facilities.
Where provided in transportation facilities, variable message signs conveying transportation-related information shall comply with Section 1111.4.

1111.4.2 Emergency shelters.
Where provided in buildings that are designated as emergency shelters, variable message signs conveying emergency-related information shall comply with Section 1111.4.

Exception: Where equivalent information is provided in an audible manner, variable message signs are not required to comply with ICC A117.1.

`

CHAPTER 12
INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

SECTION 1201
GENERAL

1201.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall govern ventilation, temperature control, lighting, *yards* and *courts*, sound transmission, room dimensions, surrounding materials and rodent-proofing associated with the interior spaces of buildings.

SECTION 1202
DEFINITIONS

1202.1 General.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

SUNROOM.

THERMAL ISOLATION.

SECTION 1203
VENTILATION

1203.1 General.
Buildings shall be provided with natural ventilation in accordance with Section 1203.5, or mechanical ventilation in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code.*

~~Where the air infiltration rate in a *dwelling unit* is less than 5 air changes per hour when tested with a blower door at a pressure 0.2 inch w.c. (50 Pa) in accordance with Section R402.4.1.2 of the *International Energy Conservation Code—Residential Provisions*, the *dwelling unit* shall be ventilated by mechanical means in accordance with Section 403 of the *International Mechanical Code.*~~ *Ambulatory care facilities* and Group I-2 occupancies shall be ventilated by mechanical means in accordance with Section 407 of the *International Mechanical Code.*

1203.2 ~~Ventilation required.~~ Attic spaces.
Enclosed attics and enclosed rafter spaces formed where ceilings are applied directly to the underside of roof framing members shall have cross ventilation for each separate space by ventilation openings protected against the entrance of rain and snow. Blocking and bridging shall be arranged so as not to interfere with the movement of air. An airspace of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) shall be provided between the insulation and the roof sheathing. The net free ventilating area shall be not less than 1/150 of the area of the space ventilated. Ventilators shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exception: The net free cross-ventilation area shall be permitted to be reduced to 1/300 provided both of the following conditions are met:

1. ~~In Climate Zones 6, 7 and 8,~~ A Class I or II vapor retarder is installed on the warm-in-winter side of the ceiling.

`

2. At least 40 percent and not more than 50 percent of the required venting area is provided by ventilators located in the upper portion of the *attic* or rafter space. Upper ventilators shall be located not more than 3 feet (914 mm) below the ridge or highest point of the space, measured vertically, with the balance of the *ventilation* provided by eave or cornice vents. Where the location of wall or roof framing members conflicts with the installation of upper ventilators, installation more than 3 feet (914 mm) below the ridge or highest point of the space shall be permitted.

1203.2.1 Openings into attic.
Exterior openings into the *attic* space of any building intended for human occupancy shall be protected to prevent the entry of birds, squirrels, rodents, snakes and other similar creatures. Openings for ventilation having a least dimension of not less than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) and not more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) shall be permitted. Openings for ventilation having a least dimension larger than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) shall be provided with corrosion-resistant wire cloth screening, hardware cloth, perforated vinyl or similar material with openings having a least dimension of not less than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) and not more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm). Where combustion air is obtained from an *attic* area, it shall be in accordance with Chapter 7 of the *International Mechanical Code*.

1203.3 Unvented attic and unvented enclosed rafter assemblies.
Unvented *attics* and unvented enclosed roof framing assemblies created by ceilings applied directly to the underside of the roof framing members/rafters and the structural roof sheathing at the top of the roof framing members shall be permitted where all the following conditions are met:

1. The unvented *attic* space is completely within the *building thermal envelope*.

2. No interior ~~Class I~~ vapor retarders are installed on the ceiling side (*attic* floor) of the unvented *attic* assembly or on the ceiling side of the unvented enclosed roof framing assembly.

3. Where wood shingles or shakes are used, a minimum 1/4- inch (6.4 mm) vented airspace separates the shingles or shakes and the roofing underlayment above the structural sheathing.

4. In Climate Zone~~s 5, 6, 7 and 8~~, 5B any air-impermeable insulation shall be a Class II vapor retarder or shall have a Class II vapor retarder coating or covering in direct contact with the underside of the insulation.

5. Insulation shall be located in accordance with the following:

   5.1. Item 5.1.1, 5.1.2, 5.1.3 or 5.1.4 shall be met, depending on the air permeability of the insulation directly under the structural roof sheathing.

   5.1.1. Where only air-impermeable insulation is provided, it shall be applied in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing.

   5.1.2. Where air-permeable insulation is provided inside the building thermal envelope, it shall be installed in accordance with Item 5.1. In addition to the air-permeable insulation installed directly below the structural sheathing, rigid board or sheet insulation shall be installed directly above the structural roof sheathing in accordance with the R values ~~in Table 1203.3~~ for condensation control:

`

i. Climate Zone #4C - R-10 minimum rigid board or air-impermeable insulation R-value.

ii. Climate Zone #5B - R-20 minimum rigid board or air-impermeable insulation R-value.

5.1.3. Where both air-impermeable and air-permeable insulation are provided, the *air-impermeable insulation* shall be applied in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing in accordance with Item 5.1.1 and shall be in accordance with these R values ~~in Table 1203.3~~ for condensation control. The *air-permeable insulation* shall be installed directly under the *air-impermeable insulation.*

i. Climate Zone #4C- R-10 minimum rigid board or air-impermeable insulation R-value.

ii. Climate Zone #5B- R-20 minimum rigid board or air-impermeable insulation R-value.

5.1.4. Alternatively, sufficient rigid board or sheet insulation shall be installed directly above the structural roof sheathing to maintain the monthly average temperature of the underside of the structural roof sheathing above 45°F (7°C). For calculation purposes, an interior air temperature of 68°F (20°C) is assumed and the exterior air temperature is assumed to be the monthly average outside air temperature of the three coldest months.

5.2. Where preformed insulation board is used as the *air-permeable insulation* layer, it shall be sealed at the perimeter of each individual sheet interior surface to form a continuous layer.

Exceptions:

1. Section 1203.3 does not apply to special use structures or enclosures such as swimming pool enclosures, data processing centers, hospitals or art galleries.

2. Section 1203.3 does not apply to enclosures in Climate Zone-5B ~~through 8~~ that are humidified beyond 35 percent during the three coldest months.

TABLE 1203.3
INSULATION FOR CONDENSATION CONTROL

CLIMATE ZONE	MINIMUM R-VALUE OF AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION[a]
2B and 3B tile roof only	0 (none required)
1, 2A, 2B, 3A, 3B, 3C	R-5
4C	R-10
4A, 4B	R-15
5	R-20
6	R-25

`

7	R-30
8	R-35

a. Contributes to, but does not supersede, thermal resistance requirements for attic and roof assemblies in Section C402.2.1 of the *International Energy Conservation Code.*

1203.4 Under-floor ventilation.
The space between the bottom of the floor joists and the earth under any building except spaces occupied by basements or cellars shall be provided with ventilation openings through foundation walls or *exterior walls*. Such openings shall be placed so as to provide cross ventilation of the under-floor space. A ground cover of six mil (0.006 inch thick) black polyethylene or approved equal shall be laid over the ground within crawl spaces. The ground cover shall be overlapped six inches minimum at the joints and shall extend to the foundation wall.

Exception: The ground cover may be omitted in crawl spaces if the crawl space has a concrete slab floor with a minimum thickness of two inches.

1203.4.1 Openings for under-floor ventilation.
The net area of ventilation openings shall be not less than 1 square foot for each 150 square feet (0.67 m^2 for each 100 m^2) of crawl-space area. Ventilation openings shall be covered for their height and width with any of the following materials, provided that the least dimension of the covering shall be not greater than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm):

1. Perforated sheet metal plates not less than 0.070 inch (1.8 mm) thick.
2. Expanded sheet metal plates not less than 0.047 inch (1.2 mm) thick.
3. Cast-iron grilles or gratings.
4. Extruded load-bearing vents.
5. Hardware cloth of 0.035-inch (0.89 mm) wire or heavier.
6. Corrosion-resistant wire mesh, with the least dimension not greater than $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm).

1203.4.2 Exceptions.
The following are exceptions to Sections 1203.4 and 1203.4.1:

1. Where warranted by climatic conditions, ventilation openings to the outdoors are not required if ventilation openings to the interior are provided.
2. The total area of ventilation openings is permitted to be reduced to $^1/_{1,500}$ of the under-floor area where the ground surface is covered with a Class I vapor retarder material and the required openings are placed so as to provide cross ventilation of the space. The installation of operable louvers shall not be prohibited.
3. Ventilation openings are not required where continuously operated mechanical ventilation is provided at a rate of 1.0 cubic foot per minute (cfm) for each 50 square

`

feet (1.02 L/s for each 10 m^2) of crawlspace floor area and the ground surface is covered with a Class I vapor retarder.

4. Ventilation openings are not required where the ground surface is covered with a Class I vapor retarder, the perimeter walls are insulated and the space is conditioned in accordance with the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

5. For buildings in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, the openings for under-floor ventilation shall be deemed as meeting the flood opening requirements of ASCE 24 provided that the ventilation openings are designed and installed in accordance with ASCE 24.

1203.5 Natural ventilation.
For other than Group R occupancies, natural *ventilation* of an occupied space shall be through windows, doors, louvers or other openings to the outdoors. The operating mechanism for such openings shall be provided with ready access so that the openings are readily controllable by the building occupants. Group R occupancies shall comply with the International Mechanical Code.

1203.5.1 Ventilation area required.
The openable area of the openings to the outdoors shall be not less than 4 percent of the floor area being ventilated.

1203.5.1.1 Adjoining spaces.
Where rooms and spaces without openings to the outdoors are ventilated through an adjoining room, the opening to the adjoining room shall be unobstructed and shall have an area of not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the interior room or space, but not less than 25 square feet (2.3 m^2). The openable area of the openings to the outdoors shall be based on the total floor area being ventilated.

Exception: Exterior openings required for *ventilation* shall be permitted to open into a sunroom with *thermal isolation* or a patio cover provided that the openable area between the sunroom addition or patio cover and the interior room shall have an area of not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the interior room or space, but not less than 20 square feet (1.86 m^2). The openable area of the openings to the outdoors shall be based on the total floor area being ventilated.

1203.5.1.2 Openings below grade.
Where openings below grade provide required natural *ventilation*, the outside horizontal clear space measured perpendicular to the opening shall be one and one-half times the depth of the opening. The depth of the opening shall be measured from the average adjoining ground level to the bottom of the opening.

1203.5.2 Contaminants exhausted.
Contaminant sources in naturally ventilated spaces shall be removed in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code* and the *International Fire Code*.

1203.5.2.1 Bathrooms.
Rooms containing bathtubs, showers, spas and similar bathing fixtures shall be mechanically ventilated in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

`

1203.5.3 Openings on yards or courts.
Where natural *ventilation* is to be provided by openings onto *yards* or *courts*, such *yards* or *courts* shall comply with Section 1206.

~~**1203.6 Other ventilation and exhaust systems.**~~
~~*Ventilation* and exhaust systems for occupancies and operations involving flammable or combustible hazards or other contaminant sources as covered in the *International Mechanical Code* or the *International Fire Code* shall be provided as required by both codes.~~

1203.6 Radon resistive construction standards. The criteria of this section establishes minimum radon resistive construction requirements for Group R Occupancies.

1203.6.1 Application. The requirements of Section 1203.6 shall be adopted and enforced by all jurisdictions of the state according to the following subsections.

1203.6.1.1 All jurisdictions of the state shall comply with Section 1203.6.2.

1203.6.1.2 Clark, Ferry, Okanogan, Pend Oreille, Skamania, Spokane, and Stevens counties shall also comply with Section 1203.6.3.

1203.6.2 State wide radon requirements.

1203.6.2.1 Crawlspaces. All crawlspaces shall comply with the requirements of this section.

1203.6.2.2 Ventilation. All crawlspaces shall be ventilated as specified in Section 1203.3.
If the installed ventilation in a crawlspace is less than one square foot for each 300 square feet of crawlspace area, or if the crawlspace vents are equipped with operable louvers, a radon vent shall be installed to originate from a point between the ground cover and soil. The radon vent shall be installed in accordance with Sections 1203.6.3.2.6 and 1203.6.3.2.7.

1203.6.2.3 Crawlspace plenum systems. In crawlspace plenum systems used for providing supply air for an HVAC system, aggregate, a permanently sealed soil gas retarder membrane and a radon vent pipe shall be installed in accordance with Section 1203.6.3.2. Crawlspaces shall not be used for return air plenums. In addition, an operable radon vent fan shall be installed and activated. The fan shall be located as specified in Section 1203.6.3.2.7. The fan shall be capable of providing at least 100 cfm at 1-inch water column static pressure. The fan shall be controlled by a readily accessible manual switch. The switch shall be labeled "RADON VENT FAN."

1203.6.3 Radon prescriptive requirements.

1203.6.3.1 Scope. This section applies to those counties specified in Section 1203.6.1.2. This section establishes prescriptive construction requirements for reducing the potential for radon entry into all Group R Occupancies, and for preparing the building for future mitigation if desired.
In all crawlspaces, except crawlspace plenums used for providing supply air for an HVAC system, a continuous air barrier shall be installed between the crawlspace area and the occupied area to limit air transport between the areas. If a wood sheet subfloor or other material is utilized as an air barrier, in addition to the requirements of Section

`

502.1.6.2 of the Washington State Energy Code, all joints between sheets shall be sealed.

1203.6.3.2 Floors in contact with the earth.

1203.6.3.2.1 General. Concrete slabs that are in direct contact with the building envelope shall comply with the requirements of this section.

Exception: Concrete slabs located under garages or other than Group R Occupancies need not comply with this chapter.

1203.6.3.2.2 Aggregate. A layer of aggregate of 4-inch minimum thickness shall be placed beneath concrete slabs. The aggregate shall be continuous to the extent practical.

1203.6.3.2.3 Gradation. Aggregate shall:

1. Comply with ASTM Standard C-33 Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregate and shall be size No. 8 or larger size aggregate as listed in Table 2, Grading Requirements for Course Aggregate; or

2. Meet the 1988 Washington State Department of Transportation Specification 9-03.1 (3) "Coarse Aggregate for Portland Cement Concrete," or any equivalent successor standards. Aggregate size shall be of Grade 8 or larger as listed in Section 9-03.1 (3) C, "Grading"; or

3. Be screened, washed pea gravel free of deleterious substances in a manner consistent with ASTM Standard C-33 with 100 percent passing a 1/2-inch sieve and less than 5 percent passing a No. 16 sieve. Sieve characteristics shall conform to those acceptable under ASTM Standard C-33.

Exception: Aggregate shall not be required if a substitute material or system, with sufficient load bearing characteristics, and having approved capability to provide equal or superior air flow, is installed.

1203.6.3.2.4 Soil-gas retarder membrane. A soil-gas retarder membrane, consisting of at least one layer of virgin polyethylene with a thickness of at least 6 mil, or equivalent flexible sheet material, shall be either placed directly under all concrete slabs so that the slab is in direct contact with the membrane, or on top of the aggregate with 2 inches minimum of fine sand or pea gravel installed between the concrete slab and membrane. The flexible sheet shall extend to the foundation wall or to the outside edge of the monolithic slab. Seams shall overlap at least 12 inches. The membrane shall also be fitted tightly to all pipes, wires, and other penetrations of the membrane and sealed with an approved sealant or tape. All punctures or tears shall be repaired with the same or approved material and similarly lapped and sealed.

1203.6.3.2.5 Sealing of penetrations and joints. All penetrations and joints in concrete slabs or other floor systems and walls below grade shall be sealed by an approved sealant to create an air barrier to limit the movement of soil-gas into the indoor air. Sealants shall be approved by the manufacturer for the intended purpose. Sealant joints shall conform to manufacturer's specifications. The sealant shall be placed and tooled in accordance with manufacturer's specifications. There shall be no gaps or voids after the sealant has cured.

`

1203.6.3.2.6 Radon vent. One continuous sealed pipe shall run from a point within the aggregate under each concrete slab to a point outside the building. Joints and connections shall be permanently gas tight. The continuous sealed pipe shall interface with the aggregate in the following manner, or by other approved equal method. The pipe shall be permanently connected to a "T" within the aggregate area so that the two end openings of the "T" lie within the aggregate area. A minimum of 5 feet of perforated drain pipe of 3 inches minimum diameter shall join to and extend from the "T." The perforated pipe shall remain in the aggregate area and shall not be capped at the ends. The "T" and its perforated pipe extensions shall be located at least 5 feet horizontally from the exterior perimeter of the aggregate area.

The continuous sealed pipe shall terminate no less than 12 inches above the eave, and more than 10 horizontal feet from a woodstove or fireplace chimney, or operable window. The continuous sealed pipe shall be labeled "radon vent." The label shall be placed so as to remain visible to an occupant.

The minimum pipe diameter shall be 3 inches unless otherwise approved. Acceptable sealed plastic pipe shall be smooth walled, and may include either PVC schedule 40 or ABS schedule of equivalent wall thickness.

The entire sealed pipe system shall be sloped to drain to the subslab aggregate. The sealed pipe system may pass through an unconditioned attic before exiting the building; but to the extent practicable, the sealed pipe shall be located inside the thermal envelope of the building in order to enhance passive stack venting.

Exception: A fan for subslab depressurization system includes the following:

1. Soil-gas retarder membrane as specified in Section 1203.6.3.2.4;
2. Sealing of penetrations and joints as specified in Section 1203.6.3.2.5;
3. A 3-inch continuous sealed radon pipe shall run from a point within the aggregate under each concrete slab to a point outside the building;
4. Joints and connections shall be gas tight, and may be of either PVC schedule 40 or ABS schedule of equivalent in wall thickness;
5. A label of "radon vent" shall be placed on the pipe so as to remain visible to an occupant;
6. Fan circuit and wiring as specified in Section 1203.6.3.2.7 and a fan.

If the subslab depressurization system is exhausted through the concrete foundation wall or rim joist, the exhaust terminus shall be a minimum of 6 feet from operable windows or outdoor air intake vents and shall be directed away from operable windows and outdoor air intake vents to prevent radon re-entrainment.

1203.6.3.2.7 Fan circuit and wiring and location. An area for location of an in-line fan shall be provided. The location shall be as close as practicable to the radon vent pipe's point of exit from the building, or shall be outside the building shell; and shall be located so that the fan and all downstream piping is isolated from the indoor air. Provisions shall be made to allow future activation of an inline fan on the radon vent pipe without the need to place new wiring. A 110 volt power supply shall be provided at a junction box near the fan location.

`

1203.6.3.2.8 Separate aggregate areas. If the 4-inch aggregate area underneath the concrete slab is not continuous, but is separated into distinct isolated aggregate areas by a footing or other barrier, a minimum of one radon vent pipe shall be installed into each separate aggregate area.

Exception: Separate aggregate areas may be considered a single area if a minimum 3-inch diameter connection joining the separate areas is provided for every 30 feet of barrier separating those areas.

1203.6.3.2.9 Concrete block walls. Concrete block walls connected to below grade areas shall be considered unsealed surfaces. All openings in concrete block walls that will not remain accessible upon completion of the building shall be sealed at both vertical and horizontal surfaces, in order to create a continuous air barrier to limit the transport of soil-gas into the indoor air.

1203.7 Other ventilation and exhaust systems. Ventilation and exhaust systems for occupancies and operations involving flammable or combustible hazards or other contaminant sources as covered in the International Mechanical Code or the International Fire Code shall be provided as required by both codes.

SECTION 1204
TEMPERATURE CONTROL

1204.1 Equipment and systems.
Interior spaces intended for human occupancy shall be provided with active or passive space heating systems capable of maintaining an indoor temperature of not less than 68°F (20°C) at a point 3 feet (914 mm) above the floor on the design heating day.

Exceptions: ~~Space heating systems are not required for:~~

1. Interior spaces where the primary purpose of the space is not associated with human comfort.

2. Group F, H, S or U occupancies.

3. Group R-1 occupancies not more than 500 square feet.

1204.2 Heating.

1204.2.1 Definitions. For the purposes of this section only, the following definitions apply.

DESIGNATED AREAS are those areas designated by a county to be an urban growth area in Chapter 36.70A RCW and those areas designated by the US Environmental Protection Agency as being in nonattainment for particulate matter.

SUBSTANTIALLY REMODELED means any alteration or restoration of a building exceeding 60 percent of the appraised value of such building within a 12 month period. For the purpose of this section, the appraised value is the estimated cost to replace the building and structure in kind, based on current replacement costs.

1204.2.2 Primary Heating Source. Primary heating sources in all new and substantially remodeled buildings in designated areas shall not be dependent upon wood stoves.

`

1204.2.3 Solid Fuel Burning Devices. No new or used solid fuel burning device shall be installed in new or existing buildings unless such device is United States Environmental Protection Agency certified or exempt from certification by the United States Environmental Protection Agency and conforms with RCW 70.94.011, 70.94.450, 70.94.453 and 70.94.457.

Exceptions:
1. Wood cook stoves.
2. Antique wood heaters manufactured prior to 1940.

SECTION 1205
LIGHTING

1205.1 General.
Every space intended for human occupancy shall be provided with natural light by means of exterior glazed openings in accordance with Section 1205.2 or shall be provided with artificial light in accordance with Section 1205.3. Exterior glazed openings shall open directly onto a *public way* or onto a *yard* or *court* in accordance with Section 1206.

1205.2 Natural light.
The minimum net glazed area shall be not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the room served.

1205.2.1 Adjoining spaces.
For the purpose of natural lighting, any room is permitted to be considered as a portion of an adjoining room where one-half of the area of the common wall is open and unobstructed and provides an opening of not less than one-tenth of the floor area of the interior room or 25 square feet (2.32 m^2), whichever is greater.

Exception: Openings required for natural light shall be permitted to open into a sunroom with *thermal isolation* or a patio cover where the common wall provides a glazed area of not less than one-tenth of the floor area of the interior room or 20 square feet (1.86 m^2), whichever is greater.

1205.2.2 Exterior openings.
Exterior openings required by Section 1205.2 for natural light shall open directly onto a *public way*, *yard* or *court*, as set forth in Section 1206.

Exceptions:

1. Required exterior openings are permitted to open into a roofed porch where the porch meets all of the following criteria:

   1.1. Abuts a *public way*, *yard* or *court*.

   1.2. Has a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

   1.3. Has a longer side at least 65 percent open and unobstructed.

2. Skylights are not required to open directly onto a *public way*, *yard* or *court*.

`

1205.3 Artificial light.
Artificial light shall be provided that is adequate to provide an average illumination of 10 footcandles (107 lux) over the area of the room at a height of 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor level.

1205.4 Stairway illumination.
Stairways within *dwelling units* and *exterior stairways* serving a *dwelling unit* shall have an illumination level on tread runs of not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux). *Stairways* in other occupancies shall be governed by Chapter 10.

1205.4.1 Controls.
The control for activation of the required *stairway* lighting shall be in accordance with NFPA 70.

1205.5 Emergency egress lighting.
The *means of egress* shall be illuminated in accordance with Section 1008.1.

SECTION 1206
YARDS OR COURTS

1206.1 General.
This section shall apply to *yards* and *courts* adjacent to exterior openings that provide natural light or ventilation. Such *yards* and *courts* shall be on the same *lot* as the building.

1206.2 Yards.
Yards shall be not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in width for buildings two *stories* or less above *grade plane*. For buildings more than two *stories above grade plane*, the minimum width of the *yard* shall be increased at the rate of 1 foot (305 mm) for each additional *story*. For buildings exceeding 14 *stories above grade plane*, the required width of the *yard* shall be computed on the basis of 14 *stories above grade plane*.

1206.3 Courts.
Courts shall be not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in width. *Courts* having windows opening on opposite sides shall be not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) in width. *Courts* shall be not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) in length unless bounded on one end by a *public way* or *yard*. For buildings more than two *stories above grade plane*, the *court* shall be increased 1 foot (305 mm) in width and 2 feet (610 mm) in length for each additional *story*. For buildings exceeding 14 *stories above grade plane*, the required dimensions shall be computed on the basis of 14 *stories above grade plane*.

1206.3.1 Court access.
Access shall be provided to the bottom of *courts* for cleaning purposes.

1206.3.2 Air intake.
Courts more than two *stories* in height shall be provided with a horizontal air intake at the bottom not less than 10 square feet (0.93 m^2) in area and leading to the exterior of the building unless abutting a *yard* or *public way*.

1206.3.3 Court drainage.
The bottom of every *court* shall be properly graded and drained to a public sewer or other *approved* disposal system complying with the *International Plumbing Code*.

`

SECTION 1207
SOUND TRANSMISSION

1207.1 Scope.
This section shall apply to common interior walls, partitions and floor/ceiling assemblies between adjacent *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* or between *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* and adjacent public areas such as halls, *corridors*, *stairways* or *service areas*.

1207.2 Air-borne sound.
Walls, partitions and floor/ceiling assemblies separating *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* from each other or from public or service areas shall have a sound transmission class of not less than 50, or not less than 45 if field tested, for air-borne noise when tested in accordance with ASTM E90. Penetrations or openings in construction assemblies for piping; electrical devices; recessed cabinets; bathtubs; soffits; or heating, ventilating or exhaust ducts shall be sealed, lined, insulated or otherwise treated to maintain the required ratings. This requirement shall not apply to entrance doors; however, such doors shall be tight fitting to the frame and sill.

1207.2.1 Masonry.
The sound transmission class of concrete masonry and clay masonry assemblies shall be calculated in accordance with TMS 0302 or determined through testing in accordance with ASTM E90.

1207.3 Structure-borne sound.
Floor/ceiling assemblies between *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* or between a *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* and a public or service area within the structure shall have an impact insulation class rating of not less than 50, or not less than 45 if field tested, when tested in accordance with ASTM E492.

SECTION 1208
INTERIOR SPACE DIMENSIONS

1208.1 Minimum room widths.
Habitable spaces, other than a kitchen, shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) in any plan dimension. Kitchens shall have a clear passageway of not less than 3 feet (914 mm) between counter fronts and appliances or counter fronts and walls.

1208.2 Minimum ceiling heights.
Occupiable spaces, *habitable spaces* and *corridors* shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet 6 inches (2286 mm). Bathrooms, toilet rooms, kitchens, storage rooms and laundry rooms shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

Exceptions:

1. In one- and two-family *dwellings*, beams or girders spaced not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center shall be permitted to project not more than 6 inches (152 mm) below the required ceiling height.

2. If any room in a building has a sloped ceiling, the prescribed ceiling height for the room is required in one-half the area thereof. Any portion of the room measuring less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the finished floor to the ceiling shall not be included in any computation of the minimum area thereof.

`

3. The height of *mezzanines* and spaces below *mezzanines* shall be in accordance with Section 505.1.

4. Corridors contained within a *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* in a Group R occupancy shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

1208.2.1 Furred ceiling.
Any room with a furred ceiling shall be required to have the minimum ceiling height in two-thirds of the area thereof, but in no case shall the height of the furred ceiling be less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

1208.3 Room area.
Every *dwelling unit* shall have no fewer than one room that shall have not less than 120 square feet (13.9 m^2) of *net floor area*. Other habitable rooms shall have a *net floor area* of not less than 70 square feet (6.5 m^2).

Exception: Kitchens ~~are not required to be of a minimum floor area~~ in one- and two-family dwellings.
Portions of a room with a sloped ceiling measuring less than 5 feet (1524 mm) or a flat ceiling measuring less than 7 feet (2134 mm) from the finished floor to the finished ceiling shall not be considered as contributing to the minimum habitable area for that room.

1208.4 Efficiency dwelling units.
An efficiency living unit shall conform to the requirements of the code except as modified herein:

1. The unit shall have a living room of not less than 220 square feet (20.4 m^2) of floor area. An additional 100 square feet (9.3 m^2) of floor area shall be provided for each occupant of such unit in excess of two.

2. The unit shall be provided with a separate closet.

3. The unit shall be provided with a kitchen sink, cooking appliance and refrigeration facilities, each having a clear working space of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in front. Light and *ventilation* conforming to this code shall be provided.

4. The unit shall be provided with a separate bathroom containing a water closet, lavatory and bathtub or shower.

SECTION 1209
ACCESS TO UNOCCUPIED SPACES

1209.1 Crawl spaces.
Crawl spaces shall be provided with not fewer than one access opening that shall be not less than 18 inches by 24 inches (457 mm by 610 mm).

1209.2 Attic spaces.
An opening not less than 20 inches by 30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm) shall be provided to any *attic* area having a clear height of over 30 inches (762 mm). Clear headroom of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) shall be provided in the *attic* space at or above the access opening.

`

1209.3 Mechanical appliances.
Access to mechanical appliances installed in under-floor areas, in *attic* spaces and on roofs or elevated structures shall be in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

SECTION 1210
TOILET AND BATHROOM REQUIREMENTS

[P] 1210.1 Required fixtures.
The number and type of plumbing fixtures provided in any occupancy shall comply with Chapter 29.

1210.2 Finish materials.
Walls, floors and partitions in toilet and bathrooms shall comply with Sections 1210.2.1 through 1210.2.4.

1210.2.1 Floors and wall bases.
In other than *dwelling units*, toilet, bathing and shower room floor finish materials shall have a smooth, hard, non-absorbent surface. The intersections of such floors with walls shall have a smooth, hard, non-absorbent vertical base that extends upward onto the walls not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

1210.2.2 Walls and partitions.
Walls and partitions within 2 feet (610 mm) of service sinks, urinals and water closets shall have a smooth, hard, non-absorbent surface, to a height of not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) above the floor, and except for structural elements, the materials used in such walls shall be of a type that is not adversely affected by moisture.

Exception: This section does not apply to the following buildings and spaces:

1. Dwelling units and sleeping units.

2. Toilet rooms that are not accessible to the public and that have not more than one water closet. Accessories such as grab bars, towel bars, paper dispensers and soap dishes, provided on or within walls, shall be installed and sealed to protect structural elements from moisture.

1210.2.3 Showers.
Shower compartments and walls above bathtubs with installed shower heads shall be finished with a smooth, non-absorbent surface to a height not less than 72 inches (1829 mm) above the drain inlet.

1210.2.4 Waterproof joints.
Built-in tubs with showers shall have waterproof joints between the tub and adjacent wall.

[P] 1210.3 Privacy.
Privacy at water closets and urinals shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1210.3.1 and 1210.3.2.

[P] 1210.3.1 Water closet compartment.
Each water closet utilized by the public or employees shall occupy a separate compartment with walls or partitions and a door enclosing the fixtures to ensure privacy.

Exceptions:

`

1. Water closet compartments shall not be required in a single-occupant toilet room with a lockable door.

2. Toilet rooms located in child day care facilities and containing two or more water closets shall be permitted to have one water closet without an enclosing compartment.

3. This provision is not applicable to toilet areas located within Group I-3 occupancy housing areas.

[P] 1210.3.2 Urinal partitions.
Each urinal utilized by the public or employees shall occupy a separate area with walls or partitions to provide privacy. The walls or partitions shall begin at a height not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from and extend not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the finished floor surface. The walls or partitions shall extend from the wall surface at each side of the urinal not less than 18 inches (457 mm) or to a point not less than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the outermost front lip of the urinal measured from the finished backwall surface, whichever is greater.

Exceptions:

1. Urinal partitions shall not be required in a single-occupant or family or assisted-use toilet room with a lockable door.

2. Toilet rooms located in child day care facilities and containing two or more urinals shall be permitted to have one urinal without partitions.

`

CHAPTER 13
ENERGY EFFICIENCY

User note: Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the International Energy Conservation Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 1301
GENERAL

[E] 1301.1 Scope.
This chapter governs the design and construction of buildings for energy efficiency.

[E] 1301.1.1 Criteria.
Buildings shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

`

CHAPTER 14
EXTERIOR WALLS

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [BS] will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 1401
GENERAL

1401.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall establish the minimum requirements for exterior walls; *exterior wall* coverings; *exterior wall* openings; exterior windows and doors; architectural *trim*; balconies and similar projections; and bay and oriel windows.

SECTION 1402
DEFINITIONS

1402.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

ADHERED MASONRY VENEER.

ANCHORED MASONRY VENEER.

BACKING.

EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS).

EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS) WITH DRAINAGE.

EXTERIOR WALL.

EXTERIOR WALL COVERING.

EXTERIOR WALL ENVELOPE.

FENESTRATION.

FIBER-CEMENT SIDING.

HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIORGRADE COMPACT LAMINATE (HPL).

HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIORGRADE COMPACT LAMINATE (HPL) SYSTEM.

METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL (MCM).

METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL (MCM) SYSTEM.

POLYPROPYLENE SIDING.

`

PORCELAIN TILE.

VENEER.

VINYL SIDING.

WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER.

SECTION 1403
PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1403.1 General.
The provisions of this section shall apply to exterior walls, wall coverings and components thereof.

1403.2 Weather protection.
Exterior walls shall provide the building with a weather-resistant *exterior wall envelope*. The *exterior wall envelope* shall include flashing, as described in Section 1405.4. The *exterior wall envelope* shall be designed and constructed in such a manner as to prevent the accumulation of water within the wall assembly by providing a *water-resistive barrier* behind the exterior veneer, as described in Section 1404.2, and a means for draining water that enters the assembly to the exterior. An air space cavity is not required under the exterior cladding for an exterior wall clad with lapped or panel siding made of plywood, engineered wood, hardboard, or fiber cement. Protection against condensation in the *exterior wall* assembly shall be provided in accordance with Section 1405.3.

Exceptions:

1. A weather-resistant *exterior wall envelope* shall not be required over concrete or masonry walls designed in accordance with Chapters 19 and 21, respectively.

2. Compliance with the requirements for a means of drainage, and the requirements of Sections 1404.2 and 1405.4, shall not be required for an *exterior wall envelope* that has been demonstrated through testing to resist wind-driven rain, including joints, penetrations and intersections with dissimilar materials, in accordance with ASTM E331 under the following conditions:

   2.1. *Exterior wall envelope* test assemblies shall include at least one opening, one control joint, one wall/eave interface and one wall sill. Tested openings and penetrations shall be representative of the intended end-use configuration.

   2.2. *Exterior wall envelope* test assemblies shall be at least 4 feet by 8 feet (1219 mm by 2438 mm) in size.

   2.3. *Exterior wall envelope* assemblies shall be tested at a minimum differential pressure of 6.24 pounds per square foot (psf) (0.297 kN/m^2).

   2.4. *Exterior wall envelope* assemblies shall be subjected to a minimum test exposure duration of 2 hours.

`

The *exterior wall envelope* design shall be considered to resist wind-driven rain where the results of testing indicate that water did not penetrate control joints in the *exterior wall* envelope, joints at the perimeter of openings or intersections of terminations with dissimilar materials.

3. Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) complying with Section 1408.4.1.

[BS] 1403.3 Structural.
Exterior walls, and the associated openings, shall be designed and constructed to resist safely the superimposed loads required by Chapter 16.

1403.4 Fire resistance.
Exterior walls shall be fire-resistance rated as required by other sections of this code with opening protection as required by Chapter 7.

1403.5 Vertical and lateral flame propagation.
Exterior walls on buildings of Type I, II, III or IV construction that are greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in height above grade plane and contain a combustible *water-resistive barrier* shall be tested in accordance with and comply with the acceptance criteria of NFPA 285. For the purposes of this section, fenestration products and flashing of fenestration products shall not be considered part of the *water-resistive barrier*.

Exceptions:

1. Walls in which the *water-resistive barrier* is the only combustible component and the *exterior wall* has a wall covering of brick, concrete, stone, terra cotta, stucco or steel with minimum thicknesses in accordance with Table 1405.2.

2. Walls in which the *water-resistive barrier* is the only combustible component and the *water-resistive barrier* has a peak heat release rate of less than 150 kW/m^2, a total heat release of less than 20 MJ/m^2 and an effective heat of combustion of less than 18 MJ/kg as determined in accordance with ASTM E1354 and has a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less as determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The ASTM E1354 test shall be conducted on specimens at the thickness intended for use, in the horizontal orientation and at an incident radiant heat flux of 50 kW/m^2.

[BS] 1403.6 Flood resistance.
For buildings in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, *exterior walls* extending below the elevation required by Section 1612 shall be constructed with flood-damage-resistant materials.

[BS] 1403.7 Flood resistance for coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones.
For buildings in coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones as established in Section 1612.3, electrical, mechanical and plumbing system components shall not be mounted on or penetrate through exterior walls that are designed to break away under flood loads.

SECTION 1404
MATERIALS

1404.1 General.
Materials used for the construction of *exterior walls* shall comply with the provisions of this

`

section. Materials not prescribed herein shall be permitted, provided that any such alternative has been *approved*.

1404.2 Water-resistive barrier.
Not fewer than one layer of No.15 asphalt felt, complying with ASTM D226 for Type 1 felt or other *approved* materials, shall be attached to the studs or sheathing, with flashing as described in Section 1405.4, in such a manner as to provide a continuous *water-resistive barrier* behind the *exterior wall* veneer.

[BS] 1404.3 Wood.
Exterior walls of wood construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapter 23.

[BS] 1404.3.1 Basic hardboard.
Basic hardboard shall conform to the requirements of AHA A135.4.

[BS] 1404.3.2 Hardboard siding.
Hardboard siding shall conform to the requirements of AHA A135.6 and, where used structurally, shall be so identified by the *label* of an *approved* agency.

[BS] 1404.4 Masonry.
Exterior walls of masonry construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with this section and Chapter 21. Masonry units, mortar and metal accessories used in anchored and adhered veneer shall meet the physical requirements of Chapter 21. The backing of anchored and adhered veneer shall be of concrete, masonry, steel framing or wood framing. Continuous insulation meeting the applicable requirements of this code shall be permitted between the backing and the masonry veneer.

[BS] 1404.5 Metal.
Exterior walls constructed of cold-formed steel, structural steel or aluminum shall be designed in accordance with Chapters 22 and 20, respectively.

[BS] 1404.5.1 Aluminum siding.
Aluminum siding shall conform to the requirements of AAMA 1402.

[BS] 1404.5.2 Cold-rolled copper.
Copper shall conform to the requirements of ASTM B370.

[BS] 1404.5.3 Lead-coated copper.
Lead-coated copper shall conform to the requirements of ASTM B101.

[BS] 1404.6 Concrete.
Exterior walls of concrete construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapter 19.

[BS] 1404.7 Glass-unit masonry.
Exterior walls of glass-unit masonry shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapter 21.

1404.8 Plastics.
Plastic panel, apron or spandrel walls as defined in this code shall not be limited in thickness, provided that such plastics and their assemblies conform to the requirements of Chapter 26 and

`

are constructed of *approved* weather-resistant materials of adequate strength to resist the wind loads for cladding specified in Chapter 16.

1404.9 Vinyl siding.
Vinyl siding shall be certified and labeled as conforming to the requirements of ASTM D3679 by an *approved* quality control agency.

1404.10 Fiber-cement siding.
Fiber-cement siding shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A (or ISO 8336, Category A), and shall be so identified on labeling listing an *approved* quality control agency.

1404.11 Exterior insulation and finish systems.
Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) and exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) with drainage shall comply with Section 1408.

1404.12 Polypropylene siding.
Polypropylene siding shall be certified and labeled as conforming to the requirements of ASTM D7254 and those of Section 1404.12.1 or 1404.12.2 by an approved quality control agency. Polypropylene siding shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of Section 1405.18 and in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Polypropylene siding shall be secured to the building so as to provide weather protection for the exterior walls of the building.

1404.12.1 Flame spread index.
The certification of the flame spread index shall be accompanied by a test report stating that all portions of the test specimen ahead of the flame front remained in position during the test in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

1404.12.2 Fire separation distance.
The fire separation distance between a building with polypropylene siding and the adjacent building shall be not less than 10 feet (3048 mm).

1404.13 Foam plastic insulation.
Foam plastic insulation used in *exterior wall covering* assemblies shall comply with Chapter 26.

SECTION 1405
INSTALLATION OF WALL COVERINGS

1405.1 General.
Exterior wall coverings shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the applicable provisions of this section.

1405.2 Weather protection.
Exterior walls shall provide weather protection for the building. The materials of the minimum nominal thickness specified in Table 1405.2 shall be acceptable as *approved* weather coverings.

TABLE 1405.2
MINIMUM THICKNESS OF WEATHER COVERINGS

COVERING TYPE	MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches)
Adhered masonry veneer	0.25

`

Aluminum siding	0.019
Anchored masonry veneer	2.625
Asbestos-cement boards	0.125
Asbestos shingles	0.156
Cold-rolled copper[d]	0.0216 nominal
Copper shingles[d]	0.0162 nominal
Exterior plywood (with sheathing)	0.313
Exterior plywood (without sheathing)	See Section 2304.6
Fiber cement lap siding	0.25[c]
Fiber cement panel siding	0.25[c]
Fiberboard siding	0.5
Glass-fiber reinforced concrete panels	0.375
Hardboard siding[c]	0.25
High-yield copper[d]	0.0162 nominal
Lead-coated copper[d]	0.0216 nominal
Lead-coated high-yield copper	0.0162 nominal
Marble slabs	1
Particleboard (with sheathing)	See Section 2304.6
Particleboard (without sheathing)	See Section 2304.6
Porcelain tile	0.25
Steel (approved corrosion resistant)	0.0149
Stone (cast artificial, anchored)	1.5
Stone (natural)	2
Structural glass	0.344
Stucco or exterior cement plaster Three-coat work over: Metal plaster base Unit masonry Cast-in-place or precast concrete	 0.875[b] 0.625[b] 0.625[b]
Two-coat work over: Unit masonry Cast-in-place or precast concrete	 0.5[b] 0.375[b]
Terra cotta (anchored)	1
Terra cotta (adhered)	0.25
Vinyl siding	0.035
Wood shingles	0.375
Wood siding (without sheathing)[a]	0.5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 ounce = 28.35 g, 1 square foot = 0.093 m^2.

a. Wood siding of thicknesses less than 0.5 inch shall be placed over sheathing that conforms to Section 2304.6.
b. Exclusive of texture.
c. As measured at the bottom of decorative grooves.
d. 16 ounces per square foot for cold-rolled copper and lead-coated copper, 12 ounces per square foot for copper shingles, high-yield copper and lead-coated high-yield copper.

`

1405.3 Vapor retarders.
Vapor retarders as described in Section 1405.3.3 shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1405.3.1 and 1405.3.2, or an approved design using accepted engineering practice for hygrothermal analysis.

1405.3.1 Class I and II vapor retarders.
Class I and II vapor retarders shall not be provided on the interior side of frame walls in Zones 1 and 2. Class I vapor retarders shall not be provided on the interior side of frame walls in Zones 3 and 4. Class I or II vapor retarders shall be provided on the interior side of frame walls in Zones 5, 6, 7, 8 and Marine 4. The appropriate zone shall be selected in accordance with Chapter 3 [CE] of the *International Energy Conservation Code-Commercial Provisions*.

Exceptions:

1. Basement walls.
2. Below-grade portion of any wall.
3. Construction where moisture or its freezing will not damage the materials.
4. Conditions where Class III vapor retarders are required in Section 1405.3.2.

1405.3.2 Class III vapor retarders.
Class III vapor retarders shall be permitted where any one of the conditions in Table 1405.3.2 is met. Only Class III vapor retarders shall be used on the interior side of frame walls where foam plastic insulating sheathing with a perm rating of less than 1 is applied in accordance with Table 1405.3.2 on the exterior side of the frame wall.

TABLE 1405.3.2
CLASS III VAPOR RETARDERS

ZONE	CLASS III VAPOR RETARDERS PERMITTED FOR:[a]
Marine 4	Vented cladding over wood structural panels Vented cladding over fiberboard Vented cladding over gypsum Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ R2.5 over 2 × 4 wall Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ R3.75 over 2 × 6 wall
5	Vented cladding over wood structural panels Vented cladding over fiberboard Vented cladding over gypsum Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ R5 over 2 × 4 wall Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ R7.5 over 2 × 6 wall
6	Vented cladding over fiberboard Vented cladding over gypsum Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ R7.5 over 2 × 4 wall Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ R11.25 over 2 × 6 wall
7 and 8	Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ R10 over 2 × 4 wall Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ R15 over 2 × 6 wall

`

For SI: 1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m^3.

a. Spray foam with a minimum density of 2 lbs/ft^3 applied to the interior cavity side of wood structural panels, fiberboard, insulating sheathing or gypsum is deemed to meet the insulating sheathing requirement where the spray foam *R*-value meets or exceeds the specified insulating sheathing *R*-value.

1405.3.3 Material vapor retarder class.
The *vapor retarder class* shall be based on the manufacturer's certified testing or a tested assembly.

The following shall be deemed to meet the class specified:

Class I: Sheet polyethylene, non-perforated aluminum foil with a perm rating of less than or equal to 0.1.

Class II: Kraft-faced fiberglass batts or paint with a perm rating greater than 0.1 and less than or equal to 1.0.

Class III: Latex or enamel paint with a perm rating of greater than 1.0 and less than or equal to 10.0.

1405.3.4 Minimum clear airspaces and vented openings for vented cladding.
For the purposes of this section, vented cladding shall include the following minimum clear airspaces:

1. Vinyl lap or horizontal aluminum siding applied over a weather-resistive barrier as specified in this chapter.

2. Brick veneer with a clear airspace as specified in this code.

3. Other *approved* vented claddings.

1405.4 Flashing.
Flashing shall be installed in such a manner so as to prevent moisture from entering the wall or to redirect that moisture to the exterior. Flashing shall be installed at the perimeters of exterior door and window assemblies, penetrations and terminations of *exterior wall* assemblies, *exterior wall* intersections with roofs, chimneys, porches, decks, balconies and similar projections and at built-in gutters and similar locations where moisture could enter the wall. Flashing with projecting flanges shall be installed on both sides and the ends of copings, under sills and continuously above projecting *trim*.

1405.4.1 Exterior wall pockets.
In exterior walls of buildings or structures, wall pockets or crevices in which moisture can accumulate shall be avoided or protected with caps or drips, or other *approved* means shall be provided to prevent water damage.

1405.4.2 Masonry.
Flashing and weep holes in anchored veneer shall be located in the first course of masonry above finished ground level above the foundation wall or slab, and other points of support, including structural floors, shelf angles and lintels where anchored veneers are designed in accordance with Section 1405.6.

`

1405.5 Wood veneers.
Wood veneers on exterior walls of buildings of Type I, II, III and IV construction shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) nominal thickness, 0.438-inch (11.1 mm) exterior hardboard siding or 0.375-inch (9.5 mm) exterior-type wood structural panels or particleboard and shall conform to the following:

1. The veneer shall not exceed 40 feet (12 190 mm) in height above grade. Where fire-retardant-treated wood is used, the height shall not exceed 60 feet (18 290 mm) in height above grade.

2. The veneer is attached to or furred from a noncombustible backing that is fire-resistance rated as required by other provisions of this code.

3. Where open or spaced wood veneers (without concealed spaces) are used, they shall not project more than 24 inches (610 mm) from the building wall.

[BS] 1405.6 Anchored masonry veneer.
Anchored masonry veneer shall comply with the provisions of Sections 1405.6, 1405.7, 1405.8 and 1405.9 and Sections 12.1 and 12.2 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

[BS] 1405.6.1 Tolerances.
Anchored masonry veneers in accordance with Chapter 14 are not required to meet the tolerances in Article 3.3 F1 of TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

[BS] 1405.6.2 Seismic requirements.
Anchored masonry veneer located in Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F shall conform to the requirements of Section 12.2.2.10 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

[BS] 1405.7 Stone veneer.
Anchored stone veneer units not exceeding 10 inches (254 mm) in thickness shall be anchored directly to masonry, concrete or to stud construction by one of the following methods:

1. With concrete or masonry backing, anchor ties shall be not less than 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) corrosion-resistant wire, or *approved* equal, formed beyond the base of the backing. The legs of the loops shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length bent at right angles and laid in the mortar joint, and spaced so that the eyes or loops are 12 inches (305 mm) maximum on center in both directions. There shall be provided not less than a 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) corrosion-resistant wire tie, or *approved* equal, threaded through the exposed loops for every 2 square feet (0.2 m^2) of stone veneer. This tie shall be a loop having legs not less than 15 inches (381 mm) in length bent so that the tie will lie in the stone veneer mortar joint. The last 2 inches (51 mm) of each wire leg shall have a right-angle bend. One-inch (25 mm) minimum thickness of cement grout shall be placed between the backing and the stone veneer.

2. With wood stud backing, a 2-inch by 2-inch (51 by 51 mm) 0.0625-inch (1.59 mm) zinc-coated or nonmetallic coated wire mesh with two layers of water-resistive barrier in accordance with Section 1404.2 shall be applied directly to wood studs spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center. On studs, the mesh shall be attached with 2-inch-long (51 mm) corrosion-resistant steel wire furring nails at 4 inches (102 mm) on center providing a minimum 1.125-inch (29 mm) penetration into each stud and with 8d annular threaded nails at 8 inches (203 mm) on center. into top and bottom plates or with equivalent wire ties. There shall be not less than a 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) zinc-coated or

`

nonmetallic coated wire, or approved equal, attached to the stud with not smaller than an 8d (0.120 in. diameter) annular threaded nail for every 2 square feet (0.2 m^2) of stone veneer. This tie shall be a loop having legs not less than 15 inches (381 mm) in length, so bent that the tie will lie in the stone veneer mortar joint. The last 2 inches (51 mm) of each wire leg shall have a right-angle bend. One-inch (25 mm) minimum thickness of cement grout shall be placed between the backing and the stone veneer.

3. With cold-formed steel stud backing, a 2-inch by 2-inch (51 by 51 mm) 0.0625-inch (1.59 mm) zinc-coated or nonmetallic coated wire mesh with two layers of water-resistive barrier in accordance with Section 1404.2 shall be applied directly to steel studs spaced a not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center. The mesh shall be attached with corrosion-resistant #8 self-drilling, tapping screws at 4 inches (102 mm) on center, and at 8 inches (203 mm) on center into top and bottom tracks or with equivalent wire ties. Screws shall extend through the steel connection not fewer than three exposed threads. There shall be not less than a 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) corrosion-resistant wire, or approved equal, attached to the stud with not smaller than a #8 self-drilling, tapping screw extending through the steel framing not fewer than three exposed threads for every 2 square feet (0.2 m^2) of stone veneer. This tie shall be a loop having legs not less than 15 inches (381 mm) in length, so bent that the tie will lie in the stone veneer mortar joint. The last 2 inches (51 mm) of each wire leg shall have a right-angle bend. One-inch (25 mm) minimum thickness of cement grout shall be placed between the backing and the stone veneer. The cold-formed steel framing members shall have a minimum bare steel thickness of 0.0428 inches (1.087 mm).

[BS] 1405.8 Slab-type veneer.
Anchored slab-type veneer units not exceeding 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness shall be anchored directly to masonry, concrete or light-frame construction. For veneer units of marble, travertine, granite or other stone units of slab form, ties of corrosion-resistant dowels in drilled holes shall be located in the middle third of the edge of the units, spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) apart around the periphery of each unit with not less than four ties per veneer unit. Units shall not exceed 20 square feet (1.9 m^2) in area. If the dowels are not tight fitting, the holes shall be drilled not more than 0.063 inch (1.6 mm) larger in diameter than the dowel, with the hole countersunk to a diameter and depth equal to twice the diameter of the dowel in order to provide a tight-fitting key of cement mortar at the dowel locations where the mortar in the joint has set. Veneer ties shall be corrosion-resistant metal capable of resisting, in tension or compression, a force equal to two times the weight of the attached veneer. If made of sheet metal, veneer ties shall be not smaller in area than 0.0336 by 1 inch (0.853 by 25 mm) or, if made of wire, not smaller in diameter than 0.1483-inch (3.76 mm) wire.

[BS] 1405.9 Terra cotta.
Anchored terra cotta or ceramic units not less than $1^5/_8$ inches (41 mm) thick shall be anchored directly to masonry, concrete or stud construction. Tied terra cotta or ceramic veneer units shall be not less than $1^5/_8$ inches (41 mm) thick with projecting dovetail webs on the back surface spaced approximately 8 inches (203 mm) on center. The facing shall be tied to the backing wall with corrosion-resistant metal anchors of not less than No. 8 gage wire installed at the top of each piece in horizontal bed joints not less than 12 inches (305 mm) nor more than 18 inches (457 mm) on center; these anchors shall be secured to $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) corrosion-resistant pencil rods that pass through the vertical aligned loop anchors in the backing wall. The veneer ties shall have sufficient strength to support the full weight of the veneer in tension. The facing

`

shall be set with not less than a 2-inch (51 mm) space from the backing wall and the space shall be filled solidly with Portland cement grout and pea gravel. Immediately prior to setting, the backing wall and the facing shall be drenched with clean water and shall be distinctly damp when the grout is poured.

[BS] 1405.10 Adhered masonry veneer.
Adhered masonry veneer shall comply with the applicable requirements in this section and Sections 12.1 and 12.3 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ ASCE 5.

[BS] 1405.10.1 Exterior adhered masonry veneer.
Exterior adhered masonry veneer shall be installed in accordance with Section 1405.10 and the manufacturer's instructions.

[BS] 1405.10.1.1 Water-resistive barriers.
Water-resistive barriers shall be installed as required in Section 2510.6.

[BS] 1405.10.1.2 Flashing.
Flashing shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1405.4 and the following.

[BS] 1405.10.1.2.1 Flashing at foundation.
A corrosion-resistant screed or flashing of a minimum 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) or 26 gage galvanized or plastic with a minimum vertical attachment flange of $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm) shall be installed to extend not less than 1 inch (25 mm) below the foundation plate line on exterior stud walls in accordance with Section 1405.4. The water-resistive barrier shall lap over the exterior of the attachment flange of the screed or flashing.

[BS] 1405.10.1.3 Clearances.
On exterior stud walls, adhered masonry veneer shall be installed not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the earth, or not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above paved areas, or not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) above exterior walking surfaces that are supported by the same foundation that supports the exterior wall.

[BS] 1405.10.1.4 Adhered masonry veneer installed with lath and mortar.
Exterior adhered masonry veneer installed with lath and mortar shall comply with the following.

[BS] 1405.10.1.4.1 Lathing.
Lathing shall comply with the requirements of Section 2510.

[BS] 1405.10.1.4.2 Scratch coat.
A nominal $^1/_2$ - inch-thick (12.7 mm) layer of mortar complying with the material requirements of Sections 2103 and 2512.2 shall be applied, encapsulating the lathing. The surface of this mortar shall be scored horizontally, resulting in a scratch coat.

[BS] 1405.10.1.4.3 Adhering veneer.
The masonry veneer units shall be adhered to the mortar scratch coat with a nominal

`

$^{1}/_{2}$-inch-thick (12.7 mm) setting bed of mortar complying with Sections 2103 and 2512.2 applied to create a full setting bed for the back of the masonry veneer units. The masonry veneer units shall be worked into the setting bed resulting in a nominal $^{3}/_{8}$-inch (9.5 mm) setting bed after the masonry veneer units are applied.

[BS] 1405.10.1.5 Adhered masonry veneer applied directly to masonry and concrete.
Adhered masonry veneer applied directly to masonry or concrete shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1405.10 and with the requirements of Section 1405.10.1.4 or 2510.7.

[BS] 1405.10.1.6 Cold weather construction.
Cold weather construction of adhered masonry veneer shall comply with the requirements of Sections 2104 and 2512.4.

[BS] 1405.10.1.7 Hot weather construction.
Hot weather construction of adhered masonry veneer shall comply with the requirements of Section 2104.

[BS] 1405.10.2 Exterior adhered masonry veneers— porcelain tile.
Adhered units shall not exceed $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (15.8 mm) thickness and 24 inches (610 mm) in any face dimension nor more than 3 square feet (0.28 m^2) in total face area and shall not weigh more than 9 pounds psf (0.43 kN/m^2). Porcelain tile shall be adhered to an approved backing system.

[BS] 1405.10.3 Interior adhered masonry veneers.
Interior adhered masonry veneers shall have a maximum weight of 20 psf (0.958 kg/m^2) and shall be installed in accordance with Section 1405.10. Where the interior adhered masonry veneer is supported by wood construction, the supporting members shall be designed to limit deflection to $^{1}/_{600}$ of the span of the supporting members.

[BS] 1405.11 Metal veneers.
Veneers of metal shall be fabricated from *approved* corrosion-resistant materials or shall be protected front and back with porcelain enamel, or otherwise be treated to render the metal resistant to corrosion. Such veneers shall be not less than 0.0149-inch (0.378 mm) nominal thickness sheet steel mounted on wood or metal furring strips or approved sheathing on light-frame construction.

[BS] 1405.11.1 Attachment.
Exterior metal veneer shall be securely attached to the supporting masonry or framing members with corrosion-resistant fastenings, metal ties or by other *approved* devices or methods. The spacing of the fastenings or ties shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) either vertically or horizontally, but where units exceed 4 square feet (0.4 m^2) in area there shall be not less than four attachments per unit. The metal attachments shall have a cross-sectional area not less than provided by W 1.7 wire. Such attachments and their supports shall be designed and constructed to resist the wind loads as specified in Section 1609 for components and cladding.

`

1405.11.2 Weather protection.
Metal supports for exterior metal veneer shall be protected by painting, galvanizing or by other equivalent coating or treatment. Wood studs, furring strips or other wood supports for exterior metal veneer shall be *approved* pressure-treated wood or protected as required in Section 1403.2. Joints and edges exposed to the weather shall be caulked with *approved* durable waterproofing material or by other *approved* means to prevent penetration of moisture.

1405.11.3 Backup.
Masonry backup shall not be required for metal veneer unless required by the fire-resistance requirements of this code.

1405.11.4 Grounding.
Grounding of metal veneers on buildings shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 27 of this code.

[BS] 1405.12 Glass veneer.
The area of a single section of thin exterior structural glass veneer shall not exceed 10 square feet (0.93 m^2) where that section is not more than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the level of the sidewalk or grade level directly below, and shall not exceed 6 square feet (0.56 m^2) where it is more than 15 feet (4572 mm) above that level.

[BS] 1405.12.1 Length and height.
The length or height of any section of thin exterior structural glass veneer shall not exceed 48 inches (1219 mm).

[BS] 1405.12.2 Thickness.
The thickness of thin exterior structural glass veneer shall be not less than 0.344 inch (8.7 mm).

[BS] 1405.12.3 Application.
Thin exterior structural glass veneer shall be set only after backing is thoroughly dry and after application of an *approved* bond coat uniformly over the entire surface of the backing so as to effectively seal the surface. Glass shall be set in place with an *approved* mastic cement in sufficient quantity so that at least 50 percent of the area of each glass unit is directly bonded to the backing by mastic not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) thick and not more than $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm) thick. The bond coat and mastic shall be evaluated for compatibility and shall bond firmly together.

[BS] 1405.12.4 Installation at sidewalk level.
Where glass extends to a sidewalk surface, each section shall rest in an *approved* metal molding, and be set at least $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) above the highest point of the sidewalk. The space between the molding and the sidewalk shall be thoroughly caulked and made water tight.

[BS] 1405.12.4.1 Installation above sidewalk level.
Where thin exterior structural glass veneer is installed above the level of the top of a bulkhead facing, or at a level more than 36 inches (914 mm) above the sidewalk level,

`

the mastic cement binding shall be supplemented with *approved* nonferrous metal shelf angles located in the horizontal joints in every course. Such shelf angles shall be not less than 0.0478-inch (1.2 mm) thick and not less than 2 inches (51 mm) long and shall be spaced at *approved* intervals, with not less than two angles for each glass unit. Shelf angles shall be secured to the wall or backing with expansion bolts, toggle bolts or by other *approved* methods.

[BS] 1405.12.5 Joints.
Unless otherwise specifically *approved* by the *building official*, abutting edges of thin exterior structural glass veneer shall be ground square. Mitered joints shall not be used except where specifically *approved* for wide angles. Joints shall be uniformly buttered with an *approved* jointing compound and horizontal joints shall be held to not less than 0.063 inch (1.6 mm) by an *approved* non-rigid substance or device. Where thin exterior structural glass veneer abuts non-resilient material at sides or top, expansion joints not less than $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) wide shall be provided.

[BS] 1405.12.6 Mechanical fastenings.
Thin exterior structural glass veneer installed above the level of the heads of show windows and veneer installed more than 12 feet (3658 mm) above sidewalk level shall, in addition to the mastic cement and shelf angles, be held in place by the use of fastenings at each vertical or horizontal edge, or at the four corners of each glass unit. Fastenings shall be secured to the wall or backing with expansion bolts, toggle bolts or by other methods. Fastenings shall be so designed as to hold the glass veneer in a vertical plane independent of the mastic cement. Shelf angles providing both support and fastenings shall be permitted.

[BS] 1405.12.7 Flashing.
Exposed edges of thin exterior structural glass veneer shall be flashed with overlapping corrosion-resistant metal flashing and caulked with a waterproof compound in a manner to effectively prevent the entrance of moisture between the glass veneer and the backing.

1405.13 Exterior windows and doors.
Windows and doors installed in exterior walls shall conform to the testing and performance requirements of Section 1709.5.

1405.13.1 Installation.
Windows and doors shall be installed in accordance with *approved* manufacturer's instructions. Fastener size and spacing shall be provided in such instructions and shall be calculated based on maximum loads and spacing used in the tests.

[BS] 1405.14 Vinyl siding.
Vinyl siding conforming to the requirements of this section and complying with ASTM D3679 shall be permitted on exterior walls of buildings located in areas where V_{asd} as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 does not exceed 100 miles per hour (45 m/s) and the *building height* is less than or equal to 40 feet (12 192 mm) in Exposure C. Where construction is located in areas where V_{asd} as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 exceeds 100 miles per hour (45 m/s), or building heights are in excess of 40 feet (12 192 mm), tests or calculations indicating compliance with Chapter 16 shall be submitted. Vinyl siding shall be secured to the building so as to provide weather protection for the exterior walls of the building.

[BS] 1405.14.1 Application.
The siding shall be applied over sheathing or materials listed in Section 2304.6. Siding shall

`

be applied to conform to the *water-resistive barrier* requirements in Section 1403. Siding and accessories shall be installed in accordance with *approved* manufacturer's instructions. Unless otherwise specified in the *approved* manufacturer's instructions, nails used to fasten the siding and accessories shall have a minimum 0.313-inch (7.9 mm) head diameter and $^{1}/_{8}$-inch (3.18 mm) shank diameter. The nails shall be corrosion resistant and shall be long enough to penetrate the studs or nailing strip at least $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19 mm). For cold-formed steel light-frame construction, corrosion-resistant fasteners shall be used. Screw fasteners shall penetrate the cold-formed steel framing at least three exposed threads. Other fasteners shall be installed in accordance with the approved construction documents and manufacturer's instructions. Where the siding is installed horizontally, the fastener spacing shall not exceed 16 inches (406 mm) horizontally and 12 inches (305 mm) vertically. Where the siding is installed vertically, the fastener spacing shall not exceed 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally and 12 inches (305 mm) vertically.

[BS] 1405.15 Cement plaster.
Cement plaster applied to exterior walls shall conform to the requirements specified in Chapter 25.

[BS] 1405.16 Fiber-cement siding.
Fiber-cement siding complying with Section 1404.10 shall be permitted on exterior walls of Type I, II, III, IV and V construction for wind pressure resistance or wind speed exposures as indicated by the manufacturer's listing and *label* and *approved* installation instructions. Where specified, the siding shall be installed over sheathing or materials *listed* in Section 2304.6 and shall be installed to conform to the *water-resistive barrier* requirements in Section 1403. Siding and accessories shall be installed in accordance with *approved* manufacturer's instructions. Unless otherwise specified in the *approved* manufacturer's instructions, nails used to fasten the siding to wood studs shall be corrosion-resistant round head smooth shank and shall be long enough to penetrate the studs at least 1 inch (25 mm). For cold-formed steel light-frame construction, corrosion-resistant fasteners shall be used. Screw fasteners shall penetrate the cold-formed steel framing at least three exposed full threads. Other fasteners shall be installed in accordance with the approved construction documents and manufacturer's instructions.

[BS] 1405.16.1 Panel siding.
Fiber-cement panels shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A, minimum Grade II (or ISO 8336, Category A, minimum Class 2). Panels shall be installed with the long dimension either parallel or perpendicular to framing. Vertical and horizontal joints shall occur over framing members and shall be protected with caulking, with battens or flashing, or be vertical or horizontal shiplap or otherwise designed to comply with Section 1403.2. Panel siding shall be installed with fasteners in accordance with the *approved* manufacturer's instructions.

[BS] 1405.16.2 Lap siding.
Fiber-cement lap siding having a maximum width of 12 inches (305 mm) shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A, minimum Grade II (or ISO 8336, Category A, minimum Class 2). Lap siding shall be lapped a minimum of $1^{1}/_{4}$ inches (32 mm) and lap siding not having tongue-and-groove end joints shall have the ends protected with caulking, covered with an H-section joint cover, located over a strip of flashing or shall be otherwise designed to comply with Section 1403.2. Lap siding courses shall be installed with the fastener heads exposed or concealed in accordance with the *approved* manufacturer's instructions.

`

[BS] 1405.17 Fastening.
Weather boarding and wall coverings shall be securely fastened with aluminum, copper, zinc, zinc-coated or other *approved* corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the nailing schedule in Table 2304.10.1 or the *approved* manufacturer's instructions. Shingles and other weather coverings shall be attached with appropriate standard-shingle nails to furring strips securely nailed to studs, or with *approved* mechanically bonding nails, except where sheathing is of wood not less than 1-inch (25 mm) nominal thickness or of wood structural panels as specified in Table 2308.9.3(3).

[BS] 1405.18 Polypropylene siding.
Polypropylene siding conforming to the requirements of this section and complying with Section 1404.12 shall be limited to exterior walls of Type VB construction located in areas where the wind speed specified in Chapter 16 does not exceed 100 miles per hour (45 m/s) and the building height is less than or equal to 40 feet (12 192 mm) in Exposure C. Where construction is located in areas where the basic wind speed exceeds 100 miles per hour (45 m/s), or building heights are in excess of 40 feet (12 192 mm), tests or calculations indicating compliance with Chapter 16 shall be submitted. Polypropylene siding shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Polypropylene siding shall be secured to the building so as to provide weather protection for the exterior walls of the building.

SECTION 1406
COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS ON THE EXTERIOR SIDE OF EXTERIOR WALLS

1406.1 General.
Section 1406 shall apply to *exterior wall coverings*; balconies and similar projections; and bay and oriel windows constructed of combustible materials.

1406.2 Combustible exterior wall coverings.
Combustible *exterior wall coverings* shall comply with this section.

Exception: Plastics complying with Chapter 26.

1406.2.1 Type I, II, III and IV construction.
On buildings of Type I, II, III and IV construction, exterior wall coverings shall be permitted to be constructed of combustible materials, complying with the following limitations:

1. Combustible exterior wall coverings shall not exceed 10 percent of an exterior wall surface area where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1524 mm) or less.

2. Combustible exterior wall coverings shall be limited to 40 feet (12 192 mm) in height above grade plane.

3. Combustible exterior wall coverings constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2 for exterior installation shall not be limited in wall surface area where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1524 mm) or less and shall be permitted up to 60 feet (18 288 mm) in height above grade plane regardless of the fire separation distance.

4. Wood veneers shall comply with Section 1405.5.

`

1406.2.1.1 Ignition resistance.
Where permitted by Section 1406.2.1, combustible exterior wall coverings shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 268.

Exceptions:

1. Wood or wood-based products.

2. Other combustible materials covered with an exterior weather covering, other than vinyl sidings, included in and complying with the thickness requirements of Table 1405.2.

3. Aluminum having a minimum thickness of 0.019 inch (0.48 mm).

1406.2.1.1.1 Fire separation 5 feet or less.
Where installed on exterior walls having a fire separation distance of 5 feet (1524 mm) or less, combustible exterior wall coverings shall not exhibit sustained flaming as defined in NFPA 268.

1406.2.1.1.2 Fire separation greater than 5 feet.
For fire separation distances greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), any exterior wall covering shall be permitted that has been exposed to a reduced level of incident radiant heat flux in accordance with the NFPA 268 test method without exhibiting sustained flaming. The minimum fire separation distance required for the exterior wall covering shall be determined from Table 1406.2.1.1.2 based on the maximum tolerable level of incident radiant heat flux that does not cause sustained flaming of the exterior wall covering.

TABLE 1406.2.1.1.2
MINIMUM FIRE SEPARATION FOR
COMBUSTIBLE EXTERIOR WALL COVERINGS

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (feet)	TOLERABLE LEVEL INCIDENT RADIANT HEAT ENERGY (kW/m^2)		FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (feet)	TOLERABLE LEVEL INCIDENT RADIANT HEAT ENERGY (kW/m^2)
5	12.5		16	5.9
6	11.8		17	5.5
7	11.0		18	5.2
8	10.3		19	4.9
9	9.6		20	4.6
10	8.9		21	4.4
11	8.3		22	4.1
12	7.7		23	3.9
13	7.2		24	3.7
14	6.7		25	3.5
15	6.3			

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 $Btu/H^2 \times °F = 0.0057\ kW/m^2 \times K$.

`

1406.2.2 Location.
Combustible exterior wall coverings located along the top of exterior walls shall be completely backed up by the exterior wall and shall not extend over or above the top of the exterior wall.

1406.2.3 Fireblocking.
Where the combustible exterior wall covering is furred out from the exterior wall and forms a solid surface, the distance between the back of the exterior wall covering and the exterior wall shall not exceed $1^5/_8$ inches (41 mm). The concealed space thereby created shall be fireblocked in accordance with Section 718.

Exception: The distance between the back of the exterior wall covering and the exterior wall shall be permitted to exceed $1^5/_8$ inches (41 mm) where the concealed space is not required to be fireblocked by Section 718.

1406.3 Balconies and similar projections.
Balconies and similar projections of combustible construction other than fire-retardant-treated wood shall be fire-resistance rated where required by Table 601 for floor construction or shall be of Type IV construction in accordance with Section 602.4. The aggregate length of the projections shall not exceed 50 percent of the building's perimeter on each floor.

Exceptions:

1. On buildings of Type I and II construction, three stories or less above *grade plane*, *fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be permitted for balconies, porches, decks and exterior stairways not used as required exits.

2. Untreated wood is permitted for pickets and rails or similar guardrail devices that are limited to 42 inches (1067 mm) in height.

3. Balconies and similar projections on buildings of Type III, IV and V construction shall be permitted to be of Type V construction, and shall not be required to have a *fire-resistance rating* where sprinkler protection is extended to these areas.

4. Where sprinkler protection is extended to the balcony areas, the aggregate length of the balcony on each floor shall not be limited.

1406.4 Bay and oriel windows.
Bay and oriel windows shall conform to the type of construction required for the building to which they are attached.

Exception: *Fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be permitted on buildings three stories or less above grade plane of Type I, II, III or IV construction.

SECTION 1407
METAL COMPOSITE MATERIALS (MCM)

1407.1 General.
The provisions of this section shall govern the materials, construction and quality of metal composite materials (MCM) for use as *exterior wall coverings* in addition to other applicable requirements of Chapters 14 and 16.

`

1407.2 Exterior wall finish.
MCM used as *exterior wall* finish or as elements of balconies and similar projections and bay and oriel windows to provide cladding or weather resistance shall comply with Sections 1407.4 through 1407.14.

1407.3 Architectural trim and embellishments.
MCM used as architectural *trim* or embellishments shall comply with Sections 1407.7 through 1407.14.

1407.4 Structural design.
MCM systems shall be designed and constructed to resist wind loads as required by Chapter 16 for components and cladding.

1407.5 Approval.
Results of *approved* tests or an engineering analysis shall be submitted to the *building official* to verify compliance with the requirements of Chapter 16 for wind loads.

1407.6 Weather resistance.
MCM systems shall comply with Section 1403 and shall be designed and constructed to resist wind and rain in accordance with this section and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1407.7 Durability.
MCM systems shall be constructed of *approved* materials that maintain the performance characteristics required in Section 1407 for the duration of use.

1407.8 Fire-resistance rating.
Where MCM systems are used on exterior walls required to have a *fire-resistance rating* in accordance with Section 705, evidence shall be submitted to the *building official* that the required *fire-resistance rating* is maintained.

> **Exception:** MCM systems not containing foam plastic insulation, which are installed on the outer surface of a fire-resistance-rated *exterior wall* in a manner such that the attachments do not penetrate through the entire *exterior wall* assembly, shall not be required to comply with this section.

1407.9 Surface-burning characteristics.
Unless otherwise specified, MCM shall have a *flame spread index* of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in the maximum thickness intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

1407.10 Type I, II, III and IV construction.
Where installed on buildings of Type I, II, III and IV construction, MCM systems shall comply with Sections 1407.10.1 through 1407.10.4, or Section 1407.11.

> **1407.10.1 Surface-burning characteristics.**
> MCM shall have a *flame spread index* of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested as an assembly in the maximum thickness intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.
>
> **1407.10.2 Thermal barriers.**
> MCM shall be separated from the interior of a building by an approved thermal barrier

`

consisting of $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard or a material that is tested in accordance with and meets the acceptance criteria of both the Temperature Transmission Fire Test and the Integrity Fire Test of NFPA 275.

1407.10.3 Thermal barrier not required.
The thermal barrier specified for MCM in Section 1407.10.2 is not required where:

1. The MCM system is specifically approved based on tests conducted in accordance with NFPA 286 and with the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.2.1, UL 1040 or UL 1715. Such testing shall be performed with the MCM in the maximum thickness intended for use. The MCM system shall include seams, joints and other typical details used in the installation and shall be tested in the manner intended for use.

2. The MCM is used as elements of balconies and similar projections, architectural *trim* or embellishments.

1407.10.4 Full-scale tests.
The MCM system shall be tested in accordance with, and comply with, the acceptance criteria of NFPA 285. Such testing shall be performed on the MCM system with the MCM in the maximum thickness intended for use.

1407.11 Alternate conditions.
MCM and MCM systems shall not be required to comply with Sections 1407.10.1 through 1407.10.4 provided such systems comply with Section 1407.11.1, 1407.11.2, 1407.11.3 or 1407.11.4.

1407.11.1 Installations up to 40 feet in height.
MCM shall not be installed more than 40 feet (12 190 mm) in height above grade where installed in accordance with Sections 1407.11.1.1 and 1407.11.1.2.

1407.11.1.1 Fire separation distance of 5 feet or less.
Where the *fire separation distance* is 5 feet (1524 mm) or less, the area of MCM shall not exceed 10 percent of the *exterior wall* surface.

1407.11.1.2 Fire separation distance greater than 5 feet.
Where the *fire separation distance* is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), there shall be no limit on the area of *exterior wall* surface coverage using MCM.

1407.11.2 Installations up to 50 feet in height.
MCM shall not be installed more than 50 feet (15 240 mm) in height above grade where installed in accordance with Sections 1407.11.2.1 and 1407.11.2.2.

1407.11.2.1 Self-ignition temperature.
MCM shall have a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater when tested in accordance with ASTM D1929.

1407.11.2.2 Limitations.
Sections of MCM shall not exceed 300 square feet (27.9 m^2) in area and shall be separated by not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) vertically.

`

1407.11.3 Installations up to 75 feet in height (Option 1).
MCM shall not be installed more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) in height above grade plane where installed in accordance with Sections 1407.11.3.1 through 1407.11.3.5.

Exception: Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be exempt from the height limitation.

1407.11.3.1 Prohibited occupancies.
MCM shall not be permitted on buildings classified as Group A-1, A-2, H, I-2 or I-3 occupancies.

1407.11.3.2 Nonfire-resistance-rated exterior walls.
MCM shall not be permitted on exterior walls required to have a *fire-resistance rating* by other provisions of this code.

1407.11.3.3 Specifications.
MCM shall be required to comply with all of the following:

1. MCM shall have a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater when tested in accordance with ASTM D1929.

2. MCM shall conform to one of the following combustibility classifications when tested in accordance with ASTM D635:

Class CC1: Materials that have a burning extent of 1 inch (25 mm) or less when tested at a nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm) or in the thickness intended for use.

Class CC2: Materials that have a burning rate of $2^{1}/_{2}$ inches per minute (1.06 mm/s) or less when tested at a nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm) or in the thickness intended for use.

1407.11.3.4 Area limitation and separation.
The maximum area of a single MCM panel and the minimum vertical and horizontal separation requirements for MCM panels shall be as provided for in Table 1407.11.3.4. The maximum percentage of exterior wall area of any story covered with MCM panels shall not exceed that indicated in Table 1407.11.3.4 or the percentage of unprotected openings permitted by Section 705.8, whichever is smaller.

Exception: In buildings provided with flame barriers complying with Section 705.8.5 and extending 30 inches (760 mm) beyond the exterior wall in the plane of the floor, a vertical separation shall not be required at the floor other than that provided by the vertical thickness of the flame barrier.

TABLE 1407.11.3.4
AREA LIMITATION AND SEPARATION REQUIREMENTS FOR MCM PANELS

FIRE SEPARATION	COMBUSTIBILITY CLASS OF MCM	MAXIMUM PERCENTAGE AREA OF	MAXIMUM SINGLE AREA OF	MINIMUM SEPARATION OF MCM PANELS (feet)

`

DISTANCE (feet)		EXTERIOR WALL COVERED WITH MCM PANELS	MCM PANELS (square feet)	Vertical	Horizontal
Less than 6	—	Not Permitted	Not Permitted	—	—
6 or more but less than 11	CC1	10	50	8	4
	CC2	Not Permitted	Not Permitted	—	—
11 or more but less than or equal to 30	CC1	25	90	6	4
	CC2	15	70	8	4
More than 30	CC1	50	Not Limited	3[a]	0
	CC2	50	100	6[a]	3

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.
a. For reductions in the minimum vertical separation, see Section 1407.11.3.4.

1407.11.3.5 Automatic sprinkler system increases.
Where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the maximum percentage area of exterior wall of any story covered with MCM panels and the maximum square footage of a single area of MCM panels in Table 1407.11.3.4 shall be increased 100 percent. The area of MCM panels shall not exceed 50 percent of the exterior wall area of any story or the area permitted by Section 704.8 for unprotected openings, whichever is smaller.

1407.11.4 Installations up to 75 feet in height (Option 2).
MCM shall not be installed more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) in height above grade plane where installed in accordance with Sections 1407.11.4.1 through 1407.11.4.4.

Exception: Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be exempt from the height limitation.

1407.11.4.1 Minimum fire separation distance.
MCM shall not be installed on any wall with a fire separation distance less than 30 feet (9 144 mm).

Exception: Where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the fire separation distance shall be permitted to be reduced to not less than 20 feet (6096 mm).

1407.11.4.2 Specifications.
MCM shall be required to comply with all of the following:

1. MCM shall have a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater when tested in accordance with ASTM D1929.

2. MCM shall conform to one of the following combustibility classifications when tested in accordance with ASTM D635:

`

Class CC1: Materials that have a burning extent of 1 inch (25 mm) or less when tested at a nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm), or in the thickness intended for use.

Class CC2: Materials that have a burning rate of $2^1/_2$ inches per minute (1.06 mm/s) or less when tested at a nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm), or in the thickness intended for use.

1407.11.4.3 Area and size limitations.
The aggregate area of MCM panels shall not exceed 25 percent of the area of any exterior wall face of the story on which those panels are installed. The area of a single MCM panel installed above the first story above grade plane shall not exceed 16 square feet (1.5 m^2) and the vertical dimension of a single MCM panel shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm).

Exception: Where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the maximum aggregate area of MCM panels shall be increased to 50 percent of the exterior wall face of the story on which those panels are installed and there shall not be a limit on the maximum dimension or area of a single MCM panel.

1407.11.4.4 Vertical separations.
Flame barriers complying with Section 705.8 and extending 30 inches (762 mm) beyond the exterior wall or a vertical separation of not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in height shall be provided to separate MCM panels located on the exterior walls at one-story intervals.

Exception: Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

1407.12 Type V construction.
MCM shall be permitted to be installed on buildings of Type V construction.

1407.13 Foam plastic insulation.
MCM systems containing foam plastic insulation shall also comply with the requirements of Section 2603.

1407.14 Labeling.
MCM shall be labeled in accordance with Section 1703.5.

SECTION 1408
EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS)

1408.1 General.
The provisions of this section shall govern the materials, construction and quality of exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) for use as *exterior wall coverings* in addition to other applicable requirements of Chapters 7, 14, 16, 17 and 26.

1408.2 Performance characteristics.
EIFS shall be constructed such that it meets the performance characteristics required in ASTM E2568.

`

[BS] 1408.3 Structural design.
The underlying structural framing and substrate shall be designed and constructed to resist loads as required by Chapter 16.

1408.4 Weather resistance.
EIFS shall comply with Section 1403 and shall be designed and constructed to resist wind and rain in accordance with this section and the manufacturer's application instructions.

1408.4.1 EIFS with drainage.
EIFS with drainage shall have an average minimum drainage efficiency of 90 percent when tested in accordance the requirements of ASTM E2273 and is required on framed walls of Type V construction, Group R1, R2, R3 and R4 occupancies.

1408.4.1.1 Water-resistive barrier.
For EIFS with drainage, the *water-resistive barrier* shall comply with Section 1404.2 or ASTM E2570.

1408.5 Installation.
Installation of the EIFS and EIFS with drainage shall be in accordance with the EIFS manufacturer's instructions.

1408.6 Special inspections.
EIFS installations shall comply with the provisions of Sections 1704.2 and 1705.16.

SECTION 1409
HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR-GRADE COMPACT LAMINATES (HPL)

1409.1 General.
The provisions of this section shall govern the materials, construction and quality of High-Pressure Decorative Exterior-Grade Compact Laminates (HPL) for use as exterior wall coverings in addition to other applicable requirements of Chapters 14 and 16.

1409.2 Exterior wall finish.
HPL used as exterior wall covering or as elements of balconies and similar projections and bay and oriel windows to provide cladding or weather resistance shall comply with Sections 1409.4 and 1409.14.

1409.3 Architectural trim and embellishments.
HPL used as architectural trim or embellishments shall comply with Sections 1409.7 through 1409.14.

[BS] 1409.4 Structural design.
HPL systems shall be designed and constructed to resist wind loads as required by Chapter 16 for components and cladding.

1409.5 Approval.
Results of approved tests or an engineering analysis shall be submitted to the building official to verify compliance with the requirements of Chapter 16 for wind loads.

`

1409.6 Weather resistance.
HPL systems shall comply with Section 1403 and shall be designed and constructed to resist wind and rain in accordance with this section and the manufacturer's instructions.

1409.7 Durability.
HPL systems shall be constructed of approved materials that maintain the performance characteristics required in Section 1409 for the duration of use.

1409.8 Fire-resistance rating.
Where HPL systems are used on exterior walls required to have a *fire-resistance rating* in accordance with Section 705, evidence shall be submitted to the building official that the required *fire-resistance rating* is maintained.

> **Exception:** HPL systems not containing foam plastic insulation, which are installed on the outer surface of a fire-resistance-rated exterior wall in a manner such that the attachments do not penetrate through the entire exterior wall assembly, shall not be required to comply with this section.

1409.9 Surface-burning characteristics.
Unless otherwise specified, HPL shall have a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

1409.10 Type I, II, III and IV construction.
Where installed on buildings of Type I, II, III and IV construction, HPL systems shall comply with Sections 1409.10.1 through 1409.10.4, or Section 1409.11.

1409.10.1 Surface-burning characteristics.
HPL shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

1409.10.2 Thermal barriers.
HPL shall be separated from the interior of a building by an approved thermal barrier consisting of $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard or a material that is tested in accordance with and meets the acceptance criteria of both the Temperature Transmission Fire Test and the Integrity Fire Test of NFPA 275.

1409.10.3 Thermal barrier not required.
The thermal barrier specified for HPL in Section 1409.10.2 is not required where:

1. The HPL system is specifically approved based on tests conducted in accordance with UL 1040 or UL 1715. Such testing shall be performed with the HPL in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use. The HPL system shall include seams, joints and other typical details used in the installation and shall be tested in the manner intended for use.

2. The HPL is used as elements of balconies and similar projections, architectural *trim* or embellishments.

1409.10.4 Full-scale tests.
The HPL system shall be tested in accordance with, and comply with, the acceptance

`

criteria of NFPA 285. Such testing shall be performed on the HPL system with the HPL in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use.

1409.11 Alternate conditions.
HPL and HPL systems shall not be required to comply with Sections 1409.10.1 through 1409.10.4 provided such systems comply with Section 1409.11.1 or 1409.11.2.

1409.11.1 Installations up to 40 feet in height.
HPL shall not be installed more than 40 feet (12 190 mm) in height above grade plane where installed in accordance with Sections 1409.11.1.1 and 1409.11.1.2.

1409.11.1.1 Fire separation distance of 5 feet or less.
Where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1524 mm) or less, the area of HPL shall not exceed 10 percent of the exterior wall surface.

1409.11.1.2 Fire separation distance greater than 5 feet.
Where the fire separation distance is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), there shall be no limit on the area of exterior wall surface coverage using HPL.

1409.11.2 Installations up to 50 feet in height.
HPL shall not be installed more than 50 feet (15 240 mm) in height above grade plane where installed in accordance with Sections 1409.11.2.1 and 1409.11.2.2.

1409.11.2.1 Self-ignition temperature.
HPL shall have a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater when tested in accordance with ASTM D1929.

1409.11.2.2 Limitations.
Sections of HPL shall not exceed 300 square feet (27.9 m^2) in area and shall be separated by a minimum 4 feet (1219 mm) vertically.

1409.12 Type V construction.
HPL shall be permitted to be installed on buildings of Type V construction.

1409.13 Foam plastic insulation.
HPL systems containing foam plastic insulation shall also comply with the requirements of Section 2603.

1409.14 Labeling.
HPL shall be labeled in accordance with Section 1703.5.

SECTION 1410
PLASTIC COMPOSITE DECKING

1410.1 Plastic composite decking.
Exterior deck boards, stair treads, handrails and guard systems constructed of plastic composites, including plastic lumber, shall comply with Section 2612.

`

CHAPTER 15
ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [BF], [BG] or [P] will be considered by one of the code development committees meeting during the 2015 (Group A) Code Development Cycle. All other code change proposals will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 1501
GENERAL

1501.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall govern the design, materials, construction and quality of roof assemblies, and rooftop structures.

SECTION 1502
DEFINITIONS

1502.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

AGGREGATE.

BALLAST.

BUILDING-INTEGRATED PHOTOVOLTAIC (BIPV) PRODUCT.

BUILT-UP ROOF COVERING.

INTERLAYMENT.

MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT SCREEN.

METAL ROOF PANEL.

METAL ROOF SHINGLE.

MODIFIED BITUMEN ROOF COVERING.

PENTHOUSE.

PHOTOVOLTAIC MODULE.

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL.

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEM.

PHOTOVOLTAIC SHINGLES.

`

POSITIVE ROOF DRAINAGE.

RADIANT BARRIER.

REROOFING.

ROOF ASSEMBLY.

ROOF COVERING.

ROOF COVERING SYSTEM.

ROOF DECK.

ROOF RECOVER.

ROOF REPAIR.

ROOF REPLACEMENT.

ROOF VENTILATION.

ROOFTOP STRUCTURE.

SCUPPER.

SINGLE-PLY MEMBRANE.

UNDERLAYMENT.

VEGETATIVE ROOF.

SECTION 1503
WEATHER PROTECTION

1503.1 General.
Roof decks shall be covered with *approved* roof coverings secured to the building or structure in accordance with the provisions of this chapter. Roof coverings shall be designed and installed in accordance with this code and the *approved* manufacturer's instructions such that the roof covering shall serve to protect the building or structure.

1503.2 Flashing.
Flashing shall be installed in such a manner so as to prevent moisture entering the wall and roof through joints in copings, through moisture-permeable materials and at intersections with parapet walls and other penetrations through the roof plane.

1503.2.1 Locations.
Flashing shall be installed at wall and roof intersections, at gutters, wherever there is a change in roof slope or direction and around roof openings. Where flashing is of metal, the metal shall be corrosion resistant with a thickness of not less than 0.019 inch (0.483 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet).

`

1503.3 Coping.
Parapet walls shall be properly coped with noncombustible, weatherproof materials of a width no less than the thickness of the parapet wall.

[P] 1503.4 Roof drainage.
Design and installation of roof drainage systems shall comply with Section 1503 of this code and Sections 1106 and 1108, as applicable, of the *International Plumbing Code*.

[P] 1503.4.1 Secondary (emergency overflow) drains or scuppers.
Where roof drains are required, secondary (emergency overflow) roof drains or scuppers shall be provided where the roof perimeter construction extends above the roof in such a manner that water will be entrapped if the primary drains allow buildup for any reason. The installation and sizing of secondary emergency overflow drains, leaders and conductors shall comply with Sections 1106 and 1108, as applicable, of the *International Plumbing Code.*

1503.4.2 Scuppers.
When scuppers are used for secondary (emergency overflow) roof drainage, the quantity, size, location and inlet elevation of the scuppers shall be sized to prevent the depth of ponding water from exceeding that for which the roof was designed as determined by Section 1611.1. Scuppers shall not have an opening dimension of less than 4 inches (102 mm). The flow through the primary system shall not be considered when locating and sizing scuppers.

1503.4.3 Gutters.
Gutters and leaders placed on the outside of buildings, other than Group R-3, private garages and buildings of Type V construction, shall be of noncombustible material or a minimum of Schedule 40 plastic pipe.

1503.5 Attic and rafter ventilation.
Intake and exhaust vents shall be provided in accordance with Section 1203.2 and the vent product manufacturer's installation instructions.

1503.6 Crickets and saddles.
A cricket or saddle shall be installed on the ridge side of any chimney or penetration greater than 30 inches (762 mm) wide as measured perpendicular to the slope. Cricket or saddle coverings shall be sheet metal or of the same material as the roof covering.

Exception: Unit skylights installed in accordance with Section 2405.5 and flashed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions shall be permitted to be installed without a cricket or saddle.

SECTION 1504
PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1504.1 Wind resistance of roofs.
Roof decks and roof coverings shall be designed for wind loads in accordance with Chapter 16 and Sections 1504.2, 1504.3 and 1504.4.

1504.1.1 Wind resistance of asphalt shingles.
Asphalt shingles shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D7158. Asphalt shingles shall meet the classification requirements of Table 1504.1.1 for the appropriate maximum basic

`

wind speed. Asphalt shingle packaging shall bear a label to indicate compliance with ASTM D7158 and the required classification in Table 1504.1.1.

Exception: Asphalt shingles that are not included in the scope of ASTM D7158 shall be tested and labeled to indicate compliance with ASTM D3161 and the required classification in Table 1504.1.1.

TABLE 1504.1.1
CLASSIFICATION OF ASPHALT SHINGLES

MAXIMUM BASIC WIND SPEED, V_{ult}, FROM FIGURE 1609.3(1), 1609.3(2), 1609.3(3) OR ASCE 7	MAXIMUM BASIC WIND SPEED, V_{asd}, FROM TABLE 1609.3.1	ASTM D7158[a] CLASSIFICATION	ASTM D3161 CLASSIFICATION
110	85	D, G or H	A, D or F
116	90	D, G or H	A, D or F
129	100	G or H	A, D or F
142	110	G or H	F
155	120	G or H	F
168	130	H	F
181	140	H	F
194	150	H	F

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 mph = 0.447 m/s.

a. The standard calculations contained in ASTM D7158 assume Exposure Category B or C and building height of 60 feet or less. Additional calculations are required for conditions outside of these assumptions.

1504.2 Wind resistance of clay and concrete tile.
Wind loads on clay and concrete tile roof coverings shall be in accordance with Section 1609.5.

1504.2.1 Testing.
Testing of concrete and clay roof tiles shall be in accordance with Sections 1504.2.1.1 and 1504.2.1.2.

1504.2.1.1 Overturning resistance.
Concrete and clay roof tiles shall be tested to determine their resistance to overturning due to wind in accordance with SBCCI SSTD 11 and Chapter 15.

1504.2.1.2 Wind tunnel testing.
Where concrete and clay roof tiles do not satisfy the limitations in Chapter 16 for rigid tile, a wind tunnel test shall be used to determine the wind characteristics of the concrete or clay tile roof covering in accordance with SBCCI SSTD 11 and Chapter 15.

1504.3 Wind resistance of nonballasted roofs.
Roof coverings installed on roofs in accordance with Section 1507 that are mechanically attached or adhered to the roof deck shall be designed to resist the design wind load pressures for components and cladding in accordance with Section 1609.

1504.3.1 Other roof systems.
Built-up, modified bitumen, fully adhered or mechanically attached single-ply roof systems,

`

metal panel roof systems applied to a solid or closely fitted deck and other types of membrane roof coverings shall be tested in accordance with FM 4474, UL 580 or UL 1897.

1504.3.2 Structural metal panel roof systems.
Where the metal roof panel functions as the roof deck and roof covering and it provides both weather protection and support for loads, the structural metal panel roof system shall comply with this section. Structural standing-seam metal panel roof systems shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E1592 or FM 4474. Structural through-fastened metal panel roof systems shall be tested in accordance with FM 4474, UL 580 or ASTM E1592.

Exceptions:

1. Metal roofs constructed of cold-formed steel shall be permitted to be designed and tested in accordance with the applicable referenced structural design standard in Section 2210.1.

2. Metal roofs constructed of aluminum shall be permitted to be designed and tested in accordance with the applicable referenced structural design standard in Section 2002.1.

1504.4 Ballasted low-slope roof systems.
Ballasted low-slope (roof slope < 2:12) single-ply roof system coverings installed in accordance with Sections 1507.12 and 1507.13 shall be designed in accordance with Section 1504.8 and ANSI/SPRI RP-4.

1504.5 Edge securement for low-slope roofs.
Low-slope built-up, modified bitumen and single-ply roof system metal edge securement, except gutters, shall be designed and installed for wind loads in accordance with Chapter 16 and tested for resistance in accordance with Test Methods RE-1, RE-2 and RE-3 of ANSI/SPRI ES-1, except V_{ult} wind speed shall be determined from Figure 1609.3(1), 1609.3(2), or 1609.3(3) as applicable.

1504.6 Physical properties.
Roof coverings installed on low-slope roofs (roof slope < 2:12) in accordance with Section 1507 shall demonstrate physical integrity over the working life of the roof based upon 2,000 hours of exposure to accelerated weathering tests conducted in accordance with ASTM G152, ASTM G155 or ASTM G154. Those roof coverings that are subject to cyclical flexural response due to wind loads shall not demonstrate any significant loss of tensile strength for unreinforced membranes or breaking strength for reinforced membranes when tested as herein required.

1504.7 Impact resistance.
Roof coverings installed on low-slope roofs (roof slope < 2:12) in accordance with Section 1507 shall resist impact damage based on the results of tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D3746, ASTM D4272, CGSB 37-GP-52M or the “Resistance to Foot Traffic Test” in Section 5.5 of FM 4470.

1504.8 Aggregate.
Aggregate used as surfacing for roof coverings and aggregate, gravel or stone used as ballast shall not be used on the roof of a building located in a hurricane-prone region as defined in Section 202, or on any other building with a mean roof height exceeding that permitted by Table 1504.8 based on the exposure category and basic wind speed at the site.

`

TABLE 1504.8
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE MEAN ROOF HEIGHT PERMITTED FOR BUILDINGS WITH AGGREGATE ON THE ROOF IN AREAS OUTSIDE A HURRICANE-PRONE REGION

NOMINAL DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{asd} (mph)[b, d]	MAXIMUM MEAN ROOF HEIGHT (ft)[a, c]		
	Exposure category		
	B	C	D
85	170	60	30
90	110	35	15
95	75	20	NP
100	55	15	NP
105	40	NP	NP
110	30	NP	NP
115	20	NP	NP
120	15	NP	NP
Greater than 120	NP	NP	NP

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.
a. Mean roof height as defined in ASCE 7.
b. For intermediate values of V_{asd}, the height associated with the next higher value of V_{asd} shall be used, or direct interpolation is permitted.
c. NP = gravel and stone not permitted for any roof height.
d. V_{asd} shall be determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1.

SECTION 1505
FIRE CLASSIFICATION

[BF] 1505.1 General.
Roof assemblies shall be divided into the classes defined below. Class A, B and C roof assemblies and roof coverings required to be listed by this section shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E108 or UL 790. In addition, *fire-retardant-treated wood* roof coverings shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D2898. The minimum roof coverings installed on buildings shall comply with Table 1505.1 based on the type of construction of the building.

Exception: Skylights and sloped glazing that comply with Chapter 24 or Section 2610.

TABLE 1505.1[a, b]
MINIMUM ROOF COVERING CLASSIFICATION FOR TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION

IA	IB	IIA	IIB	IIIA	IIIB	IV	VA	VB
B	B	B	C[c]	B	C[c]	B	B	C[c]

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.
a. Unless otherwise required in accordance with the *International Wildland-Urban Interface Code* or due to the location of the building within a fire district in accordance with Appendix D.
b. Nonclassified roof coverings shall be permitted on buildings of Group R-3 and Group U occupancies, where there is a minimum fire-separation distance of 6 feet measured from the leading edge of the roof.

`

c. Buildings that are not more than two stories above grade plane and having not more than 6,000 square feet of projected roof area and where there is a minimum 10-foot fire-separation distance from the leading edge of the roof to a lot line on all sides of the building, except for street fronts or public ways, shall be permitted to have roofs of No. 1 cedar or redwood shakes and No. 1 shingles constructed in accordance with Section 1505.7.

[BF] 1505.2 Class A roof assemblies.
Class A roof assemblies are those that are effective against severe fire test exposure. Class A roof assemblies and roof coverings shall be *listed* and identified as Class A by an *approved* testing agency. Class A roof assemblies shall be permitted for use in buildings or structures of all types of construction.

Exceptions:

1. Class A roof assemblies include those with coverings of brick, masonry or an exposed concrete roof deck.

2. Class A roof assemblies also include ferrous or copper shingles or sheets, metal sheets and shingles, clay or concrete roof tile or slate installed on noncombustible decks or ferrous, copper or metal sheets installed without a roof deck on noncombustible framing.

3. Class A roof assemblies include minimum 16 ounce per square foot (0.0416 kg/m^2) copper sheets installed over combustible decks.

4. Class A roof assemblies include slate installed over ASTM D226, Type II underlayment over combustible decks.

[BF] 1505.3 Class B roof assemblies.
Class B roof assemblies are those that are effective against moderate fire-test exposure. Class B roof assemblies and roof coverings shall be *listed* and identified as Class B by an *approved* testing agency.

[BF] 1505.4 Class C roof assemblies.
Class C roof assemblies are those that are effective against light fire-test exposure. Class C roof assemblies and roof coverings shall be *listed* and identified as Class C by an *approved* testing agency.

[BF] 1505.5 Nonclassified roofing.
Nonclassified roofing is *approved* material that is not *listed* as a Class A, B or C roof covering.

[BF] 1505.6 Fire-retardant-treated wood shingles and shakes.
Fire-retardant-treated wood shakes and shingles shall be treated by impregnation with chemicals by the full-cell vacuum-pressure process, in accordance with AWPA C1. Each bundle shall be marked to identify the manufactured unit and the manufacturer, and shall also be *labeled* to identify the classification of the material in accordance with the testing required in Section 1505.1, the treating company and the quality control agency.

[BF] 1505.7 Special purpose roofs.
Special purpose wood shingle or wood shake roofing shall conform to the grading and application requirements of Section 1507.8 or 1507.9. In addition, an underlayment of $^5/_8$-inch (15.9 mm) Type X water-resistant gypsum backing board or gypsum sheathing shall be placed

`

under minimum nominal $^{1}/_{2}$-inch-thick (12.7 mm) wood structural panel solid sheathing or 1-inch (25 mm) nominal spaced sheathing.

[BF] 1505.8 Building-integrated photovoltaic products.
Building-integrated photovoltaic products installed as the roof covering shall be tested, *listed* and *labeled* for fire classification in accordance with Section 1505.1.

[BF] 1505.9 Photovoltaic panels and modules.
Rooftop-mounted *photovoltaic panel systems* shall be tested, *listed* and identified with a fire classification in accordance with UL 1703. The fire classification shall comply with Table 1505.1 based on the type of construction of the building.

[BF] 1505.10 Roof gardens and landscaped roofs.
Roof gardens and landscaped roofs shall comply with Section 1507.16 and shall be installed in accordance with ANSI/SPRI VF-1.

SECTION 1506
MATERIALS

1506.1 Scope.
The requirements set forth in this section shall apply to the application of roof-covering materials specified herein. Roof coverings shall be applied in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Installation of roof coverings shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section 1507.

1506.2 Material specifications and physical characteristics.
Roof-covering materials shall conform to the applicable standards listed in this chapter.

1506.3 Product identification.
Roof-covering materials shall be delivered in packages bearing the manufacturer's identifying marks and *approved* testing agency labels required in accordance with Section 1505. Bulk shipments of materials shall be accompanied with the same information issued in the form of a certificate or on a bill of lading by the manufacturer.

SECTION 1507
REQUIREMENTS FOR ROOF COVERINGS

1507.1 Scope.
Roof coverings shall be applied in accordance with the applicable provisions of this section and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1507.2 Asphalt shingles.
The installation of asphalt shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.2.1 Deck requirements.
Asphalt shingles shall be fastened to solidly sheathed decks.

1507.2.2 Slope.
Asphalt shingles shall only be used on roof slopes of two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17- percent slope) or greater. For roof slopes from two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) up to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope), double underlayment application is required in accordance with Section 1507.2.8.

`

1507.2.3 Underlayment.
Unless otherwise noted, required underlayment shall conform to ASTM D226, Type I, ASTM D4869, Type I, or ASTM D6757.

1507.2.4 Self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet.
Self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet shall comply with ASTM D1970.

1507.2.5 Asphalt shingles.
Asphalt shingles shall comply with ASTM D225 or ASTM D3462.

1507.2.6 Fasteners.
Fasteners for asphalt shingles shall be galvanized, stainless steel, aluminum or copper roofing nails, minimum 12-gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] shank with a minimum $^{3}/_{8}$-inch-diameter (9.5 mm) head, of a length to penetrate through the roofing materials and a minimum of $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing. Where the roof sheathing is less than $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) thick, the nails shall penetrate through the sheathing. Fasteners shall comply with ASTM F1667.

1507.2.7 Attachment.
Asphalt shingles shall have the minimum number of fasteners required by the manufacturer, but not less than four fasteners per strip shingle or two fasteners per individual shingle. Where the roof slope exceeds 21 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (21:12), shingles shall be installed as required by the manufacturer.

1507.2.8 Underlayment application.
For roof slopes from two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) and up to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope), underlayment shall be two layers applied in the following manner. Apply a minimum 19-inch-wide (483 mm) strip of underlayment felt parallel with and starting at the eaves, fastened sufficiently to hold in place. Starting at the eave, apply 36-inch-wide (914 mm) sheets of underlayment overlapping successive sheets 19 inches (483 mm) and fasten sufficiently to hold in place. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal. For roof slopes of four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope) or greater, underlayment shall be one layer applied in the following manner. Underlayment shall be applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eave and lapped 2 inches (51 mm), fastened sufficiently to hold in place. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal.

1507.2.8.1 High wind attachment.
Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds [V_{asd} greater than 110 mph (49 m/s) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1] shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

Underlayment installed where V_{asd}, in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226 Type II, ASTM D4869 Type IV, or ASTM D6757. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches

`

(305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with Section 1507.2.8 except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32-gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.2.8.2 Ice barrier.
In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet shall be used in lieu of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the *exterior wall* line of the building.

Exception: Detached accessory structures that contain no conditioned floor area.

1507.2.9 Flashings.
Flashing for asphalt shingles shall comply with this section. Flashing shall be applied in accordance with this section and the asphalt shingle manufacturer's printed instructions.

1507.2.9.1 Base and cap flashing.
Base and cap flashing shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Base flashing shall be of either corrosion-resistant metal of minimum nominal 0.019- inch (0.483 mm) thickness or mineral-surfaced roll roofing weighing a minimum of 77 pounds per 100 square feet (3.76 kg/m^2). Cap flashing shall be corrosion-resistant metal of minimum nominal 0.019-inch (0.483 mm) thickness.

1507.2.9.2 Valleys.
Valley linings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions before applying shingles. Valley linings of the following types shall be permitted:

1. For open valleys (valley lining exposed) lined with metal, the valley lining shall be at least 24 inches (610 mm) wide and of any of the corrosion-resistant metals in Table 1507.2.9.2.

2. For open valleys, valley lining of two plies of mineral-surfaced roll roofing complying with ASTM D3909 or ASTM D6380 shall be permitted. The bottom layer shall be 18 inches (457 mm) and the top layer a minimum of 36 inches (914 mm) wide.

3. For closed valleys (valleys covered with shingles), valley lining of one ply of smooth roll roofing complying with ASTM D6380, and at least 36 inches (914 mm) wide or types as described in Item 1 or 2 above shall be permitted. Self-adhering polymer modified bitumen underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted in lieu of the lining material.

`

TABLE 1507.2.9.2
VALLEY LINING MATERIAL

MATERIAL	MINIMUM THICKNESS	GAGE	WEIGHT
Aluminum	0.024 in.	—	—
Cold-rolled copper	0.0216 in.	—	ASTM B370, 16 oz. per square ft.
Copper	—	—	16 oz
Galvanized steel	0.0179 in.	26 (zinc-coated G90)	—
High-yield copper	0.0162 in.	—	ASTM B370, 12 oz. per square ft.
Lead	—	—	2.5 pounds
Lead-coated copper	0.0216 in.	—	ASTM B101, 16 oz. per square ft.
Lead-coated high-yield copper	0.0162 in.	—	ASTM B101, 12 oz. per square ft.
Painted terne	—	—	20 pounds
Stainless steel	—	28	—
Zinc alloy	0.027 in.	—	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 ounce = 28.35 g, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

1507.2.9.3 Drip edge.
A drip edge shall be provided at eaves and rake edges of shingle roofs. Adjacent segments of the drip edge shall be lapped a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm). The vertical leg of drip edges shall be a minimum of $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in width and shall extend a minimum of $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) below sheathing. The drip edge shall extend back on the roof a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm). Underlayment shall be installed over drip edges along eaves. Drip edges shall be installed over underlayment along rake edges. Drip edges shall be mechanically fastened a maximum of 12 inches (305 mm) on center.

1507.3 Clay and concrete tile.
The installation of clay and concrete tile shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.3.1 Deck requirements.
Concrete and clay tile shall be installed only over solid sheathing or spaced structural sheathing boards.

1507.3.2 Deck slope.
Clay and concrete roof tile shall be installed on roof slopes of $2^1/_2$ units vertical in 12 units horizontal (21-percent slope) or greater. For roof slopes from $2^1/_2$ units vertical in 12 units horizontal (21-percent slope) to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope), double underlayment application is required in accordance with Section 1507.3.3.

`

1507.3.3 Underlayment.
Unless otherwise noted, required underlayment shall conform to: ASTM D226, Type II; ASTM D2626 or ASTM D6380, Class M mineral-surfaced roll roofing.

1507.3.3.1 Low-slope roofs.
For roof slopes from $2^1/_2$ units vertical in 12 units horizontal (21-percent slope), up to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope), underlayment shall be a minimum of two layers applied as follows:

1. Starting at the eave, a 19-inch (483 mm) strip of underlayment shall be applied parallel with the eave and fastened sufficiently in place.

2. Starting at the eave, 36-inch-wide (914 mm) strips of underlayment felt shall be applied over-lapping successive sheets 19 inches (483 mm) and fastened sufficiently in place.

1507.3.3.2 High-slope roofs.
For roof slopes of four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope) or greater, underlayment shall be a minimum of one layer of underlayment felt applied shingle fashion, parallel to, and starting from the eaves and lapped 2 inches (51 mm), fastened only as necessary to hold in place.

1507.3.3.3 High wind attachment.
Underlayment applied in areas subject to high wind [V_{asd} greater than 110 mph (49 m/s) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1] shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

Underlayment installed where V_{asd}, in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with Sections 1507.3.3.1 and 1507.3.3.2 except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32-gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.3.4 Clay tile.
Clay roof tile shall comply with ASTM C1167.

1507.3.5 Concrete tile.
Concrete roof tile shall comply with ASTM C1492.

`

1507.3.6 Fasteners.

Tile fasteners shall be corrosion resistant and not less than 11-gage, $^{5}/_{16}$-inch (8.0 mm) head, and of sufficient length to penetrate the deck a minimum of $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) or through the thickness of the deck, whichever is less. Attaching wire for clay or concrete tile shall not be smaller than 0.083 inch (2.1 mm). Perimeter fastening areas include three tile courses but not less than 36 inches (914 mm) from either side of hips or ridges and edges of eaves and gable rakes.

1507.3.7 Attachment.

Clay and concrete roof tiles shall be fastened in accordance with Table 1507.3.7.

TABLE 1507.3.7

CLAY AND CONCRETE TILE ATTACHMENT[a, b, c]

GENERAL - CLAY OR CONCRETE ROOF TILE			
Maximum Nominal Design Wind Speed, V_{asd}[f] (mph)	**Mean roof height (feet)**	**Roof slope < 3:12**	**Roof slope 3:12 and over**
85	0-60	One fastener per tile. Flat tile without vertical laps, two fasteners per tile.	Two fasteners per tile. Only one fastener on slopes of 7:12 and less for tiles with installed weight exceeding 7.5 lbs./sq. ft. having a width not more than 16 inches.
100	0-40		
100	>40-60	The head of all tiles shall be nailed. The nose of all eave tiles shall be fastened with approved clips. All rake tiles shall be nailed with two nails. The nose of all ridge, hip and rake tiles shall be set in a bead of roofer's mastic.	
110	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.	
120	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.	
130	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.	
All	>60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.	

INTERLOCKING CLAY OR CONCRETE ROOF TILE WITH PROJECTING ANCHOR LUGS[d, e] (Installations on spaced/solid sheathing with battens or spaced sheathing)				
Maximum Nominal Design Wind Speed, V_{asd}[f] (mph)	**Mean roof height (feet)**	**Roof slope < 5:12**	**Roof slope 5:12 < 12:12**	**Roof slope 12:12 and over**
85	0-60			

`

100	0-40	Fasteners are not required. Tiles with installed weight less than 9 lbs./sq. ft. require a minimum of one fastener per tile.	One fastener per tile every other row. All perimeter tiles require one fastener. Tiles with installed weight less than 9 lbs./sq. ft. require a minimum of one fastener per tile.	One fastener required for every tile. Tiles with installed weight less than 9 lbs./sq. ft. require a minimum of one fastener per tile.
100	>40-60	The head of all tiles shall be nailed. The nose of all eave tiles shall be fastened with approved clips. All rake tiles shall be nailed with two nails. The nose of all ridge, hip and rake tiles shall be set in a bead of roofer's mastic.		
110	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
120	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
130	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
All	>60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
INTERLOCKING CLAY OR CONCRETE ROOF TILE WITH PROJECTING ANCHOR LUGS (Installations on solid sheathing without battens)				
Maximum Nominal Design Wind Speed, V_{asd}[f] (mph)	**Mean roof height (feet)**	**All roof slopes**		
85	0-60	One fastener per tile.		
100	0-40	One fastener per tile.		
100	> 40-60	The head of all tiles shall be nailed. The nose of all eave tiles shall be fastened with approved clips. All rake tiles shall be nailed with two nails. The nose of all ridge, hip and rake tiles shall be set in a bead of roofer's mastic.		
110	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
120	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
130	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
All	> 60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 4.882 kg/m^2.

`

a. Minimum fastener size. Corrosion-resistant nails not less than No. 11 gage with $^{5}/_{16}$-inch head. Fasteners shall be long enough to penetrate into the sheathing $^{3}/_{4}$ inch or through the thickness of the sheathing, whichever is less. Attaching wire for clay and concrete tile shall not be smaller than 0.083 inch.
b. Snow areas. A minimum of two fasteners per tile are required or battens and one fastener.
c. Roof slopes greater than 24:12. The nose of all tiles shall be securely fastened.
d. Horizontal battens. Battens shall be not less than 1 inch by 2 inch nominal. Provisions shall be made for drainage by a minimum of $^{1}/_{8}$-inch riser at each nail or by 4-foot-long battens with at least a $^{1}/_{2}$-inch separation between battens. Horizontal battens are required for slopes over 7:12.
e. Perimeter fastening areas include three tile courses but not less than 36 inches from either side of hips or ridges and edges of eaves and gable rakes.
f. V_{asd} shall be determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1.

1507.3.8 Application.
Tile shall be applied according to the manufacturer's installation instructions, based on the following:

1. Climatic conditions.
2. Roof slope.
3. Underlayment system.
4. Type of tile being installed.

1507.3.9 Flashing.
At the juncture of the roof vertical surfaces, flashing and counterflashing shall be provided in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, and where of metal, shall not be less than 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage) corrosion-resistant metal. The valley flashing shall extend at least 11 inches (279 mm) from the centerline each way and have a splash diverter rib not less than 1 inch (25 mm) high at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). For roof slopes of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) and over, the valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment of either one layer of Type I underlayment running the full length of the valley, or a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet complying with ASTM D1970, in addition to other required underlayment. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, the metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solid cemented to the roofing underlayment for slopes under seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be installed.

1507.4 Metal roof panels.
The installation of metal roof panels shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.4.1 Deck requirements.
Metal roof panel roof coverings shall be applied to a solid or closely fitted deck, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied to spaced supports.

1507.4.2 Deck slope.
Minimum slopes for metal roof panels shall comply with the following:

`

1. The minimum slope for lapped, nonsoldered seam metal roof panels without applied lap sealant shall be three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).

2. The minimum slope for lapped, nonsoldered seam metal roof panels with applied lap sealant shall be one-half unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (4-percent slope). Lap sealants shall be applied in accordance with the approved manufacturer's installation instructions.

3. The minimum slope for standing-seam metal roof panel systems shall be one-quarter unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

1507.4.3 Material standards.
Metal-sheet roof covering systems that incorporate supporting structural members shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 22. Metal-sheet roof coverings installed over structural decking shall comply with Table 1507.4.3(1). The materials used for metal-sheet roof coverings shall be naturally corrosion resistant or provided with corrosion resistance in accordance with the standards and minimum thicknesses shown in Table 1507.4.3(2).

TABLE 1507.4.3(1)
METAL ROOF COVERINGS

ROOF COVERING TYPE	STANDARD APPLICATION RATE/THICKNESS
Aluminum	ASTM B209, 0.024 inch minimum thickness for roll-formed panels and 0.019 inch minimum thickness for press-formed shingles.
Aluminum-zinc alloy coated steel	ASTM A792 AZ 50
Cold-rolled copper	ASTM B370 minimum 16 oz./sq. ft. and 12 oz./sq. ft. high yield copper for metal-sheet roof covering systems: 12 oz./sq. ft. for pre-formed metal shingle systems.
Copper	16 oz./sq. ft. for metal-sheet roof-covering systems; 12 oz./sq. ft. for preformed metal shingle systems.
Galvanized steel	ASTM A653 G-90 zinc-coated[a].
Hard lead	2 lbs./sq. ft.
Lead-coated copper	ASTM B101
Prepainted steel	ASTM A755
Soft lead	3 lbs./sq. ft.
Stainless steel	ASTM A240, 300 Series Alloys
Steel	ASTM A924

`

Terne and terne-coated stainless	Terne coating of 40 lbs. per double base box, field painted where applicable in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
Zinc	0.027 inch minimum thickness; 99.995% electrolytic high grade zinc with alloy additives of copper (0.08% - 0.20%), titanium (0.07% - 0.12%) and aluminum (0.015%).

For SI: 1 ounce per square foot = 0.305 kg/m^2,
1 pound per square foot = 4.882 kg/m^2,
1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. For Group U buildings, the minimum coating thickness for ASTM A653 galvanized steel roofing shall be G-60.

TABLE 1507.4.3(2)
MINIMUM CORROSION RESISTANCE

55% Aluminum-zinc alloy coated steel	ASTM A792 AZ 50
5% Aluminum alloy-coated steel	ASTM A875 GF60
Aluminum-coated steel	ASTM A463 T2 65
Galvanized steel	ASTM A653 G-90
Prepainted steel	ASTM A755[a]

a. Paint systems in accordance with ASTM A755 shall be applied over steel products with corrosion-resistant coatings complying with ASTM A792, ASTM A875, ASTM A463 or ASTM A653.

1507.4.4 Attachment.
Metal roof panels shall be secured to the supports in accordance with the approved manufacturer's fasteners. In the absence of manufacturer recommendations, the following fasteners shall be used:

1. Galvanized fasteners shall be used for steel roofs.

2. Copper, brass, bronze, copper alloy or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners shall be used for copper roofs.

3. Stainless-steel fasteners are acceptable for all types of metal roofs.

4. Aluminum fasteners are acceptable for aluminum roofs attached to aluminum supports.

1507.4.5 Underlayment and high wind.
Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds [V_{asd} greater than 110 mph (49 m/s) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1] shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

Underlayment installed where V_{asd}, in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226 Type II, ASTM D4869 Type IV, or

`

ASTM D1970. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32-gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.5 Metal roof shingles.
The installation of metal roof shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.5.1 Deck requirements.
Metal roof shingles shall be applied to a solid or closely fitted deck, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied to spaced sheathing.

1507.5.2 Deck slope.
Metal roof shingles shall not be installed on roof slopes below three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).

1507.5.3 Underlayment.
Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type I or ASTM D4869.

1507.5.3.1 Underlayment and high wind.
Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds [V_{asd} greater than 110 mph (49 m/s) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1] shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not farther apart than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

Underlayment installed where V_{asd}, in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226 Type II or ASTM D4869 Type IV. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch spacing (152 mm) at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32-gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.5.4 Ice barrier.
In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together

`

or of a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be used in lieu of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

Exception: Detached accessory structures that contain no conditioned floor area.

1507.5.5 Material standards.
Metal roof shingle roof coverings shall comply with Table 1507.4.3(1). The materials used for metal-roof shingle roof coverings shall be naturally corrosion resistant or provided with corrosion resistance in accordance with the standards and minimum thicknesses specified in the standards listed in Table 1507.4.3(2).

1507.5.6 Attachment.
Metal roof shingles shall be secured to the roof in accordance with the *approved* manufacturer's installation instructions.

1507.5.7 Flashing.
Roof valley flashing shall be of corrosion-resistant metal of the same material as the roof covering or shall comply with the standards in Table 1507.4.3(1). The valley flashing shall extend at least 8 inches (203 mm) from the centerline each way and shall have a splash diverter rib not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) high at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, the metal valley flashing shall have a 36- inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment directly under it consisting of either one layer of underlayment running the full length of the valley or a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet complying with ASTM D1970, in addition to underlayment required for metal roof shingles. The metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solidly cemented to the roofing underlayment for roof slopes under seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be installed.

1507.6 Mineral-surfaced roll roofing.
The installation of mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall comply with this section.

1507.6.1 Deck requirements.
Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall be fastened to solidly sheathed roofs.

1507.6.2 Deck slope.
Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall not be applied on roof slopes below one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope).

1507.6.3 Underlayment.
Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type I or ASTM D4869.

1507.6.3.1 Underlayment and high wind.
Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds [V_{asd} greater than 110 mph (49 m/s) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1] shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

`

Underlayment installed where V_{asd}, in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226 Type II. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32- gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.6.4 Ice barrier.
In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be used in lieu of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

Exception: Detached accessory structures that contain no conditioned floor area.

1507.6.5 Material standards.
Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall conform to ASTM D3909 or ASTM D6380.

1507.7 Slate shingles.
The installation of slate shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.7.1 Deck requirements.
Slate shingles shall be fastened to solidly sheathed roofs.

1507.7.2 Deck slope.
Slate shingles shall only be used on slopes of four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12) or greater.

1507.7.3 Underlayment.
Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type II or ASTM D4869, Type III or IV.

1507.7.3.1 Underlayment and high wind.
Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds [V_{asd} greater than 110 mph (49 m/s) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1] shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

Underlayment installed where V_{asd}, in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226, Type II or ASTM D4869, Type IV. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied

`

in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32-gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.7.4 Ice barrier.
In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

Exception: Detached accessory structures that contain no conditioned floor area.

1507.7.5 Material standards.
Slate shingles shall comply with ASTM C406.

1507.7.6 Application.
Minimum headlap for slate shingles shall be in accordance with Table 1507.7.6. Slate shingles shall be secured to the roof with two fasteners per slate.

TABLE 1507.7.6
SLATE SHINGLE HEADLAP

SLOPE	HEADLAP (inches)
4:12 < slope < 8:12	4
8:12 < slope < 20:12	3
slope ≥ 20:12	2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1507.7.7 Flashing.
Flashing and counterflashing shall be made with sheet metal. Valley flashing shall be a minimum of 15 inches (381 mm) wide. Valley and flashing metal shall be a minimum uncoated thickness of 0.0179- inch (0.455 mm) zinc-coated G90. Chimneys, stucco or brick walls shall have a minimum of two plies of felt for a cap flashing consisting of a 4-inch-wide (102 mm) strip of felt set in plastic cement and extending 1 inch (25 mm) above the first felt and a top coating of plastic cement. The felt shall extend over the base flashing 2 inches (51 mm).

1507.8 Wood shingles.
The installation of wood shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section and Table 1507.8.

`

TABLE 1507.8
WOOD SHINGLE AND SHAKE INSTALLATION

ROOF ITEM	WOOD SHINGLES	WOOD SHAKES
1. Roof slope	Wood shingles shall be installed on slopes of not less than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (3:12).	Wood shakes shall be installed on slopes of not less than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12).
2. Deck requirement		
Temperate climate	Shingles shall be applied to roofs with solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall be not less than 1" × 4" nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners.	Shakes shall be applied to roofs with solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall be not less than 1" × 4" nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners. When 1" × 4" spaced sheathing is installed at 10 inches, boards must be installed between the sheathing boards.
In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water.	Solid sheathing is required.	Solid sheathing is required.
3. Interlayment	No requirements.	Interlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type 1.
4. Underlayment		
Temperate climate	Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type 1.	Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type 1.
In areas where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water.	An ice barrier that consists of at least two lay- ers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall extend from the eave's edge to a point at least 24 inches inside the exterior wall line of the building.	An ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches inside the exterior wall line of the building.
5. Application		
Attachment	Fasteners for wood shingles shall be hot- dipped galvanized or Type 304 (Type 316 for coastal areas) stainless steel	Fasteners for wood shakes shall be hot-dipped galvanized or Type 304 (Type 316 for coastal areas) with a minimum

`

	with a minimum penetration of 0.75 inch into the sheathing. For sheathing less than 0.5 inch thick, the fasteners shall extend through the sheathing.	penetration of 0.75 inch into the sheathing. For sheathing less than 0.5 inch thick, the fasteners shall extend through the sheathing.
No. of fasteners	Two per shingle.	Two per shake.
Exposure	Weather exposures shall not exceed those set forth in Table 1507.8.7.	Weather exposures shall not exceed those set forth in Table 1507.9.8.
Method	Shingles shall be laid with a side lap of not less than 1.5 inches between joints in courses, and no two joints in any three adjacent courses shall be in direct alignment. Spacing between shingles shall be 0.25 to 0.375 inch.	Shakes shall be laid with a side lap of not less than 1.5 inches between joints in adjacent courses. Spacing between shakes shall not be less than 0.375 inch or more than 0.625 inch for shakes and taper sawn shakes of naturally durable wood and shall be 0.25 to 0.375 inch for preservative-treated taper sawn shakes.
Flashing	In accordance with Section 1507.8.8.	In accordance with Section 1507.9.9.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

1507.8.1 Deck requirements.
Wood shingles shall be installed on solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall be not less than 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners.

1507.8.1.1 Solid sheathing required.
Solid sheathing is required in areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water.

1507.8.2 Deck slope.
Wood shingles shall be installed on slopes of not less than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).

1507.8.3 Underlayment.
Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type I or ASTM D4869.

1507.8.3.1 Underlayment and high wind.
Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds [V_{asd} greater than 110 mph (49 m/s) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1] shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

`

Underlayment installed where V_{asd}, in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226, Type II or ASTM D4869, Type IV. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32-gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.8.4 Ice barrier.
In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be used in lieu of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

Exception: Detached accessory structures that contain no conditioned floor area.

1507.8.5 Material standards.
Wood shingles shall be of naturally durable wood and comply with the requirements of Table 1507.8.5.

TABLE 1507.8.5
WOOD SHINGLE MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

MATERIAL	APPLICABLE MINIMUM GRADES	GRADING RULES
Wood shingles of naturally durable wood	1, 2 or 3	CSSB

CSSB = Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau

1507.8.6 Attachment.
Fasteners for wood shingles shall be corrosion resistant with a minimum penetration of $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) into the sheathing. For sheathing less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) in thickness, the fasteners shall extend through the sheathing. Each shingle shall be attached with a minimum of two fasteners.

1507.8.7 Application.
Wood shingles shall be laid with a side lap not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) between joints in adjacent courses, and not be in direct alignment in alternate courses. Spacing between

`

shingles shall be $^{1}/_{4}$ to $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (6.4 to 9.5 mm). Weather exposure for wood shingles shall not exceed that set in Table 1507.8.7.

TABLE 1507.8.7
WOOD SHINGLE WEATHER EXPOSURE AND ROOF SLOPE

ROOFING MATERIAL	LENGTH (inches)	GRADE	EXPOSURE (inches)	
			3:12 pitch to < 4:12	4:12 pitch or steeper
Shingles of naturally durable wood	16	No. 1	3.75	5
		No. 2	3.5	4
		No. 3	3	3.5
	18	No. 1	4.25	5.5
		No. 2	4	4.5
		No. 3	3.5	4
	24	No. 1	5.75	7.5
		No. 2	5.5	6.5
		No. 3	5	5.5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1507.8.8 Flashing.
At the juncture of the roof and vertical surfaces, flashing and counterflashing shall be provided in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, and where of metal, shall be not less than 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage) corrosion-resistant metal. The valley flashing shall extend at least 11 inches (279 mm) from the centerline each way and have a splash diverter rib not less than 1 inch (25 mm) high at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). For roof slopes of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) and over, the valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment of either one layer of Type I underlayment running the full length of the valley or a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet complying with ASTM D1970, in addition to other required underlayment. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, the metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solidly cemented to the roofing underlayment for slopes under seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be installed.

1507.9 Wood shakes.
The installation of wood shakes shall comply with the provisions of this section and Table 1507.8.

1507.9.1 Deck requirements.
Wood shakes shall only be used on solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall be not less than 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners. Where 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) spaced sheathing is installed at 10 inches (254 mm) on center, additional 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) boards shall be installed between the sheathing boards.

`

1507.9.1.1 Solid sheathing required.
Solid sheathing is required in areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water.

1507.9.2 Deck slope.
Wood shakes shall only be used on slopes of not less than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope).

1507.9.3 Underlayment.
Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type I or ASTM D4869.

1507.9.3.1 Underlayment and high wind.
Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds [V_{asd} greater than 110 mph (49 m/s) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1] shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

Underlayment installed where V_{asd}, in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226, Type II or ASTM D4869 Type IV. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32-gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.9.4 Ice barrier.
In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be used in lieu of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

Exception: Detached accessory structures that contain no conditioned floor area.

1507.9.5 Interlayment.
Interlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type I.

1507.9.6 Material standards.
Wood shakes shall comply with the requirements of Table 1507.9.6.

`

TABLE 1507.9.6
WOOD SHAKE MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

MATERIAL	MINIMUM GRADES	APPLICABLE GRADING RULES
Wood shakes of naturally durable wood	1	CSSB
Taper sawn shakes of naturally durable wood	1 or 2	CSSB
Preservative-treated shakes and shingles of naturally durable wood	1	CSSB
Fire-retardant-treated shakes and shingles of naturally durable wood	1	CSSB
Preservative-treated taper sawn shakes of Southern pine treated in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 3B and Section 5.6)	1 or 2	TFS

CSSB = Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau.
TFS = Forest Products Laboratory of the Texas Forest Services.

1507.9.7 Attachment.

Fasteners for wood shakes shall be corrosion resistant with a minimum penetration of $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) into the sheathing. For sheathing less than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) in thickness, the fasteners shall extend through the sheathing. Each shake shall be attached with a minimum of two fasteners.

1507.9.8 Application.

Wood shakes shall be laid with a side lap not less than $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm) between joints in adjacent courses. Spacing between shakes in the same course shall be $^{3}/_{8}$ to $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 to 15.9 mm) for shakes and taper sawn shakes of naturally durable wood and shall be $^{1}/_{4}$ to $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (6.4 to 9.5 mm) for preservative taper sawn shakes. Weather exposure for wood shakes shall not exceed those set in Table 1507.9.8.

TABLE 1507.9.8
WOOD SHAKE WEATHER EXPOSURE AND ROOF SLOPE

ROOFING MATERIAL	LENGTH (inches)	GRADE	EXPOSURE (inches) 4:12 PITCH OR STEEPER
Shakes of naturally durable wood	18 24	No. 1 No. 1	7.5 10[a]
Preservative-treated taper sawn shakes of Southern yellow pine	18 24	No. 1 No. 1	7.5 10
	18 24	No. 2 No. 2	5.5 7.5

`

Taper sawn shakes of naturally durable wood	18 24	No. 1 No. 1	7.5 10
	18 24	No. 2 No. 2	5.5 7.5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. For 24-inch by 0.375-inch handsplit shakes, the maximum exposure is 7.5 inches.

1507.9.9 Flashing.
At the juncture of the roof and vertical surfaces, flashing and counterflashing shall be provided in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, and where of metal, shall be not less than 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage) corrosion-resistant metal. The valley flashing shall extend at least 11 inches (279 mm) from the centerline each way and have a splash diverter rib not less than 1 inch (25 mm) high at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). For roof slopes of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) and over, the valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment of either one layer of Type I underlayment running the full length of the valley or a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet complying with ASTM D1970, in addition to other required underlayment. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, the metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solidly cemented to the roofing underlayment for slopes under seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be installed.

1507.10 Built-up roofs.
The installation of built-up roofs shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.10.1 Slope.
Built-up roofs shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage, except for coal-tar built-up roofs that shall have a design slope of not less than one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope).

1507.10.2 Material standards.
Built-up roof covering materials shall comply with the standards in Table 1507.10.2 or UL 55A.

TABLE 1507.10.2
BUILT-UP ROOFING MATERIAL STANDARDS

MATERIAL STANDARD	STANDARD
Acrylic coatings used in roofing	ASTM D6083
Aggregate surfacing	ASTM D1863
Asphalt adhesive used in roofing	ASTM D3747
Asphalt cements used in roofing	ASTM D3019; D2822; D4586
Asphalt-coated glass fiber base sheet	ASTM D4601
Asphalt coatings used in roofing	ASTM D1227; D2823; D2824; D4479
Asphalt glass felt	ASTM D2178
Asphalt primer used in roofing	ASTM D41

`

Asphalt-saturated and asphalt-coated organic felt base sheet	ASTM D2626
Asphalt-saturated organic felt (perfo-rated)	ASTM D226
Asphalt used in roofing	ASTM D312
Coal-tar cements used in roofing	ASTM D4022; D5643
Coal-tar saturated organic felt	ASTM D227
Coal-tar pitch used in roofing	ASTM D450; Type I or II
Coal-tar primer used in roofing, dampproofing and waterproofing	ASTM D43
Glass mat, coal tar	ASTM D4990
Glass mat, venting type	ASTM D4897
Mineral-surfaced inorganic cap sheet	ASTM D3909
Thermoplastic fabrics used in roofing	ASTM D5665, D5726

1507.11 Modified bitumen roofing.
The installation of modified bitumen roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.11.1 Slope.
Modified bitumen membrane roofs shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

1507.11.2 Material standards.
Modified bitumen roof coverings shall comply with CGSB 37-GP-56M, ASTM D6162, ASTM D6163, ASTM D6164, ASTM D6222, ASTM D6223, ASTM D6298 or ASTM D6509.

1507.12 Thermoset single-ply roofing.
The installation of thermoset single-ply roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.12.1 Slope.
Thermoset single-ply membrane roofs shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

1507.12.2 Material standards.
Thermoset single-ply roof coverings shall comply with ASTM D4637, ASTM D5019 or CGSB 37-GP-52M.

1507.12.3 Ballasted thermoset low-slope roofs.
Ballasted thermoset low-slope roofs (roof slope < 2:12) shall be installed in accordance with this section and Section 1504.4. Stone used as ballast shall comply with ASTM D448 or ASTM D7655.

1507.13 Thermoplastic single-ply roofing.
The installation of thermoplastic single-ply roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.13.1 Slope.
Thermoplastic single-ply membrane roofs shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

`

1507.13.2 Material standards.
Thermoplastic single-ply roof coverings shall comply with ASTM D4434, ASTM D6754, ASTM D6878 or CGSB CAN/CGSB 37-54.

1507.13.3 Ballasted thermoplastic low-slope roofs.
Ballasted thermoplastic low-slope roofs (roof slope < 2:12) shall be installed in accordance with this section and Section 1504.4. Stone used as ballast shall comply with ASTM D448 or ASTM D7655.

1507.14 Sprayed polyurethane foam roofing.
The installation of sprayed polyurethane foam roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.14.1 Slope.
Sprayed polyurethane foam roofs shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

1507.14.2 Material standards.
Spray-applied polyurethane foam insulation shall comply with Type III or IV as defined in ASTM C1029.

1507.14.3 Application.
Foamed-in-place roof insulation shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. A liquid-applied protective coating that complies with Table 1507.14.3 shall be applied no less than 2 hours nor more than 72 hours following the application of the foam.

TABLE 1507.14.3
PROTECTIVE COATING MATERIAL STANDARDS

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Acrylic coating	ASTM D6083
Silicone coating	ASTM D6694
Moisture-cured polyurethane coating	ASTM D6947

1507.14.4 Foam plastics.
Foam plastic materials and installation shall comply with Chapter 26.

1507.15 Liquid-applied roofing.
The installation of liquid-applied roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.15.1 Slope.
Liquid-applied roofing shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

1507.15.2 Material standards.
Liquid-applied roofing shall comply with ASTM C836, ASTM C957, ASTM D1227 or ASTM D3468, ASTM D6083, ASTM D6694 or ASTM D6947.

1507.16 Vegetative roofs, roof gardens and landscaped roofs.
Vegetative roofs, roof gardens and landscaped roofs shall comply with the requirements of this chapter, Sections 1607.12.3 and 1607.12.3.1 and the *International Fire Code.*

`

[BF] 1507.16.1 Structural fire resistance.
The structural frame and roof construction supporting the load imposed upon the roof by the *vegetative roof*, roof gardens or landscaped roofs shall comply with the requirements of Table 601.

1507.17 Photovoltaic shingles.
The installation of *photovoltaic shingles* shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.17.1 Deck requirements.
Photovoltaic shingles shall be applied to a solid or closely fitted deck, except where the shingles are specifically designed to be applied over spaced sheathing.

1507.17.2 Deck slope.
Photovoltaic shingles shall not be installed on roof slopes less than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).

1507.17.3 Underlayment.
Unless otherwise noted, required underlayment shall conform to ASTM D226, ASTM D4869 or ASTM D6757.

1507.17.4 Underlayment application.
Underlayment shall be applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eave, lapped 2 inches (51 mm) and fastened sufficiently to hold in place.

1507.17.4.1 High wind attachment.
Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds [V_{asd} greater than 110 mph (49 m/s) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1] shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Fasteners shall be applied along the overlap at not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center. Underlayment installed where V_{asd} is not less than 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226, Type II, ASTM D4869, Type IV or ASTM D6757. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with Section 1507.2.8 except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of not less than 32-gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.17.4.2 Ice barrier.
In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet shall be used instead of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point not less than 24 inches (610 mm) inside the *exterior wall* line of the building.

Exception: Detached accessory structures that contain no conditioned floor area.

`

1507.17.5 Fasteners.
Fasteners for *photovoltaic shingles* shall be galvanized, stainless steel, aluminum or copper roofing nails, minimum 12-gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] shank with a minimum $^{3}/_{8}$-inch-diameter (9.5 mm) head, of a length to penetrate through the roofing materials and a minimum of $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing. Where the roof sheathing is less than $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) thick, the nails shall penetrate through the sheathing. Fasteners shall comply with ASTM F1667.

1507.17.6 Material standards.
Photovoltaic shingles shall be *listed* and labeled in accordance with UL 1703.

1507.17.7 Attachment.
Photovoltaic shingles shall be attached in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1507.17.8 Wind resistance.
Photovoltaic shingles shall be tested in accordance with procedures and acceptance criteria in ASTM D3161. *Photovoltaic shingles* shall comply with the classification requirements of Table 1504.1.1 for the appropriate maximum nominal design wind speed. *Photovoltaic shingle* packaging shall bear a *label* to indicate compliance with the procedures in ASTM D3161 and the required classification from Table 1504.1.1.

SECTION 1508
ROOF INSULATION

[BF] 1508.1 General.
The use of above-deck thermal insulation shall be permitted provided such insulation is covered with an approved roof covering and passes the tests of NFPA 276 or UL 1256 when tested as an assembly.

Exceptions:

1. Foam plastic roof insulation shall conform to the material and installation requirements of Chapter 26.

2. Where a concrete roof deck is used and the above-deck thermal insulation is covered with an approved roof covering.

[BF] 1508.1.1 Cellulosic fiberboard.
Cellulosic fiberboard roof insulation shall conform to the material and installation requirements of Chapter 23.

[BF] 1508.2 Material standards.
Above-deck thermal insulation board shall comply with the standards in Table 1508.2.

[BF] TABLE 1508.2
MATERIAL STANDARDS FOR ROOF INSULATION

`

Cellular glass board	ASTM C552
Composite boards	ASTM C1289, Type III, IV, V or VI
Expanded polystyrene	ASTM C578
Extruded polystyrene	ASTM C578
Fiber-reinforced gypsum board	ASTM C1278
Glass-faced gypsum board	ASTM C1177
Mineral fiber insulation board	ASTM C726
Perlite board	ASTM C728
Polyisocyanurate board	ASTM C1289, Type I or II
Wood fiberboard	ASTM C208

SECTION 1509
RADIANT BARRIERS INSTALLED ABOVE DECK

[BF] 1509.1 General.
A *radiant barrie*r installed above a deck shall comply with Sections 1509.2 through 1509.4.

[BF] 1509.2 Fire testing.
Radiant barriers shall be permitted for use above decks where the *radiant barrier* is covered with an approved roof covering and the system consisting of the *radiant barrier* and the roof covering complies with the requirements of either FM 4550 or UL 1256.

[BF] 1509.3 Installation.
The low emittance surface of the *radiant barrier* shall face the continuous airspace between the *radiant barrier* and the roof covering.

[BF] 1509.4 Material standards.
A *radiant barrier* installed above a deck shall comply with ASTM C1313/1313M.

SECTION 1510
ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

[BG] 1510.1 General.
The provisions of this section shall govern the construction of rooftop structures.

[BG] 1510.2 Penthouses.
Penthouses in compliance with Sections 1510.2.1 through 1510.2.5 shall be considered as a portion of the story directly below the roof deck on which such penthouses are located. All other penthouses shall be considered as an additional story of the building.

[BG] 1510.2.1 Height above roof deck.
Penthouses constructed on buildings of other than Type I construction shall not exceed 18 feet (5486 mm) in height above the roof deck as measured to the average height of the roof of the penthouse.

Exceptions:

1. Where used to enclose tanks or elevators that travel to the roof level, penthouses shall be permitted to have a maximum height of 28 feet (8534 mm) above the roof deck.

`

2. Penthouses located on the roof of buildings of Type I construction shall not be limited in height.

[BG] 1510.2.2 Area limitation.
The aggregate area of penthouses and other enclosed rooftop structures shall not exceed one-third the area of the supporting roof deck. Such penthouses and other enclosed rooftop structures shall not be required to be included in determining the building area or number of stories as regulated by Section 503.1. The area of such penthouses shall not be included in determining the fire area specified in Section 901.7.

[BG] 1510.2.3 Use limitations.
Penthouses shall not be used for purposes other than the shelter of mechanical or electrical equipment, tanks, or vertical shaft openings in the roof assembly.

[BG] 1510.2.4 Weather protection.
Provisions such as louvers, louver blades or flashing shall be made to protect the mechanical and electrical equipment and the building interior from the elements.

[BG] 1510.2.5 Type of construction.
Penthouses shall be constructed with walls, floors and roofs as required for the type of construction of the building on which such penthouses are built.

Exceptions:

1. On buildings of Type I construction, the exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a *fire separation distance* greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) and less than 20 feet (6096 mm) shall be permitted to have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating. The exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a fire separation distance of 20 feet (6096 mm) or greater shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating.

2. On buildings of Type I construction two stories or less in height above grade plane or of Type II construction, the exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a *fire separation distance* greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) and less than 20 feet (6096 mm) shall be permitted to have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating or a lesser fire-resistance rating as required by Table 602 and be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood. The exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a *fire separation distance* of 20 feet (6096 mm) or greater shall be permitted to be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood and shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating. Interior framing and walls shall be permitted to be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood.

3. On buildings of Type III, IV or V construction, the exterior walls of penthouses with a fire separation distance greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) and less than 20 feet (6096 mm) shall be permitted to have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating or a lesser fire-resistance rating as required by Table 602. On buildings of Type III, IV or VA construction, the exterior walls of penthouses with a fire separation distance of 20 feet (6096 mm) or greater shall be permitted to be of Type IV or noncombustible construction or fire-retardant-treated wood and shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating.

`

[BG] 1510.3 Tanks.
Tanks having a capacity of more than 500 gallons (1893 L) located on the roof deck of a building shall be supported on masonry, reinforced concrete, steel or Type IV construction provided that, where such supports are located in the building above the lowest *story*, the support shall be fire-resistance rated as required for Type IA construction.

[BG] 1510.3.1 Valve and drain.
In the bottom or on the side near the bottom of the tank, a pipe or outlet, fitted with a suitable quick-opening valve for discharging the contents into a drain in an emergency shall be provided.

[BG] 1510.3.2 Location.
Tanks shall not be placed over or near a stairway or an elevator shaft, unless there is a solid roof or floor underneath the tank.

[BG] 1510.3.3 Tank cover.
Unenclosed roof tanks shall have covers sloping toward the perimeter of the tanks.

[BG] 1510.4 Cooling towers.
Cooling towers located on the roof deck of a building and greater than 250 square feet (23.2 m^2) in base area or greater than 15 feet (4572 mm) in height above the roof deck, as measured to the highest point on the cooling tower, where the roof is greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) in height above grade plane shall be constructed of noncombustible materials. The base area of cooling towers shall not exceed one-third the area of the supporting roof deck.

Exception: Drip boards and the enclosing construction shall be permitted to be of wood not less than 1 inch (25 mm) nominal thickness, provided the wood is covered on the exterior of the tower with noncombustible material.

[BG] 1510.5 Towers, spires, domes and cupolas.
Towers, spires, domes and cupolas shall be of a type of construction having fire-resistance ratings not less than required for the building on top of which such tower, spire, dome or cupola is built. Towers, spires, domes and cupolas greater than 85 feet (25 908 mm) in height above grade plane as measured to the highest point on such structures, and either greater than 200 square feet (18.6 m^2) in horizontal area or used for any purpose other than a belfry or an architectural embellishment, shall be constructed of and supported on Type I or II construction.

[BG] 1510.5.1 Noncombustible construction required.
Towers, spires, domes and cupolas greater than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in height above the highest point at which such structure contacts the roof as measured to the highest point on such structure, or that exceeds 200 square feet (18.6 m^2) in area at any horizontal section, or which is intended to be used for any purpose other than a belfry or architectural embellishment, or is located on the top of a building greater than 50 feet (1524 mm) in building height shall be constructed of and supported by noncombustible materials and shall be separated from the building below by construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1.5 hours with openings protected in accordance with Section 711. Such structures located on the top of a building greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) in building height shall be supported by noncombustible construction.

[BG] 1510.5.2 Towers and spires.
Enclosed towers and spires shall have exterior walls constructed as required for the building on top of which such towers and spires are built. The roof covering of spires shall be not

`

less than the same class of roof covering required for the building on top of which the spire is located.

[BG] 1510.6 Mechanical equipment screens.
Mechanical equipment screens shall be constructed of the materials specified for the exterior walls in accordance with the type of construction of the building. Where the fire separation distance is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), *mechanical equipment screens* shall not be required to comply with the fire-resistance rating requirements.

[BG] 1510.6.1 Height limitations.
Mechanical equipment screens shall not exceed 18 feet (5486 mm) in height above the roof deck, as measured to the highest point on the mechanical equipment screen.

Exception: Where located on buildings of Type IA construction, the height of *mechanical equipment screens* shall not be limited.

[BG] 1510.6.2 Type I, II, III and IV construction.
Regardless of the requirements in Section 1510.6, *mechanical equipment screens* that are located on the roof decks of buildings of Type I, II, III or IV construction shall be permitted to be constructed of combustible materials in accordance with any one of the following limitations:

1. The fire separation distance shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) and the height of the *mechanical equipment screen* above the roof deck shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm) as measured to the highest point on the *mechanical equipment screen*.

2. The fire separation distance shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) and the *mechanical equipment screen* shall be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2 for exterior installation.

3. Where exterior wall covering panels are used, the panels shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use, with each face tested independently in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The panels shall be tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use in accordance with, and shall comply with the acceptance criteria of, NFPA 285 and shall be installed as tested. Where the panels are tested as part of an exterior wall assembly in accordance with NFPA 285, the panels shall be installed on the face of the *mechanical equipment screen* supporting structure in the same manner as they were installed on the tested exterior wall assembly.

[BG] 1510.6.3 Type V construction.
The height of mechanical equipment screens located on the roof decks of buildings of Type V construction, as measured from grade plane to the highest point on the mechanical equipment screen, shall be permitted to exceed the maximum building height allowed for the building by other provisions of this code where complying with any one of the following limitations, provided the fire separation distance is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm):

1. Where the fire separation distance is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm), the height above grade plane of the mechanical equipment screen shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm) more than the maximum building height allowed;

2. The *mechanical equipment screen* shall be constructed of noncombustible materials;

`

3. The *mechanical equipment screen* shall be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2 for exterior installation; or

4. Where the fire separation distance is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm), the *mechanical equipment screen* shall be constructed of materials having a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use with each face tested independently in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

[BG] 1510.7 Photovoltaic panels and modules.
Rooftop-mounted *photovoltaic panels* and *modules* shall be designed in accordance with this section.

[BG] 1510.7.1 Wind resistance.
Rooftop-mounted *photovoltaic panels* and *modules* shall be designed for component and cladding wind loads in accordance with Chapter 16 using an effective wind area based on the dimensions of a single unit frame.

[BG] 1510.7.2 Fire classification.
Rooftop-mounted *photovoltaic panels* and *modules* shall have the fire classification in accordance with Section 1505.9.

[BG] 1510.7.3 Installation.
Rooftop-mounted *photovoltaic panels* and *modules* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

[BG] 1510.7.4 Photovoltaic panels and modules.
Rooftop-mounted *photovoltaic panels* and *modules* shall be *listed* and labeled in accordance with UL 1703 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

[BG] 1510.8 Other rooftop structures.
Rooftop structures not regulated by Sections 1510.2 through 1510.7 shall comply with Sections 1510.8.1 through 1510.8.5, as applicable.

[BG] 1510.8.1 Aerial supports.
Aerial supports shall be constructed of noncombustible materials.

Exception: Aerial supports not greater than 12 feet (3658 mm) in height as measured from the roof deck to the highest point on the aerial supports shall be permitted to be constructed of combustible materials.

[BG] 1510.8.2 Bulkheads.
Bulkheads used for the shelter of mechanical or electrical equipment or vertical shaft openings in the roof assembly shall comply with Section 1510.2 as penthouses. Bulkheads used for any other purpose shall be considered as an additional story of the building.

[BG] 1510.8.3 Dormers.
Dormers shall be of the same type of construction as required for the roof in which such dormers are located or the exterior walls of the building.

[BG] 1510.8.4 Fences.
Fences and similar structures shall comply with Section 1510.6 as *mechanical equipment screens*.

`

[BG] 1510.8.5 Flagpoles.
Flagpoles and similar structures shall not be required to be constructed of noncombustible materials and shall not be limited in height or number.

[BG] 1510.9 Structural fire resistance.
The structural frame and roof construction supporting imposed loads upon the roof by any rooftop structure shall comply with the requirements of Table 601. The fire-resistance reduction permitted by Table 601, Note a, shall not apply to roofs containing rooftop structures.

SECTION 1511
REROOFING

1511.1 General.
Materials and methods of application used for recovering or replacing an existing roof covering shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 15.

Exceptions:

1. *Roof replacement* or *roof recover* of existing low-slope roof coverings shall not be required to meet the minimum design slope requirement of one-quarter unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in Section 1507 for roofs that provide positive roof drainage.

2. Recovering or replacing an existing roof covering shall not be required to meet the requirement for secondary (emergency overflow) drains or scuppers in Section 1503.4 for roofs that provide for positive roof drainage. For the purposes of this exception, existing secondary drainage or scupper systems required in accordance with this code shall not be removed unless they are replaced by secondary drains or scuppers designed and installed in accordance with Section 1503.4.

1511.2 Structural and construction loads.
Structural roof components shall be capable of supporting the roof-covering system and the material and equipment loads that will be encountered during installation of the system.

1511.3 Roof replacement.
Roof replacement shall include the removal of all existing layers of roof coverings down to the roof deck.

Exception: Where the existing roof assembly includes an ice barrier membrane that is adhered to the roof deck, the existing ice barrier membrane shall be permitted to remain in place and covered with an additional layer of ice barrier membrane in accordance with Section 1507.

1511.3.1 Roof recover.
The installation of a new roof covering over an existing roof covering shall be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

1. Where the new roof covering is installed in accordance with the roof covering manufacturer's approved instructions.

2. Complete and separate roofing systems, such as standing-seam metal roof panel systems, that are designed to transmit the roof loads directly to the building's

`

structural system and that do not rely on existing roofs and roof coverings for support, shall not require the removal of existing roof coverings.

3. Metal panel, metal shingle and concrete and clay tile roof coverings shall be permitted to be installed over existing wood shake roofs when applied in accordance with Section 1511.4.

4. The application of a new protective coating over an existing spray polyurethane foam roofing system shall be permitted without tear off of existing roof coverings.

1511.3.1.1 Exceptions.
A *roof recover* shall not be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

1. Where the existing roof or roof covering is water soaked or has deteriorated to the point that the existing roof or roof covering is not adequate as a base for additional roofing.

2. Where the existing roof covering is slate, clay, cement or asbestos-cement tile.

3. Where the existing roof has two or more applications of any type of roof covering.

1511.4 Roof recovering.
Where the application of a new roof covering over wood shingle or shake roofs creates a combustible concealed space, the entire existing surface shall be covered with gypsum board, mineral fiber, glass fiber or other *approved* materials securely fastened in place.

1511.5 Reinstallation of materials.
Existing slate, clay or cement tile shall be permitted for reinstallation, except that damaged, cracked or broken slate or tile shall not be reinstalled. Existing vent flashing, metal edgings, drain outlets, collars and metal counterflashings shall not be reinstalled where rusted, damaged or deteriorated. Aggregate surfacing materials shall not be reinstalled.

1511.6 Flashings.
Flashings shall be reconstructed in accordance with *approved* manufacturer's installation instructions. Metal flashing to which bituminous materials are to be adhered shall be primed prior to installation.

SECTION 1512
PHOTOVOLTAIC PANELS AND MODULES

1512.1 Photovoltaic panels and modules.
Photovoltaic panels and *modules* installed upon a roof or as an integral part of a roof assembly shall comply with the requirements of this code and the *International Fire Code*.

`

CHAPTER 16
STRUCTURAL DESIGN

User note: Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 1601
GENERAL

1601.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall govern the structural design of buildings, structures and portions thereof regulated by this code.

SECTION 1602
DEFINITIONS AND NOTATIONS

1602.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN.

DEAD LOADS.

DESIGN STRENGTH.

DIAPHRAGM.

Diaphragm, blocked.

Diaphragm boundary.

Diaphragm chord.

ESSENTIAL FACILITIES.

FABRIC PARTITION.

FACTORED LOAD.

HELIPAD.

ICE-SENSITIVE STRUCTURE.

IMPACT LOAD.

LIMIT STATE.

`

LIVE LOAD.

LIVE LOAD (ROOF).

LOAD AND RESISTANCE FACTOR DESIGN (LRFD).

LOAD EFFECTS.

LOAD FACTOR.

LOADS.

NOMINAL LOADS.

OTHER STRUCTURES.

PANEL (PART OF A STRUCTURE).

RESISTANCE FACTOR.

RISK CATEGORY.

STRENGTH, NOMINAL.

STRENGTH, REQUIRED.

STRENGTH DESIGN.

SUSCEPTIBLE BAY.

VEHICLE BARRIER.

NOTATIONS.

D	=	Dead load.
D_i	=	Weight of ice in accordance with Chapter 10 of ASCE 7.
E	=	Combined effect of horizontal and vertical earthquake induced forces as defined in Section 12.4.2 of ASCE 7.
F	=	Load due to fluids with well-defined pressures and maximum heights.
F_a	=	Flood load in accordance with Chapter 5 of ASCE 7.
H	=	Load due to lateral earth pressures, ground water pressure or pressure of bulk materials.
L	=	Roof live load greater than 20 psf (0.96 kN/m^2) and floor live load.
L_r	=	Roof live load of 20 psf (0.96 kN/m^2) or less.
R	=	Rain load.
S	=	Snow load.
T	=	Self-straining load.

`

V_{asd}	=	Nominal design wind speed (3-second gust), miles per hour (mph) (km/hr) where applicable.
V_{ult}	=	Ultimate design wind speeds (3-second gust), miles per hour (mph) (km/hr) determined from Figure 1609.3(1), 1609.3(2), 1609.3(3) or ASCE 7.
W	=	Load due to wind pressure.
W_i	=	Wind-on-ice in accordance with Chapter 10 of ASCE 7.

SECTION 1603
CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

1603.1 General.
Construction documents shall show the size, section and relative locations of structural members with floor levels, column centers and offsets dimensioned. The design loads and other information pertinent to the structural design required by Sections 1603.1.1 through 1603.1.8 shall be indicated on the *construction documents*.

Exception: *Construction documents* for buildings constructed in accordance with the *conventional light-frame construction* provisions of Section 2308 shall indicate the following structural design information:

1. Floor and roof live loads.
2. Ground snow load, P_g.
3. Ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, (3-second gust), miles per hour (mph) (km/hr) and nominal design wind speed, V_{asd}, as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 and wind exposure.
4. *Seismic design category* and *site class*.
5. Flood design data, if located in *flood hazard areas* established in Section 1612.3.
6. Design load-bearing values of soils.

1603.1.1 Floor live load.
The uniformly distributed, concentrated and impact floor live load used in the design shall be indicated for floor areas. Use of live load reduction in accordance with Section 1607.10 shall be indicated for each type of live load used in the design.

1603.1.2 Roof live load.
The roof live load used in the design shall be indicated for roof areas (Section 1607.12).

1603.1.3 Roof snow load data.
The ground snow load, P_g, shall be indicated. In areas where the ground snow load, P_g, exceeds 10 pounds per square foot (psf) (0.479 kN/m^2), the following additional information shall also be provided, regardless of whether snow loads govern the design of the roof:

`

1. Flat-roof snow load, P_f.

2. Snow exposure factor, C_e.

3. Snow load importance factor, I_s.

4. Thermal factor, C_t.

5. Drift surcharge load(s), P_d, where the sum of P_d and P_f exceeds 20 psf (0.96 kN/m^2).

6. Width of snow drift(s), *w*.

1603.1.4 Wind design data.
The following information related to wind loads shall be shown, regardless of whether wind loads govern the design of the lateral force-resisting system of the structure:

1. Ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, (3-second gust), miles per hour (km/hr) and nominal design wind speed, V_{asd}, as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1.

2. *Risk category*.

3. Wind exposure. Applicable wind direction if more than one wind exposure is utilized.

4. Applicable internal pressure coefficient.

5. Design wind pressures to be used for exterior component and cladding materials not specifically designed by the *registered design professional* responsible for the design of the structure, psf (kN/ m^2).

1603.1.5 Earthquake design data.
The following information related to seismic loads shall be shown, regardless of whether seismic loads govern the design of the lateral force-resisting system of the structure:

1. *Risk category*.

2. Seismic importance factor, I_e.

3. Mapped spectral response acceleration parameters, S_S and S_1.

4. *Site class*.

5. Design spectral response acceleration parameters, S_{DS} and S_{D1}.

6. *Seismic design category*.

`

7. Basic seismic force-resisting system(s).

8. Design base shear(s).

9. Seismic response coefficient(s), *CS*.

10. Response modification coefficient(s), *R*.

11. Analysis procedure used.

1603.1.6 Geotechnical information.
The design load-bearing values of soils shall be shown on the *construction documents*.

1603.1.7 Flood design data.
For buildings located in whole or in part in *flood hazard areas* as established in Section 1612.3, the documentation pertaining to design, if required in Section 1612.5, shall be included and the following information, referenced to the datum on the community's Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM), shall be shown, regardless of whether flood loads govern the design of the building:

1. Flood design class assigned according to ASCE 24.

2. In *flood hazard areas* other than *coastal high hazard areas* or *coastal A zones*, the elevation of the proposed lowest floor, including the basement.

3. In *flood hazard areas* other than *coastal high hazard areas* or *coastal A zones*, the elevation to which any nonresidential building will be dry floodproofed.

4. In *coastal high hazard areas* and *coastal A zones*, the proposed elevation of the bottom of the lowest horizontal structural member of the lowest floor, including the basement.

1603.1.8 Special loads.
Special loads that are applicable to the design of the building, structure or portions thereof shall be indicated along with the specified section of this code that addresses the special loading condition.

1603.1.8.1 Photovoltaic panel systems.
The dead load of rooftop-mounted *photovoltaic panel systems*, including rack support systems, shall be indicated on the construction documents.

SECTION 1604
GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

1604.1 General.
Building, structures and parts thereof shall be designed and constructed in accordance with strength design, *load and resistance factor design*, *allowable stress design*, empirical design or conventional construction methods, as permitted by the applicable material chapters.

1604.2 Strength.
Buildings and other structures, and parts thereof, shall be designed and constructed to support

`

safely the factored loads in load combinations defined in this code without exceeding the appropriate strength limit states for the materials of construction. Alternatively, buildings and other structures, and parts thereof, shall be designed and constructed to support safely the *nominal loads* in load combinations defined in this code without exceeding the appropriate specified allowable stresses for the materials of construction.

Loads and forces for occupancies or uses not covered in this chapter shall be subject to the approval of the *building official*.

1604.3 Serviceability.
Structural systems and members thereof shall be designed to have adequate stiffness to limit deflections and lateral drift. See Section 12.12.1 of ASCE 7 for drift limits applicable to earthquake loading.

TABLE 1604.3
DEFLECTION LIMITS[a, b, c, h, i]

CONSTRUCTION	*L*	*S or W*[f]	*D + L*[d, g]
Roof members:[e] Supporting plaster or stucco ceiling Supporting nonplaster ceiling Not supporting ceiling	//360 //240 //180	//360 //240 //180	//240 //180 //120
Floor members	//360	—	//240
Exterior walls: With plaster or stucco finishes With other brittle finishes With flexible finishes	— — —	//360 //240 //120	— — —
Interior partitions:[b] With plaster or stucco finishes	//360	—	—

`

With other brittle finishes With flexible finishes	3 6 0 *l*/ 2 4 0 *l*/ 1 2 0	— —	— —
Farm buildings	—	—	*l*/ 1 8 0
Greenhouses	—	—	*l*/ 1 2 0

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. For structural roofing and siding made of formed metal sheets, the total load deflection shall not exceed *l*/60. For secondary roof structural members supporting formed metal roofing, the live load deflection shall not exceed *l*/150. For secondary wall members supporting formed metal siding, the design wind load deflection shall not exceed *l*/90. For roofs, this exception only applies when the metal sheets have no roof covering.
b. Flexible, folding and portable partitions are not governed by the provisions of this section. The deflection criterion for interior partitions is based on the horizontal load defined in Section 1607.14.
c. See Section 2403 for glass supports.
d. The deflection limit for the *D*+*L* load combination only applies to the deflection due to the creep component of long-term dead load deflection plus the short-term live load deflection. For wood structural members that are dry at time of installation and used under dry conditions in accordance with the ANSI/AWC NDS, the creep component of the long-term deflection shall be permitted to be estimated as the immediate dead load deflection resulting from 0.5*D*. For wood structural members at all other moisture conditions, the creep component of the long-term deflection is permitted to be estimated as the immediate dead load deflection resulting from *D*. The value of 0.5*D* shall not be used in combination with ANSI/AWC NDS provisions for long-term loading.
e. The above deflections do not ensure against ponding. Roofs that do not have sufficient slope or camber to ensure adequate drainage shall be investigated for ponding. See Section 1611 for rain and ponding requirements and Section 1503.4 for roof drainage requirements.
f. The wind load is permitted to be taken as 0.42 times the “component and cladding” loads for the purpose of determining deflection limits herein. Where members support glass in accordance with Section 2403 using the deflection limit therein, the wind load shall be no less than 0.6 times the “component and cladding” loads for the purpose of determining deflection.
g. For steel structural members, the dead load shall be taken as zero.
h. For aluminum structural members or aluminum panels used in skylights and sloped glazing framing, roofs or walls of sunroom additions or patio covers not supporting edge of glass or aluminum sandwich panels, the total load deflection shall not exceed *l*/60. For continuous aluminum structural members supporting edge of glass, the total load deflection shall not exceed *l*/175 for each glass lite or *l*/60 for the entire length of the member, whichever is more stringent. For aluminum sandwich panels used in roofs or walls of sunroom additions or patio covers, the total load deflection shall not exceed *1*/120.
i. For cantilever members, *l* shall be taken as twice the length of the cantilever.

1604.3.1 Deflections.
The deflections of structural members shall not exceed the more restrictive of the limitations of Sections 1604.3.2 through 1604.3.5 or that permitted by Table 1604.3.

1604.3.2 Reinforced concrete.
The deflection of reinforced concrete structural members shall not exceed that permitted by ACI 318.

`

1604.3.3 Steel.
The deflection of steel structural members shall not exceed that permitted by AISC 360, AISI S100, ASCE 8, SJI CJ, SJI JG, SJI K or SJI LH/DLH, as applicable.

1604.3.4 Masonry.
The deflection of masonry structural members shall not exceed that permitted by TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

1604.3.5 Aluminum.
The deflection of aluminum structural members shall not exceed that permitted by AA ADM1.

1604.3.6 Limits.
The deflection limits of Section 1604.3.1 shall be used unless more restrictive deflection limits are required by a referenced standard for the element or finish material.

1604.4 Analysis.
Load effects on structural members and their connections shall be determined by methods of structural analysis that take into account equilibrium, general stability, geometric compatibility and both short- and long-term material properties.

Members that tend to accumulate residual deformations under repeated service loads shall have included in their analysis the added eccentricities expected to occur during their service life.

Any system or method of construction to be used shall be based on a rational analysis in accordance with well-established principles of mechanics. Such analysis shall result in a system that provides a complete load path capable of transferring loads from their point of origin to the load-resisting elements.

The total lateral force shall be distributed to the various vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system in proportion to their rigidities, considering the rigidity of the horizontal bracing system or diaphragm. Rigid elements assumed not to be a part of the lateral force-resisting system are permitted to be incorporated into buildings provided their effect on the action of the system is considered and provided for in the design. A diaphragm is rigid for the purpose of distribution of story shear and torsional moment when the lateral deformation of the diaphragm is less than or equal to two times the average story drift. Where required by ASCE 7, provisions shall be made for the increased forces induced on resisting elements of the structural system resulting from torsion due to eccentricity between the center of application of the lateral forces and the center of rigidity of the lateral force-resisting system.

Every structure shall be designed to resist the overturning effects caused by the lateral forces specified in this chapter. See Section 1609 for wind loads, Section 1610 for lateral soil loads and Section 1613 for earthquake loads.

1604.5 Risk category.
Each building and structure shall be assigned a risk category in accordance with Table 1604.5. Where a referenced standard specifies an occupancy category, the risk category shall not be taken as lower than the occupancy category specified therein. Where a referenced standard specifies that the assignment of a risk category be in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 1.5-1, Table 1604.5 shall be used in lieu of ASCE 7, Table 1.5-1.

`

TABLE 1604.5
RISK CATEGORY OF BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES

RISK CATEGORY	NATURE OF OCCUPANCY
I	Buildings and other structures that represent a low hazard to human life in the event of failure, including but not limited to: • Agricultural facilities. • Certain temporary facilities. • Minor storage facilities.
II	Buildings and other structures except those listed in Risk Categories I, III and IV.
III	Buildings and other structures that represent a substantial hazard to human life in the event of failure, including but not limited to: • Buildings and other structures whose primary occupancy is public assembly with an occupant load greater than 300. • Buildings and other structures containing Group E occupancies with an occupant load greater than 250. • Buildings and other structures containing educational occupancies for students above the 12th grade with an occupant load greater than 500. • Group I-2 occupancies with an occupant load of 50 or more resident care recipients but not having surgery or emergency treatment facilities. • Group I-3 occupancies. • Any other occupancy with an occupant load greater than 5,000.[a] • Power-generating stations, water treatment facilities for potable water, wastewater treatment facilities and other public utility facilities not included in Risk Category IV. • Buildings and other structures not included in Risk Category IV containing quantities of toxic or explosive materials that: Exceed maximum allowable quantities per control area as given in Table 307.1(1) or 307.1(2) or per outdoor control area in accordance with the *International Fire Code*; and Are sufficient to pose a threat to the public if released.[b]
IV	Buildings and other structures designated as essential facilities, including but not limited to: • Group I-2 occupancies having surgery or emergency treatment facilities. • Fire, rescue, ambulance and police stations and emergency vehicle garages. • Designated earthquake, hurricane or other emergency shelters. • Designated emergency preparedness, communications and operations centers and other facilities required for emergency response. • Power-generating stations and other public utility facilities required as emergency backup facilities for Risk Category IV structures. • Buildings and other structures containing quantities of highly toxic materials that: Exceed maximum allowable quantities per control area as given in Table 307.1(2) or per outdoor control area in accordance with the *International Fire Code*; and Are sufficient to pose a threat to the public if released.[b] • Aviation control towers, air traffic control centers and emergency aircraft hangars. • Buildings and other structures having critical national defense functions. • Water storage facilities and pump structures required to maintain water pressure for fire suppression.

a. For purposes of occupant load calculation, occupancies required by Table 1004.1.2 to use gross floor area calculations shall be permitted to use net floor areas to determine the total occupant load.
b. Where approved by the building official, the classification of buildings and other structures as Risk Category III or IV based on their quantities of toxic, highly toxic or explosive materials is permitted to be reduced to Risk Category II, provided it can be demonstrated by a hazard assessment in accordance with Section 1.5.3 of ASCE 7 that a release of the toxic, highly toxic or explosive materials is not sufficient to pose a threat to the public.

1604.5.1 Multiple occupancies.
Where a building or structure is occupied by two or more occupancies not included in the same *risk category*, it shall be assigned the classification of the highest *risk category* corresponding to the various occupancies. Where buildings or structures have two or more portions that are structurally separated, each portion shall be separately classified. Where a separated portion of a building or structure provides required access to, required egress from or shares life safety components with another portion having a higher *risk category*, both portions shall be assigned to the higher *risk category*.

1604.6 In-situ load tests.
The *building official* is authorized to require an engineering analysis or a load test, or both, of

`

any construction whenever there is reason to question the safety of the construction for the intended occupancy. Engineering analysis and load tests shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1708.

1604.7 Preconstruction load tests.
Materials and methods of construction that are not capable of being designed by *approved* engineering analysis or that do not comply with the applicable referenced standards, or alternative test procedures in accordance with Section 1707, shall be load tested in accordance with Section 1719.

1604.8 Anchorage.
Buildings and other structures, and portions thereof, shall be provided with anchorage in accordance with Sections 1604.8.1 through 1604.8.3, as applicable.

1604.8.1 General.
Anchorage of the roof to walls and columns, and of walls and columns to foundations, shall be provided to resist the uplift and sliding forces that result from the application of the prescribed loads.

1604.8.2 Structural walls.
Walls that provide vertical load-bearing resistance or lateral shear resistance for a portion of the structure shall be anchored to the roof and to all floors and members that provide lateral support for the wall or that are supported by the wall. The connections shall be capable of resisting the horizontal forces specified in Section 1.4.5 of ASCE 7 for walls of structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* A and to Section 12.11 of ASCE 7 for walls of structures assigned to all other *seismic design categories*. Required anchors in masonry walls of hollow units or cavity walls shall be embedded in a reinforced grouted structural element of the wall. See Sections 1609 for wind design requirements and 1613 for earthquake design requirements.

1604.8.3 Decks.
Where supported by attachment to an *exterior wall*, decks shall be positively anchored to the primary structure and designed for both vertical and lateral loads as applicable. Such attachment shall not be accomplished by the use of toenails or nails subject to withdrawal. Where positive connection to the primary building structure cannot be verified during inspection, decks shall be self-supporting. Connections of decks with cantilevered framing members to exterior walls or other framing members shall be designed for both of the following:

1. The reactions resulting from the dead load and live load specified in Table 1607.1, or the snow load specified in Section 1608, in accordance with Section 1605, acting on all portions of the deck.

2. The reactions resulting from the dead load and live load specified in Table 1607.1, or the snow load specified in Section 1608, in accordance with Section 1605, acting on the cantilevered portion of the deck, and no live load or snow load on the remaining portion of the deck.

1604.9 Counteracting structural actions.
Structural members, systems, components and cladding shall be designed to resist forces due to earthquakes and wind, with consideration of overturning, sliding and uplift. Continuous load paths shall be provided for transmitting these forces to the foundation. Where sliding is used to

`

isolate the elements, the effects of friction between sliding elements shall be included as a force.

1604.10 Wind and seismic detailing.
Lateral force-resisting systems shall meet seismic detailing requirements and limitations prescribed in this code and ASCE 7, excluding Chapter 14 and Appendix 11A, even when wind *load effects* are greater than seismic *load effects*.

SECTION 1605
LOAD COMBINATIONS

1605.1 General.
Buildings and other structures and portions thereof shall be designed to resist:

1. The load combinations specified in Section 1605.2, 1605.3.1 or 1605.3.2;

2. The load combinations specified in Chapters 18 through 23; and

3. The seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 of ASCE 7 where required by Section 12.2.5.2, 12.3.3.3 or 12.10.2.1 of ASCE 7. With the simplified procedure of ASCE 7 Section 12.14, the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7 shall be used.

Applicable loads shall be considered, including both earthquake and wind, in accordance with the specified load combinations. Each load combination shall also be investigated with one or more of the variable loads set to zero.

Where the load combinations with overstrength factor in Section 12.4.3.2 of ASCE 7 apply, they shall be used as follows:

1. The basic combinations for strength design with overstrength factor in lieu of Equations 16-5 and 16-7 in Section 1605.2.

2. The basic combinations for *allowable stress design* with overstrength factor in lieu of Equations 16-12, 16-14 and 16-16 in Section 1605.3.1.

3. The basic combinations for *allowable stress design* with overstrength factor in lieu of Equations 16-21 and 16-22 in Section 1605.3.2.

1605.1.1 Stability.
Regardless of which load combinations are used to design for strength, where overall structure stability (such as stability against overturning, sliding, or buoyancy) is being verified, use of the load combinations specified in Section 1605.2 or 1605.3 shall be permitted. Where the load combinations specified in Section 1605.2 are used, strength reduction factors applicable to soil resistance shall be provided by a *registered design professional*. The stability of retaining walls shall be verified in accordance with Section 1807.2.3.

1605.2 Load combinations using strength design or load and resistance factor design.
Where strength design or load and resistance factor design is used, buildings and other structures, and portions thereof, shall be designed to resist the most critical effects resulting from the following combinations of factored loads:

`

$1.4(D + F)$ **(Equation 16-1)**

$1.2(D + F) + 1.6(L + H) + 0.5(L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R)$ **(Equation 16-2)**

$1.2(D + F) + 1.6(L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R) + 1.6H + (f_1 L \text{ or } 0.5W)$ **(Equation 16-3)**

$1.2(D + F) + 1.0W + f_1 L + 1.6H + 0.5(L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R)$ **(Equation 16-4)**

$1.2(D + F) + 1.0E + f_1 L + 1.6H + f_2 S$ **(Equation 16-5)**

$0.9D + 1.0W + 1.6H$ **(Equation 16-6)**

$0.9(D + F) + 1.0E + 1.6H$ **(Equation 16-7)**

where:

f_1 = 1 for places of public assembly live loads in excess of 100 pounds per square foot (4.79 kN/m^2), and parking garages; and 0.5 for other live loads.

f_2 = 0.7 for roof configurations (such as saw tooth) that do not shed snow off the structure, and 0.2 for other roof configurations.

Exceptions:

1. Where other factored load combinations are specifically required by other provisions of this code, such combinations shall take precedence.

2. Where the effect of *H* resists the primary variable load effect, a load factor of 0.9 shall be included with *H* where *H* is permanent and *H* shall be set to zero for all other conditions.

1605.2.1 Other loads.
Where flood loads, F_a, are to be considered in the design, the load combinations of Section 2.3.3 of ASCE 7 shall be used. Where self-straining loads, *T*, are considered in design, their structural effects in combination with other loads shall be determined in accordance with Section 2.3.5 of ASCE 7. Where an ice-sensitive structure is subjected to loads due to atmospheric icing, the load combinations of Section 2.3.4 of ASCE 7 shall be considered.

1605.3 Load combinations using allowable stress design.

1605.3.1 Basic load combinations.
Where *allowable stress design* (working stress design), as permitted by this code, is used, structures and portions thereof shall resist the most critical effects resulting from the following combinations of loads:

`

$D + F$ **(Equation 16-8)**

$D + H + F + L$ **(Equation 16-9)**

$D + H + F + (L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R)$ **(Equation 16-10)**

$D + H + F + 0.75(L) + 0.75(L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R)$ **(Equation 16-11)**

$D + H + F + (0.6W \text{ or } 0.7E)$ **(Equation 16-12)**

$D + H + F + 0.75(0.6W) + 0.75L + 0.75(L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R)$ **(Equation 16-13)**

$D + H + F + 0.75\ (0.7\ E) + 0.75\ L + 0.75\ S$ **(Equation 16-14)**

$0.6D + 0.6W + H$ **(Equation 16-15)**

$0.6(D + F) + 0.7E + H$ **(Equation 16-16)**

Exceptions:

1. Crane hook loads need not be combined with roof live load or with more than three-fourths of the snow load or one-half of the wind load.

2. Flat roof snow loads of 30 psf (1.44 kN/m^2) or less and roof live loads of 30 psf (1.44 kN/m^2) or less need not be combined with seismic loads. Where flat roof snow loads exceed 30 psf (1.44 kN/m^2), 20 percent shall be combined with seismic loads.

3. Where the effect of *H* resists the primary variable load effect, a load factor of 0.6 shall be included with *H* where *H* is permanent and *H* shall be set to zero for all other conditions.

4. In Equation 16-15, the wind load, *W*, is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Exception 2 of Section 2.4.1 of ASCE 7.

5. In Equation 16-16, 0.6 *D* is permitted to be increased to 0.9 *D* for the design of special reinforced masonry shear walls complying with Chapter 21.

1605.3.1.1 Stress increases.
Increases in allowable stresses specified in the appropriate material chapter or the referenced standards shall not be used with the load combinations of Section 1605.3.1, except that increases shall be permitted in accordance with Chapter 23.

1605.3.1.2 Other loads.
Where flood loads, F_a, are to be considered in design, the load combinations of Section 2.4.2 of ASCE 7 shall be used. Where self-straining loads, *T*, are considered in design, their structural effects in combination with other loads shall be determined in accordance

`

with Section 2.4.4 of ASCE 7. Where an ice-sensitive structure is subjected to loads due to atmospheric icing, the load combinations of Section 2.4.3 of ASCE 7 shall be considered.

1605.3.2 Alternative basic load combinations.
In lieu of the basic load combinations specified in Section 1605.3.1, structures and portions thereof shall be permitted to be designed for the most critical effects resulting from the following combinations. When using these alternative basic load combinations that include wind or seismic loads, allowable stresses are permitted to be increased or load combinations reduced where permitted by the material chapter of this code or the referenced standards. For load combinations that include the counteracting effects of dead and wind loads, only two-thirds of the minimum dead load likely to be in place during a design wind event shall be used. When using allowable stresses that have been increased or load combinations that have been reduced as permitted by the material chapter of this code or the referenced standards, where wind loads are calculated in accordance with Chapters 26 through 31 of ASCE 7, the coefficient (ω) in the following equations shall be taken as 1.3. For other wind loads, (ω) shall be taken as 1. When allowable stresses have not been increased or load combinations have not been reduced as permitted by the material chapter of this code or the referenced standards, (ω) shall be taken as 1. When using these alternative load combinations to evaluate sliding, overturning and soil bearing at the soil-structure interface, the reduction of foundation overturning from Section 12.13.4 in ASCE 7 shall not be used. When using these alternative basic load combinations for proportioning foundations for loadings, which include seismic loads, the vertical seismic *load effect*, E_v, in Equation 12.4-4 of ASCE 7 is permitted to be taken equal to zero.

$D + L + (L_r$ or S or $R)$ **(Equation 16-17)**

$D + L + 0.6\,\omega W$ **(Equation 16-18)**

$D + L + 0.6\,\omega W + S/2$ **(Equation 16-19)**

$D + L + S + 0.6\,\omega W/2$ **(Equation 16-20)**

$D + L + S + E/1.4$ **(Equation 16-21)**

$0.9D + E/1.4$ **(Equation 16-22)**

Exceptions:

1. Crane hook loads need not be combined with roof live loads or with more than three-fourths of the snow load or one-half of the wind load.

2. Flat roof snow loads of 30 psf (1.44 kN/m^2) or less and roof live loads of 30 psf (1.44 kN/m^2) or less need not be combined with seismic loads. Where flat roof snow loads exceed 30 psf (1.44 kN/m^2), 20 percent shall be combined with seismic loads.

1605.3.2.1 Other loads.
Where *F*, *H* or *T* are to be considered in the design, each applicable load shall be added

`

to the combinations specified in Section 1605.3.2. Where self-straining loads, *T*, are considered in design, their structural effects in combination with other loads shall be determined in accordance with Section 2.4.4 of ASCE 7.

SECTION 1606
DEAD LOADS

1606.1 General.
Dead loads are those loads defined in Chapter 2 of this code. Dead loads shall be considered permanent loads.

1606.2 Design dead load.
For purposes of design, the actual weights of materials of construction and fixed service equipment shall be used. In the absence of definite information, values used shall be subject to the approval of the *building official*.

SECTION 1607
LIVE LOADS

1607.1 General.
Live loads are those loads defined in Chapter 2 of this code.

TABLE 1607.1
MINIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LIVE LOADS, L_0, AND MINIMUM CONCENTRATED LIVE LOADS[g]

OCCUPANCY OR USE	UNIFORM (psf)	CONCENTRATED (pounds)
1. Apartments (see residential)	—	—
2. Access floor systems Office use Computer use	 50 100	 2,000 2,000
3. Armories and drill rooms	150[m]	—
4. Assembly areas Fixed seats (fastened to floor) Follow spot, projections and control rooms Lobbies Movable seats Stage floors Platforms (assembly) Other assembly areas	 60[m] 50 100[m] 100[m] 150[m] 100[m] 100[m]	—
5. Balconies and decks[h]	1.5 times the live load	—

`

	for the area served. Not required to exceed 100 psf.	
6. Catwalks	40	300
7. Cornices	60	—
8. Corridors First floor Other floors	100 Same as occupancy served except as indicated	—
9. Dining rooms and restaurants	100[m]	—
10. Dwellings (see residential)	—	—
11. Elevator machine room and control room grating (on area of 2 inches by 2 inches)	—	300
12. Finish light floor plate construction (on area of 1 inch by 1 inch)	—	200
13. Fire escapes On single-family dwellings only	100 40	—
14. Garages (passenger vehicles only) Trucks and buses	40[m]	Note a See Section 1607.7
15. Handrails, guards and grab bars	See Section 1607.8	
16. Helipads	See Section 1607.6	
17. Hospitals Corridors above first floor Operating rooms, laboratories Patient rooms	 80 60 40	 1,000 1,000 1,000
18. Hotels (see residential)	—	—
19. Libraries Corridors above first floor Reading rooms Stack rooms	 80 60 150[b, m]	 1,000 1,000 1,000
20. Manufacturing Heavy Light	 250[m] 125[m]	 3,000 2,000

`

21. Marquees, except one- and two-family dwellings	75	—
22. Office buildings		
Corridors above first floor	80	2,000
File and computer rooms shall be designed for heavier loads based on anticipated occupancy	—	—
Lobbies and first-floor corridors	100	2,000
Offices	50	2,000

(continued)

TABLE 1607.1—continued
MINIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LIVE LOADS, L_0, AND MINIMUM CONCENTRATED LIVE LOADS[g]

OCCUPANCY OR USE	UNIFORM (psf)	CONCENTRATED (pounds)
23. Penal institutions		
Cell blocks	40	—
Corridors	100	
24. Recreational uses:		
Bowling alleys, poolrooms and similar uses	75[m]	
Dance halls and ballrooms	100[m]	
Gymnasiums	100[m]	
Ice skating rink	250[m]	—
Reviewing stands, grandstands and bleachers	100[c, m]	
Roller skating rink	100[m]	
Stadiums and arenas with fixed seats (fastened to floor)	60[c, m]	
25. Residential		
One- and two-family dwellings		
Uninhabitable attics without storage[i]	10	
Uninhabitable attics with storage[i, j, k]	20	
Habitable attics and sleeping areas[k]	30	—
Canopies, including marquees	20	
All other areas	40	
Hotels and multifamily dwellings	40	

`

Private rooms and corridors serving them	100	
Public rooms[m] and corridors serving them		
26. Roofs		
All roof surfaces subject to maintenance workers		300
Awnings and canopies:		
Fabric construction supported by a skeleton structure	5 Nonreducible	
All other construction, except one- and two-family dwellings	20	
Ordinary flat, pitched, and curved roofs (that are not occupiable)	20	
Primary roof members exposed to a work floor, single panel point of lower chord of roof trusses or any point along primary structural members supporting roofs over manufacturing, storage warehouses, and repair garages		2,000
All other primary roof members		300
Occupiable roofs:		
Roof gardens	100	
Assembly areas	100[m]	
All other similar areas	Note 1	Note 1
27. Schools		
Classrooms	40	1,000
Corridors above first floor	80	1,000
First-floor corridors	100	1,000
28. Scuttles, skylight ribs and accessible ceilings	—	200
29. Sidewalks, vehicular driveways and yards, subject to trucking	250[d, m]	8,000[e]

(continued)

TABLE 1607.1—continued
MINIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LIVE LOADS, L_0, AND MINIMUM CONCENTRATED LIVE LOADS[g]

OCCUPANCY OR USE	UNIFORM (psf)	CONCENTRATED (pounds)
30. Stairs and exits		
One- and two-family dwellings	40	300[f]
All other	100	

`

		300[f]
31. Storage warehouses (shall be designed for heavier loads if required for anticipated storage) Heavy Light	 250[m] 125[m]	—
32. Stores Retail First floor Upper floors Wholesale, all floors	 100 75 125[m]	 1,000 1,000 1,000
33. Vehicle barriers	See Section 1607.8.3	
34. Walkways and elevated platforms (other than exitways)	60	—
35. Yards and terraces, pedestrians	100[m]	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2,
1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2,
1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m^2, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN,
1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m^3.

a. Floors in garages or portions of buildings used for the storage of motor vehicles shall be designed for the uniformly distributed live loads of this Table or the following concentrated loads: (1) for garages restricted to passenger vehicles accommodating not more than nine passengers, 3,000 pounds acting on an area of $4^1/_2$ inches by $4^1/_2$ inches; (2) for mechanical parking structures without slab or deck that are used for storing passenger vehicles only, 2,250 pounds per wheel.
b. The loading applies to stack room floors that support nonmobile, double-faced library book stacks, subject to the following limitations:
   1. The nominal book stack unit height shall not exceed 90 inches;
   2. The nominal shelf depth shall not exceed 12 inches for each face; and
   3. Parallel rows of double-faced book stacks shall be separated by aisles not less than 36 inches wide.
c. Design in accordance with ICC 300.
d. Other uniform loads in accordance with an approved method containing provisions for truck loadings shall be considered where appropriate.
e. The concentrated wheel load shall be applied on an area of 4.5 inches by 4.5 inches.
f. The minimum concentrated load on stair treads shall be applied on an area of 2 inches by 2 inches. This load need not be assumed to act concurrently with the uniform load.
g. Where snow loads occur that are in excess of the design conditions, the structure shall be designed to support the loads due to the increased loads caused by drift buildup or a greater snow design determined by the building official (see Section 1608).
h. See Section 1604.8.3 for decks attached to exterior walls.
i. Uninhabitable attics without storage are those where the maximum clear height between the joists and rafters is less than 42 inches, or where there are not two or more adjacent trusses with web configurations capable of accommodating an assumed rectangle 42 inches in height by 24 inches in width, or greater, within the plane of the trusses. This live load need not be assumed to act concurrently with any other live load requirements.
j. Uninhabitable attics with storage are those where the maximum clear height between the joists and rafters is 42 inches or greater, or where there are two or more adjacent trusses with web configurations capable of accommodating an assumed rectangle 42 inches in height by 24 inches in width, or greater, within the plane of the trusses.

The live load need only be applied to those portions of the joists or truss bottom chords where both of the following conditions are met:

`

i. The attic area is accessible from an opening not less than 20 inches in width by 30 inches in length that is located where the clear height in the attic is a minimum of 30 inches; and

ii. The slopes of the joists or truss bottom chords are no greater than two units vertical in 12 units horizontal.

The remaining portions of the joists or truss bottom chords shall be designed for a uniformly distributed concurrent live load of not less than 10 pounds per square foot.

k. Attic spaces served by stairways other than the pull-down type shall be designed to support the minimum live load specified for habitable attics and sleeping rooms.

l. Areas of occupiable roofs, other than roof gardens and assembly areas, shall be designed for appropriate loads as approved by the building official. Unoccupied landscaped areas of roofs shall be designed in accordance with Section 1607.12.3.

m. Live load reduction is not permitted unless specific exceptions of Section 1607.10 apply.

1607.2 Loads not specified.
For occupancies or uses not designated in Table 1607.1, the live load shall be determined in accordance with a method *approved* by the *building official*.

1607.3 Uniform live loads.
The live loads used in the design of buildings and other structures shall be the maximum loads expected by the intended use or occupancy but shall in no case be less than the minimum uniformly distributed live loads given in Table 1607.1.

1607.4 Concentrated live loads.
Floors and other similar surfaces shall be designed to support the uniformly distributed live loads prescribed in Section 1607.3 or the concentrated live loads, given in Table 1607.1, whichever produces the greater *load effects*. Unless otherwise specified, the indicated concentration shall be assumed to be uniformly distributed over an area of $2^1/_2$ feet by $2^1/_2$ feet (762 mm by 762 mm) and shall be located so as to produce the maximum *load effects* in the structural members.

1607.5 Partition loads.
In office buildings and in other buildings where partition locations are subject to change, provisions for partition weight shall be made, whether or not partitions are shown on the construction documents, unless the specified live load is 80 psf (3.83 kN/m^2) or greater. The partition load shall be not less than a uniformly distributed live load of 15 psf (0.72 kN/m^2).

1607.6 Helipads.
Helipads shall be designed for the following live loads:

1. A uniform live load, *L*, as specified below. This load shall not be reduced.

   1.1. 40 psf (1.92 kN/m^2) where the design basis helicopter has a maximum take-off weight of 3,000 pounds (13.35 kN) or less.

   1.2. 60 psf (2.87 kN/m^2) where the design basis helicopter has a maximum take-off weight greater than 3,000 pounds (13.35 kN).

2. A single concentrated live load, *L*, of 3,000 pounds (13.35 kN) applied over an area of 4.5 inches by 4.5 inches (114 mm by 114 mm) and located so as to produce the maximum load effects on the structural elements under consideration. The concentrated load is not required to act concurrently with other uniform or concentrated live loads.

`

3. Two single concentrated live loads, *L*, 8 feet (2438 mm) apart applied on the landing pad (representing the helicopter's two main landing gear, whether skid type or wheeled type), each having a magnitude of 0.75 times the maximum take-off weight of the helicopter, and located so as to produce the maximum load effects on the structural elements under consideration. The concentrated loads shall be applied over an area of 8 inches by 8 inches (203 mm by 203 mm) and are not required to act concurrently with other uniform or concentrated live loads.

Landing areas designed for a design basis helicopter with maximum take-off weight of 3,000-pounds (13.35 kN) shall be identified with a 3,000 pound (13.34 kN) weight limitation. The landing area weight limitation shall be indicated by the numeral "3" (kips) located in the bottom right corner of the landing area as viewed from the primary approach path. The indication for the landing area weight limitation shall be a minimum 5 feet (1524 mm) in height.

1607.7 Heavy vehicle loads.
Floors and other surfaces that are intended to support vehicle loads greater than a 10,000-pound (4536 kg) gross vehicle weight rating shall comply with Sections 1607.7.1 through 1607.7.5.

1607.7.1 Loads.
Where any structure does not restrict access for vehicles that exceed a 10,000-pound (4536 kg) gross vehicle weight rating, those portions of the structure subject to such loads shall be designed using the vehicular live loads, including consideration of impact and fatigue, in accordance with the codes and specifications required by the jurisdiction having authority for the design and construction of the roadways and bridges in the same location of the structure.

1607.7.2 Fire truck and emergency vehicles.
Where a structure or portions of a structure are accessed and loaded by fire department access vehicles and other similar emergency vehicles, the structure shall be designed for the greater of the following loads:

1. The actual operational loads, including outrigger reactions and contact areas of the vehicles as stipulated and approved by the building official; or

2. The live loading specified in Section 1607.7.1.

1607.7.3 Heavy vehicle garages.
Garages designed to accommodate vehicles that exceed a 10,000-pound (4536 kg) gross vehicle weight rating, shall be designed using the live loading specified by Section 1607.7.1. For garages the design for impact and fatigue is not required.

Exception: The vehicular live loads and load placement are allowed to be determined using the actual vehicle weights for the vehicles allowed onto the garage floors, provided such loads and placement are based on rational engineering principles and are approved by the building official, but shall not be less than 50 psf (2.9 kN/m^2). This live load shall not be reduced.

1607.7.4 Forklifts and movable equipment.
Where a structure is intended to have forklifts or other movable equipment present, the structure shall be designed for the total vehicle or equipment load and the individual wheel loads for the anticipated vehicles as specified by the owner of the facility. These loads shall be posted in accordance with Section 1607.7.5.

`

1607.7.4.1 Impact and fatigue.
Impact loads and fatigue loading shall be considered in the design of the supporting structure. For the purposes of design, the vehicle and wheel loads shall be increased by 30 percent to account for impact.

1607.7.5 Posting.
The maximum weight of vehicles allowed into or on a garage or other structure shall be posted by the owner or the owner's authorized agent in accordance with Section 106.1.

1607.8 Loads on handrails, guards, grab bars, seats and vehicle barriers.
Handrails, *guards*, grab bars, accessible seats, accessible benches and vehicle barriers shall be designed and constructed for the structural loading conditions set forth in this section.

1607.8.1 Handrails and guards.
Handrails and *guards* shall be designed to resist a linear load of 50 pounds per linear foot (plf) (0.73 kN/m) in accordance with Section 4.5.1 of ASCE 7. Glass handrail assemblies and *guards* shall also comply with Section 2407.

Exceptions:

1. For one- and two-family dwellings, only the single concentrated load required by Section 1607.8.1.1 shall be applied.

2. In Group I-3, F, H and S occupancies, for areas that are not accessible to the general public and that have an *occupant load* less than 50, the minimum load shall be 20 pounds per foot (0.29 kN/ m).

1607.8.1.1 Concentrated load.
Handrails and guards shall be designed to resist a concentrated load of 200 pounds (0.89 kN) in accordance with Section 4.5.1 of ASCE 7.

1607.8.1.2 Intermediate rails.
Intermediate rails (all those except the handrail), balusters and panel fillers shall be designed to resist a concentrated load of 50 pounds (0.22 kN) in accordance with Section 4.5.1 of ASCE 7.

1607.8.2 Grab bars, shower seats and dressing room bench seats.
Grab bars, shower seats and dressing room bench seats shall be designed to resist a single concentrated load of 250 pounds (1.11 kN) applied in any direction at any point on the grab bar or seat so as to produce the maximum load effects.

1607.8.3 Vehicle barriers.
Vehicle barriers for passenger vehicles shall be designed to resist a concentrated load of 6,000 pounds (26.70 kN) in accordance with Section 4.5.3 of ASCE 7. Garages accommodating trucks and buses shall be designed in accordance with an *approved* method that contains provisions for traffic railings.

1607.9 Impact loads.
The live loads specified in Sections 1607.3 through 1607.8 shall be assumed to include adequate allowance for ordinary impact conditions. Provisions shall be made in the structural design for uses and loads that involve unusual vibration and impact forces.

`

1607.9.1 Elevators.
Members, elements and components subject to dynamic loads from elevators shall be designed for impact loads and deflection limits prescribed by ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

1607.9.2 Machinery.
For the purpose of design, the weight of machinery and moving loads shall be increased as follows to allow for impact: (1) light machinery, shaft- or motor-driven, 20 percent; and (2) reciprocating machinery or power-driven units, 50 percent. Percentages shall be increased where specified by the manufacturer.

1607.9.3 Elements supporting hoists for façade access equipment.
In addition to any other applicable live loads, structural elements that support hoists for façade access equipment shall be designed for a live load consisting of the larger of the rated load of the hoist times 2.5 and the stall load of the hoist.

1607.9.4 Lifeline anchorages for façade access equipment.
In addition to any other applicable live loads, lifeline anchorages and structural elements that support lifeline anchorages shall be designed for a live load of at least 3,100 pounds (13.8 kN) for each attached lifeline, in every direction that a fall arrest load may be applied.

1607.10 Reduction in uniform live loads.
Except for uniform live loads at roofs, all other minimum uniformly distributed live loads, L_o, in Table 1607.1 are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607.10.1 or 1607.10.2. Uniform live loads at roofs are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607.12.2.

1607.10.1 Basic uniform live load reduction.
Subject to the limitations of Sections 1607.10.1.1 through 1607.10.1.3 and Table 1607.1, members for which a value of $K_{LL}A_T$ is 400 square feet (37.16 m^2) or more are permitted to be designed for a reduced uniformly distributed live load, L, in accordance with the following equation:

$$L = L_o\left(0.25 + \frac{15}{\sqrt{K_{LL}A_T}}\right) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 16-23)}$$

$$\text{For SI:} \quad L = L_o\left(0.25 + \frac{4.57}{\sqrt{K_{LL}A_T}}\right)$$

where:

L	=	Reduced design live load per square foot (m^2) of area supported by the member.
L_o	=	Unreduced design live load per square foot (m^2) of area supported by the member (see Table 1607.1).
K_{LL}	=	Live load element factor (see Table 1607.10.1).
A_T	=	Tributary area, in square feet (m^2).

`

L shall be not less than $0.50L_o$ for members supporting one floor and L shall be not less than $0.40L_o$ for members supporting two or more floors.

TABLE 1607.10.1
LIVE LOAD ELEMENT FACTOR, K_{LL}

ELEMENT	K_{LL}
Interior columns	4
Exterior columns without cantilever slabs	4
Edge columns with cantilever slabs	3
Corner columns with cantilever slabs	2
Edge beams without cantilever slabs	2
Interior beams	2
All other members not identified above including: Edge beams with cantilever slabs Cantilever beams One-way slabs Two-way slabs Members without provisions for continuous shear transfer normal to their span	1

1607.10.1.1 One-way slabs.
The tributary area, *AT*, for use in Equation 16-23 for one-way slabs shall not exceed an area defined by the slab span times a width normal to the span of 1.5 times the slab span.

1607.10.1.2 Heavy live loads.
Live loads that exceed 100 psf (4.79 kN/m^2) shall not be reduced.

Exceptions:

1. The live loads for members supporting two or more floors are permitted to be reduced by a maximum of 20 percent, but the live load shall be not less than *L* as calculated in Section 1607.10.1.

2. For uses other than storage, where *approved*, additional live load reductions shall be permitted where shown by the *registered design professional* that a rational approach has been used and that such reductions are warranted.

1607.10.1.3 Passenger vehicle garages.
The live loads shall not be reduced in passenger vehicle garages.

Exception: The live loads for members supporting two or more floors are permitted to be reduced by a maximum of 20 percent, but the live load shall not be less than *L* as calculated in Section 1607.10.1.

1607.10.2 Alternative uniform live load reduction.
As an alternative to Section 1607.10.1 and subject to the limitations of Table 1607.1, uniformly distributed live loads are permitted to be reduced in accordance with the following

`

provisions. Such reductions shall apply to slab systems, beams, girders, columns, piers, walls and foundations.

1. A reduction shall not be permitted where the live load exceeds 100 psf (4.79 kN/m^2) except that the design live load for members supporting two or more floors is permitted to be reduced by a maximum of 20 percent.

   Exception: For uses other than storage, where approved, additional live load reductions shall be permitted where shown by the *registered design professional* that a rational approach has been used and that such reductions are warranted.

2. A reduction shall not be permitted in passenger vehicle parking garages except that the live loads for members supporting two or more floors are permitted to be reduced by a maximum of 20 percent.

3. For live loads not exceeding 100 psf (4.79 kN/m^2), the design live load for any structural member supporting 150 square feet (13.94 m^2) or more is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Equation 16-24.

4. For one-way slabs, the area, *A*, for use in Equation 16-24 shall not exceed the product of the slab span and a width normal to the span of 0.5 times the slab span.

   $R = 0.08(A - 150)$ **(Equation 16-24)**

   For SI: $R = 0.861(A - 13.94)$

   Such reduction shall not exceed the smallest of:

   1. 40 percent for members supporting one floor.

   2. 60 percent for members supporting two or more floors.

   3. *R* as determined by the following equation:

   $R = 23.1(1 + D/L_o)$ **(Equation 16-25)**

   where:

A	=	Area of floor supported by the member, square feet (m^2).
D	=	Dead load per square foot (m^2) of area supported.
L_o	=	Unreduced live load per square foot (m^2) of area supported.
R	=	Reduction in percent.

1607.11 Distribution of floor loads.
Where uniform floor live loads are involved in the design of structural members arranged so as to create continuity, the minimum applied loads shall be the full dead loads on all spans in combination with the floor live loads on spans selected to produce the greatest *load effect* at

`

each location under consideration. Floor live loads are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607.10.

1607.12 Roof loads.
The structural supports of roofs and marquees shall be designed to resist wind and, where applicable, snow and earthquake loads, in addition to the dead load of construction and the appropriate live loads as prescribed in this section, or as set forth in Table 1607.1. The live loads acting on a sloping surface shall be assumed to act vertically on the horizontal projection of that surface.

1607.12.1 Distribution of roof loads.
Where uniform roof live loads are reduced to less than 20 psf (0.96 kN/m^2) in accordance with Section 1607.12.2.1 and are applied to the design of structural members arranged so as to create continuity, the reduced roof live load shall be applied to adjacent spans or to alternate spans, whichever produces the most unfavorable *load effect*. See Section 1607.12.2 for reductions in minimum roof live loads and Section 7.5 of ASCE 7 for partial snow loading.

1607.12.2 General.
The minimum uniformly distributed live loads of roofs and marquees, L_o, in Table 1607.1 are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607.12.2.1.

1607.12.2.1 Ordinary roofs, awnings and canopies.
Ordinary flat, pitched and curved roofs, and awnings and canopies other than of fabric construction supported by a skeleton structure, are permitted to be designed for a reduced uniformly distributed roof live load, L_r, as specified in the following equations or other controlling combinations of loads as specified in Section 1605, whichever produces the greater *load effect*.

In structures such as greenhouses, where special scaffolding is used as a work surface for workers and materials during maintenance and repair operations, a lower roof load than specified in the following equations shall not be used unless *approved* by the *building official*. Such structures shall be designed for a minimum roof live load of 12 psf (0.58 kN/m^2).

$$L_r = L_o R_1 R_2 \qquad \textbf{(Equation 16-26)}$$

where: $12 \le L_r \le 20$

For SI: $L_r = L_o R_1 R_2$

where: $0.58 \le L_r \le 0.96$

L_o = Unreduced roof live load per square foot (m^2) of horizontal projection supported by the member (see Table 1607.1).

`

L_r = Reduced roof live load per square foot (m^2) of horizontal projection supported by the member.

The reduction factors R_1 and R_2 shall be determined as follows:

$R_1 = 1$ for $A_t \leq 200$ square feet (18.58 m^2) **(Equation 16-27)**

$R_1 = 1.2 - 0.001A_t$ for 200 square feet < A_t < 600 square feet **(Equation 16-28)**

For SI: $1.2 - 0.011A_t$ for 18.58 square meters < A_t < 55.74 square meters

$R_1 = 0.6$ for $A_t \geq 600$ square feet (55.74 m^2) **(Equation 16-29)**

where:

A_t = Tributary area (span length multiplied by effective width) in square feet (m^2) supported by the member, and

$R_2 = 1$ for $F \leq 4$ **(Equation 16-30)**

$R_2 = 1.2 - 0.05F$ for $4 < F < 12$ **(Equation 16-31)**

$R_2 = 0.6$ for $F \geq 12$ **(Equation 16-32)**

where:

F = For a sloped roof, the number of inches of rise per foot (for SI: $F = 0.12 \times$ slope, with slope expressed as a percentage), or for an arch or dome, the rise-to-span ratio multiplied by 32.

1607.12.3 Occupiable roofs.
Areas of roofs that are occupiable, such as *vegetative roofs*, roof gardens or for assembly or other similar purposes, and marquees are permitted to have their uniformly distributed live loads reduced in accordance with Section 1607.10.

1607.12.3.1 Vegetative and landscaped roofs.
The weight of all landscaping materials shall be considered as dead load and shall be computed on the basis of saturation of the soil as determined in accordance with ASTM E2397. The uniform design live load in unoccupied landscaped areas on roofs shall be 20 psf (0.958 kN/m^2). The uniform design live load for occupied landscaped areas on roofs shall be determined in accordance with Table 1607.1.

`

1607.12.4 Awnings and canopies.
Awnings and canopies shall be designed for uniform live loads as required in Table 1607.1 as well as for snow loads and wind loads as specified in Sections 1608 and 1609.

1607.12.5 Photovoltaic panel systems.
Roof structures that provide support for *photovoltaic panel systems* shall be designed in accordance with Sections 1607.12.5.1 through 1607.12.5.4, as applicable.

1607.12.5.1 Roof live load.
Roof surfaces to be covered by solar photovoltaic panels or modules shall be designed for the roof live load, L_r, assuming that the photovoltaic panels or modules are not present. The roof photovoltaic live load in areas covered by solar photovoltaic panels or modules shall be in addition to the panel loading unless the area covered by each solar photovoltaic panel or module is inaccessible. Areas where the clear space between the panels and the rooftop is not more than 24 inches (610 mm) shall be considered inaccessible. Roof surfaces not covered by photovoltaic panels shall be designed for the roof live load.

1607.12.5.2 Photovoltaic panels or modules.
The structure of a roof that supports solar photovoltaic panels or modules shall be designed to accommodate the full solar photovoltaic panels or modules and ballast dead load, including concentrated loads from support frames in combination with the loads from Section 1607.12.5.1 and other applicable loads. Where applicable, snow drift loads created by the photovoltaic panels or modules shall be included.

1607.12.5.3 Photovoltaic panels or modules installed as an independent structure.
Solar photovoltaic panels or modules that are independent structures and do not have accessible/occupied space underneath are not required to accommodate a roof photovoltaic live load, provided the area under the structure is restricted to keep the public away. All other loads and combinations in accordance with Section 1605 shall be accommodated.

Solar photovoltaic panels or modules that are designed to be the roof, span to structural supports and have accessible/occupied space underneath shall have the panels or modules and all supporting structures designed to support a roof photovoltaic live load, as defined in Section 1607.12.5.1 in combination with other applicable loads. Solar photovoltaic panels or modules in this application are not permitted to be classified as “not accessible” in accordance with Section 1607.12.5.1.

1607.12.5.4 Ballasted photovoltaic panel systems.
Roof structures that provide support for ballasted *photovoltaic panel systems* shall be designed, or analyzed, in accordance with Section 1604.4; checked in accordance with Section 1604.3.6 for deflections; and checked in accordance with Section 1611 for ponding.

1607.13 Crane loads.
The crane live load shall be the rated capacity of the crane. Design loads for the runway beams, including connections and support brackets, of moving bridge cranes and monorail cranes shall include the maximum wheel loads of the crane and the vertical impact, lateral and longitudinal forces induced by the moving crane.

`

1607.13.1 Maximum wheel load.
The maximum wheel loads shall be the wheel loads produced by the weight of the bridge, as applicable, plus the sum of the rated capacity and the weight of the trolley with the trolley positioned on its runway at the location where the resulting load effect is maximum.

1607.13.2 Vertical impact force.
The maximum wheel loads of the crane shall be increased by the percentages shown below to determine the induced vertical impact or vibration force:

Monorail cranes (powered)	25 percent
Cab-operated or remotely operated bridge cranes (powered)	25 percent
Pendant-operated bridge cranes (powered)	10 percent
Bridge cranes or monorail cranes with hand-geared bridge, trolley and hoist	0 percent

1607.13.3 Lateral force.
The lateral force on crane runway beams with electrically powered trolleys shall be calculated as 20 percent of the sum of the rated capacity of the crane and the weight of the hoist and trolley. The lateral force shall be assumed to act horizontally at the traction surface of a runway beam, in either direction perpendicular to the beam, and shall be distributed with due regard to the lateral stiffness of the runway beam and supporting structure.

1607.13.4 Longitudinal force.
The longitudinal force on crane runway beams, except for bridge cranes with hand-geared bridges, shall be calculated as 10 percent of the maximum wheel loads of the crane. The longitudinal force shall be assumed to act horizontally at the traction surface of a runway beam, in either direction parallel to the beam.

1607.14 Interior walls and partitions.
Interior walls and partitions that exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) in height, including their finish materials, shall have adequate strength and stiffness to resist the loads to which they are subjected but not less than a horizontal load of 5 psf (0.240 kN/m^2).

1607.14.1 Fabric partitions.
Fabric partitions that exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) in height, including their finish materials, shall have adequate strength and stiffness to resist the following load conditions:

1. The horizontal distributed load need only be applied to the partition framing. The total area used to determine the distributed load shall be the area of the fabric face between the framing members to which the fabric is attached. The total distributed load shall be uniformly applied to such framing members in proportion to the length of each member.

2. A concentrated load of 40 pounds (0.176 kN) applied to an 8-inch-diameter (203 mm) area [50.3 square inches (32 452 mm^2)] of the fabric face at a height of 54 inches (1372 mm) above the floor.

SECTION 1608
SNOW LOADS

`

1608.1 General.
Design snow loads shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 7 of ASCE 7, but the design roof load shall not be less than that determined by Section 1607.

1608.2 Ground snow loads.
The ground snow loads to be used in determining the design snow loads for roofs shall be determined in accordance with ASCE 7 or Figure 1608.2 for the contiguous United States and Table 1608.2 for Alaska. Site-specific case studies shall be made in areas designated “CS” in Figure 1608.2. Ground snow loads for sites at elevations above the limits indicated in Figure 1608.2 and for all sites within the CS areas shall be *approved*. Ground snow load determination for such sites shall be based on an extreme value statistical analysis of data available in the vicinity of the site using a value with a 2-percent annual probability of being exceeded (50-year mean recurrence interval). Snow loads are zero for Hawaii, except in mountainous regions as *approved* by the *building official*.

TABLE 1608.2
GROUND SNOW LOADS, p_g, FOR ALASKAN LOCATIONS

LOCATION	POUNDS PER SQUARE FOOT		LOCATION	POUNDS PER SQUARE FOOT		LOCATION	POUNDS PER SQUARE FOOT
Adak	30		Galena	60		Petersburg	150
Anchorage	50		Gulkana	70		St. Paul Islands	40
Angoon	70		Homer	40		Seward	50
Barrow	25		Juneau	60		Shemya	25
Barter Island	35		Kenai	70		Sitka	50
Bethel	40		Kodiak	30		Talkeetna	120
Big Delta	50		Kotzebue	60		Unalakleet	50
Cold Bay	25		McGrath	70		Valdez	160
Cordova	100		Nenana	80		Whittier	300
Fairbanks	60		Nome	70		Wrangell	60
Fort Yukon	60		Palmer	50		Yakutat	150

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m^2.

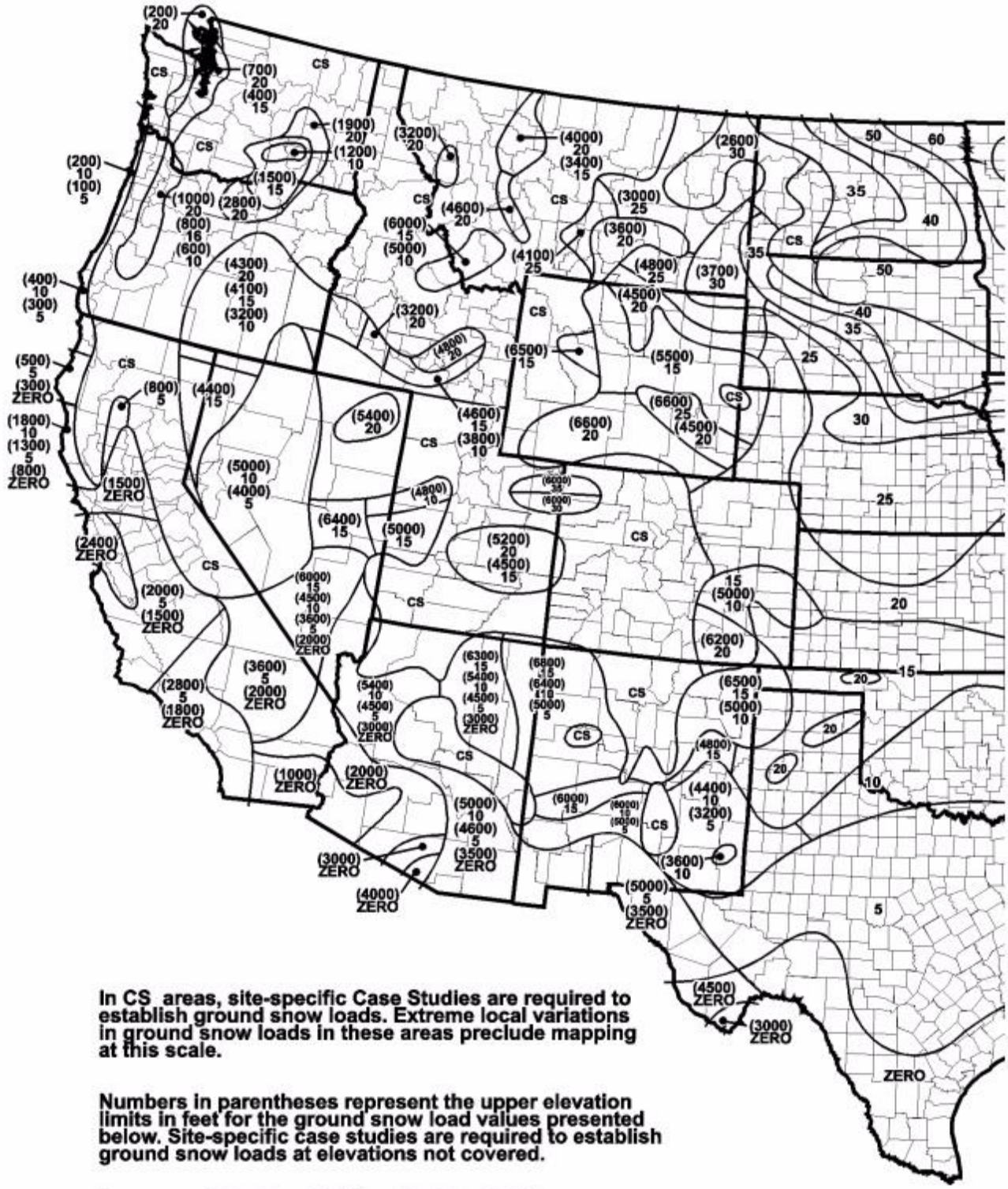


FIGURE 1608.2
GROUND SNOW LOADS, p_g, FOR THE UNITED STATES (psf)

FIGURE 1608.2—continued
GROUND SNOW LOADS, p_g, FOR THE UNITED STATES (psf)

1608.3 Ponding instability.
Susceptible bays of roofs shall be evaluated for ponding instability in accordance with Section 7.11 of ASCE 7.

`

SECTION 1609
WIND LOADS

1609.1 Applications.
Buildings, structures and parts thereof shall be designed to withstand the minimum wind loads prescribed herein. Decreases in wind loads shall not be made for the effect of shielding by other structures.

1609.1.1 Determination of wind loads.
Wind loads on every building or structure shall be determined in accordance with Chapters 26 to 30 of ASCE 7 or provisions of the alternate all-heights method in Section 1609.6. The type of opening protection required, the ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, and the exposure category for a site is permitted to be determined in accordance with Section 1609 or ASCE 7. Wind shall be assumed to come from any horizontal direction and wind pressures shall be assumed to act normal to the surface considered.

Exceptions:

1. Subject to the limitations of Section 1609.1.1.1, the provisions of ICC 600 shall be permitted for applicable Group R-2 and R-3 buildings.

2. Subject to the limitations of Section 1609.1.1.1, residential structures using the provisions of AWC WFCM.

3. Subject to the limitations of Section 1609.1.1.1, residential structures using the provisions of AISI S230.

4. Designs using NAAMM FP 1001.

5. Designs using TIA-222 for antenna-supporting structures and antennas, provided the horizontal extent of Topographic Category 2 escarpments in Section 2.6.6.2 of TIA-222 shall be 16 times the height of the escarpment.

6. Wind tunnel tests in accordance with ASCE 49 and Sections 31.4 and 31.5 of ASCE 7.

The wind speeds in Figures 1609.3(1), 1609.3(2) and 1609.3(3) are ultimate design wind speeds, V_{ult}, and shall be converted in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 to nominal design wind speeds, V_{asd}, when the provisions of the standards referenced in Exceptions 4 and 5 are used.

1609.1.1.1 Applicability.
The provisions of ICC 600 are applicable only to buildings located within Exposure B or C as defined in Section 1609.4. The provisions of ICC 600, AWC WFCM and AISI S230 shall not apply to buildings sited on the upper half of an isolated hill, ridge or escarpment meeting the following conditions:

1. The hill, ridge or escarpment is 60 feet (18 288 mm) or higher if located in Exposure B or 30 feet (9144 mm) or higher if located in Exposure C;

2. The maximum average slope of the hill exceeds 10 percent; and

`

3. The hill, ridge or escarpment is unobstructed upwind by other such topographic features for a distance from the high point of 50 times the height of the hill or 1 mile (1.61 km), whichever is greater.

1609.1.2 Protection of openings.
In *wind-borne debris regions*, glazing in buildings shall be impact resistant or protected with an impact-resistant covering meeting the requirements of an *approved* impact-resistant standard or ASTM E1996 and ASTM E1886 referenced herein as follows:

1. Glazed openings located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of grade shall meet the requirements of the large missile test of ASTM E1996.

2. Glazed openings located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) above grade shall meet the provisions of the small missile test of ASTM E1996.

   Exceptions:

   1. Wood structural panels with a minimum thickness of $^{7}/_{16}$ inch (11.1 mm) and maximum panel span of 8 feet (2438 mm) shall be permitted for opening protection in buildings with a mean roof height of 33 feet (10 058 mm) or less that are classified as a Group R-3 or R-4 occupancy. Panels shall be precut so that they shall be attached to the framing surrounding the opening containing the product with the glazed opening. Panels shall be predrilled as required for the anchorage method and shall be secured with the attachment hardware provided. Attachments shall be designed to resist the components and cladding loads determined in accordance with the provisions of ASCE 7, with corrosion-resistant attachment hardware provided and anchors permanently installed on the building. Attachment in accordance with Table 1609.1.2 with corrosion-resistant attachment hardware provided and anchors permanently installed on the building is permitted for buildings with a mean roof height of 45 feet (13 716 mm) or less where V_{asd} determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 does not exceed 140 mph (63 m/s).

   2. Glazing in *Risk Category* I buildings, including greenhouses that are occupied for growing plants on a production or research basis, without public access shall be permitted to be unprotected.

   3. Glazing in *Risk Category* II, III or IV buildings located over 60 feet (18 288 mm) above the ground and over 30 feet (9144 mm) above aggregate surface roofs located within 1,500 feet (458 m) of the building shall be permitted to be unprotected.

TABLE 1609.1.2
WIND-BORNE DEBRIS PROTECTION FASTENING
SCHEDULE FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS[a, b, c, d]

FASTENER TYPE	FASTENER SPACING (inches)

`

	Panel Span ≤ 4 feet	4 feet < Panel Span ≤ 6 feet	6 feet < Panel Span ≤ 8 feet
No. 8 wood-screw-based anchor with 2-inch embedment length	16	10	8
No. 10 wood-screw-based anchor with 2-inch embedment length	16	12	9
$^1/_4$-inch diameter lag-screw-based anchor with 2-inch embedment length	16	16	16

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. This table is based on 140 mph wind speeds and a 45-foot mean roof height.
b. Fasteners shall be installed at opposing ends of the wood structural panel. Fasteners shall be located a minimum of 1 inch from the edge of the panel.
c. Anchors shall penetrate through the exterior wall covering with an embedment length of 2 inches minimum into the building frame. Fasteners shall be located a minimum of $2^1/_2$ inches from the edge of concrete block or concrete.
d. Where panels are attached to masonry or masonry/stucco, they shall be attached using vibration-resistant anchors having a minimum ultimate withdrawal capacity of 1,500 pounds.

1609.1.2.1 Louvers.
Louvers protecting intake and exhaust ventilation ducts not assumed to be open that are located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of grade shall meet the requirements of AMCA 540.

1609.1.2.2. Application of ASTM E1996.
The text of Section 6.2.2 of ASTM E1996 shall be substituted as follows:

6.2.2 Unless otherwise specified, select the wind zone based on the strength design wind speed, V_{ult}, as follows:

6.2.2.1 *Wind Zone 1*—130 mph ≤ ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult} < 140 mph.

6.2.2.2 *Wind Zone 2*—140 mph ≤ ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult} < 150 mph at greater than one mile (1.6 km) from the coastline. The coastline shall be measured from the mean high water mark.

6.2.2.3 *Wind Zone 3*—150 mph (58 m/s) ≤ ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult} ≤ 160 mph (63 m/s), or 140 mph (54 m/s) ≤ ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult} ≤ 160 mph (63 m/s) and within one mile (1.6 km) of the coastline. The coastline shall be measured from the mean high water mark.

6.2.2.4 *Wind Zone 4*— ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult} >160 mph (63 m/s).

1609.1.2.3 Garage doors.
Garage door glazed opening protection for wind-borne debris shall meet the requirements of an *approved* impact-resisting standard or ANSI/DASMA 115.

`

1609.2 Definitions.
For the purposes of Section 1609 and as used elsewhere in this code, the following terms are defined in Chapter 2.

HURRICANE-PRONE REGIONS.

WIND-BORNE DEBRIS REGION.

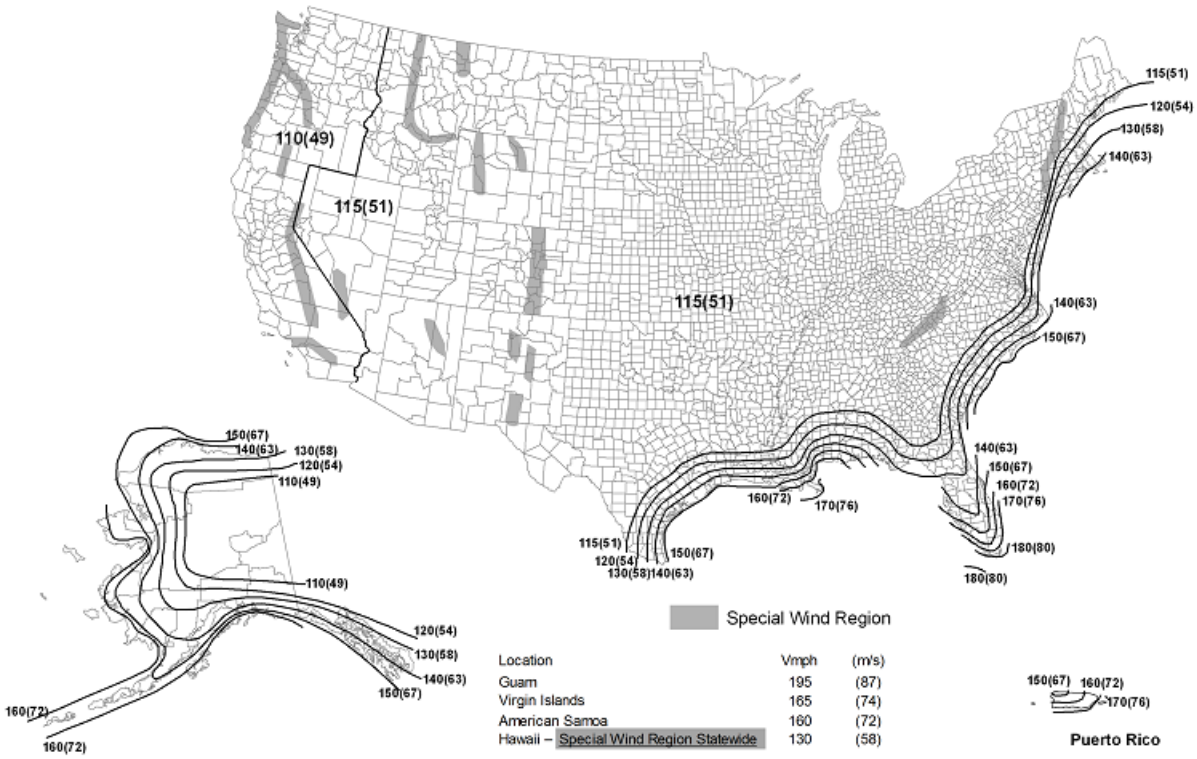
WIND SPEED, V_{ult}.

WIND SPEED, V_{asd}.

1609.3 Ultimate design wind speed.
The ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, in mph, for the determination of the wind loads shall be determined by Figures 1609.3(1), 1609.3(2) and 1609.3(3). The ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, for use in the design of Risk Category II buildings and structures shall be obtained from Figure 1609.3(1). The ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, for use in the design of Risk Category III and IV buildings and structures shall be obtained from Figure 1609.3(2). The ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, for use in the design of Risk Category I buildings and structures shall be obtained from Figure 1609.3(3). The ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, for the special wind regions indicated near mountainous terrain and near gorges shall be in accordance with local jurisdiction requirements. The ultimate design wind speeds, V_{ult}, determined by the local jurisdiction shall be in accordance with Section 26.5.1 of ASCE 7.

In nonhurricane-prone regions, when the ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, is estimated from regional climatic data, the ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, shall be determined in accordance with Section 26.5.3 of ASCE 7.

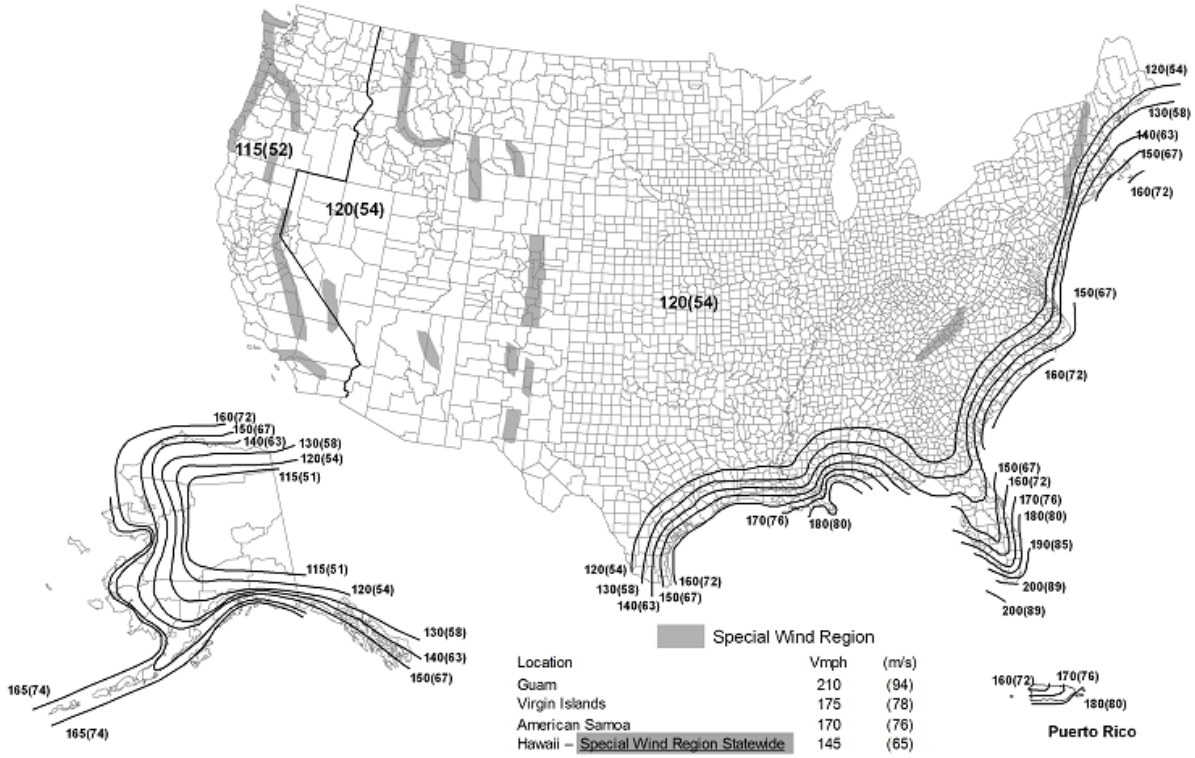
`



Notes:

1. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (m/s) at 33 ft (10m) above ground for Exposure C category.
2. Linear interpolation between contours is permitted.
3. Islands and coastal areas outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour of the coastal area.
4. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
5. Wind speeds correspond to approximately a 7% probability of exceedance in 50 years (Annual Exceedance Probability = 0.00143, MRI = 700 Years).

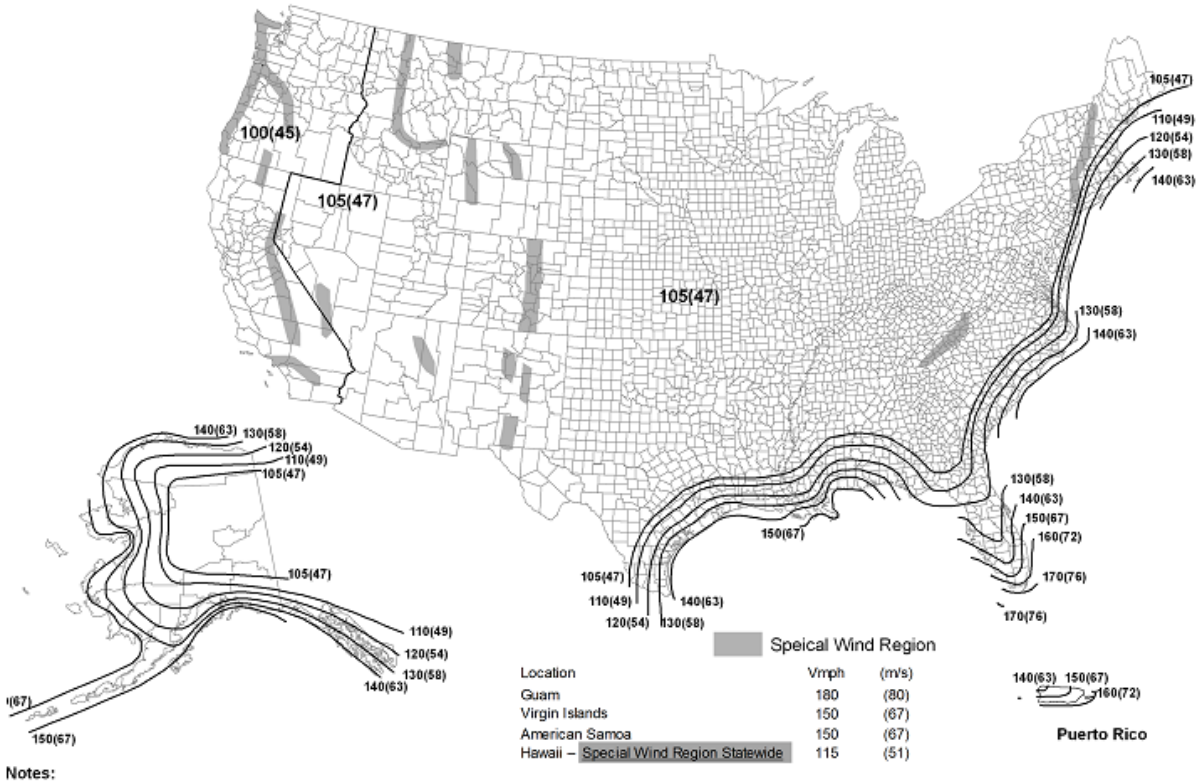
FIGURE 1609.3(1)
ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEEDS, v_{ult}, FOR RISK CATEGORY II BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES



Notes:

1. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (m/s) at 33 ft (10m) above ground for Exposure C category.
2. Linear interpolation between contours is permitted.
3. Islands and coastal areas outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour of the coastal area.
4. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
5. Wind speeds correspond to approximately a 3% probability of exceedance in 50 years (Annual Exceedance Probability = 0.000588, MRI = 1700 Years).

FIGURE 1609.3(2)
ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEEDS, v_{ult}, FOR RISK CATEGORY III AND IV BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES



Notes:
1. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (m/s) at 33 ft (10m) above ground for Exposure C category.
2. Linear interpolation between contours is permitted.
3. Islands and coastal areas outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour of the coastal area.
4. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
5. Wind speeds correspond to approximately a 15% probability of exceedance in 50 years (Annual Exceedance Probability = 0.00333, MRI = 300 Years).

FIGURE 1609.3(3)
ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEEDS, v_{ult}, FOR RISK CATEGORY I BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES

1609.3.1 Wind speed conversion.
When required, the ultimate design wind speeds of Figures 1609.3(1), 1609.3(2) and 1609.3(3) shall be converted to nominal design wind speeds, V_{asd}, using Table 1609.3.1 or Equation 16-33.

$$V_{asd} = V_{ult}\sqrt{0.6} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 16-33)}$$

where:

V_{asd} = Nominal design wind speed applicable to methods specified in Exceptions 4 and 5 of Section 1609.1.1.

V_{ult} = Ultimate design wind speeds determined from Figures 1609.3(1), 1609.3(2) or 1609.3(3).

TABLE 1609.3.1
WIND SPEED CONVERSIONS[a, b, c]

`

V_{ult}	100	110	120	130	140	150	160	170	180	190	200
V_{asd}	78	85	93	101	108	116	124	132	139	147	155

For SI: 1 mile per hour = 0.44 m/s.

a. Linear interpolation is permitted.

b. V_{asd} = nominal design wind speed applicable to methods specified in Exceptions 1 through 5 of Section 1609.1.1.

c. V_{ult} = ultimate design wind speeds determined from Figure 1609.3(1), 1609.3(2) or 1609.3(3).

1609.4 Exposure category.

For each wind direction considered, an exposure category that adequately reflects the characteristics of ground surface irregularities shall be determined for the site at which the building or structure is to be constructed. Account shall be taken of variations in ground surface roughness that arise from natural topography and vegetation as well as from constructed features.

1609.4.1 Wind directions and sectors.

For each selected wind direction at which the wind loads are to be evaluated, the exposure of the building or structure shall be determined for the two upwind sectors extending 45 degrees (0.79 rad) either side of the selected wind direction. The exposures in these two sectors shall be determined in accordance with Sections 1609.4.2 and 1609.4.3 and the exposure resulting in the highest wind loads shall be used to represent winds from that direction.

1609.4.2 Surface roughness categories.

A ground surface roughness within each 45-degree (0.79 rad) sector shall be determined for a distance upwind of the site as defined in Section 1609.4.3 from the categories defined below, for the purpose of assigning an exposure category as defined in Section 1609.4.3.

Surface Roughness B. Urban and suburban areas, wooded areas or other terrain with numerous closely spaced obstructions having the size of single-family dwellings or larger.

Surface Roughness C. Open terrain with scattered obstructions having heights generally less than 30 feet (9144 mm). This category includes flat open country, and grasslands.

Surface Roughness D. Flat, unobstructed areas and water surfaces. This category includes smooth mud flats, salt flats and unbroken ice.

1609.4.3 Exposure categories.

An exposure category shall be determined in accordance with the following:

Exposure B. For buildings with a mean roof height of less than or equal to 30 feet (9144 mm), Exposure B shall apply where the ground surface roughness, as defined by Surface Roughness B, prevails in the upwind direction for a distance of at least 1,500 feet (457 m). For buildings with a mean roof height greater than 30 feet (9144 mm), Exposure B shall apply where Surface Roughness B prevails in the upwind direction for

`

a distance of at least 2,600 feet (792 m) or 20 times the height of the building, whichever is greater.

Exposure C. Exposure C shall apply for all cases where Exposure B or D does not apply.

Exposure D. Exposure D shall apply where the ground surface roughness, as defined by Surface Roughness D, prevails in the upwind direction for a distance of at least 5,000 feet (1524 m) or 20 times the height of the building, whichever is greater. Exposure D shall also apply where the ground surface roughness immediately upwind of the site is B or C, and the site is within a distance of 600 feet (183 m) or 20 times the building height, whichever is greater, from an Exposure D condition as defined in the previous sentence.

1609.5 Roof systems.
Roof systems shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1609.5.1 through 1609.5.3, as applicable.

1609.5.1 Roof deck.
The roof deck shall be designed to withstand the wind pressures determined in accordance with ASCE 7.

1609.5.2 Roof coverings.
Roof coverings shall comply with Section 1609.5.1.

Exception: Rigid tile roof coverings that are air permeable and installed over a roof deck complying with Section 1609.5.1 are permitted to be designed in accordance with Section 1609.5.3.

Asphalt shingles installed over a roof deck complying with Section 1609.5.1 shall comply with the wind-resistance requirements of Section 1504.1.1.

1609.5.3 Rigid tile.
Wind loads on rigid tile roof coverings shall be determined in accordance with the following equation:

$$M_a = q_h C_L b L L_a [1.0 - GC_p] \qquad \textbf{(Equation 16-34)}$$

For SI:

$$M_a = \frac{q_h C_L b L L_a [1.0 - GC_p]}{1,000}$$

where:

b	=	Exposed width, feet (mm) of the roof tile.
C_L	=	Lift coefficient. The lift coefficient for concrete and clay tile shall be 0.2 or shall be determined by test in accordance with Section 1504.2.1.
GC_p	=	Roof pressure coefficient for each applicable roof zone determined from Chapter 30 of ASCE 7. Roof coefficients shall not be adjusted for internal pressure.

`

L	=	Length, feet (mm) of the roof tile.
L_a	=	Moment arm, feet (mm) from the axis of rotation to the point of uplift on the roof tile. The point of uplift shall be taken at 0.76L from the head of the tile and the middle of the exposed width. For roof tiles with nails or screws (with or without a tail clip), the axis of rotation shall be taken as the head of the tile for direct deck application or as the top edge of the batten for battened applications. For roof tiles fastened only by a nail or screw along the side of the tile, the axis of rotation shall be determined by testing. For roof tiles installed with battens and fastened only by a clip near the tail of the tile, the moment arm shall be determined about the top edge of the batten with consideration given for the point of rotation of the tiles based on straight bond or broken bond and the tile profile.
M_a	=	Aerodynamic uplift moment, feet-pounds (N-mm) acting to raise the tail of the tile.
q_h	=	Wind velocity pressure, psf (kN/m^2) determined from Section 27.3.2 of ASCE 7.

Concrete and clay roof tiles complying with the following limitations shall be designed to withstand the aerodynamic uplift moment as determined by this section.

1. The roof tiles shall be either loose laid on battens, mechanically fastened, mortar set or adhesive set.

2. The roof tiles shall be installed on solid sheathing that has been designed as components and cladding.

3. An underlayment shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 15.

4. The tile shall be single lapped interlocking with a minimum head lap of not less than 2 inches (51 mm).

5. The length of the tile shall be between 1.0 and 1.75 feet (305 mm and 533 mm).

6. The exposed width of the tile shall be between 0.67 and 1.25 feet (204 mm and 381 mm).

7. The maximum thickness of the tail of the tile shall not exceed 1.3 inches (33 mm).

8. Roof tiles using mortar set or adhesive set systems shall have at least two-thirds of the tile's area free of mortar or adhesive contact.

1609.6 Alternate all-heights method.
The alternate wind design provisions in this section are simplifications of the ASCE 7 Directional Procedure.

1609.6.1 Scope.
As an alternative to ASCE 7 Chapters 27 and 30, the following provisions are permitted to

`

be used to determine the wind effects on regularly shaped buildings, or other structures that are regularly shaped, that meet all of the following conditions:

1. The building or other structure is less than or equal to 75 feet (22 860 mm) in height with a height-to-least-width ratio of 4 or less, or the building or other structure has a fundamental frequency greater than or equal to 1 hertz.

2. The building or other structure is not sensitive to dynamic effects.

3. The building or other structure is not located on a site for which channeling effects or buffeting in the wake of upwind obstructions warrant special consideration.

4. The building shall meet the requirements of a simple diaphragm building as defined in ASCE 7 Section 26.2, where wind loads are only transmitted to the main windforce-resisting system (MWFRS) at the diaphragms.

5. For open buildings, multispan gable roofs, stepped roofs, sawtooth roofs, domed roofs, roofs with slopes greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad), solid freestanding walls and solid signs, and rooftop equipment, apply ASCE 7 provisions.

1609.6.1.1 Modifications.
The following modifications shall be made to certain subsections in ASCE 7: in Section 1609.6.2, symbols and notations that are specific to this section are used in conjunction with the symbols and notations in ASCE 7 Section 26.3.

1609.6.2 Symbols and notations.
Coefficients and variables used in the alternative all-heights method equations are as follows:

C_{net} = Net-pressure coefficient based on K_d [(G) (C_p) - (GC_{pi})], in accordance with Table 1609.6.2.

G = Gust effect factor for rigid structures in accordance with ASCE 7 Section 26.9.1.

K_d = Wind directionality factor in accordance with ASCE 7 Table 26-6.

P_{net} = Design wind pressure to be used in determination of wind loads on buildings or other structures or their components and cladding, in psf (kN/m^2).

TABLE 1609.6.2
NET PRESSURE COEFFICIENTS, C_{net} [a, b]

STRUCTURE OR PART THEREOF	DESCRIPTION	C_{net} FACTOR			
		Enclosed		Partially enclosed	
	Walls:	+ Internal pressure	- Internal pressure	+ Internal pressure	- Internal pressure
1. Main windforce-					

`

resisting frames and systems	Windward wall		0.43	0.73	0.11	1.05
	Leeward wall		-0.51	-0.21	-0.83	0.11
	Sidewall		-0.66	-0.35	-0.97	-0.04
	Parapet wall	**Windward**	1.28		1.28	
		Leeward	-0.85		-0.85	
	Roofs:		**Enclosed**		**Partially enclosed**	
	Wind perpendicular to ridge		**+ Internal pressure**	**- Internal pressure**	**+ Internal pressure**	**- Internal pressure**
	Leeward roof or flat roof		-0.66	-0.35	-0.97	-0.04
	Windward roof slopes**:**					
	Slope < 2:12 (10°)	Condition 1	-1.09	-0.79	-1.41	-0.47
		Condition 2	-0.28	0.02	-0.60	0.34
	Slope = 4:12 (18°)	Condition 1	-0.73	-0.42	-1.04	-0.11
		Condition 2	-0.05	0.25	-0.37	0.57
	Slope = 5:12 (23°)	Condition 1	-0.58	-0.28	-0.90	0.04
		Condition 2	0.03	0.34	-0.29	0.65
	Slope = 6:12 (27°)	Condition 1	-0.47	-0.16	-0.78	0.15
		Condition 2	0.06	0.37	-0.25	0.68
	Slope = 7:12 (30°)	Condition 1	-0.37	-0.06	-0.68	0.25
		Condition 2	0.07	0.37	-0.25	0.69
	Slope = 9:12 (37°)	Condition 1	-0.27	0.04	-0.58	0.35
		Condition 2	0.14	0.44	-0.18	0.76
	Slope = 12:12 (45°)		0.14	0.44	-0.18	0.76
	Wind parallel to ridge and flat roofs		-1.09	-0.79	-1.41	-0.47
	Nonbuilding Structures: Chimneys, Tanks and Similar Structures:					
				h/D		
				1	7	25
	Square (Wind normal to face)			0.99	1.07	1.53
	Square (Wind on diagonal)			0.77	0.84	1.15

`

	Hexagonal or octagonal	0.81	0.97	1.13
	Round	0.65	0.81	0.97
	Open signs and lattice frameworks	Ratio of solid to gross area		
		< 0.1	0.1 to 0.29	0.3 to 0.7
	Flat	1.45	1.30	1.16
	Round	0.87	0.94	1.08

(continued)

TABLE 1609.6.2—continued
NET PRESSURE COEFFICIENTS, C_{net} [a, b]

STRUCTURE OR PART THEREOF	DESCRIPTION		C_{net} FACTOR	
	Roof elements and slopes		**Enclosed**	**Partially enclosed**
	Gable of hipped configurations (Zone 1)			
	Flat < Slope < 6:12 (27°) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2B Zone 1			
	Positive	10 square feet or less	0.58	0.89
		100 square feet or more	0.41	0.72
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-1.00	-1.32
		100 square feet or more	-0.92	-1.23
	Overhang: Flat < Slope < 6:12 (27°) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2A Zone 1			
2. Components and cladding not in areas of discontinuity—roofs and overhangs	Negative	10 square feet or less	-1.45	
		100 square feet or more	-1.36	
		500 square feet or more	-0.94	
	6:12 (27°) < Slope < 12:12 (45°) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2C Zone 1			
	Positive	10 square feet or less	0.92	1.23
		100 square feet or more	0.83	1.15
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-1.00	-1.32
		100 square feet or more	-0.83	-1.15
	Monosloped configurations (Zone 1)		**Enclosed**	**Partially enclosed**
	Flat < Slope < 7:12 (30°) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-5B Zone 1			
	Positive	10 square feet or less	0.49	0.81
		100 square feet or more	0.41	0.72
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-1.26	-1.57

`

		100 square feet or more	-1.09	-1.40
	Tall flat-topped roofs *h* > 60 feet		**Enclosed**	**Partially enclosed**
	Flat < Slope < 2:12 (10°) (Zone 1) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.8-1 Zone 1			
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-1.34	-1.66
		500 square feet or more	-0.92	-1.23
3. Components and cladding in areas of discontinuity—roofs and overhangs (continued)	Gable or hipped configurations at ridges, eaves and rakes (Zone 2)			
	Flat < Slope < 6:12 (27°) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2B Zone 2			
	Positive	10 square feet or less	0.58	0.89
		100 square feet or more	0.41	0.72
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-1.68	-2.00
		100 square feet or more	-1.17	-1.49
	Overhang for Slope Flat < Slope < 6:12 (27°) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2B Zone 2			
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-1.87	
		100 square feet or more	-1.87	
	6:12 (27°) < Slope < 12:12 (45°) Figure 30.4-2C		**Enclosed**	**Partially enclosed**
	Positive	10 square feet or less	0.92	1.23
		100 square feet or more	0.83	1.15
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-1.17	-1.49
		100 square feet or more	-1.00	-1.32
	Overhang for 6:12 (27°) < Slope < 12:12 (45°) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2C Zone 2			
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-1.70	
		500 square feet or more	-1.53	

(continued)

TABLE 1609.6.2—continued
NET PRESSURE COEFFICIENTS, C_{net} [a, b]

STRUCTURE OR PART THEREOF	DESCRIPTION	C_{net} FACTOR	
3. Components and cladding in areas of discontinuity—roofs and overhangs	**Roof elements and slopes**	**Enclosed**	**Partially enclosed**
	Monosloped configurations at ridges, eaves and rakes (Zone 2)		
	Flat < Slope < 7:12 (30°) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-5B Zone 2		

`

	Positive	10 square feet or less	0.49	0.81
		100 square feet or more	0.41	0.72
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-1.51	-1.83
		100 square feet or more	-1.43	-1.74
	Tall flat topped roofs *h* > 60 feet		**Enclosed**	**Partially enclosed**
	Flat < Slope < 2:12 (10°) (Zone 2) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.8-1 Zone 2			
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-2.11	-2.42
		500 square feet or more	-1.51	-1.83
	Gable or hipped configurations at corners (Zone 3) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2B Zone 3			
	Flat < Slope < 6:12 (27°)		**Enclosed**	**Partially enclosed**
	Positive	10 square feet or less	0.58	0.89
		100 square feet or more	0.41	0.72
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-2.53	-2.85
		100 square feet or more	-1.85	-2.17
	Overhang for Slope Flat < Slope < 6:12 (27°) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2B Zone 3			
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-3.15	
		100 square feet or more	-2.13	
	6:12 (27°) < 12:12 (45°) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2C Zone 3			
	Positive	10 square feet or less	0.92	1.23
		100 square feet or more	0.83	1.15
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-1.17	-1.49
		100 square feet or more	-1.00	-1.32
	Overhang for 6:12 (27°) < Slope < 12:12 (45°)		**Enclosed**	**Partially enclosed**
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-1.70	
		100 square feet or more	-1.53	

`

	Monosloped Configurations at corners (Zone 3) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-5B Zone 3			
	Flat < Slope < 7:12 (30°)			
	Positive	10 square feet or less	0.49	0.81
		100 square feet or more	0.41	0.72
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-2.62	-2.93
		100 square feet or more	-1.85	-2.17
	Tall flat topped roofs *h* > 60 feet		**Enclosed**	**Partially enclosed**
	Flat < Slope < 2:12 (10°) (Zone 3) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.8-1 Zone 3			
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-2.87	-3.19
		500 square feet or more	-2.11	-2.42
4. Components and cladding not in areas of discontinuity—walls and parapets (continued)	Wall Elements: *h* ≤ 60 feet (Zone 4) ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-1		**Enclosed**	**Partially enclosed**
	Positive	10 square feet or less	1.00	1.32
		500 square feet or more	0.75	1.06
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-1.09	-1.40
		500 square feet or more	-0.83	-1.15
	Wall Elements: *h* > 60 feet (Zone 4) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.6-1 Zone 4			
	Positive	20 square feet or less	0.92	1.23
		500 square feet or more	0.66	0.98

(continued)

TABLE 1609.6.2—continued
NET PRESSURE COEFFICIENTS, C_{net} [a, b]

STRUCTURE OR PART THEREOF	DESCRIPTION		C_{net} FACTOR	
4. Components and cladding not in areas of discontinuity—walls and parapets	Negative	20 square feet or less	-0.92	-1.23
		500 square feet or more	-0.75	-1.06
	Parapet Walls			
	Positive		2.87	3.19

`

	Negative		-1.68	-2.00
5. Components and cladding in areas of discontinuity—walls and parapets	Wall elements: $h \leq 60$ feet (Zone 5) ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-1		**Enclosed**	**Partially enclosed**
	Positive	10 square feet or less	1.00	1.32
		500 square feet or more	0.75	1.06
	Negative	10 square feet or less	-1.34	-1.66
		500 square feet or more	-0.83	-1.15
	Wall elements: $h > 60$ feet (Zone 5) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.6-1 Zone 4			
	Positive	20 square feet or less	0.92	1.23
		500 square feet or more	0.66	0.98
	Negative	20 square feet or less	-1.68	-2.00
		500 square feet or more	-1.00	-1.32
	Parapet walls			
	Positive		3.64	3.95
	Negative		-2.45	-2.76

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929m^2, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

a. Linear interpolation between values in the table is permitted.

b. Some C_{net} values have been grouped together. Less conservative results may be obtained by applying ASCE 7 provisions.

1609.6.3 Design equations.
When using the alternative all-heights method, the MWFRS, and components and cladding of every structure shall be designed to resist the effects of wind pressures on the building envelope in accordance with Equation 16-35.

$$P_{net} = 0.00256 V^2 K_z C_{net} K_{zt} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 16-35)}$$

Design wind forces for the MWFRS shall be not less than 16 psf (0.77 kN/m^2) multiplied by the area of the structure projected on a plane normal to the assumed wind direction (see ASCE 7 Section 27.4.7 for criteria). Design net wind pressure for components and cladding shall be not less than 16 psf (0.77 kN/m^2) acting in either direction normal to the surface.

1609.6.4 Design procedure.
The MWFRS and the components and cladding of every building or other structure shall be designed for the pressures calculated using Equation 16-35.

1609.6.4.1 Main windforce-resisting systems.
The MWFRS shall be investigated for the torsional effects identified in ASCE 7 Figure 27.4-8.

`

1609.6.4.2 Determination of K_z and K_{zt}.
Velocity pressure exposure coefficient, K_z, shall be determined in accordance with ASCE 7 Section 27.3.1 and the topographic factor, K_{zt}, shall be determined in accordance with ASCE 7 Section 26.8.

1. For the windward side of a structure, K_{zt} and K_z shall be based on height *z*.

2. For leeward and sidewalls, and for windward and leeward roofs, K_{zt} and K_z shall be based on mean roof height *h*.

1609.6.4.3 Determination of net pressure coefficients, C_{net}.
For the design of the MWFRS and for components and cladding, the sum of the internal and external net pressure shall be based on the net pressure coefficient, C_{net}.

1. The pressure coefficient, C_{net}, for walls and roofs shall be determined from Table 1609.6.2.

2. Where C_{net} has more than one value, the more severe wind load condition shall be used for design.

1609.6.4.4 Application of wind pressures.
When using the alternative all-heights method, wind pressures shall be applied simultaneously on, and in a direction normal to, all building envelope wall and roof surfaces.

1609.6.4.4.1 Components and cladding.
Wind pressure for each component or cladding element is applied as follows using C_{net} values based on the effective wind area, *A*, contained within the zones in areas of discontinuity of width and/or length “a,” “2a” or “4a” at: corners of roofs and walls; edge strips for ridges, rakes and eaves; or field areas on walls or roofs as indicated in figures in tables in ASCE 7 as referenced in Table 1609.6.2 in accordance with the following:

1. Calculated pressures at local discontinuities acting over specific edge strips or corner boundary areas.

2. Include “field” (Zone 1, 2 or 4, as applicable) pressures applied to areas beyond the boundaries of the areas of discontinuity.

3. Where applicable, the calculated pressures at discontinuities (Zone 2 or 3) shall be combined with design pressures that apply specifically on rakes or eave overhangs.

SECTION 1610
SOIL LATERAL LOADS

1610.1 General.
Foundation walls and retaining walls shall be designed to resist lateral soil loads. Soil loads

`

specified in Table 1610.1 shall be used as the minimum design lateral soil loads unless determined otherwise by a geotechnical investigation in accordance with Section 1803. Foundation walls and other walls in which horizontal movement is restricted at the top shall be designed for at-rest pressure. Retaining walls free to move and rotate at the top shall be permitted to be designed for active pressure. Design lateral pressure from surcharge loads shall be added to the lateral earth pressure load. Design lateral pressure shall be increased if soils at the site are expansive. Foundation walls shall be designed to support the weight of the full hydrostatic pressure of undrained backfill unless a drainage system is installed in accordance with Sections 1805.4.2 and 1805.4.3.

Exception: Foundation walls extending not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) below grade and laterally supported at the top by flexible diaphragms shall be permitted to be designed for active pressure.

TABLE 1610.1
LATERAL SOIL LOAD

DESCRIPTION OF BACKFILL MATERIAL[c]	UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION	DESIGN LATERAL SOIL LOAD[a] (pound per square foot per foot of depth)	
		Active pressure	At-rest pressure
Well-graded, clean gravels; gravel-sand mixes	GW	30	60
Poorly graded clean gravels; gravel-sand mixes	GP	30	60
Silty gravels, poorly graded gravel-sand mixes	GM	40	60
Clayey gravels, poorly graded gravel-and-clay mixes	GC	45	60
Well-graded, clean sands; gravelly sand mixes	SW	30	60
Poorly graded clean sands; sand-gravel mixes	SP	30	60
Silty sands, poorly graded sand-silt mixes	SM	45	60
Sand-silt clay mix with plastic fines	SM-SC	45	100
Clayey sands, poorly graded sand-clay mixes	SC	60	100
Inorganic silts and clayey silts	ML	45	100
Mixture of inorganic silt and clay	ML-CL	60	100
Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity	CL	60	100
Organic silts and silt clays, low plasticity	OL	Note b	Note b
Inorganic clayey silts, elastic silts	MH	Note b	Note b
Inorganic clays of high plasticity	CH	Note b	Note b
Organic clays and silty clays	OH	Note b	Note b

For SI: 1 pound per square foot per foot of depth = 0.157 kPa/m, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

`

a. Design lateral soil loads are given for moist conditions for the specified soils at their optimum densities. Actual field conditions shall govern. Submerged or saturated soil pressures shall include the weight of the buoyant soil plus the hydrostatic loads.
b. Unsuitable as backfill material.
c. The definition and classification of soil materials shall be in accordance with ASTM D2487.

SECTION 1611
RAIN LOADS

1611.1 Design rain loads.
Each portion of a roof shall be designed to sustain the load of rainwater that will accumulate on it if the primary drainage system for that portion is blocked plus the uniform load caused by water that rises above the inlet of the secondary drainage system at its design flow. The design rainfall shall be based on the 100-year hourly rainfall rate indicated in Figure 1611.1 or on other rainfall rates determined from *approved* local weather data.

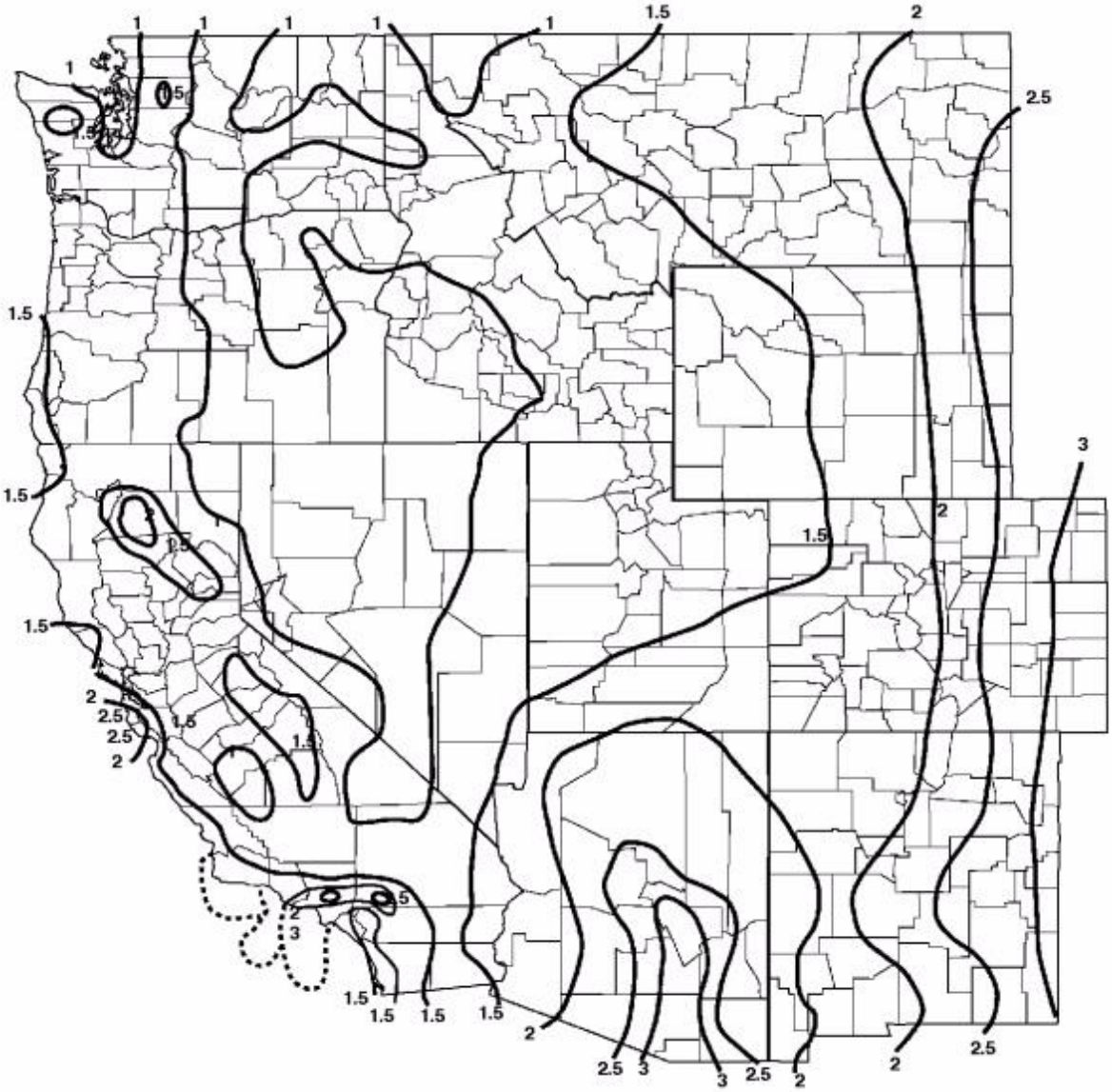
$$R = 5.2(d_s + d_h) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 16-36)}$$

For SI: $R = 0.0098(d_s + d_h)$

where:

d_h	=	Additional depth of water on the undeflected roof above the inlet of secondary drainage system at its design flow (i.e., the hydraulic head), in inches (mm).
d_s	=	Depth of water on the undeflected roof up to the inlet of secondary drainage system when the primary drainage system is blocked (i.e., the static head), in inches (mm).
R	=	Rain load on the undeflected roof, in psf (kN/m^2). When the phrase “undeflected roof” is used, deflections from loads (including dead loads) shall not be considered when determining the amount of rain on the roof.

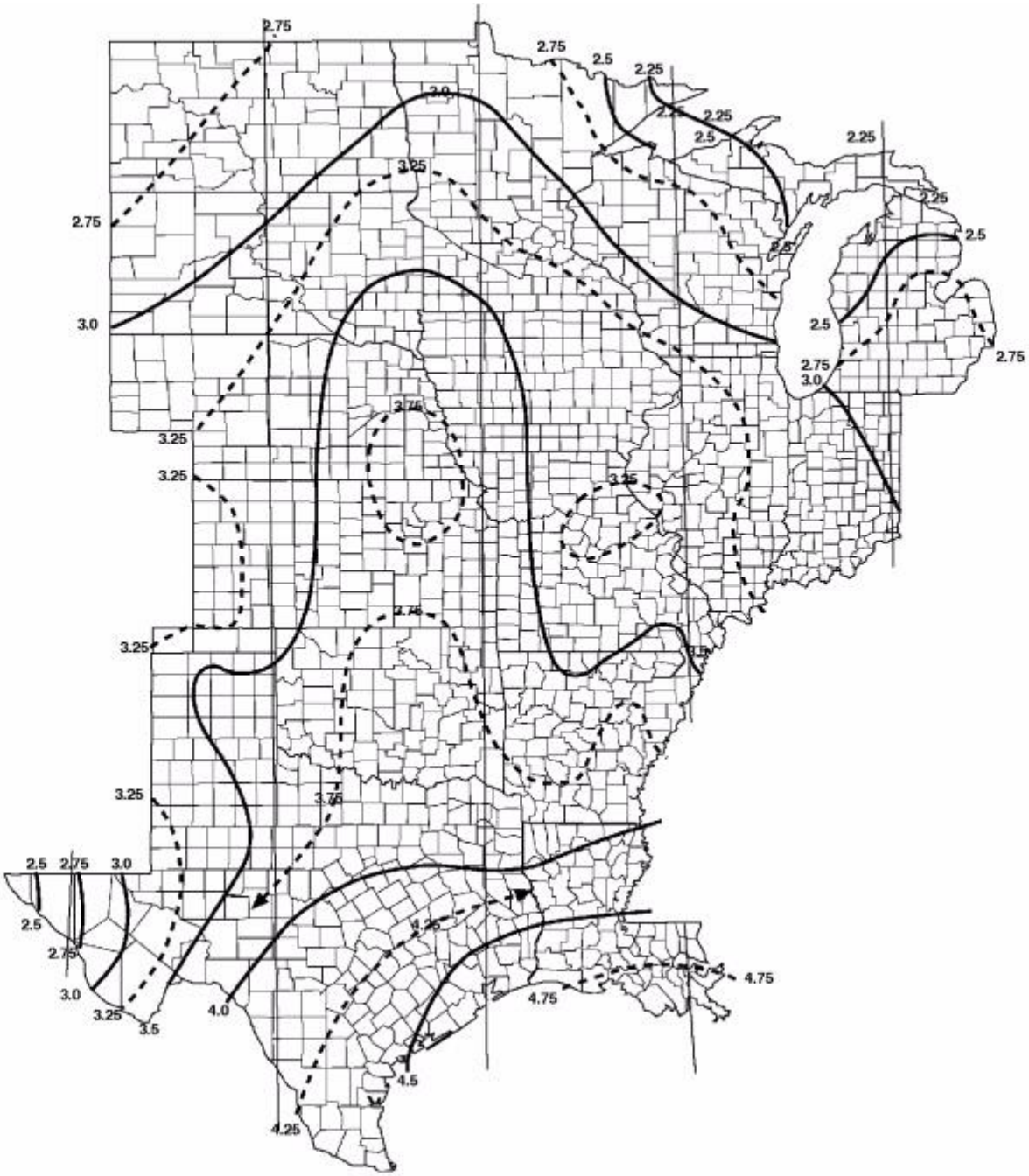
`



[P] FIGURE 1611.1
100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) WESTERN UNITED STATES

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
Source: National Weather Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC.

`



[P] FIGURE 1611.1—continued
100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) CENTRAL UNITED STATES

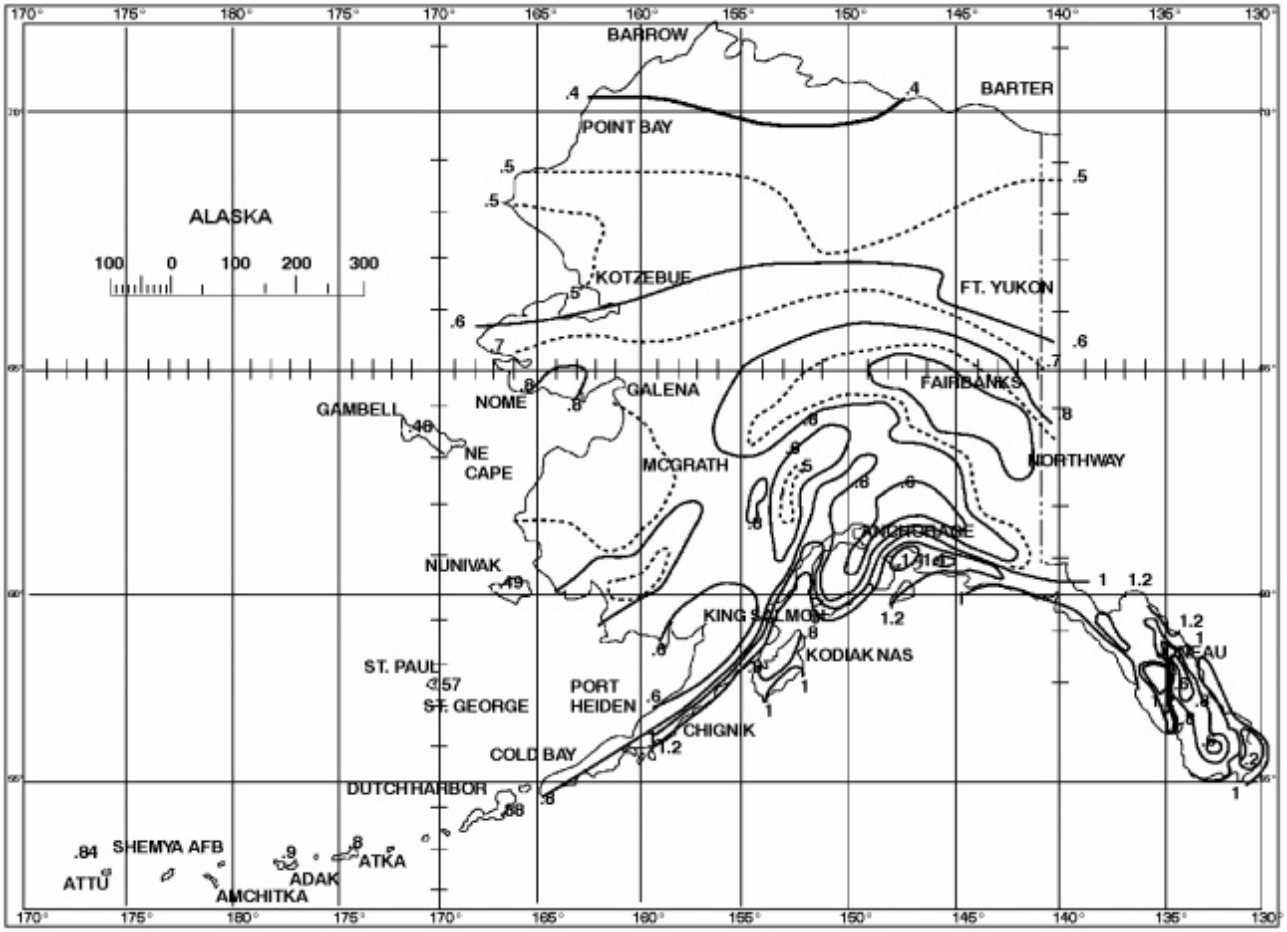
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
Source: National Weather Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC.

`

[P] FIGURE 1611.1—continued
100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) EASTERN UNITED STATES

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
Source: National Weather Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC.

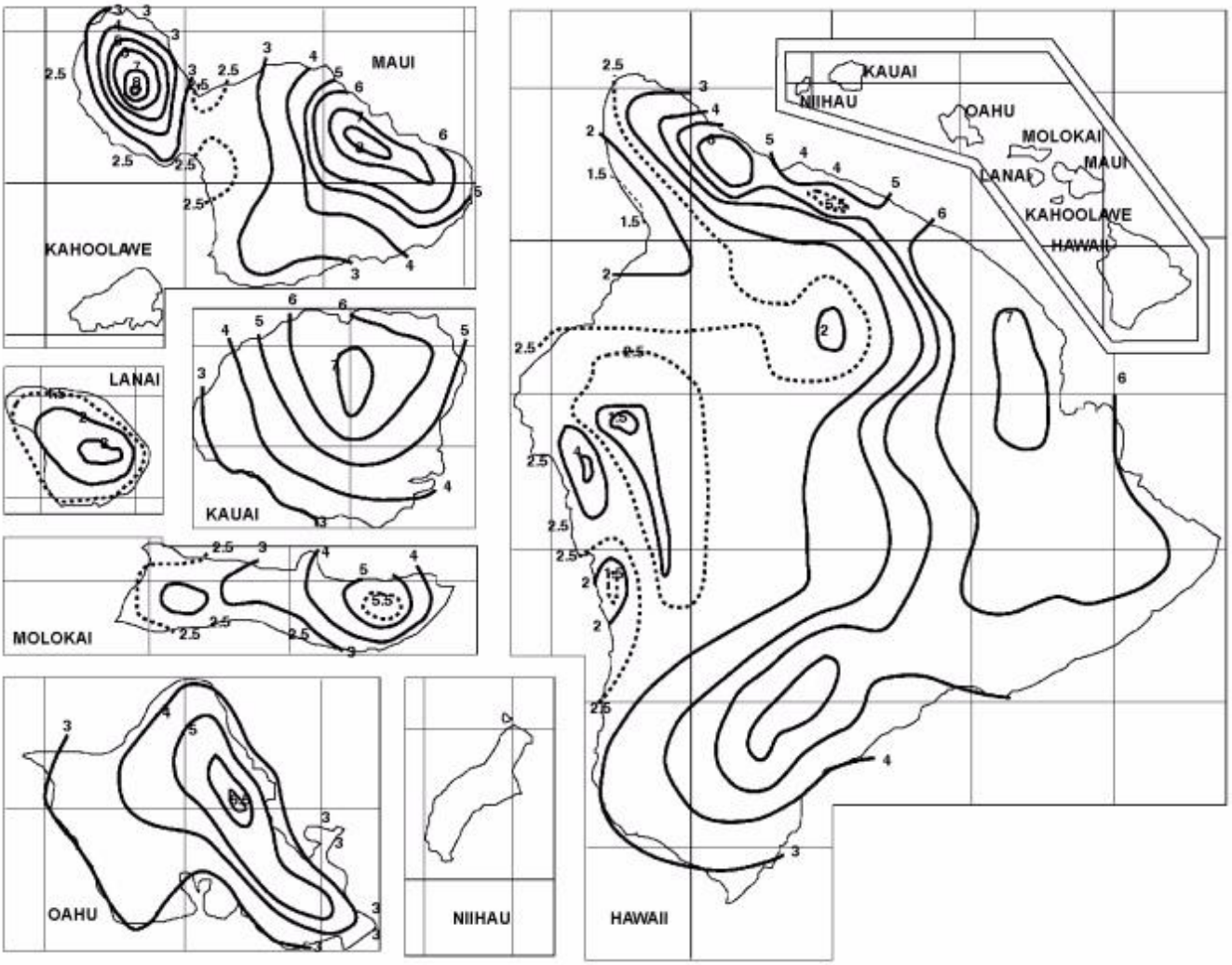
`



[P] FIGURE 1611.1—continued
100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) ALASKA

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
Source: National Weather Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC.

`



[P] FIGURE 1611.1—continued
100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) HAWAII

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
Source: National Weather Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC.

1611.2 Ponding instability.
Susceptible bays of roofs shall be evaluated for ponding instability in accordance with Section 8.4 of ASCE 7.

1611.3 Controlled drainage.
Roofs equipped with hardware to control the rate of drainage shall be equipped with a secondary drainage system at a higher elevation that limits accumulation of water on the roof above that elevation. Such roofs shall be designed to sustain the load of rainwater that will accumulate on them to the elevation of the secondary drainage system plus the uniform load caused by water that rises above the inlet of the secondary drainage system at its design flow determined from Section 1611.1. Such roofs shall also be checked for ponding instability in accordance with Section 1611.2.

`

SECTION 1612
FLOOD LOADS

1612.1 General.
Within *flood hazard areas* as established in Section 1612.3, all new construction of buildings, structures and portions of buildings and structures, including substantial improvement and restoration of substantial damage to buildings and structures, shall be designed and constructed to resist the effects of flood hazards and flood loads. For buildings that are located in more than one *flood hazard area*, the provisions associated with the most restrictive *flood hazard area* shall apply.

1612.2 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

BASE FLOOD.

BASE FLOOD ELEVATION.

BASEMENT.

COASTAL A ZONE.

COASTAL HIGH HAZARD AREA.

DESIGN FLOOD.

DESIGN FLOOD ELEVATION.

DRY FLOODPROOFING.

EXISTING STRUCTURE.

FLOOD or FLOODING.

FLOOD DAMAGE-RESISTANT MATERIALS.

FLOOD HAZARD AREA.

FLOOD INSURANCE RATE MAP (FIRM).

FLOOD INSURANCE STUDY.

FLOODWAY.

LOWEST FLOOR.

SPECIAL FLOOD HAZARD AREA.

START OF CONSTRUCTION.

SUBSTANTIAL DAMAGE.

SUBSTANTIAL IMPROVEMENT.

`

1612.3 Establishment of flood hazard areas.
To establish *flood hazard areas*, the applicable governing authority shall adopt a flood hazard map and supporting data. The flood hazard map shall include, at a minimum, areas of special flood hazard as identified by the Federal Emergency Management Agency in an engineering report entitled "The Flood Insurance Study for ~~[INSERT NAME OF JURISDICTION]~~ King County," dated [INSERT DATE OF ISSUANCE], as amended or revised with the accompanying Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM) and Flood Boundary and Floodway Map (FBFM) and related supporting data along with any revisions thereto. The adopted flood hazard map and supporting data are hereby adopted by reference and declared to be part of this section.

1612.3.1 Design flood elevations.
Where design flood elevations are not included in the *flood hazard areas* established in Section 1612.3, or where floodways are not designated, the *building official* is authorized to require the applicant to:

1. Obtain and reasonably utilize any design flood elevation and floodway data available from a federal, state or other source; or

2. Determine the design flood elevation and/or floodway in accordance with ~~accepted hydrologic and hydraulic engineering practices used~~ the City of Bellevue LUC 20.25H.175A and Surface Water Engineering Standards, Section D4-04.5, "Floodplain/Floodway Analysis" to define special flood hazard areas. Determinations shall be undertaken by a *registered design professional* who shall document that the technical methods used reflect currently accepted engineering practice.

1612.3.2 Determination of impacts.
In riverine *flood hazard areas* where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated, the applicant shall provide a floodway analysis that demonstrates that the proposed work will ~~not increase the design flood elevation more than 1 foot (305 mm) at any point within the jurisdiction of the applicable governing authority.~~ meet the City of Bellevue Engineering Standards, Section D4-04.5, "Floodplain/Floodway Analysis."

1612.4 Design and construction.
The design and construction of buildings and structures located in *flood hazard areas,* including ~~*coastal high hazard areas* and *coastal A zones*,~~ flood hazard areas subject to high-velocity wave action, shall be in accordance with Chapter 5 of ASCE 7 and ASCE 24 and with BCC Section 20.25H.175.

1612.5 Flood hazard documentation.
The following documentation shall be prepared and sealed by a *registered design professional* and submitted to the *building official*:

1. For construction in *flood hazard areas* other than *coastal high hazard areas* or *coastal A zones*:

   1.1. The elevation of the lowest floor, including the basement, as required by the lowest floor elevation inspection in Section 110.3.3 and for the final inspection in Section 110.3.10.1.

   1.2. For fully enclosed areas below the design flood elevation where provisions to allow for the automatic entry and exit of floodwaters do not meet the minimum requirements in Section 2.7.2.1 of ASCE 24, *construction documents* shall include a

statement that the design will provide for equalization of hydrostatic flood forces in accordance with Section 2.7.2.2 of ASCE 24.

1.3. For dry flood proofed nonresidential buildings, *construction documents* shall include a statement that the dry flood proofing is designed in accordance with ASCE 24.

2. For construction in *coastal high hazard areas* and *coastal A zones*:

2.1. The elevation of the bottom of the lowest horizontal structural member as required by the lowest floor elevation inspection in Section 110.3.3 and for the final inspection in Section 110.3.10.1.

2.2. *Construction documents* shall include a statement that the building is designed in accordance with ASCE 24, including that the pile or column foundation and building or structure to be attached thereto is designed to be anchored to resist flotation, collapse and lateral movement due to the effects of wind and flood loads acting simultaneously on all building components, and other load requirements of Chapter 16.

2.3. For breakaway walls designed to have a resistance of more than 20 psf (0.96 kN/m^2) determined using allowable stress design, *construction documents* shall include a statement that the breakaway wall is designed in accordance with ASCE 24.

SECTION 1613
EARTHQUAKE LOADS

1613.1 Scope.
Every structure, and portion thereof, including nonstructural components that are permanently attached to structures and their supports and attachments, shall be designed and constructed to resist the effects of earthquake motions in accordance with ASCE 7, excluding Chapter 14 and Appendix 11A. The *seismic design category* for a structure is permitted to be determined in accordance with Section 1613 or ASCE 7.

Exceptions:

1. Detached one- and two-family dwellings, assigned to *Seismic Design Category* A, B or C, or located where the mapped short-period spectral response acceleration, S_S, is less than 0.4 g.

2. The seismic force-resisting system of wood-frame buildings that conform to the provisions of Section 2308 are not required to be analyzed as specified in this section.

3. Agricultural storage structures intended only for incidental human occupancy.

4. Structures that require special consideration of their response characteristics and environment that are not addressed by this code or ASCE 7 and for which other regulations provide seismic criteria, such as vehicular bridges, electrical transmission

towers, hydraulic structures, buried utility lines and their appurtenances and nuclear reactors.

5. Seismic design of automatic sprinkler systems when hanging, bracing, and restraint is designed and installed in accordance with the 2013 edition of NFPA 13 and the coefficient Cp for seismic bracing design calculations in accordance with NFPA 13 is either a value of 0.70, or a value based on site specific USGS data.

1613.2 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

DESIGN EARTHQUAKE GROUND MOTION.

ORTHOGONAL.

RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE_R) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATION.

SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY.

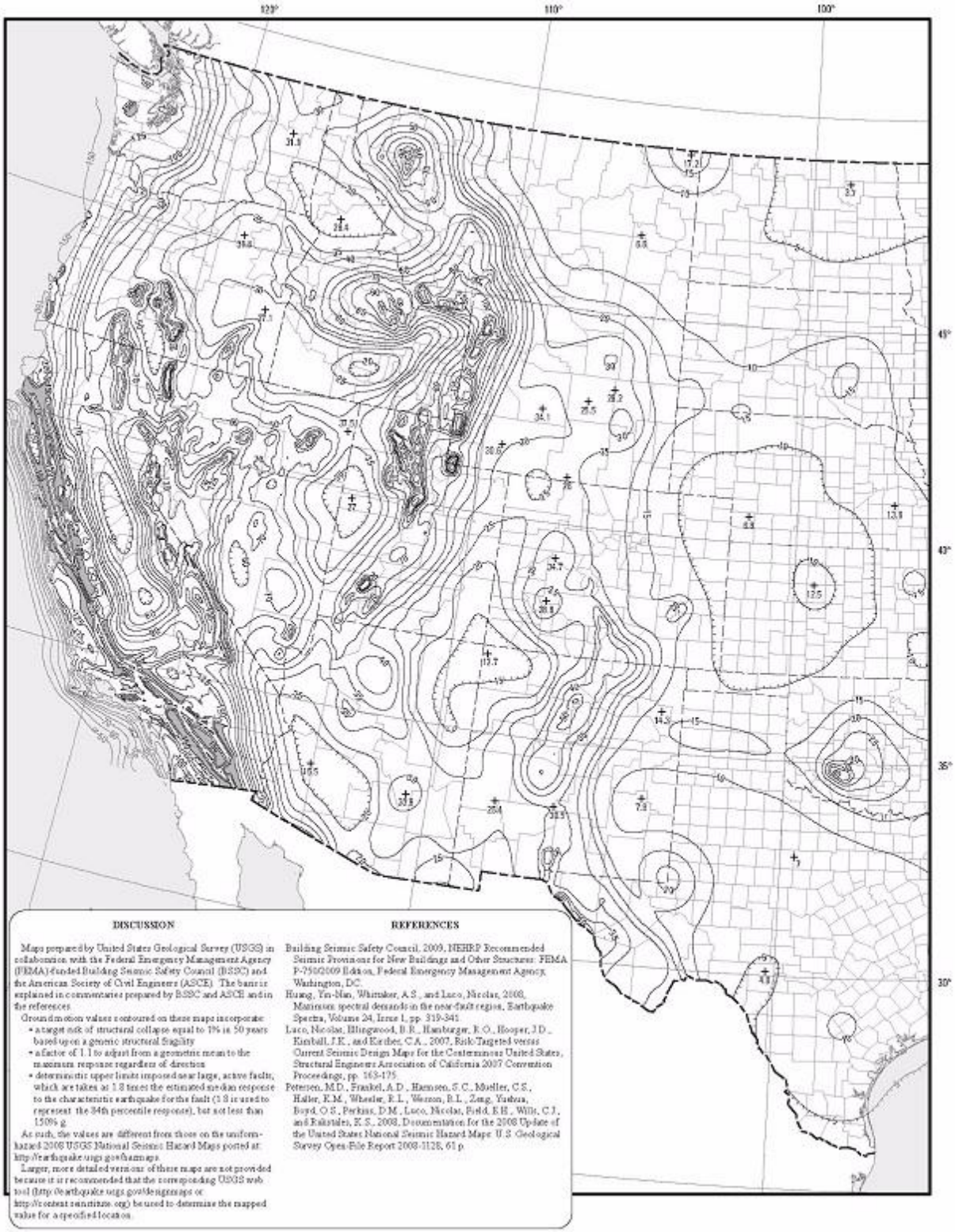
SEISMIC FORCE-RESISTING SYSTEM.

SITE CLASS.

SITE COEFFICIENTS.

1613.3 Seismic ground motion values.
Seismic ground motion values shall be determined in accordance with this section.

1613.3.1 Mapped acceleration parameters.
The parameters S_S and S_1 shall be determined from the 0.2 and 1-second spectral response accelerations shown on Figures 1613.3.1(1) through 1613.3.1(8). Where S_1 is less than or equal to 0.04 and S_S is less than or equal to 0.15, the structure is permitted to be assigned *Seismic Design Category* A.



DISCUSSION

Maps prepared by United States Geological Survey (USGS) in collaboration with the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) funded Building Seismic Safety Council (BSSC) and the American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE). The basis is explained in commentaries prepared by BSSC and ASCE and in the references.

Ground motion values contoured on these maps incorporate:

- a target risk of structural collapse equal to 1% in 50 years based upon a generic structural fragility
- a factor of 1.1 to adjust from a geometric mean to the maximum response regardless of direction
- deterministic upper limits imposed near large, active faults, which are taken as 1.5 times the estimated median response to the characteristic earthquake for the fault (1.5 is used to represent the 84th percentile response), but not less than 150% g.

As such, the values are different from those on the uniform-hazard 2008 USGS National Seismic Hazard Maps posted at: http://earthquake.usgs.gov/hazmaps.

Larger, more detailed versions of these maps are not provided because it is recommended that the corresponding USGS web tool (http://earthquake.usgs.gov/designmaps or http://content.seinstitute.org) be used to determine the mapped value for a specified location.

REFERENCES

Building Seismic Safety Council, 2009, NEHRP Recommended Seismic Provisions for New Buildings and Other Structures: FEMA P-750/2009 Edition, Federal Emergency Management Agency, Washington, DC.

Huang, Yin-Nan, Whittaker, A.S., and Luco, Nicolas, 2008, Maximum spectral demands in the near-fault region, Earthquake Spectra, Volume 24, Issue 1, pp. 319-341.

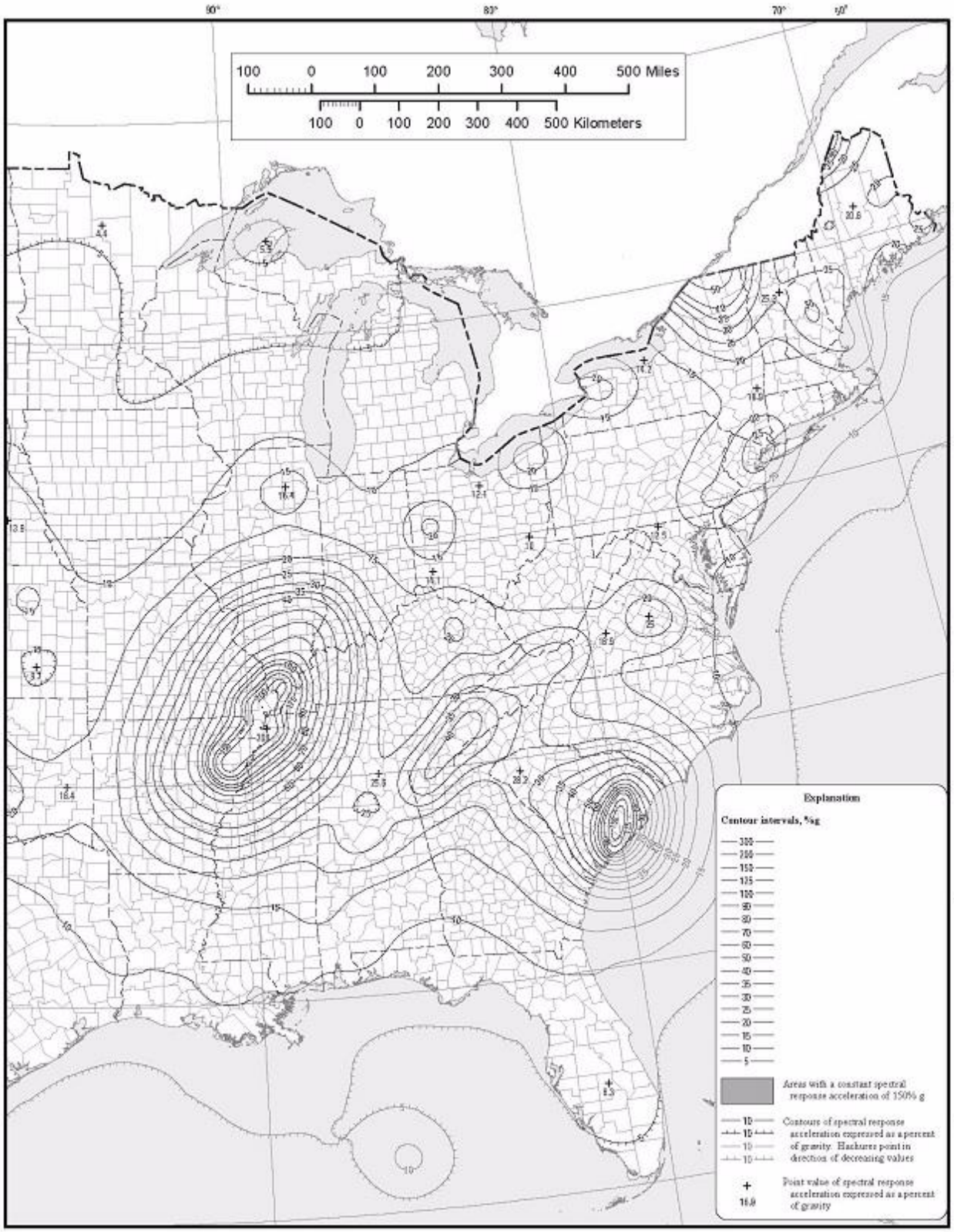
Luco, Nicolas, Bhingarkar, B.R., Hamburger, R.O., Hooper, J.D., Kimball, J.K., and Kircher, C.A., 2007, Risk-Targeted versus Current Seismic Design Maps for the Conterminous United States, Structural Engineers Association of California 2007 Convention Proceedings, pp. 163-175.

Petersen, M.D., Frankel, A.D., Harmsen, S.C., Mueller, C.S., Haller, K.M., Wheeler, R.L., Wesson, R.L., Zeng, Yuehua, Boyd, O.S., Perkins, D.M., Luco, Nicolas, Field, E.H., Wills, C.J., and Rukstales, K.S., 2008, Documentation for the 2008 Update of the United States National Seismic Hazard Maps: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 2008-1128, 61 p.

`

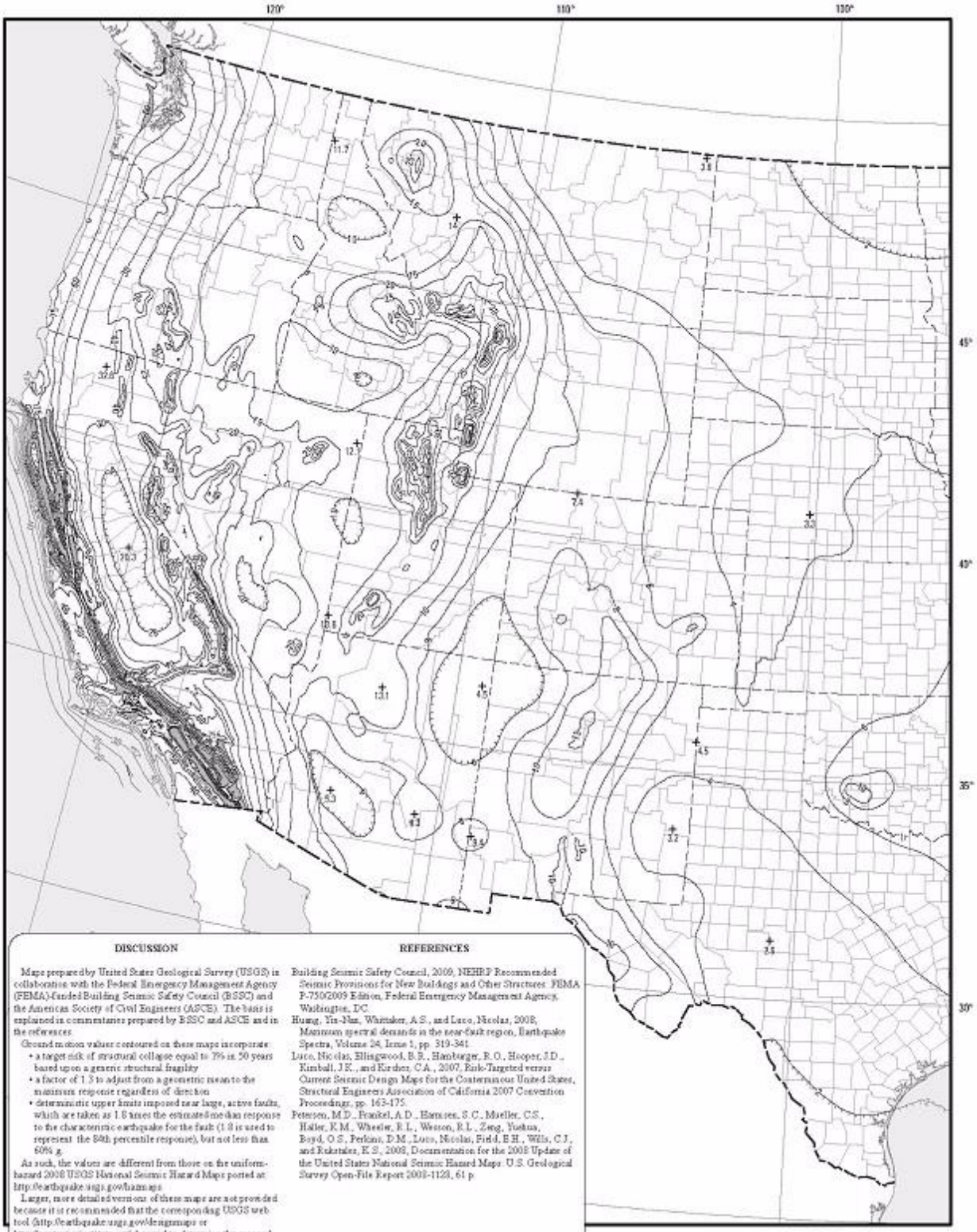
FIGURE 1613.3.1(1)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE_R) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE
ACCELERATIONS FOR THE CONTERMINOUS UNITED STATES OF 0.2-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION
(5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B

(continued)


100 0 100 200 300 400 500 Miles
100 0 100 200 300 400 500 Kilometers
Explanation
Contour intervals, %g
300
200
150
125
100
90
80
70
60
50
40
35
30
25
20
15
10
5
Areas with a constant spectral response acceleration of 150% g
Contours of spectral response acceleration expressed as a percent of gravity. Hachures point in direction of decreasing values
Point value of spectral response acceleration expressed as a percent of gravity

`

FIGURE 1613.3.1(1)—continued
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE_R) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE
ACCELERATIONS FOR THE CONTERMINOUS UNITED STATES OF 0.2-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION
(5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B



DISCUSSION

Maps prepared by United States Geological Survey (USGS) in collaboration with the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)-funded Building Seismic Safety Council (BSSC) and the American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE). The basis is explained in commentaries prepared by BSSC and ASCE and in the references.

Ground motion values contoured on these maps incorporate:

- a target risk of structural collapse equal to 1% in 50 years based upon a generic structural fragility
- a factor of 1.3 to adjust from a geometric mean to the maximum response regardless of direction
- deterministic upper limits imposed near large, active faults, which are taken as 1.5 times the estimated median response to the characteristic earthquake for the fault (1.5 is used to represent the 84th percentile response), but not less than 60% g.

As such, the values are different from those on the uniform-hazard 2008 USGS National Seismic Hazard Maps posted at http://earthquake.usgs.gov/hazmaps.

Larger, more detailed versions of these maps are not provided because it is recommended that the corresponding USGS web tool (http://earthquake.usgs.gov/designmaps or http://c.seismo.org/istitute.org) be used to determine the mapped value for a specified location.

REFERENCES

Building Seismic Safety Council, 2009, NEHRP Recommended Seismic Provisions for New Buildings and Other Structures: FEMA P-750/2009 Edition, Federal Emergency Management Agency, Washington, DC.

Huang, Yin-Nan, Whittaker, A.S., and Luco, Nicolas, 2008, Maximum spectral demands in the near-fault region, Earthquake Spectra, Volume 24, Issue 1, pp. 319-341.

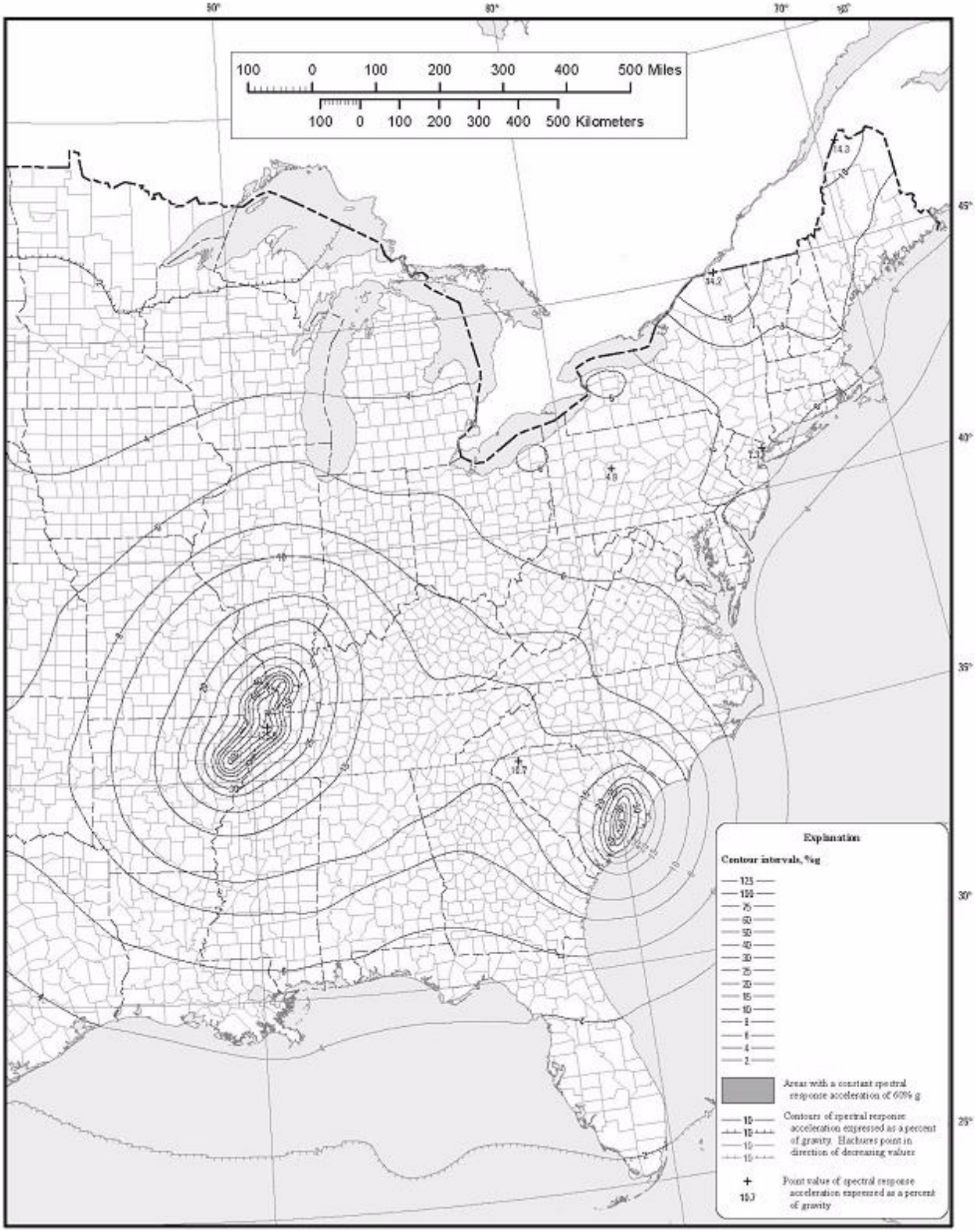
Luco, Nicolas, Ellingwood, B.R., Hamburger, R.O., Hooper, J.D., Kimball, J.K., and Kircher, C.A., 2007, Risk-Targeted versus Current Seismic Design Maps for the Conterminous United States, Structural Engineers Association of California 2007 Convention Proceedings, pp. 163-175.

Petersen, M.D., Frankel, A.D., Harmsen, S.C., Mueller, C.S., Haller, K.M., Wheeler, R.L., Wesson, R.L., Zeng, Yuehua, Boyd, O.S., Perkins, D.M., Luco, Nicolas, Field, E.H., Wills, C.J., and Rukstales, K.S., 2008, Documentation for the 2008 Update of the United States National Seismic Hazard Maps: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 2008-1128, 61 p.

`

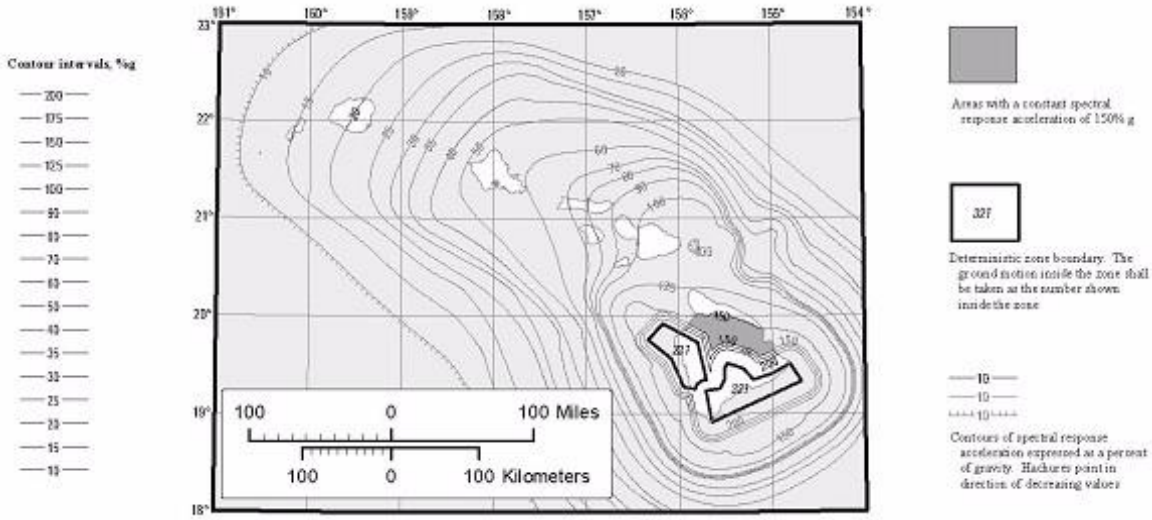
FIGURE 1613.3.1(2)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE_R) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE
ACCELERATIONS FOR THE CONTERMINOUS UNITED STATES OF 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION
(5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B

(continued)

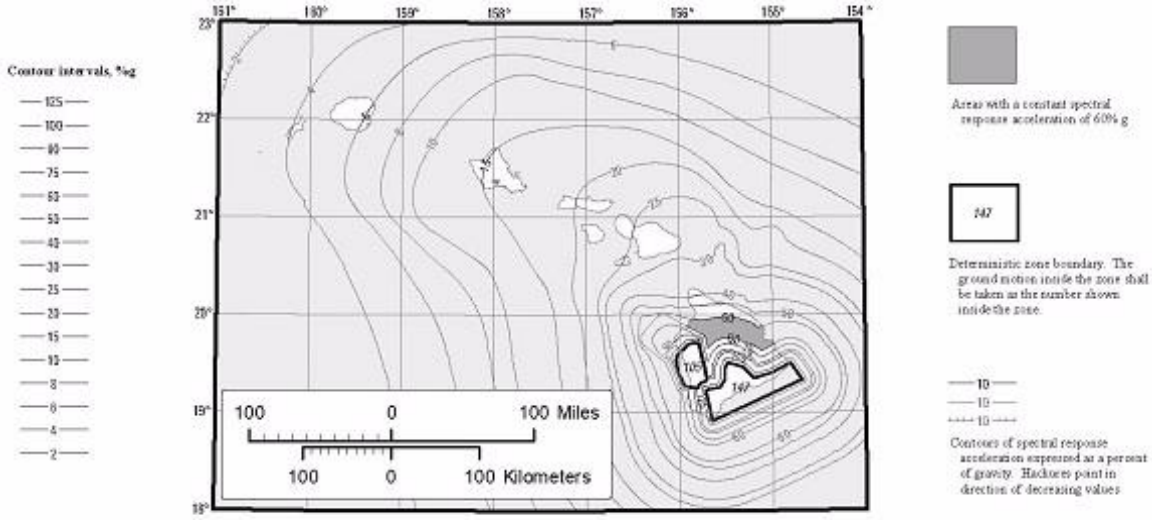

100 0 100 200 300 400 500 Miles
100 0 100 200 300 400 500 Kilometers
Explanation
Contour intervals, %g
125
100
75
60
50
40
30
25
20
15
10
8
6
4
2
Areas with a constant spectral response acceleration of 60% g
Contours of spectral response acceleration expressed as a percent of gravity. Hachures point in direction of decreasing values
Point value of spectral response acceleration expressed as a percent of gravity

`

FIGURE 1613.3.1(2)—continued
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE_R) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE
ACCELERATIONS FOR THE CONTERMINOUS UNITED STATES OF 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION
(5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B



0.2 Second Spectral Response Acceleration (5% of Critical Damping)



1.0 Second Spectral Response Acceleration (5% of Critical Damping)

DISCUSSION

Maps prepared by United States Geological Survey (USGS) in collaboration with the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)-funded Building Seismic Safety Council (BSSC) and the American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE). The basis is explained in commentaries prepared by BSSC and ASCE and in the references.

Ground motion values contoured on these maps incorporate:

- a target risk of structural collapse equal to 1% in 50 years based upon a generic structural fragility
- deterministic upper limits imposed near large, active faults, which are taken as 1.8 times the estimated median response to the characteristic earthquake for the fault (1.8 is used to represent the 84th percentile response), but not less than 150% and 60% g for 0.2 and 1.0 sec, respectively.

As such, the values are different from those on the uniform-hazard 1998 USGS National Seismic Hazard Maps for Hawaii posted at http://earthquake.usgs.gov/hazmaps.

Larger, more detailed versions of these maps are not provided because it is recommended that the corresponding USGS web tool (http://earthquake.usgs.gov/designmaps or http://content.seaostitute.org) be used to determine the mapped value for a specified location.

REFERENCES

Building Seismic Safety Council, 2009, NEHRP Recommended Seismic Provisions for New Buildings and Other Structures: FEMA P-750/2009 Edition, Federal Emergency Management Agency, Washington, DC.

Huang, Yin-Nan, Whittaker, A.S., and Luco, Nicolas, 2008, Maximum spectral demands in the near-fault region, Earthquake Spectra, Volume 24, Issue 1, pp. 319-341.

Klein, F., Frankel, A.D., Mueller, C.S., Wesson, R.L., and Okubo, P., 2001, Seismic hazard in Hawaii: high rate of large earthquakes and probabilistic ground-motion maps, Bulletin of the Seismological Society of America, Volume 91, pp. 479-498.

Luco, Nicolas, Ellingwood, B.R., Hamburger, R.O., Hooper, J.D., Kimball, J.K., and Kircher, C.A., 2007, Risk-Targeted versus Current Seismic Design Maps for the Conterminous United States, Structural Engineers Association of California 2007 Convention Proceedings, pp. 163-175.

`

FIGURE 1613.3.1(3)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE_R) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE
ACCELERATIONS FOR HAWAII OF 0.2- AND 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION
(5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B

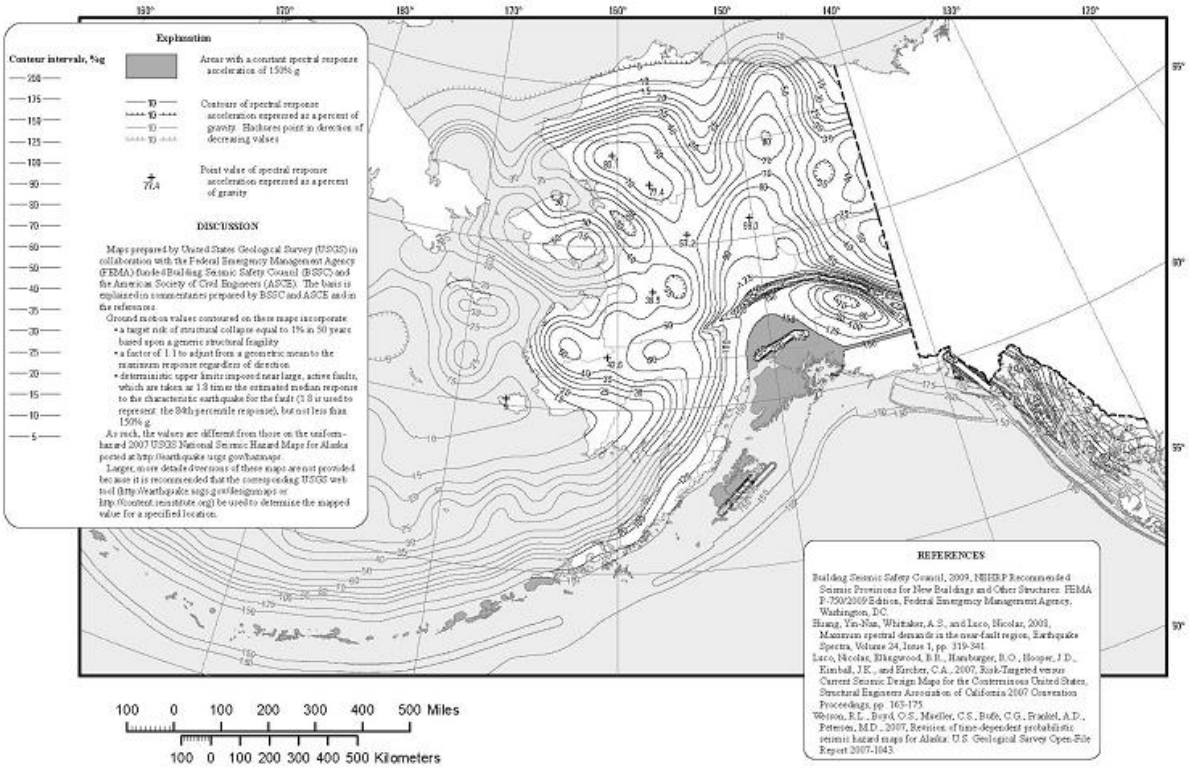


FIGURE 1613.3.1(4)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE_R) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE
ACCELERATIONS FOR ALASKA OF 0.2-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION
(5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B

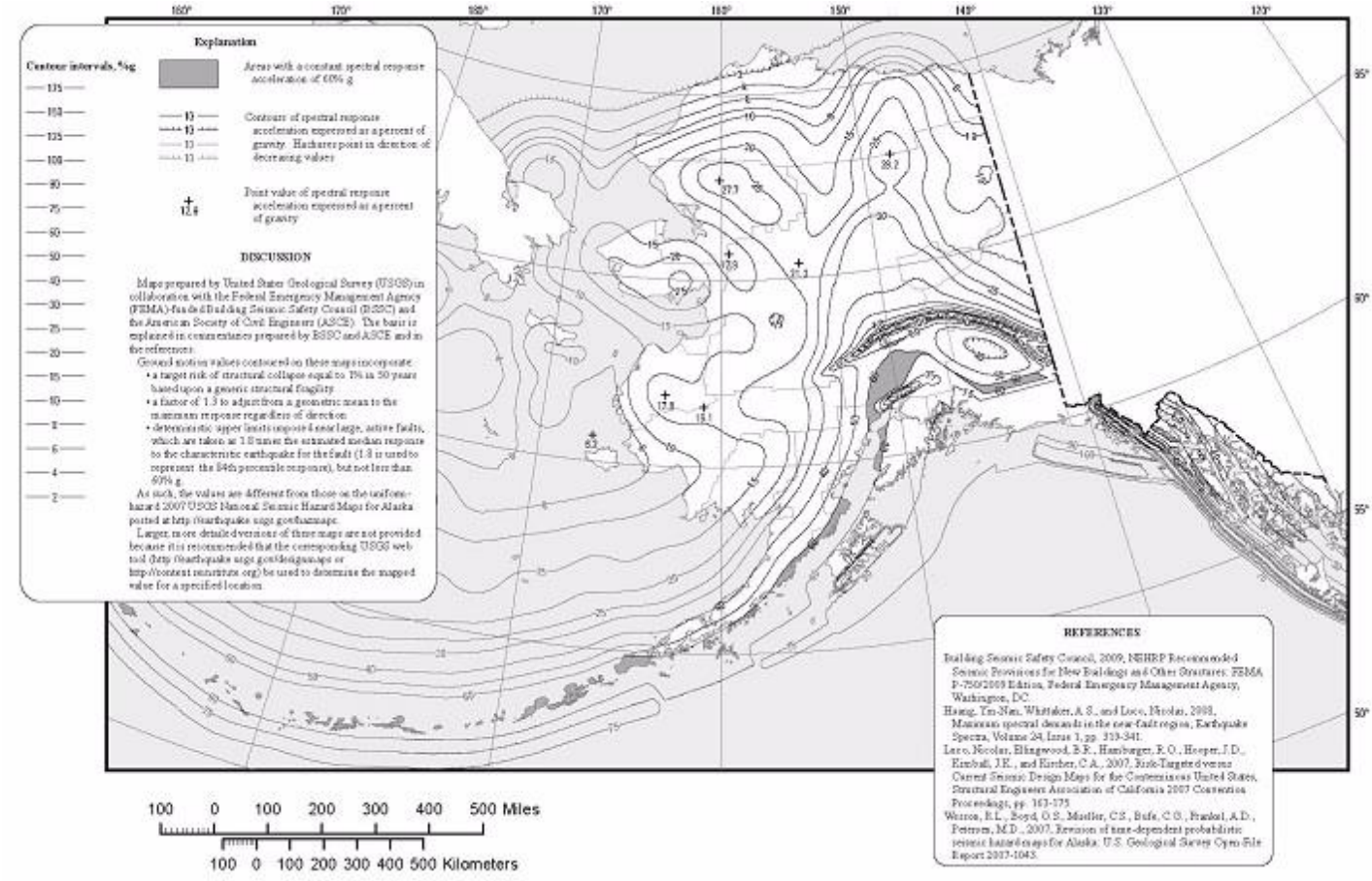
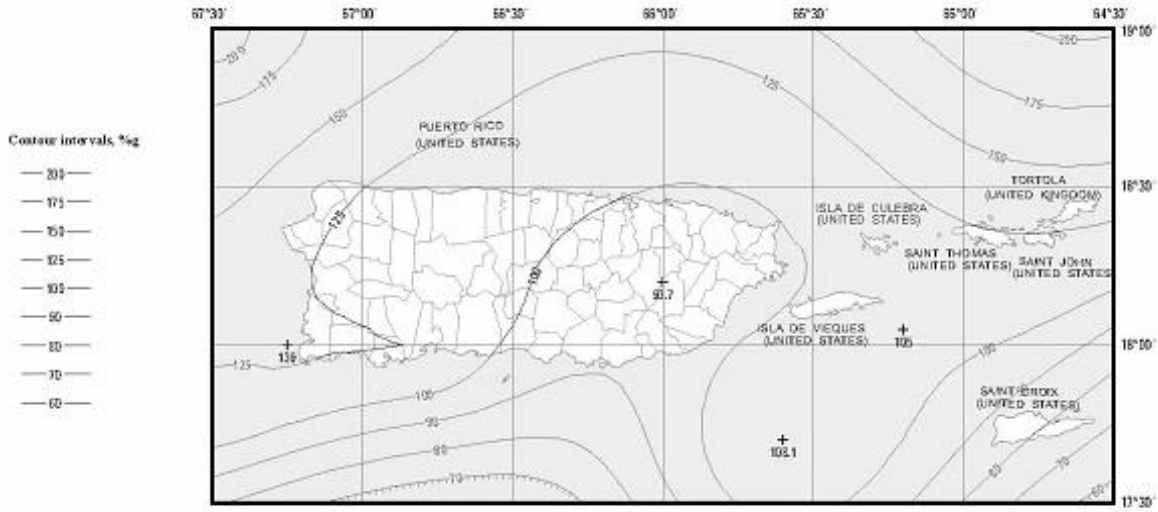
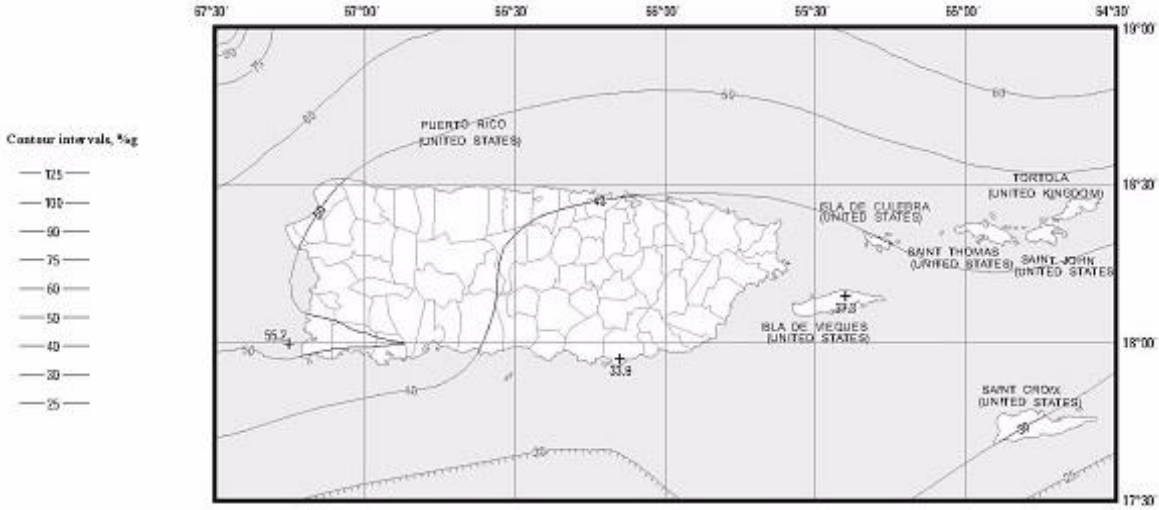


FIGURE 1613.3.1(5)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE_R) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE
ACCELERATIONS FOR ALASKA OF 1.0-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION
(5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B



0.2 Second Spectral Response Acceleration (5% of Critical Damping)



1.0 Second Spectral Response Acceleration (5% of Critical Damping)

Explanation

10

Contours of spectral response acceleration expressed as a percent of gravity. Hachures point in direction of decreasing values

+ 93.7

Point value of spectral response acceleration expressed as a percent of gravity

DISCUSSION

Maps prepared by United States Geological Survey (USGS) in collaboration with the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)-funded Building Seismic Safety Council (BSSC) and the American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE). The basis is explained in commentaries prepared by BSSC and ASCE and in the references.

Ground motion values contoured on these maps incorporate:

- a target risk of structural collapse equal to 1% in 50 years based upon a generic structural fragility
- a factor of 1.1 and 1.3 for 0.2 and 1.0 sec, respectively, to adjust from a geometric mean to the maximum response regardless of direction
- deterministic upper limits imposed near large, active faults, which are taken as 1.5 times the estimated median response to the characteristic earthquake for the fault (1.5 is used to represent the 84th percentile response), but not less than 150% and 60% g for 0.2 and 1.0 sec, respectively.

As such, the values are different from those on the uniform-hazard 2003 USGS National Seismic Hazard Maps for Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands posted at http://earthquake.usgs.gov/hazmaps.

Larger, more detailed versions of these maps are not provided because it is recommended that the corresponding USGS web tool (http://earthquake.usgs.gov/designmaps or http://costest.seinstitute.org) be used to determine the mapped value for a specified location.

50 0 50 Miles

50 0 50 Kilometers

REFERENCES

Building Seismic Safety Council, 2009, NEHRP Recommended Seismic Provisions for New Buildings and Other Structures: FEMA P-750/2009 Edition, Federal Emergency Management Agency, Washington, DC.

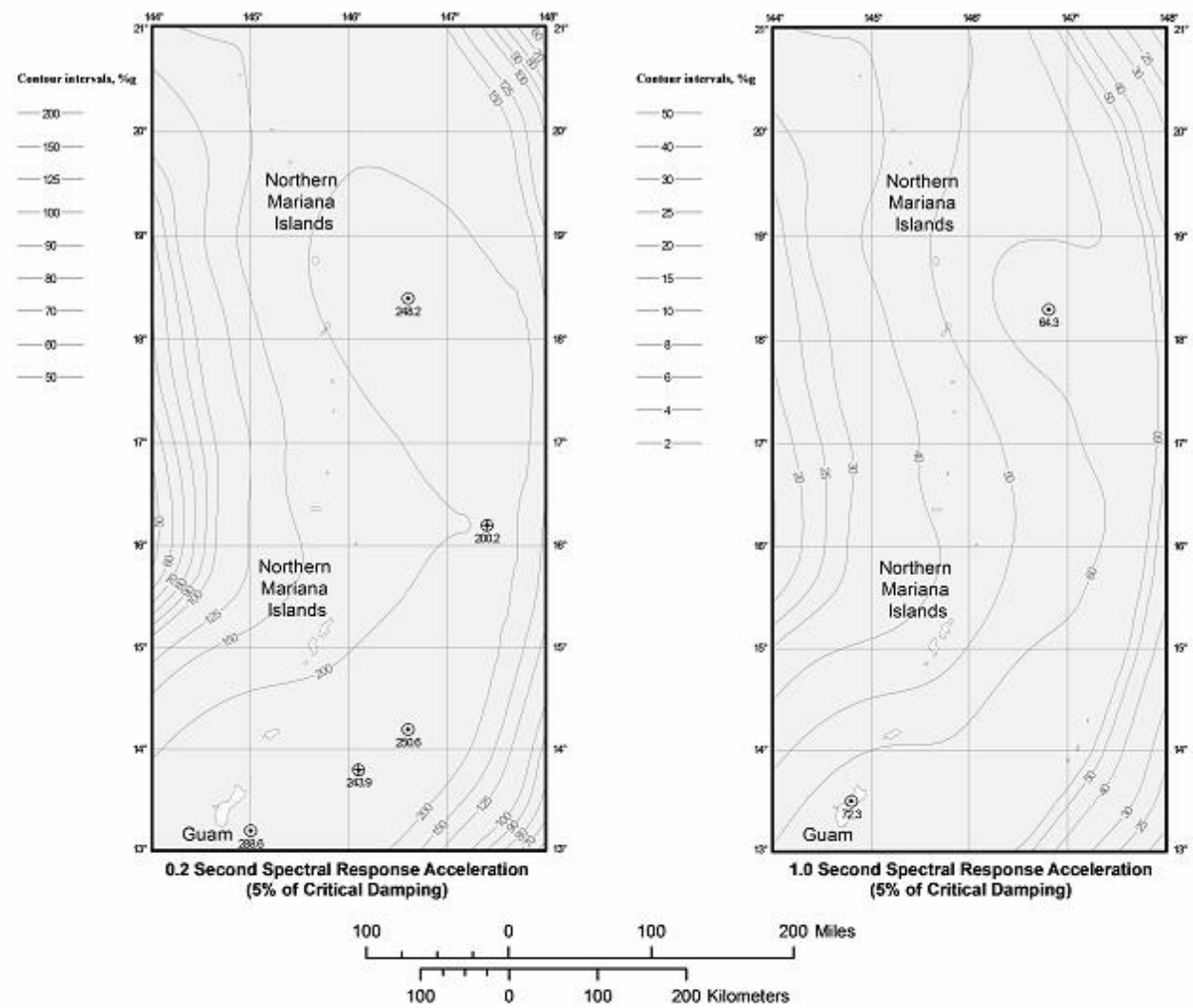
Huang, Yin-Nan, Whittaker, A.S., and Luco, Nicolas, 2008, Maximum spectral demands in the near-fault region, Earthquake Spectra, Volume 24, Issue 1, pp. 319-341.

Luco, Nicolas, Ellingwood, B.R., Hamburger, R.O., Hooper, J.D., Kimball, J.K., and Kircher, C.A., 2007, Risk-Targeted versus Current Seismic Design Maps for the Conterminous United States, Structural Engineers Association of California 2007 Convention Proceedings, pp. 163-175.

Mueller, C.S., Frankel, A.D., Petersen, M.D., and Leyendecker, E.V., 2003, Documentation for the 2003 USGS Seismic Hazard Maps for Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 03-379.

`

FIGURE 1613.3.1(6)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE_R) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR PUERTO RICO AND THE UNITED STATES VIRGIN ISLANDS OF 0.2- AND 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B



Explanation

Contours of spectral response acceleration expressed as a percent of gravity.

— 10 —

— 10 —

Point values of spectral response acceleration expressed as a percent of gravity.

⊕ 200.2 Local minimum

⊙ 250.6 Local maximum

⊕ 243.9 Saddle point

DISCUSSION

Maps prepared by United States Geological Survey (USGS) in collaboration with the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)-funded Building Seismic Safety Council (BSSC). The basis is explained in commentary prepared by BSSC and in the references.

Ground motion values contoured on these maps incorporate:

- a target risk of structural collapse equal to 1% in 50 years based upon a generic structural fragility
- a factor of 1.1 and 1.3 for 0.2 and 1.0 sec, respectively, to adjust from a geometric mean to the maximum response regardless of direction
- deterministic upper limits imposed near large, active faults, which are taken as 1.8 times the estimated median response to the characteristic earthquake for the fault (1.8 is used to represent the 84th percentile response), but not less than 150% and 60% g for 0.2 and 1.0 sec, respectively.

As such, the values are different from those on the uniform-hazard 2012 USGS National Seismic Hazard Maps for Guam and the Northern Mariana Islands posted at http://earthquake.usgs.gov/hazmaps.

Larger, more detailed versions of these maps are not provided because it is recommended that the corresponding USGS web tool (http://earthquake.usgs.gov/designmaps) be used to determine the mapped value for a specified location.

REFERENCES

Building Seismic Safety Council, 2009, NEHRP Recommended Seismic Provisions for New Buildings and Other Structures: FEMA P-750/2009 Edition, Federal Emergency Management Agency, Washington, DC.

Huang, Yin-Nan, Whittaker, A.S., and Luco, Nicolas, 2008, Maximum spectral demands in the near-fault region, Earthquake Spectra, Volume 24, Issue 1, pp. 319-341.

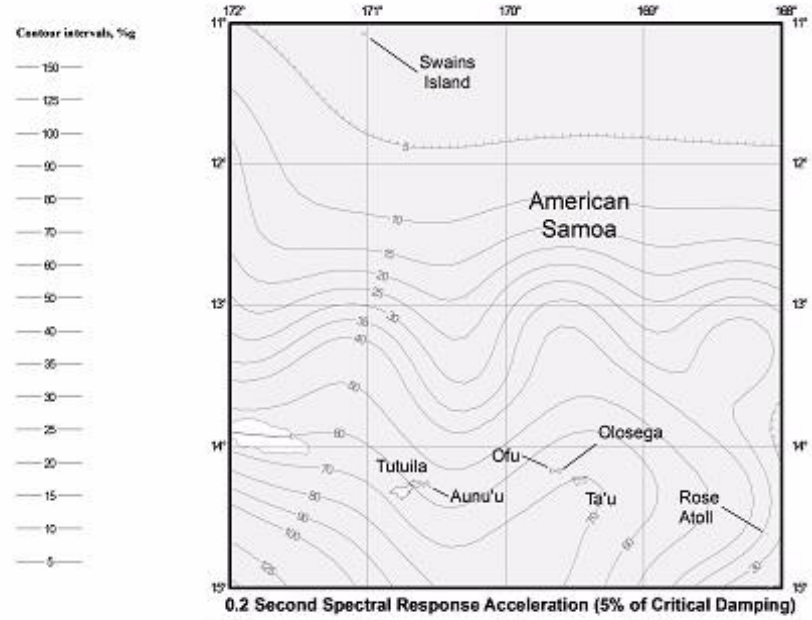
Luco, Nicolas, Ellingwood, B.R., Hamburger, R.O., Hooper, J.D., Kimball, J.K., and Kircher, C.A., 2007, Risk-Targeted versus Current Seismic Design Maps for the Conterminous United States, Structural Engineers Association of California 2007 Convention Proceedings, pp. 163-175.

Mueller, C.S., Haller, K.M., Luco, Nicolas, Petersen, M.D., and Frankel, A.D., 2012, Seismic Hazard Assessment for Guam and the Northern Mariana Islands: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 2012–1015.

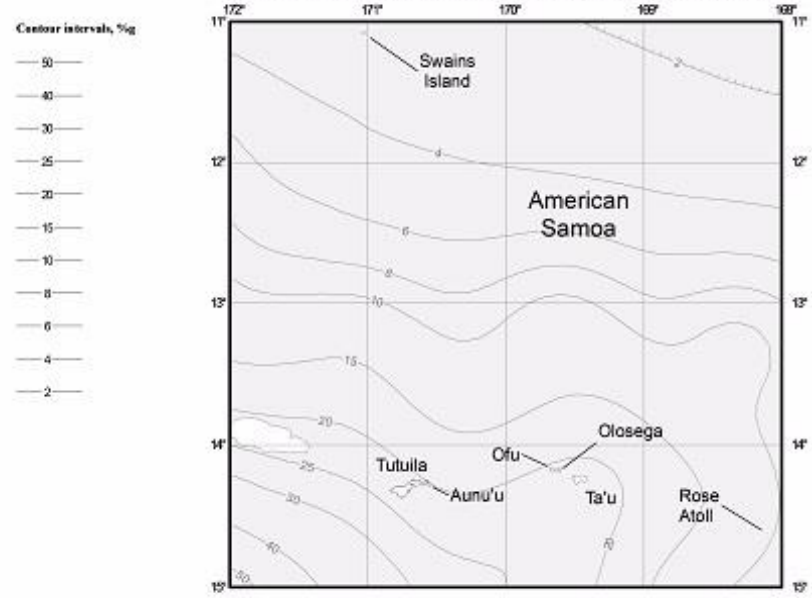
`

FIGURE 1613.3.1(7)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE_R) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS
FOR GUAM AND THE NORTHERN MARIANA ISLANDS OF 0.2- AND 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION
(5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B

`



0.2 Second Spectral Response Acceleration (5% of Critical Damping)



1.0 Second Spectral Response Acceleration (5% of Critical Damping)

Explanation

10

10

10

Contours of spectral response acceleration expressed as a percent of gravity. Hachures point in direction of decreasing values

DISCUSSION

Maps prepared by United States Geological Survey (USGS) in collaboration with the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)-funded Building Seismic Safety Council (BSSC). The basis is explained in commentary prepared by BSSC and in the references.

Ground motion values contoured on these maps incorporate:

- a target risk of structural collapse equal to 1% in 50 years based upon a generic structural fragility
- a factor of 1.1 and 1.3 for 0.2 and 1.0 sec, respectively, to adjust from a geometric mean to the maximum response regardless of direction
- deterministic upper limits imposed near large, active faults, which are taken as 1.8 times the estimated median response to the characteristic earthquake for the fault (1.8 is used to represent the 84th percentile response), but not less than 150% and 60% g for 0.2 and 1.0 sec, respectively.

As such, the values are different from those on the uniform-hazard 2012 USGS National Seismic Hazard Maps for American Samoa posted at http://earthquake.usgs.gov/hazmaps.

Larger, more detailed versions of these maps are not provided because it is recommended that the corresponding USGS web tool (http://earthquake.usgs.gov/designmaps) be used to determine the mapped value for a specified location.

50 0 50 100 Miles

50 0 50 100 Kilometers

REFERENCES

Building Seismic Safety Council, 2009, NEHRP Recommended Seismic Provisions for New Buildings and Other Structures: FEMA P-750/2009 Edition, Federal Emergency Management Agency, Washington, DC.

Huang, Yin-Nan, Whittaker, A.S., and Luco, Nicolas, 2008, Maximum spectral demands in the near-fault region, Earthquake Spectra, Volume 24, Issue 1, pp. 319-341.

Luco, Nicolas, Ellingwood, B.R., Hamburger, R.O., Hooper, J.D., Kimball, J.K., and Kircher, C.A., 2007, Risk-Targeted versus Current Seismic Design Maps for the Conterminous United States, Structural Engineers Association of California 2007 Convention Proceedings, pp. 163-175.

Petersen, M.D., Harmsen, S.C., Rukstales, K.S., Mueller, C.S., McNamara, D.E., Luco, Nicolas, and Walling, Melanie, 2012, Seismic Hazard of American Samoa and Neighboring South Pacific Islands: Data, Methods, Parameters, and Results: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 2012–1087.

`

FIGURE 1613.3.1(8)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE_R) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR AMERICAN SAMOA OF 0.2- AND 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B

1613.3.2 Site class definitions.
Based on the site soil properties, the site shall be classified as *Site Class* A, B, C, D, E or F in accordance with Chapter 20 of ASCE 7.

Where the soil properties are not known in sufficient detail to determine the site class, Site Class D shall be used unless the building official or geotechnical data determines Site Class E or F soils are present at the site.

1613.3.3 Site coefficients and adjusted maximum considered earthquake spectral response acceleration parameters.
The maximum considered earthquake spectral response acceleration for short periods, S_{MS}, and at 1-second period, S_{M1}, adjusted for *site class* effects shall be determined by Equations 16-37 and 16-38, respectively:

$$S_{MS} = F_a S_s \qquad \textbf{(Equation 16-37)}$$

$$S_{M1} = F_v S_1 \qquad \textbf{(Equation 16-38)}$$

where:

F_a = Site coefficient defined in Table 1613.3.3(1).
F_v = Site coefficient defined in Table 1613.3.3(2).
S_S = The mapped spectral accelerations for short periods as determined in Section 1613.3.1.
S_1 = The mapped spectral accelerations for a 1-second period as determined in Section 1613.3.1.

TABLE 1613.3.3(1)
VALUES OF SITE COEFFICIENT F_a [a]

SITE CLASS	MAPPED SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION AT SHORT PERIOD				
	$S_s \le 0.25$	$S_s = 0.50$	$S_s = 0.75$	$S_s = 1.00$	$S_s \ge 1.25$
A	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8
B	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
C	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.0	1.0
D	1.6	1.4	1.2	1.1	1.0
E	2.5	1.7	1.2	0.9	0.9
F	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b

`

a. Use straight-line interpolation for intermediate values of mapped spectral response acceleration at short period, S_s.

b. Values shall be determined in accordance with Section 11.4.7 of ASCE 7.

TABLE 1613.3.3(2)
VALUES OF SITE COEFFICIENT F_v [a]

SITE CLASS	MAPPED SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION AT 1-SECOND PERIOD				
	$S_1 \leq 0.1$	$S_1 = 0.2$	$S_1 = 0.3$	$S_1 = 0.4$	$S_1 \geq 0.5$
A	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8
B	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
C	1.7	1.6	1.5	1.4	1.3
D	2.4	2.0	1.8	1.6	1.5
E	3.5	3.2	2.8	2.4	2.4
F	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b

a. Use straight-line interpolation for intermediate values of mapped spectral response acceleration at 1-second period, S_1.

b. Values shall be determined in accordance with Section 11.4.7 of ASCE 7.

1613.3.4 Design spectral response acceleration parameters.
Five-percent damped design spectral response acceleration at short periods, S_{DS}, and at 1-second period, S_{D1}, shall be determined from Equations 16-39 and 16-40, respectively:

$$S_{DS} = \frac{2}{3} S_{MS} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 16-39)}$$

$$S_{D1} = \frac{2}{3} S_{M1} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 16-40)}$$

where:

S_{MS} = The maximum considered earthquake spectral response accelerations for short period as determined in Section 1613.3.3.

S_{M1} = The maximum considered earthquake spectral response accelerations for 1-second period as determined in Section 1613.3.3.

1613.3.5 Determination of seismic design category.
Structures classified as *Risk Category* I, II or III that are located where the mapped spectral response acceleration parameter at 1-second period, S_1, is greater than or equal to 0.75 shall be assigned to *Seismic Design Category* E. Structures classified as *Risk Category* IV that are located where the mapped spectral response acceleration parameter at 1-second period, S_1, is greater than or equal to 0.75 shall be assigned to *Seismic Design Category* F.

`

All other structures shall be assigned to a *seismic design category* based on their *risk category* and the design spectral response acceleration parameters, S_{DS} and S_{D1}, determined in accordance with Section 1613.3.4 or the site-specific procedures of ASCE 7. Each building and structure shall be assigned to the more severe *seismic design category* in accordance with Table 1613.3.5(1) or 1613.3.5(2), irrespective of the fundamental period of vibration of the structure, *T*.

TABLE 1613.3.5(1)
SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY BASED ON SHORT-PERIOD (0.2 second) RESPONSE ACCELERATION

VALUE OF S_{DS}	RISK CATEGORY		
	I or II	III	IV
$S_{DS} < 0.167g$	A	A	A
$0.167g \le S_{DS} < 0.33g$	B	B	C
$0.33g \le S_{DS} < 0.50g$	C	C	D
$0.50g \le S_{DS}$	D	D	D

TABLE 1613.3.5(2)
SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY BASED ON 1-SECOND PERIOD RESPONSE ACCELERATION

VALUE OF S_{D1}	RISK CATEGORY		
	I or II	III	IV
$S_{D1} < 0.067g$	A	A	A
$0.067g \le S_{D1} < 0.133g$	B	B	C
$0.133g \le S_{D1} < 0.20g$	C	C	D
$0.20g \le S_{D1}$	D	D	D

1613.3.5.1 Alternative seismic design category determination.
Where S_1 is less than 0.75, the *seismic design category* is permitted to be determined from Table 1613.3.5(1) alone when all of the following apply:

1. In each of the two orthogonal directions, the approximate fundamental period of the structure, T_a, in each of the two orthogonal directions determined in accordance with Section 12.8.2.1 of ASCE 7, is less than 0.8 T_s determined in accordance with Section 11.4.5 of ASCE 7.

2. In each of the two orthogonal directions, the fundamental period of the structure used to calculate the story drift is less than T_s.

`

3. Equation 12.8-2 of ASCE 7 is used to determine the seismic response coefficient, C_s.

4. The diaphragms are rigid or are permitted to be idealized as rigid in accordance with Section 12.3.1 of ASCE 7 or, for diaphragms permitted to be idealized as flexible in accordance with Section 12.3.1 of ASCE 7, the distances between vertical elements of the seismic force-resisting system do not exceed 40 feet (12 192 mm).

1613.3.5.2 Simplified design procedure.
Where the alternate simplified design procedure of ASCE 7 is used, the *seismic design category* shall be determined in accordance with ASCE 7.

1613.4 Alternatives to ASCE 7.
The provisions of Section 1613.4 shall be permitted as alternatives to the relevant provisions of ASCE 7.

1613.4.1 Additional seismic force-resisting systems for seismically isolated structures.
Add the following exception to the end of Section 17.5.4.2 of ASCE 7:

Exception: For isolated structures designed in accordance with this standard, the structural system limitations including structural height limits, in Table 12.2-1 for ordinary steel concentrically braced frames (OCBFs) as defined in Chapter 11 and ordinary moment frames (OMFs) as defined in Chapter 11 are permitted to be taken as 160 feet (48 768 mm) for structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, provided that the following conditions are satisfied:

1. The value of R_I as defined in Chapter 17 is taken as 1.

2. For OMFs and OCBFs, design is in accordance with AISC 341.

1613.5 Amendments to ASCE 7.
The provisions of Section 1613.5 shall be permitted as an amendment to the relevant provisions of ASCE 7.

1613.5.1 Transfer of anchorage forces into diaphragm.
Modify ASCE 7 Section 12.11.2.2.1 as follows:

12.11.2.2.1 Transfer of anchorage forces into diaphragm. Diaphragms shall be provided with continuous ties or struts between diaphragm chords to distribute these anchorage forces into the diaphragms. Diaphragm connections shall be positive, mechanical or welded. Added chords are permitted to be used to form subdiaphragms to transmit the anchorage forces to the main continuous cross-ties. The maximum length-to-width ratio of a wood, wood structural panel or untopped steel deck sheathed structural subdiaphragm that serves as part of the continuous tie system shall be 2.5 to 1. Connections and anchorages capable of resisting the prescribed forces shall be provided between the diaphragm and the attached components. Connections shall extend into the diaphragm a sufficient distance to develop the force transferred into the diaphragm.

`

1613.6 Ballasted photovoltaic panel systems.
Ballasted, roof-mounted *photovoltaic panel systems* need not be rigidly attached to the roof or supporting structure. Ballasted nonpenetrating systems shall be designed and installed only on roofs with slopes not more than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal. Ballasted nonpenetrating systems shall be designed to resist sliding and uplift resulting from lateral and vertical forces as required by Section 1605, using a coefficient of friction determined by acceptable engineering principles. In structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F, ballasted nonpenetrating systems shall be designed to accommodate seismic displacement determined by nonlinear response-history analysis or shake-table testing, using input motions consistent with ASCE 7 lateral and vertical seismic forces for nonstructural components on roofs.

SECTION 1614
ATMOSPHERIC ICE LOADS

1614.1 General.
Ice-sensitive structures shall be designed for atmospheric ice loads in accordance with Chapter 10 of ASCE 7.

SECTION 1615
STRUCTURAL INTEGRITY

1615.1 General.
High-rise buildings that are assigned to *Risk Category* III or IV shall comply with the requirements of this section. Frame structures shall comply with the requirements of Section 1615.3. Bearing wall structures shall comply with the requirements of Section 1615.4.

1615.2 Definitions.
The following words and terms are defined in Chapter 2:

BEARING WALL STRUCTURE.

FRAME STRUCTURE.

1615.3 Frame structures.
Frame structures shall comply with the requirements of this section.

1615.3.1 Concrete frame structures.
Frame structures constructed primarily of reinforced or prestressed concrete, either cast-in-place or precast, or a combination of these, shall conform to the requirements of Section 4.10 of ACI 318. Where ACI 318 requires that nonprestressed reinforcing or prestressing steel pass through the region bounded by the longitudinal column reinforcement, that reinforcing or prestressing steel shall have a minimum nominal tensile strength equal to two-thirds of the required one-way vertical strength of the connection of the floor or roof system to the column in each direction of beam or slab reinforcement passing through the column.

Exception: Where concrete slabs with continuous reinforcement having an area not less than 0.0015 times the concrete area in each of two orthogonal directions are present and are either monolithic with or equivalently bonded to beams, girders or columns, the longitudinal reinforcing or prestressing steel passing through the column reinforcement shall have a nominal tensile strength of one-third of the required one-way vertical

`

strength of the connection of the floor or roof system to the column in each direction of beam or slab reinforcement passing through the column.

1615.3.2 Structural steel, open web steel joist or joist girder, or composite steel and concrete frame structures.
Frame structures constructed with a structural steel frame or a frame composed of open web steel joists, joist girders with or without other structural steel elements or a frame composed of composite steel or composite steel joists and reinforced concrete elements shall conform to the requirements of this section.

1615.3.2.1 Columns.
Each column splice shall have the minimum design strength in tension to transfer the design dead and live load tributary to the column between the splice and the splice or base immediately below.

1615.3.2.2 Beams.
End connections of all beams and girders shall have a minimum nominal axial tensile strength equal to the required vertical shear strength for *allowable stress design* (ASD) or two-thirds of the required shear strength for *load and resistance factor design* (LRFD) but not less than 10 kips (45 kN). For the purpose of this section, the shear force and the axial tensile force need not be considered to act simultaneously.

Exception: Where beams, girders, open web joist and joist girders support a concrete slab or concrete slab on metal deck that is attached to the beam or girder with not less than $^{3}/_{8}$-inch-diameter (9.5 mm) headed shear studs, at a spacing of not more than 12 inches (305 mm) on center, averaged over the length of the member, or other attachment having equivalent shear strength, and the slab contains continuous distributed reinforcement in each of two orthogonal directions with an area not less than 0.0015 times the concrete area, the nominal axial tension strength of the end connection shall be permitted to be taken as half the required vertical shear strength for ASD or one-third of the required shear strength for LRFD, but not less than 10 kips (45 kN).

1615.4 Bearing wall structures.
Bearing wall structures shall have vertical ties in all load-bearing walls and longitudinal ties, transverse ties and perimeter ties at each floor level in accordance with this section and as shown in Figure 1615.4.

`

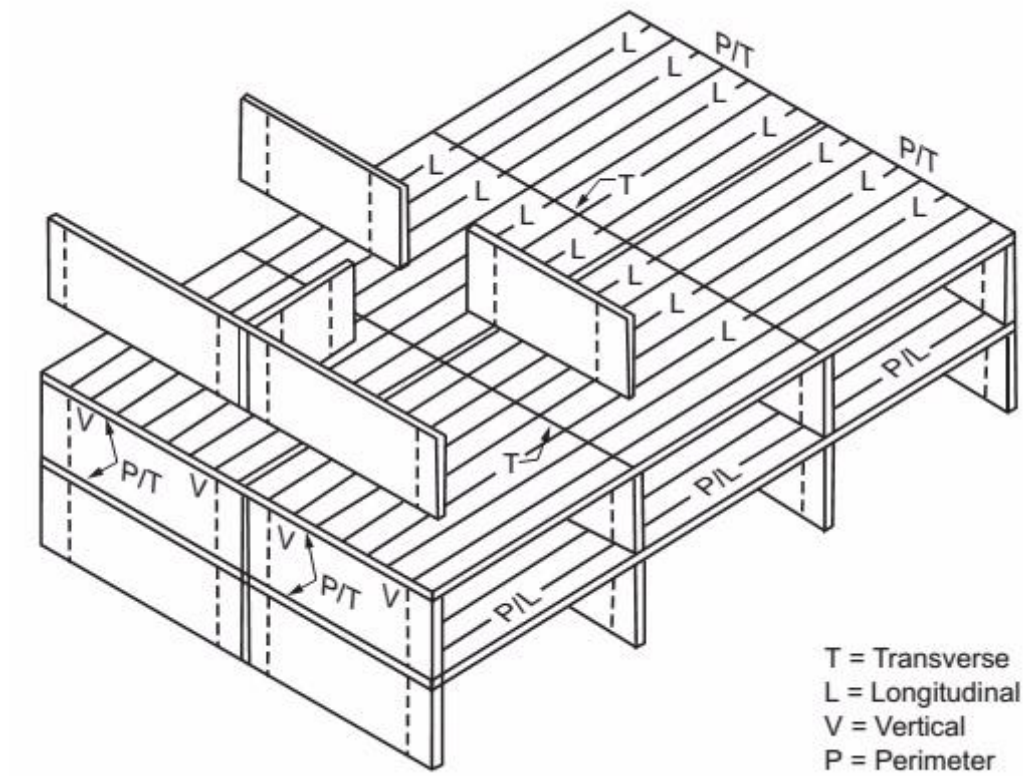


FIGURE 1615.4
LONGITUDINAL, PERIMETER, TRANSVERSE AND VERTICAL TIES

1615.4.1 Concrete wall structures.
Precast bearing wall structures constructed solely of reinforced or prestressed concrete, or combinations of these shall conform to the requirements of Sections 16.2.4 and 16.2.5 of ACI 318.

1615.4.2 Other bearing wall structures.
Ties in bearing wall structures other than those covered in Section 1615.4.1 shall conform to this section.

1615.4.2.1 Longitudinal ties.
Longitudinal ties shall consist of continuous reinforcement in slabs; continuous or spliced decks or sheathing; continuous or spliced members framing to, within or across walls; or connections of continuous framing members to walls. Longitudinal ties shall extend across interior load-bearing walls and shall connect to exterior load-bearing walls and shall be spaced at not greater than 10 feet (3038 mm) on center. Ties shall have a minimum nominal tensile strength, T_T, given by Equation 16-41. For ASD the minimum nominal tensile strength shall be permitted to be taken as 1.5 times the allowable tensile stress times the area of the tie.

$$T_T = w\,LS \leq \alpha_T\,S \qquad \textbf{(Equation 16-41)}$$

where:

`

L	=	The span of the horizontal element in the direction of the tie, between bearing walls, feet (m).
w	=	The weight per unit area of the floor or roof in the span being tied to or across the wall, psf (N/m^2).
S	=	The spacing between ties, feet (m).
α_T	=	A coefficient with a value of 1,500 pounds per foot (2.25 kN/m) for masonry bearing wall structures and a value of 375 pounds per foot (0.6 kN/m) for structures with bearing walls of cold-formed steel light-frame construction.

1615.4.2.2 Transverse ties.
Transverse ties shall consist of continuous reinforcement in slabs; continuous or spliced decks or sheathing; continuous or spliced members framing to, within or across walls; or connections of continuous framing members to walls. Transverse ties shall be placed no farther apart than the spacing of load-bearing walls. Transverse ties shall have minimum nominal tensile strength T_T, given by Equation 16-41. For ASD the minimum nominal tensile strength shall be permitted to be taken as 1.5 times the allowable tensile stress times the area of the tie.

1615.4.2.3 Perimeter ties.
Perimeter ties shall consist of continuous reinforcement in slabs; continuous or spliced decks or sheathing; continuous or spliced members framing to, within or across walls; or connections of continuous framing members to walls. Ties around the perimeter of each floor and roof shall be located within 4 feet (1219 mm) of the edge and shall provide a nominal strength in tension not less than T_p, given by Equation 16-42. For ASD the minimum nominal tensile strength shall be permitted to be taken as 1.5 times the allowable tensile stress times the area of the tie.

$$T_p = 200w \leq \beta_T \qquad \textbf{(Equation 16-42)}$$

For SI: $T_p = 90.7w \leq \beta_T$

where:

w	=	As defined in Section 1615.4.2.1.
β_T	=	A coefficient with a value of 16,000 pounds (7200 kN) for structures with masonry bearing walls and a value of 4,000 pounds (1300 kN) for structures with bearing walls of cold-formed steel light-frame construction.

1615.4.2.4 Vertical ties.
Vertical ties shall consist of continuous or spliced reinforcing, continuous or spliced members, wall sheathing or other engineered systems. Vertical tension ties shall be provided in bearing walls and shall be continuous over the height of the building. The minimum nominal tensile strength for vertical ties within a bearing wall shall be equal to the weight of the wall within that *story* plus the weight of the diaphragm tributary to the

`

wall in the *story* below. No fewer than two ties shall be provided for each wall. The strength of each tie need not exceed 3,000 pounds per foot (450 kN/m) of wall tributary to the tie for walls of masonry construction or 750 pounds per foot (140 kN/m) of wall tributary to the tie for walls of cold-formed steel light-frame construction.

`

CHAPTER 17
SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [BF] will be considered by the IBC — Fire Safety Code Development Committee during the 2015 (Group A) Code Development Cycle. Sections preceded by the designation [F] will be considered by the International Fire Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. All other code change proposals will be considered by the IBC — Structural Code Development Committee during the Group B cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 1701
GENERAL

1701.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall govern the quality, workmanship and requirements for materials covered. Materials of construction and tests shall conform to the applicable standards listed in this code.

1701.2 New materials.
New building materials, equipment, appliances, systems or methods of construction not provided for in this code, and any material of questioned suitability proposed for use in the construction of a building or structure, shall be subjected to the tests prescribed in this chapter and in the *approved* rules to determine character, quality and limitations of use.

SECTION 1702
DEFINITIONS

1702.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

APPROVED AGENCY.

APPROVED FABRICATOR.

CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE.

DESIGNATED SEISMIC SYSTEM.

FABRICATED ITEM.

INTUMESCENT FIRE-RESISTANT COATINGS.

MAIN WINDFORCE-RESISTING SYSTEM.

MASTIC FIRE-RESISTANT COATINGS.

SMALL BUSINESS

SPECIAL INSPECTION.

`

Continuous special inspection.

Periodic special inspection.

SPECIAL INSPECTOR.

SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTANT MATERIALS.

STRUCTURAL OBSERVATION.

SECTION 1703
APPROVALS

1703.1 Approved agency.
An approved agency shall provide all information as necessary for the *building official* to determine that the agency meets the applicable requirements specified in Sections 1703.1.1 through 1703.1.3.

1703.1.1 Independence.
An *approved agency* shall be objective, competent and independent from the contractor responsible for the work being inspected. The agency shall also disclose to the *building official* and the *registered design professional in responsible charge* possible conflicts of interest so that objectivity can be confirmed.

1703.1.2 Equipment.
An *approved agency* shall have adequate equipment to perform required tests. The equipment shall be periodically calibrated.

1703.1.3 Personnel.
An *approved agency* shall employ experienced personnel educated in conducting, supervising and evaluating tests and *special inspections*.

1703.2 Written approval.
Any material, appliance, equipment, system or method of construction meeting the requirements of this code shall be *approved* in writing after satisfactory completion of the required tests and submission of required test reports.

1703.3 Record of approval.
For any material, appliance, equipment, system or method of construction that has been *approved*, a record of such approval, including the conditions and limitations of the approval, shall be kept on file in the *building official's* office and shall be available for public review at appropriate times.

1703.4 Performance.
Specific information consisting of test reports conducted by an *approved* agency in accordance with the appropriate referenced standards, or other such information as necessary, shall be provided for the *building official* to determine that the product, material or assembly meets the applicable code requirements.

1703.4.1 Research and investigation.
Sufficient technical data shall be submitted to the *building official* to substantiate the proposed use of any product, material or assembly. If it is determined that the evidence

`

submitted is satisfactory proof of performance for the use intended, the *building official* shall approve the use of the product, material or assembly subject to the requirements of this code. The costs, reports and investigations required under these provisions shall be paid by the owner or the owner's authorized agent.

1703.4.2 Research reports.
Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of products, materials or assemblies not specifically provided for in this code, shall consist of valid research reports from *approved* sources.

1703.5 Labeling.
Products, materials or assemblies required to be *labeled* shall be *labeled* in accordance with the procedures set forth in Sections 1703.5.1 through 1703.5.4.

1703.5.1 Testing.
An *approved agency* shall test a representative sample of the product, material or assembly being *labeled* to the relevant standard or standards. The *approved agency* shall maintain a record of the tests performed. The record shall provide sufficient detail to verify compliance with the test standard.

1703.5.2 Inspection and identification.
The *approved agency* shall periodically perform an inspection, which shall be in-plant if necessary, of the product or material that is to be *labeled*. The inspection shall verify that the labeled product, material or assembly is representative of the product, material or assembly tested.

1703.5.3 Label information.
The *label* shall contain the manufacturer's identification, model number, serial number or definitive information describing the performance characteristics of the product, material or assembly and the *approved agency's* identification.

1703.5.4 Method of labeling.
Information required to be permanently identified on the product, material or assembly shall be acid etched, sand blasted, ceramic fired, laser etched, embossed or of a type that, once applied, cannot be removed without being destroyed.

1703.6 Evaluation and follow-up inspection services.
Where structural components or other items regulated by this code are not visible for inspection after completion of a prefabricated assembly, the owner or the owner's authorized agent shall submit a report of each prefabricated assembly. The report shall indicate the complete details of the assembly, including a description of the assembly and its components, the basis upon which the assembly is being evaluated, test results and similar information and other data as necessary for the *building official* to determine conformance to this code. Such a report shall be *approved* by the *building official*.

1703.6.1 Follow-up inspection.
The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall provide for *special inspections* of fabricated items in accordance with Section 1704.2.5.

1703.6.2 Test and inspection records.
Copies of necessary test and *special inspection* records shall be filed with the building official.

`

SECTION 1704
SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS, CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITY AND STRUCTURAL OBSERVATION

1704.1 General.
Special inspections and tests, statements of special inspections, responsibilities of contractors, submittals to the *building official* and structural observations shall meet the applicable requirements of this section.

1704.2 Special inspections and tests.
Where application is made to the *building official* for construction as specified in Section 105, the owner or the owner's authorized agent, other than the contractor, shall employ one or more *approved agencies* to provide *special inspections* and tests during construction on the types of work specified in Section 1705 and identify the *approved agencies* to the *building official*. These *special inspections* and tests are in addition to the inspections by the *building official* that are identified in Section 110.

Exceptions:

1. *Special inspections* and tests are not required for construction of a minor nature or as warranted by conditions in the jurisdiction as *approved* by the *building official.*

2. Unless otherwise required by the *building official*, *special inspections* and tests are not required for Group U occupancies that are accessory to a residential occupancy including, but not limited to, those listed in Section 312.1.

3. *Special inspections* and tests are not required for portions of structures designed and constructed in accordance with the cold-formed steel light-frame construction provisions of Section 2211.7 or the conventional light-frame construction provisions of Section 2308.

4. The contractor is permitted to employ the *approved agencies* where the contractor is also the owner.

1704.2.1 Special inspector qualifications.
Prior to the start of the construction, the *approved agencies* shall provide written documentation to the *building official* demonstrating the competence and relevant experience or training of the *special inspectors* who will perform the *special inspections* and tests during construction. Experience or training shall be considered relevant where the documented experience or training is related in complexity to the same type of *special inspection* or testing activities for projects of similar complexity and material qualities. These qualifications are in addition to qualifications specified in other sections of this code.

The *registered design professional in responsible charge* and engineers of record involved in the design of the project are permitted to act as the *approved agency* and their personnel are permitted to act as special inspectors for the work designed by them, provided they qualify as special inspectors.

1704.2.2 Access for special inspection.
The construction or work for which *special inspection* or testing is required shall remain accessible and exposed for *special inspection* or testing purposes until completion of the required *special inspections* or tests.

`

1704.2.3 Statement of special inspections.
The applicant shall submit a statement of *special inspections* in accordance with Section 107.1 as a condition for permit issuance. This statement shall be in accordance with Section 1704.3.

Exception: A statement of *special inspections* is not required for portions of structures designed and constructed in accordance with the cold-formed steel light-frame construction provisions of Section 2211.7 or the conventional light-frame construction provisions of Section 2308.

1704.2.4 Report requirement.
Approved agencies shall keep records of special inspections and tests. The *approved agency* shall submit reports of *special* inspections and tests to the *building official* and to the *registered design professional in responsible charge*. Reports shall indicate that work inspected or tested was or was not completed in conformance to *approved construction documents*. Discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the contractor for correction. If they are not corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the *building official* and to the *registered design professional in responsible charge* prior to the completion of that phase of the work. A final report documenting required *special inspections* and tests, and correction of any discrepancies noted in the inspections or tests, shall be submitted at a point in time agreed upon prior to the start of work by the owner or the owner's authorized agent to the *building official*.

1704.2.5 Special inspection of fabricated items.
Where fabrication of structural, load-bearing or lateral load-resisting members or assemblies is being conducted on the premises of a fabricator's shop, *special inspections* of the *fabricated items* shall be performed during fabrication.

Exceptions:

1. *Special inspections* during fabrication are not required where the fabricator maintains *approved* detailed fabrication and quality control procedures that provide a basis for control of the workmanship and the fabricator's ability to conform to *approved construction documents* and this code. Approval shall be based upon review of fabrication and quality control procedures and periodic inspection of fabrication practices by the building official.

2. Special inspections are not required where the fabricator is registered and *approved* in accordance with Section 1704.2.5.1.

1704.2.5.1 Fabricator approval.
Special inspections during fabrication are not required where the work is done on the premises of a fabricator registered and approved to perform such work without *special inspection*. Approval shall be based upon review of the fabricator's written procedural and quality control manuals and periodic auditing of fabrication practices by an *approved agency*. At completion of fabrication, the *approved* fabricator shall submit a *certificate of compliance* to the owner or the owner's authorized agent for submittal to the *building official* as specified in Section 1704.5 stating that the work was performed in accordance with the *approved construction documents*.

1704.3 Statement of special inspections.
Where *special inspections* or tests are required by Section 1705, the *registered design*

`

professional in responsible charge shall prepare a statement of *special inspections* in accordance with Section 1704.3.1 for submittal by the applicant in accordance with Section 1704.2.3.

Exception: The statement of *special inspections* is permitted to be prepared by a qualified person *approved* by the *building official* for construction not designed by a *registered design professional*.

1704.3.1 Content of statement of special inspections.
The statement of *special inspections* shall identify the following:

1. The materials, systems, components and work required to have *special inspections* or tests by the *building official* or by the *registered design professional* responsible for each portion of the work.

2. The type and extent of each *special inspection*.

3. The type and extent of each test.

4. Additional requirements for *special inspections* or tests for seismic or wind resistance as specified in Sections 1705.11, 1705.12 and 1705.13.

5. For each type of *special inspection*, identification as to whether it will be continuous *special inspection*, periodic *special inspection* or performed in accordance with the notation used in the referenced standard where the inspections are defined.

1704.3.2 Seismic requirements in the statement of special inspections.
Where Section 1705.12 or 1705.13 specifies *special inspections* or tests for seismic resistance, the statement of *special inspections* shall identify the designated seismic systems and seismic force-resisting systems that are subject to the *special inspections* or tests.

1704.3.3 Wind requirements in the statement of special inspections.
Where Section 1705.11 specifies *special inspection* for wind resistance, the statement of *special inspections* shall identify the main windforce-resisting systems and wind-resisting components that are subject to *special inspections*.

1704.4 Contractor responsibility.
Each contractor responsible for the construction of a main wind- or seismic force-resisting system, designated seismic system or a wind- or seismic force-resisting component listed in the statement of special inspections shall submit a written statement of responsibility to the *building official* and the owner or the owner's authorized agent prior to the commencement of work on the system or component. The contractor's statement of responsibility shall contain acknowledgement of awareness of the special requirements contained in the statement of *special inspections*.

1704.5 Submittals to the building official.
In addition to the submittal of reports of *special inspections* and tests in accordance with Section 1704.2.4, reports and certificates shall be submitted by the owner or the owner's authorized agent to the *building official* for each of the following:

`

1. *Certificates of compliance* for the fabrication of structural, load-bearing or lateral load-resisting members or assemblies on the premises of a registered and *approved fabricator* in accordance with Section 1704.2.5.1.

2. *Certificates of compliance* for the seismic qualification of nonstructural components, supports and attachments in accordance with Section 1705.13.2.

3. *Certificates of compliance* for *designated seismic systems* in accordance with Section 1705.13.3.

4. Reports of preconstruction tests for shotcrete in accordance with Section 1908.5.

5. *Certificates of compliance* for open web steel joists and joist girders in accordance with Section 2207.5.

6. Reports of material properties verifying compliance with the requirements of AWS D1.4 for weldability as specified in Section 26.6.4 of ACI 318 for reinforcing bars in concrete complying with a standard other than ASTM A706 that are to be welded; and

7. Reports of mill tests in accordance with Section 20.2.2.5 of ACI 318 for reinforcing bars complying with ASTM A615 and used to resist earthquake-induced flexural or axial forces in the special moment frames, special structural walls or coupling beams connecting special structural walls of *seismic force-resisting systems* in *structures* assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B, C, D, E or F.

1704.6 Structural observations.
Where required by the provisions of Section 1704.6.1 or 1704.6.2, the owner or the owner's authorized agent shall employ a *registered design professional* to perform structural observations. Structural observation does not include or waive the responsibility for the inspections in Section 110 or the *special inspections* in Section 1705 or other sections of this code.

Prior to the commencement of observations, the structural observer shall submit to the *building official* a written statement identifying the frequency and extent of structural observations.

At the conclusion of the work included in the permit, the structural observer shall submit to the *building official* a written statement that the site visits have been made and identify any reported deficiencies that, to the best of the structural observer's knowledge, have not been resolved.

1704.6.1 Structural observations for seismic resistance.
Structural observations shall be provided for those structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F where one or more of the following conditions exist:

1. The structure is classified as *Risk Category* III or IV.

2. The height of the structure is greater than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the base as defined in ASCE 7.

3. The structure is assigned to *Seismic Design Category* E, is classified as *Risk Category* I or II, and is greater than two *stories above grade plane*.

`

4. When so designated by the *registered design professional* responsible for the structural design.

5. When such observation is specifically required by the *building official*.

1704.6.2 Structural observations for wind requirements.
Structural observations shall be provided for those structures sited where V_{asd} as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 exceeds 110 mph (49 m/sec), where one or more of the following conditions exist:

1. The structure is classified as *Risk Category* III or IV.

2. The *building height* is greater than 75 feet (22 860 mm).

3. When so designated by the *registered design professional* responsible for the structural design.

4. When such observation is specifically required by the *building official*.

SECTION 1705
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

1705.1 General.
Special inspections and tests of elements and nonstructural components of buildings and structures shall meet the applicable requirements of this section.

1705.1.1 Special cases.
Special inspections and tests shall be required for proposed work that is, in the opinion of the building official, unusual in its nature, such as, but not limited to, the following examples:

1. Construction materials and systems that are alternatives to materials and systems prescribed by this code.

2. Unusual design applications of materials described in this code.

3. Materials and systems required to be installed in accordance with additional manufacturer's instructions that prescribe requirements not contained in this code or in standards referenced by this code.

1705.2 Steel construction.
The *special inspections* and nondestructive testing of steel construction in buildings, structures, and portions thereof shall be in accordance with this section.

Exception: *Special inspections* of the steel fabrication process shall not be required where the fabricator does not perform any welding, thermal cutting or heating operation of any kind as part of the fabrication process. In such cases, the fabricator shall be required to submit a detailed procedure for material control that demonstrates the fabricator's ability to maintain suitable records and procedures such that, at any time during the fabrication process, the material specification and grade for the main stress-carrying elements are capable of being determined. Mill test reports shall be identifiable to the main stress-carrying elements when required by the *approved construction documents*.

`

1705.2.1 Structural steel.
Special inspections and nondestructive testing of *structural steel elements* in buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with the quality assurance inspection requirements of AISC 360.

Exception: *Special inspection* of railing systems composed of *structural steel elements* shall be limited to welding inspection of welds at the base of cantilevered rail posts.

1705.2.2 Cold-formed steel deck.
Special inspections and qualification of welding special inspectors for cold-formed steel floor and roof deck shall be in accordance with the quality assurance inspection requirements of SDI QA/QC.

1705.2.3 Open-web steel joists and joist girders.
Special inspections of open-web steel joists and joist girders in buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with Table 1705.2.3.

TABLE 1705.2.3
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS OF OPEN-WEB STEEL JOISTS AND JOIST GIRDERS

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION	REFERENCED STANDARD[a]
1. Installation of open-web steel joists and joist girders.			
a. End connections – welding or bolted.	—	X	SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.
b. Bridging – horizontal or diagonal.	—		
1. Standard bridging.	—	X	SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.
2. Bridging that differs from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.		X	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Where applicable, see also Section 1705.12, Special inspections for seismic resistance.

1705.2.4 Cold-formed steel trusses spanning 60 feet or greater.
Where a cold-formed steel truss clear span is 60 feet (18 288 mm) or greater, the special inspector shall verify that the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the *approved* truss submittal package.

`

1705.3 Concrete construction.
Special inspections and tests of concrete construction shall be performed in accordance with this section and Table 1705.3.

Exception: *Special inspections* and tests shall not be required for:

1. Isolated spread concrete footings of buildings three stories or less above *grade plane* that are fully supported on earth or rock.

2. Continuous concrete footings supporting walls of buildings three stories or less above *grade plane* that are fully supported on earth or rock where:

   2.1. The footings support walls of light-frame construction.

   2.2. The footings are designed in accordance with Table 1809.7.

   2.3. The structural design of the footing is based on a specified compressive strength, *f ′c*, not more than 2,500 pounds per square inch (psi) (17.2 MPa), regardless of the compressive strength specified in the *approved construction documents* or used in the footing construction.

3. Nonstructural concrete slabs supported directly on the ground, including prestressed slabs on grade, where the effective prestress in the concrete is less than 150 psi (1.03 MPa).

4. Concrete foundation walls constructed in accordance with Table 1807.1.6.2.

5. Concrete patios, driveways and sidewalks, on grade.

TABLE 1705.3
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION	REFERENCED STANDARD[a]	IBC REFERENCE
1. Inspect reinforcement, including prestressing tendons, and verify placement.	—	X	ACI 318 Ch. 20, 25.2, 25.3, 26.6.1-26.6.3	1908.4
2. Reinforcing bar welding: a. Verify weldability of reinforcing bars other than ASTM A706; b. Inspect single-pass fillet welds, maximum 5/16″; and c. Inspect all other welds.	— X	X X	AWS D1.4 ACI 318: 26.6.4	—
3. Inspect anchors cast in concrete.	—	X	ACI 318: 17.8.2	—

`

4. Inspect anchors post-installed in hardened concrete members.[b] a. Adhesive anchors installed in horizontally or upwardly inclined orientations to resist sustained tension loads. b. Mechanical anchors and adhesive anchors not defined in 4.a.	X	X	ACI 318: 17.8.2.4 ACI 318: 17.8.2	—
5. Verify use of required design mix.	—	X	ACI 318: Ch. 19, 26.4.3, 26.4.4	1904.1, 1904.2, 1908.2, 1908.3
6. Prior to concrete placement, fabricate specimens for strength tests, perform slump and air content tests, and determine the temperature of the concrete.	X	—	ASTM C172 ASTM C31 ACI 318: 26.4, 26.12	1908.10
7. Inspect concrete and shotcrete placement for proper application techniques.	X	—	ACI 318: 26.5	1908.6, 1908.7, 1908.8
8. Verify maintenance of specified curing temperature and techniques.	—	X	ACI 318: 26.5.3-26.5.5	1908.9
9. Inspect prestressed concrete for: a. Application of prestressing forces; and b. Grouting of bonded prestressing tendons.	X X	— —	ACI 318: 26.10	—
10. Inspect erection of precast concrete members.	—	X	ACI 318: Ch. 26.8	—
11. Verify in-situ concrete strength, prior to stressing of tendons in post-tensioned concrete and prior to removal of shores and forms from beams and structural slabs.	—	X	ACI 318: 26.11.2	—
12. Inspect formwork for shape, location and dimensions of the concrete member being formed.	—	X	ACI 318: 26.11.1.2(b)	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Where applicable, see also Section 1705.12, Special inspections for seismic resistance.

b. Specific requirements for special inspection shall be included in the research report for the anchor issued by an approved source in accordance with 17.8.2 in ACI 318, or other qualification procedures. Where specific requirements are not provided, special inspection requirements shall be specified by the registered design professional and shall be approved by the building official prior to the commencement of the work.

1705.3.1 Welding of reinforcing bars.

Special inspections of welding and qualifications of *special inspectors* for reinforcing bars shall be in accordance with the requirements of AWS D1.4 for *special inspection* and of AWS D1.4 for special inspector qualification.

`

1705.3.2 Material tests.
In the absence of sufficient data or documentation providing evidence of conformance to quality standards for materials in Chapters 19 and 20 of ACI 318, the *building official* shall require testing of materials in accordance with the appropriate standards and criteria for the material in Chapters 19 and 20 of ACI 318.

1705.4 Masonry construction.
Special inspections and tests of masonry construction shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance program requirements of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 and TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

Exception: *Special inspections* and tests shall not be required for:

1. Empirically designed masonry, glass unit masonry or masonry veneer designed in accordance with Section 2109, 2110 or Chapter 14, respectively, where they are part of a structure classified as *Risk Category* I, II or III.

2. Masonry foundation walls constructed in accordance with Table 1807.1.6.3(1), 1807.1.6.3(2), 1807.1.6.3(3) or 1807.1.6.3(4).

3. Masonry fireplaces, masonry heaters or masonry chimneys installed or constructed in accordance with Section 2111, 2112 or 2113, respectively.

1705.4.1 Empirically designed masonry, glass unit masonry and masonry veneer in Risk Category IV.
Special inspections and tests for empirically designed masonry, glass unit masonry or masonry veneer designed in accordance with Section 2109, 2110 or Chapter 14, respectively, where they are part of a structure classified as *Risk Category* IV shall be performed in accordance with TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, Level B Quality Assurance.

1705.4.2 Vertical masonry foundation elements.
Special inspections and tests of *vertical masonry foundation elements* shall be performed in accordance with Section 1705.4.

1705.5 Wood construction.
Special inspections of prefabricated wood structural elements and assemblies shall be in accordance with Section 1704.2.5. *Special inspections* of site-built assemblies shall be in accordance with this section.

1705.5.1 High-load diaphragms.
High-load diaphragms designed in accordance with Section 2306.2 shall be installed with *special inspections* as indicated in Section 1704.2. The special inspector shall inspect the wood structural panel sheathing to ascertain whether it is of the grade and thickness shown on the *approved construction documents*. Additionally, the special inspector must verify the nominal size of framing members at adjoining panel edges, the nail or staple diameter and length, the number of fastener lines and that the spacing between fasteners in each line and at edge margins agrees with the *approved construction documents*.

1705.5.2 Metal-plate-connected wood trusses spanning 60 feet or greater.
Where a truss clear span is 60 feet (18 288 mm) or greater, the special inspector shall verify that the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package.

`

1705.6 Soils.
Special inspections and tests of existing site soil conditions, fill placement and load-bearing requirements shall be performed in accordance with this section and Table 1705.6. The *approved* geotechnical report and the *construction documents* prepared by the *registered design professionals* shall be used to determine compliance. During fill placement, the special inspector shall verify that proper materials and procedures are used in accordance with the provisions of the *approved* geotechnical report.

> **Exception:** Where Section 1803 does not require reporting of materials and procedures for fill placement, the special inspector shall verify that the in-place dry density of the compacted fill is not less than 90 percent of the maximum dry density at optimum moisture content determined in accordance with ASTM D1557.

TABLE 1705.6
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF SOILS

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION
1. Verify materials below shallow foundations are adequate to achieve the design bearing capacity.	—	X
2. Verify excavations are extended to proper depth and have reached proper material.	—	X
3. Perform classification and testing of compacted fill materials.	—	X
4. Verify use of proper materials, densities and lift thicknesses during placement and compaction of compacted fill.	X	—
5. Prior to placement of compacted fill, inspect subgrade and verify that site has been prepared properly.	—	X

1705.7 Driven deep foundations.
Special inspections and tests shall be performed during installation of driven deep foundation elements as specified in Table 1705.7. The approved geotechnical report and the *construction documents* prepared by the *registered design professionals* shall be used to determine compliance.

TABLE 1705.7
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF DRIVEN DEEP FOUNDATION ELEMENTS

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION
1. Verify element materials, sizes and lengths comply with the requirements.	X	—

`

2. Determine capacities of test elements and conduct additional load tests, as required.	X	—
3. Inspect driving operations and maintain complete and accurate records for each element.	X	—
4. Verify placement locations and plumbness, confirm type and size of hammer, record number of blows per foot of penetration, determine required penetrations to achieve design capacity, record tip and butt elevations and document any damage to foundation element.	X	—
5. For steel elements, perform additional special inspections in accordance with Section 1705.2.	—	—
6. For concrete elements and concrete-filled elements, perform tests and additional special inspections in accordance with Section 1705.3.	—	—
7. For specialty elements, perform additional inspections as determined by the registered design professional in responsible charge.	—	—

1705.8 Cast-in-place deep foundations.
Special inspections and tests shall be performed during installation of cast-inplace deep foundation elements as specified in Table 1705.8. The *approved* geotechnical report and the *construction documents* prepared by the *registered design professionals* shall be used to determine compliance.

TABLE 1705.8
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF CAST-IN-PLACE DEEP FOUNDATION ELEMENTS

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION
1. Inspect drilling operations and maintain complete and accurate records for each element.	X	—
2. Verify placement locations and plumbness, confirm element diameters, bell diameters (if applicable), lengths, embedment into bedrock (if applicable) and	X	—

`

adequate end-bearing strata capacity. Record concrete or grout volumes.		
3. For concrete elements, perform tests and additional special inspections in accordance with Section 1705.3.	—	—

1705.9 Helical pile foundations.
Continuous special inspections shall be performed during installation of helical pile foundations. The information recorded shall include installation equipment used, pile dimensions, tip elevations, final depth, final installation torque and other pertinent installation data as required by the *registered design professional in responsible charge*. The *approved* geotechnical report and the *construction documents* prepared by the *registered design professional* shall be used to determine compliance.

1705.10 Fabricated items.
Special inspections of *fabricated items* shall be performed in accordance with Section 1704.2.5.

1705.11 Special inspections for wind resistance.
Special inspections for wind resistance specified in Sections 1705.11.1 through 1705.11.3, unless exempted by the exceptions to Section 1704.2, are required for buildings and structures constructed in the following areas:

1. In wind Exposure Category B, where V_{asd} as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 is 120 miles per hour (52.8 m/sec) or greater.

2. In wind Exposure Category C or D, where V_{asd} as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 is 110 mph (49 m/sec) or greater.

1705.11.1 Structural wood.
Continuous special inspection is required during field gluing operations of elements of the main windforce-resisting system. *Periodic special inspection* is required for nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the main windforce-resisting system, including wood shear walls, wood diaphragms, drag struts, braces and hold-downs.

Exception: *Special inspections* are not required for wood shear walls, shear panels and diaphragms, including nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening to other elements of the main windforce-resisting system, where the fastener spacing of the sheathing is more than 4 inches (102 mm) on center.

1705.11.2 Cold-formed steel light-frame construction.
Periodic special inspection is required for welding operations of elements of the main windforce-resisting system. *Periodic special inspection* is required for screw attachment, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the main windforce-resisting system, including shear walls, braces, diaphragms, collectors (drag struts) and hold-downs.

Exception: *Special inspections* are not required for cold-formed steel light-frame shear walls and diaphragms, including screwing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening to components of the windforce resisting system, where either of the following applies:

`

1. The sheathing is gypsum board or fiberboard.

2. The sheathing is wood structural panel or steel sheets on only one side of the shear wall, shear panel or diaphragm assembly and the fastener spacing of the sheathing is more than 4 inches (102 mm) on center (o.c.).

1705.11.3 Wind-resisting components.
Periodic special inspection is required for fastening of the following systems and components:

1. Roof covering, roof deck and roof framing connections.

2. Exterior wall covering and wall connections to roof and floor diaphragms and framing.

1705.12 Special inspections for seismic resistance.
Special inspections for seismic resistance shall be required as specified in Sections 1705.12.1 through 1705.12.9, unless exempted by the exceptions of Section 1704.2.

Exception: The *special inspections* specified in Sections 1705.12.1 through 1705.12.9 are not required for structures designed and constructed in accordance with one of the following:

1. The structure consists of light-frame construction; the design spectral response acceleration at short periods, S_{DS}, as determined in Section 1613.3.4, does not exceed 0.5; and the *building height* of the structure does not exceed 35 feet (10 668 mm).

2. The seismic force-resisting system of the structure consists of reinforced masonry or reinforced concrete; the design spectral response acceleration at short periods, S_{DS}, as determined in Section 1613.3.4, does not exceed 0.5; and the *building height* of the structure does not exceed 25 feet (7620 mm).

3. The structure is a detached one- or two-family dwelling not exceeding two *stories above grade plane* and does not have any of the following horizontal or vertical irregularities in accordance with Section 12.3 of ASCE 7:

   3.1. Torsional or extreme torsional irregularity.

   3.2. Nonparallel systems irregularity.

   3.3. Stiffness-soft story or stiffness-extreme soft story irregularity.

   3.4. Discontinuity in lateral strength-weak story irregularity.

1705.12.1 Structural steel.
Special inspections for seismic resistance shall be in accordance with Section 1705.12.1.1 or 1705.12.1.2, as applicable.

1705.12.1.1 Seismic force-resisting systems.
Special inspections of structural steel in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings

`

and structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B, C, D, E or F shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341.

Exception: *Special inspections* are not required in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B or C that are not specifically detailed for seismic resistance, with a response modification coefficient, *R*, of 3 or less, excluding cantilever column systems.

1705.12.1.2 Structural steel elements.
Special inspections of *structural steel elements* in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B, C, D, E or F other than those covered in Section 1705.12.1.1, including struts, collectors, chords and foundation elements, shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341.

Exception: *Special inspections* of *structural steel elements* are not required in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B or C with a response modification coefficient, *R*, of 3 or less.

1705.12.2 Structural wood.
For the seismic force-resisting systems of structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F:

1. *Continuous special inspection* shall be required during field gluing operations of elements of the seismic force-resisting system.

2. *Periodic special inspection* shall be required for nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the seismic force-resisting system, including wood shear walls, wood diaphragms, drag struts, braces, shear panels and hold-downs.

Exception: *Special inspections* are not required for wood shear walls, shear panels and diaphragms, including nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening to other elements of the seismic force-resisting system, where the fastener spacing of the sheathing is more than 4 inches (102 mm) on center.

1705.12.3 Cold-formed steel light-frame construction.
For the seismic force-resisting systems of structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F, periodic special inspection shall be required:

1. For welding operations of elements of the seismic force-resisting system; and

2. For screw attachment, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the seismic force-resisting system, including shear walls, braces, diaphragms, collectors (drag struts) and hold-downs.

Exception: *Special inspections* are not required for cold-formed steel light-frame shear walls and diaphragms, including screw installation, bolting, anchoring and other fastening to components of the seismic force-resisting system, where either of the following applies:

1. The sheathing is gypsum board or fiberboard.

`

2. The sheathing is wood structural panel or steel sheets on only one side of the shear wall, shear panel or diaphragm assembly and the fastener spacing of the sheathing is more than 4 inches (102 mm) on center.

1705.12.4 Designated seismic systems.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F, the special inspector shall examine *designated seismic systems* requiring seismic qualification in accordance with Section 13.2.2 of ASCE 7 and verify that the label, anchorage and mounting conform to the *certificate of compliance*.

1705.12.5 Architectural components.
Periodic special inspection is required for the erection and fastening of exterior cladding, interior and exterior nonbearing walls and interior and exterior veneer in structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F.

Exception: *Periodic special inspection* is not required for the following:

1. Exterior cladding, interior and exterior nonbearing walls and interior and exterior veneer 30 feet (9144 mm) or less in height above grade or walking surface.

2. Exterior cladding and interior and exterior veneer weighing 5 psf (24.5 N/m^2) or less.

3. Interior nonbearing walls weighing 15 psf (73.5 N/m^2) or less.

1705.12.5.1 Access floors.
Periodic *special inspection* is required for the anchorage of access floors in structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F.

1705.12.6 Plumbing, mechanical and electrical components.
Periodic special inspection of plumbing, mechanical and electrical components shall be required for the following:

1. Anchorage of electrical equipment for emergency and standby power systems in structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F.

2. Anchorage of other electrical equipment in structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* E or F.

3. Installation and anchorage of piping systems designed to carry hazardous materials and their associated mechanical units in structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F.

4. Installation and anchorage of ductwork designed to carry hazardous materials in structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F.

5. Installation and anchorage of vibration isolation systems in structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F where the *approved construction documents* require a nominal clearance of $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) or less between the equipment support frame and restraint.

`

1705.12.7 Storage racks.
Periodic special inspection is required for the anchorage of storage racks that are 8 feet (2438 mm) or greater in height in structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F.

1705.12.8 Seismic isolation systems.
Periodic special inspection shall be provided for seismic isolation systems in seismically isolated structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B, C, D, E or F during the fabrication and installation of isolator units and energy dissipation devices.

1705.12.9 Cold-formed steel special bolted moment frames.
Periodic special inspection shall be provided for the installation of cold-formed steel special bolted moment frames in the *seismic force-resisting systems* of structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F.

1705.13 Testing for seismic resistance.
Testing for seismic resistance shall be required as specified in Sections 1705.13.1 through 1705.13.4, unless exempted from *special inspections* by the exceptions of Section 1704.2.

1705.13.1 Structural steel.
Nondestructive testing for seismic resistance shall be in accordance with Section 1705.13.1.1 or 1705.13.1.2, as applicable.

1705.13.1.1 Seismic force-resisting systems.
Nondestructive testing of structural steel in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B, C, D, E or F shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341.

Exception: Nondestructive testing is not required in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B or C that are not specifically detailed for seismic resistance, with a response modification coefficient, *R*, of 3 or less, excluding cantilever column systems.

1705.13.1.2 Structural steel elements.
Nondestructive testing of structural steel elements in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B, C, D, E or F other than those covered in Section 1705.13.1.1, including struts, collectors, chords and foundation elements, shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341.

Exception: Nondestructive testing of *structural steel elements* is not required in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B or C with a response modification coefficient, *R*, of 3 or less.

1705.13.2 Nonstructural components.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B, C, D, E or F, where the requirements of Section 13.2.1 of ASCE 7 for nonstructural components, supports or attachments are met by seismic qualification as specified in Item 2 therein, the *registered design professional* shall specify on the *approved construction documents* the requirements for seismic qualification by analysis, testing or experience data. *Certificates of compliance* for the seismic qualification shall be submitted to the *building official* as specified in Section 1704.5.

1705.13.3 Designated seismic systems.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F and with *designated*

`

seismic systems that are subject to the requirements of Section 13.2.2 of ASCE 7 for certification, the *registered design professional* shall specify on the *approved construction documents* the requirements to be met by analysis, testing or experience data as specified therein. *Certificates of compliance* documenting that the requirements are met shall be submitted to the *building official* as specified in Section 1704.5.

1705.13.4 Seismic isolation systems.
Seismic isolation systems in seismically isolated structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B, C, D, E or F shall be tested in accordance with Section 17.8 of ASCE 7.

[BF] 1705.14 Sprayed fire-resistant materials.
Special inspections and tests of sprayed fire-resistant materials applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members shall be performed in accordance with Sections 1705.14.1 through 1705.14.6. *Special inspections* shall be based on the fire-resistance design as designated in the *approved construction documents*. The tests set forth in this section shall be based on samplings from specific floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members. *Special inspections* and tests shall be performed after the rough installation of electrical, automatic sprinkler, mechanical and plumbing systems and suspension systems for ceilings, where applicable.

[BF] 1705.14.1 Physical and visual tests.
The *special inspections* and tests shall include the following to demonstrate compliance with the listing and the *fire-resistance rating*:

1. Condition of substrates.
2. Thickness of application.
3. Density in pounds per cubic foot (kg/m^3).
4. Bond strength adhesion/cohesion.
5. Condition of finished application.

[BF] 1705.14.2 Structural member surface conditions.
The surfaces shall be prepared in accordance with the *approved* fire-resistance design and the written instructions of *approved* manufacturers. The prepared surface of structural members to be sprayed shall be inspected by the special inspector before the application of the sprayed fire-resistant material.

[BF] 1705.14.3 Application.
The substrate shall have a minimum ambient temperature before and after application as specified in the written instructions of *approved* manufacturers. The area for application shall be ventilated during and after application as required by the written instructions of *approved* manufacturers.

[BF] 1705.14.4 Thickness.
No more than 10 percent of the thickness measurements of the sprayed fire-resistant materials applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members shall be less than the thickness required by the *approved* fire-resistance design, but in no case less than the minimum allowable thickness required by Section 1705.14.4.1.

`

[BF] 1705.14.4.1 Minimum allowable thickness.
For design thicknesses 1 inch (25 mm) or greater, the minimum allowable individual thickness shall be the design thickness minus $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm). For design thicknesses less than 1 inch (25 mm), the minimum allowable individual thickness shall be the design thickness minus 25 percent. Thickness shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E605. Samples of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected in accordance with Sections 1705.14.4.2 and 1705.14.4.3.

[BF] 1705.14.4.2 Floor, roof and wall assemblies.
The thickness of the sprayed fire-resistant material applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E605, making not less than four measurements for each 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) of the sprayed area, or portion thereof, in each *story*.

[BF] 1705.14.4.3 Cellular decks.
Thickness measurements shall be selected from a square area, 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm) in size. A minimum of four measurements shall be made, located symmetrically within the square area.

[BF] 1705.14.4.4 Fluted decks.
Thickness measurements shall be selected from a square area, 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm) in size. A minimum of four measurements shall be made, located symmetrically within the square area, including one each of the following: valley, crest and sides. The average of the measurements shall be reported.

[BF] 1705.14.4.5 Structural members.
The thickness of the sprayed fire-resistant material applied to structural members shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E605. Thickness testing shall be performed on not less than 25 percent of the structural members on each floor.

[BF] 1705.14.4.6 Beams and girders.
At beams and girders thickness measurements shall be made at nine locations around the beam or girder at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

[BF] 1705.14.4.7 Joists and trusses.
At joists and trusses, thickness measurements shall be made at seven locations around the joist or truss at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

[BF] 1705.14.4.8 Wide-flanged columns.
At wide-flanged columns, thickness measurements shall be made at 12 locations around the column at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

[BF] 1705.14.4.9 Hollow structural section and pipe columns.
At hollow structural section and pipe columns, thickness measurements shall be made at a minimum of four locations around the column at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

[BF] 1705.14.5 Density.
The density of the sprayed fire-resistant material shall not be less than the density specified in the *approved* fire-resistance design. Density of the sprayed fire-resistant material shall be

`

determined in accordance with ASTM E605. The test samples for determining the density of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected as follows:

1. From each floor, roof and wall assembly at the rate of not less than one sample for every 2,500 square feet (232 m^2) or portion thereof of the sprayed area in each *story*.

2. From beams, girders, trusses and columns at the rate of not less than one sample for each type of structural member for each 2,500 square feet (232 m^2) of floor area or portion thereof in each *story*.

[BF] 1705.14.6 Bond strength.
The cohesive/adhesive bond strength of the cured sprayed fire-resistant material applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members shall not be less than 150 pounds per square foot (psf) (7.18 kN/m^2). The cohesive/adhesive bond strength shall be determined in accordance with the field test specified in ASTM E736 by testing in-place samples of the sprayed fire-resistant material selected in accordance with Sections 1705.14.6.1 through 1705.14.6.3.

[BF] 1705.14.6.1 Floor, roof and wall assemblies.
The test samples for determining the cohesive/adhesive bond strength of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected from each floor, roof and wall assembly at the rate of not less than one sample for every 2,500 square feet (232 m^2) of the sprayed area, or portion thereof, in each *story*.

[BF] 1705.14.6.2 Structural members.
The test samples for determining the cohesive/adhesive bond strength of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected from beams, girders, trusses, columns and other structural members at the rate of not less than one sample for each type of structural member for each 2,500 square feet (232 m^2) of floor area or portion thereof in each *story*.

[BF] 1705.14.6.3 Primer, paint and encapsulant bond tests.
Bond tests to qualify a primer, paint or encapsulant shall be conducted when the sprayed fire-resistant material is applied to a primed, painted or encapsulated surface for which acceptable bond-strength performance between these coatings and the fire-resistant material has not been determined. A bonding agent *approved* by the SFRM manufacturer shall be applied to a primed, painted or encapsulated surface where the bond strengths are found to be less than required values.

[BF] 1705.15 Mastic and intumescent fire-resistant coatings.
Special inspections and tests for mastic and intumescent fire-resistant coatings applied to structural elements and decks shall be performed in accordance with AWCI 12-B. *Special inspections* and tests shall be based on the fire-resistance design as designated in the *approved construction documents*.

1705.16 Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS).
Special inspections shall be required for all EIFS applications.

Exceptions:

`

1. *Special inspections* shall not be required for EIFS applications installed over a *water-resistive barrier* with a means of draining moisture to the exterior.

2. *Special inspections* shall not be required for EIFS applications installed over masonry or concrete walls.

1705.16.1 Water-resistive barrier coating.
A *water-resistive barrier* coating complying with ASTM E2570 requires *special inspection* of the *water-resistive barrier* coating when installed over a sheathing substrate.

~~**[BF] 1705.17 Fire-resistant penetrations and joints.**~~
~~In *high-rise buildings* or in buildings assigned to *Risk Category* III or IV, *special inspections* for *through-penetrations*, membrane penetration firestops, *fire-resistant joint systems* and perimeter fire barrier systems that are tested and *listed* in accordance with Sections 714.3.1.2, 714.4.2, 715.3 and 715.4 shall be in accordance with Section 1705.17.1 or 1705.17.2.~~

~~**[BF] 1705.17.1 Penetration firestops.**~~
~~Inspections of penetration firestop systems that are tested and *listed* in accordance with Sections 714.3.1.2 and 714.4.2 shall be conducted by an *approved agency* in accordance with ASTM E2174.~~

~~**[BF] 1705.17.2 Fire-resistant joint systems.**~~
~~Inspection of fire-resistant joint systems that are tested and *listed* in accordance with Sections 715.3 and 715.4 shall be conducted by an *approved agency* in accordance with ASTM E2393.~~

[F] 1705.18 Testing for smoke control.
Smoke control systems shall be tested by a special inspector.

[F] 1705.18.1 Testing scope.
The test scope shall be as follows:

1. During erection of ductwork and prior to concealment for the purposes of leakage testing and recording of device location.

2. Prior to occupancy and after sufficient completion for the purposes of pressure difference testing, flow measurements and detection and control verification.

[F] 1705.18.2 Qualifications.
Approved agencies for smoke control testing shall have expertise in fire protection engineering, mechanical engineering and certification as air balancers.

SECTION 1706
DESIGN STRENGTHS OF MATERIALS

1706.1 Conformance to standards.
The design strengths and permissible stresses of any structural material that are identified by a manufacturer's designation as to manufacture and grade by mill tests, or the strength and stress grade is otherwise confirmed to the satisfaction of the *building official*, shall conform to the specifications and methods of design of accepted engineering practice or the *approved* rules in the absence of applicable standards.

`

1706.2 New materials.
For materials that are not specifically provided for in this code, the design strengths and permissible stresses shall be established by tests as provided for in Section 1707.

SECTION 1707
ALTERNATIVE TEST PROCEDURE

1707.1 General.
In the absence of *approved* rules or other *approved* standards, the *building official* shall make, or cause to be made, the necessary tests and investigations; or the *building official* shall accept duly authenticated reports from *approved agencies* in respect to the quality and manner of use of new materials or assemblies as provided for in Section 104.11. The cost of all tests and other investigations required under the provisions of this code shall be borne by the owner or the owner's authorized agent.

SECTION 1708
IN-SITU LOAD TESTS

1708.1 General.
Whenever there is a reasonable doubt as to the stability or load-bearing capacity of a completed building, structure or portion thereof for the expected loads, an engineering assessment shall be required. The engineering assessment shall involve either a structural analysis or an in-situ load test, or both. The structural analysis shall be based on actual material properties and other as-built conditions that affect stability or load-bearing capacity, and shall be conducted in accordance with the applicable design standard. If the structural assessment determines that the load-bearing capacity is less than that required by the code, load tests shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1708.2. If the building, structure or portion thereof is found to have inadequate stability or load-bearing capacity for the expected loads, modifications to ensure structural adequacy or the removal of the inadequate construction shall be required.

1708.2 Test standards.
Structural components and assemblies shall be tested in accordance with the appropriate referenced standards. In the absence of a standard that contains an applicable load test procedure, the test procedure shall be developed by a *registered design professional* and *approved*. The test procedure shall simulate loads and conditions of application that the completed structure or portion thereof will be subjected to in normal use.

1708.3 In-situ load tests.
In-situ load tests shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1708.3.1 or 1708.3.2 and shall be supervised by a *registered design professional*. The test shall simulate the applicable loading conditions specified in Chapter 16 as necessary to address the concerns regarding structural stability of the building, structure or portion thereof.

1708.3.1 Load test procedure specified.
Where a referenced standard contains an applicable load test procedure and acceptance criteria, the test procedure and acceptance criteria in the standard shall apply. In the absence of specific load factors or acceptance criteria, the load factors and acceptance criteria in Section 1708.3.2 shall apply.

1708.3.2 Load test procedure not specified.
In the absence of applicable load test procedures contained within a standard referenced by this code or acceptance criteria for a specific material or method of construction, such *existing structure* shall be subjected to a test procedure developed by a *registered design*

`

professional that simulates applicable loading and deformation conditions. For components that are not a part of the seismic force-resisting system, at a minimum the test load shall be equal to the specified factored design loads. For materials such as wood that have strengths that are dependent on load duration, the test load shall be adjusted to account for the difference in load duration of the test compared to the expected duration of the design loads being considered. For statically loaded components, the test load shall be left in place for a period of 24 hours. For components that carry dynamic loads (e.g., machine supports or fall arrest anchors), the load shall be left in place for a period consistent with the component's actual function. The structure shall be considered to have successfully met the test requirements where the following criteria are satisfied:

1. Under the design load, the deflection shall not exceed the limitations specified in Section 1604.3.

2. Within 24 hours after removal of the test load, the structure shall have recovered not less than 75 percent of the maximum deflection.

3. During and immediately after the test, the structure shall not show evidence of failure.

SECTION 1709
PRECONSTRUCTION LOAD TESTS

1709.1 General.
Where proposed construction is not capable of being designed by *approved* engineering analysis, or where proposed construction design method does not comply with the applicable material design standard, the system of construction or the structural unit and the connections shall be subjected to the tests prescribed in Section 1709. The *building official* shall accept certified reports of such tests conducted by an *approved* testing agency, provided that such tests meet the requirements of this code and *approved* procedures.

1709.2 Load test procedures specified.
Where specific load test procedures, load factors and acceptance criteria are included in the applicable referenced standards, such test procedures, load factors and acceptance criteria shall apply. In the absence of specific test procedures, load factors or acceptance criteria, the corresponding provisions in Section 1709.3 shall apply.

1709.3 Load test procedures not specified.
Where load test procedures are not specified in the applicable referenced standards, the load-bearing and deformation capacity of structural components and assemblies shall be determined on the basis of a test procedure developed by a *registered design professional* that simulates applicable loading and deformation conditions. For components and assemblies that are not a part of the seismic force-resisting system, the test shall be as specified in Section 1709.3.1. Load tests shall simulate the applicable loading conditions specified in Chapter 16.

1709.3.1 Test procedure.
The test assembly shall be subjected to an increasing superimposed load equal to not less than two times the superimposed design load. The test load shall be left in place for a period of 24 hours. The tested assembly shall be considered to have successfully met the test requirements if the assembly recovers not less than 75 percent of the maximum deflection within 24 hours after the removal of the test load. The test assembly shall then be reloaded and subjected to an increasing superimposed load until either structural failure occurs or the superimposed load is equal to two and one-half times the load at which the deflection

`

limitations specified in Section 1709.3.2 were reached, or the load is equal to two and one-half times the superimposed design load. In the case of structural components and assemblies for which deflection limitations are not specified in Section 1709.3.2, the test specimen shall be subjected to an increasing superimposed load until structural failure occurs or the load is equal to two and one-half times the desired superimposed design load. The allowable superimposed design load shall be taken as the lesser of:

1. The load at the deflection limitation given in Section 1709.3.2.

2. The failure load divided by 2.5.

3. The maximum load applied divided by 2.5.

1709.3.2 Deflection.
The deflection of structural members under the design load shall not exceed the limitations in Section 1604.3.

1709.4 Wall and partition assemblies.
Load-bearing wall and partition assemblies shall sustain the test load both with and without window framing. The test load shall include all design load components. Wall and partition assemblies shall be tested both with and without door and window framing.

1709.5 Exterior window and door assemblies.
The design pressure rating of exterior windows and doors in buildings shall be determined in accordance with Section 1709.5.1 or 1709.5.2. For the purposes of this section, the required design pressure shall be determined using the allowable stress design load combinations of Section 1605.3.

Exceptions:

1. Structural wind load design pressures for window units smaller than the size tested in accordance with Section 1709.5.1 or 1709.5.2 shall be permitted to be higher than the design value of the tested unit provided such higher pressures are determined by accepted engineering analysis. All components of the small unit shall be the same as the tested unit. Where such calculated design pressures are used, they shall be validated by an additional test of the window unit having the highest allowable design pressure.

2. Custom exterior windows and doors manufactured by a small business shall be exempt from all testing requirements in Section 1709 of the International Building Code provided they meet the applicable provisions of Chapter 24 of the International Building Code.

1709.5.1 Exterior windows and doors.
Exterior windows and sliding doors shall be tested and *labeled* as conforming to AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440. The *label* shall state the name of the manufacturer, the *approved* labeling agency and the product designation as specified in AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440. Exterior side-hinged doors shall be tested and *labeled* as conforming to AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440 or comply with Section 1709.5.2. Products tested and *labeled* as conforming to AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 shall not be subject to the requirements of Sections 2403.2 and 2403.3.

1709.5.2 Exterior windows and door assemblies not provided for in Section 1709.5.1.
Exterior window and door assemblies shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E330.

`

Structural performance of garage doors and rolling doors shall be determined in accordance with either ASTM E330 or ANSI/DASMA 108, and shall meet the acceptance criteria of ANSI/DASMA 108. Exterior window and door assemblies containing glass shall comply with Section 2403. The design pressure for testing shall be calculated in accordance with Chapter 16. Each assembly shall be tested for 10 seconds at a load equal to 1.5 times the design pressure.

1709.6 Skylights and sloped glazing.
Skylights and sloped glazing shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 24.

1709.7 Test specimens.
Test specimens and construction shall be representative of the materials, workmanship and details normally used in practice. The properties of the materials used to construct the test assembly shall be determined on the basis of tests on samples taken from the load assembly or on representative samples of the materials used to construct the load test assembly. Required tests shall be conducted or witnessed by an *approved agency*.

`

CHAPTER 18
SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

User note: Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 1801
GENERAL

1801.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall apply to building and foundation systems.

1801.2 Design basis.
Allowable bearing pressures, allowable stresses and design formulas provided in this chapter shall be used with the *allowable stress design* load combinations specified in Section 1605.3. The quality and design of materials used structurally in excavations and foundations shall comply with the requirements specified in Chapters 16, 19, 21, 22 and 23 of this code. Excavations and fills shall also comply with Chapter 33.

SECTION 1802
DEFINITIONS

1802.1 Definitions.
The following words and terms are defined in Chapter 2:

DEEP FOUNDATION.

DRILLED SHAFT.

Socketed drilled shaft.

HELICAL PILE.

MICROPILE.

SHALLOW FOUNDATION.

SECTION 1803
GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATIONS

1803.1 General.
Geotechnical investigations shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1803.2 and reported in accordance with Section 1803.6. Where required by the *building official* or where geotechnical investigations involve in-situ testing, laboratory testing or engineering calculations, such investigations shall be conducted by a *registered design professional*.

1803.2 Investigations required.
Geotechnical investigations shall be conducted in accordance with Sections 1803.3 through 1803.5.

`

Exception: The *building official* shall be permitted to waive the requirement for a geotechnical investigation where satisfactory data from adjacent areas is available that demonstrates an investigation is not necessary for any of the conditions in Sections 1803.5.1 through 1803.5.6 and Sections 1803.5.10 and 1803.5.11.

1803.3 Basis of investigation.
Soil classification shall be based on observation and any necessary tests of the materials disclosed by borings, test pits or other subsurface exploration made in appropriate locations. Additional studies shall be made as necessary to evaluate slope stability, soil strength, position and adequacy of load-bearing soils, the effect of moisture variation on soil-bearing capacity, compressibility, liquefaction and expansiveness.

1803.3.1 Scope of investigation.
The scope of the geotechnical investigation including the number and types of borings or soundings, the equipment used to drill or sample, the in-situ testing equipment and the laboratory testing program shall be determined by a *registered design professional*.

1803.4 Qualified representative.
The investigation procedure and apparatus shall be in accordance with generally accepted engineering practice. The *registered design professional* shall have a fully qualified representative on site during all boring or sampling operations.

1803.5 Investigated conditions.
Geotechnical investigations shall be conducted as indicated in Sections 1803.5.1 through 1803.5.12.

1803.5.1 Classification.
Soil materials shall be classified in accordance with ASTM D2487.

1803.5.2 Questionable soil.
Where the classification, strength or compressibility of the soil is in doubt or where a load-bearing value superior to that specified in this code is claimed, the *building official* shall be permitted to require that a geotechnical investigation be conducted.

1803.5.3 Expansive soil.
In areas likely to have expansive soil, the *building official* shall require soil tests to determine where such soils do exist.

Soils meeting all four of the following provisions shall be considered expansive, except that tests to show compliance with Items 1, 2 and 3 shall not be required if the test prescribed in Item 4 is conducted:

1. Plasticity index (PI) of 15 or greater, determined in accordance with ASTM D4318.

2. More than 10 percent of the soil particles pass a No. 200 sieve (75 µm), determined in accordance with ASTM D422.

3. More than 10 percent of the soil particles are less than 5 micrometers in size, determined in accordance with ASTM D422.

4. Expansion index greater than 20, determined in accordance with ASTM D4829.

`

1803.5.4 Ground-water table.
A subsurface soil investigation shall be performed to determine whether the existing ground-water table is above or within 5 feet (1524 mm) below the elevation of the lowest floor level where such floor is located below the finished ground level adjacent to the foundation.

> **Exception:** A subsurface soil investigation to determine the location of the ground-water table shall not be required where waterproofing is provided in accordance with Section 1805.

1803.5.5 Deep foundations.
Where deep foundations will be used, a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted and shall include all of the following, unless sufficient data upon which to base the design and installation is otherwise available:

1. Recommended deep foundation types and installed capacities.
2. Recommended center-to-center spacing of deep foundation elements.
3. Driving criteria.
4. Installation procedures.
5. Field inspection and reporting procedures (to include procedures for verification of the installed bearing capacity where required).
6. Load test requirements.
7. Suitability of deep foundation materials for the intended environment.
8. Designation of bearing stratum or strata.
9. Reductions for group action, where necessary.

1803.5.6 Rock strata.
Where subsurface explorations at the project site indicate variations in the structure of rock upon which foundations are to be constructed, a sufficient number of borings shall be drilled to sufficient depths to assess the competency of the rock and its load-bearing capacity.

1803.5.7 Excavation near foundations.
Where excavation will reduce support from any foundation, a *registered design professional* shall prepare an assessment of the structure as determined from examination of the structure, the review of available design documents and, if necessary, excavation of test pits. The *registered design professional* shall determine the requirements for underpinning and protection and prepare site-specific plans, details and sequence of work for submission. Such support shall be provided by underpinning, sheeting and bracing, or by other means acceptable to the *building official*.

1803.5.8 Compacted fill material.
Where shallow foundations will bear on compacted fill material more than 12 inches (305 mm) in depth, a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted and shall include all of the following:

`

1. Specifications for the preparation of the site prior to placement of compacted fill material.

2. Specifications for material to be used as compacted fill.

3. Test methods to be used to determine the maximum dry density and optimum moisture content of the material to be used as compacted fill.

4. Maximum allowable thickness of each lift of compacted fill material.

5. Field test method for determining the in-place dry density of the compacted fill.

6. Minimum acceptable in-place dry density expressed as a percentage of the maximum dry density determined in accordance with Item 3.

7. Number and frequency of field tests required to determine compliance with Item 6.

1803.5.9 Controlled low-strength material (CLSM).
Where shallow foundations will bear on controlled low-strength material (CLSM), a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted and shall include all of the following:

1. Specifications for the preparation of the site prior to placement of the CLSM.

2. Specifications for the CLSM.

3. Laboratory or field test method(s) to be used to determine the compressive strength or bearing capacity of the CLSM.

4. Test methods for determining the acceptance of the CLSM in the field.

5. Number and frequency of field tests required to determine compliance with Item 4.

1803.5.10 Alternate setback and clearance.
Where setbacks or clearances other than those required in Section 1808.7 are desired, the *building official* shall be permitted to require a geotechnical investigation by a *registered design professional* to demonstrate that the intent of Section 1808.7 would be satisfied. Such an investigation shall include consideration of material, height of slope, slope gradient, load intensity and erosion characteristics of slope material.

1803.5.11 Seismic Design Categories C through F.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F, a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted, and shall include an evaluation of all of the following potential geologic and seismic hazards:

1. Slope instability.

2. Liquefaction.

3. Total and differential settlement.

4. Surface displacement due to faulting or seismically induced lateral spreading or lateral flow.

`

1803.5.12 Seismic Design Categories D through F.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, the geotechnical investigation required by Section 1803.5.11 shall also include all of the following as applicable:

1. The determination of dynamic seismic lateral earth pressures on foundation walls and retaining walls supporting more than 6 feet (1.83 m) of backfill height due to design earthquake ground motions.

2. The potential for liquefaction and soil strength loss evaluated for site peak ground acceleration, earthquake magnitude and source characteristics consistent with the maximum considered earthquake ground motions. Peak ground acceleration shall be determined based on one of the following:

    2.1. A site-specific study in accordance with Section 21.5 of ASCE 7.

    2.2. In accordance with Section 11.8.3 of ASCE 7.

3. An assessment of potential consequences of liquefaction and soil strength loss including, but not limited to, the following:

    3.1. Estimation of total and differential settlement.

    3.2. Lateral soil movement.

    3.3. Lateral soil loads on foundations.

    3.4. Reduction in foundation soil-bearing capacity and lateral soil reaction.

    3.5. Soil downdrag and reduction in axial and lateral soil reaction for pile foundations.

    3.6. Increases in soil lateral pressures on retaining walls.

    3.7. Flotation of buried structures.

4. Discussion of mitigation measures such as, but not limited to, the following:

    4.1. Selection of appropriate foundation type and depths.

    4.2. Selection of appropriate structural systems to accommodate anticipated displacements and forces.

    4.3. Ground stabilization.

    4.4. Any combination of these measures and how they shall be considered in the design of the structure.

1803.6 Reporting.
Where geotechnical investigations are required, a written report of the investigations shall be

`

submitted to the *building official* by the permit applicant at the time of permit application. This geotechnical report shall include, but need not be limited to, the following information:

1. A plot showing the location of the soil investigations.

2. A complete record of the soil boring and penetration test logs and soil samples.

3. A record of the soil profile.

4. Elevation of the water table, if encountered.

5. Recommendations for foundation type and design criteria, including but not limited to: bearing capacity of natural or compacted soil; provisions to mitigate the effects of expansive soils; mitigation of the effects of liquefaction, differential settlement and varying soil strength; and the effects of adjacent loads.

6. Expected total and differential settlement.

7. Deep foundation information in accordance with Section 1803.5.5.

8. Special design and construction provisions for foundations of structures founded on expansive soils, as necessary.

9. Compacted fill material properties and testing in accordance with Section 1803.5.8.

10. Controlled low-strength material properties and testing in accordance with Section 1803.5.9.

SECTION 1804
EXCAVATION, GRADING AND FILL

1804.1 Excavation near foundations.
Excavation for any purpose shall not reduce lateral support from any foundation or adjacent foundation without first underpinning or protecting the foundation against detrimental lateral or vertical movement, or both.

1804.2 Underpinning.
Where underpinning is chosen to provide the protection or support of adjacent structures, the underpinning system shall be designed and installed in accordance with provisions of this chapter and Chapter 33.

1804.2.1 Underpinning sequencing.
Underpinning shall be installed in a sequential manner that protects the neighboring structure and the working construction site. The sequence of installation shall be identified in the *approved construction documents*.

1804.3 Placement of backfill.
The excavation outside the foundation shall be backfilled with soil that is free of organic material, construction debris, cobbles and boulders or with a controlled low-strength material (CLSM). The backfill shall be placed in lifts and compacted in a manner that does not damage the foundation or the waterproofing or dampproofing material.

`

Exception: CLSM need not be compacted.

1804.4 Site grading.
The ground immediately adjacent to the foundation shall be sloped away from the building at a slope of not less than one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope) for a minimum distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) measured perpendicular to the face of the wall. If physical obstructions or lot lines prohibit 10 feet (3048 mm) of horizontal distance, a 5-percent slope shall be provided to an *approved* alternative method of diverting water away from the foundation. Swales used for this purpose shall be sloped a minimum of 2 percent where located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the building foundation. Impervious surfaces within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the building foundation shall be sloped a minimum of 2 percent away from the building.

Exception: Where climatic or soil conditions warrant, the slope of the ground away from the building foundation shall be permitted to be reduced to not less than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

The procedure used to establish the final ground level adjacent to the foundation shall account for additional settlement of the backfill.

1804.5 Grading and fill in flood hazard areas.
In *flood hazard areas* established in Section 1612.3, grading, fill, or both, shall not be *approved*:

1. Unless such fill is placed, compacted and sloped to minimize shifting, slumping and erosion during the rise and fall of flood water and, as applicable, wave action.

2. In floodways, unless it has been demonstrated through hydrologic and hydraulic analyses performed by a *registered design professional* in accordance with standard engineering practice that the proposed grading or fill, or both, will not result in any increase in flood levels during the occurrence of the *design flood*.

3. In *coastal high hazard areas*, unless such fill is conducted and/or placed to avoid diversion of water and waves toward any building or structure.

4. Where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated, unless it has been demonstrated that the cumulative effect of the proposed *flood hazard area* encroachment, when combined with all other existing and anticipated *flood hazard area* encroachment, will not increase the design flood elevation more than 1 foot (305 mm) at any point.

1804.6 Compacted fill material.
Where shallow foundations will bear on compacted fill material, the compacted fill shall comply with the provisions of an *approved* geotechnical report, as set forth in Section 1803.

Exception: Compacted fill material 12 inches (305 mm) in depth or less need not comply with an *approved* report, provided the in-place dry density is not less than 90 percent of the maximum dry density at optimum moisture content determined in accordance with ASTM D1557. The compaction shall be verified by *special inspection* in accordance with Section 1705.6.

1804.7 Controlled low-strength material (CLSM).
Where shallow foundations will bear on controlled low-strength material (CLSM), the CLSM shall comply with the provisions of an *approved* geotechnical report, as set forth in Section 1803.

`

SECTION 1805
DAMPPROOFING AND WATERPROOFING

1805.1 General.
Walls or portions thereof that retain earth and enclose interior spaces and floors below grade shall be waterproofed and dampproofed in accordance with this section, with the exception of those spaces containing groups other than residential and institutional where such omission is not detrimental to the building or occupancy.

Ventilation for crawl spaces shall comply with Section 1203.4.

1805.1.1 Story above grade plane.
Where a basement is considered a *story above grade plane* and the finished ground level adjacent to the basement wall is below the basement floor elevation for 25 percent or more of the perimeter, the floor and walls shall be dampproofed in accordance with Section 1805.2 and a foundation drain shall be installed in accordance with Section 1805.4.2. The foundation drain shall be installed around the portion of the perimeter where the basement floor is below ground level. The provisions of Sections 1803.5.4, 1805.3 and 1805.4.1 shall not apply in this case.

1805.1.2 Under-floor space.
The finished ground level of an under-floor space such as a crawl space shall not be located below the bottom of the footings. Where there is evidence that the ground-water table rises to within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ground level at the outside building perimeter, or that the surface water does not readily drain from the building site, the ground level of the underfloor space shall be as high as the outside finished ground level, unless an *approved* drainage system is provided. The provisions of Sections 1803.5.4, 1805.2, 1805.3 and 1805.4 shall not apply in this case.

1805.1.2.1 Flood hazard areas.
For buildings and structures in *flood hazard areas* as established in Section 1612.3, the finished ground level of an under-floor space such as a crawl space shall be equal to or higher than the outside finished ground level on at least one side.

Exception: Under-floor spaces of Group R-3 buildings that meet the requirements of FEMA TB 11.

1805.1.3 Ground-water control.
Where the ground-water table is lowered and maintained at an elevation not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the bottom of the lowest floor, the floor and walls shall be dampproofed in accordance with Section 1805.2. The design of the system to lower the ground-water table shall be based on accepted principles of engineering that shall consider, but not necessarily be limited to, permeability of the soil, rate at which water enters the drainage system, rated capacity of pumps, head against which pumps are to operate and the rated capacity of the disposal area of the system.

1805.2 Dampproofing.
Where hydrostatic pressure will not occur as determined by Section 1803.5.4, floors and walls for other than wood foundation systems shall be dampproofed in accordance with this section. Wood foundation systems shall be constructed in accordance with AWC PWF.

`

1805.2.1 Floors.
Dampproofing materials for floors shall be installed between the floor and the base course required by Section 1805.4.1, except where a separate floor is provided above a concrete slab.

Where installed beneath the slab, dampproofing shall consist of not less than 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.152 mm) polyethylene with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm), or other *approved* methods or materials. Where permitted to be installed on top of the slab, dampproofing shall consist of mopped-on bitumen, not less than 4-mil (0.004 inch; 0.102 mm) polyethylene, or other *approved* methods or materials. Joints in the membrane shall be lapped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1805.2.2 Walls.
Dampproofing materials for walls shall be installed on the exterior surface of the wall, and shall extend from the top of the footing to above ground level.

Dampproofing shall consist of a bituminous material, 3 pounds per square *yard* (16 N/m^2) of acrylic modified cement, $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm) coat of surface-bonding mortar complying with ASTM C887, any of the materials permitted for waterproofing by Section 1805.3.2 or other *approved* methods or materials.

1805.2.2.1 Surface preparation of walls.
Prior to application of dampproofing materials on concrete walls, holes and recesses resulting from the removal of form ties shall be sealed with a bituminous material or other *approved* methods or materials. Unit masonry walls shall be parged on the exterior surface below ground level with not less than $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) of Portland cement mortar. The parging shall be coved at the footing.

Exception: Parging of unit masonry walls is not required where a material is *approved* for direct application to the masonry.

1805.3 Waterproofing.
Where the ground-water investigation required by Section 1803.5.4 indicates that a hydrostatic pressure condition exists, and the design does not include a ground-water control system as described in Section 1805.1.3, walls and floors shall be waterproofed in accordance with this section.

1805.3.1 Floors.
Floors required to be waterproofed shall be of concrete and designed and constructed to withstand the hydrostatic pressures to which the floors will be subjected.

Waterproofing shall be accomplished by placing a membrane of rubberized asphalt, butyl rubber, fully adhered/fully bonded HDPE or polyolefin composite membrane or not less than 6-mil [0.006 inch (0.152 mm)] polyvinyl chloride with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm) or other *approved* materials under the slab. Joints in the membrane shall be lapped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1805.3.2 Walls.
Walls required to be waterproofed shall be of concrete or masonry and shall be designed and constructed to withstand the hydrostatic pressures and other lateral loads to which the walls will be subjected.

`

Waterproofing shall be applied from the bottom of the wall to not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the maximum elevation of the ground-water table. The remainder of the wall shall be dampproofed in accordance with Section 1805.2.2. Waterproofing shall consist of two-ply hot-mopped felts, not less than 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.152 mm) polyvinyl chloride, 40-mil (0.040 inch; 1.02 mm) polymer-modified asphalt, 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.152 mm) polyethylene or other *approved* methods or materials capable of bridging nonstructural cracks. Joints in the membrane shall be lapped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1805.3.2.1 Surface preparation of walls.
Prior to the application of waterproofing materials on concrete or masonry walls, the walls shall be prepared in accordance with Section 1805.2.2.1.

1805.3.3 Joints and penetrations.
Joints in walls and floors, joints between the wall and floor and penetrations of the wall and floor shall be made water tight utilizing *approved* methods and materials.

1805.4 Subsoil drainage system.
Where a hydrostatic pressure condition does not exist, dampproofing shall be provided and a base shall be installed under the floor and a drain installed around the foundation perimeter. A subsoil drainage system designed and constructed in accordance with Section 1805.1.3 shall be deemed adequate for lowering the groundwater table.

1805.4.1 Floor base course.
Floors of basements, except as provided for in Section 1805.1.1, shall be placed over a floor base course not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness that consists of gravel or crushed stone containing not more than 10 percent of material that passes through a No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve.

Exception: Where a site is located in well-drained gravel or sand/gravel mixture soils, a floor base course is not required.

1805.4.2 Foundation drain.
A drain shall be placed around the perimeter of a foundation that consists of gravel or crushed stone containing not more than 10-percent material that passes through a No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve. The drain shall extend a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the outside edge of the footing. The thickness shall be such that the bottom of the drain is not higher than the bottom of the base under the floor, and that the top of the drain is not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the top of the footing. The top of the drain shall be covered with an *approved* filter membrane material. Where a drain tile or perforated pipe is used, the invert of the pipe or tile shall not be higher than the floor elevation. The top of joints or the top of perforations shall be protected with an *approved* filter membrane material. The pipe or tile shall be placed on not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of gravel or crushed stone complying with Section 1805.4.1, and shall be covered with not less than 6 inches (152 mm) of the same material.

1805.4.3 Drainage discharge.
The floor base and foundation perimeter drain shall discharge by gravity or mechanical means into an *approved* drainage system that complies with the *International Plumbing Code*.

`

Exception: Where a site is located in well-drained gravel or sand/gravel mixture soils, a dedicated drainage system is not required.

SECTION 1806
PRESUMPTIVE LOAD-BEARING VALUES OF SOILS

1806.1 Load combinations.
The presumptive load-bearing values provided in Table 1806.2 shall be used with the *allowable stress design* load combinations specified in Section 1605.3. The values of vertical foundation pressure and lateral bearing pressure given in Table 1806.2 shall be permitted to be increased by one-third where used with the alternative basic load combinations of Section 1605.3.2 that include wind or earthquake loads.

1806.2 Presumptive load-bearing values.
The load-bearing values used in design for supporting soils near the surface shall not exceed the values specified in Table 1806.2 unless data to substantiate the use of higher values are submitted and *approved*. Where the *building official* has reason to doubt the classification, strength or compressibility of the soil, the requirements of Section 1803.5.2 shall be satisfied.

Presumptive load-bearing values shall apply to materials with similar physical characteristics and dispositions. Mud, organic silt, organic clays, peat or unprepared fill shall not be assumed to have a presumptive load-bearing capacity unless data to substantiate the use of such a value are submitted.

Exception: A presumptive load-bearing capacity shall be permitted to be used where the *building official* deems the load-bearing capacity of mud, organic silt or unprepared fill is adequate for the support of lightweight or temporary structures.

TABLE 1806.2
PRESUMPTIVE LOAD-BEARING VALUES

CLASS OF MATERIALS	VERTICAL FOUNDATION PRESSURE (psf)	LATERAL BEARING PRESSURE (psf/ft below natural grade)	LATERAL SLIDING RESISTANCE	
			Coefficient of friction[a]	Cohesion (psf)[b]
1. Crystalline bedrock	12,000	1,200	0.70	—
2. Sedimentary and foliated rock	4,000	400	0.35	—
3. Sandy gravel and/or gravel (GW and GP)	3,000	200	0.35	—
4. Sand, silty sand, clayey sand, silty gravel and clayey gravel (SW, SP, SM, SC, GM and GC)	2,000	150	0.25	—

`

5. Clay, sandy clay, silty clay, clayey silt, silt and sandy silt (CL, ML, MH and CH)	1,500	100	—	130

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.
a. Coefficient to be multiplied by the dead load.
b. Cohesion value to be multiplied by the contact area, as limited by Section 1806.3.2.

1806.3 Lateral load resistance.
Where the presumptive values of Table 1806.2 are used to determine resistance to lateral loads, the calculations shall be in accordance with Sections 1806.3.1 through 1806.3.4.

1806.3.1 Combined resistance.
The total resistance to lateral loads shall be permitted to be determined by combining the values derived from the lateral bearing pressure and the lateral sliding resistance specified in Table 1806.2.

1806.3.2 Lateral sliding resistance limit.
For clay, sandy clay, silty clay, clayey silt, silt and sandy silt, in no case shall the lateral sliding resistance exceed one-half the dead load.

1806.3.3 Increase for depth.
The lateral bearing pressures specified in Table 1806.2 shall be permitted to be increased by the tabular value for each additional foot (305 mm) of depth to a maximum of 15 times the tabular value.

1806.3.4 Increase for poles.
Isolated poles for uses such as flagpoles or signs and poles used to support buildings that are not adversely affected by a $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) motion at the ground surface due to short-term lateral loads shall be permitted to be designed using lateral bearing pressures equal to two times the tabular values.

SECTION 1807
FOUNDATION WALLS, RETAINING WALLS AND EMBEDDED POSTS AND POLES

1807.1 Foundation walls.
Foundation walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1807.1.1 through 1807.1.6. Foundation walls shall be supported by foundations designed in accordance with Section 1808.

1807.1.1 Design lateral soil loads.
Foundation walls shall be designed for the lateral soil loads set forth in Section 1610.

1807.1.2 Unbalanced backfill height.
Unbalanced backfill height is the difference in height between the exterior finish ground level and the lower of the top of the concrete footing that supports the foundation wall or the interior finish ground level. Where an interior concrete slab on grade is provided and is in contact with the interior surface of the foundation wall, the unbalanced backfill height shall

be permitted to be measured from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the interior concrete slab.

1807.1.3 Rubble stone foundation walls.
Foundation walls of rough or random rubble stone shall not be less than 16 inches (406 mm) thick. Rubble stone shall not be used for foundation walls of structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F.

1807.1.4 Permanent wood foundation systems.
Permanent wood foundation systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with AWC PWF. Lumber and plywood shall be treated in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B and Section 5.2) and shall be identified in accordance with Section 2303.1.9.1.

1807.1.5 Concrete and masonry foundation walls.
Concrete and masonry foundation walls shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 19 or 21, as applicable.

Exception: Concrete and masonry foundation walls shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with Section 1807.1.6.

1807.1.6 Prescriptive design of concrete and masonry foundation walls.
Concrete and masonry foundation walls that are laterally supported at the top and bottom shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with this section.

1807.1.6.1 Foundation wall thickness.
The thickness of prescriptively designed foundation walls shall not be less than the thickness of the wall supported, except that foundation walls of at least 8-inch (203 mm) nominal width shall be permitted to support brick-veneered frame walls and 10-inch-wide (254 mm) cavity walls provided the requirements of Section 1807.1.6.2 or 1807.1.6.3 are met.

1807.1.6.2 Concrete foundation walls.
Concrete foundation walls shall comply with the following:

1. The thickness shall comply with the requirements of Table 1807.1.6.2.

2. The size and spacing of vertical reinforcement shown in Table 1807.1.6.2 are based on the use of reinforcement with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 pounds per square inch (psi) (414 MPa).Vertical reinforcement with a minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi (276 MPa) or 50,000 psi (345 MPa) shall be permitted, provided the same size bar is used and the spacing shown in the table is reduced by multiplying the spacing by 0.67 or 0.83, respectively.

3. Vertical reinforcement, when required, shall be placed nearest the inside face of the wall a distance, *d*, from the outside face (soil face) of the wall. The distance, *d*, is equal to the wall thickness, *t*, minus 1.25 inches (32 mm) plus one-half the bar diameter, d_b, [$d = t - (1.25 + d_b / 2)$]. The reinforcement shall be placed within a tolerance of ± $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) where *d* is less than or equal to 8 inches (203 mm) or ± $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) where *d* is greater than 8 inches (203 mm).

`

4. In lieu of the reinforcement shown in Table 1807.1.6.2, smaller reinforcing bar sizes with closer spacings that provide an equivalent cross-sectional area of reinforcement per unit length shall be permitted.

5. Concrete cover for reinforcement measured from the inside face of the wall shall not be less than $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm). Concrete cover for reinforcement measured from the outside face of the wall shall not be less than $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm) for No. 5 bars and smaller, and not less than 2 inches (51 mm) for larger bars.

6. Concrete shall have a specified compressive strength, f'_c, of not less than 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa).

7. The unfactored axial load per linear foot of wall shall not exceed 1.2 $t f'_c$ where t is the specified wall thickness in inches.

TABLE 1807.1.6.2
CONCRETE FOUNDATION WALLS[b, c]

MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT[e] (feet)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)								
		Design lateral soil load[a] (psf per foot of depth)								
		30[d]			45[d]			60		
		Minimum wall thickness (inches)								
		7.5	9.5	11.5	7.5	9.5	11.5	7.5	9.5	11.5
5	4 5	PC PC	PC PC	PC PC	PC PC	PC PC	PC PC	PC PC	PC PC	PC PC
6	4 5 6	PC PC PC	PC PC PC	PC PC PC	PC PC PC	PC PC PC	PC PC PC	PC PC PC	PC PC PC	PC PC PC

`

7	4 5 6 7	PCPCPCPC	PCPCPCPCPC	PCPCPCPCPC	PCPCPC #5 at 46	PCPCPCPCPC	PCPCPCPCPC	PCPC #5 at 48 #6 at 48	PCPCPCPCPC	PCPCPCPCPC
8	4 5 6 7 8	PCPCPCPCPC #5 at 47	PCPCPCPCPCPCPC	PCPCPCPCPCPCPC	PCPCPCPC #5 at 41 #6 at 43	PCPCPCPCPCPCPC	PCPCPCPCPCPCPC	PCPC #5 at 43 #6 at 43 #6 at 32	PCPCPCPCPC #6 at 44	PCPCPCPCPCPCPC
9	4 5 6 7 8 9[d]	PCPCPCPCPC #5 at 41 #6 at 46	PCPCPCPCPCPCPC	PCPCPCPCPCPCPC	PCPCPCPC #5 at 37 #6 at 38 #7 at 41	PCPCPCPCPC #5 at 37 #6 at 41	PCPCPCPCPCPCPC	PCPC #5 at 39 #6 at 38 #7 at 39 #7 at 31	PCPCPCPC #5 at 37 #6 at 39 #7 at 41	PCPCPCPCPC #4 at 48 #6 at 39

`

10	4 5 6 7 8 9[d] 10[d]	PC PC PC #5 at 38 #6 at 41 #7 at 45	PC PC PC PC #4 at 48 #6 at 45	PC PC PC PC PC	PC PC PC #6 at 48 #7 at 47 #7 at 37 #7 at 31	PC PC PC #6 at 47 #7 at 48 #7 at 40	PC PC PC PC #4 at 48 #6 at 38	PC PC #5 at 37 #6 at 35 #7 at 35 #6 at 22 #6 at 22	PC PC PC #6 at 48 #7 at 47 #7 at 37 #7 at 30	PC PC PC #6 at 45 #7 at 47 #7 at 38

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.
a. For design lateral soil loads, see Section 1610.
b. Provisions for this table are based on design and construction requirements specified in Section 1807.1.6.2.
c. “PC” means plain concrete.
d. Where unbalanced backfill height exceeds 8 feet and design lateral soil loads from Table 1610.1 are used, the requirements for 30 and 45 psf per foot of depth are not applicable (see Section 1610).
e. For height of unbalanced backfill, see Section 1807.1.2.

1807.1.6.2.1 Seismic requirements.
Based on the *seismic design category* assigned to the structure in accordance with Section 1613, concrete foundation walls designed using Table 1807.1.6.2 shall be subject to the following limitations:

1. *Seismic Design Categories* A and B. Not less than one No. 5 bar shall be provided around window, door and similar sized openings. The bar shall be anchored to develop f_y in tension at the corners of openings.

2. *Seismic Design Categories* C, D, E and F. Tables shall not be used except as allowed for plain concrete members in Section 1905.1.7.

1807.1.6.3 Masonry foundation walls.
Masonry foundation walls shall comply with the following:

1. The thickness shall comply with the requirements of Table 1807.1.6.3(1) for plain masonry walls or Table 1807.1.6.3(2), 1807.1.6.3(3) or 1807.1.6.3(4) for masonry walls with reinforcement.

2. Vertical reinforcement shall have a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi (414 MPa).

3. The specified location of the reinforcement shall equal or exceed the effective depth distance, *d*, noted in Tables 1807.1.6.3(2), 1807.1.6.3(3) and 1807.1.6.3(4) and shall be measured from the face of the exterior (soil) side of the wall to the

`

center of the vertical reinforcement. The reinforcement shall be placed within the tolerances specified in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, Article 3.4.B.11, of the specified location.

4. Grout shall comply with Section 2103.3.

5. Concrete masonry units shall comply with ASTM C90.

6. Clay masonry units shall comply with ASTM C652 for hollow brick, except compliance with ASTM C62 or ASTM C216 shall be permitted where solid masonry units are installed in accordance with Table 1807.1.6.3(1) for plain masonry.

7. Masonry units shall be laid in running bond and installed with Type M or S mortar in accordance with Section 2103.2.1.

8. The unfactored axial load per linear foot of wall shall not exceed $1.2\, t\, f'_m$ where t is the specified wall thickness in inches and f'_m is the specified compressive strength of masonry in pounds per square inch.

9. At least 4 inches (102 mm) of solid masonry shall be provided at girder supports at the top of hollow masonry unit foundation walls.

10. Corbeling of masonry shall be in accordance with Section 2104.1. Where an 8-inch (203 mm) wall is corbeled, the top corbel shall not extend higher than the bottom of the floor framing and shall be a full course of headers at least 6 inches (152 mm) in length or the top course bed joint shall be tied to the vertical wall projection. The tie shall be W2.8 (4.8 mm) and spaced at a maximum horizontal distance of 36 inches (914 mm). The hollow space behind the corbelled masonry shall be filled with mortar or grout.

TABLE 1807.1.6.3(1)
PLAIN MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS[a, b, c]

MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT[e] (feet)	MINIMUM NOMINAL WALL THICKNESS (inches)		
		Design lateral soil load[a] (psf per foot of depth)		
		30[f]	45[f]	60
7	4 (or less)	8	8	8
	5	8	10	10
	6	10	12	10 (solid[c])
	7	12	10 (solid[c])	10 (solid[c])

`

8	4 (or less) 5 6 7 8	8 8 10 12 10 (solid[c])	8 10 12 12 (solid[c]) 12 (solid[c])	8 12 12 (solid[c]) Note d Note d
9	4 (or less) 5 6 7 8 9f	8 8 12 12 (solid[c]) 12 (solid[c]) Note d	8 10 12 12 (solid[c]) Note d Note d	8 12 12 (solid[c]) Note d Note d Note d

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.

a. For design lateral soil loads, see Section 1610.
b. Provisions for this table are based on design and construction requirements specified in Section 1807.1.6.3.
c. Solid grouted hollow units or solid masonry units.
d. A design in compliance with Chapter 21 or reinforcement in accordance with Table 1807.1.6.3(2) is required.
e. For height of unbalanced backfill, see Section 1807.1.2.
f. Where unbalanced backfill height exceeds 8 feet and design lateral soil loads from Table 1610.1 are used, the requirements for 30 and 45 psf per foot of depth are not applicable (see Section 1610).

TABLE 1807.1.6.3(2)

8-INCH MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS WITH REINFORCEMENT WHERE d ≥ 5 INCHES[a, b, c]

MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet-inches)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT[d] (feet-inches)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)		
		Design lateral soil load[a] (psf per foot of depth)		
		30[e]	45[e]	60
7-4	4-0 (or less) 5-0 6-0 7-4	#4 at 48 #4 at 48 #4 at 48 #5 at 48	#4 at 48 #4 at 48 #5 at 48 #6 at 48	#4 at 48 #4 at 48 #5 at 48 #7 at 48
8-0	4-0 (or less) 5-0 6-0 7-0 8-0	#4 at 48 #4 at 48 #4 at 48 #5 at 48 #5 at 48	#4 at 48 #4 at 48 #5 at 48 #6 at 48 #6 at 48	#4 at 48 #4 at 48 #5 at 48 #7 at 48 #7 at 48
8-8	4-0 (or less) 5-0 6-0 7-0 8-8[e]	#4 at 48 #4 at 48 #4 at 48 #5 at 48 #6 at 48	#4 at 48 #4 at 48 #5 at 48 #6 at 48 #7 at 48	#4 at 48 #5 at 48 #6 at 48 #7 at 48 #8 at 48

`

9-4	4-0 (or less) 5-0 6-0 7-0 8-0 9-4[e]	#4 at 48 #4 at 48 #4 at 48 #5 at 48 #6 at 48 #7 at 48	#4 at 48 #4 at 48 #5 at 48 #6 at 48 #7 at 48 #8 at 48	#4 at 48 #5 at 48 #6 at 48 #7 at 48 #8 at 48 #9 at 48
10-0	4-0 (or less) 5-0 6-0 7-0 8-0 9-0e 10-0[e]	#4 at 48 #4 at 48 #4 at 48 #5 at 48 #6 at 48 #7 at 48 #7 at 48	#4 at 48 #4 at 48 #5 at 48 #6 at 48 #7 at 48 #8 at 48 #9 at 48	#4 at 48 #5 at 48 #6 at 48 #7 at 48 #8 at 48 #9 at 48 #9 at 48

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.
a. For design lateral soil loads, see Section 1610.
b. Provisions for this table are based on design and construction requirements specified in Section 1807.1.6.3.
c. For alternative reinforcement, see Section 1807.1.6.3.1.
d. For height of unbalanced backfill, see Section 1807.1.2.
e. Where unbalanced backfill height exceeds 8 feet and design lateral soil loads from Table 1610.1 are used, the requirements for 30 and 45 psf per foot of depth are not applicable. See Section 1610.

TABLE 1807.1.6.3(3)
10-INCH MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS WITH REINFORCEMENT WHERE d □≥ 6.75 INCHES [a, b, c]

MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet-inches)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT[d] (feet-inches)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)		
		Design lateral soil load[a] (psf per foot of depth)		
		30[e]	45[e]	60
7-4	4-0 (or less) 5-0 6-0 7-4	#4 at 56 #4 at 56 #4 at 56 #4 at 56	#4 at 56 #4 at 56 #4 at 56 #5 at 56	#4 at 56 #4 at 56 #5 at 56 #6 at 56
8-0	4-0 (or less) 5-0 6-0 7-0 8-0	#4 at 56 #4 at 56 #4 at 56 #4 at 56 #5 at 56	#4 at 56 #4 at 56 #4 at 56 #5 at 56 #6 at 56	#4 at 56 #4 at 56 #5 at 56 #6 at 56 #7 at 56
8-8	4-0 (or less) 5-0 6-0 7-0 8-8[e]	#4 at 56 #4 at 56 #4 at 56 #4 at 56 #5 at 56	#4 at 56 #4 at 56 #4 at 56 #5 at 56 #7 at 56	#4 at 56 #4 at 56 #5 at 56 #6 at 56 #8 at 56

`

9-4	4-0 (or less) 5-0 6-0 7-0 8-0 9-4[e]	#4 at 56 #4 at 56 #4 at 56 #4 at 56 #5 at 56 #6 at 56	#4 at 56 #4 at 56 #5 at 56 #5 at 56 #6 at 56 #7 at 56	#4 at 56 #4 at 56 #5 at 56 #6 at 56 #7 at 56 #7 at 56
10-0	4-0 (or less) 5-0 6-0 7-0 8-0 9-0[e] 10-0[e]	#4 at 56 #4 at 56 #4 at 56 #5 at 56 #5 at 56 #6 at 56 #7 at 56	#4 at 56 #4 at 56 #5 at 56 #6 at 56 #7 at 56 #7 at 56 #8 at 56	#4 at 56 #4 at 56 #5 at 56 #7 at 56 #8 at 56 #9 at 56 #9 at 56

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 1.157 kPa/m.

a. For design lateral soil loads, see Section 1610.

b. Provisions for this table are based on design and construction requirements specified in Section 1807.1.6.3.

c. For alternative reinforcement, see Section 1807.1.6.3.1.

d. For height of unbalanced backfill, see Section 1807.1.2.

e. Where unbalanced backfill height exceeds 8 feet and design lateral soil loads from Table 1610.1 are used, the requirements for 30 and 45 psf per foot of depth are not applicable. See Section 1610.

TABLE 1807.1.6.3(4)
12-INCH MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS WITH REINFORCEMENT WHERE d □≥ 8.75 INCHES[a, b, c]

MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet-inches)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT[d] (feet-inches)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)		
		Design lateral soil load[a] (psf per foot of depth)		
		30[e]	45[e]	60
7-4	4 (or less) 5-0 6-0 7-4	#4 at 72 #4 at 72 #4 at 72 #4 at 72	#4 at 72 #4 at 72 #4 at 72 #5 at 72	#4 at 72 #4 at 72 #5 at 72 #6 at 72
8-0	4 (or less) 5-0 6-0 7-0 8-0	#4 at 72 #4 at 72 #4 at 72 #4 at 72 #5 at 72	#4 at 72 #4 at 72 #4 at 72 #5 at 72 #6 at 72	#4 at 72 #4 at 72 #5 at 72 #6 at 72 #8 at 72
8-8	4 (or less) 5-0 6-0 7-0 8-8e	#4 at 72 #4 at 72 #4 at 72 #4 at 72 #5 at 72	#4 at 72 #4 at 72 #4 at 72 #5 at 72 #7 at 72	#4 at 72 #4 at 72 #5 at 72 #6 at 72 #8 at 72

`

9-4	4 (or less) 5-0 6-0 7-0 8-0 9-4[e]	#4 at 72 #4 at 72 #4 at 72 #4 at 72 #5 at 72 #6 at 72	#4 at 72 #4 at 72 #5 at 72 #5 at 72 #6 at 72 #7 at 72	#4 at 72 #4 at 72 #5 at 72 #6 at 72 #7 at 72 #8 at 72
10-0	4 (or less) 5-0 6-0 7-0 8-0 9-0[e] 10-0[e]	#4 at 72 #4 at 72 #4 at 72 #4 at 72 #5 at 72 #6 at 72 #7 at 72	#4 at 72 #4 at 72 #5 at 72 #6 at 72 #6 at 72 #7 at 72 #8 at 72	#4 at 72 #4 at 72 #5 at 72 #6 at 72 #7 at 72 #8 at 72 #9 at 72

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.
a. For design lateral soil loads, see Section 1610.
b. Provisions for this table are based on design and construction requirements specified in Section 1807.1.6.3.
c. For alternative reinforcement, see Section 1807.1.6.3.1.
d. For height of unbalanced backfill, see Section 1807.1.2.
e Where unbalanced backfill height exceeds 8 feet and design lateral soil loads from Table 1610.1 are used, the requirements for 30 and 45 psf per foot of depth are not applicable. See Section 1610.

1807.1.6.3.1 Alternative foundation wall reinforcement.
In lieu of the reinforcement provisions for masonry foundation walls in Table 1807.1.6.3(2), 1807.1.6.3(3) or 1807.1.6.3(4), alternative reinforcing bar sizes and spacings having an equivalent cross-sectional area of reinforcement per linear foot (mm) of wall shall be permitted to be used, provided the spacing of reinforcement does not exceed 72 inches (1829 mm) and reinforcing bar sizes do not exceed No. 11.

1807.1.6.3.2 Seismic requirements.
Based on the *seismic design category* assigned to the structure in accordance with Section 1613, masonry foundation walls designed using Tables 1807.1.6.3(1) through 1807.1.6.3(4) shall be subject to the following limitations:

1. *Seismic Design Categories* A and B. No additional seismic requirements.

2. *Seismic Design Category* C. A design using Tables 1807.1.6.3(1) through 1807.1.6.3(4) is subject to the seismic requirements of Section 7.4.3 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

3. *Seismic Design Category* D. A design using Tables 1807.1.6.3(2) through 1807.1.6.3(4) is subject to the seismic requirements of Section 7.4.4 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

4. *Seismic Design Categories* E and F. A design using Tables 1807.1.6.3(2) through 1807.1.6.3(4) is subject to the seismic requirements of Section 7.4.5 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ ASCE 5.

1807.2 Retaining walls.
Retaining walls shall be designed in accordance with Sections 1807.2.1 through 1807.2.3.

`

1807.2.1 General.
Retaining walls shall be designed to ensure stability against overturning, sliding, excessive foundation pressure and water uplift. Where a keyway is extended below the wall base with the intent to engage passive pressure and enhance sliding stability, lateral soil pressures on both sides of the keyway shall be considered in the sliding analysis.

1807.2.2 Design lateral soil loads.
Retaining walls shall be designed for the lateral soil loads set forth in Section 1610.

1807.2.3 Safety factor.
Retaining walls shall be designed to resist the lateral action of soil to produce sliding and overturning with a minimum safety factor of 1.5 in each case. The load combinations of Section 1605 shall not apply to this requirement. Instead, design shall be based on 0.7 times nominal earthquake loads, 1.0 times other *nominal loads*, and investigation with one or more of the variable loads set to zero. The safety factor against lateral sliding shall be taken as the available soil resistance at the base of the retaining wall foundation divided by the net lateral force applied to the retaining wall.

Exception: Where earthquake loads are included, the minimum safety factor for retaining wall sliding and overturning shall be 1.1.

1807.3 Embedded posts and poles.
Designs to resist both axial and lateral loads employing posts or poles as columns embedded in earth or in concrete footings in earth shall be in accordance with Sections 1807.3.1 through 1807.3.3.

1807.3.1 Limitations.
The design procedures outlined in this section are subject to the following limitations:

1. The frictional resistance for structural walls and slabs on silts and clays shall be limited to one-half of the normal force imposed on the soil by the weight of the footing or slab.

2. Posts embedded in earth shall not be used to provide lateral support for structural or nonstructural materials such as plaster, masonry or concrete unless bracing is provided that develops the limited deflection required.

Wood poles shall be treated in accordance with AWPA U1 for sawn timber posts (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B) and for round timber posts (Commodity Specification B, Use Category 4B).

1807.3.2 Design criteria.
The depth to resist lateral loads shall be determined using the design criteria established in Sections 1807.3.2.1 through 1807.3.2.3, or by other methods *approved* by the *building official*.

1807.3.2.1 Nonconstrained.
The following formula shall be used in determining the depth of embedment required to resist lateral loads where no lateral constraint is provided at the ground surface, such as by a rigid floor or rigid ground surface pavement, and where no lateral constraint is provided above the ground surface, such as by a structural diaphragm.

$$d = 0.5A\{1 + [1 + (4.36h/A)]^{1/2}\} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 18-1)}$$

`

where:

A	=	$2.34P/(S_1 b)$.
b	=	Diameter of round post or footing or diagonal dimension of square post or footing, feet (m).
d	=	Depth of embedment in earth in feet (m) but not over 12 feet (3658 mm) for purpose of computing lateral pressure.
h	=	Distance in feet (m) from ground surface to point of application of "*P*."
P	=	Applied lateral force in pounds (kN).
S_1	=	Allowable lateral soil-bearing pressure as set forth in Section 1806.2 based on a depth of one-third the depth of embedment in pounds per square foot (psf) (kPa).

1807.3.2.2 Constrained.
The following formula shall be used to determine the depth of embedment required to resist lateral loads where lateral constraint is provided at the ground surface, such as by a rigid floor or pavement.

$$d = \sqrt[4]{\frac{4.25Ph}{S_3 b}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 18-2)}$$

or alternatively

$$d = \sqrt{\frac{4.25M_g}{S_3 b}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 18-3)}$$

where:

M_g	=	Moment in the post at grade, in foot-pounds (kN-m).
S_3	=	Allowable lateral soil-bearing pressure as set forth in Section 1806.2 based on a depth equal to the depth of embedment in pounds per square foot (kPa).

1807.3.2.3 Vertical load.
The resistance to vertical loads shall be determined using the vertical foundation pressure set forth in Table 1806.2.

`

1807.3.3 Backfill.
The backfill in the annular space around columns not embedded in poured footings shall be by one of the following methods:

1. Backfill shall be of concrete with a specified compressive strength of not less than 2,000 psi (13.8 MPa). The hole shall not be less than 4 inches (102 mm) larger than the diameter of the column at its bottom or 4 inches (102 mm) larger than the diagonal dimension of a square or rectangular column.

2. Backfill shall be of clean sand. The sand shall be thoroughly compacted by tamping in layers not more than 8 inches (203 mm) in depth.

3. Backfill shall be of controlled low-strength material (CLSM).

SECTION 1808
FOUNDATIONS

1808.1 General.
Foundations shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1808.2 through 1808.9. Shallow foundations shall also satisfy the requirements of Section 1809. Deep foundations shall also satisfy the requirements of Section 1810.

1808.2 Design for capacity and settlement.
Foundations shall be so designed that the allowable bearing capacity of the soil is not exceeded, and that differential settlement is minimized. Foundations in areas with expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of Section 1808.6.

1808.3 Design loads.
Foundations shall be designed for the most unfavorable effects due to the combinations of loads specified in Section 1605.2 or 1605.3. The dead load is permitted to include the weight of foundations and overlying fill. Reduced live loads, as specified in Sections 1607.10 and 1607.12, shall be permitted to be used in the design of foundations.

1808.3.1 Seismic overturning.
Where foundations are proportioned using the load combinations of Section 1605.2 or 1605.3.1, and the computation of seismic overturning effects is by equivalent lateral force analysis or modal analysis, the proportioning shall be in accordance with Section 12.13.4 of ASCE 7.

1808.3.2 Surcharge.
No fill or other surcharge loads shall be placed adjacent to any building or structure unless such building or structure is capable of withstanding the additional loads caused by the fill or the surcharge. Existing footings or foundations that will be affected by any excavation shall be underpinned or otherwise protected against settlement and shall be protected against detrimental lateral or vertical movement or both.

Exception: Minor grading for landscaping purposes shall be permitted where done with walk-behind equipment, where the grade is not increased more than 1 foot (305 mm) from original design grade or where *approved* by the *building official*.

1808.4 Vibratory loads.
Where machinery operations or other vibrations are transmitted through the foundation,

`

consideration shall be given in the foundation design to prevent detrimental disturbances of the soil.

1808.5 Shifting or moving soils.
Where it is known that the shallow subsoils are of a shifting or moving character, foundations shall be carried to a sufficient depth to ensure stability.

1808.6 Design for expansive soils.
Foundations for buildings and structures founded on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2.

Exception: Foundation design need not comply with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2 where one of the following conditions is satisfied:

1. The soil is removed in accordance with Section 1808.6.3.

2. The *building official* approves stabilization of the soil in accordance with Section 1808.6.4.

1808.6.1 Foundations.
Foundations placed on or within the active zone of expansive soils shall be designed to resist differential volume changes and to prevent structural damage to the supported structure. Deflection and racking of the supported structure shall be limited to that which will not interfere with the usability and serviceability of the structure.

Foundations placed below where volume change occurs or below expansive soil shall comply with the following provisions:

1. Foundations extending into or penetrating expansive soils shall be designed to prevent uplift of the supported structure.

2. Foundations penetrating expansive soils shall be designed to resist forces exerted on the foundation due to soil volume changes or shall be isolated from the expansive soil.

1808.6.2 Slab-on-ground foundations.
Moments, shears and deflections for use in designing slab-on-ground, mat or raft foundations on expansive soils shall be determined in accordance with *WRI/CRSI Design of Slab-on-Ground Foundations* or *PTI DC 10.5.* Using the moments, shears and deflections determined above, nonprestressed slabs-on-ground, mat or raft foundations on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with *WRI/CRSI Design of Slab-on-Ground Foundations* and post-tensioned slab-on-ground, mat or raft foundations on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with *PTI DC 10.5*. It shall be permitted to analyze and design such slabs by other methods that account for soil-structure interaction, the deformed shape of the soil support, the plate or stiffened plate action of the slab as well as both center lift and edge lift conditions. Such alternative methods shall be rational and the basis for all aspects and parameters of the method shall be available for peer review.

1808.6.3 Removal of expansive soil.
Where expansive soil is removed in lieu of designing foundations in accordance with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2, the soil shall be removed to a depth sufficient to ensure a constant moisture content in the remaining soil. Fill material shall not contain expansive soils and shall comply with Section 1804.5 or 1804.6.

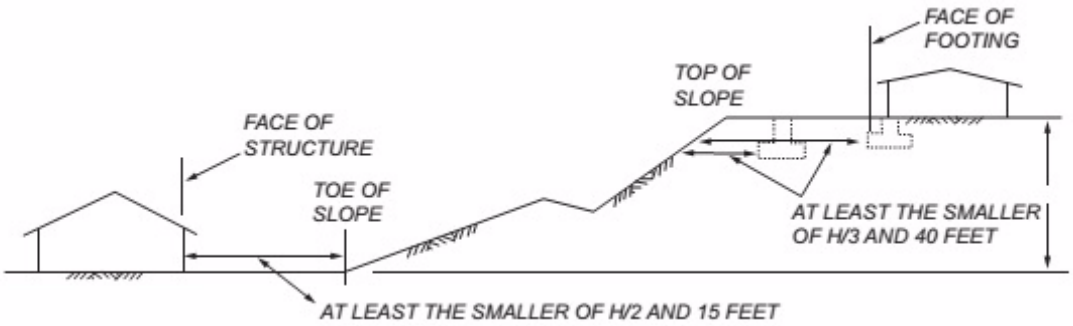
`

Exception: Expansive soil need not be removed to the depth of constant moisture, provided the confining pressure in the expansive soil created by the fill and supported structure exceeds the swell pressure.

1808.6.4 Stabilization.
Where the active zone of expansive soils is stabilized in lieu of designing foundations in accordance with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2, the soil shall be stabilized by chemical, dewatering, presaturation or equivalent techniques.

1808.7 Foundations on or adjacent to slopes.
The placement of buildings and structures on or adjacent to slopes steeper than one unit vertical in three units horizontal (33.3-percent slope) shall comply with Sections 1808.7.1 through 1808.7.5.

1808.7.1 Building clearance from ascending slopes.
In general, buildings below slopes shall be set a sufficient distance from the slope to provide protection from slope drainage, erosion and shallow failures. Except as provided in Section 1808.7.5 and Figure 1808.7.1, the following criteria will be assumed to provide this protection. Where the existing slope is steeper than one unit vertical in one unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the toe of the slope shall be assumed to be at the intersection of a horizontal plane drawn from the top of the foundation and a plane drawn tangent to the slope at an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) to the horizontal. Where a retaining wall is constructed at the toe of the slope, the height of the slope shall be measured from the top of the wall to the top of the slope.



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 1808.7.1
FOUNDATION CLEARANCES FROM SLOPES

1808.7.2 Foundation setback from descending slope surface.
Foundations on or adjacent to slope surfaces shall be founded in firm material with an embedment and set back from the slope surface sufficient to provide vertical and lateral support for the foundation without detrimental settlement. Except as provided for in Section 1808.7.5 and Figure 1808.7.1, the following setback is deemed adequate to meet the criteria. Where the slope is steeper than 1 unit vertical in 1 unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the required setback shall be measured from an imaginary plane 45 degrees (0.79 rad) to the horizontal, projected upward from the toe of the slope.

`

1808.7.3 Pools.
The setback between pools regulated by this code and slopes shall be equal to one-half the building footing setback distance required by this section. That portion of the pool wall within a horizontal distance of 7 feet (2134 mm) from the top of the slope shall be capable of supporting the water in the pool without soil support.

1808.7.4 Foundation elevation.
On graded sites, the top of any exterior foundation shall extend above the elevation of the street gutter at point of discharge or the inlet of an *approved* drainage device a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) plus 2 percent. Alternate elevations are permitted subject to the approval of the *building official*, provided it can be demonstrated that required drainage to the point of discharge and away from the structure is provided at all locations on the site.

1808.7.5 Alternate setback and clearance.
Alternate setbacks and clearances are permitted, subject to the approval of the *building official*. The *building official* shall be permitted to require a geotechnical investigation as set forth in Section 1803.5.10.

1808.8 Concrete foundations.
The design, materials and construction of concrete foundations shall comply with Sections 1808.8.1 through 1808.8.6 and the provisions of Chapter 19.

Exception: Where concrete footings supporting walls of light-frame construction are designed in accordance with Table 1809.7, a specific design in accordance with Chapter 19 is not required.

1808.8.1 Concrete or grout strength and mix proportioning.
Concrete or grout in foundations shall have a specified compressive strength (f'_c) not less than the largest applicable value indicated in Table 1808.8.1.

Where concrete is placed through a funnel hopper at the top of a deep foundation element, the concrete mix shall be designed and proportioned so as to produce a cohesive workable mix having a slump of not less than 4 inches (102 mm) and not more than 8 inches (204 mm). Where concrete or grout is to be pumped, the mix design including slump shall be adjusted to produce a pumpable mixture.

TABLE 1808.8.1
MINIMUM SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH f'_c OF CONCRETE OR GROUT

FOUNDATION ELEMENT OR CONDITION	SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH, f'_c
1. Foundations for structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A, B or C	2,500 psi
2a. Foundations for Group R or U occupancies of light-frame construction, two stories or less in height, assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F	2,500 psi
2b. Foundations for other structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F	3,000 psi
3. Precast nonprestressed driven piles	4,000 psi

`

4. Socketed drilled shafts	4,000 psi
5. Micropiles	4,000 psi
6. Precast prestressed driven piles	5,000 psi

For SI: 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

1808.8.2 Concrete cover.
The concrete cover provided for prestressed and nonprestressed reinforcement in foundations shall be no less than the largest applicable value specified in Table 1808.8.2. Longitudinal bars spaced less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) clear distance apart shall be considered bundled bars for which the concrete cover provided shall also be no less than that required by Section 20.6.1.3.4 of ACI 318. Concrete cover shall be measured from the concrete surface to the outermost surface of the steel to which the cover requirement applies. Where concrete is placed in a temporary or permanent casing or a mandrel, the inside face of the casing or mandrel shall be considered the concrete surface.

TABLE 1808.8.2
MINIMUM CONCRETE COVER

FOUNDATION ELEMENT OR CONDITION	MINIMUM COVER
1. Shallow foundations	In accordance with Section 20.6 of ACI 318
2. Precast nonprestressed deep foundation elements Exposed to seawater Not manufactured under plant conditions Manufactured under plant control conditions	 3 inches 2 inches In accordance with Section 20.6.1.3.3 of ACI 318
3. Precast prestressed deep foundation elements Exposed to seawater Other	 2.5 inches In accordance with Section 20.6.1.3.3 of ACI 318
4. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements not enclosed by a steel pipe, tube or permanent casing	2.5 inches
5. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements enclosed by a steel pipe, tube or permanent casing	1 inch
6. Structural steel core within a steel pipe, tube or permanent casing	2 inches
7. Cast-in-place drilled shafts enclosed by a stable rock socket	1.5 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1808.8.3 Placement of concrete.
Concrete shall be placed in such a manner as to ensure the exclusion of any foreign matter and to secure a full-size foundation. Concrete shall not be placed through water unless a tremie or other method *approved* by the *building official* is used. Where placed under or in the presence of water, the concrete shall be deposited by *approved* means to ensure minimum segregation of the mix and negligible turbulence of the water. Where depositing

`

concrete from the top of a deep foundation element, the concrete shall be chuted directly into smooth-sided pipes or tubes or placed in a rapid and continuous operation through a funnel hopper centered at the top of the element.

1808.8.4 Protection of concrete.
Concrete foundations shall be protected from freezing during depositing and for a period of not less than five days thereafter. Water shall not be allowed to flow through the deposited concrete.

1808.8.5 Forming of concrete.
Concrete foundations are permitted to be cast against the earth where, in the opinion of the *building official*, soil conditions do not require formwork. Where formwork is required, it shall be in accordance with Section 26.11 of ACI 318.

1808.8.6 Seismic requirements.
See Section 1905 for additional requirements for foundations of structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F.

For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, provisions of Section 18.13 of ACI 318 shall apply where not in conflict with the provisions of Sections 1808 through 1810.

Exceptions:

1. Detached one- and two-family dwellings of light-frame construction and two stories or less above *grade plane* are not required to comply with the provisions of Section 18.13 of ACI 318.

2. Section 18.13.4.3(a) of ACI 318 shall not apply.

1808.9 Vertical masonry foundation elements.
Vertical masonry foundation elements that are not foundation piers as defined in Section 202 shall be designed as piers, walls or columns, as applicable, in accordance with TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

SECTION 1809
SHALLOW FOUNDATIONS

1809.1 General.
Shallow foundations shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1809.2 through 1809.13.

1809.2 Supporting soils.
Shallow foundations shall be built on undisturbed soil, compacted fill material or controlled low-strength material (CLSM). Compacted fill material shall be placed in accordance with Section 1804.5. CLSM shall be placed in accordance with Section 1804.6.

1809.3 Stepped footings.
The top surface of footings shall be level. The bottom surface of footings shall be permitted to have a slope not exceeding one unit vertical in 10 units horizontal (10-percent slope). Footings shall be stepped where it is necessary to change the elevation of the top surface of the footing or where the surface of the ground slopes more than one unit vertical in 10 units horizontal (10-percent slope).

`

1809.4 Depth and width of footings.
The minimum depth of footings below the undisturbed ground surface shall be 12 inches (305 mm). Where applicable, the requirements of Section 1809.5 shall also be satisfied. The minimum width of footings shall be 12 inches (305 mm).

1809.5 Frost protection.
Except where otherwise protected from frost, foundations and other permanent supports of buildings and structures shall be protected from frost by one or more of the following methods:

1. Extending below the frost line of the locality.

2. Constructing in accordance with ASCE 32.

3. Erecting on solid rock.

   Exception: Free-standing buildings meeting all of the following conditions shall not be required to be protected:

   1. Assigned to *Risk Category* I.

   2. Area of 600 square feet (56 m^2) or less for light-frame construction or 400 square feet (37 m^2) or less for other than light-frame construction.

   3. Eave height of 10 feet (3048 mm) or less.

Shallow foundations shall not bear on frozen soil unless such frozen condition is of a permanent character.

1809.6 Location of footings.
Footings on granular soil shall be so located that the line drawn between the lower edges of adjoining footings shall not have a slope steeper than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) with the horizontal, unless the material supporting the higher footing is braced or retained or otherwise laterally supported in an *approved* manner or a greater slope has been properly established by engineering analysis.

1809.7 Prescriptive footings for light-frame construction.
Where a specific design is not provided, concrete or masonry-unit footings supporting walls of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be designed in accordance with Table 1809.7.

TABLE 1809.7
PRESCRIPTIVE FOOTINGS SUPPORTING
WALLS OF LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION[a, b, c, d, e]

NUMBER OF FLOORS SUPPORTED BY THE FOOTING[f]	WIDTH OF FOOTING (inches)	THICKNESS OF FOOTING (inches)
1	12	6
2	15	6
3	18	8[g]

`

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Depth of footings shall be in accordance with Section 1809.4.
b. The ground under the floor shall be permitted to be excavated to the elevation of the top of the footing.
c. Interior stud-bearing walls shall be permitted to be supported by isolated footings. The footing width and length shall be twice the width shown in this table, and footings shall be spaced not more than 6 feet on center.
d. See Section 1905 for additional requirements for concrete footings of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.
e. For thickness of foundation walls, see Section 1807.1.6.
f. Footings shall be permitted to support a roof in addition to the stipulated number of floors. Footings supporting roof only shall be as required for supporting one floor.
g. Plain concrete footings for Group R-3 occupancies shall be permitted to be 6 inches thick.

1809.8 Plain concrete footings.
The edge thickness of plain concrete footings supporting walls of other than light-frame construction shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm) where placed on soil or rock.

> **Exception:** For plain concrete footings supporting Group R-3 occupancies, the edge thickness is permitted to be 6 inches (152 mm), provided that the footing does not extend beyond a distance greater than the thickness of the footing on either side of the supported wall.

1809.9 Masonry-unit footings.
The design, materials and construction of masonry-unit footings shall comply with Sections 1809.9.1 and 1809.9.2, and the provisions of Chapter 21.

> **Exception:** Where a specific design is not provided, masonry-unit footings supporting walls of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be designed in accordance with Table 1809.7.

1809.9.1 Dimensions.
Masonry-unit footings shall be laid in Type M or S mortar complying with Section 2103.2.1 and the depth shall not be less than twice the projection beyond the wall, pier or column. The width shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm) wider than the wall supported thereon.

1809.9.2 Offsets.
The maximum offset of each course in brick foundation walls stepped up from the footings shall be $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm) where laid in single courses, and 3 inches (76 mm) where laid in double courses.

1809.10 Pier and curtain wall foundations.
Except in *Seismic Design Categories* D, E and F, pier and curtain wall foundations shall be permitted to be used to support light-frame construction not more than two *stories above grade plane*, provided the following requirements are met:

1. All load-bearing walls shall be placed on continuous concrete footings bonded integrally with the *exterior wall* footings.

2. The minimum actual thickness of a load-bearing masonry wall shall not be less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal or $3^{5}/_{8}$ inches (92 mm) actual thickness, and shall be bonded integrally with piers spaced 6 feet (1829 mm) on center (o.c.).

3. Piers shall be constructed in accordance with Chapter 21 and the following:

`

3.1. The unsupported height of the masonry piers shall not exceed 10 times their least dimension.

3.2. Where structural clay tile or hollow concrete masonry units are used for piers supporting beams and girders, the cellular spaces shall be filled solidly with concrete or Type M or S mortar.

Exception: Unfilled hollow piers shall be permitted where the unsupported height of the pier is not more than four times its least dimension.

3.3. Hollow piers shall be capped with 4 inches (102 mm) of solid masonry or concrete or the cavities of the top course shall be filled with concrete or grout.

4. The maximum height of a 4-inch (102 mm) load-bearing masonry foundation wall supporting wood frame walls and floors shall not be more than 4 feet (1219 mm) in height.

5. The unbalanced fill for 4-inch (102 mm) foundation walls shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) for solid masonry, nor 12 inches (305 mm) for hollow masonry.

1809.11 Steel grillage footings.
Grillage footings of *structural steel elements* shall be separated with *approved* steel spacers and be entirely encased in concrete with at least 6 inches (152 mm) on the bottom and at least 4 inches (102 mm) at all other points. The spaces between the shapes shall be completely filled with concrete or cement grout.

1809.12 Timber footings.
Timber footings shall be permitted for buildings of Type V construction and as otherwise *approved* by the *building official*. Such footings shall be treated in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B). Treated timbers are not required where placed entirely below permanent water level, or where used as capping for wood piles that project above the water level over submerged or marsh lands. The compressive stresses perpendicular to grain in untreated timber footings supported upon treated piles shall not exceed 70 percent of the allowable stresses for the species and grade of timber as specified in the ANSI/AWC NDS.

1809.13 Footing seismic ties.
Where a structure is assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, individual spread footings founded on soil defined in Section 1613.3.2 as *Site Class* E or F shall be interconnected by ties. Unless it is demonstrated that equivalent restraint is provided by reinforced concrete beams within slabs on grade or reinforced concrete slabs on grade, ties shall be capable of carrying, in tension or compression, a force equal to the lesser of the product of the larger footing design gravity load times the seismic coefficient, S_{DS}, divided by 10 and 25 percent of the smaller footing design gravity load.

SECTION 1810
DEEP FOUNDATIONS

1810.1 General.
Deep foundations shall be analyzed, designed, detailed and installed in accordance with Sections 1810.1 through 1810.4.

`

1810.1.1 Geotechnical investigation.
Deep foundations shall be designed and installed on the basis of a geotechnical investigation as set forth in Section 1803.

1810.1.2 Use of existing deep foundation elements.
Deep foundation elements left in place where a structure has been demolished shall not be used for the support of new construction unless satisfactory evidence is submitted to the *building official*, which indicates that the elements are sound and meet the requirements of this code. Such elements shall be load tested or redriven to verify their capacities. The design load applied to such elements shall be the lowest allowable load as determined by tests or redriving data.

1810.1.3 Deep foundation elements classified as columns.
Deep foundation elements standing unbraced in air, water or fluid soils shall be classified as columns and designed as such in accordance with the provisions of this code from their top down to the point where adequate lateral support is provided in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.

Exception: Where the unsupported height to least horizontal dimension of a cast-in-place deep foundation element does not exceed three, it shall be permitted to design and construct such an element as a pedestal in accordance with ACI 318.

1810.1.4 Special types of deep foundations.
The use of types of deep foundation elements not specifically mentioned herein is permitted, subject to the approval of the *building official*, upon the submission of acceptable test data, calculations and other information relating to the structural properties and load capacity of such elements. The allowable stresses for materials shall not in any case exceed the limitations specified herein.

1810.2 Analysis.
The analysis of deep foundations for design shall be in accordance with Sections 1810.2.1 through 1810.2.5.

1810.2.1 Lateral support.
Any soil other than fluid soil shall be deemed to afford sufficient lateral support to prevent buckling of deep foundation elements and to permit the design of the elements in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the applicable provisions of this code.

Where deep foundation elements stand unbraced in air, water or fluid soils, it shall be permitted to consider them laterally supported at a point 5 feet (1524 mm) into stiff soil or 10 feet (3048 mm) into soft soil unless otherwise *approved* by the *building official* on the basis of a geotechnical investigation by a *registered design professional*.

1810.2.2 Stability.
Deep foundation elements shall be braced to provide lateral stability in all directions. Three or more elements connected by a rigid cap shall be considered braced, provided that the elements are located in radial directions from the centroid of the group not less than 60 degrees (1 rad) apart. A two-element group in a rigid cap shall be considered to be braced along the axis connecting the two elements. Methods used to brace deep foundation elements shall be subject to the approval of the *building official*.

Deep foundation elements supporting walls shall be placed alternately in lines spaced at least 1 foot (305 mm) apart and located symmetrically under the center of gravity of the

`

wall load carried, unless effective measures are taken to provide for eccentricity and lateral forces, or the foundation elements are adequately braced to provide for lateral stability.

Exceptions:

1. Isolated cast-in-place deep foundation elements without lateral bracing shall be permitted where the least horizontal dimension is no less than 2 feet (610 mm), adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1 is provided for the entire height and the height does not exceed 12 times the least horizontal dimension.

2. A single row of deep foundation elements without lateral bracing is permitted for one- and two-family dwellings and lightweight construction not exceeding two *stories above grade plane* or 35 feet (10 668 mm) in *building height*, provided the centers of the elements are located within the width of the supported wall.

1810.2.3 Settlement.
The settlement of a single deep foundation element or group thereof shall be estimated based on *approved* methods of analysis. The predicted settlement shall cause neither harmful distortion of, nor instability in, the structure, nor cause any element to be loaded beyond its capacity.

1810.2.4 Lateral loads.
The moments, shears and lateral deflections used for design of deep foundation elements shall be established considering the nonlinear interaction of the shaft and soil, as determined by a *registered design professional*. Where the ratio of the depth of embedment of the element to its least horizontal dimension is less than or equal to six, it shall be permitted to assume the element is rigid.

1810.2.4.1 Seismic Design Categories D through F.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, deep foundation elements on *Site Class* E or F sites, as determined in Section 1613.3.2, shall be designed and constructed to withstand maximum imposed curvatures from earthquake ground motions and structure response. Curvatures shall include free-field soil strains modified for soil-foundation-structure interaction coupled with foundation element deformations associated with earthquake loads imparted to the foundation by the structure.

Exception: Deep foundation elements that satisfy the following additional detailing requirements shall be deemed to comply with the curvature capacity requirements of this section.

1. Precast prestressed concrete piles detailed in accordance with Section 1810.3.8.3.3.

2. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.005 extending the full length of the element and detailed in accordance with Sections 18.7.5.2, 18.7.5.3 and 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318 as required by Section 1810.3.9.4.2.2.

1810.2.5 Group effects.
The analysis shall include group effects on lateral behavior where the center-to-center spacing of deep foundation elements in the direction of lateral force is less than eight times

`

the least horizontal dimension of an element. The analysis shall include group effects on axial behavior where the center-to-center spacing of deep foundation elements is less than three times the least horizontal dimension of an element. Group effects shall be evaluated using a generally accepted method of analysis; the analysis for uplift of grouped elements with center-to-center spacing less than three times the least horizontal dimension of an element shall be evaluated in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.6.

1810.3 Design and detailing.
Deep foundations shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810.3.1 through 1810.3.12.

1810.3.1 Design conditions.
Design of deep foundations shall include the design conditions specified in Sections 1810.3.1.1 through 1810.3.1.6, as applicable.

1810.3.1.1 Design methods for concrete elements.
Where concrete deep foundations are laterally supported in accordance with Section 1810.2.1 for the entire height and applied forces cause bending moments no greater than those resulting from accidental eccentricities, structural design of the element using the load combinations of Section 1605.3 and the allowable stresses specified in this chapter shall be permitted. Otherwise, the structural design of concrete deep foundation elements shall use the load combinations of Section 1605.2 and *approved* strength design methods.

1810.3.1.2 Composite elements.
Where a single deep foundation element comprises two or more sections of different materials or different types spliced together, each section of the composite assembly shall satisfy the applicable requirements of this code, and the maximum allowable load in each section shall be limited by the structural capacity of that section.

1810.3.1.3 Mislocation.
The foundation or superstructure shall be designed to resist the effects of the mislocation of any deep foundation element by no less than 3 inches (76 mm). To resist the effects of mislocation, compressive overload of deep foundation elements to 110 percent of the allowable design load shall be permitted.

1810.3.1.4 Driven piles.
Driven piles shall be designed and manufactured in accordance with accepted engineering practice to resist all stresses induced by handling, driving and service loads.

1810.3.1.5 Helical piles.
Helical piles shall be designed and manufactured in accordance with accepted engineering practice to resist all stresses induced by installation into the ground and service loads.

1810.3.1.6 Casings.
Temporary and permanent casings shall be of steel and shall be sufficiently strong to resist collapse and sufficiently water tight to exclude any foreign materials during the placing of concrete. Where a permanent casing is considered reinforcing steel, the steel shall be protected under the conditions specified in Section 1810.3.2.5. Horizontal joints in the casing shall be spliced in accordance with Section 1810.3.6.

`

1810.3.2 Materials.
The materials used in deep foundation elements shall satisfy the requirements of Sections 1810.3.2.1 through 1810.3.2.8, as applicable.

1810.3.2.1 Concrete.
Where concrete is cast in a steel pipe or where an enlarged base is formed by compacting concrete, the maximum size for coarse aggregate shall be $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm). Concrete to be compacted shall have a zero slump.

1810.3.2.1.1 Seismic hooks.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F, the ends of hoops, spirals and ties used in concrete deep foundation elements shall be terminated with seismic hooks, as defined in ACI 318, and shall be turned into the confined concrete core.

1810.3.2.1.2 ACI 318 Equation (25.7.3.3).
Where this chapter requires detailing of concrete deep foundation elements in accordance with Section 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318, compliance with Equation (25.7.3.3) of ACI 318 shall not be required.

1810.3.2.2 Prestressing steel.
Prestressing steel shall conform to ASTM A416.

1810.3.2.3 Steel.
Structural steel H-piles and structural steel sheet piling shall conform to the material requirements in ASTM A6. Steel pipe piles shall conform to the material requirements in ASTM A252. Fully welded steel piles shall be fabricated from plates that conform to the material requirements in ASTM A36, ASTM A283, ASTM A572, ASTM A588 or ASTM A690.

1810.3.2.4 Timber.
Timber deep foundation elements shall be designed as piles or poles in accordance with ANSI/AWC NDS. Round timber elements shall conform to ASTM D25. Sawn timber elements shall conform to DOC PS-20.

1810.3.2.4.1 Preservative treatment.
Timber deep foundation elements used to support permanent structures shall be treated in accordance with this section unless it is established that the tops of the untreated timber elements will be below the lowest ground-water level assumed to exist during the life of the structure. Preservative and minimum final retention shall be in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification E, Use Category 4C) for round timber elements and AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B) for sawn timber elements. Preservative-treated timber elements shall be subject to a quality control program administered by an *approved agency*. Element cutoffs shall be treated in accordance with AWPA M4.

1810.3.2.5 Protection of materials.
Where boring records or site conditions indicate possible deleterious action on the materials used in deep foundation elements because of soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors, the elements shall be adequately protected by materials, methods or processes *approved* by the *building official*. Protective materials shall be applied to the elements so as not to be rendered ineffective by installation. The effectiveness of

`

such protective measures for the particular purpose shall have been thoroughly established by satisfactory service records or other evidence.

1810.3.2.6 Allowable stresses.
The allowable stresses for materials used in deep foundation elements shall not exceed those specified in Table 1810.3.2.6.

TABLE 1810.3.2.6
ALLOWABLE STRESSES FOR MATERIALS USED IN DEEP FOUNDATION ELEMENTS

MATERIAL TYPE AND CONDITION	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS[a]
1. Concrete or grout in compression[b]	
Cast-in-place with a permanent casing in accordance with Section 1810.3.2.7	$0.4 f'_c$
Cast-in-place in a pipe, tube, other permanent casing or rock	$0.33 f'_c$
Cast-in-place without a permanent casing	$0.3 f'_c$
Precast nonprestressed	$0.33 f'_c$
Precast prestressed	$0.33 f'_c - 0.27 f_{pc}$
2. Nonprestressed reinforcement in compression	$0.4 f_y \leq 30{,}000$ psi
3. Steel in compression	
Cores within concrete-filled pipes or tubes	$0.5 F_y \leq 32{,}000$ psi
Pipes, tubes or H-piles, where justified in accordance with Section 1810.3.2.8	$0.5 F_y \leq 32{,}000$ psi
Pipes or tubes for micropiles	$0.4 F_y \leq 32{,}000$ psi
Other pipes, tubes or H-piles	$0.35 F_y \leq 16{,}000$ psi
Helical piles	$0.6 F_y \leq 0.5 F_u$
4. Nonprestressed reinforcement in tension	
Within micropiles	$0.6 f_y$
Other conditions	$0.5 f_y \leq 24{,}000$ psi
5. Steel in tension	
Pipes, tubes or H-piles, where justified in accordance with Section 1810.3.2.8	$0.5 F_y \leq 32{,}000$ psi
Other pipes, tubes or H-piles	$0.35 F_y \leq 16{,}000$ psi
Helical piles	$0.6 F_y \leq 0.5 F_u$
6. Timber	In accordance with the ANSI/AWC NDS

a. f'_c is the specified compressive strength of the concrete or grout; f_{pc} is the compressive stress on the gross concrete section due to effective prestress forces only; f_y is the specified yield strength of reinforcement; F_y is the specified minimum yield stress of steel; F_u is the specified minimum tensile stress of structural steel.

b. The stresses specified apply to the gross cross-sectional area within the concrete surface. Where a temporary or permanent casing is used, the inside face of the casing shall be considered the concrete surface.

1810.3.2.7 Increased allowable compressive stress for cased cast-in-place elements.
The allowable compressive stress in the concrete shall be permitted to be increased as specified in Table 1810.3.2.6 for those portions of permanently cased cast-in-place elements that satisfy all of the following conditions:

1. The design shall not use the casing to resist any portion of the axial load imposed.

2. The casing shall have a sealed tip and be mandrel driven.

3. The thickness of the casing shall not be less than manufacturer's standard gage No.14 (0.068 inch) (1.75 mm).

`

4. The casing shall be seamless or provided with seams of strength equal to the basic material and be of a configuration that will provide confinement to the cast-in-place concrete.

5. The ratio of steel yield strength (F_y) to specified compressive strength (f'_c) shall not be less than six.

6. The nominal diameter of the element shall not be greater than 16 inches (406 mm).

1810.3.2.8 Justification of higher allowable stresses.
Use of allowable stresses greater than those specified in Section 1810.3.2.6 shall be permitted where supporting data justifying such higher stresses is filed with the *building official*. Such substantiating data shall include the following:

1. A geotechnical investigation in accordance with Section 1803.

2. Load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2, regardless of the load supported by the element.

The design and installation of the deep foundation elements shall be under the direct supervision of a *registered design professional* knowledgeable in the field of soil mechanics and deep foundations who shall submit a report to the *building official* stating that the elements as installed satisfy the design criteria.

1810.3.3 Determination of allowable loads.
The allowable axial and lateral loads on deep foundation elements shall be determined by an *approved* formula, load tests or method of analysis.

1810.3.3.1 Allowable axial load.
The allowable axial load on a deep foundation element shall be determined in accordance with Sections 1810.3.3.1.1 through 1810.3.3.1.9.

1810.3.3.1.1 Driving criteria.
The allowable compressive load on any driven deep foundation element where determined by the application of an *approved* driving formula shall not exceed 40 tons (356 kN). For allowable loads above 40 tons (356 kN), the wave equation method of analysis shall be used to estimate driveability for both driving stresses and net displacement per blow at the ultimate load. Allowable loads shall be verified by load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2. The formula or wave equation load shall be determined for gravity-drop or power-actuated hammers and the hammer energy used shall be the maximum consistent with the size, strength and weight of the driven elements. The use of a follower is permitted only with the approval of the *building official*. The introduction of fresh hammer cushion or pile cushion material just prior to final penetration is not permitted.

1810.3.3.1.2 Load tests.
Where design compressive loads are greater than those determined using the allowable stresses specified in Section 1810.3.2.6, where the design load for any deep foundation element is in doubt, or where cast-in-place deep foundation elements have an enlarged base formed either by compacting concrete or by driving a precast base, control test elements shall be tested in accordance with ASTM

`

D1143 or ASTM D4945. At least one element shall be load tested in each area of uniform subsoil conditions. Where required by the *building official*, additional elements shall be load tested where necessary to establish the safe design capacity. The resulting allowable loads shall not be more than one-half of the ultimate axial load capacity of the test element as assessed by one of the published methods listed in Section 1810.3.3.1.3 with consideration for the test type, duration and subsoil. The ultimate axial load capacity shall be determined by a *registered design professional* with consideration given to tolerable total and differential settlements at design load in accordance with Section 1810.2.3. In subsequent installation of the balance of deep foundation elements, all elements shall be deemed to have a supporting capacity equal to that of the control element where such elements are of the same type, size and relative length as the test element; are installed using the same or comparable methods and equipment as the test element; are installed in similar subsoil conditions as the test element; and, for driven elements, where the rate of penetration (e.g., net displacement per blow) of such elements is equal to or less than that of the test element driven with the same hammer through a comparable driving distance.

1810.3.3.1.3 Load test evaluation methods.
It shall be permitted to evaluate load tests of deep foundation elements using any of the following methods:

1. Davisson Offset Limit.

2. Brinch-Hansen 90-percent Criterion.

3. Butler-Hoy Criterion.

4. Other methods *approved* by the *building official*.

1810.3.3.1.4 Allowable frictional resistance.
The assumed frictional resistance developed by any uncased cast-in-place deep foundation element shall not exceed one-sixth of the bearing value of the soil material at minimum depth as set forth in Table 1806.2, up to a maximum of 500 psf (24 kPa), unless a greater value is allowed by the *building official* on the basis of a geotechnical investigation as specified in Section 1803 or a greater value is substantiated by a load test in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2. Frictional resistance and bearing resistance shall not be assumed to act simultaneously unless determined by a geotechnical investigation in accordance with Section 1803.

1810.3.3.1.5 Uplift capacity of a single deep foundation element.
Where required by the design, the uplift capacity of a single deep foundation element shall be determined by an *approved* method of analysis based on a minimum factor of safety of three or by load tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D3689. The maximum allowable uplift load shall not exceed the ultimate load capacity as determined in Section 1810.3.3.1.2, using the results of load tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D3689, divided by a factor of safety of two.

> **Exception:** Where uplift is due to wind or seismic loading, the minimum factor of safety shall be two where capacity is determined by an analysis and one and one-half where capacity is determined by load tests.

`

1810.3.3.1.6 Uplift capacity of grouped deep foundation elements.
For grouped deep foundation elements subjected to uplift, the allowable working uplift load for the group shall be calculated by a generally accepted method of analysis. Where the deep foundation elements in the group are placed at a center-to-center spacing less than three times the least horizontal dimension of the largest single element, the allowable working uplift load for the group is permitted to be calculated as the lesser of:

1. The proposed individual allowable working uplift load times the number of elements in the group.

2. Two-thirds of the effective weight of the group and the soil contained within a block defined by the perimeter of the group and the length of the element, plus two-thirds of the ultimate shear resistance along the soil block.

1810.3.3.1.7 Load-bearing capacity.
Deep foundation elements shall develop ultimate load capacities of at least twice the design working loads in the designated load-bearing layers. Analysis shall show that no soil layer underlying the designated load-bearing layers causes the load-bearing capacity safety factor to be less than two.

1810.3.3.1.8 Bent deep foundation elements.
The load-bearing capacity of deep foundation elements discovered to have a sharp or sweeping bend shall be determined by an *approved* method of analysis or by load testing a representative element.

1810.3.3.1.9 Helical piles.
The allowable axial design load, P_a, of helical piles shall be determined as follows:

$$P_a = 0.5\,P_u \qquad \textbf{(Equation 18-4)}$$

where P_u is the least value of:

1. Sum of the areas of the helical bearing plates times the ultimate bearing capacity of the soil or rock comprising the bearing stratum.

2. Ultimate capacity determined from well-documented correlations with installation torque.

3. Ultimate capacity determined from load tests.

4. Ultimate axial capacity of pile shaft.

5. Ultimate axial capacity of pile shaft couplings.

6. Sum of the ultimate axial capacity of helical bearing plates affixed to pile.

1810.3.3.2 Allowable lateral load.
Where required by the design, the lateral load capacity of a single deep foundation element or a group thereof shall be determined by an *approved* method of analysis or by

`

lateral load tests to at least twice the proposed design working load. The resulting allowable load shall not be more than one-half of the load that produces a gross lateral movement of 1 inch (25 mm) at the lower of the top of foundation element and the ground surface, unless it can be shown that the predicted lateral movement shall cause neither harmful distortion of, nor instability in, the structure, nor cause any element to be loaded beyond its capacity.

1810.3.4 Subsiding soils.
Where deep foundation elements are installed through subsiding fills or other subsiding strata and derive support from underlying firmer materials, consideration shall be given to the downward frictional forces that may be imposed on the elements by the subsiding upper strata.

Where the influence of subsiding fills is considered as imposing loads on the element, the allowable stresses specified in this chapter shall be permitted to be increased where satisfactory substantiating data are submitted.

1810.3.5 Dimensions of deep foundation elements.
The dimensions of deep foundation elements shall be in accordance with Sections 1810.3.5.1 through 1810.3.5.3, as applicable.

1810.3.5.1 Precast.
The minimum lateral dimension of precast concrete deep foundation elements shall be 8 inches (203 mm). Corners of square elements shall be chamfered.

1810.3.5.2 Cast-in-place or grouted-in-place.
Cast-in-place and grouted-in-place deep foundation elements shall satisfy the requirements of this section.

1810.3.5.2.1 Cased.
Cast-in-place deep foundation elements with a permanent casing shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 8 inches (203 mm).

1810.3.5.2.2 Uncased.
Cast-in-place deep foundation elements without a permanent casing shall have a diameter of not less than 12 inches (305 mm). The element length shall not exceed 30 times the average diameter.

Exception: The length of the element is permitted to exceed 30 times the diameter, provided the design and installation of the deep foundations are under the direct supervision of a *registered design professional* knowledgeable in the field of soil mechanics and deep foundations. The *registered design professional* shall submit a report to the *building official* stating that the elements were installed in compliance with the *approved construction documents*.

1810.3.5.2.3 Micropiles.
Micropiles shall have an outside diameter of 12 inches (305 mm) or less. The minimum diameter set forth elsewhere in Section 1810.3.5 shall not apply to micropiles.

1810.3.5.3 Steel.
Steel deep foundation elements shall satisfy the requirements of this section.

`

1810.3.5.3.1 Structural steel H-piles.
Sections of structural steel H-piles shall comply with the requirements for HP shapes in ASTM A6, or the following:

1. The flange projections shall not exceed 14 times the minimum thickness of metal in either the flange or the web and the flange widths shall not be less than 80 percent of the depth of the section.

2. The nominal depth in the direction of the web shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm).

3. Flanges and web shall have a minimum nominal thickness of $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm).

1810.3.5.3.2 Fully welded steel piles fabricated from plates.
Sections of fully welded steel piles fabricated from plates shall comply with the following:

1. The flange projections shall not exceed 14 times the minimum thickness of metal in either the flange or the web and the flange widths shall not be less than 80 percent of the depth of the section.

2. The nominal depth in the direction of the web shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm).

3. Flanges and web shall have a minimum nominal thickness of $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm).

1810.3.5.3.3 Structural steel sheet piling.
Individual sections of structural steel sheet piling shall conform to the profile indicated by the manufacturer, and shall conform to the general requirements specified by ASTM A6.

1810.3.5.3.4 Steel pipes and tubes.
Steel pipes and tubes used as deep foundation elements shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 8 inches (203 mm). Where steel pipes or tubes are driven open ended, they shall have a minimum of 0.34 square inch (219 mm^2) of steel in cross section to resist each 1,000 foot-pounds (1356 Nm) of pile hammer energy, or shall have the equivalent strength for steels having a yield strength greater than 35,000 psi (241 MPa) or the wave equation analysis shall be permitted to be used to assess compression stresses induced by driving to evaluate if the pile section is appropriate for the selected hammer. Where a pipe or tube with wall thickness less than 0.179 inch (4.6 mm) is driven open ended, a suitable cutting shoe shall be provided. Concrete-filled steel pipes or tubes in structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F shall have a wall thickness of not less than $^{3}/_{16}$ inch (5 mm). The pipe or tube casing for socketed drilled shafts shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 18 inches (457 mm), a wall thickness of not less than $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) and a suitable steel driving shoe welded to the

`

bottom; the diameter of the rock socket shall be approximately equal to the inside diameter of the casing.

Exceptions:

1. There is no minimum diameter for steel pipes or tubes used in micropiles.

2. For mandrel-driven pipes or tubes, the minimum wall thickness shall be $^{1}/_{10}$ inch (2.5 mm).

1810.3.5.3.5 Helical piles.
Dimensions of the central shaft and the number, size and thickness of helical bearing plates shall be sufficient to support the design loads.

1810.3.6 Splices.
Splices shall be constructed so as to provide and maintain true alignment and position of the component parts of the deep foundation element during installation and subsequent thereto and shall be designed to resist the axial and shear forces and moments occurring at the location of the splice during driving and for design load combinations. Where deep foundation elements of the same type are being spliced, splices shall develop not less than 50 percent of the bending strength of the weaker section. Where deep foundation elements of different materials or different types are being spliced, splices shall develop the full compressive strength and not less than 50 percent of the tension and bending strength of the weaker section. Where structural steel cores are to be spliced, the ends shall be milled or ground to provide full contact and shall be full-depth welded.

Splices occurring in the upper 10 feet (3048 mm) of the embedded portion of an element shall be designed to resist at allowable stresses the moment and shear that would result from an assumed eccentricity of the axial load of 3 inches (76 mm), or the element shall be braced in accordance with Section 1810.2.2 to other deep foundation elements that do not have splices in the upper 10 feet (3048 mm) of embedment.

1810.3.6.1 Seismic Design Categories C through F.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F splices of deep foundation elements shall develop the lesser of the following:

1. The nominal strength of the deep foundation element.

2. The axial and shear forces and moments from the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7.

1810.3.7 Top of element detailing at cutoffs.
Where a minimum length for reinforcement or the extent of closely spaced confinement reinforcement is specified at the top of a deep foundation element, provisions shall be made so that those specified lengths or extents are maintained after cutoff.

1810.3.8 Precast concrete piles.
Precast concrete piles shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810.3.8.1 through 1810.3.8.3.

`

1810.3.8.1 Reinforcement.
Longitudinal steel shall be arranged in a symmetrical pattern and be laterally tied with steel ties or wire spiral spaced center to center as follows:

1. At not more than 1 inch (25 mm) for the first five ties or spirals at each end; then

2. At not more than 4 inches (102 mm), for the remainder of the first 2 feet (610 mm) from each end; and then

3. At not more than 6 inches (152 mm) elsewhere.

The size of ties and spirals shall be as follows:

1. For piles having a least horizontal dimension of 16 inches (406 mm) or less, wire shall not be smaller than 0.22 inch (5.6 mm) (No. 5 gage).

2. For piles having a least horizontal dimension of more than 16 inches (406 mm) and less than 20 inches (508 mm), wire shall not be smaller than 0.238 inch (6 mm) (No. 4 gage).

3. For piles having a least horizontal dimension of 20 inches (508 mm) and larger, wire shall not be smaller than $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) round or 0.259 inch (6.6 mm) (No. 3 gage).

1810.3.8.2 Precast nonprestressed piles.
Precast nonprestressed concrete piles shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1810.3.8.2.1 through 1810.3.8.2.3.

1810.3.8.2.1 Minimum reinforcement.
Longitudinal reinforcement shall consist of at least four bars with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.008.

1810.3.8.2.2 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Categories C through F.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F, precast nonprestressed piles shall be reinforced as specified in this section. The minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio shall be 0.01 throughout the length. Transverse reinforcement shall consist of closed ties or spirals with a minimum $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) diameter. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed the smaller of eight times the diameter of the smallest longitudinal bar or 6 inches (152 mm) within a distance of three times the least pile dimension from the bottom of the pile cap. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed 6 inches (152 mm) throughout the remainder of the pile.

1810.3.8.2.3 Additional seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Categories D through F.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, transverse reinforcement shall be in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.4.2.

1810.3.8.3 Precast prestressed piles.
Precast prestressed concrete piles shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1810.3.8.3.1 through 1810.3.8.3.3.

`

1810.3.8.3.1 Effective prestress.
The effective prestress in the pile shall not be less than 400 psi (2.76 MPa) for piles up to 30 feet (9144 mm) in length, 550 psi (3.79 MPa) for piles up to 50 feet (15 240 mm) in length and 700 psi (4.83 MPa) for piles greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) in length.

Effective prestress shall be based on an assumed loss of 30,000 psi (207 MPa) in the prestressing steel. The tensile stress in the prestressing steel shall not exceed the values specified in ACI 318.

1810.3.8.3.2 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Category C.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, precast prestressed piles shall have transverse reinforcement in accordance with this section. The volumetric ratio of spiral reinforcement shall not be less than the amount required by the following formula for the upper 20 feet (6096 mm) of the pile.

$$\rho_s = 0.12 f'_c / f_{yh} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 18-5)}$$

where:

f'_c	=	Specified compressive strength of concrete, psi (MPa).
f_{yh}	=	Yield strength of spiral reinforcement ≤ 85,000 psi (586 MPa).
ρ_s	=	Spiral reinforcement index (vol. spiral/vol. core).

At least one-half the volumetric ratio required by Equation 18-5 shall be provided below the upper 20 feet (6096 mm) of the pile.

1810.3.8.3.3 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Categories D through F.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, precast prestressed piles shall have transverse reinforcement in accordance with the following:

1. Requirements in ACI 318, Chapter 18, need not apply, unless specifically referenced.

2. Where the total pile length in the soil is 35 feet (10 668 mm) or less, the lateral transverse reinforcement in the ductile region shall occur through the length of the pile. Where the pile length exceeds 35 feet (10 668 mm), the ductile pile region shall be taken as the greater of 35 feet (10 668 mm) or the distance from the underside of the pile cap to the point of zero curvature plus three times the least pile dimension.

3. In the ductile region, the center-to-center spacing of the spirals or hoop reinforcement shall not exceed one-fifth of the least pile dimension, six times the diameter of the longitudinal strand or 8 inches (203 mm), whichever is smallest.

`

4. Circular spiral reinforcement shall be spliced by lapping one full turn and bending the end of each spiral to a 90-degree hook or by use of a mechanical or welded splice complying with Section 25.5.7 of ACI 318.

5. Where the transverse reinforcement consists of circular spirals, the volumetric ratio of spiral transverse reinforcement in the ductile region shall comply with the following:

$$\rho_s = 0.25(f'_c / f_{yh})(A_g / A_{ch} - 1.0)[0.5 + 1.4P/(f'_c A_g)]$$ **(Equation 18-6)**

but not less than

$$\rho_s = 0.12(f'_c / f_{yh})[0.5 + 1.4P/(f'_c A_g)] \geq 0.12 f'_c / f_{yh}$$ **(Equation 18-7)**

and need not exceed:

$$\rho_s = 0.021$$ **(Equation 18-8)**

where:

A_g	=	Pile cross-sectional area, square inches (mm^2).
A_{ch}	=	Core area defined by spiral outside diameter, square inches (mm^2).
f'_c	=	Specified compressive strength of concrete, psi (MPa).
f_{yh}	=	Yield strength of spiral reinforcement ≤ 85,000 psi (586 MPa).
P	=	Axial load on pile, pounds (kN), as determined from Equations 16-5 and 16-7.
ρ_s	=	Volumetric ratio (vol. spiral/vol. core).

This required amount of spiral reinforcement is permitted to be obtained by providing an inner and outer spiral.

6. Where transverse reinforcement consists of rectangular hoops and cross ties, the total cross-sectional area of lateral transverse reinforcement in the ductile region with spacing, *s*, and perpendicular dimension, *hc*, shall conform to:

$$A_{sh} = 0.3 s\, h_c\, (f'_c / f_{yh})(A_g / A_{ch} - 1.0)[0.5 + 1.4P/(f'_c A_g)]$$ **(Equation 18-9)**

`

but not less than:

$$A_{sh} = 0.12 s\, h_c\, (f'_c / f_{yh})\, [0.5 + 1.4P/(f'_c A_g)]$$ **(Equation 18-10)**

where:

f_{yh}	=	yield strength of transverse reinforcement ≤ 70,000 psi (483 MPa).
h_c	=	Cross-sectional dimension of pile core measured center to center of hoop reinforcement, inch (mm).
s	=	Spacing of transverse reinforcement measured along length of pile, inch (mm).
A_{sh}	=	Cross-sectional area of tranverse reinforcement, square inches (mm^2).
f'_c	=	Specified compressive strength of concrete, psi (MPa).

The hoops and cross ties shall be equivalent to deformed bars not less than No. 3 in size. Rectangular hoop ends shall terminate at a corner with seismic hooks.

Outside of the length of the pile requiring transverse confinement reinforcing, the spiral or hoop reinforcing with a volumetric ratio not less than onehalf of that required for transverse confinement reinforcing shall be provided.

1810.3.9 Cast-in-place deep foundations.
Cast-in-place deep foundation elements shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810.3.9.1 through 1810.3.9.6.

1810.3.9.1 Design cracking moment.
The design cracking moment (ϕM_n) for a cast-in-place deep foundation element not enclosed by a structural steel pipe or tube shall be determined using the following equation:

$$\phi M_n = 3\sqrt{f'_c}\, S_m$$ **(Equation 18-11)**

For SI: $\phi M_n = 0.25\sqrt{f'_c}\, S_m$

where:

f'_c	=	Specified compressive strength of concrete or grout, psi (MPa).
S_m	=	Elastic section modulus, neglecting reinforcement and casing, cubic inches (mm^3).

`

1810.3.9.2 Required reinforcement.
Where subject to uplift or where the required moment strength determined using the load combinations of Section 1605.2 exceeds the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1, cast-in-place deep foundations not enclosed by a structural steel pipe or tube shall be reinforced.

1810.3.9.3 Placement of reinforcement.
Reinforcement where required shall be assembled and tied together and shall be placed in the deep foundation element as a unit before the reinforced portion of the element is filled with concrete.

Exceptions:

1. Steel dowels embedded 5 feet (1524 mm) or less shall be permitted to be placed after concreting, while the concrete is still in a semifluid state.

2. For deep foundation elements installed with a hollow-stem auger, tied reinforcement shall be placed after elements are concreted, while the concrete is still in a semifluid state. Longitudinal reinforcement without lateral ties shall be placed either through the hollow stem of the auger prior to concreting or after concreting, while the concrete is still in a semifluid state.

3. For Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction, reinforcement is permitted to be placed after concreting, while the concrete is still in a semifluid state, and the concrete cover requirement is permitted to be reduced to 2 inches (51 mm), provided the construction method can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the *building official*.

1810.3.9.4 Seismic reinforcement.
Where a structure is assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.4.1. Where a structure is assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.4.2.

Exceptions:

1. Isolated deep foundation elements supporting posts of Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but with not less than one No. 4 bar, without ties or spirals, where detailed so the element is not subject to lateral loads and the soil provides adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.

2. Isolated deep foundation elements supporting posts and bracing from decks and patios appurtenant to Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but with not less than one No. 4 bar, without ties or spirals, where the lateral load, *E*, to the top of the element does not exceed 200 pounds (890 N) and the soil provides adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.

`

3. Deep foundation elements supporting the concrete foundation wall of Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but with not less than two No. 4 bars, without ties or spirals, where the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1 exceeds the required moment strength determined using the load combinations with overstrength factor in Section 12.4.3.2 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7 and the soil provides adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.

4. Closed ties or spirals where required by Section 1810.3.9.4.2 shall be permitted to be limited to the top 3 feet (914 mm) of deep foundation elements 10 feet (3048 mm) or less in depth supporting Group R-3 and U occupancies of *Seismic Design Category* D, not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction.

1810.3.9.4.1 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Category C.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, cast-in-place deep foundation elements shall be reinforced as specified in this section. Reinforcement shall be provided where required by analysis.

A minimum of four longitudinal bars, with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.0025, shall be provided throughout the minimum reinforced length of the element as defined below starting at the top of the element. The minimum reinforced length of the element shall be taken as the greatest of the following:

1. One-third of the element length.

2. A distance of 10 feet (3048 mm).

3. Three times the least element dimension.

4. The distance from the top of the element to the point where the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1 exceeds the required moment strength determined using the load combinations of Section 1605.2.

Transverse reinforcement shall consist of closed ties or spirals with a minimum $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) diameter. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed the smaller of 6 inches (152 mm) or 8-longitudinal-bar diameters, within a distance of three times the least element dimension from the bottom of the pile cap. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed 16 longitudinal bar diameters throughout the remainder of the reinforced length.

Exceptions:

1. The requirements of this section shall not apply to concrete cast in structural steel pipes or tubes.

2. A spiral-welded metal casing of a thickness not less than the manufacturer's standard No. 14 gage (0.068 inch) is permitted to provide concrete confinement in lieu of the closed ties or spirals. Where used as such, the metal casing shall be protected against possible deleterious

`

action due to soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors indicated by boring records of site conditions.

1810.3.9.4.2 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Categories D through F. For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, cast-in-place deep foundation elements shall be reinforced as specified in this section. Reinforcement shall be provided where required by analysis.

A minimum of four longitudinal bars, with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.005, shall be provided throughout the minimum reinforced length of the element as defined below starting at the top of the element. The minimum reinforced length of the element shall be taken as the greatest of the following:

1. One-half of the element length.

2. A distance of 10 feet (3048 mm).

3. Three times the least element dimension.

4. The distance from the top of the element to the point where the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1 exceeds the required moment strength determined using the load combinations of Section 1605.2.

Transverse reinforcement shall consist of closed ties or spirals no smaller than No. 3 bars for elements with a least dimension up to 20 inches (508 mm), and No. 4 bars for larger elements. Throughout the remainder of the reinforced length outside the regions with transverse confinement reinforcement, as specified in Section 1810.3.9.4.2.1 or 1810.3.9.4.2.2, the spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed the least of the following:

1. 12 longitudinal bar diameters;

2. One-half the least dimension of the element; and

3. 12 inches (305 mm).

Exceptions:

1. The requirements of this section shall not apply to concrete cast in structural steel pipes or tubes.

2. A spiral-welded metal casing of a thickness not less than manufacturer's standard No. 14 gage (0.068 inch) is permitted to provide concrete confinement in lieu of the closed ties or spirals. Where used as such, the metal casing shall be protected against possible deleterious action due to soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors indicated by boring records of site conditions.

1810.3.9.4.2.1 Site Classes A through D.
For *Site Class* A, B, C or D sites, transverse confinement reinforcement shall be provided in the element in accordance with Sections 18.7.5.2, 18.7.5.3 and

`

18.7.5.4 of ACI 318 within three times the least element dimension of the bottom of the pile cap. A transverse spiral reinforcement ratio of not less than one-half of that required in Section 18.7.5.4(a) of ACI 318 shall be permitted.

1810.3.9.4.2.2 Site Classes E and F.
For *Site Class* E or F sites, transverse confinement reinforcement shall be provided in the element in accordance with Sections 18.7.5.2, 18.7.5.3 and 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318 within seven times the least element dimension of the pile cap and within seven times the least element dimension of the interfaces of strata that are hard or stiff and strata that are liquefiable or are composed of soft- to medium-stiff clay.

1810.3.9.5 Belled drilled shafts.
Where drilled shafts are belled at the bottom, the edge thickness of the bell shall not be less than that required for the edge of footings. Where the sides of the bell slope at an angle less than 60 degrees (1 rad) from the horizontal, the effects of vertical shear shall be considered.

1810.3.9.6 Socketed drilled shafts.
Socketed drilled shafts shall have a permanent pipe or tube casing that extends down to bedrock and an uncased socket drilled into the bedrock, both filled with concrete. Socketed drilled shafts shall have reinforcement or a structural steel core for the length as indicated by an *approved* method of analysis.

The depth of the rock socket shall be sufficient to develop the full load-bearing capacity of the element with a minimum safety factor of two, but the depth shall not be less than the outside diameter of the pipe or tube casing. The design of the rock socket is permitted to be predicated on the sum of the allowable load-bearing pressure on the bottom of the socket plus bond along the sides of the socket.

Where a structural steel core is used, the gross cross-sectional area of the core shall not exceed 25 percent of the gross area of the drilled shaft.

1810.3.10 Micropiles.
Micropiles shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810.3.10.1 through 1810.3.10.4.

1810.3.10.1 Construction.
Micropiles shall develop their load-carrying capacity by means of a bond zone in soil, bedrock or a combination of soil and bedrock. Micropiles shall be grouted and have either a steel pipe or tube or steel reinforcement at every section along the length. It shall be permitted to transition from deformed reinforcing bars to steel pipe or tube reinforcement by extending the bars into the pipe or tube section by at least their development length in tension in accordance with ACI 318.

1810.3.10.2 Materials.
Reinforcement shall consist of deformed reinforcing bars in accordance with ASTM A615 Grade 60 or 75 or ASTM A722 Grade 150.

The steel pipe or tube shall have a minimum wall thickness of 3/16 inch (4.8 mm). Splices shall comply with Section 1810.3.6. The steel pipe or tube shall have a minimum yield strength of 45,000 psi (310 MPa) and a minimum elongation of 15 percent as

`

shown by mill certifications or two coupon test samples per 40,000 pounds (18 160 kg) of pipe or tube.

1810.3.10.3 Reinforcement.
For micropiles or portions thereof grouted inside a temporary or permanent casing or inside a hole drilled into bedrock or a hole drilled with grout, the steel pipe or tube or steel reinforcement shall be designed to carry at least 40 percent of the design compression load. Micropiles or portions thereof grouted in an open hole in soil without temporary or permanent casing and without suitable means of verifying the hole diameter during grouting shall be designed to carry the entire compression load in the reinforcing steel. Where a steel pipe or tube is used for reinforcement, the portion of the grout enclosed within the pipe is permitted to be included in the determination of the allowable stress in the grout.

1810.3.10.4 Seismic reinforcement.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, a permanent steel casing shall be provided from the top of the micropile down to the point of zero curvature. For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, the micropile shall be considered as an alternative system in accordance with Section 104.11. The alternative system design, supporting documentation and test data shall be submitted to the *building official* for review and approval.

1810.3.11 Pile caps.
Pile caps shall be of reinforced concrete, and shall include all elements to which vertical deep foundation elements are connected, including grade beams and mats. The soil immediately below the pile cap shall not be considered as carrying any vertical load. The tops of vertical deep foundation elements shall be embedded not less than 3 inches (76 mm) into pile caps and the caps shall extend at least 4 inches (102 mm) beyond the edges of the elements. The tops of elements shall be cut or chipped back to sound material before capping.

1810.3.11.1 Seismic Design Categories C through F.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F, concrete deep foundation elements shall be connected to the pile cap by embedding the element reinforcement or field-placed dowels anchored in the element into the pile cap for a distance equal to their development length in accordance with ACI 318. It shall be permitted to connect precast prestressed piles to the pile cap by developing the element prestressing strands into the pile cap provided the connection is ductile. For deformed bars, the development length is the full development length for compression, or tension in the case of uplift, without reduction for excess reinforcement in accordance with Section 25.4.10 of ACI 318. Alternative measures for laterally confining concrete and maintaining toughness and ductile-like behavior at the top of the element shall be permitted provided the design is such that any hinging occurs in the confined region.

The minimum transverse steel ratio for confinement shall not be less than one-half of that required for columns.

For resistance to uplift forces, anchorage of steel pipes, tubes or H-piles to the pile cap shall be made by means other than concrete bond to the bare steel section. Concrete-filled steel pipes or tubes shall have reinforcement of not less than 0.01 times the cross-sectional area of the concrete fill developed into the cap and extending into the fill a length equal to two times the required cap embedment, but not less than the development length in tension of the reinforcement.

`

1810.3.11.2 Seismic Design Categories D through F.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, deep foundation element resistance to uplift forces or rotational restraint shall be provided by anchorage into the pile cap, designed considering the combined effect of axial forces due to uplift and bending moments due to fixity to the pile cap. Anchorage shall develop a minimum of 25 percent of the strength of the element in tension. Anchorage into the pile cap shall comply with the following:

1. In the case of uplift, the anchorage shall be capable of developing the least of the following:

   1.1. The nominal tensile strength of the longitudinal reinforcement in a concrete element.

   1.2. The nominal tensile strength of a steel element.

   1.3. The frictional force developed between the element and the soil multiplied by 1.3.

   Exception: The anchorage is permitted to be designed to resist the axial tension force resulting from the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7.

2. In the case of rotational restraint, the anchorage shall be designed to resist the axial and shear forces, and moments resulting from the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7 or the anchorage shall be capable of developing the full axial, bending and shear nominal strength of the element.

Where the vertical lateral-force-resisting elements are columns, the pile cap flexural strengths shall exceed the column flexural strength. The connection between batter piles and pile caps shall be designed to resist the nominal strength of the pile acting as a short column. Batter piles and their connection shall be designed to resist forces and moments that result from the application of seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7.

1810.3.12 Grade beams.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, grade beams shall comply with the provisions in Section 18.13.3 of ACI 318 for grade beams, except where they are designed to resist the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7.

1810.3.13 Seismic ties.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F, individual deep foundations shall be interconnected by ties. Unless it can be demonstrated that equivalent restraint is provided by reinforced concrete beams within slabs on grade or reinforced concrete slabs on grade or confinement by competent rock, hard cohesive soils or very dense granular soils, ties shall be capable of carrying, in tension or compression, a force equal to the lesser of the product of the larger pile cap or column design gravity load times the seismic coefficient, S_{DS}, divided by 10, and 25 percent of the smaller pile or column design gravity load.

`

Exception: In Group R-3 and U occupancies of light-frame construction, deep foundation elements supporting foundation walls, isolated interior posts detailed so the element is not subject to lateral loads or exterior decks and patios are not subject to interconnection where the soils are of adequate stiffness, subject to the approval of the *building official*.

1810.4 Installation.
Deep foundations shall be installed in accordance with Section 1810.4. Where a single deep foundation element comprises two or more sections of different materials or different types spliced together, each section shall satisfy the applicable conditions of installation.

1810.4.1 Structural integrity.
Deep foundation elements shall be installed in such a manner and sequence as to prevent distortion or damage that may adversely affect the structural integrity of adjacent structures or of foundation elements being installed or already in place and as to avoid compacting the surrounding soil to the extent that other foundation elements cannot be installed properly.

1810.4.1.1 Compressive strength of precast concrete piles.
A precast concrete pile shall not be driven before the concrete has attained a compressive strength of at least 75 percent of the specified compressive strength (f'_c), but not less than the strength sufficient to withstand handling and driving forces.

1810.4.1.2 Casing.
Where cast-in-place deep foundation elements are formed through unstable soils and concrete is placed in an open-drilled hole, a casing shall be inserted in the hole prior to placing the concrete. Where the casing is withdrawn during concreting, the level of concrete shall be maintained above the bottom of the casing at a sufficient height to offset any hydrostatic or lateral soil pressure. Driven casings shall be mandrel driven their full length in contact with the surrounding soil.

1810.4.1.3 Driving near uncased concrete.
Deep foundation elements shall not be driven within six element diameters center to center in granular soils or within one-half the element length in cohesive soils of an uncased element filled with concrete less than 48 hours old unless *approved* by the *building official*. If the concrete surface in any completed element rises or drops, the element shall be replaced. Driven uncased deep foundation elements shall not be installed in soils that could cause heave.

1810.4.1.4 Driving near cased concrete.
Deep foundation elements shall not be driven within four and one-half average diameters of a cased element filled with concrete less than 24 hours old unless *approved* by the *building official*. Concrete shall not be placed in casings within heave range of driving.

1810.4.1.5 Defective timber piles.
Any substantial sudden increase in rate of penetration of a timber pile shall be investigated for possible damage. If the sudden increase in rate of penetration cannot be correlated to soil strata, the pile shall be removed for inspection or rejected.

1810.4.2 Identification.
Deep foundation materials shall be identified for conformity to the specified grade with this identity maintained continuously from the point of manufacture to the point of installation or

`

shall be tested by an *approved agency* to determine conformity to the specified grade. The *approved agency* shall furnish an affidavit of compliance to the *building official*.

1810.4.3 Location plan.
A plan showing the location and designation of deep foundation elements by an identification system shall be filed with the *building official* prior to installation of such elements. Detailed records for elements shall bear an identification corresponding to that shown on the plan.

1810.4.4 Preexcavation.
The use of jetting, augering or other methods of preexcavation shall be subject to the approval of the *building official*. Where permitted, preexcavation shall be carried out in the same manner as used for deep foundation elements subject to load tests and in such a manner that will not impair the carrying capacity of the elements already in place or damage adjacent structures. Element tips shall be driven below the preexcavated depth until the required resistance or penetration is obtained.

1810.4.5 Vibratory driving.
Vibratory drivers shall only be used to install deep foundation elements where the element load capacity is verified by load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2. The installation of production elements shall be controlled according to power consumption, rate of penetration or other *approved* means that ensure element capacities equal or exceed those of the test elements.

1810.4.6 Heaved elements.
Deep foundation elements that have heaved during the driving of adjacent elements shall be redriven as necessary to develop the required capacity and penetration, or the capacity of the element shall be verified by load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2.

1810.4.7 Enlarged base cast-in-place elements.
Enlarged bases for cast-in-place deep foundation elements formed by compacting concrete or by driving a precast base shall be formed in or driven into granular soils. Such elements shall be constructed in the same manner as successful prototype test elements driven for the project. Shafts extending through peat or other organic soil shall be encased in a permanent steel casing. Where a cased shaft is used, the shaft shall be adequately reinforced to resist column action or the annular space around the shaft shall be filled sufficiently to reestablish lateral support by the soil. Where heave occurs, the element shall be replaced unless it is demonstrated that the element is undamaged and capable of carrying twice its design load.

1810.4.8 Hollow-stem augered, cast-in-place elements.
Where concrete or grout is placed by pumping through a hollow-stem auger, the auger shall be permitted to rotate in a clockwise direction during withdrawal. As the auger is withdrawn at a steady rate or in increments not to exceed 1 foot (305 mm), concreting or grouting pumping pressures shall be measured and maintained high enough at all times to offset hydrostatic and lateral earth pressures. Concrete or grout volumes shall be measured to ensure that the volume of concrete or grout placed in each element is equal to or greater than the theoretical volume of the hole created by the auger. Where the installation process of any element is interrupted or a loss of concreting or grouting pressure occurs, the element shall be redrilled to 5 feet (1524 mm) below the elevation of the tip of the auger when the installation was interrupted or concrete or grout pressure was lost and reformed. Augered cast-in-place elements shall not be installed within six diameters center to center of an element filled with concrete or grout less than 12 hours old, unless *approved* by the

`

building official. If the concrete or grout level in any completed element drops due to installation of an adjacent element, the element shall be replaced.

1810.4.9 Socketed drilled shafts.
The rock socket and pipe or tube casing of socketed drilled shafts shall be thoroughly cleaned of foreign materials before filling with concrete. Steel cores shall be bedded in cement grout at the base of the rock socket.

1810.4.10 Micropiles.
Micropile deep foundation elements shall be permitted to be formed in holes advanced by rotary or percussive drilling methods, with or without casing. The elements shall be grouted with a fluid cement grout. The grout shall be pumped through a tremie pipe extending to the bottom of the element until grout of suitable quality returns at the top of the element. The following requirements apply to specific installation methods:

1. For micropiles grouted inside a temporary casing, the reinforcing bars shall be inserted prior to withdrawal of the casing.The casing shall be withdrawn in a controlled manner with the grout level maintained at the top of the element to ensure that the grout completely fills the drill hole. During withdrawal of the casing, the grout level inside the casing shall be monitored to verify that the flow of grout inside the casing is not obstructed.

2. For a micropile or portion thereof grouted in an open drill hole in soil without temporary casing, the minimum design diameter of the drill hole shall be verified by a suitable device during grouting.

3. For micropiles designed for end bearing, a suitable means shall be employed to verify that the bearing surface is properly cleaned prior to grouting.

4. Subsequent micropiles shall not be drilled near elements that have been grouted until the grout has had sufficient time to harden.

5. Micropiles shall be grouted as soon as possible after drilling is completed.

6. For micropiles designed with a full-length casing, the casing shall be pulled back to the top of the bond zone and reinserted or some other suitable means employed to assure grout coverage outside the casing.

1810.4.11 Helical piles.
Helical piles shall be installed to specified embedment depth and torsional resistance criteria as determined by a *registered design professional*. The torque applied during installation shall not exceed the maximum allowable installation torque of the helical pile.

1810.4.12 Special inspection.
Special inspections in accordance with Sections 1705.7 and 1705.8 shall be provided for driven and cast-in-place deep foundation elements, respectively. *Special inspections* in accordance with Section 1705.9 shall be provided for helical piles.

`

CHAPTER 19
CONCRETE

Italics are used for text within Sections 1903 through 1905 of this code to indicate provisions that differ from ACI 318.

User note: Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 1901
GENERAL

1901.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, quality control, design and construction of concrete used in structures.

1901.2 Plain and reinforced concrete.
Structural concrete shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of this chapter and ACI 318 as amended in Section 1905 of this code. Except for the provisions of Sections 1904 and 1907, the design and construction of slabs on grade shall not be governed by this chapter unless they transmit vertical loads or lateral forces from other parts of the structure to the soil.

1901.3 Anchoring to concrete.
Anchoring to concrete shall be in accordance with ACI 318 as amended in Section 1905, and applies to cast-in (headed bolts, headed studs and hooked J- or L-bolts), post-installed expansion (torque-controlled and displacement-controlled), undercut and adhesive anchors.

1901.4 Composite structural steel and concrete structures.
Systems of structural steel acting compositely with reinforced concrete shall be designed in accordance with Section 2206 of this code.

1901.5 Construction documents.
The *construction documents* for structural concrete construction shall include:

1. The specified compressive strength of concrete at the stated ages or stages of construction for which each concrete element is designed.

2. The specified strength or grade of reinforcement.

3. The size and location of structural elements, reinforcement and anchors.

4. Provision for dimensional changes resulting from creep, shrinkage and temperature.

5. The magnitude and location of prestressing forces.

6. Anchorage length of reinforcement and location and length of lap splices.

7. Type and location of mechanical and welded splices of reinforcement.

`

8. Details and location of contraction or isolation joints specified for plain concrete.

9. Minimum concrete compressive strength at time of posttensioning.

10. Stressing sequence for posttensioning tendons.

11. For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, a statement if slab on grade is designed as a structural diaphragm.

1901.6 Special inspections and tests.
Special inspections and tests of concrete elements of buildings and structures and concreting operations shall be as required by Chapter 17.

SECTION 1902
DEFINITIONS

1902.1 General.
The words and terms defined in ACI 318 shall, for the purposes of this chapter and as used elsewhere in this code for concrete construction, have the meanings shown in ACI 318 as modified by Section 1905.1.1.

SECTION 1903
SPECIFICATIONS FOR TESTS AND MATERIALS

1903.1 General.
Materials used to produce concrete, concrete itself and testing thereof shall comply with the applicable standards listed in ACI 318.

Exception: *The following standards as referenced in Chapter 35 shall be permitted to be used.*

1. *ASTM C150*

2. *ASTM C595*

3. *ASTM C1157*

1903.2 Special inspections.
Where required, special inspections and tests shall be in accordance with Chapter 17.

1903.3 Glass fiber-reinforced concrete.
Glass fiber-reinforced concrete (GFRC) and the materials used in such concrete shall be in accordance with the PCI MNL 128 standard.

1903.4 Flat wall insulating concrete form (ICF) systems.
Insulating concrete form material used for forming flat concrete walls shall conform to ASTM E2634.

SECTION 1904
DURABILITY REQUIREMENTS

`

1904.1 Structural concrete.
Structural concrete shall conform to the durability requirements of ACI 318.

> ***Exception:*** *For Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies not more than three stories above grade plane, the specified compressive strength, f'_c, for concrete in basement walls, foundation walls, exterior walls and other vertical surfaces exposed to the weather shall be not less than 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa).*

1904.2 Nonstructural concrete.
The registered design professional shall assign nonstructural concrete a freeze-thaw exposure class, as defined in ACI 318, based on the anticipated exposure of nonstructural concrete. Nonstructural concrete shall have a minimum specified compressive strength, f'_c, of 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa) for Class F0; 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa) for Class F1; and 3,500 psi (24.1 MPa) for Classes F2 and F3. Nonstructural concrete shall be air entrained in accordance with ACI 318.

SECTION 1905
MODIFICATIONS TO ACI 318

1905.1 General.
The text of ACI 318 shall be modified as indicated in Sections 1905.1.1 through 1905.1.8.

1905.1.1 ACI 318, Section 2.3.
Modify existing definitions and add the following definitions to ACI 318, Section 2.3.

DESIGN DISPLACEMENT.
Total lateral displacement expected for the design-basis earthquake, *as specified by Section 12.8.6 of ASCE 7.*

DETAILED PLAIN CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL.
A wall complying with the requirements of Chapter 14, including 14.6.2.

ORDINARY PRECAST STRUCTURAL WALL.
A precast wall complying with the requirements of Chapters 1 through 13, 15, 16 and 19 through 26.

ORDINARY REINFORCED CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL.
A *cast-in-place* wall complying with the requirements of Chapters 1 through 13, 15, 16 and 19 through 26.

ORDINARY STRUCTURAL PLAIN CONCRETE WALL.
A wall complying with the requirements of Chapter 14, *excluding 14.6.2*.

SPECIAL STRUCTURAL WALL.
A cast-in-place or precast wall complying with the requirements of 18.2.4 through 18.2.8, 18.10 and 18.11, as applicable, in addition to the requirements for ordinary reinforced concrete structural walls *or ordinary precast structural walls, as applicable*. *Where ASCE 7 refers to a "special reinforced concrete structural wall," it shall be deemed to mean a "special structural wall."*

1905.1.2 ACI 318, Section 18.2.1.
Modify ACI 318 Sections 18.2.1.2 and 18.2.1.6 to read as follows:

`

18.2.1.2 – Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A shall satisfy requirements of Chapters 1 through 17 and 19 through 26*; Chapter 18 does not apply*. Structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B, C, D, E or F also shall satisfy 18.2.1.3 through 18.2.1.7, as applicable. *Except for structural elements of plain concrete complying with Section 1905.1.7 of the International Building Code, structural elements of plain concrete are prohibited in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.*

18.2.1.6 – Structural systems designated as part of the seismic force-resisting system shall be restricted to those *permitted by ASCE 7*. Except for *Seismic Design Category* A, for which Chapter 18 does not apply, the following provisions shall be satisfied for each structural system designated as part of the seismic force-resisting system, regardless of the *seismic design category*:

(a) Ordinary moment frames shall satisfy 18.3.

(b) Ordinary reinforced concrete structural walls *and ordinary precast structural walls* need not satisfy any provisions in Chapter 18.

(c) Intermediate moment frames shall satisfy 18.4. (d) Intermediate precast *structural* walls shall satisfy 18.5.

(e) Special moment frames shall satisfy 18.6 through 18.9.

(f) Special structural walls shall satisfy 18.10.

(g) Special structural walls constructed using precast concrete shall satisfy 18.11.

All special moment frames and special structural walls shall also satisfy 18.2.4 through 18.2.8.

1905.1.3 ACI 318, Section 18.5.
Modify ACI 318, Section 18.5, by adding new Section 18.5.2.2 and renumbering existing Sections 18.5.2.2 and 18.5.2.3 to become 18.5.2.3 and 18.5.2.4, respectively.

18.5.2.2 – Connections that are designed to yield shall be capable of maintaining 80 percent of their design strength at the deformation induced by the design displacement or shall use Type 2 mechanical splices.

18.5.2.3 – For elements of the connection that are not designed to yield the required strength shall be based on 1.5 S_y of the yielding portion of the connection.

18.5.2.4 – In structures assigned to SDC D, E or F, wall piers shall be designed in accordance with 18.10.8 or 18.14 in ACI 318.

1905.1.4 ACI 318, Section 18.11.
Modify ACI 318, Section 18.11.2.1, to read as follows:

18.11.2.1 – Special structural walls constructed using precast concrete shall satisfy all the requirements of 18.10 *for cast-in-place special structural walls* in addition to 18.5.2.

`

1905.1.5 ACI 318, Section 18.13.1.1.
Modify ACI 318, Section 18.13.1.1, to read as follows:

18.13.1.1 – Foundations resisting earthquake-induced forces or transferring earthquake-induced forces between a structure and ground shall comply with the requirements of 18.13 and other applicable provisions of ACI 318 *unless modified by Chapter 18 of the International Building Code.*

1905.1.6 ACI 318, Section 14.6.
Modify ACI 318, Section 14.6, by adding new Section 14.6.2 to read as follows:

14.6.2 – Detailed plain concrete structural walls.

14.6.2.1 – Detailed plain concrete structural walls are walls conforming to the requirements of ordinary structural plain concrete walls and 14.6.2.2.

14.6.2.2 – Reinforcement shall be provided as follows:

(a) Vertical reinforcement of at least 0.20 square inch (129 mm^2) in cross-sectional area shall be provided continuously from support to support at each corner, at each side of each opening and at the ends of walls. The continuous vertical bar required beside an opening is permitted to substitute for one of the two No. 5 bars required by 14.6.1.

(b) Horizontal reinforcement at least 0.20 square inch (129 mm^2) in cross-sectional area shall be provided:

1. Continuously at structurally connected roof and floor levels and at the top of walls;

2. At the bottom of load-bearing walls or in the top of foundations where doweled to the wall; and

3. At a maximum spacing of 120 inches (3048 mm).

Reinforcement at the top and bottom of openings, where used in determining the maximum spacing specified in Item 3 above, shall be continuous in the wall.

1905.1.7 ACI 318, Section 14.1.4.
Delete ACI 318, Section 14.1.4, and replace with the following:

14.1.4 – Plain concrete in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.

14.1.4.1 – Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F shall not have elements of structural plain concrete, except as follows:

(a) Structural plain concrete basement, foundation or other walls below the base as defined in ASCE 7 are permitted in detached one- and two-family dwellings three stories or less in height constructed with stud-bearing walls. In dwellings assigned to Seismic Design Category D or E, the height of the wall shall not

`

exceed 8 feet (2438 mm), the thickness shall be not less than $7^1/_2$ inches (190 mm), and the wall shall retain no more than 4 feet (1219 mm) of unbalanced fill. Walls shall have reinforcement in accordance with 14.6.1.

(b) Isolated footings of plain concrete supporting pedestals or columns are permitted, provided the projection of the footing beyond the face of the supported member does not exceed the footing thickness.

Exception: *In detached one- and two-family dwellings three stories or less in height, the projection of the footing beyond the face of the supported member is permitted to exceed the footing thickness.*

(c) Plain concrete footings supporting walls are permitted, provided the footings have at least two continuous longitudinal reinforcing bars. Bars shall not be smaller than No. 4 and shall have a total area of not less than 0.002 times the gross cross-sectional area of the footing. For footings that exceed 8 inches (203 mm) in thickness, a minimum of one bar shall be provided at the top and bottom of the footing. Continuity of reinforcement shall be provided at corners and intersections.

Exceptions:

1. In Seismic Design Categories A, B and C, detached one- and two-family dwellings three stories or less in height constructed with stud-bearing walls are permitted to have plain concrete footings without longitudinal reinforcement.

2. For foundation systems consisting of a plain concrete footing and a plain concrete stemwall, a minimum of one bar shall be provided at the top of the stemwall and at the bottom of the footing.

3. Where a slab on ground is cast monolithically with the footing, one No. 5 bar is permitted to be located at either the top of the slab or bottom of the footing.

1905.1.8 ACI 318, Section 17.2.3.
Modify ACI 318 Sections 17.2.3.4.2, 17.2.3.4.3(d) and 17.2.3.5.2 to read as follows:

17.2.3.4.2 – Where the tensile component of the strength-level earthquake force applied to anchors exceeds 20 percent of the total factored anchor tensile force associated with the same load combination, anchors and their attachments shall be designed in accordance with 17.2.3.4.3. The anchor design tensile strength shall be determined in accordance with 17.2.3.4.4.

Exception: *Anchors designed to resist wall out-of-plane forces with design strengths equal to or greater than the force determined in accordance with ASCE 7 Equation 12.11-1 or 12.14-10 shall be deemed to satisfy Section 17.2.3.4.3(d).*

17.2.3.4.3(d) – The anchor or group of anchors shall be designed for the maximum tension obtained from design load combinations that include ***E***, with ***E*** increased by Ω_0. The anchor design tensile strength shall *be calculated from 17.2.3.4.4*.

`

17.2.3.5.2 – Where the shear component of the strength-level earthquake force applied to anchors exceeds 20 percent of the total factored anchor shear force associated with the same load combination, anchors and their attachments shall be designed in accordance with 17.2.3.5.3. The anchor design shear strength for resisting earthquake forces shall be determined in accordance with 17.5.

Exceptions:

1. *For the calculation of the in-plane shear strength of anchor bolts attaching wood sill plates of bearing or nonbearing walls of light-frame wood structures to foundations or foundation stem walls, the in-plane shear strength in accordance with 17.5.2 and 17.5.3 need not be computed and 17.2.3.5.3 shall be deemed to be satisfied provided all of the following are met:*

    1.1. The allowable in-plane shear strength of the anchor is determined in accordance with ANSI/AWC NDS Table 11E for lateral design values parallel to grain.

    1.2. The maximum anchor nominal diameter is $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (16 mm).

    1.3. Anchor bolts are embedded into concrete a minimum of 7 inches (178 mm).

    1.4. Anchor bolts are located a minimum of $1^{3}/_{4}$ inches (45 mm) from the edge of the concrete parallel to the length of the wood sill plate.

    1.5. Anchor bolts are located a minimum of 15 anchor diameters from the edge of the concrete perpendicular to the length of the wood sill plate.

    1.6. The sill plate is 2-inch (51 mm) or 3-inch (76 mm) nominal thickness.

2. *For the calculation of the in-plane shear strength of anchor bolts attaching cold-formed steel track of bearing or nonbearing walls of light-frame construction to foundations or foundation stem walls, the in-plane shear strength in accordance with 17.5.2 and 17.5.3 need not be computed and 17.2.3.5.3 shall be deemed to be satisfied provided all of the following are met:*

    2.1. The maximum anchor nominal diameter is $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (16 mm).

    2.2. Anchors are embedded into concrete a minimum of 7 inches (178 mm).

    2.3. Anchors are located a minimum of $1^{3}/_{4}$ inches (45 mm) from the edge of the concrete parallel to the length of the track.

`

2.4. Anchors are located a minimum of 15 anchor diameters from the edge of the concrete perpendicular to the length of the track.

2.5. The track is 33 to 68 mil (0.84 mm to 1.73 mm) designation thickness.

Allowable in-plane shear strength of exempt anchors, parallel to the edge of concrete, shall be permitted to be determined in accordance with AISI S100 Section E3.3.1.

3. In light-frame construction bearing or nonbearing walls, shear strength of concrete anchors less than or equal to 1 inch [25 mm] in diameter attaching sill plate or track to foundation or foundation stem wall need not satisfy 17.2.3.5.3(a) through (c) when the design strength of the anchors is determined in accordance with 17.5.2.1(c).

SECTION 1906
STRUCTURAL PLAIN CONCRETE

1906.1 Scope.
The design and construction of structural plain concrete, both cast-in-place and precast, shall comply with the minimum requirements of ACI 318, as modified in Section 1905.

Exception: For Group R-3 occupancies and buildings of other occupancies less than two stories above grade plane of light-frame construction, the required footing thickness of ACI 318 is permitted to be reduced to 6 inches (152 mm), provided that the footing does not extend more than 4 inches (102 mm) on either side of the supported wall.

SECTION 1907
MINIMUM SLAB PROVISIONS

1907.1 General.
The thickness of concrete floor slabs supported directly on the ground shall not be less than $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm). A 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.15 mm) polyethylene vapor retarder with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm) shall be placed between the base course or subgrade and the concrete floor slab, or other *approved* equivalent methods or materials shall be used to retard vapor transmission through the floor slab.

Exception: A vapor retarder is not required:

1. For detached structures accessory to occupancies in Group R-3, such as garages, utility buildings or other unheated facilities.

2. For unheated storage rooms having an area of less than 70 square feet (6.5 m^2) and carports attached to occupancies in Group R-3.

3. For buildings of other occupancies where migration of moisture through the slab from below will not be detrimental to the intended occupancy of the building.

`

4. For driveways, walks, patios and other flatwork that will not be enclosed at a later date.

5. Where *approved* based on local site conditions.

S_3	=	Allowable lateral soil-bearing pressure as set forth in Section 1806.2 based on a depth equal to the depth of embedment in pounds per square foot (kPa).

1807.3.2.3 Vertical load.
The resistance to vertical loads shall be determined using the vertical foundation pressure set forth in Table 1806.2.

1807.3.3 Backfill.
The backfill in the annular space around columns not embedded in poured footings shall be by one of the following methods:

1. Backfill shall be of concrete with a specified compressive strength of not less than 2,000 psi (13.8 MPa). The hole shall not be less than 4 inches (102 mm) larger than the diameter of the column at its bottom or 4 inches (102 mm) larger than the diagonal dimension of a square or rectangular column.

2. Backfill shall be of clean sand. The sand shall be thoroughly compacted by tamping in layers not more than 8 inches (203 mm) in depth.

3. Backfill shall be of controlled low-strength material (CLSM).

SECTION 1808
FOUNDATIONS

1808.1 General.
Foundations shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1808.2 through 1808.9. Shallow foundations shall also satisfy the requirements of Section 1809. Deep foundations shall also satisfy the requirements of Section 1810.

1808.2 Design for capacity and settlement.
Foundations shall be so designed that the allowable bearing capacity of the soil is not exceeded, and that differential settlement is minimized. Foundations in areas with expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of Section 1808.6.

1808.3 Design loads.
Foundations shall be designed for the most unfavorable effects due to the combinations of loads specified in Section 1605.2 or 1605.3. The dead load is permitted to include the weight of foundations and overlying fill. Reduced live loads, as specified in Sections 1607.10 and 1607.12, shall be permitted to be used in the design of foundations.

1808.3.1 Seismic overturning.
Where foundations are proportioned using the load combinations of Section 1605.2 or 1605.3.1, and the computation of seismic overturning effects is by equivalent lateral force

`

analysis or modal analysis, the proportioning shall be in accordance with Section 12.13.4 of ASCE 7.

1808.3.2 Surcharge.
No fill or other surcharge loads shall be placed adjacent to any building or structure unless such building or structure is capable of withstanding the additional loads caused by the fill or the surcharge. Existing footings or foundations that will be affected by any excavation shall be underpinned or otherwise protected against settlement and shall be protected against detrimental lateral or vertical movement or both.

Exception: Minor grading for landscaping purposes shall be permitted where done with walk-behind equipment, where the grade is not increased more than 1 foot (305 mm) from original design grade or where *approved* by the *building official*.

1808.4 Vibratory loads.
Where machinery operations or other vibrations are transmitted through the foundation, consideration shall be given in the foundation design to prevent detrimental disturbances of the soil.

1808.5 Shifting or moving soils.
Where it is known that the shallow subsoils are of a shifting or moving character, foundations shall be carried to a sufficient depth to ensure stability.

1808.6 Design for expansive soils.
Foundations for buildings and structures founded on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2.

Exception: Foundation design need not comply with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2 where one of the following conditions is satisfied:

1. The soil is removed in accordance with Section 1808.6.3.

2. The *building official* approves stabilization of the soil in accordance with Section 1808.6.4.

1808.6.1 Foundations.
Foundations placed on or within the active zone of expansive soils shall be designed to resist differential volume changes and to prevent structural damage to the supported structure. Deflection and racking of the supported structure shall be limited to that which will not interfere with the usability and serviceability of the structure.

Foundations placed below where volume change occurs or below expansive soil shall comply with the following provisions:

1. Foundations extending into or penetrating expansive soils shall be designed to prevent uplift of the supported structure.

2. Foundations penetrating expansive soils shall be designed to resist forces exerted on the foundation due to soil volume changes or shall be isolated from the expansive soil.

1808.6.2 Slab-on-ground foundations.
Moments, shears and deflections for use in designing slab-on-ground, mat or raft

`

foundations on expansive soils shall be determined in accordance with *WRI/CRSI Design of Slab-on-Ground Foundations* or *PTI DC 10.5.* Using the moments, shears and deflections determined above, nonprestressed slabs-on-ground, mat or raft foundations on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with *WRI/CRSI Design of Slab-on-Ground Foundations* and post-tensioned slab-on-ground, mat or raft foundations on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with *PTI DC 10.5*. It shall be permitted to analyze and design such slabs by other methods that account for soil-structure interaction, the deformed shape of the soil support, the plate or stiffened plate action of the slab as well as both center lift and edge lift conditions. Such alternative methods shall be rational and the basis for all aspects and parameters of the method shall be available for peer review.

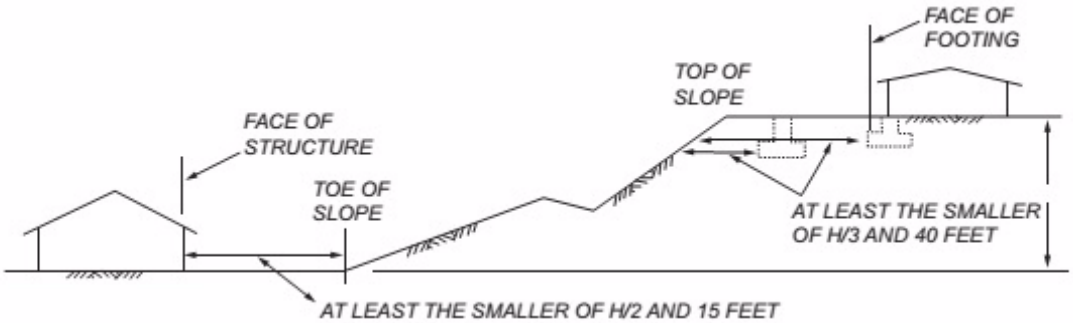
1808.6.3 Removal of expansive soil.
Where expansive soil is removed in lieu of designing foundations in accordance with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2, the soil shall be removed to a depth sufficient to ensure a constant moisture content in the remaining soil. Fill material shall not contain expansive soils and shall comply with Section 1804.5 or 1804.6.

> **Exception:** Expansive soil need not be removed to the depth of constant moisture, provided the confining pressure in the expansive soil created by the fill and supported structure exceeds the swell pressure.

1808.6.4 Stabilization.
Where the active zone of expansive soils is stabilized in lieu of designing foundations in accordance with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2, the soil shall be stabilized by chemical, dewatering, presaturation or equivalent techniques.

1808.7 Foundations on or adjacent to slopes.
The placement of buildings and structures on or adjacent to slopes steeper than one unit vertical in three units horizontal (33.3-percent slope) shall comply with Sections 1808.7.1 through 1808.7.5.

1808.7.1 Building clearance from ascending slopes.
In general, buildings below slopes shall be set a sufficient distance from the slope to provide protection from slope drainage, erosion and shallow failures. Except as provided in Section 1808.7.5 and Figure 1808.7.1, the following criteria will be assumed to provide this protection. Where the existing slope is steeper than one unit vertical in one unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the toe of the slope shall be assumed to be at the intersection of a horizontal plane drawn from the top of the foundation and a plane drawn tangent to the slope at an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) to the horizontal. Where a retaining wall is constructed at the toe of the slope, the height of the slope shall be measured from the top of the wall to the top of the slope.



`

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 1808.7.1
FOUNDATION CLEARANCES FROM SLOPES

1808.7.2 Foundation setback from descending slope surface.
Foundations on or adjacent to slope surfaces shall be founded in firm material with an embedment and set back from the slope surface sufficient to provide vertical and lateral support for the foundation without detrimental settlement. Except as provided for in Section 1808.7.5 and Figure 1808.7.1, the following setback is deemed adequate to meet the criteria. Where the slope is steeper than 1 unit vertical in 1 unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the required setback shall be measured from an imaginary plane 45 degrees (0.79 rad) to the horizontal, projected upward from the toe of the slope.

1808.7.3 Pools.
The setback between pools regulated by this code and slopes shall be equal to one-half the building footing setback distance required by this section. That portion of the pool wall within a horizontal distance of 7 feet (2134 mm) from the top of the slope shall be capable of supporting the water in the pool without soil support.

1808.7.4 Foundation elevation.
On graded sites, the top of any exterior foundation shall extend above the elevation of the street gutter at point of discharge or the inlet of an *approved* drainage device a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) plus 2 percent. Alternate elevations are permitted subject to the approval of the *building official*, provided it can be demonstrated that required drainage to the point of discharge and away from the structure is provided at all locations on the site.

1808.7.5 Alternate setback and clearance.
Alternate setbacks and clearances are permitted, subject to the approval of the *building official*. The *building official* shall be permitted to require a geotechnical investigation as set forth in Section 1803.5.10.

1808.8 Concrete foundations.
The design, materials and construction of concrete foundations shall comply with Sections 1808.8.1 through 1808.8.6 and the provisions of Chapter 19.

Exception: Where concrete footings supporting walls of light-frame construction are designed in accordance with Table 1809.7, a specific design in accordance with Chapter 19 is not required.

1808.8.1 Concrete or grout strength and mix proportioning.
Concrete or grout in foundations shall have a specified compressive strength (f'_c) not less than the largest applicable value indicated in Table 1808.8.1.

Where concrete is placed through a funnel hopper at the top of a deep foundation element, the concrete mix shall be designed and proportioned so as to produce a cohesive workable mix having a slump of not less than 4 inches (102 mm) and not more than 8 inches (204 mm). Where concrete or grout is to be pumped, the mix design including slump shall be adjusted to produce a pumpable mixture.

`

TABLE 1808.8.1
MINIMUM SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH f'_c OF CONCRETE OR GROUT

FOUNDATION ELEMENT OR CONDITION	SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH, f'_c
1. Foundations for structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A, B or C	2,500 psi
2a. Foundations for Group R or U occupancies of light-frame construction, two stories or less in height, assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F	2,500 psi
2b. Foundations for other structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F	3,000 psi
3. Precast nonprestressed driven piles	4,000 psi
4. Socketed drilled shafts	4,000 psi
5. Micropiles	4,000 psi
6. Precast prestressed driven piles	5,000 psi

For SI: 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

1808.8.2 Concrete cover.
The concrete cover provided for prestressed and nonprestressed reinforcement in foundations shall be no less than the largest applicable value specified in Table 1808.8.2. Longitudinal bars spaced less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) clear distance apart shall be considered bundled bars for which the concrete cover provided shall also be no less than that required by Section 20.6.1.3.4 of ACI 318. Concrete cover shall be measured from the concrete surface to the outermost surface of the steel to which the cover requirement applies. Where concrete is placed in a temporary or permanent casing or a mandrel, the inside face of the casing or mandrel shall be considered the concrete surface.

TABLE 1808.8.2
MINIMUM CONCRETE COVER

FOUNDATION ELEMENT OR CONDITION	MINIMUM COVER
1. Shallow foundations	In accordance with Section 20.6 of ACI 318
2. Precast nonprestressed deep foundation elements Exposed to seawater Not manufactured under plant conditions Manufactured under plant control conditions	 3 inches 2 inches In accordance with Section 20.6.1.3.3 of ACI 318
3. Precast prestressed deep foundation elements Exposed to seawater Other	 2.5 inches In accordance with Section 20.6.1.3.3 of ACI 318

`

4. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements not enclosed by a steel pipe, tube or permanent casing	2.5 inches
5. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements enclosed by a steel pipe, tube or permanent casing	1 inch
6. Structural steel core within a steel pipe, tube or permanent casing	2 inches
7. Cast-in-place drilled shafts enclosed by a stable rock socket	1.5 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1808.8.3 Placement of concrete.
Concrete shall be placed in such a manner as to ensure the exclusion of any foreign matter and to secure a full-size foundation. Concrete shall not be placed through water unless a tremie or other method *approved* by the *building official* is used. Where placed under or in the presence of water, the concrete shall be deposited by *approved* means to ensure minimum segregation of the mix and negligible turbulence of the water. Where depositing concrete from the top of a deep foundation element, the concrete shall be chuted directly into smooth-sided pipes or tubes or placed in a rapid and continuous operation through a funnel hopper centered at the top of the element.

1808.8.4 Protection of concrete.
Concrete foundations shall be protected from freezing during depositing and for a period of not less than five days thereafter. Water shall not be allowed to flow through the deposited concrete.

1808.8.5 Forming of concrete.
Concrete foundations are permitted to be cast against the earth where, in the opinion of the *building official*, soil conditions do not require formwork. Where formwork is required, it shall be in accordance with Section 26.11 of ACI 318.

1808.8.6 Seismic requirements.
See Section 1905 for additional requirements for foundations of structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F.

For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, provisions of Section 18.13 of ACI 318 shall apply where not in conflict with the provisions of Sections 1808 through 1810.

Exceptions:

1. Detached one- and two-family dwellings of light-frame construction and two stories or less above *grade plane* are not required to comply with the provisions of Section 18.13 of ACI 318.

2. Section 18.13.4.3(a) of ACI 318 shall not apply.

1808.9 Vertical masonry foundation elements.
Vertical masonry foundation elements that are not foundation piers as defined in Section 202 shall be designed as piers, walls or columns, as applicable, in accordance with TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

`

SECTION 1809
SHALLOW FOUNDATIONS

1809.1 General.
Shallow foundations shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1809.2 through 1809.13.

1809.2 Supporting soils.
Shallow foundations shall be built on undisturbed soil, compacted fill material or controlled low-strength material (CLSM). Compacted fill material shall be placed in accordance with Section 1804.5. CLSM shall be placed in accordance with Section 1804.6.

1809.3 Stepped footings.
The top surface of footings shall be level. The bottom surface of footings shall be permitted to have a slope not exceeding one unit vertical in 10 units horizontal (10-percent slope). Footings shall be stepped where it is necessary to change the elevation of the top surface of the footing or where the surface of the ground slopes more than one unit vertical in 10 units horizontal (10-percent slope).

1809.4 Depth and width of footings.
The minimum depth of footings below the undisturbed ground surface shall be 12 inches (305 mm). Where applicable, the requirements of Section 1809.5 shall also be satisfied. The minimum width of footings shall be 12 inches (305 mm).

1809.5 Frost protection.
Except where otherwise protected from frost, foundations and other permanent supports of buildings and structures shall be protected from frost by one or more of the following methods:

1. Extending below the frost line of the locality.

2. Constructing in accordance with ASCE 32.

3. Erecting on solid rock.

   Exception: Free-standing buildings meeting all of the following conditions shall not be required to be protected:

   1. Assigned to *Risk Category* I.

   2. Area of 600 square feet (56 m^2) or less for light-frame construction or 400 square feet (37 m^2) or less for other than light-frame construction.

   3. Eave height of 10 feet (3048 mm) or less.

Shallow foundations shall not bear on frozen soil unless such frozen condition is of a permanent character.

1809.6 Location of footings.
Footings on granular soil shall be so located that the line drawn between the lower edges of adjoining footings shall not have a slope steeper than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) with the horizontal, unless the material supporting the higher footing is braced or retained or otherwise laterally

`

supported in an *approved* manner or a greater slope has been properly established by engineering analysis.

1809.7 Prescriptive footings for light-frame construction.
Where a specific design is not provided, concrete or masonry-unit footings supporting walls of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be designed in accordance with Table 1809.7.

TABLE 1809.7
PRESCRIPTIVE FOOTINGS SUPPORTING
WALLS OF LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION[a, b, c, d, e]

NUMBER OF FLOORS SUPPORTED BY THE FOOTING[f]	WIDTH OF FOOTING (inches)	THICKNESS OF FOOTING (inches)
1	12	6
2	15	6
3	18	8[g]

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. Depth of footings shall be in accordance with Section 1809.4.
b. The ground under the floor shall be permitted to be excavated to the elevation of the top of the footing.
c. Interior stud-bearing walls shall be permitted to be supported by isolated footings. The footing width and length shall be twice the width shown in this table, and footings shall be spaced not more than 6 feet on center.
d. See Section 1905 for additional requirements for concrete footings of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.
e. For thickness of foundation walls, see Section 1807.1.6.
f. Footings shall be permitted to support a roof in addition to the stipulated number of floors. Footings supporting roof only shall be as required for supporting one floor.
g. Plain concrete footings for Group R-3 occupancies shall be permitted to be 6 inches thick.

1809.8 Plain concrete footings.
The edge thickness of plain concrete footings supporting walls of other than light-frame construction shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm) where placed on soil or rock.

> **Exception:** For plain concrete footings supporting Group R-3 occupancies, the edge thickness is permitted to be 6 inches (152 mm), provided that the footing does not extend beyond a distance greater than the thickness of the footing on either side of the supported wall.

1809.9 Masonry-unit footings.
The design, materials and construction of masonry-unit footings shall comply with Sections 1809.9.1 and 1809.9.2, and the provisions of Chapter 21.

> **Exception:** Where a specific design is not provided, masonry-unit footings supporting walls of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be designed in accordance with Table 1809.7.

> **1809.9.1 Dimensions.**
> Masonry-unit footings shall be laid in Type M or S mortar complying with Section 2103.2.1 and the depth shall not be less than twice the projection beyond the wall, pier or column. The width shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm) wider than the wall supported thereon.

`

1809.9.2 Offsets.
The maximum offset of each course in brick foundation walls stepped up from the footings shall be $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm) where laid in single courses, and 3 inches (76 mm) where laid in double courses.

1809.10 Pier and curtain wall foundations.
Except in *Seismic Design Categories* D, E and F, pier and curtain wall foundations shall be permitted to be used to support light-frame construction not more than two *stories above grade plane*, provided the following requirements are met:

1. All load-bearing walls shall be placed on continuous concrete footings bonded integrally with the *exterior wall* footings.

2. The minimum actual thickness of a load-bearing masonry wall shall not be less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal or $3^{5}/_{8}$ inches (92 mm) actual thickness, and shall be bonded integrally with piers spaced 6 feet (1829 mm) on center (o.c.).

3. Piers shall be constructed in accordance with Chapter 21 and the following:

   3.1. The unsupported height of the masonry piers shall not exceed 10 times their least dimension.

   3.2. Where structural clay tile or hollow concrete masonry units are used for piers supporting beams and girders, the cellular spaces shall be filled solidly with concrete or Type M or S mortar.

   Exception: Unfilled hollow piers shall be permitted where the unsupported height of the pier is not more than four times its least dimension.

   3.3. Hollow piers shall be capped with 4 inches (102 mm) of solid masonry or concrete or the cavities of the top course shall be filled with concrete or grout.

4. The maximum height of a 4-inch (102 mm) load-bearing masonry foundation wall supporting wood frame walls and floors shall not be more than 4 feet (1219 mm) in height.

5. The unbalanced fill for 4-inch (102 mm) foundation walls shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) for solid masonry, nor 12 inches (305 mm) for hollow masonry.

1809.11 Steel grillage footings.
Grillage footings of *structural steel elements* shall be separated with *approved* steel spacers and be entirely encased in concrete with at least 6 inches (152 mm) on the bottom and at least 4 inches (102 mm) at all other points. The spaces between the shapes shall be completely filled with concrete or cement grout.

1809.12 Timber footings.
Timber footings shall be permitted for buildings of Type V construction and as otherwise *approved* by the *building official*. Such footings shall be treated in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B). Treated timbers are not required where placed entirely below permanent water level, or where used as capping for wood piles that project above the water level over submerged or marsh lands. The compressive stresses perpendicular

`

to grain in untreated timber footings supported upon treated piles shall not exceed 70 percent of the allowable stresses for the species and grade of timber as specified in the ANSI/AWC NDS.

1809.13 Footing seismic ties.
Where a structure is assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, individual spread footings founded on soil defined in Section 1613.3.2 as *Site Class* E or F shall be interconnected by ties. Unless it is demonstrated that equivalent restraint is provided by reinforced concrete beams within slabs on grade or reinforced concrete slabs on grade, ties shall be capable of carrying, in tension or compression, a force equal to the lesser of the product of the larger footing design gravity load times the seismic coefficient, S_{DS}, divided by 10 and 25 percent of the smaller footing design gravity load.

SECTION 1810
DEEP FOUNDATIONS

1810.1 General.
Deep foundations shall be analyzed, designed, detailed and installed in accordance with Sections 1810.1 through 1810.4.

1810.1.1 Geotechnical investigation.
Deep foundations shall be designed and installed on the basis of a geotechnical investigation as set forth in Section 1803.

1810.1.2 Use of existing deep foundation elements.
Deep foundation elements left in place where a structure has been demolished shall not be used for the support of new construction unless satisfactory evidence is submitted to the *building official*, which indicates that the elements are sound and meet the requirements of this code. Such elements shall be load tested or redriven to verify their capacities. The design load applied to such elements shall be the lowest allowable load as determined by tests or redriving data.

1810.1.3 Deep foundation elements classified as columns.
Deep foundation elements standing unbraced in air, water or fluid soils shall be classified as columns and designed as such in accordance with the provisions of this code from their top down to the point where adequate lateral support is provided in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.

> **Exception:** Where the unsupported height to least horizontal dimension of a cast-in-place deep foundation element does not exceed three, it shall be permitted to design and construct such an element as a pedestal in accordance with ACI 318.

1810.1.4 Special types of deep foundations.
The use of types of deep foundation elements not specifically mentioned herein is permitted, subject to the approval of the *building official*, upon the submission of acceptable test data, calculations and other information relating to the structural properties and load capacity of such elements. The allowable stresses for materials shall not in any case exceed the limitations specified herein.

1810.2 Analysis.
The analysis of deep foundations for design shall be in accordance with Sections 1810.2.1 through 1810.2.5.

`

1810.2.1 Lateral support.
Any soil other than fluid soil shall be deemed to afford sufficient lateral support to prevent buckling of deep foundation elements and to permit the design of the elements in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the applicable provisions of this code.

Where deep foundation elements stand unbraced in air, water or fluid soils, it shall be permitted to consider them laterally supported at a point 5 feet (1524 mm) into stiff soil or 10 feet (3048 mm) into soft soil unless otherwise *approved* by the *building official* on the basis of a geotechnical investigation by a *registered design professional*.

1810.2.2 Stability.
Deep foundation elements shall be braced to provide lateral stability in all directions. Three or more elements connected by a rigid cap shall be considered braced, provided that the elements are located in radial directions from the centroid of the group not less than 60 degrees (1 rad) apart. A two-element group in a rigid cap shall be considered to be braced along the axis connecting the two elements. Methods used to brace deep foundation elements shall be subject to the approval of the *building official*.

Deep foundation elements supporting walls shall be placed alternately in lines spaced at least 1 foot (305 mm) apart and located symmetrically under the center of gravity of the wall load carried, unless effective measures are taken to provide for eccentricity and lateral forces, or the foundation elements are adequately braced to provide for lateral stability.

Exceptions:

1. Isolated cast-in-place deep foundation elements without lateral bracing shall be permitted where the least horizontal dimension is no less than 2 feet (610 mm), adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1 is provided for the entire height and the height does not exceed 12 times the least horizontal dimension.

2. A single row of deep foundation elements without lateral bracing is permitted for one- and two-family dwellings and lightweight construction not exceeding two *stories above grade plane* or 35 feet (10 668 mm) in *building height*, provided the centers of the elements are located within the width of the supported wall.

1810.2.3 Settlement.
The settlement of a single deep foundation element or group thereof shall be estimated based on *approved* methods of analysis. The predicted settlement shall cause neither harmful distortion of, nor instability in, the structure, nor cause any element to be loaded beyond its capacity.

1810.2.4 Lateral loads.
The moments, shears and lateral deflections used for design of deep foundation elements shall be established considering the nonlinear interaction of the shaft and soil, as determined by a *registered design professional*. Where the ratio of the depth of embedment of the element to its least horizontal dimension is less than or equal to six, it shall be permitted to assume the element is rigid.

1810.2.4.1 Seismic Design Categories D through F.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, deep foundation elements on *Site Class* E or F sites, as determined in Section 1613.3.2, shall be designed and constructed to withstand maximum imposed curvatures from earthquake

`

ground motions and structure response. Curvatures shall include free-field soil strains modified for soil-foundation-structure interaction coupled with foundation element deformations associated with earthquake loads imparted to the foundation by the structure.

Exception: Deep foundation elements that satisfy the following additional detailing requirements shall be deemed to comply with the curvature capacity requirements of this section.

1. Precast prestressed concrete piles detailed in accordance with Section 1810.3.8.3.3.

2. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.005 extending the full length of the element and detailed in accordance with Sections 18.7.5.2, 18.7.5.3 and 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318 as required by Section 1810.3.9.4.2.2.

1810.2.5 Group effects.
The analysis shall include group effects on lateral behavior where the center-to-center spacing of deep foundation elements in the direction of lateral force is less than eight times the least horizontal dimension of an element. The analysis shall include group effects on axial behavior where the center-to-center spacing of deep foundation elements is less than three times the least horizontal dimension of an element. Group effects shall be evaluated using a generally accepted method of analysis; the analysis for uplift of grouped elements with center-to-center spacing less than three times the least horizontal dimension of an element shall be evaluated in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.6.

1810.3 Design and detailing.
Deep foundations shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810.3.1 through 1810.3.12.

1810.3.1 Design conditions.
Design of deep foundations shall include the design conditions specified in Sections 1810.3.1.1 through 1810.3.1.6, as applicable.

1810.3.1.1 Design methods for concrete elements.
Where concrete deep foundations are laterally supported in accordance with Section 1810.2.1 for the entire height and applied forces cause bending moments no greater than those resulting from accidental eccentricities, structural design of the element using the load combinations of Section 1605.3 and the allowable stresses specified in this chapter shall be permitted. Otherwise, the structural design of concrete deep foundation elements shall use the load combinations of Section 1605.2 and *approved* strength design methods.

1810.3.1.2 Composite elements.
Where a single deep foundation element comprises two or more sections of different materials or different types spliced together, each section of the composite assembly shall satisfy the applicable requirements of this code, and the maximum allowable load in each section shall be limited by the structural capacity of that section.

1810.3.1.3 Mislocation.
The foundation or superstructure shall be designed to resist the effects of the mislocation of any deep foundation element by no less than 3 inches (76 mm). To resist

the effects of mislocation, compressive overload of deep foundation elements to 110 percent of the allowable design load shall be permitted.

1810.3.1.4 Driven piles.
Driven piles shall be designed and manufactured in accordance with accepted engineering practice to resist all stresses induced by handling, driving and service loads.

1810.3.1.5 Helical piles.
Helical piles shall be designed and manufactured in accordance with accepted engineering practice to resist all stresses induced by installation into the ground and service loads.

1810.3.1.6 Casings.
Temporary and permanent casings shall be of steel and shall be sufficiently strong to resist collapse and sufficiently water tight to exclude any foreign materials during the placing of concrete. Where a permanent casing is considered reinforcing steel, the steel shall be protected under the conditions specified in Section 1810.3.2.5. Horizontal joints in the casing shall be spliced in accordance with Section 1810.3.6.

1810.3.2 Materials.
The materials used in deep foundation elements shall satisfy the requirements of Sections 1810.3.2.1 through 1810.3.2.8, as applicable.

1810.3.2.1 Concrete.
Where concrete is cast in a steel pipe or where an enlarged base is formed by compacting concrete, the maximum size for coarse aggregate shall be $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm). Concrete to be compacted shall have a zero slump.

1810.3.2.1.1 Seismic hooks.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F, the ends of hoops, spirals and ties used in concrete deep foundation elements shall be terminated with seismic hooks, as defined in ACI 318, and shall be turned into the confined concrete core.

1810.3.2.1.2 ACI 318 Equation (25.7.3.3).
Where this chapter requires detailing of concrete deep foundation elements in accordance with Section 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318, compliance with Equation (25.7.3.3) of ACI 318 shall not be required.

1810.3.2.2 Prestressing steel.
Prestressing steel shall conform to ASTM A416.

1810.3.2.3 Steel.
Structural steel H-piles and structural steel sheet piling shall conform to the material requirements in ASTM A6. Steel pipe piles shall conform to the material requirements in ASTM A252. Fully welded steel piles shall be fabricated from plates that conform to the material requirements in ASTM A36, ASTM A283, ASTM A572, ASTM A588 or ASTM A690.

1810.3.2.4 Timber.
Timber deep foundation elements shall be designed as piles or poles in accordance with

`

ANSI/AWC NDS. Round timber elements shall conform to ASTM D25. Sawn timber elements shall conform to DOC PS-20.

1810.3.2.4.1 Preservative treatment.
Timber deep foundation elements used to support permanent structures shall be treated in accordance with this section unless it is established that the tops of the untreated timber elements will be below the lowest ground-water level assumed to exist during the life of the structure. Preservative and minimum final retention shall be in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification E, Use Category 4C) for round timber elements and AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B) for sawn timber elements. Preservative-treated timber elements shall be subject to a quality control program administered by an *approved agency*. Element cutoffs shall be treated in accordance with AWPA M4.

1810.3.2.5 Protection of materials.
Where boring records or site conditions indicate possible deleterious action on the materials used in deep foundation elements because of soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors, the elements shall be adequately protected by materials, methods or processes *approved* by the *building official*. Protective materials shall be applied to the elements so as not to be rendered ineffective by installation. The effectiveness of such protective measures for the particular purpose shall have been thoroughly established by satisfactory service records or other evidence.

1810.3.2.6 Allowable stresses.
The allowable stresses for materials used in deep foundation elements shall not exceed those specified in Table 1810.3.2.6.

TABLE 1810.3.2.6
ALLOWABLE STRESSES FOR MATERIALS USED IN DEEP FOUNDATION ELEMENTS

MATERIAL TYPE AND CONDITION	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS[a]
1. Concrete or grout in compression[b]	
Cast-in-place with a permanent casing in accordance with Section 1810.3.2.7	$0.4 f'_c$
Cast-in-place in a pipe, tube, other permanent casing or rock	$0.33 f'_c$
Cast-in-place without a permanent casing	$0.3 f'_c$
Precast nonprestressed	$0.33 f'_c$
Precast prestressed	$0.33 f'_c - 0.27 f_{pc}$
2. Nonprestressed reinforcement in compression	$0.4 f_y \leq 30{,}000$ psi
3. Steel in compression	
Cores within concrete-filled pipes or tubes	$0.5 F_y \leq 32{,}000$ psi
Pipes, tubes or H-piles, where justified in accordance with Section 1810.3.2.8	$0.5 F_y \leq 32{,}000$ psi
Pipes or tubes for micropiles	$0.4 F_y \leq 32{,}000$ psi
Other pipes, tubes or H-piles	$0.35 F_y \leq 16{,}000$ psi
Helical piles	$0.6 F_y \leq 0.5 F_u$
4. Nonprestressed reinforcement in tension	
Within micropiles	$0.6 f_y$
Other conditions	$0.5 f_y \leq 24{,}000$ psi
5. Steel in tension	
Pipes, tubes or H-piles, where justified in accordance with Section 1810.3.2.8	$0.5 F_y \leq 32{,}000$ psi
Other pipes, tubes or H-piles	$0.35 F_y \leq 16{,}000$ psi
Helical piles	$0.6 F_y \leq 0.5 F_u$
6. Timber	In accordance with the ANSI/AWC NDS

`

a. f'_c is the specified compressive strength of the concrete or grout; f_{pc} is the compressive stress on the gross concrete section due to effective prestress forces only; f_y is the specified yield strength of reinforcement; F_y is the specified minimum yield stress of steel; F_u is the specified minimum tensile stress of structural steel.

b. The stresses specified apply to the gross cross-sectional area within the concrete surface. Where a temporary or permanent casing is used, the inside face of the casing shall be considered the concrete surface.

1810.3.2.7 Increased allowable compressive stress for cased cast-in-place elements.
The allowable compressive stress in the concrete shall be permitted to be increased as specified in Table 1810.3.2.6 for those portions of permanently cased cast-in-place elements that satisfy all of the following conditions:

1. The design shall not use the casing to resist any portion of the axial load imposed.

2. The casing shall have a sealed tip and be mandrel driven.

3. The thickness of the casing shall not be less than manufacturer's standard gage No.14 (0.068 inch) (1.75 mm).

4. The casing shall be seamless or provided with seams of strength equal to the basic material and be of a configuration that will provide confinement to the cast-in-place concrete.

5. The ratio of steel yield strength (F_y) to specified compressive strength (f'_c) shall not be less than six.

6. The nominal diameter of the element shall not be greater than 16 inches (406 mm).

1810.3.2.8 Justification of higher allowable stresses.
Use of allowable stresses greater than those specified in Section 1810.3.2.6 shall be permitted where supporting data justifying such higher stresses is filed with the *building official*. Such substantiating data shall include the following:

1. A geotechnical investigation in accordance with Section 1803.

2. Load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2, regardless of the load supported by the element.

The design and installation of the deep foundation elements shall be under the direct supervision of a *registered design professional* knowledgeable in the field of soil mechanics and deep foundations who shall submit a report to the *building official* stating that the elements as installed satisfy the design criteria.

1810.3.3 Determination of allowable loads.
The allowable axial and lateral loads on deep foundation elements shall be determined by an *approved* formula, load tests or method of analysis.

`

1810.3.3.1 Allowable axial load.
The allowable axial load on a deep foundation element shall be determined in accordance with Sections 1810.3.3.1.1 through 1810.3.3.1.9.

1810.3.3.1.1 Driving criteria.
The allowable compressive load on any driven deep foundation element where determined by the application of an *approved* driving formula shall not exceed 40 tons (356 kN). For allowable loads above 40 tons (356 kN), the wave equation method of analysis shall be used to estimate driveability for both driving stresses and net displacement per blow at the ultimate load. Allowable loads shall be verified by load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2. The formula or wave equation load shall be determined for gravity-drop or power-actuated hammers and the hammer energy used shall be the maximum consistent with the size, strength and weight of the driven elements. The use of a follower is permitted only with the approval of the *building official*. The introduction of fresh hammer cushion or pile cushion material just prior to final penetration is not permitted.

1810.3.3.1.2 Load tests.
Where design compressive loads are greater than those determined using the allowable stresses specified in Section 1810.3.2.6, where the design load for any deep foundation element is in doubt, or where cast-in-place deep foundation elements have an enlarged base formed either by compacting concrete or by driving a precast base, control test elements shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D1143 or ASTM D4945. At least one element shall be load tested in each area of uniform subsoil conditions. Where required by the *building official*, additional elements shall be load tested where necessary to establish the safe design capacity. The resulting allowable loads shall not be more than one-half of the ultimate axial load capacity of the test element as assessed by one of the published methods listed in Section 1810.3.3.1.3 with consideration for the test type, duration and subsoil. The ultimate axial load capacity shall be determined by a *registered design professional* with consideration given to tolerable total and differential settlements at design load in accordance with Section 1810.2.3. In subsequent installation of the balance of deep foundation elements, all elements shall be deemed to have a supporting capacity equal to that of the control element where such elements are of the same type, size and relative length as the test element; are installed using the same or comparable methods and equipment as the test element; are installed in similar subsoil conditions as the test element; and, for driven elements, where the rate of penetration (e.g., net displacement per blow) of such elements is equal to or less than that of the test element driven with the same hammer through a comparable driving distance.

1810.3.3.1.3 Load test evaluation methods.
It shall be permitted to evaluate load tests of deep foundation elements using any of the following methods:

1. Davisson Offset Limit.
2. Brinch-Hansen 90-percent Criterion.
3. Butler-Hoy Criterion.
4. Other methods *approved* by the *building official*.

`

1810.3.3.1.4 Allowable frictional resistance.
The assumed frictional resistance developed by any uncased cast-in-place deep foundation element shall not exceed one-sixth of the bearing value of the soil material at minimum depth as set forth in Table 1806.2, up to a maximum of 500 psf (24 kPa), unless a greater value is allowed by the *building official* on the basis of a geotechnical investigation as specified in Section 1803 or a greater value is substantiated by a load test in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2. Frictional resistance and bearing resistance shall not be assumed to act simultaneously unless determined by a geotechnical investigation in accordance with Section 1803.

1810.3.3.1.5 Uplift capacity of a single deep foundation element.
Where required by the design, the uplift capacity of a single deep foundation element shall be determined by an *approved* method of analysis based on a minimum factor of safety of three or by load tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D3689. The maximum allowable uplift load shall not exceed the ultimate load capacity as determined in Section 1810.3.3.1.2, using the results of load tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D3689, divided by a factor of safety of two.

> **Exception:** Where uplift is due to wind or seismic loading, the minimum factor of safety shall be two where capacity is determined by an analysis and one and one-half where capacity is determined by load tests.

1810.3.3.1.6 Uplift capacity of grouped deep foundation elements.
For grouped deep foundation elements subjected to uplift, the allowable working uplift load for the group shall be calculated by a generally accepted method of analysis. Where the deep foundation elements in the group are placed at a center-to-center spacing less than three times the least horizontal dimension of the largest single element, the allowable working uplift load for the group is permitted to be calculated as the lesser of:

1. The proposed individual allowable working uplift load times the number of elements in the group.

2. Two-thirds of the effective weight of the group and the soil contained within a block defined by the perimeter of the group and the length of the element, plus two-thirds of the ultimate shear resistance along the soil block.

1810.3.3.1.7 Load-bearing capacity.
Deep foundation elements shall develop ultimate load capacities of at least twice the design working loads in the designated load-bearing layers. Analysis shall show that no soil layer underlying the designated load-bearing layers causes the load-bearing capacity safety factor to be less than two.

1810.3.3.1.8 Bent deep foundation elements.
The load-bearing capacity of deep foundation elements discovered to have a sharp or sweeping bend shall be determined by an *approved* method of analysis or by load testing a representative element.

1810.3.3.1.9 Helical piles.
The allowable axial design load, P_a, of helical piles shall be determined as follows:

$$P_a = 0.5\,P_u \qquad \textbf{(Equation 18-4)}$$

`

where P_u is the least value of:

1. Sum of the areas of the helical bearing plates times the ultimate bearing capacity of the soil or rock comprising the bearing stratum.

2. Ultimate capacity determined from well-documented correlations with installation torque.

3. Ultimate capacity determined from load tests.

4. Ultimate axial capacity of pile shaft.

5. Ultimate axial capacity of pile shaft couplings.

6. Sum of the ultimate axial capacity of helical bearing plates affixed to pile.

1810.3.3.2 Allowable lateral load.
Where required by the design, the lateral load capacity of a single deep foundation element or a group thereof shall be determined by an *approved* method of analysis or by lateral load tests to at least twice the proposed design working load. The resulting allowable load shall not be more than one-half of the load that produces a gross lateral movement of 1 inch (25 mm) at the lower of the top of foundation element and the ground surface, unless it can be shown that the predicted lateral movement shall cause neither harmful distortion of, nor instability in, the structure, nor cause any element to be loaded beyond its capacity.

1810.3.4 Subsiding soils.
Where deep foundation elements are installed through subsiding fills or other subsiding strata and derive support from underlying firmer materials, consideration shall be given to the downward frictional forces that may be imposed on the elements by the subsiding upper strata.

Where the influence of subsiding fills is considered as imposing loads on the element, the allowable stresses specified in this chapter shall be permitted to be increased where satisfactory substantiating data are submitted.

1810.3.5 Dimensions of deep foundation elements.
The dimensions of deep foundation elements shall be in accordance with Sections 1810.3.5.1 through 1810.3.5.3, as applicable.

1810.3.5.1 Precast.
The minimum lateral dimension of precast concrete deep foundation elements shall be 8 inches (203 mm). Corners of square elements shall be chamfered.

1810.3.5.2 Cast-in-place or grouted-in-place.
Cast-in-place and grouted-in-place deep foundation elements shall satisfy the requirements of this section.

`

1810.3.5.2.1 Cased.
Cast-in-place deep foundation elements with a permanent casing shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 8 inches (203 mm).

1810.3.5.2.2 Uncased.
Cast-in-place deep foundation elements without a permanent casing shall have a diameter of not less than 12 inches (305 mm). The element length shall not exceed 30 times the average diameter.

> **Exception:** The length of the element is permitted to exceed 30 times the diameter, provided the design and installation of the deep foundations are under the direct supervision of a *registered design professional* knowledgeable in the field of soil mechanics and deep foundations. The *registered design professional* shall submit a report to the *building official* stating that the elements were installed in compliance with the *approved construction documents*.

1810.3.5.2.3 Micropiles.
Micropiles shall have an outside diameter of 12 inches (305 mm) or less. The minimum diameter set forth elsewhere in Section 1810.3.5 shall not apply to micropiles.

1810.3.5.3 Steel.
Steel deep foundation elements shall satisfy the requirements of this section.

1810.3.5.3.1 Structural steel H-piles.
Sections of structural steel H-piles shall comply with the requirements for HP shapes in ASTM A6, or the following:

1. The flange projections shall not exceed 14 times the minimum thickness of metal in either the flange or the web and the flange widths shall not be less than 80 percent of the depth of the section.

2. The nominal depth in the direction of the web shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm).

3. Flanges and web shall have a minimum nominal thickness of $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm).

1810.3.5.3.2 Fully welded steel piles fabricated from plates.
Sections of fully welded steel piles fabricated from plates shall comply with the following:

1. The flange projections shall not exceed 14 times the minimum thickness of metal in either the flange or the web and the flange widths shall not be less than 80 percent of the depth of the section.

2. The nominal depth in the direction of the web shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm).

3. Flanges and web shall have a minimum nominal thickness of $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm).

`

1810.3.5.3.3 Structural steel sheet piling.
Individual sections of structural steel sheet piling shall conform to the profile indicated by the manufacturer, and shall conform to the general requirements specified by ASTM A6.

1810.3.5.3.4 Steel pipes and tubes.
Steel pipes and tubes used as deep foundation elements shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 8 inches (203 mm). Where steel pipes or tubes are driven open ended, they shall have a minimum of 0.34 square inch (219 mm^2) of steel in cross section to resist each 1,000 foot-pounds (1356 Nm) of pile hammer energy, or shall have the equivalent strength for steels having a yield strength greater than 35,000 psi (241 MPa) or the wave equation analysis shall be permitted to be used to assess compression stresses induced by driving to evaluate if the pile section is appropriate for the selected hammer. Where a pipe or tube with wall thickness less than 0.179 inch (4.6 mm) is driven open ended, a suitable cutting shoe shall be provided. Concrete-filled steel pipes or tubes in structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F shall have a wall thickness of not less than $^3/_{16}$ inch (5 mm). The pipe or tube casing for socketed drilled shafts shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 18 inches (457 mm), a wall thickness of not less than $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) and a suitable steel driving shoe welded to the bottom; the diameter of the rock socket shall be approximately equal to the inside diameter of the casing.

Exceptions:

1. There is no minimum diameter for steel pipes or tubes used in micropiles.

2. For mandrel-driven pipes or tubes, the minimum wall thickness shall be $^1/_{10}$ inch (2.5 mm).

1810.3.5.3.5 Helical piles.
Dimensions of the central shaft and the number, size and thickness of helical bearing plates shall be sufficient to support the design loads.

1810.3.6 Splices.
Splices shall be constructed so as to provide and maintain true alignment and position of the component parts of the deep foundation element during installation and subsequent thereto and shall be designed to resist the axial and shear forces and moments occurring at the location of the splice during driving and for design load combinations. Where deep foundation elements of the same type are being spliced, splices shall develop not less than 50 percent of the bending strength of the weaker section. Where deep foundation elements of different materials or different types are being spliced, splices shall develop the full compressive strength and not less than 50 percent of the tension and bending strength of the weaker section. Where structural steel cores are to be spliced, the ends shall be milled or ground to provide full contact and shall be full-depth welded.

Splices occurring in the upper 10 feet (3048 mm) of the embedded portion of an element shall be designed to resist at allowable stresses the moment and shear that would result from an assumed eccentricity of the axial load of 3 inches (76 mm), or the element

`

shall be braced in accordance with Section 1810.2.2 to other deep foundation elements that do not have splices in the upper 10 feet (3048 mm) of embedment.

1810.3.6.1 Seismic Design Categories C through F.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F splices of deep foundation elements shall develop the lesser of the following:

1. The nominal strength of the deep foundation element.

2. The axial and shear forces and moments from the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7.

1810.3.7 Top of element detailing at cutoffs.
Where a minimum length for reinforcement or the extent of closely spaced confinement reinforcement is specified at the top of a deep foundation element, provisions shall be made so that those specified lengths or extents are maintained after cutoff.

1810.3.8 Precast concrete piles.
Precast concrete piles shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810.3.8.1 through 1810.3.8.3.

1810.3.8.1 Reinforcement.
Longitudinal steel shall be arranged in a symmetrical pattern and be laterally tied with steel ties or wire spiral spaced center to center as follows:

1. At not more than 1 inch (25 mm) for the first five ties or spirals at each end; then

2. At not more than 4 inches (102 mm), for the remainder of the first 2 feet (610 mm) from each end; and then

3. At not more than 6 inches (152 mm) elsewhere.

The size of ties and spirals shall be as follows:

1. For piles having a least horizontal dimension of 16 inches (406 mm) or less, wire shall not be smaller than 0.22 inch (5.6 mm) (No. 5 gage).

2. For piles having a least horizontal dimension of more than 16 inches (406 mm) and less than 20 inches (508 mm), wire shall not be smaller than 0.238 inch (6 mm) (No. 4 gage).

3. For piles having a least horizontal dimension of 20 inches (508 mm) and larger, wire shall not be smaller than $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) round or 0.259 inch (6.6 mm) (No. 3 gage).

1810.3.8.2 Precast nonprestressed piles.
Precast nonprestressed concrete piles shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1810.3.8.2.1 through 1810.3.8.2.3.

1810.3.8.2.1 Minimum reinforcement.
Longitudinal reinforcement shall consist of at least four bars with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.008.

`

1810.3.8.2.2 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Categories C through F.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F, precast nonprestressed piles shall be reinforced as specified in this section. The minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio shall be 0.01 throughout the length. Transverse reinforcement shall consist of closed ties or spirals with a minimum $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) diameter. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed the smaller of eight times the diameter of the smallest longitudinal bar or 6 inches (152 mm) within a distance of three times the least pile dimension from the bottom of the pile cap. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed 6 inches (152 mm) throughout the remainder of the pile.

1810.3.8.2.3 Additional seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Categories D through F.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, transverse reinforcement shall be in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.4.2.

1810.3.8.3 Precast prestressed piles.
Precast prestressed concrete piles shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1810.3.8.3.1 through 1810.3.8.3.3.

1810.3.8.3.1 Effective prestress.
The effective prestress in the pile shall not be less than 400 psi (2.76 MPa) for piles up to 30 feet (9144 mm) in length, 550 psi (3.79 MPa) for piles up to 50 feet (15 240 mm) in length and 700 psi (4.83 MPa) for piles greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) in length.

Effective prestress shall be based on an assumed loss of 30,000 psi (207 MPa) in the prestressing steel. The tensile stress in the prestressing steel shall not exceed the values specified in ACI 318.

1810.3.8.3.2 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Category C.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, precast prestressed piles shall have transverse reinforcement in accordance with this section. The volumetric ratio of spiral reinforcement shall not be less than the amount required by the following formula for the upper 20 feet (6096 mm) of the pile.

$$\rho_s = 0.12 f'_c / f_{yh}$$ **(Equation 18-5)**

where:

f'_c	=	Specified compressive strength of concrete, psi (MPa).
f_{yh}	=	Yield strength of spiral reinforcement ≤ 85,000 psi (586 MPa).
ρ_s	=	Spiral reinforcement index (vol. spiral/vol. core).

`

At least one-half the volumetric ratio required by Equation 18-5 shall be provided below the upper 20 feet (6096 mm) of the pile.

1810.3.8.3.3 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Categories D through F. For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, precast prestressed piles shall have transverse reinforcement in accordance with the following:

1. Requirements in ACI 318, Chapter 18, need not apply, unless specifically referenced.

2. Where the total pile length in the soil is 35 feet (10 668 mm) or less, the lateral transverse reinforcement in the ductile region shall occur through the length of the pile. Where the pile length exceeds 35 feet (10 668 mm), the ductile pile region shall be taken as the greater of 35 feet (10 668 mm) or the distance from the underside of the pile cap to the point of zero curvature plus three times the least pile dimension.

3. In the ductile region, the center-to-center spacing of the spirals or hoop reinforcement shall not exceed one-fifth of the least pile dimension, six times the diameter of the longitudinal strand or 8 inches (203 mm), whichever is smallest.

4. Circular spiral reinforcement shall be spliced by lapping one full turn and bending the end of each spiral to a 90-degree hook or by use of a mechanical or welded splice complying with Section 25.5.7 of ACI 318.

5. Where the transverse reinforcement consists of circular spirals, the volumetric ratio of spiral transverse reinforcement in the ductile region shall comply with the following:

$$\rho_s = 0.25(f'_c / f_{yh})(A_g / A_{ch} - 1.0)[0.5 + 1.4P/(f'_c A_g)] \quad \textbf{(Equation 18-6)}$$

but not less than

$$\rho_s = 0.12(f'_c / f_{yh})[0.5 + 1.4P/(f'_c A_g)] \geq 0.12 f'_c / f_{yh} \quad \textbf{(Equation 18-7)}$$

and need not exceed:

$$\rho_s = 0.021 \quad \textbf{(Equation 18-8)}$$

where:

A_g = Pile cross-sectional area, square inches (mm^2).

A_{ch} = Core area defined by spiral outside diameter, square inches (mm^2).

`

f'_c	=	Specified compressive strength of concrete, psi (MPa).
f_{yh}	=	Yield strength of spiral reinforcement ≤ 85,000 psi (586 MPa).
P	=	Axial load on pile, pounds (kN), as determined from Equations 16-5 and 16-7.
ρ_s	=	Volumetric ratio (vol. spiral/vol. core).

This required amount of spiral reinforcement is permitted to be obtained by providing an inner and outer spiral.

6. Where transverse reinforcement consists of rectangular hoops and cross ties, the total cross-sectional area of lateral transverse reinforcement in the ductile region with spacing, *s*, and perpendicular dimension, *hc*, shall conform to:

$$A_{sh} = 0.3s\, h_c\, (f'_c / f_{yh})(A_g / A_{ch} - 1.0)\, [0.5 + 1.4P/(f'_c A_g)]$$ **(Equation 18-9)**

but not less than:

$$A_{sh} = 0.12s\, h_c\, (f'_c / f_{yh})\, [0.5 + 1.4P/(f'_c A_g)]$$ **(Equation 18-10)**

where:

f_{yh}	=	yield strength of transverse reinforcement ≤ 70,000 psi (483 MPa).
h_c	=	Cross-sectional dimension of pile core measured center to center of hoop reinforcement, inch (mm).
s	=	Spacing of transverse reinforcement measured along length of pile, inch (mm).
A_{sh}	=	Cross-sectional area of tranverse reinforcement, square inches (mm^2).
f'_c	=	Specified compressive strength of concrete, psi (MPa).

The hoops and cross ties shall be equivalent to deformed bars not less than No. 3 in size. Rectangular hoop ends shall terminate at a corner with seismic hooks.

`

Outside of the length of the pile requiring transverse confinement reinforcing, the spiral or hoop reinforcing with a volumetric ratio not less than onehalf of that required for transverse confinement reinforcing shall be provided.

1810.3.9 Cast-in-place deep foundations.
Cast-in-place deep foundation elements shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810.3.9.1 through 1810.3.9.6.

1810.3.9.1 Design cracking moment.
The design cracking moment (ϕM_n) for a cast-in-place deep foundation element not enclosed by a structural steel pipe or tube shall be determined using the following equation:

$$\phi M_n = 3\sqrt{f'_c}S_m \qquad \textbf{(Equation 18-11)}$$

For SI: $\phi M_n = 0.25\sqrt{f'_c}S_m$

where:

f'_c	=	Specified compressive strength of concrete or grout, psi (MPa).
S_m	=	Elastic section modulus, neglecting reinforcement and casing, cubic inches (mm^3).

1810.3.9.2 Required reinforcement.
Where subject to uplift or where the required moment strength determined using the load combinations of Section 1605.2 exceeds the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1, cast-in-place deep foundations not enclosed by a structural steel pipe or tube shall be reinforced.

1810.3.9.3 Placement of reinforcement.
Reinforcement where required shall be assembled and tied together and shall be placed in the deep foundation element as a unit before the reinforced portion of the element is filled with concrete.

Exceptions:

1. Steel dowels embedded 5 feet (1524 mm) or less shall be permitted to be placed after concreting, while the concrete is still in a semifluid state.

2. For deep foundation elements installed with a hollow-stem auger, tied reinforcement shall be placed after elements are concreted, while the concrete is still in a semifluid state. Longitudinal reinforcement without lateral ties shall be placed either through the hollow stem of the auger prior to concreting or after concreting, while the concrete is still in a semifluid state.

3. For Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction, reinforcement is permitted to be placed after concreting, while

the concrete is still in a semifluid state, and the concrete cover requirement is permitted to be reduced to 2 inches (51 mm), provided the construction method can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the *building official*.

1810.3.9.4 Seismic reinforcement.
Where a structure is assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.4.1. Where a structure is assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.4.2.

Exceptions:

1. Isolated deep foundation elements supporting posts of Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but with not less than one No. 4 bar, without ties or spirals, where detailed so the element is not subject to lateral loads and the soil provides adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.

2. Isolated deep foundation elements supporting posts and bracing from decks and patios appurtenant to Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but with not less than one No. 4 bar, without ties or spirals, where the lateral load, *E*, to the top of the element does not exceed 200 pounds (890 N) and the soil provides adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.

3. Deep foundation elements supporting the concrete foundation wall of Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but with not less than two No. 4 bars, without ties or spirals, where the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1 exceeds the required moment strength determined using the load combinations with overstrength factor in Section 12.4.3.2 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7 and the soil provides adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.

4. Closed ties or spirals where required by Section 1810.3.9.4.2 shall be permitted to be limited to the top 3 feet (914 mm) of deep foundation elements 10 feet (3048 mm) or less in depth supporting Group R-3 and U occupancies of *Seismic Design Category* D, not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction.

1810.3.9.4.1 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Category C.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, cast-in-place deep foundation elements shall be reinforced as specified in this section. Reinforcement shall be provided where required by analysis.

A minimum of four longitudinal bars, with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.0025, shall be provided throughout the minimum reinforced length of the element as defined below starting at the top of the element. The minimum reinforced length of the element shall be taken as the greatest of the following:

1. One-third of the element length.

`

2. A distance of 10 feet (3048 mm).

3. Three times the least element dimension.

4. The distance from the top of the element to the point where the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1 exceeds the required moment strength determined using the load combinations of Section 1605.2.

Transverse reinforcement shall consist of closed ties or spirals with a minimum $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) diameter. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed the smaller of 6 inches (152 mm) or 8-longitudinal-bar diameters, within a distance of three times the least element dimension from the bottom of the pile cap. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed 16 longitudinal bar diameters throughout the remainder of the reinforced length.

Exceptions:

1. The requirements of this section shall not apply to concrete cast in structural steel pipes or tubes.

2. A spiral-welded metal casing of a thickness not less than the manufacturer's standard No. 14 gage (0.068 inch) is permitted to provide concrete confinement in lieu of the closed ties or spirals. Where used as such, the metal casing shall be protected against possible deleterious action due to soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors indicated by boring records of site conditions.

1810.3.9.4.2 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Categories D through F. For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, cast-in-place deep foundation elements shall be reinforced as specified in this section. Reinforcement shall be provided where required by analysis.

A minimum of four longitudinal bars, with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.005, shall be provided throughout the minimum reinforced length of the element as defined below starting at the top of the element. The minimum reinforced length of the element shall be taken as the greatest of the following:

1. One-half of the element length.

2. A distance of 10 feet (3048 mm).

3. Three times the least element dimension.

4. The distance from the top of the element to the point where the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1 exceeds the required moment strength determined using the load combinations of Section 1605.2.

`

Transverse reinforcement shall consist of closed ties or spirals no smaller than No. 3 bars for elements with a least dimension up to 20 inches (508 mm), and No. 4 bars for larger elements. Throughout the remainder of the reinforced length outside the regions with transverse confinement reinforcement, as specified in Section 1810.3.9.4.2.1 or 1810.3.9.4.2.2, the spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed the least of the following:

1. 12 longitudinal bar diameters;

2. One-half the least dimension of the element; and

3. 12 inches (305 mm).

Exceptions:

1. The requirements of this section shall not apply to concrete cast in structural steel pipes or tubes.

2. A spiral-welded metal casing of a thickness not less than manufacturer's standard No. 14 gage (0.068 inch) is permitted to provide concrete confinement in lieu of the closed ties or spirals. Where used as such, the metal casing shall be protected against possible deleterious action due to soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors indicated by boring records of site conditions.

1810.3.9.4.2.1 Site Classes A through D.
For *Site Class* A, B, C or D sites, transverse confinement reinforcement shall be provided in the element in accordance with Sections 18.7.5.2, 18.7.5.3 and 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318 within three times the least element dimension of the bottom of the pile cap. A transverse spiral reinforcement ratio of not less than one-half of that required in Section 18.7.5.4(a) of ACI 318 shall be permitted.

1810.3.9.4.2.2 Site Classes E and F.
For *Site Class* E or F sites, transverse confinement reinforcement shall be provided in the element in accordance with Sections 18.7.5.2, 18.7.5.3 and 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318 within seven times the least element dimension of the pile cap and within seven times the least element dimension of the interfaces of strata that are hard or stiff and strata that are liquefiable or are composed of soft- to medium-stiff clay.

1810.3.9.5 Belled drilled shafts.
Where drilled shafts are belled at the bottom, the edge thickness of the bell shall not be less than that required for the edge of footings. Where the sides of the bell slope at an angle less than 60 degrees (1 rad) from the horizontal, the effects of vertical shear shall be considered.

1810.3.9.6 Socketed drilled shafts.
Socketed drilled shafts shall have a permanent pipe or tube casing that extends down to bedrock and an uncased socket drilled into the bedrock, both filled with concrete. Socketed drilled shafts shall have reinforcement or a structural steel core for the length as indicated by an *approved* method of analysis.

`

The depth of the rock socket shall be sufficient to develop the full load-bearing capacity of the element with a minimum safety factor of two, but the depth shall not be less than the outside diameter of the pipe or tube casing. The design of the rock socket is permitted to be predicated on the sum of the allowable load-bearing pressure on the bottom of the socket plus bond along the sides of the socket.

Where a structural steel core is used, the gross cross-sectional area of the core shall not exceed 25 percent of the gross area of the drilled shaft.

1810.3.10 Micropiles.
Micropiles shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810.3.10.1 through 1810.3.10.4.

1810.3.10.1 Construction.
Micropiles shall develop their load-carrying capacity by means of a bond zone in soil, bedrock or a combination of soil and bedrock. Micropiles shall be grouted and have either a steel pipe or tube or steel reinforcement at every section along the length. It shall be permitted to transition from deformed reinforcing bars to steel pipe or tube reinforcement by extending the bars into the pipe or tube section by at least their development length in tension in accordance with ACI 318.

1810.3.10.2 Materials.
Reinforcement shall consist of deformed reinforcing bars in accordance with ASTM A615 Grade 60 or 75 or ASTM A722 Grade 150.

The steel pipe or tube shall have a minimum wall thickness of 3/16 inch (4.8 mm). Splices shall comply with Section 1810.3.6. The steel pipe or tube shall have a minimum yield strength of 45,000 psi (310 MPa) and a minimum elongation of 15 percent as shown by mill certifications or two coupon test samples per 40,000 pounds (18 160 kg) of pipe or tube.

1810.3.10.3 Reinforcement.
For micropiles or portions thereof grouted inside a temporary or permanent casing or inside a hole drilled into bedrock or a hole drilled with grout, the steel pipe or tube or steel reinforcement shall be designed to carry at least 40 percent of the design compression load. Micropiles or portions thereof grouted in an open hole in soil without temporary or permanent casing and without suitable means of verifying the hole diameter during grouting shall be designed to carry the entire compression load in the reinforcing steel. Where a steel pipe or tube is used for reinforcement, the portion of the grout enclosed within the pipe is permitted to be included in the determination of the allowable stress in the grout.

1810.3.10.4 Seismic reinforcement.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, a permanent steel casing shall be provided from the top of the micropile down to the point of zero curvature. For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, the micropile shall be considered as an alternative system in accordance with Section 104.11. The alternative system design, supporting documentation and test data shall be submitted to the *building official* for review and approval.

1810.3.11 Pile caps.
Pile caps shall be of reinforced concrete, and shall include all elements to which vertical deep foundation elements are connected, including grade beams and mats. The soil

immediately below the pile cap shall not be considered as carrying any vertical load. The tops of vertical deep foundation elements shall be embedded not less than 3 inches (76 mm) into pile caps and the caps shall extend at least 4 inches (102 mm) beyond the edges of the elements. The tops of elements shall be cut or chipped back to sound material before capping.

1810.3.11.1 Seismic Design Categories C through F.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F, concrete deep foundation elements shall be connected to the pile cap by embedding the element reinforcement or field-placed dowels anchored in the element into the pile cap for a distance equal to their development length in accordance with ACI 318. It shall be permitted to connect precast prestressed piles to the pile cap by developing the element prestressing strands into the pile cap provided the connection is ductile. For deformed bars, the development length is the full development length for compression, or tension in the case of uplift, without reduction for excess reinforcement in accordance with Section 25.4.10 of ACI 318. Alternative measures for laterally confining concrete and maintaining toughness and ductile-like behavior at the top of the element shall be permitted provided the design is such that any hinging occurs in the confined region.

The minimum transverse steel ratio for confinement shall not be less than one-half of that required for columns.

For resistance to uplift forces, anchorage of steel pipes, tubes or H-piles to the pile cap shall be made by means other than concrete bond to the bare steel section. Concrete-filled steel pipes or tubes shall have reinforcement of not less than 0.01 times the cross-sectional area of the concrete fill developed into the cap and extending into the fill a length equal to two times the required cap embedment, but not less than the development length in tension of the reinforcement.

1810.3.11.2 Seismic Design Categories D through F.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, deep foundation element resistance to uplift forces or rotational restraint shall be provided by anchorage into the pile cap, designed considering the combined effect of axial forces due to uplift and bending moments due to fixity to the pile cap. Anchorage shall develop a minimum of 25 percent of the strength of the element in tension. Anchorage into the pile cap shall comply with the following:

1. In the case of uplift, the anchorage shall be capable of developing the least of the following:

   1.1. The nominal tensile strength of the longitudinal reinforcement in a concrete element.

   1.2. The nominal tensile strength of a steel element.

   1.3. The frictional force developed between the element and the soil multiplied by 1.3.

   Exception: The anchorage is permitted to be designed to resist the axial tension force resulting from the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7.

`

2. In the case of rotational restraint, the anchorage shall be designed to resist the axial and shear forces, and moments resulting from the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7 or the anchorage shall be capable of developing the full axial, bending and shear nominal strength of the element.

Where the vertical lateral-force-resisting elements are columns, the pile cap flexural strengths shall exceed the column flexural strength. The connection between batter piles and pile caps shall be designed to resist the nominal strength of the pile acting as a short column. Batter piles and their connection shall be designed to resist forces and moments that result from the application of seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7.

1810.3.12 Grade beams.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, grade beams shall comply with the provisions in Section 18.13.3 of ACI 318 for grade beams, except where they are designed to resist the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7.

1810.3.13 Seismic ties.
For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C, D, E or F, individual deep foundations shall be interconnected by ties. Unless it can be demonstrated that equivalent restraint is provided by reinforced concrete beams within slabs on grade or reinforced concrete slabs on grade or confinement by competent rock, hard cohesive soils or very dense granular soils, ties shall be capable of carrying, in tension or compression, a force equal to the lesser of the product of the larger pile cap or column design gravity load times the seismic coefficient, S_{DS}, divided by 10, and 25 percent of the smaller pile or column design gravity load.

Exception: In Group R-3 and U occupancies of light-frame construction, deep foundation elements supporting foundation walls, isolated interior posts detailed so the element is not subject to lateral loads or exterior decks and patios are not subject to interconnection where the soils are of adequate stiffness, subject to the approval of the *building official*.

1810.4 Installation.
Deep foundations shall be installed in accordance with Section 1810.4. Where a single deep foundation element comprises two or more sections of different materials or different types spliced together, each section shall satisfy the applicable conditions of installation.

1810.4.1 Structural integrity.
Deep foundation elements shall be installed in such a manner and sequence as to prevent distortion or damage that may adversely affect the structural integrity of adjacent structures or of foundation elements being installed or already in place and as to avoid compacting the surrounding soil to the extent that other foundation elements cannot be installed properly.

1810.4.1.1 Compressive strength of precast concrete piles.
A precast concrete pile shall not be driven before the concrete has attained a compressive strength of at least 75 percent of the specified compressive strength (f'_c), but not less than the strength sufficient to withstand handling and driving forces.

`

1810.4.1.2 Casing.
Where cast-in-place deep foundation elements are formed through unstable soils and concrete is placed in an open-drilled hole, a casing shall be inserted in the hole prior to placing the concrete. Where the casing is withdrawn during concreting, the level of concrete shall be maintained above the bottom of the casing at a sufficient height to offset any hydrostatic or lateral soil pressure. Driven casings shall be mandrel driven their full length in contact with the surrounding soil.

1810.4.1.3 Driving near uncased concrete.
Deep foundation elements shall not be driven within six element diameters center to center in granular soils or within one-half the element length in cohesive soils of an uncased element filled with concrete less than 48 hours old unless *approved* by the *building official*. If the concrete surface in any completed element rises or drops, the element shall be replaced. Driven uncased deep foundation elements shall not be installed in soils that could cause heave.

1810.4.1.4 Driving near cased concrete.
Deep foundation elements shall not be driven within four and one-half average diameters of a cased element filled with concrete less than 24 hours old unless *approved* by the *building official*. Concrete shall not be placed in casings within heave range of driving.

1810.4.1.5 Defective timber piles.
Any substantial sudden increase in rate of penetration of a timber pile shall be investigated for possible damage. If the sudden increase in rate of penetration cannot be correlated to soil strata, the pile shall be removed for inspection or rejected.

1810.4.2 Identification.
Deep foundation materials shall be identified for conformity to the specified grade with this identity maintained continuously from the point of manufacture to the point of installation or shall be tested by an *approved agency* to determine conformity to the specified grade. The *approved agency* shall furnish an affidavit of compliance to the *building official*.

1810.4.3 Location plan.
A plan showing the location and designation of deep foundation elements by an identification system shall be filed with the *building official* prior to installation of such elements. Detailed records for elements shall bear an identification corresponding to that shown on the plan.

1810.4.4 Preexcavation.
The use of jetting, augering or other methods of preexcavation shall be subject to the approval of the *building official*. Where permitted, preexcavation shall be carried out in the same manner as used for deep foundation elements subject to load tests and in such a manner that will not impair the carrying capacity of the elements already in place or damage adjacent structures. Element tips shall be driven below the preexcavated depth until the required resistance or penetration is obtained.

1810.4.5 Vibratory driving.
Vibratory drivers shall only be used to install deep foundation elements where the element load capacity is verified by load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2. The installation of production elements shall be controlled according to power consumption, rate of penetration or other *approved* means that ensure element capacities equal or exceed those of the test elements.

`

1810.4.6 Heaved elements.
Deep foundation elements that have heaved during the driving of adjacent elements shall be redriven as necessary to develop the required capacity and penetration, or the capacity of the element shall be verified by load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2.

1810.4.7 Enlarged base cast-in-place elements.
Enlarged bases for cast-in-place deep foundation elements formed by compacting concrete or by driving a precast base shall be formed in or driven into granular soils. Such elements shall be constructed in the same manner as successful prototype test elements driven for the project. Shafts extending through peat or other organic soil shall be encased in a permanent steel casing. Where a cased shaft is used, the shaft shall be adequately reinforced to resist column action or the annular space around the shaft shall be filled sufficiently to reestablish lateral support by the soil. Where heave occurs, the element shall be replaced unless it is demonstrated that the element is undamaged and capable of carrying twice its design load.

1810.4.8 Hollow-stem augered, cast-in-place elements.
Where concrete or grout is placed by pumping through a hollow-stem auger, the auger shall be permitted to rotate in a clockwise direction during withdrawal. As the auger is withdrawn at a steady rate or in increments not to exceed 1 foot (305 mm), concreting or grouting pumping pressures shall be measured and maintained high enough at all times to offset hydrostatic and lateral earth pressures. Concrete or grout volumes shall be measured to ensure that the volume of concrete or grout placed in each element is equal to or greater than the theoretical volume of the hole created by the auger. Where the installation process of any element is interrupted or a loss of concreting or grouting pressure occurs, the element shall be redrilled to 5 feet (1524 mm) below the elevation of the tip of the auger when the installation was interrupted or concrete or grout pressure was lost and reformed. Augered cast-in-place elements shall not be installed within six diameters center to center of an element filled with concrete or grout less than 12 hours old, unless *approved* by the *building official*. If the concrete or grout level in any completed element drops due to installation of an adjacent element, the element shall be replaced.

1810.4.9 Socketed drilled shafts.
The rock socket and pipe or tube casing of socketed drilled shafts shall be thoroughly cleaned of foreign materials before filling with concrete. Steel cores shall be bedded in cement grout at the base of the rock socket.

1810.4.10 Micropiles.
Micropile deep foundation elements shall be permitted to be formed in holes advanced by rotary or percussive drilling methods, with or without casing. The elements shall be grouted with a fluid cement grout. The grout shall be pumped through a tremie pipe extending to the bottom of the element until grout of suitable quality returns at the top of the element. The following requirements apply to specific installation methods:

1. For micropiles grouted inside a temporary casing, the reinforcing bars shall be inserted prior to withdrawal of the casing.The casing shall be withdrawn in a controlled manner with the grout level maintained at the top of the element to ensure that the grout completely fills the drill hole. During withdrawal of the casing, the grout level inside the casing shall be monitored to verify that the flow of grout inside the casing is not obstructed.

`

2. For a micropile or portion thereof grouted in an open drill hole in soil without temporary casing, the minimum design diameter of the drill hole shall be verified by a suitable device during grouting.

3. For micropiles designed for end bearing, a suitable means shall be employed to verify that the bearing surface is properly cleaned prior to grouting.

4. Subsequent micropiles shall not be drilled near elements that have been grouted until the grout has had sufficient time to harden.

5. Micropiles shall be grouted as soon as possible after drilling is completed.

6. For micropiles designed with a full-length casing, the casing shall be pulled back to the top of the bond zone and reinserted or some other suitable means employed to assure grout coverage outside the casing.

1810.4.11 Helical piles.
Helical piles shall be installed to specified embedment depth and torsional resistance criteria as determined by a *registered design professional*. The torque applied during installation shall not exceed the maximum allowable installation torque of the helical pile.

1810.4.12 Special inspection.
Special inspections in accordance with Sections 1705.7 and 1705.8 shall be provided for driven and cast-in-place deep foundation elements, respectively. *Special inspections* in accordance with Section 1705.9 shall be provided for helical piles.

`

CHAPTER 19
CONCRETE

Italics are used for text within Sections 1903 through 1905 of this code to indicate provisions that differ from ACI 318.

User note: Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 1901
GENERAL

1901.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, quality control, design and construction of concrete used in structures.

1901.2 Plain and reinforced concrete.
Structural concrete shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of this chapter and ACI 318 as amended in Section 1905 of this code. Except for the provisions of Sections 1904 and 1907, the design and construction of slabs on grade shall not be governed by this chapter unless they transmit vertical loads or lateral forces from other parts of the structure to the soil.

1901.3 Anchoring to concrete.
Anchoring to concrete shall be in accordance with ACI 318 as amended in Section 1905, and applies to cast-in (headed bolts, headed studs and hooked J- or L-bolts), post-installed expansion (torque-controlled and displacement-controlled), undercut and adhesive anchors.

1901.4 Composite structural steel and concrete structures.
Systems of structural steel acting compositely with reinforced concrete shall be designed in accordance with Section 2206 of this code.

1901.5 Construction documents.
The *construction documents* for structural concrete construction shall include:

1. The specified compressive strength of concrete at the stated ages or stages of construction for which each concrete element is designed.

2. The specified strength or grade of reinforcement.

3. The size and location of structural elements, reinforcement and anchors.

4. Provision for dimensional changes resulting from creep, shrinkage and temperature.

5. The magnitude and location of prestressing forces.

6. Anchorage length of reinforcement and location and length of lap splices.

7. Type and location of mechanical and welded splices of reinforcement.

`

8. Details and location of contraction or isolation joints specified for plain concrete.

9. Minimum concrete compressive strength at time of posttensioning.

10. Stressing sequence for posttensioning tendons.

11. For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, a statement if slab on grade is designed as a structural diaphragm.

1901.6 Special inspections and tests.
Special inspections and tests of concrete elements of buildings and structures and concreting operations shall be as required by Chapter 17.

SECTION 1902
DEFINITIONS

1902.1 General.
The words and terms defined in ACI 318 shall, for the purposes of this chapter and as used elsewhere in this code for concrete construction, have the meanings shown in ACI 318 as modified by Section 1905.1.1.

SECTION 1903
SPECIFICATIONS FOR TESTS AND MATERIALS

1903.1 General.
Materials used to produce concrete, concrete itself and testing thereof shall comply with the applicable standards listed in ACI 318.

Exception: *The following standards as referenced in Chapter 35 shall be permitted to be used.*

1. *ASTM C150*

2. *ASTM C595*

3. *ASTM C1157*

1903.2 Special inspections.
Where required, special inspections and tests shall be in accordance with Chapter 17.

1903.3 Glass fiber-reinforced concrete.
Glass fiber-reinforced concrete (GFRC) and the materials used in such concrete shall be in accordance with the PCI MNL 128 standard.

1903.4 Flat wall insulating concrete form (ICF) systems.
Insulating concrete form material used for forming flat concrete walls shall conform to ASTM E2634.

SECTION 1904
DURABILITY REQUIREMENTS

`

1904.1 Structural concrete.
Structural concrete shall conform to the durability requirements of ACI 318.

> ***Exception:*** *For Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies not more than three stories above grade plane, the specified compressive strength, f'_c, for concrete in basement walls, foundation walls, exterior walls and other vertical surfaces exposed to the weather shall be not less than 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa).*

1904.2 Nonstructural concrete.
The registered design professional shall assign nonstructural concrete a freeze-thaw exposure class, as defined in ACI 318, based on the anticipated exposure of nonstructural concrete. Nonstructural concrete shall have a minimum specified compressive strength, f'_c, of 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa) for Class F0; 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa) for Class F1; and 3,500 psi (24.1 MPa) for Classes F2 and F3. Nonstructural concrete shall be air entrained in accordance with ACI 318.

SECTION 1905
MODIFICATIONS TO ACI 318

1905.1 General.
The text of ACI 318 shall be modified as indicated in Sections 1905.1.1 through 1905.1.8.

1905.1.1 ACI 318, Section 2.3.
Modify existing definitions and add the following definitions to ACI 318, Section 2.3.

DESIGN DISPLACEMENT.
Total lateral displacement expected for the design-basis earthquake, *as specified by Section 12.8.6 of ASCE 7.*

DETAILED PLAIN CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL.
A wall complying with the requirements of Chapter 14, including 14.6.2.

ORDINARY PRECAST STRUCTURAL WALL.
A precast wall complying with the requirements of Chapters 1 through 13, 15, 16 and 19 through 26.

ORDINARY REINFORCED CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL.
A *cast-in-place* wall complying with the requirements of Chapters 1 through 13, 15, 16 and 19 through 26.

ORDINARY STRUCTURAL PLAIN CONCRETE WALL.
A wall complying with the requirements of Chapter 14, *excluding 14.6.2*.

SPECIAL STRUCTURAL WALL.
A cast-in-place or precast wall complying with the requirements of 18.2.4 through 18.2.8, 18.10 and 18.11, as applicable, in addition to the requirements for ordinary reinforced concrete structural walls *or ordinary precast structural walls, as applicable*. *Where ASCE 7 refers to a "special reinforced concrete structural wall," it shall be deemed to mean a "special structural wall."*

1905.1.2 ACI 318, Section 18.2.1.
Modify ACI 318 Sections 18.2.1.2 and 18.2.1.6 to read as follows:

`

18.2.1.2 – Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A shall satisfy requirements of Chapters 1 through 17 and 19 through 26*; Chapter 18 does not apply*. Structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B, C, D, E or F also shall satisfy 18.2.1.3 through 18.2.1.7, as applicable. *Except for structural elements of plain concrete complying with Section 1905.1.7 of the International Building Code, structural elements of plain concrete are prohibited in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.*

18.2.1.6 – Structural systems designated as part of the seismic force-resisting system shall be restricted to those *permitted by ASCE 7*. Except for *Seismic Design Category* A, for which Chapter 18 does not apply, the following provisions shall be satisfied for each structural system designated as part of the seismic force-resisting system, regardless of the *seismic design category*:

(a) Ordinary moment frames shall satisfy 18.3.

(b) Ordinary reinforced concrete structural walls *and ordinary precast structural walls* need not satisfy any provisions in Chapter 18.

(c) Intermediate moment frames shall satisfy 18.4. (d) Intermediate precast *structural* walls shall satisfy 18.5.

(e) Special moment frames shall satisfy 18.6 through 18.9.

(f) Special structural walls shall satisfy 18.10.

(g) Special structural walls constructed using precast concrete shall satisfy 18.11.

All special moment frames and special structural walls shall also satisfy 18.2.4 through 18.2.8.

1905.1.3 ACI 318, Section 18.5.
Modify ACI 318, Section 18.5, by adding new Section 18.5.2.2 and renumbering existing Sections 18.5.2.2 and 18.5.2.3 to become 18.5.2.3 and 18.5.2.4, respectively.

18.5.2.2 – Connections that are designed to yield shall be capable of maintaining 80 percent of their design strength at the deformation induced by the design displacement or shall use Type 2 mechanical splices.

18.5.2.3 – For elements of the connection that are not designed to yield the required strength shall be based on 1.5 S_y of the yielding portion of the connection.

18.5.2.4 – In structures assigned to SDC D, E or F, wall piers shall be designed in accordance with 18.10.8 or 18.14 in ACI 318.

1905.1.4 ACI 318, Section 18.11.
Modify ACI 318, Section 18.11.2.1, to read as follows:

18.11.2.1 – Special structural walls constructed using precast concrete shall satisfy all the requirements of 18.10 *for cast-in-place special structural walls* in addition to 18.5.2.

`

1905.1.5 ACI 318, Section 18.13.1.1.
Modify ACI 318, Section 18.13.1.1, to read as follows:

18.13.1.1 – Foundations resisting earthquake-induced forces or transferring earthquake-induced forces between a structure and ground shall comply with the requirements of 18.13 and other applicable provisions of ACI 318 *unless modified by Chapter 18 of the International Building Code.*

1905.1.6 ACI 318, Section 14.6.
Modify ACI 318, Section 14.6, by adding new Section 14.6.2 to read as follows:

14.6.2 – Detailed plain concrete structural walls.

14.6.2.1 – Detailed plain concrete structural walls are walls conforming to the requirements of ordinary structural plain concrete walls and 14.6.2.2.

14.6.2.2 – Reinforcement shall be provided as follows:

(a) Vertical reinforcement of at least 0.20 square inch (129 mm^2) in cross-sectional area shall be provided continuously from support to support at each corner, at each side of each opening and at the ends of walls. The continuous vertical bar required beside an opening is permitted to substitute for one of the two No. 5 bars required by 14.6.1.

(b) Horizontal reinforcement at least 0.20 square inch (129 mm^2) in cross-sectional area shall be provided:

1. Continuously at structurally connected roof and floor levels and at the top of walls;

2. At the bottom of load-bearing walls or in the top of foundations where doweled to the wall; and

3. At a maximum spacing of 120 inches (3048 mm).

Reinforcement at the top and bottom of openings, where used in determining the maximum spacing specified in Item 3 above, shall be continuous in the wall.

1905.1.7 ACI 318, Section 14.1.4.
Delete ACI 318, Section 14.1.4, and replace with the following:

14.1.4 – Plain concrete in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.

14.1.4.1 – Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F shall not have elements of structural plain concrete, except as follows:

(a) Structural plain concrete basement, foundation or other walls below the base as defined in ASCE 7 are permitted in detached one- and two-family dwellings three stories or less in height constructed with stud-bearing walls. In dwellings assigned to Seismic Design Category D or E, the height of the wall shall not

`

exceed 8 feet (2438 mm), the thickness shall be not less than $7^1/_2$ inches (190 mm), and the wall shall retain no more than 4 feet (1219 mm) of unbalanced fill. Walls shall have reinforcement in accordance with 14.6.1.

(b) Isolated footings of plain concrete supporting pedestals or columns are permitted, provided the projection of the footing beyond the face of the supported member does not exceed the footing thickness.

Exception: *In detached one- and two-family dwellings three stories or less in height, the projection of the footing beyond the face of the supported member is permitted to exceed the footing thickness.*

(c) Plain concrete footings supporting walls are permitted, provided the footings have at least two continuous longitudinal reinforcing bars. Bars shall not be smaller than No. 4 and shall have a total area of not less than 0.002 times the gross cross-sectional area of the footing. For footings that exceed 8 inches (203 mm) in thickness, a minimum of one bar shall be provided at the top and bottom of the footing. Continuity of reinforcement shall be provided at corners and intersections.

Exceptions:

1. In Seismic Design Categories A, B and C, detached one- and two-family dwellings three stories or less in height constructed with stud-bearing walls are permitted to have plain concrete footings without longitudinal reinforcement.

2. For foundation systems consisting of a plain concrete footing and a plain concrete stemwall, a minimum of one bar shall be provided at the top of the stemwall and at the bottom of the footing.

3. Where a slab on ground is cast monolithically with the footing, one No. 5 bar is permitted to be located at either the top of the slab or bottom of the footing.

1905.1.8 ACI 318, Section 17.2.3.
Modify ACI 318 Sections 17.2.3.4.2, 17.2.3.4.3(d) and 17.2.3.5.2 to read as follows:

17.2.3.4.2 – Where the tensile component of the strength-level earthquake force applied to anchors exceeds 20 percent of the total factored anchor tensile force associated with the same load combination, anchors and their attachments shall be designed in accordance with 17.2.3.4.3. The anchor design tensile strength shall be determined in accordance with 17.2.3.4.4.

Exception: *Anchors designed to resist wall out-of-plane forces with design strengths equal to or greater than the force determined in accordance with ASCE 7 Equation 12.11-1 or 12.14-10 shall be deemed to satisfy Section 17.2.3.4.3(d).*

17.2.3.4.3(d) – The anchor or group of anchors shall be designed for the maximum tension obtained from design load combinations that include ***E***, with ***E*** increased by Ω_0. The anchor design tensile strength shall *be calculated from 17.2.3.4.4*.

`

17.2.3.5.2 – Where the shear component of the strength-level earthquake force applied to anchors exceeds 20 percent of the total factored anchor shear force associated with the same load combination, anchors and their attachments shall be designed in accordance with 17.2.3.5.3. The anchor design shear strength for resisting earthquake forces shall be determined in accordance with 17.5.

Exceptions:

1. *For the calculation of the in-plane shear strength of anchor bolts attaching wood sill plates of bearing or nonbearing walls of light-frame wood structures to foundations or foundation stem walls, the in-plane shear strength in accordance with 17.5.2 and 17.5.3 need not be computed and 17.2.3.5.3 shall be deemed to be satisfied provided all of the following are met:*

    1.1. The allowable in-plane shear strength of the anchor is determined in accordance with ANSI/AWC NDS Table 11E for lateral design values parallel to grain.

    1.2. The maximum anchor nominal diameter is $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (16 mm).

    1.3. Anchor bolts are embedded into concrete a minimum of 7 inches (178 mm).

    1.4. Anchor bolts are located a minimum of $1^{3}/_{4}$ inches (45 mm) from the edge of the concrete parallel to the length of the wood sill plate.

    1.5. Anchor bolts are located a minimum of 15 anchor diameters from the edge of the concrete perpendicular to the length of the wood sill plate.

    1.6. The sill plate is 2-inch (51 mm) or 3-inch (76 mm) nominal thickness.

2. *For the calculation of the in-plane shear strength of anchor bolts attaching cold-formed steel track of bearing or nonbearing walls of light-frame construction to foundations or foundation stem walls, the in-plane shear strength in accordance with 17.5.2 and 17.5.3 need not be computed and 17.2.3.5.3 shall be deemed to be satisfied provided all of the following are met:*

    2.1. The maximum anchor nominal diameter is $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (16 mm).

    2.2. Anchors are embedded into concrete a minimum of 7 inches (178 mm).

    2.3. Anchors are located a minimum of $1^{3}/_{4}$ inches (45 mm) from the edge of the concrete parallel to the length of the track.

`

2.4. Anchors are located a minimum of 15 anchor diameters from the edge of the concrete perpendicular to the length of the track.

2.5. The track is 33 to 68 mil (0.84 mm to 1.73 mm) designation thickness.

Allowable in-plane shear strength of exempt anchors, parallel to the edge of concrete, shall be permitted to be determined in accordance with AISI S100 Section E3.3.1.

3. In light-frame construction bearing or nonbearing walls, shear strength of concrete anchors less than or equal to 1 inch [25 mm] in diameter attaching sill plate or track to foundation or foundation stem wall need not satisfy 17.2.3.5.3(a) through (c) when the design strength of the anchors is determined in accordance with 17.5.2.1(c).

SECTION 1906
STRUCTURAL PLAIN CONCRETE

1906.1 Scope.
The design and construction of structural plain concrete, both cast-in-place and precast, shall comply with the minimum requirements of ACI 318, as modified in Section 1905.

Exception: For Group R-3 occupancies and buildings of other occupancies less than two stories above grade plane of light-frame construction, the required footing thickness of ACI 318 is permitted to be reduced to 6 inches (152 mm), provided that the footing does not extend more than 4 inches (102 mm) on either side of the supported wall.

SECTION 1907
MINIMUM SLAB PROVISIONS

1907.1 General.
The thickness of concrete floor slabs supported directly on the ground shall not be less than $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm). A 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.15 mm) polyethylene vapor retarder with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm) shall be placed between the base course or subgrade and the concrete floor slab, or other *approved* equivalent methods or materials shall be used to retard vapor transmission through the floor slab.

Exception: A vapor retarder is not required:

1. For detached structures accessory to occupancies in Group R-3, such as garages, utility buildings or other unheated facilities.

2. For unheated storage rooms having an area of less than 70 square feet (6.5 m^2) and carports attached to occupancies in Group R-3.

3. For buildings of other occupancies where migration of moisture through the slab from below will not be detrimental to the intended occupancy of the building.

`

4. For driveways, walks, patios and other flatwork that will not be enclosed at a later date.

5. Where *approved* based on local site conditions.

SECTION 1908
SHOTCRETE

1908.1 General.
Shotcrete is mortar or concrete that is pneumatically projected at high velocity onto a surface. Except as specified in this section, shotcrete shall conform to the requirements of this chapter for plain or reinforced concrete.

1908.2 Proportions and materials.
Shotcrete proportions shall be selected that allow suitable placement procedures using the delivery equipment selected and shall result in finished in-place hardened shotcrete meeting the strength requirements of this code.

1908.3 Aggregate.
Coarse aggregate, if used, shall not exceed $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm).

1908.4 Reinforcement.
Reinforcement used in shotcrete construction shall comply with the provisions of Sections 1908.4.1 through 1908.4.4.

1908.4.1 Size.
The maximum size of reinforcement shall be No. 5 bars unless it is demonstrated by preconstruction tests that adequate encasement of larger bars will be achieved.

1908.4.2 Clearance.
When No. 5 or smaller bars are used, there shall be a minimum clearance between parallel reinforcement bars of $2^{1}/_{2}$ inches (64 mm). When bars larger than No. 5 are permitted, there shall be a minimum clearance between parallel bars equal to six diameters of the bars used. When two curtains of steel are provided, the curtain nearer the nozzle shall have a minimum spacing equal to 12 bar diameters and the remaining curtain shall have a minimum spacing of six bar diameters.

Exception: Subject to the approval of the *building official*, required clearances shall be reduced where it is demonstrated by preconstruction tests that adequate encasement of the bars used in the design will be achieved.

1908.4.3 Splices.
Lap splices of reinforcing bars shall utilize the noncontact lap splice method with a minimum clearance of 2 inches (51 mm) between bars. The use of contact lap splices necessary for support of the reinforcing is permitted when *approved* by the *building official*, based on satisfactory preconstruction tests that show that adequate encasement of the bars will be achieved, and provided that the splice is oriented so that a plane through the center of the spliced bars is perpendicular to the surface of the shotcrete.

1908.4.4 Spirally tied columns.
Shotcrete shall not be applied to spirally tied columns.

`

1908.5 Preconstruction tests.
Where preconstruction tests are required by Section 1908.4, a test panel shall be shot, cured, cored or sawn, examined and tested prior to commencement of the project. The sample panel shall be representative of the project and simulate job conditions as closely as possible. The panel thickness and reinforcing shall reproduce the thickest and most congested area specified in the structural design. It shall be shot at the same angle, using the same nozzleman and with the same concrete mix design that will be used on the project. The equipment used in preconstruction testing shall be the same equipment used in the work requiring such testing, unless substitute equipment is *approved* by the *building official*. Reports of preconstruction tests shall be submitted to the *building official* as specified in Section 1704.5.

1908.6 Rebound.
Any rebound or accumulated loose aggregate shall be removed from the surfaces to be covered prior to placing the initial or any succeeding layers of shotcrete. Rebound shall not be used as aggregate.

1908.7 Joints.
Except where permitted herein, unfinished work shall not be allowed to stand for more than 30 minutes unless edges are sloped to a thin edge. For structural elements that will be under compression and for construction joints shown on the *approved construction documents*, square joints are permitted. Before placing additional material adjacent to previously applied work, sloping and square edges shall be cleaned and wetted.

1908.8 Damage.
In-place shotcrete that exhibits sags, sloughs, segregation, honeycombing, sand pockets or other obvious defects shall be removed and replaced. Shotcrete above sags and sloughs shall be removed and replaced while still plastic.

1908.9 Curing.
During the curing periods specified herein, shotcrete shall be maintained above 40°F (4°C) and in moist condition.

1908.9.1 Initial curing.
Shotcrete shall be kept continuously moist for 24 hours after shotcreting is complete or shall be sealed with an *approved* curing compound.

1908.9.2 Final curing.
Final curing shall continue for seven days after shotcreting, or for three days if high-early-strength cement is used, or until the specified strength is obtained. Final curing shall consist of the initial curing process or the shotcrete shall be covered with an *approved* moisture-retaining cover.

1908.9.3 Natural curing.
Natural curing shall not be used in lieu of that specified in this section unless the relative humidity remains at or above 85 percent, and is authorized by the *registered design professional* and *approved* by the *building official*.

1908.10 Strength tests.
Strength tests for shotcrete shall be made by an *approved agency* on specimens that are representative of the work and which have been water soaked for at least 24 hours prior to testing. When the maximum-size aggregate is larger than $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm), specimens shall

`

consist of not less than three 3-inch-diameter (76 mm) cores or 3-inch (76 mm) cubes. When the maximum-size aggregate is $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) or smaller, specimens shall consist of not less than 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) cores or 2-inch (51 mm) cubes.

1908.10.1 Sampling.
Specimens shall be taken from the in-place work or from test panels, and shall be taken at least once each shift, but not less than one for each 50 cubic yards (38.2 m^3) of shotcrete.

1908.10.2 Panel criteria.
When the maximum-size aggregate is larger than $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm), the test panels shall have minimum dimensions of 18 inches by 18 inches (457 mm by 457 mm). When the maximum-size aggregate is $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) or smaller, the test panels shall have minimum dimensions of 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm). Panels shall be shot in the same position as the work, during the course of the work and by the nozzlemen doing the work. The conditions under which the panels are cured shall be the same as the work.

1908.10.3 Acceptance criteria.
The average compressive strength of three cores from the in-place work or a single test panel shall equal or exceed 0.85 f'_c with no single core less than 0.75 f'_c. The average compressive strength of three cubes taken from the in-place work or a single test panel shall equal or exceed f'_c with no individual cube less than 0.88 f'_c. To check accuracy, locations represented by erratic core or cube strengths shall be retested.

`

CHAPTER 20
ALUMINUM

User note: Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 2001
GENERAL

2001.1 Scope.
This chapter shall govern the quality, design, fabrication and erection of aluminum.

SECTION 2002
MATERIALS

2002.1 General.
Aluminum used for structural purposes in buildings and structures shall comply with AA ASM 35 and AA ADM 1. The *nominal loads* shall be the minimum design loads required by Chapter 16.

`

CHAPTER 21
MASONRY

User note: Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 2101
GENERAL

2101.1 Scope.
This chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and quality of masonry.

2101.2 Design methods.
Masonry shall comply with the provisions of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 or TMS 403 as well as applicable requirements of this chapter.

2101.2.1 Masonry veneer.
Masonry veneer shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 14.

2101.3 Special inspection.
The *special inspection* of masonry shall be as defined in Chapter 17, or an itemized testing and inspection program shall be provided that meets or exceeds the requirements of Chapter 17.

SECTION 2102
DEFINITIONS AND NOTATIONS

2102.1 General.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

AAC MASONRY.

ADOBE CONSTRUCTION.

Adobe, stabilized.

Adobe, unstabilized.

AREA.

Gross cross-sectional.

Net cross-sectional.

`

AUTOCLAVED AERATED CONCRETE (AAC).

BED JOINT.

BRICK.

Calcium silicate (sand lime brick).

Clay or shale.

Concrete.

CAST STONE.

CELL.

CHIMNEY.

CHIMNEY TYPES.

High-heat appliance type.

Low-heat appliance type.

Masonry type.

Medium-heat appliance type.

COLLAR JOINT.

DIMENSIONS.

Nominal.

Specified.

`

FIREPLACE.

FIREPLACE THROAT.

FOUNDATION PIER.

HEAD JOINT.

MASONRY.

Glass unit masonry.

Plain masonry.

Reinforced masonry.

Solid masonry.

Unreinforced (plain) masonry.

MASONRY UNIT.

Hollow.

Solid.

MORTAR.

MORTAR, SURFACE-BONDING.

PRESTRESSED MASONRY.

RUNNING BOND.

SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF MASONRY, f'_m.

`

STONE MASONRY.

STRENGTH.

Design strength.

Nominal strength.

Required strength.

TIE, WALL.

TILE, STRUCTURAL CLAY.

WALL.

Cavity wall.

Dry-stacked, surface-bonded wall.

Parapet wall.

WYTHE.

NOTATIONS.

d_b	=	Diameter of reinforcement, inches (mm).
F_s	=	Allowable tensile or compressive stress in reinforcement, psi (MPa).
f_r	=	Modulus of rupture, psi (MPa).
f'_{AAC}	=	Specified compressive strength of AAC masonry, the minimum compressive strength for a class of AAC masonry as specified in ASTM C1386, psi (MPa).
f'_m	=	Specified compressive strength of masonry at age of 28 days, psi (MPa).
f'_{mi}	=	Specified compressive strength of masonry at the time of prestress transfer, psi (MPa).

`

K	=	The lesser of the masonry cover, clear spacing between adjacent reinforcement, or five times d_b, inches (mm).
L_s	=	Distance between supports, inches (mm).
l_d	=	Required development length or lap length of reinforcement, inches (mm).
P	=	The applied load at failure, pounds (N).
S_t	=	Thickness of the test specimen measured parallel to the direction of load, inches (mm).
S_w	=	Width of the test specimen measured parallel to the loading cylinder, inches (mm).

SECTION 2103
MASONRY CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS

2103.1 Masonry units.
Concrete masonry units, clay or shale masonry units, stone masonry units, glass unit masonry and AAC masonry units shall comply with Article 2.3 of TMS 602/ACI 503.1/ASCE 6. Architectural cast stone shall conform to ASTM C1364.

Exception: Structural clay tile for nonstructural use in fireproofing of structural members and in wall furring shall not be required to meet the compressive strength specifications. The fire-resistance rating shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and shall comply with the requirements of Table 602.

2103.1.1 Second-hand units.
Second-hand masonry units shall not be reused unless they conform to the requirements of new units. The units shall be of whole, sound materials and free from cracks and other defects that will interfere with proper laying or use. Old mortar shall be cleaned from the unit before reuse.

2103.2 Mortar.
Mortar for masonry construction shall comply with Section 2103.2.1, 2103.2.2, 2103.2.3 or 2103.2.4.

2103.2.1 Masonry mortar.
Mortar for use in masonry construction shall conform to Articles 2.1 and 2.6 A of TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

2103.2.2 Surface-bonding mortar.
Surface-bonding mortar shall comply with ASTM C887. Surface bonding of concrete masonry units shall comply with ASTM C946.

2103.2.3 Mortars for ceramic wall and floor tile.
Portland cement mortars for installing ceramic wall and floor tile shall comply with ANSI A108.1A and ANSI A108.1B and be of the compositions indicated in Table 2103.2.3.

`

TABLE 2103.2.3
CERAMIC TILE MORTAR COMPOSITIONS

LOCATION	MORTAR	COMPOSITION
Walls	Scratchcoat	1 cement; $^{1}/_{5}$ hydrated lime; 4 dry or 5 damp sand
	Setting bed and leveling coat	1 cement; $^{1}/_{2}$ hydrated lime; 5 damp sand to 1 cement 1 hydrated lime, 7 damp sand
Floors	Setting bed	1 cement; $^{1}/_{10}$ hydrated lime; 5 dry or 6 damp sand; or 1 cement; 5 dry or 6 damp sand
Ceilings	Scratchcoat and sand bed	1 cement; $^{1}/_{2}$ hydrated lime; $2^{1}/_{2}$ dry sand or 3 damp sand

2103.2.3.1 Dry-set Portland cement mortars.
Premixed prepared Portland cement mortars, which require only the addition of water and are used in the installation of ceramic tile, shall comply with ANSI A118.1. The shear bond strength for tile set in such mortar shall be as required in accordance with ANSI A118.1. Tile set in dry-set Portland cement mortar shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.5.

2103.2.3.2 Latex-modified Portland cement mortar.
Latex-modified Portland cement thin-set mortars in which latex is added to dry-set mortar as a replacement for all or part of the gauging water that are used for the installation of ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.4. Tile set in latex-modified Portland cement shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.5.

2103.2.3.3 Epoxy mortar.
Ceramic tile set and grouted with chemical-resistant epoxy shall comply with ANSI A118.3. Tile set and grouted with epoxy shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.6.

2103.2.3.4 Furan mortar and grout.
Chemical-resistant furan mortar and grout that are used to install ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.5. Tile set and grouted with furan shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.8.

2103.2.3.5 Modified epoxy-emulsion mortar and grout.
Modified epoxy-emulsion mortar and grout that are used to install ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.8. Tile set and grouted with modified epoxy-emulsion mortar and grout shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.9.

2103.2.3.6 Organic adhesives.
Water-resistant organic adhesives used for the installation of ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A136.1. The shear bond strength after water immersion shall be not less than 40 psi (275 kPa) for Type I adhesive and not less than 20 psi (138 kPa) for Type II

`

adhesive when tested in accordance with ANSI A136.1. Tile set in organic adhesives shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.4.

2103.2.3.7 Portland cement grouts.
Portland cement grouts used for the installation of ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.6. Portland cement grouts for tile work shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.10.

2103.2.4 Mortar for adhered masonry veneer.
Mortar for use with adhered masonry veneer shall conform to ASTM C270 for Type N or S, or shall comply with ANSI A118.4 for latex-modified Portland cement mortar.

2103.3 Grout.
Grout shall comply with Article 2.2 of TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

2103.4 Metal reinforcement and accessories.
Metal reinforcement and accessories shall conform to Article 2.4 of TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6. Where unidentified reinforcement is *approved* for use, not less than three tension and three bending tests shall be made on representative specimens of the reinforcement from each shipment and grade of reinforcing steel proposed for use in the work.

SECTION 2104
CONSTRUCTION

2104.1 Masonry construction.
Masonry construction shall comply with the requirements of Sections 2104.1.1 and 2104.1.2 and with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

2104.1.1 Support on wood.
Masonry shall not be supported on wood girders or other forms of wood construction except as permitted in Section 2304.12.

2104.1.2 Molded cornices.
Unless structural support and anchorage are provided to resist the overturning moment, the center of gravity of projecting masonry or molded cornices shall lie within the middle one-third of the supporting wall. Terra cotta and metal cornices shall be provided with a structural frame of *approved* noncombustible material anchored in an *approved* manner.

SECTION 2105
QUALITY ASSURANCE

2105.1 General.
A quality assurance program shall be used to ensure that the constructed masonry is in compliance with the *approved construction documents*.

The quality assurance program shall comply with the inspection and testing requirements of Chapter 17 and TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

SECTION 2106
SEISMIC DESIGN

`

2106.1 Seismic design requirements for masonry.
Masonry structures and components shall comply with the requirements in Chapter 7 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 depending on the structure's *seismic design category*.

SECTION 2107
ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN

2107.1 General.
The design of masonry structures using *allowable stress design* shall comply with Section 2106 and the requirements of Chapters 1 through 8 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 except as modified by Sections 2107.2 through 2107.4.

2107.2 TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, Section 8.1.6.7.1.1, lap splices.
As an alternative to Section 8.1.6.7.1.1, it shall be permitted to design lap splices in accordance with Section 2107.2.1.

2107.2.1 Lap splices.
The minimum length of lap splices for reinforcing bars in tension or compression, l_d, shall be

$$l_d = 0.002 d_b f_s \qquad \textbf{(Equation 21-1)}$$

For SI: $l_d = 0.29 d_b f_s$

but not less than 12 inches (305 mm). In no case shall the length of the lapped splice be less than 40 bar diameters.

where:

d_b = Diameter of reinforcement, inches (mm).

f_s = Computed stress in reinforcement due to design loads, psi (MPa).

In regions of moment where the design tensile stresses in the reinforcement are greater than 80 percent of the allowable steel tension stress, F_s, the lap length of splices shall be increased not less than 50 percent of the minimum required length but need not be greater than 72db. Other equivalent means of stress transfer to accomplish the same 50 percent increase shall be permitted. Where epoxy coated bars are used, lap length shall be increased by 50 percent.

2107.3 TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, Section 8.1.6.7, splices of reinforcement.
Modify Section 8.1.6.7 as follows:

8.1.6.7 – Splices of reinforcement. Lap splices, welded splices or mechanical splices are permitted in accordance with the provisions of this section. All welding shall conform to AWS D1.4. Welded splices shall be of ASTM A706 steel reinforcement. Reinforcement larger than No. 9 (M #29) shall be spliced using mechanical connections in accordance with Section 8.1.6.7.3.

`

2107.4 TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, Section 8.3.6, maximum bar size.
Add the following to Chapter 8:

8.3.6 – Maximum bar size. The bar diameter shall not exceed one-eighth of the nominal wall thickness and shall not exceed one-quarter of the least dimension of the cell, course or collar joint in which it is placed.

SECTION 2108
STRENGTH DESIGN OF MASONRY

2108.1 General.
The design of masonry structures using strength design shall comply with Section 2106 and the requirements of Chapters 1 through 7 and Chapter 9 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, except as modified by Sections 2108.2 through 2108.3.

Exception: AAC masonry shall comply with the requirements of Chapters 1 through 7 and Chapter 11 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

2108.2 TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, Section 9.3.3.3, development.
Modify the second paragraph of Section 9.3.3.3 as follows:

The required development length of reinforcement shall be determined by Equation (9-16), but shall not be less than 12 inches (305 mm) and need not be greater than 72 d_b.

2108.3 TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, Section 9.3.3.4, splices.
Modify items (c) and (d) of Section 9.3.3.4 as follows:

9.3.3.4 (c) – A welded splice shall have the bars butted and welded to develop at least 125 percent of the yield strength, f_y, of the bar in tension or compression, as required. Welded splices shall be of ASTM A706 steel reinforcement. Welded splices shall not be permitted in plastic hinge zones of intermediate or special reinforced walls.

9.3.3.4 (d) – Mechanical splices shall be classified as Type 1 or 2 in accordance with Section 18.2.7.1 of ACI 318. Type 1 mechanical splices shall not be used within a plastic hinge zone or within a beam-column joint of intermediate or special reinforced masonry shear walls. Type 2 mechanical splices are permitted in any location within a member.

SECTION 2109
EMPIRICAL DESIGN OF MASONRY

2109.1 General.
Empirically designed masonry shall conform to the requirements of Appendix A of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, except where otherwise noted in this section.

2109.1.1 Limitations.
The use of empirical design of masonry shall be limited as noted in Section A.1.2 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5. The use of dry-stacked, surface-bonded masonry shall be prohibited in *Risk Category* IV structures. In buildings that exceed one or more of the limitations of Section A.1.2 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, masonry shall be designed in accordance with the engineered design provisions of Section 2101.2 or the foundation wall provisions of Section 1807.1.5.

`

Section A.1.2.2 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 shall be modified as follows:

A.1.2.2 – *Wind*. Empirical requirements shall not apply to the design or construction of masonry for buildings, parts of buildings, or other structures to be located in areas where V_{asd} as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 of the *International Building Code* exceeds 110 mph.

2109.2 Surface-bonded walls.
Dry-stacked, surface-bonded concrete masonry walls shall comply with the requirements of Appendix A of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, except where otherwise noted in this section.

2109.2.1 Strength.
Dry-stacked, surface-bonded concrete masonry walls shall be of adequate strength and proportions to support all superimposed loads without exceeding the allowable stresses listed in Table 2109.2.1. Allowable stresses not specified in Table 2109.2.1 shall comply with the requirements of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

TABLE 2109.2.1
ALLOWABLE STRESS GROSS CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA FOR DRY-STACKED, SURFACE-BONDED CONCRETE MASONRY WALLS

DESCRIPTION	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS (psi)
Compression standard block	45
Flexural tension Horizontal span Vertical span	 30 18
Shear	10

For SI: 1 pound per square inch = 0.006895 MPa.

2109.2.2 Construction.
Construction of dry-stacked, surface-bonded masonry walls, including stacking and leveling of units, mixing and application of mortar and curing and protection shall comply with ASTM C946.

2109.3 Adobe construction.
Adobe construction shall comply with this section and shall be subject to the requirements of this code for Type V construction, Appendix A of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, and this section.

2109.3.1 Unstabilized adobe.
Unstabilized adobe shall comply with Sections 2109.3.1.1 through 2109.3.1.4.

2109.3.1.1 Compressive strength.
Adobe units shall have an average compressive strength of 300 psi (2068 kPa) when tested in accordance with ASTM C67. Five samples shall be tested and no individual unit is permitted to have a compressive strength of less than 250 psi (1724 kPa).

`

2109.3.1.2 Modulus of rupture.
Adobe units shall have an average modulus of rupture of 50 psi (345 kPa) when tested in accordance with the following procedure. Five samples shall be tested and no individual unit shall have a modulus of rupture of less than 35 psi (241 kPa).

2109.3.1.2.1 Support conditions.
A cured unit shall be simply supported by 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) cylindrical supports located 2 inches (51 mm) in from each end and extending the full width of the unit.

2109.3.1.2.2 Loading conditions.
A 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) cylinder shall be placed at midspan parallel to the supports.

2109.3.1.2.3 Testing procedure.
A vertical load shall be applied to the cylinder at the rate of 500 pounds per minute (37 N/s) until failure occurs.

2109.3.1.2.4 Modulus of rupture determination.
The modulus of rupture shall be determined by the equation:

$$f_r = 3PL_s/2S_w(S_t^2) \qquad \textbf{(Equation 21-2)}$$

where, for the purposes of this section only:

S_w	=	Width of the test specimen measured parallel to the loading cylinder, inches (mm).
f_r	=	Modulus of rupture, psi (MPa).
L_s	=	Distance between supports, inches (mm).
S_t	=	Thickness of the test specimen measured parallel to the direction of load, inches (mm).
P	=	The applied load at failure, pounds (N).

2109.3.1.3 Moisture content requirements.
Adobe units shall have a moisture content not exceeding 4 percent by weight.

2109.3.1.4 Shrinkage cracks.
Adobe units shall not contain more than three shrinkage cracks and any single shrinkage crack shall not exceed 3 inches (76 mm) in length or $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm) in width.

2109.3.2 Stabilized adobe.
Stabilized adobe shall comply with Section 2109.3.1 for unstabilized adobe in addition to Sections 2109.3.2.1 and 2109.3.2.2.

2109.3.2.1 Soil requirements.
Soil used for stabilized adobe units shall be chemically compatible with the stabilizing material.

`

2109.3.2.2 Absorption requirements.
A 4-inch (102 mm) cube, cut from a stabilized adobe unit dried to a constant weight in a ventilated oven at 212°F to 239°F (100°C to 115°C), shall not absorb more than $2^1/_2$ percent moisture by weight when placed upon a constantly water-saturated, porous surface for seven days. A minimum of five specimens shall be tested and each specimen shall be cut from a separate unit.

2109.3.3 Allowable stress.
The allowable compressive stress based on gross cross-sectional area of adobe shall not exceed 30 psi (207 kPa).

2109.3.3.1 Bolts.
Bolt values shall not exceed those set forth in Table 2109.3.3.1.

TABLE 2109.3.3.1
ALLOWABLE SHEAR ON BOLTS IN ADOBE MASONRY

DIAMETER OF BOLTS (inches)	MINIMUM EMBEDMENT (inches)	SHEAR (pounds)
$^1/_2$	—	—
$^5/_8$	12	200
$^3/_4$	15	300
$^7/_8$	18	400
1	21	500
$1^1/_8$	24	600

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N.

2109.3.4 Detailed requirements.
Adobe construction shall comply with Sections 2109.3.4.1 through 2109.3.4.9.

2109.3.4.1 Number of stories.
Adobe construction shall be limited to buildings not exceeding one *story*, except that two-*story* construction is allowed when designed by a *registered design professional*.

2109.3.4.2 Mortar.
Mortar for adobe construction shall comply with Sections 2109.3.4.2.1 and 2109.3.4.2.2.

2109.3.4.2.1 General.
Mortar for stabilized adobe units shall comply with this chapter or adobe soil. Adobe soil used as mortar shall comply with material requirements for stabilized adobe. Mortar for unstabilized adobe shall be Portland cement mortar.

2109.3.4.2.2 Mortar joints.
Adobe units shall be laid with full head and bed joints and in full running bond.

`

2109.3.4.3 Parapet walls.
Parapet walls constructed of adobe units shall be waterproofed.

2109.3.4.4 Wall thickness.
The minimum thickness of *exterior walls* in one-story buildings shall be 10 inches (254 mm). The walls shall be laterally supported at intervals not exceeding 24 feet (7315 mm). The minimum thickness of interior *load-bearing walls* shall be 8 inches (203 mm). In no case shall the unsupported height of any wall constructed of adobe units exceed 10 times the thickness of such wall.

2109.3.4.5 Foundations.
Foundations for adobe construction shall be in accordance with Sections 2109.3.4.5.1 and 2109.3.4.5.2.

2109.3.4.5.1 Foundation support.
Walls and partitions constructed of adobe units shall be supported by foundations or footings that extend not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above adjacent ground surfaces and are constructed of solid masonry (excluding adobe) or concrete. Footings and foundations shall comply with Chapter 18.

2109.3.4.5.2 Lower course requirements.
Stabilized adobe units shall be used in adobe walls for the first 4 inches (102 mm) above the finished first-floor elevation.

2109.3.4.6 Isolated piers or columns.
Adobe units shall not be used for isolated piers or columns in a load-bearing capacity. Walls less than 24 inches (610 mm) in length shall be considered isolated piers or columns.

2109.3.4.7 Tie beams.
Exterior walls and interior *load-bearing walls* constructed of adobe units shall have a continuous tie beam at the level of the floor or roof bearing and meeting the following requirements.

2109.3.4.7.1 Concrete tie beams.
Concrete tie beams shall be a minimum depth of 6 inches (152 mm) and a minimum width of 10 inches (254 mm). Concrete tie beams shall be continuously reinforced with a minimum of two No. 4 reinforcing bars. The specified compressive strength of concrete shall be at least 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa).

2109.3.4.7.2 Wood tie beams.
Wood tie beams shall be solid or built up of lumber having a minimum nominal thickness of 1 inch (25 mm), and shall have a minimum depth of 6 inches (152 mm) and a minimum width of 10 inches (254 mm). Joints in wood tie beams shall be spliced a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm). No splices shall be allowed within 12 inches (305 mm) of an opening. Wood used in tie beams shall be *approved* naturally decay-resistant or preservative-treated wood.

2109.3.4.8 Exterior finish.
Exterior walls constructed of unstabilized adobe units shall have their exterior surface covered with a minimum of two coats of Portland cement plaster having a minimum

`

thickness of $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) and conforming to ASTM C926. Lathing shall comply with ASTM C1063. Fasteners shall be spaced at 16 inches (406 mm) on center maximum. Exposed wood surfaces shall be treated with an *approved* wood preservative or other protective coating prior to lath application.

2109.3.4.9 Lintels.
Lintels shall be considered structural members and shall be designed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Chapter 16.

SECTION 2110
GLASS UNIT MASONRY

2110.1 General.
Glass unit masonry construction shall comply with Chapter 13 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 and this section.

2110.1.1 Limitations.
Solid or hollow *approved* glass block shall not be used in fire walls, party walls, fire barriers, fire partitions or smoke barriers, or for load-bearing construction. Such blocks shall be erected with mortar and reinforcement in metal channel-type frames, structural frames, masonry or concrete recesses, embedded panel anchors as provided for both exterior and interior walls or other *approved* joint materials. Wood strip framing shall not be used in walls required to have a fire-resistance rating by other provisions of this code.

Exceptions:

1. Glass-block assemblies having a fire protection rating of not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ hour shall be permitted as opening protectives in accordance with Section 716 in fire barriers, fire partitions and smoke barriers that have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less and do not enclose exit stairways and ramps or exit passageways.

2. Glass-block assemblies as permitted in Section 404.6, Exception 2.

SECTION 2111
MASONRY FIREPLACES

2111.1 General.
The construction of masonry fireplaces, consisting of concrete or masonry, shall be in accordance with this section.

2111.2 Fireplace drawings.
The *construction documents* shall describe in sufficient detail the location, size and construction of masonry fireplaces. The thickness and characteristics of materials and the clearances from walls, partitions and ceilings shall be indicated.

2111.3 Footings and foundations.
Footings for masonry fireplaces and their chimneys shall be constructed of concrete or solid masonry at least 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend at least 6 inches (153 mm) beyond the face of the fireplace or foundation wall on all sides. Footings shall be founded on natural

`

undisturbed earth or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be at least 12 inches (305 mm) below finished grade.

2111.3.1 Ash dump cleanout.
Cleanout openings, located within foundation walls below fireboxes, when provided, shall be equipped with ferrous metal or masonry doors and frames constructed to remain tightly closed, except when in use. Cleanouts shall be accessible and located so that ash removal will not create a hazard to combustible materials.

2111.4 Seismic reinforcement.
In structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* A or B, seismic reinforcement is not required. In structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C or D, masonry fireplaces shall be reinforced and anchored in accordance with Sections 2111.4.1, 2111.4.2 and 2111.5. In structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* E or F, masonry fireplaces shall be reinforced in accordance with the requirements of Sections 2101 through 2108.

2111.4.1 Vertical reinforcing.
For fireplaces with chimneys up to 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, four No. 4 continuous vertical bars, anchored in the foundation, shall be placed in the concrete between wythes of solid masonry or within the cells of hollow unit masonry and grouted in accordance with Section 2103.3. For fireplaces with chimneys greater than 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, two additional No. 4 vertical bars shall be provided for each additional 40 inches (1016 mm) in width or fraction thereof.

2111.4.2 Horizontal reinforcing.
Vertical reinforcement shall be placed enclosed within $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6.4 mm) ties or other reinforcing of equivalent net cross-sectional area, spaced not to exceed 18 inches (457 mm) on center in concrete; or placed in the bed joints of unit masonry at a minimum of every 18 inches (457 mm) of vertical height. Two such ties shall be provided at each bend in the vertical bars.

2111.5 Seismic anchorage.
Masonry fireplaces and foundations shall be anchored at each floor, ceiling or roof line more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above grade with two $^{3}/_{16}$-inch by 1-inch (4.8 mm by 25 mm) straps embedded a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) into the chimney. Straps shall be hooked around the outer bars and extend 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the bend. Each strap shall be fastened to a minimum of four floor joists with two $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) bolts.

Exception: Seismic anchorage is not required for the following:

1. In structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* A or B.

2. Where the masonry fireplace is constructed completely within the exterior walls.

2111.6 Firebox walls.
Masonry fireboxes shall be constructed of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete. When a lining of firebrick at least 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness or other *approved* lining is provided, the minimum thickness of back and sidewalls shall each be 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry, including the lining. The width of joints between firebricks

`

shall be not greater than $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm). When no lining is provided, the total minimum thickness of back and sidewalls shall be 10 inches (254 mm) of solid masonry. Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C27 or ASTM C1261 and shall be laid with medium-duty refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199.

2111.6.1 Steel fireplace units.
Steel fireplace units are permitted to be installed with solid masonry to form a masonry fireplace provided they are installed according to either the requirements of their listing or the requirements of this section. Steel fireplace units incorporating a steel firebox lining shall be constructed with steel not less than $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) in thickness, and an air-circulating chamber which is ducted to the interior of the building. The firebox lining shall be encased with solid masonry to provide a total thickness at the back and sides of not less than 8 inches (203 mm), of which not less than 4 inches (102 mm) shall be of solid masonry or concrete. Circulating air ducts employed with steel fireplace units shall be constructed of metal or masonry.

2111.7 Firebox dimensions.
The firebox of a concrete or masonry fireplace shall have a minimum depth of 20 inches (508 mm). The throat shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the fireplace opening. The throat opening shall not be less than 4 inches (102 mm) in depth. The cross-sectional area of the passageway above the firebox, including the throat, damper and smoke chamber, shall be not less than the cross-sectional area of the flue.

Exception: Rumford fireplaces shall be permitted provided that the depth of the fireplace is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) and at least one-third of the width of the fireplace opening, and the throat is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the lintel, and at least $^{1}/_{20}$ the cross-sectional area of the fireplace opening.

~~**2111.8 Lintel and throat.**~~
~~Masonry over a fireplace opening shall be supported by a lintel of noncombustible material. The minimum required bearing length on each end of the fireplace opening shall be 4 inches (102 mm). The fireplace throat or damper shall be located not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the fireplace opening.~~

2111.8 Fireplaces. Fireplaces shall be provided with each of the following:

1. Tightly fitting flue dampers, operated by a readily accessible manual or approved automatic control.
   Exception: Fireplaces with gas logs shall be installed in accordance with the International Mechanical Code Section 901, except that the standards for liquefied petroleum gas installations shall be NFPA 58 (Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code) and NFPA 54 (National Fuel Gas Code).
2. An outside source for combustion air ducted into the firebox. The duct shall be at least 6 square inches, and shall be provided with an operable outside air duct damper.
   Exception: Washington certified fireplaces shall be installed with the combustion air systems necessary for their safe and efficient combustion and specified by the manufacturer in accordance with the Washington State Building Standard 31-2 (WAC 51-50-31200) and IBC Section 2114 (WAC 51-50-2114).

`

3. Site built fireplaces shall have tight fitting glass or metal doors, or a flue draft induction fan or as approved for minimizing back-drafting. Factory built fireplaces shall use doors listed for the installed appliance.

2111.8.1 ~~**Damper.**~~
~~Masonry fireplaces shall be equipped with a ferrous metal damper located not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the fireplace opening. Dampers shall be installed in the fireplace or at the top of the flue venting the fireplace, and shall be operable from the room containing the fireplace. Damper controls shall be permitted to be located in the fireplace.~~

2111.8.1 Lintel and throat. Masonry over a fireplace opening shall be supported by a lintel of noncombustible material. The minimum required bearing length on each end of the fireplace opening shall be 4 inches (102 mm). The fireplace throat or damper shall be located a minimum of 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the fireplace opening.

2111.9 Smoke chamber walls.
Smoke chamber walls shall be constructed of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete. The total minimum thickness of front, back and sidewalls shall be 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry. The inside surface shall be parged smooth with refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199. When a lining of firebrick not less than 2 inches (51 mm) thick, or a lining of vitrified clay not less than $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (15.9 mm) thick, is provided, the total minimum thickness of front, back and sidewalls shall be 6 inches (152 mm) of solid masonry, including the lining. Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C1261 and shall be laid with refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199. Vitrified clay linings shall conform to ASTM C315.

2111.9.1 Smoke chamber dimensions.
The inside height of the smoke chamber from the fireplace throat to the beginning of the flue shall be not greater than the inside width of the fireplace opening. The inside surface of the smoke chamber shall not be inclined more than 45 degrees (0.76 rad) from vertical when prefabricated smoke chamber linings are used or when the smoke chamber walls are rolled or sloped rather than corbeled. When the inside surface of the smoke chamber is formed by corbeled masonry, the walls shall not be corbeled more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from vertical.

2111.10 Hearth and hearth extension.
Masonry fireplace hearths and hearth extensions shall be constructed of concrete or masonry, supported by noncombustible materials, and reinforced to carry their own weight and all imposed loads. No combustible material shall remain against the underside of hearths or hearth extensions after construction.

2111.10.1 Hearth thickness.
The minimum thickness of fireplace hearths shall be 4 inches (102 mm).

2111.10.2 Hearth extension thickness.
The minimum thickness of hearth extensions shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

Exception: When the bottom of the firebox opening is raised not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the hearth extension, a hearth extension of not less than $^{3}/_{8}$-inch-

`

thick (9.5 mm) brick, concrete, stone, tile or other *approved* noncombustible material is permitted.

2111.11 Hearth extension dimensions.
Hearth extensions shall extend not less than 16 inches (406 mm) in front of, and not less than 8 inches (203 mm) beyond, each side of the fireplace opening. Where the fireplace opening is 6 square feet (0.557 m^2) or larger, the hearth extension shall extend not less than 20 inches (508 mm) in front of, and not less than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond, each side of the fireplace opening.

2111.12 Fireplace clearance.
Any portion of a masonry fireplace located in the interior of a building or within the *exterior wall* of a building shall have a clearance to combustibles of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from the front faces and sides of masonry fireplaces and not less than 4 inches (102 mm) from the back faces of masonry fireplaces. The airspace shall not be filled, except to provide fireblocking in accordance with Section 2111.13.

Exceptions:

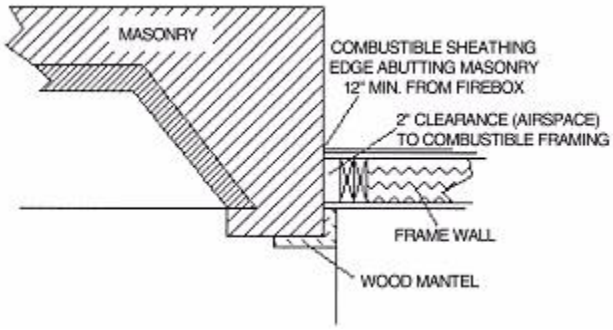
1. Masonry fireplaces *listed* and *labeled* for use in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 127 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions are permitted to have combustible material in contact with their exterior surfaces.

2. When masonry fireplaces are constructed as part of masonry or concrete walls, combustible materials shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete walls less than 12 inches (306 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.

3. Exposed combustible *trim* and the edges of sheathing materials, such as wood siding, flooring and drywall, are permitted to abut the masonry fireplace sidewalls and hearth extension, in accordance with Figure 2111.12, provided such combustible *trim* or sheathing is not less than 12 inches (306 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.

4. Exposed combustible mantels or *trim* is permitted to be placed directly on the masonry fireplace front surrounding the fireplace opening, provided such combustible materials shall not be placed within 6 inches (153 mm) of a fireplace opening. Combustible material directly above and within 12 inches (305 mm) of the fireplace opening shall not project more than $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm) for each 1-inch (25 mm) distance from such opening. Combustible materials located along the sides of the fireplace opening that project more than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the face of the fireplace shall have an additional clearance equal to the projection.

`



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm

FIGURE 2111.12
ILLUSTRATION OF EXCEPTION TO
FIREPLACE CLEARANCE PROVISION

2111.13 Fireplace fireblocking.
All spaces between fireplaces and floors and ceilings through which fireplaces pass shall be fireblocked with noncombustible material securely fastened in place. The fireblocking of spaces between wood joists, beams or headers shall be to a depth of 1 inch (25 mm) and shall only be placed on strips of metal or metal lath laid across the spaces between combustible material and the chimney.

2111.14 Exterior air.
Factory-built or masonry fireplaces covered in this section shall be equipped with an exterior air supply to ensure proper fuel combustion unless the room is mechanically ventilated and controlled so that the indoor pressure is neutral or positive.

2111.14.1 Factory-built fireplaces.
Exterior combustion air ducts for factory-built fireplaces shall be *listed* components of the fireplace, and installed according to the fireplace manufacturer's instructions.

2111.14.2 Masonry fireplaces.
Listed combustion air ducts for masonry fireplaces shall be installed according to the terms of their listing and manufacturer's instructions.

2111.14.3 Exterior air intake.
The exterior air intake shall be capable of providing all combustion air from the exterior of the *dwelling*. The exterior air intake shall not be located within a garage, *attic*, basement or crawl space of the *dwelling* nor shall the air intake be located at an elevation higher than the firebox. The exterior air intake shall be covered with a corrosion-resistant screen of $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6.4 mm) mesh.

2111.14.4 Clearance.
Unlisted combustion air ducts shall be installed with a minimum 1-inch (25 mm) clearance to combustibles for all parts of the duct within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the duct outlet.

2111.14.5 Passageway.
The combustion air passageway shall be not less than 6 square inches (3870 mm^2) and not more than 55 square inches (0.035 m^2), except that combustion air systems for *listed*

`

fireplaces or for fireplaces tested for emissions shall be constructed according to the fireplace manufacturer's instructions.

2111.14.6 Outlet.
The exterior air outlet is permitted to be located in the back or sides of the firebox chamber or within 24 inches (610 mm) of the firebox opening on or near the floor. The outlet shall be closable and designed to prevent burning material from dropping into concealed combustible spaces.

SECTION 2112
MASONRY HEATERS

2112.1 Definition.
A masonry heater is a heating appliance constructed of concrete or solid masonry, hereinafter referred to as "masonry," which is designed to absorb and store heat from a solid fuel fire built in the firebox by routing the exhaust gases through internal heat exchange channels in which the flow path downstream of the firebox may include flow in a horizontal or downward direction before entering the chimney and which delivers heat by radiation from the masonry surface of the heater.

2112.2 Installation.
Masonry heaters shall be installed in accordance with this section and comply with one of the following:

1. Masonry heaters shall comply with the requirements of ASTM E1602.

2. Masonry heaters shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1482 or EN 15250 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2112.3 Footings and foundation.
The firebox floor of a masonry heater shall be a minimum thickness of 4 inches (102 mm) of noncombustible material and be supported on a noncombustible footing and foundation in accordance with Section 2113.2.

2112.4 Seismic reinforcing.
In structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, masonry heaters shall be anchored to the masonry foundation in accordance with Section 2113.3. Seismic reinforcing shall not be required within the body of a masonry heater with a height that is equal to or less than 3.5 times its body width and where the masonry chimney serving the heater is not supported by the body of the heater. Where the masonry chimney shares a common wall with the facing of the masonry heater, the chimney portion of the structure shall be reinforced in accordance with Section 2113.

2112.5 Masonry heater clearance.
Combustible materials shall not be placed within 36 inches (914 mm) or the distance of the allowed reduction method from the outside surface of a masonry heater in accordance with NFPA 211, Section 12.6, and the required space between the heater and combustible material shall be fully vented to permit the free flow of air around all heater surfaces.

Exceptions:

1. Where the masonry heater wall thickness is at least 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry and the wall thickness of the heat exchange channels is not less than 5

`

inches (127 mm) of solid masonry, combustible materials shall not be placed within 4 inches (102 mm) of the outside surface of a masonry heater. A clearance of not less than 8 inches (203 mm) shall be provided between the gas-tight capping slab of the heater and a combustible ceiling.

2. Masonry heaters *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1482 or EN 15250 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 2113
MASONRY CHIMNEYS

2113.1 General.
The construction of masonry chimneys consisting of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete shall be in accordance with this section.

2113.2 Footings and foundations.
Footings for masonry chimneys shall be constructed of concrete or solid masonry not less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend at least 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the face of the foundation or support wall on all sides. Footings shall be founded on natural undisturbed earth or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below finished grade.

2113.3 Seismic reinforcement.
In structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* A or B, seismic reinforcement is not required. In structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* C or D, masonry chimneys shall be reinforced and anchored in accordance with Sections 2113.3.1, 2113.3.2 and 2113.4. In structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* E or F, masonry chimneys shall be reinforced in accordance with the requirements of Sections 2101 through 2108 and anchored in accordance with Section 2113.4.

2113.3.1 Vertical reinforcement.
For chimneys up to 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, four No. 4 continuous vertical bars anchored in the foundation shall be placed in the concrete between wythes of solid masonry or within the cells of hollow unit masonry and grouted in accordance with Section 2103.3. Grout shall be prevented from bonding with the flue liner so that the flue liner is free to move with thermal expansion. For chimneys greater than 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, two additional No. 4 vertical bars shall be provided for each additional 40 inches (1016 mm) in width or fraction thereof.

2113.3.2 Horizontal reinforcement.
Vertical reinforcement shall be placed enclosed within $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6.4 mm) ties, or other reinforcing of equivalent net cross-sectional area, spaced not to exceed 18 inches (457 mm) on center in concrete, or placed in the bed joints of unit masonry, at not less than every 18 inches (457 mm) of vertical height. Two such ties shall be provided at each bend in the vertical bars.

2113.4 Seismic anchorage.
Masonry chimneys and foundations shall be anchored at each floor, ceiling or roof line more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above grade with two $^{3}/_{16}$-inch by 1-inch (4.8 mm by 25 mm) straps embedded not less than 12 inches (305 mm) into the chimney. Straps shall be hooked around

`

the outer bars and extend 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the bend. Each strap shall be fastened to not less than four floor joists with two $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) bolts.

Exception: Seismic anchorage is not required for the following:

1. In structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* A or B.

2. Where the masonry fireplace is constructed completely within the exterior walls.

2113.5 Corbeling.
Masonry chimneys shall not be corbeled more than half of the chimney's wall thickness from a wall or foundation, nor shall a chimney be corbeled from a wall or foundation that is less than 12 inches (305 mm) in thickness unless it projects equally on each side of the wall, except that on the second *story* of a two-story *dwelling*, corbeling of chimneys on the exterior of the enclosing walls is permitted to equal the wall thickness. The projection of a single course shall not exceed one-half the unit height or one-third of the unit bed depth, whichever is less.

2113.6 Changes in dimension.
The chimney wall or chimney flue lining shall not change in size or shape within 6 inches (152 mm) above or below where the chimney passes through floor components, ceiling components or roof components.

2113.7 Offsets.
Where a masonry chimney is constructed with a fireclay flue liner surrounded by one wythe of masonry, the maximum offset shall be such that the centerline of the flue above the offset does not extend beyond the center of the chimney wall below the offset. Where the chimney offset is supported by masonry below the offset in an *approved* manner, the maximum offset limitations shall not apply. Each individual corbeled masonry course of the offset shall not exceed the projection limitations specified in Section 2113.5.

2113.8 Additional load.
Chimneys shall not support loads other than their own weight unless they are designed and constructed to support the additional load. Masonry chimneys are permitted to be constructed as part of the masonry walls or concrete walls of the building.

2113.9 Termination.
Chimneys shall extend not less than 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of the building within 10 feet (3048 mm), but shall not be less than 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest point where the chimney passes through the roof.

2113.9.1 Chimney caps.
Masonry chimneys shall have a concrete, metal or stone cap, sloped to shed water, a drip edge and a caulked bond break around any flue liners in accordance with ASTM C1283.

2113.9.2 Spark arrestors.
Where a spark arrestor is installed on a masonry chimney, the spark arrestor shall meet all of the following requirements:

1. The net free area of the arrestor shall be not less than four times the net free area of the outlet of the chimney flue it serves.

`

2. The arrestor screen shall have heat and corrosion resistance equivalent to 19-gage galvanized steel or 24-gage stainless steel.

3. Openings shall not permit the passage of spheres having a diameter greater than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) nor block the passage of spheres having a diameter less than $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm).

4. The spark arrestor shall be accessible for cleaning and the screen or chimney cap shall be removable to allow for cleaning of the chimney flue.

2113.9.3 Rain caps.
Where a masonry or metal rain cap is installed on a masonry chimney, the net free area under the cap shall be not less than four times the net free area of the outlet of the chimney flue it serves.

2113.10 Wall thickness.
Masonry chimney walls shall be constructed of concrete, solid masonry units or hollow masonry units grouted solid with not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal thickness.

2113.10.1 Masonry veneer chimneys.
Where masonry is used as veneer for a framed chimney, through flashing and weep holes shall be provided as required by Chapter 14.

2113.11 Flue lining (material).
Masonry chimneys shall be lined. The lining material shall be appropriate for the type of appliance connected, according to the terms of the appliance listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

2113.11.1 Residential-type appliances (general).
Flue lining systems shall comply with one of the following:

1. Clay flue lining complying with the requirements of ASTM C315.

2. *Listed* chimney lining systems complying with UL 1777.

3. Factory-built chimneys or chimney units *listed* for installation within masonry chimneys.

4. Other *approved* materials that will resist corrosion, erosion, softening or cracking from flue gases and condensate at temperatures up to 1,800°F (982°C).

2113.11.1.1 Flue linings for specific appliances.
Flue linings other than those covered in Section 2113.11.1 intended for use with specific appliances shall comply with Sections 2113.11.1.2 through 2113.11.1.4 and Sections 2113.11.2 and 2113.11.3.

2113.11.1.2 Gas appliances.
Flue lining systems for gas appliances shall be in accordance with the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

`

2113.11.1.3 Pellet fuel-burning appliances.
Flue lining and vent systems for use in masonry chimneys with pellet fuel-burning appliances shall be limited to flue lining systems complying with Section 2113.11.1 and pellet vents *listed* for installation within masonry chimneys (see Section 2113.11.1.5 for marking).

2113.11.1.4 Oil-fired appliances approved for use with L-vent.
Flue lining and vent systems for use in masonry chimneys with oil-fired appliances *approved* for use with Type L vent shall be limited to flue lining systems complying with Section 2113.11.1 and *listed* chimney liners complying with UL 641 (see Section 2113.11.1.5 for marking).

2113.11.1.5 Notice of usage.
When a flue is relined with a material not complying with Section 2113.11.1, the chimney shall be plainly and permanently identified by a *label* attached to a wall, ceiling or other conspicuous location adjacent to where the connector enters the chimney. The *label* shall include the following message or equivalent language: “This chimney is for use only with (type or category of appliance) that burns (type of fuel). Do not connect other types of appliances.”

2113.11.2 Concrete and masonry chimneys for medium-heat appliances.

2113.11.2.1 General.
Concrete and masonry chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall comply with Sections 2113.1 through 2113.5.

2113.11.2.2 Construction.
Chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall be constructed of solid masonry units or of concrete with walls not less than 8 inches (203 mm) thick, or with stone masonry not less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick.

2113.11.2.3 Lining.
Concrete and masonry chimneys shall be lined with an *approved* medium-duty refractory brick not less than $4^1/_2$ inches (114 mm) thick laid on the $4^1/_2$-inch bed (114 mm) in an *approved* medium-duty refractory mortar. The lining shall start 2 feet (610 mm) or more below the lowest chimney connector entrance. Chimneys terminating 25 feet (7620 mm) or less above a chimney connector entrance shall be lined to the top.

2113.11.2.4 Multiple passageway.
Concrete and masonry chimneys containing more than one passageway shall have the liners separated by a minimum 4-inch-thick (102 mm) concrete or solid masonry wall.

2113.11.2.5 Termination height.
Concrete and masonry chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall extend not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) higher than any portion of any building within 25 feet (7620 mm).

2113.11.2.6 Clearance.
A minimum clearance of 4 inches (102 mm) shall be provided between the exterior surfaces of a concrete or masonry chimney for medium-heat appliances and combustible material.

2113.11.3 Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances.

`

2113.11.3.1 General.
Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances shall comply with Sections 2113.1 through 2113.5.

2113.11.3.2 Construction.
Chimneys for high-heat appliances shall be constructed with double walls of solid masonry units or of concrete, each wall to be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) thick with a minimum airspace of 2 inches (51 mm) between the walls.

2113.11.3.3 Lining.
The inside of the interior wall shall be lined with an *approved* high-duty refractory brick, not less than $4^1/_2$ inches (114 mm) thick laid on the $4^1/_2$-inch bed (114 mm) in an *approved* high-duty refractory mortar. The lining shall start at the base of the chimney and extend continuously to the top.

2113.11.3.4 Termination height.
Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances shall extend not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) higher than any portion of any building within 50 feet (15 240 mm).

2113.11.3.5 Clearance.
Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances shall have *approved* clearance from buildings and structures to prevent overheating combustible materials, permit inspection and maintenance operations on the chimney and prevent danger of burns to persons.

2113.12 Clay flue lining (installation).
Clay flue liners shall be installed in accordance with ASTM C1283 and extend from a point not less than 8 inches (203 mm) below the lowest inlet or, in the case of fireplaces, from the top of the smoke chamber to a point above the enclosing walls. The lining shall be carried up vertically, with a maximum slope no greater than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from the vertical.

Clay flue liners shall be laid in medium-duty non-watersoluble refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199 with tight mortar joints left smooth on the inside and installed to maintain an airspace or insulation not to exceed the thickness of the flue liner separating the flue liners from the interior face of the chimney masonry walls. Flue lining shall be supported on all sides. Only enough mortar shall be placed to make the joint and hold the liners in position.

2113.13 Additional requirements.

2113.13.1 Listed materials.
Listed materials used as flue linings shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their listings and the manufacturer's instructions.

2113.13.2 Space around lining.
The space surrounding a chimney lining system or vent installed within a masonry chimney shall not be used to vent any other appliance.

Exception: This shall not prevent the installation of a separate flue lining in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

`

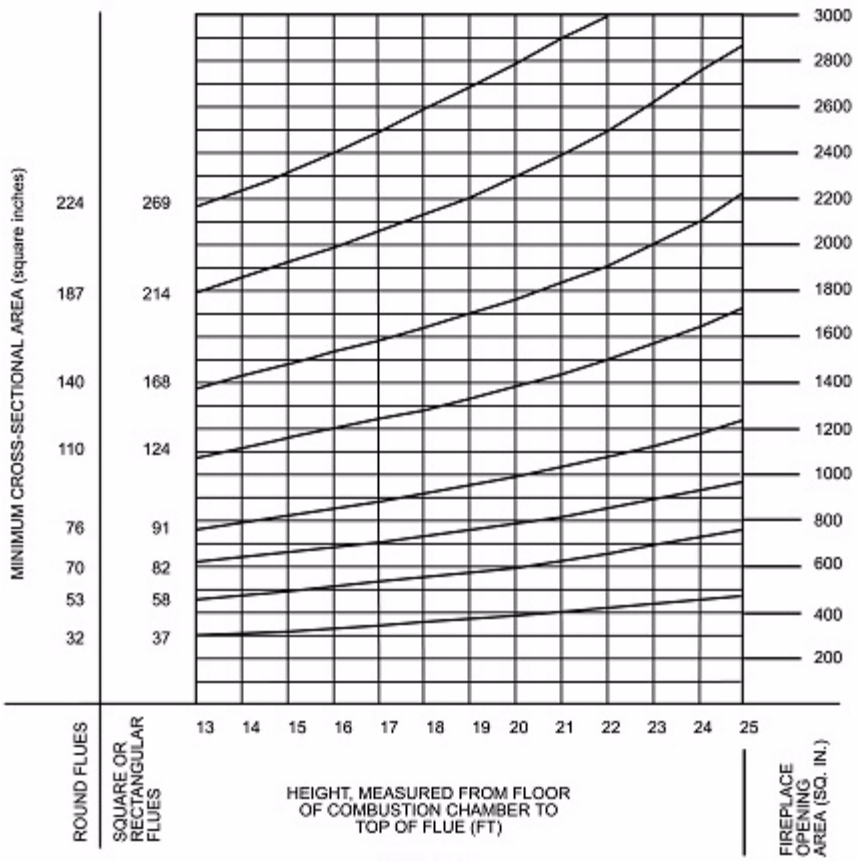
2113.14 Multiple flues.
When two or more flues are located in the same chimney, masonry wythes shall be built between adjacent flue linings. The masonry wythes shall be at least 4 inches (102 mm) thick and bonded into the walls of the chimney.

> **Exception:** When venting only one appliance, two flues are permitted to adjoin each other in the same chimney with only the flue lining separation between them. The joints of the adjacent flue linings shall be staggered not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

2113.15 Flue area (appliance).
Chimney flues shall not be smaller in area than the area of the connector from the appliance. Chimney flues connected to more than one appliance shall be not less than the area of the largest connector plus 50 percent of the areas of additional chimney connectors.

> **Exceptions:**
>
> 1. Chimney flues serving oil-fired appliances sized in accordance with NFPA 31.
>
> 2. Chimney flues serving gas-fired appliances sized in accordance with the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

2113.16 Flue area (masonry fireplace).
Flue sizing for chimneys serving fireplaces shall be in accordance with Section 2113.16.1 or 2113.16.2.



`

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645 mm^2.

FIGURE 2113.16
FLUE SIZES FOR MASONRY CHIMNEYS

TABLE 2113.16(1)
NET CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF ROUND FLUE SIZES[a]

FLUE SIZE, INSIDE DIAMETER (inches)	CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA (square inches)
6	28
7	38
8	50
10	78
$10\,^{3}/_{4}$	90
12	113
15	176
18	254

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2.

a. Flue sizes are based on ASTM C315.

TABLE 2113.16(2)
NET CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF SQUARE AND RECTANGULAR FLUE SIZES

FLUE SIZE, OUTSIDE NOMINAL DIMENSIONS (inches)	CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA (square inches)
4.5 × 8.5	23
4.5 × 13	34
8 × 8	42
8.5 × 8.5	49
8 × 12	67
8.5 × 13	76
12 × 12	102
8.5 × 18	101
13 ×13	127
12 × 16	131

`

13 × 18	173
16 × 16	181
16 × 20	222
18 × 18	233
20 × 20	298
20 × 24	335
24 × 24	431

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2.

2113.16.1 Minimum area.
Round chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than 1/12 of the fireplace opening. Square chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than 1/10 of the fireplace opening. Rectangular chimney flues with an aspect ratio less than 2 to 1 shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than 1/10 of the fireplace opening. Rectangular chimney flues with an aspect ratio of 2 to 1 or more shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than 1/8 of the fireplace opening.

2113.16.2 Determination of minimum area.
The minimum net cross-sectional area of the flue shall be determined in accordance with Figure 2113.16. A flue size providing not less than the equivalent net cross-sectional area shall be used. Cross-sectional areas of clay flue linings are as provided in Tables 2113.16(1) and 2113.16(2) or as provided by the manufacturer or as measured in the field. The height of the chimney shall be measured from the firebox floor to the top of the chimney flue.

2113.17 Inlet.
Inlets to masonry chimneys shall enter from the side. Inlets shall have a thimble of fireclay, rigid refractory material or metal that will prevent the connector from pulling out of the inlet or from extending beyond the wall of the liner.

2113.18 Masonry chimney cleanout openings.
Cleanout openings shall be provided within 6 inches (152 mm) of the base of each flue within every masonry chimney. The upper edge of the cleanout shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the lowest chimney inlet opening. The height of the opening shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm). The cleanout shall be provided with a noncombustible cover.

Exception: Chimney flues serving masonry fireplaces, where cleaning is possible through the fireplace opening.

2113.19 Chimney clearances.
Any portion of a masonry chimney located in the interior of the building or within the *exterior wall* of the building shall have a minimum airspace clearance to combustibles of 2 inches (51 mm). Chimneys located entirely outside the *exterior walls* of the building, including chimneys that pass through the soffit or cornice, shall have a minimum airspace clearance of 1 inch (25 mm). The airspace shall not be filled, except to provide fireblocking in accordance with Section 2113.20.

`

Exceptions:

1. Masonry chimneys equipped with a chimney lining system *listed* and *labeled* for use in chimneys in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 1777, and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, are permitted to have combustible material in contact with their exterior surfaces.

2. Where masonry chimneys are constructed as part of masonry or concrete walls, combustible materials shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete wall less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining.

3. Exposed combustible *trim* and the edges of sheathing materials, such as wood siding, are permitted to abut the masonry chimney sidewalls, in accordance with Figure 2113.19, provided such combustible *trim* or sheathing is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining. Combustible material and *trim* shall not overlap the corners of the chimney by more than 1 inch (25 mm).

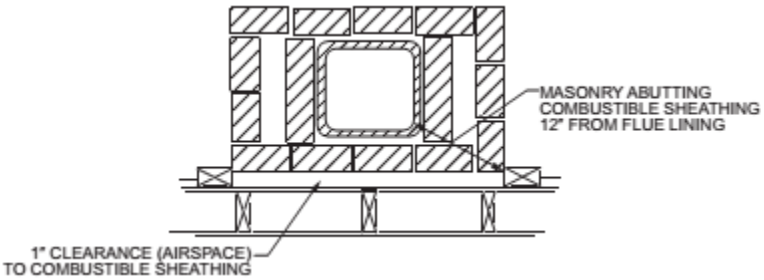


FIGURE 2113.19
ILLUSTRATION OF EXCEPTION THREE
CHIMNEY CLEARANCE PROVISION

2113.20 Chimney fireblocking.
All spaces between chimneys and floors and ceilings through which chimneys pass shall be fireblocked with noncombustible material securely fastened in place. The fireblocking of spaces between wood joists, beams or headers shall be self-supporting or be placed on strips of metal or metal lath laid across the spaces between combustible material and the chimney.

`

SECTION 2114
EMISSION STANDARDS

2114.1 Emission Standards for Factory-built Fireplaces. No new or used factory-built fireplace shall be installed in Washington State unless it is certified and labeled in accordance with procedures and criteria specified in ASTM E2558 for determining particulate matter emission from fires in low mass wood burning fireplaces.

To certify an entire fireplace model line, the internal assembly shall be tested to determine its particulate matter emission performance. Retesting and recertifying is required if the design and construction specifications of the fireplace model line internal assembly change. Testing for certification shall be performed by a Washington State Department of Ecology (DOE) approved and U. S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) accredited laboratory.

2114.2 Emission Standards for Certified Masonry and Concrete Fireplaces. Masonry and concrete fireplace model lines certified to Washington State Building Code Standard 312 prior to July 1, 2013, may retain certification provided the design and construction specifications of the fireplace model line internal assembly do not change.

`

CHAPTER 22
STEEL

User note: Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code

Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 2201
GENERAL

2201.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter govern the quality, design, fabrication and erection of steel construction.

SECTION 2202
DEFINITIONS

2202.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

STEEL CONSTRUCTION, COLD-FORMED.

STEEL JOIST.

STEEL ELEMENT, STRUCTURAL.

SECTION 2203
IDENTIFICATION AND PROTECTION OF STEEL FOR STRUCTURAL PURPOSES

2203.1 Identification.
Identification of *structural steel elements* shall be in accordance with AISC 360. Identification of cold-formed steel members shall be in accordance with AISI S100. Identification of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall also comply with the requirements contained in AISI S200 or AISI S220, as applicable. Other steel furnished for structural load-carrying purposes shall be properly identified for conformity to the ordered grade in accordance with the specified ASTM standard or other specification and the provisions of this chapter. Steel that is not readily identifiable as to grade from marking and test records shall be tested to determine conformity to such standards.

2203.2 Protection.
Painting of *structural steel elements* shall be in accordance with AISC 360. Painting of open-web steel joists and joist girders shall be in accordance with SJI CJ, SJI JG, SJI K and SJI LH/DLH. Individual structural members and assembled panels of cold-formed steel construction shall be protected against corrosion in accordance with the requirements contained in AISI

`

S100. Protection of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall be in accordance with AISI S200 or AISI S220, as applicable.

SECTION 2204
CONNECTIONS

2204.1 Welding.
The details of design, workmanship and technique for welding and qualification of welding personnel shall be in accordance with the specifications listed in Sections 2205, 2206, 2207, 2208, 2210 and 2211. For *special inspection* of welding, see Section 1705.2.

2204.2 Bolting.
The design, installation and inspection of bolts shall be in accordance with the requirements of Sections 2205, 2206, 2207, 2210 and 2211. For *special inspection* of the installation of high-strength bolts, see Section 1705.2.

2204.3 Anchor rods.
Anchor rods shall be set in accordance with the *approved construction documents*. The protrusion of the threaded ends through the connected material shall fully engage the threads of the nuts but shall not be greater than the length of the threads on the bolts.

SECTION 2205
STRUCTURAL STEEL

2205.1 General.
The design, fabrication and erection of *structural steel elements* in buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with AISC 360.

2205.2 Seismic design.
Where required, the seismic design, fabrication and erection of buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with Section 2205.2.1 or 2205.2.2, as applicable.

2205.2.1 Structural steel seismic force-resisting systems.
The design, detailing, fabrication and erection of structural steel seismic force-resisting systems shall be in accordance with the provisions of Section 2205.2.1.1 or 2205.2.1.2, as applicable.

2205.2.1.1 Seismic Design Category B or C.
Structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B or C shall be of any construction permitted in Section 2205. Where a response modification coefficient, *R*, in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, is used for the design of structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B or C, the structures shall be designed and detailed in accordance with the requirements of AISC 341.

Exception: The response modification coefficient, *R*, designated for “Steel systems not specifically detailed for seismic resistance, excluding cantilever column systems” in ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, shall be permitted for systems designed and detailed in accordance with AISC 360, and need not be designed and detailed in accordance with AISC 341.

2205.2.1.2 Seismic Design Category D, E or F.
Structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F shall be designed and detailed in accordance with AISC 341, except as permitted in ASCE 7, Table 15.4-1.

`

2205.2.2 Structural steel elements.
The design, detailing, fabrication and erection of *structural steel elements* in seismic force-resisting systems other than those covered in Section 2205.2.1, including struts, collectors, chords and foundation elements, shall be in accordance with AISC 341 where either of the following applies:

1. The structure is assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, E or F, except as permitted in ASCE 7, Table 15.4-1.

2. A response modification coefficient, *R*, greater than 3 in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, is used for the design of the structure assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B or C.

SECTION 2206
COMPOSITE STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE STRUCTURES

2206.1 General.
Systems of *structural steel elements* acting compositely with reinforced concrete shall be designed in accordance with AISC 360 and ACI 318, excluding ACI 318 Chapter 14.

2206.2 Seismic design.
Where required, the seismic design, fabrication and erection of composite steel and concrete systems shall be in accordance with Section 2206.2.1.

2206.2.1 Seismic requirements for composite structural steel and concrete construction.
Where a response modification coefficient, *R*, in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, is used for the design of systems of structural steel acting compositely with reinforced concrete, the structures shall be designed and detailed in accordance with the requirements of AISC 341.

SECTION 2207
STEEL JOISTS

2207.1 General.
The design, manufacture and use of open-web steel joists and joist girders shall be in accordance with one of the following Steel Joist Institute (SJI) specifications:

1. SJI CJ

2. SJI K

3. SJI LH/DLH

4. SJI JG

2207.1.1 Seismic design.
Where required, the seismic design of buildings shall be in accordance with the additional provisions of Section 2205.2 or 2211.6.

`

2207.2 Design.
The *registered design professional* shall indicate on the *construction documents* the steel joist and steel joist girder designations from the specifications listed in Section 2207.1; and shall indicate the requirements for joist and joist girder design, layout, end supports, anchorage, bridging design that differs from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1, bridging termination connections and bearing connection design to resist uplift and lateral loads. These documents shall indicate special requirements as follows:

1. Special loads including:

    1.1. Concentrated loads.

    1.2. Non-uniform loads.

    1.3. Net uplift loads.

    1.4. Axial loads.

    1.5. End moments.

    1.6. Connection forces.

2. Special considerations including:

    2.1. Profiles for joist and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.

    2.2. Oversized or other nonstandard web openings.

    2.3. Extended ends.

3. Live and total load deflection criteria for joists and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.

2207.3 Calculations.
The steel joist and joist girder manufacturer shall design the steel joists and steel joist girders in accordance with the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1 to support the load requirements of Section 2207.2. The *registered design professional* shall be permitted to require submission of the steel joist and joist girder calculations as prepared by a *registered design professional* responsible for the product design. Where requested by the *registered design professional*, the steel joist manufacturer shall submit design calculations with a cover letter bearing the seal and signature of the joist manufacturer's *registered design professional*. In addition to the design calculations submitted under seal and signature, the following shall be included:

1. Bridging design that differs from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1, such as cantilevered conditions and net uplift.

2. Connection design for:

    2.1. Connections that differ from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1, such as flush-framed or framed connections.

`

2.2. Field splices.

2.3. Joist headers.

2207.4 Steel joist drawings.
Steel joist placement plans shall be provided to show the steel joist products as specified on the *approved construction documents* and are to be utilized for field installation in accordance with specific project requirements as stated in Section 2207.2. Steel joist placement plans shall include, at a minimum, the following:

1. Listing of applicable loads as stated in Section 2207.2 and used in the design of the steel joists and joist girders as specified in the *approved construction documents*.

2. Profiles for joist and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.

3. Connection requirements for:

   3.1. Joist supports.

   3.2. Joist girder supports.

   3.3. Field splices.

   3.4. Bridging attachments.

4. Live and total load deflection criteria for joists and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.

5. Size, location and connections for bridging.

6. Joist headers.

Steel joist placement plans do not require the seal and signature of the joist manufacturer's *registered design professional*.

2207.5 Certification.
At completion of manufacture, the steel joist manufacturer shall submit a *certificate of compliance* to the owner or the owner's authorized agent for submittal to the *building official* as specified in Section 1704.5 stating that work was performed in accordance with *approved construction documents* and with SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.

SECTION 2208
STEEL CABLE STRUCTURES

2208.1 General.
The design, fabrication and erection including related connections, and protective coatings of steel cables for buildings shall be in accordance with ASCE 19.

2208.2 Seismic requirements for steel cable.
The design strength of steel cables shall be determined by the provisions of ASCE 19 except as modified by these provisions.

`

1. A load factor of 1.1 shall be applied to the prestress force included in T_3 and T_4 as defined in Section 3.12.

2. In Section 3.2.1, Item (c) shall be replaced with "1.5 T_3" and Item (d) shall be replaced with "1.5 T_4."

SECTION 2209
STEEL STORAGE RACKS

2209.1 Storage racks.
The design, testing and utilization of *storage racks* made of cold-formed or hot-rolled steel structural members shall be in accordance with RMI/ANSI MH 16.1. Where required by ASCE 7, the seismic design of *storage racks* shall be in accordance with Section 15.5.3 of ASCE 7.

SECTION 2210
COLD-FORMED STEEL

2210.1 General.
The design of cold-formed carbon and low-alloy steel structural members shall be in accordance with AISI S100. The design of cold-formed stainless-steel structural members shall be in accordance with ASCE 8. Cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall also comply with Section 2211. Where required, the seismic design of cold-formed steel structures shall be in accordance with the additional provisions of Section 2210.2.

2210.1.1 Steel decks.
The design and construction of cold-formed steel decks shall be in accordance with this section.

2210.1.1.1 Noncomposite steel floor decks.
Noncomposite steel floor decks shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with ANSI/SDI-NC1.0.

2210.1.1.2 Steel roof deck.
Steel roof decks shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with ANSI/SDI-RD1.0.

2210.1.1.3 Composite slabs on steel decks.
Composite slabs of concrete and steel deck shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with SDI-C.

2210.2 Seismic requirements for cold-formed steel structures.
Where a response modification coefficient, *R*, in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, is used for the design of cold-formed steel structures, the structures shall be designed and detailed in accordance with the requirements of AISI S100, ASCE 8, or, for cold-formed steel special-bolted moment frames, AISI S110.

SECTION 2211
COLD-FORMED STEEL
LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION

`

2211.1 General.
The design and installation of structural and nonstructural members utilized in cold-formed steel light-frame construction where the specified minimum base steel thickness is not greater than 0.1180 inches (2.997 mm) shall be in accordance with AISI S200 and Sections 2211.2 through 2211.7, or AISI S220, as applicable.

2211.2 Header design.
Headers, including box and back-to-back headers, and double and single L-headers shall be designed in accordance with AISI S212 or AISI S100.

2211.3 Truss design.
Cold-formed steel trusses shall be designed in accordance with AISI S214, Sections 2211.3.1 through 2211.3.4 and accepted engineering practice.

2211.3.1 Truss design drawings.
The truss design drawings shall conform to the requirements of Section B2.3 of AISI S214 and shall be provided with the shipment of trusses delivered to the job site. The truss design drawings shall include the details of permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing in accordance with Section B6(a) or B 6(c) of AISI S214 where these methods are utilized to provide restraint/bracing.

2211.3.2 Deferred submittals.
AISI S214 Section B4.2 shall be deleted.

2211.3.3 Trusses spanning 60 feet or greater.
The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall contract with a *registered design professional* for the design of the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing for trusses with clear spans 60 feet (18 288 mm) or greater. *Special inspection* of trusses over 60 feet (18 288 mm) in length shall be in accordance with Section 1705.2.

2211.3.4 Truss quality assurance.
Trusses not part of a manufacturing process that provides requirements for quality control done under the supervision of a third-party quality control agency, shall be manufactured in compliance with Sections 1704.2.5 and 1705.2, as applicable.

2211.4 Structural wall stud design.
Structural wall studs shall be designed in accordance with either AISI S211 or AISI S100.

2211.5 Floor and roof system design.
Framing for floor and roof systems in buildings shall be designed in accordance with either AISI S210 or AISI S100.

2211.6 Lateral design.
Light-frame shear walls, diagonal strap bracing that is part of a structural wall and diaphragms used to resist wind, seismic and other in-plane lateral loads shall be designed in accordance with AISI S213.

2211.7 Prescriptive framing.
Detached one- and two-family *dwellings* and *townhouses*, less than or equal to three *stories above grade plane*, shall be permitted to be constructed in accordance with AISI S230 subject to the limitations therein.

`

`

CHAPTER 23
WOOD

User note: Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 2301
GENERAL

2301.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and quality of wood members and their fasteners.

2301.2 General design requirements.
The design of structural elements or systems, constructed partially or wholly of wood or wood-based products, shall be in accordance with one of the following methods:

1. *Allowable stress design* in accordance with Sections 2304, 2305 and 2306.

2. *Load and resistance factor design* in accordance with Sections 2304, 2305 and 2307.

3. *Conventional light-frame construction* in accordance with Sections 2304 and 2308.

4. AWC WFCM in accordance with Section 2309.

5. The design and construction of log structures in accordance with the provisions of ICC 400.

2301.3 Nominal sizes.
For the purposes of this chapter, where dimensions of lumber are specified, they shall be deemed to be nominal dimensions unless specifically designated as actual dimensions (see Section 2304.2).

SECTION 2302
DEFINITIONS

2302.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

ACCREDITATION BODY.

BRACED WALL LINE.

BRACED WALL PANEL.

COLLECTOR.

CONVENTIONAL LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION.

`

CRIPPLE WALL.

CROSS-LAMINATED TIMBER.

DIAPHRAGM, UNBLOCKED.

DRAG STRUT.

ENGINEERED WOOD RIM BOARD.

FIBERBOARD.

GABLE.

GRADE (LUMBER).

HARDBOARD.

NAILING, BOUNDARY.

NAILING, EDGE.

NAILING, FIELD.

NOMINAL SIZE (LUMBER).

PARTICLEBOARD.

PERFORMANCE CATEGORY.

PREFABRICATED WOOD I-JOIST.

SHEAR WALL.

- **Shear wall, perforated.**
- **Shear wall segment, perforated.**

STRUCTURAL COMPOSITE LUMBER.

- **Laminated strand lumber (LSL).**
- **Laminated veneer lumber (LVL).**
- **Oriented strand lumber (OSL).**
- **Parallel strand lumber (PSL).**

STRUCTURAL GLUED-LAMINATED TIMBER.

TIE-DOWN (HOLD-DOWN).

TREATED WOOD.

`

Fire-retardant-treated wood.

Preservative-treated wood.

WOOD SHEAR PANEL.

WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL.

Composite panels.

Oriented strand board (OSB).

Plywood.

SECTION 2303
MINIMUM STANDARDS AND QUALITY

2303.1 General.
Structural sawn lumber; end-jointed lumber; prefabricated wood I-joists; structural glued-laminated timber; wood structural panels; fiberboard sheathing (when used structurally); hardboard siding (when used structurally); particleboard; *preservative-treated wood*; structural log members; structural composite lumber; round timber poles and piles; *fire-retardant-treated wood*; hardwood plywood; wood trusses; joist hangers; nails; and staples shall conform to the applicable provisions of this section.

2303.1.1 Sawn lumber.
Sawn lumber used for load-supporting purposes, including end-jointed or edge-glued lumber, machine stress-rated or machine-evaluated lumber, shall be identified by the grade *mark* of a lumber grading or inspection agency that has been approved by an accreditation body that complies with DOC PS 20 or equivalent. Grading practices and identification shall comply with rules published by an agency approved in accordance with the procedures of DOC PS 20 or equivalent procedures.

2303.1.1.1 Certificate of inspection.
In lieu of a grade *mark* on the material, a certificate of inspection as to species and grade issued by a lumber grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section is permitted to be accepted for precut, remanufactured or rough-sawn lumber and for sizes larger than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal thickness.

2303.1.1.2 End-jointed lumber.
Approved end-jointed lumber is permitted to be used interchangeably with solid-sawn members of the same species and grade. End-jointed lumber used in an assembly required to have a fire-resistance rating shall have the designation “Heat Resistant Adhesive” or “HRA” included in its grade mark.

2303.1.2 Prefabricated wood I-joists.
Structural capacities and design provisions for prefabricated wood I-joists shall be established and monitored in accordance with ASTM D5055.

2303.1.3 Structural glued-laminated timber.
Glued-laminated timbers shall be manufactured and identified as required in ANSI/AITC A 190.1 and ASTM D3737.

`

2303.1.4 Structural glued cross-laminated timber.
Cross-laminated timbers shall be manufactured and identified in accordance with ANSI/APA PRG 320.

2303.1.5 Wood structural panels.
Wood structural panels, when used structurally (including those used for siding, roof and wall sheathing, subflooring, diaphragms and built-up members), shall conform to the requirements for their type in DOC PS 1, DOC PS 2 or ANSI/APA PRP 210. Each panel or member shall be identified for grade, bond classification, and Performance Category by the trademarks of an *approved* testing and grading agency. The Performance Category value shall be used as the “nominal panel thickness” or “panel thickness” whenever referenced in this code. Wood structural panel components shall be designed and fabricated in accordance with the applicable standards listed in Section 2306.1 and identified by the trademarks of an *approved* testing and inspection agency indicating conformance to the applicable standard. In addition, wood structural panels when permanently exposed in outdoor applications shall be of Exterior type, except that wood structural panel roof sheathing exposed to the outdoors on the underside is permitted to be Exposure 1 type.

2303.1.6 Fiberboard.
Fiberboard for its various uses shall conform to ASTM C208. Fiberboard sheathing, when used structurally, shall be identified by an *approved* agency as conforming to ASTM C208.

2303.1.6.1 Jointing.
To ensure tight-fitting assemblies, edges shall be manufactured with square, shiplapped, beveled, tongue-and-groove or U-shaped joints.

2303.1.6.2 Roof insulation.
Where used as roof insulation in all types of construction, fiberboard shall be protected with an *approved* roof covering.

2303.1.6.3 Wall insulation.
Where installed and fireblocked to comply with Chapter 7, fiberboards are permitted as wall insulation in all types of construction. In fire walls and fire barriers, unless treated to comply with Section 803.1 for Class A materials, the boards shall be cemented directly to the concrete, masonry or other noncombustible base and shall be protected with an *approved* noncombustible veneer anchored to the base without intervening airspaces.

2303.1.6.3.1 Protection.
Fiberboard wall insulation applied on the exterior of foundation walls shall be protected below ground level with a bituminous coating.

2303.1.7 Hardboard.
Hardboard siding used structurally shall be identified by an *approved agency* conforming to CPA/ANSI A135.6. Hardboard underlayment shall meet the strength requirements of 7/32-inch (5.6 mm) or 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) service class hardboard planed or sanded on one side to a uniform thickness of not less than 0.200 inch (5.1 mm). Prefinished hardboard paneling shall meet the requirements of CPA/ANSI A135.5. Other basic hardboard products shall meet the requirements of CPA/ANSI A135.4. Hardboard products shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

2303.1.8 Particleboard.
Particleboard shall conform to ANSI A208.1. Particleboard shall be identified by the grade *mark* or certificate of inspection issued by an *approved agency*. Particleboard shall not be

`

utilized for applications other than indicated in this section unless the particleboard complies with the provisions of Section 2306.3.

2303.1.8.1 Floor underlayment.
Particleboard floor underlayment shall conform to Type PBU of ANSI A208.1. Type PBU underlayment shall not be less than 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) thick and shall be installed in accordance with the instructions of the Composite Panel Association.

2303.1.9 Preservative-treated wood.
Lumber, timber, plywood, piles and poles supporting permanent structures required by Section 2304.12 to be preservative treated shall conform to the requirements of the applicable AWPA Standard U1 and M4 for the species, product, preservative and end use. Preservatives shall be listed in Section 4 of AWPA U1. Lumber and plywood used in wood foundation systems shall conform to Chapter 18.

2303.1.9.1 Identification.
Wood required by Section 2304.12 to be preservative treated shall bear the quality *mark* of an inspection agency that maintains continuing supervision, testing and inspection over the quality of the *preservative-treated wood*. Inspection agencies for *preservative-treated wood* shall be *listed* by an accreditation body that complies with the requirements of the American Lumber Standards Treated Wood Program, or equivalent. The quality *mark* shall be on a stamp or *label* affixed to the *preservative-treated wood*, and shall include the following information:

1. Identification of treating manufacturer.
2. Type of preservative used.
3. Minimum preservative retention (pcf).
4. End use for which the product is treated.
5. AWPA standard to which the product was treated.
6. Identity of the accredited inspection agency.

2303.1.9.2 Moisture content.
Where *preservative-treated wood* is used in enclosed locations where drying in service cannot readily occur, such wood shall be at a moisture content of 19 percent or less before being covered with insulation, interior wall finish, floor covering or other materials.

2303.1.10 Structural composite lumber.
Structural capacities for structural composite lumber shall be established and monitored in accordance with ASTM D5456.

2303.1.11 Structural log members.
Stress grading of structural log members of nonrectangular shape, as typically used in log buildings, shall be in accordance with ASTM D3957. Such structural log members shall be identified by the grade *mark* of an *approved* lumber grading or inspection agency. In lieu of a grade *mark* on the material, a certificate of inspection as to species and grade issued by a lumber grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section shall be permitted.

`

2303.1.12 Round timber poles and piles.
Round timber poles and piles shall comply with ASTM D3200 and ASTM D25, respectively.

2303.1.13 Engineered wood rim board.
Engineered wood rim boards shall conform to ANSI/APA PRR 410 or shall be evaluated in accordance with ASTM D7672. Structural capacities shall be in accordance with ANSI/ APA PRR 410 or established in accordance with ASTM D7672. Rim boards conforming to ANSI/APA PRR 410 shall be marked in accordance with that standard.

2303.2 Fire-retardant-treated wood.
Fire-retardant-treated wood is any wood product which, when impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process or other means during manufacture, shall have, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, a *listed* flame spread index of 25 or less and show no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is continued for an additional 20-minute period. Additionally, the flame front shall not progress more than $10^{1}/_{2}$ feet (3200 mm) beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.

2303.2.1 Pressure process.
For wood products impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process, the process shall be performed in closed vessels under pressures not less than 50 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (345 kPa).

2303.2.2 Other means during manufacture.
For wood products produced by other means during manufacture, the treatment shall be an integral part of the manufacturing process of the wood product. The treatment shall provide permanent protection to all surfaces of the wood product.

2303.2.3 Testing.
For wood products produced by other means during manufacture, other than a pressure process, all sides of the wood product shall be tested in accordance with and produce the results required in Section 2303.2. Wood structural panels shall be permitted to test only the front and back faces.

2303.2.4 Labeling.
Fire-retardant-treated lumber and wood structural panels shall be labeled. The *label* shall contain the following items:

1. The identification *mark* of an *approved agency* in accordance with Section 1703.5.
2. Identification of the treating manufacturer.
3. The name of the fire-retardant treatment.
4. The species of wood treated.
5. Flame spread and smoke-developed index.
6. Method of drying after treatment.
7. Conformance with appropriate standards in accordance with Sections 2303.2.5 through 2303.2.8.

`

8. For *fire-retardant-treated wood* exposed to weather, damp or wet locations, include the words “No increase in the *listed* classification when subjected to the Standard Rain Test” (ASTM D2898).

2303.2.5 Strength adjustments.
Design values for untreated lumber and wood structural panels, as specified in Section 2303.1, shall be adjusted for *fire-retardant-treated wood*. Adjustments to design values shall be based on an *approved* method of investigation that takes into consideration the effects of the anticipated temperature and humidity to which the *fire-retardant-treated wood* will be subjected, the type of treatment and redrying procedures.

2303.2.5.1 Wood structural panels.
The effect of treatment and the method of redrying after treatment, and exposure to high temperatures and high humidities on the flexure properties of fire-retardant-treated softwood plywood shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D5516. The test data developed by ASTM D5516 shall be used to develop adjustment factors, maximum loads and spans, or both, for untreated plywood design values in accordance with ASTM D6305. Each manufacturer shall publish the allowable maximum loads and spans for service as floor and roof sheathing for its treatment.

2303.2.5.2 Lumber.
For each species of wood that is treated, the effects of the treatment, the method of redrying after treatment and exposure to high temperatures and high humidities on the allowable design properties of fire-retardant-treated lumber shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D5664. The test data developed by ASTM D5664 shall be used to develop modification factors for use at or near room temperature and at elevated temperatures and humidity in accordance with ASTM D6841. Each manufacturer shall publish the modification factors for service at temperatures of not less than 80°F (27°C) and for roof framing. The roof framing modification factors shall take into consideration the climatological location.

2303.2.6 Exposure to weather, damp or wet locations.
Where *fire-retardant-treated wood* is exposed to weather, or damp or wet locations, it shall be identified as “Exterior” to indicate there is no increase in the *listed* flame spread index as defined in Section 2303.2 when subjected to ASTM D2898.

2303.2.7 Interior applications.
Interior *fire-retardant-treated wood* shall have moisture content of not over 28 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D3201 procedures at 92-percent relative humidity. Interior *fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be tested in accordance with Section 2303.2.5.1 or 2303.2.5.2. Interior *fire-retardant-treated wood* designated as Type A shall be tested in accordance with the provisions of this section.

2303.2.8 Moisture content.
Fire-retardant-treated wood shall be dried to a moisture content of 19 percent or less for lumber and 15 percent or less for wood structural panels before use. For wood kiln-dried after treatment (KDAT), the kiln temperatures shall not exceed those used in kiln drying the lumber and plywood submitted for the tests described in Section 2303.2.5.1 for plywood and 2303.2.5.2 for lumber.

2303.2.9 Type I and II construction applications.
See Section 603.1 for limitations on the use of *fire-retardant-treated wood* in buildings of Type I or II construction.

`

2303.3 Hardwood and plywood.
Hardwood and decorative plywood shall be manufactured and identified as required in HPVA HP-1.

2303.4 Trusses.
Wood trusses shall comply with Sections 2303.4.1 through 2303.4.7.

2303.4.1 Design.
Wood trusses shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of this code and accepted engineering practice. Members are permitted to be joined by nails, glue, bolts, timber connectors, metal connector plates or other *approved* framing devices.

2303.4.1.1 Truss design drawings.
The written, graphic and pictorial depiction of each individual truss shall be provided to the *building official* for approval prior to installation. Truss design drawings shall also be provided with the shipment of trusses delivered to the job site. Truss design drawings shall include, at a minimum, the information specified below:

1. Slope or depth, span and spacing;
2. Location of all joints and support locations;
3. Number of plies if greater than one;
4. Required bearing widths;
5. Design loads as applicable, including;
   - 5.1. Top chord live load;
   - 5.2. Top chord dead load;
   - 5.3. Bottom chord live load;
   - 5.4. Bottom chord dead load;
   - 5.5. Additional loads and locations; and
   - 5.6. Environmental design criteria and loads (wind, rain, snow, seismic, etc.).
6. Other lateral loads, including drag strut loads;
7. Adjustments to wood member and metal connector plate design value for conditions of use;
8. Maximum reaction force and direction, including maximum uplift reaction forces where applicable;
9. Metal-connector-plate type, size and thickness or gage, and the dimensioned location of each metal connector plate except where symmetrically located relative to the joint interface;

`

10. Size, species and grade for each wood member;

11. Truss-to-truss connections and truss field assembly requirements;

12. Calculated span-to-deflection ratio and maximum vertical and horizontal deflection for live and total load as applicable;

13. Maximum axial tension and compression forces in the truss members;

14. Required permanent individual truss member restraint location and the method and details of restraint/bracing to be used in accordance with Section 2303.4.1.2.

2303.4.1.2 Permanent individual truss member restraint.
Where permanent restraint of truss members is required on the truss design drawings, it shall be accomplished by one of the following methods:

1. Permanent individual truss member restraint/ bracing shall be installed using standard industry lateral restraint/bracing details in accordance with generally accepted engineering practice. Locations for lateral restraint shall be identified on the truss design drawing.

2. The trusses shall be designed so that the buckling of any individual truss member is resisted internally by the individual truss through suitable means (i.e., buckling reinforcement by T-reinforcement or L-reinforcement, proprietary reinforcement, etc.). The buckling reinforcement of individual members of the trusses shall be installed as shown on the truss design drawing or on supplemental truss member buckling reinforcement details provided by the truss designer.

3. A project-specific permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing design shall be permitted to be specified by any *registered design professional*.

2303.4.1.3 Trusses spanning 60 feet or greater.
The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall contract with any qualified *registered design professional* for the design of the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing for all trusses with clear spans 60 feet (18 288 mm) or greater.

2303.4.1.4 Truss designer.
The individual or organization responsible for the design of trusses.

2303.4.1.4.1 Truss design drawings.
Where required by the *registered design professional*, the *building official* or the statutes of the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed, each individual truss design drawing shall bear the seal and signature of the truss designer.

Exceptions:

1. Where a cover sheet and truss index sheet are combined into a single sheet and attached to the set of truss design drawings, the single cover/truss index sheet is the only document required to be signed and sealed by the truss designer.

`

2. When a cover sheet and a truss index sheet are separately provided and attached to the set of truss design drawings, the cover sheet and the truss index sheet are the only documents required to be signed and sealed by the truss designer.

2303.4.2 Truss placement diagram.
The truss manufacturer shall provide a truss placement diagram that identifies the proposed location for each individually designated truss and references the corresponding truss design drawing. The truss placement diagram shall be provided as part of the truss submittal package, and with the shipment of trusses delivered to the job site. Truss placement diagrams that serve only as a guide for installation and do not deviate from the *permit* submittal drawings shall not be required to bear the seal or signature of the truss designer.

2303.4.3 Truss submittal package.
The truss submittal package provided by the truss manufacturer shall consist of each individual truss design drawing, the truss placement diagram, the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing method and details and any other structural details germane to the trusses; and, as applicable, the cover/truss index sheet.

2303.4.4 Anchorage.
The design for the transfer of loads and anchorage of each truss to the supporting structure is the responsibility of the *registered design professional*.

2303.4.5 Alterations to trusses.
Truss members and components shall not be cut, notched, drilled, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without written concurrence and approval of a *registered design professional*. Alterations resulting in the addition of loads to any member (e.g., HVAC equipment, piping, additional roofing or insulation, etc.) shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting such additional loading.

2303.4.6 TPI 1 specifications.
In addition to Sections 2303.4.1 through 2303.4.5, the design, manufacture and quality assurance of metal-plate-connected wood trusses shall be in accordance with TPI 1. Job-site inspections shall be in compliance with Section 110.4, as applicable.

2303.4.7 Truss quality assurance.
Trusses not part of a manufacturing process in accordance with either Section 2303.4.6 or a referenced standard, which provides requirements for quality control done under the supervision of a third-party quality control agency, shall be manufactured in compliance with Sections 1704.2.5 and 1705.5, as applicable.

2303.5 Test standard for joist hangers.
Joist hangers shall be in accordance with ASTM D7147.

2303.6 Nails and staples.
Nails and staples shall conform to requirements of ASTM F1667. Nails used for framing and sheathing connections shall have minimum average bending yield strengths as follows: 80 kips per square inch (ksi) (551 MPa) for shank diameters larger than 0.177 inch (4.50 mm) but not larger than 0.254 inch (6.45 mm), 90 ksi (620 MPa) for shank diameters larger than 0.142 inch (3.61 mm) but not larger than 0.177 inch (4.50 mm) and 100 ksi (689 MPa) for shank diameters of at least 0.099 inch (2.51 mm) but not larger than 0.142 inch (3.61 mm).

`

2303.7 Shrinkage.
Consideration shall be given in design to the possible effect of cross-grain dimensional changes considered vertically which may occur in lumber fabricated in a green condition.

SECTION 2304
GENERAL CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

2304.1 General.
The provisions of this section apply to design methods specified in Section 2301.2.

2304.2 Size of structural members.
Computations to determine the required sizes of members shall be based on the net dimensions (actual sizes) and not nominal sizes.

2304.3 Wall framing.
The framing of exterior and interior walls shall be in accordance with the provisions specified in Section 2308 unless a specific design is furnished.

2304.3.1 Bottom plates.
Studs shall have full bearing on a 2-inch-thick (actual 1 1/2-inch, 38 mm) or larger plate or sill having a width at least equal to the width of the studs.

2304.3.2 Framing over openings.
Headers, double joists, trusses or other *approved* assemblies that are of adequate size to transfer loads to the vertical members shall be provided over window and door openings in load-bearing walls and partitions.

2304.3.3 Shrinkage.
Wood walls and bearing partitions shall not support more than two floors and a roof unless an analysis satisfactory to the *building official* shows that shrinkage of the wood framing will not have adverse effects on the structure or any plumbing, electrical or mechanical systems or other equipment installed therein due to excessive shrinkage or differential movements caused by shrinkage. The analysis shall also show that the roof drainage system and the foregoing systems or equipment will not be adversely affected or, as an alternate, such systems shall be designed to accommodate the differential shrinkage or movements.

2304.4 Floor and roof framing.
The framing of wood-joisted floors and wood-framed roofs shall be in accordance with the provisions specified in Section 2308 unless a specific design is furnished.

2304.5 Framing around flues and chimneys.
Combustible framing shall be a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm), but shall not be less than the distance specified in Sections 2111 and 2113 and the *International Mechanical Code*, from flues, chimneys and fireplaces, and 6 inches (152 mm) away from flue openings.

2304.6 Exterior wall sheathing.
Wall sheathing on the outside of exterior walls, including gables, and the connection of the sheathing to framing shall be designed in accordance with the general provisions of this code and shall be capable of resisting wind pressures in accordance with Section 1609.

2304.6.1 Wood structural panel sheathing.
Where wood structural panel sheathing is used as the exposed finish on the outside of

`

exterior walls, it shall have an exterior exposure durability classification. Where wood structural panel sheathing is used elsewhere, but not as the exposed finish, it shall be of a type manufactured with exterior glue (Exposure 1 or Exterior). Wood structural panel sheathing, connections and framing spacing shall be in accordance with Table 2304.6.1 for the applicable wind speed and exposure category where used in enclosed buildings with a mean roof height not greater than 30 feet (9144 mm) and a topographic factor (K_{zt}) of 1.0.

TABLE 2304.6.1
MAXIMUM NOMINAL DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{asd} PERMITTED FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL WALL SHEATHING USED TO RESIST WIND PRESSURES[a, b, c]

MINIMUM NAIL		MINIMUM WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SPAN RATING	MINIMUM NOMINAL PANEL THICKNESS (inches)	MAXIMUM WALL STUD SPACING (inches)	PANEL NAIL SPACING		MAXIMUM NOMINAL DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{asd}[d] (MPH)		
Size	Penetration (inches)				Edges (inches o.c.)	Field (inches o.c.)	Wind exposure category		
							B	C	D
6d common (2.0" × 0.113")	1.5	24/0	3/8	16	6	12	110	90	85
		24/16	7/16	16	6	12	110	100	90
						6	150	125	110
8d common (2.5" × 0.131")	1.75	24/16	7/16	16	6	12	130	110	105
						6	150	125	110
				24	6	12	110	90	85
						6	110	90	85

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Panel strength axis shall be parallel or perpendicular to supports. Three-ply plywood sheathing with studs spaced more than 16 inches on center shall be applied with panel strength axis perpendicular to supports.
b. The table is based on wind pressures acting toward and away from building surfaces in accordance with Section 30.7 of ASCE 7. Lateral requirements shall be in accordance with Section 2305 or 2308.
c. Wood structural panels with span ratings of wall-16 or wall-24 shall be permitted as an alternative to panels with a 24/0 span rating. Plywood siding rated 16 on center or 24 on center shall be permitted as an alternative to panels with a 24/16 span rating. Wall-16 and plywood siding 16 on center shall be used with studs spaced a maximum of 16 inches on center.
d. V_{asd} shall be determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1.

2304.7 Interior paneling.
Softwood wood structural panels used for interior paneling shall conform to the provisions of Chapter 8 and shall be installed in accordance with Table 2304.10.1. Panels shall comply with DOC PS 1, DOC PS 2 or ANSI/APA PRP 210. Prefinished hardboard paneling shall meet the requirements of CPA/ANSI A135.5. Hardwood plywood shall conform to HPVA HP-1.

2304.8 Floor and roof sheathing.
Structural floor sheathing and structural roof sheathing shall comply with Sections 2304.8.1 and 2304.8.2, respectively.

`

TABLE 2304.8(1)
ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR LUMBER FLOOR AND ROOF SHEATHING[a, b]

SPAN (inches)	MINIMUM NET THICKNESS (inches) OF LUMBER PLACED			
	Perpendicular to supports		Diagonally to supports	
	Surfaced dry[c]	Surfaced unseasoned	Surfaced dry[c]	Surfaced unseasoned
Floors				
24	3/4	25/32	3/4	25/32
16	5/8	11/16	5/8	11/16
Roofs				
24	5/8	11/16	3/4	25/32

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Installation details shall conform to Sections 2304.8.1 and 2304.8.2 for floor and roof sheathing, respectively.
b. Floor or roof sheathing complying with this table shall be deemed to meet the design criteria of Section 2304.8.
c. Maximum 19-percent moisture content.

TABLE 2304.8(2)
SHEATHING LUMBER, MINIMUM GRADE REQUIREMENTS: BOARD GRADE

SOLID FLOOR OR ROOF SHEATHING	SPACED ROOF SHEATHING	GRADING RULES
Utility	Standard	NLGA, WCLIB, WWPA
4 common or utility	3 common or standard	NLGA, WCLIB, WWPA, NSLB or NELMA
No. 3	No. 2	SPIB
Merchantable	Construction common	RIS

TABLE 2304.8(3)
ALLOWABLE SPANS AND LOADS FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SHEATHING AND SINGLE-FLOOR GRADES CONTINUOUS OVER TWO OR MORE SPANS WITH STRENGTH AXIS PERPENDICULAR TO SUPPORTS[a, b]

SHEATHING GRADES		ROOF[c]				FLOOR[d]
Panel span rating roof/ floor span	Panel thickness (inches)	Maximum span (inches)		Load[e] (psf)		Maximum span (inches)
		With edge support[f]	Without edge support	Total load	Live load	
16/0	3/8	16	16	40	30	0
20/0	3/8	20	20	40	30	0
24/0	3/8, 7/16, 1/2	24	20[g]	40	30	0

`

24/16	$^{7}/_{16}$, $^{1}/_{2}$	24	24	50	40	16
32/16	$^{15}/_{32}$, $^{1}/_{2}$, $^{5}/_{8}$	32	28	40	30	16[h]
40/20	$^{19}/_{32}$, $^{5}/_{8}$, $^{3}/_{4}$, $^{7}/_{8}$	40	32	40	30	20[h,i]
48/24	$^{23}/_{32}$, $^{3}/_{4}$, $^{7}/_{8}$	48	36	45	35	24
54/32	$^{7}/_{8}$, 1	54	40	45	35	32
60/32	$^{7}/_{8}$, $1^{1}/_{8}$	60	48	45	35	32
SINGLE FLOOR GRADES		**ROOF[c]**				**FLOOR[d]**
Panel span rating	**Panel thickness (inches)**	**Maximum span (inches)**		**Load[e] (psf)**		**Maximum span (inches)**
		With edge support[f]	**Without edge support**	**Total load**	**Live load**	
16 o.c.	$^{1}/_{2}$, $^{19}/_{32}$, $^{5}/_{8}$	24	24	50	40	16[h]
20 o.c.	$^{19}/_{32}$, $^{5}/_{8}$, $^{3}/_{4}$	32	32	40	30	20[h,i]
24 o.c.	$^{23}/_{32}$, $^{3}/_{4}$	48	36	35	25	24
32 o.c.	$^{7}/_{8}$, 1	48	40	50	40	32
48 o.c.	$1^{3}/_{32}$, $1^{1}/_{8}$	60	48	50	40	48

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m^2.

a. Applies to panels 24 inches or wider.

b. Floor and roof sheathing complying with this table shall be deemed to meet the design criteria of Section 2304.8.

c. Uniform load deflection limitations $^{1}/_{180}$ of span under live load plus dead load, $^{1}/_{240}$ under live load only.

d. Panel edges shall have approved tongue-and-groove joints or shall be supported with blocking unless $^{1}/_{4}$-inch minimum thickness underlayment or $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches of approved cellular or lightweight concrete is placed over the subfloor, or finish floor is $^{3}/_{4}$-inch wood strip. Allowable uniform load based on deflection of $^{1}/_{360}$ of span is 100 pounds per square foot except the span rating of 48 inches on center is based on a total load of 65 pounds per square foot.

e. Allowable load at maximum span.

f. Tongue-and-groove edges, panel edge clips (one midway between each support, except two equally spaced between supports 48 inches on center), lumber blocking or other. Only lumber blocking shall satisfy blocked diaphragm requirements.

g. For $^{1}/_{2}$-inch panel, maximum span shall be 24 inches.

h. Span is permitted to be 24 inches on center where $^{3}/_{4}$-inch wood strip flooring is installed at right angles to joist.

`

i. Span is permitted to be 24 inches on center for floors where $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches of cellular or lightweight concrete is applied over the panels.

TABLE 2304.8(4)
ALLOWABLE SPAN FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL COMBINATION SUBFLOOR-UNDERLAYMENT (SINGLE FLOOR)[a, b]
(Panels Continuous Over Two or More Spans and Strength Axis Perpendicular to Supports)

IDENTIFICATION	MAXIMUM SPACING OF JOISTS (inches)				
	16	20	24	32	48
Species group[c]	Thickness (inches)				
1	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{8}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	—	—
2, 3	$\frac{5}{8}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{7}{8}$	—	—
4	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{7}{8}$	1	—	—
Single floor span rating[d]	16 o.c.	20 o.c.	24 o.c.	32 o.c.	48 o.c.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m^2.

a. Spans limited to value shown because of possible effects of concentrated loads. Allowable uniform loads based on deflection of $\frac{1}{360}$ of span is 100 pounds per square foot except allowable total uniform load for $1\frac{1}{8}$-inch wood structural panels over joists spaced 48 inches on center is 65 pounds per square foot. Panel edges shall have approved tongue-and-groove joints or shall be supported with blocking, unless $\frac{1}{4}$-inch minimum thickness underlayment or $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches of approved cellular or lightweight concrete is placed over the subfloor, or finish floor is $\frac{3}{4}$-inch wood strip.

b. Floor panels complying with this table shall be deemed to meet the design criteria of Section 2304.8.

c. Applicable to all grades of sanded exterior-type plywood. See DOC PS 1 for plywood species groups.

d. Applicable to Underlayment grade, C-C (Plugged) plywood, and Single Floor grade wood structural panels.

`

TABLE 2304.8(5)
ALLOWABLE LOAD (PSF) FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL ROOF SHEATHING CONTINUOUS OVER TWO OR MORE SPANS AND STRENGTH AXIS PARALLEL TO SUPPORTS
(Plywood Structural Panels Are Five-Ply, Five-Layer Unless Otherwise Noted)[a, b]

PANEL GRADE	THICKNESS (inch)	MAXIMUM SPAN (inches)	LOAD AT MAXIMUM SPAN (psf)	
			Live	Total
Structural I sheathing	7/16	24	20	30
	15/32	24	35[c]	45[c]
	1/2	24	40[c]	50[c]
	19/32, 5/8	24	70	80
	23/32, 3/4	24	90	100
Sheathing, other grades covered in DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2	7/16	16	40	50
	15/32	24	20	25
	1/2	24	25	30
	19/32	24	40[c]	50[c]
	5/8	24	45[c]	55[c]
	23/32, 3/4	24	60[c]	65[c]

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m^2.

a. Roof sheathing complying with this table shall be deemed to meet the design criteria of Section 2304.8.

b. Uniform load deflection limitations $^1/_{180}$ of span under live load plus dead load, $^1/_{240}$ under live load only. Edges shall be blocked with lumber or other approved type of edge supports.

c. For composite and four-ply plywood structural panel, load shall be reduced by 15 pounds per square foot.

2304.8.1 Structural floor sheathing.
Structural floor sheathing shall be designed in accordance with the general provisions of this code and the special provisions in this section.

`

Floor sheathing conforming to the provisions of Table 2304.8(1), 2304.8(2), 2304.8(3) or 2304.8(4) shall be deemed to meet the requirements of this section.

2304.8.2 Structural roof sheathing.
Structural roof sheathing shall be designed in accordance with the general provisions of this code and the special provisions in this section.

Roof sheathing conforming to the provisions of Table 2304.8(1), 2304.8(2), 2304.8(3) or 2304.8(5) shall be deemed to meet the requirements of this section. Wood structural panel roof sheathing shall be bonded by exterior glue.

2304.9 Lumber decking.
Lumber decking shall be designed and installed in accordance with the general provisions of this code and Sections 2304.9.1 through 2304.9.5.3.

2304.9.1 General.
Each piece of lumber decking shall be square-end trimmed. When random lengths are furnished, each piece shall be square end trimmed across the face so that at least 90 percent of the pieces are within 0.5 degrees (0.00873 rad) of square. The ends of the pieces shall be permitted to be beveled up to 2 degrees (0.0349 rad) from the vertical with the exposed face of the piece slightly longer than the opposite face of the piece. Tongue-and-groove decking shall be installed with the tongues up on sloped or pitched roofs with pattern faces down.

2304.9.2 Layup patterns.
Lumber decking is permitted to be laid up following one of five standard patterns as defined in Sections 2304.9.2.1 through 2304.9.2.5. Other patterns are permitted to be used provided they are substantiated through engineering analysis.

2304.9.2.1 Simple span pattern.
All pieces shall be supported on their ends (i.e., by two supports).

2304.9.2.2 Two-span continuous pattern.
All pieces shall be supported by three supports, and all end joints shall occur in line on alternating supports. Supporting members shall be designed to accommodate the load redistribution caused by this pattern.

2304.9.2.3 Combination simple and two-span continuous pattern.
Courses in end spans shall be alternating simple-span pattern and two-span continuous pattern. End joints shall be staggered in adjacent courses and shall bear on supports.

2304.9.2.4 Cantilevered pieces intermixed pattern.
The decking shall extend across a minimum of three spans. Pieces in each starter course and every third course shall be simple span pattern. Pieces in other courses shall be cantilevered over the supports with end joints at alternating quarter or third points of the spans. Each piece shall bear on at least one support.

2304.9.2.5 Controlled random pattern.
The decking shall extend across a minimum of three spans. End joints of pieces within 6 inches (152 mm) of the end joints of the adjacent pieces in either direction shall be separated by at least two intervening courses. In the end bays, each piece shall bear on at least one support. Where an end joint occurs in an end bay, the next piece in the same course shall continue over the first inner support for at least 24 inches (610 mm).

`

The details of the controlled random pattern shall be as specified for each decking material in Section 2304.9.3.3, 2304.9.4.3 or 2304.9.5.3.

Decking that cantilevers beyond a support for a horizontal distance greater than 18 inches (457 mm), 24 inches (610 mm) or 36 inches (914 mm) for 2-inch (51 mm), 3-inch (76 mm) and 4-inch (102 mm) nominal thickness decking, respectively, shall comply with the following:

1. The maximum cantilevered length shall be 30 percent of the length of the first adjacent interior span.

2. A structural fascia shall be fastened to each decking piece to maintain a continuous, straight line.

3. There shall be no end joints in the decking between the cantilevered end of the decking and the centerline of the first adjacent interior span.

2304.9.3 Mechanically laminated decking.
Mechanically laminated decking shall comply with Sections 2304.9.3.1 through 2304.9.3.3.

2304.9.3.1 General.
Mechanically laminated decking consists of square-edged dimension lumber laminations set on edge and nailed to the adjacent pieces and to the supports.

2304.9.3.2 Nailing.
The length of nails connecting laminations shall be not less than two and one-half times the net thickness of each lamination. Where decking supports are 48 inches (1219 mm) on center or less, side nails shall be installed not more than 30 inches (762 mm) on center alternating between top and bottom edges, and staggered one-third of the spacing in adjacent laminations. Where supports are spaced more than 48 inches (1219 mm) on center, side nails shall be installed not more than 18 inches (457 mm) on center alternating between top and bottom edges and staggered one-third of the spacing in adjacent laminations. Two side nails shall be installed at each end of butt-jointed pieces.

Laminations shall be toenailed to supports with 20d or larger common nails. Where the supports are 48 inches (1219 mm) on center or less, alternate laminations shall be toenailed to alternate supports; where supports are spaced more than 48 inches (1219 mm) on center, alternate laminations shall be toenailed to every support.

2304.9.3.3 Controlled random pattern.
There shall be a minimum distance of 24 inches (610 mm) between end joints in adjacent courses. The pieces in the first and second courses shall bear on at least two supports with end joints in these two courses occurring on alternate supports. A maximum of seven intervening courses shall be permitted before this pattern is repeated.

2304.9.4 Two-inch sawn tongue-and-groove decking.
Two-inch (51 mm) sawn tongue-and-groove decking shall comply with Sections 2304.9.4.1 through 2304.9.4.3.

2304.9.4.1 General.
Two-inch (51 mm) decking shall have a maximum moisture content of 15 percent.

`

Decking shall be machined with a single tongue-and-groove pattern. Each decking piece shall be nailed to each support.

2304.9.4.2 Nailing.
Each piece of decking shall be toenailed at each support with one 16d common nail through the tongue and face-nailed with one 16d common nail.

2304.9.4.3 Controlled random pattern.
There shall be a minimum distance of 24 inches (610 mm) between end joints in adjacent courses. The pieces in the first and second courses shall bear on at least two supports with end joints in these two courses occurring on alternate supports. A maximum of seven intervening courses shall be permitted before this pattern is repeated.

2304.9.5 Three- and four-inch sawn tongue-and-groove decking.
Three- and four-inch (76 mm and 102 mm) sawn tongue-and-groove decking shall comply with Sections 2304.9.5.1 through 2304.9.5.3.

2304.9.5.1 General.
Three-inch (76 mm) and four-inch (102 mm) decking shall have a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Decking shall be machined with a double tongue-and-groove pattern. Decking pieces shall be interconnected and nailed to the supports.

2304.9.5.2 Nailing.
Each piece shall be toenailed at each support with one 40d common nail and face-nailed with one 60d common nail. Courses shall be spiked to each other with 8-inch (203 mm) spikes at maximum intervals of 30 inches (762 mm) through predrilled edge holes penetrating to a depth of approximately 4 inches (102 mm). One spike shall be installed at a distance not exceeding 10 inches (254 mm) from the end of each piece.

2304.9.5.3 Controlled random pattern.
There shall be a minimum distance of 48 inches (1219 mm) between end joints in adjacent courses. Pieces not bearing on a support are permitted to be located in interior bays provided the adjacent pieces in the same course continue over the support for at least 24 inches (610 mm). This condition shall not occur more than once in every six courses in each interior bay.

2304.10 Connectors and fasteners.
Connectors and fasteners shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 2304.10.1 through 2304.10.7.

2304.10.1 Fastener requirements.
Connections for wood members shall be designed in accordance with the appropriate methodology in Section 2301.2. The number and size of fasteners connecting wood members shall not be less than that set forth in Table 2304.10.1.

TABLE 2304.10.1
FASTENING SCHEDULE

DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER	SPACING AND LOCATION
Roof		

`

1. Blocking between ceiling joists, rafters or trusses to top plate or other framing below	3-8d common ($2\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.131"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3-3" × 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	Each end, toenail
Blocking between rafters or truss not at the wall top plate, to rafter or truss	2-8d common ($2\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.131") 2-3" × 0.131" nails 2-3" 14 gage staples	Each end, toenail
	2-16 d common ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.162") 3-3" × 0.131" nails 3-3" 14 gage staples	End nail
Flat blocking to truss and web filler	16d common ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.162") @ 6" o.c. 3" × 0.131" nails @ 6" o.c. 3" × 14 gage staples @ 6" o.c	Face nail
2. Ceiling joists to top plate	3-8d common ($2\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.131"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3-3" × 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	Each joist, toenail
3. Ceiling joist not attached to parallel rafter, laps over partitions (no thrust) (see Section 2308.7.3.1, Table 2308.7.3.1)	3-16d common ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.162"); or 4-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 4-3" × 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	Face nail
4. Ceiling joist attached to parallel rafter (heel joint) (see Section 2308.7.3.1, Table 2308.7.3.1)	Per Table 2308.7.3.1	Face nail
5. Collar tie to rafter	3-10d common (3" × 0.148"); or 4-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 4-3" × 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	Face nail
6. Rafter or roof truss to top plate (See Section 2308.7.5, Table 2308.7.5)	3-10 common (3" × 0.148"); or 3-16d box ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.135"); or 4-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 4-3" × 0.131 nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	Toenail[c]

`

7. Roof rafters to ridge valley or hip rafters; or roof rafter to 2-inch ridge beam	2-16d common ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.162"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3-3" × 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown; or	End nail
	3-10d common ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.148"); or 3-16d box ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.135"); or 4-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 4-3" × 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	Toenail

(continued)

TABLE 2304.10.1—continued
FASTENING SCHEDULE

DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER	SPACING AND LOCATION
Wall		
8. Stud to stud (not at braced wall panels)	16d common ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.162");	24" o.c. face nail
	10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3" × 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	16" o.c. face nail
9. Stud to stud and abutting studs at intersecting wall corners (at braced wall panels)	16d common ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.162"); or	16" o.c. face nail
	16d box ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.135"); or	12" o.c. face nail
	3" × 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	12" o.c. face nail
10. Built-up header (2" to 2" header)	16d common ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.162"); or	16" o.c. each edge, face nail
	16d box ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.135")	12" o.c. each edge, face nail
11. Continuous header to stud	4-8d common ($2\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.131"); or 4-10d box (3" × 0.128")	Toenail
12. Top plate to top plate	16d common ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.162"); or	16" o.c. face nail

`

	10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3" × 0.131" nails; or 3" 14 gage staples, $^{7}/_{16}$" crown	12" o.c. face nail
13. Top plate to top plate, at end joints	8-16d common (3 $^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.162"); or 12-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 12-3" × 0.131" nails; or 12-3" 14 gage staples, $^{7}/_{16}$" crown	Each side of end joint, face nail (minimum 24" lap splice length each side of end joint)
14. Bottom plate to joist, rim joist, band joist or blocking (not at braced wall panels)	16d common (3 $^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.162"); or	16" o.c. face nail
	16d box (3 $^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.135"); or 3" × 0.131" nails; or 3" 14 gage staples, $^{7}/_{16}$" crown	12" o.c. face nail
15. Bottom plate to joist, rim joist, band joist or blocking at braced wall panels	2-16d common (3 $^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.162"); or 3-16d box (3 $^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.135"); or 4-3" × 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, $^{7}/_{16}$" crown	16" o.c. face nail
16. Stud to top or bottom plate	4-8d common (2 $^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.131"); or 4-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 4-3" × 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, $^{7}/_{16}$" crown; or	Toenail
	2-16d common (3 $^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.162"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3-3" × 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $^{7}/_{16}$" crown	End nail
17. Top or bottom plate to stud	2-16d common (3 $^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.162"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3-3" × 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $^{7}/_{16}$" crown	End nail

`

18. Top plates, laps at corners and intersections	2-16d common ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.162"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3-3" × 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	Face nail

(continued)

TABLE 2304.10.1—continued
FASTENING SCHEDULE

DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER	SPACING AND LOCATION
Wall		
19. 1" brace to each stud and plate	2-8d common ($2\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.131"); or 2-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 2-3" × 0.131" nails; or 2-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	Face nail
20. 1" × 6" sheathing to each bearing	2-8d common ($2\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.131"); or 2-10d box (3" × 0.128")	Face nail
21. 1" × 8" and wider sheathing to each bearing	3-8d common ($2\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.131"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128")	Face nail
Floor		
22. Joist to sill, top plate, or girder	3-8d common ($2\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.131"); or floor 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3-3" × 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	Toenail
23. Rim joist, band joist, or blocking to top plate, sill or other framing below	8d common ($2\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.131"); or 10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3" × 0.131" nails; or 3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	6" o.c., toenail

`

24. 1" × 6" subfloor or less to each joist	2-8d common ($2\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.131"); or 2-10d box (3" × 0.128")	Face nail
25. 2" subfloor to joist or girder	2-16d common ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.162")	Face nail
26. 2" planks (plank & beam – floor & roof)	2-16d common ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.162")	Each bearing, face nail
27. Built-up girders and beams, 2" lumber layers	20d common (4" × 0.192")	32" o.c., face nail at top and bottom staggered on opposite sides
	10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3" × 0.131" nails; or 3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	24" o.c. face nail at top and bottom staggered on opposite sides
	And: 2-20d common (4" × 0.192"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3-3" × 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	Ends and at each splice, face nail
28. Ledger strip supporting joists or rafters	3-16d common ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.162"); or 4-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 4-3" × 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	Each joist or rafter, face nail
29. Joist to band joist or rim joist	3-16d common ($3\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.162"); or 4-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 4-3" × 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	End nail
30. Bridging or blocking to joist, rafter or truss	2-8d common ($2\frac{1}{2}$" × 0.131"); or 2-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 2-3" × 0.131" nails; or 2-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$" crown	Each end, toenail

(continued)

`

TABLE 2304.10.1—continued
FASTENING SCHEDULE

DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER	SPACING AND LOCATION	
Wood structural panels (WSP), subfloor, roof and interior wall sheathing to framing and particleboard wall sheathing to framing[a]			
		Edges (inches)	**Intermediate supports (inches)**
31. $^{3}/_{8}$" – $^{1}/_{2}$"	6d common or deformed (2" × 0.113") (subfloor and wall)	6	12
	8d box or deformed (2 $^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.113") (roof)	6	12
	2 $^{3}/_{8}$" × 0.113" nail (subfloor and wall)	6	12
	1 $^{3}/_{4}$" 16 gage staple, $^{7}/_{16}$" crown (subfloor and wall)	4	8
	2 $^{3}/_{8}$" × 0.113" nail (roof)	4	8
	1 $^{3}/_{4}$" 16 gage staple, $^{7}/_{16}$" crown (roof)	3	6
32. $^{19}/_{32}$" – $^{3}/_{4}$"	8d common (2 $^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.131"); or 6d deformed (2" × 0.113")	6	12
	2 $^{3}/_{8}$" × 0.113" nail; or 2" 16 gage staple, $^{7}/_{16}$" crown	4	8
33. $^{7}/_{8}$" – 1 $^{1}/_{4}$"	10d common (3" × 0.148"); or 8d deformed (2 $^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.131")	6	12
Other exterior wall sheathing			
34. $^{1}/_{2}$" fiberboard sheathing[b]	1 $^{1}/_{2}$" galvanized roofing nail ($^{7}/_{16}$" head diameter); or 1 $^{1}/_{4}$" 16 gage staple with $^{7}/_{16}$" or 1" crown	3	6

`

35. $^{25}/_{32}$" fiberboard sheathing[b]	$1^{3}/_{4}$" galvanized roofing nail ($^{7}/_{16}$" diameter head); or $1^{1}/_{2}$" 16 gage staple with $^{7}/_{16}$" or 1" crown	3	6
Wood structural panels, combination subfloor underlayment to framing			
36. $^{3}/_{4}$" and less	8d common ($2^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.131"); or 6d deformed (2" × 0.113")	6	12
37. $^{7}/_{8}$" – 1"	8d common ($2^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.131"); or 8d deformed ($2^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.131")	6	12
38. $1^{1}/_{8}$" – $1^{1}/_{4}$"	10d common (3" × 0.148"); or 8d deformed ($2^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.131")	6	12
Panel siding to framing			
39. $^{1}/_{2}$" or less	6d corrosion-resistant siding ($1^{7}/_{8}$" × 0.106"); or 6d corrosion-resistant casing (2" × 0.099")	6	12
40. $^{5}/_{8}$"	8d corrosion-resistant siding ($2^{3}/_{8}$" × 0.128"); or 8d corrosion-resistant casing ($2^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.113")	6	12

(continued)

TABLE 2304.10.1—continued
FASTENING SCHEDULE

DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER	SPACING AND LOCATION	
Wood structural panels (WSP), subfloor, roof and interior wall sheathing to framing and particleboard wall sheathing to framing[a]			
		Edges (inches)	**Intermediate supports (inches)**
Interior paneling			

`

41. $^{1}/_{4}$"	4d casing ($1^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.080"); or 4d finish ($1^{1}/_{2}$" × 0.072")	6	12
42. $^{3}/_{8}$"	6d casing (2" × 0.099"); or 6d finish (Panel supports at 24 inches)	6	12

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Nails spaced at 6 inches at intermediate supports where spans are 48 inches or more. For nailing of wood structural panel and particleboard diaphragms and shear walls, refer to Section 2305. Nails for wall sheathing are permitted to be common, box or casing.

b. Spacing shall be 6 inches on center on the edges and 12 inches on center at intermediate supports for nonstructural applications. Panel supports at 16 inches (20 inches if strength axis in the long direction of the panel, unless otherwise marked).

c. Where a rafter is fastened to an adjacent parallel ceiling joist in accordance with this schedule and the ceiling joist is fastened to the top plate in accordance with this schedule, the number of toenails in the rafter shall be permitted to be reduced by one nail.

2304.10.2 Sheathing fasteners.
Sheathing nails or other *approved* sheathing connectors shall be driven so that their head or crown is flush with the surface of the sheathing.

2304.10.3 Joist hangers and framing anchors.
Connections depending on joist hangers or framing anchors, ties and other mechanical fastenings not otherwise covered are permitted where *approved*. The vertical load-bearing capacity, torsional moment capacity and deflection characteristics of joist hangers shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D7147.

2304.10.4 Other fasteners.
Clips, staples, glues and other *approved* methods of fastening are permitted where *approved*.

2304.10.5 Fasteners and connectors in contact with preservative-treated and fire-retardant-treated wood.
Fasteners, including nuts and washers, and connectors in contact with *preservative-treated* and *fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be in accordance with Sections 2304.10.5.1 through 2304.10.5.4. The coating weights for zinc-coated fasteners shall be in accordance with ASTM A153.

2304.10.5.1 Fasteners and connectors for preservative-treated wood.
Fasteners, including nuts and washers, in contact with *preservative-treated wood* shall be of hot-dipped zinc-coated galvanized steel, stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper. Fasteners other than nails, timber rivets, wood screws and lag screws shall be permitted to be of mechanically deposited zinc-coated steel with coating weights in accordance with ASTM B695, Class 55 minimum. Connectors that are used in exterior applications and in contact with *preservative-treated wood* shall have coating types and weights in accordance with the treated wood or connector manufacturer’s recommendations. In the absence of manufacturer's recommendations, a minimum of ASTM A653, Type G185 zinc-coated galvanized steel, or equivalent, shall be used.

Exception: Plain carbon steel fasteners, including nuts and washers, in SBX/DOT and zinc borate *preservative-treated wood* in an interior, dry environment shall be permitted.

`

2304.10.5.2 Fastenings for wood foundations.
Fastenings, including nuts and washers, for wood foundations shall be as required in AWC PWF.

2304.10.5.3 Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated wood used in exterior applications or wet or damp locations.
Fasteners, including nuts and washers, for *fire-retardant-treated wood* used in exterior applications or wet or damp locations shall be of hot-dipped zinc-coated galvanized steel, stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper. Fasteners other than nails, timber rivets, wood screws and lag screws shall be permitted to be of mechanically deposited zinc-coated steel with coating weights in accordance with ASTM B695, Class 55 minimum.

2304.10.5.4 Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated wood used in interior applications.
Fasteners, including nuts and washers, for *fire-retardant-treated wood* used in interior locations shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In the absence of manufacturer's recommendations, Section 2304.10.5.3 shall apply.

2304.10.6 Load path.
Where wall framing members are not continuous from the foundation sill to the roof, the members shall be secured to ensure a continuous load path. Where required, sheet metal clamps, ties or clips shall be formed of galvanized steel or other *approved* corrosion-resistant material not less than 0.0329-inch (0.836 mm) base metal thickness.

2304.10.7 Framing requirements.
Wood columns and posts shall be framed to provide full end bearing. Alternatively, column-and-post end connections shall be designed to resist the full compressive loads, neglecting end-bearing capacity. Column-and-post end connections shall be fastened to resist lateral and net induced uplift forces.

2304.11 Heavy timber construction.
Where a structure or portion thereof is required to be of Type IV construction by other provisions of this code, the building elements therein shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 2304.11.1 through 2304.11.5.

2304.11.1 Columns.
Columns shall be continuous or superimposed throughout all stories by means of reinforced concrete or metal caps with brackets, or shall be connected by properly designed steel or iron caps, with pintles and base plates, or by timber splice plates affixed to the columns by metal connectors housed within the contact faces, or by other *approved* methods.

2304.11.1.1 Column connections.
Girders and beams shall be closely fitted around columns and adjoining ends shall be cross tied to each other, or intertied by caps or ties, to transfer horizontal loads across joints. Wood bolsters shall not be placed on tops of columns unless the columns support roof loads only.

2304.11.2 Floor framing.
Approved wall plate boxes or hangers shall be provided where wood beams, girders or trusses rest on masonry or concrete walls. Where intermediate beams are used to support a floor, they shall rest on top of girders, or shall be supported by ledgers or blocks securely fastened to the sides of the girders, or they shall be supported by an *approved* metal hanger into which the ends of the beams shall be closely fitted.

`

2304.11.3 Roof framing.
Every roof girder and at least every alternate roof beam shall be anchored to its supporting member; and every monitor and every sawtooth construction shall be anchored to the main roof construction. Such anchors shall consist of steel or iron bolts of sufficient strength to resist vertical uplift of the roof.

2304.11.4 Floor decks.
Floor decks and covering shall not extend closer than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) to walls. Such $^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm) spaces shall be covered by a molding fastened to the wall either above or below the floor and arranged such that the molding will not obstruct the expansion or contraction movements of the floor. Corbeling of masonry walls under floors is permitted in place of such molding.

2304.11.5 Roof decks.
Where supported by a wall, roof decks shall be anchored to walls to resist uplift forces determined in accordance with Chapter 16. Such anchors shall consist of steel or iron bolts of sufficient strength to resist vertical uplift of the roof.

2304.12 Protection against decay and termites.
Wood shall be protected from decay and termites in accordance with the applicable provisions of Sections 2304.12.1 through 2304.12.7.

2304.12.1 Locations requiring water-borne preservatives or naturally durable wood.
Wood used above ground in the locations specified in Sections 2304.12.1.1 through 2304.12.1.5, 2304.12.3 and 2304.12.5 shall be naturally durable wood or *preservative-treated wood* using water-borne preservatives, in accordance with AWPA U1 for above-ground use.

2304.12.1.1 Joists, girders and subfloor.
Wood joists or wood structural floors that are closer than 18 inches (457 mm) or wood girders that are closer than 12 inches (305 mm) to the exposed ground in crawl spaces or unexcavated areas located within the perimeter of the building foundation shall be of naturally durable or *preservative-treated wood*.

2304.12.1.2 Wood supported by exterior foundation walls.
Wood framing members, including wood sheathing, that are in contact with exterior foundation walls and are less than 8 inches (203 mm) from exposed earth shall be of naturally durable or *preservative-treated wood*.

2304.12.1.3 Exterior walls below grade.
Wood framing members and furring strips in direct contact with the interior of exterior masonry or concrete walls below grade shall be of naturally durable or *preservative-treated wood*.

2304.12.1.4 Sleepers and sills.
Sleepers and sills on a concrete or masonry slab that is in direct contact with earth shall be of naturally durable or *preservative-treated wood*.

2304.12.1.5 Wood siding.
Clearance between wood siding and earth on the exterior of a building shall not be less than 6 inches (152 mm) or less than 2 inches (51 mm) vertical from concrete steps,

`

porch slabs, patio slabs and similar horizontal surfaces exposed to the weather except where siding, sheathing and wall framing are of naturally durable or *preservative-treated wood*.

2304.12.2 Other locations.
Wood used in the locations specified in Sections 2304.12.2.1 through 2304.12.2.5 shall be naturally durable wood or *preservative-treated* wood in accordance with AWPA U1. *Preservative-treated* wood used in interior locations shall be protected with two coats of urethane, shellac, latex epoxy or varnish unless water-borne preservatives are used. Prior to application of the protective finish, the wood shall be dried in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

2304.12.2.1 Girder ends.
The ends of wood girders entering exterior masonry or concrete walls shall be provided with a $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) airspace on top, sides and end, unless naturally durable or *preservative-treated wood* is used.

2304.12.2.2 Posts or columns.
Posts or columns supporting permanent structures and supported by a concrete or masonry slab or footing that is in direct contact with the earth shall be of naturally durable or *preservative-treated wood*.

Exception: Posts or columns that are not exposed to the weather, are supported by concrete piers or metal pedestals projected at least 1 inch (25 mm) above the slab or deck and 8 inches (203 mm) above exposed earth and are separated by an impervious moisture barrier.

2304.12.2.3 Supporting member for permanent appurtenances.
Naturally durable or *preservative-treated wood* shall be utilized for those portions of wood members that form the structural supports of buildings, balconies, porches or similar permanent building appurtenances where such members are exposed to the weather without adequate protection from a roof, eave, overhang or other covering to prevent moisture or water accumulation on the surface or at joints between members.

Exception: When a building is located in a geographical region where experience has demonstrated that climatic conditions preclude the need to use durable materials where the structure is exposed to the weather.

2304.12.2.4 Laminated timbers.
The portions of glued-laminated timbers that form the structural supports of a building or other structure and are exposed to weather and not fully protected from moisture by a roof, eave or similar covering shall be pressure treated with preservative or be manufactured from naturally durable or *preservative-treated wood*.

2304.12.2.5 Supporting members for permeable floors and roofs.
Wood structural members that support moisture-permeable floors or roofs that are exposed to the weather, such as concrete or masonry slabs, shall be of naturally durable or *preservative-treated wood* unless separated from such floors or roofs by an impervious moisture barrier.

2304.12.3 Wood in contact with the ground or fresh water.
Wood used in contact with exposed earth shall be naturally durable for both decay and

`

termite resistance or preservative treated in accordance with AWPA U1 for soil or fresh water use.

Exception: Untreated wood is permitted where such wood is continuously and entirely below the ground-water level or submerged in fresh water.

2304.12.3.1 Posts or columns.
Posts and columns that are supporting permanent structures and embedded in concrete that is exposed to the weather or in direct contact with the earth shall be of *preservative-treated wood*.

2304.12.4 Termite protection.
In geographical areas where hazard of termite damage is known to be very heavy, wood floor framing in the locations specified in Section 2304.12.2.1 and exposed framing of exterior decks or balconies shall be of naturally durable species (termite resistant) or preservative treated in accordance with AWPA U1 for the species, product preservative and end use or provided with *approved* methods of termite protection.

2304.12.5 Wood used in retaining walls and cribs.
Wood installed in retaining or crib walls shall be preservative treated in accordance with AWPA U1 for soil and fresh water use.

2304.12.6 Attic ventilation.
For *attic* ventilation, see Section 1203.2.

2304.12.7 Under-floor ventilation (crawl space).
For under-floor ventilation (crawl space), see Section 1203.4.

2304.13 Long-term loading.
Wood members supporting concrete, masonry or similar materials shall be checked for the effects of long-term loading using the provisions of the ANSI/AWC NDS. The total deflection, including the effects of long-term loading, shall be limited in accordance with Section 1604.3.1 for these supported materials.

Exception: Horizontal wood members supporting masonry or concrete nonstructural floor or roof surfacing not more than 4 inches (102 mm) thick need not be checked for long-term loading.

SECTION 2305
GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LATERAL FORCE-RESISTING SYSTEMS

2305.1 General.
Structures using wood-frame shear walls or wood-frame diaphragms to resist wind, seismic or other lateral loads shall be designed and constructed in accordance with AWC SDPWS and the applicable provisions of Sections 2305, 2306 and 2307.

2305.1.1 Openings in shear panels.
Openings in shear panels that materially affect their strength shall be detailed on the plans and shall have their edges adequately reinforced to transfer all shearing stresses.

2305.2 Diaphragm deflection.
The deflection of wood-frame diaphragms shall be determined in accordance with AWC

`

SDPWS. The deflection (Δ) of a blocked wood structural panel diaphragm uniformly fastened throughout with staples is permitted to be calculated in accordance with Equation 23-1. If not uniformly fastened, the constant 0.188 (For SI: 1/1627) in the third term shall be modified by an approved method.

$$\Delta = \frac{5vL^3}{8EAb} + \frac{vL}{4Gt} + 0.188Le_n + \frac{\Sigma(\Delta_c X)}{2b} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 23-1)}$$

For SI: $$\Delta = \frac{0.052vL^3}{EAb} + \frac{vL}{4Gt} + \frac{Le_n}{1627} + \frac{\Sigma(\Delta_c X)}{2b}$$

where:

A	=	Area of chord cross section, in square inches (mm^2).
b	=	Diaphragm width, in feet (mm).
E	=	Elastic modulus of chords, in pounds per square inch (N/mm^2).
e_n	=	Staple deformation, in inches (mm) [see Table 2305.2(1)].
G_t	=	Panel rigidity through the thickness, in pounds per inch (N/mm) of panel width or depth [see Table 2305.2(2)].
L	=	Diaphragm length, in feet (mm).
v	=	Maximum shear due to design loads in the direction under consideration, in pounds per linear foot (plf) (N/mm).
Δ	=	The calculated deflection, in inches (mm).
$\Sigma(\Delta_c X)$	=	Sum of individual chord-splice slip values on both sides of the diaphragm, each multiplied by its distance to the nearest support.

TABLE 2305.2(1)
e_n VALUES (inches) FOR USE IN CALCULATING DIAPHRAGM AND SHEAR WALL DEFLECTION DUE TO FASTENER SLIP
(Structural I)[a, c]

LOAD PER FASTENER[b] (pounds)	FASTENER DESIGNATIONS
	14-Ga staple x 2 inches long
60	0.011
80	0.018
100	0.028
120	0.04
140	0.053
160	0.068

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N.
a. Increase e_n values 20 percent for plywood grades other than Structural I.

`

b. Load per fastener = maximum shear per foot divided by the number of fasteners per foot at interior panel edges.
c. Decrease e_n values 50 percent for seasoned lumber (moisture content < 19 percent).

TABLE 2305.2(2)
VALUES OF Gt FOR USE IN CALCULATING DEFLECTION OF WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SHEAR WALLS AND DIAPHRAGMS

PANEL TYPE	SPAN RATING	VALUES OF *Gt* (lb/in. panel depth or width)							
		Other				Structural I			
		3-ply plywood	4-ply plywood	5-ply plywood[a]	OSB	3-ply plywood	4-ply plywood	5-ply plywood[a]	OSB
Sheathing	24/0	25,000	32,500	37,500	77,500	32,500	42,500	41,500	77,500
	24/16	27,000	35,000	40,500	83,500	35,000	45,500	44,500	83,500
	32/16	27,000	35,000	40,500	83,500	35,000	45,500	44,500	83,500
	40/20	28,500	37,000	43,000	88,500	37,000	48,000	47,500	88,500
	48/24	31,000	40,500	46,500	96,000	40,500	52,500	51,000	96,000
Single Floor	16 o.c.	27,000	35,000	40,500	83,500	35,000	45,500	44,500	83,500
	20 o.c.	28,000	36,500	42,000	87,000	36,500	47,500	46,000	87,000
	24 o.c.	30,000	39,000	45,000	93,000	39,000	50,500	49,500	93,000
	32 o.c.	36,000	47,000	54,000	110,000	47,000	61,000	59,500	110,000
	48 o.c.	50,500	65,500	76,000	155,000	65,500	85,000	83,500	155,000

		Other			Structural I		
	Thickness (in.)	A-A, A-C	Marine	All Other Grades	A-A, A-C	Marine	All Other Grades
Sanded Plywood	1/4	24,000	31,000	24,000	31,000	31,000	31,000
	11/32	25,500	33,000	25,500	33,000	33,000	33,000
	3/8	26,000	34,000	26,000	34,000	34,000	34,000
	15/32	38,000	49,500	38,000	49,500	49,500	49,500
	1/2	38,500	50,000	38,500	50,000	50,000	50,000
	19/32	49,000	63,500	49,000	63,500	63,500	63,500

`

	5/8	49,500	64,500	49,500	64,500	64,500	64,500
	23/32	50,500	65,500	50,500	65,500	65,500	65,500
	3/4	51,000	66,500	51,000	66,500	66,500	66,500
	7/8	52,500	68,500	52,500	68,500	68,500	68,500
	1	73,500	95,500	73,500	95,500	95,500	95,500
	1 1/8	75,000	97,500	75,000	97,500	97,500	97,500

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound/inch = 0.1751 N/mm.
a. Applies to plywood with five or more layers; for five-ply/three-layer plywood, use values for four ply.

2305.3 Shear wall deflection.
The deflection of wood-frame shear walls shall be determined in accordance with AWC SDPWS. The deflection (Δ) of a blocked wood structural panel shear wall uniformly fastened throughout with staples is permitted to be calculated in accordance with Equation 23-2.

$$\Delta = \frac{8vh^3}{EAb} + \frac{vh}{Gt} + 0.75he_n + d_a\frac{h}{b} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 23-2)}$$

For SI: $$\Delta = \frac{vh^3}{3EAb} + \frac{vh}{Gt} + \frac{he_n}{407.6} + d_a\frac{h}{b}$$

where:

A = Area of boundary element cross section in square inches (mm^2) (vertical member at shear wall boundary).
b = Wall width, in feet (mm).
d_a = Vertical elongation of overturning anchorage (including fastener slip, device elongation, anchor rod elongation, etc.) at the design shear load (v).
E = Elastic modulus of boundary element (vertical member at shear wall boundary), in pounds per square inch (N/mm^2).
e_n = Staple deformation, in inches (mm) [see Table 2305.2(1)].
G_t = Panel rigidity through the thickness, in pounds per inch (N/mm) of panel width or depth [see Table 2305.2(2)].
h = Wall height, in feet (mm).
v = Maximum shear due to design loads at the top of the wall, in pounds per linear foot (N/mm).
Δ = The calculated deflection, in inches (mm).

SECTION 2306
ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN

`

2306.1 Allowable stress design.
The design and construction of wood elements in structures using *allowable stress design* shall be in accordance with the following applicable standards:

American Wood Council.

NDS	National Design Specification for Wood Construction
SDPWS	Special Design Provisions for Wind and Seismic

American Institute of Timber Construction.

AITC 104	Typical Construction Details
AITC 110	Standard Appearance Grades for Structural Glued Laminated Timber
AITC 113	Standard for Dimensions of Structural Glued Laminated Timber
AITC 117	Standard Specifications for Structural Glued Laminated Timber of Softwood Species
AITC 119	Standard Specifications for Structural Glued Laminated Timber of Hardwood Species
ANSI/AITC A190.1	Structural Glued Laminated Timber
AITC 200	Inspection Manual

American Society of Agricultural and Biological Engineers.

ASABE EP 484.2	Diaphragm Design of Metal-clad, Post-Frame Rectangular Buildings
ASABE EP 486.2	Shallow Post Foundation Design
ASABE 559.1	Design Requirements and Bending Properties for Mechanically Laminated Columns

APA—The Engineered Wood Association.

Panel Design Specification
Plywood Design Specification Supplement 1—
Design & Fabrication of Plywood Curved Panel
Plywood Design Specification Supplement 2—
Design & Fabrication of Glued Plywood-lumber Beams
Plywood Design Specification Supplement 3—
Design & Fabrication of Plywood Stressed-skin Panels
Plywood Design Specification Supplement 4—
Design & Fabrication of Plywood Sandwich Panels
Plywood Design Specification Supplement 5—
Design & Fabrication of All-plywood Beams

EWS T300	Glulam Connection Details
EWS S560	Field Notching and Drilling of Glued Laminated Timber Beams
EWS S475	Glued Laminated Beam Design Tables

`

EWS X450	Glulam in Residential Construction
EWS X440	Product and Application Guide: Glulam
EWS R540	Builders Tips: Proper Storage and Handling of Glulam Beams

Truss Plate Institute, Inc.

TPI 1	National Design Standard for Metal Plate Connected Wood Truss Construction

2306.1.1 Joists and rafters.
The design of rafter spans is permitted to be in accordance with the AWC STJR.

2306.1.2 Plank and beam flooring.
The design of plank and beam flooring is permitted to be in accordance with the AWC *Wood Construction Data No. 4*.

2306.1.3 Treated wood stress adjustments.
The allowable unit stresses for *preservative-treated wood* need no adjustment for treatment, but are subject to other adjustments.

The allowable unit stresses for *fire-retardant-treated wood*, including fastener values, shall be developed from an *approved* method of investigation that considers the effects of anticipated temperature and humidity to which the *fire-retardant-treated wood* will be subjected, the type of treatment and the redrying process. Other adjustments are applicable except that the impact load duration shall not apply.

2306.1.4 Lumber decking.
The capacity of lumber decking arranged according to the patterns described in Section 2304.9.2 shall be the lesser of the capacities determined for flexure and deflection according to the formulas in Table 2306.1.4.

TABLE 2306.1.4
ALLOWABLE LOADS FOR LUMBER DECKING

PATTERN	ALLOWABLE AREA LOAD[a, b]	
	Flexure	Deflection
Simple span	$\sigma_b = \frac{8F_b' d^2}{l^2 6}$	$\sigma_\Delta = \frac{384 \Delta E' d^3}{5 l^4 \ 12}$
Two-span continuous	$\sigma_b = \frac{8F_b' d^2}{l^2 6}$	$\sigma_\Delta = \frac{185 \Delta E' d^3}{l^4 \ 12}$
Combination simple- and two-span continuous	$\sigma_b = \frac{8F_b' d^2}{l^2 6}$	$\sigma_\Delta = \frac{131 \Delta E' d^3}{l^4 \ 12}$
Cantilevered pieces intermixed	$\sigma_b = \frac{20F_b' d^2}{3 l^2 6}$	$\sigma_\Delta = \frac{105 \Delta E' d^3}{l^4 \ 12}$
Controlled random layup		

`

Mechanically laminated decking	$\sigma_b = \frac{20F_b'd^2}{3l^2 6}$	$\sigma_\Delta = \frac{100\Delta E'}{l^4}\frac{d^3}{12}$
2-inch decking	$\sigma_b = \frac{20F_b'd^2}{3l^2 6}$	$\sigma_\Delta = \frac{100\Delta E'}{l^4}\frac{d^3}{12}$
3-inch and 4-inch decking	$\sigma_b = \frac{20F_b'd^2}{3l^2 6}$	$\sigma_\Delta = \frac{116\Delta E'}{l^4}\frac{d^3}{12}$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. σ_b = Allowable total uniform load limited by bending.
σ_Δ = Allowable total uniform load limited by deflection.

b. *d* = Actual decking thickness.
l = Span of decking.
F_b' = Allowable bending stress adjusted by applicable factors.
E' = Modulus of elasticity adjusted by applicable factors.

2306.2 Wood-frame diaphragms.
Wood-frame diaphragms shall be designed and constructed in accordance with AWC SDPWS. Where panels are fastened to framing members with staples, requirements and limitations of AWC SDPWS shall be met and the allowable shear values set forth in Table 2306.2(1) or 2306.2(2) shall be permitted. The allowable shear values in Tables 2306.2(1) and 2306.2(2) are permitted to be increased 40 percent for wind design.

TABLE 2306.2(1)
ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (POUNDS PER FOOT) FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL DIAPHRAGMS UTILIZING STAPLES
WITH FRAMING OF DOUGLAS FIR-LARCH, OR SOUTHERN PINE[a] FOR WIND OR SEISMIC LOADING[f]

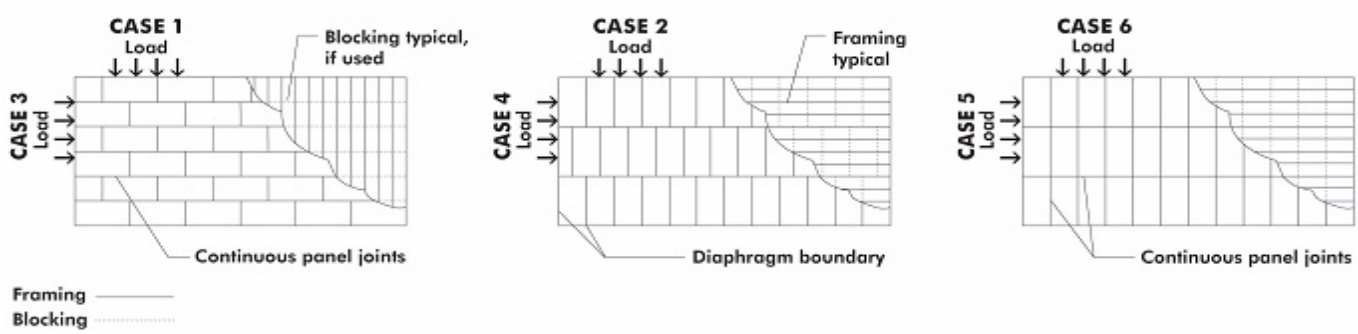
PANEL GRADE	STAPLE LENGTH AND GAGE[d]	MINIMUM FASTENER PENETRATION IN FRAMING (inches)	MINIMUM NOMINAL PANEL THICKNESS (inch)	MINIMUM NOMINAL WIDTH OF FRAMING MEMBERS AT ADJOINING PANEL EDGES AND BOUND	BLOCKED DIAPHRAGMS				UNBLOCKED DIAPHRAGMS	
					Fastener spacing (inches) at diaphragm boundaries (all cases) at continuous panel edges parallel to load (Cases 3, 4), and at all panel edges (Cases 5, 6)[b]				Fasteners spaced 6 max. at supported edges[b]	
					6	4	2[1]/2[c]	2[c]	Case 1 (No unblock	All other configurations

`

				ARIES[e] (inches)	Fastener spacing (inches) at other panel edges (Cases 1, 2, 3 and 4)[b]				ed edges or continu ous joints parallel to load)	(Cases 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6)
					6	6	4	3		
Structur al I grades	$1^1/_2$ 16 gage	1	$^3/_8$	2	175	235	350	400	155	115
				3	200	265	395	450	175	130
			$^{15}/_{32}$	2	175	235	350	400	155	120
				3	200	265	395	450	175	130
Sheathin g, single floor and other grades covered in DOC PS 1 and PS 2	$1^1/_2$ 16 gage	1	$^3/_8$	2	160	210	315	360	140	105
				3	180	235	355	400	160	120
			$^7/_{16}$	2	165	225	335	380	150	110
				3	190	250	375	425	165	125
			$^{15}/_{32}$	2	160	210	315	360	140	105
				3	180	235	355	405	160	120
			$^{19}/_{32}$	2	175	235	350	400	155	115
				3	200	265	395	450	175	130

(continued)

TABLE 2306.2(1)—continued
ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (POUNDS PER FOOT) FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL DIAPHRAGMS UTILIZING STAPLES
WITH FRAMING OF DOUGLAS FIR-LARCH, OR SOUTHERN PINE[a] FOR WIND OR SEISMIC LOADING[f]



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

a. For framing of other species: (1) Find specific gravity for species of lumber in ANSI/AWC NDS. (2) For staples find shear value from table above for Structural I panels (regardless of actual grade) and multiply value by 0.82 for species with specific gravity of 0.42 or greater, or 0.65 for all other species.
b. Space fasteners maximum 12 inches on center along intermediate framing members (6 inches on center where supports are spaced 48 inches on center).
c. Framing at adjoining panel edges shall be 3 inches nominal or wider.
d. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of $^7/_{16}$ inch and shall be installed with their crowns parallel to the long dimension of the framing members.
e. The minimum nominal width of framing members not located at boundaries or adjoining panel edges shall be 2 inches.

`

f. For shear loads of normal or permanent load duration as defined by the ANSI/AWC NDS, the values in the table above shall be multiplied by 0.63 or 0.56, respectively.

TABLE 2306.2(2)
ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (POUNDS PER FOOT) FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL BLOCKED DIAPHRAGMS UTILIZING MULTIPLE ROWS OF STAPLES (HIGH-LOAD DIAPHRAGMS) WITH FRAMING OF DOUGLAS FIR-LARCH OR SOUTHERN PINE[a] FOR WIND OR SEISMIC LOADING[b, g, h]

PANEL GRADE[c]	STAPLE GAGE[f]	MINIMUM FASTENER PENETRATION IN FRAMING (inches)	MINIMUM NOMINAL PANEL THICKNESS (inch)	MINIMUM NOMINAL WIDTH OF FRAMING MEMBER AT ADJOINING PANEL EDGES AND BOUNDARIES[e]	LINES OF FASTENERS	BLOCKED DIAPHRAGMS					
						Cases 1 and 2[d]					
						Fastener Spacing Per Line at Boundaries (inches)					
						4		$2\frac{1}{2}$		2	
						Fastener Spacing Per Line at Other Panel Edges (inches)					
						6	4	4	3	3	2
Structural I grades	14 gage staples	2	$\frac{15}{32}$	3	2	600	600	860	960	1,060	1,200
				4	3	860	900	1,160	1,295	1,295	1,400
			$\frac{19}{32}$	3	2	600	600	875	960	1,075	1,200
				4	3	875	900	1,175	1,440	1,475	1,795
Sheathing single floor and other grades covered in DOC PS 1 and PS 2	14 gage staples	2	$\frac{15}{32}$	3	2	540	540	735	865	915	1,080
				4	3	735	810	1,005	1,105	1,105	1,195
			$\frac{19}{32}$	3	2	600	600	865	960	1,065	1,200
				4	3	865	900	1,130	1,430	1,370	1,485
			$\frac{23}{32}$	4	3	865	900	1,130	1,490	1,430	1,545

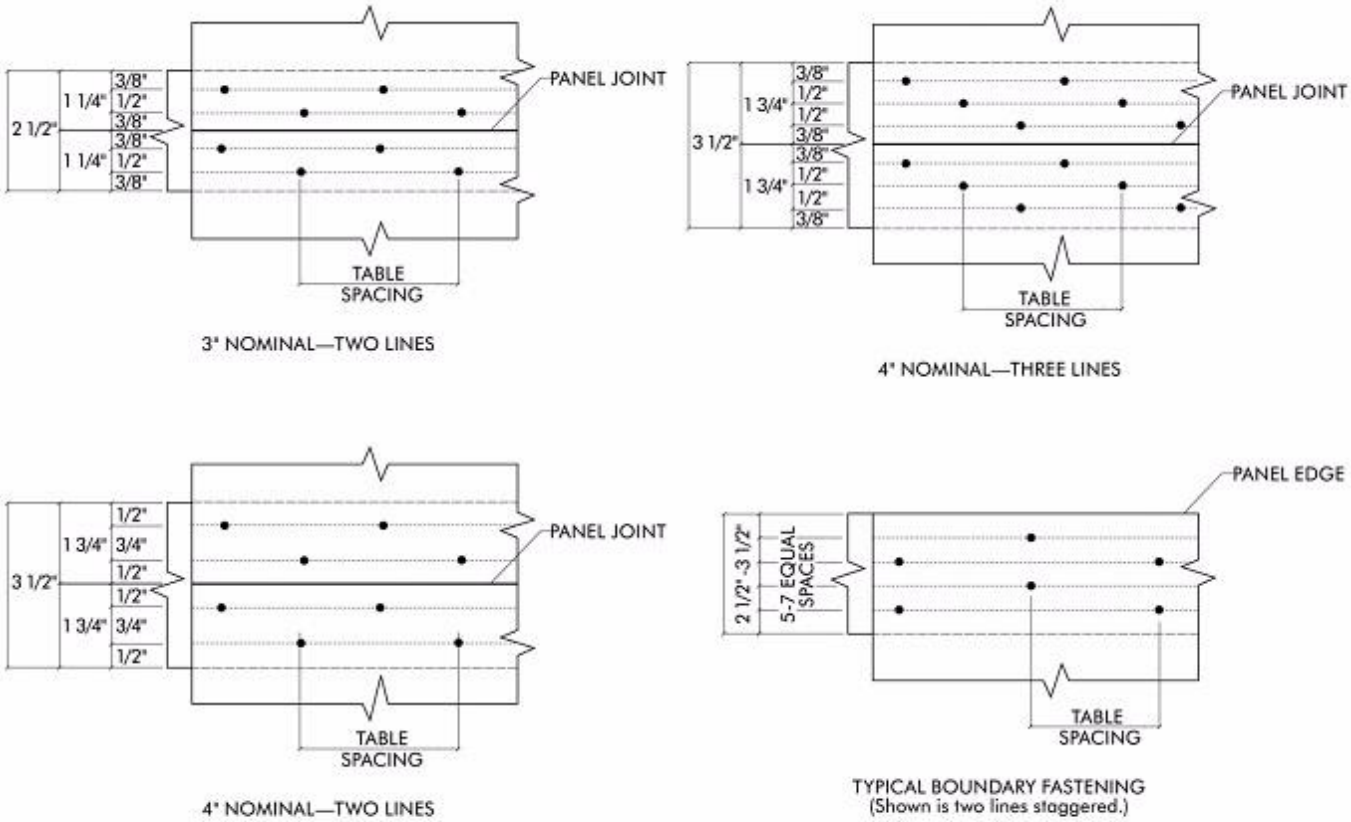
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

a. For framing of other species: (1) Find specific gravity for species of framing lumber in ANSI/AWC NDS. (2) For staples, find shear value from table above for Structural I panels (regardless of actual grade) and multiply value by 0.82 for species with specific gravity of 0.42 or greater, or 0.65 for all other species.
b. Fastening along intermediate framing members: Space fasteners a maximum of 12 inches on center, except 6 inches on center for spans greater than 32 inches.
c. Panels conforming to PS 1 or PS 2.
d. This table gives shear values for Cases 1 and 2 as shown in Table 2306.2(1). The values shown are applicable to Cases 3, 4, 5 and 6 as shown in Table 2306.2(1), providing fasteners at all continuous panel edges are spaced in accordance with the boundary fastener spacing.
e. The minimum nominal depth of framing members shall be 3 inches nominal. The minimum nominal width of framing members not located at boundaries or adjoining panel edges shall be 2 inches.
f. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of $\frac{7}{16}$ inch, and shall be installed with their crowns parallel to the long dimension of the framing members.
g. High-load diaphragms shall be subject to special inspection in accordance with Section 1705.5.1.
h. For shear loads of normal or permanent load duration as defined by the ANSI/AWC NDS, the values in the table above shall be multiplied by 0.63 or 0.56, respectively.

(continued)

`

TABLE 2306.2(2)—continued
ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (POUNDS PER FOOT) FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL BLOCKED DIAPHRAGMS
UTILIZING MULTIPLE ROWS OF STAPLES (HIGH-LOAD DIAPHRAGMS) WITH FRAMING OF
DOUGLAS FIR-LARCH OR SOUTHERN PINE FOR WIND OR SEISMIC LOADING



NOTE: SPACE PANEL END AND EDGE JOINT 1/8 INCH. REDUCE SPACING BETWEEN LINES OF NAILS AS NECESSARY TO MAINTAIN MINIMUM 3/8 INCH FASTERNER EDGE MARGINS, MINIMUM SPACING BETWEEN LINES IS 3/8 INCH

2306.2.1 Gypsum board diaphragm ceilings.
Gypsum board diaphragm ceilings shall be in accordance with Section 2508.5.

2306.3 Wood-frame shear walls.
Wood-frame shear walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with AWC SDPWS. Where panels are fastened to framing members with staples, requirements and limitations of AWC SDPWS shall be met and the allowable shear values set forth in Table 2306.3(1), 2306.3(2) or 2306.3(3) shall be permitted. The allowable shear values in Tables 2306.3(1) and 2306.3(2) are permitted to be increased 40 percent for wind design. Panels complying with ANSI/APA PRP-210 shall be permitted to use design values for Plywood Siding in the AWC SDPWS.

`

TABLE 2306.3(1)
ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (POUNDS PER FOOT) FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SHEAR WALLS UTILIZING STAPLES WITH FRAMING OF DOUGLAS FIR-LARCH OR SOUTHERN PINE[a] FOR WIND OR SEISMIC LOADING[b, f, g, i]

PANEL GRADE	MINIMUM NOMINAL PANEL THICKNESS (inch)	MINIMUM FASTENER PENETRATION IN FRAMING (inches)	PANELS APPLIED DIRECT TO FRAMING					PANELS APPLIED OVER 1/2" OR 5/8" GYPSUM SHEATHING				
			Staple size[h]	Fastener spacing at panel edges (inches)				Staple size[h]	Fastener spacing at panel edges (inches)			
				6	4	3	2[d]		6	4	3	2[d]
Structural I sheathing	3/8	1	1 1/2 16 Gage	155	235	315	400	2 16 Gage	155	235	310	400
	7/16			170	260	345	440		155	235	310	400
	15/32			185	280	375	475		155	235	300	400
Sheathing, plywood siding[e] except Group 5 Species, ANSI/APA PRP 210 siding	5/16[c] or 1/4[c]	1	1 1/2 16 Gage	145	220	295	375	2 16 Gage	110	165	220	285
	3/8			140	210	280	360		140	210	280	360
	7/16			155	230	310	395		140	210	280	360
	15/32			170	255	335	430		140	210	280	360
	19/32		1 3/4 16 Gage	185	280	375	475	—	—	—	—	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

a. For framing of other species: (1) Find specific gravity for species of lumber in ANSI/AWC NDS. (2) For staples find shear value from table above for Structural I panels (regardless of actual grade) and multiply value by 0.82 for species with specific gravity of 0.42 or greater, or 0.65 for all other species.

b. Panel edges backed with 2-inch nominal or wider framing. Install panels either horizontally or vertically. Space fasteners maximum 6 inches on center along intermediate framing members for 3/8-inch and 7/16-inch panels installed on studs spaced 24 inches on center. For other conditions and panel thickness, space fasteners maximum 12 inches on center on intermediate supports.

c. 3/8-inch panel thickness or siding with a span rating of 16 inches on center is the minimum recommended where applied directly to framing as exterior siding. For grooved panel siding, the nominal panel thickness is the thickness of the panel measured at the point of fastening.

d. Framing at adjoining panel edges shall be 3 inches nominal or wider.

e. Values apply to all-veneer plywood. Thickness at point of fastening on panel edges governs shear values.

f. Where panels are applied on both faces of a wall and fastener spacing is less than 6 inches on center on either side, panel joints shall be offset to fall on different framing members, or framing shall be 3 inches nominal or thicker at adjoining panel edges.

`

g. In Seismic Design Category D, E or F, where shear design values exceed 350 pounds per linear foot, all framing members receiving edge fastening from abutting panels shall be not less than a single 3-inch nominal member, or two 2-inch nominal members fastened together in accordance with Section 2306.1 to transfer the design shear value between framing members. Wood structural panel joint and sill plate nailing shall be staggered at all panel edges. See ANSI/ AWC SDPWS for sill plate size and anchorage requirements.

h. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of $^{7}/_{16}$ inch and shall be installed with their crowns parallel to the long dimension of the framing members.

i. For shear loads of normal or permanent load duration as defined by the ANSI/AWC NDS, the values in the table above shall be multiplied by 0.63 or 0.56, respectively.

TABLE 2306.3(2)
ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (plf) FOR WIND OR SEISMIC LOADING ON SHEAR WALLS OF FIBERBOARD
SHEATHING BOARD CONSTRUCTION UTILIZING STAPLES FOR TYPE V CONSTRUCTION ONLY[a, b, c, d, e]

THICKNESS AND GRADE	FASTENER SIZE	ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUE (pounds per linear foot) STAPLE SPACING AT PANEL EDGES (inches)[a]		
		4	3	2
$^{1}/_{2}$" or $^{25}/_{32}$" Structural	No. 16 gage galvanized staple, $^{7}/_{16}$" crown[f]	150	200	225
	No. 16 gage galvanized staple, 1" crown[f]	220	290	325

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

a. Fiberboard sheathing shall not be used to brace concrete or masonry walls.

b. Panel edges shall be backed with 2-inch or wider framing of Douglas Fir-larch or Southern Pine. For framing of other species: (1) Find specific gravity for species of framing lumber in ANSI/AWC NDS. (2) For staples, multiply the shear value from the table above by 0.82 for species with specific gravity of 0.42 or greater, or 0.65 for all other species.

c. Values shown are for fiberboard sheathing on one side only with long panel dimension either parallel or perpendicular to studs.

d. Fastener shall be spaced 6 inches on center along intermediate framing members.

e. Values are not permitted in Seismic Design Category D, E or F.

f. Staple length shall be not less than $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches for $^{25}/_{32}$-inch sheathing or $1^{1}/_{4}$ inches for $^{1}/_{2}$-inch sheathing.

TABLE 2306.3(3)
ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES FOR WIND OR SEISMIC FORCES FOR SHEAR WALLS OF LATH AND PLASTER OR GYPSUM BOARD WOOD FRAMED WALL ASSEMBLIES UTILIZING STAPLES

`

TYPE OF MATERIAL	THICKNESS OF MATERIAL	WALL CONSTRUCTION	STAPLE SPACING[b] MAXIMUM (inches)	SHEAR VALUE[a, c] (plf)	MINIMUM STAPLE SIZE [f, g]
1. Expanded metal or woven wire lath and Portland cement plaster	$^7/_8''$	Unblocked	6	180	No. 16 gage galv. staple, $^7/_8''$ legs
2. Gypsum lath, plain or perforated	$^3/_8''$ lath and $^1/_2''$ plaster	Unblocked	5	100	No. 16 gage galv. staple, $1^1/_8''$ long
3. Gypsum sheating	$^1/_2'' \times 2' \times 8'$	Unblocked	4	75	No. 16 gage galv. staple, $1^3/_4''$ long
	$^1/_2'' \times 4'$	Blocked[d]	4	175	
		Unblocked	7	100	
4. Gypsum board, gypsum veneer base or water-resistant gypsum backing board	$^1/_2''$	Unblocked[d]	7	75	No. 16 gage galv. staple, $1^1/_2''$ long
		Unblocked[d]	4	110	
		Unblocked	7	100	
		Unblocked	4	125	
		Blocked[e]	7	125	
		Blocked[e]	4	150	
	$^5/_8''$	Unblocked[d]	7	115	No. 16 gage galv. staple, $1^1/_2''$ legs, $1^5/_8''$ long
			4	145	
		Blocked[e]	7	145	
			4	175	
		Blocked[e] Two-ply	Base ply: 9 Face ply: 7	250	No. 16 gage galv. staple $1^5/_8''$ long No. 15 gage galv. staple, $2^1/_4''$ long

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

a. These shear walls shall not be used to resist loads imposed by masonry or concrete walls (see AWC SDPWS). Values shown are for short-term loading due to wind or seismic loading. Walls resisting seismic loads shall be subject to the limitations in Section 12.2.1 of ASCE 7. Values shown shall be reduced 25 percent for normal loading.

b. Applies to fastening at studs, top and bottom plates and blocking.

c. Except as noted, shear values are based on a maximum framing spacing of 16 inches on center.

d. Maximum framing spacing of 24 inches on center.

e. All edges are blocked, and edge fastening is provided at all supports and all panel edges.

f. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of $^7/_{16}$ inch, measured outside the legs, and shall be installed with their crowns parallel to the long dimension of the framing members.

g. Staples for the attachment of gypsum lath and woven-wire lath shall have a minimum crown width of $^3/_4$ inch, measured outside the legs.

SECTION 2307
LOAD AND RESISTANCE FACTOR DESIGN

2307.1 Load and resistance factor design.

The design and construction of wood elements and structures using *load and resistance factor design* shall be in accordance with ANSI/ AWC NDS and AWC SDPWS.

SECTION 2308
CONVENTIONAL LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION

2308.1 General.

The requirements of this section are intended for *conventional light-frame construction*. Other construction methods are permitted to be used, provided a satisfactory design is submitted showing compliance with other provisions of this code. Interior nonload-bearing partitions, ceilings and curtain walls of *conventional light-frame construction* are not subject to the limitations of Section 2308.2. Detached one- and two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings (townhouses) not more than three *stories above grade plane* in height with a separate means of egress and their accessory structures shall comply with the *International Residential Code*.

`

2308.1.1 Portions exceeding limitations of conventional light-frame construction.
When portions of a building of otherwise *conventional light-frame construction* exceed the limits of Section 2308.2, those portions and the supporting load path shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the provisions of this code. For the purposes of this section, the term “portions” shall mean parts of buildings containing volume and area such as a room or a series of rooms. The extent of such design need only demonstrate compliance of the nonconventional light-framed elements with other applicable provisions of this code and shall be compatible with the performance of the conventional light-framed system.

2308.1.2 Connections and fasteners.
Connectors and fasteners used in conventional construction shall comply with the requirements of Section 2304.10.

2308.2 Limitations.
Buildings are permitted to be constructed in accordance with the provisions of *conventional light-frame construction*, subject to the limitations in Sections 2308.2.1 through 2308.2.6.

2308.2.1 Stories.
Structures of *conventional light-frame construction* shall be limited in *story* height in accordance with Table 2308.2.1.

TABLE 2308.2.1
ALLOWABLE STORY HEIGHT

SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY	ALLOWABLE STORY ABOVE GRADE PLANE
A and B	Three stories
C	Two stories
D and E[a]	One story

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. For the purposes of this section, for buildings assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D or E, cripple walls shall be considered to be a *story* unless cripple walls are solid blocked and do not exceed 14 inches in height.

2308.2.2 Allowable floor-to-floor height.
Maximum floor-to-floor height shall not exceed 11 feet, 7 inches (3531 mm). Exterior bearing wall and interior braced wall heights shall not exceed a stud height of 10 feet (3048 mm).

2308.2.3 Allowable loads.
Loads shall be in accordance with Chapter 16 and shall not exceed the following:

1. Average dead loads shall not exceed 15 psf (718 N/m^2) for combined roof and ceiling, exterior walls, floors and partitions.

Exceptions:

1. Subject to the limitations of Section 2308.6.10, stone or masonry veneer up to the lesser of 5 inches (127 mm) thick or 50 psf (2395 N/m^2) and installed in accordance with Chapter 14 is permitted to a height of 30 feet (9144 mm)

above a noncombustible foundation, with an additional 8 feet (2438 mm) permitted for gable ends.

2. Concrete or masonry fireplaces, heaters and chimneys shall be permitted in accordance with the provisions of this code.

2. Live loads shall not exceed 40 psf (1916 N/m^2) for floors.

3. Ground snow loads shall not exceed 50 psf (2395 N/ m^2).

2308.2.4 Ultimate wind speed.
V_{ult} shall not exceed 130 miles per hour (57 m/s) (3-second gust).

Exceptions:

1. V_{ult} shall not exceed 140 mph (61.6 m/s) (3-second gust) for buildings in Exposure Category B that are not located in a *hurricane-prone region*.

2. Where V_{ult} exceeds 130 mph (3-second gust), the provisions of either AWC WFCM or ICC 600 are permitted to be used.

2308.2.5 Allowable roof span.
Ceiling joist and rafter framing constructed in accordance with Section 2308.7 and trusses shall not span more than 40 feet (12 192 mm) between points of vertical support. A ridge board in accordance with Section 2308.7 or 2308.7.3.1 shall not be considered a vertical support.

2308.2.6 Risk category limitation.
The use of the provisions for *conventional light-frame construction* in this section shall not be permitted for *Risk Category* IV buildings assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B, C, D or F.

2308.3 Foundations and footings.
Foundations and footings shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapter 18. Connections to foundations and footings shall comply with this section.

2308.3.1 Foundation plates or sills.
Foundation plates or sills resting on concrete or masonry foundations shall comply with Section 2304.3.1. Foundation plates or sills shall be bolted or anchored to the foundation with not less than $^1/_2$-inch-diameter (12.7 mm) steel bolts or *approved* anchors spaced to provide equivalent anchorage as the steel bolts. Bolts shall be embedded at least 7 inches (178 mm) into concrete or masonry. Bolts shall be spaced not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) on center and there shall be not less than two bolts or anchor straps per piece with one bolt or anchor strap located not more than 12 inches (305 mm) or less than 4 inches (102 mm) from each end of each piece. A properly sized nut and washer shall be tightened on each bolt to the plate.

Exceptions:

`

1. Along *braced wall lines* in structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* E, steel bolts with a minimum nominal diameter of $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (15.9 mm) or approved anchor straps load-rated in accordance with Section 2304.10.3 and spaced to provide equivalent anchorage shall be used.

2. Bolts in *braced wall lines* in structures over two stories above grade shall be spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center.

2308.3.2 Braced wall line sill plate anchorage in Seismic Design Categories D and E. Sill plates along *braced wall lines* in buildings assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D or E shall be anchored with anchor bolts with steel plate washers between the foundation sill plate and the nut, or approved anchor straps load-rated in accordance with Section 2304.10.3. Such washers shall be a minimum of 0.229 inch by 3 inches by 3 inches (5.82 mm by 76 mm by 76 mm) in size. The hole in the plate washer is permitted to be diagonally slotted with a width of up to $^{3}/_{16}$ inch (4.76 mm) larger than the bolt diameter and a slot length not to exceed $1^{3}/_{4}$ inches (44 mm), provided a standard cut washer is placed between the plate washer and the nut.

2308.4 Floor framing.
Floor framing shall comply with this section.

2308.4.1 Girders.
Girders for single-story construction or girders supporting loads from a single floor shall be not less than 4 inches by 6 inches (102 mm by 152 mm) for spans 6 feet (1829 mm) or less, provided that girders are spaced not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) on center. Other girders shall be designed to support the loads specified in this code. Girder end joints shall occur over supports.

Where a girder is spliced over a support, an adequate tie shall be provided. The ends of beams or girders supported on masonry or concrete shall not have less than 3 inches (76 mm) of bearing.

2308.4.1.1 Allowable girder spans.
The allowable spans of girders that are fabricated of dimension lumber shall not exceed the values set forth in Table 2308.4.1.1(1) or 2308.4.1.1(2).

TABLE 2308.4.1.1(1)
HEADER AND GIRDER SPANS[a, b] FOR EXTERIOR BEARING WALLS
(Maximum spans for Douglas Fir-Larch, Hem-Fir, Southern Pine and Spruce-Pine-Fir[b] and required number of jack studs)

GIRDERS AND HEADERS SUPPORTING	SIZE	GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf)[e]											
		30						50					
		Building width[c] (feet)											
		20		28		36		20		28		36	
		Span	NJ[d]	Span	NJ[d]	Span	NJ[d]	Span	NJ[d]	Span	NJ[d]	Span	NJ[d]

`

Roof and ceiling	2-2 × 4	3-6	1	3-2	1	2-10	1	3-2	1	2-9	1	2-6	1
	2-2 × 6	5-5	1	4-8	1	4-2	1	4-8	1	4-1	1	3-8	2
	2-2 × 8	6-10	1	5-11	2	5-4	2	5-11	2	5-2	2	4-7	2
	2-2 × 10	8-5	2	7-3	2	6-6	2	7-3	2	6-3	2	5-7	2
	2-2 × 12	9-9	2	8-5	2	7-6	2	8-5	2	7-3	2	6-6	2
	3-2 × 8	8-4	1	7-5	1	6-8	1	7-5	1	6-5	2	5-9	2
	3-2 × 10	10-6	1	9-1	2	8-2	2	9-1	2	7-10	2	7-0	2
	3-2 × 12	12-2	2	10-7	2	9-5	2	10-7	2	9-2	2	8-2	2
	4-2 × 8	9-2	1	8-4	1	7-8	1	8-4	1	7-5	1	6-8	1
	4-2 × 10	11-8	1	10-6	1	9-5	2	10-6	1	9-1	2	8-2	2
	4-2 × 12	14-1	1	12-2	2	10-11	2	12-2	2	10-7	2	9-5	2
Roof, ceiling and one center-bearing floor	2-2 × 4	3-1	1	2-9	1	2-5	1	2-9	1	2-5	1	2-2	1
	2-2 × 6	4-6	1	4-0	1	3-7	2	4-1	1	3-7	2	3-3	2
	2-2 × 8	5-9	2	5-0	2	4-6	2	5-2	2	4-6	2	4-1	2
	2-2 × 10	7-0	2	6-2	2	5-6	2	6-4	2	5-6	2	5-0	2
	2-2 × 12	8-1	2	7-1	2	6-5	2	7-4	2	6-5	2	5-9	3
	3-2 × 8	7-2	1	6-3	2	5-8	2	6-5	2	5-8	2	5-1	2
	3-2 × 10	8-9	2	7-8	2	6-11	2	7-11	2	6-11	2	6-3	2
	3-2 × 12	10-2	2	8-11	2	8-0	2	9-2	2	8-0	2	7-3	2
	4-2 × 8	8-1	1	7-3	1	6-7	1	7-5	1	6-6	1	5-11	2
	4-2 × 10	10-1	1	8-10	2	8-0	2	9-1	2	8-0	2	7-2	2
	4-2 × 12	11-9	2	10-3	2	9-3	2	10-7	2	9-3	2	8-4	2
Roof, ceiling and one clear span floor	2-2 × 4	2-8	1	2-4	1	2-1	1	2-7	1	2-3	1	2-0	1
	2-2 × 6	3-11	1	3-5	2	3-0	2	3-10	2	3-4	2	3-0	2
	2-2 × 8	5-0	2	4-4	2	3-10	2	4-10	2	4-2	2	3-9	2
	2-2 × 10	6-1	2	5-3	2	4-8	2	5-11	2	5-1	2	4-7	3
	2-2 × 12	7-1	2	6-1	3	5-5	3	6-10	2	5-11	3	5-4	3
	3-2 × 8	6-3	2	5-5	2	4-10	2	6-1	2	5-3	2	4-8	2
	3-2 × 10	7-7	2	6-7	2	5-11	2	7-5	2	6-5	2	5-9	2
	3-2 × 12	8-10	2	7-8	2	6-10	2	8-7	2	7-5	2	6-8	2
	4-2 × 8	7-2	1	6-3	2	5-7	2	7-0	1	6-1	2	5-5	2
	4-2 × 10	8-9	2	7-7	2	6-10	2	8-7	2	7-5	2	6-7	2
	4-2 × 12	10-2	2	8-10	2	7-11	2	9-11	2	8-7	2	7-8	2
Roof, ceiling and two center-bearing floors	2-2 × 4	2-7	1	2-3	1	2-0	1	2-6	1	2-2	1	1-11	1
	2-2 × 6	3-9	2	3-3	2	2-11	2	3-8	2	3-2	2	2-10	2
	2-2 × 8	4-9	2	4-2	2	3-9	2	4-7	2	4-0	2	3-8	2
	2-2 × 10	5-9	2	5-1	2	4-7	3	5-8	2	4-11	2	4-5	3
	2-2 × 12	6-8	2	5-10	3	5-3	3	6-6	2	5-9	3	5-2	3
	3-2 × 8	5-11	2	5-2	2	4-8	2	5-9	2	5-1	2	4-7	2
	3-2 × 10	7-3	2	6-4	2	5-8	2	7-1	2	6-2	2	5-7	2

`

	3-2 × 12	8-5	2	7-4	2	6-7	2	8-2	2	7-2	2	6-5	3
	4-2 × 8	6-10	1	6-0	2	5-5	2	6-8	1	5-10	2	5-3	2
	4-2 × 10	8-4	2	7-4	2	6-7	2	8-2	2	7-2	2	6-5	2
	4-2 × 12	9-8	2	8-6	2	7-8	2	9-5	2	8-3	2	7-5	2
Roof, ceiling, and two clear span floors	2-2 × 4	2-1	1	1-8	1	1-6	2	2-0	1	1-8	1	1-5	2
	2-2 × 6	3-1	2	2-8	2	2-4	2	3-0	2	2-7	2	2-3	2
	2-2 × 8	3-10	2	3-4	2	3-0	3	3-10	2	3-4	2	2-11	3

(continued)

TABLE 2308.4.1.1(1)—continued

HEADER AND GIRDER SPANS[a, b] FOR EXTERIOR BEARING WALLS

(Maximum spans for Douglas Fir-Larch, Hem-Fir, Southern Pine and Spruce-Pine-Fir[b] and required number of jack studs)

GIRDERS AND HEADERS SUPPORTING	SIZE	GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf)[e]											
		30						50					
		Building width[c] (feet)											
		20		28		36		20		28		36	
		Span	NJ[d]	Span	NJ[d]	Span	NJ[d]	Span	NJ[d]	Span	NJ[d]	Span	NJ[d]
Roof, ceiling, and two clear span floors	2-2 × 10	4-9	2	4-1	3	3-8	3	4-8	2	4-0	3	3-7	3
	2-2 × 12	5-6	3	4-9	3	4-3	3	5-5	3	4-8	3	4-2	3
	3-2 × 8	4-10	2	4-2	2	3-9	2	4-9	2	4-1	2	3-8	2
	3-2 × 10	5-11	2	5-1	2	4-7	3	5-10	2	5-0	2	4-6	3
	3-2 × 12	6-10	2	5-11	3	5-4	3	6-9	2	5-10	3	5-3	3
	4-2 × 8	5-7	2	4-10	2	4-4	2	5-6	2	4-9	2	4-3	2
	4-2 × 10	6-10	2	5-11	2	5-3	2	6-9	2	5-10	2	5-2	2
	4-2 × 12	7-11	2	6-10	2	6-2	3	7-9	2	6-9	2	6-0	3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Spans are given in feet and inches.
b. Spans are based on minimum design properties for No. 2 grade lumber of Douglas Fir-Larch, Hem-Fir and Spruce-Pine Fir. No. 1 or better grade lumber shall be used for Southern Pine.
c. Building width is measured perpendicular to the ridge. For widths between those shown, spans are permitted to be interpolated.
d. NJ - Number of jack studs required to support each end. Where the number of required jack studs equals one, the header is permitted to be supported by an approved framing anchor attached to the full-height wall stud and to the header.
e. Use 30 psf ground snow load for cases in which ground snow load is less than 30 psf and the roof live load is equal to or less than 20 psf.

`

TABLE 2308.4.1.1(2)

HEADER AND GIRDER SPANS[a, b] FOR INTERIOR BEARING WALLS

(Maximum spans for Douglas Fir-Larch, Hem-Fir, Southern Pine and Spruce-Pine-Fir[b] and required number of jack studs)

HEADERS AND GIRDERS SUPPORTING	SIZE	BUILDING WIDTH[c] (feet)					
		20		28		36	
		Span	NJ[d]	Span	NJ[d]	Span	NJ[d]
One floor only	2-2 × 4	3-1	1	2-8	1	2-5	1
	2-2 × 6	4-6	1	3-11	1	3-6	1
	2-2 × 8	5-9	1	5-0	2	4-5	2
	2-2 × 10	7-0	2	6-1	2	5-5	2
	2-2 × 12	8-1	2	7-0	2	6-3	2
	3-2 × 8	7-2	1	6-3	1	5-7	2
	3-2 × 10	8-9	1	7-7	2	6-9	2
	3-2 × 12	10-2	2	8-10	2	7-10	2
	4-2 × 8	9-0	1	7-8	1	6-9	1
	4-2 × 10	10-1	1	8-9	1	7-10	2
	4-2 × 12	11-9	1	10-2	2	9-1	2
Two floors	2-2 × 4	2-2	1	1-10	1	1-7	1
	2-2 × 6	3-2	2	2-9	2	2-5	2
	2-2 × 8	4-1	2	3-6	2	3-2	2
	2-2 × 10	4-11	2	4-3	2	3-10	3
	2-2 × 12	5-9	2	5-0	3	4-5	3
	3-2 × 8	5-1	2	4-5	2	3-11	2
	3-2 × 10	6-2	2	5-4	2	4-10	2
	3-2 × 12	7-2	2	6-3	2	5-7	3
	4-2 × 8	6-1	1	5-3	2	4-8	2
	4-2 × 10	7-2	2	6-2	2	5-6	2
	4-2 × 12	8-4	2	7-2	2	6-5	2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Spans are given in feet and inches.

b. Spans are based on minimum design properties for No. 2 grade lumber of Douglas Fir-Larch, Hem-Fir and Spruce-Pine Fir. No. 1 or better grade lumber shall be used for Southern Pine.

c. Building width is measured perpendicular to the ridge. For widths between those shown, spans are permitted to be interpolated.

d. NJ - Number of jack studs required to support each end. Where the number of required jack studs equals one, the header is permitted to be supported by an approved framing anchor attached to the full-height wall stud and to the header.

2308.4.2 Floor joists.

Floor joists shall comply with this section.

2308.4.2.1 Span.

Spans for floor joists shall be in accordance with Table 2308.4.2.1(1) or 2308.4.2.1(2) or the AWC STJR.

`

TABLE 2308.4.2.1(1)
FLOOR JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Residential sleeping areas, live load = 30 psf, L/Δ = 360)

JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				DEAD LOAD = 20 psf			
			2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum floor joist spans							
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	12-6	16-6	21-0	25-7	12-6	16-6	21-0	25-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	12-0	15-10	20-3	24-8	12-0	15-7	19-0	22-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	11-10	15-7	19-10	23-0	11-6	14-7	17-9	20-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	9-8	12-4	15-0	17-5	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
	Hem-Fir	SS	11-10	15-7	19-10	24-2	11-10	15-7	19-10	24-2
	Hem-Fir	#1	11-7	15-3	19-5	23-7	11-7	15-2	18-6	21-6
	Hem-Fir	#2	11-0	14-6	18-6	22-6	11-0	14-4	17-6	20-4
	Hem-Fir	#3	9-8	12-4	15-0	17-5	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
	Southern Pine	SS	12-3	16-2	20-8	25-1	12-3	16-2	20-8	25-1
	Southern Pine	#1	11-10	15-7	19-10	24-2	11-10	15-7	18-7	22-0
	Southern Pine	#2	11-3	14-11	18-1	21-4	10-9	13-8	16-2	19-1
	Southern Pine	#3	9-2	11-6	14-0	16-6	8-2	10-3	12-6	14-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	11-7	15-3	19-5	23-7	11-7	15-3	19-5	23-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	11-3	14-11	19-0	23-0	11-3	14-7	17-9	20-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	11-3	14-11	19-0	23-0	11-3	14-7	17-9	20-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	9-8	12-4	15-0	17-5	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	11-4	15-0	19-1	23-3	11-4	15-0	19-1	23-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-11	14-5	18-5	21-4	10-8	13-6	16-5	19-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	10-9	14-1	17-2	19-11	9-11	12-7	15-5	17-10
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6
	Hem-Fir	SS	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11
	Hem-Fir	#1	10-6	13-10	17-8	20-9	10-4	13-1	16-0	18-7
	Hem-Fir	#2	10-0	13-2	16-10	19-8	9-10	12-5	15-2	17-7
	Hem-Fir	#3	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6
	Southern Pine	SS	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10
	Southern Pine	#1	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-4	10-9	13-9	16-1	19-1
	Southern Pine	#2	10-3	13-3	15-8	18-6	9-4	11-10	14-0	16-6
	Southern Pine	#3	7-11	10-10	12-1	14-4	7-1	8-11	10-10	12-10

`

	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	10-3	13-6	17-2	19-11	9-11	12-7	15-5	17-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	10-3	13-6	17-2	19-11	9-11	12-7	15-5	17-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6

(continued)

TABLE 2308.4.2.1(1)—continued
FLOOR JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Residential sleeping areas, live load = 30 psf, L/Δ = 360)

JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				DEAD LOAD = 20 psf			
			2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum floor joist spans							
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	10-8	14-1	18-0	21-10	10-8	14-1	18-0	21-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-4	13-7	16-9	19-6	9-8	12-4	15-0	17-5
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	10-1	12-10	15-8	18-3	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4
	Hem-Fir	SS	10-1	13-4	17-0	20-8	10-1	13-4	17-0	20-7
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-10	13-0	16-4	19-0	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-0
	Hem-Fir	#2	9-5	12-5	15-6	17-1	8-11	11-4	13-10	16-1
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4
	Southern Pine	SS	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6
	Southern Pine	#1	10-1	13-4	16-5	19-6	9-11	12-7	14-8	17-5
	Southern Pine	#2	9-6	12-1	14-4	16-10	8-6	10-10	12-10	15-1
	Southern Pine	#3	7-3	9-1	11-0	13-1	6-5	8-2	9-10	11-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-10	13-0	16-7	20-2	9-10	13-0	16-7	19-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	9-8	12-9	15-8	18-3	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	9-8	12-9	15-8	18-3	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4

`

24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-11	13-1	16-8	20-3	9-11	13-1	16-2	18-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	9-7	12-4	15-0	17-5	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-2	7-9	9-6	11-0
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-4	12-4	15-9	19-2	9-4	12-4	15-9	18-5
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-2	12-0	14-8	17-0	8-6	10-9	13-1	15-2
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-9	11-4	13-10	16-1	8-0	10-2	12-5	14-4
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-2	7-9	9-6	11-0
	Southern Pine	SS	9-9	12-10	16-5	19-11	9-9	12-10	16-5	19-8
	Southern Pine	#1	9-4	12-4	14-8	17-5	8-10	11-3	13-1	15-7
	Southern Pine	#2	8-6	10-10	12-10	15-1	7-7	9-8	11-5	13-6
	Southern Pine	#3	6-5	8-2	9-10	11-8	5-9	7-3	8-10	10-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-2	12-1	15-5	18-9	9-2	12-1	15-0	17-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-11	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-11	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-2	7-9	9-6	11-0

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
Note: Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

TABLE 2308.4.2.1(2)
FLOOR JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Residential living areas, live load = 40 psf, L/Δ = 360)

JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				DEAD LOAD = 20 psf			
			2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum floor joist spans							
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	11-4	15-0	19-1	23-3	11-4	15-0	19-1	23-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-11	14-5	18-5	22-0	10-11	14-2	17-4	20-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	10-9	14-2	17-9	20-7	10-6	13-3	16-3	18-10
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7	7-11	10-0	12-3	14-3

`

	Hem-Fir	SS	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11
	Hem-Fir	#1	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6	10-6	13-10	16-11	19-7
	Hem-Fir	#2	10-0	13-2	16-10	20-4	10-0	13-1	16-0	18-6
	Hem-Fir	#3	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7	7-11	10-0	12-3	14-3
	Southern Pine	SS	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10
	Southern Pine	#1	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11	10-9	14-2	16-11	20-1
	Southern Pine	#2	10-3	13-6	16-2	19-1	9-10	12-6	14-9	17-5
	Southern Pine	#3	8-2	10-3	12-6	14-9	7-5	9-5	11-5	13-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	10-3	13-6	17-3	20-7	10-3	13-3	16-3	18-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	10-3	13-6	17-3	20-7	10-3	13-3	16-3	18-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7	7-11	10-0	12-3	14-3
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	10-4	13-7	17-4	21-1	10-4	13-7	17-4	21-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	9-11	13-1	16-5	19-1	9-8	12-4	15-0	17-5
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-9	12-7	15-5	17-10	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-9	12-10	16-5	19-11	9-9	12-10	16-5	19-11
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-6	12-7	16-0	18-7	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-0
	Hem-Fir	#2	9-1	12-0	15-2	17-7	8-11	11-4	13-10	16-1
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4
	Southern Pine	SS	10-2	13-4	17-0	20-9	10-2	13-4	17-0	20-9
	Southern Pine	#1	9-9	12-10	16-1	19-1	9-9	12-7	14-8	17-5
	Southern Pine	#2	9-4	11-10	14-0	16-6	8-6	10-10	12-10	15-1
	Southern Pine	#3	7-1	8-11	10-10	12-10	6-5	8-2	9-10	11-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-6	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	9-4	12-3	15-5	17-10	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	9-4	12-3	15-5	17-10	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4

(continued)

`

TABLE 2308.4.2.1(2)—continued
FLOOR JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Residential living areas, live load = 40 psf, L/Δ = 360)

JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				DEAD LOAD = 20 psf			
			2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum floor joist spans							
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-8	12-10	16-4	19-10	9-8	12-10	16-4	19-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	9-4	12-4	15-0	17-5	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-3	10-6	12-10	14-10
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-3	7-11	9-8	11-3
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-2	12-1	15-5	18-9	9-2	12-1	15-5	18-9
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-0	11-10	14-8	17-0	8-8	10-11	13-4	15-6
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-7	11-3	13-10	16-1	8-2	10-4	12-8	14-8
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-3	7-11	9-8	11-3
	Southern Pine	SS	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-6	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-6
	Southern Pine	#1	9-2	12-1	14-8	17-5	9-0	11-5	13-5	15-11
	Southern Pine	#2	8-6	10-10	12-10	15-1	7-9	9-10	11-8	13-9
	Southern Pine	#3	6-5	8-2	9-10	11-8	5-11	7-5	9-0	10-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-0	11-10	15-1	18-4	9-0	11-10	15-1	17-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#	8-9	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-3	10-6	12-10	14-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-9	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-3	10-6	12-10	14-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-3	7-11	9-8	11-3
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-0	11-11	15-2	18-5	9-0	11-11	14-9	17-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7	7-11	10-0	12-3	14-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7	7-5	9-5	11-6	13-4
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-2	7-9	9-6	11-0	5-7	7-1	8-8	10-1
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-6	11-3	14-4	17-5	8-6	11-3	14-4	16-10[a]

`

	Hem-Fir	#1	8-4	10-9	13-1	15-2	7-9	9-9	11-11	13-10
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-11	10-2	12-5	14-4	7-4	9-3	11-4	13-1
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-2	7-9	9-6	11-0	5-7	7-1	8-8	10-1
	Southern Pine	SS	8-10	11-8	14-11	18-1	8-10	11-8	14-11	18-0
	Southern Pine	#1	8-6	11-3	13-1	15-7	8-1	10-3	12-0	14-3
	Southern Pine	#2	7-7	9-8	11-5	13-6	7-0	8-10	10-5	12-4
	Southern Pine	#3	5-9	7-3	8-10	10-5	5-3	6-8	8-1	9-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-4	11-0	14-0	17-0	8-4	11-0	13-8	15-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7	7-5	9-5	11-6	13-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7	7-5	9-5	11-6	13-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-2	7-9	9-6	11-0	5-7	7-1	8-8	10-1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
Note: Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
a. End bearing length shall be increased to 2 inches.

2308.4.2.2 Bearing.

The ends of each joist shall have not less than $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm) of bearing on wood or metal, or not less than 3 inches (76 mm) on masonry, except where supported on a 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) ribbon strip and nailed to the adjoining stud.

2308.4.2.3 Framing details.

Joists shall be supported laterally at the ends and at each support by solid blocking except where the ends of the joists are nailed to a header, band or rim joist or to an adjoining stud or by other means. Solid blocking shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness and the full depth of the joist. Joist framing from opposite sides of a beam, girder or partition shall be lapped at least 3 inches (76 mm) or the opposing joists shall be tied together in an approved manner. Joists framing into the side of a wood girder shall be supported by framing anchors or on ledger strips not less than 2 inches by 2 inches (51 mm by 51 mm).

2308.4.2.4 Notches and holes.

Notches on the ends of joists shall not exceed one-fourth the joist depth. Notches in the top or bottom of joists shall not exceed one-sixth the depth and shall not be located in the middle third of the span. Holes bored in joists shall not be within 2 inches (51 mm) of the top or bottom of the joist and the diameter of any such hole shall not exceed one-third the depth of the joist.

2308.4.3 Engineered wood products.

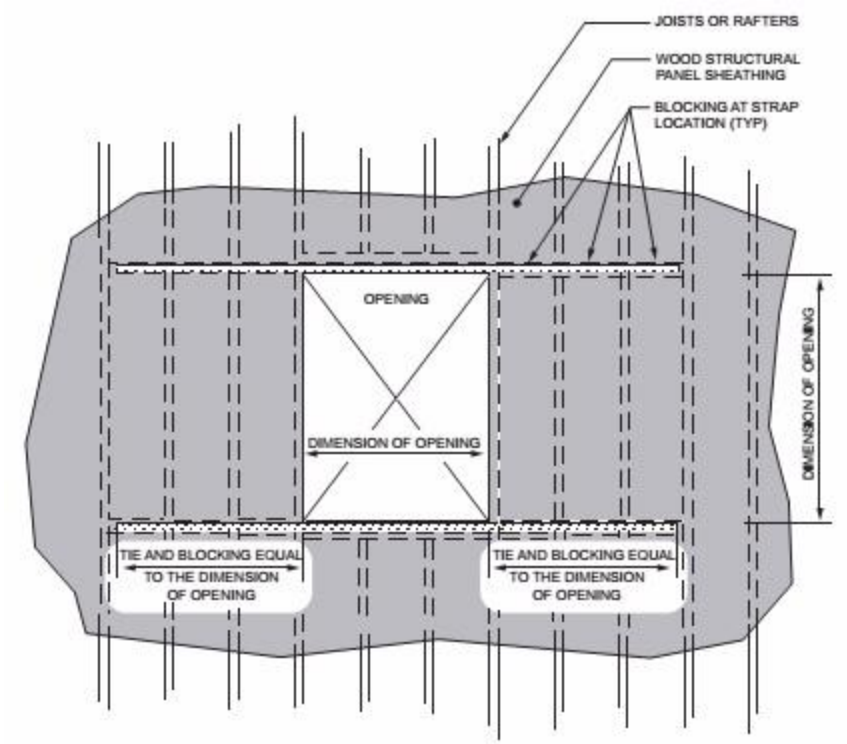
Engineered wood products shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glued-laminated members or I-joists are not permitted except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a *registered design professional*.

`

2308.4.4 Framing around openings.
Trimmer and header joists shall be doubled, or of lumber of equivalent cross section, where the span of the header exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm). The ends of header joists more than 6 feet (1829 mm) in length shall be supported by framing anchors or joist hangers unless bearing on a beam, partition or wall. Tail joists over 12 feet (3658 mm) in length shall be supported at the header by framing anchors or on ledger strips not less than 2 inches by 2 inches (51 mm by 51 mm).

2308.4.4.1 Openings in floor diaphragms in Seismic Design Categories B, C, D and E.
Openings in horizontal diaphragms in *Seismic Design Categories* B, C, D and E with a dimension that is greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) shall be constructed with metal ties and blocking in accordance with this section and Figure 2308.4.4.1(1). Metal ties shall be not less than 0.058 inch [1.47 mm (16 galvanized gage)] in thickness by $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm) in width and shall have a yield stress not less than 33,000 psi (227 Mpa). Blocking shall extend not less than the dimension of the opening in the direction of the tie and blocking. Ties shall be attached to blocking in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions but with not less than eight 16d common nails on each side of the header-joist intersection.

Openings in floor diaphragms in *Seismic Design Categories* D and E shall not have any dimension exceeding 50 percent of the distance between braced wall lines or an area greater than 25 percent of the area between orthogonal pairs of braced wall lines [see Figure 2308.4.4.1(2)]; or the portion of the structure containing the opening shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice to resist the forces specified in Chapter 16, to the extent such irregular opening affects the performance of the conventional framing system.



`

FIGURE 2308.4.4.1(1)
OPENINGS IN FLOOR AND ROOF DIAPHRAGMS

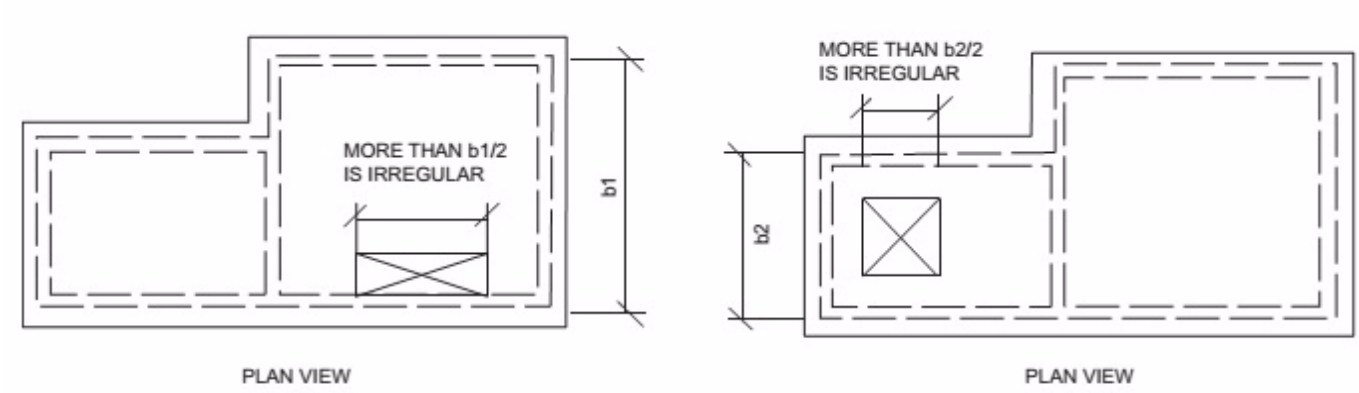


FIGURE 2308.4.4.1(2)
OPENING LIMITATIONS FOR FLOOR AND ROOF DIAPHRAGMS

2308.4.4.2 Vertical offsets in floor diaphragms in Seismic Design Categories D and E.
In *Seismic Design Categories* D and E, portions of a floor level shall not be vertically offset such that the framing members on either side of the offset cannot be lapped or tied together in an *approved* manner in accordance with Figure 2308.4.4.2 unless the portion of the structure containing the irregular offset is designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

Exception: Framing supported directly by foundations need not be lapped or tied directly together.

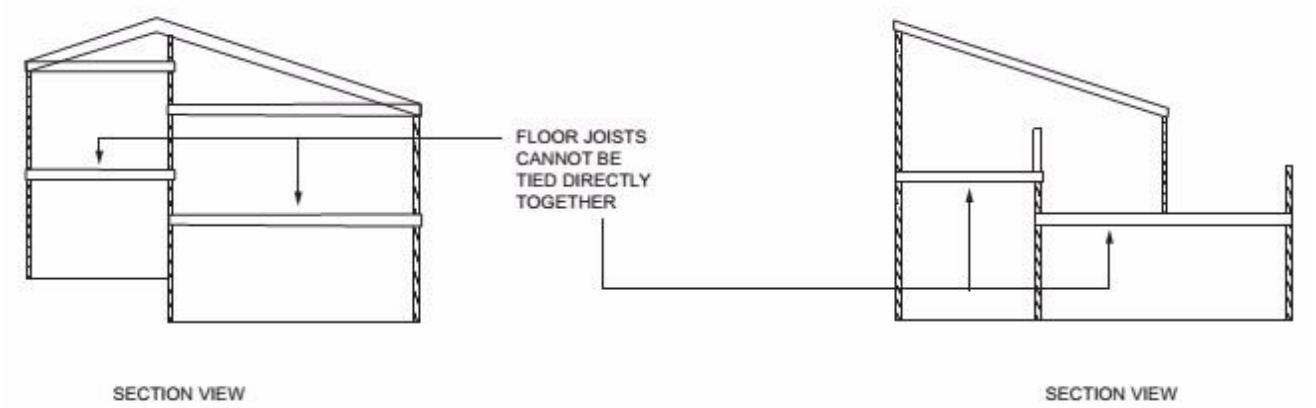


FIGURE 2308.4.4.2
PORTIONS OF FLOOR LEVEL OFFSET VERTICALLY

2308.4.5 Joists supporting bearing partitions.
Bearing partitions parallel to joists shall be supported on beams, girders, doubled joists, walls or other bearing partitions. Bearing partitions perpendicular to joists shall not be offset from supporting girders, walls or partitions more than the joist depth unless such joists are of sufficient size to carry the additional load.

`

2308.4.6 Lateral support.
Floor and ceiling framing with a nominal depth-to-thickness ratio not less than 5 to 1 shall have one edge held in line for the entire span. Where the nominal depth-to-thickness ratio of the framing member exceeds 6 to 1, there shall be one line of bridging for each 8 feet (2438 mm) of span, unless both edges of the member are held in line. The bridging shall consist of not less than 1-inch by 3-inch (25 mm by 76 mm) lumber, double nailed at each end, or equivalent metal bracing of equal rigidity, full-depth solid blocking or other *approved* means. A line of bridging shall also be required at supports where equivalent lateral support is not otherwise provided.

2308.4.7 Structural floor sheathing.
Structural floor sheathing shall comply with the provisions of Section 2304.8.1.

2308.4.8 Under-floor ventilation.
For under-floor ventilation, see Section 1203.4.

2308.4.9 Floor framing supporting braced wall panels.
Where braced wall panels are supported by cantilevered floors or are set back from the floor joist support, the floor framing shall comply with Section 2308.6.7.

2308.4.10 Anchorage of exterior means of egress components in Seismic Design Categories D and E.
Exterior egress balconies, exterior stairways and ramps and similar means of egress components in structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D or E shall be positively anchored to the primary structure at not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) on center or shall be designed for lateral forces. Such attachment shall not be accomplished by use of toenails or nails subject to withdrawal.

2308.5 Wall construction.
Walls of *conventional light-frame* construction shall be in accordance with this section.

2308.5.1 Stud size, height and spacing.
The size, height and spacing of studs shall be in accordance with Table 2308.5.1.

Studs shall be continuous from a support at the sole plate to a support at the top plate to resist loads perpendicular to the wall. The support shall be a foundation or floor, ceiling or roof diaphragm or shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

Exception: Jack studs, trimmer studs and cripple studs at openings in walls that comply with Table 2308.4.1.1(1) or 2308.4.1.1(2).

TABLE 2308.5.1
SIZE, HEIGHT AND SPACING OF WOOD STUDS[c]

STUD SIZE (inches)	BEARING WALLS				NONBEARING WALLS	
	Laterally unsupported stud height[a] (feet)	Supporting roof and ceiling only	Supporting one floor, roof and ceiling	Supporting two floors, roof and ceiling	Laterally unsupported stud height[a] (feet)	Spacing (inches)

`

		Spacing (inches)				
2 × 3[b]	—	—	—	—	10	16
2 × 4	10	24	16	—	14	24
3 × 4	10	24	24	16	14	24
2 × 5	10	24	24	—	16	24
2 × 6	10	24	24	16	20	24

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Listed heights are distances between points of lateral support placed perpendicular to the plane of the wall. Increases in unsupported height are permitted where justified by an analysis.

b. Shall not be used in exterior walls.

c. Utility-grade studs shall not be spaced more than 16 inches on center or support more than a roof and ceiling, or exceed 8 feet in height for exterior walls and load-bearing walls or 10 feet for interior nonload-bearing walls.

2308.5.2 Framing details.
Studs shall be placed with their wide dimension perpendicular to the wall. Not less than three studs shall be installed at each corner of an *exterior wall*.

Exceptions:

1. In interior nonbearing walls and partitions, studs are permitted to be set with the long dimension parallel to the wall.

2. At corners, two studs are permitted, provided that wood spacers or backup cleats of $^{3}/_{8}$-inch-thick (9.5 mm) wood structural panel, $^{3}/_{8}$-inch (9.5 mm) Type M “Exterior Glue” particleboard, 1-inch-thick (25 mm) lumber or other approved devices that will serve as an adequate backing for the attachment of facing materials are used. Where *fire-resistance ratings* or shear values are involved, wood spacers, backup cleats or other devices shall not be used unless specifically *approved* for such use.

2308.5.3 Plates and sills.
Studs shall have plates and sills in accordance with this section.

2308.5.3.1 Bottom plate or sill.
Studs shall have full bearing on a plate or sill. Plates or sills shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal in thickness and have a width not less than the width of the wall studs.

2308.5.3.2 Top plates.
Bearing and exterior wall studs shall be capped with double top plates installed to provide overlapping at corners and at intersections with other partitions. End joints in double top plates shall be offset not less than 48 inches (1219 mm), and shall be nailed in accordance with Table 2304.10.1. Plates shall be a nominal 2 inches (51 mm) in depth and have a width not less than the width of the studs.

Exception: A single top plate is permitted, provided that the plate is adequately tied at corners and intersecting walls by not less than the equivalent of 3-inch by 6-inch (76 mm by 152 mm) by 0.036-inch-thick (0.914 mm) galvanized steel plate that is nailed to each wall or segment of wall by six 8d [$2^{1}/_{2}$” × 0.113” (64-mm by 2.87 mm)] box nails or equivalent on each side of the joint. For the butt-joint splice between adjacent single top plates, not less than the equivalent of a 3-inch by 12-inch (76 mm

`

by 304 mm) by 0.036-inch-thick (0.914 mm) galvanized steel plate that is nailed to each wall or segment of wall by 12 8d [$2^1/_2$-inch × 0.113-inch (64 mm by 2.87 mm)] box nails on each side of the joint shall be required, provided that the rafters, joists or trusses are centered over the studs with a tolerance of not more than 1 inch (25 mm). The top plate shall not be required over headers that are in the same plane and in line with the upper surface of the adjacent top plates and are tied to adjacent wall sections as required for the butt joint splice between adjacent single top plates.

Where bearing studs are spaced at 24-inch (610 mm) intervals, top plates are less than two 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) or two 3-inch by 4-inch (76 mm by 102 mm) members and the floor joists, floor trusses or roof trusses that they support are spaced at more than 16-inch (406 mm) intervals, such joists or trusses shall bear within 5 inches (127 mm) of the studs beneath or a third plate shall be installed.

2308.5.4 Nonload-bearing walls and partitions.
In nonload-bearing walls and partitions, that are not part of a braced wall panel, studs shall be spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center. In interior nonload-bearing walls and partitions, studs are permitted to be set with the long dimension parallel to the wall. Where studs are set with the long dimensions parallel to the wall, use of utility grade lumber or studs exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm) is not permitted. Interior nonload-bearing partitions shall be capped with not less than a single top plate installed to provide overlapping at corners and at intersections with other walls and partitions. The plate shall be continuously tied at joints by solid blocking not less than 16 inches (406 mm) in length and equal in size to the plate or by $^1/_2$-inch by $1^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm by 38 mm) metal ties with spliced sections fastened with two 16d nails on each side of the joint.

2308.5.5 Openings in walls and partitions.
Openings in exterior and interior walls and partitions shall comply with Sections 2308.5.5.1 through 2308.5.5.3.

2308.5.5.1 Openings in exterior bearing walls.
Headers shall be provided over each opening in exterior bearing walls. The size and spans in Table 2308.4.1.1(1) are permitted to be used for one- and two-family *dwellings*. Headers for other buildings shall be designed in accordance with Section 2301.2, Item 1 or 2. Headers shall be of two pieces of nominal 2-inch (51 mm) framing lumber set on edge as permitted by Table 2308.4.1.1(1) and nailed together in accordance with Table 2304.10.1 or of solid lumber of equivalent size.

Wall studs shall support the ends of the header in accordance with Table 2308.4.1.1(1). Each end of a lintel or header shall have a bearing length of not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) for the full width of the lintel.

2308.5.5.2 Openings in interior bearing partitions.
Headers shall be provided over each opening in interior bearing partitions as required in Section 2308.5.5.1. The spans in Table 2308.4.1.1(2) are permitted to be used. Wall studs shall support the ends of the header in accordance with Table 2308.4.1.1(1) or 2308.4.1.1(2), as applicable.

2308.5.5.3 Openings in interior nonbearing partitions.
Openings in nonbearing partitions are permitted to be framed with single studs and

headers. Each end of a lintel or header shall have a bearing length of not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) for the full width of the lintel.

2308.5.6 Cripple walls.
Foundation cripple walls shall be framed of studs that are not less than the size of the studding above and not less than 14 inches (356 mm) in length, or shall be framed of solid blocking. Where exceeding 4 feet (1219 mm) in height, such walls shall be framed of studs having the size required for an additional *story*. See Section 2308.6.6 for cripple wall bracing.

2308.5.7 Bridging.
Unless covered by interior or *exterior wall coverings* or sheathing meeting the minimum requirements of this code, stud partitions or walls with studs having a height-to-least-thickness ratio exceeding 50 shall have bridging that is not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness and of the same width as the studs fitted snugly and nailed thereto to provide adequate lateral support. Bridging shall be placed in every stud cavity and at a frequency such that no stud so braced shall have a height-to-least-thickness ratio exceeding 50 with the height of the stud measured between horizontal framing and bridging or between bridging, whichever is greater.

2308.5.8 Pipes in walls.
Stud partitions containing plumbing, heating or other pipes shall be framed and the joists underneath spaced to provide proper clearance for the piping. Where a partition containing piping runs parallel to the floor joists, the joists underneath such partitions shall be doubled and spaced to permit the passage of pipes and shall be bridged. Where plumbing, heating or other pipes are placed in, or partly in, a partition, necessitating the cutting of the soles or plates, a metal tie not less than 0.058 inch (1.47 mm) (16 galvanized gage) and $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in width shall be fastened to each plate across and to each side of the opening with not less than six 16d nails.

2308.5.9 Cutting and notching.
In exterior walls and bearing partitions, wood studs are permitted to be cut or notched to a depth not exceeding 25 percent of the width of the stud. Cutting or notching of studs to a depth not greater than 40 percent of the width of the stud is permitted in nonbearing partitions supporting no loads other than the weight of the partition.

2308.5.10 Bored holes.
Bored holes not greater than 40 percent of the stud width are permitted to be bored in any wood stud. Bored holes not greater than 60 percent of the stud width are permitted in nonbearing partitions or in any wall where each bored stud is doubled, provided not more than two such successive doubled studs are so bored. In no case shall the edge of a bored hole be nearer than $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm) to the edge of the stud. Bored holes shall not be located at the same section of stud as a cut or notch.

2308.5.11 Exterior wall sheathing.
Except where stucco construction that complies with Section 2510 is installed, the outside of exterior walls, including gables, of enclosed buildings shall be sheathed with one of the materials of the nominal thickness specified in Table 2308.5.11 with fasteners in accordance with the requirements of Section 2304.10 or fasteners designed in accordance with

`

accepted engineering practice. Alternatively, sheathing materials and fasteners complying with Section 2304.6 shall be permitted.

TABLE 2308.5.11
MINIMUM THICKNESS OF WALL SHEATHING

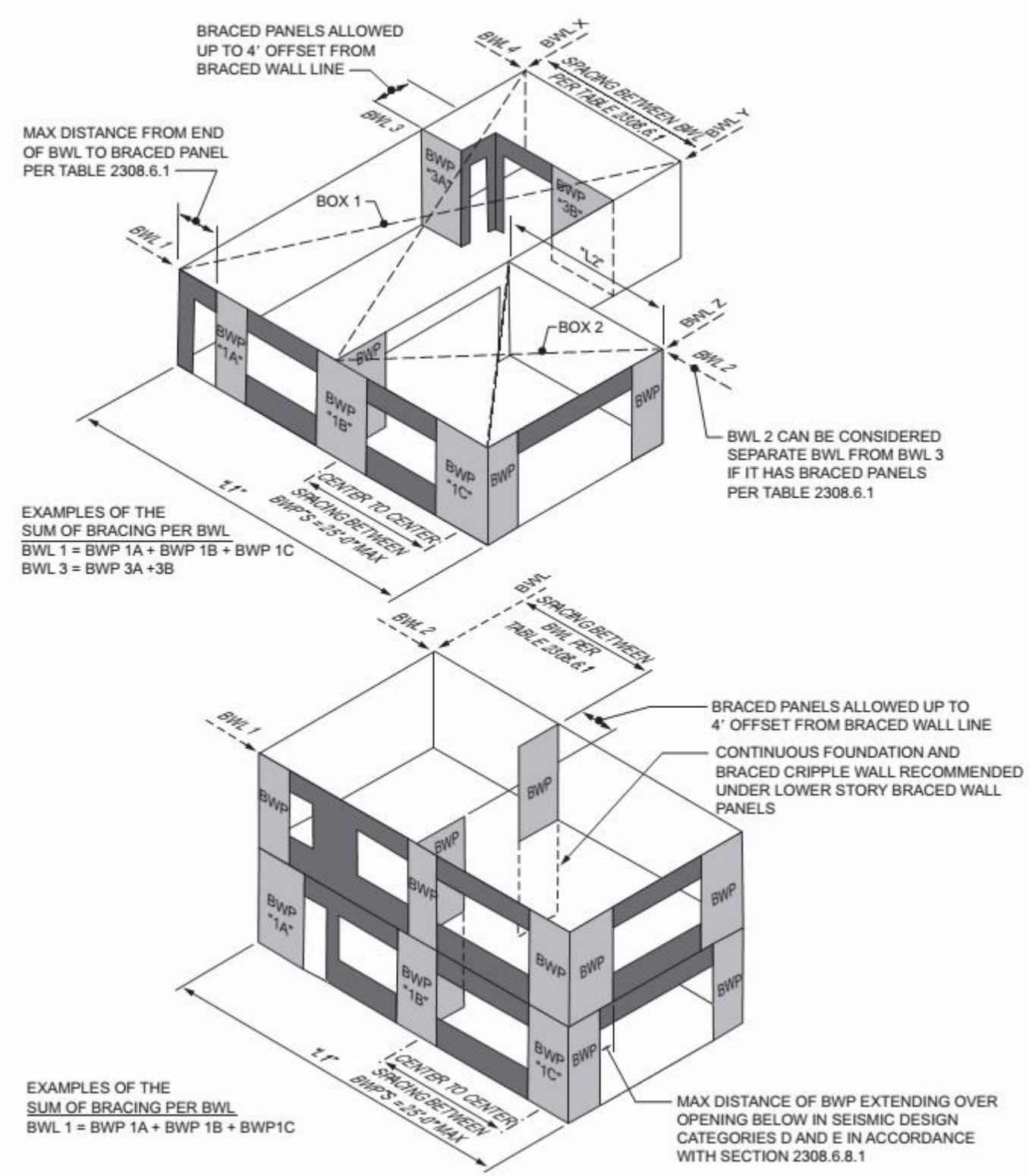
SHEATHING TYPE	MINIMUM THICKNESS	MAXIMUM WALL STUD SPACING
Diagonal wood boards	$^{5}/_{8}$ inch	24 inches on center
Structural fiberboard	$^{1}/_{2}$ inch	16 inches on center
Wood structural panel	In accordance with Tables 2308.6.3(2) and 2308.6.3(3)	—
M-S “Exterior Glue” and M-2 “Exterior Glue” particleboard	In accordance with Section 2306.3 and Table 2308.6.3(4)	—
Gypsum sheathing	$^{1}/_{2}$ inch	16 inches on center
Reinforced cement mortar	1 inch	24 inches on center
Hardboard panel siding	In accordance with Table 2308.6.3(5)	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

2308.6 Wall bracing.
Buildings shall be provided with exterior and interior braced wall lines as described in Sections 2308.6.1 through 2308.6.10.2.

2308.6.1 Braced wall lines.
For the purpose of determining the amount and location of bracing required along each *story* level of a building, *braced wall lines* shall be designated as straight lines through the building plan in both the longitudinal and transverse direction and placed in accordance with Table 2308.6.1 and Figure 2308.6.1. Braced wall line spacing shall not exceed the distance specified in Table 2308.6.1. In structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D or E, braced wall lines shall intersect perpendicularly to each other.

`

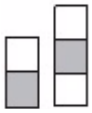


For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 2308.6.1
BASIC COMPONENTS OF THE LATERAL BRACING SYSTEM

`

TABLE 2308.6.1[a]
WALL BRACING REQUIREMENTS

SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY	STORY CONDITION (SEE SECTION 2308.2)	MAXIMUM SPACING OF BRACED WALL LINES	BRACED PANEL LOCATION, SPACING (O.C.) AND MINIMUM PERCENTAGE (X)			MAXIMUM DISTANCE OF BRACED WALL PANELS FROM EACH END OF BRACED WALL LINE
			Bracing method[b]			
			LIB	DWB, WSP	SFB, PBS, PCP, HPS, GB[c, d]	
A and B		35′ - 0″	Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c.	Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c.	Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c.	12′- 6″
		35′- 0″	Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c.	Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c.	Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c.	12′- 6″
		35′- 0″	NP	Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c.	Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c.	12′- 6″
C		35′- 0″	NP	Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c.	Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c.	12′- 6″
		35′- 0″	NP	Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c. (minimum 25% of wall length)[e]	Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c. (minimum 25% of wall length)[e]	12′- 6″
D and E		25′- 0″	NP	S_{DS} < 0.50: Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c. (minimum 21% of wall length)[e]	S_{DS} < 0.50: Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c. (minimum 43% of wall length)[e]	8′- 0″
				0.5 ≤ S_{DS} < 0.75: Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c. (minimum 32% of wall length)[e]	0.5 ≤ S_{DS} < 0.75: Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c. (minimum 59% of wall length)[e]	

`

				$0.75 \le S_{DS} \le 1.00$: Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c. (minimum 37% of wall length)[e]	$0.75 \le S_{DS} \le 1.00$: Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c. (minimum 75% of wall length)	
				$S_{DS} > 1.00$: Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c. (minimum 48% of wall length)[e]	$S_{DS} > 1.00$: Each end and ≤ 25′- 0″ o.c. (minimum 100% of wall length)[e]	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
NP = Not Permitted.

a. This table specifies minimum requirements for braced wall panels along interior or exterior braced wall lines.
b. See Section 2308.6.3 for full description of bracing methods.
c. For Method GB, gypsum wallboard applied to framing supports that are spaced at 16 inches on center.
d. The required lengths shall be doubled for gypsum board applied to only one face of a braced wall panel.
e. Percentage shown represents the minimum amount of bracing required along the building length (or wall length if the structure has an irregular shape).

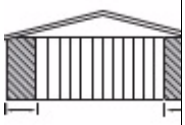
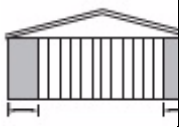
2308.6.2 Braced wall panels.
Braced wall panels shall be placed along *braced wall lines* in accordance with Table 2308.6.1 and Figure 2308.6.1 and as specified in Table 2308.6.3(1). A *braced wall panel* shall be located at each end of the *braced wall line* and at the corners of intersecting *braced wall lines* or shall begin within the maximum distance from the end of the *braced wall line* in accordance with Table 2308.6.1. *Braced wall panels* in a *braced wall line* shall not be offset from each other by more than 4 feet (1219 mm). *Braced wall panels* shall be clearly indicated on the plans.

2308.6.3 Braced wall panel methods.
Construction of *braced wall panels* shall be by one or a combination of the methods in Table 2308.6.3(1). *Braced wall panel* length shall be in accordance with Section 2308.6.4 or 2308.6.5.

TABLE 2308.6.3(1)
BRACING METHODS

METHODS, MATERIAL	**MINIMUM THICKNESS**	**FIGURE**	**CONNECTION CRITERIA[a]**	
			Fasteners	**Spacing**
LIB[a] Let-in-bracing	1″ × 4″ wood or approved metal straps attached at 45° to 60° angles to studs at maximum of 16″ o.c.		Table 2304.10.1	Wood: per stud plus top and bottom plates
			Metal strap: installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations	Metal strap: installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations

`

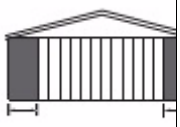
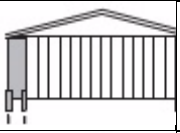
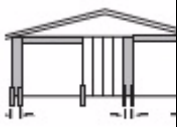
DWB Diagonal wood boards	$^{3}/_{4}$″ thick (1″ nominal) × 6″ minimum width to studs at maximum of 24″ o.c.		Table 2304.10.1	Per stud
WSP Wood structural panel	$^{3}/_{8}$″ in accordance with Table 2308.6.3(2) or 2308.6.3(3)		Table 2304.10.1	6″ edges 12″ field
SFB Structural fiberboard sheathing	1/$_{2}$″ in accordance with Table 2304.10.1 to studs at maximum 16″ o.c.		Table 2304.10.1	3″ edges 6″ field

(continued)

TABLE 2308.6.3(1)—continued
BRACING METHODS

METHODS, MATERIAL	MINIMUM THICKNESS	FIGURE	CONNECTION CRITERIA[a]	
			Fasteners	Spacing
GB Gypsum board (Double sided)	$^{1}/_{2}$″ or $^{5}/_{8}$″ by a minimum of 4′ wide to studs at maximum of 24″ o.c.		Section 2506.2 for exterior and interior sheathing: 5d annual ringed cooler nails (1$^{5}/_{8}$″ × 0.086″) or 1$^{1}/_{4}$″ screws (Type W or S) for $^{1}/_{2}$″ gypsum board or 1$^{5}/_{8}$″ screws (Type W or S) for $^{5}/_{8}$″ gypsum board	For all braced wall panel locations: 7″ o.c. along panel edges (including top and bottom plates) and 7″ o.c. in the field

`

PBS Particleboard sheathing	$^{3}/_{8}$″ or $^{1}/_{2}$″ in accordance with Table 2308.6.3(4) to studs at maximum of 16″ o.c.		6d common (2″ long × 0.113″ dia.) nails for $^{3}/_{8}$″ thick sheathing or 8d common ($2^{1}/_{2}$″ long × 0.131″ dia.) nails for $^{1}/_{2}$″ thick sheathing	3″ edges 6″ field
PCP Portland cement plaster	Section 2510 to studs at maximum of 16″ o.c.		$1^{1}/_{2}$″ long, 11 gage, $^{7}/_{16}$″ dia. head nails or $^{7}/_{8}$″ long, 16 gage staples	6″ o.c. on all framing members
HPS Hardboard panel siding	$^{7}/_{16}$″ in accordance with Table 2308.6.3(5)		Table 2304.10.1	4″ edges 8″ field
ABW Alternate braced wall	$^{3}/_{8}$″		Figure 2308.6.5.1 and Section 2308.6.5.1	Figure 2308.6.5.1
PFH Portal frame with hold-downs	$^{3}/_{8}$″		Figure 2308.6.5.2 and Section 2308.6.5.2	Figure 2308.6.5.2

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.
a. Method LIB shall have gypsum board fastened to at least one side with nails or screws.

TABLE 2308.6.3(2)
EXPOSED PLYWOOD PANEL SIDING

MINIMUM THICKNESS[a] (inch)	MINIMUM NUMBER OF PLIES	STUD SPACING (inches) Plywood siding applied directly to studs or over sheathing
$^{3}/_{8}$	3	16[b]
$^{1}/_{2}$	4	24

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Thickness of grooved panels is measured at bottom of grooves.

`

b. Spans are permitted to be 24 inches if plywood siding applied with face grain perpendicular to studs or over one of the following: (1) 1-inch board sheathing, (2) $^{7}/_{16}$-inch wood structural panel sheathing or (3) $^{3}/_{8}$-inch wood structural panel sheathing with strength axis (which is the long direction of the panel unless otherwise marked) of sheathing perpendicular to studs.

TABLE 2308.6.3(3)
WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL WALL SHEATHING[b]
(Not Exposed to the Weather, Strength Axis Parallel or Perpendicular to Studs Except as Indicated Below)

MINIMUM THICKNESS (inch)	PANEL SPAN RATING	STUD SPACING (inches)		
		Siding nailed to studs	Nailable sheathing	
			Sheathing parallel to studs	Sheathing perpendicular to studs
$^{3}/_{8}$, $^{15}/_{32}$, $^{1}/_{2}$	16/0, 20/0, 24/0, 32/16 Wall—24″ o.c.	24	16	24
$^{7}/_{16}$, $^{15}/_{32}$, $^{1}/_{2}$	24/0, 24/16, 32/16 Wall—24″ o.c.	24	24[a]	24

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Plywood shall consist of four or more plies.
b. Blocking of horizontal joints shall not be required except as specified in Section 2308.6.4.

TABLE 2308.6.3(4)
ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR PARTICLEBOARD WALL SHEATHING
(Not Exposed to the Weather, Long Dimension of the Panel Parallel or Perpendicular to Studs)

GRADE	THICKNESS (inch)	STUD SPACING (inches)	
		Siding nailed to studs	Sheathing under coverings specified in Section 2308.6.3 parallel or perpendicular to studs
M-S “Exterior Glue”	$^{3}/_{8}$	16	—
and M-2 “Exterior Glue”	$^{1}/_{2}$	16	16

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE 2308.6.3(5)
HARDBOARD SIDING

SIDING				NAIL SPACING

`

	MINIMUM NOMINAL THICKNESS (inch)	2 × 4 FRAMING MAXIMUM SPACING	NAIL SIZE[a, b, d]	General	Bracing panels[c]
1. Lap siding					
Direct to studs	$^3/_8$	16″ o.c.	8d	16″ o.c.	Not applicable
Over sheathing	$^3/_8$	16″ o.c.	10d	16″ o.c.	Not applicable
2. Square edge panel siding					
Direct to studs	$^3/_8$	24″ o.c.	6d	6″ o.c. edges; 12″ o.c. at intermediate supports	4″ o.c. edges; 8″ o.c. at intermediate supports
Over sheathing	$^3/_8$	24″ o.c.	8d	6″ o.c. edges; 12″ o.c. at intermediate supports	4″ o.c. edges; 8″ o.c. at intermediate supports
3. Shiplap edge panel siding					
Direct to studs	$^3/_8$	16″ o.c.	6d	6″ o.c. edges; 12″ o.c. at intermediate supports	4″ o.c. edges; 8″ o.c. at intermediate supports
Over sheathing	$^3/_8$	16″ o.c.	8d	6″ o.c. edges; 12″ o.c. at intermediate supports	4″ o.c. edges; 8″ o.c. at intermediate supports

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Nails shall be corrosion resistant.

b. Minimum acceptable nail dimensions:

	Panel Siding (inch)	Lap Siding (inch)
Shank diameter	0.092	0.099
Head diameter	0.225	0.240

c. Where used to comply with Section 2308.6.

d. Nail length must accommodate the sheathing and penetrate framing $1\,^1/_2$ inches.

2308.6.4 Braced wall panel construction.
For Methods DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP and HPS, each panel must be not less than 48 inches (1219 mm) in length, covering three stud spaces where studs are spaced 16 inches (406 mm) on center and covering two stud spaces where studs are spaced 24 inches (610 mm) on center. *Braced wall panels* less than 48 inches (1219 mm) in length shall not contribute toward the amount of required bracing. *Braced wall panels* that are longer than the required length shall be credited for their actual length. For Method GB, each panel must be not less than 96 inches (2438 mm) in length where applied to one side of the studs or 48 inches (1219 mm) in length where applied to both sides.

`

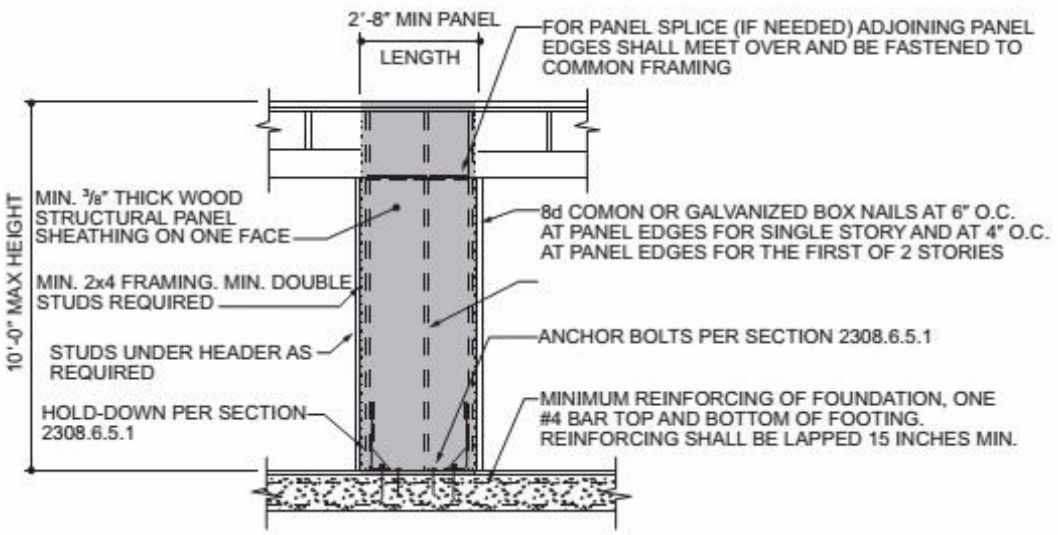
Vertical joints of panel sheathing shall occur over studs and adjacent panel joints shall be nailed to common framing members. Horizontal joints shall occur over blocking or other framing equal in size to the studding except where waived by the installation requirements for the specific sheathing materials. Sole plates shall be nailed to the floor framing in accordance with Section 2308.6.7 and top plates shall be connected to the framing above in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.2. Where joists are perpendicular to braced wall lines above, blocking shall be provided under and in line with the braced *wall panels*.

2308.6.5 Alternative bracing.
An alternate braced wall (ABW) or a portal frame with hold-downs (PFH) described in this section is permitted to substitute for a 48-inch (1219 mm) *braced wall panel* of Method DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP or HPS. For Method GB, each 96-inch (2438 mm) section (applied to one face) or 48-inch (1219 mm) section (applied to both faces) or portion thereof required by Table 2308.6.1 is permitted to be replaced by one panel constructed in accordance with Method ABW or PFH.

2308.6.5.1. Alternate braced wall (ABW).
An ABW shall be constructed in accordance with this section and Figure 2308.6.5.1. In one-story buildings, each panel shall have a length of not less than 2 feet 8 inches (813 mm) and a height of not more than 10 feet (3048 mm). Each panel shall be sheathed on one face with $^{3}/_{8}$-inch (3.2 mm) minimum-thickness wood structural panel sheathing nailed with 8d common or galvanized box nails in accordance with Table 2304.10.1 and blocked at wood structural panel edges. Two anchor bolts installed in accordance with Section 2308.3.1 shall be provided in each panel. Anchor bolts shall be placed at each panel outside quarter points. Each panel end stud shall have a hold-down device fastened to the foundation, capable of providing an *approved* uplift capacity of not less than 1,800 pounds (8006 N). The hold-down device shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The ABW shall be supported directly on a foundation or on floor framing supported directly on a foundation that is continuous across the entire length of the *braced wall line*. This foundation shall be reinforced with not less than one No. 4 bar top and bottom. Where the continuous foundation is required to have a depth greater than 12 inches (305 mm), a minimum 12-inch by 12-inch (305 mm by 305 mm) continuous footing or turned-down slab edge is permitted at door openings in the *braced wall line*. This continuous footing or turned-down slab edge shall be reinforced with not less than one No. 4 bar top and bottom. This reinforcement shall be lapped 15 inches (381 mm) with the reinforcement required in the continuous foundation located directly under the *braced wall line*.

Where the ABW is installed at the first *story* of two-story buildings, the wood structural panel sheathing shall be provided on both faces, three anchor bolts shall be placed at one-quarter points and tie-down device uplift capacity shall be not less than 3,000 pounds (13344 N).

`



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 2308.6.5.1
ALTERNATE BRACED WALL PANEL (ABW)

2308.6.5.2 Portal frame with hold-downs (PFH).
A PFH shall be constructed in accordance with this section and Figure 2308.6.5.2. The adjacent door or window opening shall have a full-length header.

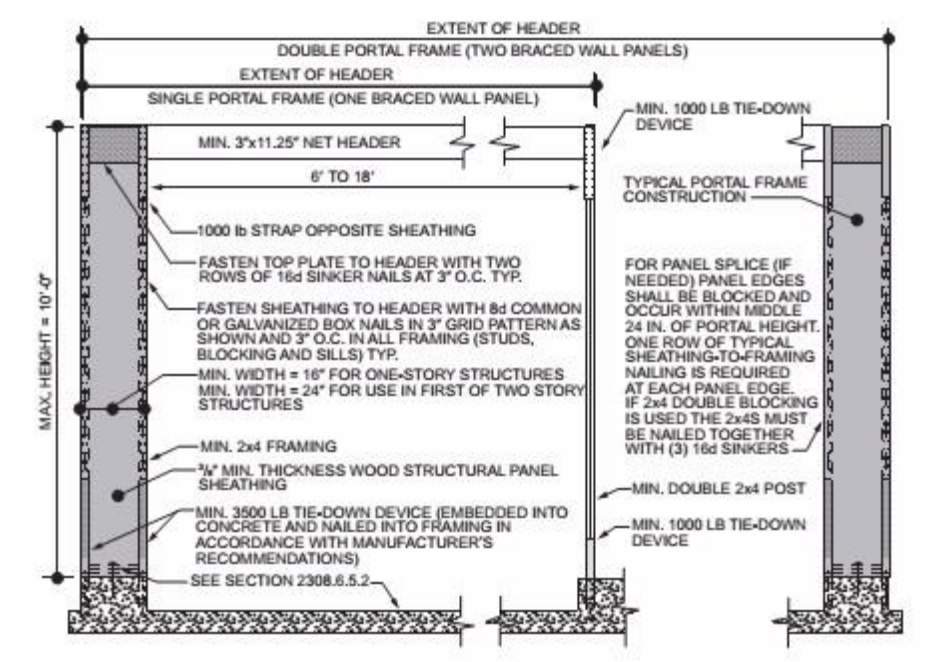
In one-story buildings, each panel shall have a length of not less than 16 inches (406 mm) and a height of not more than 10 feet (3048 mm). Each panel shall be sheathed on one face with a single layer of $^{3}/_{8}$-inch (9.5 mm) minimum-thickness wood structural panel sheathing nailed with 8d common or galvanized box nails in accordance with Figure 2308.6.5.2. The wood structural panel sheathing shall extend up over the solid sawn or glued-laminated header and shall be nailed in accordance with Figure 2308.6.5.2. A built-up header consisting of at least two 2-inch by 12-inch (51 mm by 305 mm) boards, fastened in accordance with Item 24 of Table 2304.10.1 shall be permitted to be used. A spacer, if used, shall be placed on the side of the built-up beam opposite the wood structural panel sheathing. The header shall extend between the inside faces of the first full-length outer studs of each panel. The clear span of the header between the inner studs of each panel shall be not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) and not more than 18 feet (5486 mm) in length. A strap with an uplift capacity of not less than 1,000 pounds (4,400 N) shall fasten the header to the inner studs opposite the sheathing. One anchor bolt not less than $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (15.9 mm) diameter and installed in accordance with Section 2308.3.1 shall be provided in the center of each sill plate. The studs at each end of the panel shall have a hold-down device fastened to the foundation with an uplift capacity of not less than 3,500 pounds (15 570 N).

Where a panel is located on one side of the opening, the header shall extend between the inside face of the first full-length stud of the panel and the bearing studs at the other end of the opening. A strap with an uplift capacity of not less than 1,000 pounds (4400 N) shall fasten the header to the bearing studs. The bearing studs shall also have a hold-down device fastened to the foundation with an uplift capacity of not

`

less than 1,000 pounds (4400 N). The hold-down devices shall be an embedded strap type, installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The PFH panels shall be supported directly on a foundation that is continuous across the entire length of the braced wall line. This foundation shall be reinforced with not less than one No. 4 bar top and bottom. Where the continuous foundation is required to have a depth greater than 12 inches (305 mm), a minimum 12-inch by 12-inch (305 mm by 305 mm) continuous footing or turned-down slab edge is permitted at door openings in the braced wall line. This continuous footing or turned-down slab edge shall be reinforced with not less than one No. 4 bar top and bottom. This reinforcement shall be lapped not less than 15 inches (381 mm) with the reinforcement required in the continuous foundation located directly under the braced wall line.

Where a PFH is installed at the first *story* of two-story buildings, each panel shall have a length of not less than 24 inches (610 mm).



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N.

FIGURE 2308.6.5.2
PORTAL FRAME WITH HOLD-DOWNS (PFH)

2308.6.6 Cripple wall bracing.
Cripple walls shall be braced in accordance with Section 2308.6.6.1 or 2308.6.6.2.

2308.6.6.1 Cripple wall bracing in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C.
For the purposes of this section, cripple walls in *Seismic Design Categories* A, B and C having a stud height exceeding 14 inches (356 mm) shall be considered a *story* and shall be braced in accordance with Table 2308.6.1. Spacing of edge nailing for required cripple wall bracing shall not exceed 6 inches (152 mm) on center along the foundation plate and the top plate of the cripple wall. Nail size, nail spacing for field nailing and more restrictive boundary nailing requirements shall be as required elsewhere in the code for the specific bracing material used.

`

2308.6.6.2 Cripple wall bracing in Seismic Design Categories D and E.
For the purposes of this section, cripple walls in *Seismic Design Categories* D and E having a stud height exceeding 14 inches (356 mm) shall be considered a *story* and shall be braced in accordance with Table 2308.6.1. Where interior braced wall lines occur without a continuous foundation below, the length of parallel exterior cripple wall bracing shall be one and one-half times the lengths required by Table 2308.6.1. Where the cripple wall sheathing type used is Method WSP or DWB and this additional length of bracing cannot be provided, the capacity of WSP or DWB sheathing shall be increased by reducing the spacing of fasteners along the perimeter of each piece of sheathing to 4 inches (102 mm) on center.

2308.6.7 Connections of braced wall panels.
Braced wall panel joints shall occur over studs or blocking. *Braced wall panels* shall be fastened to studs, top and bottom plates and at panel edges. *Braced wall panels* shall be applied to nominal 2-inch-wide [actual $1^1/_2$-inch (38 mm)] or larger stud framing.

2308.6.7.1 Bottom plate connection.
Braced wall line bottom plates shall be connected to joists or full-depth blocking below in accordance with Table 2304.10.1, or to foundations in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.3.

2308.6.7.2 Top plate connection.
Where joists or rafters are used, *braced wall line* top plates shall be fastened over the full length of the braced wall line to joists, rafters, rim boards or full-depth blocking above in accordance with Table 2304.10.1, as applicable, based on the orientation of the joists or rafters to the *braced wall line*. Blocking shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in nominal thickness and shall be fastened to the *braced wall line* top plate as specified in Table 2304.10.1. Notching or drilling of holes in blocking in accordance with the requirements of Section 2308.4.2.4 or 2308.7.4 shall be permitted.

At exterior gable end walls, *braced wall panel* sheathing in the top *story* shall be extended and fastened to the roof framing where the spacing between parallel exterior braced wall lines is greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm).

Where roof trusses are used and are installed perpendicular to an exterior *braced wall line*, lateral forces shall be transferred from the roof diaphragm to the braced wall over the full length of the *braced wall line* by blocking of the ends of the trusses or by other *approved* methods providing equivalent lateral force transfer. Blocking shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in nominal thickness and equal to the depth of the truss at the wall line and shall be fastened to the braced wall line top plate as specified in Table 2304.10.1. Notching or drilling of holes in blocking in accordance with the requirements of Section 2308.4.2.4 or 2308.7.4 shall be permitted.

Exception: Where the roof sheathing is greater than $9^1/_4$ inches (235 mm) above the top plate, solid blocking is not required where the framing members are connected using one of the following methods:

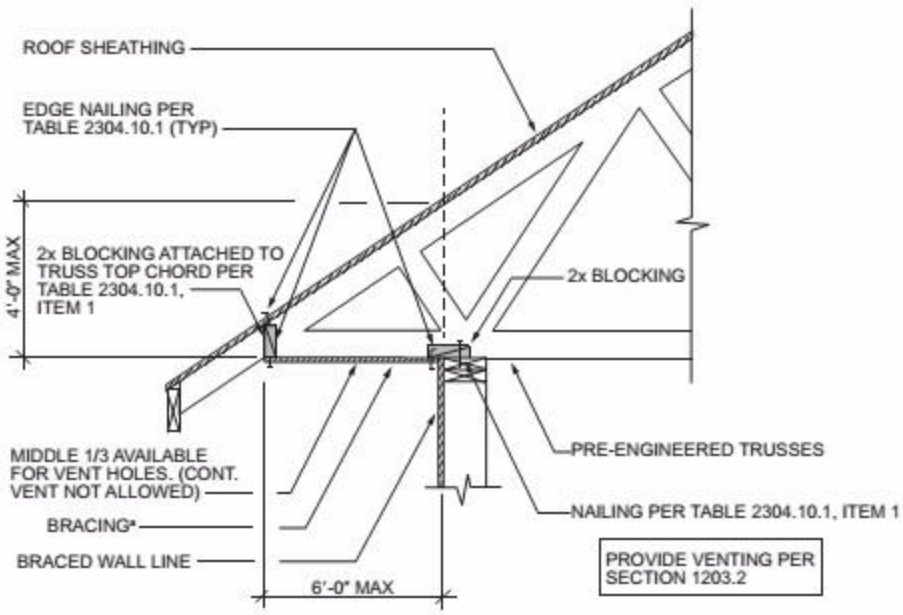
1. In accordance with Figure 2308.6.7.2(1).

2. In accordance with Figure 2308.6.7.2(2).

`

3. Full-height engineered blocking panels designed for values listed in AWC WFCM.

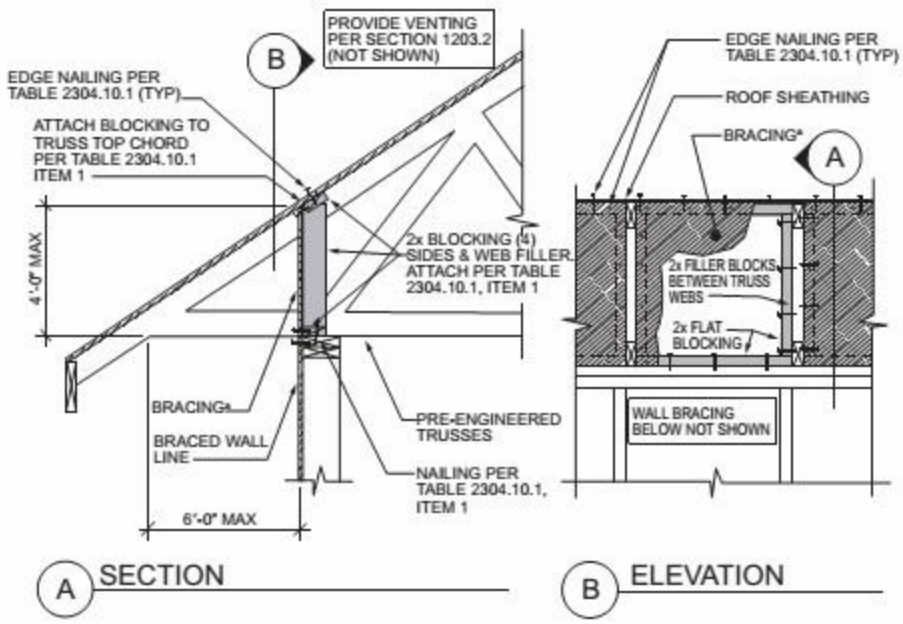
4. A design in accordance with accepted engineering methods.



a. Methods of bracing shall be as described in Table 2308.6.3(1) DWB, WSP, SFB, GB, PBS, PCP or HPS.

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 2308.6.7.2(1)
BRACED WALL LINE TOP PLATE CONNECTION



a. Methods of bracing shall be as described in Table 2308.6.3(1) DWB, WSP, SFB, GB, PBS, PCP or HPS.

`

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 2308.6.7.2(2)
BRACED WALL PANEL TOP PLATE CONNECTION

2308.6.7.3 Sill anchorage.
Where foundations are required by Section 2308.6.8, braced wall line sills shall be anchored to concrete or masonry foundations. Such anchorage shall conform to the requirements of Section 2308.3. The anchors shall be distributed along the length of the braced wall line. Other anchorage devices having equivalent capacity are permitted.

2308.6.7.4 Anchorage to all-wood foundations.
Where all-wood foundations are used, the force transfer from the *braced wall lines* shall be determined based on calculation and shall have a capacity that is not less than the connections required by Section 2308.3.

2308.6.8 Braced wall line and diaphragm support.
Braced wall lines and floor and roof diaphragms shall be supported in accordance with this section.

2308.6.8.1 Foundation requirements.
Braced wall lines shall be supported by continuous foundations.

Exception: For structures with a maximum plan dimension not more than 50 feet (15 240 mm), continuous foundations are required at exterior walls only.

For structures in *Seismic Design Categories* D and E, exterior *braced wall panels* shall be in the same plane vertically with the foundation or the portion of the structure containing the offset shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice and Section 2308.1.1.

Exceptions:

1. Exterior *braced wall panels* shall be permitted to be located not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) from the foundation below where supported by a floor constructed in accordance with all of the following:

    1.1. Cantilevers or setbacks shall not exceed four times the nominal depth of the floor joists.

    1.2. Floor joists shall be 2 inches by 10 inches (51 mm by 254 mm) or larger and spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center.

    1.3. The ratio of the back span to the cantilever shall be not less than 2 to 1.

    1.4. Floor joists at ends of *braced wall panels* shall be doubled.

    1.5. A continuous rim joist shall be connected to the ends of cantilevered joists. The rim joist is permitted to be spliced using a metal tie not less than 0.058 inch (1.47 mm) (16 galvanized gage)

`

and $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in width fastened with six 16d common nails on each side. The metal tie shall have a yield stress not less than 33,000 psi (227 MPa).

1.6. Joists at setbacks or the end of cantilevered joists shall not carry gravity loads from more than a single *story* having uniform wall and roof loads nor carry the reactions from headers having a span of 8 feet (2438 mm) or more.

2. The end of a required *braced wall panel* shall be allowed to extend not more than 1 foot (305 mm) over an opening in the wall below. This requirement is applicable to *braced wall panels* offset in plane and *braced wall panels* offset out of plane as permitted by Exception 1. *Braced wall panels* are permitted to extend over an opening not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) in width where the header is a 4-inch by 12-inch (102 mm by 305 mm) or larger member.

2308.6.8.2 Floor and roof diaphragm support in Seismic Design Categories D and E.

In structures assigned to *Seismic Design Categories* D or E, floor and roof diaphragms shall be laterally supported by *braced wall lines* on all edges and connected in accordance with Section 2308.6.7 [see Figure 2308.6.8.2(1)].

Exception: Portions of roofs or floors that do not support *braced wall panels* above are permitted to extend up to 6 feet (1829 mm) beyond a *braced wall line* [see Figure 2308.6.8.2(2)] provided that the framing members are connected to the *braced wall line* below in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.

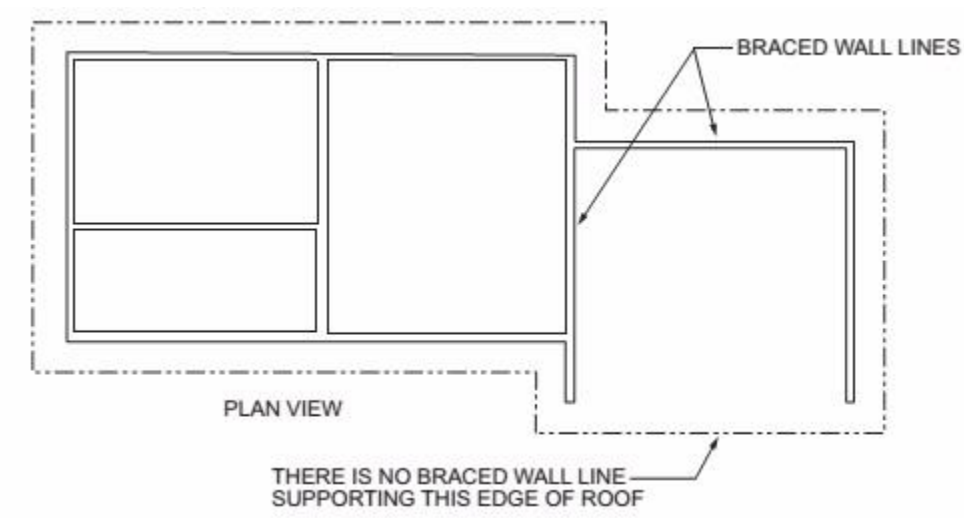
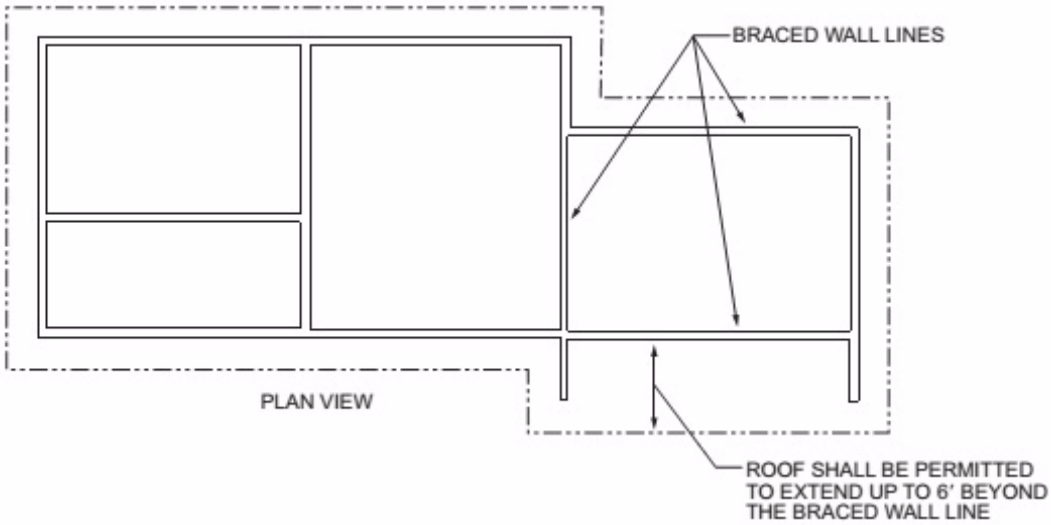


FIGURE 2308.6.8.2(1)
ROOF IN SDC D OR E NOT SUPPORTED ON ALL EDGES

`



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 2308.6.8.2(2)
ROOF EXTENSION IN SDC D OR E BEYOND BRACED WALL LINE

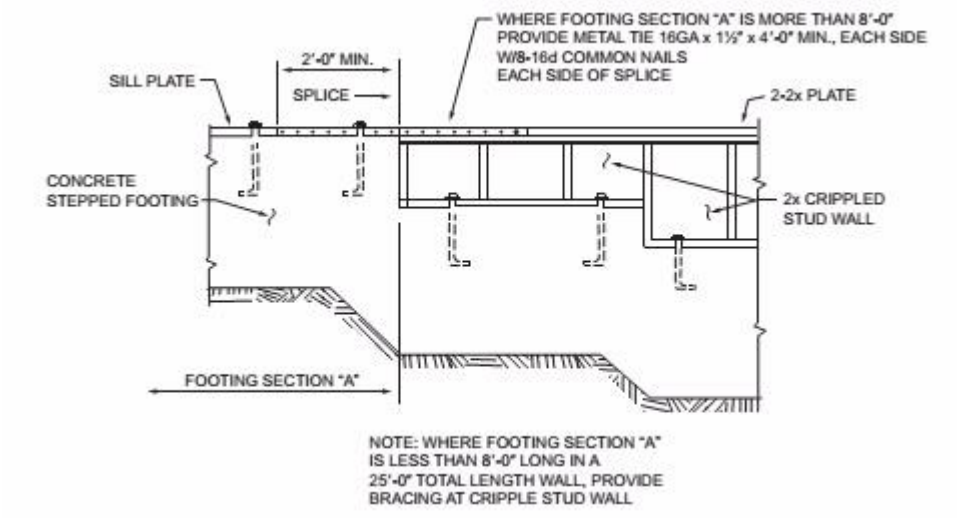
2308.6.8.3 Stepped footings in Seismic Design Categories B, C, D and E.
In *Seismic Design Categories* B, C, D and E, where the height of a required *braced wall panel* extending from foundation to floor above varies more than 4 feet (1219 mm), the following construction shall be used:

1. Where the bottom of the footing is stepped and the lowest floor framing rests directly on a sill bolted to the footings, the sill shall be anchored as required in Section 2308.3.

2. Where the lowest floor framing rests directly on a sill bolted to a footing not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) in length along a line of bracing, the line shall be considered to be braced. The double plate of the cripple stud wall beyond the segment of footing extending to the lowest framed floor shall be spliced to the sill plate with metal ties, one on each side of the sill and plate. The metal ties shall be not less than 0.058 inch [1.47 mm (16 galvanized gage)] by $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm) in width by 48 inches (1219 mm) with eight 16d common nails on each side of the splice location (see Figure 2308.6.8.3). The metal tie shall have a yield stress not less than 33,000 pounds per square inch (psi) (227 MPa).

3. Where cripple walls occur between the top of the footing and the lowest floor framing, the bracing requirements for a *story* shall apply.

`



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 2308.6.8.3
STEPPED FOOTING CONNECTION DETAILS

2308.6.9 Attachment of sheathing.
Fastening of *braced wall panel* sheathing shall be not less than that prescribed in Tables 2308.6.1 and 2304.10.1. Wall sheathing shall not be attached to framing members by adhesives.

2308.6.10 Limitations of concrete or masonry veneer.
Concrete or masonry veneer shall comply with Chapter 14 and this section.

2308.6.10.1 Limitations of concrete or masonry veneer in Seismic Design Category B or C.
In *Seismic Design Categories* B and C, concrete or masonry walls and stone or masonry veneer shall not extend above a basement.

Exceptions:

1. In structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* B, stone and masonry veneer is permitted to be used in the first two *stories above grade plane* or the first three *stories above grade plane* where the lowest *story* has concrete or masonry walls, provided that wood structural panel wall bracing is used and the length of bracing provided is one and one-half times the required length specified in Table 2308.6.1.

2. Stone and masonry veneer is permitted to be used in the first *story above grade plane* or the first two *stories above grade plane* where the lowest *story* has concrete or masonry walls.

3. Stone and masonry veneer is permitted to be used in both *stories* of buildings with two *stories above grade plane*, provided the following criteria are met:

`

3.1. Type of brace in accordance with Section 2308.6.1 shall be WSP and the allowable shear capacity in accordance with Section 2306.3 shall be not less than 350 plf (5108 N/m).

3.2. *Braced wall panels* in the second *story* shall be located in accordance with Section 2308.6.1 and not more than 25 feet (7620 mm) on center, and the total length of *braced wall panels* shall be not less than 25 percent of the *braced wall line* length. *Braced wall panels* in the first *story* shall be located in accordance with Section 2308.6.1 and not more than 25 feet (7620 mm) on center, and the total length of *braced wall panels* shall be not less than 45 percent of the *braced wall line* length.

3.3. Hold-down connectors with an allowable capacity of 2,000 pounds (8896 N) shall be provided at the ends of each *braced wall panel* for the second *story* to the first *story* connection. Hold-down connectors with an allowable capacity of 3,900 pounds (17 347 N) shall be provided at the ends of each *braced wall panel* for the first *story* to the foundation connection. In all cases, the hold-down connector force shall be transferred to the foundation.

3.4. Cripple walls shall not be permitted.

2308.6.10.2 Limitations of concrete or masonry in Seismic Design Categories D and E.
In *Seismic Design Categories* D and E, concrete or masonry walls and stone or masonry veneer shall not extend above a basement.

Exception: In structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category* D, stone and masonry veneer is permitted to be used in the first *story above grade plane*, provided the following criteria are met:

1. Type of brace in accordance with Section 2308.6.1 shall be WSP and the allowable shear capacity in accordance with Section 2306.3 shall be not less than 350 plf (5108 N/m).

2. The *braced wall panels* in the first *story* shall be located at each end of the *braced wall line* and not more than 25 feet (7620 mm) on center, and the total length of *braced wall panels* shall be not less than 45 percent of the *braced wall line* length.

3. Hold-down connectors shall be provided at the ends of braced walls for the first floor to foundation with an allowable capacity of 2,100 pounds (9341 N).

4. Cripple walls shall not be permitted.

2308.7 Roof and ceiling framing.
The framing details required in this section apply to roofs having a slope of not less than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope). Where the roof slope is less than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope), members supporting rafters and ceiling joists such as ridge board, hips and valleys shall be designed as beams.

`

2308.7.1 Ceiling joist spans.
Spans for ceiling joists shall be in accordance with Table 2308.7.1(1) or 2308.7.1(2). For other grades and species, and other loading conditions, refer to the AWC STJR.

TABLE 2308.7.1(1)
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Uninhabitable Attics Without Storage, Live Load = 10 psf, L/Δ = 240)

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 5 psf			
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10
			Maximum ceiling joist spans			
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	13-2	20-8	Note a	Note a
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	12-8	19-11	Note a	Note a
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	12-5	19-6	25-8	Note a
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	10-10	15-10	20-1	24-6
	Hem-Fir	SS	12-5	19-6	25-8	Note a
	Hem-Fir	#1	12-2	19-1	25-2	Note a
	Hem-Fir	#2	11-7	18-2	24-0	Note a
	Hem-Fir	#3	10-10	15-10	20-1	24-6
	Southern Pine	SS	12-11	20-3	Note a	Note a
	Southern Pine	#1	12-5	19-6	25-8	Note a
	Southern Pine	#2	11-10	18-8	24-7	Note a
	Southern Pine	#3	10-1	14-11	18-9	22-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	12-2	19-1	25-2	Note a
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	11-10	18-8	24-7	Note a
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	11-10	18-8	24-7	Note a
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	10-10	15-10	20-1	24-6
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	11-11	18-9	24-8	Note a
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	11-6	18-1	23-10	Note a
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	11-3	17-8	23-0	Note a
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	9-5	13-9	17-5	21-3
	Hem-Fir	SS	11-3	17-8	23-4	Note a
	Hem-Fir	#1	11-0	17-4	22-10	Note a
	Hem-Fir	#2	10-6	16-6	21-9	Note a
	Hem-Fir	#3	9-5	13-9	17-5	21-3
	Southern Pine	SS	11-9	18-5	24-3	Note a

`

	Southern Pine	#1	11-3	17-8	23-4	Note a
	Southern Pine	#2	10-9	16-11	21-7	25-7
	Southern Pine	#3	8-9	12-11	16-3	19-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	11-0	17-4	22-10	Note a
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	10-9	16-11	22-4	Note a
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	10-9	16-11	22-4	Note a
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	9-5	13-9	17-5	21-3

(continued)

TABLE 2308.7.1(1)—continued
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Uninhabitable Attics Without Storage, Live Load = 10 psf, L/Δ = 240)

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 5 psf			
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10
			Maximum ceiling joist spans			
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	11-3	17-8	23-3	Note a
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-10	17-0	22-5	Note a
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	10-7	16-7	21-0	25-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5
	Hem-Fir	SS	10-7	16-8	21-11	Note a
	Hem-Fir	#1	10-4	16-4	21-6	Note a
	Hem-Fir	#2	9-11	15-7	20-6	25-3
	Hem-Fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5
	Southern Pine	SS	11-0	17-4	22-10	Note a
	Southern Pine	#1	10-7	16-8	22-0	Note a
	Southern Pine	#2	10-2	15-7	19-8	23-5
	Southern Pine	#3	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-0
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	10-4	16-4	21-6	Note a
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	10-2	15-11	21-0	25-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	10-2	15-11	21-0	25-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note a

`

	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-0	15-9	20-1	24-6
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-10	14-10	18-9	22-11
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note a
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-8	15-2	19-7	23-11
	Hem-Fir	#2	9-2	14-5	18-6	22-7
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Southern Pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note a
	Southern Pine	#1	9-10	15-6	20-5	24-0
	Southern Pine	#2	9-3	13-11	17-7	20-11
	Southern Pine	#3	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE 2308.7.1(2)
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Uninhabitable Attics With Limited Storage, Live Load = 20 psf, L/Δ= 240)

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf			
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10
			Maximum ceiling joist spans			
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note a
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-0	15-9	20-1	24-6
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-10	14-10	18-9	22-11
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note a
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-8	15-2	19-7	23-11
	Hem-Fir	#2	9-2	14-5	18-6	22-7
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Southern Pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note a
	Southern Pine	#1	9-10	15-6	20-5	24-0
	Southern Pine	#2	9-3	13-11	17-7	20-11

`

	Southern Pine	#3	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-6	14-11	19-7	25-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	9-1	13-9	17-5	21-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-9	12-10	16-3	19-10
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-8	9-8	12-4	15-0
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8
	Hem-Fir	#1	8-9	13-5	16-10	20-8
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-4	12-8	16-0	19-7
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-8	9-8	12-4	15-0
	Southern Pine	SS	9-4	14-7	19-3	24-7
	Southern Pine	#1	8-11	14-0	17-9	20-9
	Southern Pine	#2	8-0	12-0	15-3	18-1
	Southern Pine	#3	6-2	9-2	11-6	14-0
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-7	12-10	16-3	19-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-7	12-10	16-3	19-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-8	9-8	12-4	15-0

(continued)

TABLE 2308.7.1(2)—continued
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Uninhabitable Attics With Limited Storage, Live Load = 20 psf, L/Δ = 240)

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf			
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10
			Maximum ceiling joist spans			
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	8-11	14-0	18-5	23-4
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5

`

	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3
	Hem-Fir	#1	8-3	12-3	15-6	18-11
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-10	11-7	14-8	17-10
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8
	Southern Pine	SS	8-9	13-9	18-2	23-1
	Southern Pine	#1	8-5	12-9	16-2	18-11
	Southern Pine	#2	7-4	11-0	13-11	16-6
	Southern Pine	#3	5-8	8-4	10-6	12-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	8-3	13-0	17-1	20-11
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-5	7-11	10-0	12-3
	Hem-Fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-6
	Hem-Fir	#1	7-6	10-11	13-10	16-11
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-1	10-4	13-1	16-0
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-5	7-11	10-0	12-3
	Southern Pine	SS	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6
	Southern Pine	#1	7-8	11-5	14-6	16-11
	Southern Pine	#2	6-7	9-10	12-6	14-9
	Southern Pine	#3	5-1	7-5	9-5	11-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	19-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-5	7-11	10-0	12-3

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

2308.7.2 Rafter spans.
Spans for rafters shall be in accordance with Table 2308.7.2(1), 2308.7.2(2), 2308.7.2(3),

`

2308.7.2(4), 2308.7.2(5) or 2308.7.2(6). For other grades and species and other loading conditions, refer to the AWC STJR. The span of each rafter shall be measured along the horizontal projection of the rafter.

TABLE 2308.7.2(1)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Roof Live Load = 20 psf, Ceiling Not Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	11-6	18-0	23-9	Note b	Note b	11-6	18-0	23-5	Note b	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	11-1	17-4	22-5	Note b	Note b	10-6	15-4	19-5	23-9	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	10-10	16-7	21-0	25-8	Note b	9-10	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Hem-Fir	SS	10-10	17-0	22-5	Note b	Note b	10-10	17-0	22-5	Note b	Note b
	Hem-Fir	#1	10 -7	16-8	21-10	Note b	Note b	10-3	14-11	18-11	23-2	Note b
	Hem-Fir	#2	10-1	15-11	20-8	25-3	Note b	9-8	14-2	17-11	21-11	25-5
	Hem-Fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Southern Pine	SS	11-3	17-8	23-4	Note b	Note b	11-3	17-8	23-4	Note b	Note b
	Southern Pine	#1	10-10	17-0	22-5	26-0	26-0	10-6	15-8	19-10	23-2	Note b
	Southern Pine	#2	10-4	15-7	19-8	23-5	26-0	9-0	13-6	17-1	20-3	23-10
	Southern Pine	#3	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-0	21-4	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7	18-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	10-7	16-8	21-11	Note b	Note b	10-7	16-8	21-9	Note b	Note b
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	10-4	16-3	21-0	25-8	Note b	9-10	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	10-4	16-3	21-0	25-8	Note b	9-10	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note b	Note b	10-5	16-0	20-3	24-9	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-0	15-4	19-5	23-9	Note b	9-1	13-3	16-10	20-7	23-10
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-10	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b	9-10	15-6	19-11	24-4	Note b
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-8	14-11	18-11	23-2	Note b	8-10	12-11	16-5	20-0	23-3

`

	Hem-Fir	#2	9-2	14-2	17-11	21-11	25-5	8-5	12-3	15-6	18-11	22-0
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
	Southern Pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note b	Note b	10-3	16-1	21-2	25-7	Note b
	Southern Pine	#1	9-10	15-6	19-10	23-2	26-0	9-1	13-7	17-2	20-1	23-10
	Southern Pine	#2	9-0	13-6	17-1	20-3	23-10	7-9	11-8	14-9	17-6	20-8
	Southern Pine	#3	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7	18-6	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-6	16-0
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	14-10	18-10	23-0	Note b
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-10	15-5	20-4	25-11	Note b	9-10	14-7	18-6	22-7	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	9-5	14-0	17-9	21-8	25-2	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-11	13-1	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-3	14-7	19-2	24-6	Note b	9-3	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-1	13-8	17-4	21-1	24-6	8-1	11-10	15-0	18-4	21-3
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-8	12-11	16-4	20-0	23-2	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4	20-1
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Southern Pine	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	15-2	19-7	23-4	Note b
	Southern Pine	#1	9-3	14-3	18-1	21-2	25-2	8-4	12-4	15-8	18-4	21-9
	Southern Pine	#2	8-2	12-3	15-7	18-6	21-9	7-1	10-8	13-6	16-0	18-10
	Southern Pine	#3	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-3	16-10	5-6	8-1	10-2	12-4	14-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-1	14-3	18-9	23-11	Note b	9-1	13-7	17-2	21-0	24-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-10	13-1	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-10	13-1	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5

(continued)

TABLE 2308.7.2(1)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Roof Live Load = 20 psf, Ceiling Not Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
		2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
		Maximum rafter spans[a]									

`

(inches)			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-1	14-4	18-10	23-4	Note b	8-11	13-1	16-7	20-3	23-5
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b	8-7	12-10	16-3	19-10	23-0
	Hem-Fir	#1	8-4	12-3	15-6	18-11	21-11	7-3	10-7	13-5	16-4	19-0
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-11	11-7	14-8	17-10	20-9	6-10	10-0	12-8	15-6	17-11
24	Hem-Fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9
	Southern Pine	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	13-10	17-6	20-10	24-8
	Southern Pine	#1	8-7	12-9	16-2	18-11	22-6	7-5	11-1	14-0	16-5	19-6
	Southern Pine	#2	7-4	11-0	13-11	16-6	19-6	6-4	9-6	12-1	14-4	16-10
	Southern Pine	#3	5-8	8-4	10-6	12-9	15-1	4-11	7-3	9-1	11-0	13-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	21-8	25-2	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

H_C/H_R	Rafter Span Adjustment Factor
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90
1/7.5 or less	1.00

where:

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

`

TABLE 2308.7.2(2)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Roof Live Load = 20 psf, Ceiling Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note b	Note b	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note b	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-0	15-9	20-10	Note b	Note b	10-0	15-4	19-5	23-9	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-10	15-6	20-5	25-8	Note b	9-10	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	14-11	18-11	23-2	Note b
	Hem-Fir	#2	9-2	14-5	19-0	24-3	Note b	9-2	14-2	17-11	21-11	25-5
	Hem-Fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Southern Pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note b	Note b	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note b	Note b
	Southern Pine	#1	9-10	15-6	20-5	26-0	26-0	9-10	15-6	19-10	23-2	26-0
	Southern Pine	#2	9-5	14-9	19-6	23-5	26-0	9-0	13-6	17-1	20-3	23-10
	Southern Pine	#3	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-0	21-4	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7	18-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	9-5	14-9	19-6	24-10	Note b	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	9-5	14-9	19-6	24-10	Note b	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-6	14-11	19-7	25-0	Note b	9-6	14-11	19-7	24-9	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	9-1	14-4	18-11	23-9	Note b	9-1	13-3	16-10	20-7	23-10
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-11	14-1	18-2	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b
	Hem-Fir	#1	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-1	Note b	8-9	12-11	16-5	20-0	23-3
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-4	13-1	17-3	21-11	25-5	8-4	12-3	15-6	18-11	22-0
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
	Southern Pine	SS	9-4	14-7	19-3	24-7	Note b	9-4	14-7	19-3	24-7	Note b

`

	Southern Pine	#1	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-2	26-0	8-11	13-7	17-2	20-1	23-10
	Southern Pine	#2	8-7	13-5	17-1	20-3	23-10	7-9	11-8	14-9	17-6	20-8
	Southern Pine	#3	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7	18-6	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-6	16-0
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-1	Note b	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-0	Note b
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-7	13-5	17-9	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-7	13-5	17-9	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	8-11	14-0	18-5	23-7	Note b	8-11	14-0	18-5	22-7	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-7	13-6	17-9	21-8	25-2	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-5	13-1	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	25-9
	Hem-Fir	#1	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-1	24-6	8-1	11-10	15-0	18-4	21-3
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-10	12-4	16-3	20-0	23-2	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4	20-1
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5

(continued)

TABLE 2308.7.2(2)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Roof Live Load = 20 psf, Ceiling Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
19.2	Southern Pine	SS	8-9	13-9	18-2	23-1	Note b	8-9	13-9	18-2	23-1	Note b
	Southern Pine	#1	8-5	13-3	17-5	21-2	25-2	8-4	12-4	15-8	18-4	21-9
	Southern Pine	#2	8-1	12-3	15-7	18-6	21-9	7-1	10-8	13-6	16-0	18-10
	Southern Pine	#3	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-3	16-10	5-6	8-1	10-2	12-4	14-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-9	Note b	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-0	24-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-1	12-8	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-1	12-8	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	8-3	13-0	17-2	21-10	Note b	8-3	13-0	16-7	20-3	23-5
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-0	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6

`

	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	7-10	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9
	Hem-Fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	25-1	7-10	12-3	16-2	19-10	23-0
	Hem-Fir	#1	7-8	12-0	15-6	18-11	21-11	7-3	10-7	13-5	16-4	19-0
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-3	11-5	14-8	17-10	20-9	6-10	10-0	12-8	15-6	17-11
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9
	Southern Pine	SS	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6	Note b	8-1	12-9	16-10	20-10	24-8
	Southern Pine	#1	7-10	12-3	16-2	18-11	22-6	7-5	11-1	14-0	16-5	19-6
	Southern Pine	#2	7-4	11-0	13-11	16-6	19-6	6-4	9-6	12-1	14-4	16-10
	Southern Pine	#3	5-8	8-4	10-6	12-9	15-1	4-11	7-3	9-1	11-0	13-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-2	24-7	7-8	12-0	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	7-6	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	7-6	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

H_C/H_R	Rafter Span Adjustment Factor
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90
1/7.5 or less	1.00

where:

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE 2308.7.2(3)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground Snow Load = 30 psf, Ceiling Not Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 180)

		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf	DEAD LOAD = 20 psf

`

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	10-0	15-9	20-9	Note b	Note b	10-0	15-9	20-1	24-6	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	9-8	14-9	18-8	22-9	Note b	9-0	13-2	16-8	20-4	23-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-5	13-9	17-5	21-4	24-8	8-5	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-6	14-10	19-7	25-0	Note b	9-6	14-10	19-7	24-1	Note b
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-3	14-4	18-2	22-2	25-9	8-9	12-10	16-3	19-10	23-0
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-10	13-7	17-2	21-0	24-4	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Southern Pine	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b	9-10	15-6	20-5	25-4	Note b
	Southern Pine	#1	9-6	14-10	19-0	22-3	26-0	9-0	13-5	17-0	19-11	23-7
	Southern Pine	#2	8-7	12-11	16-4	19-5	22-10	7-8	11-7	14-8	17-4	20-5
	Southern Pine	#3	6-7	9-9	12-4	15-0	17-9	5-11	8-9	11-0	13-5	15-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-3	14-7	19-2	24-6	Note b	9-3	14-7	18-8	22-9	Note b
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	9-1	13-9	17-5	21-4	24-8	8-5	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	9-1	13-9	17-5	21-4	24-8	8-5	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-1	14-4	18-10	23-9	Note b	9-1	13-9	17-5	21-3	24-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-9	12-9	16-2	19-9	22-10	7-10	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-2	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b	8-7	13-6	17-1	20-10	24-2
	Hem-Fir	#1	8-5	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-3	7-7	11-1	14-1	17-2	19-11
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-0	11-9	14-11	18-2	21-1	7-2	10-6	13-4	16-3	18-10
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Southern Pine	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	14-1	18-5	21-11	25-11
	Southern Pine	#1	8-7	13-0	16-6	19-3	22-10	7-10	11-7	14-9	17-3	20-5
	Southern Pine	#2	7-6	11-2	14-2	16-10	19-10	6-8	10-0	12-8	15-1	17-9
	Southern Pine	#3	5-9	8-6	10-8	13-0	15-4	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-7	13-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-1	25-7	8-5	12-9	16-2	19-9	22-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-2	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2

`

	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-2	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	8-7	13-6	17-9	21-8	25-2	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	7-11	11-8	14-9	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	7-5	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-1	12-9	16-9	21-4	24-8	8-1	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Hem-Fir	#1	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-2
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-4	10-9	13-7	16-7	19-3	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2

(continued)

TABLE 2308.7.2(3)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground Snow Load = 30 psf, Ceiling Not Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
19.2	Southern Pine	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b	8-5	13-3	16-10	20-0	23-7
	Southern Pine	#1	8-0	11-10	15-1	17-7	20-11	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8
	Southern Pine	#2	6-10	10-2	12-11	15-4	18-1	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2
	Southern Pine	#3	5-3	7-9	9-9	11-10	14-0	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-11	12-5	16-5	20-2	23-4	7-11	11-8	14-9	18-0	20-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	7-5	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	7-5	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	7-11	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-8	11-3	14-2	17-4	20-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Hem-Fir	SS	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-1	22-1	7-6	11-0	13-11	17-0	19-9
	Hem-Fir	#1	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-2	6-2	9-1	11-6	14-0	16-3
	Hem-Fir	#2	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5

`

	Hem-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Southern Pine	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-0	23-7	7-10	11-10	15-0	17-11	21-2
	Southern Pine	#1	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-4	9-6	12-0	14-1	16-8
	Southern Pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-5	8-2	10-4	12-3	14-6
	Southern Pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-2	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-4	11-7	14-9	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

H_C/H_R	Rafter Span Adjustment Factor
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90
1/7.5 or less	1.00

where:

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE 2308.7.2(4)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground Snow Load = 50 psf, Ceiling Not Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 180)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	8-5	13-3	17-6	22-4	26-0	8-5	13-3	17-0	20-9	24-0
	Douglas Fir-larch	#1	8-2	12-0	15-3	18-7	21-7	7-7	11-2	14-1	17-3	20-0
	Douglas Fir-larch	#2	7-8	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Douglas Fir-larch	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-0	12-6	16-6	21-1	25-6	8-0	12-6	16-6	20-4	23-7
	Hem-Fir	#1	7-10	11-9	14-10	18-1	21-0	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-5

`

	Hem-Fir	#2	7-5	11-1	14-0	17-2	19-11	7-0	10-3	13-0	15-10	18-5
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Southern Pine	SS	8-4	13-1	17-2	21-11	Note b	8-4	13-1	17-2	21-5	25-3
	Southern Pine	#1	8-0	12-3	15-6	18-2	21-7	7-7	11-4	14-5	16-10	20-0
	Southern Pine	#2	7-0	10-6	13-4	15-10	18-8	6-6	9-9	12-4	14-8	17-3
	Southern Pine	#3	5-5	8-0	10-1	12-3	14-6	5-0	7-5	9-4	11-4	13-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	24-1	7-10	12-3	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	7-8	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	7-8	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	7-8	12-1	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-8	11-7	14-8	17-11	20-10
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-7	9-8	12-2	14-11	17-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3
	Hem-Fir	SS	7-3	11-5	15-0	19-1	22-1	7-3	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Hem-Fir	#1	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-2	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
	Hem-Fir	#2	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3
	Southern Pine	SS	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-11	23-7	7-6	11-10	15-7	18-6	21-10
	Southern Pine	#1	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-7	9-10	12-5	14-7	17-3
	Southern Pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-8	8-5	10-9	12-9	15-0
	Southern Pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-4	6-5	8-1	9-10	11-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-9	13-8	15-11	19-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	7-3	11-4	14-6	17-8	20-6	7-3	10-7	13-5	16-5	19-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	6-6	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2
	Hem-Fir	SS	6-10	10-9	14-2	17-5	20-2	6-10	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Hem-Fir	#1	6-4	9-3	11-9	14-4	16-7	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Hem-Fir	#2	6-0	8-9	11-1	13-7	15-9	5-7	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7
	Hem-Fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2

(continued)

TABLE 2308.7.2(4)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground Snow Load = 50 psf, Ceiling Not Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 180)

`

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
19.2	Southern Pine	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-3	21-7	7-1	11-2	14-2	16-11	20-0
	Southern Pine	#1	6-6	9-8	12-3	14-4	17-1	6-0	9-0	11-4	13-4	15-9
	Southern Pine	#2	5-7	8-4	10-7	12-6	14-9	5-2	7-9	9-9	11-7	13-8
	Southern Pine	#3	4-3	6-4	8-0	9-8	11-5	4-0	5-10	7-4	8-11	10-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	6-8	10-6	13-5	16-5	19-1	6-8	9-10	12-5	15-3	17-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	6-8	10-3	13-0	15-10	18-4	6-6	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0
	Hem-Fir	SS	6-4	9-11	12-9	15-7	18-0	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Hem-Fir	#1	5-8	8-3	10-6	12-10	14-10	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9
	Hem-Fir	#2	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-1	4-11	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0
	Hem-Fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0
	Southern Pine	SS	6-7	10-4	13-8	16-4	19-3	6-7	10-0	12-8	15-2	17-10
	Southern Pine	#1	5-10	8-8	11-0	12-10	15-3	5-5	8-0	10-2	11-11	14-1
	Southern Pine	#2	5-0	7-5	9-5	11-3	13-2	4-7	6-11	8-9	10-5	12-3
	Southern Pine	#3	3-10	5-8	7-1	8-8	10-3	3-6	5-3	6-7	8-0	9-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	6-2	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

H_C/H_R	Rafter Span Adjustment Factor
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90
1/7.5 or less	1.00

where:

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

`

H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

TABLE 2308.7.2(5)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground Snow Load = 30 psf, Ceiling Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-1	14-4	18-10	24-1	Note b	9-1	14-4	18-10	24-1	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-9	13-9	18-2	22-9	Note b	8-9	13-2	16-8	20-4	23-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-7	13-6	17-5	21-4	24-8	8-5	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b
	Hem-Fir	#1	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-2	25-9	8-5	12-10	16-3	19-10	23-0
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-0	12-7	16-7	21-0	24-4	8-0	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Southern Pine	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b
	Southern Pine	#1	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-3	Note b	8-7	13-5	17-0	19-11	23-7
	Southern Pine	#2	8-3	12-11	16-4	19-5	22-10	7-8	11-7	14-8	17-4	20-5
	Southern Pine	#3	6-7	9-9	12-4	15-0	17-9	5-11	8-9	11-0	13-5	15-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-3	12-11	17-0	21-4	24-8	8-3	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-3	12-11	17-0	21-4	24-8	8-3	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	8-3	13-0	17-2	21-10	Note b	8-3	13-0	17-2	21-3	24-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-0	12-6	16-2	19-9	22-10	7-10	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	7-10	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Hem-Fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	25-1	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	24-2
	Hem-Fir	#1	7-8	12-0	15-9	19-3	22-3	7-7	11-1	14-1	17-2	19-11
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-3	11-5	14-11	18-2	21-1	7-2	10-6	13-4	16-3	18-10

`

	Hem-Fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Southern Pine	SS	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6	Note b	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6	25-11
	Southern Pine	#1	7-10	12-3	16-2	19-3	22-10	7-10	11-7	14-9	17-3	20-5
	Southern Pine	#2	7-6	11-2	14-2	16-10	19-10	6-8	10-0	12-8	15-1	17-9
	Southern Pine	#3	5-9	8-6	10-8	13-0	15-4	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-7	13-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-2	24-7	7-8	12-0	15-10	19-9	22-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	7-6	11-9	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	7-6	11-9	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	7-9	12-3	16-1	20-7	25-0	7-9	12-3	15-10	19-5	22-6
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	7-6	11-8	14-9	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	7-4	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Hem-Fir	SS	7-4	11-7	15-3	19-5	23-7	7-4	11-7	15-3	19-1	22-1
	Hem-Fir	#1	7-2	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-2
	Hem-Fir	#2	6-10	10-9	13-7	16-7	19-3	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2

(continued)

TABLE 2308.7.2(5)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground Snow Load = 30 psf, Ceiling Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
19.2	Southern Pine	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-2	24-7	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-0	23-7
	Southern Pine	#1	7-4	11-7	15-1	17-7	20-11	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8
	Southern Pine	#2	6-10	10-2	12-11	15-4	18-1	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2
	Southern Pine	#3	5-3	7-9	9-9	11-10	14-0	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-2	11-4	14-11	19-0	23-1	7-2	11-4	14-9	18-0	20-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	7-0	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	7-0	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	7-3	11-4	15-0	19-1	22-6	7-3	11-3	14-2	17-4	20-1

`

	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	7-0	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Hem-Fir	SS	6-10	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11	6-10	10-9	13-11	17-0	19-9
	Hem-Fir	#1	6-8	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-2	6-2	9-1	11-6	14-0	16-3
	Hem-Fir	#2	6-4	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Southern Pine	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10	7-1	11-2	14-8	17-11	21-2
	Southern Pine	#1	6-10	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-4	9-6	12-0	14-1	16-8
	Southern Pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-5	8-2	10-4	12-3	14-6
	Southern Pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-2	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	6-8	10-6	13-10	17-8	20-11	6-8	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	6-6	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	6-6	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

H_C/H_R	**Rafter Span Adjustment Factor**
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90
1/7.5 or less	1.00

where:

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

`

TABLE 2308.7.2(6)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground Snow Load = 50 psf, Ceiling Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	7-8	12-1	15-11	20-3	24-8	7-8	12-1	15-11	20-3	24-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	7-5	11-7	15-3	18-7	21-7	7-5	11-2	14-1	17-3	20-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	7-3	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Hem-Fir	SS	7-3	11-5	15-0	19-2	23-4	7-3	11-5	15-0	19-2	23-4
	Hem-Fir	#1	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-1	21-0	7-1	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-5
	Hem-Fir	#2	6-9	10-8	14-0	17-2	19-11	6-9	10-3	13-0	15-10	18-5
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Southern Pine	SS	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-11	24-3	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-11	24-3
	Southern Pine	#1	7-3	11-5	15-0	18-2	21-7	7-3	11-4	14-5	16-10	20-0
	Southern Pine	#2	6-11	10-6	13-4	15-10	18-8	6-6	9-9	12-4	14-8	17-3
	Southern Pine	#3	5-5	8-0	10-1	12-3	14-6	5-0	7-5	9-4	11-4	13-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	6-11	10-11	14-3	17-5	20-2	6-11	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	6-11	10-11	14-3	17-5	20-2	6-11	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	7-0	11-0	14-5	18-5	22-5	7-0	11-0	14-5	17-11	20-10
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	6-9	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-7	9-8	12-2	14-11	17-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	6-7	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3
	Hem-Fir	SS	6-7	10-4	13-8	17-5	21-2	6-7	10-4	13-8	17-5	20-5
	Hem-Fir	#1	6-5	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-2	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
	Hem-Fir	#2	6-2	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3
	Southern Pine	SS	6-10	10-9	14-2	18-1	22-0	6-10	10-9	14-2	18-1	21-10
	Southern Pine	#1	6-7	10-4	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-7	9-10	12-5	14-7	17-3
	Southern Pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-8	8-5	10-9	12-9	15-0
	Southern Pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-4	6-5	8-1	9-10	11-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	6-5	10-2	13-4	17-0	20-9	6-5	10-2	13-4	16-8	19-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	6-4	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	6-4	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	6-7	10-4	13-7	17-4	20-6	6-7	10-4	13-5	16-5	19-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	6-4	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2
	Hem-Fir	SS	6-2	9-9	12-10	16-5	19-11	6-2	9-9	12-10	16-1	18-8
	Hem-Fir	#1	6-1	9-3	11-9	14-4	16-7	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Hem-Fir	#2	5-9	8-9	11-1	13-7	15-9	5-7	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7
	Hem-Fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2

(continued)

`

TABLE 2308.7.2(6)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground Snow Load = 50 psf, Ceiling Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 240)

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE		DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
			2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
			Maximum rafter spans[a]									
			(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)
19.2	Southern Pine	SS	6-5	10-2	13-4	17-0	20-9	6-5	10-2	13-4	16-11	20-0
	Southern Pine	#1	6-2	9-8	12-3	14-4	17-1	6-0	9-0	11-4	13-4	15-9
	Southern Pine	#2	5-7	8-4	10-7	12-6	14-9	5-2	7-9	9-9	11-7	13-8
	Southern Pine	#3	4-3	6-4	8-0	9-8	11-5	4-0	5-10	7-4	8-11	10-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	6-1	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-1	6-1	9-6	12-5	15-3	17-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	5-11	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	5-11	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	6-1	9-7	12-7	15-10	18-4	6-1	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0
	Hem-Fir	SS	5-9	9-1	11-11	15-2	18-0	5-9	9-1	11-9	14-5	15-11
	Hem-Fir	#1	5-8	8-3	10-6	12-10	14-10	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9
	Hem-Fir	#2	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-1	4-11	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0
	Hem-Fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0
	Southern Pine	SS	6-0	9-5	12-5	15-10	19-3	6-0	9-5	12-5	15-2	17-10
	Southern Pine	#1	5-9	8-8	11-0	12-10	15-3	5-5	8-0	10-2	11-11	14-1
	Southern Pine	#2	5-0	7-5	9-5	11-3	13-2	4-7	6-11	8-9	10-5	12-3
	Southern Pine	#3	3-10	5-8	7-1	8-8	10-3	3-6	5-3	6-7	8-0	9-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	5-8	8-10	11-8	14-8	17-1	5-8	8-10	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

H_C/H_R	Rafter Span Adjustment Factor
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90

`

1/7.5 or less	1.00

where:

H_C = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

H_R = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

2308.7.3 Ceiling joist and rafter framing.
Rafters shall be framed directly opposite each other at the ridge. There shall be a ridge board not less than 1-inch (25 mm) nominal thickness at ridges and not less in depth than the cut end of the rafter. At valleys and hips, there shall be a single valley or hip rafter not less than 2-inch (51 mm) nominal thickness and not less in depth than the cut end of the rafter.

2308.7.3.1 Ceiling joist and rafter connections.
Ceiling joists and rafters shall be nailed to each other and the assembly shall be nailed to the top wall plate in accordance with Tables 2304.10.1 and 2308.7.5. Ceiling joists shall be continuous or securely joined where they meet over interior partitions and be fastened to adjacent rafters in accordance with Tables 2304.10.1 and 2308.7.3.1 to provide a continuous rafter tie across the building where such joists are parallel to the rafters. Ceiling joists shall have a bearing surface of not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) on the top plate at each end.

Where ceiling joists are not parallel to rafters, an equivalent rafter tie shall be installed in a manner to provide a continuous tie across the building, at a spacing of not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center. The connections shall be in accordance with Tables 2308.7.3.1 and 2304.10.1, or connections of equivalent capacities shall be provided. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are not provided at the top of the rafter support walls, the ridge formed by these rafters shall also be supported by a girder conforming to Section 2308.8.

Rafter ties shall be spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center. Rafter tie connections shall be based on the equivalent rafter spacing in Table 2308.7.3.1. Rafter-to-ceiling joist connections and rafter tie connections shall be of sufficient size and number to prevent splitting from nailing.

Roof framing member connection to braced wall lines shall be in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.2.

TABLE 2308.7.3.1
RAFTER TIE CONNECTIONS[g]

RAFTER SLOPE	TIE SPACING (inches)	NO SNOW LOAD				GROUND SNOW LOAD (pound per square foot)							
						30 pounds per square foot				50 pounds per square foot			
						Roof span (feet)							
		12	20	28	36	12	20	28	36	12	20	28	36

`

		Required number of 16d common ($3\frac{1}{2}''$ x 0.162″) nails[a, b] per connection[c, d, e, f]											
3:12	12	4	6	8	10	4	6	8	11	5	8	12	15
	16	5	7	10	13	5	8	11	14	6	11	15	20
	24	7	11	15	19	7	11	16	21	9	16	23	30
	32	10	14	19	25	10	16	22	28	12	27	30	40
	48	14	21	29	37	14	32	36	42	18	32	46	60
4:12	12	3	4	5	6	3	5	6	8	4	6	9	11
	16	3	5	7	8	4	6	8	11	5	8	12	15
	24	4	7	10	12	5	9	12	16	7	12	17	22
	32	6	9	13	16	8	12	16	22	10	16	24	30
	48	8	14	19	24	10	18	24	32	14	24	34	44
5:12	12	3	3	4	5	3	4	5	7	3	5	7	9
	16	3	4	5	7	3	5	7	9	4	7	9	12
	24	4	6	8	10	4	7	10	13	6	10	14	18
	32	5	8	10	13	6	10	14	18	8	14	18	24
	48	7	11	15	20	8	14	20	26	12	20	28	36
7:12	12	3	3	3	4	3	3	4	5	3	4	5	7
	16	3	3	4	5	3	4	5	6	3	5	7	9
	24	3	4	6	7	3	5	7	9	4	7	10	13
	32	4	6	8	10	4	8	10	12	6	10	14	18
	48	5	8	11	14	6	10	14	18	9	14	20	26
9:12	12	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	4	3	3	4	5
	16	3	3	3	4	3	3	4	5	3	4	5	7
	24	3	3	5	6	3	4	6	7	3	6	8	10
	32	3	4	6	8	4	6	8	10	5	8	10	14
	48	4	6	9	11	5	8	12	14	7	12	16	20
12:12	12	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	4
	16	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	4	3	3	4	5
	24	3	3	3	4	3	3	4	6	3	4	6	8
	32	3	3	4	5	3	5	6	8	4	6	8	10
	48	3	4	6	7	4	7	8	12	6	8	12	16

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 47.8 N/m^2.

a. 40d box (5″ × 0.162″) or 16d sinker ($3\frac{1}{4}''$ × 0.148″) nails are permitted to be substituted for 16d common ($3\frac{1}{2}''$ × 0.16″) nails.
b. Nailing requirements are permitted to be reduced 25 percent if nails are clinched.
c. Rafter tie heel joint connections are not required where the ridge is supported by a load-bearing wall, header or ridge beam.
d. When intermediate support of the rafter is provided by vertical struts or purlins to a load-bearing wall, the tabulated heel joint connection requirements are permitted to be reduced proportionally to the reduction in span.
e. Equivalent nailing patterns are required for ceiling joist to ceiling joist lap splices. f. Connected members shall be of sufficient size to prevent splitting due to nailing.
g. For snow loads less than 30 pounds per square foot, the required number of nails is permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the ratio of actual snow load plus 10 divided by 40, but not less than the number required for no snow load.

2308.7.4 Notches and holes.
Notching at the ends of rafters or ceiling joists shall not exceed one-fourth the depth.

`

Notches in the top or bottom of the rafter or ceiling joist shall not exceed one-sixth the depth and shall not be located in the middle one-third of the span, except that a notch not more than one-third of the depth is permitted in the top of the rafter or ceiling joist not further from the face of the support than the depth of the member. Holes bored in rafters or ceiling joists shall not be within 2 inches (51 mm) of the top and bottom and their diameter shall not exceed one-third the depth of the member.

2308.7.5 Wind uplift.
The roof construction shall have rafter and truss ties to the wall below. Resultant uplift loads shall be transferred to the foundation using a continuous load path. The rafter or truss to wall connection shall comply with Tables 2304.10.1 and 2308.7.5.

TABLE 2308.7.5

REQUIRED RATING OF APPROVED UPLIFT CONNECTORS (pounds)[a, b, c, e, f, g, h]

NOMINAL DESIGN WIND SPEED, V_{asd} [i]	ROOF SPAN (feet)							OVERHANGS (pounds/feet)[d]
	12	20	24	28	32	36	40	
85	-72	-120	-145	-169	-193	-217	-241	-38.55
90	-91	-151	-181	-212	-242	-272	-302	-43.22
100	-131	-281	-262	-305	-349	-393	-436	-53.36
110	-175	-292	-351	-409	-467	-526	-584	-64.56

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 1.61 km/hr, 1 pound = 0.454 Kg, 1 pound/foot = 14.5939 N/m.

a. The uplift connection requirements are based on a 30-foot mean roof height located in Exposure B. For Exposure C or D and for other mean roof heights, multiply the above loads by the adjustment coefficients below.

	Mean Roof Height (feet)									
EXPOSURE	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
B	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.05	1.09	1.12	1.16	1.19	1.22
C	1.21	1.29	1.35	1.40	1.45	1.49	1.53	1.56	1.59	1.62
D	1.47	1.55	1.61	1.66	1.70	1.74	1.78	1.81	1.84	1.87

b. The uplift connection requirements are based on the framing being spaced 24 inches on center. Multiply by 0.67 for framing spaced 16 inches on center and multiply by 0.5 for framing spaced 12 inches on center.
c. The uplift connection requirements include an allowance for 10 pounds of dead load.
d. The uplift connection requirements do not account for the effects of overhangs. The magnitude of the above loads shall be increased by adding the overhang loads found in the table. The overhang loads are also based on framing spaced 24 inches on center. The overhang loads given shall be multiplied by the overhang projection and added to the roof uplift value in the table.
e. The uplift connection requirements are based upon wind loading on end zones as defined in Figure 28.6.3 of ASCE 7. Connection loads for connections located a distance of 20 percent of the least horizontal dimension of the building from the corner of the building are permitted to be reduced by multiplying the table connection value by 0.7 and multiplying the overhang load by 0.8.
f. For wall-to-wall and wall-to-foundation connections, the capacity of the uplift connector is permitted to be reduced by 100 pounds for each full wall above. (For example, if a 500-pound rated connector is used on the roof framing, a 400-pound rated connector is permitted at the next floor level down).
g. Interpolation is permitted for intermediate values of V_{asd} and roof spans.
h. The rated capacity of approved tie-down devices is permitted to include up to a 60-percent increase for wind effects where allowed by material specifications.

`

i. V_{asd} shall be determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1.

2308.7.6 Framing around openings.
Trimmer and header rafters shall be doubled, or of lumber of equivalent cross section, where the span of the header exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm). The ends of header rafters that are more than 6 feet (1829 mm) in length shall be supported by framing anchors or rafter hangers unless bearing on a beam, partition or wall.

2308.7.6.1 Openings in roof diaphragms in Seismic Design Categories B, C, D and E.
In buildings classified as *Seismic Design Category* B, C, D or E. openings in horizontal diaphragms with a dimension that is greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) shall be constructed with metal ties and blocking in accordance with this section and Figure 2308.4.4.1(1). Metal ties shall be not less than 0.058 inch [1.47 mm (16 galvanized gage)] in thickness by $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in width and shall have a yield stress not less than 33,000 psi (227 Mpa). Blocking shall extend not less than the dimension of the opening in the direction of the tie and blocking. Ties shall be attached to blocking in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions but with not less than eight 16d common nails on each side of the header-joist intersection.

2308.7.7 Purlins.
Purlins to support roof loads are permitted to be installed to reduce the span of rafters within allowable limits and shall be supported by struts to bearing walls. The maximum span of 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) purlins shall be 4 feet (1219 mm). The maximum span of the 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) purlin shall be 6 feet (1829 mm), but in no case shall the purlin be smaller than the supported rafter. Struts shall be not less than 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) members. The unbraced length of struts shall not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm) and the slope of the struts shall be not less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the horizontal.

2308.7.8 Blocking.
Roof rafters and ceiling joists shall be supported laterally to prevent rotation and lateral displacement in accordance with Section 2308.4.6 and connected to braced wall lines in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.2.

2308.7.9 Engineered wood products.
Prefabricated wood I-joists, structural glued-laminated timber and structural composite lumber shall not be notched or drilled except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a *registered design professional*.

2308.7.10 Roof sheathing.
Roof sheathing shall be in accordance with Tables 2304.8(3) and 2304.8(5) for wood structural panels, and Tables 2304.8(1) and 2304.8(2) for lumber and shall comply with Section 2304.8.2.

2308.7.11 Joints.
Joints in lumber sheathing shall occur over supports unless *approved* end-matched lumber is used, in which case each piece shall bear on at least two supports.

2308.7.12 Roof planking.
Planking shall be designed in accordance with the general provisions of this code. In lieu of

such design, 2-inch (51 mm) tongue-and groove planking is permitted in accordance with Table 2308.7.12. Joints in such planking are permitted to be randomly spaced, provided the system is applied to not less than three continuous spans, planks are center matched and end matched or splined, each plank bears on at least one support, and joints are separated by not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in adjacent pieces.

TABLE 2308.7.12
ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR 2-INCH TONGUE-AND-GROOVE DECKING

SPAN[a] (feet)	LIVE LOAD (pounds per square foot)	DEFLECTION LIMIT	BENDING STRESS (f) (pounds per square inch)	MODULUS OF ELASTICITY (E) (pounds per square inch)
Roofs				
4	20	1/240 1/360	160	170,000 256,000
	30	1/240 1/360	210	256,000 384,000
	40	1/240 1/360	270	340,000 512,000
4.5	20	1/240 1/360	200	242,000 305,000
	30	1/240 1/360	270	363,000 405,000
	40	1/240 1/360	350	484,000 725,000
5.0	20	1/240 1/360	250	332,000 500,000
	30	1/240 1/360	330	495,000 742,000
	40	1/240 1/360	420	660,000 1,000,000
5.5	20	1/240 1/360	300	442,000 660,000
	30	1/240 1/360	400	662,000 998,000
	40	1/240 1/360	500	884,000 1,330,000
6.0	20	1/240 1/360	360	575,000 862,000
	30	1/240 1/360	480	862,000 1,295,000
	40	1/240 1/360	600	1,150,000 1,730,000

(continued)

`

TABLE 2308.7.12—continued
ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR 2-INCH TONGUE-AND-GROOVE DECKING

SPAN[a] (feet)	LIVE LOAD (pounds per square foot)	DEFLECTION LIMIT	BENDING STRESS (f) (pounds per square inch)	MODULUS OF ELASTICITY (E) (pounds per square inch)
Roofs				
6.5	20	1/240 1/360	420	595,000 892,000
	30	1/240 1/360	560	892,000 1,340,000
	40	1/240 1/360	700	1,190,000 1,730,000
7.0	20	1/240 1/360	490	910,000 1,360,000
	30	1/240 1/360	650	1,370,000 2,000,000
	40	1/240 1/360	810	1,820,000 2,725,000
7.5	20	1/240 1/360	560	1,125,000 1,685,000
	30	1/240 1/360	750	1,685,000 2,530,000
	40	1/240 1/360	930	2,250,000 3,380,000
8.0	20	1/240 1/360	640	1,360,000 2,040,000
	30	1/240 1/360	850	2,040,000 3,060,000
Floors				
4 4.5 5.0	40	1/360	840 950 1,060	1,000,000 1,300,000 1,600,000

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m^2, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 N/mm^2.

a. Spans are based on simple beam action with 10 pounds per square foot dead load and provisions for a 300-pound concentrated load on a 12-inch width of decking. Random layup is permitted in accordance with the provisions of Section 2308.7.12. Lumber thickness is $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches nominal.

2308.7.13 Wood trusses.
Wood trusses shall be designed in accordance with Section 2303.4. Connection to braced wall lines shall be in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.2.

2308.7.14 Attic ventilation.
For *attic* ventilation, see Section 1203.2.

`

2308.8 Design of elements.
Combining of engineered elements or systems and conventionally specified elements or systems shall be permitted subject to the limits of Sections 2308.8.1 and 2308.8.2.

2308.8.1 Elements exceeding limitations of conventional construction.
Where a building of otherwise conventional construction contains structural elements exceeding the limits of Section 2308.2, these elements and the supporting load path shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the provisions of this code.

2308.8.2 Structural elements or systems not described herein.
Where a building of otherwise conventional construction contains structural elements or systems not described in Section 2308, these elements or systems shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the provisions of this code. The extent of such design need only demonstrate compliance of the nonconventional elements with other applicable provisions of this code and shall be compatible with the performance of the conventionally framed system.

SECTION 2309
WOOD FRAME CONSTRUCTION MANUAL

2309.1 Wood Frame Construction Manual.
Structural design in accordance with the AWC WFCM shall be permitted for buildings assigned to Risk Category I or II subject to the limitations of Section 1.1.3 of the AWC WFCM and the load assumptions contained therein. Structural elements beyond these limitations shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

`

CHAPTER 24
GLASS AND GLAZING

User note: Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code

Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 2401
GENERAL

2401.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and quality of glass, light-transmitting ceramic and light-transmitting plastic panels for exterior and interior use in both vertical and sloped applications in buildings and structures.

2401.2 Glazing replacement.
The installation of replacement glass shall be as required for new installations.

SECTION 2402
DEFINITIONS

2402.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

DALLE GLASS.

DECORATIVE GLASS.

SECTION 2403
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR GLASS

2403.1 Identification.
Each pane shall bear the manufacturer's *mark* designating the type and thickness of the glass or glazing material. The identification shall not be omitted unless *approved* and an affidavit is furnished by the glazing contractor certifying that each light is glazed in accordance with *approved construction documents* that comply with the provisions of this chapter. Safety glazing shall be identified in accordance with Section 2406.3.

Each pane of tempered glass, except tempered spandrel glass, shall be permanently identified by the manufacturer. The identification *mark* shall be acid etched, sand blasted, ceramic fired, laser etched, embossed or of a type that, once applied, cannot be removed without being destroyed.

Tempered spandrel glass shall be provided with a removable paper marking by the manufacturer.

`

2403.2 Glass supports.
Where one or more sides of any pane of glass are not firmly supported, or are subjected to unusual load conditions, detailed *construction documents*, detailed shop drawings and analysis or test data ensuring safe performance for the specific installation shall be prepared by a *registered design professional*.

2403.3 Framing.
To be considered firmly supported, the framing members for each individual pane of glass shall be designed so the deflection of the edge of the glass perpendicular to the glass pane shall not exceed $^{1}/_{175}$ of the glass edge length or $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm), whichever is less, when subjected to the larger of the positive or negative load where loads are combined as specified in Section 1605.

2403.4 Interior glazed areas.
Where interior glazing is installed adjacent to a walking surface, the differential deflection of two adjacent unsupported edges shall be not greater than the thickness of the panels when a force of 50 pounds per linear foot (plf) (730 N/m) is applied horizontally to one panel at any point up to 42 inches (1067 mm) above the walking surface.

2403.5 Louvered windows or jalousies.
Float, wired and patterned glass in louvered windows and jalousies shall be no thinner than nominal $^{3}/_{16}$ inch (4.8 mm) and no longer than 48 inches (1219 mm). Exposed glass edges shall be smooth.

Wired glass with wire exposed on longitudinal edges shall not be used in louvered windows or jalousies.

Where other glass types are used, the design shall be submitted to the *building official* for approval.

SECTION 2404
WIND, SNOW, SEISMIC AND DEAD LOADS ON GLASS

2404.1 Vertical glass.
Glass sloped 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or less from vertical in windows, curtain and window walls, doors and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the wind loads due to ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, in Section 1609 for components and cladding. Glass in glazed curtain walls, glazed storefronts and glazed partitions shall meet the seismic requirements of ASCE 7, Section 13.5.9. The load resistance of glass under uniform load shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E1300.

The design of vertical glazing shall be based on Equation 24-1.

$$0.6F_{gw} \leq F_{ga} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-1)}$$

where:

`

F_{gw} = Wind load on the glass due to ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, computed in accordance with Section 1609.

F_{ga} = Short duration load on the glass as determined in accordance with ASTM E1300.

2404.2 Sloped glass.
Glass sloped more than 15 degrees (0.26 rad) from vertical in skylights, sunrooms, sloped roofs and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the most critical combinations of loads determined by Equations 24-2, 24-3 and 24-4.

$$F_g = 0.6W_o - D \quad \textbf{(Equation 24-2)}$$

$$F_g = 0.6W_i + D + 0.5\,S \quad \textbf{(Equation 24-3)}$$

$$F_g = 0.3\,W_i + D + S \quad \textbf{(Equation 24-4)}$$

where:

D = Glass dead load psf (kN/m^2).
For glass sloped 30 degrees (0.52 rad) or less from horizontal,
= $13\,t_g$ (For SI: $0.0245\,t_g$).
For glass sloped more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from horizontal,
= $13\,t_g \cos\theta$ (For SI: $0.0245\,t_g \cos\theta$).

F_g = Total load, psf (kN/m^2) on glass.

S = Snow load, psf (kN/m^2) as determined in Section 1608.

t_g = Total glass thickness, inches (mm) of glass panes and plies.

W_i = Inward wind force, psf (kN/m^2) due to ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, as calculated in Section 1609.

W_o = Outward wind force, psf (kN/m^2) due to ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, as calculated in Section 1609.

θ = Angle of slope from horizontal.

Exception: The performance grade rating of unit skylights and tubular daylighting devices shall be determined in accordance with Section 2405.5.

The design of sloped glazing shall be based on Equation 24-5.

$$F_g \le F_{ga} \quad \textbf{(Equation 24-5)}$$

where:

`

F_g = Total load on the glass as determined by Equations 24-2, 24-3 and 24-4.

F_{ga} = Short duration load resistance of the glass as determined in accordance with ASTM E1300 for Equations 24-2 and 24-3; or the long duration load resistance of the glass as determined in accordance with ASTM E1300 for Equation 24-4.

2404.3 Wired, patterned and sandblasted glass.

2404.3.1 Vertical wired glass.
Wired glass sloped 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or less from vertical in windows, curtain and window walls, doors and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the wind loads in Section 1609 for components and cladding according to the following equation:

$$0.6F_{gw} < 0.5\,F_{ge} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-6)}$$

where:

F_{gw} = Wind load on the glass due to ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, computed in accordance with Section 1609.

F_{ge} = Nonfactored load from ASTM E1300 using a thickness designation for monolithic glass that is not greater than the thickness of wired glass.

2404.3.2 Sloped wired glass.
Wired glass sloped more than 15 degrees (0.26 rad) from vertical in skylights, sunspaces, sloped roofs and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the most critical of the combinations of loads from Section 2404.2.

For Equations 24-2 and 24-3:

$$F_g < 0.5\,F_{ge} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-7)}$$

For Equation 24-4:

$$F_g < 0.3\,F_{ge} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-8)}$$

where:

F_g = Total load on the glass as determined by Equations 24-2, 24-3 and 24-4.

F_{ge} = Nonfactored load in accordance with ASTM E1300.

`

2404.3.3 Vertical patterned glass.
Patterned glass sloped 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or less from vertical in windows, curtain and window walls, doors and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the wind loads in Section 1609 for components and cladding according to Equation 24-9.

$$F_{gw} < 1.0\ F_{ge} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-9)}$$

where:

F_{gw} = Wind load on the glass due to ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, computed in accordance with Section 1609.

F_{ge} = Nonfactored load in accordance with ASTM E1300. The value for patterned glass shall be based on the thinnest part of the glass. Interpolation between nonfactored load charts in ASTM E1300 shall be permitted.

2404.3.4 Sloped patterned glass.
Patterned glass sloped more than 15 degrees (0.26 rad) from vertical in skylights, sunspaces, sloped roofs and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the most critical of the combinations of loads from Section 2404.2.

For Equations 24-2 and 24-3:

$$F_{g} < 1.0\ F_{ge} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-10)}$$

For Equation 24-4:

$$F_{g} < 0.6F_{ge} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-11)}$$

where:

F_{g} = Total load on the glass as determined by Equations 24-2, 24-3 and 24-4.

F_{ge} = Nonfactored load in accordance with ASTM E1300. The value for patterned glass shall be based on the thinnest part of the glass. Interpolation between the nonfactored load charts in ASTM E1300 shall be permitted.

2404.3.5 Vertical sandblasted glass.
Sandblasted glass sloped 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or less from vertical in windows, curtain and window walls, doors, and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the wind loads in Section 1609 for components and cladding according to Equation 24-12.

$$0.6F_{gw} < 0.5\ F_{ge} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-12)}$$

`

where:

F_g	=	Wind load on the glass due to ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, computed in accordance with Section 1609.
F_{ge}	=	Nonfactored load in accordance with ASTM E1300. The value for sandblasted glass is for moderate levels of sandblasting.

2404.4 Other designs.
For designs outside the scope of this section, an analysis or test data for the specific installation shall be prepared by a *registered design professional*.

SECTION 2405
SLOPED GLAZING AND SKYLIGHTS

2405.1 Scope.
This section applies to the installation of glass and other transparent, translucent or opaque glazing material installed at a slope more than 15 degrees (0.26 rad) from the vertical plane, including glazing materials in skylights, roofs and sloped walls.

2405.2 Allowable glazing materials and limitations.
Sloped glazing shall be any of the following materials, subject to the listed limitations.

1. For monolithic glazing systems, the glazing material of the single light or layer shall be laminated glass with a minimum 30-mil (0.76 mm) polyvinyl butyral (or equivalent) interlayer, wired glass, light-transmitting plastic materials meeting the requirements of Section 2607, heat-strengthened glass or fully tempered glass.

2. For multiple-layer glazing systems, each light or layer shall consist of any of the glazing materials specified in Item 1 above.

Annealed glass is permitted to be used as specified in Exceptions 2 and 3 of Section 2405.3.

For additional requirements for plastic skylights, see Section 2610. Glass-block construction shall conform to the requirements of Section 2110.1.

2405.3 Screening.
Where used in monolithic glazing systems, heat-strengthened and fully tempered glass shall have screens installed below the glazing material. The screens and their fastenings shall: (1) be capable of supporting twice the weight of the glazing; (2) be firmly and substantially fastened to the framing members and (3) be installed within 4 inches (102 mm) of the glass. The screens shall be constructed of a noncombustible material not thinner than No. 12 B&S gage (0.0808 inch) with mesh not larger than 1 inch by 1 inch (25 mm by 25 mm). In a corrosive atmosphere, structurally equivalent noncorrosive screen materials shall be used. Heat-strengthened glass, fully tempered glass and wired glass, when used in multiple-layer glazing systems as the bottom glass layer over the walking surface, shall be equipped with screening that conforms to the requirements for monolithic glazing systems.

`

Exception: In monolithic and multiple-layer sloped glazing systems, the following applies:

1. Fully tempered glass installed without protective screens where glazed between intervening floors at a slope of 30 degrees (0.52 rad) or less from the vertical plane shall have the highest point of the glass 10 feet (3048 mm) or less above the walking surface.

2. Screens are not required below any glazing material, including annealed glass, where the walking surface below the glazing material is permanently protected from the risk of falling glass or the area below the glazing material is not a walking surface.

3. Any glazing material, including annealed glass, is permitted to be installed without screens in the sloped glazing systems of commercial or detached noncombustible greenhouses used exclusively for growing plants and not open to the public, provided that the height of the greenhouse at the ridge does not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm) above grade.

4. Screens shall not be required in individual *dwelling units* in Groups R-2, R-3 and R-4 where fully tempered glass is used as single glazing or as both panes in an insulating glass unit, and the following conditions are met:

   4.1. Each pane of the glass is 16 square feet (1.5 m^2) or less in area.

   4.2. The highest point of the glass is 12 feet (3658 mm) or less above any walking surface or other accessible area.

   4.3. The glass thickness is 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) or less.

5. Screens shall not be required for laminated glass with a 15-mil (0.38 mm) polyvinyl butyral (or equivalent) interlayer ~~used in individual *dwelling units* in Groups R-2, R-3 and R-4~~ within the following limits:

   5.1. Each pane of glass is 16 square feet (1.5 m^2) or less in area.

   5.2. The highest point of the glass is 12 feet (3658 mm) or less above a walking surface or other accessible area.

2405.4 Framing.
In Type I and II construction, sloped glazing and skylight frames shall be constructed of noncombustible materials. In structures where acid fumes deleterious to metal are incidental to the use of the buildings, *approved* pressure-treated wood or other *approved* noncorrosive materials are permitted to be used for sash and frames. Framing supporting sloped glazing and skylights shall be designed to resist the tributary roof loads in Chapter 16. Skylights set at an angle of less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the horizontal plane shall be mounted at least 4 inches (102 mm) above the plane of the roof on a curb constructed as required for the frame. Skylights shall not be installed in the plane of the roof where the roof pitch is less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the horizontal.

Exception: Installation of a skylight without a curb shall be permitted on roofs with a minimum slope of 14 degrees (three units vertical in 12 units horizontal) in Group R-3 occupancies. All unit skylights installed in a roof with a pitch flatter than 14 degrees (0.25

`

rad) shall be mounted at least 4 inches (102 mm) above the plane of the roof on a curb constructed as required for the frame unless otherwise specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions.

2405.5 Unit skylights and tubular daylighting devices.
Unit skylights and tubular daylighting devices shall be tested and labeled as complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/ I.S./A440. The *label* shall state the name of the manufacturer, the *approved* labeling agency, the product designation and the performance grade rating as specified in AAMA/WDMA/ CSA 101/I.S.2/A440. Where the product manufacturer has chosen to have the performance grade of the skylight rated separately for positive and negative design pressure, then the *label* shall state both performance grade ratings as specified in AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 and the skylight shall comply with Section 2405.5.2. Where the skylight is not rated separately for positive and negative pressure, then the performance grade rating shown on the *label* shall be the performance grade rating determined in accordance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 for both positive and negative design pressure and the skylight shall conform to Section 2405.5.1.

2405.5.1 Skylights rated for the same performance grade for both positive and negative design pressure.
The design of skylights shall be based on Equation 24-13.

$$F_g \leq PG \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-13)}$$

where:

F_g = Maximum load on the skylight determined from Equations 24-2 through 24-4 in Section 2404.2.

PG = Performance grade rating of the skylight.

2405.5.2 Skylights rated for separate performance grades for positive and negative design pressure.
The design of skylights rated for performance grade for both positive and negative design pressures shall be based on Equations 24-14 and 24-15.

$$F_{gi} \leq PG_{Po} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-14)}$$

$$F_{go} \leq PG_{Ne} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-15)}$$

where:

PG_{Pos} = Performance grade rating of the skylight under positive design pressure;

PG_{Neg} = Performance grade rating of the skylight under negative design pressure; and

F_{gi} and F_{go} are determined in accordance with the following:

For $0.6W_o \geq D$,

`

where:

W_o = Outward wind force, psf (kN/m^2) due to ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}, as calculated in Section 1609.

D = The dead weight of the glazing, psf (kN/m^2) as determined in Section 2404.2 for glass, or by the weight of the plastic, psf (kN/m^2) for plastic glazing.

F_{gi} = Maximum load on the skylight determined from Equations 24-3 and 24-4 in Section 2404.2.

F_{go} = Maximum load on the skylight determined from Equation 24-2.

For $0.6\ W_o < D$,

where:

W_o = The outward wind force, psf (kN/m^2) due to ultimate design wind speed, V_{ult}. as calculated in Section 1609.

D = The dead weight of the glazing, psf (kN/m^2) as determined in Section 2404.2 for glass, or by the weight of the plastic for plastic glazing.

F_{gi} = Maximum load on the skylight determined from Equations 24-2 through 24-4 in Section 2404.2.

F_{go} = 0.

SECTION 2406
SAFETY GLAZING

2406.1 Human impact loads.
Individual glazed areas, including glass mirrors, in hazardous locations as defined in Section 2406.4 shall comply with Sections 2406.1.1 through 2406.1.4.

Exception: Mirrors and other glass panels mounted or hung on a surface that provides a continuous backing support.

2406.1.1 Impact test.
Except as provided in Sections 2406.1.2 through 2406.1.4, all glazing shall pass the impact test requirements of Section 2406.2.

2406.1.2 Plastic glazing.
Plastic glazing shall meet the weathering requirements of ANSI Z97.1.

`

2406.1.3 Glass block.
Glass-block walls shall comply with Section 2101.2.5.

2406.1.4 Louvered windows and jalousies.
Louvered windows and jalousies shall comply with Section 2403.5.

2406.2 Impact test.
Where required by other sections of this code, glazing shall be tested in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201. Glazing shall comply with the test criteria for Category II, unless otherwise indicated in Table 2406.2(1).

Exception: Glazing not in doors or enclosures for hot tubs, whirlpools, saunas, steam rooms, bathtubs and showers shall be permitted to be tested in accordance with ANSI Z97.1. Glazing shall comply with the test criteria for Class A, unless otherwise indicated in Table 2406.2(2).

TABLE 2406.2(1)
MINIMUM CATEGORY CLASSIFICATION OF GLAZING USING CPSC 16 CFR PART 1201

EXPOSED SURFACE AREA OF ONE SIDE OF ONE LITE	GLAZING IN STORM OR COMBINATION DOORS (Category class)	GLAZING IN DOORS (Category class)	GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.3 (Category class)	GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.2 (Category class)	DOORS AND ENCLOSURES REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.5 (Category class)	SLIDING GLASS DOORS PATIO TYPE (Category class)
9 square feet or less	I	I	No requirement	I	II	II
More than 9 square feet	II	II	II	II	II	II

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

TABLE 2406.2(2)
MINIMUM CATEGORY CLASSIFICATION OF GLAZING USING ANSI Z97.1

EXPOSED SURFACE AREA OF ONE SIDE OF ONE LITE	GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.3 (Category class)	GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.2 (Category class)	DOORS AND ENCLOSURES REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.5[a] (Category class)
9 square feet or less	No requirement	B	A
More than 9 square feet	A	A	A

`

For SI: square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

a. Use is only permitted by the exception to Section 2406.2.

2406.3 Identification of safety glazing.

Except as indicated in Section 2406.3.1, each pane of safety glazing installed in hazardous locations shall be identified by a manufacturer's designation specifying who applied the designation, the manufacturer or installer and the safety glazing standard with which it complies, as well as the information specified in Section 2403.1. The designation shall be acid etched, sand blasted, ceramic fired, laser etched, embossed or of a type that once applied, cannot be removed without being destroyed. A *label* meeting the requirements of this section shall be permitted in lieu of the manufacturer's designation.

Exceptions:

1. For other than tempered glass, manufacturer's designations are not required, provided the *building official* approves the use of a certificate, affidavit or other evidence confirming compliance with this code.

2. Tempered spandrel glass is permitted to be identified by the manufacturer with a removable paper designation.

2406.3.1 Multipane assemblies.

Multipane glazed assemblies having individual panes not exceeding 1 square foot (0.09 m^2) in exposed areas shall have at least one pane in the assembly marked as indicated in Section 2406.3. Other panes in the assembly shall be marked "CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201" or "ANSI Z97.1," as appropriate.

2406.4 Hazardous locations.

The locations specified in Sections 2406.4.1 through 2406.4.7 shall be considered specific hazardous locations requiring safety glazing materials.

2406.4.1 Glazing in doors.

Glazing in all fixed and operable panels of swinging, sliding and bifold doors shall be considered a hazardous location.

Exceptions:

1. Glazed openings of a size through which a 3-inch-diameter (76 mm) sphere is unable to pass.

2. Decorative glazing.

3. Glazing materials used as curved glazed panels in revolving doors.

4. Commercial refrigerated cabinet glazed doors.

2406.4.2 Glazing adjacent to doors.

Glazing in an individual fixed or operable panel adjacent to a door where the nearest vertical edge of the glazing is within a 24-inch (610 mm) arc of either vertical edge of the door in a closed position and where the bottom exposed edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the walking surface shall be considered a hazardous location.

`

Exceptions:

1. Decorative glazing.

2. Where there is an intervening wall or other permanent barrier between the door and glazing.

3. Where access through the door is to a closet or storage area 3 feet (914 mm) or less in depth. Glazing in this application shall comply with Section 2406.4.3.

4. Glazing in walls on the latch side of and perpendicular to the plane of the door in a closed position in one- and two-family dwellings or within dwelling units in Group R-2.

2406.4.3 Glazing in windows.
Glazing in an individual fixed or operable panel that meets all of the following conditions shall be considered a hazardous location:

1. The exposed area of an individual pane is greater than 9 square feet (0.84 m^2).

2. The bottom edge of the glazing is less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.

3. The top edge of the glazing is greater than 36 inches (914 mm) above the floor.

4. One or more walking surface(s) are within 36 inches (914 mm), measured horizontally and in a straight line, of the plane of the glazing.

   Exceptions:

   1. Decorative glazing.

   2. Where a horizontal rail is installed on the accessible side(s) of the glazing 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the walking surface. The rail shall be capable of withstanding a horizontal load of 50 pounds per linear foot (730 N/m) without contacting the glass and be a minimum of $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in cross-sectional height.

   3. Outboard panes in insulating glass units or multiple glazing where the bottom exposed edge of the glass is 25 feet (7620 mm) or more above any grade, roof, walking surface or other horizontal or sloped (within 45 degrees of horizontal) (0.79 rad) surface adjacent to the glass exterior.

2406.4.4 Glazing in guards and railings.
Glazing in *guards* and railings, including structural baluster panels and nonstructural in-fill panels, regardless of area or height above a walking surface shall be considered a hazardous location.

2406.4.5 Glazing and wet surfaces.
Glazing in walls, enclosures or fences containing or facing hot tubs, spas, whirlpools, saunas, steam rooms, bathtubs, showers and indoor or outdoor swimming pools where the bottom exposed edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) measured vertically

above any standing or walking surface shall be considered a hazardous location. This shall apply to single glazing and all panes in multiple glazing.

Exception: Glazing that is more than 60 inches (1524 mm), measured horizontally and in a straight line, from the water's edge of a bathtub, hot tub, spa, whirlpool or swimming pool.

2406.4.6 Glazing adjacent to stairways and ramps.
Glazing where the bottom exposed edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the plane of the adjacent walking surface of stairways, landings between flights of stairs and ramps shall be considered a hazardous location.

Exceptions:

1. The side of a stairway, landing or ramp that has a guard complying with the provisions of Sections 1015 and 1607.8, and the plane of the glass is greater than 18 inches (457 mm) from the railing.

2. Glazing 36 inches (914 mm) or more measured horizontally from the walking surface.

2406.4.7 Glazing adjacent to the bottom stairway landing.
Glazing adjacent to the landing at the bottom of a stairway where the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the landing and within a 60-inch (1524 mm) horizontal arc that is less than 180 degrees (3.14 rad) from the bottom tread nosing shall be considered a hazardous location.

Exception: Glazing that is protected by a guard complying with Sections 1015 and 1607.8 where the plane of the glass is greater than 18 inches (457 mm) from the guard.

2406.5 Fire department access panels.
Fire department glass access panels shall be of tempered glass. For insulating glass units, all panes shall be tempered glass.

SECTION 2407
GLASS IN HANDRAILS AND GUARDS

2407.1 Materials.
Glass used in a handrail, guardrail or a *guard* section shall be laminated glass constructed of fully tempered or heat-strengthened glass and shall comply with Category II or CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201 or Class A of ANSI Z97.1. Glazing in railing in-fill panels shall be of an *approved* safety glazing material that conforms to the provisions of Section 2406.1.1. For all glazing types, the minimum nominal thickness shall be $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm).

Exception: Single fully tempered glass complying with Category II of CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201 or Class A of ANSI Z97.1 shall be permitted to be used in handrails and guardrails where there is no walking surface beneath them or the walking surface is permanently protected from the risk of falling glass.

2407.1.1 Loads.
The panels and their support system shall be designed to withstand the loads specified in

`

Section 1607.8~~. A design factor of four shall be used for safety.~~ using a factor of safety of four.

~~**2407.1.2 Support.**~~
~~Each handrail or *guard* section shall be supported by a minimum of three glass balusters or shall be otherwise supported to remain in place should one baluster panel fail. Glass balusters shall not be installed without an attached handrail or *guard*.~~

> ~~**Exception:** A top rail shall not be required where the glass balusters are laminated glass with two or more glass plies of equal thickness and the same glass type when *approved* by the *building official*. The panels shall be designed to withstand the loads specified in Section 1607.8.~~

2407.1.2 Structural glass baluster panels. Guards with structural glass baluster panels shall be installed with an attached top rail or handrail. The top rail or handrail shall be supported by a minimum of three glass baluster panels, or shall be otherwise supported to remain in place should one glass baluster panel fail.

> **Exception:** An attached top rail or handrail is not required where the glass baluster panels are laminated glass with two or more glass plies of equal thickness and of the same glass type.

2407.1.3 Parking garages.
Glazing materials shall not be installed in handrails or *guards* in parking garages except for pedestrian areas not exposed to impact from vehicles.

2407.1.4 Glazing in wind-borne debris regions.
Glazing installed in in-fill panels or balusters in *wind-borne debris regions* shall comply with the following:

> **2407.1.4.1 Balusters and in-fill panels.**
> Glass installed in exterior railing in-fill panels or balusters shall be laminated glass complying with Category II of CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201 or Class A of ANSI Z97.1.
>
> **2407.1.4.2 Glass supporting top rail.**
> When the top rail is supported by glass, the assembly shall be tested according to the impact requirements of Section 1609.1.2. The top rail shall remain in place after impact.

SECTION 2408
GLAZING IN ATHLETIC FACILITIES

2408.1 General.
Glazing in athletic facilities and similar uses subject to impact loads, which forms whole or partial wall sections or which is used as a door or part of a door, shall comply with this section.

2408.2 Racquetball and squash courts.

> **2408.2.1 Testing.**
> Test methods and loads for individual glazed areas in racquetball and squash courts subject to impact loads shall conform to those of CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201 or ANSI Z97.1 with impacts being applied at a height of 59 inches (1499 mm) above the playing surface to an actual or simulated glass wall installation with fixtures, fittings and methods of assembly identical to those used in practice.

`

Glass walls shall comply with the following conditions:

1. A glass wall in a racquetball or squash court, or similar use subject to impact loads, shall remain intact following a test impact.

2. The deflection of such walls shall be not greater than $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches (38 mm) at the point of impact for a drop height of 48 inches (1219 mm).

Glass doors shall comply with the following conditions:

1. Glass doors shall remain intact following a test impact at the prescribed height in the center of the door.

2. The relative deflection between the edge of a glass door and the adjacent wall shall not exceed the thickness of the wall plus $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) for a drop height of 48 inches (1219 mm).

2408.3 Gymnasiums and basketball courts.
Glazing in multipurpose gymnasiums, basketball courts and similar athletic facilities subject to human impact loads shall comply with Category II of CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201 or Class A of ANSI Z97.1.

SECTION 2409
GLASS IN WALKWAYS, ELEVATOR HOISTWAYS AND ELEVATOR CARS

2409.1 Glass walkways.
Glass installed as a part of a floor/ ceiling assembly as a walking surface and constructed with laminated glass shall comply with ASTM E2751 or with the load requirements specified in Chapter 16. Such assemblies shall comply with the *fire-resistance rating* requirements of this code where applicable.

2409.2 Glass in elevator hoistway enclosures.
Glass in elevator hoistway enclosures and hoistway doors shall be laminated glass conforming to ANSI Z97.1 or CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201.

2409.2.1 Fire-resistance-rated hoistways.
Glass installed in hoistways and hoistway doors where the hoistway is required to have a fire-resistance rating shall also comply with Section 716.

2409.2.2 Glass hoistway doors.
The glass in glass hoistway doors shall be not less than 60 percent of the total visible door panel surface area as seen from the landing side.

2409.3 Visions panels in elevator hoistway doors.
Glass in vision panels in elevator hoistway doors shall be permitted to be any transparent glazing material not less than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) in thickness conforming to Class A in accordance with ANSI Z97.1 or Category II in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201. The

`

area of any single vision panel shall be not less than 24 square inches (15 484 mm^2) and the total area of one or more vision panels in any hoistway door shall be not more than 85 square inches (54 839 mm^2).

2409.4 Glass in elevator cars.
Glass in elevator cars shall be in accordance with this section.

2409.4.1 Glass types.
Glass in elevator car enclosures, glass elevator car doors and glass used for lining walls and ceilings of elevator cars shall be laminated glass conforming to Class A in accordance with ANSI Z97.1 or Category II in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201.

Exception: Tempered glass shall be permitted to be used for lining walls and ceilings of elevator cars provided:

1. The glass is bonded to a nonpolymeric coating, sheeting or film backing having a physical integrity to hold the fragments when the glass breaks.

2. The glass is not subjected to further treatment such as sandblasting; etching; heat treatment or painting that could alter the original properties of the glass.

3. The glass is tested to the acceptance criteria for laminated glass as specified for Class A in accordance with ANSI Z97.l or Category II in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201.

2409.4.2 Surface area.
The glass in glass elevator car doors shall be not less than 60 percent of the total visible door panel surface area as seen from the car side of the doors.

`

CHAPTER 25
GYPSUM BOARD, GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS AND PLASTER

User note: Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 2501
GENERAL

2501.1 Scope.
Provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and quality of gypsum board, gypsum panel products, lath, gypsum plaster, cement plaster and reinforced gypsum concrete.

2501.2 Performance.
Lathing, plastering, gypsum board and gypsum panel product construction shall be done in the manner and with the materials specified in this chapter and, when required for fire protection, shall also comply with the provisions of Chapter 7.

2501.3 Other materials.
Other *approved* wall or ceiling coverings shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and the conditions of approval.

SECTION 2502
DEFINITIONS

2502.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

CEMENT PLASTER.

EXTERIOR SURFACES.

GYPSUM BOARD.

GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS.

GYPSUM PLASTER.

GYPSUM VENEER PLASTER.

INTERIOR SURFACES.

WEATHER-EXPOSED SURFACES.

WIRE BACKING.

`

SECTION 2503
INSPECTION

2503.1 Inspection.
Lath, gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be inspected in accordance with Section 110.3.5.

SECTION 2504
VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLIES

2504.1 Scope.
The following requirements shall be met where construction involves gypsum board, gypsum panel products or lath and plaster in vertical and horizontal assemblies.

2504.1.1 Wood framing.
Wood supports for lath, gypsum board or gypsum panel products, as well as wood stripping or furring, shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal thickness in the least dimension.

Exception: The minimum nominal dimension of wood furring strips installed over solid backing shall be not less than 1 inch by 2 inches (25 mm by 51 mm).

2504.1.2 Studless partitions.
The minimum thickness of vertically erected studless solid plaster partitions of 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) and 3/4-inch (19.1 mm) rib metal lath,1/2-inch-thick (12.7 mm) gypsum lath, gypsum board or gypsum panel product shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

SECTION 2505
SHEAR WALL CONSTRUCTION

2505.1 Resistance to shear (wood framing).
Wood-frame shear walls sheathed with gypsum board, gypsum panel products or lath and plaster shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section 2306.3 and are permitted to resist wind and seismic loads. Walls resisting seismic loads shall be subject to the limitations in Section 12.2.1 of ASCE 7.

2505.2 Resistance to shear (steel framing).
Cold-formed steel-frame shear walls sheathed with gypsum board or gypsum panel products and constructed in accordance with the materials and provisions of Section 2211.6 are permitted to resist wind and seismic loads. Walls resisting seismic loads shall be subject to the limitations in Section 12.2.1 of ASCE 7.

SECTION 2506
GYPSUM BOARD AND
GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCT MATERIALS

2506.1 General.
Gypsum board, gypsum panel products and accessories shall be identified by the manufacturer’s designation to indicate compliance with the appropriate standards referenced in this section and stored to protect such materials from the weather.

`

2506.2 Standards.
Gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall conform to the appropriate standards listed in Table 2506.2 and Chapter 35 and, where required for fire protection, shall conform to the provisions of Chapter 7.

TABLE 2506.2
GYPSUM BOARD AND GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Accessories for gypsum board	ASTM C1047
Adhesives for fastening gypsum board	ASTM C557
Cold-formed steel studs and track, structural	AISI S200 and ASTM C955, Section 8
Cold-formed steel studs and track, nonstructural	AISI S220 and ASTM C645, Section 10
Elastomeric joint sealants	ASTM C920
Fiber-reinforced gypsum panels	ASTM C1278
Glass mat gypsum backing panel	ASTM C1178
Glass mat gypsum panel 5	ASTM C1658
Glass mat gypsum substrate	ASTM C1177
Joint reinforcing tape and compound	ASTM C474; C475
Nails for gypsum boards	ASTM C514, F547, F1667
Steel screws	ASTM C954; C1002
Standard specification for gypsum board	ASTM C1396
Testing gypsum and gypsum products	ASTM C22; C472; C473

2506.2.1 Other materials.
Metal suspension systems for acoustical and lay-in panel ceilings shall comply with ASTM C635 listed in Chapter 35 and Section 13.5.6 of ASCE 7 for installation in high seismic areas.

SECTION 2507
LATHING AND PLASTERING

2507.1 General.
Lathing and plastering materials and accessories shall be marked by the manufacturer's designation to indicate compliance with the appropriate standards referenced in this section and stored in such a manner to protect them from the weather.

2507.2 Standards.
Lathing and plastering materials shall conform to the standards listed in Table 2507.2 and Chapter 35 and, where required for fire protection, shall also conform to the provisions of Chapter 7.

TABLE 2507.2
LATH, PLASTERING MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Accessories for gypsum veneer base	ASTM C1047

`

Blended cement	ASTM C595
Cold-formed steel studs and track, structural	AISI S200 and ASTM C955, Section 8
Cold-formed steel studs and track, nonstructural	AISI S220 and ASTM C645, Section 10
Exterior plaster bonding compounds	ASTM C932
Hydraulic cement	ASTM C1157; C1600
Gypsum casting and molding plaster	ASTM C59
Gypsum Keene's cement	ASTM C61
Gypsum plaster	ASTM C28
Gypsum veneer plaster	ASTM C587
Interior bonding compounds, gypsum	ASTM C631
Lime plasters	ASTM C5; C206
Masonry cement	ASTM C91
Metal lath	ASTM C847
Plaster aggregates Sand Perlite Vermiculite	 ASTM C35; C897 ASTM C35 ASTM C35
Plastic cement	ASTM C1328
Portland cement	ASTM C150
Steel screws	ASTM C1002; C954
Welded wire lath	ASTM C933
Woven wire plaster base	ASTM C1032

SECTION 2508
GYPSUM CONSTRUCTION

2508.1 General.
Gypsum board, gypsum panel products and gypsum plaster construction shall be of the materials listed in Tables 2506.2 and 2507.2. These materials shall be assembled and installed in compliance with the appropriate standards listed in Tables 2508.1 and 2511.1.1 and Chapter 35.

TABLE 2508.1
INSTALLATION OF GYPSUM CONSTRUCTION

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Gypsum board and gypsum panel products	GA-216; ASTM C840
Gypsum sheathing and gypsum panel products	ASTM C1280
Gypsum veneer base	ASTM C844
Interior lathing and furring	ASTM C841
Steel framing for gypsum board and gypsum panel products	ASTM C754; C1007

2508.2 Limitations.
Gypsum wallboard or gypsum plaster shall not be used in any exterior surface where such gypsum construction will be exposed directly to the weather. Gypsum wallboard shall not be

`

used where there will be direct exposure to water or continuous high humidity conditions. Gypsum sheathing shall be installed on exterior surfaces in accordance with ASTM C1280.

2508.2.1 Weather protection.
Gypsum wallboard, gypsum lath or gypsum plaster shall not be installed until weather protection for the installation is provided.

2508.3 Single-ply application.
Edges and ends of gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall occur on the framing members, except those edges and ends that are perpendicular to the framing members. Edges and ends of gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be in moderate contact except in concealed spaces where fire-resistance-rated construction, shear resistance or diaphragm action is not required.

2508.3.1 Floating angles.
Fasteners at the top and bottom plates of vertical assemblies, or the edges and ends of horizontal assemblies perpendicular to supports, and at the wall line are permitted to be omitted except on shear resisting elements or fire-resistance-rated assemblies. Fasteners shall be applied in such a manner as not to fracture the face paper with the fastener head.

2508.4 Joint treatment.
Gypsum board and gypsum panel product fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall have joints and fasteners treated.

Exception: Joint and fastener treatment need not be provided where any of the following conditions occur:

1. Where the gypsum board or the gypsum panel product is to receive a decorative finish such as wood paneling, battens, acoustical finishes or any similar application that would be equivalent to joint treatment.

2. On single-layer systems where joints occur over wood framing members.

3. Square edge or tongue-and-groove edge gypsum board (V-edge), gypsum panel products, gypsum backing board or gypsum sheathing.

4. On multilayer systems where the joints of adjacent layers are offset.

5. Assemblies tested without joint treatment.

2508.5 Horizontal gypsum board or gypsum panel product diaphragm ceilings.
Gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall be permitted to be used on wood joists to create a horizontal diaphragm ceiling in accordance with Table 2508.5.

TABLE 2508.5
SHEAR CAPACITY FOR HORIZONTAL WOOD-FRAME GYPSUM BOARD DIAPHRAGM CEILING ASSEMBLIES

MATERIAL	THICKNESS OF MATERIAL (MINIMUM) (inches)	SPACING OF FRAMING MEMBERS (inches)	SHEAR VALUE[a], [b]	MIMIMUM FASTENER SIZE

`

			(PLF OF CEILING)	
Gypsum board or gypsum panel product	$^{1}/_{2}$	16 o.c.	90	5d cooler or wallboard nail; $1^{5}/_{8}$-inch long; 0.086-inch shank; $^{15}/_{64}$-inch head[c]
Gypsum board or gypsum panel product	$^{1}/_{2}$	24 o.c.	70	5d cooler or wallboard nail; $1^{5}/_{8}$-inch long; 0.086-inch shank; $^{15}/_{64}$-inch head[c]

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.59 N/m.

a. Values are not cumulative with other horizontal diaphragm values and are for short-term wind or seismic loading. Values shall be reduced 25 percent for normal loading.
b. Values shall be reduced 50 percent in Seismic Design Categories D, E and F.
c. 1 1/4-inch, No. 6 Type S or W screws are permitted to be substituted for the listed nails.

2508.5.1 Diaphragm proportions.

The maximum allowable diaphragm proportions shall be $1^{1}/_{2}$:1 between shear resisting elements. Rotation or cantilever conditions shall not be permitted.

2508.5.2 Installation.

Gypsum board or gypsum panel products used in a horizontal diaphragm ceiling shall be installed perpendicular to ceiling framing members. End joints of adjacent courses of gypsum board shall not occur on the same joist.

2508.5.3 Blocking of perimeter edges.

Perimeter edges shall be blocked using a wood member not less than 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) nominal dimension. Blocking material shall be installed flat over the top plate of the wall to provide a nailing surface not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in width for the attachment of the gypsum board or gypsum panel product.

2508.5.4 Fasteners.

Fasteners used for the attachment of gypsum board or gypsum panel products to a horizontal diaphragm ceiling shall be as defined in Table 2508.5. Fasteners shall be spaced not more than 7 inches (178 mm) on center at all supports, including perimeter blocking, and not more than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) from the edges and ends of the gypsum board or gypsum panel product.

2508.5.5 Lateral force restrictions.

Gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall not be used in diaphragm ceilings to resist lateral forces imposed by masonry or concrete construction.

SECTION 2509
SHOWERS AND WATER CLOSETS

`

2509.1 Wet areas.
Showers and public toilet walls shall conform to Section 1210.2.

2509.2 Base for tile.
Materials used as a base for wall tile in tub and shower areas and wall and ceiling panels in shower areas shall be of materials listed in Table 2509.2 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Water-resistant gypsum backing board shall be used as a base for tile in water closet compartment walls when installed in accordance with GA-216 or ASTM C840 and the manufacturer's recommendations. Regular gypsum wallboard is permitted under tile or wall panels in other wall and ceiling areas when installed in accordance with GA-216 or ASTM C840.

TABLE 2509.2
BACKERBOARD MATERIALS

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Glass mat gypsum backing panel	ASTM C1178
Nonasbestos fiber-cement backer board	ASTM C1288 or ISO 8336, Category C
Nonasbestos fiber-mat reinforced cementitious backer unit	ASTM C1325

2509.3 Limitations.
Water-resistant gypsum backing board shall not be used in the following locations:

1. Over a vapor retarder in shower or bathtub compartments.

2. Where there will be direct exposure to water or in areas subject to continuous high humidity.

SECTION 2510
LATHING AND FURRING FOR CEMENT PLASTER (STUCCO)

2510.1 General.
Exterior and interior cement plaster and lathing shall be done with the appropriate materials listed in Table 2507.2 and Chapter 35.

2510.2 Weather protection.
Materials shall be stored in such a manner as to protect them from the weather.

2510.3 Installation.
Installation of these materials shall be in compliance with ASTM C926 and ASTM C1063.

2510.4 Corrosion resistance.
Metal lath and lath attachments shall be of corrosion-resistant material.

2510.5 Backing.
Backing or a lath shall provide sufficient rigidity to permit plaster applications.

`

2510.5.1 Support of lath.
Where lath on vertical surfaces extends between rafters or other similar projecting members, solid backing shall be installed to provide support for lath and attachments.

2510.5.2 Use of gypsum backing board.
Gypsum backing for cement plaster shall be in accordance with Section 2510.5.2.1 or 2510.5.2.2.

2510.5.2.1 Gypsum board as a backing board.
Gypsum lath or gypsum wallboard shall not be used as a backing for cement plaster.

Exception: Gypsum lath or gypsum wallboard is permitted, with a *water-resistive barrier*, as a backing for self-furred metal lath or self-furred wire fabric lath and cement plaster where either of the following conditions occur:

1. On horizontal supports of ceilings or roof soffits.

2. On interior walls.

2510.5.2.2 Gypsum sheathing backing.
Gypsum sheathing is permitted as a backing for metal or wire fabric lath and cement plaster on walls. A *water-resistive barrier* shall be provided in accordance with Section 2510.6.

2510.5.3 Backing not required.
Wire backing is not required under expanded metal lath or paperbacked wire fabric lath.

2510.6 Water-resistive barriers.
Water-resistive barriers shall be installed as required in Section 1404.2 and, where applied over wood-based sheathing, shall include a water-resistive vapor-permeable barrier with a performance at least equivalent to two layers of *water-resistive barrier* complying with ASTM E2556, Type I. The individual layers shall be installed independently such that each layer provides a separate continuous plane and any flashing (installed in accordance with Section 1405.4) intended to drain to the *water-resistive barrier* is directed between the layers.

Exception: Where the *water-resistive barrier* that is applied over wood-based sheathing has a water resistance equal to or greater than that of a *water-resistive barrier* complying with ASTM E2556, Type II and is separated from the stucco by an intervening, substantially nonwater-absorbing layer or drainage space.

2510.7 Preparation of masonry and concrete.
Surfaces shall be clean, free from efflorescence, sufficiently damp and rough for proper bond. If the surface is insufficiently rough, *approved* bonding agents or a Portland cement dash bond coat mixed in proportions of not more than two parts volume of sand to one part volume of Portland cement or plastic cement shall be applied. The dash bond coat shall be left undisturbed and shall be moist cured not less than 24 hours.

SECTION 2511
INTERIOR PLASTER

2511.1 General.
Plastering gypsum plaster or cement plaster shall be not less than three coats where applied

`

over metal lath or wire fabric lath and not less than two coats where applied over other bases permitted by this chapter.

Exception: Gypsum veneer plaster and cement plaster specifically designed and *approved* for one-coat applications.

2511.1.1 Installation.
Installation of lathing and plaster materials shall conform to Table 2511.1.1 and Section 2507.

TABLE 2511.1.1
INSTALLATION OF PLASTER CONSTRUCTION

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Cement plaster	ASTM C926
Gypsum plaster	ASTM C842
Gypsum veneer plaster	ASTM C843
Interior lathing and furring (gypsum plaster)	ASTM C841
Lathing and furring (cement plaster)	ASTM C1063
Steel framing	ASTM C754; C1007

2511.2 Limitations.
Plaster shall not be applied directly to fiber insulation board. Cement plaster shall not be applied directly to gypsum lath or gypsum plaster except as specified in Sections 2510.5.1 and 2510.5.2.

2511.3 Grounds.
Where installed, grounds shall ensure the minimum thickness of plaster as set forth in ASTM C842 and ASTM C926. Plaster thickness shall be measured from the face of lath and other bases.

2511.4 Interior masonry or concrete.
Condition of surfaces shall be as specified in Section 2510.7. *Approved* specially prepared gypsum plaster designed for application to concrete surfaces or *approved* acoustical plaster is permitted. The total thickness of base coat plaster applied to concrete ceilings shall be as set forth in ASTM C842 or ASTM C926. Should ceiling surfaces require more than the maximum thickness permitted in ASTM C842 or ASTM C926, metal lath or wire fabric lath shall be installed on such surfaces before plastering.

2511.5 Wet areas.
Showers and public toilet walls shall conform to Sections 1210.2 and 1210.3. When wood frame walls and partitions are covered on the interior with cement plaster or tile of similar material and are subject to water splash, the framing shall be protected with an *approved* moisture barrier.

SECTION 2512
EXTERIOR PLASTER

2512.1 General.
Plastering with cement plaster shall be not less than three coats when applied over metal lath or wire fabric lath or gypsum board backing as specified in Section 2510.5 and shall be not less

`

than two coats when applied over masonry or concrete. If the plaster surface is to be completely covered by veneer or other facing material, or is completely concealed by another wall, plaster application need only be two coats, provided the total thickness is as set forth in ASTM C926.

2512.1.1 On-grade floor slab.
On wood frame or steel stud construction with an on-grade concrete floor slab system, exterior plaster shall be applied in such a manner as to cover, but not to extend below, the lath and paper. The application of lath, paper and flashing or drip screeds shall comply with ASTM C1063.

2512.1.2 Weep screeds.
A minimum 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage), corrosion-resistant weep screed with a minimum vertical attachment flange of $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm) shall be provided at or below the foundation plate line on exterior stud walls in accordance with ASTM C926. The weep screed shall be placed a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above the earth or 2 inches (51 mm) above paved areas and be of a type that will allow trapped water to drain to the exterior of the building. The *water-resistive barrier* shall lap the attachment flange. The exterior lath shall cover and terminate on the attachment flange of the weep screed.

2512.2 Plasticity agents.
Only *approved* plasticity agents and *approved* amounts thereof shall be added to Portland cement or blended cements. When plastic cement or masonry cement is used, no additional lime or plasticizers shall be added. Hydrated lime or the equivalent amount of lime putty used as a plasticizer is permitted to be added to cement plaster or cement and lime plaster in an amount not to exceed that set forth in ASTM C926.

2512.3 Limitations.
Gypsum plaster shall not be used on exterior surfaces.

2512.4 Cement plaster.
Plaster coats shall be protected from freezing for a period of not less than 24 hours after set has occurred. Plaster shall be applied when the ambient temperature is higher than 40°F (4°C), unless provisions are made to keep cement plaster work above 40°F (4°C) during application and 48 hours thereafter.

2512.5 Second-coat application.
The second coat shall be brought out to proper thickness, rodded and floated sufficiently rough to provide adequate bond for the finish coat. The second coat shall have no variation greater than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in any direction under a 5-foot (1524 mm) straight edge.

2512.6 Curing and interval.
First and second coats of cement plaster shall be applied and moist cured as set forth in ASTM C926 and Table 2512.6.

TABLE 2512.6
CEMENT PLASTERS

COAT	MINIMUM PERIOD MOIST CURING	MINIMUM INTERVAL BETWEEN COATS
First	48 hours[a]	48 hours[b]

`

Second	48 hours	7 days[c]
Finish	—	Note c

a. The first two coats shall be as required for the first coats of exterior plaster, except that the moist-curing time period between the first and second coats shall be not less than 24 hours. Moist curing shall not be required where job and weather conditions are favorable to the retention of moisture in the cement plaster for the required time period.
b. Twenty-four-hour minimum interval between coats of interior cement plaster. For alternative method of application, see Section 2512.8.
c. Finish coat plaster is permitted to be applied to interior cement plaster base coats after a 48-hour period.

2512.7 Application to solid backings.
Where applied over gypsum backing as specified in Section 2510.5 or directly to unit masonry surfaces, the second coat is permitted to be applied as soon as the first coat has attained sufficient hardness.

2512.8 Alternate method of application.
The second coat is permitted to be applied as soon as the first coat has attained sufficient rigidity to receive the second coat.

2512.8.1 Admixtures.
When using this method of application, calcium aluminate cement up to 15 percent of the weight of the Portland cement is permitted to be added to the mix.

2512.8.2 Curing.
Curing of the first coat is permitted to be omitted and the second coat shall be cured as set forth in ASTM C926 and Table 2512.6.

2512.9 Finish coats.
Cement plaster finish coats shall be applied over base coats that have been in place for the time periods set forth in ASTM C926. The third or finish coat shall be applied with sufficient material and pressure to bond and to cover the brown coat and shall be of sufficient thickness to conceal the brown coat.

SECTION 2513
EXPOSED AGGREGATE PLASTER

2513.1 General.
Exposed natural or integrally colored aggregate is permitted to be partially embedded in a natural or colored bedding coat of cement plaster or gypsum plaster, subject to the provisions of this section.

2513.2 Aggregate.
The aggregate shall be applied manually or mechanically and shall consist of marble chips, pebbles or similar durable, moderately hard (three or more on the Mohs hardness scale), nonreactive materials.

2513.3 Bedding coat proportions.
The bedding coat for interior or exterior surfaces shall be composed of one part Portland cement and one part Type S lime; or one part blended cement and one part Type S lime; or masonry cement; or plastic cement and a maximum of three parts of graded white or natural sand by volume. The bedding coat for interior surfaces shall be composed of 100 pounds (45.4 kg) of neat gypsum plaster and a maximum of 200 pounds (90.8 kg) of graded white sand. A factory-prepared bedding coat for interior or exterior use is permitted. The bedding coat for

`

exterior surfaces shall have a minimum compressive strength of 1,000 pounds per square inch (psi) (6895 kPa).

2513.4 Application.
The bedding coat is permitted to be applied directly over the first (scratch) coat of plaster, provided the ultimate overall thickness is a minimum of 7/8 inch (22 mm), including lath. Over concrete or masonry surfaces, the overall thickness shall be a minimum of 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).

2513.5 Bases.
Exposed aggregate plaster is permitted to be applied over concrete, masonry, cement plaster base coats or gypsum plaster base coats installed in accordance with Section 2511 or 2512.

2513.6 Preparation of masonry and concrete.
Masonry and concrete surfaces shall be prepared in accordance with the provisions of Section 2510.7.

2513.7 Curing of base coats.
Cement plaster base coats shall be cured in accordance with ASTM C926. Cement plaster bedding coats shall retain sufficient moisture for hydration (hardening) for 24 hours minimum or, where necessary, shall be kept damp for 24 hours by light water spraying.

SECTION 2514
REINFORCED GYPSUM CONCRETE

2514.1 General.
Reinforced gypsum concrete shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C317 and ASTM C956.

2514.2 Minimum thickness.
The minimum thickness of reinforced gypsum concrete shall be 2 inches (51 mm) except the minimum required thickness shall be reduced to 1 1/2 inches (38 mm), provided the following conditions are satisfied:

1. The overall thickness, including the formboard, is not less than 2 inches (51 mm).

2. The clear span of the gypsum concrete between supports does not exceed 33 inches (838 mm).

3. Diaphragm action is not required.

4. The design live load does not exceed 40 pounds per square foot (psf) (1915 Pa).

`

CHAPTER 26
PLASTIC

SECTION 2601
GENERAL

2601.1 Scope.
These provisions shall govern the materials, design, application, construction and installation of foam plastic, foam plastic insulation, plastic veneer, interior plastic finish and *trim*, light-transmitting plastics and plastic composites, including plastic lumber. See Chapter 14 for requirements for *exterior wall* finish and *trim*.

SECTION 2602
DEFINITIONS

2602.1 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

FIBER-REINFORCED POLYMER.

FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION.

LIGHT-DIFFUSING SYSTEM.

LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC ROOF PANELS.

LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC WALL PANELS.

PLASTIC, APPROVED.

PLASTIC COMPOSITE.

PLASTIC GLAZING.

PLASTIC LUMBER.

THERMOPLASTIC MATERIAL.

THERMOSETTING MATERIAL.

WOOD/PLASTIC COMPOSITE.

SECTION 2603
FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION

2603.1 General.
The provisions of this section shall govern the requirements and uses of foam plastic insulation in buildings and structures.

2603.2 Labeling and identification.
Packages and containers of foam plastic insulation and foam plastic insulation components delivered to the job site shall bear the *label* of an *approved agency* showing the manufacturer's name, product listing, product identification and information sufficient to determine that the end use will comply with the code requirements.

`

2603.3 Surface-burning characteristics.
Unless otherwise indicated in this section, foam plastic insulation and foam plastic cores of manufactured assemblies shall have a flame spread index of not more than 75 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 where tested in the maximum thickness intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. Loose fill-type foam plastic insulation shall be tested as board stock for the flame spread and smoke-developed indexes.

Exceptions:

1. Smoke-developed index for interior *trim* as provided for in Section 2604.2.

2. In cold storage buildings, ice plants, food plants, food processing rooms and similar areas, foam plastic insulation where tested in a thickness of 4 inches (102 mm) shall be permitted in a thickness up to 10 inches (254 mm) where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic fire sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. The approved *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided in both the room and that part of the building in which the room is located.

3. Foam plastic insulation that is a part of a Class A, B or C roof-covering assembly provided the assembly with the foam plastic insulation satisfactorily passes NFPA 276 or UL 1256. The smoke-developed index shall not be limited for roof applications.

4. Foam plastic insulation greater than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness shall have a maximum flame spread index of 75 and a smoke-developed index of 450 where tested at a minimum thickness of 4 inches (102 mm), provided the end use is approved in accordance with Section 2603.9 using the thickness and density intended for use.

5. Flame spread and smoke-developed indexes for foam plastic interior signs in *covered and open mall buildings* provided the signs comply with Section 402.6.4.

2603.4 Thermal barrier.
Except as provided for in Sections 2603.4.1 and 2603.9, foam plastic shall be separated from the interior of a building by an approved thermal barrier of 1/2- inch (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard or a material that is tested in accordance with and meets the acceptance criteria of both the Temperature Transmission Fire Test and the Integrity Fire Test of NFPA 275. Combustible concealed spaces shall comply with Section 718.

2603.4.1 Thermal barrier not required.
The thermal barrier specified in Section 2603.4 is not required under the conditions set forth in Sections 2603.4.1.1 through 2603.4.1.14.

2603.4.1.1 Masonry or concrete construction.
A thermal barrier is not required for foam plastic installed in a masonry or concrete wall, floor or roof system where the foam plastic insulation is covered on each face by not less than 1-inch (25 mm) thickness of masonry or concrete.

2603.4.1.2 Cooler and freezer walls.
Foam plastic installed in a maximum thickness of 10 inches (254 mm) in cooler and freezer walls shall:

`

1. Have a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450, where tested in a minimum 4-inch (102 mm) thickness.

2. Have flash ignition and self-ignition temperatures of not less than 600°F and 800°F (316°C and 427°C), respectively.

3. Have a covering of not less than 0.032-inch (0.8 mm) aluminum or corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness not less than 0.0160 inch (0.4 mm) at any point.

4. Be protected by an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Where the cooler or freezer is within a building, both the cooler or freezer and that part of the building in which it is located shall be sprinklered.

2603.4.1.3 Walk-in coolers.
In nonsprinklered buildings, foam plastic having a thickness that does not exceed 4 inches (102 mm) and a maximum flame spread index of 75 is permitted in walk-in coolers or freezer units where the aggregate floor area does not exceed 400 square feet (37 m^2) and the foam plastic is covered by a metal facing not less than 0.032-inch-thick (0.81 mm) aluminum or corrosion-resistant steel having a minimum base metal thickness of 0.016 inch (0.41 mm). A thickness of up to 10 inches (254 mm) is permitted where protected by a thermal barrier.

2603.4.1.4 Exterior walls-one-story buildings.
For one-*story* buildings, foam plastic having a flame spread index of 25 or less, and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450, shall be permitted without thermal barriers in or on *exterior walls* in a thickness not more than 4 inches (102 mm) where the foam plastic is covered by a thickness of not less than 0.032-inch-thick (0.81 mm) aluminum or corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of 0.0160 inch (0.41 mm) and the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2603.4.1.5 Roofing.
A thermal barrier is not required for foam plastic insulation that is a part of a Class A, B or C roof-covering assembly that is installed in accordance with the code and the manufacturer's instructions and is either constructed as described in Item 1 or tested as described in Item 2.

1. The roof assembly is separated from the interior of the building by wood structural panel sheathing not less than 0.47 inch (11.9 mm) in thickness bonded with exterior glue, with edges supported by blocking, tongue-and-groove joints, other approved type of edge support or an equivalent material.

2. The assembly with the foam plastic insulation satisfactorily passes NFPA 276 or UL 1256.

2603.4.1.6 Attics and crawl spaces.
Within an attic or crawl space where entry is made only for service of utilities, foam plastic insulation shall be protected against ignition by 1 1/2-inch-thick (38 mm) mineral fiber insulation; 1/4-inch-thick (6.4 mm) wood structural panel, particleboard or hardboard; 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) gypsum wallboard, corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of 0.016 inch (0.4 mm); 1 1/2-inch-thick (38 mm) self-supported spray-applied cellulose insulation in attic spaces only or other approved material installed in

`

such a manner that the foam plastic insulation is not exposed. The protective covering shall be consistent with the requirements for the type of construction.

2603.4.1.7 Doors not required to have a fire protection rating.
Where pivoted or side-hinged doors are permitted without a fire protection rating, foam plastic insulation, having a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450, shall be permitted as a core material where the door facing is of metal having a minimum thickness of 0.032-inch (0.8 mm) aluminum or steel having a base metal thickness of not less than 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) at any point.

2603.4.1.8 Exterior doors in buildings of Group R-2 or R-3.
In occupancies classified as Group R-2 or R-3, foam-filled exterior entrance doors to individual *dwelling units* that do not require a fire-resistance rating shall be faced with aluminum, steel, fiberglass, wood or other approved materials.

2603.4.1.9 Garage doors.
Where garage doors are permitted without a fire-resistance rating and foam plastic is used as a core material, the door facing shall be metal having a minimum thickness of 0.032-inch (0.8 mm) aluminum or 0.010-inch (0.25 mm) steel or the facing shall be minimum 0.125-inch-thick (3.2 mm) wood. Garage doors having facings other than those described above shall be tested in accordance with, and meet the acceptance criteria of, DASMA 107.

> **Exception:** Garage doors using foam plastic insulation complying with Section 2603.3 in detached and attached garages associated with one- and two-family dwellings need not be provided with a thermal barrier.

2603.4.1.10 Siding backer board.
Foam plastic insulation of not more than 2,000 British thermal units per square feet (Btu/sq. ft.) (22.7 mJ/m2) as determined by NFPA 259 shall be permitted as a siding backer board with a maximum thickness of 1/2 inch (12.7 mm), provided it is separated from the interior of the building by not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of mineral fiber insulation or equivalent or where applied as insulation with re-siding over existing wall construction.

2603.4.1.11 Interior trim.
Foam plastic used as interior *trim* in accordance with Section 2604 shall be permitted without a thermal barrier.

2603.4.1.12 Interior signs.
Foam plastic used for interior signs in *covered mall buildings* in accordance with Section 402.6.4 shall be permitted without a thermal barrier. Foam plastic signs that are not affixed to interior building surfaces shall comply with Chapter 8 of the *International Fire Code*.

2603.4.1.13 Type V construction.
Foam plastic spray applied to a sill plate, joist header and rim joist in Type V construction is subject to all of the following:

1. The maximum thickness of the foam plastic shall be 3 1/4 inches (82.6 mm).

2. The density of the foam plastic shall be in the range of 1.5 to 2.0 pcf (24 to 32 kg/m^3).

`

3. The foam plastic shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less and an accompanying smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

2603.4.1.14 Floors.
The thermal barrier specified in Section 2603.4 is not required to be installed on the walking surface of a structural floor system that contains foam plastic insulation when the foam plastic is covered by a minimum nominal 1/2-inch-thick (12.7 mm) wood structural panel or approved equivalent. The thermal barrier specified in Section 2603.4 is required on the underside of the structural floor system that contains foam plastic insulation when the underside of the structural floor system is exposed to the interior of the building.

Exception: Foam plastic used as part of an interior floor finish.

2603.5 Exterior walls of buildings of any height.
Exterior walls of buildings of Type I, II, III or IV construction of any height shall comply with Sections 2603.5.1 through 2603.5.7. *Exterior walls* of cold storage buildings required to be constructed of noncombustible materials, where the building is more than one *story* in height, shall comply with the provisions of Sections 2603.5.1 through 2603.5.7. *Exterior walls* of buildings of Type V construction shall comply with Sections 2603.2, 2603.3 and 2603.4.

2603.5.1 Fire-resistance-rated walls.
Where the wall is required to have a fire-resistance rating, data based on tests conducted in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall be provided to substantiate that the fire-resistance rating is maintained.

2603.5.2 Thermal barrier.
Any foam plastic insulation shall be separated from the building interior by a thermal barrier meeting the provisions of Section 2603.4, unless special approval is obtained on the basis of Section 2603.9.

Exception: One-story buildings complying with Section 2603.4.1.4.

2603.5.3 Potential heat.
The potential heat of foam plastic insulation in any portion of the wall or panel shall not exceed the potential heat expressed in Btu per square feet (mJ/m^2) of the foam plastic insulation contained in the wall assembly tested in accordance with Section 2603.5.5. The potential heat of the foam plastic insulation shall be determined by tests conducted in accordance with NFPA 259 and the results shall be expressed in Btu per square feet (mJ/m^2).

Exception: One-story buildings complying with Section 2603.4.1.4.

2603.5.4 Flame spread and smoke-developed indexes.
Foam plastic insulation, exterior coatings and facings shall be tested separately in the thickness intended for use, but not to exceed 4 inches (102 mm), and shall each have a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less as determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

`

Exception: Prefabricated or factory-manufactured panels having minimum 0.020-inch (0.51 mm) aluminum facings and a total thickness of 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) or less are permitted to be tested as an assembly where the foam plastic core is not exposed in the course of construction.

2603.5.5 Vertical and lateral fire propagation.
The exterior wall assembly shall be tested in accordance with and comply with the acceptance criteria of NFPA 285.

Exceptions:

1. One-story buildings complying with Section 2603.4.1.4.

2. Wall assemblies where the foam plastic insulation is covered on each face by not less than 1-inch (25 mm) thickness of masonry or concrete and meeting one of the following:

2.1. There is no airspace between the insulation and the concrete or masonry.

2.2. The insulation has a flame spread index of not more than 25 as determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and the maximum airspace between the insulation and the concrete or masonry is not more than 1 inch (25 mm).

2603.5.6 Label required.
The edge or face of each piece, package or container of foam plastic insulation shall bear the *label* of an *approved agency*. The *label* shall contain the manufacturer's or distributor's identification, model number, serial number or definitive information describing the product or materials' performance characteristics and *approved agency*'s identification.

2603.5.7 Ignition.
Exterior walls shall not exhibit sustained flaming where tested in accordance with NFPA 268. Where a material is intended to be installed in more than one thickness, tests of the minimum and maximum thickness intended for use shall be performed.

Exception: Assemblies protected on the outside with one of the following:

1. A thermal barrier complying with Section 2603.4.

2. A minimum 1-inch (25 mm) thickness of concrete or masonry.

3. Glass-fiber-reinforced concrete panels of a minimum thickness of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).

4. Metal-faced panels having minimum 0.019-inch-thick (0.48 mm) aluminum or 0.016-inch-thick (0.41 mm) corrosion-resistant steel outer facings.

5. A minimum 7/8-inch (22.2 mm) thickness of stucco complying with Section 2510.

6. A minimum 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) thickness of fiber-cement lap, panel or shingle siding complying with Sections 1405.16 and 1405.16.1 or 1405.16.2.

`

2603.6 Roofing.
Foam plastic insulation meeting the requirements of Sections 2603.2, 2603.3 and 2603.4 shall be permitted as part of a roof-covering assembly, provided the assembly with the foam plastic insulation is a Class A, B or C roofing assembly where tested in accordance with ASTM E108 or UL 790.

2603.7 Foam plastic insulation used as interior finish or interior trim in plenums.
Foam plastic insulation used as interior wall or ceiling finish or as interior trim in plenums shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and shall comply with one or more of Sections 2603.7.1, 2603.7.2 and 2607.3.

2603.7.1 Separation required.
The foam plastic insulation shall be separated from the plenum by a thermal barrier complying with Section 2603.4 and shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the thickness and density intended for use.

2603.7.2 Approval.
The foam plastic insulation shall exhibit a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 50 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the thickness and density intended for use and shall meet the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.2 when tested in accordance with NFPA 286. The foam plastic insulation shall be approved based on tests conducted in accordance with Section 2603.9.

2603.7.3 Covering.
The foam plastic insulation shall be covered by corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of not less than 0.0160 inch (0.4 mm) and shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the thickness and density intended for use.

2603.8 Protection against termites.
In areas where the probability of termite infestation is very heavy in accordance with Figure 2603.8, extruded and expanded polystyrene, polyisocyanurate and other foam plastics shall not be installed on the exterior face or under interior or exterior foundation walls or slab foundations located below grade. The clearance between foam plastics installed above grade and exposed earth shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Buildings where the structural members of walls, floors, ceilings and roofs are entirely of noncombustible materials or preservative-treated wood.

2. An approved method of protecting the foam plastic and structure from subterranean termite damage is provided.

3. On the interior side of basement walls.

`

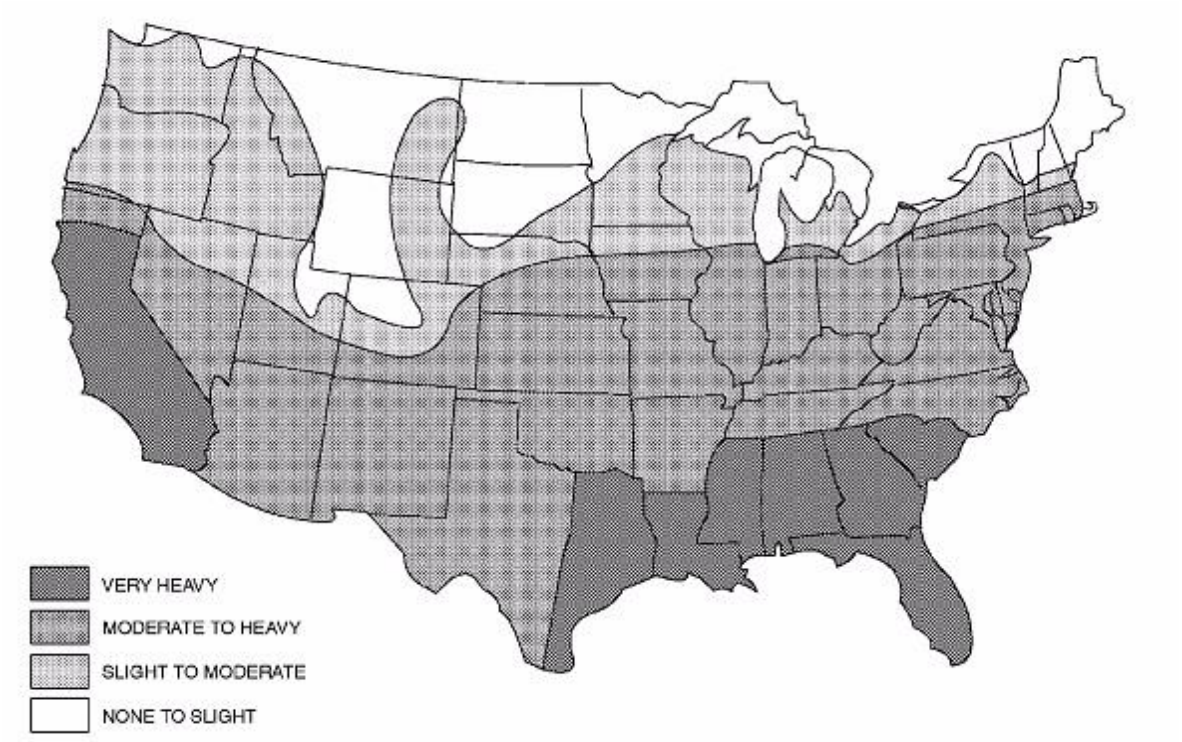


FIGURE 2603.8
TERMITE INFESTATION PROBABILITY MAP

2603.9 Special approval.
Foam plastic shall not be required to comply with the requirements of Section 2603.4 or those of Section 2603.6 where specifically approved based on large-scale tests such as, but not limited to, NFPA 286 (with the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.2.1), FM 4880, UL 1040 or UL 1715. Such testing shall be related to the actual end-use configuration and be performed on the finished manufactured foam plastic assembly in the maximum thickness intended for use. Foam plastics that are used as interior finish on the basis of special tests shall also conform to the flame spread and smoke-developed requirements of Chapter 8. Assemblies tested shall include seams, joints and other typical details used in the installation of the assembly and shall be tested in the manner intended for use.

2603.10 Wind resistance.
Foam plastic insulation complying with ASTM C 578 and ASTM C 1289 and used as exterior wall sheathing on framed wall assemblies shall comply with ANSI/FS 100 for wind pressure resistance.

2603.11 Cladding attachment over foam sheathing to masonry or concrete wall construction.
Cladding shall be specified and installed in accordance with Chapter 14 and the cladding manufacturer's installation instructions or an approved design. Foam sheathing shall be attached to masonry or concrete construction in accordance with the insulation manufacturer's installation instructions or an approved design. Furring and furring attachments through foam sheathing shall be designed to resist design loads determined in accordance with Chapter 16, including support of cladding weight as applicable. Fasteners used to attach cladding or furring through foam sheathing to masonry or concrete substrates shall be approved for application into

`

masonry or concrete material and shall be installed in accordance with the fastener manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exceptions:

1. Where the cladding manufacturer has provided approved installation instructions for application over foam sheathing and connection to a masonry or concrete substrate, those requirements shall apply.

2. For exterior insulation and finish systems, refer to Section 1408.

3. For anchored masonry or stone veneer installed over foam sheathing, refer to Section 1405.

2603.12 Cladding attachment over foam sheathing to cold-formed steel framing.
Cladding shall be specified and installed in accordance with Chapter 14 and the cladding manufacturer's approved installation instructions, including any limitations for use over foam plastic sheathing, or an approved design. Where used, furring and furring attachments shall be designed to resist design loads determined in accordance with Chapter 16. In addition, the cladding or furring attachments through foam sheathing to framing shall meet or exceed the minimum fastening requirements of Sections 2603.12.1 and 2603.12.2, or an approved design for support of cladding weight.

Exceptions:

1. Where the cladding manufacturer has provided approved installation instructions for application over foam sheathing, those requirements shall apply.

2. For exterior insulation and finish systems, refer to Section 1408.

3. For anchored masonry or stone veneer installed over foam sheathing, refer to Section 1405.

2603.12.1 Direct attachment.
Where cladding is installed directly over foam sheathing without the use of furring, cladding minimum fastening requirements to support the cladding weight shall be as specified in Table 2603.12.1.

TABLE 2603.12.1
CLADDING MINIMUM FASTENING REQUIREMENTS FOR DIRECT ATTACHMENT OVER FOAM PLASTIC SHEATHING TO SUPPORT CLADDING WEIGHT[a]

CLADDING FASTENER THROUGH FOAM SHEATHING INTO:	CLADDING FASTENER TYPE AND MINIMUM SIZE[b]	CLADDING FASTENER VERTICAL SPACING	MAXIMUM THICKNESS OF FOAM SHEATHING[c] (inches)					
			16″o.c. fastener horizontal spacing			24″o.c. fastener horizontal spacing		
			Cladding weight			Cladding weight		
			3 psf	11 psf	25 psf	3 psf	11 psf	25 psf

`

		(inches)						
Steel framing (minimum penetration of steel thickness plus 3 threads)	#8 screw into 33 mil steel or thicker	6	3	3	1.5	3	2	DR
		8	3	2	0.5	3	1.5	DR
		12	3	1.5	DR	3	0.75	DR
	#10 screw into 33 mil steel	6	4	3	2	4	3	0.5
		8	4	3	1	4	2	DR
		12	4	2	DR	3	1	DR
	#10 screw into 43 mil steel or thicker	6	4	4	3	4	4	2
		8	4	4	2	4	3	1.5
		12	4	3	1.5	4	3	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot (psf) = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.
DR = design required; o.c. = on center.

a. Steel framing shall be minimum 33 ksi steel for 33 mil and 43 mil steel and 50 ksi steel for 54 mil steel or thicker.
b. Screws shall comply with the requirements of AISI S200.
c. Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 pounds per square inch in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.

2603.12.2 Furred cladding attachment.
Where steel or wood furring is used to attach cladding over foam sheathing, furring minimum fastening requirements to support the cladding weight shall be as specified in Table 2603.12.2. Where placed horizontally, wood furring shall be preservative-treated wood in accordance with Section 2303.1.9 or naturally durable wood and fasteners shall be corrosion resistant in accordance Section 2304.10.5. Steel furring shall have a minimum G60 galvanized coating.

TABLE 2603.12.2
FURRING MINIMUM FASTENING REQUIREMENTS FOR
APPLICATION OVER FOAM PLASTIC SHEATHING TO SUPPORT CLADDING WEIGHT[a]

FURRING MATERIAL	FRAMING MEMBER	FASTENER TYPE AND MINIMUM SIZE[b]	MINIMUM PENETRATION INTO WALL FRAMING (inches)	FASTENER SPACING IN FURRING (inches)	MAXIMUM THICKNESS OF FOAM SHEATHING[4] (inches)					
					16″ o.c. furring[e]			24″ o.c. furring[e]		
					Cladding weight			Cladding weight		
					3 psf	11 psf	25 psf	3 psf	11 psf	25 psf
Minimum 33 mil steel furring or minimum 1x wood furring[c]	33 mil steel stud	#8 screw	Steel thickness plus 3 threads	12	3	1.5	DR	3	0.5	DR
				16	3	1	DR	2	DR	DR
				24	2	DR	DR	2	DR	DR
		#10 screw	Steel thickness plus 3 threads	12	4	2	DR	4	1	DR
				16	4	1.5	DR	3	DR	DR
				24	3	DR	DR	2	DR	DR

`

	43 mil or thicker steel stud	#8 Screw	Steel thickness plus 3 threads	12	3	1.5	DR	3	0.5	DR
				16	3	1	DR	2	DR	DR
				24	2	DR	DR	2	DR	DR
		#10 screw	Steel thickness plus 3 threads	12	4	3	1.5	4	3	DR
				16	4	3	0.5	4	2	DR
				24	4	2	DR	4	0.5	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot (psf) = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.
DR = design required: o.c. = on center.

a. Wood furring shall be Spruce-Pine fir or any softwood species with a specific gravity of 0.42 or greater. Steel furring shall be minimum 33 ksi steel. Steel studs shall be minimum 33 ksi steel for 33 mil and 43 mil thickness and 50 ksi steel for 54 mil steel or thicker.
b. Screws shall comply with the requirements of AISI S200.
c. Where the required cladding fastener penetration into wood material exceeds $^{3}/_{4}$ inch and is not more than $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches, a minimum 2-inch nominal wood furring shall be used or an approved design.
d. Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 pounds per square inch in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.
e. Furring shall be spaced not more than 24 inches on center, in a vertical or horizontal orientation. In a vertical orientation, furring shall be located over wall studs and attached with the required fastener spacing. In a horizontal orientation, the indicated 8-inch and 12-inch fastener spacing in furring shall be achieved by use of two fasteners into studs at 16 inches and 24 inches on center, respectively.

SECTION 2604
INTERIOR FINISH AND TRIM

2604.1 General.
Plastic materials installed as interior finish or *trim* shall comply with Chapter 8. Foam plastics shall only be installed as interior finish where approved in accordance with the special provisions of Section 2603.9. Foam plastics that are used as interior finish shall also meet the flame spread and smoke-developed index requirements for interior finish in accordance with Chapter 8. Foam plastics installed as interior *trim* shall comply with Section 2604.2.

[F] 2604.2 Interior trim.
Foam plastic used as interior *trim* shall comply with Sections 2604.2.1 through 2604.2.4.

[F] 2604.2.1 Density.
The minimum density of the interior *trim* shall be 20 pcf (320 kg/m^3).

[F] 2604.2.2 Thickness.
The maximum thickness of the interior *trim* shall be $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) and the maximum width shall be 8 inches (204 mm).

[F] 2604.2.3 Area limitation.
The interior *trim* shall not constitute more than 10 percent of the specific wall or ceiling areas to which it is attached.

[F] 2604.2.4 Flame spread.
The flame spread index shall not exceed 75 where tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The smoke-developed index shall not be limited.

`

Exception: When the interior *trim* material has been tested as an interior finish in accordance with NFPA 286 and complies with the acceptance criteria in Section 803.1.2.1, it shall not be required to be tested for flame spread index in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

SECTION 2605
PLASTIC VENEER

2605.1 Interior use.
Where used within a building, plastic veneer shall comply with the interior finish requirements of Chapter 8.

2605.2 Exterior use.
Exterior plastic veneer, other than plastic siding, shall be permitted to be installed on the *exterior walls* of buildings of any type of construction in accordance with all of the following requirements:

1. Plastic veneer shall comply with Section 2606.4.

2. Plastic veneer shall not be attached to any exterior wall to a height greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) above grade.

3. Sections of plastic veneer shall not exceed 300 square feet (27.9 m^2) in area and shall be separated by not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) vertically.

Exception: The area and separation requirements and the smoke-density limitation are not applicable to plastic veneer applied to buildings constructed of Type VB construction, provided the walls are not required to have a fire-resistance rating.

2605.3 Plastic siding.
Plastic siding shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1404 and 1405.

SECTION 2606
LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTICS

2606.1 General.
The provisions of this section and Sections 2607 through 2611 shall govern the quality and methods of application of light-transmitting plastics for use as light-transmitting materials in buildings and structures. Foam plastics shall comply with Section 2603. Light-transmitting plastic materials that meet the other code requirements for walls and roofs shall be permitted to be used in accordance with the other applicable chapters of the code.

2606.2 Approval for use.
Sufficient technical data shall be submitted to substantiate the proposed use of any light-transmitting material, as approved by the *building official* and subject to the requirements of this section.

2606.3 Identification.
Each unit or package of light-transmitting plastic shall be identified with a *mark* or decal satisfactory to the *building official*, which includes identification as to the material classification.

`

2606.4 Specifications.
Light-transmitting plastics, including thermoplastic, thermosetting or reinforced thermosetting plastic material, shall have a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater where tested in accordance with ASTM D1929; a smoke-developed index not greater than 450 where tested in the manner intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, or a maximum average smoke density rating not greater than 75 where tested in the thickness intended for use in accordance with ASTM D2843 and shall conform to one of the following combustibility classifications:

Class CC1: Plastic materials that have a burning extent of 1 inch (25 mm) or less where tested at a nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm), or in the thickness intended for use, in accordance with ASTM D635.

Class CC2: Plastic materials that have a burning rate of $2^1/_2$ inches per minute (1.06 mm/s) or less where tested at a nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm), or in the thickness intended for use, in accordance with ASTM D635.

2606.5 Structural requirements.
Light-transmitting plastic materials in their assembly shall be of adequate strength and durability to withstand the loads indicated in Chapter 16. Technical data shall be submitted to establish stresses, maximum unsupported spans and such other information for the various thicknesses and forms used as deemed necessary by the *building official*.

2606.6 Fastening.
Fastening shall be adequate to withstand the loads in Chapter 16. Proper allowance shall be made for expansion and contraction of light-transmitting plastic materials in accordance with accepted data on the coefficient of expansion of the material and other material in conjunction with which it is employed.

2606.7 Light-diffusing systems.
Unless the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, light-diffusing systems shall not be installed in the following occupancies and locations:

1. Group A with an *occupant load* of 1,000 or more.
2. Theaters with a stage and proscenium opening and an *occupant load* of 700 or more.
3. Group I-2.
4. Group I-3.
5. Interior exit stairways and ramps and *exit* passageways.

2606.7.1 Support.
Light-transmitting plastic diffusers shall be supported directly or indirectly from ceiling or roof construction by use of noncombustible hangers. Hangers shall be not less than No. 12 steel-wire gage (0.106 inch) galvanized wire or equivalent.

2606.7.2 Installation.
Light-transmitting plastic diffusers shall comply with Chapter 8 unless the light-transmitting plastic diffusers will fall from the mountings before igniting, at an ambient temperature of not

`

less than 200°F (111°C) below the ignition temperature of the panels. The panels shall remain in place at an ambient room temperature of 175°F (79°C) for a period of not less than 15 minutes.

2606.7.3 Size limitations.
Individual panels or units shall not exceed 10 feet (3048 mm) in length nor 30 square feet (2.79 m^2) in area.

2606.7.4 Fire suppression system.
In buildings that are equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, plastic light-diffusing systems shall be protected both above and below unless the sprinkler system has been specifically approved for installation only above the light-diffusing system. Areas of light-diffusing systems that are protected in accordance with this section shall not be limited.

2606.7.5 Electrical luminaires.
Light-transmitting plastic panels and light-diffuser panels that are installed in approved electrical luminaires shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 8 unless the light-transmitting plastic panels conform to the requirements of Section 2606.7.2. The area of approved light-transmitting plastic materials that is used in required *exits* or *corridors* shall not exceed 30 percent of the aggregate area of the ceiling in which such panels are installed, unless the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2606.8 Partitions.
Light-transmitting plastics used in or as partitions shall comply with the requirements of Chapters 6 and 8.

2606.9 Bathroom accessories.
Light-transmitting plastics shall be permitted as glazing in shower stalls, shower doors, bathtub enclosures and similar accessory units. Safety glazing shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 24.

2606.10 Awnings, patio covers and similar structures.
Awnings constructed of light-transmitting plastics shall be constructed in accordance with the provisions specified in Section 3105 and Chapter 32 for projections. Patio covers constructed of light-transmitting plastics shall comply with Section 2606. Light-transmitting plastics used in canopies at motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall comply with Section 2606, except as modified by Section 406.7.2.

2606.11 Greenhouses.
Light-transmitting plastics shall be permitted in lieu of plain glass in greenhouses.

2606.12 Solar collectors.
Light-transmitting plastic covers on solar collectors having noncombustible sides and bottoms shall be permitted on buildings not over three *stories above grade plane* or 9,000 square feet (836.1 m^2) in total floor area, provided the light-transmitting plastic cover does not exceed 33.33 percent of the roof area for CC1 materials or 25 percent of the roof area for CC2 materials.

Exception: Light-transmitting plastic covers having a thickness of 0.010 inch (0.3 mm) or less shall be permitted to be of any plastic material provided the area of the solar collectors does not exceed 33.33 percent of the roof area.

`

SECTION 2607
LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC WALL PANELS

2607.1 General.
Light-transmitting plastics shall not be used as wall panels in *exterior walls* in occupancies in Groups A-l, A-2, H, I-2 and I-3. In other groups, light-transmitting plastics shall be permitted to be used as wall panels in *exterior walls*, provided that the walls are not required to have a fire-resistance rating and the installation conforms to the requirements of this section. Such panels shall be erected and anchored on a foundation, waterproofed or otherwise protected from moisture absorption and sealed with a coat of mastic or other approved waterproof coating. Light-transmitting plastic wall panels shall comply with Section 2606.

2607.2 Installation.
Exterior wall panels installed as provided for herein shall not alter the type of construction classification of the building.

2607.3 Height limitation.
Light-transmitting plastics shall not be installed more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above *grade plane*, except as allowed by Section 2607.5.

2607.4 Area limitation and separation.
The maximum area of a single wall panel and minimum vertical and horizontal separation requirements for exterior light-transmitting plastic wall panels shall be as provided for in Table 2607.4. The maximum percentage of wall area of any *story* in light-transmitting plastic wall panels shall not exceed that indicated in Table 2607.4 or the percentage of unprotected openings permitted by Section 705.8, whichever is smaller.

Exceptions:

1. In structures provided with approved flame barriers extending 30 inches (760 mm) beyond the *exterior wall* in the plane of the floor, a vertical separation is not required at the floor except that provided by the vertical thickness of the flame barrier projection.

2. Veneers of approved weather-resistant light-transmitting plastics used as exterior siding in buildings of Type V construction in compliance with Section 1406.

3. The area of light-transmitting plastic wall panels in *exterior walls* of greenhouses shall be exempt from the area limitations of Table 2607.4 but shall be limited as required for unprotected openings in accordance with Section 704.8.

TABLE 2607.4
AREA LIMITATION AND SEPARATION REQUIREMENTS FOR LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC WALL PANELS[a]

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (feet)	CLASS OF PLASTIC	MAXIMUM PERCENTAGE AREA OF EXTERIOR WALL IN	MAXIMUM SINGLE AREA OF PLASTIC WALL PANELS (square feet)	MINIMUM SEPARATION OF PLASTIC WALL PANELS (feet)	
				Vertical	Horizontal

`

		PLASTIC WALL PANELS			
Less than 6	—	Not Permitted	Not Permitted	—	—
6 or more but less than 11	CC1	10	50	8	4
	CC2	Not Permitted	Not Permitted	—	—
11 or more but less than or equal to 30	CC1	25	90	6	4
	CC2	15	70	8	4
Over 30	CC1	50	Not Limited	3[b]	0
	CC2	50	100	6[b]	3

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

a. For combinations of plastic glazing and plastic wall panel areas permitted, see Section 2607.6.

b. For reductions in vertical separation allowed, see Section 2607.4.

2607.5 Automatic sprinkler system.
Where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the maximum percentage area of *exterior wall* in any *story* in light-transmitting plastic wall panels and the maximum square footage of a single area given in Table 2607.4 shall be increased 100 percent, but the area of light-transmitting plastic wall panels shall not exceed 50 percent of the wall area in any story, or the area permitted by Section 705.8 for unprotected openings, whichever is smaller. These installations shall be exempt from height limitations.

2607.6 Combinations of glazing and wall panels.
Combinations of light-transmitting plastic glazing and light-transmitting plastic wall panels shall be subject to the area, height and percentage limitations and the separation requirements applicable to the class of light-transmitting plastic as prescribed for light-transmitting plastic wall panel installations.

SECTION 2608
LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC GLAZING

2608.1 Buildings of Type VB construction.
Openings in the *exterior walls* of buildings of Type VB construction, where not required to be protected by Section 705, shall be permitted to be glazed or equipped with light-transmitting plastic. Light-transmitting plastic glazing shall comply with Section 2606.

2608.2 Buildings of other types of construction.
Openings in the *exterior walls* of buildings of types of construction other than Type VB, where not required to be protected by Section 705, shall be permitted to be glazed or equipped with light-transmitting plastic in accordance with Section 2606 and all of the following:

1. The aggregate area of light-transmitting plastic glazing shall not exceed 25 percent of the area of any wall face of the *story* in which it is installed. The area of a single pane of glazing installed above the first *story above grade plane* shall not exceed 16 square feet (1.5 m^2) and the vertical dimension of a single pane shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm).

   Exception: Where an *automatic sprinkler system* is provided throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the area of allowable glazing shall be increased

`

to not more than 50 percent of the wall face of the *story* in which it is installed with no limit on the maximum dimension or area of a single pane of glazing.

2. Approved flame barriers extending 30 inches (762 mm) beyond the *exterior wall* in the plane of the floor, or vertical panels not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in height, shall be installed between glazed units located in adjacent stories.

   Exception: Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

3. Light-transmitting plastics shall not be installed more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above grade level.

   Exception: Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

SECTION 2609
LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC ROOF PANELS

2609.1 General.
Light-transmitting plastic roof panels shall comply with this section and Section 2606. Light-transmitting plastic roof panels shall not be installed in Groups H, I-2 and I-3. In all other groups, light-transmitting plastic roof panels shall comply with any one of the following conditions:

1. The building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2. The roof construction is not required to have a fire-resistance rating by Table 601.

3. The roof panels meet the requirements for roof coverings in accordance with Chapter 15.

2609.2 Separation.
Individual roof panels shall be separated from each other by a distance of not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) measured in a horizontal plane.

Exceptions:

1. The separation between roof panels is not required in a building equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2. The separation between roof panels is not required in low-hazard occupancy buildings complying with the conditions of Section 2609.4, Exception 2 or 3.

2609.3 Location.
Where *exterior wall* openings are required to be protected by Section 705.8, a roof panel shall not be installed within 6 feet (1829 mm) of such *exterior wall*.

2609.4 Area limitations.
Roof panels shall be limited in area and the aggregate area of panels shall be limited by a percentage of the floor area of the room or space sheltered in accordance with Table 2609.4.

`

Exceptions:

1. The area limitations of Table 2609.4 shall be permitted to be increased by 100 percent in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2. Low-hazard occupancy buildings, such as swimming pool shelters, shall be exempt from the area limitations of Table 2609.4, provided that the buildings do not exceed 5,000 square feet (465 m^2) in area and have a minimum fire separation distance of 10 feet (3048 mm).

3. Greenhouses that are occupied for growing plants on a production or research basis, without public access, shall be exempt from the area limitations of Table 2609.4 provided they have a minimum fire separation distance of 4 feet (1220 mm).

4. Roof coverings over terraces and patios in occupancies in Group R-3 shall be exempt from the area limitations of Table 2609.4 and shall be permitted with light-transmitting plastics.

TABLE 2609.4
AREA LIMITATIONS FOR
LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC ROOF PANELS

For SI: 1

CLASS OF PLASTIC	MAXIMUM AREA OF INDIVIDUAL ROOF PANELS (square feet)	MAXIMUM AGGREGATE AREA OF ROOF PANELS (percent of floor area)
CC1	300	30
CC2	100	25

square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

SECTION 2610
LIGHT-TRANSMITTING
PLASTIC SKYLIGHT GLAZING

2610.1 Light-transmitting plastic glazing of skylight assemblies.
Skylight assemblies glazed with light-transmitting plastic shall conform to the provisions of this section and Section 2606. Unit skylights glazed with light-transmitting plastic shall comply with Section 2405.5.

Exception: Skylights in which the light-transmitting plastic conforms to the required roof-covering class in accordance with Section 1505.

2610.2 Mounting.
The light-transmitting plastic shall be mounted above the plane of the roof on a curb constructed in accordance with the requirements for the type of construction classification, but not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the plane of the roof. Edges of the light-transmitting plastic skylights or domes shall be protected by metal or other approved noncombustible material, or the light transmitting plastic dome or skylight shall be shown to be able to resist ignition where exposed at the edge to a flame from a Class B brand as described in ASTM E108 or UL 790. The Class

`

B brand test shall be conducted on a skylight that is elevated to a height as specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions, but not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Curbs shall not be required for skylights used on roofs having a minimum slope of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) in occupancies in Group R-3 and on buildings with a nonclassified roof covering.

2. The metal or noncombustible edge material is not required where nonclassified roof coverings are permitted.

2610.3 Slope.
Flat or corrugated light-transmitting plastic skylights shall slope not less than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12). Dome-shaped skylights shall rise above the mounting flange a minimum distance equal to 10 percent of the maximum width of the dome but not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

Exception: Skylights that pass the Class B Burning Brand Test specified in ASTM E108 or UL 790.

2610.4 Maximum area of skylights.
Each skylight shall have a maximum area within the curb of 100 square feet (9.3 m^2).

Exception: The area limitation shall not apply where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or the building is equipped with smoke and heat vents in accordance with Section 910.

2610.5 Aggregate area of skylights.
The aggregate area of skylights shall not exceed 33 1/3 percent of the floor area of the room or space sheltered by the roof in which such skylights are installed where Class CC1 materials are utilized, and 25 percent where Class CC2 materials are utilized.

Exception: The aggregate area limitations of light-transmitting plastic skylights shall be increased 100 percent beyond the limitations set forth in this section where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or the building is equipped with smoke and heat vents in accordance with Section 910.

2610.6 Separation.
Skylights shall be separated from each other by a distance of not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) measured in a horizontal plane.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2. In Group R-3, multiple skylights located above the same room or space with a combined area not exceeding the limits set forth in Section 2610.4.

`

2610.7 Location.
Where *exterior wall* openings are required to be protected in accordance with Section 705, a skylight shall not be installed within 6 feet (1829 mm) of such *exterior wall*.

2610.8 Combinations of roof panels and skylights.
Combinations of light-transmitting plastic roof panels and skylights shall be subject to the area and percentage limitations and separation requirements applicable to roof panel installations.

SECTION 2611
LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC INTERIOR SIGNS

2611.1 General.
Light-transmitting plastic interior wall signs shall be limited as specified in Sections 2611.2 through 2611.4. Light-transmitting plastic interior wall signs in *covered and open mall buildings* shall comply with Section 402.6.4. Light-transmitting plastic interior signs shall also comply with Section 2606.

2611.2 Aggregate area.
The sign shall not exceed 20 percent of the wall area.

2611.3 Maximum area.
The sign shall not exceed 24 square feet (2.23 m^2).

2611.4 Encasement.
Edges and backs of the sign shall be fully encased in metal.

SECTION 2612
PLASTIC COMPOSITES

2612.1 General.
Plastic composites shall consist of either wood/plastic composites or plastic lumber. Plastic composites shall comply with the provisions of this code and with the additional requirements of Section 2612.

2612.2 Labeling and identification.
Packages and containers of plastic composites used in exterior applications shall bear a *label* showing the manufacturer's name, product identification and information sufficient to determine that the end use will comply with code requirements.

2612.2.1 Performance levels.
The label for plastic composites used in exterior applications as deck boards, stair treads, handrails and guards shall indicate the required performance levels and demonstrate compliance with the provisions of ASTM D7032.

2612.2.2 Loading.
The label for plastic composites used in exterior applications as deck boards, stair treads, handrails and guards shall indicate the type and magnitude of the load determined in accordance with ASTM D7032.

2612.3 Flame spread index.
Plastic composites shall exhibit a flame spread index not exceeding 200 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 with the test specimen remaining in place during the test.

`

Exception: Materials determined to be noncombustible in accordance with Section 703.5.

2612.4 Termite and decay resistance.
Plastic composites containing wood, cellulosic or any other biodegradable materials shall be termite and decay resistant as determined in accordance with ASTM D7032.

2612.5 Construction requirements.
Plastic composites shall be permitted to be used as exterior deck boards, stair treads, handrails and guards in buildings of Type VB construction.

2612.5.1 Span rating.
Plastic composites used as exterior deck boards shall have a span rating determined in accordance with ASTM D7032.

2612.6 Plastic composite decking, handrails and guards.
Plastic composite decking, handrails and guards shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 2613
FIBER-REINFORCED POLYMER

2613.1 General.
The provisions of this section shall govern the requirements and uses of fiber-reinforced polymer in and on buildings and structures.

2613.2 Labeling and identification.
Packages and containers of fiber-reinforced polymer and their components delivered to the job site shall bear the *label* of an *approved agency* showing the manufacturer's name, product listing, product identification and information sufficient to determine that the end use will comply with the code requirements.

2613.3 Interior finishes.
Fiber-reinforced polymer used as *interior finishes, decorative materials or trim* shall comply with Chapter 8.

2613.3.1 Foam plastic cores.
Fiber-reinforced polymer used as interior finish and which contains foam plastic cores shall comply with Chapter 8 and this chapter.

2613.4 Light-transmitting materials.
Fiber-reinforced polymer used as light-transmitting materials shall comply with Sections 2606 through 2611 as required for the specific application.

2613.5 Exterior use.
Fiber-reinforced polymer shall be permitted to be installed on the *exterior walls* of buildings of any type of construction when such polymers meet the requirements of Section 2603.5. Fireblocking shall be installed in accordance with Section 718.

Exceptions:

1. Compliance with Section 2603.5 is not required when all of the following conditions are met:

`

1.1. The fiber-reinforced polymer shall not exceed an aggregate total of 20 percent of the area of the specific wall to which it is attached, and no single architectural element shall exceed 10 percent of the area of the specific wall to which it is attached, and no contiguous set of architectural elements shall exceed 10 percent of the area of the specific wall to which they are attached.

1.2. The fiber-reinforced polymer shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less. The flame spread index requirement shall not be required for coatings or paints having a thickness of less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) that are applied directly to the surface of the fiber-reinforced polymer.

1.3. Fireblocking complying with Section 718.2.6 shall be installed.

1.4. The fiber-reinforced polymer shall be installed directly to a noncombustible substrate or be separated from the exterior wall by one of the following materials: corrosion-resistant steel having a minimum base metal thickness of 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) at any point, aluminum having a minimum thickness of 0.019 inch (0.5 mm) or other approved noncombustible material.

2. Compliance with Section 2603.5 is not required when the fiber-reinforced polymer is installed on buildings that are 40 feet (12 190 mm) or less above grade when all of the following conditions are met:

2.1. The fiber-reinforced polymer shall meet the requirements of Section 1406.2.

2.2. Where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1524 mm) or less, the area of the fiber-reinforced polymer shall not exceed 10 percent of the wall area. Where the fire separation distance is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), there shall be no limit on the area of the *exterior wall* coverage using fiber-reinforced polymer.

2.3. The fiber-reinforced polymer shall have a flame spread index of 200 or less. The flame spread index requirements do not apply to coatings or paints having a thickness of less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) that are applied directly to the surface of the fiber-reinforced polymer.

2.4. Fireblocking complying with Section 718.2.6 shall be installed.

SECTION 2614
REFLECTIVE PLASTIC CORE INSULATION

2614.1 General.
The provisions of this section shall govern the requirements and uses of reflective plastic core insulation in buildings and structures. Reflective plastic core insulation shall comply with the requirements of Section 2614 and of one of the following: Section 2614.3 or 2614.4.

2614.2 Identification.
Packages and containers of reflective plastic core insulation delivered to the job site shall show the manufacturer’s or supplier’s name, product identification and information sufficient to determine that the end use will comply with the code requirements.

`

2614.3 Surface-burning characteristics.
Reflective plastic core insulation shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The reflective plastic core insulation shall be tested at the maximum thickness intended for use. Test specimen preparation and mounting shall be in accordance with ASTM E2599.

2614.4 Room corner test heat release.
Reflective plastic core insulation shall comply with the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.2.1 when tested in accordance with NFPA 286 or UL 1715 in the manner intended for use and at the maximum thickness intended for use.

`

CHAPTER 27
ELECTRICAL

SECTION 2701
GENERAL

2701.1 Scope.
This chapter governs the electrical components, equipment and systems used in buildings and structures covered by this code. Electrical components, equipment and systems shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of ~~NFPA 70.~~ The **Washington Cities Electrical Code.**

SECTION 2702
EMERGENCY AND LEGALLY REQUIRED STANDBY POWER SYSTEMS

[F] 2702.1 Installation.
Emergency power systems and legally required standby power systems shall comply with Sections 2702.1.1 through 2702.1.7 and Table 2702.

[F] 2702.1.1 Stationary generators.
Stationary emergency and legally required standby power generators required by this code shall be listed in accordance with UL 2200.

[F] 2702.1.2 Electrical.
Emergency power systems and legally required standby power systems required by this code or the *International Fire Code* shall be installed in accordance with the *International Fire Code*, **the Washington Cities Electrical Code**, ~~NFPA 70,~~ NFPA 110 and NFPA 111.

[F] 2702.1.3 Load transfer.
Emergency power systems shall automatically provide secondary power within 10 seconds after primary power is lost, unless specified otherwise in this code. Legally required standby power systems shall automatically provide secondary power within 60 seconds after primary power is lost, unless specified otherwise in this code. Transfer to full emergency or legally required standby power shall take place within the maximum time to energize loads specified in Table 2702.

[F] 2702.1.4 Load duration.
Emergency power systems and legally required standby power systems shall be designed to provide the required power for a minimum duration of 8 hours for fire pumps serving high-rise buildings in accordance with NFPA 20, and 2 hours for other systems without being refueled or recharged, unless specified otherwise in this code.

[F] 2702.1.5 Uninterruptable power source.
An uninterrupted source of power shall be provided for equipment when required by the manufacturer's instructions, the listing, this code or applicable referenced standards.

[F] 2702.1.6 Interchangeability.
Emergency power systems shall be an acceptable alternative for installations that require standby power systems.

`

[F] 2702.1.7 Group I-2 occupancies.
In Group I-2 occupancies, in new construction or where the building is substantially damaged, where an essential electrical system is located in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3, the system shall be located and installed in accordance with ASCE 24.

[F] 2702.1.8 Equipment room.
If a legally required standby or emergency power system includes a generator set inside or serving a building, the generator set shall be located in a separate room enclosed with 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, to separate it from the remainder of the building, the transfer switches, and from the normal power source including transformers and distribution equipment. The transfer switches shall also be located in a separate room enclosed with 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, to separate it from the remainder of the building. Power distribution from the emergency source to the emergency transfer switch shall be by an independent route from the normal power source. Independent routes shall mean either a physical separation distance of not less than 50 feet, or a minimum of 1-hor fire-resistance rated separation. System supervision with manual start and transfer features shall be provided at the fire command center or an approved location when a fire command center is not required. Such equipment rooms shall be ventilated directly to the exterior for generator combustion air and radiator cooling air. Any ducts required for such ventilation shall not be dampered, and shall be fire-resistance rated to the same level of protection as that required for the equipment room. The requirements of this subsection 2702.1.8 do not apply to optional tenant-owned or landlord-owned generator sets.

Exception:

1. Legally required standby or emergency power system generator sets inside a building other than a high-rise building in accordance with Section 403 and other than an underground building space in accordance with Section 405, may be located in equipment rooms with a 1-hour fire-resistance rating.

2. Transfer switches shall be permitted to be located in the same room as the legally required standby or emergency power system generator sets when inside or serving other than a high-rise building in accordance with Section 403 and other than an underground building in accordance with Section 405

[F] 2702.1.9 ~~Routing of legally required standby and emergency power~~. <u>Smoke control power systems</u>
~~Equipment and systems~~ Smoke control equipment and systems requiring legally required standby or emergency power shall be supplied with two sources of power. Primary power shall be from the normal building power system. Legally required standby power or emergency power shall be from an approved source complying with the Washington Cities Electrical Code. The legally required standby power or emergency power source and its transfer switches shall be in separate rooms from the normal power transformers and switch gears, and ventilated directly to and from the exterior. The room shall be completely enclosed in not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707, or 1-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, except 2-hour fire-resistance construction shall be required for high-rise and underground buildings per Sections 403 and 405 respectively. Power distribution from the two sources shall be by independent routes to the room containing the automatic transfer switch(s). Independent

`

routes shall mean ~~either~~ a physical distance of 50 feet or a minimum 1-hour fire-resistance rated separation minimum 1-hour fire-resistance separation., ~~or a physical distance of not less than 50 feet~~. Transfer to full emergency power shall be automatic and shall take place within the maximum time to energize loads. The systems shall comply with the Washington Cities Electrical Code.

[F] 2702.1.10 Fuel-fired generator sets and fuel storage location.
Fuel-fired generator sets and associated fuel storage, including optional landlord-owned or tenant-owned generator sets, located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of Fire Department vehicle access, or located at a floor level more than 30 feet below the lowest level of exit discharge, require the approval of the fire code official.

[F] 2702.2 Where required.
Emergency and legally required standby power systems shall be provided where required by Sections 2702.2.1 through 2702.2.16 and other sections of this code.

[F] 2702.2.1 Emergency alarm systems.
Emergency power shall be provided for emergency alarm systems as required by Section 415.5.

[F] 2702.2.2 Elevators and platform lifts.
Legally required standby power shall be provided for elevators and platform lifts used as accessible means of egress as required in Sections 1009.4, 1009.5. ~~3003.1, 3007.8 and 3008.8.~~ Emergency power shall be provided for elevators in high-rise buildings as required in Section 403.4.8.4.

[F] 2702.2.3 Emergency responder radio coverage systems.
Standby power shall be provided for emergency responder radio coverage systems required in Section ~~915~~ **916** and the *International Fire Code*. The standby power supply shall be capable of operating the emergency responder radio coverage system for a duration of not less than 24 hours.

[F] 2702.2.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication systems.
Emergency power shall be provided for emergency voice/alarm communication systems as required in Section 907.5.2.2.5. The system shall be capable of powering the required load for a duration of not less than 24 hours, as required in NFPA 72.

[F] 2702.2.5 Exit signs.
Emergency power shall be provided for exit signs as required in Section 1013.6.3. The system shall be capable of powering the required load for a duration of not less than 90 minutes.

[F] 2702.2.6 Group I-2 occupancies.
Essential electrical systems for Group I-2 occupancies shall be in accordance with Section 407.10.

[F] 2702.2.7 Group I-3 occupancies.
Emergency power shall be provided for power-operated doors and locks in Group I-3 occupancies as required in Section 408.4.2.

[F] 2702.2.8 Hazardous materials.
Emergency or legally required standby power shall be provided in occupancies with hazardous materials where required by the *International Fire Code*.

`

[F] 2702.2.9 High-rise buildings.
Emergency ~~and standby~~ power shall be provided in high-rise buildings as required in Sections 403.4.8.

[F] 2702.2.10 Horizontal sliding doors.
Legally required standby power shall be provided for horizontal sliding doors as required in Section 1010.1.4.3. The standby power supply shall have a capacity to operate not fewer than 50 closing cycles of the door.

[F] 2702.2.11 Means of egress illumination.
Emergency power shall be provided for means of egress illumination as required in Section 1008.3. The system shall be capable of powering the required load for a duration of not less than 90 minutes.

[F] 2702.2.12 Membrane structures.
Legally required standby power shall be provided for auxiliary inflation systems in permanent membrane structures as required in Section 3102.8.2. Legally required standby power shall be provided for a duration of not less than 4 hours. Auxiliary inflation systems in temporary air-supported and air-inflated membrane structures shall be provided in accordance with Section 3103.10.4 of the *International Fire Code.*

[F] 2702.2.13 Pyrophoric materials.
Emergency power shall be provided for occupancies with silane gas in accordance with the *International Fire Code.*

[F] 2702.2.14 Semiconductor fabrication facilities.
Emergency power shall be provided for semiconductor fabrication facilities as required in Section 415.11.10.

[F] 2702.2.15 Smoke control systems.
~~Standby~~ Emergency power shall be provided for smoke control systems as required in Sections 404.7, 909.11, 909.20.5.7, 909.20.6.2 and 909.21.5. Legally required standby power systems shall be provided for pressurization systems in low-rise buildings in accordance with Washington State Building Code Section 504.4.1 and Section 909.20.6.

[F] 2702.2.16 Underground buildings.
Emergency ~~and standby~~ power shall be provided in underground buildings as required in Section 405.

[F] 2702.3 Critical circuits.
Cables used for survivability of required critical circuits shall be listed in accordance with UL 2196. Electrical circuit protective systems shall be installed in accordance with their listing requirements.

[F] 2702.4 Maintenance.
Emergency and standby power systems shall be maintained and tested in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

`

TABLE 2702
LEGALLY REQUIRED STANDBY AND EMERGENCY POWER

**

TABLE 2702
LEGALLY REQUIRED STANDBY AND EMERGENCY POWER

Type of Equipment	Maximum Time to Energize Loads	Minimum Run Time (Duration)	IBC Section	IFC or NFPA Section
Emergency Power Systems[1]				
Exit signs	10 seconds	2 hours	1013.6.3	604.2.9 High rises 604.2.16Underground buildings 1013.6.3 Exit signs 604.2.13 Temporary tents, canopies, membrane structures NFPA 70
Exit illumination	10 seconds	2 hours	1008.3	1008.3 604.2.9 High rises 604.2.16 Underground buildings
Any emergency voice/alarm communication including area of refuge communication systems (barrier-free and horizontal exits)	NFPA 72	24 hours (battery) 4 hours (generator)	402.7.3, 402.7.4, and 907.5.2.2 Covered mall buildings 403.4.8 and 907.5.2.2 High rises 405.8, , and 907.5.2.2 Underground buildings 907.2.1, and 907.5.2.2 Assembly occupancies	907.2.20 Covered mall building 604.2.9 High rises 604.2.16 Underground buildings 907.2.1.1 Assembly occupancies NFPA 72
Fire detection and fire alarms	NFPA 72	24 hours (battery) 4 hours (generator)	403.4.8 High rises 405.8 Underground buildings	604.2.9 High rises 604.2.16 Underground buildings

`

			909.20.6.2 Smokeproof enclosures 907	907.6.2 NFPA 72
Smoke control systems in high-rise buildings, underground buildings and covered mall buildings including energy management systems if used for smoke control or smoke removal	60 seconds	2 hours	403.4.8 High rises 404.7 Atriums 405.8 Underground buildings 909.11 Smoke control	909.11
Fire pumps in high-rise buildings and underground buildings	10 seconds	8 hours (NFPA 20)	403.4.8 High rises 405.8 Underground buildings	604.2.9 High rises and NFPA 20 604.2.16 Underground buildings 913.2 All Fire Pumps
Smokeproof enclosures and elevator shaft pressurization	60 seconds for pressurization	4 hours	403.4.8 High rises 909 and 909.20.6.2	
Any shaft exhaust fans required to run continuously in lieu of dampers	60 seconds	4 hours	717.5.3	
Fire service or occupant evacuation elevator car operation in high-rise and underground buildings (including control system, motor controller, operation control, signal equipment, machine room cooling/heating, etc.)	60 seconds	4 hours	3003, 3007, and 3008	604.2.9 High rises 604.2.16 Underground buildings
Elevator car lighting and communications in high-rise and underground buildings	10 seconds	4 hours	3003, 3007, and 3008	604.2.9 High rises 604.2.16 Underground buildings 604.2.1 Elevators
Lights, heating, and cooling for building fire command center and mechanical equipment rooms serving the fire command center	60 seconds	24 hours		604.2.9 High rises
Power (other than lights, heating and cooling) for building fire command center	60 seconds	4 hours		

`

Mechanical and electrical systems required by IFC 27 (hazardous materials including UPS rooms)	60 seconds	4 hours		Chapter 27
Legally Required Standby[1] (Cont. next page)				
Exhaust fans for any loading dock located interior to a building	60 seconds	4 hours		
Transformer vault ventilation equipment	60 seconds	4 hours		
Heat tape for sprinkler lines and heating in sprinkler riser rooms	60 seconds	24 hours		
Fuel pump system for any legally required system	60 seconds	4 hours		
Elevators in high rise or underground buildings used for accessible means of egress	60 seconds	2 hours		
Any shaft exhaust fans required to run continuously in lieu of dampers	60 seconds	4 hours	717.5.3	

TABLE 2702 FOOTNOTE:

1. The fuel pump and associated systems for the emergency or legally required generator shall be provided with power from the generator to maintain fuel supply.

CHAPTER 28
MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

SECTION 2801
GENERAL

[M] 2801.1 Scope.
Mechanical appliances, equipment and systems shall be constructed, installed and maintained in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code* and the *International Fuel Gas Code*. Masonry chimneys, fireplaces and barbecues shall comply with the *International Mechanical Code* and Chapter 21 of this code.

`

CHAPTER 29
PLUMBING SYSTEMS
SECTION 2901
GENERAL

[P] 2901.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter and the ~~*International Plumbing Code*~~ state plumbing code shall govern the erection, installation, *alteration*, repairs, relocation, replacement, addition to, use or maintenance of plumbing equipment and systems. Toilet and bathing rooms shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1210. Plumbing systems and equipment shall be constructed, installed and maintained in accordance with the ~~*International Plumbing Code*.~~ state plumbing code. ~~Private sewage disposal systems shall conform to the *International Private Sewage Disposal Code*.~~

[P] 2901.2 Health codes.
In food preparation, serving and related storage areas, additional fixture requirements may be dictated by health codes.

SECTION 2902
MINIMUM PLUMBING FACILITIES

[P] 2902.1 Minimum number of fixtures.
Plumbing fixtures shall be provided for the type of occupancy and in the minimum number as shown in Table 2902.1 ~~based on the actual use of the building or space.~~ Uses not shown in Table 2902.1 shall be ~~considered~~ determined individually by ~~the code official~~ the *building official* based on the occupancy which most nearly resembles the proposed occupancy. The number of occupants shall be determined by this code. Plumbing fixtures need not be provided for unoccupied buildings or facilities.

TABLE 2902.1
MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED PLUMBING FIXTURES[a]
(See Sections 2902.1,1 and 2902.2)

No.	CLASSIFICATION	OCCUPANCY	DESCRIPTION	WATERCLOSETS		LAVATORIES		BATHTUBS/ SHOWERS
				MALE	FEMALE	MALE	FEMALE	
	Assembly (continued)	A-l[d]	Theaters and other buildings for the performing arts and motion pictures	1 per 125	1 per 65	1 per 200		—
		A-2[d]	Nightclubs, bars, taverns, dance halls and buildings for similar purposes	1 per 40	1 per 40	1 per 75		---
			Restaurants, banquet halls and food courts	1 per 75	1 per 75	1 per 200		
		A-3[d]	Auditoriums without permanent seating, art galleries, exhibition halls, museums, lecture halls, libraries, arcades and gymnasiums	1 per 125	1 per 65	1 per 200		
			Passenger terminals and transportation facilities	1 per 500	1 per 500	1 per 750		--
			Places of worship and other religious services	1 per 150	1 per 75	I per 200		---

1.

				WATERCLOSETS	LAVATORIES	BATHTUBS/

`

No.	CLASSIFICATION	OCCUPANCY	DESCRIPTION	MALE	FEMALE	MALE	FEMALE	SHOWERS
1	Assembly	A-4	Coliseums, arenas, skating rinks, pools, and tennis courts for indoor sporting events and activities	I per 75 for first 1,500 and 1 per 120 for remainder exceeding 1,500	1 per 40 for first 1,520 and 1 per 60 for remainder exceeding 1,520	; 1 per 200	1 per 150	
		, A-5	Stadiums, amusement parks, bleachers and grandstands for outdoor sporting events and activities	1 per 75 for first 1,500 and 1 per 120 for remainder exceeding 1,500	1 per 40 for first 1,520 and 1 per 60 for - remainder exceeding	• 1 per 200	1 per 150	—
2	Business	B	Buildings for the transaction of business, professional services, other services involving merchandise, office buildings, banks, light	1 per 25 for first 50 and 1 per 50 for the remainder exceeding 50		1 per 40 for first 80 and I per 80 for remainder exceeding 80		—
3	Educational	E	Educational facilities	1 per 35	1 per 25	1 per 85	1 per 50	—
4	Factory and industrial	F-1 and F-2	Structures in which occupants are engaged in work fabricating, assembly or processing of products or materials	1 per 100		1 per 100		Check State (UPC)
5	Institutional	I-1	Residential care	1 per 10		1 per 10		1 per 8
		1-2	Hospitals, ambulatory nursing home care recipient	I per room [c]		1 per room[e]		1 per 15
			Employees, other than residential care[b]	1 per 25		1 per 35		--
			Visitors other than residential care	1 per 75		1 per 100		—
		1-3	Prisons[b]	1 per cell		1 per cell		1 per 15
			Reformatories, detention centers and correctional centers	1 per 15		1 per 15		1 per 15
			Employees[b]	1 per 25		1 per 35		
		1-4	Adult day care and child day care	1 per 15		1 per 15		I
6	Mercantile	M	Retail stores, service stations, shops, salesrooms, markets . and shopping centers	1 per 500		1 per 750		---
	Residential	R-1	Hotels, motels, boarding houses (transient)	**1** per sleeping unit		1 per sleeping unit		I per ' sleeping unit
		R-2	Dormitories, fraternities, sororities and boarding . houses (not transient)	I per 10		I per 10		1per 8
		R-2	Apartment house 1	1 per dwelling unit		1 per dwelling unit		1 per dwelling unit
		R-3	One- and two-family dwellings	**1** per dwelling unit		1 per 10		1 per dwelling unit
			Congregate living facilities with 16 or fewer persons	1 per 10		1 per 10		1 per 8
		R-4	Congregate living facilities with 16 **or fewer persons**	1 per **10**		**1** per 10		1 per 8
8	Storage	S-1 S-2	**Structures for the storage of** goods, warehouses, and freight depots, low and moderate hazard	1 per 100		1 per 100		Check State (UPC)

`

a. The fixtures shown are based on one fixture being the minimum required for the number of persons indicated or any fraction of the number of persons indicated. The number of occupants shall be determined by this code, except with respect to Group E occupancies the provisions of note "e" shall apply.
b. Toilet facilities for employees shall be separate from facilities for inmates or care recipients.
c. A single-occupant toilet room with one water closet and one lavatory serving not more than two adjacent patient sleeping units shall be permitted where such room is provided with direct access from each patient sleeping unit and with provisions for privacy.
d. The occupant load for seasonal outdoor seating and entertainment areas shall be included when determining the minimum number of facilities required.
e. For Group E occupancies: The number of occupants shall be determined by using a calculation of 100 square feet gross building area per student for the minimum number of plumbing fixtures.

[P] 2902.1.1 Fixture calculations.
To determine the *occupant load* of each sex, the total *occupant load* shall be divided in half. To determine the required number of fixtures, the fixture ratio or ratios for each fixture type shall be applied to the *occupant load* of each sex in accordance with Table 2902.1. Fractional numbers resulting from applying the fixture ratios of Table 2902.1 shall be rounded up to the next whole number. For calculations involving multiple occupancies, such fractional numbers for each occupancy shall first be summed and then rounded up to the next whole number.

Exception: The total *occupant load* shall not be required to be divided in half where *approved* statistical data indicate a distribution of the sexes of other than 50 percent of each sex.

[P] 2902.1.1.1 Private offices. Fixtures only accessible to private offices shall not be counted to determine compliance with this section.

[P] 2902.1.1.2 Urinals. Where urinals are provided, one water closet less than the number specified may be provided for each urinal installed, except the number of water closets in such cases shall not be reduced to less than one quarter (25%) of the minimum specified. For men's facilities serving 26 or more persons, not less than one urinal shall be provided.

[P] 2902.1.2 Family or assisted-use toilet and bath fixtures.
Fixtures located within family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms required by Section 1109.2.1 are permitted to be included in the number of required fixtures for either the male or female occupants in assembly and mercantile occupancies.

[P] 2902.2 Separate facilities.
Where plumbing fixtures are required, separate facilities shall be provided for each sex.

Exceptions:

1. Separate facilities shall not be required for *dwelling units* and *sleeping units*.

2. Separate facilities shall not be required in structures or tenant spaces with a total *occupant load*, including both employees and customers, of 15 or fewer.

`

3. Separate facilities shall not be required in mercantile occupancies in which the maximum occupant load is 100 or less.

4. Separate facilities shall not be required in spaces primarily used for drinking or dining with a total occupant load, including both employees and customers, of 30 or fewer.

[P] 2902.2.1 Family or assisted-use toilet facilities serving as separate facilities. Where a building or tenant space requires a separate toilet facility for each sex and each toilet facility is required to have only one water closet, two family or assisted-use toilet facilities shall be permitted to serve as the required separate facilities. Family or assisted-use toilet facilities shall not be required to be identified for exclusive use by either sex as required by Section 2902.4.

[P] 2902.3 Employee and public toilet facilities.
Customers, patrons and visitors shall be provided with public toilet facilities in structures and tenant spaces intended for public utilization. The number of plumbing fixtures located within the required toilet facilities shall be provided in accordance with Section 2902.1 for all users. Employees shall be provided with toilet facilities in all occupancies. Employee toilet facilities shall be either separate or combined employee and public toilet facilities.

Exception: Public toilet facilities shall not be required in:

1. Open or enclosed parking garages where there are no parking attendants.

2. Structures and tenant spaces intended for quick transactions, including takeout, pickup and drop-off, having a public access area less than or equal to 300 square feet (28 m^2).

[P] 2902.3.1 Access.
The route to the public toilet facilities required by Section 2902.3 shall not pass through kitchens, food preparation areas, unpackaged food storage areas, storage rooms or closets. Access to the required facilities shall be from within the building or from the exterior of the building. Access to toilets serving multiple tenants shall be through a common use area and not through an area controlled by a tenant. Routes shall comply with the accessibility requirements of this code. The public shall have access to the required toilet facilities at all times that the building is occupied. For other requirements for plumbing facilities, see Chapter 11.

[P] 2902.3.2 Location of toilet facilities in occupancies other than malls.
In occupancies other than covered and open mall buildings, the required public and employee toilet facilities shall be located in each building not more than one *story* above or below the space required to be provided with toilet facilities, or conveniently in a building adjacent thereto on the same property, and the path of travel to such facilities shall not exceed a distance of 500 feet (152 m).

Exception: The location and maximum distances of travel to required employee facilities in factory and industrial occupancies are permitted to exceed that required by this section, provided that the location and maximum travel distance of are *approved*.

[P] 2902.3.3 Location of toilet facilities in malls.
In covered and open mall buildings, the required public and employee toilet facilities shall be located not more than one story above or below the space required to be provided with toilet

`

facilities, and the path of travel to such facilities shall not exceed a distance of 300 feet (91 mm). In mall buildings, the required facilities shall be based on total square footage (m^2) within a covered mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building, and facilities shall be installed in each individual store or in a central toilet area located in accordance with this section. The maximum distance of travel to central toilet facilities in mall buildings shall be measured from the main entrance of any store or tenant space. In mall buildings, where employees' toilet facilities are not provided in the individual store, the maximum distance of travel shall be measured from the employees' work area of the store or tenant space.

[P] 2902.3.4 Pay facilities.
Where pay facilities are installed, such facilities shall be in excess of the required minimum facilities. Required facilities shall be free of charge.

[P] 2902.3.5 Door locking.
Where a toilet room is provided for the use of multiple occupants, the egress door for the room shall not be lockable from the inside of the room. This section does not apply to family or assisted-use toilet rooms.

[P] 2902.3.6 Prohibited toilet room location.
Toilet rooms shall not open directly into a room used for the preparation of food for service to the public.

[P] 2902.4 Signage.
Required public facilities shall be provided with signs that designate the sex as required by Section 2902.2. Signs shall be readily visible and located near the entrance to each toilet facility. Signs for accessible toilet facilities shall comply with Section 1111.

[P] 2902.4.1 Directional signage.
Directional signage indicating the route to the required public toilet facilities shall be posted in a lobby, corridor, aisle or similar space, such that the sign can be readily seen from the main entrance to the building or tenant space.

[P] 2902.5 Drinking fountain location.
Drinking fountains shall not be required to be located in individual tenant spaces provided that public drinking fountains are located within a distance of travel of 500 feet (152 m) of the most remote location in the tenant space and not more than one story above or below the tenant space. Where the tenant space is in a covered or open mall, such distance shall not exceed 300 feet (91 440 mm). Drinking fountains shall be located on an accessible route. Drinking fountains shall not be located in toilet rooms.

[P] 2902.5.1 Drinking fountain number. Occupant loads over 30 shall have one drinking fountain for the first 150 occupants, then one per each additional 500 occupants.

Exceptions:

1. Sporting facilities with concessions serving drinks shall have one drinking fountain for each 1000 occupants.

2. A drinking fountain need not be provided in a drinking or dining establishment.

[P] 2902.5.2 Multistory buildings. Drinking fountains shall be provided on each floor having

`

more than 30 occupants in schools, dormitories, auditoriums, theaters, offices and public buildings.

[P] 2902.5.3 Penal institutions. Penal institutions shall have one drinking fountain on each cell block floor and one on each exercise floor.

[P] 2902.5.4 Bottle filling stations. Bottle filling stations shall be provided in accordance with Sections 2902.5.4.1 through 2902.5.4.3.

[P] 2902.5.4.1 Group E occupancies. In Group E occupancies with an occupant load over 30, a minimum of one bottle filling station shall be provided on each floor. This bottle filling station may be integral to a drinking fountain.

[P] 2902.5.4.2 Substitution. In all occupancies that require more than two drinking fountains per floor or secured area, bottle filling stations shall be permitted to be substituted for up to 50 percent of the required number of drinking fountains.

[P] 2902.5.4.3 Accessibility. At least one of the required bottle filling stations shall be located in accordance with Section 309 ICC A117.1

~~**[P] 2902.6 Small occupancies.**~~
~~Drinking fountains shall not be required for an occupant load of 15 or fewer.~~

[P] 2902.6 Dwelling units. Dwelling units shall be provided with a kitchen sink.

[P] 2902.7 Water closet space requirements. The water closet stool in all occupancies shall be located in a clear space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in width, with a clear space in front of the stool of not less than 24 inches (610 mm).

[P] 2902.8 Water. Each required sink, lavatory, bathtub and shower stall shall be equipped with hot and cold running water necessary for its normal operation.
[P] 2902.9 Small occupancies. Drinking fountains shall not be required for an occupant load of 15 or fewer.

`

CHAPTER 30
ELEVATORS AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [F] will be considered by the International Fire Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 3001
GENERAL

3001.1 Scope.
This chapter governs the design, construction, installation, *alteration* and repair of elevators and conveying systems and their components.

3001.2 Referenced standards.
Except as otherwise provided for in this code, the design, construction, installation, *alteration*, repair and maintenance of elevators and conveying systems and their components shall conform to ASME A17.1/ CSA B44, ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7, ASME A90.1, ASME B20.1, ANSI MH29.1, ALI ALCTV and ASCE 24 for construction in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3.

3001.3 Accessibility.
Passenger elevators required to be accessible or to serve as part of an *accessible means of egress* shall comply with Sections 1009 and 1109.7.

3001.4 Change in use.
A change in use of an elevator from freight to passenger, passenger to freight, or from one freight class to another freight class shall comply with Section 8.7 of ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

SECTION 3002
HOISTWAY ENCLOSURES

3002.1 Hoistway enclosure protection.
Elevator, dumbwaiter and other hoistway enclosures shall be *shaft enclosures* complying with Section 713.

3002.1.1 Opening protectives.
Openings in hoistway enclosures shall be protected as required in Chapter 7.

Exception: The elevator car doors and the associated hoistway enclosure doors at the floor level designated for recall in accordance with Section 3003.2 shall be permitted to remain open during Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.

3002.1.2 Hardware.
Hardware on opening protectives shall be of an *approved* type installed as tested, except that *approved* interlocks, mechanical locks and electric contacts, door and gate electric contacts and door-operating mechanisms shall be exempt from the fire test requirements.

`

3002.2 Number of elevator cars in a hoistway.
Where four or more elevator cars serve all or the same portion of a building, the elevators shall be located in not fewer than two separate hoistways. Not more than four elevator cars shall be located in any single hoistway enclosure.

3002.3 Emergency signs.
An *approved* pictorial sign of a standardized design shall be posted adjacent to each elevator call station on all floors instructing occupants to use the *exit stairways* and not to use the elevators in case of fire. The sign shall read: IN CASE OF FIRE, ELEVATORS ARE OUT OF SERVICE. USE EXIT STAIRS.

Exceptions:

1. The emergency sign shall not be required for elevators that are part of an *accessible means of egress* complying with Section 1009.4.

2. The emergency sign shall not be required for elevators that are used for occupant self-evacuation in accordance with Section 3008.

3002.4 Elevator car to accommodate ambulance stretcher.
Where elevators are provided in buildings four or more *stories* above, or four or more *stories* below, *grade plane*, or in any Group R-1, R-2 or I occupancy building provided with an elevator regardless of the number of stories, not fewer than one elevator shall be provided for fire department emergency access to all floors. The elevator car shall be of such a size and arrangement to accommodate an ambulance stretcher 24 inches by 84 inches (610 mm by 2134 mm) with not less than 5-inch (127 mm) radius corners, in the horizontal, open position and shall be identified by the international symbol for emergency medical services (star of life). The symbol shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in height and shall be placed inside on both sides of the hoistway door frame.

3002.5 Emergency doors.
Where an elevator is installed in a single blind hoistway or on the outside of a building, there shall be installed in the blind portion of the hoistway or blank face of the building, an emergency door in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

3002.6 Prohibited doors.
Doors, other than hoistway doors and the elevator car door, shall be prohibited at the point of access to an elevator car unless such doors are readily openable from the car side without a key, tool, special knowledge or effort.

3002.7 Common enclosure with stairway.
Elevators shall not be in a common *shaft enclosure* with a *stairway*.

Exception: Elevators within o*pen parking garages need not be separated from stairway enclosures*.

3002.8 Glass in elevator enclosures.
Glass in elevator enclosures shall comply with Section 2409.2.

3002.9 Plumbing and mechanical systems.
Plumbing and mechanical systems shall not be located in an elevator hoistway enclosure.

`

Exception: Floor drains, sumps and sump pumps shall be permitted at the base of the hoistway enclosure provided they are indirectly connected to the plumbing system.

SECTION 3003
EMERGENCY OPERATIONS

[F] 3003.1 Standby power.
In buildings and structures where standby power is required or furnished to operate an elevator, the operation shall be in accordance with Sections 3003.1.1 through 3003.1.4.

[F] 3003.1.1 Manual transfer.
Standby power shall be manually transferable to all elevators in each bank.

[F] 3003.1.2 One elevator.
Where only one elevator is installed, the elevator shall automatically transfer to standby power within 60 seconds after failure of normal power.

[F] 3003.1.3 Two or more elevators.
Where two or more elevators are controlled by a common operating system, all elevators shall automatically transfer to standby power within 60 seconds after failure of normal power where the standby power source is of sufficient capacity to operate all elevators at the same time. Where the standby power source is not of sufficient capacity to operate all elevators at the same time, all elevators shall transfer to standby power in sequence, return to the designated landing and disconnect from the standby power source. After all elevators have been returned to the designated level, at least one elevator shall remain operable from the standby power source.

[F] 3003.1.4 Venting.
Where standby power is connected to elevators, the machine room *ventilation* or air conditioning shall be connected to the standby power source.

[F] 3003.2 Fire fighters' emergency operation.
Elevators shall be provided with Phase I emergency recall operation and Phase II emergency in-car operation in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

[F] 3003.3 Standardized fire service elevator keys.
All elevators shall be equipped to operate with a standardized fire service elevator key in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 3004
CONVEYING SYSTEMS

3004.1 General.
Escalators, moving walks, conveyors, personnel hoists and material hoists shall comply with the provisions of Sections 3004.2 through 3004.4.

3004.2 Escalators and moving walks.
Escalators and moving walks shall be constructed of *approved* noncombustible and fire-retardant materials. This requirement shall not apply to electrical equipment, wiring, wheels, handrails and the use of $^{1}/_{28}$-inch (0.9 mm) wood veneers on balustrades backed up with noncombustible materials.

`

3004.2.1 Enclosure.
Escalator floor openings shall be enclosed with *shaft enclosures* complying with Section 713.

3004.2.2 Escalators.
Where provided in below-grade transportation stations, escalators shall have a clear width of not less than 32 inches (815 mm).

Exception: The clear width is not required in existing facilities undergoing *alterations*.

3004.3 Conveyors.
Conveyors and conveying systems shall comply with ASME B20.1.

3004.3.1 Enclosure.
Conveyors and related equipment connecting successive floors or levels shall be enclosed with *shaft enclosures* complying with Section 713.

3004.3.2 Conveyor safeties.
Power-operated conveyors, belts and other material-moving devices shall be equipped with automatic limit switches that will shut off the power in an emergency and automatically stop all operation of the device.

3004.4 Personnel and material hoists.
Personnel and material hoists shall be designed utilizing an *approved* method that accounts for the conditions imposed during the intended operation of the hoist device. The design shall include, but is not limited to, anticipated loads, structural stability, impact, vibration, stresses and seismic restraint. The design shall account for the construction, installation, operation and inspection of the hoist tower, car, machinery and control equipment, guide members and hoisting mechanism. Additionally, the design of personnel hoists shall include provisions for field testing and maintenance that will demonstrate that the hoist device functions in accordance with the design. Field tests shall be conducted upon the completion of an installation or following a major *alteration* of a personnel hoist.

SECTION 3005
MACHINE ROOMS

3005.1 Access.
An *approved* means of access shall be provided to elevator machine rooms, control rooms, control spaces and machinery spaces.

3005.2 Venting.
Elevator machine rooms, machinery spaces that contain the driving machine, and control rooms or spaces that contain the operation or motion controller for elevator operation shall be provided with an independent *ventilation* or air-conditioning system to protect against the overheating of the electrical equipment. ~~The system shall be capable of maintaining temperatures within the range established for the elevator equipment.~~ Ventilation systems shall use outdoor makeup air. The system shall service the equipment space only, and shall be capable of maintaining the temperature and humidity within the range established by the manufacturer's specifications. Where no manufacturer specifications are available, the equipment space temperature shall be maintained at no less than 55ºF and no more than 90ºF.

The cooling load for the equipment shall include the BTU output of the elevator operation equipment as specified by the manufacturer based on one hour of continuous operation. The

`

outdoor design temperature for ventilation shall be from the 0.5% column for summer from the Puget Sound Chapter of ASHRAE publication "Recommended Outdoor Design Temperatures, Washington State." The following formula shall be used to calculate flow rate for ventilation: CFM = BTU output of elevator machine room equipment / [1.08 x (acceptable machine room temp – makeup air temp)]

Exception: For buildings four stories or less, natural or mechanical means may be used in lieu of an independent ventilation or air-conditioning system to keep the equipment space ambient air temperature and humidity in the range specified by the elevator equipment manufacturer.

3005.3 Pressurization.
The elevator machine room, control rooms or control space with openings into a pressurized elevator hoistway shall be pressurized upon activation of a *heat or smoke detector* located in the elevator machine room, control room or control space.

3005.4 Machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces, and control spaces.
Elevator machine rooms, control rooms, control spaces and machinery spaces outside of but attached to a hoistway that have openings into the hoistway shall be enclosed with *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The *fire-resistance rating* shall be not less than the required rating of the hoistway enclosure served by the machinery. Openings in the *fire barriers* shall be protected with assemblies having a f*ire protection rating* not less than that required for the hoistway enclosure doors.

Exceptions:

1. For other than fire service access elevators and occupant evacuation elevators, where machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces do not abut and have no openings to the hoistway enclosure they serve, the *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, shall be permitted to be reduced to a 1-hour *fire-resistance rating*.

2. For other than fire service access elevators and occupant evacuation elevators, in buildings four *stories* or less above *grade plane* where machine room, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces do not abut and have no openings to the hoistway enclosure they serve, the machine room, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces are not required to be fire-resistance rated.

3005.5 Shunt trip.
Where elevator hoistways, elevator machine rooms, control rooms and control spaces containing elevator control equipment are protected with automatic sprinklers, a means installed in accordance with Section 21.4 of NFPA 72 shall be provided to disconnect automatically the main line power supply to the affected elevator prior to the application of water. This means shall not be self-resetting. The activation of automatic sprinklers outside the hoistway, machine room, machinery space, control room or control space shall not disconnect the main line power supply.

3005.6 Plumbing systems.
Plumbing systems shall not be located in elevator equipment rooms.

`

SECTION 3006
ELEVATOR LOBBIES AND
HOISTWAY OPENING PROTECTION

3006.1 General.
Elevator hoistway openings and enclosed elevator lobbies shall be provided in accordance with the following:

1. Where hoistway opening protection is required by Section 3006.2, such protection shall be in accordance with Section 3006.3.

2. Where enclosed elevator lobbies are required for underground buildings, such lobbies shall comply with Section 405.4.3.

3. Where an area of refuge is required and an enclosed elevator lobby is provided to serve as an area of refuge, the enclosed elevator lobby shall comply with Section 1009.6.

4. Where fire service access elevators are provided, enclosed elevator lobbies shall comply with Section 3007.6.

5. Where occupant evacuation elevators are provided, enclosed elevator lobbies shall comply with Section 3008.6.

3006.2 Hoistway opening protection required.
Elevator hoistway door openings shall be protected in accordance with Section 3006.3 where an elevator hoistway connects more than three stories, is required to be enclosed within a shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 712.1.1 and any of the following conditions apply:

1. The building is not protected throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

2. The building contains a Group I-1 Condition 2 occupancy.

3. The building contains a Group I-2 occupancy.

4. The building contains a Group I-3 occupancy.

5. The building is a high rise and the elevator hoistway is more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) in height. The height of the hoistway shall be measured from the lowest floor to the highest floor of the floors served by the hoistway.

   Exceptions:

   1. Protection of elevator hoistway door openings is not required where the elevator serves only open parking garages in accordance with Section 406.5.

   2. Protection of elevator hoistway door openings is not required at the level(s) of exit discharge, provided the level(s) of exit discharge is equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

   3. Enclosed elevator lobbies and protection of elevator hoistway door openings are not required on levels where the elevator hoistway opens to the exterior.

`

3006.3 Hoistway opening protection.
Where Section 3006.2 requires protection of the elevator hoistway door opening, the protection shall be provided by one of the following:

1. An enclosed elevator lobby shall be provided at each floor to separate the elevator hoistway shaft enclosure doors from each floor by fire partitions in accordance with Section 708. In addition, doors protecting openings in the elevator lobby enclosure walls shall comply with Section 716.5.3 as required for corridor walls. Penetrations of the enclosed elevator lobby by ducts and air transfer openings shall be protected as required for corridors in accordance with Section 717.5.4.1.

2. An enclosed elevator lobby shall be provided at each floor to separate the elevator hoistway shaft enclosure doors from each floor by smoke partitions in accordance with Section 710 where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. In addition, doors protecting openings in the smoke partitions shall comply with Sections 710.5.2.2, 710.5.2.3 and 716.5.9. Penetrations of the enclosed elevator lobby by ducts and air transfer openings shall be protected as required for corridors in accordance with Section 717.5.4.1.

3. Additional doors shall be provided at each elevator hoistway door opening in accordance with Section 3002.6. Such door shall comply with the smoke and draft control door assembly requirements in Section 716.5.3.1 when tested in accordance with UL 1784 without an artificial bottom seal.

4. The elevator hoistway shall be pressurized in accordance with Section 909.21.

3006.4 Means of egress.
Elevator lobbies shall be provided with at least one means of egress complying with Chapter 10 and other provisions in this code. Egress through an elevator lobby shall be permitted in accordance with Item 1 of Section 1016.2.

SECTION 3007
FIRE SERVICE ACCESS ELEVATOR

3007.1 General.
Where required by Section 403.6.1, every floor of the building shall be served by fire service access elevators complying with Sections 3007.1 through 3007.9. Except as modified in this section, fire service access elevators shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

Exceptions:

1. When below grade portions of high rise buildings are served by elevators not serving above grade portions extending more than 75 feet above the lowest Fire department access and such elevators do not serve levels more than 80 feet below grade plane.

2. Elevators serving mezzanines located below the 7th story.

3007.2 Automatic sprinkler system.
The building shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance

`

with Section 903.3.1.1, except as otherwise permitted by Section 903.3.1.1.1 and as prohibited by Section 3007.2.1.

3007.2.1 Prohibited locations.
Automatic sprinklers shall not be installed in machine rooms, elevator machinery spaces, control rooms, control spaces and elevator hoistways of fire service access elevators.

3007.2.2 Sprinkler system monitoring.
The sprinkler system shall have a sprinkler control valve supervisory switch and water-flow-initiating device provided for each floor that is monitored by the building's *fire alarm system.*

3007.3 Water protection.
An *approved* method to prevent water from infiltrating into the hoistway enclosure from the operation of the *automatic sprinkler system* outside the enclosed fire service access elevator lobby shall be provided.

3007.4 Shunt trip.
Means for elevator shutdown in accordance with Section 3005.5 shall not be installed on elevator systems used for fire service access elevators.

3007.5 Hoistway enclosures.
The fire service access elevator hoistway shall be located in a *shaft enclosure* complying with Section 713.

3007.5.1 Structural integrity of hoistway enclosures.
The fire service access elevator hoistway enclosure shall comply with Sections 403.2.3.1 through 403.2.3.4.

3007.5.2 Hoistway lighting.
When fire-fighters' emergency operation is active, the entire height of the hoistway shall be illuminated at not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux) as measured from the top of the car of each fire service access elevator.

3007.6 Fire service access elevator lobby.
The fire service access elevator shall open into a fire service access elevator lobby in accordance with Sections 3007.6.1 through 3007.6.5. Egress is permitted through the elevator lobby in accordance with Item 1 of Section 1016.2.

Exception: Where a fire service access elevator has two entrances onto a floor, the second entrance shall be permitted to open into an elevator lobby in accordance with Section 3006.3.

3007.6.1 Access to interior exit stairway or ramp.
The fire service access elevator lobby shall have direct access from the enclosed elevator lobby to an enclosure for an *interior exit stairway* or *ramp*.

Exception: Access to an *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* shall be permitted to be through a protected path of travel that has a level of fire protection not less than the elevator lobby enclosure. The protected path shall be separated from the enclosed elevator lobby through an opening protected by a smoke and draft control assembly in accordance Section 716.5.3.

`

3007.6.2 Lobby enclosure.
The fire service access elevator lobby shall be enclosed with a *smoke barrier* having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 1 hour, except that lobby doorways shall comply with Section 3007.6.3.

Exceptions:

1. Enclosed fire service access elevator lobbies are not required at the *levels of exit discharge*.

2. Enclosed fire service access elevator lobbies are not required for elevators with pressurized hoistways.

3007.6.3 Lobby doorways.
Other than doors to the hoistway, elevator control room or elevator control space, each doorway to a fire service access elevator lobby shall be provided with a $^{3}/_{4}$-hour *fire door assembly* complying with Section 716.5. The *fire door assembly* shall comply with the smoke and draft control door assembly requirements of Section 716.5.3.1 with the UL 1784 test conducted without the artificial bottom seal.

3007.6.4 Lobby size.
Regardless of the number of fire service access elevators served by the same elevator lobby, the enclosed fire service access elevator lobby shall be not less than 150 square feet (14 m^2) in an area with a dimension of not less than 8 feet (2440 mm).

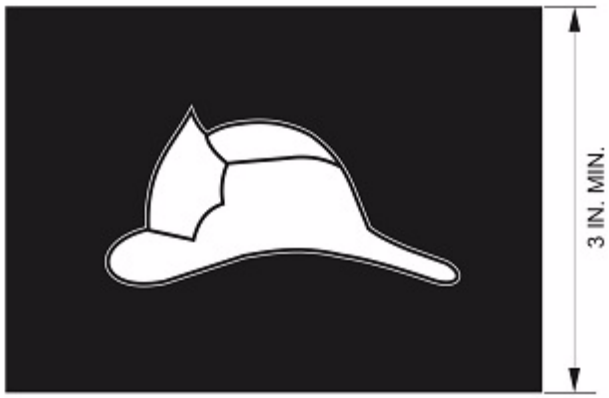
3007.6.5 Fire service access elevator symbol.
A pictorial symbol of a standardized design designating which elevators are fire service access elevators shall be installed on each side of the hoistway door frame on the portion of the frame at right angles to the fire service access elevator lobby. The fire service access elevator symbol shall be designed as shown in Figure 3007.6.5 and shall comply with the following:

1. The fire service access elevator symbol shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in height.

2. The helmet shall contrast with the background, with either a light helmet on a dark background or a dark helmet on a light background.

3. The vertical center line of the fire service access elevator symbol shall be centered on the hoistway door frame. Each symbol shall be not less than 78 inches (1981 mm), and not more than 84 inches (2134 mm) above the finished floor at the threshold.

`



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 3007.6.5
FIRE SERVICE ACCESS ELEVATOR SYMBOL

3007.7 Elevator system monitoring.
The fire service access elevator shall be continuously monitored at the *fire command center* by a standard emergency service interface system meeting the requirements of NFPA 72.

3007.8 Electrical power.
The following features serving each fire service access elevator shall be supplied by both normal power and Type 60/Class 2/Level 1 standby power:

1. Elevator equipment.

2. Elevator hoistway lighting.

3. *Ventilation* and cooling equipment for elevator machine rooms, control rooms, machine spaces and control spaces.

4. Elevator car lighting.

3007.8.1 Protection of wiring or cables.
Wires or cables that are located outside of the elevator hoistway and machine room and that provide normal or standby power, control signals, communication with the car, lighting, heating, air conditioning, *ventilation* and fire-detecting systems to fire service access elevators shall be protected by construction having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 2 hours, shall be a circuit integrity cable having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 2 hours or shall be protected by a listed electrical protective system having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 2 hours.

Exception: Wiring and cables to control signals are not required to be protected provided that wiring and cables do not serve Phase II emergency in-car operations.

3007.9 Standpipe hose connection.
A Class I standpipe hose connection in accordance with Section 905 shall be provided in the *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* having direct access from the fire service access elevator lobby.

`

3007.9.1 Access.
The *exit* enclosure containing the standpipe shall have access to the floor without passing through the fire service access elevator lobby.

3007.10 Phase I Emergency recall operation.
Actuation of any building fire alarm-initiating device shall initiate Phase I emergency recall operation on all fire service access elevators in accordance with the requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44 with a 5 minute delay except for smoke detectors located in associated elevator lobbies, hoistways or elevator machine rooms. All other elevators shall remain in normal service unless Phase I emergency recall operation is manually initiated by a separate, required three-position, key-operated "Fire Recall" switch or automatically initiated by the associated elevator lobby, hoistway or elevator machine room smoke detectors. In addition, if the building also contains occupant evacuation elevators in accordance with Section 3008, an independent, three-position, key-operated "Fire Recall" switch conforming to the applicable requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44 shall be provided at the designated level for each fire service access elevator.

SECTION 3008
OCCUPANT EVACUATION ELEVATORS

3008.1 General.
Where elevators are to be used for occupant self-evacuation during fires, all passenger elevators for general public use shall comply with Sections 3008.1 through 3008.10. Where other elevators are used for occupant self-evacuation, those elevators shall comply with these sections.

3008.1.1 Additional exit stairway.
Where an additional *means of egress* is required in accordance with Section 403.5.2, an additional *exit stairway* shall not be required to be installed in buildings provided with occupant evacuation elevators complying with Section 3008.1.

3008.1.2 Fire safety and evacuation plan.
The building shall have an *approved* fire safety and evacuation plan in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 404 of the *International Fire Code*. The fire safety and evacuation plan shall incorporate specific procedures for the occupants using evacuation elevators.

3008.1.3 Operation.
The occupant evacuation elevators shall be used for occupant self-evacuation in accordance with the occupant evacuation operation requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and the building's fire safety and evacuation plan.

3008.2 Automatic sprinkler system.
The building shall be equipped throughout with an *approved*, electrically supervised *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, except as otherwise permitted by Section 903.3.1.1.1 and as prohibited by Section 3008.2.1.

3008.2.1 Prohibited locations.
Automatic sprinklers shall not be installed in elevator machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms, control spaces and elevator hoistways of occupant evacuation elevators.

`

3008.2.2 Sprinkler system monitoring.
The automatic sprinkler system shall have a sprinkler control valve supervisory switch and water-flow-initiating device provided for each floor that is monitored by the building's *fire alarm system*.

3008.3 Water protection.
An *approved* method to prevent water from infiltrating into the hoistway enclosure from the operation of the *automatic sprinkler system* outside the enclosed occupant evacuation elevator lobby shall be provided.

3008.4 Shunt trip.
Means for elevator shutdown in accordance with Section 3005.5 shall not be installed on elevator systems used for occupant evacuation elevators.

3008.5 Hoistway enclosure protection.
Occupant evacuation elevator hoistways shall be located in *shaft enclosures* complying with Section 713.

3008.5.1 Structural integrity of hoistway enclosures.
Occupant evacuation elevator hoistway enclosures shall comply with Sections 403.2.3.1 through 403.2.3.4.

3008.6 Occupant evacuation elevator lobby.
Occupant evacuation elevators shall open into an elevator lobby in accordance with Sections 3008.6.1 through 3008.6.6. Egress is permitted through the elevator lobby in accordance with Item 1 of Section 1016.2.

3008.6.1 Access to interior exit stairway or ramp.
The occupant evacuation elevator lobby shall have direct access from the enclosed elevator lobby to an *interior exit stairway* or *ramp*.

Exception: Access to an *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* shall be permitted to be through a protected path of travel that has a level of fire protection not less than the elevator lobby enclosure. The protected path shall be separated from the enclosed elevator lobby through an opening protected by a smoke and draft control assembly in accordance Section 716.5.3.

3008.6.2 Lobby enclosure.
The occupant evacuation elevator lobby shall be enclosed with a *smoke barrier* having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 1 hour, except that lobby doorways shall comply with Section 3008.6.3.

Exception: Enclosed occupant evacuation elevator lobbies are not required at the *levels of exit discharge*.

3008.6.3 Lobby doorways.
Other than the doors to the hoistway, elevator machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces within the lobby enclosure smoke barrier, each doorway to an occupant evacuation elevator lobby shall be provided with a $^{3}/_{4}$-hour *fire door assembly* complying with Section 716.5. The *fire door assembly* shall comply with the smoke and draft control assembly requirements of Section 716.5.3.1 with the UL 1784 test conducted without the artificial bottom seal.

`

3008.6.3.1 Vision panel.
A vision panel shall be installed in each *fire door assembly* protecting the lobby doorway. The vision panel shall consist of fire protection-rated glazing and shall be located to furnish clear vision of the occupant evacuation elevator lobby.

3008.6.3.2 Door closing.
Each *fire door assembly* protecting the lobby doorway shall be automatic-closing upon receipt of any fire alarm signal from the *emergency voice/alarm communication system* serving the building.

3008.6.4 Lobby size.
Each occupant evacuation elevator lobby shall have minimum floor area as follows:

1. The occupant evacuation elevator lobby floor area shall accommodate, at 3 square feet (0.28 m^2) per person, not less than 25 percent of the *occupant load* of the floor area served by the lobby.

2. The occupant evacuation elevator lobby floor area shall accommodate one *wheelchair space* of 30 inches by 48 inches (760 mm by 1220 mm) for each 50 persons, or portion thereof, of the *occupant load* of the floor area served by the lobby.

Exception: The size of lobbies serving multiple banks of elevators shall have the minimum floor area *approved* on an individual basis and shall be consistent with the building's fire safety and evacuation plan.

3008.6.5 Signage.
An *approved* sign indicating elevators are suitable for occupant self-evacuation shall be posted on all floors adjacent to each elevator call station serving occupant evacuation elevators.

3008.6.6 Two-way communication system.
A two-way communication system shall be provided in each occupant evacuation elevator lobby for the purpose of initiating communication with the *fire command center* or an alternate location *approved* by the fire department. The two-way communication system shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 1009.8.1 and 1009.8.2.

3008.6.7 Lobby status indicator. Each occupant evacuation elevator lobby shall be equipped with a status indicator arranged to display all of the following information:

1. An illuminated green light and the message, "Elevators available for occupant evacuation," when the elevators are operating in normal service and the fire alarm system is indicating an alarm in the building.

2. An illuminated red light and the message, "Elevators out of service, use exit stairs" when the elevators are in Phase I emergency recall operation in accordance with the requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

3. No illuminated light or message when the elevators are operating in normal service.

3008.6.7.1 Location of lobby status indicator.

`

Visual signals for each elevator group shall be installed on each floor served. They shall be located 84 in. (2,130 mm) to 120 in. (3,000 mm) above the floor and centered above a hall call button. Lettering shall be a minimum of 2 in. (50 mm) high and conform to A117.1 requirement 703.2.

3008.7 Elevator system monitoring.
The occupant evacuation elevators shall be continuously monitored at the *fire command center* or a central control point *approved* by the fire department and arranged to display all of the following information:

1. Floor location of each elevator car.

2. Direction of travel of each elevator car.

3. Status of each elevator car with respect to whether it is occupied.

4. Status of normal power to the elevator equipment, elevator machinery and electrical apparatus cooling equipment where provided, elevator machine room, control room and control space *ventilation* and cooling equipment.

5. Status of standby or emergency power system that provides backup power to the elevator equipment, elevator machinery and electrical cooling equipment where provided, elevator machine room, control room and control space *ventilation* and cooling equipment.

6. Activation of any fire alarm initiating device in any elevator lobby, elevator machine room, machine space containing a motor controller or electric driving machine, control space, control room or elevator hoistway.

3008.7.1 Elevator recall.
The *fire command center* or an alternate location *approved* by the fire department shall be provided with the means to manually initiate a Phase I Emergency Recall of the occupant evacuation elevators in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

3008.8 Electrical power.
The following features serving each occupant evacuation elevator shall be supplied by both normal power and Type 60/Class 2/Level 1 standby power:

1. Elevator equipment.

2. *Ventilation* and cooling equipment for elevator machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces and control spaces.

3. Elevator car lighting.

3008.8.1 Protection of wiring or cables.
Wires or cables that are located outside of the elevator hoistway, machine room, control room and control space and that provide normal or standby power, control signals, communication with the car, lighting, heating, air conditioning, *ventilation* and fire-detecting systems to occupant evacuation elevators shall be protected by construction having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 2 hours, shall be circuit integrity cable having a fire-

`

resistance rating of not less than 2 hours or shall be protected by a listed electrical circuit protective system having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 2 hours.

Exception: Wiring and cables to control signals are not required to be protected provided that wiring and cables do not serve Phase II emergency in-car operation.

3008.9 Emergency voice/alarm communication system.
The building shall be provided with an *emergency voice/alarm communication system*. The *emergency voice/alarm communication system* shall be accessible to the fire department. The system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

3008.9.1 Notification appliances.
Not fewer than one audible and one visible notification appliance shall be installed within each occupant evacuation elevator lobby.

3008.10 Hazardous material areas.
No building areas shall contain hazardous materials exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per *control area* as addressed in Section 414.2.

SECTION 3009
HOISTWAY VENTING

3009.1 Vents required. Where required by the authority having jurisdiction over the conveyance, hoistways of elevators and dumbwaiters penetrating four or more stories shall be provided with a means for venting smoke and hot gases to the outer air in case of fire.

Exception: Venting is not required for the following elevators and hoistways:

1. In occupancies other than Groups R-1, R-2, I-1, I-2 and similar occupancies with overnight sleeping units, where the building is equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
2. Sidewalk elevator hoistways.
3. Elevators contained within and serving open parking garages only.
4. Elevators within individual residential dwelling units.

3009.2 Location of vents. Vents shall be located at the top of the hoistway and shall open either directly to the outer air or through noncombustible ducts to the outer air. Noncombustible ducts shall be permitted to pass through the elevator machine room, provided that portions of the ducts located outside the hoistway or machine room are enclosed by construction having not less than the fire-resistance rating required for the hoistway. Holes in the machine room floors for the passage of ropes, cables or other moving elevator equipment shall be limited as not to provide greater than 2 inches of clearance on all sides.

3009.3 Area of vents. Except as provided for in Section 3009.3.1, the area of the vents shall not be less than 3 1/2 percent of the area of the hoistway nor less than 3 square feet (0.28 m2) for each elevator car, and not less than 3 1/2 percent nor less than 0.5 square feet (0.047 m3) for each dumbwaiter car in the hoistway, whichever is greater. The total required vent area shall

`

be equipped with dampers that remain powered closed until activated open by the fire alarm system panel. The dampers shall open upon loss of power.

3009.3.1 Reduced vent area. Where mechanical ventilation conforming to the International Mechanical Code is provided, a reduction in the required vent area is allowed provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. The occupancy is not in Group R-1, R-2, I-1 or I-2 or of a similar occupancy with overnight sleeping units.

2. The vents required by Section 3009.2 do not have outside exposure.

3. The hoistway does not extend to the top of the building.

4. The hoistway and machine room exhaust fan is automatically reactivated by thermostatic means.

5. Equivalent venting of the hoistway is accomplished.

`

CHAPTER 31
SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [BS] will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 3101
GENERAL

3101.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall govern special building construction including membrane structures, temporary structures, *pedestrian walkways* and tunnels, automatic *vehicular gates*, *awnings* and *canopies*, *marquees*, signs, and towers and antennas.

SECTION 3102
MEMBRANE STRUCTURES

3102.1 General.
The provisions of Sections 3102.1 through 3102.8 shall apply to air-supported, air-inflated, membrane-covered cable, membrane-covered frame and *tensile membrane structures*, collectively known as membrane structures, erected for a period of 180 days or longer. Those erected for a shorter period of time shall comply with the *International Fire Code*. Membrane structures covering water storage facilities, water clarifiers, water treatment plants, sewage treatment plants, greenhouses and similar facilities not used for human occupancy are required to meet only the requirements of Sections 3102.3.1 and 3102.7. Membrane structures erected on a building, balcony, deck or other structure for any period of time shall comply with this section.

3102.1.1 Tensile membrane structures.
Tensile membrane structures, including permanent and temporary structures, shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 55. The provisions in Sections 3102.3 through 3102.6 shall apply.

3102.2 Definitions.
The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

AIR-INFLATED STRUCTURE.

AIR-SUPPORTED STRUCTURE.

Double skin.

Single skin.

CABLE-RESTRAINED, AIR-SUPPORTED STRUCTURE.

MEMBRANE-COVERED CABLE STRUCTURE.

MEMBRANE-COVERED FRAME STRUCTURE.

`

NONCOMBUSTIBLE MEMBRANE STRUCTURE.

TENSILE MEMBRANE STRUCTURE.

3102.3 Type of construction.
Noncombustible membrane structures shall be classified as Type IIB construction. Noncombustible frame or cable-supported structures covered by an approved membrane in accordance with Section 3102.3.1 shall be classified as Type IIB construction. Heavy timber frame-supported structures covered by an *approved* membrane in accordance with Section 3102.3.1 shall be classified as Type IV construction. Other membrane structures shall be classified as Type V construction.

Exception: Plastic less than 30 feet (9144 mm) above any floor used in greenhouses, where occupancy by the general public is not authorized, and for aquaculture pond covers is not required to meet the fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701.

3102.3.1 Membrane and interior liner material.
Membranes and interior liners shall be either noncombustible as set forth in Section 703.5 or meet the fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701 and the manufacturer's test protocol.

Exception: Plastic less than 20 mil (0.5 mm) in thickness used in greenhouses, where occupancy by the general public is not authorized, and for aquaculture pond covers is not required to meet the fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701.

3102.4 Allowable floor areas.
The area of a membrane structure shall not exceed the limitations specified in Section 506.

3102.5 Maximum height.
Membrane structures shall not exceed one story nor shall such structures exceed the height limitations in feet specified in Section 504.3.

Exception: Noncombustible membrane structures serving as roofs only.

3102.6 Mixed construction.
Membrane structures shall be permitted to be utilized as specified in this section as a portion of buildings of other types of construction. Height and area limits shall be as specified for the type of construction and occupancy of the building.

3102.6.1 Noncombustible membrane.
A noncombustible membrane shall be permitted for use as the roof or as a skylight of any building or atrium of a building of any type of construction provided the membrane is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) above any floor, balcony or gallery.

3102.6.1.1 Membrane.
A membrane meeting the fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701 shall be permitted to be used as the roof or as a skylight on buildings of Type IIB, III, IV and V construction, provided the membrane is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) above any floor, balcony or gallery.

`

3102.7 Engineering design.
The structure shall be designed and constructed to sustain dead loads; loads due to tension or inflation; live loads including wind, snow or flood and seismic loads and in accordance with Chapter 16.

3102.7.1 Lateral restraint.
For membrane-covered frame structures, the membrane shall not be considered to provide lateral restraint in the calculation of the capacities of the frame members.

3102.8 Inflation systems.
Air-supported and air-inflated structures shall be provided with primary and auxiliary inflation systems to meet the minimum requirements of Sections 3102.8.1 through 3102.8.3.

3102.8.1 Equipment requirements.
This inflation system shall consist of one or more blowers and shall include provisions for automatic control to maintain the required inflation pressures. The system shall be so designed as to prevent overpressurization of the system.

3102.8.1.1 Auxiliary inflation system.
In addition to the primary inflation system, in buildings larger than 1,500 square feet (140 m^2) in area, an auxiliary inflation system shall be provided with sufficient capacity to maintain the inflation of the structure in case of primary system failure. The auxiliary inflation system shall operate automatically when there is a loss of internal pressure and when the primary blower system becomes inoperative.

3102.8.1.2 Blower equipment.
Blower equipment shall meet all of the following requirements:

1. Blowers shall be powered by continuous-rated motors at the maximum power required for any flow condition as required by the structural design.

2. Blowers shall be provided with inlet screens, belt guards and other protective devices as required by the *building official* to provide protection from injury.

3. Blowers shall be housed within a weather-protecting structure.

4. Blowers shall be equipped with backdraft check dampers to minimize air loss when inoperative.

5. Blower inlets shall be located to provide protection from air contamination. The location of inlets shall be *approved*.

3102.8.2 Standby power.
Wherever an auxiliary inflation system is required, an *approved* standby power-generating system shall be provided. The system shall be equipped with a suitable means for automatically starting the generator set upon failure of the normal electrical service and for automatic transfer and operation of all of the required electrical functions at full power within 60 seconds of such service failure. Standby power shall be capable of operating independently for not less than 4 hours.

3102.8.3 Support provisions.
A system capable of supporting the membrane in the event of deflation shall be provided for in air-supported and air-inflated structures having an *occupant load* of 50 or more or where

`

covering a swimming pool regardless of *occupant load*. The support system shall be capable of maintaining membrane structures used as a roof for Type I construction not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) above floor or seating areas. The support system shall be capable of maintaining other membranes not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the floor, seating area or surface of the water.

SECTION 3103
TEMPORARY STRUCTURES

3103.1 General.
The provisions of Sections 3103.1 through 3103.4 shall apply to structures erected for a period of less than 180 days. Tents and other membrane structures erected for a period of less than 180 days shall comply with the *International Fire Code*. Those erected for a longer period of time shall comply with applicable sections of this code.

Exception: The building official may authorize unheated tents and yurts under 500 square feet accommodating an R-1 occupancy for recreational use as a temporary structure and allow them to be used indefinitely.

3103.1.1 Conformance.
Temporary structures and uses shall conform to the structural strength, fire safety, *means of egress*, accessibility, light, ventilation and sanitary requirements of this code as necessary to ensure public health, safety and general welfare.

3103.1.2 Permit required.
Temporary structures that cover an area greater than 120 square feet (11.16 m^2), including connecting areas or spaces with a common *means of egress* or entrance that are used or intended to be used for the gathering together of 10 or more persons, shall not be erected, operated or maintained for any purpose without obtaining a *permit* from the *building official*.

3103.2 Construction documents.
A *permit* application and *construction documents* shall be submitted for each installation of a temporary structure. The *construction documents* shall include a site plan indicating the location of the temporary structure and information delineating the *means of egress* and the *occupant load*.

3103.3 Location.
Temporary structures shall be located in accordance with the requirements of Table 602 based on the *fire-resistance rating* of the *exterior walls* for the proposed type of construction.

3103.4 Means of egress.
Temporary structures shall conform to the *means of egress* requirements of Chapter 10 and shall have an *exit access* travel distance of 100 feet (30 480 mm) or less.

SECTION 3104
PEDESTRIAN WALKWAYS AND TUNNELS

3104.1 General.
This section shall apply to connections between buildings such as *pedestrian walkways* or tunnels, located at, above or below grade level, that are used as a means of travel by persons. The *pedestrian walkway* shall not contribute to the *building area* or the number of *stories* or height of connected buildings.

`

3104.1.1 Application.
Pedestrian walkways shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 3104.2 through 3104.9. Tunnels shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 3104.2 and 3104.10.

3104.2 Separate structures.
Buildings connected by *pedestrian walkways* or tunnels shall be considered to be separate structures.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings that are on the same lot and considered as portions of a single building in accordance with Section 503.1.2.

2. For purposes of calculating the number of Type B units required by Chapter 11, structurally connected buildings and buildings with multiple wings shall be considered one structure.

3104.3 Construction.
The *pedestrian walkway* shall be of noncombustible construction.

Exceptions:

1. Combustible construction shall be permitted where connected buildings are of combustible construction.

2. *Fire-retardant-treated wood*, in accordance with Section 603.1, Item 1.3, shall be permitted for the roof construction of the *pedestrian walkway* where connected buildings are a minimum of Type I or II construction.

3104.4 Contents.
Only materials and decorations *approved* by the *building official* shall be located in the *pedestrian walkway*.

3104.5 Connections of pedestrian walkways to buildings.
The connection of a *pedestrian walkway* to a building shall comply with Section 3104.5.1, 3104.5.2, 3104.5.3 or 3104.5.4.

Exception: Buildings that are on the same lot and considered as portions of a single building in accordance with Section 503.1.2.

3104.5.1 Fire barriers.
Pedestrian walkways shall be separated from the interior of the building by not less than 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 and Sections 3104.5.1.1 through 3104.5.1.3.

3104.5.1.1 Exterior walls.
Exterior walls of buildings connected to *pedestrian walkways* shall be 2-hour fire-resistance rated. This protection shall extend not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) in every direction surrounding the perimeter of the pedestrian walkway.

`

3104.5.1.2 Openings in exterior walls of connected buildings.
Openings in exterior walls required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 3104.5.1.1 shall be equipped with opening protectives providing a not less than $^{3}/_{4}$-hour *fire protection rating* in accordance with Section 716.

3104.5.1.3 Supporting construction.
The fire barrier shall be supported by construction as required by Section 707.5.1.

3104.5.2 Alternative separation.
The wall separating the *pedestrian walkway* and the building shall comply with Section 3104.5.2.1 or 3104.5.2.2 where:

1. The distance between the connected buildings is more than 10 feet (3048 mm).

2. The *pedestrian walkway* and connected buildings are equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and the roof of the walkway is not more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above grade connecting to the fifth, or lower, story above grade plane, of each building.

   Exception: Open parking garages need not be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system.

3104.5.2.1 Passage of smoke.
The wall shall be capable of resisting the passage of smoke.

3104.5.2.2 Glass.
The wall shall be constructed of a tempered, wired or laminated glass wall and doors or glass separating the interior of the building from the *pedestrian walkway*. The glass shall be protected by an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 that, when actuated, shall completely wet the entire surface of interior sides of the wall or glass. Obstructions shall not be installed between the sprinkler heads and the wall or glass. The glass shall be in a gasketed frame and installed in such a manner that the framing system will deflect without breaking (loading) the glass before the sprinkler operates.

3104.5.3 Open sides on walkway.
Where the distance between the connected buildings is more than 10 feet (3048 mm), the walls at the intersection of the *pedestrian walkway* and each building need not be fire-resistance rated provided both sidewalls of the pedestrian walkway are not less than 50 percent open with the open area uniformly distributed to prevent the accumulation of smoke and *toxic* gases. The roof of the walkway shall be located not more than 40 feet (12 160 mm) above grade plane, and the walkway shall only be permitted to connect to the third or lower story of each building.

Exception: Where the *pedestrian walkway* is protected with a sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the roof of the walkway shall be located not more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above grade plane and the walkway shall only be permitted to connect to the fifth or lower story of each building.

3104.5.4 Exterior walls greater than 2 hours.
Where *exterior walls* of connected buildings are required by Section 705 to have a *fire-*

`

resistance rating greater than 2 hours, the walls at the intersection of the pedestrian walkway and each building need not be fire-resistance rated provided:

1. The *pedestrian walkway* is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2. The roof of the walkway is not located more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above grade plane and the walkway connects to the fifth, or lower, story above grade plane of each building.

3104.6 Public way.
Pedestrian walkways over a *public way* shall comply with Chapter 32.

3104.7 Egress.
Access shall be provided at all times to a *pedestrian walkway* that serves as a required *exit*.

3104.8 Width.
The unobstructed width of *pedestrian walkways* shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm). The total width shall be not greater than 30 feet (9144 mm).

3104.9 Exit access travel.
The length of *exit access* travel shall be 200 feet (60 960 mm) or less.

Exceptions:

1. *Exit access* travel distance on a *pedestrian walkway* equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be 250 feet (76 200 mm) or less.

2. *Exit access* travel distance on a *pedestrian walkway* constructed with both sides not less than 50 percent open shall be 300 feet (91 440 mm) or less.

3. *Exit access* travel distance on a *pedestrian walkway* constructed with both sides not less than 50 percent open, and equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, shall be 400 feet (122 m) or less.

3104.10 Tunneled walkway.
Separation between the tunneled walkway and the building to which it is connected shall be not less than 2-hour fire-resistant construction and openings therein shall be protected in accordance with Table 716.5.

SECTION 3105
AWNINGS AND CANOPIES

3105.1 General.
Awnings and *canopies* shall comply with the requirements of Sections 3105.2 through 3105.4 and other applicable sections of this code.

3105.2 Definition.
The following term is defined in Chapter 2:

RETRACTABLE AWNING.

`

3105.3 Design and construction.
Awnings and *canopies* shall be designed and constructed to withstand wind or other lateral loads and live loads as required by Chapter 16 with due allowance for shape, open construction and similar features that relieve the pressures or loads. Structural members shall be protected to prevent deterioration. *Awnings* shall have frames of noncombustible material, *fire-retardant-treated wood*, wood of Type IV size, or 1-hour construction with combustible or noncombustible covers and shall be either fixed, retractable, folding or collapsible.

3105.4 Awnings and canopy materials.
Awnings and *canopies* shall be provided with an *approved* covering that meets the fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701 or has a *flame spread index* not greater than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

> **Exception:** The fire propagation performance and flame spread index requirements shall not apply to awnings installed on detached one- and two-family dwellings.

SECTION 3106
MARQUEES

3106.1 General.
Marquees shall comply with Sections 3106.2 through 3106.5 and other applicable sections of this code.

3106.2 Thickness.
The height or thickness of a marquee measured vertically from its lowest to its highest point shall be not greater than 3 feet (914 mm) where the marquee projects more than two-thirds of the distance from the *lot line* to the curb line, and shall be not greater than 9 feet (2743 mm) where the marquee is less than two-thirds of the distance from the lot line to the curb line.

3106.3 Roof construction.
Where the roof or any part thereof is a skylight, the skylight shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 24. Every roof and skylight of a marquee shall be sloped to downspouts that shall conduct any drainage from the marquee in such a manner so as not to spill over the sidewalk.

3106.4 Location prohibited.
Every marquee shall be so located as not to interfere with the operation of any exterior standpipe, and such that the marquee does not obstruct the clear passage of *stairways* or *exit discharge* from the building or the installation or maintenance of street lighting.

3106.5 Construction.
A marquee shall be supported entirely from the building and constructed of noncombustible materials. Marquees shall be designed as required in Chapter 16. Structural members shall be protected to prevent deterioration.

SECTION 3107
SIGNS

3107.1 General.
Signs shall be designed, constructed and maintained in accordance with this code.

`

SECTION 3108
TELECOMMUNICATION AND BROADCAST TOWERS

[BS] 3108.1 General.
Towers shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of TIA-222. Towers shall be designed for seismic loads; exceptions related to seismic design listed in Section 2.7.3 of TIA-222 shall not apply. In Section 2.6.6.2 of TIA 222, the horizontal extent of Topographic Category 2, escarpments, shall be 16 times the height of the escarpment.

> **Exception:** Single free-standing poles used to support antennas not greater than 75 feet (22 860 mm), measured from the top of the pole to grade, shall not be required to be noncombustible.

[BS] 3108.2 Location and access.
Towers shall be located such that guy wires and other accessories shall not cross or encroach upon any street or other public space, or over above-ground electric utility lines, or encroach upon any privately owned property without the written consent of the owner of the encroached-upon property, space or aboveground electric utility lines. Towers shall be equipped with climbing and working facilities in compliance with TIA-222. Access to the tower sites shall be limited as required by applicable OSHA, FCC and EPA regulations.

~~SECTION 3109~~
~~SWIMMING POOLS, SPAS AND HOT TUBS~~

~~**3109.1 General.**~~
~~The design and construction of swimming pools, spas and hot tubs shall comply with the *International Swimming Pool and Spa Code*.~~

SECTION 3109
SWIMMING POOLS, SPAS AND OTHER WATER RECREATION DEVICES

3109.1 General. The design and construction of swimming pools, spas and other aquatic recreation facilities shall comply with the International Swimming Pool and Spa Code, where the facility is one of the following:

1. For the sole use of residents and invited guests at a single-family dwelling;
2. For the sole use of residents and invited guests of a duplex owned by the residents; or
3. Operated exclusively for physical therapy or rehabilitation and under the supervision of a licensed medical practitioner.

All other "water recreation facilities" as defined in RCW 70.90.110 are regulated under chapters 246-260 and 246-262 WAC.

`

The remainder of Section 3109 is not adopted (and is removed via an ICC errata).

SECTION 3110
AUTOMATIC VEHICULAR GATES

3110.1 General.
Automatic vehicular gates shall comply with the requirements of Sections 3110.2 through 3110.4 and other applicable sections of this code.

3110.2 Definition.
The following term is defined in Chapter 2:

VEHICULAR GATE.

3110.3 Vehicular gates intended for automation.
Vehicular gates intended for automation shall be designed, constructed and installed to comply with the requirements of ASTM F2200.

3110.4 Vehicular gate openers.
Vehicular gate openers, where provided, shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 325.

SECTION 3111
PHOTOVOLTAIC PANELS AND MODULES

3111.1 General.
Photovoltaic panels and modules shall comply with the requirements of this code and the *International Fire Code*.

3111.1.1 Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panels and modules.
Photovoltaic panels and modules installed on a roof or as an integral part of a roof assembly shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 15 and the *International Fire Code*.

CHAPTER 32
ENCROACHMENTS INTO THE PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY

SECTION 3201
GENERAL

3201.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall govern the encroachment of structures into the public right-of-way.

3201.2 Measurement.
The projection of any structure or portion thereof shall be the distance measured horizontally from the *lot line* to the outermost point of the projection.

`

3201.3 Other laws.
The provisions of this chapter shall not be construed to permit the violation of other laws or ordinances regulating the use and occupancy of public property.

3201.4 Drainage.
Drainage water collected from a roof, *awning*, canopy or marquee, and condensate from mechanical equipment shall not flow over a public walking surface.

SECTION 3202
ENCROACHMENTS

3202.1 Encroachments below grade.
Encroachments below grade shall comply with Sections 3202.1.1 through 3202.1.3.

3202.1.1 Structural support.
A part of a building erected below grade that is necessary for structural support of the building or structure shall not project beyond the *lot lines*, except that the footings of street walls or their supports that are located not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) below grade shall not project more than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the street *lot line*.

3202.1.2 Vaults and other enclosed spaces.
The construction and utilization of vaults and other enclosed spaces below grade shall be subject to the terms and conditions of the applicable governing authority.

3202.1.3 Areaways.
Areaways shall be protected by grates, *guards* or other *approved* means.

3202.2 Encroachments above grade and below 8 feet in height.
Encroachments into the public right-of-way above grade and below 8 feet (2438 mm) in height shall be prohibited except as provided for in Sections 3202.2.1 through 3202.2.3. Doors and windows shall not open or project into the public right-of-way.

3202.2.1 Steps.
Steps shall not project more than 12 inches (305 mm) and shall be guarded by *approved* devices not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in height, or shall be located between columns or pilasters.

3202.2.2 Architectural features.
Columns or pilasters, including bases and moldings, shall not project more than 12 inches (305 mm). Belt courses, lintels, sills, architraves, pediments and similar architectural features shall not project more than 4 inches (102 mm).

3202.2.3 Awnings.
The vertical clearance from the public right-of-way to the lowest part of any *awning*, including valances, shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

3202.3 Encroachments 8 feet or more above grade.
Encroachments 8 feet (2438 mm) or more above grade shall comply with Sections 3202.3.1 through 3202.3.4.

3202.3.1 Awnings, canopies, marquees and signs.
Awnings, canopies, marquees and signs shall be constructed so as to support applicable loads as specified in Chapter 16. *Awnings*, canopies, marquees and signs with less than 15

`

feet (4572 mm) clearance above the sidewalk shall not extend into or occupy more than two-thirds the width of the sidewalk measured from the building. Stanchions or columns that support *awnings*, canopies, marquees and signs shall be located not less than 2 feet (610 mm) in from the curb line.

3202.3.2 Windows, balconies, architectural features and mechanical equipment.
Where the vertical clearance above grade to projecting windows, balconies, architectural features or mechanical equipment is more than 8 feet (2438 mm), 1 inch (25 mm) of encroachment is permitted for each additional 1 inch (25 mm) of clearance above 8 feet (2438 mm), but the maximum encroachment shall be 4 feet (1219 mm).

3202.3.3 Encroachments 15 feet or more above grade.
Encroachments 15 feet (4572 mm) or more above grade shall not be limited.

3202.3.4 Pedestrian walkways.
The installation of a pedestrian walkway over a public right-of-way shall be subject to the approval of the applicable governing authority. The vertical clearance from the public right-of-way to the lowest part of a *pedestrian walkway* shall be not less than 15 feet (4572 mm).

3202.4 Temporary encroachments.
Where allowed by the applicable governing authority, vestibules and storm enclosures shall not be erected for a period of time exceeding seven months in any one year and shall not encroach more than 3 feet (914 mm) nor more than one-fourth of the width of the sidewalk beyond the street *lot line*. Temporary entrance *awnings* shall be erected with a clearance of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) to the lowest portion of the hood or *awning* where supported on removable steel or other *approved* noncombustible support.

`

CHAPTER 33
SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION

User note: Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [F] will be considered by the International Fire Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION 3301
GENERAL

3301.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter shall govern safety during construction and the protection of adjacent public and private properties.

3301.2 Storage and placement.
Construction equipment and materials shall be stored and placed so as not to endanger the public, the workers or adjoining property for the duration of the construction project.

SECTION 3302
CONSTRUCTION SAFEGUARDS

3302.1 Alterations, repairs and additions.
Required *exits*, existing structural elements, fire protection devices and sanitary safeguards shall be maintained at all times during *alterations*, *repairs* or *additions* to any building or structure.

Exceptions:

1. Where such required elements or devices are being altered or repaired, adequate substitute provisions shall be made.

2. Maintenance of such elements and devices is not required when the existing building is not occupied.

3302.2 Manner of removal.
Waste materials shall be removed in a manner that prevents injury or damage to persons, adjoining properties and public rights-of-way.

3302.3 Fire safety during construction.
Fire safety during construction shall comply with the applicable requirements of this code and the applicable provisions of Chapter 33 of the *International Fire Code.*

SECTION 3303
DEMOLITION

3303.1 Construction documents.
Construction documents and a schedule for demolition shall be submitted where required by the *building official*. Where such information is required, no work shall be done until such *construction documents* or schedule, or both, are *approved*.

`

3303.2 Pedestrian protection.
The work of demolishing any building shall not be commenced until pedestrian protection is in place as required by this chapter.

3303.3 Means of egress.
A *horizontal exit* shall not be destroyed unless and until a substitute *means of egress* has been provided and *approved*.

3303.4 Vacant lot.
Where a structure has been demolished or removed, the vacant lot shall be filled and maintained to the existing grade or in accordance with the ordinances of the jurisdiction having authority.

3303.5 Water accumulation.
Provision shall be made to prevent the accumulation of water or damage to any foundations on the premises or the adjoining property.

3303.6 Utility connections.
Service utility connections shall be discontinued and capped in accordance with the *approved* rules and the requirements of the applicable governing authority.

3303.7 Fire safety during demolition.
Fire safety during demolition shall comply with the applicable requirements of this code and the applicable provisions of Chapter 33 of the *International Fire Code.*

SECTION 3304
SITE WORK

3304.1 Excavation and fill.
Excavation and fill for buildings and structures shall be constructed or protected so as not to endanger life or property. Stumps and roots shall be removed from the soil to a depth of not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below the surface of the ground in the area to be occupied by the building. Wood forms that have been used in placing concrete, if within the ground or between foundation sills and the ground, shall be removed before a building is occupied or used for any purpose. Before completion, loose or casual wood shall be removed from direct contact with the ground under the building.

3304.1.1 Slope limits.
Slopes for permanent fill shall be not steeper than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope). Cut slopes for permanent excavations shall be not steeper than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope). Deviation from the foregoing limitations for cut slopes shall be permitted only upon the presentation of a soil investigation report acceptable to the *building official*.

3304.1.2 Surcharge.
No fill or other surcharge loads shall be placed adjacent to any building or structure unless such building or structure is capable of withstanding the additional loads caused by the fill or surcharge. Existing footings or foundations that can be affected by any excavation shall be underpinned adequately or otherwise protected against settlement and shall be protected against lateral movement.

3304.1.3 Footings on adjacent slopes.
For footings on adjacent slopes, see Chapter 18.

`

3304.1.4 Fill supporting foundations.
Fill to be used to support the foundations of any building or structure shall comply with Section 1804.6. *Special inspections* of compacted fill shall be in accordance with Section 1705.6.

3304.1.5. Excavation and shoring near improved public places.
No person, firm or corporation shall excavate and/or install shoring in excess of four feet, measured vertically, on private property within any area between the vertical prolongation of the margin of an improved public place and a 100 percent slope plane (45 degrees from a horizontal plane) from the existing elevation of the margin of the traveled surface of an improved public place to the proposed elevation of the private property without first obtaining a permit from the building official to do so, and no work shall commence toward such excavation and shoring until a permit therefor has been issued by the building official. Improved public place means any street, alley, easement for water, sewer or storm drainage, or similar parcel of land which is deeded, dedicated or otherwise permanently made available to the City or public for city or public use.

SECTION 3305
SANITARY

3305.1 Facilities required.
Sanitary facilities shall be provided during construction, remodeling or demolition activities in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

SECTION 3306
PROTECTION OF PEDESTRIANS

3306.1 Protection required.
Pedestrians shall be protected during construction, remodeling and demolition activities as required by this chapter and Table 3306.1. Signs shall be provided to direct pedestrian traffic.

TABLE 3306.1
PROTECTION OF PEDESTRIANS

HEIGHT OF CONSTRUCTION	DISTANCE FROM CONSTRUCTION TO SIDEWALK, WALKWAY OR LOT LINE	TYPE OF PROTECTION ~~REQUIRED~~
8 feet or less	Less than 5 feet	Construction railings
	5 feet or more	None
More than 8 feet	Less than 5 feet	Barrier and covered walkway
	5 feet or more, but not more than one-fourth the height of construction	Barrier and covered walkway
	5 feet or more, but between one-fourth and one-half the height of construction	Barrier
	5 feet or more, but exceeding one-half the height of construction	None

`

3306.2 Walkways.
A walkway shall be provided for pedestrian travel in front of every construction and demolition site unless the applicable governing authority authorizes the sidewalk to be fenced or closed. Walkways shall be of sufficient width to accommodate the pedestrian traffic, but in no case shall they be less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in width. Walkways shall be provided with a durable walking surface. Walkways shall be *accessible* in accordance with Chapter 11 and shall be designed to support all imposed loads and in no case shall the design live load be less than 150 pounds per square foot (psf) (7.2 kN/m^2). Where a sidewalk or walkway passes into or through, or adjacent to, an area under construction or demolition, the building official is authorized to require protection as indicated in this chapter and Table 3306.1.

3306.3 Directional barricades.
Pedestrian traffic shall be protected by a directional barricade where the walkway extends into the street. The directional barricade shall be of sufficient size and construction to direct vehicular traffic away from the pedestrian path.

3306.4 Construction railings.
Construction railings shall be not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) in height and shall be sufficient to direct pedestrians around construction areas.

3306.5 Barriers.
Barriers shall be not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) in height and shall be placed on the side of the walkway nearest the construction. Barriers shall extend the entire length of the construction site. Openings in such barriers shall be protected by doors that are normally kept closed.

3306.6 Barrier design.
Barriers shall be designed to resist loads required in Chapter 16 unless constructed as follows:

1. Barriers shall be provided with 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) top and bottom plates.

2. The barrier material shall be boards not less than 3/4-inch (19.1 mm) thick or wood structural panels not less than 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) thick.

3. Wood structural use panels shall be bonded with an adhesive identical to that for exterior wood structural use panels.

4. Wood structural use panels 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) or 5/16 inch (23.8 mm) in thickness shall have studs spaced not more than 2 feet (610 mm) on center.

5. Wood structural use panels 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) or 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) in thickness shall have studs spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center provided a 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) stiffener is placed horizontally at mid-height where the stud spacing is greater than 2 feet (610 mm) on center.

6. Wood structural use panels 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) or thicker shall not span over 8 feet (2438 mm).

3306.7 Covered walkways.
Covered walkways shall have a clear height of not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) as measured from the floor surface to the canopy overhead. Adequate lighting shall be provided at all times.

`

Covered walkways shall be designed to support all imposed loads. In no case shall the design live load be less than 150 psf (7.2 kN/m^2) for the entire structure.

Exception: Roofs and supporting structures of covered walkways for new, light-frame construction not exceeding two *stories* above *grade plane* are permitted to be designed for a live load of 75 psf (3.6kN/m^2) or the loads imposed on them, whichever is greater. In lieu of such designs, the roof and supporting structure of a covered walkway are permitted to be constructed as follows:

1. Footings shall be continuous 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) members.

2. Posts not less than 4 inches by 6 inches (102 mm by 152 mm) shall be provided on both sides of the roof and spaced not more than 12 feet (3658 mm) on center.

3. Stringers not less than 4 inches by 12 inches (102 mm by 305 mm) shall be placed on edge upon the posts.

4. Joists resting on the stringers shall be not less than 2 inches by 8 inches (51 mm by 203 mm) and shall be spaced not more than 2 feet (610 mm) on center.

5. The deck shall be planks not less than 2 inches (51 mm) thick or wood structural panels with an exterior exposure durability classification not less than 23/32 inch (18.3 mm) thick nailed to the joists.

6. Each post shall be knee braced to joists and stringers by members not less than 2 inches by 4 inches (51 mm by 102 mm); 4 feet (1219 mm) in length.

7. A curb that is not less than 2 inches by 4 inches (51 mm by 102 mm) shall be set on edge along the outside edge of the deck.

3306.8 Repair, maintenance and removal.
Pedestrian protection required by this chapter shall be maintained in place and kept in good order for the entire length of time pedestrians are subject to being endangered. The *owner* or the *owner's* authorized agent, upon the completion of the construction activity, shall immediately remove walkways, debris and other obstructions and leave such public property in as good a condition as it was before such work was commenced.

3306.9 Adjacent to excavations.
Every excavation on a site located 5 feet (1524 mm) or less from the street *lot line* shall be enclosed with a barrier not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) in height. Where located more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the street *lot line*, a barrier shall be erected where required by the *building official*. Barriers shall be of adequate strength to resist wind pressure as specified in Chapter 16.

SECTION 3307
PROTECTION OF ADJOINING PROPERTY

3307.1 Protection required.
Adjoining public and private property shall be protected from damage during construction, remodeling and demolition work. Protection shall be provided for footings, foundations, party walls, chimneys, skylights and roofs. Provisions shall be made to control water runoff and erosion during construction or demolition activities. The person making or causing an excavation to be made shall provide written notice to the *owners* of adjoining buildings advising

`

them that the excavation is to be made and that the adjoining buildings should be protected. Said notification shall be delivered not less than 10 days prior to the scheduled starting date of the excavation.

SECTION 3308
TEMPORARY USE OF STREETS, ALLEYS AND PUBLIC PROPERTY

3308.1 Storage and handling of materials.
The temporary use of streets or public property for the storage or handling of materials or of equipment required for construction or demolition, and the protection provided to the public shall comply with the provisions of the applicable governing authority and this chapter.

3308.1.1 Obstructions.
Construction materials and equipment shall not be placed or stored so as to obstruct access to fire hydrants, standpipes, fire or police alarm boxes, catch basins or manholes, nor shall such material or equipment be located within 20 feet (6096 mm) of a street intersection, or placed so as to obstruct normal observations of traffic signals or to hinder the use of public transit loading platforms.

3308.2 Utility fixtures.
Building materials, fences, sheds or any obstruction of any kind shall not be placed so as to obstruct free approach to any fire hydrant, fire department connection, utility pole, manhole, fire alarm box or catch basin, or so as to interfere with the passage of water in the gutter. Protection against damage shall be provided to such utility fixtures during the progress of the work, but sight of them shall not be obstructed.

SECTION 3309
FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

[F] 3309.1 Where required.
Structures under construction, *alteration* or demolition shall be provided with no fewer than one *approved* portable fire extinguisher in accordance with Section 906 and sized for not less than ordinary hazard as follows:

1. At each *stairway* on all floor levels where combustible materials have accumulated.

2. In every storage and construction shed.

3. Additional portable fire extinguishers shall be provided where special hazards exist, such as the storage and use of flammable and combustible liquids.

[F] 3309.2 Fire hazards.
The provisions of this code and the *International Fire Code* shall be strictly observed to safeguard against all fire hazards attendant upon construction operations.

SECTION 3310
MEANS OF EGRESS

3310.1 Stairways required.
Where a building has been constructed to a *building height* of 50 feet (15 240 mm) or four *stories*, or where an existing building exceeding 50 feet (15 240 mm) in *building height* is

`

altered, no fewer than one temporary lighted *stairway* shall be provided unless one or more of the permanent stairways are erected as the construction progresses.

[F] 3310.2 Maintenance of means of egress.
Required *means of egress* shall be maintained at all times during construction, demolition, remodeling or *alterations* and *additions* to any building.

> **Exception:** Existing means of egress need not be maintained where a*pproved* temporary *means of egress* systems and facilities are provided.

SECTION 3311
STANDPIPES

[F] 3311.1 Where required.
In buildings required to have standpipes by Section 905.3.1, no fewer than one standpipe shall be provided for use during construction. Such standpipes shall be installed prior to construction exceeding 40 feet (12 192 mm) in height above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access. Such standpipes shall be provided with fire department hose connections at accessible locations adjacent to usable *stairways*. Such standpipes shall be extended as construction progresses to within one floor of the highest point of construction having secured decking or flooring.

[F] 3311.2 Buildings being demolished.
Where a building is being demolished and a standpipe exists within such a building, such standpipe shall be maintained in an operable condition so as to be available for use by the fire department. Such standpipe shall be demolished with the building but shall not be demolished more than one floor below the floor being demolished.

[F] 3311.3 Detailed requirements.
Standpipes shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 9.

> **Exception:** Standpipes shall be either temporary or permanent in nature, and with or without a water supply, provided that such standpipes conform to the requirements of Section 905 as to capacity, outlets and materials.

SECTION 3312
AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEM

[F] 3312.1 Completion before occupancy.
In buildings where an *automatic sprinkler system* is required by this code, it shall be unlawful to occupy any portion of a building or structure until the *automatic sprinkler system* installation has been tested and *approved*, except as provided in Section 111.3.

[F] 3312.2 Operation of valves.
Operation of sprinkler control valves shall be permitted only by properly authorized personnel and shall be accompanied by notification of duly designated parties. When the sprinkler protection is being regularly turned off and on to facilitate connection of newly completed segments, the sprinkler control valves shall be checked at the end of each work period to ascertain that protection is in service.

SECTION 3313
WATER SUPPLY FOR FIRE PROTECTION

`

[F] 3313.1 Where required.
An *approved* water supply for fire protection, either temporary or permanent, shall be made available as soon as combustible material arrives on the site.

`

CHAPTER 34
RESERVED

Action taken during the 2012 Code Development Process removed Chapter 34, Existing Structures, from the IBC. The provisions of this chapter are contained in the International Existing Building Code. See Section 101.4.7.

`

CHAPTER 35
REFERENCED STANDARDS

This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 102.4.

AA

Aluminum Association
1525 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600
Arlington, VA 22209

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ADM1—2015	Aluminum Design Manual: Part 1—A Specification for Aluminum Structures	1604.3.5, 2002.1
ASM 35—00	Aluminum Sheet Metal Work in Building Construction (Fourth Edition)	2002.1

AAMA

American Architectural Manufacturers Association
1827 Waldon Office Square, Suite 550
Schaumburg, IL 60173

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
1402—09	Standard Specifications for Aluminum Siding, Soffit and Fascia	1404.5.1
AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—11	North American Fenestration Standard/Specifications for Windows, Doors and Skylights	1709.5.1, 2405.5

ACI

American Concrete Institute
38800 Country Club Drive
Farmington Hills, MI 48331

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
216.1—14	Code Requirements for Determining Fire Resistance of Concrete and Masonry Construction Assemblies	Table 721.1(2), 722.1
318—14	Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete	1604.3.2, 1615.3.1, 1615.4.1, 1704.5, Table 1705.3, 1705.3.2, 1705.12.1, 1808.8.2, Table 1808.8.2, 1808.8.5,

`

		1808.8.6, 1810.1.3, 1810.2.4.1, 1810.3.2.1.1, 1810.3.2.1.2, 1810.3.8.3.1, 1810.3.8.3.3, 1810.3.9.4.2.1, 1810.3.9.4.2.2, 1810.3.10.1, 1810.3.11.1, 1901.2, 1901.3, 1902.1, 1903.1, 1904.1, 1904.2, 1905.1, 1905.1.1, 1905.1.2, 1905.1.3, 1905.1.4, 1905.1.5, 1905.1.6, 1905.1.7, 1905.1.8 1906.1, 2108.3, 2206.1
530—13	Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures	1405.6, 1405.6.1, 1405.6.2, 1405.10, 1604.3.4, 1705.4, 1705.4.1, 1807.1.6.3, 1807.1.6.3.2, 1808.9 2101.2, 2106.1, 2107.1, 2107.2, 2107.3, 2107.4, 2108.1, 2108.2, 2108.3, 2109.1, 2109.1.1, 2109.2, 2109.2.1, 2109.3, 2110.1
530.1—13	Specifications for Masonry Structures	1405.6.1, 1705.4, 1807.1.6.3, 2103.1, 2103. 2.1, 2103.3, 2103.4, 2105.1

`

AISC

American Institute of Steel
Construction One East Wacker Drive, Suite 700
Chicago, IL 60601-18021

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
341—10	Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings	1613.4.1, 1705.12.1.1, 1705.12.1.2, 1705.13.1.1, 1705.13.1.2, 2205.2.1.1, 2205.2.1.2, 2205.2.2, 2206.2.1
360—10	Specification for Structural Steel Buildings	722.5.2.2.1, 1604.3.3, 1705.2.1, 2203.1, 2203.2, 2205.1, 2205.2.1.1, 2206.1

AISI

American Iron and Steel Institute
25 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 800
Washington, DC 20001

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
AISI S100—12	North American Specification for the Design of Cold-formed Steel Structural Members, 2012	1604.3.3, 1905.1.8, 2203.1, 2203.2, 2210.1, 2210.2, 2211.2, 2211.4, 2211.6
AISI S110—07/ S1-09 (2012)	Standard for Seismic Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Systems—Special Moment Frames, 2007 with Supplement 1, dated 2009 (Reaffirmed 2012)	2210.2
AISI S200—12	North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing-General Provisions, 2012	2203.1, 2203.2, 2211.1, Table 2603.12.1, Table 2603.12.2
AISI S210—07(2012)	North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing-Floor and Roof System Design, 2007 (Reaffirmed 2012)	2211.5
AISI S211—07/ S1-12(2012)	North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing-Wall Stud Design, 2007 including Supplement 1, dated 2012 (Reaffirmed 2012)	2211.4

`

AISI S212—07(2012)	North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing-Header Design, 2007, (Reaffirmed 2012)	2211.2
AISI S213—07/ S1-09 (2012)	North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing-Lateral Design, 2007, with Supplement 1, dated 2009, (Reaffirmed 2012)	2211.6
AISI S214—12	North American Standard for Cold-formed Steel Framing-Truss Design, 2012	2211.3, 2211.3.1, 2211.3.2
AISI S220—11	North American Standard for Cold-formed Steel Framing-Nonstructural Members	2203.1, 2203.2, 2211.1, Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2
AISI S230—07/ S3-12(2012)	Standard for Cold-formed Steel Framing-Prescriptive Method for One- and Two-family Dwellings, 2007, with Supplement 3, dated 2012 (Reaffirmed 2012)	1609.1.1, 1609.1.1.1, 2211.7

ALI

Automotive Lift Institute
P.O. Box 85
Courtland, NY 13045

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ALI ALCTV—2011	Standard for Automotive Lifts—Safety Requirements for Construction, Testing and Validation (ANSI)	3001.2

AMCA

Air Movement and Control Association International
30 West University Drive
Arlington Heights, IL 60004

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
540—08	Test Method for Louvers Impacted by Wind Borne Debris	1609.1.2.1

ANSI

American National Standards Institute
25 West 43rd Street, Fourth Floor
New York, NY 10036

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
A13.1—2007	Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems	415.11.6.5
A108.1A—99	Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-set Method, with Portland Cement Mortar	2103.2.3
A108.1B—99	Installation of Ceramic Tile, quarry Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-set or Latex-Portland Mortar	2103.2.3
A108.4—99	Installation of Ceramic Tile with Organic Adhesives or Water-cleanable Tile-setting Epoxy Adhesive	2103.2.3.6
A108.5—99	Installation of Ceramic Tile with Dry-set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar	2103.2.3.1, 2103.2.3.2

`

A108.6—99	Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical-resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-setting and -grouting Epoxy	2103.2.3.3
A108.8—99	Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical-resistant Furan Resin Mortar and Grout	2103.2.3.4
A108.9—99	Installation of Ceramic Tile with Modified Epoxy Emulsion Mortar/Grout	2103.2.3.5
A108.10—99	Installation of Grout in Tilework	2103.2.3.7
A118.1—99	American National Standard Specifications for Dry-set Portland Cement Mortar	2103.2.3.1
A118.3—99	American National Standard Specifications for Chemical-resistant, Water-cleanable Tile-setting and -grouting Epoxy and Water Cleanable Tile-setting Epoxy Adhesive	2103.2.3.3
A118.4—99	American National Standard Specifications for Latex-Portland Cement Mortar	2103.2.3.2, 2103.3.2.4
A118.5—99	American National Standard Specifications for Chemical Resistant Furan Mortar and Grouts for Tile Installation	2103.2.3.4
A118.6—99	American National Standard Specifications for Cement Grouts for Tile Installation	2103.2.3.7
A118.8—99	American National Standard Specifications for Modified Epoxy Emulsion Mortar/Grout	2103.2.3.5
A136.1—99	American National Standard Specifications for Organic Adhesives for Installation of Ceramic Tile	2103.2.3.6
A137.1—12	American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile	202
ANSI/A 190.1—12	Structural Glued Laminated Timber	2303.1.3, 2306.1
Z 97.1—14	Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings—Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test	2406.1.2, 2406.2, Table 2406.2(2), 2406.3.1, 2407.1, 2407.1.4.1, 2408.2.1, 2408.3, 2409.2, 2409.3, 2409.4.1

APA

APA - Engineered Wood Association
7011 South 19th
Tacoma, WA 98466

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ANSI/A 190.1—12	Structural Glued Laminated Timber	2303.1.3, 2306.1

`

ANSI/APA PRP 210—08	Standard for Performance-Rated Engineered Wood Siding	2303.1.5, 2304.7, 2306.3, Table 2306.3(1)
ANSI/APA PRR 410—11	Standard for Performance-Rated Engineered Wood Rim Boards	2303.1.13
APA PDS—12	Panel Design Specification	2306.1
APA PDS Supplement 1—12	Design and Fabrication of Plywood Curved Panels (revised 2013)	2306.1
APA PDS Supplement 2—12	Design and Fabrication of Plywood-lumber Beams (revised 2013)	2306.1
APA PDS Supplement 3—12	Design and Fabrication of Plywood Stressed-skin Panels (revised 2013)	2306.1
APA PDS Supplement 4—12	Design and Fabrication of Plywood Sandwich Panels (revised 2013)	2306.1
APA PDS Supplement 5—12	Design and Fabrication of All-plywood Beams (revised 2013)	2306.1
APA PRG 320—11	Standard for Performance-Rated Cross-Laminated Timber	2303.1.4
EWS R540—12	Builders Tips: Proper Storage and Handling of Glulam Beams	2306.1
EWS S475—07	Glued Laminated Beam Design Tables	2306.1
EWS S560—10	Field Notching and Drilling of Glued Laminated Timber Beams	2306.1
EWS T300—07	Glulam Connection Details	2306.1
EWS X440—08	Product Guide-Glulam	2306.1
EWS X450—01	Glulam in Residential Construction-Western Edition	2306.1

ASABE

American Society of Agricultural and Biological Engineers
2950 Niles Road
St. Joseph, MI 49085

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
EP 484.2 June 1998 (R2008)	Diaphragm Design of Metal-clad, Wood-frame Rectangular Buildings	2306.1
EP 486.2 OCT 2012	Shallow-post and Pier Foundation Design	2306.1
EP 559.1 W/Corr.1 AUG 2010	Design Requirements and Bending Properties for Mechanically Laminated Wood Assemblies	2306.1

ASCE/SEI

American Society of Civil Engineers
Structural Engineering Institute
1801 Alexander Bell Drive
Reston, VA 20191-4400

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
5—13	Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures	1405.6, 1405.6.1, 1405.6.2,

		1405.10, 1604.3.4, 1705.4, 1705.4.1, 1807.1.6.3, 1807.1.6.3.2, 1808.9, 2101.2, 2106.1, 2107.1, 2107.2, 2107.3, 2107.4, 2108.1, 2108.2, 2108.3, 2109.1, 2109.1.1, 2109.2, 2109.2.1, 2109.3, 2110.1
6—13	Specification for Masonry Structures	1405.6.1, 1705.4, 1807.1.6.3, 2103.1, 2103.2.1, 2103.3, 2103.4, 2104.1, 2105.1
7—10	Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures with Supplement No. 1	202, Table 1504.8, 1602.1, 1604.3, Table 1604.5, 1604.8.2, 1604.10, 1605.1, 1605.2.1, 1605.3.1, 1605.3.1.2, 1605.3.2, 1605.3.2.1, 1607.8.1, 1607.8.1.1, 1607.8.1.2, 1607.8.3, 1607.12.1, 1608.1, 1608.2, 1608.3, 1609.1.1, 1609.1.2, 1609.3, 1609.5.1, 1609.5.3, 1609.6, 1609.6.1, 1609.6.1.1, 1609.6.2, Table

`

		1609.6.2, 1609.6.3, 1609.6.4.1, 1609.6.4.2, 1609.6.4.4.1, 1611.2, 1612.4, 1613.1, 1613.3.2, Table 1613.3.3(1), Table 1613.3.3(2), 1613.3.5, 1613.3.5.1, 1613.3.5.2, 1613.4, 1613.4.1, 1613.5.1, 1613.6, 1614.1, 1704.6.1, 1705.12, 1705.12.4, 1705.13.2, 1705.13.3, 1705.13.4, 1803.5.12, 1808.3.1, 1810.3.6.1, 1810.3.9.4, 1810.3.11.2, 1810.3.12, 1905.1.1, 1905.1.2, 1905.1.8, 2205.2.1.1, 2205.2.1.2, 2205.2.2, 2206.2.1, 2209.1, 2210.2, 2304.6.1, 2404.1, 2505.1, 2505.2, 2506.2.1
8—14	Standard Specification for the Design of Cold-formed Stainless Steel Structural Members	1604.3.3, 2210.1, 2210.2
19—09	Structural Applications of Steel Cables for Buildings	2208.1, 2208.2
24—14	Flood Resistant Design and Construction	1203.4.2, 1612.4, 1612.5, 2702.1.7, 3001.2
29—14	Standard Calculation Methods for Structural Fire Protection	722.1

`

32—01	Design and Construction of Frost Protected Shallow Foundations	1809.5
49—07	Wind Tunnel Testing for Buildings and Other Structures	1609.1.1
55—10	Tensile Membrane Structures	3102.1.1

ASME

American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Two Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ASME/A17.1—13 CSA B44—2013	Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators	907.3.3, 911.1.5, 1009.4, 1607.9.1, 3001.2, 3001.4, 3002.5, 3003.2, 3007.1, 3008.1.3, 3008.7.1
A17.7—2007/ CSA B44—07	Performance-Based Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators	3001.2
A18.1—2008	Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts	1109.8
A90.1—09	Safety Standard for Belt Manlifts	3001.2
B16.18—2012	Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings	909.13.1
B16.22—2001(R2010)	Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings	909.13.1
B20.1—2009	Safety Standard for Conveyors and Related Equipment	3001.2, 3004.3
B31.3—2012	Process Piping	415.11.6

ASSE

American Society of Safety Engineers
1800 East Oakton Street
Des Plaines, IL 60018

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ANSI/ASSE Z359.1-2007	Safety Requirements for Personal Fall Arrest Systems, Subsystems and Components, Part of the Fall Protection Code	1015.6, 1015.7

ASTM

ASTM International
100 Barr Harbor Drive
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number

`

A6/A6M—11	Standard Specification for General Requirements for Rolled Structural Steel Bars, Plates, Shapes and Sheet	1810.3.2.3, 1810.3.5.3.1, 1810.3.5.3.3
A36/A36M—08	Specification for Carbon Structural Steel	1810.3.2.3
A153/A153M—09	Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware	2304.10.5
A240/A240M—13A	Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications	Table 1507.4.3(1)
A252—10	Specification for Welded and Seamless Steel Pipe Piles	1810.3.2.3
A283/A283M—12A	Specification for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates	1810.3.2.3
A416/A416M—12A	Specification for Steel Strand, Uncoated Seven-wire for Prestressed Concrete	1810.3.2.2
A463/A463M—10	Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Aluminum-coated, by the Hot-dip Process	Table 1507.4.3(2)
A572/A572M—12A	Specification for High-strength Low-alloy Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel	1810.3.2.3
A588/A588M—10	Specification for High-strength Low-alloy Structural Steel with 50 ksi (345 MPa) Minimum Yield Point with Atmospheric Corrosion Resistance	1810.3.2.3
A615/A615M—12	Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement	1704.5, 1810.3.10.2
A653/A653M—11	Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-coated Galvanized or Zinc-iron Alloy-coated Galvannealed by the Hot-dip Process	Table 1507.4.3(1), Table 1507.4.3(2), 2304.10.5.1
A690/A690M—07(2012)	Standard Specification for High-strength Low-alloy Nickel, Copper, Phosphorus Steel H-piles and Sheet Piling with Atmospheric Corrosion Resistance for Use in Marine Environments	1810.3.2.3
A706/A706M—09b	Specification for Low-alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement	1704.5, 2107.4, 2108.3
A722/A722M—12	Specification for Uncoated High-strength Steel Bar for Prestressing Concrete	1810.3.10.2
A755/A755M—2011	Specification for Steel Sheet, Metallic-coated by the Hot-dip Process and Prepainted by the Coil-coating Process for Exterior Exposed Building Products	Table 1507.4.3(1), Table 1507.4.3(2)
A792/A792M—10	Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-zinc Alloy-coated by the Hot-dip Process	Table 1507.4.3(1), Table 1507.4.3(2)
A875/A875M—13	Standard Specification for Steel Sheet Zinc-5 percent, Aluminum Alloy-coated by the Hot-dip Process	Table 1507.4.3(2)
A924/A924M—13	Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-coated by the Hot-dip Process	Table 1507.4.3(1)

`

B42—10	Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes	909.13.1
B43—09	Specification for Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes	909.13.1
B68—11	Specification for Seamless Copper Tube, Bright Annealed (Metric)	909.13.1
B88—09	Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube	909.13.1
B101—12	Specification for Lead-coated Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction	1404.5.3, Table 1507.2.9.2, Table 1507.4.3(1)
B209—10	Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Steel and Plate	Table 1507.4.3(1)
B251—10	Specification for General Requirements for Wrought Seamless Copper and Copper-alloy Tube	909.13.1
B280—08	Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service	909.13.1
B370—12	Specification for Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction	1404.5.2, Table 1507.2.9.2, Table 1507.4.3(1)
B695—04(2009)	Standard Specification for Coatings of Zinc Mechanically Deposited on Iron and Steel Strip for Building Construction	2304.10.5.1, 2304.10.5.3
C5—10	Specification for Quicklime for Structural Purposes	Table 2507.2
C22/C22M-00(2010)	Specification for Gypsum	Table 2506.2
C27—98(2008)	Specification for Classification of Fireclay and High-alumina Refractory Brick	2111.6
C28/C28M—10	Specification for Gypsum Plasters	Table 2507.2
C31/C31M—12	Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field	Table 1705.3
C33/C33M—13	Specification for Concrete Aggregates	722.3.1.4, 722.4.1.1.3
C35/C35M-1995(2009)	Specification for Inorganic Aggregates for Use in Gypsum Plaster	Table 2507.2
C55—2011	Specification for Concrete Building Brick	Table 722.3.2
C59/C59M—00 (2011)	Specification for Gypsum Casting Plaster and Molding Plaster	Table 2507.2
C61/C61M—00 (2011)	Specification for Gypsum Keene's Cement	Table 2507.2
C62—13	Standard Specification for Building Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)	1807.1.6.3
C67—13	Test Methods of Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay Tile	721.4.1.1.1, 2109.3.1.1
C73—10	Specification for Calcium Silicate Brick (Sand-lime Brick)	Table 722.3.2
C90—13	Specification for Loadbearing Concrete Masonry Units	Table 722.3.2, 1807.1.6.3
C91—12	Specification for Masonry Cement	Table 2507.2

`

C94/C94M—13	Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete	110.3.1
C140—13	Test Method Sampling and Testing Concrete Masonry Units and Related Units	722.3.1.2
C150—12	Specification for Portland Cement	1903.1, Table 2507.2
C172/C172M—10	Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete	Table 1705.3
C199—84 (2011)	Test Method for Pier Test for Refractory Mortars	2111.6, 2111.9, 2113.12
C206—13	Specification for Finishing Hydrated Lime	Table 2507.2
C208—12	Specification for Cellulosic Fiber Insulating Board	Table 1508.2, 2303.1.6
C216—13	Specification for Facing Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)	1807.1.6.3
C270—12a	Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry	2103.3.2.4
C315—07(2011)	Specification for Clay Flue Liners and Chimney Pots	2111.9, 2113.11.1, Table 2113.16(1)
C317/C317M—00(2010)	Specification for Gypsum Concrete	2514.1
C330/C330M—2009	Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete	202
C331/C331M—2010	Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Concrete Masonry Units	722.3.1.4, 722.4.1.1.3
C406/C406M—2010	Specification for Roofing Slate	1507.7.5
C472—99 (2009)	Specification for Standard Test Methods for Physical Testing of Gypsum, Gypsum Plasters and Gypsum Concrete	Table 2506.2
C473—12	Test Method for Physical Testing of Gypsum Panel Products	Table 2506.2
C474—13	Test Methods for Joint Treatment Materials for Gypsum Board Construction	Table 2506.2
C475/C475M—12	Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board	Table 2506.2
C514—04(2009)e1	Specification for Nails for the Application of Gypsum Board	Table 721.1(2), Table 721.1(3), Table 2306.7, Table 2506.2
C516—08	Specifications for Vermiculite Loose Fill Thermal Insulation	722.3.1.4, 722.4.1.1.3
C547—12	Specification for Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation	Table 721.1(2), Table 721.1(3)
C549—06(2012)	Specification for Perlite Loose Fill Insulation	722.3.1.4, 722.4.1.1.3
C552—12b	Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation	Table 1508.2
C557—03(2009)e01	Specification for Adhesives for Fastening Gypsum Wallboard to Wood Framing	Table 2506.2
C578—12b	Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation	Table 1508.2, 2603.10, Table 2603.12.1,

`

		Table 2603.12.2
C587—04(2009)	Specification for Gypsum Veneer Plaster	Table 2507.2
C595/C595—13	Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements	1903.1, Table 2507.2
C631—09	Specification for Bonding Compounds for Interior Gypsum Plastering	Table 2507.2
C635/C635M—13	Specification for the Manufacture, Performance and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings	808.1.1, 2506.2.1
C636/C636M—08	Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels	808.1.1.1
C645—13	Specification for Nonstructural Steel Framing Members	Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2
C652—13	Specification for Hollow Brick (Hollow Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)	1807.1.6.3
C726—12	Standard Specification for Mineral Roof Insulation Board	Table 1508.2
C728—05(2013)	Standard Specification for Perlite Thermal Insulation Board	Table 1508.2
C744—11	Specification for Prefaced Concrete and Calcium Silicate Masonry Units	Table 722.3.2
C754—11	Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-attached Gypsum Panel Products	Table 2508.1, Table 2511.1.1
C836/C836M—12	Specification for High-solids Content, Cold Liquid-applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use with Separate Wearing Course	1507.15.2
C840—11	Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board	Table 2508.1, 2509.2
C841—03(2008)E1	Specification for Installation of Interior Lathing and Furring	Table 2508.1, Table 2511.1.1
C842—05(2010)E1	Specification for Application of Interior Gypsum Plaster	Table 2511.1.1, 2511.3, 2511.4
C843—99 (2012)	Specification for Application of Gypsum Veneer Plaster	Table 2511.1.1
C844—04(2010)	Specification for Application of Gypsum Base to Receive Gypsum Veneer Plaster	Table 2508.1
C847—12	Specification for Metal Lath	Table 2507.2
C887—05(2010)	Specification for Packaged, Dry Combined Materials for Surface Bonding Mortar	1805.2.2, 2103.2.2
C897—05(2009)	Specification for Aggregate for Job-Mixed Portland Cement-based Plaster	Table 2507.2
C920—11	Standard for Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants	Table 2506.2
C926—13	Specification for Application of Portland Cement-based Plaster	2109.3.4.8, 2510.3, Table 2511.1.1, 2511.3, 2511.4,

`

		2512.1, 2512.1.2, 2512.2, 2512.6, 2512.8.2, 2512.9, 2513.7
C932—06(2013)	Specification for Surface-applied Bonding Compounds for Exterior Plastering	Table 2507.2
C933—13	Specification for Welded Wire Lath	Table 2507.2
C946—10	Specification for Construction of Dry-stacked, Surface-bonded Walls	2103.2.2, 2109.2.2
C954—11	Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 inch (0.84 mm) to 0.112 inch (2.84 mm) in Thickness	Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2
C955—11C	Standard Specification for Load-bearing Transverse and Axial Steel Studs, Runners Tracks, and Bracing or Bridging, for Screw Application of Gypsum Panel Products and Metal Plaster Bases	Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2
C956—04(2010)	Specification for Installation of Cast-in-place Reinforced Gypsum Concrete	2514.1
C957—10	Specification for High-solids Content, Cold Liquid-applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane with Integral Wearing Surface	1507.15.2
C1002—07	Specification for Steel Self-piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs	Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2
C1007—11a	Specification for Installation of Load Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs and Related Accessories	Table 2508.1, Table 2511.1.1
C1029—13	Specification for Spray-applied Rigid Cellular Polyurethane Thermal Insulation	1507.14.2
C1032—06(2011)	Specification for Woven Wire Plaster Base	Table 2507.2
C1047—10A	Specification for Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base	Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2
C1063—12D	Specification for Installation of Lathing and Furring to Receive Interior and Exterior Portland Cement-based Plaster	2109.3.4.8, 2510.3, Table 2511.1.1, 2512.1.1
C1088—13	Specification for Thin Veneer Brick Units Made from Clay or Shale	Table 721.1(2)
C1157/C1157M—11	Standard Performance Specification for Hydraulic Cement	1903.1, Table 2507.2
C1167—11	Specification for Clay Roof Tiles	1507.3.4
C1177/C1177M—08	Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing	Table 1508.2, Table 2506.2
C1178/C1178M—11	Specification for Coated Mat Water-resistant Gypsum Backing Panel	Table 2506.2, Table 2509.2

`

C1186—08(2012)	Specification for Flat Fiber Cement Sheets	1404.10, 1405.16.1, 1405.16.2
C1261—10	Specification for Firebox Brick for Residential Fireplaces	2111.6, 2111.9
C1278M—07a(2011)	Specification for Fiber-reinforced Gypsum Panels	C 1278/ Table 1508.2, Table 2506.2
C1280—13	Specification for Application of Exterior Gypsum Panel Products for Use as Sheathing	Table 2508.1, 2508.2
C1283—11	Practice for Installing Clay Flue Lining	2113.9.1, 2113.12
C1288—99(2010)	Standard Specification for Discrete Nonasbestos Fiber-cement Interior Substrate Sheets	Table 2509.2
C1289—13E1	Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board	Table 1508.2 2603.0, Table 2603.12.1, Table 2603.12.2
C1313/C1313M—12	Standard Specification for Sheet Radiant Barriers for Building Construction Applications	1509.4
C1325—08b	Standard Specification for Nonasbestos Fiber-mat Reinforced Cement Backer Units	Table 2509.2
C1328/C1328M—12	Specification for Plastic (Stucco Cement)	Table 2507.2
C1364—10B	Standard Specification for Architectural Cast Stone	2103.1
C1386—07	Specification for Precast Autoclaved Aerated Concrete (AAC) Wall Construction Units	202
C1396M/C1396M—13	Specification for Gypsum Board	Figure 722.5.1(2), Figure 722.5.1(3)
C1492—03(2009)	Standard Specification for Concrete Roof Tile	1507.3.5
C1600/C 1600M—11	Standard Specification for Rapid Hardening Hydraulic Cement	Table 2507.2
C1629/ C1629M—06(2011)	Standard Classification for Abuse-resistant Nondecorated Interior Gypsum Panel Products and Fiber-reinforced Cement Panels	403.2.3.1, 403.2.3.2, 403.2.3.4
C1658/C1658M—12	Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Panels	Table 2506.2
D25—12	Specification for Round Timber Piles	1810.3.2.4, 2303.1.12
D41—05	Specification for Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing	Table 1507.10.2
D43—00 (2006)	Specification for Coal Tar Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing	Table 1507.10.2
D56—05(2010)	Test Method for Flash Point By Tag Closed Tester	202
D86—2012	Test Method for Distillation of Petroleum Products at Atmospheric Pressure	202
D93—2012	Test Method for Flash Point By Pensky-Martens Closed Cup Tester	202
D225—07	Specification for Asphalt Shingles (Organic Felt) Surfaced with Mineral Granules	1507.2.5

`

D226/D226M—09	Specification for Asphalt-saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing	1404.2, 1505.2, 1507.2.3, 1507.2.8.1, 1507.3.3, 1507.4.5 1507.5.3, 1507.6.3, 1507.6.3.1, 1507.7.3, Table 1507.8, 1507.8.3, 1507.9.3, 1507.9.5, Table 1507.10.2, 1507.17.3, 1507.17.4.1
D227/D227M—03(2011)E1	Specification for Coal-tar-saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing	Table 1507.10.2
D312—00 (2006)	Specification for Asphalt Used in Roofing	Table 1507.10.2
D422—63 (2007)	Test Method for Particle-size Analysis of Soils	1803.5.3
D448—08	Standard Classification for Sizes of Aggregate for Road and Bridge Construction	1507.12.3, 1507.13.3
D450—07	Specification for Coal-tar Pitch Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing	Table 1507.10.2
D635—10	Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Plastics in a Horizontal Position	2606.4
D1143/D1143M—07e1	Test Method for Piles Under Static Axial Compressive Load	1810.3.3.1.2
D1227—95 (2007)	Specification for Emulsified Asphalt Used as a Protective Coating for Roofing	Table 1507.10.2, 1507.15.2
D1557—12	Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort [56,000 ft-lb/ft^3 (2,700 KN m/m^3)]	1705.6, 1804.5
D1863/D1863M—05(2011)E1	Specification for Mineral Aggregate Used on Built-up Roofs	Table 1507.10.2
D1929—12	Test Method for Determining Ignition Temperature of Plastics	402.6.4.4, 406.7.2, 1407.11.2.1, 1407.11.3.3, 1407.11.4.2, 2606.4
D1970/D1970M—2013	Specification for Self-adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roof Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection	1507.2.4, 1502.2.8.1, 1507.2.9.2, 1507.3.3.3 1507.3.9, 1507.4.5,

`

		1507.5.3.1, 1507.5.7, 1507.6.3.1, 1507.7.3.1, 1507.8.3.1, 1507.8.8, 1507.9.3.1, 1507.9.9, 1507.17.4.1
D2178—04	Specification for Asphalt Glass Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing	Table 1507.10.2
D2487—2011	Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)	Table 1610.1, 1803.5.1
D2626/D2626M—04(2012)E1	Specification for Asphalt Saturated and Coated Organic Felt Base Sheet Used in Roofing	1507.3.3 Table 1507.10.2
D2822/ D2822M-05(2011)E1	Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos Containing	Table 1507.10.2
D2823/D2823M—05(2011)E1	Specification for Asphalt Roof Coatings, Asbestos Containing	Table 1507.10.2
D2824—06(2012)E1	Standard Specification for Aluminum-Pigmented Asphalt Roof Coating, Nonfibered, Asbestos Fibered and Fibered without Asbestos	Table 1507.10.2
D2843—10	Test for Density of Smoke from the Burning or Decomposition of Plastics	2606.4
D2859—06(2011)	Standard Test Method for Ignition Characteristics of Finished Textile Floor Covering Materials	804.4.1
D2898—10	Test Methods for Accelerated Weathering of Fire-retardant-treated Wood for Fire Testing	1505.1, 2303.2.4, 2303.2.6
D3019—08	Specification for Lap Cement Used with Asphalt Roll Roofing, Nonfibered, Asbestos Fibered and Nonasbestos Fibered	Table 1507.10.2
D3161/D3161M—13	Test Method for a Wind Resistance of Asphalt Shingles (Fan Induced Method)	1504.1.1, Table 1504.1.1, 1507.17.8
D3200—74 (2012)	Standard Specification and Test Method for Establishing Recommended Design Stresses for Round Timber Construction Poles	2303.1.12
D3201—2013	Test Method for Hygroscopic Properties of Fire-retardant-treated Wood and Wood-based Products	2303.2.7
D3278—1996 (2011)	Test Methods for Flash Point of Liquids by Small Scale Closed-cup Apparatus	202
D3462/D3462M—10A	Specification for Asphalt Shingles Made from Glass Felt and Surfaced with Mineral Granules	1507.2.5
D3468—99 (2006) e01	Specification for Liquid-applied Neoprene and Chlorosulfonated Polyethylene Used in Roofing and Waterproofing	1507.15.2

`

D3679—11	Specification for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Siding	1404.9, 1405.14
D3689—2013E1	Test Methods for Deep Foundations Under Static Axial Tensile Load	1810.3.3.1.5
D3737—2012	Practice for Establishing Allowable Properties for Structural Glued Laminated Timber (Glulam)	2303.1.3
D3746—85 (2008)	Test Method for Impact Resistance of Bituminous Roofing Systems	1504.7
D3747—79 (2007)	Specification for Emulsified Asphalt Adhesive for Adhering Roof Insulation	Table 1507.10.2
D3909/ D3909M—97b (2012)e1	Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Glass Felt) Surfaced with Mineral Granules	1507.2.9.2, 1507.6.5, Table 1507.10.2
D3957—09	Standard Practices for Establishing Stress Grades for Structural Members Used in Log Buildings	2303.1.11
D4022/D4022M—2007(2012)E1	Specification for Coal Tar Roof Cement, Asbestos Containing	Table 1507.10.2
D4272—09	Test Method for Total Energy Impact of Plastic Films by Dart Drop	1504.7
D4318—10	Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit and Plasticity Index of Soils	1803.5.3
D4434/D4434M—12	Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Sheet Roofing	1507.13.2
D4479/D4479M—07(2012)E1	Specification for Asphalt Roof Coatings-Asbestos-free	Table 1507.10.2
D4586/D4586M—07(2012)E1	Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement-Asbestos-free	Table 1507.10.2
D4601/D4601M—04(2012)E1	Specification for Asphalt-coated Glass Fiber Base Sheet Used in Roofing	Table 1507.10.2
D4637/D4637M—13	Specification for EPDM Sheet Used in Single-ply Roof Membrane	1507.12.2
D4829—11	Test Method for Expansion Index of Soils	1803.5.3
D4869/D4869M—05(2011)e01	Specification for Asphalt-saturated (Organic Felt) Underlayment Used in Steep Slope Roofing	1507.2.3, 1507.2.8.1, 1507.4.5, 1507.5.3, 1507.5.3.1, 1507.6.3, 1507.7.3, 1507.7.3.1, 1507.8.3, 1507.8.3.1, 1507.9.3, 1507.9.3.1, 1507.17.3, 1507.17.4.1
D4897/D4897M—01(2009)	Specification for Asphalt-coated Glass Fiber Venting Base Sheet Used in Roofing	Table 1507.10.2
D4945—12	Test Method for High-strain Dynamic Testing of Piles	1810.3.3.1.2
D4990—97a (2005) e01	Specification for Coal Tar Glass Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing	Table 1507.10.2

`

D5019—07a	Specification for Reinforced Nonvulcanized Polymeric Sheet Used in Roofing Membrane	1507.12.2
D5055—13	Specification for Establishing and Monitoring Structural Capacities of Prefabricated Wood I-joists	2303.1.2
D5456—12	Specification for Evaluation of Structural Composite Lumber Products	2303.1.10
D5516—09	Test Method of Evaluating the Flexural Properties of Fire-retardant-treated Softwood Plywood Exposed to the Elevated Temperatures	2303.2.5.1
D5643/D5643M—06(2012)E1	Specification for Coal Tar Roof Cement, Asbestos-free	Table 1507.10.2
D5664—10	Test Methods for Evaluating the Effects of Fire-retardant Treatment and Elevated Temperatures on Strength Properties of Fire-retardant-treated Lumber	2303.2.5.2
D5665—99a (2006)	Specification for Thermoplastic Fabrics Used in Cold-applied Roofing and Waterproofing	Table 1507.10.2
D5726—98 (2005)	Specification for Thermoplastic Fabrics Used in Hot-applied Roofing and Waterproofing	Table 1507.10.2
D6083—05e01	Specification for Liquid Applied Acrylic Coating Used in Roofing	Table 1507.10.2, Table 1507.14.3, 1507.15.2
D6162—2000A (2008)	Specification for Styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using a Combination of Polyester and Glass Fiber Reinforcements	1507.11.2
D6163—00 (2008)	Specification for Styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using Glass Fiber Reinforcements	1507.11.2
D6164/D6164M—11	Specification for Styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Metal Materials Using Polyester Reinforcements	1507.11.2
D6222/D6222M—11	Specification for Atactic Polypropylene (APP) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using Polyester Reinforcements	1507.11.2
D6223/D6223M—02(2011)E1	Specification for Atactic Polypropylene (APP) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using a Combination of Polyester and Glass Fiber Reinforcements	1507.11.2
D6298—05e1	Specification for Fiberglass Reinforced Styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheets with a Factory Applied Metal Surface	1507.11.2
D6305—08	Practice for Calculating Bending Strength Design Adjustment Factors for Fire-retardant-treated Plywood Roof Sheathing	2303.2.5.1
D6380—03 (2009)	Standard Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Organic) Felt	1507.2.9.2, 1507.3.3, 1507.6.5

`

D6509/D6509M—09	Standard Specification for Atactic Polypropylene (APP) Modified Bituminous base Sheet Materials Using Glass Fiber Reinforcements	1507.11.2
D6694—08	Standard Specification for Liquid-applied Silicone Coating Used in Spray Polyurethane Foam Roofing Systems	Table 1507.14.3, 1507.15.2
D6754/D6745M—10	Standard Specification for Ketone Ethylene Ester Based Sheet Roofing	1507.13.2
D6757—2013	Standard Specification for Underlayment for Use with Steep Slope Roofing	1507.2.3, 1507.17.3, 1507.17.4.1
D6841—08	Standard Practice for Calculating Design Value Treatment Adjustment Factors for Fire-retardant-treated Lumber	2303.2.5.2
D6878/D6878M—11a	Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Polyolefin Based Sheet Roofing	1507.13.2
D6947—07	Standard Specification for Liquid Applied Moisture Cured Polyurethane Coating Used in Spray Polyurethane Foam Roofing System	Table 1507.14.3, 1507.15.2
D7032—10a	Standard Specification for Establishing Performance Ratings for Wood, Plastic Composite Deck Boards and Guardrail Systems (Guards or Rails)	2612.2.1, 2612.4, 2612.5.1
D7147—05	Specification for Testing and Establishing Allowable Loads of Joist Hangers	2303.5, 2304.10.3
D7158/D7158M—11	Standard Test Method for Wind Resistance of Sealed Asphalt Shingles (Uplift Force/Uplift Resistance Method)	1504.1.1, Table 1504.1.1
D7254—07	Standard Specification for polypropylene (PP) siding	1404.12
D7655—12	Standard Classification for Size of Aggregate Used as Ballast for Roof Membrane Systems	1507.12.3, 1507.13.3
D7672—2012	Standard Specification for Evaluating Structural Capacities of Rim Board Products and Assemblies	2303.1.13
E84—2013A	Test Methods for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials	202, 402.6.4.4, 406.7.2, 703.5.2, 720.1, 720.4, 803.1.1, 803.1.4, 803.10, 803.11, 806.7, 1404.12.1, 1407.9, 1407.10.1, 1409.9, 1409.10.1, 1510.6.2, 1510.6.3, 2303.2, 2603.3, 2603.4.1.13,

`

		2606.3.5.4, 2603.7.1, 2603.7.2, 2603.7.3, 2604.2.4, 2606.4, 2612.3, 2614.3, 3105.4
E90—09	Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements	1207.2, 1207.2.1
E96/E96M—2013	Test Method for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials	202
E108—2011	Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings	1505.1, 2603.6, 2610.2, 2610.3
E119—2012A	Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials	703.2, 703.2.1, 703.2.3, 703.3, 703.4, 703.6, 704.12, 705.7, 705.8.5, 711.3.2, 714.3.1, 714.4.1, 715.1, 716.2, Table 716.3, 716.5.6, 716.5.8.1.1, Table 716.6, 716.6.7.1, 717.5.2, 717.5.3, 717.6.1, 716.6.2.1, Table 721.1(1), 1409.10.2, 2103.1, 2603.5.1
E136—2012	Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750°C	703.5.1
E283—04	Standard Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Difference Across the Specimen	202
E330—02	Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference	1409.10.2, 1709.5.2
E331—00 (2009)	Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference	1403.2

`

E492—09	Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Impact Sound Transmission Through Floor-ceiling Assemblies Using the Tapping Machine	1207.3
E605—93 (2011)	Test Method for Thickness and Density of Sprayed Fire-resistive Material (SFRM) Applied to Structural Members	1705.14.4.1, 1705.14.4.2, 1705.14.4.5, 1705.14.5
E681—2009	Test Methods for Concentration Limits of Flammability of Chemical Vapors and Gases	202
E736—00 (2011)	Test Method for Cohesion/Adhesion of Sprayed Fire-resistive Materials Applied to Structural Members	704.13.2, 1705.14.6
E814—2013	Test Method of Fire Tests of Through-penetration Firestops	202, 714.3.1.2, 714.3.2, 7143.4.1.1.2
E970—2010	Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Exposed Attic Floor Insulation Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source	720.3.1
E1300—12AE1	Practice for Determining Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings	2404.1, 2404.2, 2404.3.1, 2404.3.2, 2404.3.3, 2404.3.4, 2404.3.5
E1354—2013	Standard Test Method for Heat and Visible Smoke Release Rates for Materials and Products Using an Oxygen Consumption Calorimeter	424.2
E1592—05(2012)	Test Method for Structural Performance of Sheet Metal Roof and Siding Systems by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference	1504.3.2
E1602—02(2010)E1	Guide for Construction of Solid Fuel-burning Masonry Heaters	2112.2
E1886—05	Test Method for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors and Storm Shutters Impacted by Missiles and Exposed to Cyclic Pressure Differentials	1609.1.2
E1966—07A(2011)	Test Method for Fire-resistant Joint Systems	202, 715.3
E1996—2012A	Specification for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Windborne Debris in Hurricanes	1609.1.2, 1609.1.2.2
E2072—10	Standard Specification for Photoluminescent (Phosphorescent) Safety Markings	1025.3
E2174—10AE1	Standard Practice for On-Site Inspection of Installed Fire Stops	1705.17.1
E2178—13	Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials	202

`

E2273—03(2011)	Standard Test Method for Determining the Drainage Efficiency of Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) Clad Wall Assemblies	1408.4.1
E2307—2010	Standard Test Method for Determining Fire Resistance of a Perimeter Joint System Between an Exterior Wall Assembly and Floor Assembly Using the Intermediate-scale, Multistory Test Apparatus	715.4
E2393—10A	Standard Practice for On-Site Inspection of Installed Fire Resistive Joint Systems and Perimeter Fire Barrier	1705.17.2
E2397—11	Standard Practice for Determination of Dead Loads and Live Loads Associated with Green Roof Systems	1607.12.3.1
E2404—2013E1	Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Textile, Paper or Vinyl Wall or Ceiling Coverings to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics	803.1.4
E2556—10	Standard Specification for Vapor Permeable Flexible Sheet Water-Resistive Barriers Intended for Mechanical Attachment	1404.2, 2510.6
E2568—09e1	Standard Specification for PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems	1408.2
E2570—07	Standard Test Method for Evaluating Water-resistive Barrier (WRB) Coatings Used Under Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) for EIFS with Drainage	1408.4.1.1, 1705.16.1
E2573—12	Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Site-fabricated Stretch Systems to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics	803.13
E2599—11	Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Reflective Insulation Materials and Vinyl Stretch Ceiling Materials for Building Applications to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics	2614.3
E2634—11	Standard Specification for Flat Wall Insulating Concrete Form (ICF) Systems	1903.4
E2751—11	Standard Practice for Design and Performance of Supported Glass Walkways	2409.1
F547—(2012)	Terminology of Nails for Use with Wood and Wood-based Materials	Table 2506.2
F1667—11AE1	Specification for Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes and Staples	Table 721.1(2), Table 721.1(3), 1507.2.6, 1507.17.5, 2303.6, Table 2506.2
F2006—00 (2005) 10	Standard/Safety Specification for Window Fall Prevention Devices for	1015.8

`

	Nonemergency Escape (Egress) and Rescue (Ingress) Windows	
F2090—10	Specification for Window Fall Prevention Devices with Emergency Escape (Egress) Release Mechanisms	1015.8, 1015.8.1
F2200—2013	Standard Specification for Automated Vehicular Gate Construction	3110.3
G152—06	Practice for Operating Open Flame Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials	1504.6
G154—06	Practice for Operating Fluorescent Light Apparatus for UV Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials	1504.6
G155—05a	Practice for Operating Xenon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials	1504.6

AWC

American Wood Council
222 Catoctin SE, Suite 201
Leesburg, VA 20175

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
AWC WCD No. 4—2003	Wood Construction Data—Plank and Beam Framing for Residential Buildings	2306.1.2
AWC WFCM—2015	Wood Frame Construction Manual for One- and Two-Family Dwellings	1609.1.1, 1609.1.1.1, 2301.2, 2308.2.4, 2309.1
ANSI/AWC NDS—2015	National Design Specification (NDS) for Wood Construction with 2015 NDS Supplement	202, 722.1, Table 1604.3, 1809.12, 1810.3.2.4, Table 1810.3.2.6, 1905.1.8, 2304.13, 2306.1, Table 2306.2(1), Table 2306.2(2), Table 2306.3(1), Table 2306.3(2), 2307.1
AWC STJR—2015	Span Tables for Joists and Rafters	2306.1.1, 2308.4.2.1, 2308.7.1, 2308.7.2
ANSI/AWC PWF—2015	Permanent Wood Foundation Design Specification	1805.2, 1807.1.4, 2304.10.5.2

`

AWC SDPWS—2015	Special Design Provisions for Wind and Seismic	202, 2305.1, 2305.2, 2305.3, 2306.1, 2306.2, 2306.3, Table 2306.3(1), Table 2306.3(3), 2307.1

AWCI

Association of the Wall and Ceiling Industry
513 West Broad Street, Suite 210
Falls Church, VA 22046

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
12-B—04	Technical Manual 12-B Standard Practice for the Testing and Inspection of Field Applied Thin Film Intumescent Fire-resistive Materials; an Annotated Guide, Second Edition	1705.15

AWPA

American Wood Protection Association
P.O. Box 361784
Birmingham, AL 35236-1784

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
C1—03	All Timber Products-Preservative Treatment by Pressure Processes	1505.6
M4—11	Standard for the Care of Preservative-treated Wood Products	1810.3.2.4.1, 2303.1.9
U1—14	USE CATEGORY SYSTEM: User Specification for Treated Wood Except Section 6, Commodity Specification H	1403.6, Table 1507.9.6, 1807.1.4, 1807.3.1, 1809.12, 1810.3.2.4.1, 2303.1.9, 2304.12.1, 2304.12.2, 2304.12.3, 2304.2.4, 2304.12.5

AWS

American Welding Society
8669 NW 36 Street, #130
Doral, FL 33166

`

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
D1.4/D1.4M—2011	Structural Welding Code-Reinforcing Steel Including Metal Inserts and Connections In Reinforced Concrete Construction	1704.5, 1705.3.1, Table 1705.3, 2107.4

BHMA

Builders Hardware Manufacturers' Association
355 Lexington Avenue, 17th Floor
New York, NY 10017-6603

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
A 156.10—2011	Power Operated Pedestrian Doors	1010.1.4.2
A 156.19—2013	Standard for Power Assist and Low Energy Operated Doors	1010.1.4.2
A 156.27—11	Power and Manual Operated Revolving Pedestrian Doors	1010.1.4.1

CEN

European Committee for Standardization (CEN)
Central Secretariat
Rue de Stassart 36
B-10 50 Brussels

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
EN 1081—98	Resilient Floor Coverings—Determination of the Electrical Resistance	406.7.1
BS EN 15250—2007	Slow Heat Release Appliances Fired By Solid Fuel Requirements and Test Methods	2112.2, 2112.5

CGSB

Canadian General Standards Board
Place du Portage 111, 6B1
11 Laurier Street
Gatineau, Quebec, Canada KIA 1G6

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
37-GP-52M (1984)	Roofing and Waterproofing Membrane, Sheet Applied, Elastomeric	1504.7, 1507.12.2
37-GP-56M (1980)	Membrane, Modified, Bituminous, Prefabricated and Reinforced for Roofing—with December 1985 Amendment	1507.11.2
CAN/CGSB 37.54—95	Polyvinyl Chloride Roofing and Waterproofing Membrane	1507.13.2

CPA

Composite Panel Association
19465 Deerfield Avenue, Suite 306
Leesburg, VA 20176

`

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ANSI A135.4—2012	Basic Hardboard	1404.3.1, 2303.1.7
ANSI A135.5—2012	Prefinished Hardboard Paneling	2303.1.7, 2304.7
ANSI A135.6—2012	Engineered Wood Siding	1404.3.2, 2303.1.7
A208.1—09	Particleboard	2303.1 8, 2303.1. 8.1

CPSC

Consumer Product Safety Commission
4330 East West Highway
Bethesda, MD 20814-4408

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
16 CFR Part 1201 (2002)	Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Material	2406.2, Table 2406.2(1), 2406.3.1, 2407.1, 2407.1.4.1, 2408.2.1, 2408.3, 2409.2, 2409.3.1, 2409.4.1
16 CFR Part 1209 (2002)	Interim Safety Standard for Cellulose Insulation	720.6
16 CFR Part 1404 (2002)	Cellulose Insulation	720.6
16 CFR Part 1500 (2009)	Hazardous Substances and Articles; Administration and Enforcement Regulations	202
16 CFR Part 1500.44(2009)	Method for Determining Extremely Flammable and Flammable Solids	202
16 CFR Part 1507 (2002)	Fireworks Devices	202
16 CFR Part 1630 (2007)	Standard for the Surface Flammability of Carpets and Rugs	804.4.1

CSA

Canadian Standards Association
8501 East Pleasant Valley
Cleveland, OH 44131-5516

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—11	Specifications for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights	1709.5.1, 2405.5

CSSB

Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau
P. O. Box 1178
Sumas, WA 98295-1178

`

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
CSSB—97	Grading and Packing Rules for Western Red Cedar Shakes and Western Red Shingles of the Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau	Table 1507.8.5, Table 1507.9.6

DASMA

Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association International
1300 Summer Avenue
Cleveland, OH 44115-2851

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ANSI/DASMA 107—1997 (R2012)	Room Fire Test Standard for Garage Doors Using Foam Plastic Insulation	2603.4.1.9
108—12	Standard Method for Testing Sectional Garage Doors and Rolling Doors: Determination of Structural Performance Under Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference	1709.5.2
115—12	Standard Method for Testing Sectional Garage Doors and Rolling Doors: Determination of Structural Performance Under Missile Impact and Cyclic Wind Pressure	1609.1.2.3

DOC

U.S. Department of Commerce
National Institute of Standards and Technology
1401 Constitution Avenue NW
Washington, DC 20230

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
PS-1—09	Structural Plywood	2303.1.5, 2304.7, Table 2304.7(4), Table 2304.7(5), Table 2306.2(1), Table 2306.2(2)
PS-2—10	Performance Standard for Wood-based Structural-use Panels	2303.1.5, 2304.7, Table 2304.7(5), Table 2306.2(1), Table 2306.2(2)

`

PS 20—05	American Softwood Lumber Standard	202, 1810.3.2.4, 2303.1.1

DOL

U.S. Department of Labor
Frances Perkins Building
200 Constitution Avenue NW
Washington, DC 20210

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
29 CFR Part 1910.1000 (2009)	Air Contaminants	202

DOTn

U.S. Department of Transportation
c/o Superintendent of Documents
East Building, 2nd floor
Washington, DC 20590

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
49 CFR Parts 100—185 2005	Hazardous Materials Regulations	202
49 CFR Parts 173.137 (2009)	Shippers—General Requirements for Shipments and Packaging— Class 8—Assignment of Packing Group	202
49 CFR—1998	Specification of Transportation of Explosive and Other Dangerous Articles, UN 0335, UN 0336 Shipping Containers	202

FEMA

Federal Emergency Management Agency
Federal Center Plaza
500 C Street S.W.
Washington, DC 20472

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
FEMA-TB-11—01	Crawlspace Construction for Buildings Located in Special Flood Hazard Areas	1805.1.2.1

FM

Factory Mutual Global Research
Standards Laboratories Department
1301 Atwood Avenue, P.O. Box 7500
Johnston, RI 02919

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
4430 (2012)	Approval Standard for Heat and Smoke Vents	910.3.1

`

4470 (2012)	Approval Standard for Single-Ply Polymer-Modified Bitumen Sheet, Built-Up Roof (BUR) And Liquid Applied Roof Assemblies for use in Class 1 and Noncombustible Roof Deck Construction	1504.7
4474 (2011)	American National Standard for Evaluating the Simulated Wind Uplift Resistance of Roof Assemblies Using Static Positive and/or Negative Differential Pressures	1504.3.1, 1504.3.2
4880-2010	Approval Standard for Class 1 Fire Rating of Insulated Wall or Wall and Roof/Ceiling Panels, Interior Finish Materials or Coatings and Exterior Wall Systems	2603.4, 2603.9

GA

Gypsum Association
6525 Belcrest Road, Suite 480
Hyattsville, MD 20782

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
GA 216—13	Application and Finishing of Gypsum Panel Products	Table 2508.1, 2509.2
GA 600—12	Fire-Resistance Design Manual, 20th Edition	Table 721.1(1), Table 721.1(2), Table 721.1(3)

HPVA

Hardwood Plywood Veneer Association
1825 Michael Faraday Drive
Reston, VA 20190

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
HP-1—2013	Standard for Hardwood and Decorative Plywood	2303.3, 2304.7

ICC

International Code Council, Inc.
500 New Jersey Ave, NW
6th Floor
Washington, DC 20001

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ICC A117.1—09	Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities	202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2,

		1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2
ICC 300—12	ICC Standard on Bleachers, Folding and Telescopic Seating and Grandstands	1029.1.1 Table 1607.1
ICC 400—12	Standard on Design and Construction of Log Structures	2301.2
ICC 500—14	ICC/NSSA Standard on the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters	202, 423.1, 423.3, 423.4
ICC 600—14	Standard for Residential Construction in High-wind Regions	1609.1.1, 1609.1.1.1, 2308.2.1
IEBC—15	International Existing Building Code®	101.4.7, 116.5, 201.3
IECC—15	International Energy Conservation Code®	101.4.6, 201.3, 202, 1203.1, 1301.1.1, 1405.3
IFC—15	International Fire Code®	101.4.5, 102.6, 201.3, 202, 307.1, Table 307.1(1), Table 307.1(2), 307.1.1, 307.1.2, 403.4.5, 404.2, 406.7, 406.8, 407.2.6, 407.4, 410.3.6, 411.1, 412.1, 412.6.1, 413.1, 414.1.1, 414.1.2, 414.1.2.1, 414.2, 414.2.5, Table 414.2.5(1), Table 414.2.5(2), 414.3, 414.5, 414.5.1, Table 414.5.1, 414.5.2, 414.5.3, 414.5.4, 414.6, 415.1, 415.6, 415.6.1, 415.6.1.1, 415.6.1.4, Table 415.6.2, 415.7.3, 415.8.2, 415.9,

`

415.9.1,
415.9.1.3,
415.9.1.4,
415.9.1.6,
415.9.1.7,
415.9.1.8,
415.9.2,
415.9.3,
415.10, 415.11,
415.11.1.7,
415.11.4,
415.11.7.2,
415.11.9.3,
415.11.10.1,
416.1, 416.4,
421.1, 422.3.1,
426.1.4, Table
504.3,
Table 504.4,
Table 506.2,
507.4,
507.8.1.1.1,
507.8.1.1.2,
507.8.1.1.3,
705.8.1, 707.1,
901.2,
901.3, 901.5,
901.6.2,
901.6.3,
903.1.1,
903.2.7.1,
903.2.11.6,
903.2.12,
903.5, 904.2.1,
904.12.3,
905.1, 905.3.6,
906.1, 907.1.8,
907.2.5,
907.2.13.2,
907.2.15,
907.2.16,
907.6.5, 907.8,
909.20,
910.2.2,
1001.3, 1001.4,
1010.1.9.6,
1203.5.2,
1203.6,
1507.16,
1512.1, Table
1604.5,

`

		2603.4.1.12, 2702.1, 2702.1.2, 2702.2.3, 2702.2.8, 2702.2.9, 2702.2.11, 2702.2.12, 2702.2.13, 2702.4, 3003.3, 3008.1.2, 3102.1, 3103.1, 3111.1, 3111.1.1, 3302.3, 3303.7, 3309.2
IFGC—15	International Fuel Gas Code®	101.4.1, 201.3, Table 307.1(1), 415.9.2, 2113.11.1.2, 2113.15, 2801.1
IMC—15	International Mechanical Code®	101.4.2, 201.3, 307.1.1, Table 307.1(1), 406.6.2, 406.8.2, 406.8.4, 409.3, 412.6.6, 414.1.2, 414.3, 415.8.1.4, 415.8.2, 415.8.2.7, 415.8.3, 415.8.4, 415.10.11, 415.10.11.1, 416.2.2, 413.3, 416.3, 417.1, 419.8, 421.5, 603.1, 603.1.1, 603.1.2, 712.1.6, 717.2.2, 717.5.3, 717.5.4, 717.6.1, 717.6.2, 717.6.3, 718.5, 720.1, 720.7,

`

		903.2.11.4, 904.2.1, 904.11, 907.3.1, 908.6, 909.1, 909.10.2, 909.13.1, 1006.2.2.3, 1011.6, 1020.5.1, 1203.1, 1203.2.1, 1203.5.2, 1203.5.2.1, 1203.6, 1209.3, 2801.1
IPC—15	International Plumbing Code®	101.4.3, 201.3, 415.9.3, 603.1.2, 718.5, 903.3.5, 904.12.1.3, 912.6, 1206.3.3, 1503.4, 1503.4.1, 1805.4.3, 2901.1, Table 2902.1, 3305.1, A101.2
IPMC—15	International Property Maintenance Code®	101.4.4, 102.6, 103.3
IPSDC—15	International Private Sewage Disposal Code®	101.4.3, 2901.1
IRC—15	International Residential Code®	101.2, 305.2.3, 308.3.4, 308.4.2, 308.6.4, 310.1, 310.5.1, 310.5.2, 2308.1
IWUIC—15	International Wildland-Urban Interface Code®	Table 1505.1
SBCCI SSTD 11—97	Test Standard for Determining Wind Resistance of Concrete or Clay Roof Tiles	1504.2.1.1, 1504.2.1.2

ISO

International Organization for Standardization
ISO Central Secretariat
1 ch, de la Voie-Creuse, Case Postale 56
CH-1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number

`

ISO 8115—86	Cotton Bales—Dimensions and Density	Table 307.1(1), Table 415.11.1.1.1
ISO 8336—09	Fiber-Cement Flat Sheets - Product Specification and Test Methods	1404.10, 1405.16.1, 1405.16.2, Table 2509.2

MHI

Material Handling Institute
8720 Red Oak Blvd. Suite 201
Charlotte, NC 28217

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ANSI MH29.1—08	Safety Requirements for Industrial Scissors Lifts	3001.2

NAAMM

National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers
800 Roosevelt Road, Bldg. C, Suite 312
Glen Ellyn, IL 60137

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
FP 1001—07	Guide Specifications for Design of Metal Flag Poles	1609.1.1

NCMA

National Concrete Masonry Association
13750 Sunrise Valley
Herndon, VA 22071-4662

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
TEK 5—84 (1996)	Details for Concrete Masonry Fire Walls	Table 721.1(2)

NFPA

National Fire Protection Association
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02169-7471

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
10—13	Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers	906.2, 906.3.2, 906.3.4, Table 906.3(1), Table 906.3(2)
11—10	Standard for Low Expansion Foam	904.7
12—11	Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems	904.8, 904.11
12A—09	Standard on Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems	904.9
13—13	Installation of Sprinkler Systems	708.2, 903.3.1.1, 903.3.2, 903.3.8.2,

`

		903.3.8.5, 904.11, 905.3.4, 907.6.4, 1019.3
13D—13	Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One- and Two-family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes	903.3.1.3
13R—13	Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Low Rise Residential Occupancies	903.3.1.2, 903.3.5.2, 903.4
14—13	Standard for the Installation of Standpipe and Hose System	905.2, 905.3.4, 905.4.2, 905.6.2, 905.8
16—15	Standard for the Installation of Foam-water Sprinkler and Foam-water Spray Systems	904.7, 904.11
17—13	Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems	904.6, 904.11
17A—13	Standard for Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems	904.5, 904.11
20—13	Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection	913.1, 913.2.1, 913.5
30—12	Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code	415.6, 507.8.1.1.1, 507.8.1.1.2
31—11	Standard for the Installation of Oil-burning Equipment	2113.15
32—11	Standard for Dry Cleaning Plants	415.9.3
40—11	Standard for the Storage and Handling of Cellulose Nitrate Film	409.1
58—14	Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code	415.9.2
61—13	Standard for the Prevention of Fires and Dust Explosions in Agricultural and Food Product Facilities	426.1
70—14	National Electrical Code	108.3, 415.11.1.8, 904.3.1, 907.6.1, 909.12.2, 909.16.3, 1205.4.1, 2701.1, 2702.1.2, G501.4, G1001.6, H106.1, H106.2, K101, K111.1
72—13	National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code	407.4.4.3, 407.4.4.5, 407.4.4.5.1, 901.6, 903.4.1, 904.3.5, 907.2, 907.2.6,

`

		907.2.11, 907.2.13.2, 907.3, 907.3.3, 907.3.4, 907.5.2.1.2, 907.5.2.2, 907.5.2.2.5, 907.6, 907.6.1, 907.6.2, 907.6.6, 907.7, 907.7.1, 907.7.2, 907.2.9.3, 911.1.5, 2702.2.4, 3005.5, 3007.7
80—13	Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives	410.3.5, 509.4.2, 716.5, 716.5.7, 716.5.8.1, 716.5.9.2, 716.6, 716.6.4, 1010.1.4.3
82—14	Standard on Incinerators and Waste and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment	713.13
85—15	Boiler and Combustion System Hazards Code	415.8.1
92—15	Standard for Smoke Control Systems	909.7, 909.8
99—15	Health Care Facilities Code	407.10, 425.1
101—15	Life Safety Code	1029.6.2
105—13	Standard for Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives	405.4.2, 710.5.2.2, 716.5.3.1, 909.20.4.1
110—13	Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems	2702.1.2
111—13	Standard on Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems	2702.1.2
120—15	Standard for Fire Prevention and Control in Coal Mines	426.1
170—15	Standard for Fire Safety and Emergency Symbols	1025.2.6.1
211—13	Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents and Solid Fuel-burning Appliances	2112.5
221—15	Standard for High Challenge Fire Walls, Fire Walls, and Fire Barrier Walls	706.2
252—12	Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies	715.4.2, 715.4.3, 715.4.7.3.1, Table 716.3, 716.3.1, 716.4, 716.5.1, 716.5.3,

`

		716.5.8, 716.5.8.1.1
253—15	Standard Method of Test for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source	406.8.3, 424.2, 804.2, 804.3
257—12	Standard for Fire Test for Window and Glass Block Assemblies	Table 716.3, 716.4, 716.5.3.2, 716.6, 716.6.1, 716.6.2, 716.6.7.3
259—13	Standard Test Method for Potential Heat of Building Materials	2603.4.1.10, 2603.5.3
265—11	Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Evaluating Room Fire Growth Contribution of Textile Wall Coverings on Full Height Panels and Walls	803.1.3, 803.1.3.1
268—12	Standard Test Method for Determining Ignitability of Exterior Wall Assemblies Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source	1406.2.1.1, 1406.2.1.1.1, 1406.2.1.1.2, 2603.5.7, D105.1
275—13	Standard Method of Fire Tests for the Evaluation of Thermal Barriers	1407.10.2, 2603.4
276—11	Standard Method of Fire Tests for Determining the Heat Release Rate of Roofing Assemblies With Combustible Above-Deck Roofing Components	1508.1, 2603.3, 2603.4.1.5
285—12	Standard Fire Test Method for the Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Nonload-bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components	718.2.6, 1403.5, 1407.10.4, 1409.10.4, 1510.6.2, 2603.5.5
286—15	Standard Methods of Fire Test for Evaluating Contribution of Wall and Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth	402.6.4.4, 803.1.2, 803.1.2.1, 803.11, 2603.4, 2603.7.2, 2603.9, 2604.2.4, 2614.4
288—12	Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Horizontal Fire Door Assemblies Installed in Horizontal in Fire-resistance-rated Floor Systems	712.1.13.1
289—13	Standard Method of Fire Test for Individual Fuel Packages	402.6.2, 424.2
409—11	Standard for Aircraft Hangars	412.4.6, Table 412.4.6,

`

		412.4.6.1, 412.6.5
418—11	Standard for Heliports	412.8.4
484—15	Standard for Combustible Metals	426.1
654—13	Standard for the Prevention of Fire & Dust Explosions from the Manufacturing, Processing and Handling of Combustible Particulate Solids	426.1
655—12	Standard for the Prevention of Sulfur Fires and Explosions	426.1
664—12	Standard for the Prevention of Fires and Explosions in Wood Processing and Woodworking Facilities	426.1
701—10	Standard Method of Fire Tests for Flame-Propagation of Textiles and Films	410.3.6, 424.2, 801.4, 806.1, 806.3, 806.4, 3102.3, 3102.3.1, 3102.6.1.1, 3105.4, D102.2.8, H106.1.1
704—12	Standard System for the Identification of the Hazards of Materials for Emergency Response	202, 415.5.2
720—15	Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment	9151.6.1, 915.1.6.2
750—14	Standard on Water Mist Fire Protection Systems	904.12.1.1
1124—06	Code for the Manufacture, Transportation and Storage of Fireworks and Pyrotechnic Articles	415.6.1.1
2001—15	Standard on Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems	904.10

PCI

Precast Prestressed Concrete Institute
200 West Adams Street, Suite 2100
Chicago, IL 60606-6938

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
MNL 124—11	Design for Fire Resistance of Precast Prestressed Concrete	722.2.3.1
MNL 128—01	Recommended Practice for Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Panels	1903.3

PTI

Post-Tensioning Institute
38800 Country Club Drive
Farmington Hills, MI 48331

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number

`

PTI DC—10.5-12	Standard Requirements for Design and Analysis of Shallow Concrete Foundations on Expansive Soils	1808.6.2

RMI

Rack Manufacturers Institute
8720 Red Oak Boulevard, Suite 201
Charlotte, NC 28217

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ANSI/MH16.1—12	Specification for Design, Testing and Utilization of Industrial Steel Storage Racks	2209.1

SBCA

Structural Building Components Association
6300 Enterprise Lane
Madison, WI 53719

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ANSI/FS 100-12	Standard Requirements for Wind Pressure Resistance of Foam Plastic Insulating Sheathing Used in Exterior Wall Covering Assemblies	2603.10

SDI

Steel Deck Institute
P. O. Box 426
Glenshaw, PA 15116

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ANSI/NC1.0—10	Standard for Noncomposite Steel Floor Deck	2210.1.1.1
ANSI/RD1.0—10	Standard for Steel Roof Deck	2210.1.1.2
SDI-C—2011	Standard for Composite Steel Floor Deck Slabs	2210.1.1.3
SDI-QA/QC—2011	Standard for Quality Control and Quality Assurance for Installation of Steel Deck	1705.2.2

SJI

Steel Joist Institute
1173B London Links Drive
Forest, VA 24551

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
CJ—10	Standard Specification for Composite Steel Joists, CJ-series	1604.3.3, 2203.2, 2207.1
JG—10	Standard Specification for Joist Girders	1604.3.3, 2203.2, 2207.1
K—10	Standard Specification for Open Web Steel Joists, K-series	1604.3.3, 2203.2, 2207.1

`

LH/DLH—10	Standard Specification for Longspan Steel Joists, LH-series and Deep Longspan Steel Joists, DLH-series	1604.3.3, 2203.2, 2207.1

SPRI

Single-Ply Roofing Institute
411 Waverly Oaks Road, Suite 331B
Waltham, MA 02452

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
ANSI/SPRI/ FM4435-ES-1—11	Wind Design Standard for Edge Systems Used with Low Slope Roofing Systems	1504.5
ANSI/SPRI RP-4—13	Wind Design Guide for Ballasted Single-ply Roofing Systems	1504.4
ANSI/SPRI VF1—10	External Fire Design Standard for Vegetative Roofs	1505.10

TIA

Telecommunications Industry Association
1320 N. Courthouse Road
Arlington, VA 22201-3834

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
222-G—05	Structural Standards for Antenna Supporting Structures and Antennas, including—Addendum 1, 222-G-1, Dated 2007, Addendum 2, 222-G-2 Dated 2009 Addendum 3, 222-3 dated 2013 and Addendum 4, 222-G-4 dated 2014	1609.1.1, 3108.1, 3108.2

TMS

The Masonry Society
105 South Sunset Street, Suite Q
Longmont, CO 80501

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
216—2013	Standard Method for Determining Fire Resistance of Concrete and Masonry Construction Assemblies	Table 721.1(2), 722.1
302—2012	Standard Method for Determining the Sound Transmission Class Rating for Masonry Walls	1207.2.1
402—2013	Building Code for Masonry Structures	1405.6, 1405.6.1, 1405.6.2, 1405.10, 1604.3.4, 1705.4, 1705.4.1, 1807.1.6.3, 1807.1.6.3.2, 1808.9

`

		2101.2, 2106.1, 2107.1, 2107.2, 2107.3, 2107.4, 2108.1, 2108.2, 2108.3, 2109.1, 2109.1.1, 2109.2, 2109.2.1, 2109.3, 2110.1
403—2013	Direct Design Handbook for Masonry Structures	2101.2
602—2013	Specification for Masonry Structures	1405.6.1, 1705.4, 1807.1.6.3, 2103.1, 2103.2.1, 2103.3, 2103.4, 2104.1, 2105.1

TPI

Truss Plate Institute
218 N. Lee Street, Suite 312
Alexandria, VA 22314

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
TPI 1—2014	National Design Standard for Metal-plate-connected Wood Truss Construction	2303.4.6, 2306.1

UL

UL LLC
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062-2096

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
9—2009	Fire Tests of Window Assemblies	715.5.2, 716.3.2, 716.4, 716.5.3.2, 716.6, 716.6.1, 716.6.2, 716.6.8.1
10A—2009	Tin Clad Fire Doors	716.5
10B—2008	Fire Tests of Door Assemblies—with Revisions through April 2009	716.5.2
10C—2009	Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies	716.5.1, 716.5.3, 1010.1.10.1

`

14B—2008	Sliding Hardware for Standard Horizontally mounted Tin Clad Fire Doors— with Revisions Through May 3, 2013	716.5
14C—06	Swinging Hardware for Standard Tin Clad Fire Doors Mounted Singly and in Pairs— with Revisions through May 2013	716.5
55A—04	Materials for Built-Up Roof Coverings	1507.10.2
103—2010	Factory-built Chimneys, for Residential Type and Building Heating Appliances— with Revisions through July 2012	718.2.5.1
127—2011	Factory-built Fireplaces	718.2.5.1, 2111.11
199E—04	Outline of Investigation for Fire Testing of Sprinklers and Water Spray Nozzles for Protection of Deep Fat Fryers	904.11.4.1
217—06	Single and Multiple Station Smoke Alarms—with Revisions through April 2012	907.2.11
263—11	Standard for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials	703.2, 703.2.1, 703.2.3, 703.3, 703.4, 703.6, 704.12, 705.7, 705.8.5, 707.7, 711.3.2, 714.3.1, 714.4.1.1, 715.1, 716.2, Table 716.3, 716.5.6, 716.5.8.1.1, 716.7.1, 717.5.2, 717.5.3, 717.6.2.1, Table 721.1(1), 1407.10.2, 2103.1, 2603.4, 2603.5.1
268—09	Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems	407.8, 907.2.6.2, 907.2.11.7
294—1999	Access Control System Units—with Revisions through September 2010	1010.1.9.6, 1010.1.9.8, 1010.1.9.9
300—05(R2010)	Fire Testing of Fire Extinguishing Systems for Protection of Commercial Cooking Equipment— with Revisions through July 16, 2010	904.11
300A—06	Outline of Investigation for Extinguishing System Units for Residential Range Top Cooking Surfaces	407.2.6, 904.13
305—2012	Panic Hardware	1010.1.10.1

`

325—02	Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver and Window Operations and Systems— with Revisions through June 2013	406.3.6, 3110.4
555—2006	Fire Dampers—with Revisions through May 2012	717.3
555C—2006	Ceiling Dampers—with Revisions through May 2010	717.3
555S—99	Smoke Dampers—with Revisions through May 2012	717.3, 717.3.1
580—2006	Test for Uplift Resistance of Roof Assemblies— with Revisions through July 2009	1504.3.1, 1504.3.2
641—2010	Type L Low-temperature Venting Systems—with Revisions through May 2013	2113.11.1.4
710B—2011	Recirculating Systems	904.11
723—2008	Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials—with Revisions through September 2010	202, 402.6.4.4, 406.7.2, 703.5.2, 720.1, 720.4, 803.1.1, 803.1.4, 803.10, 803.11, 806.7, 1404.12.1, 1407.9, 1407.10.1, 1409.9, 1409.10.1, 1510.6.2, 1510.6.3, 2303.2, 2603.3, 2603.4.1.13, 2606.3.5.4, 2603.7.1, 2603.7.2, 2603.7.3, 2604.2.4, 2606.4, 2612.3, 2614.3, 3105.4
790—04	Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings— with Revisions through October 2008	1505.1, 2603.6, 2610.2, 2610.3
793—08	Standards for Automatically Operated Roof Vents for Smoke and Heat— with Revisions through September 2011	406.8.5.1.1, 910.3.1
864—03	Standards for Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems— with Revisions through August 2012	421.6.2, 909.12
924—06	Standard for Safety Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment— with Revisions through February 2011	1013.5
1040—96	Fire Test of Insulated Wall Construction— with Revisions through October 2012	1407.10.3, 1409.10.3, 2603.4, 2603.9

`

1256—02	Fire Test of Roof Deck Construction— with Revisions through January 2007	1508.1, 2603.3, 2603.4.1.5
1479—03	Fire Tests of Through-penetration Firestops— with Revisions through October 2012	202, 714.3.1.2, 714.3.2, 714.4.1.2, 714.4.4
1482—2011	Solid-Fuel-type Room Heaters	2112.2, 2112.5
1703—02	Flat-Plate Photovoltaic Modules and Panels— with Revisions through November 2014	1505.9, 1507.17.1, 1507.17.6, 1509.7.4
1715—97	Fire Test of Interior Finish Material— with Revisions through January 2013	1407.10.3, 1409.10.2, 1409.10.3, 2603.4, 2603.9, 2614.4
1777—2007	Chimney Liners—with Revisions through July 2009	2113.11.1, 2113.19
1784—01	Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies— with Revisions through July 2009	710.5.2.2, 710.5.2.2.1, 716.5.3.1, 716.5.7.1, 716.5.7.3, 3006.3, 3007.6.3, 3008.6.3
1897—12	Uplift Tests for Roof Covering Systems	1504.3.1
1975—06	Fire Test of Foamed Plastics Used for Decorative Purposes	402.6.2, 402.6.4.5, 424.2
1994—04	Luminous Egress Path Marking Systems— with Revisions through November 2010	411.7, 1025.2.1, 1025.2.3, 1025.2.4, 1025.4
2017—2008	Standards for General-purpose Signaling Devices and Systems— with Revisions through May 2011	406.8.5.1.1
2034—2008	Standard for Single- and Multiple-Station Carbon Monoxide Alarm— with Revisions through February 2009	915.4.2, 915.4.3
2075—2013	Standard for Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors	421.6.2, 406.8.5.1.1, 915.5.1, 915.5.3
2079—04	Tests for Fire Resistance of Building Joint Systems— with Revisions through December 2012	202, 715.3, 715.6
2196—2001	Tests for Fire Resistive Cables—with Revisions through March 2012	913.2.2, 2702.3

`

2200—2012	Stationary Engine Generator Assemblies—with Revisions through June 2013	2702.1.1

ULC

Underwriters Laboratories of Canada
7 Underwriters Road
Toronto, Ontario, Canada M1R3B4

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
CAN/ULC S 102.2—2010	Standard Method of Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Flooring, Floor Coverings and Miscellaneous Materials and Assemblies—with 2000 Revisions	720.4

USC

United States Code
c/o Superintendent of Documents
U.S. Government Printing Office
732 North Capitol Street NW
Washington, DC 20401

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
18 USC Part 1, Ch.40	Importation, Manufacture, Distribution and Storage of Explosive Materials	202

WCLIB

West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau
P. O. Box 23145
Portland, OR 97281

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
AITC Technical Note 7—96	Calculation of Fire Resistance of Glued Laminated Timbers	722.6.3.3
AITC 104—03	Typical Construction Details	2306.1
AITC 110—01	Standard Appearance Grades for Structural Glued Laminated Timber	2306.1
AITC 113—10	Standard for Dimensions of Structural Glued Laminated Timber	2306.1
AITC 117—10	Standard Specifications for Structural Glued Laminated Timber of Softwood Species	2306.1
AITC 119—96	Standard Specifications for Structural Glued Laminated Timber of Hardwood Species	2306.1
AITC 200—09	Manufacturing Quality Control Systems Manual for Structural Glued Laminated Timber	2306.1

WDMA

Window and Door Manufacturers Association
2025 M Street, NW Suite 800
Washington, DC 20036-3309

`

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—11	Specifications for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights	1709.5.1, 2405.5

WRI

Wire Reinforcement Institute, Inc.
942 Main Street, Suite 300
Hartford, CT 06103

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
WRI/CRSI—81	Design of Slab-on-ground Foundations—with 1996 Update	1808.6.2

`

THIS APPENDIX IS NOT ADOPTED BY THE CITY OF BELLEVUE

APPENDIX A
EMPLOYEE QUALIFICATIONS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION A101
BUILDING OFFICIAL QUALIFICATIONS

A101.1 Building official.
The *building official* shall have at least 10 years' experience or equivalent as an architect, engineer, inspector, contractor or superintendent of construction, or any combination of these, 5 years of which shall have been supervisory experience. The *building official* should be certified as a *building official* through a recognized certification program. The building official shall be appointed or hired by the applicable governing authority.

A101.2 Chief inspector.
The *building official* can designate supervisors to administer the provisions of this code and the *International Mechanical*, *Plumbing* and *Fuel Gas Codes*. Each supervisor shall have at least 10 years' experience or equivalent as an architect, engineer, inspector, contractor or superintendent of construction, or any combination of these, 5 years of which shall have been in a supervisory capacity. They shall be certified through a recognized certification program for the appropriate trade.

A101.3 Inspector and plans examiner.
The *building official* shall appoint or hire such number of officers, inspectors, assistants and other employees as shall be authorized by the jurisdiction. A person shall not be appointed or hired as inspector of construction or plans examiner who has not had at least 5 years' experience as a contractor, engineer, architect, or as a superintendent, foreman or competent mechanic in charge of construction. The inspector or plans examiner shall be certified through a recognized certification program for the appropriate trade.

A101.4 Termination of employment.
Employees in the position of *building official*, chief inspector or inspector shall not be removed from office except for cause after full opportunity has been given to be heard on specific charges before such applicable governing authority.

SECTION A102
REFERENCED STANDARDS

IBC—15	International Building Code	A101.2
IMC—15	International Mechanical Code	A101.2
IPC—15	International Plumbing Code	A101.2
IFGC—15	International Fuel Gas Code	A101.2

THIS APPENDIX IS NOT ADOPTED BY THE CITY OF BELLEVUE

`

APPENDIX B
BOARD OF APPEALS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION B101
GENERAL

B101.1 Application.
The application for appeal shall be filed on a form obtained from the *building official* within 20 days after the notice was served.

B101.2 Membership of board.
The board of appeals shall consist of persons appointed by the chief appointing authority as follows:

1. One for 5 years; one for 4 years; one for 3 years; one for 2 years; and one for 1 year.

2. Thereafter, each new member shall serve for 5 years or until a successor has been appointed.

The *building official* shall be an ex officio member of said board but shall have no vote on any matter before the board.

B101.2.1 Alternate members.
The chief appointing authority shall appoint two alternate members who shall be called by the board chairperson to hear appeals during the absence or disqualification of a member. Alternate members shall possess the qualifications required for board membership and shall be appointed for 5 years, or until a successor has been appointed.

B101.2.2 Qualifications.
The board of appeals shall consist of five individuals, one from each of the following professions or disciplines:

1. Registered design professional with architectural experience or a builder or superintendent of building construction with at least 10 years' experience, 5 of which shall have been in responsible charge of work.

2. Registered design professional with structural engineering experience.

3. Registered design professional with mechanical and plumbing engineering experience or a mechanical contractor with at least 10 years' experience, 5 of which shall have been in responsible charge of work.

4. Registered design professional with electrical engineering experience or an electrical contractor with at least 10 years' experience, 5 of which shall have been in responsible charge of work.

`

5. Registered design professional with fire protection engineering experience or a fire protection contractor with at least 10 years' experience, 5 of which shall have been in responsible charge of work.

B101.2.3 Rules and procedures.
The board is authorized to establish policies and procedures necessary to carry out its duties.

B101.2.4 Chairperson.
The board shall annually select one of its members to serve as chairperson.

B101.2.5 Disqualification of member.
A member shall not hear an appeal in which that member has a personal, professional or financial interest.

B101.2.6 Secretary.
The chief administrative officer shall designate a qualified clerk to serve as secretary to the board. The secretary shall file a detailed record of all proceedings in the office of the chief administrative officer.

B101.2.7 Compensation of members.
Compensation of members shall be determined by law.

B101.3 Notice of meeting.
The board shall meet upon notice from the chairperson, within 10 days of the filing of an appeal or at stated periodic meetings.

B101.3.1 Open hearing.
All hearings before the board shall be open to the public. The appellant, the appellant's representative, the building official and any person whose interests are affected shall be given an opportunity to be heard.

B101.3.2 Procedure.
The board shall adopt and make available to the public through the secretary procedures under which a hearing will be conducted. The procedures shall not require compliance with strict rules of evidence, but shall mandate that only relevant information be received.

B101.3.3 Postponed hearing.
When five members are not present to hear an appeal, either the appellant or the appellant's representative shall have the right to request a postponement of the hearing.

B101.4 Board decision.
The board shall modify or reverse the decision of the *building official* by a concurring vote of two-thirds of its members.

B101.4.1 Resolution.
The decision of the board shall be by resolution. Certified copies shall be furnished to the appellant and to the *building official*.

B101.4.2 Administration.
The *building official* shall take immediate action in accordance with the decision of the board.

`

`

THIS APPENDIX IS NOT ADOPTED BY THE CITY OF BELLEVUE

APPENDIX C
GROUP U—AGRICULTURAL BUILDINGS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION C101
GENERAL

C101.1 Scope.
The provisions of this appendix shall apply exclusively to agricultural buildings. Such buildings shall be classified as Group U and shall include the following uses:

1. Livestock shelters or buildings, including shade structures and milking barns.
2. Poultry buildings or shelters.
3. Barns.
4. Storage of equipment and machinery used exclusively in agriculture.
5. Horticultural structures, including detached production greenhouses and crop protection shelters.
6. Sheds.
7. Grain silos.
8. Stables.

SECTION C102
ALLOWABLE HEIGHT AND AREA

C102.1 General.
Buildings classified as Group U Agricultural shall not exceed the area or height limits specified in Table C102.1.

TABLE C102.1
BASIC ALLOWABLE AREA FOR A GROUP U, ONE STORY IN HEIGHT AND MAXIMUM HEIGHT OF SUCH OCCUPANCY

I		II		III and IV		V	
A	B	A	B	III A and IV	III B	A	B
ALLOWABLE AREA (square feet)[a]							
Unlimited	60,000	27,100	18,000	27,100	18,000	21,100	12,000
MAXIMUM HEIGHT IN STORIES							

`

Unlimited	12	4	2	4	2	3	2
MAXIMUM HEIGHT IN FEET							
Unlimited	160	65	55	65	55	50	40

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.
a. See Section C102 for unlimited area under certain conditions.

C102.2 One-story unlimited area.
The area of a one-story Group U agricultural building shall not be limited if the building is surrounded and adjoined by *public ways* or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

C102.3 Two-story unlimited area.
The area of a two-story Group U agricultural building shall not be limited if the building is surrounded and adjoined by *public ways* or *yards* not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width and is provided with an *approved automatic sprinkler system* throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

SECTION C103
MIXED OCCUPANCIES

C103.1 Mixed occupancies.
Mixed occupancies shall be protected in accordance with Section 508.

SECTION C104
EXITS

C104.1 Exit facilities.
Exits shall be provided in accordance with Chapters 10 and 11.

Exceptions:

1. The maximum travel distance from any point in the building to an approved exit shall not exceed 300 feet (91 440 mm).

2. One exit is required for each 15,000 square feet (1393.5 m^2) of area or fraction thereof.

`

THIS APPENDIX IS NOT ADOPTED BY THE CITY OF BELLEVUE

APPENDIX D
FIRE DISTRICTS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION D101
GENERAL

D101.1 Scope.
The fire district shall include such territory or portion as outlined in an ordinance or law entitled "An Ordinance (Resolution) Creating and Establishing a Fire District." Wherever, in such ordinance creating and establishing a fire district, reference is made to the fire district, it shall be construed to mean the fire district designated and referred to in this appendix.

D101.1.1 Mapping.
The fire district complying with the provisions of Section D101.1 shall be shown on a map that shall be available to the public.

D101.2 Establishment of area.
For the purpose of this code, the fire district shall include that territory or area as described in Sections D101.2.1 through D101.2.3.

D101.2.1 Adjoining blocks.
Two or more adjoining blocks, exclusive of intervening streets, where at least 50 percent of the ground area is built upon and more than 50 percent of the built-on area is devoted to hotels and motels of Group R-1; Group B occupancies; theaters, nightclubs, restaurants of Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies; garages, express and freight depots, warehouses and storage buildings used for the storage of finished products (not located with and forming a part of a manufactured or industrial plant); or Group S occupancy. Where the average height of a building is two and one-half *stories* or more, a block should be considered if the ground area built upon is at least 40 percent.

D101.2.2 Buffer zone.
Where four contiguous blocks or more comprise a fire district, there shall be a buffer zone of 200 feet (60 960 mm) around the perimeter of such district. Streets, rights-of-way and other open spaces not subject to building construction can be included in the 200-foot (60 960 mm) buffer zone.

D101.2.3 Developed blocks.
Where blocks adjacent to the fire district have developed to the extent that at least 25 percent of the ground area is built upon and 40 percent or more of the built-on area is devoted to the occupancies specified in Section D101.2.1, they can be considered for inclusion in the fire district, and can form all or a portion of the 200-foot (60 960 mm) buffer zone required in Section D101.2.2.

SECTION D102
BUILDING RESTRICTIONS

`

D102.1 Types of construction permitted.
Within the fire district every building hereafter erected shall be either Type I, II, III or IV, except as permitted in Section D104.

D102.2 Other specific requirements.

D102.2.1 Exterior walls.
Exterior walls of buildings located in the fire district shall comply with the requirements in Table 601 except as required in Section D102.2.6.

D102.2.2 Group H prohibited.
Group H occupancies shall be prohibited from location within the fire district.

D102.2.3 Construction type.
Every building shall be constructed as required based on the type of construction indicated in Chapter 6.

D102.2.4 Roof covering.
Roof covering in the fire district shall conform to the requirements of Class A or B roof coverings as defined in Section 1505.

D102.2.5 Structural fire rating.
Walls, floors, roofs and their supporting structural members shall be a minimum of 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings of Type IV construction.
2. Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
3. Automobile parking structures.
4. Buildings surrounded on all sides by a permanently open space of not less than 30 feet (9144 mm).
5. Partitions complying with Section 603.1, Item 11.

D102.2.6 Exterior walls.
Exterior load-bearing walls of Type II buildings shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of 2 hours or more where such walls are located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of a common property line or an assumed property line. Exterior nonload-bearing walls of Type II buildings located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of a common property line or an assumed property line shall have fire-resistance ratings as required by Table 601, but not less than 1 hour. Exterior walls located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) from a common property line or an assumed property line shall comply with Table 601.

Exception: In the case of one-story buildings that are 2,000 square feet (186 m^2) or less in area, exterior walls located more than 15 feet (4572 mm) from a common property line or an assumed property line need only comply with Table 601.

`

D102.2.7 Architectural trim.
Architectural *trim* on buildings located in the fire district shall be constructed of *approved* noncombustible materials or *fire-retardant-treated wood*.

D102.2.8 Permanent canopies.
Permanent canopies are permitted to extend over adjacent open spaces provided all of the following are met:

1. The canopy and its supports shall be of noncombustible material, *fire-retardant-treated wood*, Type IV construction or of 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

   Exception: Any textile covering for the canopy shall be flame resistant as determined by tests conducted in accordance with NFPA 701 after both accelerated water leaching and accelerated weathering.

2. Any canopy covering, other than textiles, shall have a *flame spread index* not greater than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 in the form intended for use.

3. The canopy shall have at least one long side open.

4. The maximum horizontal width of the canopy shall not exceed 15 feet (4572 mm).

5. The *fire resistance* of *exterior walls* shall not be reduced.

D102.2.9 Roof structures.
Structures, except aerial supports 12 feet (3658 mm) high or less, flagpoles, water tanks and cooling towers, placed above the roof of any building within the fire district shall be of noncombustible material and shall be supported by construction of noncombustible material.

D102.2.10 Plastic signs.
The use of plastics complying with Section 2611 for signs is permitted provided the structure of the sign in which the plastic is mounted or installed is noncombustible.

D102.2.11 Plastic veneer.
Exterior plastic veneer is not permitted in the fire district.

SECTION D103
CHANGES TO BUILDINGS

D103.1 Existing buildings within the fire district.
An existing building shall not hereafter be increased in height or area unless it is of a type of construction permitted for new buildings within the fire district or is altered to comply with the requirements for such type of construction. Nor shall any existing building be hereafter extended on any side, nor square footage or floors added within the existing building unless such modifications are of a type of construction permitted for new buildings within the fire district.

D103.2 Other alterations.
Nothing in Section D103.1 shall prohibit other alterations within the fire district provided there is no change of occupancy that is otherwise prohibited and the fire hazard is not increased by such *alteration*.

`

D103.3 Moving buildings.
Buildings shall not hereafter be moved into the fire district or to another lot in the fire district unless the building is of a type of construction permitted in the fire district.

SECTION D104
BUILDINGS LOCATED PARTIALLY IN THE FIRE DISTRICT

D104.1 General.
Any building located partially in the fire district shall be of a type of construction required for the fire district, unless the major portion of such building lies outside of the fire district and no part is more than 10 feet (3048 mm) inside the boundaries of the fire district.

SECTION D105
EXCEPTIONS TO RESTRICTIONS IN FIRE DISTRICT

D105.1 General.
The preceding provisions of this appendix shall not apply in the following instances:

1. Temporary buildings used in connection with duly authorized construction.
2. A private garage used exclusively as such, not more than one *story* in height, nor more than 650 square feet (60 m^2) in area, located on the same lot with a *dwelling*.
3. Fences not over 8 feet (2438 mm) high.
4. Coal tipples, material bins and trestles of Type IV construction.
5. Water tanks and cooling towers conforming to Sections 1509.3 and 1509.4.
6. Greenhouses less than 15 feet (4572 mm) high.
7. Porches on dwellings not over one *story* in height, and not over 10 feet (3048 mm) wide from the face of the building, provided such porch does not come within 5 feet (1524 mm) of any property line.
8. Sheds open on a long side not over 15 feet (4572 mm) high and 500 square feet (46 m^2) in area.
9. One- and two-family *dwellings* where of a type of construction not permitted in the fire district can be extended 25 percent of the floor area existing at the time of inclusion in the fire district by any type of construction permitted by this code.
10. Wood decks less than 600 square feet (56 m^2) where constructed of 2-inch (51 mm) nominal wood, pressure treated for exterior use.
11. Wood veneers on *exterior walls* conforming to Section 1405.5.
12. Exterior plastic veneer complying with Section 2605.2 where installed on exterior walls required to have a *fire-resistance rating* not less than 1 hour, provided the exterior plastic veneer does not exhibit sustained flaming as defined in NFPA 268.

`

SECTION D106
REFERENCED STANDARDS

ASTM E84—2013A	Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials	D102.2.8
NFPA 268—12	Test Method for Determining Ignitability of Exterior Wall Assemblies Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source	D105.1
NFPA 701—10	Methods of Fire Tests for Flame-Propagation of Textiles and Films	D102.2.8
UL 723—08	Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials, with Revisions through September 2010	D102.2.8

`

THIS APPENDIX IS NOT ADOPTED BY THE CITY OF BELLEVUE

APPENDIX E
SUPPLEMENTARY ACCESSIBILITY REQUIREMENTS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION E101
GENERAL

E101.1 Scope.
The provisions of this appendix shall control the supplementary requirements for the design and construction of facilities for *accessibility* for individuals with disabilities.

E101.2 Design.
Technical requirements for items herein shall comply with this code and ICC A117.1.

SECTION E102
DEFINITIONS

E102.1 General.
The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

CLOSED-CIRCUIT TELEPHONE. A telephone with a dedicated line such as a house phone, courtesy phone or phone that must be used to gain entrance to a facility.

MAILBOXES. Receptacles for the receipt of documents, packages or other deliverable matter. *Mailboxes* include, but are not limited to, post office boxes and receptacles provided by commercial mail-receiving agencies, apartment houses and schools.

TRANSIENT LODGING. A building, facility or portion thereof, excluding inpatient medical care facilities and longterm care facilities, that contains one or more *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*. Examples of *transient lodging* include, but are not limited to, resorts, group homes, hotels, motels, dormitories, homeless shelters, halfway houses and social service lodging.

SECTION E103
ACCESSIBLE ROUTE

E103.1 Raised platforms.
In banquet rooms or spaces where a head table or speaker's lectern is located on a raised platform, an *accessible* route shall be provided to the platform.

SECTION E104
SPECIAL OCCUPANCIES

E104.1 General.
Transient lodging facilities shall be provided with *accessible* features in accordance with Section

`

E104.2. Group I-3 occupancies shall be provided with *accessible* features in accordance with Section E104.2.

E104.2 Communication features.
Accessible communication features shall be provided in accordance with Sections E104.2.1 through E104.2.4.

E104.2.1 Transient lodging.
In *transient lodging* facilities, *sleeping units* with *accessible* communication features shall be provided in accordance with Table E104.2.1. Units required to comply with Table E104.2.1 shall be dispersed among the various classes of units.

TABLE E104.2.1
DWELLING OR SLEEPING UNITS WITH ACCESSIBLE COMMUNICATION FEATURES

TOTAL NUMBER OF DWELLING OR SLEEPING UNITS PROVIDED	MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF DWELLING OR SLEEPING UNITS WITH ACCESSIBLE COMMUNICATION FEATURES
1	1
2 to 25	2
26 to 50	4
51 to 75	7
76 to 100	9
101 to 150	12
151 to 200	14
201 to 300	17
301 to 400	20
401 to 500	22
501 to 1,000	5% of total
1,001 and over	50 plus 3 for each 100 over 1,000

E104.2.2 Group I-3.
In Group I-3 occupancies at least 2 percent, but no fewer than one of the total number of general holding cells and general housing cells equipped with audible *emergency alarm systems* and permanently installed telephones within the cell, shall comply with Section E104.2.4.

E104.2.3 Dwelling units and sleeping units.
Where *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* are altered or added, the requirements of Section E104.2 shall apply only to the units being altered or added until the number of units with *accessible* communication features complies with the minimum number required for new construction.

E104.2.4 Notification devices.
Visual notification devices shall be provided to alert room occupants of incoming telephone calls and a door knock or bell. Notification devices shall not be connected to visual alarm signal appliances. Permanently installed telephones shall have volume controls and an electrical outlet complying with ICC A117.1 located within 48 inches (1219 mm) of the telephone to facilitate the use of a TTY.

`

SECTION E105
OTHER FEATURES AND FACILITIES

E105.1 Portable toilets and bathing rooms.
Where multiple single-user portable toilet or bathing units are clustered at a single location, at least 5 percent, but not less than one toilet unit or bathing unit at each cluster, shall be *accessible*. Signs containing the International Symbol of Accessibility shall identify *accessible* portable toilets and bathing units.

> **Exception:** Portable toilet units provided for use exclusively by construction personnel on a construction site.

E105.2 Laundry equipment.
Where provided in spaces required to be *accessible*, washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with this section.

> **E105.2.1 Washing machines.**
> Where three or fewer washing machines are provided, at least one shall be *accessible*. Where more than three washing machines are provided, at least two shall be *accessible*.
>
> **E105.2.2 Clothes dryers.**
> Where three or fewer clothes dryers are provided, at least one shall be *accessible*. Where more than three clothes dryers are provided, at least two shall be *accessible*.

E105.3 Gaming machines, depositories, vending machines, change machines and similar equipment.
At least one of each type of depository, vending machine, change machine and similar equipment shall be *accessible*. Two percent of gaming machines shall be *accessible* and provided with a front approach. *Accessible* gaming machines shall be distributed throughout the different types of gaming machines provided.

> **Exception:** Drive-up-only depositories are not required to comply with this section.

E105.4 Mailboxes.
Where *mailboxes* are provided in an interior location, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of each type shall be *accessible*. In residential and institutional facilities, where *mailboxes* are provided for each *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit*, *accessible mailboxes* shall be provided for each unit required to be an *Accessible unit*.

E105.5 Automatic teller machines and fare machines.
Where automatic teller machines or self-service fare vending, collection or adjustment machines are provided, at least one machine of each type at each location where such machines are provided shall be *accessible*. Where bins are provided for envelopes, wastepaper or other purposes, at least one of each type shall be *accessible*.

E105.6 Two-way communication systems.
Where two-way communication systems are provided to gain admittance to a building or facility or to restricted areas within a building or facility, the system shall be *accessible*.

SECTION E106
TELEPHONES

E106.1 General.
Where coin-operated public pay telephones, coinless public pay telephones, public *closed-*

`

circuit telephones, courtesy phones or other types of public telephones are provided, *accessible* public telephones shall be provided in accordance with Sections E106.2 through E106.5 for each type of public telephone provided. For purposes of this section, a bank of telephones shall be considered two or more adjacent telephones.

E106.2 Wheelchair-accessible telephones.
Where public telephones are provided, wheelchair-accessible telephones shall be provided in accordance with Table E106.2.

Exception: Drive-up-only public telephones are not required to be *accessible*.

TABLE E106.2
WHEELCHAIR-ACCESSIBLE TELEPHONES

NUMBER OF TELEPHONES PROVIDED ON A FLOOR, LEVEL OR EXTERIOR SITE	MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF WHEELCHAIR-ACCESSIBLE TELEPHONES
1 or more single unit	1 per floor, level and exterior site
1 bank	1 per floor, level and exterior site
2 or more banks	1 per bank

E106.3 Volume controls.
All public telephones provided shall have *accessible* volume control.

E106.4 TTYs.
TTYs shall be provided in accordance with Sections E106.4.1 through E106.4.9.

E106.4.1 Bank requirement.
Where four or more public pay telephones are provided at a bank of telephones, at least one public TTY shall be provided at that bank.

Exception: TTYs are not required at banks of telephones located within 200 feet (60 960 mm) of, and on the same floor as, a bank containing a public TTY.

E106.4.2 Floor requirement.
Where four or more public pay telephones are provided on a floor of a privately owned building, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that floor. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided on a floor of a publicly owned building, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that floor.

E106.4.3 Building requirement.
Where four or more public pay telephones are provided in a privately owned building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the building. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided in a publicly owned building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the building.

E106.4.4 Site requirement.
Where four or more public pay telephones are provided on a site, at least one public TTY shall be provided on the site.

`

E106.4.5 Rest stops, emergency road stops and service plazas.
Where a public pay telephone is provided at a public rest stop, emergency road stop or service plaza, at least one public TTY shall be provided.

E106.4.6 Hospitals.
Where a public pay telephone is provided in or adjacent to a hospital emergency room, hospital recovery room or hospital waiting room, at least one public TTY shall be provided at each such location.

E106.4.7 Transportation facilities.
Transportation facilities shall be provided with TTYs in accordance with Sections E109.2.5 and E110.2 in addition to the TTYs required by Sections E106.4.1 through E106.4.4.

E106.4.8 Detention and correctional facilities.
In detention and correctional facilities, where a public pay telephone is provided in a secured area used only by detainees or inmates and security personnel, then at least one TTY shall be provided in at least one secured area.

E106.4.9 Signs.
Public TTYs shall be identified by the International Symbol of TTY complying with ICC A117.1. Directional signs indicating the location of the nearest public TTY shall be provided at banks of public pay telephones not containing a public TTY. Additionally, where signs provide direction to public pay telephones, they shall also provide direction to public TTYs. Such signs shall comply with visual signage requirements in ICC A117.1 and shall include the International Symbol of TTY.

E106.5 Shelves for portable TTYs.
Where a bank of telephones in the interior of a building consists of three or more public pay telephones, at least one public pay telephone at the bank shall be provided with a shelf and an electrical outlet.

Exceptions:

1. In secured areas of detention and correctional facilities, if shelves and outlets are prohibited for purposes of security or safety shelves and outlets for TTYs are not required to be provided.

2. The shelf and electrical outlet shall not be required at a bank of telephones with a TTY.

SECTION E107
SIGNAGE

E107.1 Signs.
Required *accessible* portable toilets and bathing facilities shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility.

E107.2 Designations.
Interior and exterior signs identifying permanent rooms and spaces shall be visual characters, raised characters and braille complying with ICC A117.1. Where pictograms are provided as designations of interior rooms and spaces, the pictograms shall have visual characters, raised characters and braille complying with ICC A117.1.

`

Exceptions:

1. Exterior signs that are not located at the door to the space they serve are not required to comply.

2. Building directories, menus, seat and row designations in assembly areas, occupant names, building addresses and company names and logos are not required to comply.

3. Signs in parking facilities are not required to comply.

4. Temporary (seven days or less) signs are not required to comply.

5. In detention and correctional facilities, signs not located in public areas are not required to comply.

E107.3 Directional and informational signs.
Signs that provide direction to, or information about, permanent interior spaces of the site and facilities shall contain visual characters complying with ICC A117.1.

Exception: Building directories, personnel names, company or occupant names and logos, menus and temporary (seven days or less) signs are not required to comply with ICC A117.1.

E107.4 Other signs.
Signage indicating special accessibility provisions shall be provided as follows:

1. At bus stops and terminals, signage must be provided in accordance with Section E108.4.

2. At fixed facilities and stations, signage must be provided in accordance with Sections E109.2.2 through E109.2.2.3.

3. At airports, terminal information systems must be provided in accordance with Section E110.3.

SECTION E108
BUS STOPS

E108.1 General.
Bus stops shall comply with Sections E108.2 through E108.5.

E108.2 Bus boarding and alighting areas.
Bus boarding and alighting areas shall comply with Sections E108.2.1 through E108.2.4.

E108.2.1 Surface.
Bus boarding and alighting areas shall have a firm, stable surface.

E108.2.2 Dimensions.
Bus boarding and alighting areas shall have a clear length of 96 inches (2440 mm)

`

minimum, measured perpendicular to the curb or vehicle roadway edge, and a clear width of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum, measured parallel to the vehicle roadway.

E108.2.3 Connection.
Bus boarding and alighting areas shall be connected to streets, sidewalks or pedestrian paths by an *accessible route* complying with Section 1104.

E108.2.4 Slope.
Parallel to the roadway, the slope of the bus boarding and alighting area shall be the same as the roadway, to the maximum extent practicable. For water drainage, a maximum slope of 1:48 perpendicular to the roadway is allowed.

E108.3 Bus shelters.
Where provided, new or replaced bus shelters shall provide a minimum clear floor or ground space complying with ICC A117.1, Section 305, entirely within the shelter. Such shelters shall be connected by an *accessible route* to the boarding area required by Section E108.2.

E108.4 Signs.
New bus route identification signs shall have finish and contrast complying with ICC A117.1. Additionally, to the maximum extent practicable, new bus route identification signs shall provide visual characters complying with ICC A117.1.

Exception: Bus schedules, timetables and maps that are posted at the bus stop or bus bay are not required to meet this requirement.

E108.5 Bus stop siting.
Bus stop sites shall be chosen such that, to the maximum extent practicable, the areas where lifts or ramps are to be deployed comply with Sections E108.2 and E108.3.

SECTION E109
TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES AND STATIONS

E109.1 General.
Fixed transportation facilities and stations shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section E109.2.

E109.2 New construction.
New stations in rapid rail, light rail, commuter rail, intercity rail, high speed rail and other fixed guideway systems shall comply with Sections E109.2.1 through E109.2.8.

E109.2.1 Station entrances.
Where different entrances to a station serve different transportation fixed routes or groups of fixed routes, at least one entrance serving each group or route shall comply with Section 1104.

E109.2.2 Signs.
Signage in fixed transportation facilities and stations shall comply with Sections E109.2.2.1 through E109.2.2.3.

E109.2.2.1 Raised character and braille signs.
Where signs are provided at entrances to stations identifying the station or the entrance, or both, at least one sign at each entrance shall be raised characters and braille. A minimum of one raised character and braille sign identifying the specific station shall be

provided on each platform or boarding area. Such signs shall be placed in uniform locations at entrances and on platforms or boarding areas within the transit system to the maximum extent practicable.

Exceptions:

1. Where the station has no defined entrance but signs are provided, the raised characters and braille signs shall be placed in a central location.

2. Signs are not required to be raised characters and braille where audible signs are remotely transmitted to hand-held receivers, or are user or proximity actuated.

E109.2.2.2 Identification signs.
Stations covered by this section shall have identification signs containing visual characters complying with ICC A117.1. Signs shall be clearly visible and within the sightlines of a standing or sitting passenger from within the train on both sides when not obstructed by another train.

E109.2.2.3 Informational signs.
Lists of stations, routes and destinations served by the station that are located on boarding areas, *platforms* or *mezzanines* shall provide visual characters complying with ICC A117.1. Signs covered by this provision shall, to the maximum extent practicable, be placed in uniform locations within the transit system.

E109.2.3 Fare machines.
Self-service fare vending, collection and adjustment machines shall comply with ICC A117.1, Section 707. Where self-service fare vending, collection or adjustment machines are provided for the use of the general public, at least one *accessible* machine of each type provided shall be provided at each *accessible* point of entry and *exit*.

E109.2.4 Rail-to-platform height.
Station platforms shall be positioned to coordinate with vehicles in accordance with the applicable provisions of 36 CFR, Part 1192. Low-level platforms shall be 8 inches (250 mm) minimum above top of rail.

Exception: Where vehicles are boarded from sidewalks or street level, low-level platforms shall be permitted to be less than 8 inches (250 mm).

E109.2.5 TTYs.
Where a public pay telephone is provided in a transit facility (as defined by the Department of Transportation), at least one public TTY complying with ICC A117.1, Section 704.4, shall be provided in the station. In addition, where one or more public pay telephones serve a particular entrance to a transportation facility, at least one TTY telephone complying with ICC A117.1, Section 704.4, shall be provided to serve that entrance.

E109.2.6 Track crossings.
Where a circulation path serving boarding platforms crosses tracks, an *accessible* route shall be provided.

Exception: Openings for wheel flanges shall be permitted to be $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches (64 mm) maximum.

`

E109.2.7 Public address systems.
Where public address systems convey audible information to the public, the same or equivalent information shall be provided in a visual format.

E109.2.8 Clocks.
Where clocks are provided for use by the general public, the clock face shall be uncluttered so that its elements are clearly visible. Hands, numerals and digits shall contrast with the background either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Where clocks are mounted overhead, numerals and digits shall comply with visual character requirements.

SECTION E110
AIRPORTS

E110.1 New construction.
New construction of airports shall comply with Sections E110.2 through E110.4.

E110.2 TTYs.
Where public pay telephones are provided, at least one TTY shall be provided in compliance with ICC A117.1, Section 704.4. Additionally, if four or more public pay telephones are located in a main terminal outside the security areas, a concourse within the security areas or a baggage claim area in a terminal, at least one public TTY complying with ICC A117.1, Section 704.4, shall also be provided in each such location.

E110.3 Terminal information systems.
Where terminal information systems convey audible information to the public, the same or equivalent information shall be provided in a visual format.

E110.4 Clocks.
Where clocks are provided for use by the general public, the clock face shall be uncluttered so that its elements are clearly visible. Hands, numerals and digits shall contrast with the background either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Where clocks are mounted overhead, numerals and digits shall comply with visual character requirements.

SECTION E111
REFERENCED STANDARDS

DOJ 36 CFR Part 1192	Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Transportation Vehicles (ADAAG). Washington, DC: Department of Justice, 1991	E109.2.4
IBC-15	*International Building Code*	E102.1
ICC A117.1-09	Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities	E101.2, E104.2.4, E106.4.9, E107.2, E107.3, E108.3, E108.4, E109.2.2.2, E109.2.2.3, E109.2.3, E109.2.5, E110.2

`

`

THIS APPENDIX IS NOT ADOPTED BY THE CITY OF BELLEVUE

APPENDIX F
RODENTPROOFING

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

User note: Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION F101
GENERAL

F101.1 General.
Buildings or structures and the walls enclosing habitable or occupiable rooms and spaces in which persons live, sleep or work, or in which feed, food or foodstuffs are stored, prepared, processed, served or sold, shall be constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section.

F101.2 Foundation wall ventilation openings.
Foundation wall ventilation openings shall be covered for their height and width with perforated sheet metal plates no less than 0.070 inch (1.8 mm) thick, expanded sheet metal plates not less than 0.047 inch (1.2 mm) thick, cast-iron grills or grating, extruded aluminum load-bearing vents or with hardware cloth of 0.035 inch (0.89 mm) wire or heavier. The openings therein shall not exceed $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm).

F101.3 Foundation and exterior wall sealing.
Annular spaces around pipes, electric cables, conduits or other openings in the walls shall be protected against the passage of rodents by closing such openings with cement mortar, concrete masonry or noncorrosive metal.

F101.4 Doors.
Doors on which metal protection has been applied shall be hinged so as to be free swinging. When closed, the maximum clearance between any door, door jambs and sills shall be not greater than $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm).

F101.5 Windows and other openings.
Windows and other openings for the purpose of light or ventilation located in exterior walls within 2 feet (610 mm) above the existing ground level immediately below such opening shall be covered for their entire height and width, including frame, with hardware cloth of at least 0.035-inch (0.89 mm) wire or heavier.

F101.5.1 Rodent-accessible openings.
Windows and other openings for the purpose of light and ventilation in the exterior walls not covered in this chapter, accessible to rodents by way of exposed pipes, wires, conduits and other appurtenances, shall be covered with wire cloth of at least 0.035-inch (0.89 mm) wire.

`

In lieu of wire cloth covering, said pipes, wires, conduits and other appurtenances shall be blocked from rodent usage by installing solid sheet metal guards 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick or heavier. Guards shall be fitted around pipes, wires, conduits or other appurtenances. In addition, they shall be fastened securely to and shall extend perpendicularly from the exterior wall for a minimum distance of 12 inches (305 mm) beyond and on either side of pipes, wires, conduits or appurtenances.

F101.6 Pier and wood construction.

F101.6.1 Sill less than 12 inches above ground.
Buildings not provided with a continuous foundation shall be provided with protection against rodents at grade by providing either an apron in accordance with Section F101.6.1.1 or a floor slab in accordance with Section F101.6.1.2.

F101.6.1.1 Apron.
Where an apron is provided, the apron shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above, nor less than 24 inches (610 mm) below, grade. The apron shall not terminate below the lower edge of the siding material. The apron shall be constructed of an approved nondecayable, water-resistant rodent-proofing material of required strength and shall be installed around the entire perimeter of the building. Where constructed of masonry or concrete materials, the apron shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness.

F101.6.1.2 Grade floors.
Where continuous concrete grade floor slabs are provided, open spaces shall not be left between the slab and walls, and openings in the slab shall be protected.

F101.6.2 Sill at or above 12 inches above ground.
Buildings not provided with a continuous foundation and that have sills 12 inches (305 mm) or more above ground level shall be provided with protection against rodents at grade in accordance with any of the following:

1. Section F101.6.1.1 or F101.6.1.2.

2. By installing solid sheet metal collars at least 0.024 inch (0.6 mm) thick at the top of each pier or pile and around each pipe, cable, conduit, wire or other item that provides a continuous pathway from the ground to the floor.

3. By encasing the pipes, cables, conduits or wires in an enclosure constructed in accordance with Section F101.6.1.1.

`

THIS APPENDIX IS NOT ADOPTED BY THE CITY OF BELLEVUE

APPENDIX G
FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

User note: Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION G101
ADMINISTRATION

G101.1 Purpose.
The purpose of this appendix is to promote the public health, safety and general welfare and to minimize public and private losses due to flood conditions in specific *flood hazard areas* through the establishment of comprehensive regulations for management of *flood hazard areas* designed to:

1. Prevent unnecessary disruption of commerce, access and public service during times of flooding.

2. Manage the alteration of natural flood plains, stream channels and shorelines.

3. Manage filling, grading, dredging and other development that may increase flood damage or erosion potential.

4. Prevent or regulate the construction of flood barriers that will divert floodwaters or that can increase flood hazards.

5. Contribute to improved construction techniques in the flood plain.

G101.2 Objectives.
The objectives of this appendix are to protect human life, minimize the expenditure of public money for flood control projects, minimize the need for rescue and relief efforts associated with flooding, minimize prolonged business interruption, minimize damage to public facilities and utilities, help maintain a stable tax base by providing for the sound use and development of flood-prone areas, contribute to improved construction techniques in the flood plain and ensure that potential owners and occupants are notified that property is within *flood hazard areas*.

G101.3 Scope.
The provisions of this appendix shall apply to all proposed development in a *flood hazard area* established in Section 1612 of this code, including certain building work exempt from permit under Section 105.2.

G101.4 Violations.
Any violation of a provision of this appendix, or failure to comply with a *permit* or variance issued

`

pursuant to this appendix or any requirement of this appendix, shall be handled in accordance with Section 114.

SECTION G102
APPLICABILITY

G102.1 General.
This appendix, in conjunction with this code, provides minimum requirements for development located in flood hazard areas, including:

1. The subdivision of land.
2. Site improvements and installation of utilities.
3. Placement and replacement of manufactured homes.
4. Placement of recreational vehicles.
5. New construction and repair, reconstruction, rehabilitation or additions to new construction.
6. Substantial improvement of existing buildings and structures, including restoration after damage.
7. Installation of tanks.
8. Temporary structures.
9. Temporary or permanent storage, utility and miscellaneous Group U buildings and structures.
10. Certain building work exempt from permit under Section 105.2 and other buildings and development activities.

G102.2 Establishment of flood hazard areas.
Flood hazard areas are established in Section 1612.3 of this code, adopted by the applicable governing authority on **[INSERT DATE]**.

SECTION G103
POWERS AND DUTIES

G103.1 Permit applications.
All applications for permits must comply with the following:

1. The *building official* shall review all *permit* applications to determine whether proposed development is located in *flood hazard areas* established in Section G102.2.
2. Where a proposed development site is in a *flood hazard area*, all development to which this appendix is applicable as specified in Section G102.1 shall be designed and constructed with methods, practices and materials that minimize *flood* damage and that are in accordance with this code and ASCE 24.

`

G103.2 Other permits.
It shall be the responsibility of the *building official* to ensure that approval of a proposed development shall not be given until proof that necessary permits have been granted by federal or state agencies having jurisdiction over such development.

G103.3 Determination of design flood elevations.
If design flood elevations are not specified, the *building official* is authorized to require the applicant to:

1. Obtain, review and reasonably utilize data available from a federal, state or other source; or

2. Determine the design flood elevation in accordance with accepted hydrologic and hydraulic engineering techniques. Such analyses shall be performed and sealed by a *registered design professional*. Studies, analyses and computations shall be submitted in sufficient detail to allow review and approval by the *building official*. The accuracy of data submitted for such determination shall be the responsibility of the applicant.

G103.4 Activities in riverine flood hazard areas.
In riverine *flood hazard areas* where design flood elevations are specified but *floodways* have not been designated, the *building official* shall not permit any new construction, substantial improvement or other development, including fill, unless the applicant submits an engineering analysis prepared by a *registered design professional*, demonstrating that the cumulative effect of the proposed development, when combined with all other existing and anticipated *flood hazard area* encroachment, will not increase the design flood elevation more than 1 foot (305 mm) at any point within the community.

G103.5 Floodway encroachment.
Prior to issuing a *permit* for any *floodway* encroachment, including fill, new construction, substantial improvements and other development or land-disturbing activity, the *building official* shall require submission of a certification, prepared by a r*egistered design professional*, along with supporting technical data, demonstrating that such development will not cause any increase of the base flood level.

G103.5.1 Floodway revisions.
A *floodway* encroachment that increases the level of the base flood is authorized if the applicant has applied for a conditional Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM) revision and has received the approval of the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA).

G103.6 Watercourse alteration.
Prior to issuing a *permit* for any alteration or relocation of any watercourse, the *building official* shall require the applicant to provide notification of the proposal to the appropriate authorities of all affected adjacent government jurisdictions, as well as appropriate state agencies. A copy of the notification shall be maintained in the permit records and submitted to FEMA.

G103.6.1 Engineering analysis.
The *building official* shall require submission of an engineering analysis, prepared by a *registered design professional*, demonstrating that the flood-carrying capacity of the altered or relocated portion of the watercourse will not be decreased. Such watercourses shall be maintained in a manner that preserves the channel's flood-carrying capacity.

G103.7 Alterations in coastal areas.
Prior to issuing a *permit* for any alteration of sand dunes and mangrove stands in coastal high-

`

hazard areas and coastal A zones, the *building official* shall require submission of an engineering analysis, prepared by a *registered design professional*, demonstrating that the proposed alteration will not increase the potential for flood damage.

G103.8 Records.
The *building official* shall maintain a permanent record of all *permits* issued in *flood hazard areas*, including copies of inspection reports and certifications required in Section 1612.

G103.9 Inspections.
Development for which a *permit* under this appendix is required shall be subject to inspection. The *building official* or the *building official's* designee shall make, or cause to be made, inspections of all development in *flood hazard areas* authorized by issuance of a *permit* under this appendix.

SECTION G104
PERMITS

G104.1 Required.
Any person, owner or owner's authorized agent who intends to conduct any development in a *flood hazard area* shall first make application to the *building official* and shall obtain the required *permit*.

G104.2 Application for permit.
The applicant shall file an application in writing on a form furnished by the *building official*. Such application shall:

1. Identify and describe the development to be covered by the *permit*.

2. Describe the land on which the proposed development is to be conducted by legal description, street address or similar description that will readily identify and definitely locate the site.

3. Include a site plan showing the delineation of *flood hazard areas*, *floodway* boundaries, flood zones, design flood elevations, ground elevations, proposed fill and excavation and drainage patterns and facilities.

4. Include in subdivision proposals and other proposed developments with more than 50 lots or larger than 5 acres (20 234 m^2), base flood elevation data in accordance with Section 1612.3.1 if such data are not identified for the *flood hazard areas* established in Section G102.2.

5. Indicate the use and occupancy for which the proposed development is intended.

6. Be accompanied by construction documents, grading and filling plans and other information deemed appropriate by the *building official*.

7. State the valuation of the proposed work.

8. Be signed by the applicant or the applicant's authorized agent.

G104.3 Validity of permit.
The issuance of a *permit* under this appendix shall not be construed to be a *permit* for, or

`

approval of, any violation of this appendix or any other ordinance of the jurisdiction. The issuance of a *permit* based on submitted documents and information shall not prevent the *building official* from requiring the correction of errors. The *building official* is authorized to prevent occupancy or use of a structure or site that is in violation of this appendix or other ordinances of this jurisdiction.

G104.4 Expiration.
A *permit* shall become invalid if the proposed development is not commenced within 180 days after its issuance, or if the work authorized is suspended or abandoned for a period of 180 days after the work commences. Extensions shall be requested in writing and justifiable cause demonstrated. The *building official* is authorized to grant, in writing, one or more extensions of time, for periods not more than 180 days each.

G104.5 Suspension or revocation.
The *building official* is authorized to suspend or revoke a *permit* issued under this appendix wherever the *permit* is issued in error or on the basis of incorrect, inaccurate or incomplete information, or in violation of any ordinance or code of this jurisdiction.

SECTION G105
VARIANCES

G105.1 General.
The *board of appeals* established pursuant to Section 113 shall hear and decide requests for variances. The *board of appeals* shall base its determination on technical justifications, and has the right to attach such conditions to variances as it deems necessary to further the purposes and objectives of this appendix and Section 1612.

G105.2 Records.
The *building official* shall maintain a permanent record of all variance actions, including justification for their issuance.

G105.3 Historic structures.
A variance is authorized to be issued for the repair or rehabilitation of a historic structure upon a determination that the proposed repair or rehabilitation will not preclude the structure's continued designation as a historic structure, and the variance is the minimum necessary to preserve the historic character and design of the structure.

> **Exception:** Within *flood hazard areas*, *historic structures* that do not meet one or more of the following designations:
>
> 1. Listed or preliminarily determined to be eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places.
>
> 2. Determined by the Secretary of the U.S. Department of Interior as contributing to the historical significance of a registered historic district or a district preliminarily determined to qualify as an historic district.
>
> 3. Designated as *historic* under a state or local historic preservation program that is approved by the Department of Interior.

G105.4 Functionally dependent facilities.
A variance is authorized to be issued for the construction or substantial improvement of a functionally dependent facility provided the criteria in Section 1612.1 are met and the variance is

`

the minimum necessary to allow the construction or substantial improvement, and that all due consideration has been given to methods and materials that minimize flood damages during the design flood and create no additional threats to public safety.

G105.5 Restrictions.
The *board of appeals* shall not issue a variance for any proposed development in a floodway if any increase in flood levels would result during the base flood discharge.

G105.6 Considerations.
In reviewing applications for variances, the *board of appeals* shall consider all technical evaluations, all relevant factors, all other portions of this appendix and the following:

1. The danger that materials and debris may be swept onto other lands resulting in further injury or damage.

2. The danger to life and property due to flooding or erosion damage.

3. The susceptibility of the proposed development, including contents, to flood damage and the effect of such damage on current and future owners.

4. The importance of the services provided by the proposed development to the community.

5. The availability of alternate locations for the proposed development that are not subject to flooding or erosion.

6. The compatibility of the proposed development with existing and anticipated development.

7. The relationship of the proposed development to the comprehensive plan and flood plain management program for that area.

8. The safety of access to the property in times of flood for ordinary and emergency vehicles.

9. The expected heights, velocity, duration, rate of rise and debris and sediment transport of the floodwaters and the effects of wave action, if applicable, expected at the site.

10. The costs of providing governmental services during and after flood conditions including maintenance and repair of public utilities and facilities such as sewer, gas, electrical and water systems, streets and bridges.

G105.7 Conditions for issuance.
Variances shall only be issued by the *board of appeals* where all of the following criteria are met:

1. A technical showing of good and sufficient cause that the unique characteristics of the size, configuration or topography of the site renders the elevation standards inappropriate.

2. A determination that failure to grant the variance would result in exceptional hardship by rendering the lot undevelopable.

`

3. A determination that the granting of a variance will not result in increased flood heights, additional threats to public safety, extraordinary public expense, nor create nuisances, cause fraud on or victimization of the public or conflict with existing local laws or ordinances.

4. A determination that the variance is the minimum necessary, considering the flood hazard, to afford relief.

5. Notification to the applicant in writing over the signature of the building official that the issuance of a variance to construct a structure below the base flood level will result in increased premium rates for flood insurance up to amounts as high as $25 for $100 of insurance coverage, and that such construction below the base flood level increases risks to life and property.

SECTION G201
DEFINITIONS

G201.1 General.
The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

G201.2 Definitions.

DEVELOPMENT. Any man-made change to improved or unimproved real estate, including but not limited to, buildings or other structures, temporary structures, temporary or permanent storage of materials, mining, dredging, filling, grading, paving, excavations, operations and other land-disturbing activities.

FUNCTIONALLY DEPENDENT FACILITY. A facility that cannot be used for its intended purpose unless it is located or carried out in close proximity to water, such as a docking or port facility necessary for the loading or unloading of cargo or passengers, shipbuilding or ship repair. The term does not include long-term storage, manufacture, sales or service facilities.

MANUFACTURED HOME. A structure that is transportable in one or more sections, built on a permanent chassis, designed for use with or without a permanent foundation when attached to the required utilities, and constructed to the Federal Mobile Home Construction and Safety Standards and rules and regulations promulgated by the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development. The term also includes mobile homes, park trailers, travel trailers and similar transportable structures that are placed on a site for 180 consecutive days or longer.

MANUFACTURED HOME PARK OR SUBDIVISION. A parcel (or contiguous parcels) of land divided into two or more manufactured home lots for rent or sale.

RECREATIONAL VEHICLE. A vehicle that is built on a single chassis, 400 square feet (37.16 m^2) or less when measured at the largest horizontal projection, designed to be selfpropelled or permanently towable by a light-duty truck, and designed primarily not for use as a permanent dwelling but as temporary living quarters for recreational, camping, travel or seasonal use. A recreational vehicle is ready for highway use if it is on its wheels or jacking system, is attached to the site only by quick disconnect-type utilities and security devices and has no permanently attached additions.

`

VARIANCE. A grant of relief from the requirements of this section that permits construction in a manner otherwise prohibited by this section where specific enforcement would result in unnecessary hardship.

VIOLATION. A development that is not fully compliant with this appendix or Section 1612, as applicable.

SECTION G301
SUBDIVISIONS

G301.1 General.
Any subdivision proposal, including proposals for manufactured home parks and subdivisions, or other proposed new development in a flood hazard area shall be reviewed to verify all of the following:

1. All such proposals are consistent with the need to minimize flood damage.

2. All public utilities and facilities, such as sewer, gas, electric and water systems, are located and constructed to minimize or eliminate flood damage.

3. Adequate drainage is provided to reduce exposure to flood hazards.

G301.2 Subdivision requirements.
The following requirements shall apply in the case of any proposed subdivision, including proposals for manufactured home parks and subdivisions, any portion of which lies within a *flood hazard area*:

1. The *flood hazard area*, including *floodways*, coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones, as appropriate, shall be delineated on tentative and final subdivision plats.

2. Design flood elevations shall be shown on tentative and final subdivision plats.

3. Residential building lots shall be provided with adequate buildable area outside the *floodway*.

4. The design criteria for utilities and facilities set forth in this appendix and appropriate International Codes shall be met.

SECTION G401
SITE IMPROVEMENT

G401.1 Development in floodways.
Development or land-disturbing activity shall not be authorized in the *floodway* unless it has been demonstrated through hydrologic and hydraulic analyses performed in accordance with standard engineering practice, and prepared by a *registered design professional*, that the proposed encroachment will not result in any increase in the base flood level.

G401.2 Coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones.
In coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones:

1. New buildings and buildings that are substantially improved shall only be authorized landward of the reach of mean high tide.

`

2. The use of fill for structural support of buildings is prohibited.

G401.3 Sewer facilities.
All new or replaced sanitary sewer facilities, private sewage treatment plants (including all pumping stations and collector systems) and on-site waste disposal systems shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 7, ASCE 24, to minimize or eliminate infiltration of flood waters into the facilities and discharge from the facilities into floodwaters, or impairment of the facilities and systems.

G401.4 Water facilities.
All new or replacement water facilities shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 7, ASCE 24, to minimize or eliminate infiltration of floodwaters into the systems.

G401.5 Storm drainage.
Storm drainage shall be designed to convey the flow of surface waters to minimize or eliminate damage to persons or property.

G401.6 Streets and sidewalks.
Streets and sidewalks shall be designed to minimize potential for increasing or aggravating flood levels.

SECTION G501
MANUFACTURED HOMES

G501.1 Elevation.
All new and replacement manufactured homes to be placed or substantially improved in a *flood hazard area* shall be elevated such that the lowest floor of the manufactured home is elevated to or above the design flood elevation.

G501.2 Foundations.
All new and replacement manufactured homes, including substantial improvement of existing manufactured homes, shall be placed on a permanent, reinforced foundation that is designed in accordance with Section R322 of the *International Residential Code*.

G501.3 Anchoring.
All new and replacement manufactured homes to be placed or substantially improved in a *flood hazard area* shall be installed using methods and practices that minimize flood damage. Manufactured homes shall be securely anchored to an adequately anchored foundation system to resist flotation, collapse and lateral movement. Methods of anchoring are authorized to include, but are not limited to, use of over-the-top or frame ties to ground anchors. This requirement is in addition to applicable state and local anchoring requirements for resisting wind forces.

G501.4 Protection of mechanical equipment and outside appliances.
Mechanical equipment and outside appliances shall be elevated to or above the *design flood elevation*.

> **Exception:** Where such equipment and appliances are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within their components and the systems are constructed to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to the elevation required by Section R322 of the *International Residential Code*, the systems and equipment shall be permitted to be

`

located below the elevation required by Section R322 of the *International Residential Code*. Electrical wiring systems shall be permitted below the *design flood elevation* provided they conform to the provisions of NFPA 70.

G501.5 Enclosures.
Fully enclosed areas below elevated manufactured homes shall comply with the requirements of Section R322 of the *International Residential Code*.

SECTION G601
RECREATIONAL VEHICLES

G601.1 Placement prohibited.
The placement of recreational vehicles shall not be authorized in coastal high-hazard areas and in *floodways*.

G601.2 Temporary placement.
Recreational vehicles in *flood hazard areas* shall be fully licensed and ready for highway use, and shall be placed on a site for less than 180 consecutive days.

G601.3 Permanent placement.
Recreational vehicles that are not fully licensed and ready for highway use, or that are to be placed on a site for more than 180 consecutive days, shall meet the requirements of Section G501 for manufactured homes.

SECTION G701
TANKS

G701.1 Tanks.
Underground and above-ground tanks shall be designed, constructed, installed and anchored in accordance with ASCE 24.

SECTION G801
OTHER BUILDING WORK

G801.1 Garages and accessory structures.
Garages and accessory structures shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 24.

G801.2 Fences.
Fences in floodways that may block the passage of floodwaters, such as stockade fences and wire mesh fences, shall meet the requirement of Section G103.5.

G801.3 Oil derricks.
Oil derricks located in *flood hazard areas* shall be designed in conformance with the flood loads in Sections 1603.1.7 and 1612.

G801.4 Retaining walls, sidewalks and driveways.
Retaining walls, sidewalks and driveways shall meet the requirements of Section 1804.5.

G801.5 Swimming pools.
Swimming pools shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 24. Above-ground swimming pools, on-ground swimming pools and in-ground swimming pools that involve placement of fill in *floodways* shall also meet the requirements of Section G103.5.

`

G801.6 Decks, porches, and patios.
Decks, porches and patios shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 24.

G801.7 Nonstructural concrete slabs in coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones.
In coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones, nonstructural concrete slabs used as parking pads, enclosure floors, landings, decks, walkways, patios and similar nonstructural uses are permitted beneath or adjacent to buildings and structures provided that the concrete slabs shall be constructed in accordance with ASCE 24.

G801.8 Roads and watercourse crossings in regulated floodways.
Roads and watercourse crossings that encroach into regulated *floodways*, including roads, bridges, culverts, low-water crossings and similar means for vehicles or pedestrians to travel from one side of a watercourse to the other, shall meet the requirement of Section G103.5.

SECTION G901
TEMPORARY STRUCTURES AND TEMPORARY STORAGE

G901.1 Temporary structures.
Temporary structures shall be erected for a period of less than 180 days. Temporary structures shall be anchored to prevent flotation, collapse or lateral movement resulting from hydrostatic loads, including the effects of buoyancy, during conditions of the design flood. Fully enclosed temporary structures shall have flood openings that are in accordance with ASCE 24 to allow for the automatic entry and exit of floodwaters.

G901.2 Temporary storage.
Temporary storage includes storage of goods and materials for a period of less than 180 days. Stored materials shall not include hazardous materials.

G901.3 Floodway encroachment.
Temporary structures and temporary storage in floodways shall meet the requirements of G103.5.

SECTION G1001
UTILITY AND MISCELLANEOUS GROUP U

G1001.1 Utility and miscellaneous Group U.
Utility and miscellaneous Group U includes buildings that are accessory in character and miscellaneous structures not classified in any specific occupancy in this code, including, but not limited to, agricultural buildings, aircraft hangars (accessory to a one- or two-family residence), barns, carports, fences more than 6 feet (1829 mm) high, grain silos (accessory to a residential occupancy), greenhouses, livestock shelters, private garages, retaining walls, sheds, stables and towers.

G1001.2 Flood loads.
Utility and miscellaneous Group U buildings and structures, including substantial improvement of such buildings and structures, shall be anchored to prevent flotation, collapse or lateral movement resulting from flood loads, including the effects of buoyancy, during conditions of the design flood.

G1001.3 Elevation.
Utility and miscellaneous Group U buildings and structures, including substantial improvement of such buildings and structures, shall be elevated such that the lowest floor, including

`

basement, is elevated to or above the design flood elevation in accordance with Section 1612 of this code.

G1001.4 Enclosures below design flood elevation.
Fully enclosed areas below the design flood elevation shall be constructed in accordance with ASCE 24.

G1001.5 Flood-damage-resistant materials.
Flood-damage-resistant materials shall be used below the design flood elevation.

G1001.6 Protection of mechanical, plumbing and electrical systems.
Mechanical, plumbing and electrical systems, including plumbing fixtures, shall be elevated to or above the design flood elevation.

> **Exception:** Electrical systems, equipment and components; heating, ventilating, air conditioning and plumbing appliances; plumbing fixtures, duct systems and other service equipment shall be permitted to be located below the design flood elevation provided that they are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the components and to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to the design flood elevation in compliance with the flood-resistant construction requirements of this code. Electrical wiring systems shall be permitted to be located below the design flood elevation provided they conform to the provisions of NFPA 70.

SECTION G1101
REFERENCED STANDARDS

ASCE 24—13	Flood Resistant Design and Construction	G103.1, G401.3, G401.4, G701.1, G801.1, G801.5, G801.6, G801.7, G901.1, G1001.4
HUD 24 CFR Part 3280 (2008)	Manufactured Home Construction and Safety Standards	G201
IBC—15	*International Building Code*	G102.2, G1001.1, G1001.3
IRC—15	*International Residential Code*	G501.2, G501.4, G501.5
NFPA 70—11	*National Electrical Code*	G501.4, G1001.6

`

THIS APPENDIX IS NOT ADOPTED BY THE CITY OF BELLEVUE

APPENDIX H
SIGNS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

User note: Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION H101
GENERAL

H101.1 General.
A sign shall not be erected in a manner that would confuse or obstruct the view of or interfere with exit signs required by Chapter 10 or with official traffic signs, signals or devices. Signs and sign support structures, together with their supports, braces, guys and anchors, shall be kept in repair and in proper state of preservation. The display surfaces of signs shall be kept neatly painted or posted at all times.

H101.2 Signs exempt from permits.
The following signs are exempt from the requirements to obtain a *permit* before erection:

1. Painted nonilluminated signs.
2. Temporary signs announcing the sale or rent of property.
3. Signs erected by transportation authorities.
4. Projecting signs not exceeding 2.5 square feet (0.23 m^2).
5. The changing of moveable parts of an approved sign that is designed for such changes, or the repainting or repositioning of display matter shall not be deemed an alteration.

SECTION H102
DEFINITIONS

H102.1 General.
The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

COMBINATION SIGN. A sign incorporating any combination of the features of pole, projecting and roof signs.

DISPLAY SIGN. The area made available by the sign structure for the purpose of displaying the advertising message.

`

ELECTRIC SIGN. A sign containing electrical wiring, but not including signs illuminated by an exterior light source.

GROUND SIGN. A billboard or similar type of sign that is supported by one or more uprights, poles or braces in or upon the ground other than a combination sign or pole sign, as defined by this code.

POLE SIGN. A sign wholly supported by a sign structure in the ground.

PORTABLE DISPLAY SURFACE. A display surface temporarily fixed to a standardized advertising structure that is regularly moved from structure to structure at periodic intervals.

PROJECTING SIGN. A sign other than a wall sign that projects from and is supported by a wall of a building or structure.

ROOF SIGN. A sign erected on or above a roof or parapet of a building or structure.

SIGN. Any letter, figure, character, mark, plane, point, marquee sign, design, poster, pictorial, picture, stroke, stripe, line, trademark, reading matter or illuminated service, which shall be constructed, placed, attached, painted, erected, fastened or manufactured in any manner whatsoever, so that the same shall be used for the attraction of the public to any place, subject, person, firm, corporation, public performance, article, machine or merchandise, whatsoever, which is displayed in any manner outdoors. Every sign shall be classified and conform to the requirements of that classification as set forth in this chapter.

SIGN STRUCTURE. Any structure that supports or is capable of supporting a sign as defined in this code. A sign structure is permitted to be a single pole and is not required to be an integral part of the building.

WALL SIGN. Any sign attached to or erected against the wall of a building or structure, with the exposed face of the sign in a plane parallel to the plane of said wall.

SECTION H103
LOCATION

H103.1 Location restrictions.
Signs shall not be erected, constructed or maintained so as to obstruct any fire escape or any window or door or opening used as a *means of egress* or so as to prevent free passage from one part of a roof to any other part thereof. A sign shall not be attached in any form, shape or manner to a fire escape, nor be placed in such manner as to interfere with any opening required for ventilation.

SECTION H104
IDENTIFICATION

H104.1 Identification.
Every outdoor advertising display sign hereafter erected, constructed or maintained, for which a permit is required, shall be plainly marked with the name of the person, firm or corporation erecting and maintaining such sign and shall have affixed on the front thereof the permit number issued for said sign or other method of identification *approved* by the *building official*.

`

SECTION H105
DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

H105.1 General requirements.
Signs shall be designed and constructed to comply with the provisions of this code for use of materials, loads and stresses.

H105.2 Permits, drawings and specifications.
Where a permit is required, as provided in Chapter 1, construction documents shall be required. These documents shall show the dimensions, material and required details of construction, including loads, stresses and anchors.

H105.3 Wind load.
Signs shall be designed and constructed to withstand wind pressure as provided for in Chapter 16.

H105.4 Seismic load.
Signs designed to withstand wind pressures shall be considered capable of withstanding earthquake loads, except as provided for in Chapter 16.

H105.5 Working stresses.
In outdoor advertising display signs, the allowable working stresses shall conform to the requirements of Chapter 16. The working stresses of wire rope and its fastenings shall not exceed 25 percent of the ultimate strength of the rope or fasteners.

Exceptions:

1. The allowable working stresses for steel and wood shall be in accordance with the provisions of Chapters 22 and 23.

2. The working strength of chains, cables, guys or steel rods shall not exceed one-fifth of the ultimate strength of such chains, cables, guys or steel.

H105.6 Attachment.
Signs attached to masonry, concrete or steel shall be safely and securely fastened by means of metal anchors, bolts or approved expansion screws of sufficient size and anchorage to safely support the loads applied.

SECTION H106
ELECTRICAL

H106.1 Illumination.
A sign shall not be illuminated by other than electrical means, and electrical devices and wiring shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 70. Any open spark or flame shall not be used for display purposes unless specifically approved.

H106.1.1 Internally illuminated signs.
Except as provided for in Sections 402.16 and 2611, where internally illuminated signs have facings of wood or approved plastic, the area of such facing section shall be not more than 120 square feet (11.16 m^2) and the wiring for electric lighting shall be entirely enclosed in the sign cabinet with a clearance of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from the facing material. The dimensional limitation of 120 square feet (11.16 m^2) shall not apply to sign facing

`

sections made from flame-resistant-coated fabric (ordinarily known as “flexible sign face plastic”) that weighs less than 20 ounces per square yard (678 g/m^2) and that, when tested in accordance with NFPA 701, meets the fire propagation performance requirements of both Test 1 and Test 2 or that, when tested in accordance with an approved test method, exhibits an average burn time of 2 seconds or less and a burning extent of 5.9 inches (150 mm) or less for 10 specimens.

H106.2 Electrical service.
Signs that require electrical service shall comply with NFPA 70.

SECTION H107
COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS

H107.1 Use of combustibles.
Wood, approved plastic or plastic veneer panels as provided for in Chapter 26, or other materials of combustible characteristics similar to wood, used for moldings, cappings, nailing blocks, letters and latticing, shall comply with Section H109.1 and shall not be used for other ornamental features of signs, unless approved.

H107.1.1 Plastic materials.
Notwithstanding any other provisions of this code, plastic materials that burn at a rate no faster than 2.5 inches per minute (64 mm/s) when tested in accordance with ASTM D635 shall be deemed approved plastics and can be used as the display surface material and for the letters, decorations and facings on signs and outdoor display structures.

H107.1.2 Electric sign faces.
Individual plastic facings of electric signs shall not exceed 200 square feet (18.6 m^2) in area.

H107.1.3 Area limitation.
If the area of a display surface exceeds 200 square feet (18.6 m^2), the area occupied or covered by approved plastics shall be limited to 200 square feet (18.6 m^2) plus 50 percent of the difference between 200 square feet (18.6 m^2) and the area of display surface. The area of plastic on a display surface shall not in any case exceed 1,100 square feet (102 m^2).

H107.1.4 Plastic appurtenances.
Letters and decorations mounted on an approved plastic facing or display surface can be made of approved plastics.

SECTION H108
ANIMATED DEVICES

H108.1 Fail-safe device.
Signs that contain moving sections or ornaments shall have fail-safe provisions to prevent the section or ornament from releasing and falling or shifting its center of gravity more than 15 inches (381 mm). The fail-safe device shall be in addition to the mechanism and the mechanism’s housing that operate the movable section or ornament. The fail-safe device shall be capable of supporting the full dead weight of the section or ornament when the moving mechanism releases.

`

SECTION H109
GROUND SIGNS

H109.1 Height restrictions.
The structural frame of ground signs shall not be erected of combustible materials to a height of more than 35 feet (10 668 mm) above the ground. Ground signs constructed entirely of noncombustible material shall not be erected to a height of greater than 100 feet (30 480 mm) above the ground. Greater heights are permitted where approved and located so as not to create a hazard or danger to the public.

H109.2 Required clearance.
The bottom coping of every ground sign shall be not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above the ground or street level, which space can be filled with platform
decorative trim or light wooden construction.

H109.3 Wood anchors and supports.
Where wood anchors or supports are embedded in the soil, the wood shall be pressure treated with an approved preservative.

SECTION H110
ROOF SIGNS

H110.1 General.
Roof signs shall be constructed entirely of metal or other approved noncombustible material except as provided for in Sections H106.1.1 and H107.1. Provisions shall be made for electric grounding of metallic parts. Where combustible materials are permitted in letters or other ornamental features, wiring and tubing shall be kept free and insulated therefrom. Roof signs shall be so constructed as to leave a clear space of not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) between the roof level and the lowest part of the sign and shall have at least 5 feet (1524 mm) clearance between the vertical supports thereof. No portion of any roof sign structure shall project beyond an exterior wall.

Exception: Signs on flat roofs with every part of the roof accessible.

H110.2 Bearing plates.
The bearing plates of roof signs shall distribute the load directly to or upon masonry walls, steel roof girders, columns or beams. The building shall be designed to avoid overstress of these members.

H110.3 Height of solid signs.
A roof sign having a solid surface shall not exceed, at any point, a height of 24 feet (7315 mm) measured from the roof surface.

H110.4 Height of open signs.
Open roof signs in which the uniform open area is not less than 40 percent of total gross area shall not exceed a height of 75 feet (22 860 mm) on buildings of Type 1 or Type 2 construction. On buildings of other construction types, the height shall not exceed 40 feet (12 192 mm). Such signs shall be thoroughly secured to the building upon which they are installed, erected or constructed by iron, metal anchors, bolts, supports, chains, stranded cables, steel rods or braces and they shall be maintained in
good condition.

`

H110.5 Height of closed signs.
A closed roof sign shall not be erected to a height greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) above the roof of buildings of Type 1 or Type 2 construction or more than 35 feet (10 668 mm) above the roof of buildings of Type 3, 4 or 5 construction.

SECTION H111
WALL SIGNS

H111.1 Materials.

Wall signs that have an area exceeding 40 square feet (3.72 m^2) shall be constructed of metal or other approved noncombustible material, except for nailing rails and as provided for in Sections H106.1.1 and H107.1.

H111.2 Exterior wall mounting details.
Wall signs attached to *exterior walls* of solid masonry, concrete or stone shall be safely and securely attached by means of metal anchors, bolts or expansion screws of not less than $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) diameter and shall be embedded at least 5 inches (127 mm). Wood blocks shall not be used for anchorage, except in the case of wall signs attached to buildings with walls of wood. A wall sign shall not be supported by anchorages secured to an unbraced parapet wall.

H111.3 Extension.
Wall signs shall not extend above the top of the wall or beyond the ends of the wall to which the signs are attached unless such signs conform to the requirements for roof signs, projecting signs or ground signs.

SECTION H112
PROJECTING SIGNS

H112.1 General.
Projecting signs shall be constructed entirely of metal or other noncombustible material and securely attached to a building or structure by metal supports such as bolts, anchors, supports, chains, guys or steel rods. Staples or nails shall not be used to secure any projecting sign to any building or structure. The *dead load* of projecting signs not parallel to the building or structure and the load due to wind pressure shall be supported with chains, guys or steel rods having net cross-sectional dimension of not less than $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) diameter. Such supports shall be erected or maintained at an angle of at least 45 percent (0.78 rad) with the horizontal to resist the *dead load* and at angle of 45 percent (0.78 rad) or more with the face of the sign to resist the specified wind pressure. If such projecting sign exceeds 30 square feet (2.8 m^2) in one facial area, there shall be provided at least two such supports on each side not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) apart to resist the wind pressure.

H112.2 Attachment of supports.
Supports shall be secured to a bolt or expansion screw that will develop the strength of the supporting chains, guys or steel rods, with a minimum $^5/_8$-inch (15.9 mm) bolt or lag screw, by an expansion shield. Turnbuckles shall be placed in chains, guys or steel rods supporting projecting signs.

H112.3 Wall mounting details.
Chains, cables, guys or steel rods used to support the live or dead load of projecting signs are

`

permitted to be fastened to solid masonry walls with expansion bolts or by machine screws in iron supports, but such supports shall not be attached to an unbraced parapet wall. Where the supports must be fastened to walls made of wood, the supporting anchor bolts must go through the wall and be plated or fastened on the inside in a secure manner.

H112.4 Height limitation.
A projecting sign shall not be erected on the wall of any building so as to project above the roof or cornice wall or above the roof level where there is no cornice wall; except that a sign erected at a right angle to the building, the horizontal width of which sign is perpendicular to such a wall and does not exceed 18 inches (457 mm), is permitted to be erected to a height not exceeding 2 feet (610 mm) above the roof or cornice wall or above the roof level where there is no cornice wall. A sign attached to a corner of a building and parallel to the vertical line of such corner shall be deemed to be erected at a right angle to the building wall.

H112.5 Additional loads.
Projecting sign structures that will be used to support an individual on a ladder or other servicing device, whether or not specifically designed for the servicing device, shall be capable of supporting the anticipated additional load, but not less than a 100-pound (445 N) concentrated horizontal load and a 300-pound (1334 N) concentrated vertical load applied at the point of assumed or most eccentric loading. The building component to which the projecting sign is attached shall also be designed to support the additional loads.

SECTION H113
MARQUEE SIGNS

H113.1 Materials.
Marquee signs shall be constructed entirely of metal or other approved noncombustible material except as provided for in Sections H106.1.1 and H107.1.

H113.2 Attachment.
Marquee signs shall be attached to approved marquees that are constructed in accordance with Section 3106.

H113.3 Dimensions.
Marquee signs, whether on the front or side, shall not project beyond the perimeter of the marquee.

H113.4 Height limitation.
Marquee signs shall not extend more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above, nor 1 foot (305 mm) below such marquee, but under no circumstances shall the sign or signs have a vertical dimension greater than 8 feet (2438 mm).

SECTION H114
PORTABLE SIGNS

H114.1 General.
Portable signs shall conform to requirements for ground, roof, projecting, flat and temporary signs where such signs are used in a similar capacity. The requirements of this section shall not be construed to require portable signs to have connections to surfaces, tie-downs or foundations where provisions are made by temporary means or configuration of the structure to provide stability for the expected duration of the installation.

`

TABLE 4-A
SIZE, THICKNESS AND TYPE OF GLASS PANELS IN SIGNS

MAXIMUM SIZE OF EXPOSED PANEL		MINIMUM THICKNESS OF GLASS (inches)	TYPE OF GLASS
Any dimension (inches)	Area (square inches)		
30	500	1/8	Plain, plate or wired
45	700	3/16	Plain, plate or wired
144	3,600	1/4	Plain, plate or wired
>144	> 3,600	1/4	Wired glass

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2.

TABLE 4-B
THICKNESS OF PROJECTION SIGN

PROJECTION (feet)	MAXIMUM THICKNESS (feet)
5	2
4	2.5
3	3
2	3.5
1	4

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

SECTION H115
REFERENCED STANDARDS

ASTM D635—10	Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Plastics in a Horizontal Position	H107.1.1
NFPA 70—11	National Electrical Code	H106.1, H106.2
NFPA 701—10	Methods of Fire Test for Flame Propagation of Textiles and Films	H106.1.1

`

THIS APPENDIX IS NOT ADOPTED BY THE CITY OF BELLEVUE

APPENDIX I
PATIO COVERS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

User note: Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION I101
GENERAL

I101.1 General.
Patio covers shall be permitted to be detached from or attached to *dwelling units*. Patio covers shall be used only for recreational, outdoor living purposes and not as carports, garages, storage rooms or habitable rooms.

SECTION I102
DEFINITION

I102.1 General.
The following term shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meaning shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

PATIO COVER. A structure with open or glazed walls that is used for recreational, outdoor living purposes associated with a *dwelling unit.*

SECTION I103
EXTERIOR WALLS AND OPENINGS

I103.1 Enclosure walls.
Enclosure walls shall be permitted to be of any configuration, provided the open or glazed area of the longer wall and one additional wall is equal to at least 65 percent of the area below a minimum of 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) of each wall, measured from the floor. Openings shall be permitted to be enclosed with insect screening, approved translucent or transparent plastic not more than 0.125 inch (3.2 mm) in thickness, glass conforming to the provisions of Chapter 24 or any combination of the foregoing.

I103.2 Light, ventilation and emergency egress.
Exterior openings of the *dwelling unit* required for light and ventilation shall be permitted to open into a patio structure. However, the patio structure shall be unenclosed if such openings are serving as emergency egress or rescue openings from sleeping rooms. Where such exterior openings serve as an exit from the dwelling unit, the patio structure, unless unenclosed, shall be provided with exits conforming to the provision of Chapter 10.

`

SECTION I104
HEIGHT

I104.1 Height.
Patio covers shall be limited to one-story structures not more than 12 feet (3657 mm) in height.

SECTION I105
STRUCTURAL PROVISIONS

I105.1 Design loads.
Patio covers shall be designed and constructed to sustain, within the stress limits of this code, all *dead loads* plus a minimum vertical live load of 10 pounds per square foot (0.48 kN/m^2) except that snow loads shall be used where such snow loads exceed this minimum. Such patio covers shall be designed to resist the minimum wind and seismic loads set forth in this code.

I105.2 Footings.
In areas with a frost depth of zero, a patio cover shall be permitted to be supported on a concrete slab on grade without footings, provided the slab conforms to the provisions of Chapter 19 of this code, is not less than $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm) thick and further provided that the columns do not support loads in excess of 750 pounds (3.36 kN) per column.

`

THIS APPENDIX IS NOT ADOPTED BY THE CITY OF BELLEVUE

APPENDIX J
GRADING

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

User note: Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION J101
GENERAL

J101.1 Scope.
The provisions of this chapter apply to grading, excavation and earthwork construction, including fills and embankments. Where conflicts occur between the technical requirements of this chapter and the geotechnical report, the geotechnical report shall govern.

J101.2 Flood hazard areas.
Unless the applicant has submitted an engineering analysis, prepared in accordance with standard engineering practice by a *registered design professional,* that demonstrates the proposed work will not result in any increase in the level of the base flood, grading, excavation and earthwork construction, including fills and embankments, shall not be permitted in *floodways* that are in *flood hazard areas* established in Section 1612.3 or in *flood hazard areas* where design flood elevations are specified but *floodways* have not been designated.

SECTION J102
DEFINITIONS

J102.1 Definitions.
The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

BENCH. A relatively level step excavated into earth material on which fill is to be placed.

COMPACTION. The densification of a fill by mechanical means.

CUT. See “Excavation.”

DOWN DRAIN. A device for collecting water from a swale or ditch located on or above a slope, and safely delivering it to an approved drainage facility.

EROSION. The wearing away of the ground surface as a result of the movement of wind, water or ice.

EXCAVATION. The removal of earth material by artificial means, also referred to as a cut.

`

FILL. Deposition of earth materials by artificial means.

GRADE. The vertical location of the ground surface.

GRADE, EXISTING. The grade prior to grading.

GRADE, FINISHED. The grade of the site at the conclusion of all grading efforts.

GRADING. An excavation or fill or combination thereof.

KEY. A compacted fill placed in a trench excavated in earth material beneath the toe of a slope.

SLOPE. An inclined surface, the inclination of which is expressed as a ratio of horizontal distance to vertical distance.

TERRACE. A relatively level step constructed in the face of a graded slope for drainage and maintenance purposes.

SECTION J103
PERMITS REQUIRED

J103.1 Permits required.
Except as exempted in Section J103.2, no grading shall be performed without first having obtained a *permit* therefor from the *building official*. A grading *permit* does not include the construction of retaining walls or other structures.

J103.2 Exemptions.
A grading *permit* shall not be required for the following:

1. Grading in an isolated, self-contained area, provided there is no danger to the public and that such grading will not adversely affect adjoining properties.

2. Excavation for construction of a structure permitted under this code.

3. Cemetery graves.

4. Refuse disposal sites controlled by other regulations.

5. Excavations for wells, or trenches for utilities.

6. Mining, quarrying, excavating, processing or stockpiling rock, sand, gravel, aggregate or clay controlled by other regulations, provided such operations do not affect the lateral support of, or significantly increase stresses in, soil on adjoining properties.

7. Exploratory excavations performed under the direction of a *registered design professional.*

Exemption from the *permit* requirements of this appendix shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in any manner in violation of the provisions of this code or any other laws or ordinances of this jurisdiction.

`

SECTION J104
PERMIT APPLICATION AND SUBMITTALS

J104.1 Submittal requirements.
In addition to the provisions of Section 105.3, the applicant shall state the estimated quantities of excavation and fill.

J104.2 Site plan requirements.
In addition to the provisions of Section 107, a grading plan shall show the existing grade and finished grade in contour intervals of sufficient clarity to indicate the nature and extent of the work and show in detail that it complies with the requirements of this code. The plans shall show the existing grade on adjoining properties in sufficient detail to identify how grade changes will conform to the requirements of this code.

J104.3 Geotechnical report.
A geotechnical report prepared by a *registered design professional* shall be provided. The report shall contain at least the following:

1. The nature and distribution of existing soils.

2. Conclusions and recommendations for grading procedures.

3. Soil design criteria for any structures or embankments required to accomplish the proposed grading.

4. Where necessary, slope stability studies, and recommendations and conclusions regarding site geology.

Exception: A geotechnical report is not required where the *building official* determines that the nature of the work applied for is such that a report is not necessary.

J104.4 Liquefaction study.
For sites with mapped maximum considered earthquake spectral response accelerations at short periods (S_s) greater than 0.5g as determined by Section 1613, a study of the liquefaction potential of the site shall be provided and the recommendations incorporated in the plans.

Exception: A liquefaction study is not required where the *building official* determines from established local data that the liquefaction potential is low.

SECTION J105
INSPECTIONS

J105.1 General.
Inspections shall be governed by Section 110 of this code.

J105.2 Special inspections.
The *special inspection* requirements of Section 1705.6 shall apply to work performed under a grading permit where required by the *building official*.

SECTION J106
EXCAVATIONS

`

J106.1 Maximum slope.
The slope of cut surfaces shall be no steeper than is safe for the intended use, and shall be not more than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope) unless the owner or the owner's authorized agent furnishes a geotechnical report justifying a steeper slope.

Exceptions:

1. A cut surface shall be permitted to be at a slope of 1.5 units horizontal to one unit vertical (67-percent slope) provided that all of the following are met:

    1.1. It is not intended to support structures or surcharges.

    1.2. It is adequately protected against erosion.

    1.3. It is no more than 8 feet (2438 mm) in height.

    1.4. It is approved by the building code official.

    1.5. Ground water is not encountered.

2. A cut surface in bedrock shall be permitted to be at a slope of one unit horizontal to one unit vertical (100-percent slope).

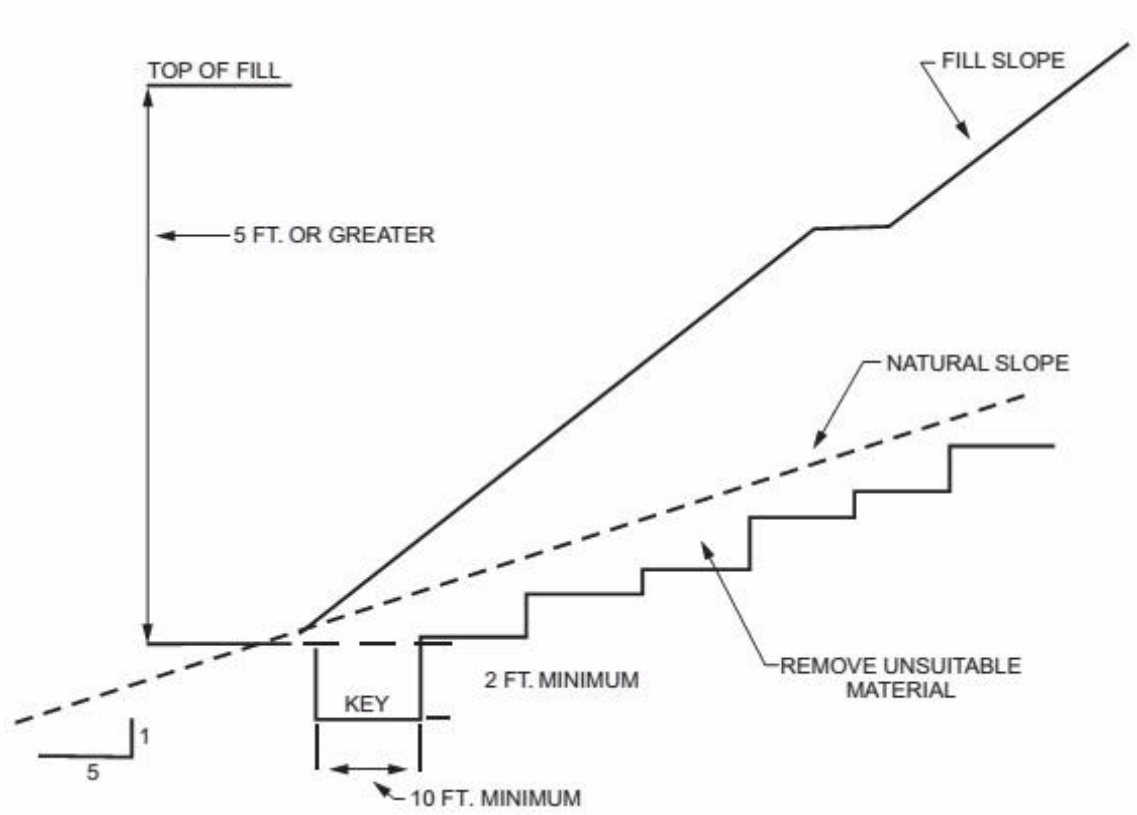
SECTION J107
FILLS

J107.1 General.
Unless otherwise recommended in the geotechnical report, fills shall comply with the provisions of this section.

J107.2 Surface preparation.
The ground surface shall be prepared to receive fill by removing vegetation, topsoil and other unsuitable materials, and scarifying the ground to provide a bond with the fill material.

J107.3 Benching.
Where existing grade is at a slope steeper than one unit vertical in five units horizontal (20-percent slope) and the depth of the fill exceeds 5 feet (1524 mm) benching shall be provided in accordance with Figure J107.3. A key shall be provided that is at least 10 feet (3048 mm) in width and 2 feet (610 mm) in depth.

`



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE J107.3
BENCHING DETAILS

J107.4 Fill material.
Fill material shall not include organic, frozen or other deleterious materials. No rock or similar irreducible material greater than 12 inches (305 mm) in any dimension shall be included in fills.

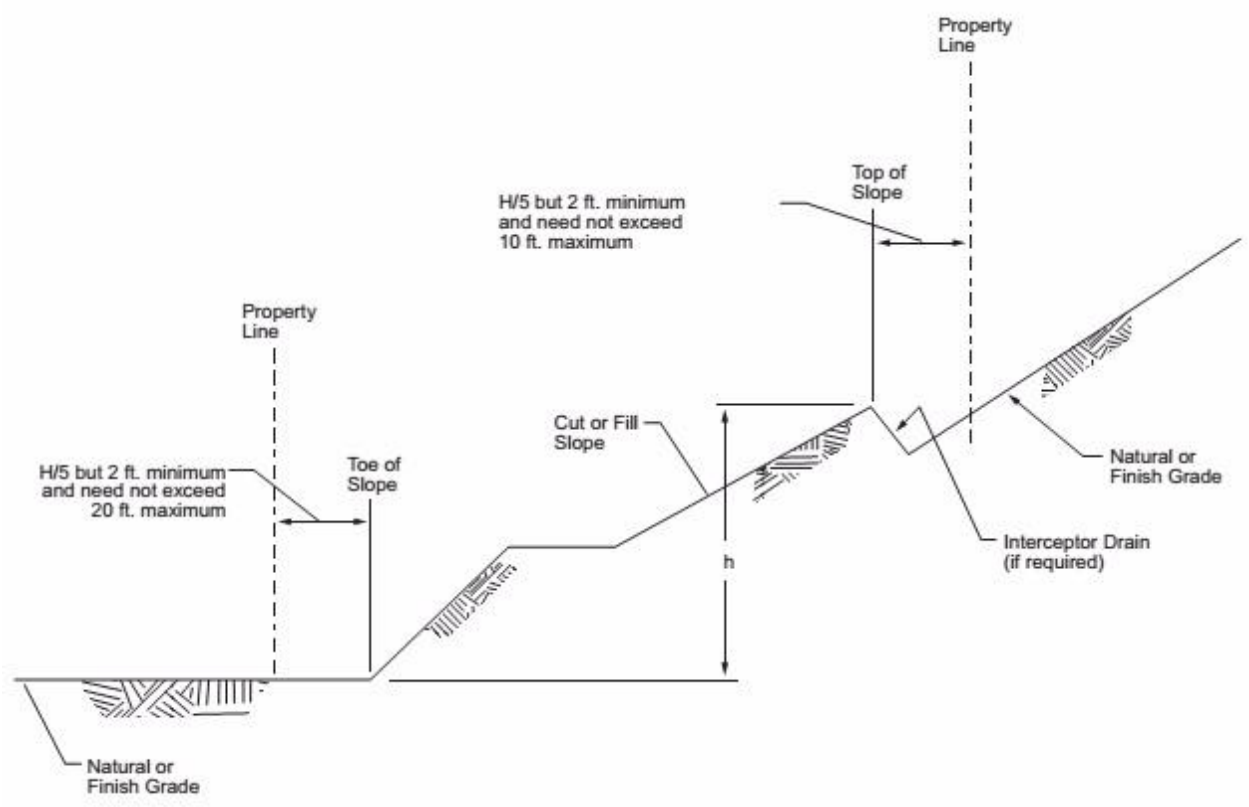
J107.5 Compaction.
All fill material shall be compacted to 90 percent of maximum density as determined by ASTM D1557, Modified Proctor, in lifts not exceeding 12 inches (305 mm) in depth.

J107.6 Maximum slope.
The slope of fill surfaces shall be no steeper than is safe for the intended use. Fill slopes steeper than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope) shall be justified by a geotechnical report or engineering data.

SECTION J108
SETBACKS

J108.1 General.
Cut and fill slopes shall be set back from the property lines in accordance with this section. Setback dimensions shall be measured perpendicular to the property line and shall be as shown in Figure J108.1, unless substantiating data is submitted justifying reduced setbacks.

`



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE J108.1
DRAINAGE DIMENSIONS

J108.2 Top of slope.
The setback at the top of a cut slope shall be not less than that shown in Figure J108.1, or than is required to accommodate any required interceptor drains, whichever is greater.

J108.3 Slope protection.
Where required to protect adjacent properties at the toe of a slope from adverse effects of the grading, additional protection, approved by the *building official*, shall be included. Such protection may include but shall not be limited to:

1. Setbacks greater than those required by Figure J108.1.

2. Provisions for retaining walls or similar construction.

3. Erosion protection of the fill slopes.

4. Provision for the control of surface waters.

SECTION J109
DRAINAGE AND TERRACING

`

J109.1 General.
Unless otherwise recommended by a *registered design professional*, drainage facilities and terracing shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of this section.

Exception: Drainage facilities and terracing need not be provided where the ground slope is not steeper than one unit vertical in three units horizontal (33-percent slope).

J109.2 Terraces.
Terraces at least 6 feet (1829 mm) in width shall be established at not more than 30-foot (9144 mm) vertical intervals on all cut or fill slopes to control surface drainage and debris. Suitable access shall be provided to allow for cleaning and maintenance.

Where more than two terraces are required, one terrace, located at approximately mid-height, shall be at least 12 feet (3658 mm) in width.

Swales or ditches shall be provided on terraces. They shall have a minimum gradient of one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope) and shall be paved with concrete not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in thickness, or with other materials suitable to the application. They shall have a depth not less than 12 inches (305 mm) and a width not less than 5 feet (1524 mm).

A single run of swale or ditch shall not collect runoff from a tributary area exceeding 13,500 square feet (1256 m^2) (projected) without discharging into a down drain.

J109.3 Interceptor drains.
Interceptor drains shall be installed along the top of cut slopes receiving drainage from a tributary width greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm), measured horizontally. They shall have a minimum depth of 1 foot (305 mm) and a minimum width of 3 feet (915 mm). The slope shall be approved by the *building official*, but shall be not less than one unit vertical in 50 units horizontal (2-percent slope). The drain shall be paved with concrete not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in thickness, or by other materials suitable to the application. Discharge from the drain shall be accomplished in a manner to prevent erosion and shall be approved by the *building official*.

J109.4 Drainage across property lines.
Drainage across property lines shall not exceed that which existed prior to grading. Excess or concentrated drainage shall be contained on site or directed to an approved drainage facility. Erosion of the ground in the area of discharge shall be prevented by installation of nonerosive down drains or other devices.

SECTION J110
EROSION CONTROL

J110.1 General.
The faces of cut and fill slopes shall be prepared and maintained to control erosion. This control shall be permitted to consist of effective planting.

Exception: Erosion control measures need not be provided on cut slopes not subject to erosion due to the erosion-resistant character of the materials.

Erosion control for the slopes shall be installed as soon as practicable and prior to calling for final inspection.

`

J110.2 Other devices.
Where necessary, check dams, cribbing, riprap or other devices or methods shall be employed to control erosion and provide safety.

SECTION J111
REFERENCED STANDARDS

ASTM D1557-12	Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort [56,000 ft-lb/ft^3 (2,700kN-m/m^3)].	J107.5

`

THIS APPENDIX IS NOT ADOPTED BY THE CITY OF BELLEVUE

APPENDIX K
ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

With the exception of Section K111, this appendix contains only administrative provisions that are intended to be used by a jurisdiction to implement and enforce NFPA 70, the National Electrical Code. Annex H of NFPA 70 also contains administrative and enforcement provisions, and these provisions may or may not be completely compatible with or consistent with Chapter 1 of the IBC, whereas the provisions in IBC Appendix K are compatible and consistent with Chapter 1 of the IBC and other ICC codes. Section K111 contains technical provisions that are unique to this appendix and are in addition to those of NFPA 70.

The provisions of Appendix K are specific to what might be designated as an Electrical Department of Inspection and Code Enforcement and could be implemented where other such provisions are not adopted.

SECTION K101
GENERAL

K101.1 Purpose.
A purpose of this code is to establish minimum requirements to safeguard public health, safety and general welfare by regulating and controlling the design, construction, installation, quality of materials, location, operation and maintenance or use of electrical systems and equipment.

K101.2 Scope.
This code applies to the design, construction, installation, *alteration*, repairs, relocation, replacement, *addition* to, use or maintenance of electrical systems and equipment.

SECTION K102
APPLICABILITY

K102.1 General.
The provisions of this code apply to all matters affecting or relating to structures and premises, as set forth in Section K101.

K102.2 Existing installations.
Except as otherwise provided for in this chapter, a provision in this code shall not require the removal, *alteration* or abandonment of, or prevent the continued utilization and maintenance of, existing electrical systems and equipment lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of this code.

K102.3 Maintenance.
Electrical systems, equipment, materials and appurtenances, both existing and new, and parts thereof shall be maintained in proper operating condition in accordance with the original design and in a safe, hazard-free condition. Devices or safeguards that are required by this code shall be maintained in compliance with the code edition under which installed. The *owner* or the *owner's* authorized agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of the electrical systems and

`

equipment. To determine compliance with this provision, the *building official* shall have the authority to require that the electrical systems and equipment be reinspected.

K102.4 Additions, alterations and repairs.
Additions, *alterations*, renovations and *repairs* to electrical systems and equipment shall conform to that required for new electrical systems and equipment without requiring that the existing electrical systems or equipment comply with all of the requirements of this code. *Additions*, *alterations* and *repairs* shall not cause existing electrical systems or equipment to become unsafe, hazardous or overloaded.

Minor *additions*, *alterations*, renovations and *repairs* to existing electrical systems and equipment shall meet the provisions for new construction, except where such work is performed in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous and is *approved*.

K102.5 Subjects not regulated by this code.
Where no applicable standards or requirements are set forth in this code, or are contained within other laws, codes, regulations, ordinances or bylaws adopted by the jurisdiction, compliance with applicable standards of nationally recognized standards as are *approved* shall be deemed as prima facie evidence of compliance with the intent of this code. Nothing herein shall derogate from the authority of the *building official* to determine compliance with codes or standards for those activities or installations within the building official's jurisdiction or responsibility.

SECTION K103
PERMITS

K103.1 Types of permits.
An *owner*, authorized agent or contractor who desires to construct, enlarge, alter, *repair*, move, demolish or change the occupancy of a building or structure, or to erect, install, enlarge, alter, *repair*, remove, convert or replace electrical systems or equipment, the installation of which is regulated by this code, or to cause such work to be done, shall first make application to the *building official* and obtain the required *permit* for the work.

> **Exception:** Where *repair* or replacement of electrical systems or equipment must be performed in an emergency situation, the *permit* application shall be submitted within the next working business day of the department of electrical inspection.

K103.2 Work exempt from permit.
The following work shall be exempt from the requirement for a *permit*:

1. Listed cord- and plug-connected temporary decorative lighting.

2. Reinstallation of attachment plug receptacles, but not the outlets therefor.

3. Replacement of branch circuit overcurrent devices of the required capacity in the same location.

4. Temporary wiring for experimental purposes in suitable experimental laboratories.

5. Electrical wiring, devices, appliances, apparatus or equipment operating at less than 25 volts and not capable of supplying more than 50 watts of energy.

`

Exemption from the permit requirements of this code shall not be deemed to grant authorization for work to be done in violation of the provisions of this code or other laws or ordinances of this jurisdiction.

SECTION K104
CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

K104.1 Information on construction documents.
Construction documents shall be drawn to scale upon suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted where *approved* by the *building official*. *Construction documents* shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and show in detail that such work will conform to the provisions of this code and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the *building official*.

K104.2 Penetrations.
Construction documents shall indicate where penetrations will be made for electrical systems and shall indicate the materials and methods for maintaining required structural safety, *fire-resistance rating* and *fireblocking*.

K104.3 Load calculations.
Where an *addition* or *alteration* is made to an existing electrical system, an electrical load calculation shall be prepared to determine if the existing electrical service has the capacity to serve the added load.

SECTION K105
ALTERNATIVE ENGINEERED DESIGN

K105.1 General.
The design, documentation, inspection, testing and approval of an alternative engineered design electrical system shall comply with this section.

K105.2 Design criteria.
An alternative engineered design shall conform to the intent of the provisions of this code and shall provide an equivalent level of quality, strength, effectiveness, *fire resistance*, durability and safety. Materials, equipment or components shall be designed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

K105.3 Submittal.
The *registered design professional* shall indicate on the *permit* application that the electrical system is an alternative engineered design. The *permit* and permanent *permit* records shall indicate that an alternative engineered design was part of the *approved* installation.

K105.4 Technical data.
The *registered design professional* shall submit sufficient technical data to substantiate the proposed alternative engineered design and to prove that the performance meets the intent of this code.

K105.5 Construction documents.
The *registered design professional* shall submit to the *building official* two complete sets of signed and sealed *construction documents* for the alternative engineered design. The *construction documents* shall include floor plans and a diagram of the work.

`

K105.6 Design approval.
Where the *building official* determines that the alternative engineered design conforms to the intent of this code, the electrical system shall be *approved*. If the alternative engineered design is not *approved*, the *building official* shall notify the *registered design professional* in writing, stating the reasons therefor.

K105.7 Inspection and testing.
The alternative engineered design shall be tested and inspected in accordance with the requirements of this code.

SECTION K106
REQUIRED INSPECTIONS

K106.1 General.
The *building official*, upon notification, shall make the inspections set forth in this section.

K106.2 Underground.
Underground inspection shall be made after trenches or ditches are excavated and bedded, piping and conductors installed, and before backfill is put in place. Where excavated soil contains rocks, broken concrete, frozen chunks and other rubble that would damage or break the raceway, cable or conductors, or where corrosive action will occur, protection shall be provided in the form of granular or selected material, *approved* running boards, sleeves or other means.

K106.3 Rough-in.
Rough-in inspection shall be made after the roof, framing, *fireblocking* and bracing are in place and all wiring and other components to be concealed are complete, and prior to the installation of wall or ceiling membranes.

K106.4 Contractors' responsibilities.
It shall be the responsibility of every contractor who enters into contracts for the installation or repair of electrical systems for which a *permit* is required to comply with adopted state and local rules and regulations concerning licensing.

SECTION K107
PREFABRICATED CONSTRUCTION

K107.1 Prefabricated construction.
Prefabricated construction is subject to Sections K107.2 through K107.5.

K107.2 Evaluation and follow-up inspection services.
Prior to the approval of a prefabricated construction assembly having concealed electrical work and the issuance of an electrical *permit*, the *building official* shall require the submittal of an evaluation report on each prefabricated construction assembly, indicating the complete details of the electrical system, including a description of the system and its components, the basis upon which the system is being evaluated, test results and similar information, and other data as necessary for the *building official* to determine conformance to this code.

K107.3 Evaluation service.
The *building official* shall designate the evaluation service of an *approved* agency as the evaluation agency and review such agency's evaluation report for adequacy and conformance to this code.

`

K107.4 Follow-up inspection.
Except where ready access is provided to electrical systems, service equipment and accessories for complete inspection at the site without disassembly or dismantling, the *building official* shall conduct the in-plant inspections as frequently as necessary to ensure conformance to the *approved* evaluation report or shall designate an independent, *approved* inspection agency to conduct such inspections. The inspection agency shall furnish the *building official* with the follow-up inspection manual and a report of inspections upon request, and the electrical system shall have an identifying label permanently affixed to the system indicating that factory inspections have been performed.

K107.5 Test and inspection records.
Required test and inspection records shall be available to the *building official* at all times during the fabrication of the electrical system and the erection of the building; or such records as the *building official* designates shall be filed.

SECTION K108
TESTING

K108.1 Testing.
Electrical work shall be tested as required in this code. Tests shall be performed by the *permit* holder and observed by the *building official*.

K108.1.1 Apparatus, material and labor for tests.
Apparatus, material and labor required for testing an electrical system or part thereof shall be furnished by the *permit* holder.

K108.1.2 Reinspection and testing.
Where any work or installation does not pass an initial test or inspection, the necessary corrections shall be made so as to achieve compliance with this code. The work or installation shall then be resubmitted to the *building official* for inspection and testing.

SECTION K109
RECONNECTION

K109.1 Connection after order to disconnect.
A person shall not make utility service or energy source connections to systems regulated by this code, which have been disconnected or ordered to be disconnected by the *building official*, or the use of which has been ordered to be discontinued by the *building official* until the *building official* authorizes the reconnection and use of such systems.

SECTION K110
CONDEMNING ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

K110.1 Authority to condemn electrical systems.
Wherever the *building official* determines that any electrical system, or portion thereof, regulated by this code has become hazardous to life, health or property, the *building official* shall order in writing that such electrical systems either be removed or restored to a safe condition. A time limit for compliance with such order shall be specified in the written notice. A person shall not use or maintain a defective electrical system or equipment after receiving such notice.

Where such electrical system is to be disconnected, written notice as prescribed in this code shall be given. In cases of immediate danger to life or property, such disconnection shall be made immediately without such notice.

`

SECTION K111
ELECTRICAL PROVISIONS

K111.1 Adoption.
Electrical systems and equipment shall be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with the *International Residential Code* or NFPA 70 as applicable, except as otherwise provided in this code.

[F] K111.2 Abatement of electrical hazards.
All identified electrical hazards shall be abated. All identified hazardous electrical conditions in permanent wiring shall be brought to the attention of the *building official* responsible for enforcement of this code. Electrical wiring, devices, appliances and other equipment that is modified or damaged and constitutes an electrical shock or fire hazard shall not be used.

[F] K111.3 Appliance and fixture listing.
Electrical appliances and fixtures shall be tested and *listed* in published reports of inspected electrical equipment by an *approved* agency and installed in accordance with all instructions included as part of such listing.

K111.4 Nonmetallic-sheathed cable.
The use of Type NM, NMC and NMS (nonmetallic sheathed) cable wiring methods shall not be limited based on height, number of stories or construction type of the building or structure.

K111.5 Cutting, notching and boring.
The cutting, notching and boring of wood and steel framing members, structural members and engineered wood products shall be in accordance with this code.

K111.6 Smoke alarm circuits.
Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms required by this code and installed within *dwelling* units shall not be connected as the only load on a branch circuit. Such alarms shall be supplied by branch circuits having lighting loads consisting of lighting outlets in habitable spaces.

K111.7 Equipment and door labeling.
Doors into electrical control panel rooms shall be marked with a plainly visible and legible sign stating ELECTRICAL ROOM or similar *approved* wording. The disconnecting means for each service, feeder or branch circuit originating on a switchboard or panelboard shall be legibly and durably marked to indicate its purpose unless such purpose is clearly evident.

`

THIS APPENDIX IS NOT ADOPTED BY THE CITY OF BELLEVUE

APPENDIX L
EARTHQUAKE RECORDING INSTRUMENTATION

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

User note: Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION L101
GENERAL

L101.1 General.
Every structure located where the 1-second spectral response acceleration, S_1, in accordance with Section 1613.3 is greater than 0.40 that either 1 exceeds six stories in height with an aggregate floor area of 60,000 square feet (5574 m^2) or more, or 2 exceeds 10 *stories* in height regardless of floor area, shall be equipped with not less than three approved recording accelerographs. The accelerographs shall be interconnected for common start and common timing.

L101.2 Location.
As a minimum, instruments shall be located at the lowest level, mid-height, and near the top of the structure. Each instrument shall be located so that access is maintained at all times and is unobstructed by room contents. A sign stating “MAINTAIN CLEAR ACCESS TO THIS INSTRUMENT” in 1-inch (25 mm) block letters shall be posted in a conspicuous location.

L101.3 Maintenance.
Maintenance and service of the instrumentation shall be provided by the owner of the structure. Data produced by the instrument shall be made available to the *building official* on request.

Maintenance and service of the instruments shall be performed annually by an approved testing agency. The owner shall file with the *building official* a written report from an approved testing agency certifying that each instrument has been serviced and is in proper working condition. This report shall be submitted when the instruments are installed and annually thereafter. Each instrument shall have affixed to it an externally visible tag specifying the date of the last maintenance or service and the printed name and address of the testing agency.

`

THIS APPENDIX IS NOT ADOPTED BY THE CITY OF BELLEVUE

APPENDIX M
TSUNAMI-GENERATED FLOOD HAZARD

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

User note: Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee during the 2016 (Group B) Code Development Cycle. See explanation on page iv.

SECTION M101
TSUNAMI-GENERATED FLOOD HAZARD

M101.1 General.
The purpose of this appendix is to provide tsunami regulatory criteria for those communities that have a tsunami hazard and have elected to develop and adopt a map of their tsunami hazard inundation zone.

M101.2 Definitions.
The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

TSUNAMI HAZARD ZONE. The area vulnerable to being flooded or inundated by a design event tsunami as identified on a community's Tsunami Hazard Zone Map.

TSUNAMI HAZARD ZONE MAP. A map adopted by the community that designates the extent of inundation by a design event tsunami. This map shall be based on the tsunami inundation map that is developed and provided to a community by either the applicable state agency or the National Atmospheric and Oceanic Administration (NOAA) under the National Tsunami Hazard Mitigation Program, but shall be permitted to utilize a different probability or hazard level.

M101.3 Establishment of tsunami hazard zone.
Where applicable, if a community has adopted a Tsunami Hazard Zone Map, that map shall be used to establish a community's tsunami hazard zone.

M101.4 Construction within the tsunami hazard zone.
Construction of structures designated Risk Categories III and IV as specified under Section 1604.5 shall be prohibited within a tsunami hazard zone.

Exceptions:

1. A vertical evacuation tsunami refuge shall be permitted to be located in a tsunami hazard zone provided it is constructed in accordance with FEMA P646.

2. Community critical facilities shall be permitted to be located within the tsunami hazard zone when such a location is necessary to fulfill their function, providing suitable structural and emergency evacuation measures have been incorporated.

`

SECTION M102
REFERENCED STANDARDS

FEMA P646—12	Guidelines for Design of Structures for Vertical Evacuation from Tsunamis	M101.4

ADOPTED BY THE STATE OF WASHINGTON

APPENDIX N

SOLAR READINESS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the local adopting ordinance

N101.1 General. A *solar zone* shall be provided on nonresidential buildings of any size that are 5 stories or less in height above grade plane, and shall be located on the roof of the building or on another structure elsewhere on the site. The *solar zone* shall be in accordance with Sections 490101.3 through 490101.9 and the *International Fire Code*.

Exception: A *solar zone* is not required where the solar exposure of the building's roof area is less than 75 percent of that of an unshaded area, as measured by one of the following:

1. Incident solar radiation expressed in kWh/ft2 per year using typical meteorological year (TMY) data;

2. Annual sunlight exposure expressed in cumulative hours per year using TMY data;

3. Shadow studies indicating that the roof area is more than 25 percent in shadow, on September 21 at 10:00 a.m., 11:00 a.m., 12:00 p.m., 1:00 p.m., and 2:00 p.m solar time.

N101.2 Definitions. The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of the *International Building Code* for general definitions.

SOLAR ZONE. A clear area or areas reserved solely for current and future installation of photovoltaic or solarwater heating systems.

N101.3 Minimum area. The minimum area of the *solar zone* shall be determined by one of the following methods, whichever results in the smaller area:

1. 40 percent of roof area. The roof area shall be calculated as the horizontally-projected gross roof area, less the area covered by skylights, occupied roof decks and planted areas.

2. 20 percent of electrical service size. The electrical service size shall be the rated capacity of the total of all electrical services to the building. The required *solar zone* size shall be based upon 10 peak watts of PV per square foot.

   Exception: Subject to the approval of the *building official*, buildings with extensive rooftop equipment that would make full compliance with this section impractical shall be permitted to reduce the size of the *solar zone* required by Section N101.3 to the maximum practicable area.

N101.4 Contiguous area. The *solar zone* is permitted to be comprised of smaller separated subzones. Each subzone shall be at least 5 feet wide in the narrowest dimension.

N101.5 Obstructions. The *solar zone* shall be free of pipes, vents, ducts, HVAC equipment, skylights and other obstructions, except those serving photovoltaics or solar water heating systems within the *solar zone*. Photovoltaics or solar water heating systems are permitted to be installed within the *solar zone*. The *solar zone* is permitted to be located above any such obstructions, provided that the racking for support of the future system is installed at the time of construction, the elevated *solar zone* does not shade other portions of the *solar zone*, and its height is permitted by the *International Building Code* and other applicable codes.

N101.6 Shading. The *solar zone* shall be set back from any existing or new object on the building or site that is located south, east, or west of the *solar zone* a distance at least two times the object's height above the nearest point on the roof surface. Such objects include, but are not limited to, taller portions of the building itself, parapets, chimneys, antennas, signage, rooftop equipment, trees and roof plantings. No portion of the *solar zone* shall be located on a roof slope greater than 2:12 that faces within 45 degrees of true north

N101.7 Access. Areas contiguous to the *solar zone* shall provide access pathways and provisions for emergency smoke ventilation as required by the *International Fire Code*.

N101.8 Structural integrity. The as-designed dead load and live load for the *solar zone* shall be clearly marked on the record drawings, and shall accommodate future photovoltaic or solar water heating arrays at an assumed dead load of 4 pounds per square foot in addition to other required live and dead loads. For photovoltaic systems, a location for future inverters shall be designated either within or adjacent to the *solar zone*, with a minimum area of 2 square feet for each 1,000 square feet of *solar zone* area, and shall accommodate an assumed dead load of 175 pounds per square foot. Where photovoltaic or solar water heating systems are installed in the *solar zone*, structural analysis shall be based upon calculated loads, not upon these assumed loads.

N101.9 Photovoltaic or solar water heating interconnection provisions. Buildings shall provide for the future interconnection of either a photovoltaic system in accordance with Section 490101.9.1 or a solar water heating system in accordance with Section 490101.9.2.

N101.9.1 Photovoltaic interconnection. A capped roof penetration sleeve shall be provided in the vicinity of the future inverter, sized to accommodate the future photovoltaic system conduit. Interconnection of the future photovoltaic system shall be provided for at the main service panel, either ahead of the service disconnecting means or at the end of the bus opposite the service disconnecting means, in one of the following forms:

1. A space for the mounting of a future overcurrent device, sized to accommodate the largest standard rated overcurrent device that is less than 20 percent of the bus rating;
   Lugs sized to accommodate conductors with an ampacity of at least 20 percent of the bus rating, to enable the mounting of an external overcurrent device for interconnection.

The electrical construction documents shall indicate the following:

1. *Solar zone* boundaries and access pathways;
2. Location for future inverters and metering equipment; and
3. Route for future wiring between the photovoltaic panels and the inverter, and between the inverter and the main service panel.

N101.9.2 Solar water heating interconnection. Two capped pipe tees shall be provided upstream of the domestic water heating equipment to provide plumbing interconnections between a future solar water heating system and the domestic water heating system. Two roof penetration sleeves shall be provided in the vicinity of the *solar zone*, capable of accommodating supply and return piping for a future solar water heating system. The plumbing construction documents shall indicate the following:

1. *Solar zone* boundaries and access pathways;
2. Location for future hot water storage tanks; and
3. Route for future piping between the *solar zone* and the plumbing interconnection point, following the shortest feasible pathway.

`

INDEX

A

ACCESS OPENINGS
Attic. 1209.2
Crawl space 1209.1
Doors 712.3.2
Fire damper 716.4
Fire department 402.7.5
Mechanical appliances 1209.3
Refuse/laundry chutes 708.13.3

ACCESSIBILITY . . . . . .1009, Chapter 11, Appendix E
Airports 412.3.5, E110
Assembly 1009.1, 1108.2, 1109.11, 1110
Bus stops E108
Construction sites 1103.2.5
Controls 1109.13
Detectable warnings 1109.10
Detention and correctional facilities 1103.2.13, 1107.5.5,1108.4.2, E104.1
Dining areas 1108.2.9, 1109.11
Dressing rooms 1109.12.1
Drinking fountains. 1109.5
Dwelling units 1103.2.3, 1105.1.6, 1107
Egress
(see ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS) . . . 1009
Elevators. 1009.2.1, 1009.4, 1009.7.3, 1109.7, 3001.3
Employee work areas 907.5.2.31, 1103.2.2, 1104.3.1
Entrances 1105
Exceptions 1103.2, 1104.4, 1107.7
Existing buildings 1009.1
Fuel dispensing 1109.14
Gaming tables and machines 1109.15, E105.3
Institutional 1103.2.12, 1103.2.13, 1107, 1109.11.2
Judicial facilities 1108.4, 1109.11.2
Kitchens 1109.4
Laundry. E105.2
Lifts 1009.5, 1109.8
Live/work unit 419.7, 1107.6.2.1
Parking and passenger loading facilities 1106
Performance areas 1108.2.8
Platform 1108.2.8, E103.1
Press box 1104.3.2
Ramps 1012
Recreational facilities
(see RECREATION FACILITIES) . . . 1104.2, 1110
Religious worship, places of 1103.2.8
Residential 1103.2.3, 1103.2.11, 1107
Route 1003.3.4, 1104, 1107.4
Saunas and steam rooms. 1109.6

`
Scoping. 1101, 1103.1, E101.1
Seating 1108.2, 1109.11
Service facility 1109.12
Signage. . . . . 1009.8 through 1009.11, 1110, E107
Sleeping units 1107, 1105.1.6
Storage 1108.3, 1109.9
Telephone. E106
Toilet and bathing facilities 1107.6.1.1, 1109.2, 1109.3E105.1
Train and light-rail stations E109
Transient lodging 1103.2.11, 1107.6.1E104.2
Utility 1103.2.4

ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS 1009
Areas of refuge (see AREA OF REFUGE)
Assembly 1009.1, 1029.8
Elevators. 1009.2.1, 1009.4, 1009.8
Existing building 1009.1
Exterior area for assisted rescue (see EXTERIOR AREA FOR ASSISTED RESCUE)
Horizontal exit (see HORIZONTAL EXIT)
Mezzanine. 1009.1
Platform lift 1009.5
Required 1009.1
Stairways 1009.3
Signage. . . . . 1009.8 through 1009.11, 3002.3

ACCESSORY OCCUPANCIES. 303.1.2, 303.1.4, 305.1.1, 312.1, 419.1, 508.2

ADDITION 101.4.8, D103.1
Means of egress 3302.1, 3310

ADMINISTRATION . . . . . Chapter 1

ADOBE CONSTRUCTION 202, 2109.3

AEROSOLS. 202, 307.1, 311.2, 414.1.2.1, 414.2.5, 907.2.16

AGGREGATE 202
Ballast 1504.8

AGRICULTURAL BUILDINGS (see GROUP U) . . . . . 312.1, 1103.2.4, Appendix C

AIR CONDITIONING (see MECHANICAL) 2801.1, 3005.2

AIR INTAKES (see YARDS OR COURTS). . . 1206.3.2

AIRCRAFT HANGARS 412.4
Aircraft paint hangars 412.6, 507.10
Basements 412.4.2
Construction 412.4.1, 412.4.5, 412.6.2
Fire area 412.4.6.2
Fire suppression system. 412.4.6, 412.6.5
Heliports and helistops 412.5, 905.3.6, 906.1, 1605.4

`

Residential 412.5, 907.2.21
Unlimited height and area 504.1, 507.10

AIRCRAFT MANUFACTURING FACILITIES . . . 412.7

AIRCRAFT-RELATED OCCUPANCIES . . . 412, E110
Airport traffic control towers 412.3, 907.2.22
Traffic control towers 412.3
Alarms and detection. . 412.3.4, 412.3.5, 907.2.22
Construction type. 412.3.1, 412.3.2
Egress 412.3.2, 412.3.3, 412.3.4

AISLE 1018, 1029.9, 1029.13
Aisle accessways. 1018.4, 1029.12
Assembly seating. 1018.2, 1029.6
Bleachers. 1029.1.1
Business 1018.3
Check-out 1109.12.2
Construction. 1029.11
Converging 1029.9.3
Egress 1018, 1029
Folding and telescopic seating 1029.1.1
Grandstands 1029.1.1
Mercantile 1018.3, 1018.4
Obstructions. 1029.9.6
Tables 1029.12.1
Tents 3103.4
Transitions 1029.10
Width 1029.9

ALARM SYSTEMS, EMERGENCY 908

ALARMS, FIRE
(see FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE
DETECTION SYSTEMS)
ALARMS, VISIBLE. 907.5.2.3
Common areas 907.5.2.3.1
Employee work areas 907.5.2.3.1
Group I-1 . . . . . 907.5.2.3.2
Group R-1 . . . . . 907.5.2.3.2
Group R-2 . . . . . 907.5.2.3.3
Public areas 907.5.2.3.1

ALARMS, VOICE 907.5.2.2
Amusement buildings, special 411.6, 907.2.12.3
Covered and open mall buildings 402.7.4,
907.2.20,
Emergency power 2702.2.4
High-rise buildings 403.4.4, 907.2.13
Occupant evacuation elevators 3008.9
Underground buildings. 405.8.2, 907.2.19

ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN. 202
Load combinations. 1605.3
Masonry design 2107
Wood design 2301.2, 2306

ALTERATIONS. 101.4.8, D103.1
Means of egress. 3302.1, 3310.2

`

ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICES 1011.14
Construction. 1011.14.2
Equipment platform 505.5
Heliports 412.8.3
Technical production areas 410.6.3.4

ALTERNATIVE MATERIALS,
DESIGN AND METHODS 104.11

ALUMINUM. . . . . 1404.5.1, 1604.3.5, Chapter 20

AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES. 422
Alarm and detection 907.2.2.1
Smoke compartment 422.2, 422.3

AMUSEMENT BUILDING, SPECIAL 411
Alarm and detection 411.3, 411.5, 907.2.12
Classification 411.1
Emergency voice/alarm
communications system 411.6, 907.2.12.3
Exit marking 411.7, 411.7.1
Interior finish. 411.8
Sprinklers protection 411.4

AMUSEMENT PARK STRUCTURES 303
Accessibility 1110.4.8

ANCHOR STORE (see COVERED MALL AND OPEN
MALL BUILDINGS) 402
Construction type 402.4.12
Means of egress. 402.8.4.1
Occupant load 402.8.2.3
Separation 402.4.2.2, 402.4.2.3
Sprinkler protection 402.5

ANCHORAGE. 1604.8
Braced wall line sills 2308.6.7.3
Concrete. 1901.3
Conventional light-frame construction 2308.3.1,
2308.3.2, 2308.4.10
Decks 1604.8.3
Seismic anchorage for masonry chimneys . . .2113.4
Seismic anchorage for masonry fireplaces . . .2111.5
Walls 1604.8.2
Wood sill plates 2308.3

APARTMENT HOUSES 310.4

APPEALS 113

APPROVED AGENCY 202, 1703.1

ARCHITECT (see definition for REGISTERED
DESIGN PROFESSIONAL)
ARCHITECTURAL TRIM 603.1,
1406.2.2, D102.2.7

AREA, BUILDING. . . . . Chapter 5, 506

`

Accessory uses 508.2.3
Aircraft hangars, residential 412.5.5
Covered and open mall building. 402.4.1
Enclosed parking garage 406.6.1, 510.3
Equipment platforms. 505.3.1
Incidental uses 509.3
Limitations 503, 506
Membrane structures 3102.4
Mezzanines 505.2.1
Mixed construction types 3102.6
Mixed occupancy 508.2.3, 508.3.2, 508.4.2
Modifications. 506, 510
Open mall building 402.4.1
Open parking garage 406.5.4, 406.5.4.1,
406.5.5, 510.2, 510.3,
510.4, 510.7, 510.8, 510.9
Private garages and carports 406.3.1
Unlimited area 503.1.1, 503.1.3,
506.1.1, 506.2, 507

AREA FOR ASSISTED RESCUE, EXTERIOR
(see EXTERIOR AREAS FOR ASSISTED RESCUE)
AREA OF REFUGE
(see ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS)
Requirements 1009.6
Signage 1009.9, 1009.10, 1009.11
Two-way communication 1009.6.5
Where required. 1009.2, 1009.3, 1009.4

ASSEMBLY OCCUPANCY (GROUP A). . . . 303, 1029
Accessibility 1108.2, 1108.4, 1109.2.1, 1110
Alarms and detection 907.2.1
Area 503, 506, 507, 508
Bleachers (see BLEACHERS)
Folding and telescopic seating (see BLEACHERS)
Grandstands (see GRANDSTANDS)
Group-specific provisions
A-1 . . . . . 303.2
A-2 . . . . . 303.3
A-3 . . . . . 303.4
A-4 . . . . . 303.5
A-5 . . . . . 303.6
Motion picture theater. 409, 507.12
Special amusement buildings. 411
Stages and platforms 410
Height 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Incidental uses 509
Interior finishes . . . . . Table 803.11, 804
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1, 1607.12.3
Means of egress
Aisles 1018.2, 1029.9, 1029.10
Assembly spaces 1029
Exit signs 1013.1
Guards 1015.2, 1029.16
Main exit 1029.3
Outdoors. 1005.3.1, 1005.3.2,
1006.3, 1009.6.4,1019.3, 1027, 1029.6.2
Panic hardware. 1010.1.10, 1010.2.1
Stairway, exit access 1019

`

Travel distance 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.1, 1006.3.2, 1029.7
Mixed occupancies 508.3, 508.4
Accessory 508.2
Education 303.1.3
Live/work units 419
Mall buildings 402
Other occupancies 303.1.1, 303.1.2, 303.1.3
Parking below/above 510.7, 510.9
Religious facilities 303.1.4
Special mixed 510.2
Motion picture theaters 409, 507.11
Occupancy exceptions 303.1.1, 303.1.2, 303.1.3, 303.1.4, 305.1.1, 305.2.1
Plumbing fixtures 2902
Risk category . . . . . Table 1604.5
Seating, fixed (see SEATING, FIXED)
Seating, smoke-protected 1029.6.2
Sprinkler protection. 410, 504.3, 506.2, 507.3, 507.4, 507.6, 507.7, 507.12, 903.2.1
Stages and platforms 410, 905.3.4
Standpipes 905.3.2, 905.3.4, 905.5.1
Unlimited area. 507.4, 507.4.1, 507.6, 507.7, 507.12

ASSISTED LIVING (see GROUP I-1) 308.3, 310.6
Sixteen or fewer residents (see Group R-4) 308.3.1, 308.3.2, 310.5.1

ATMOSPHERIC ICE LOADS 1614

ATRIUM. 404
Alarms and detection 404.4, 907.2.14
Enclosure 404.6, 707.3.5
Interior finish 404.8
Smoke control 404.5, 909
Sprinkler protection. 404.3
Standby power 404.7
Travel distance 404.9, 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2
Use 404.2

ATTIC
Access 1209.2
Combustible storage. 413.2
Draftstopping. 718.4
Insulation. 719.3.1
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1
Unusable space fire protection 711.3.3
Ventilation 1203.2

AUDITORIUM 303, 305.1.1
Accessibility 1108.2
Foyers and lobbies 1029.4
Interior balconies. 1029.5
Motion picture projection rooms. 409
Stages and platforms. 410

`

AUTOMOBILE PARKING GARAGE
(see GARAGE, AUTOMOBILE PARKING) 406

AWNINGS. 3105
Design and construction 3105.3
Drainage, water 3201.4
Encroachment, public right-of-way 3202.2.3, 3202.3.1, 3202.4
Fire district D102.2.8
Live load . . . . Table 1607.1, 1607.12.2.1, 1607.12.4
Materials 3105.4
Motor vehicle service stations 406.7.2
Permanent D102.2.8
Plastic 2606.10

B

BALCONIES
Accessibility 1108.2.4
Assembly 1029.5
Construction, exterior. 1406.3
Guards 1015.2
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1
Means of egress 1021, 1029.5
Open mall building 402.4.3, 402.5
Projection. 705.2, 1406.3
Public right-of-way encroachments 3202.3.2, 3202.3.3
Travel distance 1017.2.1

BARBECUES 2801
BARRIERS
Fire (see FIRE BARRIER)
Pedestrian protection. 3306
Smoke (see SMOKE BARRIER)
Vehicle 406.4.3, 1602.1, 1607.8.3

BASEMENT
Aircraft hangars 412.4.2
Area modification 506.1.3
Considered a story. 202
Emergency escape 1030.1
Exits 106.3.2.2
Flood loads 1612.2, 1612.5
Height modifications for 510.5
Prohibited. 415.6, 415.7, 415.11.5.2, 418.1
Rodentproofing . . . . . Appendix F
Sprinkler protection 903.2.11.1
Waterproofing and dampproofing 1805

BASEMENT WALLS
Soil loads 1610.1
Waterproofing and dampproofing 1805

BATH AND BATHING ROOMS
(see TOILET AND TOILET ROOMS) . . . . . .101.4.3, 105.2, Chapter 29

BAY AND ORIEL WINDOWS. 1406.4

`

Public right-of-way encroachments 3202.3.2, 3202.3.3

BLEACHERS 303.6, 1029.1.1
Accessibility 1108.2
Egress 1029.1.1
Live load. . . . . .Table 1607.1
Occupant load 1004.7
Separation 1029.1.1.1

BLOCK (see CONCRETE BLOCK AND GLASS UNIT MASONRY)
BOARD OF APPEALS . . . . . 113, Appendix B
Alternate members. B101.2.1
Application for appeal. B101.1
Board decision B101.4
Limitations on authority 113.2
Membership of board B101.2
Notice of meeting B101.3
Qualifications 113.3, B101.2.2

BOILER ROOM
Exits 1006.2.2.1

BOLTS 2204.2
Anchor rods 1908, 1909, 2204.2.1

BONDING, MASONRY. 2204.3, 2109.2

BRACED WALL LINE 202
Bracing. 2308.6
Seismic requirements. 2308.6.10.2, 2308.6.6.2, 2308.6.8
Sill anchorage 2308.6.7.3
Spacing 2308.6.1
Support. 2308.6.8

BRACED WALL PANEL 202
Alternative bracing 2308.6.5.1, 2308.6.5.2
Connections 2308.6.7
Length 2308.6.4
Location 2308.6.2
Method 2308.6.3

BRICK (see MASONRY)
BUILDING
Area (see AREA, BUILDING). 502.1, 503, 505, 506, 507, 508, 510
Demolition 3303
Existing. 101.4.8
Fire walls 706.1
Height (see HEIGHT, BUILDING) 502.1, 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Occupancy classification . . . . . Chapter 3
Party walls 706.1.1

BUILDING DEPARTMENT 103

BUILDING OFFICIAL

`

Approval 202
Duties and powers 103
Qualifications A101.1
Records 104.7
Termination. A101.4

BUILT-UP ROOFS 1507.10

BUSINESS OCCUPANCY (GROUP B) 303.1.1, 303.1.2, 304
Alarms and detection 907.2.2
Ambulatory care facilities 304, 422
Area 503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Height 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Incidental uses 509
Interior finishes . . . . . Table 803.11, 804
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1
Means of egress
Aisles 1018.3
Stairway, exit access 1019
Travel distance 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2
Mixed occupancies 508.2, 508.3, 508.4
Accessory 303.1.2, 508.2
Ambulatory care facilities 422
Assembly 303.1.2
Educational. 303.1, 304.1
Live/work units 419
Mall buildings 402
Parking below/above 510.7, 510.8, 510.9
Special mixed 510.2
Occupancy exceptions 303.1.1, 303.1.2
Plumbing fixtures 2902
Risk category . . . . . Table 1604.5
Sprinkler protection. 903.2.2
Unlimited area 507.4, 507.5

C

CABLES, STEEL STRUCTURAL. 2208

CALCULATED FIRE RESISTANCE
(see FIRE RESISTANCE, CALCULATED)
CANOPIES 3105
Design and construction 3105.3
Drainage, water 3201.4
Encroachment, public right-of-way 3202.3.1
Fire district D102.2.8
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1, 1607.12.2.1, 1607.12.4
Materials 3105.4
Motor vehicle service stations 406.7.2
Permanent D102.2.8
Plastic 2606.10

CARBON MONOXIDE
ALARMS AND DETECTION 915

CARE FACILITIES (see HEALTH CARE)
CARE PROVIDER STATIONS 407.2.2

`

CARE SUITES. 202, 407.4.4

CARPET
Floor covering 804.2
Textile ceiling finish. 803.6
Textile wall coverings 803.5

CATWALKS
(see TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS)
Construction 410.3.2
Live loads . . . . . Table 1607.1
Means of egress 410.6.3
Sprinkler protection. 410.7

CEILING
Acoustical 808
Height 406.4.1, 409.2, 909.20.4.3, 1003.2, 1011.3, 1010.5.2, 1205.2.2, 1208.2
Interior finish 803
Penetration of fire-resistant assemblies 713.4, 716.2, 716.6
Suspended acoustical. 808.1.1

CELLULOSE NITRATE FILM 409.1, 903.2.5.3
CERAMIC TILE
Mortar 2103.2.3

CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY 106.2, 111

CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY 101.4.8, D103.2

CHILD CARE (see DAY CARE) 305.2, 308.6, 310.5.1

CHILDREN'S PLAY STRUCTURES. 424
Accessibility 1110
Covered and open mall building 402.6.3

CHIMNEYS 202
Factory-built 718.2.5
Flashing 1503.6
Masonry 2111, 2112, 2113
Protection from adjacent construction. 3307.1

CHURCHES
(see RELIGIOUS WORSHIP, PLACES OF)
CIRCULAR STAIRWAYS
(see CURVED STAIRWAYS)
CLAY ROOF TILE 1507.3
Testing 1504.2

CLINIC
Hospital
[see INSTITUTIONAL (GROUP I-2)] 308.3
Outpatient
(see AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES) 202, 304.1, 422

COAL POCKETS. 426.1.6

`

CODES 101.2, 101.4, 102.2, 102.4, 102.6, Chapter 35

COLD STORAGE
(see FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION)
COLD-FORMED STEEL. 202, 2210
Light-frame construction 2211
Special inspection 1705.2.2, 1705.2.4, 1705.11.2, 1705.12.3

COMBUSTIBLE DUSTS. 307.4, 414.5.1, 426.1

COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS 307.1, 307.4, 307.5, 414.2.5, 414.5.3, 415.9.2, 415.10.1, 418.6

COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL
Concealed spaces 413.2, 718.5
Exterior side of exterior wall. 1406
High-pile stock or rack storage 413.1, 910.2.2
Type I and Type II 603, 805

COMBUSTIBLE PROJECTIONS. 705.2, 1406.3

COMBUSTIBLE STORAGE. 413, 910.2.2

COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL 1006.2.1

COMPARTMENTATION
Ambulatory care facilities. 422.2, 422.3
Group I-2 . . . . . 407.5, 407.6
Group I-3 . . . . . 408.6
Underground buildings. 405.4, 405.5.2

COMPLIANCE ALTERNATIVES 101.4.8

COMPRESSED GAS 307.2, 415.11.7

CONCEALED SPACES 413.2, 718

CONCRETE . . . . . Chapter 19
ACI 318 modifications 1901.2, 1903.1, 1905
Anchorage 1901.3
Calculated fire resistance 721.2
Construction documents 1901.5
Durability 1904
Footings 1809
Foundation walls 1807.1.5, 1808.8
Materials 1705.3.2, 1903
Plain, structural 1906
Reinforced gypsum concrete 2514
Rodentproofing . . . . . Appendix F
Roof tile 1507.3, 1504.2
Shotcrete 1908
Slab, minimum. 1907
Special inspections . . . . . 1705.3, Table 1705.3
Specifications. 1903
Strength testing 1705.3.2
Wood support 2304.13

`

CONCRETE MASONRY
Calculated fire resistance 721.3
Construction. 2104
Design 2101.2, 2108, 2109
Materials 2103.1
Surface bonding. 2109.2
Wood support. 2304.13

CONCRETE ROOF TILE 1507.3
Wind resistance 1504.2, 1609.5.3

CONDOMINIUM (see APARTMENT HOUSES)
CONDUIT, PENETRATION PROTECTION 713.3, 1023.5

CONFLICTS IN CODE 102

CONGREGATE LIVING FACILITIES. 202, 310

CONSTRUCTION
(see SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION)
CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS 107, 202, 1603
Alarms and detection 907.1.1
Concrete construction 1901.5
Design load-bearing capacity. 1803.6
Fire-resistant joint systems 714
Flood 1603.1.7
Floor live load. 1603.1.1
Geotechnical 1603.1.6
Means of egress. 107.2.3
Penetrations. 713
Permit application. 105.1
Retention 107.5
Review 107.3
Roof assemblies. 1503
Roof live load 1603.1.2
Roof snow load 1603.1.3
Seismic. 1603.1.5,
Seismic certification 1705.13.2, 1705.13.3
Site plan 107.2.5
Special loads 1603.1.8
Temporary structures. 3103.2
Wind load 1603.1.4

CONSTRUCTION JOINTS
Shotcrete 1908.7

CONSTRUCTION TYPES. . . . . Chapter 6
Aircraft paint hangers 412.6.2
Classification 602
Combustible material in
Type I and Type II construction 603, 805
Covered and open mall buildings. 402.4.1
Fire district D102.2.3
Fire resistance . . . . . Table 601, Table 602
High-rise. 403.2
Type I . . . . . .Table 601, 602.2, 603
Type II . . . . . .Table 601, 602.2, 603

`

Type III . . . . . .Table 601, 602.3
Type IV. . . . . .Table 601, 602.4
Type V . . . . . .Table 601, 602.5
Underground buildings. 405.2

CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES 901.5, 1704.4

CONTROL AREA 414.2, 707.3.7
Fire-resistance rating 414.2.4
Maximum allowed quantities 414.2.2
Number 414.2.3

CONVENTIONAL LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION. 202, 2301.2, 2308
Additional seismic requirements. 2308.6.6, 2308.6.8, 2308.6.10
Braced wall lines. 2308.6
Connections and fasteners. 2308.1.2
Design of elements 2308.8
Floor joists 2308.4.2
Foundation plates or sills 2308.3
Girders 2308.7
Limitations 2308.2
Roof and ceiling framing 2308.7
Wall framing 2308.5

CONVEYING SYSTEMS 3004
CORNICES
Definition. 202
Draftstopping 718.2.6
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1
Masonry 2104.1.2
Projection 705.2, 1406.3
Public right-of-way encroachments. 3202.3.2, 3202.3.3

CORRIDOR (see CORRIDOR PROTECTION, EXIT ACCESS, FIRE PARTITIONS and SERVICE CORRIDORS) 1020
Air movement 1020.5
Continuity 1020.6
Covered and open mall buildings . . . 402.8.1, 402.8.6
Dead end 1020.4
Encroachment 1020.3
Elevation change 1003.5
Group I-2 . . . . . 407.2, 407.3, 407.4.1, 407.4.3
Hazardous 415.11
Headroom. 1003.2, 1003.3
HPM service 903.2.5.2
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1
Walls 709.1, 1020.1
Width/capacity 1003.3.4, 1003.6, 1005.2, 1005.7, 1020.2, 1020.3

CORRIDOR PROTECTION, EXIT ACCESS
Construction, fire protection . . . . . 709.1, Table 1020.1, 1020.6

`

Doors 715.4
Glazing 715.5
Group I-2 . . . . . 407.3
Interior finish . . . . . Table 803.11, 804.4
Opening protection 715, 716.5.4.1
Ventilation 1020.5, 1020.5.1

CORROSIVES 307.2, 307.6,
Table 414.2.5(1), 414.3,
415.10.3, Table 415.11.1.1.1

COURTS (see YARDS OR COURTS) 1206

COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS 402
Alarms and detection 402.7.4, 907.2.20,
2702.2.14
Children's play structures 402.6.3, 424
Construction type 402.4
Fire department. 402.3, 402.7.5
Interior finish 402.6.1
Kiosk 402.6.2
Means of egress 402.8
Occupant load. 402.8.3
Open mall construction 402.4.3
Perimeter line 402.1.2
Separation. 402.4.2
Signs. 402.6.4
Smoke control 402.7.2
Sprinkler protection. 402.5
Standby power 402.7.3, 2702.2.14
Standpipe system 402.7.1, 905.3.3
Travel distance 402.8.5, 1016.2.1,
1017.2, 1006.3.2

COVERED WALKWAY
(see PEDESTRIAN WALKWAY) 3104, 3306.7

CRAWL SPACE
Access 1209.1
Drainage 1805.1.2
Unusable space fire protection 711.3.3
Ventilation 1203.4

CRIPPLE WALL 202, 2308.6.6.2, 2308.9.4,

CROSS-LAMINATED TIMBER 602.4.2

CRYOGENIC . . . . . Table 307.1,
Table 414.5.1, Table 415.11.1.1.1

D

DAMPERS (see FIRE DAMPERS
AND SMOKE DAMPERS) . . . . .716.2 through 716.5

DAMPPROOFING AND WATERPROOFING 1805
Required 1805.2, 1805.3
Subsoil drainage system. 1805.4

`

DAY CARE 305.2, 308.6, 310.5
Accessibility 1103.2.12
Adult care 308.6
Child care 308.6, 310.5
Egress. . . . . 308.6, Table 1004.1.1, 1006.2.2.4

DAY SURGERY CENTER
(see AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES)
DEAD END 1020.4

DEAD LOAD. 202, 1606
Foundation design load 1808.3

DECK
Anchorage 1604.8.3
Live loads. . . . . Table 1607.1

DEFLECTIONS. 1604.3.1
Framing supporting glass 2403.3
Preconstruction load tests 1709.3.1
Wood diaphragms 2305
Wood shear walls 2305

DEMOLITION 3303

DESIGN STRENGTH 202
Conformance to standards 1706.1
New materials 1706.2

DESIGNATED SEISMIC SYSTEM. 202
Seismic certification 1705.13.3
Special inspection 1705.12.4

DIAPHRAGMS 202
Analysis 1604.4
Ceilings 2508.5
Special inspection 1705.5.1,
1705.11.1, 1705.12.2
Wood 2305, 2306.2

DOORS. 1010
Access-controlled 1010.1.9.8
Atrium enclosures 404.6
Configuration 1007
Dwelling unit separations. 406.3.4, 412.5.1
Emergency escape 1030.1
Fabrication (HPM) areas 415.11.1.2
Fire
(see OPENING PROTECTIVES) . . . 715.4, 1023.4
Glazing. 715.4.7, 715.5, 1405.13
Hazardous storage 415.11.5.7
Hardware
(see LOCKS AND LATCHES) 1005.7.1,
1010.1.9.8,
1010.1.9, 1010.1.10
Horizontal sliding 1010.1.4.3
I-2 occupancies 407.3.1
I-3 occupancies 408.3, 408.4, 408.8.4
Landings 1010.1.5, 1010.1.6

`
Operation 1010.1.3, 1010.1.9, 1010.1.10
Panic and fire exit hardware 1010.1.10
Power-operated 1010.1.4.2
Revolving 1010.1.4.1
Security grilles 402.8.8, 1010.1.4.4
Side swinging. 1010.1.2
Smoke 710.5
Stairways 1010.1.9.11
Stairways, high-rise 403.5.3
Structural testing, exterior 1709.5
Thresholds 1003.5, 1010.1.5, 1010.1.7
Vestibule 1010.1.8
Width 1010.1.1, 1010.1.1.1

DRAFTSTOPPING
Attics 718.4
Floor-ceiling assemblies. 718.3

DRINKING FOUNTAINS. 1109.5, 2902.5, 2902.6

DRY CLEANING PLANTS 415.9.3

DRYING ROOMS 417

DUCTS AND AIR TRANSFER OPENINGS (see MECHANICAL)
DUMBWAITERS. 708.14

DWELLING UNITS 202
Accessibility 1103.2.3, 1103.2.12, 1105.1.6, 1106.2, 1107
Alarms and detection 420.6, 907.2.8, 907.2.9, 907.2.11
Area 1208.3, 1208.4
Group R 310
Live/work units (see LIVE/WORK UNITS)
Scoping 101.2
Separation 420.2, 420.3
Sound transmission 1207
Sprinkler protection 420.5, 903.2.8

E

EARTHQUAKE LOADS (see SEISMIC) 1613

EARTHQUAKE RECORDING EQUIPMENT. . . . . Appendix L

EAVES (see COMBUSTIBLE PROJECTIONS AND CORNICES)
EDUCATIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP E) 305
Accessibility 1108.2, 1109.5.1, 1109.5.2
Alarms and detection 907.2.3
Area 503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Height. 503, 504, 505, 508
Incidental uses 509
Interior finishes. . . . . .Table 803.11, 804
Live load. . . . . .Table 1607.1
Means of egress

`

Aisles 1018.5
Corridors 1020.1, 1020.2
Panic hardware 1010.1.10
Stairway, exit access 1019
Travel distance. 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2
Mixed occupancies. 508.3, 508.4
Accessory 303.1.3, 508.2
Assembly 303.1.3
Day care. 305.2, 308.5, 310.1
Education for students
above the 12th grade 304
Gyms (see GYMNASIUMS) 303.1.3
Libraries (see LIBRARIES). 303.4
Religious facilities 305.2
Stages and platforms 410
Plumbing fixtures 2902
Risk category . . . . . Table 1604.5
Sprinkler protection. 903.2.3
Unlimited area 507.11

EGRESS (see MEANS OF EGRESS). . . . . Chapter 10

ELECTRICAL . . . 105.2, 112, Chapter 27, Appendix K

ELEVATOR . . . . . Chapter 30
Accessibility 1009.2.1, 1009.4,
1009.8, 1109.6, 3001.3
Car size 403.6.1, 3001.3, 3002.4
Construction 708.14, 1607.9.1
Conveying systems 3004
Emergency operations 3002.3, 3002.5,
3003, 3007.1, 3008.1.3
Fire service access. 403.6.1, 3007
Glass 2409, 3002.8
High-rise 403.2.3, 403.4.8, 403.6
Hoistway enclosures. 403.2.3, 708, 1023.4,
1024.5, 3002, 3007.5, 3008.5
Hoistway lighting. 3007.5.2
Hoistway pressurization 909.21
Keys 3003.3
Lobby 1009.4, 1009.8, 3006,
3007.6, 3008.6
Machine rooms . . . . . Table 1607.1, 3005
Means of egress 403.6, 1003.7,
1009.2.1, 1009.4, 3008
Number of elevator cars in hoistway. 3002.2
Occupant evacuation elevators 403.6.2, 3008
Personnel and material hoists 3004.4
Roof access 1011.12.2
Shaft enclosure. 712, 3006
Signs. 914, 1009.10, 3002.3, 3007.6.5, 3008.6.5
Stairway to elevator equipment 1011.12.2.1
Standards 3001
Standby power 2702.2.2, 3007.8, 3008.8
System monitoring 3007.7, 3008.7
Underground. 405.4.3

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS
Accessible means of egress. 1009.8

`

Alarms (see FIRE ALARMS)
Elevators, occupant evacuation 3008.6.6
Fire command center 403.4.6, 911, 3007.7, 3008.6.6, 3008.7
Radio coverage 403.4.5, 916

EMERGENCY EGRESS OPENINGS 1030
Required . . . . . Table 1006.3.2(2), 1030.1
Window wells 1030.5

EMERGENCY LIGHTING 1008.3, 1205.5

EMERGENCY POWER 2702.1, 2702.4
Exit signs. 1013.6.3, 2702.2.5, 2702.2.12
Group I-2. . . . . 2702.2.6
Group I-3. . . . . 408.4.2, 2702.2.7
Hazardous. 415.11.10, 2702.2.13, 2702.2.14
High-rise 403.4.8, 2702.2.9
Means of egress illumination 1008.3, 2702.2.11
Semiconductor fabrication 415.11.10, 2702.2.14
Underground buildings 405.9, 2702.2.16

EMERGENCY RESPONDERS
Additional exit stairway 403.5.2
Elevators. 403.6, 1009.2.1, 3002.4, 3003, 3007, 3008
Fire command center 403.4.6, 911, 3007.7, 3008.6.6, 3008.7
Mall access 402.7.5
Radio coverage. 403.4.4, 916
Roof access 1011.12
Safety features 914

EMPIRICAL DESIGN OF MASONRY 2109
Adobe construction 2109.3
General 2109.1
Special inspection. 1705.4
Surface-bonded 2109.2

EMPLOYEE
Accessibility for work areas. 907.5.2.3.1, 1103.2.2, 1104.3.1
Deputies to building official 103.3
Liability 104.8
Qualifications A101
Termination of employment A101.4

ENCROACHMENTS INTO THE PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY. . . . . Chapter 32

END-JOINTED LUMBER 2303.1.1.2
Relocated structures. 101.4.8, D103.3
Rodentproofing . . . . . .Appendix F

ENERGY EFFICIENCY . . . . . 101.4.6, 110.3.7, Chapter 13

ENGINEER (see definition for REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL)

`

EQUIPMENT PLATFORM. 505.3

EQUIVALENT OPENING FACTOR . . . . .Figure 705.7

ESCALATORS 3004
Floor opening protection 708.2
Means of egress 1003.7

ESSENTIAL FACILITIES
(see RISK CATEGORY). . . . . 202, Table 1604.5

EXCAVATION, GRADING AND FILL 1804, 3304

EXISTING BUILDING 101.4.8, 102.6
Additions D103.1
Alteration. D103.1
Change of occupancy D103.2
Flood-resistant . . . . . Appendix G
Historic 101.4.8
Relocated structures D103.3
Repairs 101.4.8
Rodentproofing . . . . . Appendix F

EXIT
(see MEANS OF EGRESS) . . . . 1022 through 1027
Basement. 1006.3.2.2
Boiler rooms. 1006.2.2.1
Configuration 1007
Construction. 713.2, 1019, 1023.2
Doorways. 1007
Dwellings 1006.3.2.1
Enclosure. 707.3, 1023.2
Fire resistance 707.3, 1019, 1023.2
Furnace rooms. 1006.2.2.1
Group H 415.11.3.3, 415.11.5.6
Group I-2 . . . . . 407.4
Group I-3 . . . . . 408.3
High rise. 403.5, 403.6, 1025
Horizontal. 707.3.5, 1026
Incinerator rooms. 1006.2.2.1
Interior finish . . . . . Table 803.11, 804
Luminous 403.5.5, 411.7.1, 1025
Mall buildings 402.8
Mezzanines 505.3, 505.4, 1004.1.1.2
Number, minimum 402.8.3, 403.5, 1006.2, 1006
Occupant load 402.8.2, 1004.1.1
Passageway 1024
Ramps, exterior 1027
Ramp, interior 1023
Refrigerated rooms or spaces 1006.2.2.3
Refrigeration machinery rooms 1006.2.2.2
Signs 1013
Stairways, exterior 1027
Stairway, interior 1023
Stories 1004.1.1.3, 1006,3, 1017.3.1
Travel distance 402.8.3, 402.8.5, 402.8.6,
404.9, 407.4.2, 408.6.1, 408.8.1,
410.6.3.2, 411.4, 1006.3.2,
1016.2.1, 1017, 1029.7, 1029.8

`

Underground buildings. 405.7

EXIT ACCESS (see MEANS OF EGRESS). . . . . 1016 through 1021
Aisles 1018
Balconies 1017.2.1, 1021
Common path 1016.2.1
Corridors 1020
Doors 1005.7, 1006.2, 1007, 1010, 1022.2
Intervening space 1016.2
Path of egress travel, common 1016.2.1
Ramps 1019
Seating at tables 1029.12.1
Single exit. 1006.2, 1006.3.2
Stages 410.6.2
Stairway 1019
Travel distance. 402.8.3, 402.8.5, 402.8.6, 404.9, 408.6.1, 408.8.1, 410.6.3.2, 411.4, 1006.2, 1016.2.1, 1017, 1006.3.2, 1029.7

EXIT DISCHARGE (see MEANS OF EGRESS). 1028
Atrium. 404.10
Courts. 1028.4
Horizontal exit 1028.1
Lobbies. 1028.1
Marquees 3106.4
Public way 1028.5
Termination 1023.3
Vestibules. 1028.1

EXIT PASSAGEWAY (see MEANS OF EGRESS). 402.8.6.1, 707.3.4, 1024
Construction. 1019, 1024.3
Discharge. 1024.4, 1028.1
Elevators within 1024.5, 3002.7
Fire-resistant construction 1024.3
High-rise. 403.5
Openings 1024.5
Penetrations. 1024.6
Pressurization 909.6, 909.20.5
Smokeproof 403.5.4, 405.7.2, 909.20
Width 1024.2
Ventilation 1024.7

EXIT SIGNS 1013
Accessibility 1013.4
Floor level exit signs. 1013.2
Group R-1 . . . . . .1013.2
Illumination. 1013.3, 1013.5, 1013.6
Required. 1013.1
Special amusement buildings` 411.7

EXPLOSIVES . . . . . 202, Table 414.5.1, Table 415.6.2
Detached building 415.6.2, 415.8
Explosion control 415.7

`

EXPOSURE CATEGORY
(see WIND LOAD). 1609.4

EXTERIOR AREAS FOR ASSISTED RESCUE
Requirements. 1009.7
Signage 1009.9, 1009.10, 1009.11
Where required 1009.2

EXTERIOR INSULATION AND
FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS) 1408
Special inspection. 1705.16

EXTERIOR WALLS
(see WALLS, EXTERIOR) . . . . . Table 601, 602, 705, Chapter 14

F

FACTORY OCCUPANCY (GROUP F) 306
Alarm and detection 907.2.4
Area 503, 503.1.1, 505, 506, 507, 508
Equipment platforms. 505.2
Groups
Low-hazard occupancy. 306.3
Moderate-hazard occupancy 306.2
Height 503, 504, 505, 508
Incidental uses 509
Interior finishes . . . . . Table 803.11, 804
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1
Means of Egress
Aisles 1018.5
Dead end corridor. 1020.4
Stairway, exit access 1019
Travel distance 1006.2, 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1017.2.2, 1006.3.2
Mixed occupancies 508.2, 508.3, 508.4
Plumbing fixtures 2902
Risk category . . . . . Table 1604.5
Sprinkler protection. 903.2.4
Unlimited area 507.3, 507.4, 507.5

FARM BUILDINGS . . . . . .Appendix C

FEES, PERMIT 109
Refunds 109.6
Related fees 109.5
Work commencing before issuance 109.4

FENCES 105.2, 312.1

FIBERBOARD. 202, 2303.1.6
Shear wall . . . . . Table 2306.3(2)

FILL MATERIAL 1804, 3304

FINGER-JOINTED LUMBER
(see END-JOINTED LUMBER)
FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS

`

Aerosol storage 907.2.16
Aircraft hangars, residential 412.5.3, 907.2.21
Airport traffic control towers 412.3.5, 907.2.22
Ambulatory care facilities 422.5, 907.2.2.1
Assembly 907.2.1
Atriums 404.4, 907.2.14
Audible alarm 907.5.2.1
Battery room. 907.2.23
Children's play structure 424.3
Construction documents 907.1.1
Covered and open mall building 402.6.2, 402.7, 907.2.20
Education 907.2.3
Emergency alarm system 908
Factory 907.2.4
Group H 907.2.5
Group I 907.2.6, 907.5.2.3.2
Group M 907.2.7
Group R 420.6, 907.2.8, 907.2.9, 907.2.10, 907.2.11, 907.5.2.3.2, 907.5.2.3.3
High-rise 403.4.1, 403.4.2, 907.2.13
Live/work. 419.5
Lumber mills 907.2.17
Occupancy requirements 907.2
Special amusement buildings 411.3, 411.5, 907.2.12
Underground buildings 405.6, 907.2.18, 907.2.19
Visible alarm 907.5.2.3

FIRE ALARM BOX, MANUAL. 907.4.2

FIRE AREA 202, 901.7
Ambulatory care facilities 903.2.2, 907.2.2
Assembly 903.2.1
Education 903.2.3
Enclosed parking garages 903.2.10
Factory 903.2.4
Institutional 903.2.6
Mercantile 903.2.7
Residential 903.2.8
Storage 903.2.9, 903.2.10

FIRE BARRIERS 202, 707
Continuity 707.5, 713.5
Exterior walls. . . . . Table 602, 707.4, 713.6
Fire-resistance rating of walls . . . . . .603.1(1), 603.1(22), 603.1(23), 703, 707.3, 713.4
Glazing, rated 716.6
Incidental. 509.4
Inspection 110.3.6
Joints. 707.8, 713.9, 715, 2508.4
Marking 703.7
Materials 707.2, 713.3
Opening protection 707.6, 707.10, 713.7, 713.10, 714.3, 716, 717.5.2

`

Penetrations 707.7, 713.8
Shaft enclosure. 713.1
Special provisions
Aircraft hangars 412.4.4
Atriums 404.3, 404.6
Covered and open mall buildings 402.4.2,
Fire pumps. 403.3.4, 901.8, 913.2.1
Flammable finishes 416.2
Group H-2 . . . . . 415.9.1.2, 426.1.2
Group H-3 and H-4 . . . . . 415.10
Group H-5 . . . . . 415.11.1.2, 415.11.1.5, 415.11.5.1, 415.11.6.4
Group I-3 . . . . . 408.5, 408.7
Hazardous materials 414.2
High-rise 403.2.1.2, 403.2.3, 403.3, 403.4.8.1
Organic coating 418.4, 418.5, 418.6
Stages and platforms. 410.5.1, 410.5.2

FIRE COMMAND CENTER 403.4.6, 911, 3007.7, 3008.6.6, 3008.7

FIRE DAMPERS. . . . . 717.2 through 717.5

FIRE DEPARTMENT
(see EMERGENCY RESPONDERS)
FIRE DETECTION SYSTEM (see FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS)
FIRE DISTRICT . . . . . Appendix D

FIRE DOOR
(see OPENING PROTECTIVES) 716, 1023.4

FIRE ESCAPE 412.8.3

FIRE EXTINGUISHERS, PORTABLE 906, 3309

FIRE EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS 416.5, 417.4, 903, 904

FIRE PARTITION 202, 709
Continuity. 708.4
Elevator lobby 3006.3
Exterior walls . . . . . Table 602, 709.5
Fire-resistance rating . . . . . 603.1(1), 603.1(22), 603.1(23), 703, 708.3
Glazing, rated 716.6
Inspection 110.3.6
Joint treatment gypsum 2508.4
Joints 708.8, 715
Marking 703.6
Materials 708.2
Opening protection 709.6, 714.3, 716, 717.5.4
Penetrations. 708.7, 708.9, 714, 717
Special provisions
Covered and open mall buildings 402.4.2.1
Group I-3 . . . . . 408.7
Group I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3 . . . . . 420.2

FIRE PREVENTION 101.4.5

`

FIRE PROTECTION
Explosion control 414.5.1, 415.6, 421.7, 426.1.4
Fire extinguishers, portable 906
Glazing, rated 716.2
Smoke and heat removal. 910
Smoke control systems 909
Sprinkler systems, automatic 903

FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS . . . . . Chapter 9

FIRE PUMPS 403.3.4, 901.8, 913, 914.2

FIRE RESISTANCE
Calculated 722
Conditions of restraint 703.2.3
Ducts and air transfer openings 717
Exterior walls . . . . . Table 602, 705.5, 708.5
Fire district D102.2.5
High-rise. 403.2
Joint systems 715
Multiple use fire assemblies. 701.2
Prescriptive 721
Ratings. . . . . .Chapter 6, 703, 705.5, 707.3.10
Roof assemblies. 1505
Structural members 704
Tests 703
Thermal and sound insulating materials 720.1

FIRE RESISTANCE, CALCULATED 722
Clay brick and tile masonry 722.4
Concrete assemblies 722.2
Concrete masonry 722.3
Steel assemblies 722.5
Wood assemblies. 722.6

FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED WOOD 202, 2303.2
Awnings 3105.3
Balconies 1406.3
Canopies 3105.3
Concealed spaces 718.5
Fastening 2304.10.5
Fire wall vertical continuity 706.6
Partitions . . . . . .603.1(1)
Platforms 410.4
Projections 705.2.3
Roof construction . . . . . Table 601, 705.11, 706.6, 1505
Shakes and shingles 1505.6
Type I and II construction. . . . . 603.1(1), 603.1(11)
Type III construction. 602.3
Type IV construction 602.4
Veneer 1405.5

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE . . . . . .202, Table 602, 702
Exterior walls 1406.2.1.1.1, 1406.2.1.1.2

`

FIRE SERVICE ACCESS ELEVATORS 403.6.1, 3007

FIRE SHUTTER
(see OPENING PROTECTIVES). 716.5, 716.5.10, 716.5.11

FIRE WALLS 706
Aircraft 412.4.6.2
Combustible framing 706.7
Continuity 706.5, 706.6
Exterior walls . . . . . Table 602, 706.5.1
Fire-resistance rating 703, 706.4
Glazing, rated 716.6
Inspection 110.3.6
Joints 706.10, 715
Marking 703.6
Materials 706.3
Opening protection 706.8, 706.11, 714.3, 716, 717.5.1
Penetration 706.9, 714.3
Special provisions
Aircraft hangars 412.4.6.2
Covered and open mall buildings 402.4.2.2
Group H-5. . . . . 415.11.1.6
Structural stability 706.2

FIRE WINDOWS (see OPENING PROTECTIVES)
FIREBLOCKING 718.2
Chimneys 718.2.5.1, 2113.20
Fireplaces 2111.13
Wood construction 718.2.1, 718.2.7, 1406.2.3
Wood stairways 718.2.4

FIREPLACES, FACTORY-BUILT. 2111.14.1

FIREPLACES, MASONRY 202
Combustibles 2111.12
Drawings. 2111.2
General provisions 2111
Hearth extension 2111.10, 2111.11
Steel units 2111.6.1

FIREWORKS. 202, 307.2, 307.3, 307.5

FLAMESPREAD . . . . . 802, 803.1.1, Table 803.11

FLAMMABLE FINISHES. 307.1, 416

FLAMMABLE LIQUIDS. 307.4, 307.5, 406, 412, 414, 415

FLAMMABLE SOLIDS 307.5, 415

FLASHING
Roof 1503.2, 1503.6, 1507.2.9, 1507.3.9, 1507.5.7, 1507.7.7, 1507.8.8, 1507.9.9, 1511.6
Wall, veneer 1405.4, 1405.12.7

`

FLOOD HAZARD AREAS. 202, 1612.3
Coastal A zone 202
Coastal high hazard area 202
Flood insurance rate map. 202

FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION
Accessibility 1107.7.5
Administration. . . . . G101 through G105
Elevation certificate 110.3.3
Existing 101.4.8
Flood elevation 107.2.5.1, 1612
Flood loads 1603.1, 1603.1.7, 1612, 3001.2, 3102.7
Flood resistance 1403.6, 1403.7
Flood-resistant construction . . . . . Appendix G
Grading and fill 1804.5, 1805.1.2.1
Historic buildings. G105.3
Interior finishes 801.1.3
Manufactured homes G501
Modifications. 104.10.1
Recreational vehicles G601
Site improvements G401
Site plan 107.2.5
Subdivisions G301
Tank G701
Temporary. G901
Utility G1001
Ventilation, under floor 1203.3.2

FLOOR/CEILING (see FLOOR CONSTRUCTION)
FLOOR CONSTRUCTION
(see FLOOR CONSTRUCTION, WOOD)
Draftstopping. 718.3
Finishes. 804, 805, 1003.4, 1210.1
Fire resistance . . . . . Table 601, 711
Loads (see FLOOR LOADS)
Materials . . . . . Chapter 6
Penetration of fire-resistant assemblies 711, 714.4, 717.2, 717.6

FLOOR CONSTRUCTION, WOOD
Beams and girders 2304.12.1.1, 2308.4.1
Bridging/blocking. 2308.4.6, 2308.7.8
Diaphragms. 2305.1
Fastening schedule. 2304.10.1
Framing. . . . . Table 602.4, 602.4.2, 602.4.4, 2304.4
Joists. 2308.4.2
Sheathing 2304.8

FLOOR LEVEL 1003.5, 1010.1.5

FLOOR LOADS
Construction documents 107.2
Live 1603.1.1, 1607
Posting 106.1

FLOOR OPENING PROTECTION
(see VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION)

`

FOAM PLASTICS
Attics 720.1, 2603.4.1.6
Cladding attachment 2603.11, 2603.12
Cold storage 2603.3, 2603.4.1.2, 2603.5
Concealed. 603
Covered mall and open mall buildings 402.6.2, 402.6.4.5
Crawl space 2603.4.1.6
Doors . . . . . .2603.4.1.7 through 2603.4.1.9
Exterior wall covering 806.5
Exterior walls of multistory buildings. 1404.13, 2603.5
Interior finish 801.2.2, 2603.10, 2604
Label/identification 2603.2
Metal composite materials (MCM) 1407.13
Roofing 2603.4.1.5
Siding backer board. 2603.4.1.10
Stages and platform scenery 410.3.6
Surface burning characteristics 2603.3
Termites, protection from. 2603.9
Thermal barrier requirements 2603.5.2
Trim 806.5, 2604.2
Type I and II construction . . . . . 603.1(2), 603.1(3)
Walk-in coolers 2603.4.1.3
Wind resistance 2603.10

FOLDING AND TELESCOPIC SEATING . . . 1029.1.1
Accessibility 1108.2
Egress 1029.1.1
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1
Occupant load 1004.7
Separation 1029.1.1.1

FOOD COURT 202
Occupant load 402.8.2.4
Separation 402.4.2

FOOTBOARDS. 1029.16.2

FOUNDATION (see FOUNDATION, DEEP and FOUNDATION, SHALLOW) . . . . . Chapter 18
Basement. 1610, 1805.1.1, 1806.3, 1807
Concrete 1808.8, 1809.8, 1810.3.2.1
Dampproofing 1805.2
Encroachment, public right-of-way 3202.1
Formwork. 3304.1
Geotechnical investigation
(see SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS) 1803
Inspection 110.3.1
Load-bearing value 1806, 1808, 1810
Masonry 1808.9
Pedestrian protection. 3306.9
Pier (see FOUNDATION, SHALLOW)
Pile (see FOUNDATION, DEEP)
Plates or sills 2308.3
Protection from
adjacent construction 3303.5, 3307.1
Rodentproofing . . . . . Appendix F
Special inspections 1705.3, 1705.4.2,

`
1705.7, 1705.8, 1705.9
Steel. 1809.11, 1810.3.2.3, 1810.3.5.3
Timber 1809.12, 1810.3.2.4
Waterproofing 1805.3

FOUNDATION, DEEP 202, 1810
Drilled shaft 202
Existing 1810.10.1.2
Geotechnical investigation. 1803.5.5
Grade beams 1810.3.12
Helical pile . . . . . .202, 1810.3.1.5, Table 1810.3.2.6,
1810.3.3.1.9, 1810.3.5.3.3,
1810.4.11, 1810.4.12
Micropile. . . . . .202, Table 1808.8.1,
Table 1810.3.2.6, 1810.3.5.2.3,
1810.3.10, 1810.4.10
Piles . . . . Table 1808.8.1, 1809.12, 1810, 1810.3.1.4

FOUNDATION, SHALLOW 202, 1809
Pier and curtain wall. 1809.10
Slab-on-grade 1808.6.2
Strip footing 1808.8, 1809

FOYERS
Assembly occupancy 1029.4, 1029.9.5
Corridors 1020.6
Covered and open mall building. 402.1

FRAME INSPECTION. 110.3.4

FRATERNITIES 310.4

FROST PROTECTION 1809.5

FURNACE ROOMS 1006.2.2.1

G

GALLERIES
(see TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS)
GARAGE, AUTOMOBILE PARKING
(see PARKING GARAGES)
GARAGE, REPAIR. 406.8
Floor surface 406.8.3
Gas detection system. 406.8.5, 908.5
Sprinkler protection 406.8.6, 903.2.9.1
Ventilation 406.8.2

GARAGES, TRUCK AND BUS
Live load. 1607.7
Sprinkler protection 903.2.10.1

GARAGES AND CARPORTS, PRIVATE
Area limitations. 406.3.1
Classification 406.3.1
Parking surfaces 406.3.3, 406.3.5
Separation 406.3.4, 406.3.5.1

GAS. 101.4.1, 105.2, 112

`

Accessibility 1109.14
Gas detection system. 406.6.6, 406.8.5, 415.8.7, 415.11.7, 421.6, 908
Hydrogen cutoff room. 421.6
Motor fuel-dispensing. 406.7

GATES 1010.2
Vehicular 3110

GIFT SHOPS. 407.2.4

GIRDERS
Fire resistance . . . . . Table 601
Materials . . . . . Chapter 6
Wood construction 2304.12.1.1, 2308.4.1

GLASS (see GLAZING)
GLASS BLOCK (see GLASS UNIT MASONRY)
GLASS UNIT MASONRY 202, 2110
Atrium enclosure. 404.6
Fire resistance 2110.1.1
Hazardous locations 2406.1.3

GLAZING
Athletic facilities 2408
Atrium enclosure. 404.6
Doors 705.8, 709.5, 710.5, 716.4.3.2, 1405.13, 1709.1
Elevator hoistway and car 2409
Fire doors 716.5.5.1, 716.5.8
Fire-resistant walls 716.5.3.2
Fire windows. 703.5, 716.5
Group I-3 . . . . . 408.7
Guards 1015.2.1, 2406.4.4, 2407
Handrail 1011.11, 2407
Identification 2403.1, 2406.3
Impact loads 2406.1, 2407.1.4.2, 2408.2.1, 2408.3
Impact resistant 1609.1.2
Jalousies. 2403.5
Label/identification 716.3.1, 716.3.2, 716.5.7.1, 716.5.8.3, 716.6.8
Loads 2404
Louvered windows 2403.5
Opening protection 716.2
Replacement 2401.2
Safety 716.5.8.4, 716.6.3, 2406
Security. 408.7
Skylights 2405
Sloped 2404.2, 2405
Supports 2403.2
Swimming pools 2406.4
Testing 1709.5, 2406.1.1, 2408.2.1
Veneer 1405.12
Vertical 2404.1
Walkways 2409.1

GRADE, LUMBER (see LUMBER). 202

`

GRADE PLANE. 202

GRAIN ELEVATORS 426.1.5

GRANDSTANDS. 303.1, 1029.1.1
Accessibility 1108.2
Egress 1029.1.1
Exit sign 1013.1
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1
Occupant load 1004.4
Separation 1029.1.1.1

GREENHOUSES 312.1
Area 503, 506, 507, 508
Deflections . . . . . Table 1604.3
Live load 1607.12.2.1
Membrane structure 3102.1
Plastic 2606.11
Sloped glazing 2405
Wind load 1609.1.2

GRIDIRON (see TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS)
GRINDING ROOMS. 426.1.2

GROSS LEASABLE AREA
(see COVERED MALL AND OPEN MALL
BUILDINGS) 202,
402.3, 402.8.2

GROUT 714.3.1.1, 714.4.1

GUARDS 1015
Assembly seating 1029.1.1, 1029.16
Equipment platform. 505.3.3
Exceptions 1015.2
Glazing 1015.2.1, 2406.4.4, 2407
Height 1015.3
Loads 1607.8
Mechanical equipment 1015.6
Opening limitations 1015.4
Parking garage 406.4.2
Ramps. 1012.9
Residential 1015.3
Roof access 1015.7
Screen porches. 1015.5
Stairs. 1015.2
Vehicle barrier. 406.4.3, 1607.8.3
Windows 1015.8

GUTTERS 1503.4.3

GYMNASIUMS 303.1
Group E. 303.1.3
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1
Occupant load. 1004.1

GYPSUM . . . . . Chapter 25
Aggregate, exposed 2513

`

Board . . . . . 202, Chapter 25
Ceiling diaphragms 2508.5
Concrete, reinforced 2514
Construction 2508
Draftstopping. 718.3.1
Exterior soffit . . . . . Table 2506.2
Fastening . . . . . .Table 2306.3(3), 2508.1
Fire resistance 719, 722.2.1.4, 722.6.2
Fire-resistant joint treatment 2508.4
Inspection 2503
Lath 2507, 2510
Lathing and furring for cement plaster 719, 2510
Lathing and plastering 2507
Materials 2506
Panel products. . . . . 202, Chapter 25
Plaster, exterior 2512
Plaster, interior. 2511
Shear wall construction . . . . . .Table 2308.6.3(1), 2505
Sheathing. . . . . Table 2308.5.11
Showers and water closets 2509
Stucco 2510
Veneer base 2507.2
Veneer plaster 2507.2
Vertical and horizontal assemblies 2504
Wallboard. . . . . Table 2506.2
Water-resistant backing board. 2506.2, 2509.2

H

HANDRAILS. 1014
Alternating tread devices 1011.14
Assembly aisles 1029.15
Construction. 1014.4, 1014.5, 1014.6
Extensions 1014.6
Glazing. 2407
Graspability 1014.3
Guards 1015.3
Height 1014.2
Loads 1607.8
Location 1014.1, 1014.7, 1014.8, 1014.9
Ramps 1012.8
Stairs 1011.11

HARDBOARD. 202, 1404.3.2, 2303.1.7

HARDWARE
(see DOORS and LOCKS AND LATCHES)
HARDWOOD
Fastening 2304.10
Quality 2303.3
Veneer 1404.3.2

HAZARDOUS MATERIALS 307, 414, 415
Control areas 414.2
Explosion control . . . . . 414.5.1, Table 414.5.1, 415.8, 415.11.5.5, 426.1.4
Special provisions 415.7
Sprinkler protection . . . . . .Table 414.2.5(1),

`

Table 414.2.5(2), 415.4,
415.11.11, 903.2.5
Ventilation 414.3, 414.5.4, 415.8.11.3,
415.9.1.7, 415.11.1.6,
415.11.1.8.1, 415.11.3.2,
415.11.5.8, 415.11.6.4,
415.11.7, 415.11.10, 1203.6
Weather protection 414.6.1

HAZARDOUS OCCUPANCY (GROUP H),
(see HAZARDOUS MATERIALS). . . . 307, 414, 415
Alarm and detection 415.3, 415.5, 415.11.2,
415.11.3.5, 415.11.5.9,
415.11.8, 901.6.3,
907.2.5, 908.1, 908.2
Area 503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Dispensing 414.5, 414.6, 414.7.2, 415.6
Gas detection systems. 415.11.7
Group provisions
H-1 (detonation) 307.3, 415.6.1.1,
415.6.2 415.7, 415.7.1
H-2 (deflagration) 307.4, 415.8, 415.9
H-3 (physical hazard). 307.5, 415.8, 415.10
H-4 (health hazard) 307.6, 415.10
H-5 (semiconductor 307.7, 415.11
Height. 415.7, 415.8.1, 415.9.1.1,
415.8.1.6, 426.1.1,
503, 504, 505, 508
Incidental uses 509
Interior finishes. 416.2.1, 416.3.1,
Table 803.11, 804
Live load. . . . . .Table 1607.1
Location on property 414.6.1.2, 415.6
Low hazard (See Factory – Group F-2 and
Storage – Group S-2)
Means of egress
Aisles 107.5
Corridors 415.11.2
One means of egress. . . . . .Table 1006.2.1, Table
1006.3.2
Panic hardware 1010.1.10
Stairway, exit access 1019
Travel distance. .Table 1017.2, 1016.2.1, 1006.3.2
Mixed occupancies. 508.3, 508.4
Accessory 508.2
Moderate hazard (See Factory – Group F-1 and
Storage – Group S-1)
Multiple hazards 307.8
Occupancy exceptions. 307.1
Plumbing fixtures . . . . . Chapter 29
Prohibited locations 419.2
Risk category . . . . . .Table 1604.5
Smoke and heat removal 910.2
Special provisions—General
Detached buildings 415.6.2, 415.8
Dry cleaning (see DRY CLEANING PLANTS)
Equipment platforms 505.3
Fire district D102.2.2
Fire separation distance. 415.6

`

Grain elevators. 426.1, 426.1.5
Grinding rooms 426.1.2
Separation from other occupancies 415.6.1,
508.2.4, 508.3.3, 508.4
Special provisions based on materials
Combustible liquids . . . . . .Table 307.1(1),
307.4, 307.5, 414.2.5,
414.5.3, 415.9.2
Corrosives . . . . . 307.6, Table 414.2.5(1), 414.3,
415.10.3, Table 415.11.1.1.1
Cryogenic . . . . . .Table 307.1(1), Table 414.5.1,
Table 415.11.1.1.1
Explosives . . . 202, 307.3, 307.3.1, Table 415.6.2
Flammable liquids. 307.4, 307.5, 415.9.1
Flammable solids 307.5, 415.11.1.1.1
Health-hazard materials 202,
Table 414.2.5(1), 415.6,
Table 415.11.1.1.1,
415.11.6.1, 415.11.7.2
Irritants . . . . .Table 414.2.5(1), Table 415.11.1.1.1
Liquid, highly toxic and toxic. 307.6,
Table 414.2.5(1), 415.8.3,
415.9.3, Table 415.11.1.1.1, 908.3
Organic peroxides . . . . . Table 414.5.1,
415.6.1, 415.8.4,
Table 415.11.1.1.1, 418
Oxidizers, liquid and solid. . . . . Table 414.2.5(1),
Table 414.5.1, 415.8.4,
Table 415.11.1.1.1,
Pyrophoric materials. . . . . 307.4, Table 307.1(1),
Table 414.5.1, 415.7.1,
415.8.4, Table 415.11.1.1.1
Sensitizers . . . . . Table 415.11.1.1.1
Solids, highly toxic and toxic. 307.6,
Table 414.2.5(1), 415.10.4,
Table 415.11.1.1.1, 908.3
Unstable materials . . . . . .307.3, Table 414.2.5(1),
Table 414.5.1, 415.5.4,
Table 415.11.1.1.1
Water-reactive materials. . . . . Table 414.5.1,
415.8.3, 415.8.4, 415.8.5,
415.11, Table 415.11.1.1.1
Sprinkler protection. 415.2, 415.11.6.4,
415.11.9, 415.11.10.1,
415.11.11, 705.8.1, 903.2.5
Standby, emergency power 2702.2.8,
2702.2.13, 2702.2.14
Storage 413, 414.1, 414.2.5,
414.5, 414.6, 414.7.1,
415.6, Table 415.6.2,
415.7.1, 415.9.1, 426.1
Unlimited area 507.8

HEAD JOINT, MASONRY. 202

HEADROOM 406.4.1, 505.1,
1003.2, 1003.3, 1010.1.1,
1010.1.1.1, 1011.3, 1012.5.2, 1208.2

`

HEALTH CARE
(see INSTITUTIONAL I-1 AND INSTITUTIONAL I-2)
Ambulatory care facilities 202, 422
Clinics, outpatient 304.1
Hospitals 308.4

HEALTH-HAZARD MATERIALS . . . . . 307.2, Table 414.2.5(1), 415.2, 415.11.1.1.1, Table 415.11.6.1

HEAT VENTS 910

HEATING (see MECHANICAL) 101.4.2
Aircraft hangars. 412.4.4
Fire pump rooms. 913.3
Fireplace 2111
Masonry heaters 2112
Parking garages 406.4.7
Repair garages 406.8.4

HEIGHT, BUILDING 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Limitations. 503
Mixed construction types 510
Modifications. 504
Roof structures 504.3

HELIPORT
Definition. 202
Live loads 1607.6

HIGH-PILED COMBUSTIBLE STORAGE 413, 907.2.15, 910.2.2

HIGH-RISE BUILDINGS 403
Alarms and detection 403.4.1, 403.4.2, 907.2.13
Application 403.1
Construction 403.2
Elevators. 403.6, 1009.2.1, 3007, 3008
Emergency power 403.4.8, 2702.2.9
Emergency systems 403.4
Fire command station 403.4.6
Fire department communication 403.4.3, 403.4.4
Fire service elevators 403.6.1, 3007
Occupant evacuation elevators. 403.6.2, 3008
Smoke removal 403.4.6
Smokeproof enclosure 403.5.4, 1023.11
Sprayed fire-resistant materials (SFRM). 403.2.4
Sprinkler protection. 403.3, 903.2.11.3
Stairways 403.5
Standby power 403.4.7, 2702.2.2, 2702.2.9
Structural integrity. 403.2.3, 1615
Super high-rise (over 420 feet) 403.2.1, 403.2.3, 403.2.4, 403.3.1, 403.5.2
Voice alarm. 403.4.3, 907.2.13
Zones 907.6.3, 907.6.4

HISTORIC BUILDINGS 101.4.8
Flood provisions G105.3

`

HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLY 711
Continuity. 508.2.5.1, 711.2.2, 711.2.3, 713.11, 713.12
Fire-resistance rating . . . . . 603.1(1), 603.1(22), 603.1(23), 703, 704.4.2, 707.3.10, 711.2.4
Glazing, rated 716.6
Group I-1 . . . . . 420.3
Group R 420.3
Incidental 509.4
Insulation 720, 807, 808
Joints 715, 2508.4
Non-fire-resistance rating 711.3
Opening protection . . . 712.1.13.1, 714.4, 716, 717.6
Shaft enclosure 713.1
Special provisions
Aircraft hangars 412.4.4
Atrium 404.3, 404.6
Covered and open mall buildings 402.4.2.3, 402.8.7
Fire pumps. 913.2.1
Flammable finishes 416.2
Group H-2 . . . . . 415.9.1.1, 415.9.1.2
Groups H-3 and H-4 . . . . . 415.10.2
Group H-5 . . . . . 415.11.1.2, 415.11.5.1
Group I-2 . . . . . 407.5.3
Groups I-1, R-1, R-2 and R-3 . . . . . 420.3
Hazardous materials 414.2
High-rise 403.2.1, 403.3, 403.4.7.1
Hydrogen fuel gas 421.4
Organic coating 418.4, 418.5, 418.6
Stages and platforms. 410.4, 410.5.1

HORIZONTAL EXIT 1026
Accessible means of egress 1009.2, 1009.2.1, 1009.3, 1009.4, 1009.6, 1009.6.2
Doors 1026.3
Exit discharge 1028.1
Fire resistance 1026.2
Institutional I-2 occupancy 407.4, 1026.1
Institutional I-3 occupancy 408.2, 1026.1
Refuge area (see REFUGE AREAS)

HORIZONTAL FIRE SEPARATION (see HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLY)
HOSE CONNECTIONS (see STANDPIPES, REQUIRED)
HOSPITAL (see INSTITUTIONAL GROUP I-2). 308.4, 407

HURRICANE-PRONE REGIONS (see WIND LOADS) 202

HURRICANE SHELTER (see STORM SHELTER)
HURRICANE SHUTTERS 1609.1.2

HYDROGEN FUEL GAS ROOMS . . . . 421, Table 509

`

HYPERBARIC FACILITIES 425

I

ICE-SENSITIVE STRUCTURE
Atmospheric ice loads 1614.1
Definition 202

IDENTIFICATION, REQUIREMENTS FOR
Fire barriers 703.6
Fire partitions 703.6
Fire wall 703.6
Glazing. 2403.1, 2406.3
Inspection certificate 1702.1
Labeling 1703.5
Preservative-treated wood 2303.1.9.1
Smoke barrier. 703.6
Smoke partition 703.6
Steel 2203.1

IMPACT LOAD 202, 1603.1.1, 1607.9

INCIDENTAL USES
Area 509.3
Occupancy classification 509.2
Separation and protection 509.4

INCINERATOR ROOMS. . . . . .Table 509, 1006.2.2.2

INDUSTRIAL (see FACTORY OCCUPANCY)
INSPECTIONS 110, 1704, 1705
Alternative methods and materials. 1705.1.1
Approval required. 110.6
Concrete construction 110.3.1, 110.3.2, 110.3.9, 1705.3
Concrete slab. 110.3.2
EIFS 110.3.9, 1705.16
Energy efficiency 110.3.7
Fabricators 1704.2.5
Fees 109
Final 110.3.10
Fire-extinguishing systems. 904.4
Fire-resistant materials. 110.3.9, 1705.14, 1705.15
Fire-resistant penetrations 110.3.6, 1705.17
Footing or foundation 110.3.1, 110.3.9, 1705.3, 1705.4, 1705.7, 1705.8, 1705.9
Flood hazard 110.3.3, 110.3.10.1
Frame. 110.3.4
Lath or gypsum board 110.3.5, 2503
Liability 104.8
Masonry 110.3.9, 1705.4
Preliminary 110.2
Required. 110.3
Right of entry 104.6
Seismic. 1705.12
Smoke control 104.16, 909.18.8, 1705.18
Soils 110.3.9, 1705.6
Special (see SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

`
AND TESTS) 110.3.9, 1704, 1705
Sprayed fire-resistant materials 1705.14
Sprinkler protection. 903.5
Steel 110.3.4, 110.3.9, 1705.2
Third party 110.4
Welding. 110.3.9, 1705.2, 2204.1
Wind 110.3.9, 1705.11
Wood 110.3.9, 1705.5

INSTITUTIONAL I-1
[see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I) and RESIDENTIAL (GROUP R-4)] 308.3, 420
Accessibility 1106.2, 1107.2, 1107.3, 1107.4, 1107.5.1
Alarm and detection 420.6, 907.2.6.1, 907.2.10, 907.2.11.2, 907.5.2.3.2
Combustible decorations 806.1
Emergency escape and rescue 1030
Means of egress
Aisles 1018.5
Corridors. 1020.1
Stairway, exit access 1019
Travel distance 1017.2, 1006.3.2
Occupancy exceptions . . . . . 308.3.1 through 308.3.4
Separation, unit 420.2, 420.3
Sprinkler protection. 420.4, 903.2.6, 903.3.2

INSTITUTIONAL I-2
[see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I)] 308.4, 407
Accessibility 1106.3, 1106.4, 1106.7.2, 1107.2, 1107.3, 1107.4, 1107.5.2, 1107.5.3, 1107.5.4, 1109.2, E106.4.6
Alarms and detection 407.7, 407.8, 907.2.6.2
Care suites 407.4.4
Combustible decorations 806.1
Electrical systems. 407.10, 2702.1.7, 2702.2.6
Hyperbaric facilities 425
Means of egress 407.4
Aisles 1018.5
Corridors. 407.2, 407.3, 407.4, 1020.2
Doors 407.3.1, 1010.1.9.6, 1010.1.9.8
Exterior exit stairway 1027.2
Hardware 1010.1.9.3, 1010.1.9.6
Stairway, exit access 1019.3
Travel distance 407.4
Occupancy exceptions . . . . . 308.4.1 through 308.4.4
Separation 410
Smoke barriers 407.5
Smoke compartment 407.2.1, 407.2.3, 407.5
Smoke partitions. 407.3
Sprinkler protection. 407.6, 903.2.6, 903.3.2
Yards. 407.9

INSTITUTIONAL I-3
[see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I)] 308.5, 408

`

Accessibility 1103.2.13, 1105.4, 1107.2, 1107.3, 1107.4, 1107.5.5, 1108.4.2, 1109.11.2, E104.2.2, E106.4.8
Alarm and detection 408.10, 907.2.6.3
Combustible decorations 806.1
Means of egress 408.2, 408.3, 408.4
Aisles 1018.5
Doors 408.4, 1010.1.1, 1010.1.2
Exit discharge 408.3.6
Exit sign exemption. 1013.1
Hardware 408.4, 1010.1.9.3, 1010.1.9.7, 1010.1.9.8
Stairway, exit access 1019.3
Travel distance 408.6.1, 408.8.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2
Security glazing. 408.7
Separation. 408.5, 408.8
Smoke barrier 408.6
Smoke compartment. 408.4.1, 408.6, 408.9
Sprinkler protection. 408.11, 903.2.6
Standby/emergency power 2702.2.7

INSTITUTIONAL I-4 [see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I)] 308.6
Accessibility 1103.2.12
Alarms and detection 907.2.6
Corridor rating. 1020.1
Educational 303.1.3, 305.1
Means of egress
Day care 1006.2.2.4
Stairway, exit access 1019
Travel distance 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2
Occupancy exceptions 308.6.1, 308.6.2, 308.6.3, 308.6.4
Sprinkler protection. 903.2.6

INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I) 308
Accessory 508.2
Adult care 308.6
Area 503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Child care 303.1.3, 308.6.4, 308.11, 310.1
Group specific provisions
Group I-1 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-1) 308.2
Group I-2 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-2) . . . 308.3, 407
Group I-3 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-3) . . . 308.4, 408
Group I-4 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-4) 308.1, 310.5.1
Height 503, 504, 505, 508
Incidental uses. 509
Interior finishes . . . . . Table 803.11, 804
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1
Means of egress
Corridors 1020.2
Stairway, exit access 1019
Travel distance 407, 1006.3.2, 1016.2.1, 1017.2,
Mixed occupancies 508.3, 508.4

`

Occupancy exceptions. . . . . 303.1.1, 303.1.2, 308.3.3, 308.3.4, 308.4.2, 308.6.1 through 308.6.4, 310.5.1
Plumbing fixtures 2902
Risk category . . . . . Table 1604.5
Standby, emergency power 2702.2

INSULATION
Concealed 720.2
Duct insulation 720.1
Exposed. 720.3
Fiberboard 720.1, 1508.1.1, 2303.1.6.2, 2303.1.6.3
Foam plastic (see FOAM PLASTICS) 720.1
Loose fill. 720.4, 720.6
Pipe insulation 720.1, 720.7
Reflective plastic core 2614
Roof 720.5, 1508
Sound 720, 807, 1207
Thermal 720, 807, 1508

INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT
Lighting 1205
Rodentproofing . . . . . .415.11.1.6, Appendix F
Sound transmission 1207
Space dimensions 1208
Temperature control 1204
Ventilation 409.3, 414.3, 415.9.1.7, 1203.5
Yards or courts 1206.2, 1206.3

INTERIOR FINISHES . . . . . Chapter 8
Acoustical ceiling systems. 807, 808
Application 803.12, 804.4
Atriums. 404.8
Children’s play structures 424
Covered and open mall buildings 402.6
Decorative materials 801.1.2, 806
Floor finish 804, 805
Foam plastic insulation 2603.3, 2603.4
Foam plastic trim 806.5, 2604.2
Insulation 807
Light-transmitting plastics 2606
Signs 402.6.4, 2611
Trim 806.7, 806.8
Wall and ceiling finishes 803
Wet location 1210

INTERPRETATION, CODE 104.1

J

JAILS (see INSTITUTIONAL I-3) 308.5, 408

JOINT
Gypsum board 2508.4
Lumber sheathing 2308.7.11
Shotcrete 1908.7
Waterproofing. 1805.3.3

`

JOINTS, FIRE-RESISTANT SYSTEMS 715
Special inspection 1705.17

K

KIOSKS. 402.6.2

KITCHENS 303.3, 306.2
Accessibility 1109.4
Dimensions 1208
Means of egress. 1016.2
Occupant load . . . . . Table 1004.1.1
Sinks 2902.1

L

LABORATORIES
Classification of 304.1
Hazardous materials 414, 415
Incidental uses . . . . . Table 509

LADDERS
Boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms 1006.2.2.1
Construction. 1011.15, 1011.16,
1014.2, 1014.6, 1015.3, 1015.4
Emergency escape window wells 1030.5.2
Group I-3 . . . . . 408.3.5, 1011.15, 1011.16
Heliport. 412.8.3
Refrigeration machinery room 1006.2.2.2
Ships ladders 1011.14
Stage 410.6.3.4

LAMINATED TIMBER,
STRUCTURAL GLUED. 602.4, 2303.1,
2303.1.3, 2304.12.2.4,
2306.1, 2308.4.3, 2308.7.9

LANDINGS
Doors 1010.1.6
Ramp 1012.6
Stair 1011.6

LATH, METAL OR WIRE . . . . . .Table 2507.2

LAUNDRIES . . . . . 304.1, 306.2, Table 509

LAUNDRY CHUTE 713.13, 903.2.11.2
LEGAL
Federal and state authority 102.2
Liability 104.8
Notice of violation 114.2, 116.3
Registered design professional 107.1, 107.3.4
Right of entry 104.6
Unsafe buildings or systems. 116
Violation penalties 114.4

LIBRARIES
Classification, other than school 303.1.3, 303.4
Classification, school 303.1.3, 305.1

`

Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1

LIGHT, REQUIRED 1205
Artificial 1205.3
Emergency (see EMERGENCY LIGHTING)
Means of egress 1008.2
Natural 1205.2
Stairways 1205.4
Yards and courts 1206

LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION
Definition. 202
Cold-formed steel 2211
Conventional (wood). 2308

LIGHTS, PLASTIC CEILING DIFFUSERS 2606.7

LINEN CHUTE. 713.13, 903.2.11.2

LINTEL
Adobe 2109.3.4.9
Fire resistance 704.11
Masonry, wood support 2304.13

LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS . . . . . Table 414.5.1, 415.9.2

LIVE LOADS 202, 1607
Construction documents 107.2, 1603.1.1
Posting of 106.1

LIVE/WORK UNITS. 202, 310.4, 419
Accessibility 1107.6.2.1
Separation 508.1

LOAD AND RESISTANCE
FACTOR DESIGN (LRFD). 1602.1
Factored load 202
Limit state 202
Load combinations 1605.2
Load factor 202
Resistance factor 202
Wood design. 2301.2, 2307

LOAD COMBINATIONS 1605
Allowable stress design 1605.3
Load and resistance factor design 1605.2
Strength design 1605.2

LOADS 106, 202
Atmospheric ice 1614
Combinations 1605
Dead 202, 1606
Factored load 202, 1604.2
Flood. 1603.1.7, 1612
Impact 202, 1607.9
Live 419.6, 1603.1.1, 1607
Load effects 202
Nominal load. 202, 1604.2

`

Rain. 1611
Seismic 1603.1.5, 1613
Snow. 1603.1.3, 1608
Soil lateral 1610
Wind 1603.1.4, 1609

LOBBIES
Assembly occupancy 1029.4
Elevator. 405.4.3, 1009.2.1, 1009.4, 3006, 3007.6, 3008.6
Exit discharge 1028.1
Underground buildings 405.4.3

LOCKS AND LATCHES 1010.1.9, 1010.1.10
Access-controlled egress 1010.1.9.8
Delayed egress locks 1010.1.9.7
Electromagnetically locked 1010.1.9.9
Group I-2. . . . . 407.4.1.1, 1010.1.9.6
Group I-3. . . . . 408.4, 1010.1.9.10
Group R-4 . . . . . 1010.1.9.5.1
High-rise 403.5.3
Toilet rooms 2902.3.5

LUMBER
General provisions . . . . . Chapter 23
Quality standards 2303

M

MAINTENANCE. . . . . .
Means of egress 1001.3, 3310.2
Property 101.4.4

MALL
(see COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)
MANUAL FIRE ALARM BOX 907.4.2

MANUFACTURED HOMES
Flood resistant G501

MARQUEES 202, 3106, H113
Drainage, water. 3201.4
Construction 3106.5
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1, 1607.12
Prohibited location 3106.4
Roof construction 3106.3

MASONRY
Adhered veneer 1405.10
Adobe 2109.3
Anchorage. 1604.8.2
Anchored veneer. 1405.6
Architectural cast stone 2103.1
Ashlar stone. 202
Autoclaved aerated concrete (AAC) 202
Calculated fire resistance 722.4
Chimneys. 2113
Construction. 2104, 2109.2.2
Corbelled 2104.1.2

`

Dampproofing 1805.2.2
Design, methods 2101.2, 2107, 2108, 2109
Fire resistance, calculated 722.3.2, 722.3.4
Fireplaces 2111
Floor anchorage. 1604.8.2
Foundation walls 1807.1.5
Foundations, adobe 2109.3.4.5
Glass unit. 2110
Grouted 202
Headers (see BONDING, MASONRY) 2109.2
Heaters 2112
Inspection, special 1705.4
Joint reinforcement 2103.4
Materials 2103
Penetrations. 714
Quality assurance 2105
Rodentproofing . . . . . Appendix F
Roof anchorage 1604.8.1
Rubble stone 202
Seismic provisions 2106
Serviceability 1604.3.4
Stone 2109.2
Support 2304.13
Surface bonding. 2103.2.2
Veneer 1405.6, 1405.10, 2101.2.1, 2308.6.10
Wall, composite 202
Wall, hollow 202
Wall anchorage 1604.8.2
Waterproofing 1805.3.2
Wythe. 202

MATERIALS

Alternates. 104.11
Aluminum. . . . . Chapter 20
Concrete . . . . . Chapter 19
Glass and glazing . . . . . Chapter 24
Gypsum . . . . . Chapter 25
Masonry . . . . . Chapter 21
Noncombustible 703.4
Plastic . . . . . Chapter 26
Steel. . . . . Chapter 22
Testing (see TESTING) 1707
Wood . . . . . Chapter 23

MEANS OF EGRESS. . . . . Chapter 10
Accessible 1009, 2702.2.2
Aircraft related 412.3.2, 412.3.3,
412.3.4, 412.5.2, 412.7.1
Alternating tread device 412.7.3, 505.3,
1006.2.2.1, 1006.2.2.2,
1011.14,
Ambulatory care facilities 422.3.1, 422.3.3
Assembly 1009.1, 1029
Atrium. 404.9, 404.10, 707.3.6
Capacity 1005.3
Ceiling height 1003.2
Child care facilities (see Day care facilities)
Construction drawings 107.2.3
Configuration 1007

`

Convergence 1005.6
Covered and open mall buildings. 402.8
Day care facilities. 308.6, 310.5.1,
Table 1004.1.1, 1006.2.2.4
Distribution 1005.5
Doors 1005.7, 1006.2, 1010,
1022.2, 2702.2.10
During construction 3303.3, 3310
Elevation change 1003.5
Elevators 403.5.2, 403.6.1, 1003.7, 1009, 3008
Emergency escape and rescue 1030
Encroachment 1005.7
Equipment platform 505.3
Escalators 1003.7
Existing buildings 1009.1, 3310
Exit (see EXIT) . . . . . 1022 through 1027
Exit access
(see EXIT ACCESS) . . . . . 1016 through 1021
Exit discharge (see EXIT DISCHARGE) 1028
Exit enclosures. 1023.2
Exit passageway
(see EXIT PASSAGWAY) 1024
Exit signs 1013, 2702.2.5,
Fire escapes. 412.8.3
Floor surface 804, 1003.4
Gates 1010.2
Group I-2 . . . . . 407.2, 407.3, 407.4, 1019.3
Group I-3 . . . . . 408.2, 408.3, 408.4,
408.6, 408.8, 1019.3
Guards 1015
Handrails 1014
Hazardous materials 414.6.1.2,
415.11.2, 415.11.5.6
Headroom 1003.2, 1003.3
Heliports 412.8.3
High-hazard Group H. 415.11.2
High-rise. 403.5, 403.6
Illumination. 1008, 2702.2.4
Interior finish. 803.11, 804
Ladders (see LADDERS)
Live loads . . . . . Table 1607.1
Live/work units 419.3
Mezzanines 505.2.2, 505.2.3,
1004.1.1.2, 1009.1
Moving walk 1003.7
Number 1006
Occupant load 1004.1, 1004.1.2, 1004.2
Parking 406.5.7
Protruding objects. 1003.3, 1005.7
Ramps 1012, 1027
Scoping. 101.3, 105.2.2, 108.2, 1001.1
Seating, fixed 1009.1, 1029
Special amusement 411.7
Stages 410.3.3, 410.6
Stairways 403.5, 404.6, 1005.3.1,
1011, 1023.2, 1027
Temporary structures 3103.4
Travel distance
(see TRAVEL DISTANCE) 1016.2.1, 1017

`

Turnstile 1010.3
Underground buildings 405.5.1, 405.7
Width 1005.1, 1005.2, 1005.4,
1011.2, 1012.5.1, 1020.2, 1029.6, 1029.8

MECHANICAL (see AIR CONDITIONING, HEATING, REFRIGERATION, AND VENTILATION) . . . 101.4.2
Access 1011.12, 1209.3
Air transfer openings 705.10, 706.11,
707.10, 708.9, 709.8,
711.7, 713.10, 714.1.1, 717
Chimneys (see CHIMNEYS)
Code . . . . . Chapter 28
Disconnected 3303.6
Ducts 704.8, 705.10, 706.11,
707.10, 712.1.6, 712.1.10.3,
713.10, 708.9, 709.8, 710.8,
711.7, 714.1.1, 717
Encroachment, public right-of-way 3202.3.2
Equipment on roof 1510, 1511.2
Equipment platforms. 505.3
Factory-built fireplace 2111.14.1
Fireplaces 2111
Incidental use room . . . . . Table 509
Motion picture projection room 409.3
Permit required 105.1, 105.2
Roof access 1011.12
Seismic inspection and testing 1705.12.6,
1705.13.2
Smoke control systems 909
Systems . . . . . 202, Chapter 28

MECHANICALLY LAMINATED DECKING. 2304.9.3

MEMBRANE ROOF COVERINGS 1507.11,
1507.12, 1507.13

MEMBRANE STRUCTURES 2702.2.12, 3102

MENTAL HOSPITALS (see INSTITUTIONAL I-2)
MERCANTILE OCCUPANCY (GROUP M). 309
Accessible. 1109.12
Alarm and detection 907.2.7
Area 503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Covered and open mall buildings 402
Hazardous material display and storage. 414.2.5
Height 503, 504, 505, 508
Incidental uses 509
Interior finishes . . . . . Table 803.11, 804
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1
Means of egress
Aisles 1018.3, 1018.4
Stairway, exit access 1019
Travel distance 402.8, 1016.2.1,
1017.2, 1006.3.2
Mixed occupancies 508.3, 508.4
Accessory 508.2
Live/work units 419

`

Mall buildings 402
Parking below/above 510.7, 510.8, 510.9
Special mixed 510.2
Occupancy exceptions 307.1.1
Plumbing fixtures 2902
Sprinkler protection. 903.2.7
Standpipes 905.3.3
Unlimited area. 507.5, 507.4, 507.13

METAL
Aluminum . . . . . Chapter 20
Roof coverings 1504.3.2, 1507.5
Steel . . . . . Chapter 22
Veneer 1404.5

MEZZANINES 505
Accessibility 1104.4, 1108.2.4, 1108.2.9
Area limitations 505.2.1, 505.3.1
Egress. 505.2.2, 505.2.3, 1004.6, 1009.1
Equipment platforms 505.3
Guards 505.3.3, 1015.1
Height 505.2, 1003.2
Occupant load. 1004.1.1.2
Stairways 712.1.11, 1011.14, 1023.2

MIRRORS 1010.1, 2406.1

MIXED OCCUPANCY
(see OCCUPANCY SEPARATION)
MODIFICATIONS 104.4, 104.10

MOISTURE PROTECTION 1210, 1403.2, 1503

MONASTERIES. 310.4

MORTAR 202
Ceramic tile 2103.2.3
Dampproofing 1805.2.2
Fire resistance 714.3.1, 714.4.1
Glass unit masonry 2110.1.1
Masonry 2103.2
Rodentproofing . . . . . Appendix F

MOTELS. 310.3, 310.4

MOTION PICTURE PROJECTION ROOMS 409
Construction. 409.2
Exhaust air. 409.3.2, 409.3.3
Lighting control 409.4
Projection room 409.3
Supply air. 409.3.1
Ventilation 409.3

MOTOR FUEL-DISPENSING SYSTEM. 406.5
Accessibility 1109.14

MOTOR VEHICLE FACILITIES 304, 311, 406.7

MOVING, BUILDINGS 101.4.8, D103.3

`

MOVING WALKS 3004.2
Means of egress 1003.7

N

NAILING 202, 2303.6, 2304, 2304.10

NONCOMBUSTIBLE
BUILDING MATERIAL 703.4

NURSES STATIONS
(See CARE PROVIDER STATIONS)
NURSING HOMES
(see INSTITUTIONAL, GROUP I-2) 308.4, 407

O

OCCUPANCY
Accessory 508.2
Certificates (see CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY)
Change (see CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY)
Floor loads . . . . . Table 1607.1
Special . . . . . Chapter 4

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION 302
Covered and open mall buildings 402
HPM. 415.11
Mixed 508, 510
Special . . . . . Chapter 4

OCCUPANCY SEPARATION
Accessory 508.2
Aircraft related 412.5.1
Covered mall and open mall building. 402.4.2
Mixed occupancy 508, 510, 707.3.9
Private parking garages. . . . . 406.3.4, Table 508.4
Repair garages. 406.8.1
Required fire resistance . . . . . .Table 508.4, 510

OCCUPANT
EVACUATION ELEVATORS 403.5.2, 403.6.2, 3008

OCCUPANT LOAD
Actual 1004.1.2
Certificate of occupancy. 111
Covered and open mall building. 402.8.2
Cumulative 1004.1.1
Determination of. 1004.1, 1004.1.1, 1004.6
Increased 1004.2
Outdoors 1004.5
Seating, fixed 1004.4
Signs 1004.3

OFFICE BUILDINGS
(See GROUP B OCCUPANCIES)
Classification 304
Live loads. . . . . Table 1607.1, 1607.5

`

OPEN MALL BUILDINGS
(see COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)
OPENING PROTECTION,
EXTERIOR WALLS. 705.8

OPENING PROTECTION, FLOORS
(see VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION)
OPENING PROTECTIVES 705.8, 706.8, 707.6, 708.6, 709.5,
712.1.13.1, 713.7, 716
Automatic-closing devices 909.5.3
Fire door and shutter assemblies. 705.8.2, 712.1.13.1, 716.5
Fire windows 716.6
Glass unit masonry
(see GLASS UNIT MASONRY) 2110.1.1
Glazing. 716.6

ORGANIC COATINGS 418

ORGANIC PEROXIDES 307.4, 307.5

OXIDIZERS, LIQUID AND SOLID 307.3, 307.4, 307.5

P

PANIC HARDWARE. 1010.1.10

PARAPET, EXTERIOR WALL 705.11, 2109.3.4.3
Construction. 705.11.1
Fire wall 706.6
Height. 705.11.1

PARKING, ACCESSIBLE. 1106, 1111.1

PARKING GARAGES. 406.4, 406.5, 406.6
Accessibility 1105.1.1, 1106.1, 1106.7.4, 1111.1
Barriers, vehicle 202, 406.4.3, 1607.8.3
Classification 311, 406.3, 406.4
Construction type . . . . . 406.5.1, Table 601
Enclosed
(see PARKING GARAGE, ENCLOSED) 406.6
Gates 3110
Guards 406.4.2, 2407.1.3
Height, clear 406.4.1
Live loads . . . . . Table 1607.1, 1607.10.1.3
Means of egress 1006.3.1, 1006.2.2.5, 1019
Occupancy separation 508, 510
Open (see PARKING GARAGE, OPEN) 406.5
Special provisions. 510
Sprinkler protection. 903.2.10
Underground. 405
Vertical openings 712.1.10

PARKING GARAGES, ENCLOSED. 406.6
Area and height [see STORAGE
OCCUPANCY (GROUP S)] 406.6.1

`

Means of egress 1003.2, 1006.3.2, 1012.1
Ventilation. 406.6.2

PARKING GARAGES, OPEN. 202, 406.5
Area and height [see STORAGE
OCCUPANCY (GROUP S)] 406.5,
406.5.1, Table 406.5.4
Construction type 406.5.1
Means of egress 406.5.7, 1003.2,
Table 1006.2.1, 1006.3,
1009.3, 1009.4, 1012.1,
1017.3, 1019, 1020.1, 1028.1
Mixed occupancy 406.5.3
Standpipes 406.5.8
Ventilation. 406.5.10

PARTICLEBOARD 202
Draftstopping 718.3.1
Moisture protection 1403.2, 1405.2
Quality 2303.1.8
Veneer 1405.5
Wall bracing 2308.6.3

PARTITIONS
Fabric partition 202, 1607.14.1
Fire (see FIRE PARTITION)
Live loads 1607.5, 1607.14
Materials . . . . . .602.4.6, 603.1(1), 603.1(11)
Occupancy, specific 708.1
Smoke (see SMOKE PARTITION)
Toilets 1210

PARTY WALLS
(see FIRE WALLS) . . . . . 706.1.1, Table 716.6

PASSAGEWAY, EXIT (see EXIT). 1024.1

PASSENGER STATIONS 303.4

PATIO COVERS . . . . . 2606.10, Appendix I

PEDESTRIAN
Protection at construction site 3303.2, 3306
Walkways and tunnels 3104, 3202.3.4

PENALTIES. 114.4

PENETRATION-FIRESTOP SYSTEM
Fire-rated walls 714.3.2
Fire-rated horizontal assemblies. 714.4.2

PENETRATIONS. 714, 717
Fire-resistant assemblies
Exterior wall 705.10
Fire barrier 707.7, 707.10
Fire partition 708.7, 708.9
Fire wall 706.9, 706.11
Horizontal assemblies. 714.4
Shaft enclosures. 712.1, 713.1, 713.8, 713.10

`

Smoke barriers 709.6, 709.8, 714.4.4
Smoke partitions 710.6, 710.7
Special inspection. 1705.17
Walls 714.3
Nonfire-resistant assemblies. 714.5

PERFORMANCE CATEGORY
Definition. 202
Wood structural panels 2302.1.5

PERLITE . . . . . .Table 721.1(1), Table 2507.2

PERMITS 105
Application for 104.2, 105.1, 105.3
Drawings and specifications 107.2.1
Expiration 105.5
Fees 109
Liability for issuing. 104.8
Placement of permit 105.7
Plan review 104.2, 107.3
Suspension or revocation 105.6
Time limitations. 105.3.2, 105.5

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEMS 202
Fire classification 1505.8, 1505.9
Panels/modules 1512
Photovoltaic module 202
Photovoltaic panel. 202
Roof live loads 1607.12.5
Rooftop mounted 1510.7

PIER FOUNDATIONS
(see FOUNDATION, SHALLOW)
PILE FOUNDATIONS (see FOUNDATION, DEEP)
PIPES
Embedded in fire protection 704.8
Insulation covering 720.1, 720.7
Penetration protection. 714, 1023.5
Under platform 410.4

PLAIN CONCRETE (see CONCRETE). 1906

PLAN REVIEW 107.3

PLASTER
Fire-resistance requirements 719
Gypsum 719.1, 719.2
Inspection 110.3.5
Portland cement. 719.5,
Table 2507.2, Table 2511.1.1

PLASTIC. . . . . Chapter 26
Approval for use. 2606.2
Composites 2612
Core insulation, reflective plastic 2614
Decking 1410, 2612
Fiber-reinforced polymer 2613
Finish and trim, interior 2604
Light-transmitting panels 2401.1, 2607

`

Roof panels 2609
Signs 402.6.4, 2611, D102.2.10, H107.1.1
Thermal barrier 2603.4
Veneer 1404.8, 2605, D102.2.11
Walls, exterior 2603.4.1.4, 2603.5

PLASTIC, FOAM
Children's play structures 424.2
Insulation (see FOAM PLASTICS) 2603
Interior finish 803.4, 2603.9
Malls 402.6.2, 402.6.4.5
Stages and platforms. 410.3.6

PLASTIC, LIGHT-TRANSMITTING
Awnings and patio covers 2606.10
Bathroom accessories 2606.9
Exterior wall panels 2607
Fiber-reinforced polymer 2613.4
Fiberglass-reinforced polymer 2613.4
Glazing. 2608
Greenhouses 2606.11
Light-diffusing systems 2606.7
Roof panels 2609
Signs, interior. 2611
Skylight 2610
Solar collectors 2606.12
Structural requirements 2606.5
Unprotected openings 2608.1, 2608.2
Veneer, exterior . . . . . 603.1(15), 603.1(17), 2605
Wall panels 2607

PLATFORM
(see STAGES AND PLATFORMS) 410
Construction. 410.4
Temporary 410.4.1

PLATFORM, EQUIMENT
(see EQUIPMENT PLATFORM)
PLATFORM LIFTS, WHEELCHAIR
Accessible means of egress 1009.2, 1009.5, 1109.4, 2702.2.2
Accessibility 1109.8

PLUMBING
(see TOILET AND TOILET ROOMS) . . . . . .101.4.3, 105.2, Chapter 29
Aircraft hangars, residential 412.5.4
Facilities, minimum. 2902, 3305.1
Fixtures . . . . . .Table 2902.1
Room requirements 1210, 2606.9

PLYWOOD
(see WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS) 202
Preservative-treated. 2303.1.9.1

PRESCRIPTIVE FIRE RESISTANCE. 721

PRESERVATIVE-TREATED WOOD 202
Fastenings 2304.10.5

`
Quality 2303.1.9
Required. 1403.6, 2304.12
Shakes, roof covering 1507.9.6, 1507.9.8

PROJECTION ROOMS
Motion picture. 409

PROJECTIONS, COMBUSTIBLE 705.2.3, 1406.3

PROPERTY LINE
(see FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE) 705.3

PROPERTY MAINTENANCE. 101.4.4

PROSCENIUM
Opening protection. 410.3.5
Wall 410.3.4

PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS
(see INSTITUTIONAL I-2) 308.4

PUBLIC ADDRESS SYSTEM
(see EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS)
Covered and open mall buildings. 402.7, 907.2.20, 2702.2.4
Special amusement buildings 411.6

PUBLIC PROPERTY . . . . . Chapter 32, Chapter 33

PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY
Encroachments . . . . . Chapter 32

PYROPHORIC MATERIALS . . . Table 307.1(1), 307.4

R

RAILING (see GUARDS AND HANDRAILS)
RAMPS 1012
Assembly occupancy 1029.13
Construction. . . . . 1012.2 through 1012.5.3, 1012.7, 1012.10
Exit 1023
Exit access. 1019
Exterior. 1027
Guards 1012.9, 1015, 1607.8
Handrails 1012.8, 1014, 1607.8
Interior 1012.2
Landings. 1012.6
Parking garage 406.4.4
Slope 1012.2

RECREATIONAL FACILITIES
Accessibility 1110
Amusement rides 1110.4.8
Animal containment areas 1110.4.7
Areas of sports activity 202, 1110.4.1
Boat slips 1110.4.9
Boxing rings 1110.4.5
Bowling lanes 1110.4.3

`

Court sports 1110.4.4
Exercise equipment 1110.4.10
Fishing piers 1110.4.11
Hot tubs 1110.4.13
Miniature golf 1110.4.12
Referee stands 1110.4.6
Shooting facilities 1110.4.14
Swimming pools 1110.4.13
Team or player seating. 1110.4.2
Children's play structure 402.6.3, 424
Special amusement buildings
(see AMUSEMENT BUILDINGS, SPECIAL)

REFERENCED STANDARDS. . . . . Chapter 35
Applicability. 102.3, 102.4
Fire resistance 703.2
List . . . . . Chapter 35
Organizations . . . . . Chapter 35

REFORMATORIES 308.4

REFRIGERATION (see MECHANICAL). 101.4.2
Machinery room 1006.2.2.2

REFUGE AREAS (see HORIZONTAL EXIT, SMOKE COMPARTMENTS, STORM SHELTERS) 407.5.1, 408.6.2, 420.4.1, 422.3.2, 423.1.1, 423.3, 423.4, 1026.4

REFUSE CHUTE. 713.13

REINFORCED CONCRETE (see CONCRETE)
General 1901.2
Inspections 1705.3

REINFORCEMENT
Concrete 1908.4
Masonry 2103.4

RELIGIOUS WORSHIP, PLACES OF
Accessibility 1103.2.8, 1108.2.4
Alarms and detection 907.2.1
Balcony. 1029.5, 1108.2.4
Classification 303.1.4, 303.4, 305.1.1, 305.2.1, 308.6.2
Door operations 1010.1.9.3
Egress 1029
Interior finishes . . . . . Table 803.11, 804
Unlimited area 507.6, 507.7

RELOCATING, BUILDING 101.4.8, D103.3

REPAIRS, BUILDING 101.4.8, 202
Flood. 1612.1, 1612.2
Minor 105.2.2
Permit required 105.1

RESIDENTIAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP R). 310

`

Accessibility 1103.2.3, 1103.2.11,
1105.1.7, 1106.2, 1107.2,
1107.3, 1107.4, 1107.6, E104.2
Alarm and detection 907.5.2.3.2, 907.5.2.3.3,
907.2.8, 907.2.9,
907.2.10, 907.2.11
Area 503, 505, 506, 508, 510
Draftstopping. 718.3.2, 718.4.2
Group provisions
Group R-1 (transient) 310.3
Group R-2 (apartment) 310.4
Group R-3 (two dwellings per building). 310.5
Group R-4 (group homes). . . . 310.6, 1010.1.9.5.1
Height 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Incidental uses 509
Interior finishes . . . . . Table 803.11, 804
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1
Live/work units 419
Means of egress
Aisles 1018.5
Corridors 1020.1, 1020.2
Doors 1010.1.1, 1010.1.9.5.1
Emergency escape and rescue 1030.1
Exit signs 1013.1, 1013.2
Single exits 1006.3.2,
Stairway, exit access 1019
Travel distance 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2
Mixed occupancies 508.3, 508.4
Accessory 508.2, G801.1
Live/work units 419
Parking, private. 406.3
Parking below/above 510.4, 510.7, 510.9
Special mixed 510.2
Plumbing fixtures 2902
Risk category . . . . . Table 1604.5.1
Special provisions. 510.2, 510.5, 510.6
Separation 419, 420, 508.2.4, 508.3.3
Sprinkler protection. 903.2.8, 903.3.2

RETAINING WALLS 1807.2, 2304.12.5
Flood provisions G801.4
Seismic 1803.5.12

REVIEWING STANDS
(see BLEACHERS AND GRANDSTANDS)
RISERS, STAIR (see STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION)
Alternating tread device 1011.14
Assembly 1011.5.2, 1029.6, 1029.7,
1029.9, 1029.13
Closed 1011.5.5.3
General 1011.5
Spiral 1011.10
Uniformity. 1011.5.4

RISK CATEGORY (Structural Design). . . 202, 1604.5
Multiple occupancies 1604.5.1

RODENTPROOFING . . . . . Appendix F

`

ROLL ROOFING. 1507.6

ROOF ACCESS 1011.12

ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES 202
Cooling towers 1510.4
Drainage 1503.4, 3201.4
Fire classification 1505
Fire district D102.2.9
Height modifications 504.3
Impact resistance. 1504.7
Insulation 1508
Materials 1506
Mechanical equipment screen 1510.6
Parapet walls 1503.3, 1503.6
Penthouses 1510.2
Photovoltaic panels and modules . . . 1510.7, 1512.1
Radiant barrier 202, 1509
Roof ventilation 202
Tanks 1510.3
Towers, spires, domes and cupolas 1510.5
Weather protection 1503
Wind resistance 1504.1, 1609.5

ROOF CONSTRUCTION
Construction walkways 3306.7
Coverings (see ROOF COVERINGS) 1609.5.2
Deck. 1609.5.1
Draftstopping 718.4
Fire resistance . . . . . Table 601
Fireblocking 718.2
Live loads. . . . . Table 1607.1, 1607.12
Materials . . . . . Chapter 6
Penetration of fire-resistant assemblies. 714
Protection from adjacent construction 3307.1
Rain loads 1611
Roof structures 504.3, 1509, D102.2.9
Signs, roof mounted. H110
Slope, minimum. . . . . Chapter 15
Snow load 1608
Trusses 2211.3, 2303.4, 2308.7.13
Wood (see ROOF CONSTRUCTION, WOOD)

ROOF CONSTRUCTION, WOOD . . . 602.4.3, 602.4.5
Anchorage to walls. 1604.8.2
Attic access 1209.2
Ceiling joists 2308.7.1
Diaphragms 2305.1, 2306.2
Fastening requirements 2304.10
Fire-retardant-treated . . . . . .Table 601, 603.1(1)
Framing 2304.11.3, 2308.7
Rafters 2306.1.1
Sheathing. 2304.7, 2308.7.10
Trusses 2303.4, 2308.7.13
Ventilation, attic 1203.2
Wind uplift 2308.7.5

ROOF COVERINGS 1507

`

Asphalt shingles. 1507.2
Built up 1507.10
Clay tile 1507.3
Concrete tile 1507.3
Fire district D102.2.4
Fire resistance . . . . . .603.1(3), 1505
Flashing 1503.2, 1503.6, 1507.2.9, 1507.3.9,
1507.5.7, 1507.7.7, 1507.8.8,
1507.9.9, 1510.6
Impact resistance. 1504.7
Insulation 1508
Liquid-applied coating 1507.15
Membrane 3102
Metal roof panels 1507.4
Metal roof shingles. 1507.5
Modified bitumen 1507.11
Photovoltaic shingles 1507.17
Plastics, light-transmitting panels. 2609
Roof replacement. 202, 1511.3
Reroofing 202, 1511
Roll 1507.6
Roof recover. 202, 1511.3.1
Single-ply 202, 1507.12
Slate shingles. 1507.7
Sprayed polyurethane foam. 1507.14
Thermoplastic single-ply 1507.13
Wind loads 1504.1, 1609.5
Wood shakes 1507.9
Wood shingles 1507.8

ROOF DECK. 202

ROOF DRAINAGE 1503.4
Scuppers 202, 1503.4.2

ROOF REPLACEMENT/RECOVERING 1511.3

ROOF STRUCTURE (see ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES)
ROOM DIMENSIONS 1208

ROOMING HOUSE (see BOARDING HOUSE) . . . 310

S

SAFEGUARDS
DURING CONSTRUCTION . . . . . Chapter 33
Accessibility 1103.2.5
Adjoining property protection 3307
Construction 3302
Demolition. 3303
Excavations 1804.1
Fire extinguishers 3309
Means of egress 3310
Protection of pedestrians 3306
Sanitary facilities. 3305
Site work. 3304
Sprinkler protection. 3312
Standpipes 3308.1.1, 3311

`

Temporary use of streets, alleys and
public property 3308

SAFETY GLAZING 716.5.8.4, 2406

SCHOOLS (see EDUCATIONAL OCCUPANCY)
SEATING
Accessibility 1108.2, 1109.11
Tables. 1029.9, 1029.12.1

SEATING, FIXED 1029
Accessibility 1108.2, 1109.11
Aisles 1029.9, 1029.12
Bleachers (see BLEACHERS)
Grandstands (see GRANDSTANDS)
Guards 1029.16
Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1
Occupant load 1004.4
Stability 1029.14
Temporary 108

SECURITY GLAZING 408.7

SECURITY GRILLES 402.8.8, 1010.1.4.4

SEISMIC 1613
Construction documents 107, 1603.1.5, 1603.1.9
Earthquake recording equipment . . . . . Appendix L
Fire resistance 704.12
Geotechnical investigation 1803.5.11, 1803.5.12
Glazing 2404
Loads 1613
Mapped acceleration parameters 1613.3.1,
Figures 1613.3.1(1) through1613.3.1(8)
Masonry 2106
Membrane structure 3102.7
Seismic design category. 202, 1613.5.6
Seismic detailing. 1604.10
Site class 202, 1613.5.2
Site coefficients 202, 1613.5.3
Special inspection. 1705.12
Statement of special inspections 1704.3
Steel 2205.2, 2206.2
Structural observations 1704.6.1
Structural testing. 1705.13
Wood. 2305, 2308.6.6, 2308.6.8, 2308.6.10

SERVICE SINKS . . . . . 1109.3, Table 2902.1

SERVICE STATION
(see MOTOR FUEL-DISPENSING FACILITIES)
SHAFT (see SHAFT ENCLOSURE
AND VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION). 202

SHAFT ENCLOSURE
(see VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION) 713
Continuity 713.5, 713.11, 713.12
Elevators. 713.14
Exceptions 713.2, 1019, 1023,

`

Exterior walls. 713.6
Fire-resistance rating 707.3.1, 713.4
Group I-3. . . . . 408.5
High-rise buildings 403.2.1.2, 403.2.3, 403.3.1.1, 403.5.1
Joints. 713.9, 715
Materials 713.3
Opening protection 713.8, 713.10, 714, 717.5.3
Penetrations 713.8
Refuse and laundry chutes 713.13
Required 713.1

SHEAR WALL
Gypsum board and plaster 2505
Masonry 202
Wood. 202, 2305.1, 2306.3

SHEATHING
Clearance from earth 2304.12.1.2
Fastening 2304.10
Fiberboard. . . . . Table 2306.3(2)
Floor 2304.8, 2308.4.7
Gypsum. . . . . Table 2506.2, 2508
Moisture protection 2304.12.1.2
Roof 2304.8
Roof sheathing 2308.7.10
Wall 2304.6, 2308.5.11
Wood structural panels 2303.1.5, 2211.3

SHOPPING CENTERS
(see COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)
SHOTCRETE. 1908

SHUTTERS, FIRE
(see OPENING PROTECTIVES) 716.5

SIDEWALKS . . . . . 105.2(6), G801.4
Live loads . . . . . Table 1607.1
SIGNS . . . . . 3107, Appendix H
Accessibility 1013.4, 1110, E106.4.9, E107, E109.2.2
Accessible means of egress . . . . . 1009.8.2, 1009.9 through 1009.11
Animated devices H108
Construction. H105, H107
Covered and open mall building 402.6.4
Doors 1010.1.9.3, 1010.1.9.7, 1010.1.9.8
Electrical H106
Elevators 1109.7, 1111.2, 3002.3, 3007.6.5, 3008.6.5
Encroachment, public right-of-way 3202.3.1
Exit. 1013, 2702.2.5
Floor loads 106.1
Ground. H109
Height limitation H109.1, H112.4
Illumination. H106.1
Luminous 403.5.5, 1013.5, 1025
Marquee. H113
Obstruction 1003.3.2, 1003.3.3, H103

`

Occupant load, assembly 1004.3
Parking spaces 1111.1
Plastic 2611, D102.2.10
Portable H114
Projecting. H112
Protruding objects 1003.3
Roof H110
Stairway identification 1023.8, 1023.9, 1111.2, 1111.3
Standpipe control valve 905.7.1
Toilet room. 1111.1, 1111.2, 2902.4, 2902.4.1
Variable message 1111.4
Walls 703.6, H111

SITE DRAWINGS 107.2.5

SITE WORK 3304

SKYLIGHTS 2405, 3106.3
Light, required 1205.2
Loads 2404
Plastic 2610
Protection from adjacent construction 3307.1
Vertical opening protective 712.1.15

SLAB ON GROUND, CONCRETE. 1907, 2304.12.1.4

SLATE SHINGLES. 1507.7

SLEEPING UNITS 202
Accessibility 1103.2.11, 1105.1.6, 1106.2, 1106.7.2, 1107
Group I. 308
Group R 310
Scoping 101.2
Separation 420.2, 420.3

SMOKE ALARMS
Bathrooms 907.2.11.4
Cooking appliances 907.2.11.3
Live/work unit. 419.5, 907.2.11.2
Multiple-station. 907.2.11
Residential aircraft hangars 412.5.3, 412.5.4, 907.2.21
Residential occupancies 420.5, 907.2.11.1, 907.2.11.2
Single-station 907.2.11

SMOKE BARRIERS 202
Construction. 407.4.3, 709.4, 909.5
Doors 709.5, 716.5.3, 909.5.3
Fire-resistance rating 703, 709.3
Glazing, rated. 716.6
Inspection. 110.3.6
Joints 709.7, 715
Marking 703.6
Materials. 709.2
Opening protection. 709.5, 714.3, 714.4.4,

`
716, 717.5.5, 909.5.3
Penetrations. 709.6, 714
Smoke control 909.5
Special provisions
Ambulatory care facilities 422.2, 422.3, 709.5.1
Group I-1 . . . . . .420.4, 709.5.1
Group I-2 . . . . . .407.5
Group I-3 . . . . . 408.6, 408.7
Underground 405.4.2, 405.4.3

SMOKE COMPARTMENT 407, 408, 422
Refuge area (see REFUGE AREA)

SMOKE CONTROL 909
Amusement buildings, special 411.1
Atrium buildings 404.5
Covered and open mall building. 402.7.2
Group I-3 . . . . . .408.9
High-rise (smoke removal) 403.4.7, 1023.11
Special inspections 1705.18
Stages 410.3.7.2
Standby power systems. 909.11, 909.20.6.2, 2702.2.15
Underground buildings. 405.5

SMOKE DAMPERS . . . . . 717.2 through 717.5

SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEM (see FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS). 907

SMOKE DETECTORS
Covered and open mall building. 402.8.6.1, 907.2.20
High-rise buildings 403.4.1, 907.2.13
HPM. 415.11.9.3
Institutional I-2 . . . . . .407.8
Smoke-activated doors 716.5.9.3
Special amusement buildings 411.5
Underground buildings. 907.2.18,

SMOKE DEVELOPMENT . . . . . 802, 803.1.1, Table 803.11

SMOKE EXHAUST SYSTEMS
Underground buildings 405.5, 907.2.18, 909.2

SMOKE PARTITIONS. 202, 710
Continuity 710.4
Doors 710.5
Ducts and air transfer openings 710.8
Fire-resistance rating 710.3
Inspection 110.3.6
Joints 710.7
Marking 703.6
Materials 710.2
Opening protection 710.5, 717.5.7
Penetrations 710.6

`

Special provisions
Atriums 404.6
Group I-2 . . . . . 407.3

SMOKE REMOVAL (High rise) 403.4.7

SMOKE VENTS. 410.3.7.1, 910

SMOKEPROOF ENCLOSURES. . . . 403.5.4, 1023.11
Design 909.20

SNOW LOAD. 1608
Glazing 2404

SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS
(see FOUNDATION) . . . . . Chapter 18
Depth of footings 1809.4
Excavation, grading and fill . . .1804, 3304, J106, J107
Expansive 1803.5.3, 1808.6
Flood hazard. 1808.4
Footings and foundations 1808
Footings on or adjacent to slopes. . 1808.7, 3304.1.3
Foundation walls. 1807.1.5, 3304.1.4
Geotechnical investigation 1803
Grading. . . . . .1804.4, Appendix J
Load-bearing values 1806
Soil boring and sampling 1803.4
Soil lateral load 1610
Special inspection. 1705.6

SORORITIES. 310.4
SOUND-INSULATING MATERIALS
(see INSULATION) 720

SOUND TRANSMISSION 1207

SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION . . . . . Chapter 31
Automatic vehicular gates 3110
Awnings and canopies
(see AWNINGS and CANOPIES) 3105
Marquees (see MARQUEES) 3106
Membrane structures
(see MEMBRANE STRUCTURES) 3102
Pedestrian walkways and tunnels (see WALKWAYS
and TUNNELED WALKWAYS) 3104
Photovoltaic panels and modules 3111
Signs (see SIGNS) 3107
Swimming pool enclosures and safety devices
(see SWIMMING POOL) 3109
Telecommunication and broadcast towers
(see TOWERS) 3108
Temporary structures
(see TEMPORARY STRUCTURES) 3103

SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS
(see INSPECTIONS) . . . . . 110.3.9, Chapter 17
Alternative test procedure. 1707
Approvals 1703
Continuous special inspection 202

`

Contractor responsibilities. 1704.4
Design strengths of materials 1706
General 1701
In-situ load tests 1708
Periodic special inspection 202
Preconstruction load tests. 1709
Special inspections 1705
Statement of special inspections 1704.3
Structural observations 1704.6
Testing seismic resistance 1705.13

SPECIAL INSPECTOR 202
Qualifications 1704.2.1

SPIRAL STAIRWAYS 1011.10
Construction 1011.2, 1011.3, 1011.10
Exceptions 1011.5.2, 1011.5.3, 1011.5.5.3, 1011.10
Group I-3. . . . . 408.3.4
Live/work. 419.3.2
Stages. 410.6.3.4

SPORTS ACTIVITY, AREA OF (see RECREATIONAL FACILITIES) 202, 1110.4.1

SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTANT MATERIALS. 202, 1702.1
Application 704.13
Inspection 1705.14, 1705.15
Steel column calculated fire resistance. . . . 722.5.2.2

SPRINKLER SYSTEM, AUTOMATIC. 903, 3312
Exempt locations. 903.3.1.1.1, 903.3.1.1.2
Fire department location 912
Limited area sprinkler systems 903.3.8
Signs. 914.2
Substitute for fire rating. . . . . .Table 601(4)

SPRINKLER SYSTEM, REQUIRED 903
Aircraft related. 412.4.6, 412.6.5
Ambulatory care facilities 422.4, 903.2.2
Amusement buildings, special 411.4
Assembly 903.2.1, 1029.6.2.3
Atrium 404.3
Basements. 903.2.11.1
Building area 506.2
Children’s play structures 424.3
Combustible storage 413
Commercial kitchen 903.2.11.5
Construction. 903.2.12
Covered and open mall building 402.5
Drying rooms 417.4
Education. 903.2.3
Exempt locations 903.3.1.1.1, 903.3.1.1.2
Factory. 903.2.4
Fire areas. 707.3.10
Hazardous materials . . . . . .Table 414.2.5(1), Table 414.2.5(2), 903.2.11.4

`

Hazardous occupancies 415.4, 415.11.6.4, 415.11.11, 705.8.1, 903.2.5
Height increase . . . . . Table 504.3
High-rise buildings 403.3, 903.2.11.3
Incidental uses. . . . . Table 509
Institutional. 407.6, 408.11, 420.5, 903.2.6, 903.3.2
Laundry chutes, refuse chutes, termination rooms and incinerator rooms 713.13, 903.2.11.2
Live/work units 419.5, 903.2.8
Mercantile 903.2.7
Mezzanines 505.2.1, 505.2.3, 505.3.2
Multistory buildings 903.2.11.3
Parking garages. 406.6.3, 903.2.9.1, 903.2.10.1
Residential 420.5, 903.2.8, 903.3.2
Special amusement buildings 411.4
Spray finishing booth 416.5
Stages 410.7
Storage 903.2.9, 903.2.10
Supervision (see SPRINKLER SYSTEM, SUPERVISION) 903.4
Underground buildings. 405.3, 903.2.11.1
Unlimited area 507

SPRINKLER SYSTEM, SUPERVISION. 903.4
Service. 901.6
Underground buildings. 405.3

STAGES AND PLATFORMS. 303, 410
Dressing rooms 410.5
Fire barrier wall 410.5.1, 410.5.2
Floor finish and floor covering 410.3, 410.4, 804.4, 805.1
Horizontal assembly 410.5.1, 410.5.2
Means of egress 410.6
Platform, temporary 410.4.1
Platform construction . . . . . 410.4, 603.1(12)
Proscenium curtain 410.3.5
Proscenium wall 410.3.4
Roof vents 410.3.7.1
Scenery 410.3.6
Smoke control 410.3.7.2
Sprinkler protection 410.7
Stage construction . . . . . 410.3, 603.1(12)
Standpipes 410.8, 905.3.4
Technical production areas 202, 410.3.2, 410.6.3
Ventilation 410.3.7

STAIRWAY
(see ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICES, SPIRAL STAIRWAYS, STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION and STAIRWAY ENCLOSURE)
STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION
Alternating tread. 1011.14
Circular (see Curved)
Construction. 1011.7

`

Curved 1011.4, 1011.9
Discharge barrier 1023.8
During construction 3310.1
Elevators 1011.12.1, 1023.4, 1023.10, 3002.7
Enclosure under 1011.7.3, 1011.7.4
Exit access. 1019
Exterior exit 1027, 1028.1
Fireblocking 718.2.4
Guards 1015.2, 1015.3, 1607.7
Handrails 1011.11, 1014, 1607.7
Headroom 1011.3
Interior exit 1022
Illumination. 1008.2, 1205.4, 1205.5
Ladders 408.3.5, 410.6.3.4, 1011.15, 1011.16
Landings. 1011.6, 1011.8
Live load. . . . . Table 1607.1, 1607.8
Luminous 403.5.5, 411.7.1, 1025
Roof access 1011.12
Seismic anchorage. 2308.4.7
Spiral
(see SPIRAL STAIRWAYS) 408.3.4,
410.6.3.4, 419.3.2, 1011.10
Stepped aisles 1029.13.2
Transitions 1029.9.7, 1029.9.8, 1029.10
Travel distance. 1017.3.1
Treads and risers 1011.4, 1011.5
Width/capacity 1005.3.1, 1011.2
Winders 1011.4, 1011.5, 1011.10

STAIRWAY ENCLOSURE 713.1, 1019, 1023
Accessibility 1009.3
Construction. 1019, 1023.2
Discharge. 1023.3.1, 1028.1
Doors 716.5.9, 1010.1.9.11
Elevators within 1023.4, 3002.7
Exit access 1019
Exterior walls 705.2, 707.4,
708.5, 713.6, 1009.3.1.8,
1023.2, 1027.6
Fire-resistant construction 1019.3, 1023.2
Group I-2 . . . . . 1019.4
Group I-3 . . . . . 408.3.8, 1019.4
High-rise 403.5
Penetrations 1023.5
Pressurization. 909.6, 909.20.5, 1023.11
Smokeproof 403.5.4, 405.7.2, 909.20, 1023.11
Space below, use 1011.7.3, 1011.7.4
Ventilation. 1023.6

STANDARDS (see REFERENCED STANDARDS)
STANDBY POWER. 2702.1, 2702.2, 2702.4
Atriums 404.7, 2702.2.15
Covered and open mall buildings 402.7.3,
2702.2.4
Elevators. 1009.4, 2702.2.2,
3003.1, 3007.8, 3008.8
Hazardous occupancy 414.5.2, 415.11.10,
421.8, 2702.2.8, 2702.2.13,
High-rise 403.4.5, 2702.2.9

`

Horizontal sliding doors 1010.1.4.3, 2702.2.10
Membrane structures 2702.2.12, 3102.8.2
Platform lifts 1009.5, 2702.2.2
Smoke control. 909.11, 2702.2.15
Smokeproof enclosure 909.20.6.2, 2702.2.15
Special inspection. 1705.12.6
Underground buildings 405.8, 2702.2.16

STANDPIPE AND HOSE SYSTEMS
(see STANDPIPES, REQUIRED) 905, 3106.4, 3308.1.1, 3311
Cabinet locks 905.7.2
Dry 905.8
Hose connection location . . . . . 905.1, 905.4 through 905.6, 912

STANDPIPES, REQUIRED
Assembly 905.3.1, 905.3.2, 905.3.4
Covered and open mall buildings 402.7.1, 905.3.3
During construction. 905.10, 3311
Elevators, fire service access 3007.9
Helistops. 905.3.6
Marinas. 905.3.7
Parking garages 406.5.8
Roof gardens and landscaped roofs. 905.3.8
Stages 410.8, 905.3.4
Underground buildings 405.9, 905.3.5

STATE LAW 102.2

STEEL . . . . . Chapter 22
Bolting. 2204.2
Cable structures 2208
Calculated fire resistance 722.5
Cold-formed 202, 2210, 2211
Composite structural steel and concrete. 2206
Conditions of restraint 703.2.3
Decks 2210.1.1
Identification and protection 2203
Joists. 202, 2207
Open web joist 2207
Parapet walls 1503.3, 1503.6
Seismic provisions 2205.2, 2206.2, 2207.1.1, 2210.2
Special inspections 1705.3
Storage racks 2209
Structural steel 2205
Welding. 2204.1

STONE VENEER. 1405.7
Slab-type. 1405.8

STOP WORK ORDERS. 115

STORAGE OCCUPANCY (GROUP S) 311
Accessibility 1108.3
Area 406.5.4, 406.5.5, 406.6.1, 503, 505, 506, 507, 508

`

Equipment platforms 505.2
Group provisions
Hazard storage, low, Group S-2 . . . . . 311.3
Hazard storage, moderate, Group S-1 . . . . . 311.2
Hazardous material display and storage. 414.2.5
Height 406.5.4, 406.6.1, 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Incidental uses 509
Interior finishes . . . . . Table 803.11, 804
Live loads . . . . . Table 1607.1
Means of egress
Aisles 1018.5
Stairway, exit access 1019
Travel distance 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1017.2.2, 1006.3.2
Mixed occupancies 508.3, 508.4
Accessory 508.2
Parking above/below 510.3, 510.4, 510.7, 510.8, 510.9
Special mixed 510.2
Plumbing fixtures 2902
Special provisions
Aircraft related occupancies 412
High-piled combustible 413
Parking garages 406
Sprinkler protection. 903.2.10
Unlimited area. 507.3, 507.4, 507.5

STORM SHELTER 423
Emergency operation facilities 423.3
Education. 423.4
Refuge area (see REFUGE AREA)

STRENGTH
Design requirements 1604.2
Masonry 202
Nominal 202
Required 202

STRENGTH DESIGN 202, 1604.1
Factored load. 202
Limit state 202
Load combinations. 1605.2
Load factor. 202
Masonry 2108

STRUCTURAL DESIGN. . . . . Chapter 16
Aluminum. . . . . Chapter 20
Concrete . . . . . Chapter 19
Foundations . . . . . Chapter 18
Masonry . . . . . Chapter 21
Steel. . . . . Chapter 22
Wood . . . . . Chapter 23

STRUCTURAL OBSERVATION 202, 1704.6

STUCCO. 2512

SUSCEPTIBLE BAY

`
Definition 202
Ponding instability 1611.2

SWIMMING POOL 3109
Accessibility 1110.2, 1110.3, 1110.4.13
Flood provisions. G801.5
Glass 2406.4

T

TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS. 410.3.2, 410.6.3

TELEPHONE EXCHANGES 304

TELESCOPIC SEATING
(see FOLDING AND TELESCOPIC SEATING)
TEMPORARY STRUCTURES 3103
Certificate of occupancy 108.3
Conformance 108.2, 3103.1.1
Construction documents 3103.2
Encroachment, public rights-of-way. 3202.3
Flood provisions. G901
Means of egress 3103.4
Permit 108.1, 3103.1.2
Power, temporary 108.3
Termination of approval 108.4

TENANT SEPARATION
Covered and open mall building . . . 402.4.2.1, 708.1

TENTS (see TEMPORARY STRUCTURES)
TERMITES, PROTECTION FROM. 2304.12

TERRA COTTA. 1405.9

TESTING
Automatic fire-extinguishing systems. 904.4
Automatic water mist systems 904.11.3
Building official required. 104.11.1
Carbon dioxide systems. 904.8
Clean agent system 904.10
Dry chemical systems 904.6
Emergency and standby power 2702.4
Fire-resistant materials. 703.2
Fire alarm systems. 907.7, 907.8
Fire pumps 913.5
Foam systems 904.7
Glazing. 2406, 2408.2.1
Halon systems 904.9
Personnel and material hoists 3004.4
Roof tile 1711.2
Seismic. 1705.13
Sound transmission 1207
Smoke control 909.3, 909.5.2, 909.10.2, 909.12.1, 909.13.3, 909.18, 909.20.6.3, 909.21.7 1705.18
Soils 1803
Sprinkler protection 903.5

`

Structural
(see SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS)
Wet chemical systems 904.5

THEATERS
[see ASSEMBLY OCCUPANCY (GROUP A, PROJECTION ROOMS and STAGES AND PLATFORMS)] 303.2

THERMAL BARRIER, FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION 2603.4, 2603.5.2

THERMAL-INSULATING MATERIALS (see INSULATION) 719

TILE. 202
Ceramic (see CERAMIC TILE)
Fire resistance, clay or shale 721.1

TOILETS and TOILET ROOMS . . . . Chapter 29, 3305
Accessible 1109.2, 1109.3, 1607.8.2
Construction/finish materials 1210
Door locking 1010.1.9.5.1, 1109.2.1.7, 2902.3.5
Family or assisted-use 1109.2.1, 2902.1.2, 2902.2.1
Fixture count . . . . . .Table 2902.1
Grab bar live loads. 1607.8.2
Location 2902.3.1, 2902.3.2, 2902.3.3, 2903.3.6
Partitions 1210.3
Privacy 1210.3
Public facilities 2902.3
Signs 1111.1, 1111.2, 2902.4, 2902.4.1
Ventilation. 1203.5.2.1

TORNADO SHELTER (see STORM SHELTER)
TOWERS
Airport traffic control 412.3
Cooling 1510.4
Location and access. 3108.2
Radio 3108
Television 3108

TOXIC MATERIALS
[see HIGH-HAZARD OCCUPANCY (GROUP H)]
Classification 307.6, 414, 415
Gas detection system. 415.11.7, 421.6, 908.3

TRAVEL DISTANCE
Area of refuge. 1009.6.1
Assembly seating 1029.7
Atrium 404.9
Balcony, exterior 1017.2.1
Care suites (Group I-2) 407.4.2, 407.4.4
Common path of travel 1016.2.1
Drinking fountains. 2902.5
Exit access 1017.2
Mall 402.8.5, 402.8.6
Measurement 1017.3

`

Refrigeration machinery/
refrigerated rooms 1006.2.2.2, 1006.2.2.3
Smoke compartments (Group I-2 and I-3) 407.5, 408.6., 408.9
Special amusement building. 411.4
Stories with one exit 1006.3.2
Toilet facilities 2902.3.2, 2902.3.3

TREADS, STAIR
(see STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION)
Concentrated live load . . . . . Table 1607.1

TREATED WOOD 202
Fire-retardant-treated wood 2303.2
Pressure-treated wood 2303.1.9
Stress adjustments 2306.1.3

TRUSSES
Cold-formed steel 2211.3
Fire resistance 704.5
Materials . . . . . Chapter 6
Metal-plate-connected wood 2303.4.6
Wood 2303.4

TSUNAMIGENERATED
FLOOD HAZARD . . . . . Appendix M

TUNNELED WALKWAY 3104, 3202.1

TURNSTILES 1010.3

U

UNDERGROUND BUILDINGS 405
Alarms and detection 405.6
Compartmentation 405.4
Construction type 405.2
Elevators. 405.4.3
Emergency power loads 405.8, 2702.2.16
Means of egress 405.7
Smoke barrier 405.4.2, 405.4.3
Smoke exhaust/control 405.5
Smokeproof enclosure 405.7.2, 1023.11
Sprinkler protection. 405.3
Standby power 405.8, 2702.2.16
Standpipe system 405.9, 905.3.5

UNDERLAYMENT. . . . . 202, 1707.2.3, 1507.3.3, 1507.5.3, 1507.6.3, 1507.7.3, Table 1507.8, 1507.8.3, 1507.9.3, 1507.17.3
Application 1507.2.8, 1507.3.3, 1507.4.5, 1507.5.3.1, 1507.6.3.1, 1507.7.3.1, 1507.8.3.1, 1507.9.3.1, 1507.17.4
Ice barrier 1507.2.8.2, 1507.5.4, 1507.6.4, 1507.7.4, 1507.8.4, 1507.9.4, 1507.17.4.2

`

UNLIMITED AREA BUILDINGS 507

UNSAFE STRUCTURES AND EQUIPMENT
(see STRUCTURES, UNSAFE) 115
Appeals. . . . . .113, Appendix B
Restoration 115.5
Revocation of permit 105.6
Stop work orders. 115
Utilities disconnection 112.3

UNSTABLE MATERIALS . . . .307.3, Table 414.2.5(1),
Table 414.5.1, Table 415.6.2,
415.7.1, 415.9

UNUSABLE SPACE 712.3.3

USE AND OCCUPANCY. . . . . Chapter 3
Accessory 508.2
Incidental uses . . . . . 509, Table 509
Mixed 508.3, 508.4
Special . . . . . Chapter 4

UTILITIES 112
Service connection 112.1
Service disconnection. 112.3
Temporary connection 112.2

UTILITY AND MISCELLANEOUS OCCUPANCY
(GROUP U). 312
Accessibility 1103.2.4, 1104.3.1
Agricultural buildings. . . . . Appendix C
Area 503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Flood provisions G1001
Height 503, 504, 508
Incidental uses 509
Live loads . . . . . Table 1607.1
Means of egress
Exit signs 1013.1
Stairway, exit access 1019
Mixed occupancies 508.3, 508.4
Special provisions
Private garages and carports. 406.3
Residential aircraft hangers. 412.5
Sprinkler protection 903.2.11
Travel distance 1016.2.1, 1017.1, 1006.3.2

V

VALUATION OR VALUE
(see FEES, PERMIT) 109.3

VEHICLE BARRIER SYSTEMS. 202, 406.4.3,
1607.8.3

VEHICLE SHOW ROOMS 304

VEHICULAR FUELING 406.7

VEHICULAR GATES 3110

`

VEHICULAR REPAIR. 406.8

VENEER
Cement plaster 1405.15
Fastening 1405.17
Fiber-cement siding 1405.16
Glazing. 1405.12
Masonry, adhered 1405.10, 2101.2.1, 2103.2.4
Masonry, anchored 1405.6, 2101.2.1
Metal 1405.11
Plastic 2605
Slab-type 1405.8
Stone 1405.7
Terra cotta 1405.9
Vinyl 1405.14
Wood 1405.5

VENTILATION (see MECHANICAL) 101.4.2
Attic 1203.2, 1503.5
Aircraft paint hangars. 412.6.6
Bathrooms 1203.4.2.1
Crawl space 1203.3
Exhaust, hazardous 1203.6
Exhaust, HPM 415.11.10.2
Exit enclosure 1023.6
Fabrication areas, HPM. 415.11.1.6
Hazardous 414.3, 415.9.1.7,
415.11.1.6, 415.11.5.8,
415.11.6.4, 415.11.7, 415.11.9.3
High-rise stairways 1022.10
HPM service corridors 415.11.3.2
Live/work unit. 419.8
Mechanical. 1203.1
Natural 1203.5
Parking. 406.5.2, 406.5.5, 406.5.10, 406.6.2
Projection rooms 409.3
Repair garages. 406.8.2
Roof 1203.2
Smoke exhaust 910
Smoke removal, high-rise buildings 403.4.7
Smokeproof enclosures 909.20.3, 909.20.4,
909.20.6, 1023.11
Spray rooms and spaces 416.2.2, 416.3
Stages 410.3.5, 410.3.7
Under-floor ventilation 1203.4

VENTS, PENETRATION PROTECTION 714

VERMICULITE, FIRE RESISTANT 721

VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION
Atriums. 404.6
Duct penetrations. 717.1
Elevators 713.14, 3007.6.1, 3008.6.1
Exceptions 1022.1
Group I-3 . . . . . .408.5
High-rise. 403.2.1.2, 403.2.3, 403.5.1
Live/work units 419.4

`
Open parking garages 406.5.9
Permitted vertical openings 712
Shaft enclosure 713, 1019, 1023.2

VESTIBULES, EXIT DISCHARGE 1028.1

VINYL
Expanded. 802, 803.7, 803.8
Rigid. 1405.14

VIOLATIONS 114

VOICE ALARM (see ALARMS, VOICE)

W

WALKWAY 3104
During construction 3306
Encroachment, public right-of-way. 3202.3.4
Fire resistance . . . . . Table 601
Live load. . . . . .Table 1607.1
Materials per construction type . . . . . Chapter 6
Opening protection. 716, 717

WALL, EXTERIOR 705
Bearing. . . . . Chapter 6
Coverings. 1405
Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS). . 1408
Exterior structural members 704.10
Fire district D102.1, D102.2.6
Fire-resistance ratings . . . . . .Table 602, 703, 705.5, 706.5.1, 707.4, 1403.4
Flashing, veneered walls 1405.4, 1405.10.1
Foam plastic insulation. 2603.4.1.4, 2603.5
Glazing, rated. 715.5
Joints 705.9, 714
Light-transmitting plastic panels. 2607
Materials 705.4, 1406
Metal Composite Materials (MCM) 1407
Nonbearing . . . . . Chapter 6
Opening protection 705.8, 705.10, 716.5.6
Parapets 705.11
Projections 705.2
Structural stability 705.6
Vapor retarders. 1405.3
Veneer (see VENEER)
Weather resistance. 1403.2, 1405.2, 1407.6, 1408.4
Weather-resistant barriers 1405.2

WALL, FIRE (see FIRE WALLS)
WALL, FOUNDATION (see FOUNDATION)
WALL, INTERIOR
Finishes 803, 1210.2
Opening protection 716, 717

WALL, INTERIOR NONBEARING (see PARTITIONS)
WALL, MASONRY 202
Wood contact 2304.12.1.3, 2304.12.1.5

`

WALL, PARAPET 705.11, 1503.3, 1503.6, 2109.3.4.3

WALL, PARTY (see FIRE WALLS)
WALL, PENETRATIONS 714.3

WALL, RETAINING (see RETAINING WALL)
WALL, VENEERED (see VENEER) . . . . . Chapter 14

WALL, WOOD CONSTRUCTION
Bracing 2308.6
Cutting, notching, boring. 2308.5.9
Exterior framing 2308.5
Fastening schedule . . . . . Table 2304.10.1
Framing 2304.3, 2308.5
Interior bearing partition 2308.5.1
Interior nonbearing partition 2308.5.1
Openings 2308.5.5
Shear walls 2305.1, 2306.3
Sheathing (see SHEATHING)
Studs 2308.5.1
Top plates. 2308.5.3.2

WATER-REACTIVE MATERIALS . . . .Table 307.1(1), 307.4, 307.5. 415.8.4

WEATHER PROTECTION
Exterior walls 1405.2
Roofs 1503

WELDING 2204.1
Materials, verification of steel reinforcement 1705.3.2
Special inspections. . . . 1705.2, 1705.3.1, 1705.12.3
Splices of reinforcement in masonry. 2107.4

WIND LOAD 1609
Alternate all-heights method. 1609.6
Construction documents 107, 1603.1.4
Exposure category 1609.4
Glazing 1609.1.2, 2404
Hurricane-prone regions 202
Masonry, empirical design 2109.1.1
Nominal design wind speed 1609.3.1
Roofs. 1504.1, 1609.5, 2308.7.5
Seismic detailing required. 1604.10
Special inspection. 1705.11
Statement of special inspections 1704.3
Structural observation. 1704.6.2
Ultimate design wind speed 1609.3
Wind-borne debris region 202
Wind tunnel testing 1504.2.1.2, 1609.1.1

WINDERS, STAIR
(see STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION)
WINDOW
Accessibility 1109.13.1
Emergency egress 1030

`

Exterior, structural testing 1709.5
Fire (see OPENING PROTECTIVES). 716.5.10, 716.5.11
Glass (see GLAZING). 1405.13
Guards 1015.8
Required light 1205.2
Wells 1030.5

WIRES, PENETRATION PROTECTION. 714

WOOD . . . . . Chapter 23
Allowable stress design 2306
Bracing, walls 2308.6
Calculated fire resistance 722.6
Ceiling framing 2308.7
Connectors and fasteners. 2304.10
Contacting concrete, masonry or earth. . . . 2304.1.4, 2304.12.1.3, 2304.12.2.1, 2304.12.2.2, 2304.12.3
Decay, protection against 2304.12
Diaphragms. 2305.1, 2305.2, 2306.2
Draftstopping. 718.3, 718.4
End-jointed lumber 2303.1.1.2
Fiberboard. . . . . 2303.1.5, Table 2306.3(2)
Fire-retardant treated 2303.2
Fireblocking. 718.2
Floor and roof framing (see FLOOR CONSTRUCTION, WOOD). 2304.4
Floor sheathing 2304.8
Foundation 1807.1.4, 2308.6.7.4
Grade, lumber 2303.1.1
Hardboard. 2303.1.7
Heavy timber construction 602.4, 2304.11
Hurricane shutters. 1609.1.2
I-joist 2303.1.2
Inspection, special 1705.5, 1705.11.1, 1705.12.2
Lateral force-resisting systems 2305
Light-frame construction, conventional 2308
Load and resistance factor design. 2307
Moisture content 2303.1.9.2, 2303.2.6
Nails and staples 2303.6
Plywood, hardwood 2303.3
Preservative treated. 1403.5, 1403.6, 2303.1.9
Roof framing (see ROOF CONSTRUCTION, WOOD) . . . 2304.4
Roof sheathing. 2304.8
Seismic provisions 2305, 2306, 2308.6.6, 2308.6.8, 2308.6.10
Shear walls 2305, 2306.3
Standards and quality, minimum 2303
Structural panels 202, 2303.1.5
Supporting concrete or masonry 2304.13
Termite, protection against 2304.12
Trusses 2303.4
Veneer . . . . . Chapter 14
Wall framing (see WALL, WOOD CONSTRUCTION). . . . 2304.3
Wall sheathing, exterior 2304.6

`

WOOD SHINGLES AND SHAKES . . . 1507.8, 1507.9

WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS
(see WOOD) 202, 2303.1.5
Bracing. 2308.6
Decorative 2303.3
Diaphragms 2305.2, 2306.2
Fastening 2304.10
Fire-retardant-treated. 2303.2
Performance category 202
Quality 2303.1.5
Roof sheathing. 2304.8, 2308.7.10
Seismic shear panels. 2305.1, 2308.6.6.2
Shear walls 2306.3
Sheathing. 2304.6.1
Standards 2306.1
Subfloors 804.4
Veneer 1405.5

Y

YARDS OR COURTS. 1206
Exit discharge 1028.4
Group I-2 . . . . . 407.9
Group I-3 . . . . . 408.3.6, 408.6.2
Light, natural 1205
Motor fuel-dispensing facilities. 406.7.2
Occupant load 1004.5
Parking garage, open 406.5.5
Unlimited area building 507.2, 507.2.1

`

`